

GLOBAL
EDITION



Essential University Physics

FOURTH EDITION

Richard Wolfson



PHYSICAL CONSTANTS

CONSTANT	SYMBOL	THREE-FIGURE VALUE	BEST KNOWN VALUE*
Speed of light	c	3.00×10^8 m/s	299,792,458 m/s (exact)
Elementary charge	e	1.60×10^{-19} C	$1.602\,176\,634 \times 10^{-19}$ C (exact)
Electron mass	m_e	9.11×10^{-31} kg	$9.109\,383\,56(11) \times 10^{-31}$ kg
Proton mass	m_p	1.67×10^{-27} kg	$1.672\,621\,898(21) \times 10^{-27}$ kg
Gravitational constant	G	6.67×10^{-11} N·m ² /kg ²	$6.67408(31) \times 10^{-11}$ N·m ² /kg ²
Permeability constant	μ_0	1.26×10^{-6} N/A ² (H/m)	$12.566\,370\,616\,9(29) \times 10^{-7}$ N/A ²
Permittivity constant	ϵ_0	8.85×10^{-12} C ² /N·m ² (F/m)	$8.854\,187\,815\,8(20) \times 10^{-12}$ C ² /N·m ²
Boltzmann's constant	k	1.38×10^{-23} J/K	$1.380\,649 \times 10^{-23}$ J/K (exact)
Universal gas constant	R	8.31 J/K·mol	$N_A k$ (exact)
Stefan-Boltzmann constant	σ	5.67×10^{-8} W/m ² ·K ⁴	$5.670\,367(13) \times 10^{-8}$ W/m ² ·K ⁴
Planck's constant	$h (= 2\pi\hbar)$	6.63×10^{-34} J·s	$6.626\,070\,15 \times 10^{-34}$ J·s (exact)
Avogadro's number	N_A	6.02×10^{23} mol ⁻¹	$6.022\,140\,76 \times 10^{23}$ mol ⁻¹ (exact)
Bohr radius	a_0	5.29×10^{-11} m	$5.291\,772\,085\,9(36) \times 10^{-11}$ m

*Parentheses indicate uncertainties in last decimal places. Source: U.S. National Institute of Standards and Technology, 2014, 2019 values

SI PREFIXES

POWER	PREFIX	SYMBOL
10^{24}	yotta	Y
10^{21}	zetta	Z
10^{18}	exa	E
10^{15}	peta	P
10^{12}	tera	T
10^9	giga	G
10^6	mega	M
10^3	kilo	k
10^2	hecto	h
10^1	deca	da
10^0	—	—
10^{-1}	deci	d
10^{-2}	centi	c
10^{-3}	milli	m
10^{-6}	micro	μ
10^{-9}	nano	n
10^{-12}	pico	p
10^{-15}	femto	f
10^{-18}	atto	a
10^{-21}	zepto	z
10^{-24}	yocto	y

THE GREEK ALPHABET

	UPPERCASE	LOWERCASE
Alpha	A	α
Beta	B	β
Gamma	Γ	γ
Delta	Δ	δ
Epsilon	E	ϵ
Zeta	Z	ζ
Eta	H	η
Theta	Θ	θ
Iota	I	ι
Kappa	K	κ
Lambda	Λ	λ
Mu	M	μ
Nu	N	ν
Xi	Ξ	ξ
Omicron	O	o
Pi	Π	π
Rho	P	ρ
Sigma	Σ	σ
Tau	T	τ
Upsilon	Y	υ
Phi	Φ	ϕ
Chi	X	χ
Psi	Ψ	ψ
Omega	Ω	ω

Conversion Factors (more conversion factors in Appendix C)

Length

1 in = 2.54 cm
 1 mi = 1.609 km
 1 ft = 0.3048 m
 1 light year = 9.46×10^{15} m

Velocity

1 mi/h = 0.447 m/s
 1 m/s = 2.24 mi/h = 3.28 ft/s

Mass, energy, force

1 u = 1.661×10^{-27} kg
 1 cal = 4.184 J
 1 Btu = 1.054 kJ
 1 kWh = 3.6 MJ
 1 eV = 1.602×10^{-19} J
 1 pound (lb) = 4.448 N
 = weight of 0.454 kg

Time

1 day = 86,400 s
 1 year = 3.156×10^7 s

Pressure

1 atm = 101.3 kPa = 760 mm Hg
 1 atm = 14.7 lb/in²

Rotation and angle

1 rad = $180^\circ/\pi = 57.3^\circ$
 1 rev = $360^\circ = 2\pi$ rad
 1 rev/s = 60 rpm

Magnetic field

1 gauss = 10^{-4} T

Essential University Physics

FOURTH EDITION
GLOBAL EDITION

Richard Wolfson

Middlebury College



Pearson

Physics & Astronomy Portfolio Analyst: Ian Desrosiers
Director of Physical Science Portfolio: Jeanne Zalesky
Content Producer: Tiffany Mok
Managing Producer: Kristen Flathman
Courseware Director, Content Development:
Barbara Yien
Courseware Analyst: Coleen Morrison
Development Editor: John Murdzek
Courseware Editorial Assistant: Frances Lai
Senior Acquisitions Editor, Global Edition: Aaditya Bugga
Associate Project Editor, Global Edition: Aman Kumar
Rich Media Content Producer: Alison Candlin
Mastering Media Producer: David Hoogewerff
Associate Media Editor, Global Edition: Aditee Agarwal
Managing Producer, Media Production, Global Edition:
Vikram Kumar Medepalli
Full-Service Vendor: Integra Software Services

Copyeditor: Daniel Nighting
Art Coordinator: Troutt Visual Services
Design Manager: Maria Guglielmo Walsh
Interior Designer: Wee Design Group
Cover Designer: SPi Global
Illustrators: Troutt Visual Services
Rights & Permissions Project Manager: Carol Ylanan and John Paul Belciña
Rights & Permissions Management: SPi Global
Manufacturing Buyer: Stacey Weinberger
Senior Manufacturing Buyer, Global Edition: Caterina Pellegrino
Director of Field Marketing: Tim Galligan
Director of Product Marketing: Alison Rona
Field Marketing Manager: Yez Alayan
Product Marketing Manager: Elizabeth Bell
Cover Photo Credit: Media Whalestock/Shutterstock

Pearson Education Limited
KAO Two
KAO Park
Hockham Way
Harlow
CM17 9SR
United Kingdom

and Associated Companies throughout the world

Visit us on the World Wide Web at: www.pearsonglobaleditions.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2021

The rights of Richard Wolfson to be identified as the author of this work have been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

Authorized adaptation from the United States editions, entitled Essential University Physics: Volume 1, 4th Edition, ISBN 978-0-134-98855-9 and Essential University Physics: Volume 2, 4th Edition, ISBN 978-0-134-98856-6 by Richard Wolfson, published by Pearson Education © 2020.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without either the prior written permission of the publisher or a license permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency Ltd, Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC1N 8TS. For information regarding permissions, request forms and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights & Permissions department, please visit www.pearsoned.com/permissions/.

All trademarks used herein are the property of their respective owners. The use of any trademark in this text does not vest in the author or publisher any trademark ownership rights in such trademarks, nor does the use of such trademarks imply any affiliation with or endorsement of this book by such owners.

Attributions of third party content appear on page C-1, which constitutes an extension of this copyright page.

PEARSON, ALWAYS LEARNING, Mastering™ Physics are exclusive trademarks in the U.S. and/or other countries owned by Pearson Education, Inc. or its affiliates.

Unless otherwise indicated herein, any third-party trademarks that may appear in this work are the property of their respective owners and any references to third-party trademarks, logos or other trade dress are for demonstrative or descriptive purposes only. Such references are not intended to imply any sponsorship, endorsement, authorization, or promotion of Pearson's products by the owners of such marks, or any relationship between the owner and Pearson Education, Inc. or its affiliates, authors, licensees or distributors.

ISBN 10: 1-292-35014-8 (Volume 1); 1-292-35118-7 (Volume 2)
ISBN 13: 978-1-292-35014-1 (Volume 1); 978-1-292-35118-6 (Volume 2)

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Brief Contents

Chapter 1 Doing Physics 17

PART ONE

Mechanics 31

Chapter 2 Motion in a Straight Line 32

Chapter 3 Motion in Two and Three Dimensions 50

Chapter 4 Force and Motion 70

Chapter 5 Using Newton's Laws 90

Chapter 6 Energy, Work, and Power 110

Chapter 7 Conservation of Energy 129

Chapter 8 Gravity 150

Chapter 9 Systems of Particles 166

Chapter 10 Rotational Motion 191

Chapter 11 Rotational Vectors and Angular Momentum 212

Chapter 12 Static Equilibrium 227

PART TWO

Oscillations, Waves, and Fluids 244

Chapter 13 Oscillatory Motion 245

Chapter 14 Wave Motion 266

Chapter 15 Fluid Motion 290

PART THREE

Thermodynamics 310

Chapter 16 Temperature and Heat 311

Chapter 17 The Thermal Behavior of Matter 329

Chapter 18 Heat, Work, and the First Law of Thermodynamics 344

Chapter 19 The Second Law of Thermodynamics 361

PART FOUR

Electromagnetism 383

Chapter 20 Electric Charge, Force, and Field 384

Chapter 21 Gauss's Law 405

Chapter 22 Electric Potential 430

Chapter 23 Electrostatic Energy and Capacitors 450

Chapter 24 Electric Current 465

Chapter 25 Electric Circuits 483

Chapter 26 Magnetism: Force and Field 504

Chapter 27 Electromagnetic Induction 532

Chapter 28 Alternating-Current Circuits 561

Chapter 29 Maxwell's Equations and Electromagnetic Waves 580

PART FIVE

Optics 604

Chapter 30 Reflection and Refraction 605

Chapter 31 Images and Optical Instruments 619

Chapter 32 Interference and Diffraction 640

PART SIX

Modern Physics 663

Chapter 33 Relativity 664

Chapter 34 Particles and Waves 690

Chapter 35 Quantum Mechanics 710

Chapter 36 Atomic Physics 727

Chapter 37 Molecules and Solids 746

Chapter 38 Nuclear Physics 765

Chapter 39 From Quarks to the Cosmos 793

Appendix A. Mathematics A-1

Appendix B. The International System of Units (SI) A-9

Appendix C. Conversion Factors A-11

Appendix D. The Elements A-13

Appendix E. Astrophysical Data A-16

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems A-17

Credits C-1

Index I-1

Detailed Contents

Volume 1 contains Chapters 1–19

Volume 2 contains Chapters 20–39

Chapter 1 Doing Physics 17

- 1.1 Realms of Physics 17
- 1.2 Measurements and Units 18
- 1.3 Working with Numbers 21
- 1.4 Strategies for Learning Physics 24

PART ONE

Mechanics 31

Chapter 2 Motion in a Straight Line 32

- 2.1 Average Motion 32
- 2.2 Instantaneous Velocity 34
- 2.3 Acceleration 36
- 2.4 Constant Acceleration 38
- 2.5 The Acceleration of Gravity 41
- 2.6 When Acceleration Isn't Constant 43

Chapter 3 Motion in Two and Three Dimensions 50

- 3.1 Vectors 50
- 3.2 Velocity and Acceleration Vectors 53
- 3.3 Relative Motion 54
- 3.4 Constant Acceleration 56
- 3.5 Projectile Motion 57
- 3.6 Uniform Circular Motion 62

Chapter 4 Force and Motion 70

- 4.1 The Wrong Question 70
- 4.2 Newton's First and Second Laws 71
- 4.3 Forces 75
- 4.4 The Force of Gravity 76
- 4.5 Using Newton's Second Law 78
- 4.6 Newton's Third Law 81

Chapter 5 Using Newton's Laws 90

- 5.1 Using Newton's Second Law 90
- 5.2 Multiple Objects 93

5.3 Circular Motion 95

5.4 Friction 99

5.5 Drag Forces 104

Chapter 6 Energy, Work, and Power 110

- 6.1 Energy 110
- 6.2 Work 112
- 6.3 Forces That Vary 115
- 6.4 Kinetic Energy 119
- 6.5 Power 121

Chapter 7 Conservation of Energy 129

- 7.1 Conservative and Nonconservative Forces 130
- 7.2 Potential Energy 131
- 7.3 Conservation of Mechanical Energy 135
- 7.4 Nonconservative Forces 138
- 7.5 Conservation of Energy 140
- 7.6 Potential-Energy Curves 141

Chapter 8 Gravity 150

- 8.1 Toward a Law of Gravity 150
- 8.2 Universal Gravitation 151
- 8.3 Orbital Motion 153
- 8.4 Gravitational Energy 156
- 8.5 The Gravitational Field 160

Chapter 9 Systems of Particles 166

- 9.1 Center of Mass 166
- 9.2 Momentum 172
- 9.3 Kinetic Energy of a System 176
- 9.4 Collisions 177
- 9.5 Totally Inelastic Collisions 178
- 9.6 Elastic Collisions 180

Chapter 10 Rotational Motion 191

- 10.1 Angular Velocity and Acceleration 191
- 10.2 Torque 194
- 10.3 Rotational Inertia and the Analog of Newton's Law 196

10.4 Rotational Energy 201

10.5 Rolling Motion 203

Chapter 11 Rotational Vectors and Angular Momentum 212

11.1 Angular Velocity and Acceleration Vectors 212

11.2 Torque and the Vector Cross Product 213

11.3 Angular Momentum 215

11.4 Conservation of Angular Momentum 217

11.5 Gyroscopes and Precession 219

Chapter 12 Static Equilibrium 227

12.1 Conditions for Equilibrium 227

12.2 Center of Gravity 229

12.3 Examples of Static Equilibrium 230

12.4 Stability 232

PART TWO

Oscillations, Waves, and Fluids 244

Chapter 13 Oscillatory Motion 245

13.1 Describing Oscillatory Motion 246

13.2 Simple Harmonic Motion 247

13.3 Applications of Simple Harmonic Motion 250

13.4 Circular Motion and Harmonic Motion 254

13.5 Energy in Simple Harmonic Motion 255

13.6 Damped Harmonic Motion 257

13.7 Driven Oscillations and Resonance 258

Chapter 14 Wave Motion 266

14.1 Waves and Their Properties 266

14.2 Wave Math 268

14.3 Waves on a String 270

14.4 Wave Energy 271

14.5 Sound Waves 273

14.6 Interference 274

14.7 Reflection and Refraction 277

14.8 Standing Waves 279

14.9 The Doppler Effect and Shock Waves 281

Chapter 15 Fluid Motion 290

15.1 Density and Pressure 290

15.2 Hydrostatic Equilibrium 291

15.3 Archimedes' Principle and Buoyancy 294

15.4 Fluid Dynamics 296

15.5 Applications of Fluid Dynamics 299

15.6 Viscosity and Turbulence 303

PART THREE

Thermodynamics 310

Chapter 16 Temperature and Heat 311

16.1 Heat, Temperature, and Thermodynamic Equilibrium 311

16.2 Heat Capacity and Specific Heat 313

16.3 Heat Transfer 315

16.4 Thermal-Energy Balance 321

Chapter 17 The Thermal Behavior of Matter 329

17.1 Gases 329

17.2 Phase Changes 334

17.3 Thermal Expansion 337

Chapter 18 Heat, Work, and the First Law of Thermodynamics 344

18.1 The First Law of Thermodynamics 344

18.2 Thermodynamic Processes 346

18.3 Specific Heats of an Ideal Gas 354

Chapter 19 The Second Law of Thermodynamics 361

19.1 Reversibility and Irreversibility 361

19.2 The Second Law of Thermodynamics 362

19.3 Applications of the Second Law 366

19.4 Entropy and Energy Quality 369

PART FOUR

Electromagnetism 383

Chapter 20 Electric Charge, Force, and Field 384

20.1 Electric Charge 384

20.2 Coulomb's Law 385

20.3 The Electric Field 389

20.4 Fields of Charge Distributions 391

20.5 Matter in Electric Fields 396

Chapter 21 Gauss's Law 405

21.1 Electric Field Lines 405

21.2 Electric Field and Electric Flux 407

21.3 Gauss's Law 410

21.4 Using Gauss's Law 412

6 Contents

21.5 Fields of Arbitrary Charge Distributions	419
21.6 Gauss's Law and Conductors	420
Chapter 22 Electric Potential	430
22.1 Electric Potential Difference	430
22.2 Calculating Potential Difference	434
22.3 Potential Difference and the Electric Field	440
22.4 Charged Conductors	443
Chapter 23 Electrostatic Energy and Capacitors	450
23.1 Electrostatic Energy	450
23.2 Capacitors	451
23.3 Using Capacitors	453
23.4 Energy in the Electric Field	457
Chapter 24 Electric Current	465
24.1 Electric Current	465
24.2 Conduction Mechanisms	468
24.3 Resistance and Ohm's Law	472
24.4 Electric Power	474
24.5 Electrical Safety	475
Chapter 25 Electric Circuits	483
25.1 Circuits, Symbols, and Electromotive Force	483
25.2 Series and Parallel Resistors	484
25.3 Kirchhoff's Laws and Multiloop Circuits	490
25.4 Electrical Measurements	492
25.5 Capacitors in Circuits	493
Chapter 26 Magnetism: Force and Field	504
26.1 What Is Magnetism?	504
26.2 Magnetic Force and Field	505
26.3 Charged Particles in Magnetic Fields	507
26.4 The Magnetic Force on a Current	509
26.5 Origin of the Magnetic Field	511
26.6 Magnetic Dipoles	514
26.7 Magnetic Matter	517
26.8 Ampère's Law	519
Chapter 27 Electromagnetic Induction	532
27.1 Induced Currents	532
27.2 Faraday's Law	534
27.3 Induction and Energy	538
27.4 Inductance	544
27.5 Magnetic Energy	549
27.6 Induced Electric Fields	552
Chapter 28 Alternating-Current Circuits	561
28.1 Alternating Current	561
28.2 Circuit Elements in AC Circuits	562
28.3 LC Circuits	566
28.4 Driven RLC Circuits and Resonance	569
28.5 Power in AC Circuits	572
28.6 Transformers and Power Supplies	573
Chapter 29 Maxwell's Equations and Electromagnetic Waves	580
29.1 The Four Laws of Electromagnetism	580
29.2 Ambiguity in Ampère's Law	581
29.3 Maxwell's Equations	583
29.4 Electromagnetic Waves	584
29.5 Properties of Electromagnetic Waves	588
29.6 The Electromagnetic Spectrum	592
29.7 Producing Electromagnetic Waves	593
29.8 Energy and Momentum in Electromagnetic Waves	594
PART FIVE	
Optics 604	
Chapter 30 Reflection and Refraction	605
30.1 Reflection	605
30.2 Refraction	607
30.3 Total Internal Reflection	609
30.4 Dispersion	611
Chapter 31 Images and Optical Instruments	619
31.1 Images with Mirrors	619
31.2 Images with Lenses	624
31.3 Refraction in Lenses: The Details	627
31.4 Optical Instruments	630
Chapter 32 Interference and Diffraction	640
32.1 Coherence and Interference	640
32.2 Double-Slit Interference	642
32.3 Multiple-Slit Interference and Diffraction Gratings	645
32.4 Interferometry	649

32.5 Huygens' Principle and Diffraction 651

32.6 The Diffraction Limit 654

PART SIX

Modern Physics 663

Chapter 33 Relativity 664

33.1 Speed c Relative to What? 665

33.2 Matter, Motion, and the Ether 665

33.3 Special Relativity 667

33.4 Space and Time in Relativity 668

33.5 Simultaneity Is Relative 673

33.6 The Lorentz Transformations 675

33.7 Energy and Momentum in Relativity 678

33.8 Electromagnetism and Relativity 682

33.9 General Relativity 683

Chapter 34 Particles and Waves 690

34.1 Toward Quantum Theory 690

34.2 Blackbody Radiation 691

34.3 Photons 693

34.4 Atomic Spectra and the Bohr Atom 696

34.5 Matter Waves 700

34.6 The Uncertainty Principle 702

34.7 Complementarity 704

Chapter 35 Quantum Mechanics 710

35.1 Particles, Waves, and Probability 711

35.2 The Schrödinger Equation 712

35.3 Particles and Potentials 714

35.4 Quantum Mechanics in Three Dimensions 721

35.5 Relativistic Quantum Mechanics 721

Chapter 36 Atomic Physics 727

36.1 The Hydrogen Atom 727

36.2 Electron Spin 731

36.3 The Exclusion Principle 734

36.4 Multielectron Atoms and the Periodic Table 735

36.5 Transitions and Atomic Spectra 739

Chapter 37 Molecules and Solids 746

37.1 Molecular Bonding 746

37.2 Molecular Energy Levels 748

37.3 Solids 751

37.4 Superconductivity 757

Chapter 38 Nuclear Physics 765

38.1 Elements, Isotopes, and Nuclear Structure 765

38.2 Radioactivity 770

38.3 Binding Energy and Nucleosynthesis 776

38.4 Nuclear Fission 778

38.5 Nuclear Fusion 784

Chapter 39 From Quarks to the Cosmos 793

39.1 Particles and Forces 793

39.2 Particles and More Particles 794

39.3 Quarks and the Standard Model 798

39.4 Unification 801

39.5 The Evolving Universe 803

APPENDICES

Appendix A Mathematics A-1

Appendix B The International System of Units (SI) A-9

Appendix C Conversion Factors A-11

Appendix D The Elements A-13

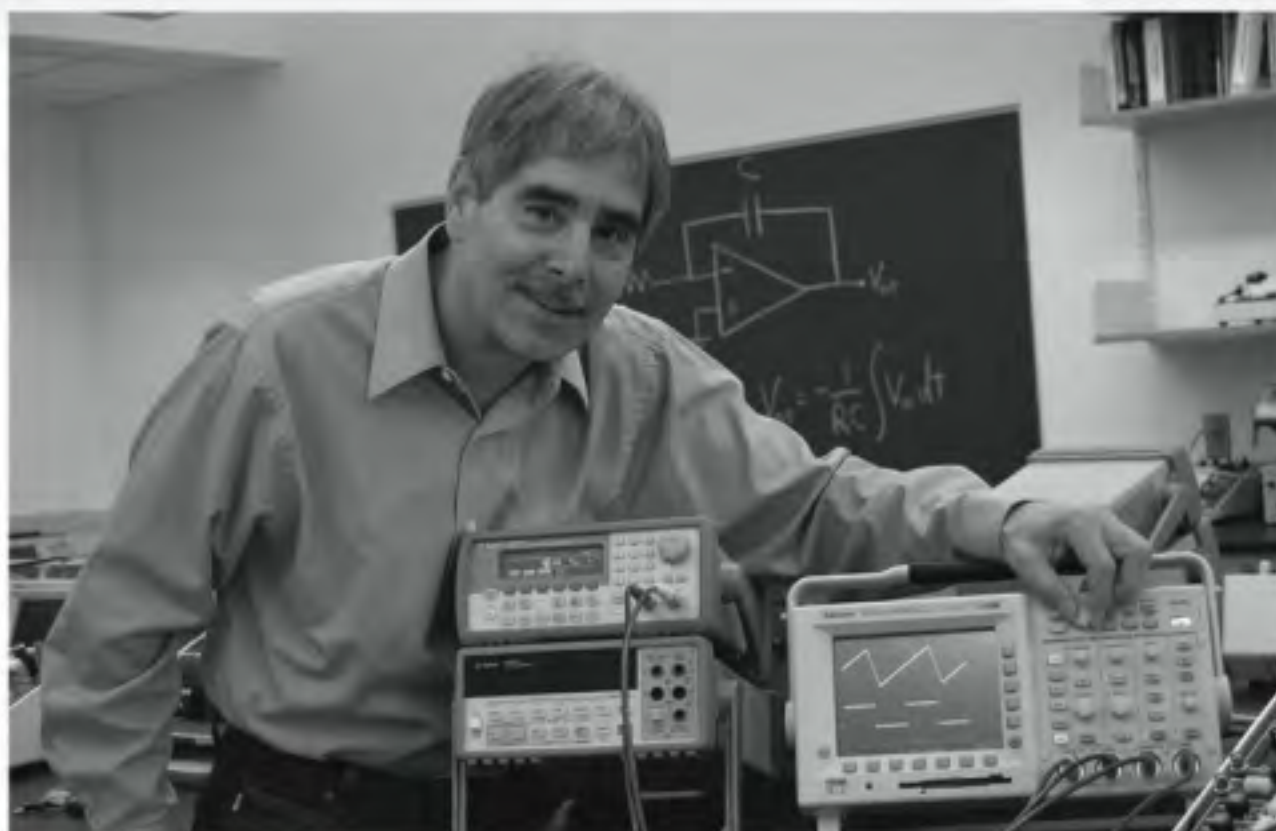
Appendix E Astrophysical Data A-16

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems A-17

Credits C-1

Index I-1

About the Author



Richard Wolfson

Richard Wolfson is the Benjamin F. Wissler Professor of Physics at Middlebury College, where he has taught since 1976. He did undergraduate work at MIT and Swarthmore College, and he holds an M.S. from the University of Michigan and a Ph.D. from Dartmouth. His ongoing research on the Sun's corona and climate change has taken him to sabbaticals at the National Center for Atmospheric Research in Boulder, Colorado; St. Andrews University in Scotland; and Stanford University.

Rich is a committed and passionate teacher. This is reflected in his many publications for students and the general public, including the video series *Einstein's Relativity and the Quantum Revolution: Modern Physics for Nonscientists* (The Teaching Company, 1999), *Physics in Your Life* (The Teaching Company, 2004), *Physics and Our Universe: How It All Works* (The Teaching Company, 2011), and *Understanding Modern Electronics* (The Teaching Company, 2014); books *Nuclear Choices: A Citizen's Guide to Nuclear Technology* (MIT Press, 1993), *Simply Einstein: Relativity Demystified* (W. W. Norton, 2003), and *Energy, Environment, and Climate* (W. W. Norton, third edition, 2018); and articles for *Scientific American* and the *World Book Encyclopedia*.

Outside of his research and teaching, Rich enjoys hiking, canoeing, gardening, cooking, and watercolor painting.

Preface to the Instructor

Introductory physics texts have grown ever larger, more massive, more encyclopedic, more colorful, and more expensive. *Essential University Physics* bucks that trend—without compromising coverage, pedagogy, or quality. The text benefits from the author’s four decades of teaching introductory physics, seeing firsthand the difficulties and misconceptions that students face as well as the GOT IT? moments when big ideas become clear. It also builds on the author’s honing multiple editions of a previous calculus-based textbook and on feedback from hundreds of instructors and students.

Goals of This Book

Physics is the fundamental science, at once fascinating, challenging, and subtle—and yet simple in a way that reflects the few basic principles that govern the physical universe. My goal is to bring this sense of physics alive for students in a range of academic disciplines who need a solid calculus-based physics course—whether they’re engineers, physics majors, premeds, biologists, chemists, geologists, mathematicians, computer scientists, or other majors. My own courses are populated by just such a variety of students, and among my greatest joys as a teacher is having students who took a course only because it was required say afterward that they really enjoyed their exposure to the ideas of physics. More specifically, my goals include:

- Helping students build the analytical and quantitative skills and confidence needed to apply physics in problem solving for science and engineering.
- Addressing key misconceptions and helping students build a stronger conceptual understanding.
- Helping students see the relevance and excitement of the physics they’re studying with contemporary applications in science, technology, and everyday life.
- Helping students develop an appreciation of the physical universe at its most fundamental level.
- Engaging students with an informal, conversational writing style that balances precision with approachability.

New to the Fourth Edition

The emphasis in this fourth-edition revision has been on pedagogical features, including substantial updates to the end-of-chapter problem sets, learning outcomes, annotated equations, and new, contemporary applications. In addition, I’ve responded—as I have in previous editions—to the many suggestions made by my colleagues, by instructors around the world, and by reviewers engaged to help make this the most student-friendly and pedagogically useful edition of *Essential University Physics*. And, as always, I’ve been on the lookout for new developments in physics and technology to incorporate into the text.

- Chapter opening pages have been redesigned to include explicit lists of **learning outcomes** associated with each chapter. Learning outcomes appear at the appropriate section headings and are also keyed with specific problems.
- End-of-chapter problem sets each have over 15% **new problems**. Many of the new problems are of intermediate difficulty, featuring multiple steps and requiring a clear understanding of problem-solving strategies. I’ve also increased the number of estimation problems and of problems involving symbolic rather than numerical answers. Still other new problems feature contemporary real-world situations.

- Among the most exciting of the new features—and one that gave me both great challenges and great professional satisfaction—are the **Example Variation (EV)** problems. These two sets of four related problems in each chapter, each set based on one of the chapter's worked examples, help the student make connections, enhance her understanding of physics, and build confidence in solving problems different from ones she's seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios. Working these problems ensures first that the student understands the worked example and then gradually takes her out of her comfort zone to explore new physics, more challenging math, and more complex problem solving.
- Students should perceive a physics textbook as more than a list of equations to consult in solving assigned problems. *Essential University Physics* has always helped students avoid this unfortunate approach to physics. Earlier editions had a few instances where I felt an equation was so important that I developed a separate figure that was essentially an “anatomy” of the equation, with annotations pointing to and explaining the terms in the equation. The new edition extends this approach with **annotated key equations**, giving life to and understanding of all the most important and fundamental equations as statements about the physical universe rather than mere math into which numbers get plugged.
- A host of **new applications** connects physics concepts that students are learning with contemporary technological and biomedical innovations, as well as recent scientific discoveries. A sample of new applications includes the acceleration of striking rattlesnakes, gravitational wave detection and multimessenger astronomy, earthquake resonance effects, the *New Horizons* mission to Pluto, the audacious *Starshot* project, the graded-index lenses of squids' eyes, and environmental and energy issues.
- As with earlier revisions, I've incorporated new research results, new applications of physics principles, and findings from physics education research.
- Finally, this edition includes the 2019 revision of the SI—the international system of units—which represents the most significant change the SI has undergone in more than a century.

Pedagogical Innovations

This book is *concise*, but it's also *progressive* in its embrace of proven techniques from physics education research and *strategic* in its approach to learning physics. Chapter 1 introduces the IDEA framework for problem solving, and every one of the book's subsequent **worked examples** employs this framework. IDEA—an acronym for Identify, Develop, Evaluate, Assess—is not a “cookbook” method for students to apply mindlessly, but rather a tool for organizing students' thinking and discouraging equation hunting. It begins with an interpretation of the problem and an identification of the key physics concepts involved; develops a plan for reaching the solution; carries out the mathematical evaluation; and assesses the solution to see that it makes sense, to compare the example with others, and to mine additional insights into physics. In nearly all of the text's worked examples, the Develop phase includes making a drawing, and most of these use a hand-drawn style to encourage students to make their own drawings—a step that research suggests they often skip. IDEA provides a common approach to all physics problem solving, an approach that emphasizes the conceptual unity of physics and helps break the typical student view of physics as a hodgepodge of equations and unrelated ideas. In addition to IDEA-based worked examples, other pedagogical features include:

- **Problem-Solving Strategy boxes** that follow the IDEA framework to provide detailed guidance for specific classes of physics problems, such as Newton's second law, conservation of energy, thermal-energy balance, Gauss's law, or multiloop circuits.
- **Tactics boxes** that reinforce specific essential skills such as differentiation, setting up integrals, vector products, drawing free-body diagrams, simplifying series and parallel circuits, or ray tracing.

- **QR** codes at the end of each chapter link to resources on Mastering Physics, including video tutorials. These “Pause and predict” videos of key physics concepts ask students to submit a prediction before they see the outcome. The videos are also available in the Study Area of Mastering and in the Pearson eText.
- **GOT IT? boxes** that provide quick checks for students to test their conceptual understanding. Many of these use a multiple-choice or quantitative ranking format to probe student misconceptions and facilitate their use with classroom-response systems.
- **Tips** that provide helpful problem-solving hints or warn against common pitfalls and misconceptions.
- **Chapter openers** that include a graphical indication of where the chapter lies in sequence as well as lists of the learning outcomes and of skills and knowledge needed for the chapter. Each chapter also includes an opening photo, captioned with a question whose answer should be evident after the student has completed the chapter.
- **Applications**, self-contained presentations typically shorter than half a page, provide interesting and contemporary instances of physics in the real world, such as bicycle stability; flywheel energy storage; laser vision correction; ultracapacitors; noise-cancelling headphones; wind energy; magnetic resonance imaging; smartphone gyroscopes; combined-cycle power generation; circuit models of the cell membrane; CD, DVD, and Blu-ray technologies; radiocarbon dating; and many, many more.
- **For Thought and Discussion** questions at the end of each chapter designed for peer learning or for self-study to enhance students’ conceptual understanding of physics.
- **Annotated figures** that adopt the research-based approach of including simple “instructor’s voice” commentary to help students read and interpret pictorial and graphical information.
- **Annotated equations**, new to the fourth edition, that feature a similar format to the annotated figures.
- **End-of-chapter** problems that begin with simpler exercises keyed to individual chapter sections and ramp up to more challenging and often multistep problems that synthesize chapter material. Context-rich problems focusing on real-world situations are interspersed throughout each problem set.
- **Chapter summaries** that combine text, art, and equations to provide a synthesized overview of each chapter. Each summary is hierarchical, beginning with the chapter’s “big ideas,” then focusing on key concepts and equations, and ending with a list of “applications”—specific instances or applications of the physics presented in the chapter.

Organization

This contemporary book is *concise*, *strategic*, and *progressive*, but it’s *traditional* in its organization. Following the introductory Chapter 1, the book is divided into six parts. Part One (Chapters 2–12) develops the basic concepts of mechanics, including Newton’s laws and conservation principles as applied to single particles and multiparticle systems. Part Two (Chapters 13–15) extends mechanics to oscillations, waves, and fluids. Part Three (Chapters 16–19) covers thermodynamics. Part Four (Chapters 20–29) deals with electricity and magnetism. Part Five (Chapters 30–32) treats optics, first in the geometrical optics approximation and then including wave phenomena. Part Six (Chapters 33–39) introduces relativity and quantum physics. Each part begins with a brief description of its coverage, and ends with a conceptual summary and a challenge problem that synthesizes ideas from several chapters.

Essential University Physics is available in two paperback volumes, so students can purchase only what they need—making the low-cost aspect of this text even more attractive. Volume 1 includes Parts One, Two, and Three, mechanics through thermodynamics. Volume 2 contains Parts Four, Five, and Six, electricity and magnetism along with optics and modern physics.

Instructor Supplements

Note: For convenience, all of the following instructor supplements can be downloaded from the Instructor's Resource Area of Mastering™ Physics (www.masteringphysics.com).

Name of Supplement	Instructor or Student Supplement	Description
Mastering™ Physics (www.masteringphysics.com) (9781292350226)	Supplement for Students and Instructors	Mastering Physics from Pearson is the most advanced physics homework and tutorial system available. This online homework and tutoring system guides students through the toughest topics in physics with self-paced tutorials that provide individualized coaching. These assignable, in-depth tutorials are designed to coach students with hints and feedback specific to their individual errors. Instructors can also assign end-of-chapter problems from every chapter, including multiple-choice questions, section-specific exercises, and general problems. Quantitative problems can be assigned with numerical answers and randomized values (with significant figure feedback) or solutions. The Mastering gradebook records scores for all automatically graded assignments in one place, while diagnostic tools give instructors access to rich data to assess student understanding and misconceptions. http://www.masteringphysics.com .
Pearson eText	Supplement for Students and Instructors	The fourth edition of <i>Essential University Physics</i> features Pearson eText. The Pearson eText offers students the power to create notes, highlight text in different colors, create bookmarks, zoom, and view single or multiple pages. Professors also have the ability to annotate the text for their course and hide chapters not covered in their syllabi.
Instructor Solutions Manual—Download Only (9781292350196)	Supplement for Instructors	Prepared by John Beetar, the Instructor Solutions Manual contains solutions to all end-of-chapter exercises and problems, written in the Interpret/Develop/Evaluate/Assess (IDEA) problem-solving framework.
Instructor Resources Materials—Download Only (9781292350189)	Supplement for Instructors	Includes all the art, photos, and tables from the book in JPEG format for use in classroom projection or when creating study materials and tests. Also available are downloadable files of the Instructor Solutions Manual and “Clicker Questions,” including GOT IT? Clickers, for use with classroom-response systems. Each chapter also has a set of PowerPoint® lecture outlines. These resources are downloadable from the ‘Instructor’s Resources’ area within Mastering Physics. They are also downloadable from the catalog page for Wolfson’s <i>Essential University Physics</i> , 4th edition, Global Edition, at www.pearsonglobaleditions.com .
TestGen Test Bank—Download Only (9781292350240)	Supplement for Instructors	The TestGen Test Bank contains more than 2000 multiple-choice, true-false, and conceptual questions. More than half of the questions can be assigned with randomized numerical values.

Acknowledgments

A project of this magnitude isn't the work of its author alone. First and foremost among those I thank for their contributions are the now several thousand students I've taught in calculus-based introductory physics courses at Middlebury College. Over the years your questions have taught me how to convey physics ideas in many different ways appropriate to your diverse learning styles. You've helped identify the "sticking points" that challenge introductory physics students, and you've showed me ways to help you avoid and "unlearn" the misconceptions that many students bring to introductory physics.

Thanks also to the numerous instructors and students from around the world who have contributed valuable suggestions for improvement of this text. I've heard you, and you'll find many of your ideas implemented in this fourth edition of *Essential University Physics*. And special thanks to my Middlebury physics colleagues who have taught from this text and who contribute valuable advice and insights on a regular basis: Jeff Dunham, Mike Durst, Angus Findlay, Eilat Glikman, Anne Goodsell, Noah Graham, Chris Herdmann, Paul Hess, Susan Watson, and especially Steve Ratcliff.

Experienced physics instructors thoroughly reviewed every chapter of this book, and reviewers' comments resulted in substantive changes—and sometimes in major rewrites—to the first drafts of the manuscript. We list these reviewers below. But first, special thanks are due to several individuals who made exceptional contributions to the quality and in some cases the very

existence of this book. First is Professor Jay Pasachoff of Williams College, whose willingness more than three decades ago to take a chance on an inexperienced coauthor has made writing introductory physics a large part of my professional career. Dr. Adam Black, former physics editor at Pearson, had the vision to see promise in a new introductory text that would respond to the rising chorus of complaints about massive, encyclopedic, and expensive physics texts. Brad Patterson, developmental editor for the first edition, brought his graduate-level knowledge of physics to a role that made him a real collaborator. Brad is responsible for many of the book's innovative features, and it was a pleasure to work with him. John Murdzek continued Brad's excellent tradition of developmental editing on this fourth edition. We've gone to great lengths to make this book as error-free as possible, and much of the credit for that happy situation goes to John Beetar, who solved every new and revised end-of-chapter problem and updated the solutions manual, and to Edward Ginsberg, who blind-solved all the new problems and thus provided a third check on the answers.

I also wish to thank Nancy Whilton, Jeanne Zalesky, and Tiffany Mok at Pearson Education, and Kim Fletcher at Integra, for their highly professional efforts in shepherding this book through its vigorous production schedule. Finally, as always, I thank my family, my colleagues, and my students for the patience they showed during the intensive process of writing and revising this book.

Reviewers

John R. Albright, *Purdue University—Calumet*
 Rama Bansil, *Boston University*
 Richard Barber, *Santa Clara University*
 Linda S. Barton, *Rochester Institute of Technology*
 Rasheed Bashirov, *Albertson College of Idaho*
 Chris Berven, *University of Idaho*
 David Bixler, *Angelo State University*
 Ben Bromley, *University of Utah*
 Charles Burkhardt, *St. Louis Community College*
 Susan Cable, *Central Florida Community College*
 George T. Carlson, Jr., *West Virginia Institute of Technology—West Virginia University*
 Catherine Check, *Rock Valley College*
 Norbert Chencinski, *College of Staten Island*
 Carl Covatto, *Arizona State University*
 David Donnelly, *Texas State University—San Marcos*
 David G. Ellis, *University of Toledo*
 Tim Farris, *Volunteer State Community College*
 Paula Fekete, *Hunter College of The City University of New York*
 Idan Ginsburg, *Harvard University*
 Eric Goff, *University of Lynchburg*
 James Goff, *Pima Community College*
 Noah Graham, *Middlebury College*

Austin Hedeman, *University of California—Berkeley*
 Andrew Hirsch, *Purdue University*
 Mark Hollabaugh, *Normandale Community College*
 Eric Hudson, *Pennsylvania State University*
 Rex W. Joyner, *Indiana Institute of Technology*
 Nikos Kalogeropoulos, *Borough of Manhattan Community College—The City University of New York*
 Viken Kiledjian, *East Los Angeles College*
 Kevin T. Kilty, *Laramie County Community College*
 Duane Larson, *Bevill State Community College*
 Kenneth W. McLaughlin, *Loras College*
 Tom Marvin, *Southern Oregon University*
 Perry S. Mason, *Lubbock Christian University*
 Mark Masters, *Indiana University—Purdue University Fort Wayne*
 Jonathan Mitschele, *Saint Joseph's College*
 Gregor Novak, *United States Air Force Academy*
 Richard Olenick, *University of Dallas*
 Robert Philbin, *Trinidad State Junior College*
 Russell Poch, *Howard Community College*
 Steven Pollock, *Colorado University—Boulder*
 Richard Price, *University of Texas at Brownsville*
 James Rabchuk, *Western Illinois University*
 George Schmiedeshoff, *Occidental College*

Natalia Semushkina, *Shippensburg University of Pennsylvania*
Anwar Shiekh, *Dine College*
David Slimmer, *Lander University*
Richard Sonnefeld, *New Mexico Tech*
Chris Sorensen, *Kansas State University*
Victor A. Stanionis, *Iona College*
Ronald G. Tabak, *Youngstown State University*

Tsvetelin Tsankov, *Temple University*
Gajendra Tulsian, *Daytona Beach Community College*
Brigita Urbanc, *Drexel University*
Henry Weigel, *Arapahoe Community College*
Arthur W. Wiggins, *Oakland Community College*
Ranjith Wijesinghe, *Ball State University*
Fredy Zypman, *Yeshiva University*

Acknowledgments for the Global Edition

Pearson would like to acknowledge and thank the following for the Global Edition:

Contributors

Aparajita Bandyopadhyay, Ph.D.
Katarzyna Zuleta Estrugo, *École Polytechnique Fédérale de Lausanne*

Reviewers

Michael Cowley, *University of Southern Queensland*
Wayne Rolands, *Swinburne University of Technology*

Preface to the Student

Welcome to physics! Maybe you're taking introductory physics because you're majoring in a field of science or engineering that requires a semester or two of physics. Maybe you're premed, and you know that medical schools are interested in seeing calculus-based physics on your transcript. Perhaps you're really gung-ho and plan to major in physics. Or maybe you want to study physics further as a minor associated with related fields like math, computer science, or chemistry or to complement a discipline like economics, environmental studies, or even music. Perhaps you had a great high-school physics course, and you're eager to continue. Maybe high-school physics was an academic disaster for you, and you're approaching this course with trepidation. Or perhaps this is your first experience with physics. Whatever your reason for taking introductory physics, welcome!

And whatever your reason, my goals for you are similar: I'd like to help you develop an understanding and appreciation of the physical universe at a deep and fundamental level; I'd like you to become aware of the broad range of natural and technological phenomena that physics can explain; and I'd like to help you strengthen your analytic and quantitative problem-solving skills. Even if you're studying physics only because it's a requirement, I want to help you engage the subject and come away with an appreciation for this fundamental science and its wide applicability. One of my greatest joys as a physics teacher is having students tell me after the course that they had taken it only because it was required, but found they really enjoyed their exposure to the ideas of physics.

Physics is fundamental. To understand physics is to understand how the world works, both in everyday life and on scales of time and space so small and so large as to defy intuition. For that reason I hope you'll find physics fascinating. But you'll also find it challenging. Learning physics will challenge you with the need for precise thinking and language; with subtle interpretations of even commonplace phenomena; and with the need for skillful application of mathematics. But there's also a simplicity to physics, a simplicity that results because there are in physics only a very few really basic principles to learn. Those succinct principles encompass a universe of natural phenomena and technological applications.

I've been teaching introductory physics for decades, and this book distills everything my students have taught me about the many different ways to approach physics; about the subtle misconceptions students often bring to physics; about the ideas and types of problems that present the greatest challenges; and about ways to make physics engaging, exciting, and relevant to your life and interests.

I have some specific advice for you that grows out of my long experience teaching introductory physics. Keeping this advice in mind will make physics easier (but not necessarily easy!), more interesting, and, I hope, more fun:

- *Read each chapter thoroughly and carefully before you attempt to work any problem assignments.* I've written this text with an informal, conversational style to make it engaging. It's not a reference work to be left alone until you need some specific piece of information; rather, it's an unfolding "story" of physics—its big ideas and their applications in quantitative problem solving. You may think physics is hard because it's mathematical, but in my long experience I've found that failure to *read* thoroughly is the biggest single reason for difficulties in introductory physics.
- *Look for the big ideas.* Physics isn't a hodgepodge of different phenomena, laws, and equations to memorize. Rather, it's a few big ideas from which flow myriad applications, examples, and special cases. In particular, don't think of physics as a jumble of equations that you choose among when solving a problem. Rather, identify those few big ideas and the equations that represent them, and try to see how seemingly distinct examples and special cases relate to the big ideas.
- *When working problems, re-read the appropriate sections of the text, paying particular attention to the worked examples.* Follow the IDEA strategy described in Chapter 1 and used in every subsequent worked example. Don't skimp on the final Assess step. Always ask: Does this answer make sense? How can I understand my answer in relation to the big principles of physics? How was this problem like others I've worked, or like examples in the text?
- *Don't confuse physics with math.* Mathematics is a tool, not an end in itself. Equations in physics aren't abstract math, but statements about the physical world. Be sure you understand each equation for what it says about physics, not just as an equality between mathematical terms.
- *Work with others.* Getting together informally in a room with a blackboard is a great way to explore physics, to clarify your ideas and help others clarify theirs, and to learn from your peers. I urge you to discuss physics problems together with your classmates, to contemplate together the "For Thought and Discussion" questions at the end of each chapter, and to engage one another in lively dialog as you grow your understanding of physics, the fundamental science.

Video Tutor Demonstrations

Video tutor demonstrations can be accessed by scanning the QR code at the end of each chapter in the textbook using a smartphone. They are also available in the Study Area and Instructor's Resource Area on Mastering Physics and in the eText. Practice Exams and Dynamic Study Modules, which can be used to prepare for exams, are also available in Mastering Physics.

Chapter	Video Tutor Demonstration	Chapter	Video Tutor Demonstration
2	Balls Take High and Low Tracks	13	Resonance of Everyday Items
3	Dropped and Thrown Balls	14	Out-of-Phase Speakers
3	Ball Fired from Cart on Incline	15	Pressure in Water and Alcohol
3	Ball Fired Upward from Accelerating Cart	15	Water Level in Pascal's Vases
3	Range of a Gun at Two Firing Angles	15	Weighing Weights in Water
3	Independent Horizontal and Vertical Motion	15	Air Jet Blows between Bowling Balls
4	Cart with Fan and Sail	15	Bernoulli's Principle—Venturi Tubes
4	Ball Leaves Circular Track	16	Heating Water and Aluminum
4	Suspended Balls: Which String Breaks?	16	Water Balloon Held over Candle Flame
4	Weighing a Hovering Magnet	16	Candle Chimneys
5	Tension in String between Hanging Weights	20	Charged Rod and Aluminum Can
5	Rotational Motion—Loop the Loop	21	Electroscope in Conducting Shell
6	Work and Kinetic Energy	22	Charged Conductor with Teardrop Shape
7	Chin Basher?	23	Discharge Speed for Series and Parallel Capacitors
9	Balancing a Meter Stick	24	Resistance in Copper and Nichrome
9	Water Rocket	25	Bulbs Connected in Series and in Parallel
9	Happy/Sad Pendulums	26	Magnet and Electron Beam
9	Conservation of Linear Momentum	26	Current-Carrying Wire in Magnetic Field
10	Canned Food Race	27	Eddy Currents in Different Metals
11	Spinning Person Drops Weights	29	Parallel-Wire Polarizer for Microwaves
11	Off-Center Collision	29	Point of Equal Brightness between Two Light Sources
11	Conservation of Vector Angular Momentum	31	Partially Covering a Lens
11	Conservation of Angular Momentum	36	Illuminating Sodium Vapor with Sodium and Mercury Lamps
12	Walking the Plank		
13	Vibrating Rods		

Doing Physics

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Your high school algebra and geometry
- Later, trigonometry and beginning calculus

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 1.1 Describe the scope and realms of physics.
- LO 1.2 List the base units of the International System of Units (SI).
- LO 1.3 Convert units to and from other unit systems.
- LO 1.4 Express numbers using scientific notation or SI prefixes.
- LO 1.5 Do calculations with attention to significant figures.
- LO 1.6 Make order-of-magnitude estimates.
- LO 1.7 Plot data and extract information using best-fit lines.



Which realms of physics are involved in the workings of your DVD player?

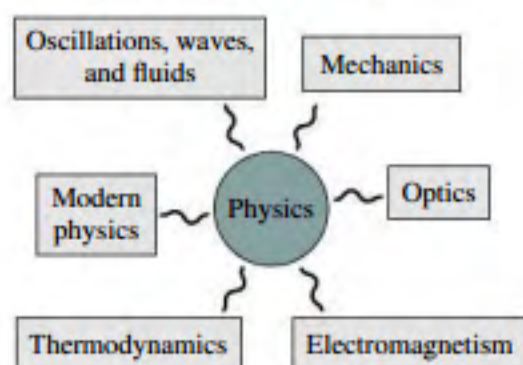


FIGURE 1.1 Realms of physics.

You slip a DVD into your player and settle in to watch a movie. The DVD spins, and a precisely focused laser beam “reads” its content. Electronic circuitry processes the information, sending it to your video display and to loudspeakers that turn electrical signals into sound waves. Every step of the way, principles of physics govern the delivery of the movie from DVD to you.

1.1 Realms of Physics

LO 1.1 *Describe the scope and realms of physics.*

That DVD player is a metaphor for all of **physics**—the science that describes the fundamental workings of physical reality. Physics explains natural phenomena ranging from the behavior of atoms and molecules to thunderstorms and rainbows and on to the evolution of stars, galaxies, and the universe itself. Technological applications of physics are the basis for everything from micro-electronics to medical imaging to cars, airplanes, and space flight.

At its most fundamental, physics provides a nearly unified description of all physical phenomena. However, it’s convenient to divide physics into distinct realms (Fig. 1.1). Your DVD player encompasses essentially all those realms. **Mechanics**, the branch of physics that deals with motion, describes the spinning disc. Mechanics also explains the motion of a car, the orbits of the planets, and the stability of a skyscraper. Part 1 of this book deals with the basic ideas of mechanics.

Those sound waves coming from your loudspeakers represent **wave motion**. Other examples include the ocean waves that pound Earth’s coastlines, the wave of standing spectators that sweeps through a football stadium, and the undulations of Earth’s crust that spread the energy of an earthquake. Part 2 of this book covers wave motion and other phenomena involving the motion of fluids like air and water.

When you burn your own DVD, the high temperature produced by an intensely focused laser beam alters the material properties of a writable DVD, thus storing video or computer information. That's an example of **thermodynamics**—the study of heat and its effects on matter. Thermodynamics also describes the delicate balance of energy-transfer processes that keeps our planet at a habitable temperature and puts serious constraints on our ability to meet the burgeoning energy demands of modern society. Part 3 comprises four chapters on thermodynamics.

An electric motor spins your DVD, converting electrical energy to the energy of motion. Electric motors are ubiquitous in modern society, running everything from subway trains and electric cars, to elevators and washing machines, to insulin pumps and artificial hearts. Conversely, electric generators convert the energy of motion to electricity, providing virtually all of our electrical energy. Motors and generators are two applications of **electromagnetism** in modern technology. Others include computers, audiovisual electronics, microwave ovens, digital watches, and even the humble lightbulb; without these electromagnetic technologies our lives would be very different. Equally electromagnetic are all the wireless technologies that enable modern communications, from satellite TV to cell phones to wireless computer networks, mice, and keyboards. And even light itself is an electromagnetic phenomenon. Part 4 presents the principles of electromagnetism and their many applications.

The precise focusing of laser light in your DVD player allows hours of video to fit on a small plastic disc. The details and limitations of that focusing are governed by the principles of **optics**, the study of light and its behavior. Applications of optics range from simple magnifiers to contact lenses to sophisticated instruments such as microscopes, telescopes, and spectrometers. Optical fibers carry your e-mail, web pages, and music downloads over the global Internet. Natural optical systems include your eye and the raindrops that deflect sunlight to form rainbows. Part 5 of the book explores optical principles and their applications.

That laser light in your DVD player is an example of an electromagnetic wave, but an atomic-level look at the light's interaction with matter reveals particle-like “bundles” of electromagnetic energy. This is the realm of **quantum physics**, which deals with the often counterintuitive behavior of matter and energy at the atomic level. Quantum phenomena also explain how that DVD laser works and, more profoundly, the structure of atoms and the periodic arrangement of the elements that is the basis of all chemistry. Quantum physics is one of the two great developments of **modern physics**. The other is Einstein's **theory of relativity**. Relativity and quantum physics arose during the 20th century, and together they've radically altered our commonsense notions of time, space, and causality. Part 6 of the book surveys the ideas of modern physics, ending with what we do—and don't—know about the history, future, and composition of the entire universe.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 1.1

Car Physics

Name some systems in your car that exemplify the different realms of physics.

EVALUATE *Mechanics* is easy; the car is fundamentally a mechanical system whose purpose is motion. Details include starting, stopping, cornering, as well as a host of other motions within mechanical subsystems. Your car's springs and shock absorbers constitute an *oscillatory* system engineered to give a comfortable ride. The car's engine is a prime example of a *thermodynamic* system, converting

the energy of burning gasoline into the car's motion. *Electromagnetic* systems range from the starter motor and spark plugs to sophisticated electronic devices that monitor and optimize engine performance. *Optical* principles govern rear- and side-view mirrors and headlights. Increasingly, optical fibers transmit information to critical safety systems. *Modern physics* is less obvious in your car, but ultimately, everything from the chemical reactions of burning gasoline to the atomic-scale operation of automotive electronics is governed by its principles.

1.2 Measurements and Units

LO 1.2 List the base units of the International System of Units (SI).

LO 1.3 Convert units to and from other unit systems.

“A long way” means different things to a sedentary person, a marathon runner, a pilot, and an astronaut. We need to quantify our measurements. Science uses the **metric system**, with

fundamental quantities length, mass, and time measured in meters, kilograms, and seconds, respectively. The modern version of the metric system is **SI**, for *Système International d'Unités* (International System of Units), which incorporates scientifically precise definitions of the fundamental quantities.

The three fundamental quantities were originally defined in reference to nature: the meter in terms of Earth's size, the kilogram as an amount of water, and the second by the length of the day. For length and mass, these were later replaced by specific artifacts—a bar whose length was defined as 1 meter and a cylinder whose mass defined the kilogram. But natural standards like the day's length can change, as can the properties of artifacts. So early SI definitions gave way to **operational definitions**, which are measurement standards based on laboratory procedures. Such standards have the advantage that scientists anywhere can reproduce them. By the late 20th century, two of the three fundamental units—the meter and the second—had operational definitions, but the kilogram did not.

A special type of operational definition involves giving an exact value to a particular constant of nature—a quantity formerly subject to experimental determination and with a stated uncertainty in its value. As described below, the meter was the first such unit to be defined in this way. By the early 21st century, it was clear that defining units in terms of fundamental, invariant physical constants was the best way to ensure long-term stability of the SI unit system. Laboratories around the world sought the most reliable measurement techniques and collaborated in narrowing uncertainties in fundamental constants. Then, in 2019, the International Bureau of Weights and Measures approved a sweeping revision of the SI system that redefined the kilogram and other so-called base units in terms of fundamental constants that are now given exact values. These so-called **explicit-constant** definitions also make clear how some definitions depend on others—for example, the definition of the meter requires the definition of the second.

Time

The **second** used to be defined by Earth's rotation, but that's not constant, so it was later redefined as a specific fraction of the year 1900. An operational definition followed in 1967, associating the second with the radiation emitted by a particular atomic process. The new definition keeps the essence of that operational definition but rewords it in the explicit-constant style:

The second, symbol s , is the SI unit of time. It is defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the cesium frequency $\Delta\nu_{\text{Cs}}$, the unperturbed ground-state hyperfine transition frequency of the cesium-133 atom, to be 9,192,631,770 when expressed in the unit Hz, which is equal to s^{-1} .

The device that implements this definition—which will seem less obscure once you've studied some atomic physics—is called an *atomic clock*. Here the phrase “in the unit Hz” introduces the unit hertz (Hz) for frequency—the number of cycles of a repeating process that occur each second.

Length

The **meter** was first defined as one ten-millionth of the distance from Earth's equator to the North Pole. In 1889 a standard meter was fabricated to replace the Earth-based unit, and in 1960 that gave way to a standard based on the wavelength of light. By the 1970s, the speed of light had become one of the most precisely determined quantities. As a result, the meter was redefined in 1983 as the distance light travels in vacuum in $1/299,792,458$ of a second. The effect of this definition is to make the speed of light a defined quantity: 299,792,458 m/s. Thus, the meter became the first SI unit to be based on a defined value for a fundamental constant. The new SI definition preserves the 1983 definition, but rewords it in the form of an explicit-constant definition and also links it to the definition of the second:

The meter, symbol m , is the SI unit of length. It is defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the speed of light in vacuum c to be 299,792,458 when expressed in the unit $m \cdot s^{-1}$, where the second is defined in terms of the cesium frequency $\Delta\nu_{\text{Cs}}$.

APPLICATION

Units Matter: A Bad Day on Mars

In September 1999, the *Mars Climate Orbiter* was destroyed when the spacecraft passed through Mars's atmosphere and experienced stresses and heating it was not designed to tolerate. Why did this \$125-million craft enter the Martian atmosphere when it was supposed to remain in the vacuum of space? NASA identified the root cause as a failure to convert the English units one team used to specify rocket thrust to the SI units another team expected. Units matter!



Mass

From 1889 to 2019, the kilogram was defined as the mass of a single artifact—the international prototype kilogram, a platinum–iridium cylinder kept in a vault at the International Bureau of Weights and Measures in Sèvres, France. Not only was this artifact-based standard awkward to access, but comparison measurements revealed tiny yet growing mass discrepancies between the international prototype kilogram and secondary mass standards based on it.

In the 2019 SI revision, the kilogram became the last unit to get an explicit-constant definition. The kilogram’s new definition is tied to the value of *Planck’s constant*, h , a fundamental constant related to the “graininess” of physical quantities that’s evident at the atomic and subatomic levels. It also depends on the definitions of the second and the meter:

The kilogram, symbol kg, is the SI unit of mass. It is defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the Planck constant h to be $6.626\,070\,040 \times 10^{-34}$ when expressed in the unit $\text{J} \cdot \text{s}$, which is equal to $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$, where the meter and the second are defined in terms of c and $\Delta\nu_{\text{Cs}}$.

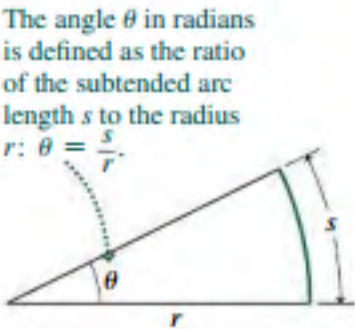


FIGURE 1.2 The radian is the SI unit of angle.

Table 1.1 SI Prefixes

Prefix	Symbol	Power
yotta	Y	10^{24}
zetta	Z	10^{21}
exa	E	10^{18}
peta	P	10^{15}
tera	T	10^{12}
giga	G	10^9
mega	M	10^6
kilo	k	10^3
hecto	h	10^2
deca	da	10^1
—	—	10^0
deci	d	10^{-1}
centi	c	10^{-2}
milli	m	10^{-3}
micro	μ	10^{-6}
nano	n	10^{-9}
pico	p	10^{-12}
femto	f	10^{-15}
atto	a	10^{-18}
zepto	z	10^{-21}
yocto	y	10^{-24}

Other SI Units

The SI includes seven independent base units: In addition to the meter, second, and kilogram, there are the ampere (A) for electric current, the kelvin (K) for temperature, the mole (mol) for the amount of a substance, and the candela (cd) for luminosity. We’ll introduce these units later, as needed. The SI revision gives these new, explicit-constant definitions; for all but the candela, this involves fixing the values of fundamental physical constants. In addition to the seven physical base units, two supplementary units define geometrical measures of angle: the radian (rad) for ordinary angles (Fig. 1.2) and the steradian (sr) for solid angles. Units for all other physical quantities are derived from the base units.

SI Prefixes

You could specify the length of a bacterium (e.g., 0.00001 m) or the distance to the next city (e.g., 58,000 m) in meters, but the results are unwieldy—too small in the first case and too large in the latter. So we use prefixes to indicate multiples of the SI base units. For example, the prefix k (for “kilo”) means 1000; 1 km is 1000 m, and the distance to the next city is 58 km. Similarly, the prefix μ (the lowercase Greek “mu”) means “micro,” or 10^{-6} . So our bacterium is 10 μm long. The SI prefixes are listed in Table 1.1, which is repeated inside the front cover. We’ll use the prefixes routinely in examples and problems, and we’ll often express answers using SI prefixes, without doing an explicit unit conversion.

When two units are used together, a hyphen appears between them—for example, newton-meter. Each unit has a symbol, such as m for meter or N for newton (the SI unit of force). Symbols are ordinarily lowercase, but those named after people are uppercase. Thus “newton” is written with a small “n,” but its symbol is a capital N. The exception is the unit of volume, the liter; since the lowercase “l” is easily confused with the number 1, the symbol for liter is a capital L. When two units are multiplied, their symbols are separated by a centered dot: $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}$ for newton-meter. Division of units is expressed by using the slash (/) or writing with the denominator unit raised to the -1 power. Thus the SI unit of speed is the meter per second, written m/s or $\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$.

EXAMPLE 1.1**Changing Units: Speed Limits**
Worked Example with Variation Problems

Express a 65 km/h speed limit in meters per second.

EVALUATE According to Table 1.1, $1 \text{ km} = 1000 \text{ m}$, so we can multiply kilometers by the ratio 1000 m/km to get meters.

Similarly, we use the conversion factor 3600 s/h to convert hours to seconds. Combining these two conversions gives

$$65 \text{ km/h} = \left(\frac{65 \text{ km}}{\text{h}} \right) \left(\frac{1000 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ km}} \right) \left(\frac{1 \text{ h}}{3600 \text{ s}} \right) = 18 \text{ m/s}$$

Other Unit Systems

The inches, feet, yards, miles, and pounds of the so-called English system still dominate measurement in the United States. Other non-SI units such as the hour are often mixed with English or SI units, as with speed limits in miles per hour or kilometers per hour. In some areas of physics there are good reasons for using non-SI units. We'll discuss these as the need arises and will occasionally use non-SI units in examples and problems. We'll also often find it convenient to use degrees rather than radians for angles. The vast majority of examples and problems in this book, however, use strictly SI units.

Changing Units

Sometimes we need to change from one unit system to another—for example, from English to SI. Appendix C contains tables for converting among unit systems; you should familiarize yourself with this and the other appendices and refer to them often.

For example, Appendix C shows that $1 \text{ ft} = 0.3048 \text{ m}$. Since 1 ft and 0.3048 m represent the same physical distance, multiplying any distance by their ratio will change the units but not the actual physical distance. Thus the height of Dubai's Burj Khalifa (Fig. 1.3)—the world's tallest structure—is 2722 ft or

$$(2722 \text{ ft}) \left(\frac{0.3048 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ ft}} \right) = 829.7 \text{ m}$$

Often you'll need to change several units in the same expression. Keeping track of the units through a chain of multiplications helps prevent you from carelessly inverting any of the conversion factors. A numerical answer cannot be correct unless it has the right units!

GOT IT?

1.1 A Canadian speed limit of 50 km/h is closest to which U.S. limit expressed in miles per hour? (a) 60 mi/h; (b) 45 mi/h; (c) 30 mi/h



FIGURE 1.3 Dubai's Burj Khalifa is the world's tallest structure.

1.3 Working with Numbers

LO 1.4 Express numbers using scientific notation or SI prefixes.

LO 1.5 Do calculations with attention to significant figures.

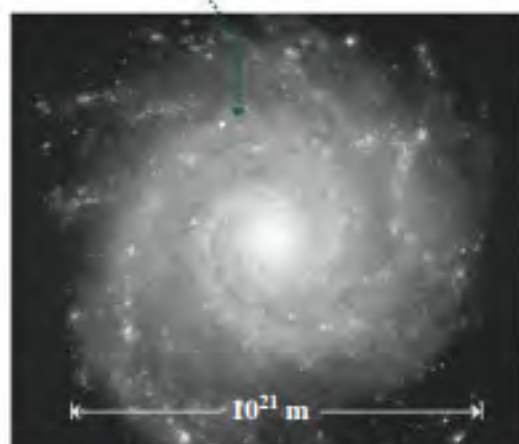
LO 1.6 Make order-of-magnitude estimates.

LO 1.7 Plot data and extract information using best-fit lines.

Scientific Notation

The range of measured quantities in the universe is enormous; lengths alone go from about $1/1,000,000,000,000,000 \text{ m}$ for the radius of a proton to $1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 \text{ m}$ for the size of a galaxy; our telescopes see 100,000 times farther still. Therefore, we frequently express numbers in **scientific notation**, where a reasonable-sized number is multiplied by a power of 10. For example, 4185 is 4.185×10^3 and 0.00012 is 1.2×10^{-4} . Table 1.2 suggests the vast range of measurements for the fundamental quantities of length, time, and mass. Take a minute (about 10^2 heartbeats, or 3×10^{-8} of a typical human lifespan) to peruse this table along with Fig. 1.4.

This galaxy is 10^{21} m across and has a mass of $\sim 10^{42}$ kg.



Your movie is stored on a DVD in “pits” only 4×10^{-7} m in size.

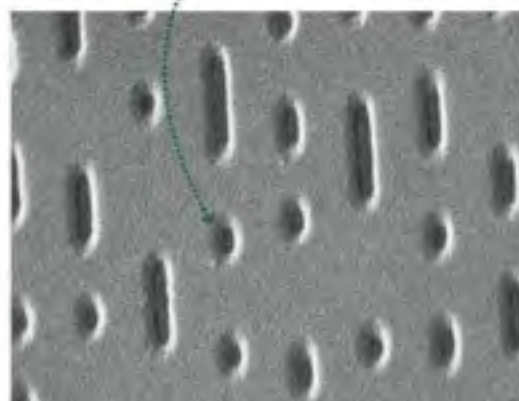


FIGURE 1.4 Large and small.

Table 1.2 Distances, Times, and Masses (rounded to one significant figure)

Radius of observable universe	1×10^{26} m
Earth's radius	6×10^6 m
Tallest mountain	9×10^3 m
Height of person	2 m
Diameter of red blood cell	1×10^{-5} m
Size of proton	1×10^{-15} m
Age of universe	4×10^{17} s
Earth's orbital period (1 year)	3×10^7 s
Human heartbeat	1 s
Wave period, microwave oven	5×10^{-10} s
Time for light to cross a proton	3×10^{-24} s
Mass of Milky Way galaxy	1×10^{42} kg
Mass of mountain	1×10^{18} kg
Mass of human	70 kg
Mass of red blood cell	1×10^{-13} kg
Mass of uranium atom	4×10^{-25} kg
Mass of electron	1×10^{-30} kg

Scientific calculators handle numbers in scientific notation. But straightforward rules allow you to manipulate scientific notation if you don't have such a calculator handy.

Tactics 1.1 USING SCIENTIFIC NOTATION

Addition/Subtraction

To add (or subtract) numbers in scientific notation, first give them the same exponent and then add (or subtract):

$$3.75 \times 10^6 + 5.2 \times 10^5 = 3.75 \times 10^6 + 0.52 \times 10^6 = 4.27 \times 10^6$$

Multiplication/Division

To multiply (or divide) numbers in scientific notation, multiply (or divide) the digits and add (or subtract) the exponents:

$$(3.0 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})(2.1 \times 10^{-10} \text{ s}) = (3.0)(2.1) \times 10^{8+(-10)} \text{ m} = 6.3 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}$$

Powers/Roots

To raise numbers in scientific notation to any power, raise the digits to the given power and multiply the exponent by the power:

$$\begin{aligned} \sqrt{(3.61 \times 10^4)^3} &= \sqrt{3.61^3 \times 10^{(4)(3)}} = (47.04 \times 10^{12})^{1/2} \\ &= \sqrt{47.04} \times 10^{(12)(1/2)} = 6.86 \times 10^6 \end{aligned}$$

EXAMPLE 1.2 Scientific Notation: Tsunami Warnings

Earthquake-generated tsunamis are so devastating because the entire ocean, from surface to bottom, participates in the wave motion. The speed of such waves is given by $v = \sqrt{gh}$, where $g = 9.8 \text{ m/s}^2$ is the gravitational acceleration and h is the depth in meters. Determine a tsunami's speed in 3.0-km-deep water.

EVALUATE That 3.0-km depth is 3.0×10^3 m, so we have

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \sqrt{gh} = [(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(3.0 \times 10^3 \text{ m})]^{1/2} = (29.4 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}^2)^{1/2} \\ &= (2.94 \times 10^4 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}^2)^{1/2} = \sqrt{2.94} \times 10^2 \text{ m/s} = 1.7 \times 10^2 \text{ m/s} \end{aligned}$$

where we wrote $29.4 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}^2$ as $2.94 \times 10^4 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}^2$ in the second line in order to calculate the square root more easily. Converting the speed to km/h gives

$$\begin{aligned} 1.7 \times 10^2 \text{ m/s} &= \left(\frac{1.7 \times 10^2 \text{ m}}{\text{s}} \right) \left(\frac{1 \text{ km}}{1.0 \times 10^3 \text{ m}} \right) \left(\frac{3.6 \times 10^3 \text{ s}}{\text{h}} \right) \\ &= 6.1 \times 10^2 \text{ km/h} \end{aligned}$$

This speed—about 600 km/h—shows why even distant coastlines have little time to prepare for the arrival of a tsunami.

Significant Figures

How precise is that 1.7×10^2 m/s we calculated in Example 1.2? The two **significant figures** in this number imply that the value is closer to 1.7 than to 1.6 or 1.8. The fewer significant figures, the less precisely we can claim to know a given quantity.

In Example 1.2 we were, in fact, given two significant figures for both quantities. The mere act of calculating can't add precision, so we rounded our answer to two significant figures as well. Calculators and computers often give numbers with many figures, but most of those are usually meaningless.

What's Earth's circumference? It's $2\pi R_E$, and π is approximately 3.14159. . . . But if you only know Earth's radius as 6.37×10^6 m, knowing π to more significant figures doesn't mean you can claim to know the circumference any more precisely. This example suggests a rule for handling calculations involving numbers with different precisions:

In multiplication and division, the answer should have the same number of significant figures as the least precise of the quantities entering the calculation.

You're engineering an access ramp to a bridge whose main span is 1.248 km long. The ramp will be 65.4 m long. What will be the overall length? A simple calculation gives $1.248 \text{ km} + 0.0654 \text{ km} = 1.3134 \text{ km}$. How should you round this? You know the bridge length to ± 0.001 km, so an addition this small is significant. Therefore, your answer should have three digits to the right of the decimal point, giving 1.313 km. Thus:

In addition and subtraction, the answer should have the same number of digits to the right of the decimal point as the term in the sum or difference that has the smallest number of digits to the right of the decimal point.

In subtraction, this rule can quickly lead to loss of precision, as Example 1.3 illustrates.

EXAMPLE 1.3

Significant Figures: Nuclear Fuel

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A uranium fuel rod is 3.241 m long before it's inserted in a nuclear reactor. After insertion, heat from the nuclear reaction has increased its length to 3.249 m. What's the increase in its length?

EVALUATE Subtraction gives $3.249 \text{ m} - 3.241 \text{ m} = 0.008 \text{ m}$ or 8 mm. Should this be 8 mm or 8.000 mm? Just 8 mm. Subtraction affected only the last digit of the four-significant-figure lengths, leaving only one significant figure in the answer.



INTERMEDIATE RESULTS Although it's important that your final answer reflect the precision of the numbers that went into it, any intermediate results should have at least one extra significant figure. Otherwise, rounding of intermediate results could alter your answer. If you use a calculator or software when working problems, you'll automatically be carrying many more significant figures in intermediate calculations. We do that in many of the examples and solutions for this book, and therefore you may sometimes find discrepancies in the last digit between your results and the book's.

GOT IT?

1.2 Rank the numbers according to (1) their size and (2) the number of significant figures. Some may be of equal rank. 0.0008 , 3.14×10^7 , 2.998×10^{-9} , 55×10^6 , 0.041×10^9

What about whole numbers ending in zero, like 60, 300, or 410? How many significant figures do they have? Strictly speaking, 60 and 300 have only one significant figure, while 410 has two. If you want to express the number 60 to two significant figures, you should write 6.0×10^1 ; similarly, 300 to three significant figures would be 3.00×10^2 , and 410 to three significant figures would be 4.10×10^2 .

Working with Data

In physics, in other sciences, and even in nonscience fields, you'll find yourself working with data—numbers that come from real-world measurements. One important use of

data in the sciences is to confirm hypotheses about relations between physical quantities. Scientific hypotheses can generally be described quantitatively using equations, which often give or can be manipulated to give a linear relationship between quantities. Plotting such data and fitting a line through the data points—using procedures such as regression analysis, least-squares fitting, or even “eyeballing” a best-fit line—can confirm the hypothesis and give useful information about the phenomena under study. You’ll probably have opportunities to do such data fitting in your physics lab and in other science courses. Because it’s so important in experimental science, we’ve included at least one data problem with each chapter. Example 1.4 shows a typical example of fitting data to a straight line.

Estimation

Some problems in physics and engineering call for precise numerical answers. We need to know exactly how long to fire a rocket to put a space probe on course toward a distant planet, or exactly what size to cut the tiny quartz crystal whose vibrations set the pulse of a digital watch. But for many other purposes, we need only a rough idea of the size of a physical effect. And rough estimates help check whether the results of more difficult calculations make sense.

EXAMPLE 1.4 Data Analysis: A Falling Ball

As you’ll see in Chapter 2, the distance fallen by an object dropped from rest should increase in proportion to the square of the time since it was dropped; the proportionality should be half the acceleration due to gravity. The table shows actual data from measurements on a falling ball. Determine a quantity such that, when you plot fall distance y against it, you should get a straight line. Make the plot, fit a straight line, and from its slope determine an approximate value for the gravitational acceleration.

EVALUATE We’re told that the fall distance y should be proportional to the square of the time; thus we choose to plot y versus t^2 . So we’ve added a row to the table, listing the values of t^2 . Figure 1.5 is our plot. Although we did this one by hand, on graph paper, you could use a spreadsheet or other program to make your plot. A spreadsheet program would offer the option to draw a best-fit line and give its slope, but a hand-drawn line, “eyeballed” to catch the general trend of the data points, works surprisingly well. We’ve indicated such a line, and the figure shows that its slope is very nearly 5.0 m/s^2 .

ASSESS The fact that our data points lie very nearly on a straight line confirms the hypothesis that fall distance should be proportional to time squared. Real data almost never lie exactly on a theoretically predicted line or curve. A more sophisticated analysis would show error bars, indicating the measurement uncertainty in each data point. Because our line’s measured slope is supposed to be half the gravitational acceleration, our analysis suggests a gravitational acceleration of about 10 m/s^2 . This is close to the commonly used value of 9.8 m/s^2 .

Time (s)	0.500	1.00	1.50	2.00	2.50	3.00
Distance (m)	1.12	5.30	12.2	18.5	34.1	43.6
Time Squared (s^2)	0.250	1.00	2.25	4.00	6.25	9.00

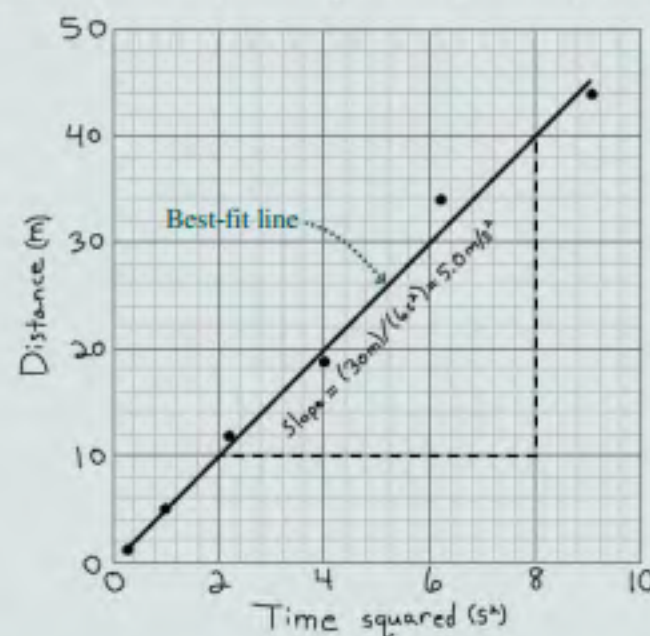


FIGURE 1.5 Our graph for Example 1.4. We “eyeballed” the best-fit line using a ruler; note that it doesn’t go through particular points but tries to capture the average trend of all the data points.

1.4 Strategies for Learning Physics

You can learn *about* physics, and you can learn to *do* physics. This book emphasizes both. Learning about physics will help you appreciate the role of this fundamental science in explaining both natural and technological phenomena. Learning to do physics will make you adept at solving quantitative problems—finding answers to questions about how the natural world works and about how we forge the technologies at the heart of modern society.

EXAMPLE 1.5 Estimation: Counting Brain Cells

Estimate the mass of your brain and the number of cells it contains.

EVALUATE My head is about 6 in. or 15 cm wide, but there's a lot of skull bone in there, so maybe my brain is about 10 cm or 0.1 m across. I don't know its exact shape, but for estimating, I'll take it to be a cube. Then its volume is $(10\text{ cm})^3 = 1000\text{ cm}^3$, or 10^{-3} m^3 . I'm mostly water, and water's density is 1 gram per cubic centimeter (1 g/cm^3), so my 1000-cm^3 brain has a mass of about 1 kg.

How big is a brain cell? I don't know, but Table 1.2 lists the diameter of a red blood cell as about 10^{-5} m . If brain cells are roughly the same size, then each cell has a volume of approximately $(10^{-5}\text{ m})^3 = 10^{-15}\text{ m}^3$. Then the number of cells in my 10^{-3}-m^3 brain is roughly

$$N = \frac{10^{-3}\text{ m}^3/\text{brain}}{10^{-15}\text{ m}^3/\text{cell}} = 10^{12}\text{ cells/brain}$$

Crude though they are, these estimates aren't bad. The average adult brain's mass is about 1.3 kg, and it contains at least 10^{11} cells (Fig. 1.6).



FIGURE 1.6 The average human brain contains more than 10^{11} cells.

Physics: Challenge and Simplicity

Physics problems can be challenging, calling for clever insight and mathematical agility. That challenge is what gives physics a reputation as a difficult subject. But underlying all of physics is only a handful of basic principles. Because physics is so fundamental, it's also inherently simple. There are only a few basic ideas to learn; if you really understand those, you can apply them in a wide variety of situations. These ideas and their applications are all connected, and we'll emphasize those connections and the underlying simplicity of physics by reminding you how the many examples, applications, and problems are manifestations of the same few basic principles. If you approach physics as a hodgepodge of unrelated laws and equations, you'll miss the point and make things difficult. But if you look for the basic principles, for connections among seemingly unrelated phenomena and problems, then you'll discover the underlying simplicity that reflects the scope and power of physics—the fundamental science.

Problem Solving: The IDEA Strategy

Solving a quantitative physics problem always starts with basic principles or concepts and ends with a precise answer expressed as either a numerical quantity or an algebraic expression. Whatever the principle, whatever the realm of physics, and whatever the specific situation, the path from principle to answer follows four simple steps—steps that make up a comprehensive strategy for approaching all problems in physics. Their acronym, IDEA, will help you remember these steps, and they'll be reinforced as we apply them over and over again in worked examples throughout the book. We'll generally write all four steps separately, although the examples in this chapter cut right to the EVALUATE phase. And in some chapters we'll introduce versions of this strategy tailored to specific material. Although the IDEA acronym is tailored to *Essential University Physics*, our four-step approach derives from a 1945 book, *How to Solve It*, by George Polya—intended for mathematics students but readily adapted for physics.

The IDEA strategy isn't a "cookbook" formula for working physics problems. Rather, it's a tool for organizing your thoughts, clarifying your conceptual understanding, developing and executing plans for solving problems, and assessing your answers. The big IDEA is summarized in Problem-Solving Strategy 1.1 on the next page.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 1.1

Physics Problems

INTERPRET The first step is to *interpret* the problem to be sure you know what it's asking. Then *identify* the applicable concepts and principles—Newton's laws of motion, conservation of energy, the first law of thermodynamics, Gauss's law, and so forth. Also *identify* the players in the situation—the object whose motion you're asked to describe, the forces acting, the thermodynamic system you're asked to analyze, the charges that produce an electric field, the components in an electric circuit, the light rays that will help you locate an image, and so on.

DEVELOP The second step is to *develop* a plan for solving the problem. It's always helpful and often essential to *draw* a diagram showing the situation. Your drawing should indicate objects, forces, and other physical entities. Labeling masses, positions, forces, velocities, heat flows, electric or magnetic fields, and other quantities will be a big help. Next, *determine* the relevant mathematical formulas—namely, those that contain the quantities you're given in the problem as well as the unknown(s) you're solving for. Don't just grab equations—rather, think about how each reflects the underlying concepts and principles that you've identified as applying to this problem. The plan you develop might include calculating intermediate quantities, finding values in a table or in one of this text's several appendices, or even solving a preliminary problem whose answer you need in order to get your final result.

EVALUATE Physics problems have numerical or symbolic answers, and you need to *evaluate* your answer. In this step you *execute* your plan, going in sequence through the steps you've outlined. Here's where your math skills come in. Use algebra, trig, or calculus, as needed, to solve your equations. It's a good idea to keep all numerical quantities, whether known or not, in symbolic form as you work through the solution of your problem. At the end you can plug in numbers and work the arithmetic to *evaluate* the numerical answer, if the problem calls for one.

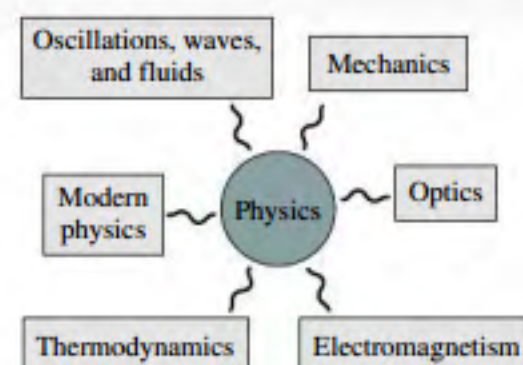
ASSESS Don't be satisfied with your answer until you *assess* whether it makes sense! Are the units correct? Do the numbers sound reasonable? Does the algebraic form of your answer work in obvious special cases, like “turning off” gravity or making an object's mass zero or infinite? Checking special cases not only helps you decide whether your answer makes sense but also can give you insights into the underlying physics. In worked examples, we'll often use this step to enhance your knowledge of physics by relating the example to other applications of physics.

Don't memorize this IDEA problem-solving strategy. Instead, grow to understand it as you see it applied in examples and as you apply it yourself in working end-of-chapter problems. This book has a number of additional features and supplements, discussed in the Preface, to help you develop your problem-solving skills.

Chapter 1 Summary

Big Idea

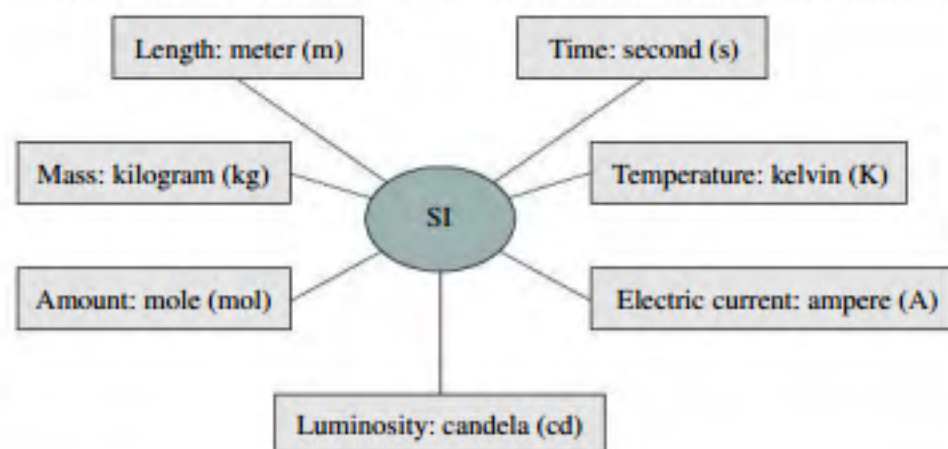
Physics is the fundamental science. It's convenient to consider several realms of physics, which together describe all that's known about physical reality:



Key Concepts and Equations

Numbers describing physical quantities must have units. The SI unit system comprises seven fundamental units:

In addition, physics uses geometric measures of angle.



Numbers are often written with prefixes or in scientific notation to express powers of 10. Precision is shown by the number of significant figures:

Earth's radius $6.37 \times 10^6 \text{ m} = 6.37 \text{ Mm}$

Three significant figures Power of 10 SI prefix for $\times 10^6$

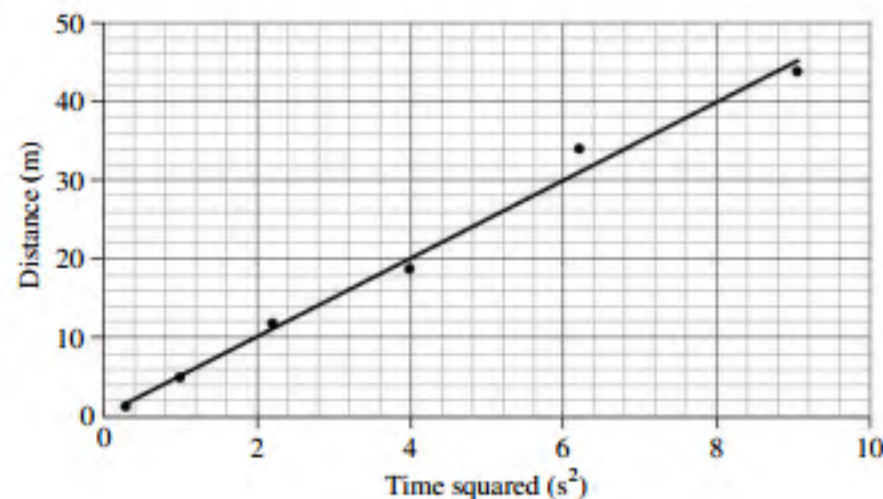


Applications

The IDEA strategy for solving physics problems consists of four steps: Interpret, Develop, Evaluate, and Assess. Estimation and data analysis are additional skills that help with physics.



$$N = \frac{10^{-3} \text{ m}^3/\text{brain}}{10^{-15} \text{ m}^3/\text{cell}} = 10^{12} \text{ cells/brain}$$





Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter, you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>LO 1.1 Describe the scope and realms of physics.</p> <p>LO 1.2 List the base units of the International System of Units (SI).
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 1.1, 1.3, 1.9; Exercises 1.13, 1.16, 1.17</i></p> <p>LO 1.3 Convert units to and from other unit systems.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 1.8; Exercises 1.11, 1.12, 1.14, 1.15, 1.18, 1.19, 1.20, 1.22, 1.23, 1.24, 1.25, 1.26, 1.27, 1.28</i></p> <p>LO 1.4 Express numbers using scientific notation or SI prefixes.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 1.4; Exercises 1.29, 1.30, 1.31, 1.32, 1.33, 1.34, 1.35, 1.36</i></p> | <p>LO 1.5 Do calculations with attention to significant figures.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 1.2; Problems 1.45, 1.57, 1.65</i></p> <p>LO 1.6 Make order-of-magnitude estimates.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 1.5, 1.6; Problems 1.46, 1.47, 1.48, 1.49, 1.50, 1.51, 1.52, 1.53, 1.54, 1.55, 1.56, 1.58, 1.61, 1.62, 1.63, 1.64, 1.66, 1.68</i></p> <p>LO 1.7 Plot data and extract information using best-fit lines.
<i>Problem 1.69</i></p> |
|--|---|

For Thought and Discussion

- Explain why measurement standards based on laboratory procedures are preferable to those based on specific objects such as the international prototype kilogram.
- The distance between the Sun and the Earth, when given in kilometers, is always expressed as a whole number. Why?
- When does an estimation comply well with the actual measurement?
- Why should we use discrete points to indicate the measurements obtained in an experiment? Why shouldn't we join these points?
- What facts might a scientist use in estimating Earth's age?
- How would you determine the length of a curved line?
- Write $1/x$ as x to some power.
- We commonly round off the result of a calculation to three or four significant digits after the decimal place. But why is it not advisable to ignore any of the significant digits in some calculations, such as weather predictions?
- What is meant by an *explicit-constant* definition of a unit?
- You're asked to make a rough estimate of the total mass of all the students in your university. You report your answer as 1.16×10^6 kg. Why isn't this an appropriate answer?
- A car is moving at 90.0 km/h. Express its speed in (a) m/s and (b) ft/s.
- You have postage for a 3-oz letter but only a metric scale. What's the maximum mass, in grams, that your letter can have?
- A year is very nearly $\pi \times 10^7$ s. By what percentage is this figure in error?
- How many cubic centimeters are in a cubic meter?
- Since the start of the industrial era, humankind has emitted about half an exagram of carbon to the atmosphere. What's that in tonnes (t, where $1 \text{ t} = 1000 \text{ kg}$)?
- A gallon of paint covers 330 ft². What's its coverage in m²/L?
- Motorways in the United Kingdom have speed limits of 70 mi/h. How does this compare with the 120 km/h speed limit in Ireland?
- One m/s is how many km/h?
- Water flows from a tap at a rate of 15 liters per minute. Express this flow in cm³/s and m³/s.
- A radian is how many degrees?
- Convert the following to use only SI base units: (a) 55 mi/h; (b) 40.0 km/h; (c) 1 week (take that 1 as an exact number); (d) the period of Mars's orbit (consult Appendix E).
- The distance to the Andromeda galaxy, the nearest large neighbor galaxy of our Milky Way, is about 2.4×10^{22} m. Express this more succinctly using SI prefixes.

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 1.2 Measurements and Units

- The power output of a typical large power plant is 1000 megawatts (MW). Express this result in (a) W, (b) kW, and (c) GW.
- The diameter of a hydrogen atom is about 0.1 nm, and the diameter of a proton is about 1 fm. How many times bigger than a proton is a hydrogen atom?
- Use the definition of the meter to determine how far light travels in exactly 1 ns.
- Lake Baikal in Siberia holds the world's largest quantity of fresh water, about 14 Eg. How many kilograms is that?
- A hydrogen atom is about 0.1 nm in diameter. How many hydrogen atoms lined up side by side would make a line 4 cm long?
- How long a piece of wire would you need to form a circular arc subtending an angle of 1.5 rad if the radius of the arc is 8.4 cm?
- Making a turn, a jetliner flies 2.1 km on a circular path of radius 3.6 km. Through what angle does the jetliner turn?

Section 1.3 Working with Numbers

- Add 3.6×10^5 m and 2.1×10^3 km.
- Divide 4.2×10^3 m/s by 0.57 ms, and express your answer in m/s².
- Add 5.1×10^{-2} cm and 6.8×10^3 μm , and multiply the result by 1.8×10^4 N (N is the SI unit of force).
- Find the cube root of 1.25×10^{23} without a calculator.
- Add 1.234 kg and 76.5 g.
- You're asked to specify the length of an updated aircraft model for a sales brochure. The original plane was 41 m long; the new model has a 3.6-cm-long radio antenna added to its nose. What length do you put in the brochure?
- Repeat the preceding exercise, this time using 41.05 m as the airplane's original length.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first

problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

37. **Example 1.1:** Express a 90 km/h speed limit in meters per second.
38. **Example 1.1:** A car is clocked at 15 m/s in a 60 km/h zone. Is it speeding?
39. **Example 1.1:** A satellite sweeps through 3.0° of its circular orbit every minute. Express that rate in revolutions (i.e., complete orbits) per day.
40. **Example 1.1:** GPS satellites complete approximately two full orbits each day. Express that rate in degrees per hour.
41. **Example 1.3:** A uranium fuel rod is initially 3.682 m long. After it's inserted into a reactor, it heats up and expands to 3.704 m. What's the increase in its length?
42. **Example 1.3:** A uranium fuel rod is 3.846 m long when it's in an operating reactor. When it's removed from the reactor and allowed to cool, its length decreases by 7.2 mm. What's its new length?
43. **Example 1.3:** In Earth's current epoch, the length of the day is some 86,400.002 s. If that were to increase to 86,400.0038 s, how would you report the increase?
44. **Example 1.3:** In 2014 the *Rosetta* spacecraft, orbiting the comet 67P/Churyumov-Gerasimenko, measured the rotation period of the comet's nucleus at 12.404 h. By the time the *Rosetta* mission ended in 2016, the period had decreased by 21 min. Find the new rotation period, expressed in hours.

Problems

45. To see why it's important to carry more digits in intermediate calculations, determine $(\sqrt{2})^5$ to three significant figures in two ways: (a) Find $\sqrt{2}$ and round to three significant figures, then raise to the fifth power and again round; and (b) find $\sqrt{2}$ to four significant figures, then raise to the fifth power and round to three significant figures.
46. You've been hired as an environmental watchdog for a big-city newspaper. You're asked to estimate the number of trees that go into one day's printing, given that half the newsprint comes from recycling, the rest from new wood pulp. What do you report?
47. The average dairy cow produces about 10^4 liters of milk per year. Estimate the number of dairy cows needed to keep Italy supplied with milk.
48. Roughly how many Earths would fit inside the Sun?
49. The average Australian uses electrical energy at the rate of about 0.8 kilowatts (kW). Solar energy reaches Earth's surface at an average rate of about 300 W on every square meter (a value that accounts for night and clouds). What fraction of Australia's land area would have to be covered with 17% efficient solar cells to provide all of their electrical energy?
50. Estimate, to an order of magnitude, the number of heartbeats in a typical human lifetime.
51. A human hair is about 100 μm across. Estimate the number of hairs in a typical braid.
52. You're working in the fraud protection division of a credit-card company, and you're asked to estimate the chances that a 16-digit number chosen at random will be a valid credit-card number. What do you answer?
53. Bubble gum's density is about 1 g/cm³. You blow a 7-g wad of gum into a bubble 10 cm in diameter. Estimate the bubble's thickness. (*Hint:* Think about spreading the bubble into a flat sheet. The surface area of a sphere is $4\pi r^2$.)
54. The Moon barely covers the Sun during a solar eclipse. Given that Moon and Sun are, respectively, 4×10^5 km and 1.5×10^8 km from Earth, estimate how much bigger the Sun's diameter is than the Moon's. If the Moon's radius is 1800 km, how big is the Sun?
55. The semiconductor chip at the heart of a personal computer is a square 4 mm on a side and contains 10^{10} electronic components. (a) What's the size of each component, assuming they're square? (b) If a calculation requires that electrical impulses traverse 10^4 components on the chip, each a million times, how many such calculations can the computer perform each second? (*Hint:* The maximum speed of an electrical impulse is about two-thirds the speed of light.)
56. Estimate the number of (a) atoms and (b) cells in your body.
57. The numbers 1.27 and 9.97 are both good to three significant figures. What's the percent uncertainty in each number?
58. Continental drift occurs at about the rate your fingernails grow. Estimate the age of the Atlantic Ocean, given that the eastern and western hemispheres have been drifting apart.
59. You're travelling on the Pan-American Highway from Mexico into the United States and trying to decide whether to fill your petrol tank before or after crossing the border. One liter of petrol costs 18 Mexican pesos in Nuevo Laredo, Mexico, and one gallon of petrol costs 2.66 U.S. dollars in Laredo, Texas. If one U.S. dollar is worth nineteen Mexican pesos, where should you fill up?
60. In the 1908 London Olympics, the intended 26-mile marathon was extended 385 yards to put the end in front of the royal reviewing stand. This distance subsequently became standard. What's the marathon distance in kilometers, to the nearest meter?
61. **ENV** An environmental group is lobbying to shut down a coal-burning power plant that produces electrical energy at the rate of 1 GW (a watt, W, is a unit of power—the rate of energy production or consumption). They suggest replacing the plant with wind turbines that can produce 1.5 MW each but that, due to intermittent wind, average only 30% of that power. Estimate the number of wind turbines needed.
62. If you're working from the print version of this book, estimate the thickness of each sheet of paper. Or, estimate based on another print book.
63. **BIO** Estimate the area of skin on your body.
64. Estimate the mass of water in the world's oceans, and express it with SI prefixes.
65. Express the following with appropriate units and significant figures: (a) 1.0 m plus 9 mm, (b) 1.0 m times 1 mm, (c) 1.0 m minus 998 mm, and (d) 1.0 m divided by 998 mm.
66. You're shopping for a new computer, and a salesperson claims the microprocessor chip in the model you're looking at contains 10 billion electronic components. The chip measures 5 mm on a side and uses 32-nm technology, meaning each component is 32 nm across. Is the salesperson right?
67. In 2017, solar panels on your author's home generated 3849 kilowatt-hours (kWh) of electrical energy, while the house consumed electrical energy at an average rate of 392 watts (W). Find the average rate of solar power generation in watts, where 1 kWh is 3.6 megajoules (MJ; the joule is the SI unit of energy) and 1 W is 1 J/s. Did the house generate more or less electrical energy than it consumed?
68. The world consumes energy at the rate of about 462 EJ per year, where the joule (J) is the SI unit of energy. Convert this figure to watts (W), where 1 W = 1 J/s, and then estimate the average per capita energy consumption rate in watts.

69. The volume of a sphere is given by $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$, where r is the sphere's radius. For solid spheres with the same density—made, for example, from the same material—mass is proportional to volume. The table below lists measures of diameter and mass for different steel balls. (a) Determine a quantity that, when you plot mass against it, should yield a straight line. (b) Make your plot, establish a best-fit line, and determine its slope (which in this case is proportional to the spheres' density).

Diameter (cm)	0.75	1.00	1.54	2.16	2.54
Mass (g)	1.81	3.95	15.8	38.6	68.2

Passage Problems

- 810 The human body contains about 10^{14} cells, and the diameter of a typical cell is about $10\ \mu\text{m}$. Like all ordinary matter, cells are made of atoms; a typical atomic diameter is $0.1\ \text{nm}$.
70. How does the number of atoms in a cell compare with the number of cells in the body?
- greater
 - smaller
 - about the same

71. The volume of a cell is about
- $10^{-10}\ \text{m}^3$.
 - $10^{-15}\ \text{m}^3$.
 - $10^{-20}\ \text{m}^3$.
 - $10^{-30}\ \text{m}^3$.
72. The mass of a cell is about
- $10^{-10}\ \text{kg}$.
 - $10^{-12}\ \text{kg}$.
 - $10^{-14}\ \text{kg}$.
 - $10^{-16}\ \text{kg}$.
73. The number of atoms in the body is closest to
- 10^{14} .
 - 10^{20} .
 - 10^{30} .
 - 10^{40} .

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

All of them!

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 1.1 (c)
- 1.2 (1) 2.998×10^{-9} , 0.0008 , 3.14×10^7 , 0.041×10^9 , 55×10^6
 (2) 0.0008 , 0.041×10^9 and 55×10^6 (with two significant figures each), 3.14×10^7 , 2.998×10^{-9}

Mechanics



A hiker checks her position using signals from GPS satellites.



OVERVIEW

A wilderness hiker uses the Global Positioning System (GPS) to follow her chosen route. A farmer plows a field with centimeter-scale precision, guided by GPS and saving precious fuel as a result. One scientist uses GPS to track endangered elephants, another to study the accelerated flow of glaciers as Earth's climate warms. Our deep understanding of motion is what lets us use a constellation of satellites, 20,000 km up and moving faster than 10,000 km/h, to find positions on Earth so precisely.

Motion occurs at all scales, from the intricate dance of molecules at the heart of life's cellular mechanics, to the everyday motion of cars, baseballs, and our own bodies, to the trajectories of GPS and TV satellites and of spacecraft exploring the distant

planets, to the stately motions of the celestial bodies themselves and the overall expansion of the universe. The study of motion is called **mechanics**. The 11 chapters of Part 1 introduce the physics of motion, first for individual bodies and then for complicated systems whose constituent parts move relative to one another.

We explore motion here from the viewpoint of Newtonian mechanics, which applies accurately in all cases except the subatomic realm and when relative speeds approach that of light. The Newtonian mechanics of Part 1 provides the groundwork for much of the material in subsequent parts, until, in the book's final chapters, we extend mechanics into the subatomic and high-speed realms.

Motion in a Straight Line

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter, you should be able to:

- LO 2.1 Define fundamental motion concepts: position, velocity, acceleration.
- LO 2.2 Distinguish instantaneous from average velocity and acceleration.
- LO 2.3 Determine velocity and position when acceleration is constant.
- LO 2.4 Describe how gravity near Earth's surface provides an example of constant acceleration.
- LO 2.5 Use calculus to deal with nonconstant acceleration.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

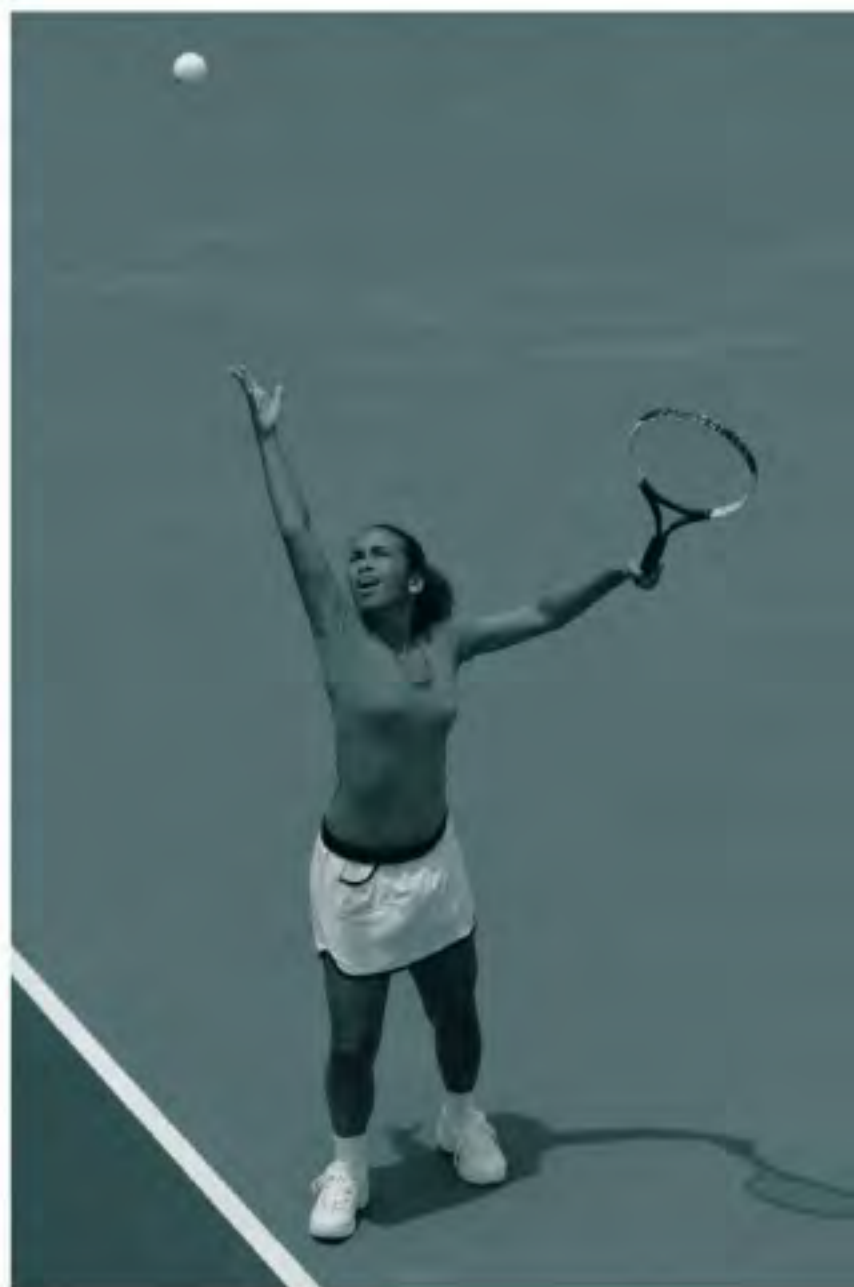
- Units for measuring space and time (Section 1.2)
- Working with numbers using scientific notation and significant figures (Section 1.3)
- Your background in algebra and introductory calculus

Electrons swarming around atomic nuclei, cars speeding along a highway, blood coursing through your veins, galaxies rushing apart in the expanding universe—all these are examples of matter in motion. The study of motion without regard to its cause is called **kinematics** (from the Greek “kinema,” or motion, as in motion pictures). This chapter deals with the simplest case: a single object moving in a straight line. Later, we generalize to motion in more dimensions and with more complicated objects. But the basic concepts and mathematical techniques we develop here continue to apply.

2.1 Average Motion

LO 2.1 Define fundamental motion concepts: position, velocity, acceleration.

You drive 15 minutes to a pizza place 10 km away, grab your pizza, and return home in another 15 minutes. You've traveled a total distance of 20 km, and the trip took half an hour, so your **average speed**—distance divided by time—was 40 kilometers per hour. To describe your motion more precisely, we introduce the quantity x that gives your position at any time t . We then define the **displacement**, Δx , as the net change in position: $\Delta x = x_2 - x_1$, where x_1 and



The server tosses the tennis ball straight up and hits it on its way down. Right at its peak height, the ball has zero velocity, but what's its acceleration?

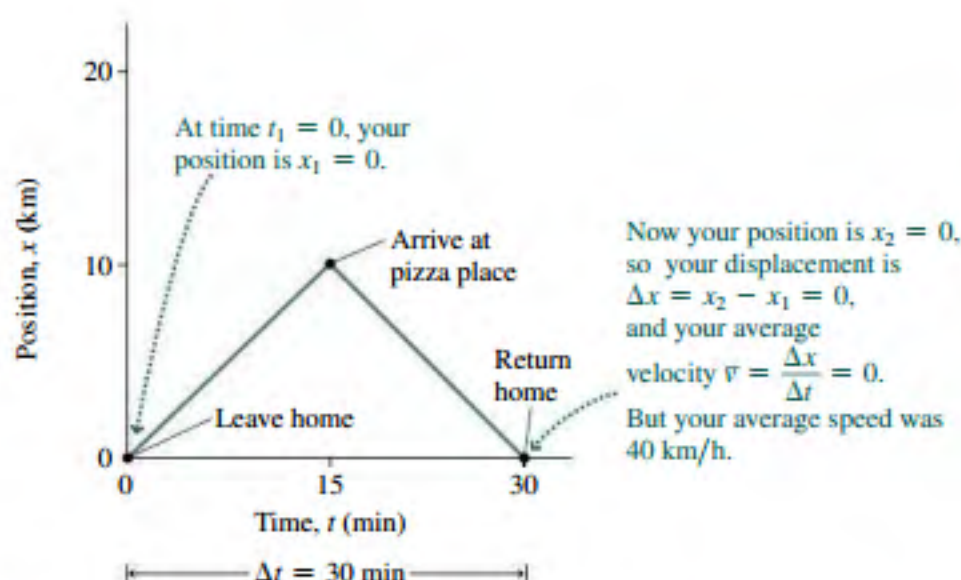


FIGURE 2.1 Position versus time for the pizza trip.

x_2 are your starting and ending positions, respectively. Your **average velocity**, $\bar{v}$, is displacement divided by the time interval:

Average velocity of an object in straight-line motion. The bar designates "average."

Δx is the displacement—the change in the object's position during the time interval Δt . It's given by $\Delta x = x_2 - x_1$.

$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} \quad (\text{average velocity}) \quad (2.1)$$

Δt is the time interval during which the change in position occurs.

where $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$ is the interval between your ending and starting times. The bar in $\bar{v}$ indicates an average quantity (and is read "v bar"). The symbol Δ (capital Greek delta) stands for "the change in." For the round trip to the pizza place, your overall displacement was zero, and therefore your average velocity was also zero—even though your average *speed* was not (Fig. 2.1).

Directions and Coordinate Systems

It matters whether you go north or south, east or west. Displacement therefore includes not only *how far* but also *in what direction*. For motion in a straight line, we can describe both properties by taking position coordinates x to be positive going in one direction from some origin, and negative in the other. This gives us a one-dimensional **coordinate system**. The choice of coordinate system—both of origin and of which direction is positive—is entirely up to you. The coordinate system isn't physically real; it's just a convenience we create to help in the mathematical description of motion.

Figure 2.2 shows some cities in the American Midwest that lie on a north–south line. We've established a coordinate system with northward direction positive and origin at Kansas City. Arrows show displacements from Houston to Des Moines and from International Falls to Des Moines; the former is approximately +1300 km, and the latter is approximately –750 km, with the minus sign indicating a southward direction. Suppose the Houston-to-Des Moines trip takes 2.6 hours by plane; then the average velocity is $(1300 \text{ km})/(2.6 \text{ h}) = 500 \text{ km/h}$. If the International Falls-to-Des Moines trip takes 10 h by car, then the average velocity is $(-750 \text{ km})/(10 \text{ h}) = -75 \text{ km/h}$; again, the minus sign indicates southward.

In calculating average velocity, all that matters is the overall displacement. Maybe that trip from Houston to Des Moines was a nonstop flight going 500 km/h. Or maybe it involved a faster plane that stopped for half an hour in Kansas City. Maybe the plane even went first to Minneapolis, then backtracked to Des Moines. No matter: The displacement remains 1300 km and, as long as the total time is 2.6 h, the average velocity remains 500 km/h.

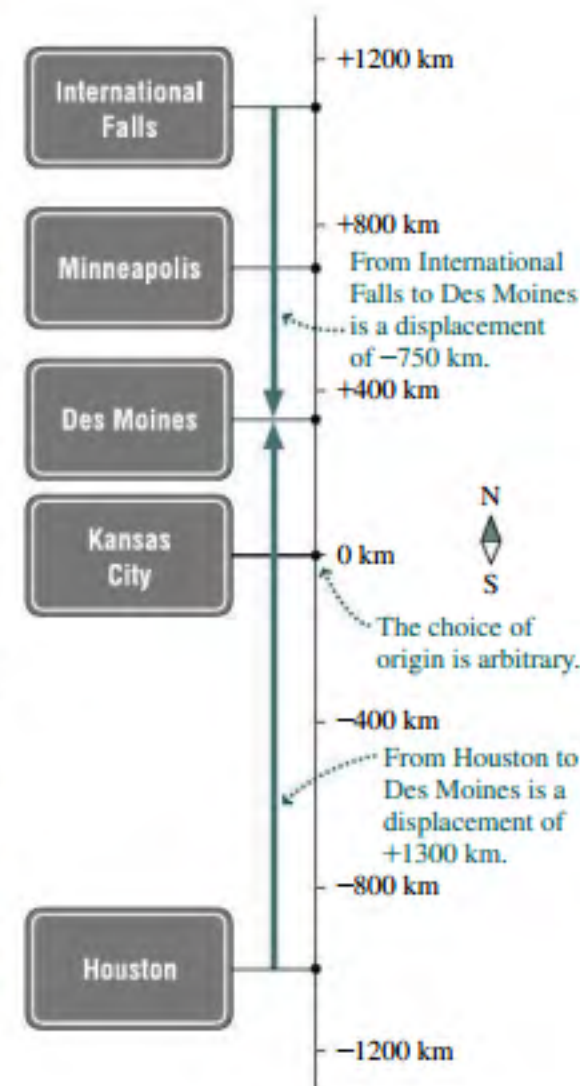


FIGURE 2.2 Describing motion in the central United States.

GOT IT?

2.1 We just described three trips from Houston to Des Moines: (a) direct, (b) with a stop in Kansas City, and (c) via Minneapolis. For which of these trips is the average speed the same as the average velocity? Where the two differ, which is greater?

EXAMPLE 2.1 Speed and Velocity: Flying with a Connection

To get a cheap flight from Houston to Kansas City—a distance of 1000 km—you have to connect in Minneapolis, 700 km north of Kansas City. The flight to Minneapolis takes 2.2 h, then you have a 30-min layover, and then a 1.3-h flight to Kansas City. What are your average velocity and your average speed on this trip?

INTERPRET We interpret this as a one-dimensional kinematics problem involving the distinction between velocity and speed, and we identify three distinct travel segments: the two flights and the layover. We identify the key concepts as speed and velocity; their distinction is clear from our pizza example.

DEVELOP Figure 2.2 is our drawing. We determine that Equation 2.1, $\bar{v} = \Delta x / \Delta t$, will give the average velocity, and that the average speed is the total distance divided by the total time. We develop our plan: Find the displacement and the total time, and use those values to get the average velocity; then find the total distance traveled and use that along with the total time to get the average speed.

EVALUATE You start in Houston and end up in Kansas City, for a displacement of 1000 km—regardless of how far you actually traveled. The total time for the three segments is $\Delta t = 2.2 \text{ h} + 0.50 \text{ h} + 1.3 \text{ h} = 4.0 \text{ h}$. Then the average velocity, from Equation 2.1, is

$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{1000 \text{ km}}{4.0 \text{ h}} = 250 \text{ km/h}$$

However, that Minneapolis connection means you've gone an extra $2 \times 700 \text{ km}$, for a total distance of 2400 km in 4 h. Thus your average speed is $(2400 \text{ km}) / (4.0 \text{ h}) = 600 \text{ km/h}$, more than twice your average velocity.

ASSESS Make sense? Average velocity depends only on the net displacement between the starting and ending points. Average speed takes into account the actual distance you travel—which can be a lot longer on a circuitous trip like this one. So it's entirely reasonable that the average speed should be greater.

2.2 Instantaneous Velocity

LO 2.2 Distinguish instantaneous from average velocity and acceleration.

Geologists determine the velocity of a lava flow by dropping a stick into the lava and timing how long it takes the stick to go a known distance (Fig. 2.3a). Dividing the distance by the time then gives the average velocity. But did the lava flow faster at the beginning of the interval? Or did it speed up and slow down again? To understand motion fully, including how it changes with time, we need to know the velocity at each instant.

Geologists could explore that detail with a series of observations taken over smaller intervals of time and distance (Fig. 2.3b). As the size of the intervals shrinks, a more detailed picture of the motion emerges. In the limit of very small intervals, we're measuring the velocity at a single instant. This is the **instantaneous velocity**, or simply the **velocity**. The magnitude of the instantaneous velocity is the **instantaneous speed**.

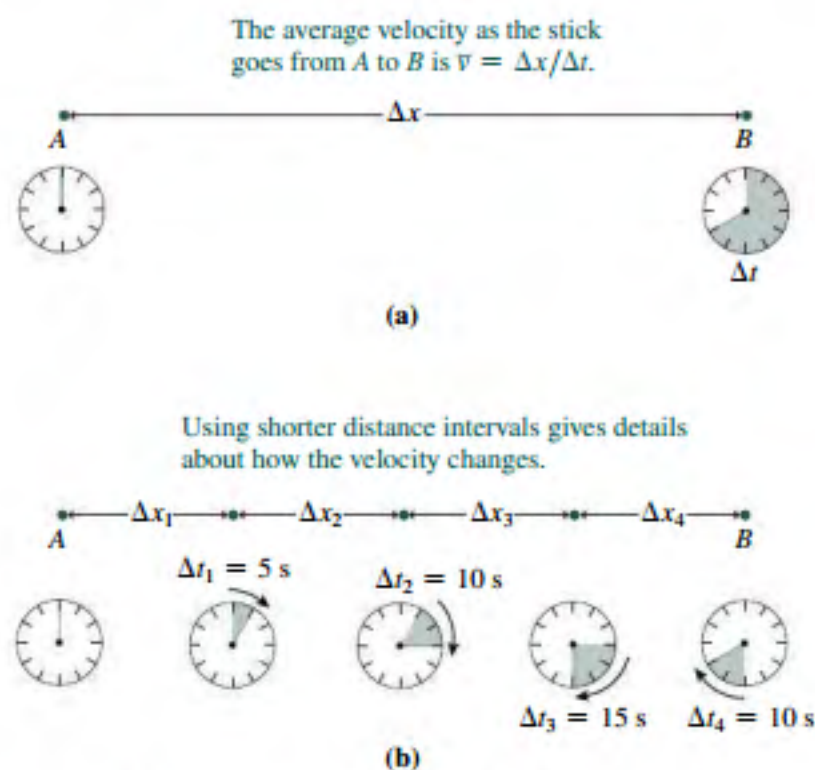


FIGURE 2.3 Determining the velocity of a lava flow.

You might object that it's impossible to achieve that limit of an arbitrarily small time interval. With observational measurements that's true, but calculus lets us go there. Figure 2.4a is a plot of position versus time for the stick in the lava flow shown in Fig. 2.3. Where the curve is steep, the position changes rapidly with time—so the velocity is greater. Where the curve is flatter, the velocity is lower. Study the clocks in Fig. 2.3b and you'll see that the stick starts out moving rapidly, then slows, and then speeds up a bit at the end. The curve in Fig. 2.4a reflects this behavior.

Suppose we want the instantaneous velocity at the time marked t_1 in Fig. 2.4a. We can approximate this quantity by measuring the displacement Δx over the interval Δt between t_1 and some later time t_2 . The ratio $\Delta x/\Delta t$ is then the average velocity over this interval. Note that this ratio is the slope of a line drawn through points on the curve that mark the ends of the interval.

Figure 2.4b shows what happens as we make the time interval Δt arbitrarily small: Eventually, the line between the two points becomes indistinguishable from the tangent line to the curve. That tangent line has the same slope as the curve right at the point we're interested in, and therefore it defines the instantaneous velocity at that point. We write this mathematically by saying that the instantaneous velocity is the limit, as the time interval Δt becomes arbitrarily close to zero, of the ratio of displacement Δx to Δt :

$$v = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} \quad (2.2a)$$

You can imagine making the interval Δt as close to zero as you like, getting ever better approximations to the instantaneous velocity. Given a graph of position versus time, an easy approach is to “eyeball” the tangent line to the graph at a point you're interested in; its slope is the instantaneous velocity (Fig. 2.5).

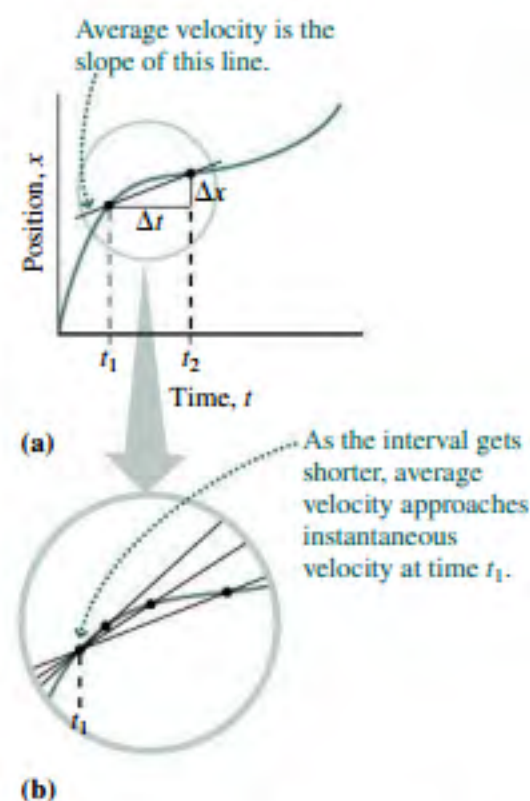
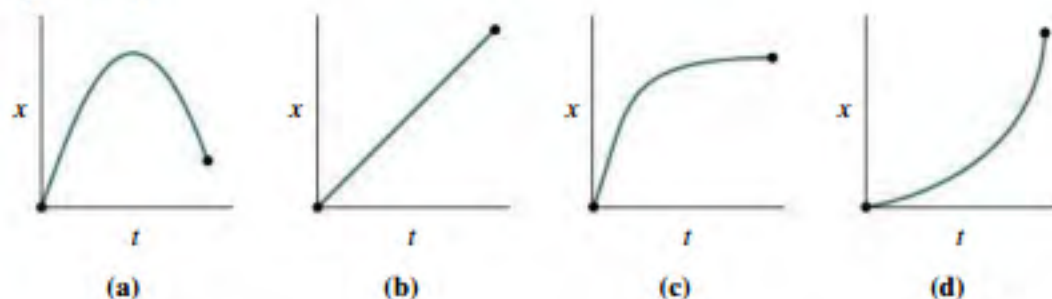


FIGURE 2.4 Position-versus-time graph for the motion in Fig. 2.3.

GOT IT?

2.2 The figures show position-versus-time graphs for four objects. Which object is moving with constant speed? Which reverses direction? Which starts slowly and then speeds up?



Given position as a mathematical function of time, calculus provides a quick way to find instantaneous velocity. In calculus, the result of the limiting process described in Equation 2.2a is called the **derivative** of x with respect to t and is given the symbol dx/dt :

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t}$$

The quantities dx and dt are called **infinitesimals**; they represent vanishingly small quantities that result from the limiting process. We can then write Equation 2.2a as

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} \quad (\text{instantaneous velocity}) \quad (2.2b)$$

The instantaneous velocity v is the velocity at a single instant of time.

Instantaneous velocity is given by the derivative dx/dt —the rate of change of position with respect to time.

Given position x as a function of time t , calculus shows how to find the velocity $v = dx/dt$. Consult Tactics 2.1 if you haven't yet seen derivatives in your calculus class or if you need a refresher.

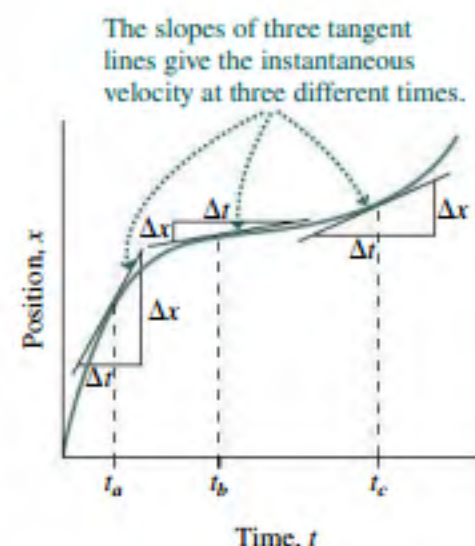


FIGURE 2.5 The instantaneous velocity is the slope of the tangent line.

Tactics 2.1 TAKING DERIVATIVES

You don't have to go through an elaborate limiting process every time you want to find an instantaneous velocity. That's because calculus provides formulas for the derivatives of common functions. For example, any function of the form $x = bt^n$, where b and n are constants, has the derivative

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = nbt^{n-1} \quad (2.3)$$

Appendix A lists derivatives of other common functions.

EXAMPLE 2.2 Instantaneous Velocity: A Rocket Ascends

The altitude of a rocket in the first half-minute of its ascent is given by $x = bt^2$, where the constant b is 2.90 m/s^2 . Find a general expression for the rocket's velocity as a function of time and from it the instantaneous velocity at $t = 20 \text{ s}$. Also find an expression for the average velocity, and compare your two velocity expressions.

INTERPRET We interpret this as a problem involving the comparison of two distinct but related concepts: instantaneous velocity and average velocity. We identify the rocket as the object whose velocities we're interested in.

DEVELOP Equation 2.2b, $v = dx/dt$, gives the instantaneous velocity, and Equation 2.1, $\bar{v} = \Delta x/\Delta t$, gives the average velocity. Our plan is to use Equation 2.3, $dx/dt = nbt^{n-1}$, to evaluate the derivative that gives the instantaneous velocity. Then we can use Equation 2.1 for the average velocity, but first we'll need to determine the displacement from the equation we're given for the rocket's position.

EVALUATE Applying Equation 2.2b with position given by $x = bt^2$ and using Equation 2.3 to evaluate the derivative, we have

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{d(bt^2)}{dt} = 2bt$$

for the instantaneous velocity. Evaluating at time $t = 20 \text{ s}$ with $b = 2.90 \text{ m/s}^2$ gives $v = 116 \text{ m/s}$. For the average velocity we need the total displacement at 20 s . Since $x = bt^2$, Equation 2.1 gives

$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{bt^2}{t} = bt$$

where we've used $x = bt^2$ for Δx and t for Δt because both position and time are taken to be zero at liftoff. Comparison with our earlier result shows that the average velocity from liftoff to any particular time is exactly half the instantaneous velocity at that time.

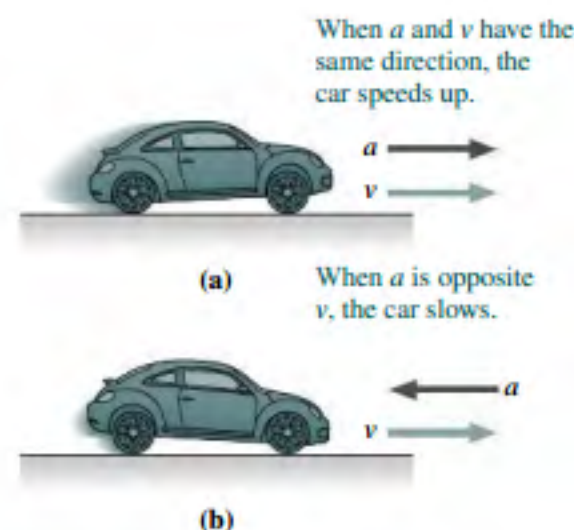
ASSESS Make sense? Yes: The rocket's speed is always increasing, so its velocity at the end of any time interval is greater than the average velocity over that interval. The fact that the average velocity is exactly half the instantaneous velocity results from the quadratic (t^2) dependence of position on time.



LANGUAGE Language often holds clues to the meaning of physical concepts. In this example we speak of the *instantaneous* velocity at a particular time. That wording should remind you of the limiting process that focuses on a single instant. In contrast, we speak of the *average* velocity over a time interval, since averaging explicitly involves a range of times.

2.3 Acceleration**LO 2.2 Distinguish instantaneous from average velocity and acceleration.**

When velocity changes, as in Example 2.2, an object undergoes **acceleration**. Quantitatively, we define *acceleration* as the rate of change of velocity, just as we defined velocity as the rate of change of position. The **average acceleration** over a time interval Δt is



Average acceleration of an object in straight-line motion. The bar designates "average."

Δv is the change in the object's velocity during the time interval Δt . It's given by $\Delta v = v_2 - v_1$.

$$\bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} \quad (\text{average acceleration}) \quad (2.4)$$

Δt is the time interval during which the change in velocity occurs.

where Δv is the change in velocity and the bar on $\bar{a}$ indicates that this is an average value. Just as we defined *instantaneous velocity* through a limiting procedure, we define **instantaneous acceleration** as

FIGURE 2.6 Acceleration and velocity.

The instantaneous acceleration a is the acceleration at a single instant of time.

$$a = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{dv}{dt} \quad (\text{instantaneous acceleration}) \quad (2.5)$$

a is given by the same limiting procedure that led to instantaneous velocity v .

The result of that limiting procedure is the derivative dv/dt —the rate of change of velocity with respect to time.

As we did with velocity, we also use the term *acceleration* alone to mean instantaneous acceleration.

In one-dimensional motion, acceleration is either in the direction of the velocity or opposite it. In the former case the accelerating object speeds up, whereas in the latter it slows (Fig. 2.6). Although slowing is sometimes called *deceleration*, it's simpler to use *acceleration* to describe the time rate of change of velocity no matter what's happening. With two-dimensional motion, we'll find much richer relationships between the directions of velocity and acceleration.

Since acceleration is the rate of change of velocity, its units are (distance per time) per time, or distance/time². In SI, that's m/s². Sometimes acceleration is given in mixed units; for example, a car going from 0 to 60 mi/h in 10 s has an average acceleration of 6 mi/h/s.

Position, Velocity, and Acceleration

Figure 2.7 shows graphs of position, velocity, and acceleration for an object undergoing one-dimensional motion. In Fig. 2.7a, the rise and fall of the position-versus-time curve shows that the object first moves away from the origin, reverses, then reaches the origin again at $t = 4$ s. It then continues moving into the region $x < 0$. Velocity, shown in Fig. 2.7b, is the slope of the position-versus-time curve in Fig. 2.7a. Note that the magnitude of the

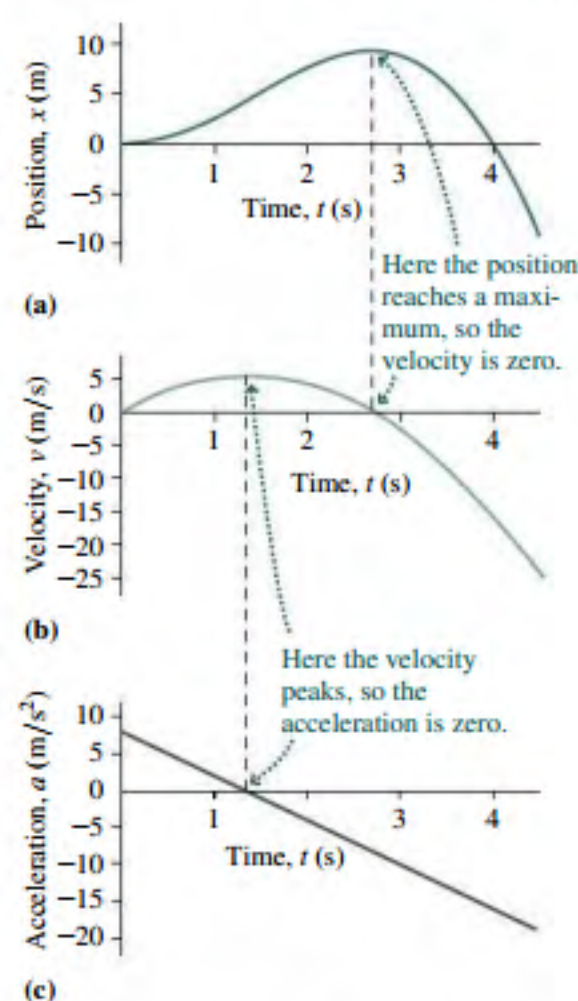


FIGURE 2.7 (a) Position, (b) velocity, and (c) acceleration versus time.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 2.1 Acceleration without Velocity?

Can an object be accelerating even though it's not moving?

EVALUATE Figure 2.7 shows that velocity is the *slope* of the position curve—and the slope depends on how the position is *changing*, not on its actual value. Similarly, acceleration depends only on the *rate of change* of velocity, not on velocity itself. So there's no intrinsic reason why there can't be acceleration at an instant when velocity is zero.

ASSESS Figure 2.8, which shows a ball thrown straight up, is a case in point. Right at the peak of its flight, the ball's velocity is instantaneously zero. But just before the peak it's moving upward, and just after it's moving downward. No matter how small a time interval you consider, the velocity is always changing. Therefore, the ball is accelerating, even right at the instant its velocity is zero.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Just 0.010 s before it peaks, the ball in Fig. 2.8 is moving upward at 0.098 m/s; 0.010 s after it peaks, it's moving downward with the same speed. What's its average acceleration over this 0.02-s interval?

EVALUATE Equation 2.4 gives the average acceleration: $\bar{a} = \Delta v / \Delta t = (-0.098 \text{ m/s} - 0.098 \text{ m/s}) / (0.020 \text{ s}) = -9.8 \text{ m/s}^2$. Here we've implicitly chosen a coordinate system with a positive upward direction, so both the final velocity and the acceleration are negative. The time interval is so small that our result must be close to the instantaneous acceleration right at the peak—when the velocity is zero. You might recognize 9.8 m/s^2 as the acceleration due to the Earth's gravity.

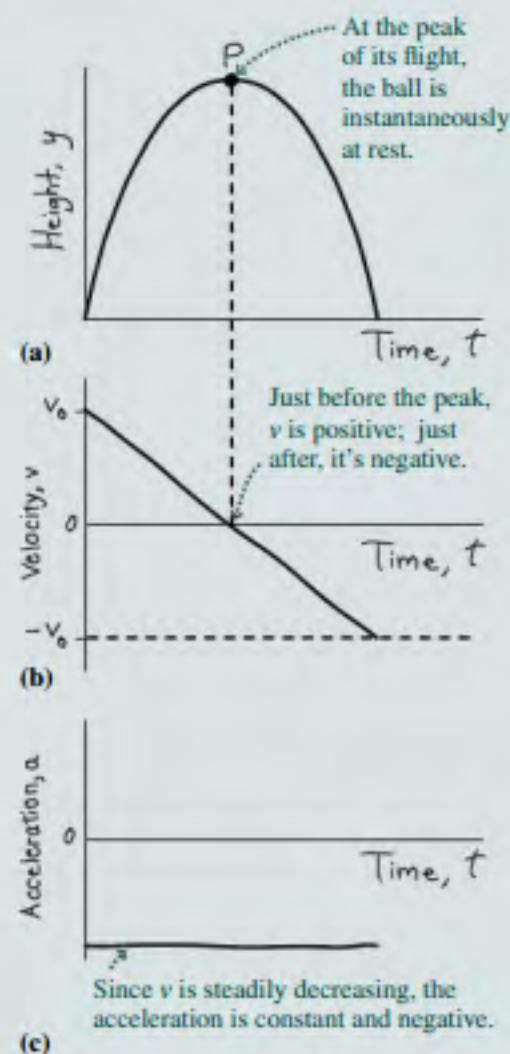


FIGURE 2.8 Our sketch for Conceptual Example 2.1.

APPLICATION

Inertial Guidance

Given an object's initial position and velocity, and its subsequent acceleration—which may vary with time—it's possible to invert Equation 2.6 and solve for position (more on the mathematics of this inversion in Section 2.6). *Inertial guidance systems*, also called *inertial navigation systems*, exploit this principle to allow submarines, ships, and airplanes to keep track of their locations based solely on internal measurements of their own acceleration. This frees them from the need for external positioning references such as GPS, radar, or direct observation. Inertial guidance is especially important for submarines, which usually can't access external sources for information about their positions. In the one-dimensional motion of this chapter, an inertial guidance system would consist of a single accelerometer whose reading is tracked continually. In practical systems, three accelerometers at right angles track acceleration in all three dimensions. Information from on-board gyroscopes registers orientation, so the system “knows” the changing directions of the three accelerations.

Early inertial guidance systems were heavy and expensive, but the miniaturization of accelerometers and gyroscopes—so that they're now in every smartphone—has enabled smaller and less expensive inertial guidance systems. The photo shows a complete inertial navigation system developed by the U.S. Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) for use in locations where GPS signals aren't available; it's so small that it fits within the Lincoln Memorial on a penny!



velocity (that is, the speed) is large where the curve in Fig. 2.7a is steep—that is, where position is changing most rapidly. At the peak of the position curve, the object is momentarily at rest as it reverses, so there the position curve is flat and the velocity is zero. After the object reverses, at about 2.7 s, it's heading in the negative x -direction, and so its velocity is negative.

Just as velocity is the slope of the position-versus-time curve, acceleration is the slope of the velocity-versus-time curve. Initially that slope is positive—velocity is increasing—but eventually it peaks at the point of maximum velocity and zero acceleration, and then it decreases. That velocity decrease corresponds to a negative acceleration, as shown clearly in the region of Fig. 2.7c beyond about 1.3 s.

Acceleration is the rate of change of velocity, and velocity is the rate of change of position. That makes acceleration the rate of change of the rate of change of position. Mathematically, acceleration is the **second derivative** of position with respect to time. Symbolically, we write the second derivative as d^2x/dt^2 . Then the relationship among acceleration, velocity, and position can be written

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{dx}{dt} \right) = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \quad (2.6)$$

Equation 2.6 expresses acceleration in terms of position through the calculus operation of taking the second derivative. If you've studied integrals in calculus, you can see that it should be possible to go the opposite way, finding position as a function of time given acceleration as a function of time. In Section 2.4 we'll do this for the special case of constant acceleration, although there we'll take an algebra-based approach; Problem 93 obtains the same results using calculus. We'll take a quick look at nonconstant acceleration in Section 2.6. The Application on this page provides an important technology that finds an object's position from its acceleration.

GOT IT?

2.3 An elevator is going up at constant speed, slows to a stop, then starts down and soon reaches the same constant speed it had going up. Is the elevator's average acceleration between its upward and downward constant-speed motions (a) zero, (b) downward, (c) first upward and then downward, or (d) first downward and then upward?

2.4 Constant Acceleration

LO 2.3 Determine velocity and position when acceleration is constant.

The description of motion has an especially simple form when acceleration is constant. Suppose an object starts at time $t = 0$ with some initial velocity v_0 and constant acceleration a . Later, at some time t , it has velocity v . Because the acceleration doesn't change, its average and instantaneous values are identical, so we can write

$$a = \bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{v - v_0}{t - 0}$$

or, rearranging,

Velocity v as a function of time when acceleration a is constant.

Velocity changes linearly with time.

$$v = v_0 + at \quad (\text{for constant acceleration only}) \quad (2.7)$$

v_0 is the initial velocity at time $t = 0$.

Remember that this equation is only for the special case of constant acceleration!

This equation says that the velocity changes from its initial value by an amount that is the product of acceleration and time.



SPECIAL CASES Many equations we develop are special cases of more general laws, and they're limited to special circumstances. Equation 2.7 is a case in point: It applies *only when acceleration is constant*.

Having determined velocity as a function of time, we now consider position. With constant acceleration, velocity increases steadily—and thus the average velocity over an interval is the average of the velocities at the beginning and the end of that interval. So we can write

$$\bar{v} = \frac{1}{2}(v_0 + v) \quad (2.8)$$

for the average velocity over the interval from $t = 0$ to some later time when the velocity is v . We can also write the average velocity as the change in position divided by the time interval. Suppose that at time 0 our object was at position x_0 . Then its average velocity over a time interval from 0 to time t is

$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{x - x_0}{t - 0}$$

where x is the object's position at time t . Equating this expression for $\bar{v}$ with the expression in Equation 2.8 gives

$$x = x_0 + \bar{v}t = x_0 + \frac{1}{2}(v_0 + v)t \quad (2.9)$$

But we already found the instantaneous velocity v that appears in this expression; it's given by Equation 2.7. Substituting and simplifying then give the position as a function of time:

x_0 is the initial position. It's plotted as a horizontal line in Fig. 2.9. This term results from the constant acceleration a . It gives a quadratic increase in position, as described by the curve in Fig. 2.9.

$$x = x_0 + v_0t + \frac{1}{2}at^2 \quad (\text{for constant acceleration only}) \quad (2.10)$$

Position x as a function of time when acceleration a is constant v_0 is the initial velocity. The term v_0t describes a linear change in position, as described by the diagonal line in Fig. 2.9. Remember that this equation is only for the special case of constant acceleration!

Does Equation 2.10 make sense? With no acceleration ($a = 0$), position would increase linearly with time, at a rate given by the initial velocity v_0 . With constant acceleration, the additional term $\frac{1}{2}at^2$ describes the effect of the ever-changing velocity; time is squared because the longer the object travels, the faster it moves, so the more distance it covers in a given time. Figure 2.9 shows the meaning of the terms in Equation 2.10.

How much runway do I need to land a jetliner, given touchdown speed and a constant acceleration? A question like this involves position, velocity, and acceleration without explicit mention of time. So we solve Equation 2.7 for time, $t = (v - v_0)/a$, and substitute this expression for t in Equation 2.9 to write

$$x - x_0 = \frac{1}{2} \frac{(v_0 + v)(v - v_0)}{a}$$

or, since $(a + b)(a - b) = a^2 - b^2$,

$$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0) \quad (2.11)$$

Equations 2.7, 2.9, 2.10, and 2.11 link all possible combinations of position, velocity, and acceleration for motion with constant acceleration. We summarize them in Table 2.1 and remind you that they apply *only* in the case of constant acceleration.

Although we derived these equations algebraically, we could instead have used calculus. Problem 93 takes this approach in getting from Equation 2.7 to Equation 2.10.

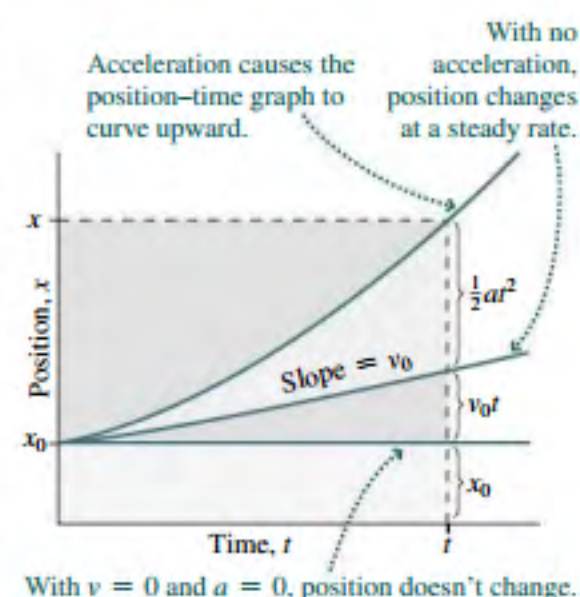


FIGURE 2.9 Meaning of the terms in Equation 2.10.

Table 2.1 Equations of Motion for Constant Acceleration

Equation	Contains	Number
$v = v_0 + at$	v, a, t ; no x	2.7
$x = x_0 + \frac{1}{2}(v_0 + v)t$	x, v, t ; no a	2.9
$x = x_0 + v_0t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$	x, a, t ; no v	2.10
$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0)$	x, v, a ; no t	2.11

Using the Equations of Motion

The equations in Table 2.1 fully describe motion under constant acceleration. Don't regard them as separate laws, but recognize them as complementary descriptions of a single underlying phenomenon—one-dimensional motion with *constant acceleration*. Having several equations provides convenient starting points for approaching problems. Don't memorize these equations, but grow familiar with them as you work problems. We now offer a strategy for solving problems about one-dimensional motion with *constant acceleration* using these equations.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 2.1

Motion with Constant Acceleration

INTERPRET Interpret the problem to be sure it asks about motion with *constant acceleration*. Next, identify the object(s) whose motion you're interested in.

DEVELOP Draw a diagram with appropriate labels, and choose a coordinate system. For instance, sketch the initial and final physical situations, or draw a position-versus-time graph. Then determine which equations of motion from Table 2.1 contain the quantities you're given and will be easiest to solve for the unknown(s).

EVALUATE Solve the equations in symbolic form and then evaluate numerical quantities.

ASSESS Does your answer make sense? Are the units correct? Do the numbers sound reasonable? What happens in special cases—for example, when a distance, velocity, acceleration, or time becomes very large or very small?

The next two examples are typical of problems involving constant acceleration. Example 2.3 is a straightforward application of the equations we've just derived to a single object. Example 2.4 involves two objects, in which case we need to write equations describing the motions of both objects.

EXAMPLE 2.3

Motion with Constant Acceleration: Landing a Jetliner

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A jetliner touches down at 270 km/h. The plane then decelerates (i.e., undergoes acceleration directed opposite its velocity) at 4.5 m/s^2 . What's the minimum runway length on which this aircraft can land?

INTERPRET We interpret this as being a problem about one-dimensional motion with constant acceleration and identify the airplane as the object of interest.

DEVELOP We determine that Equation 2.11, $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0)$, relates distance, velocity, and acceleration; so our plan is to solve that equation for the minimum runway length. We want the airplane to come to a stop, so the final velocity v is 0, and v_0 is the initial touchdown velocity. If x_0 is the touchdown point, then the quantity $x - x_0$ is the distance we're interested in; we'll call this Δx .

EVALUATE Setting $v = 0$ and solving Equation 2.11 then give

$$\Delta x = \frac{-v_0^2}{2a} = \frac{-[(270 \text{ km/h})(1000 \text{ m/km})(1/3600 \text{ h/s})]^2}{(2)(-4.5 \text{ m/s}^2)} = 625 \text{ m}$$

Note that we used a negative value for the acceleration because the plane's acceleration is directed opposite its velocity—which we chose as the positive x -direction. We also converted the speed to m/s for compatibility with the SI units given for acceleration.

ASSESS Make sense? That 625 m is just over one-third of a mile, which seems a bit short. However, this is an absolute minimum with no margin of safety. For full-sized jetliners, the standard for minimum landing runway length is about 5000 feet or 1.5 km.



BE CAREFUL WITH MIXED UNITS Frequently, problems are stated in units other than SI. Although it's possible to work consistently in other units, when in doubt, convert to SI. In this problem, the acceleration is originally in SI units but the velocity isn't—a sure indication of the need for conversion.

EXAMPLE 2.4

Motion with Two Objects: Speed Trap!

A speeding motorist zooms through a 50 km/h zone at 75 km/h (that's 21 m/s) without noticing a stationary police car. The police officer immediately heads after the speeder, accelerating at 2.5 m/s^2 . When the officer catches up to the speeder, how far down the road are they, and how fast is the police car going?

INTERPRET We interpret this as *two* problems about one-dimensional motion with constant acceleration. We identify the objects in question as the speeding car and the police car. Their motions are related because we're interested in the point where the two coincide.

DEVELOP It's helpful to draw a sketch showing qualitatively the position-versus-time graphs for the two cars. Since the speeding car moves with constant speed, its graph is a straight line. The police car is accelerating from rest, so its graph starts flat and gets increasingly steeper. Our sketch in Fig. 2.10 shows clearly the point we're interested

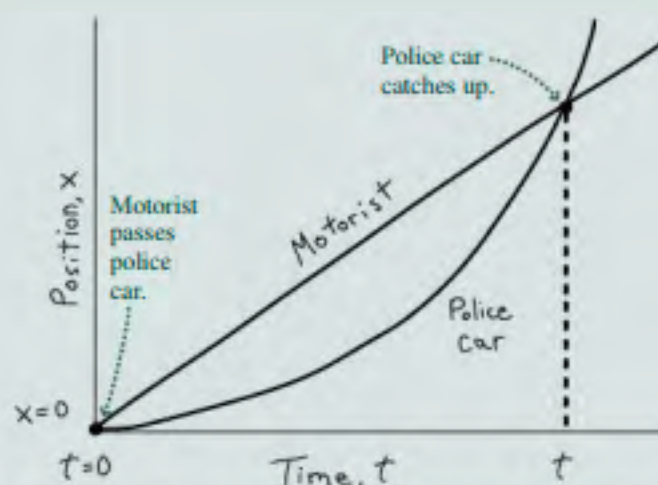


FIGURE 2.10 Our sketch of position versus time for the cars in Example 2.4.

in, when the two cars coincide for the second time. Equation 2.10, $x = x_0 + v_0t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$, gives position versus time with constant acceleration. Our plan is (1) to write versions of this equation specialized to each car, (2) to equate the resulting position expressions to find the time when the cars coincide, and (3) to find the corresponding position and the police car's velocity. For the latter we'll use Equation 2.7, $v = v_0 + at$.

EVALUATE Let's take the origin to be the point where the speeder passes the police car and $t = 0$ to be the corresponding time, as marked in Fig. 2.10. Then $x_0 = 0$ in Equation 2.10 for both cars, while the speeder has no acceleration and the police car has no initial velocity. Thus our two versions of Equation 2.10 are

$$x_s = v_{s0}t \text{ (speeder)} \quad \text{and} \quad x_p = \frac{1}{2}a_pt^2 \text{ (police car)}$$

Equating x_s and x_p tells when the speeder and the police car are at the same place, so we write $v_{s0}t = \frac{1}{2}a_pt^2$. This equation is satisfied when $t = 0$ or $t = 2v_{s0}/a_p$. Why two answers? We asked for *any* times when the two cars are in the same place. That includes the initial encounter at

$t = 0$ as well as the later time $t = 2v_{s0}/a_p$ when the police car catches the speeder; both points are shown on our sketch. *Where* does this occur? We can evaluate using $t = 2v_{s0}/a_p$ in the speeder's equation:

$$x_s = v_{s0}t = v_{s0} \frac{2v_{s0}}{a_p} = \frac{2v_{s0}^2}{a_p} = \frac{(2)(21 \text{ m/s})^2}{2.5 \text{ m/s}^2} = 350 \text{ m}$$

Equation 2.7 then gives the police car's speed at this time:

$$v_p = a_pt = a_p \frac{2v_{s0}}{a_p} = 2v_{s0} = 150 \text{ km/h}$$

ASSESS Make sense? As Fig. 2.10 shows, the police car starts from rest and undergoes constant acceleration, so it has to be going faster at the point where the two cars meet. In fact, it's going twice as fast—again, as in Example 2.2, that's because the police car's position depends quadratically on time. That quadratic dependence also tells us that the police car's position-versus-time graph in Fig. 2.10 is a parabola.

GOT IT?

2.4 The police car in Example 2.4 starts with zero velocity and is going at twice the car's velocity when it catches up to the car. So at some intermediate instant it must be going at the same velocity as the car. Is that instant (a) halfway between the times when the two cars coincide, (b) closer to the time when the speeder passes the stationary police car, or (c) closer to the time when the police car catches the speeder?

2.5 The Acceleration of Gravity

LO 2.4 Describe how gravity near Earth's surface provides an example of constant acceleration.

Drop an object, and it falls at an increasing rate, accelerating because of gravity (Fig. 2.11). The acceleration is constant for objects falling near Earth's surface, and furthermore it has the same value for all objects. This value, the **acceleration of gravity**, is designated g and is approximately 9.8 m/s^2 near Earth's surface.

The acceleration of gravity applies strictly only in **free fall**—motion under the influence of gravity alone. Air resistance, in particular, may dramatically alter the motion, giving the false impression that gravity acts differently on lighter and heavier objects. As early as the year 1600, Galileo is reputed to have shown that all objects have the same acceleration by dropping objects off the Leaning Tower of Pisa. Astronauts have verified that a feather and a hammer fall with the same acceleration on the airless Moon—although that acceleration is less than on Earth.

Although g is approximately constant near Earth's surface, it varies slightly with latitude and even local geology. The variation with altitude becomes substantial over distances of tens to hundreds of kilometers. But nearer Earth's surface it's a good approximation to take g as strictly constant. Then an object in free fall undergoes constant acceleration, and the equations of Table 2.1 apply. In working gravitational problems, we usually replace x with y to designate the vertical direction. If we make the arbitrary but common choice that the upward direction is positive, then acceleration a becomes $-g$ because the acceleration is downward.



FIGURE 2.11 Strobe photo of a falling ball. Successive images are farther apart, showing that the ball is accelerating.

EXAMPLE 2.5**Constant Acceleration Due to Gravity: Cliff Diving***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A diver drops from a 10-m-high cliff. At what speed does he enter the water, and how long is he in the air?

INTERPRET This is a case of constant acceleration due to gravity, and the diver is the object of interest. The diver drops a known distance starting from rest, and we want to know the speed and time when he hits the water.

DEVELOP Figure 2.12 is a sketch showing what the diver's position versus time should look like. We've incorporated what we know: the initial position 10 m above the water, the start from rest, and the downward acceleration that results in a parabolic position-versus-time curve. Given the dive height, Equation 2.11 determines the speed v . Following our newly adopted convention that y designates the vertical direction, we write Equation 2.11 as $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(y - y_0)$. Since the diver starts from rest, $v_0 = 0$ and the equation becomes $v^2 = -2g(y - y_0)$. So our plan is first to solve for the speed at the water, then use Equation 2.7, $v = v_0 + at$, to get the time.

EVALUATE Our sketch shows that we've chosen $y = 0$ at the water, so $y_0 = 10$ m and Equation 2.11 gives

$$|v| = \sqrt{-2g(y - y_0)} = \sqrt{(-2)(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(0 \text{ m} - 10 \text{ m})} = 14 \text{ m/s}$$

This is the magnitude of the velocity, hence the absolute value sign; the actual value is $v = -14$ m/s, with the minus sign indicating downward motion. Knowing the initial and final velocities, we use Equation 2.7 to find how long the dive takes. Solving that equation for t gives

$$t = \frac{v_0 - v}{g} = \frac{0 \text{ m/s} - (-14 \text{ m/s})}{9.8 \text{ m/s}^2} = 1.4 \text{ s}$$

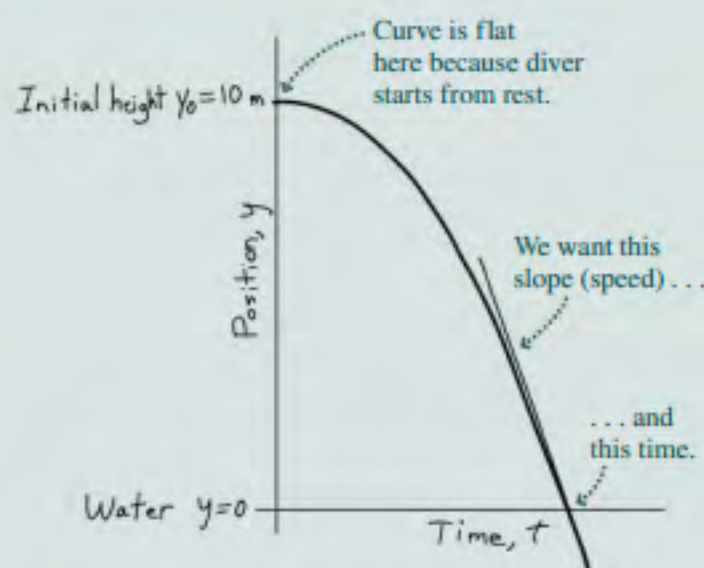


FIGURE 2.12 Our sketch for Example 2.5.

Note the careful attention to signs here; we wrote v with its negative sign and used $a = -g$ in Equation 2.7 because we defined downward to be the negative direction in our coordinate system.

ASSESS Make sense? Our expression for v gives a higher speed with a greater acceleration or a greater distance $y - y_0$ —both as expected. Our approach here isn't the only one possible; we could also have found the time by solving Equation 2.10 and then evaluating the speed using Equation 2.7.

In Example 2.5 the diver was moving downward, and the downward gravitational acceleration steadily increased his speed. But, as Conceptual Example 2.1 suggested, the acceleration of gravity is downward regardless of an object's motion. Throw a ball straight up, and it's accelerating *downward* even while moving *upward*. Since velocity and acceleration are in opposite directions, the ball slows until it reaches its peak, then pauses instantaneously, and then gains speed as it falls. All the while its acceleration is 9.8 m/s^2 downward.

EXAMPLE 2.6**Constant Acceleration Due to Gravity: Tossing a Ball**

You toss a ball straight up at 7.3 m/s ; it leaves your hand at 1.5 m above the floor. Find when it hits the floor, the maximum height it reaches, and its speed when it passes your hand on the way down.

INTERPRET We have constant acceleration due to gravity, and here the object of interest is the ball. We want to find time, height, and speed.

DEVELOP The ball starts by going up, eventually comes to a stop, and then heads downward. Figure 2.13 is a sketch of the height versus time that we expect, showing what we know and the three quantities we're after. Equation 2.10, $y = y_0 + v_0t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$, determines position

as a function of time, so our plan is to use that equation to find the time the ball hits the floor (again, we've replaced horizontal position x with height y in Equation 2.10). Then we can use Equation 2.11, $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(y - y_0)$, to find the height at which $v = 0$ —that is, the peak height. Finally, Equation 2.11 will also give us the speed at any height, letting us answer the question about the speed when the ball passes the height of 1.5 m on its way down.

EVALUATE Our sketch shows that we've taken $y = 0$ at the floor; so when the ball is at the floor, Equation 2.10 becomes $0 = y_0 + v_0t - \frac{1}{2}gt^2$, which we can solve for t using the quadratic formula [Appendix A; $t = (v_0 \pm \sqrt{v_0^2 + 2y_0g})/g$]. Here v_0 is the

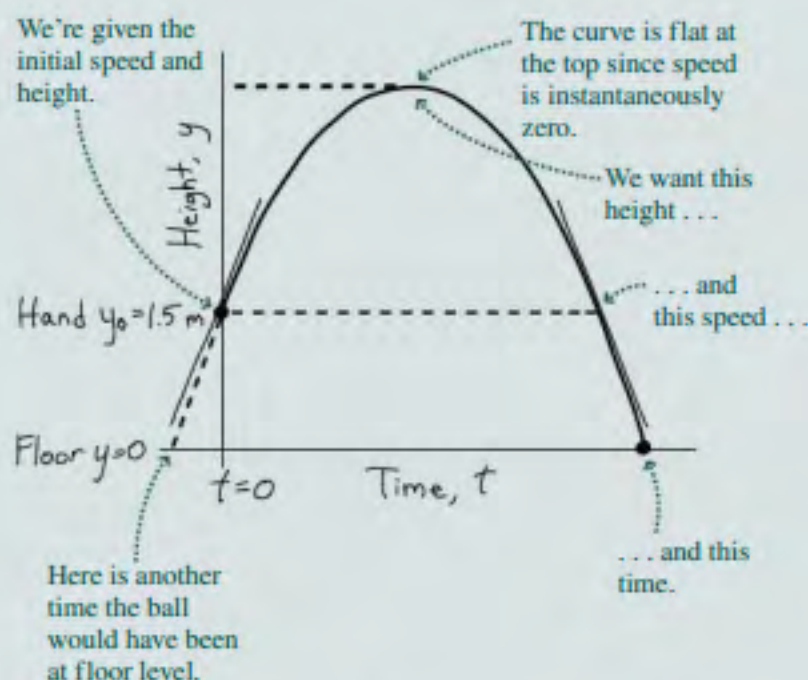


FIGURE 2.13 Our sketch for Example 2.6.

initial velocity, 7.3 m/s; it's positive because the motion is initially upward. The initial position is the hand height, so $y_0 = 1.5$ m, and g of course is 9.8 m/s^2 (we accounted for the downward acceleration by putting $a = -g$ in Equation 2.10). Putting in these numbers gives $t = 1.7$ s or -0.18 s; the answer we want is 1.7 s. At the peak of its flight, the ball's velocity is instantaneously zero because it's

moving neither up nor down. So we set $v^2 = 0$ in Equation 2.11 to get $0 = v_0^2 - 2g(y - y_0)$. Solving for y then gives the peak height:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{v_0^2}{2g} = 1.5 \text{ m} + \frac{(7.3 \text{ m/s})^2}{(2)(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)} = 4.2 \text{ m}$$

To find the speed when the ball reaches 1.5 m on the way down, we set $y = y_0$ in Equation 2.11. The result is $v^2 = v_0^2$, so $v = \pm v_0$ or ± 7.3 m/s. Once again, there are two answers. The equation has given us *all* the velocities the ball has at 1.5 m—including the initial upward velocity and the later downward velocity. We've shown here that an upward-thrown object returns to its initial height with the same speed it had initially.

ASSESS Make sense? With no air resistance to sap the ball of its energy, it seems reasonable that the ball comes back down with the same speed—a fact we'll explore further when we introduce energy conservation in Chapter 7. But why are there two answers for time and velocity? Equation 2.10 doesn't "know" about your hand or the floor; it "assumes" the ball has always been undergoing downward acceleration g . We asked of Equation 2.10 when the ball would be at $y = 0$. The second answer, 1.7 s, was the one we wanted. But if the ball had always been in free fall, it would also have been on the floor 0.18 s earlier, heading upward. That's the meaning of the other answer, -0.18 s, as we've indicated on our sketch. Similarly, Equation 2.11 gave us all the velocities the ball had at a height of 1.5 m, including both the initial upward velocity and the later downward velocity.



MULTIPLE ANSWERS Frequently the mathematics of a problem gives more than one answer. Think about what each answer means before discarding it! Sometimes an answer isn't consistent with the physical assumptions of the problem, but other times all answers are meaningful even if they aren't all what you're looking for.

GOT IT?

2.5 Standing on a roof, you simultaneously throw one ball straight up and drop another from rest. Which hits the ground first? Which hits the ground moving faster?

2.6 When Acceleration Isn't Constant

LO 2.5 Use calculus to deal with nonconstant acceleration.

Sections 2.4 and 2.5 both dealt with *constant acceleration*. Fortunately, there are many important applications, such as situations involving gravity near Earth's surface, where acceleration *is* constant. But when it isn't, then the equations listed in Table 2.1 don't apply. In Chapter 3 you'll see that acceleration can vary in magnitude, direction, or both. In the one-dimensional situations of the current chapter, a nonconstant acceleration a would be specified by giving a as a function of time t : $a(t)$. If you've already studied integral calculus, then you know that integration is the opposite of differentiation. Since acceleration is the derivative of velocity, you get from acceleration to velocity by integration; from there you can get to position by integrating again. Mathematically, we express these relations as

$$v(t) = \int a(t) dt \quad (2.12)$$

$$x(t) = \int v(t) dt \quad (2.13)$$

APPLICATION Keeping Time

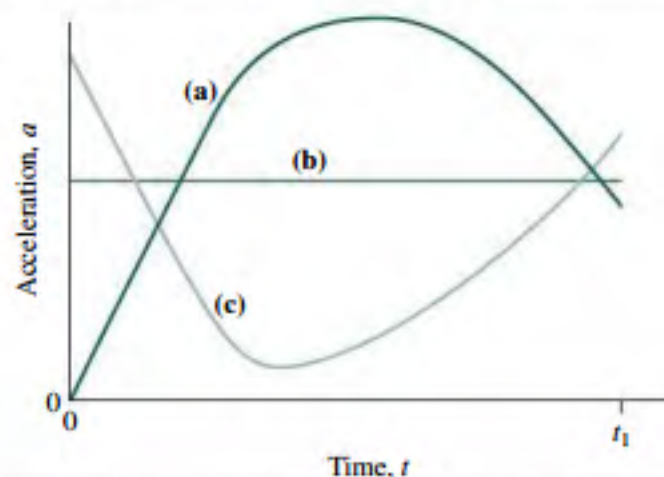
NIST-F1, shown here with its developers, is one of two atomic clocks that set the United States' standard of time. The clock is so accurate that it won't gain or lose more than a second in 100 million years! It gets its remarkable accuracy by monitoring a super-cold clump of freely falling cesium atoms for what is, in this context, a long time period of about 1 s. The atom clump is put in free fall by a more sophisticated version of the ball toss in Example 2.6. In the NIST-F1 clock, laser beams gently "toss" the ball of atoms upward with a speed that gives it an up-and-down travel time of about 1 s (see Problem 72). For this reason NIST-F1 is called an atomic fountain clock. In the photo you can see the clock's towerlike structure that accommodates this atomic fountain.



These results don't fully determine v and x ; you also need to know the *initial conditions* (usually, the values at time $t = 0$); these provide what are called in calculus the constants of integration. In Problem 93, you can evaluate the integral in Equation 2.13 for the case of constant acceleration, giving an alternate derivation of Equations 2.7 and 2.10. Problems 88, 94, and 95 challenge you to use integral calculus to find an object's position in the case of nonconstant accelerations, while Problem 96 explores the case of an exponentially decreasing acceleration.

GOT IT?

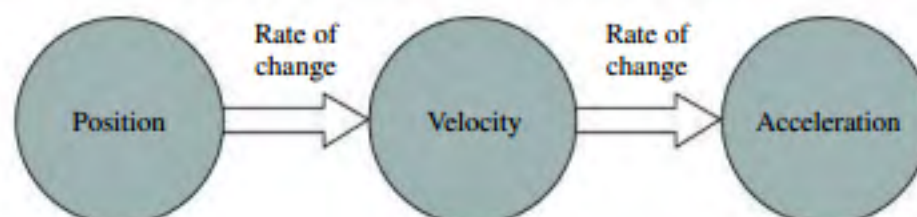
2.6 The graph shows acceleration versus time for three different objects, all of which start at rest from the same position. Only object (b) undergoes constant acceleration. Which object is going fastest at the time t_1 ?



Chapter 2 Summary

Big Idea

The big ideas here are those of **kinematics**—the study of motion without regard to its cause. **Position**, **velocity**, and **acceleration** are the quantities that characterize motion:



Key Concepts and Equations

Average velocity and acceleration involve changes in position and velocity, respectively, occurring over a time interval Δt :

$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t}$$

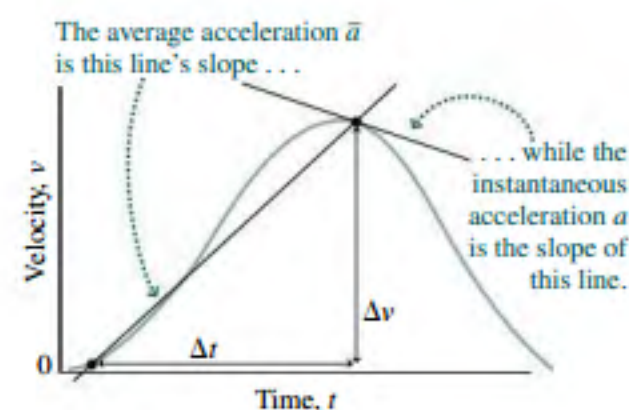
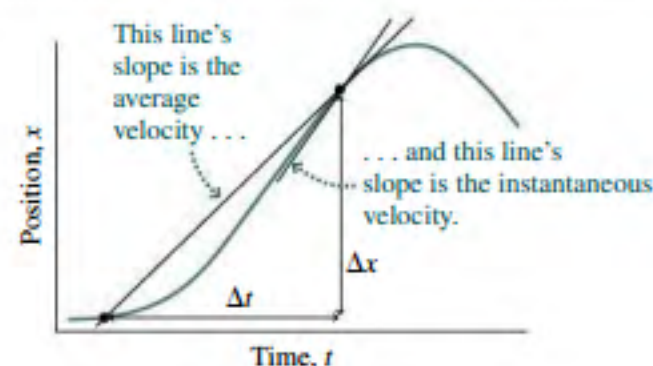
$$\bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$$

Here Δx is the **displacement**, or change in position, and Δv is the change in velocity.

Instantaneous values are the limits of infinitesimally small time intervals and are given by calculus as the time derivatives of position and velocity:

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt}$$

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt}$$



Applications

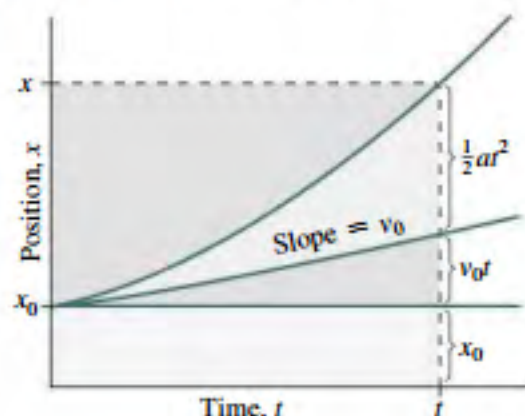
Constant acceleration is a special case that yields simple equations describing one-dimensional motion:

$$v = v_0 + at$$

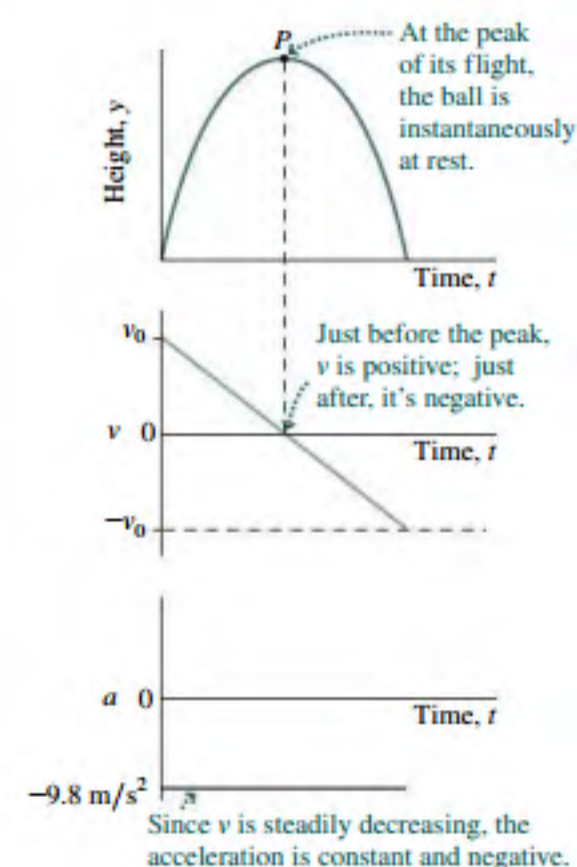
$$x = x_0 + v_0t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$$

$$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0)$$

These equations apply only in the case of constant acceleration.



An important example is the acceleration of gravity, essentially constant near Earth's surface, with magnitude approximately 9.8 m/s^2 .



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **Comp** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter, you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 2.1 Define fundamental motion concepts: position, velocity, and acceleration.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 2.2, 2.5, 2.6; Exercises 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14, 2.15, 2.16, 2.20, 2.21, 2.22, 2.23, Problems 2.49, 2.51, 2.52</i></p> <p>LO 2.2 Distinguish instantaneous from average velocity and acceleration.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 2.1, 2.4, 2.8, 2.9, 2.10; Exercises 2.17, 2.18, 2.19, 2.24, 2.25; Problems 2.50, 2.83</i></p> <p>LO 2.3 Determine velocity and position when acceleration is constant.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Question 2.7; Exercises 2.26,</i></p> | <p><i>2.27, 2.28, 2.30, 2.31, 2.32, 2.33, 2.34; Problems 2.55, 2.56, 2.57, 2.58, 2.61, 2.62, 2.63, 2.64, 2.65, 2.66, 2.67, 2.68, 2.69, 2.70, 2.81, 2.87, 2.93</i></p> <p>LO 2.4 Describe how gravity near Earth's surface provides an example of constant acceleration.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Question 2.7; Exercises 2.29, 2.35, 2.36, 2.37, 2.38, 2.39, 2.40; Problems 2.59, 2.60, 2.71, 2.72, 2.73, 2.74, 2.75, 2.76, 2.77, 2.78, 2.79, 2.80, 2.82, 2.84, 2.85, 2.86, 2.89, 2.90, 2.91, 2.92, 2.97</i></p> <p>LO 2.5 Use calculus to deal with nonconstant acceleration.
 <i>Problems 2.53, 2.54, 2.88, 2.94, 2.95, 2.96</i></p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- Under what conditions are average and instantaneous velocity equal?
- Does a speedometer measure speed or velocity?
- You check your odometer at the beginning of a day's driving and again at the end. Under what conditions would the difference between the two readings represent your displacement?
- Consider two possible definitions of average speed: (a) the average of the values of the instantaneous speed over a time interval and (b) the magnitude of the average velocity. Are these definitions equivalent? Give two examples to demonstrate your conclusion.
- Is it possible to be at position $x = 0$ and still be moving?
- Are the velocity and acceleration of a body always in the same direction?
- You and your friend are throwing two identical balls straight up in the air. What are the parameters that determine the heights up to which the balls reach? What are the velocities of the balls when they reach the maximum height?
- In which of the velocity-versus-time graphs shown in Fig. 2.14 would the average velocity over the interval shown equal the average of the velocities at the ends of the interval?

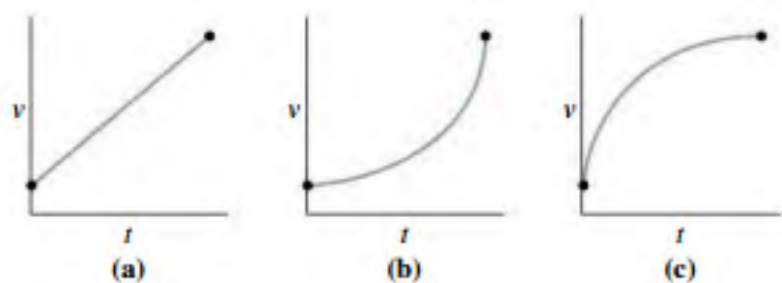


FIGURE 2.14 For Thought and Discussion 8

9. If you travel in a straight line at 50 km/h for 1 h and at 100 km/h for another hour, is your average velocity 75 km/h? If not, is it more or less?
10. If you travel in a straight line at 50 km/h for 50 km and then at 100 km/h for another 50 km, is your average velocity 75 km/h? If not, is it more or less?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 2.1 Average Motion

11. In 2009, Usain Bolt of Jamaica set a world record in the 100-m dash with a time of 9.58 s. What was his average speed?
12. Earth's diameter is approximately 12,700 kilometers. Estimate the speed of a point on Earth's equator as it's carried around with Earth's rotation.
13. Starting from home, you bicycle 24 km north in 2.5 h and then turn around and pedal straight home in 1.5 h. What are your (a) displacement at the end of the first 2.5 h, (b) average velocity over the first 2.5 h, (c) average velocity for the homeward leg of the trip, (d) displacement for the entire trip, and (e) average velocity for the entire trip?
14. On November 5, 2018, NASA's Voyager 2 spacecraft became the second human-made object to leave the solar system and enter interstellar space. It was then about 18 billion kilometers from Earth. How long did it take Voyager 2's radio signals, traveling at the speed of light, to reach Earth from this distance?
15. Alistair Brownlee of Team Great Britain won the 2016 Olympic triathlon, completing the 1.5-km swim, 40-km bicycle ride, and 10-km run in 1 h, 45 min, 1 s. What was his average speed?
16. What is the conversion factor from meters per second to kilometers per hour?

Section 2.2 Instantaneous Velocity

17. On a single graph, plot distance versus time for the first two trips from Houston to Des Moines described on page 33. For each trip, identify graphically the average velocity and, for each segment of the trip, the instantaneous velocity.
18. For the motion plotted in Fig. 2.15, estimate (a) the greatest velocity in the positive x -direction, (b) the greatest velocity in the negative x -direction, (c) any times when the object is instantaneously at rest, and (d) the average velocity over the interval shown.

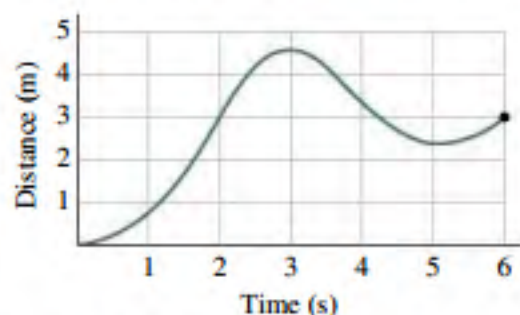


FIGURE 2.15 Exercise 18

19. A model rocket is launched straight upward. Its altitude y as a function of time is given by $y = bt - ct^2$, where

$b = 80 \text{ m/s}$, $c = 4.9 \text{ m/s}^2$, t is the time in seconds, and y is in meters. (a) Use differentiation to find a general expression for the rocket's velocity as a function of time. (b) When is the velocity zero?

Section 2.3 Acceleration

20. You're driving at the 50 km/h speed limit when you spot a sign showing a speed-limit increase to 80 km/h. If it takes 15.7 s to reach the new speed limit, what's your average acceleration? Express it in m/s^2 .
21. Starting from rest, a subway train first accelerates to 25 m/s and then brakes. Forty-eight seconds after starting, it's moving at 18 m/s. What's its average acceleration in this 48-s interval?
22. NASA's *New Horizons* spacecraft was launched in 2006 and flew past Pluto in 2015. *New Horizons*' solid-fuel booster rocket gave it an average acceleration of 6.16 m/s^2 , bringing it to a speed of 16.3 km/s before the booster dropped away. How long did this acceleration last?
23. An egg drops from a second-story window, taking 1.12 s to fall and reaching 11.0 m/s just before hitting the ground. On contact, the egg stops completely in 0.133 s. Calculate the magnitude of its average acceleration (a) while falling and (b) while stopping.
24. An airplane's takeoff speed is 320 km/h. If its average acceleration is 2.9 m/s^2 , how much time is it accelerating down the runway before it lifts off?
25. ThrustSSC, the world's first supersonic car, accelerates from rest to 1000 km/h in 16 s. What's its acceleration?

Section 2.4 Constant Acceleration

26. You're driving at 65 km/h when you apply constant acceleration to pass another car. Twelve seconds later, you're doing 85 km/h. How far did you go in this time?
27. Differentiate both sides of Equation 2.10, and show that you get Equation 2.7.
28. A 2016 study found that snakes' heads, when striking, undergo average accelerations of about 40 m/s^2 , for a period of about 50 ms. Using these values, find (a) the maximum speed of the snake's head and (b) the distance the head travels during the strike. Give your answers to one significant figure.
29. A rocket starts from rest and rises with constant acceleration to a height h , at which point it's rising at speed v . Find expressions for (a) the rocket's acceleration and (b) the time it takes to reach height h .
30. Starting from rest, a car accelerates at a constant rate, reaching 88 km/h in 12 s. Find (a) its acceleration and (b) how far it goes in this time.
31. A car initially moving at 90 km/h begins slowing at a constant rate 40 m short of a stoplight. If the car comes to a full stop just at the light, what is the magnitude of its acceleration?
32. In a medical X-ray tube, electrons are accelerated to a velocity of 10^8 m/s and then slammed into a tungsten target. As they stop, the electrons' rapid acceleration produces X rays. Given that it takes an electron on the order of 1 ns to stop, estimate the distance it moves while stopping.
33. California's Bay Area Rapid Transit System (BART) uses an automatic braking system triggered by earthquake warnings. The system is designed to prevent disastrous accidents involving trains traveling at a maximum of 112 km/h and carrying a total of some 45,000 passengers at rush hour. If it takes a train 24 s to brake to a stop, how much advance warning of an earthquake is needed to bring a 112-km/h train to a reasonably safe speed of 42 km/h when the earthquake strikes?
34. You're driving at speed v_0 when you spot a stationary moose on the road, a distance d ahead. Find an expression for the magnitude of the acceleration you need if you're to stop before hitting the moose.

Section 2.5 The Acceleration of Gravity

35. A delivery drone drops a package onto a customer's porch. If the package can withstand a maximum impact speed of 8.00 m/s, what's the maximum height from which the drone can drop the package?
36. Your friend is sitting 5.1 m above you on a tree branch. How fast should you throw an apple so it just reaches her?
37. A model rocket leaves the ground, heading straight up with speed v . Find expressions for (a) its maximum altitude and (b) its speed when it's at half the maximum altitude.
38. A foul ball leaves the bat going straight up at 29 m/s. (a) How high does it rise? (b) How long is it in the air? Neglect the distance between bat and ground.
39. A Frisbee is lodged in a tree 6.4 m above the ground. A rock thrown from below must be going at least 3 m/s to dislodge the Frisbee. How fast must such a rock be thrown upward if it leaves the thrower's hand 1.3 m above the ground?
40. Space pirates kidnap an earthling and hold him on one of the solar system's planets. With nothing else to do, the prisoner amuses himself by dropping his watch from eye level (170 cm) to the floor. He observes that the watch takes 0.95 s to fall. On what planet is he being held? (*Hint:* Consult Appendix E.)

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

41. **Example 2.3:** A jetliner touches down at 288 km/h. The plane then decelerates (i.e., undergoes acceleration directed opposite to its velocity) at 3.38 m/s^2 . What's the minimum runway length on which this plane can land?
42. **Example 2.3:** A jetliner touches down at 275 km/h on a 1.2-km-long runway. What's the minimum safe value for the magnitude of its acceleration as it slows to a stop?
43. **Example 2.3:** You're driving at 45.0 km/h when you spot a moose in the road ahead. If your car is capable of slowing at 0.766 m/s^2 , how far from the moose do you need to hit the brakes?
44. **Example 2.3:** You're driving at 45.0 km/h when you spot a moose in the road, 102 m ahead. What's the minimum value for the magnitude of your braking acceleration if you're to avoid hitting the moose?
45. **Example 2.5:** A diver drops from a 9.21-m high cliff. (a) At what speed does she enter the water? and (b) how long is she in the air?
46. **Example 2.5:** A diver drops from a cliff, and enters the water 1.05 s later. Find (a) the cliff height and (b) the speed with the diver enters the water.
47. **Example 2.5:** A delivery drone drops a well-cushioned package from a height of 12.5 m onto a customer's porch. (a) At what speed does the package hit the porch? and (b) how long is it in the air?
48. **Example 2.5:** An online retailer makes deliveries by drone, and packages the goods so they can withstand an impact at up to 10.0 m/s. (a) What's the maximum height from which the drone can safely drop a package? and (b) how long would a package dropped from this height be in the air?

Problems

49. You allow 45 min to drive 30 km to the airport, but you're caught in heavy traffic and average only 15 km/h for the first 20 min. What must your average speed be on the rest of the trip if you're to catch your flight?
50. You travel one-third of the distance to your destination at speed $2v$, and the remaining two-thirds at speed v . Find an expression for your average speed in terms of v .
51. You can run 9.0 m/s, 20% faster than your brother. How much head start should you give him in order to have a tie race over 100 m?
52. A plane leaves London for Singapore, 10,886 km away. With a strong tailwind, its speed is 1040 km/h. At the same time, a second plane leaves Singapore for London. Flying into the wind, it makes only 765 km/h. When and where do the two planes pass each other?
53. An object's position is given by $x = bt + ct^3$, where $b = 1.50 \text{ m/s}$, $c = 0.640 \text{ m/s}^3$, and t is time in seconds. To study the limiting process leading to the instantaneous velocity, calculate the object's average velocity over time intervals from (a) 1.00 s to 3.00 s, (b) 1.50 s to 2.50 s, and (c) 1.95 s to 2.05 s. (d) Find the instantaneous velocity as a function of time by differentiating, and compare its value at 2 s with your average velocities.
54. An object's position as a function of time t is given by $x = bt^4$, with b a constant. Find an expression for the instantaneous velocity, and show that the average velocity over the interval from $t = 0$ to any time t is one-fourth of the instantaneous velocity at t .
55. In a 400-m drag race, two cars start at the same time, and each maintains a constant acceleration. The winner's acceleration is 4.25 m/s^2 , and the winner reaches the finish line 248 ms before the loser does. By what distance is the loser behind when the winner reaches the finish line?
56. Squaring Equation 2.7 gives an expression for v^2 . Equation 2.11 also gives an expression for v^2 . Equate the two expressions, and show that the resulting equation reduces to Equation 2.10.
57. During the complicated sequence that landed the rover *Curiosity* on Mars in 2012, the spacecraft reached an altitude of 142 m above the Martian surface, moving vertically downward at 32.0 m/s. It then entered a so-called constant deceleration (CD) phase, during which its velocity decreased steadily to 0.75 m/s while it dropped to an altitude of 23 m. What was the magnitude of the spacecraft's acceleration during this CD phase?
58. **DATA** The position of a car in a drag race is measured each second, and the results are tabulated below.

Time t (s)	0	1	2	3	4	5
Position x (m)	0	1.7	6.2	17	24	40

Assuming the acceleration is approximately constant, plot position versus a quantity that should make the graph a straight line. Fit a line to the data, and from it determine the approximate acceleration.

59. A fireworks rocket explodes at a height of 82.0 m, producing fragments with velocities ranging from 7.68 m/s downward to 16.7 m/s upward. Over what time interval are fragments hitting the ground?
60. **BIO** The muscles in a grasshopper's legs can propel the insect upward at 3.0 m/s. How high can the grasshopper jump?
61. On packed snow, computerized antilock brakes can reduce a car's stopping distance by 51%. By what percentage is the stopping time reduced?

62. A particle leaves its initial position x_0 at time $t = 0$, moving in the positive x -direction with speed v_0 but undergoing acceleration of magnitude a in the negative x -direction. Find expressions for (a) the time when it returns to x_0 and (b) its speed when it passes that point.
63. A hockey puck moving at 30 m/s slams through a wall of snow 38 cm thick. It emerges moving at 18 m/s. Assuming constant acceleration, find (a) the time the puck spends in the snow and (b) the thickness of a snow wall that would stop the puck entirely.
64. A subway train is stalled in a station. A second train approaches the station at 61.2 km/h and brakes to a halt in 37.6 s, stopping just 1.35 m short of the stalled train. What was the distance between the two trains at the instant the moving train began to brake?
65. A jetliner touches down at 270 km/h and comes to a halt 26 s later. What's the shortest runway on which this aircraft can land?
66. A motorist suddenly notices a stalled car and slams on the brakes, slowing at 6.3 m/s^2 . Unfortunately, this isn't enough, and a collision ensues. From the damage sustained, police estimate that the car was going 18 km/h at the time of the collision. They also measure skid marks 34 m long. (a) How fast was the motorist going when the brakes were first applied? (b) How much time elapsed from the initial braking to the collision?
67. A racing car undergoing constant acceleration covers 140 m in 3.6 s. (a) If it's moving at 53 m/s at the end of this interval, what was its speed at the beginning of the interval? (b) How far did it travel from rest to the end of the 140-m distance?
68. The maximum braking acceleration of a car on a dry road is about 8 m/s^2 . If two cars move head-on toward each other at 88 km/h (55 mi/h), and their drivers brake when they're 85 m apart, will they collide? If so, at what relative speed? If not, how far apart will they be when they stop? Plot distance versus time for both cars on a single graph.
69. After 40 minutes of running, at the 8-km point in a 9-km race, you find yourself 140 m behind the leader and moving at the same speed. What should your acceleration be if you're to catch up by the finish line? Assume that the leader maintains constant speed.
70. You're speeding at 85 km/h when you notice that you're only 10 m behind the car in front of you, which is moving at the legal speed limit of 60 km/h. You slam on your brakes, and your car slows at the rate of 4.2 m/s^2 . Assuming the other car continues at constant speed, will you collide? If so, at what relative speed? If not, what will be the distance between the cars at their closest approach?
71. Airbags cushioned the Mars rover *Spirit's* landing, and the rover bounced some 15 m vertically after its first impact. Assuming no loss of speed at contact with the Martian surface, what was *Spirit's* impact speed?
72. Calculate the speed with which cesium atoms must be "tossed" in the NIST-F1 atomic clock so that their up-and-down travel time is 1.0 s. (See the Application on page 43.)
73. A falling object travels one-fourth of its total distance in the last second of its fall. From what height was it dropped?
74. You're on a NASA team engineering a probe to land on Jupiter's moon Io, and your job is to specify the impact speed the probe can tolerate without damage. Rockets will bring the probe to a halt 100 m above the surface, after which it will fall freely. What speed do you specify? (Consult Appendix E.)
75. You're atop a building of height h , and a friend is poised to drop a ball from a window at $h/2$. Find an expression for the speed at which you should simultaneously throw a ball downward, so the two hit the ground at the same time.
76. A castle's defenders throw rocks down on their attackers from a 15-m-high wall, with initial speed 10 m/s. How much faster are the rocks moving when they hit the ground than if they were simply dropped?
77. **CH** Two divers jump from a 3.00-m platform. One jumps upward at 1.80 m/s, and the second steps off the platform as the first passes it on the way down. (a) What are their speeds as they hit the water? (b) Which hits the water first and by how much?
78. A balloon is rising at 10 m/s when its passenger throws a ball straight up at 12 m/s relative to the balloon. How much later does the passenger catch the ball?
79. In 2014 the *Philae* spacecraft became the first artifact to land on a comet. Unfortunately, *Philae* bounced off the comet's surface and ultimately landed in a nonideal location. After its first contact, *Philae* was moving upward at 38 cm/s, and it rose to a maximum height of about 1 km. Estimate the gravitational acceleration of the comet, assuming it's constant (not a very good assumption in this case).
80. You're at mission control for a rocket launch, deciding whether to let the launch proceed. A band of clouds 5.1 km thick extends upward from 1.1 km altitude. The rocket will accelerate at 4.3 m/s^2 , and it isn't allowed to be out of sight for more than 30 s. Should you allow the launch?
81. You're an investigator for the National Transportation Safety Board, examining a subway accident in which a train going at 80 km/h collided with a slower train traveling in the same direction at 25 km/h. Your job is to determine the relative speed of the collision to help establish new crash standards. The faster train's "black box" shows that its brakes were applied and it began slowing at the rate of 2.1 m/s^2 when it was 50 m from the slower train, while the slower train continued at constant speed. What do you report?
82. **CH** On October 14, 2012, daredevil skydiver Felix Baumgartner jumped from a height of 38,969.4 meters over Roswell, New Mexico, becoming the first skydiver to break the sound barrier. The acceleration of gravity at his jump height was 9.70 m/s^2 , and there was essentially no air resistance at that altitude. (a) How long did it take Baumgartner to reach the speed of sound, which is 322 m/s at that altitude? (b) How far did he fall during that time?
83. Consider an object traversing a distance L , part of the way at speed v_1 and the rest of the way at speed v_2 . Find expressions for the object's average speed over the entire distance L when the object moves at each of the two speeds v_1 and v_2 for (a) half the total time and (b) half the total distance. (c) In which case is the average speed greater?
84. An object's position as a function of time is given by $x = bt^2 - ct^4$, where b has the value 1.82 m/s^2 , which puts the object at $x = 0$ at $t = 0$. (a) Find the value of c such that the object will again be at $x = 0$ when $t = 2.54 \text{ s}$. Also, find (b) the object's speed and (c) its acceleration at that time.
85. **CH** Ice skaters, ballet dancers, and basketball players executing vertical leaps often give the illusion of "hanging" almost motionless near the top of the leap. To see why this is, consider a leap to maximum height h . Of the total time spent in the air, what fraction is spent in the upper half (i.e., at $y > \frac{1}{2}h$)?
86. You're staring idly out your dorm window when you see a water balloon fall past. If the balloon takes 0.22 s to cross the 1.3-m vertical extent of the window, from what height above the window was it dropped?
87. A police radar's effective range is 1.0 km, and your radar detector's range is 1.8 km. You're going 90 km/h in a 50 km/h zone when the radar detector beeps. At what rate must you slow to avoid a speeding ticket?

88. An object starts moving in a straight line from position x_0 , at time $t = 0$, with velocity v_0 . Its acceleration is given by $a = a_0 + bt$, where a_0 and b are constants. Use integration to find expressions for (a) the instantaneous velocity and (b) the position, as functions of time.
89. You're a consultant on a movie set, and the producer wants a car to drop so that it crosses the camera's field of view in time Δt . The field of view has height h . Derive an expression for the height above the top of the field of view from which the car should be released.
90. (a) For the ball in Example 2.6, find its velocity just before it hits the floor. (b) Suppose you had tossed a second ball straight down at 7.3 m/s (from the same place 1.5 m above the floor). What would its velocity be just before it hits the floor? (c) When would the second ball hit the floor? (Interpret any multiple answers.)
91. Your roommate is an aspiring novelist and asks your opinion on a matter of physics. The novel's central character is kept awake at night by a leaky faucet. The sink is 19.6 cm below the faucet. At the instant one drop leaves the faucet, another strikes the sink below and two more are in between on the way down. How many drops per second are keeping the protagonist awake?
92. Boxes move at constant speed v along a conveyor belt in an automated factory. A robotic hand is suspended a distance h above the conveyor belt, and its purpose is to drop a product into each box. The robot's eyes observe each box as it moves along the belt. Find an expression for the location of the box, expressed as a distance from a point below the robotic hand, at the instant the hand should release the product.
93. Derive Equation 2.10 by integrating Equation 2.7 over time.
94. An object's acceleration increases quadratically with time: $a(t) = bt^2$, where $b = 0.041 \text{ m/s}^4$. If the object starts from rest, how far does it travel in 6.3 s?
95. An object's velocity as a function of time is given by $v(t) = bt - ct^3$, where b and c are positive constants with appropriate units. If the object starts at $x = 0$ at time $t = 0$, find expressions for (a) the time when it's again at $x = 0$ and (b) its acceleration at that time.
96. An object's acceleration decreases exponentially with time: $a(t) = a_0 e^{-bt}$, where a_0 and b are constants. (a) Assuming the object starts from rest, determine its velocity as a function of time. (b) Will its speed increase indefinitely? (c) Will it travel indefinitely far from its starting point?
97. A ball is dropped from rest at a height h_0 above the ground. At the same instant, a second ball is launched with speed v_0 straight up from the ground, at a point directly below where the other ball is dropped. (a) Find a condition on v_0 such that the two balls will collide in mid-air. (b) Find an expression for the height at which they collide.

Passage Problems

A wildlife biologist is studying the hunting patterns of tigers. She anesthetizes a tiger and attaches a GPS collar to track its movements.

The collar transmits data on the tiger's position and velocity. Figure 2.16 shows the tiger's velocity as a function of time as it moves on a one-dimensional path.

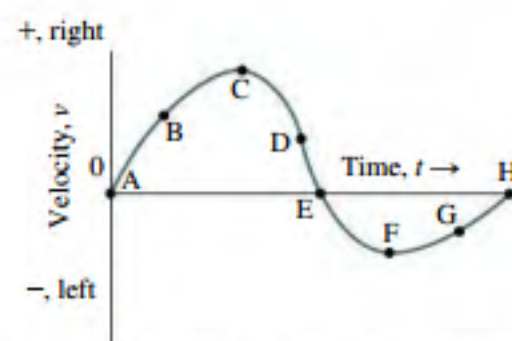


FIGURE 2.16 The tiger's velocity (Passage Problems 98–102.)

98. At which marked point(s) is the tiger not moving?
a. E only
b. A, E, and H
c. C and F
d. none of the points (it's always moving)
99. At which marked point(s) is the tiger not accelerating?
a. E only
b. A, E, and H
c. C and F
d. all of the points (it's never accelerating)
100. At which point does the tiger have the greatest speed?
a. B b. C c. D d. F
101. At which point does the tiger's acceleration have the greatest magnitude?
a. B b. C c. D d. F
102. At which point is the tiger farthest from its starting position at $t = 0$?
a. C b. E c. F d. H

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Although the ball's velocity is zero at the top of its motion, its acceleration is -9.8 m/s^2 , as it is throughout the toss.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 2.1 (a) and (b); average speed is greater for (c)
- 2.2 (b) moves with constant speed; (a) reverses; (d) speeds up
- 2.3 (b) downward
- 2.4 (a) halfway between the times; because its acceleration is constant, the police car's speed increases by equal amounts in equal times. So it gets from 0 to half its final velocity—which is twice the car's velocity—in half the total time.
- 2.5 The dropped ball hits first; the thrown ball hits moving faster.
- 2.6 (a)

Motion in Two and Three Dimensions

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 3.1 Describe position in two and three dimensions, using vectors.
- LO 3.2 Represent velocity and acceleration as vectors.
- LO 3.3 Relate velocities in different reference frames.
- LO 3.4 Analyze motion in two dimensions.
- LO 3.5 Predict the motion of projectiles subject to gravity.
- LO 3.6 Describe circular motion as accelerated motion.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Motion concepts: position, velocity, and acceleration (Sections 2.1–2.3)
- The quantitative description of one-dimensional motion with constant acceleration (Section 2.4)
- The acceleration of gravity near Earth's surface (Section 2.5)

What's the speed of an orbiting satellite? How should I leap to win the long-jump competition? How do I engineer a curve in the road for safe driving? These and many other questions involve motion in more than one dimension. In this chapter we extend the ideas of one-dimensional motion to these more complex—and more interesting—situations.

3.1 Vectors

LO 3.1 *Describe position in two and three dimensions, using vectors.*

We've seen that quantities describing motion have direction as well as magnitude. In Chapter 2, a simple plus or minus sign took care of direction. But now, in two or three dimensions, we need a way to account for all possible directions. We do this with mathematical quantities called **vectors**, which express both magnitude and direction. Vectors stand in contrast to **scalars**, which are quantities that have no direction.

Position and Displacement

The simplest vector quantity is position. Given an origin, we can characterize any position in space by drawing an arrow from the origin to that position. That arrow represents a **position vector**, which we call $\vec{r}$. The arrow over the r indicates that this is a vector quantity, and it's crucial to include the arrow whenever you're dealing with vectors. Figure 3.1 shows a position vector in a two-dimensional coordinate system; this vector describes a point that's 2 m from the origin, in a direction 30° from the horizontal axis.

Suppose you walk from the origin straight to the point described by the vector $\vec{r}_1$ in Fig. 3.1, and then you turn right and walk another 1 m. Figure 3.2



At what angle should this penguin leave the water to maximize the range of its jump?

shows how you can tell where you end up. Draw a second vector whose length represents 1 m and that points to the right; we'll call this vector $\Delta\vec{r}$ because it's a **displacement vector**, representing a *change* in position. Put the tail of $\Delta\vec{r}$ at the head of the vector $\vec{r}_1$; then the head of $\Delta\vec{r}$ shows your ending position. The result is the same as if you had walked straight from the origin to this position. So the new position is described by a third vector $\vec{r}_2$, as indicated in Fig. 3.2. What we've just described is **vector addition**. To add two vectors, put the second vector's tail at the head of the first; the sum is then the vector that extends from the tail of the first vector to the head of the second, as does $\vec{r}_2$ in Fig. 3.2.

A vector has both magnitude and direction—but because that's all the information it contains, it doesn't matter where it starts. So you're free to move a vector around to form vector sums. Figure 3.3 shows some examples of vector addition and also shows that vector addition obeys simple rules you know for regular arithmetic.

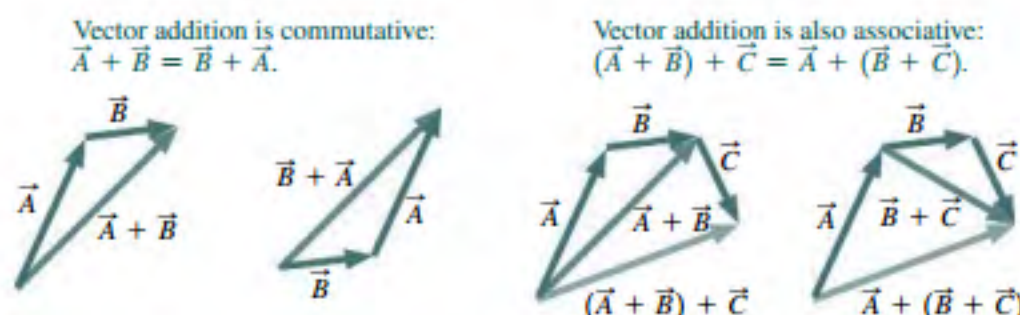


FIGURE 3.3 Vector addition is commutative and associative.

Multiplication

You and I jog in the same direction, but you go twice as far. Your displacement vector, $\vec{B}$, is twice as long as my displacement vector, $\vec{A}$; mathematically, $\vec{B} = 2\vec{A}$. That's what it means to multiply a vector by a scalar; simply rescale the magnitude of the vector by that scalar. If the scalar is negative, then the vector direction reverses—and that provides a way to subtract vectors. In Fig. 3.2, for example, you can see that $\vec{r}_1 = \vec{r}_2 + (-1)\Delta\vec{r}$, or simply $\vec{r}_1 = \vec{r}_2 - \Delta\vec{r}$. Later, we'll see ways to multiply two vectors, but for now the only multiplication we consider is a vector multiplied by a scalar.

Vector Components

You can add vectors graphically, as shown in Fig. 3.2, or you can use geometric relationships like the laws of sines and cosines to accomplish the same thing algebraically. In both these approaches, you specify a vector by giving its magnitude and direction. But often it's more convenient instead to describe vectors using their **components** in a given coordinate system.

A **coordinate system** is a framework for describing positions in space. It's a mathematical construct, and you're free to choose whatever coordinate system you want. You've already seen **Cartesian** or **rectangular coordinate systems**, in which a pair of numbers (x, y) represents each point in a plane. You could also think of each point as representing the head of a position vector, in which case the numbers x and y are the vector components. The components tell how much of the vector is in the x -direction and how much is in the y -direction. Not all vectors represent actual positions in space; for example, there are velocity, acceleration, and force vectors. The lengths of these vectors represent the magnitudes of the corresponding physical quantities. For an arbitrary vector quantity $\vec{A}$, we designate the components A_x and A_y (Fig. 3.4). Note that the components themselves aren't vectors but scalars.

In two dimensions it takes two quantities to specify a vector—either its magnitude and direction or its components. They're related by the Pythagorean theorem and the definitions of the trig functions, as shown in Fig. 3.4:

$$A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \tan \theta = \frac{A_y}{A_x} \quad (\text{vector magnitude and direction}) \quad (3.1)$$

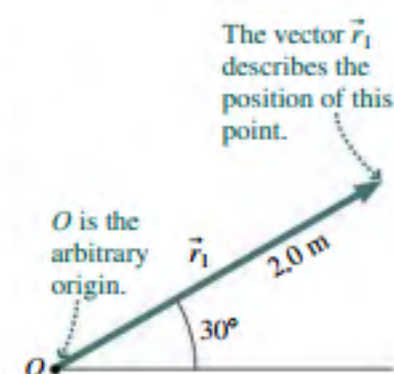


FIGURE 3.1 A position vector $\vec{r}_1$.

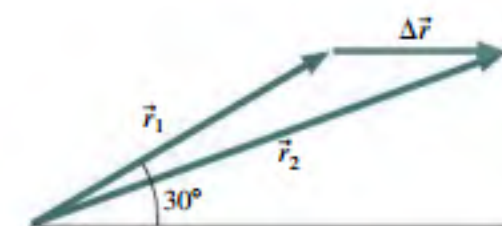


FIGURE 3.2 Vectors $\vec{r}_1$ and $\Delta\vec{r}$ sum to $\vec{r}_2$.

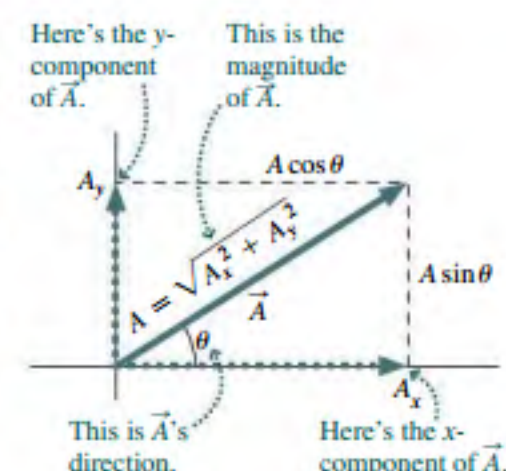


FIGURE 3.4 Magnitude/direction and component representations of vector $\vec{A}$.

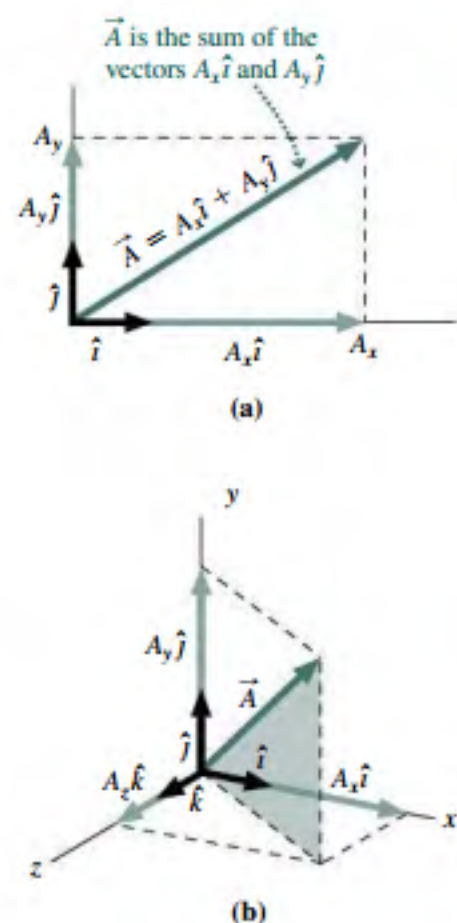


FIGURE 3.5 Vectors in (a) a plane and (b) space, expressed using unit vectors.

Without the arrow above it, a vector's symbol stands for the vector's magnitude. Going the other way, we have

$$A_x = A \cos \theta \quad \text{and} \quad A_y = A \sin \theta \quad (\text{vector components}) \quad (3.2)$$

If a vector $\vec{A}$ has zero magnitude, we write $\vec{A} = \vec{0}$, where the vector arrow on the zero indicates that both components must be zero.

Unit Vectors

It's cumbersome to say "a vector of magnitude 2 m at 30° to the x-axis" or, equivalently, "a vector whose x- and y-components are 1.73 m and 1.0 m, respectively." We can express this more succinctly using the **unit vectors** $\hat{i}$ (read "i hat") and $\hat{j}$. These unit vectors have magnitude 1, no units, and point along the x- and y-axes, respectively. In three dimensions we add a third unit vector, $\hat{k}$, along the z-axis. Any vector in the x-direction can be written as some number—perhaps with units, such as meters or meters per second—times the unit vector $\hat{i}$, and analogously in the y-direction using $\hat{j}$. That means any vector in a plane can be written as a sum involving the two unit vectors: $\vec{A} = A_x \hat{i} + A_y \hat{j}$ (Fig. 3.5a). Similarly, any vector in space can be written with the three unit vectors (Fig. 3.5b).

The unit vectors convey only direction; the numbers that multiply them give size and units. Together they provide compact representations of vectors, including units. The displacement vector $\vec{r}_1$ in Fig. 3.1, for example, is $\vec{r}_1 = 1.7\hat{i} + 1.0\hat{j}$ m.

Vector Arithmetic with Unit Vectors

Vector addition is simple with unit vectors: Just add the corresponding components. If $\vec{A} = A_x \hat{i} + A_y \hat{j}$ and $\vec{B} = B_x \hat{i} + B_y \hat{j}$, for example, then their sum is

$$\vec{A} + \vec{B} = (A_x \hat{i} + A_y \hat{j}) + (B_x \hat{i} + B_y \hat{j}) = (A_x + B_x) \hat{i} + (A_y + B_y) \hat{j}$$

Subtraction and multiplication by a scalar are similarly straightforward.

GOT IT?

3.1 Which vector describes a displacement of 10 units in a direction 30° below the positive x-axis? (a) $10\hat{i} - 10\hat{j}$; (b) $5.0\hat{i} - 8.7\hat{j}$; (c) $8.7\hat{i} - 5.0\hat{j}$; (d) $10(\hat{i} + \hat{j})$

EXAMPLE 3.1 Unit Vectors: Taking a Drive

You drive to a city 165 km from home, going 35.0° north of east. Express your new position in unit vector notation, using an east–west/north–south coordinate system.

INTERPRET We interpret this as a problem about writing a vector in unit vector notation, given its magnitude and direction.

DEVELOP Unit vector notation multiplies a vector's x- and y-components by the unit vectors $\hat{i}$ and $\hat{j}$ and sums the results, so we draw a sketch showing those components (Fig. 3.6). Our plan is to solve for the two components, multiply by the unit vectors, and then add the resulting vectors. We'll use the equalities in Equation 3.2 to determine the two components.

EVALUATE We have $x = r \cos \theta = (165 \text{ km})(\cos 35.0^\circ) = 135 \text{ km}$ and $y = r \sin \theta = (165 \text{ km})(\sin 35.0^\circ) = 94.6 \text{ km}$. Then the position of the city is

$$\vec{r} = 135\hat{i} + 94.6\hat{j} \text{ km}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Figure 3.6 suggests that the x-component should be longer than the y-component, as our answer indicates. Our sketch shows the component values and the final answer. Note that we treat $135\hat{i} + 94.6\hat{j}$ as a single vector quantity, labeling it at the end with the appropriate unit, km.

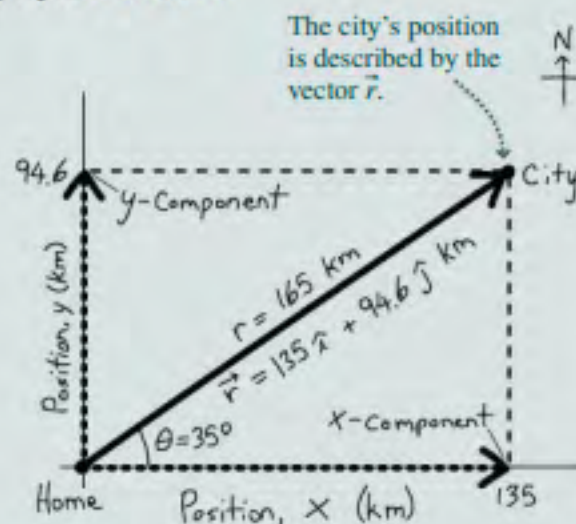


FIGURE 3.6 Our sketch for Example 3.1.

3.2 Velocity and Acceleration Vectors

LO 3.2 Represent velocity and acceleration as vectors.

We defined velocity in one dimension as the rate of change of position. In two or three dimensions it's the same thing, except now the change in position—displacement—is a vector. So we write

Average velocity is a vector $\vec{v}$, indicated by the arrow overscore. The bar designates "average."

$\Delta\vec{r}$ is the displacement during the time interval Δt . It's a vector given by $\Delta\vec{r} = \vec{r}_2 - \vec{r}_1$.

Δt is the time interval during which the change in position occurs.

$$\vec{v} = \frac{\Delta\vec{r}}{\Delta t} \quad (\text{average velocity}) \quad (3.3)$$

for the average velocity, in analogy with Equation 2.1. Here division by Δt simply means multiplying by $1/\Delta t$. As before, instantaneous velocity is given by a limiting process:

The instantaneous velocity $\vec{v}$ is the velocity at a single instant of time.

$d\vec{r}$ and dt are infinitesimally small quantities that result from the limiting procedure.

This limiting procedure gives the ratio $\Delta\vec{r}/\Delta t$ in the limit of infinitesimally small time intervals Δt .

Instantaneous velocity is given by the derivative $d\vec{r}/dt$ —the rate of change of position with respect to time.

$$\vec{v} = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta\vec{r}}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\vec{r}}{dt} \quad (\text{instantaneous velocity}) \quad (3.4)$$

Again, that derivative $d\vec{r}/dt$ is shorthand for the result of the limiting process, taking ever smaller time intervals Δt and the corresponding displacements $\Delta\vec{r}$. Another way to look at Equation 3.4 is in terms of components. If $\vec{r} = x\hat{i} + y\hat{j}$, then we can write

$$\vec{v} = \frac{d\vec{r}}{dt} = \frac{dx}{dt}\hat{i} + \frac{dy}{dt}\hat{j} = v_x\hat{i} + v_y\hat{j}$$

where the velocity components v_x and v_y are the derivatives of the position components.

Acceleration is the rate of change of velocity, so we write

Average acceleration is a vector. The bar designates "average."

$\Delta\vec{v}$ is the change in the object's velocity during the time interval Δt . It's given by $\Delta\vec{v} = \vec{v}_2 - \vec{v}_1$.

Δt is the time interval during which the change in velocity occurs.

$$\vec{a} = \frac{\Delta\vec{v}}{\Delta t} \quad (\text{average acceleration}) \quad (3.5)$$

for the average acceleration and

The instantaneous acceleration $\vec{a}$ is the acceleration at a single instant of time.

$d\vec{v}$ and dt are infinitesimally small quantities that result from the limiting procedure.

This limiting procedure gives the ratio $\Delta\vec{v}/\Delta t$ in the limit of infinitesimally small time intervals Δt .

Instantaneous acceleration is given by the derivative $d\vec{v}/dt$ —the rate of change of velocity with respect to time.

$$\vec{a} = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta\vec{v}}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\vec{v}}{dt} \quad (\text{instantaneous acceleration}) \quad (3.6)$$

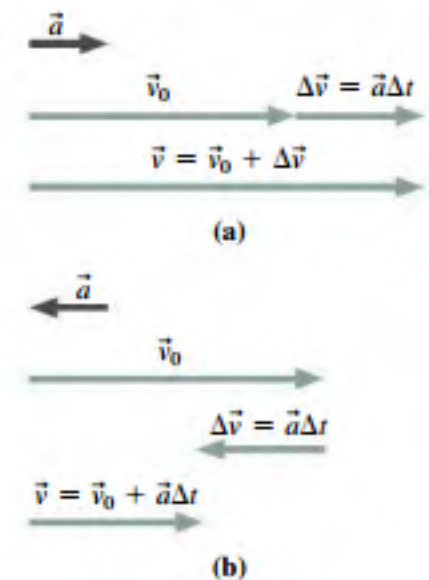


FIGURE 3.7 When $\vec{v}$ and $\vec{a}$ are collinear, generally only the speed changes. (However, if the acceleration acts long enough, the object may come to a stop and then reverse direction.)



VECTORS TELL IT ALL Are you thinking there should be a minus sign in Fig. 3.7b because the speed is decreasing? Nope: Vectors have both magnitude and direction, and the vector addition $\vec{v} = \vec{v}_0 + \vec{a}\Delta t$ tells it all. In Fig. 3.7b, $\Delta\vec{v}$ points to the left, and that takes care of the "subtraction."

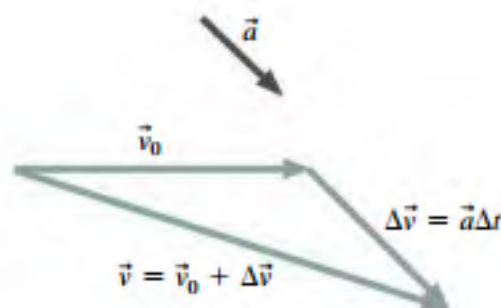


FIGURE 3.8 In general, acceleration changes both the magnitude and the direction of velocity.

for the instantaneous acceleration. We can also express instantaneous acceleration in components, as we did for velocity:

$$\vec{a} = \frac{d\vec{v}}{dt} = \frac{dv_x}{dt}\hat{i} + \frac{dv_y}{dt}\hat{j} = a_x\hat{i} + a_y\hat{j}$$

Velocity and Acceleration in Two Dimensions

Motion in a straight line may or may not involve acceleration, but motion on curved paths in two or three dimensions is *always* accelerated motion. Why? Because moving in multiple dimensions means *changing direction*—and *any* change in velocity, including direction, involves acceleration. Get used to thinking of acceleration as meaning more than “speeding up” or “slowing down.” It can equally well mean “changing direction,” whether or not speed is also changing. Whether acceleration results in a speed change, a direction change, or both depends on the relative orientation of the velocity and acceleration vectors.

Suppose you’re driving down a straight road at speed v_0 when you step on the gas to give a constant acceleration $\vec{a}$ for a time Δt . Equation 3.5 shows that the change in your velocity is $\Delta\vec{v} = \vec{a}\Delta t$. In this case the acceleration is in the same direction as your velocity and, as Fig. 3.7a shows, the result is an increase in the magnitude of your velocity; that is, you speed up. Step on the brake, and your acceleration is opposite your velocity, and you slow down (Fig. 3.7b).

In two dimensions acceleration and velocity can be at any angle. In general, acceleration then changes both the magnitude and the direction of the velocity (Fig. 3.8). Particularly interesting is the case when $\vec{a}$ is perpendicular to $\vec{v}$; then only the direction of motion changes. If acceleration is constant—in both magnitude and direction—then the two vectors won’t stay perpendicular once the direction of $\vec{v}$ starts to change, and the magnitude will change, too. But in the special case where acceleration changes direction so it’s always perpendicular to velocity, then it’s strictly true that only the direction of motion changes. Figure 3.9 illustrates this point, which we’ll soon explore quantitatively.

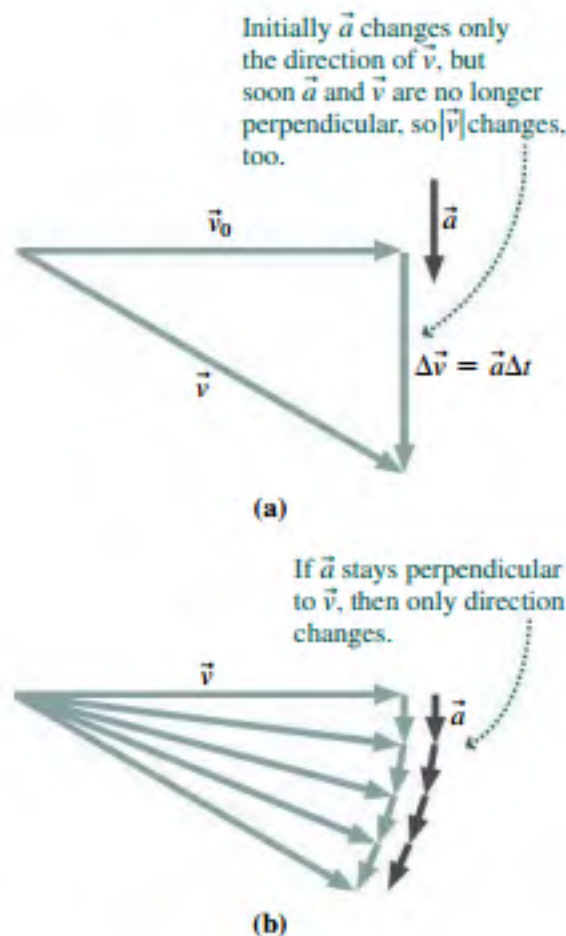


FIGURE 3.9 Acceleration that is always perpendicular to velocity changes only the direction.

GOT IT?

3.2 An object is accelerating downward. Which, if any, of the following must be true? (a) The object cannot be moving upward; (b) the object cannot be moving in a straight line; (c) the object is moving directly downward; (d) if the object’s motion is instantaneously horizontal, it can’t continue to be so.

3.3 Relative Motion

LO 3.3 Relate velocities in different reference frames.

You stroll down the aisle of a plane, walking toward the front at a leisurely 4 km/h. Meanwhile the plane is moving relative to the ground at 1000 km/h. Therefore, you’re moving at 1004 km/h relative to the ground. As this example suggests, velocity is meaningful only when we know the answer to the question, “Velocity relative to what?” That “what” is called a **frame of reference**. Often we know an object’s velocity relative to one frame of reference—for example, your velocity relative to the plane—and we want to know its velocity relative to some other reference frame—in this case the ground. In this one-dimensional case, we can simply add the two velocities. If you had been walking toward the back of the plane, then the two velocities would have opposite signs and you would be going at 996 km/h relative to the ground.

The same idea works in two dimensions, but here we need to recognize that velocity is a vector. Suppose that airplane is flying with velocity $\vec{v}'$ relative to the air. If a wind is blowing, then the air is moving with some velocity $\vec{V}$ relative to the ground. The plane’s

velocity $\vec{v}$ relative to the ground is the vector sum of its velocity relative to the air and the air's velocity relative to the ground:

$\vec{v}$ is the velocity of an object relative to a particular frame of reference, such as the air.

$\vec{V}$ is the relative velocity between the two reference frames, such as the wind velocity relative to the ground.

$$\vec{v} = \vec{v}' + \vec{V} \quad (\text{relative velocity}) \quad (3.7)$$

$\vec{v}$ is the velocity of an object relative to another frame of reference, such as the ground.

Here we use lowercase letters for the velocities of an object relative to two different reference frames; we distinguish the two with the prime on one of the velocities. The capital $\vec{V}$ is the relative velocity between the two frames. In general, Equation 3.7 lets us use the velocity of an object in one reference frame to find its velocity relative to another frame—provided we know that relative velocity $\vec{V}$. Example 3.2 illustrates the application of this idea to aircraft navigation.

EXAMPLE 3.2 Relative Velocity: Navigating a Jetliner

A jetliner flies at 960 km/h relative to the air. It's going from Houston to Omaha, 1290 km northward. At cruising altitude a wind is blowing eastward at 190 km/h. In what direction should the plane fly? How long will the trip take?

INTERPRET This is a problem involving relative velocities. We identify the given information: the plane's speed, but not its direction, in the reference frame of the air; the plane's direction, but not its speed, in the reference frame of the ground; and the wind velocity, both speed and direction.

DEVELOP Equation 3.7, $\vec{v} = \vec{v}' + \vec{V}$, applies, and we identify $\vec{v}$ as the plane's velocity relative to the ground, $\vec{v}'$ as its velocity relative to the air, and $\vec{V}$ as the wind velocity. Equation 3.7 shows that $\vec{v}'$ and $\vec{V}$ add vectorially to give $\vec{v}$ that, with the given information, helps us draw the situation (Fig. 3.10). Measuring the angle of $\vec{v}'$ and the length of $\vec{v}$ in the diagram would then give the answers. However, we'll work the problem algebraically using vector components. Since the plane is flying northward and the wind is blowing eastward, a suitable coordinate system has its x -axis eastward and y -axis northward. Our plan is to work out the vector components in these coordinates and then apply Equation 3.7.

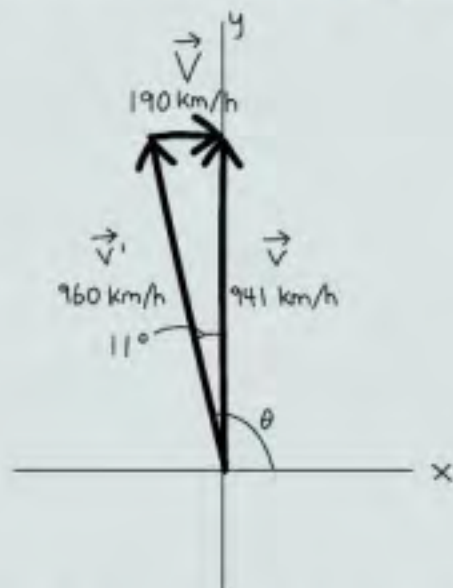


FIGURE 3.10 Our vector diagram for Example 3.2.

EVALUATE Using Equations 3.2 for the vector components, we can express the three vectors as

$$\vec{v}' = v' \cos \theta \hat{i} + v' \sin \theta \hat{j}, \quad \vec{V} = V \hat{i}, \quad \text{and} \quad \vec{v} = v \hat{j}$$

Here we know the magnitude v' of the velocity $\vec{v}'$, but we don't know the angle θ . We know the magnitude V of the wind velocity $\vec{V}$, and we also know its direction—toward the east. So $\vec{V}$ has only an x -component. Meanwhile we want the velocity $\vec{v}$ relative to the ground to be purely northward, so it has only a y -component—although we don't know its magnitude v . We're now ready to put the three velocities into Equation 3.7. Since two vectors are equal only if all their components are equal, we can express the vector Equation 3.7 as two separate scalar equations for the x - and y -components:

$$\begin{aligned} x\text{-component:} & \quad v' \cos \theta + V = 0 \\ y\text{-component:} & \quad v' \sin \theta + 0 = v \end{aligned}$$

The rest is math, evaluating the unknowns θ and v . Solving the x equation gives

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(-\frac{V}{v'}\right) = \cos^{-1}\left(-\frac{190 \text{ km/h}}{960 \text{ km/h}}\right) = 101.4^\circ$$

This angle is measured from the x -axis (eastward; see Fig. 3.10), so it amounts to a flight path 11° west of north. We can then evaluate v from the y equation:

$$v = v' \sin \theta = (960 \text{ km/h})(\sin 101.4^\circ) = 941 \text{ km/h}$$

That's the plane's speed relative to the ground. Going 1290 km will then take $(1290 \text{ km})/(941 \text{ km/h}) = 1.4 \text{ h}$ or 1 h, 24 min.

ASSESS Make sense? The plane's heading of 11° west of north seems reasonable compensation for an eastward wind blowing at 190 km/h, given the plane's airspeed of 960 km/h. If there were no wind, the trip would take 1 h, 20 min (1290 km divided by 960 km/h), so our time of 1 h, 24 min with the wind makes sense.

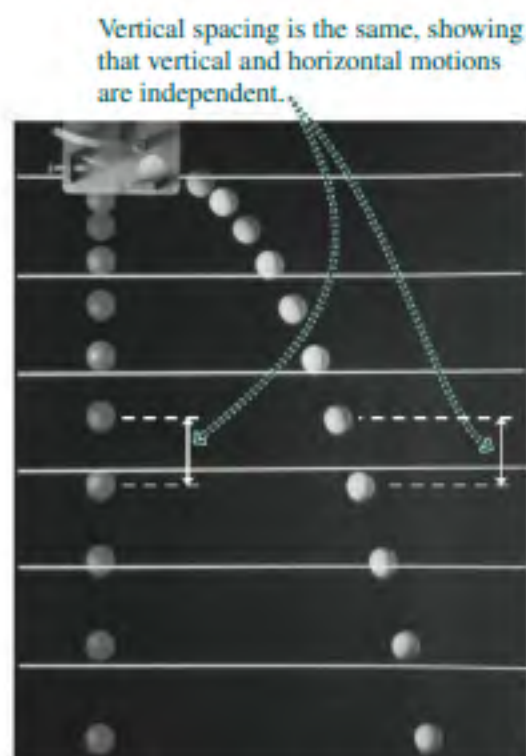
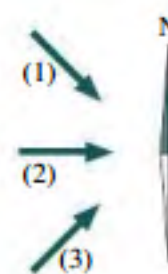


FIGURE 3.11 Two marbles, one dropped and the other projected horizontally.

GOT IT?

3.3 An airplane is making a 500-km trip directly north that is supposed to take exactly 1 h. For 100-km/h winds blowing in each of the directions (1), (2), and (3) shown, does the plane's speed relative to the air need to be (a) less than, (b) equal to, or (c) greater than 500 km/h?



3.4 Constant Acceleration

LO 3.4 Analyze motion in two dimensions.

When acceleration is constant, the individual components of the acceleration vector are themselves constant. Furthermore, the component of acceleration in one direction has no effect on the motion in a perpendicular direction (Fig. 3.11). Then with constant acceleration, the separate components of the motion must obey the constant-acceleration formulas we developed in Chapter 2 for one-dimensional motion. Using vector notation, we can then generalize Equations 2.7 and 2.10 to read

$\vec{v}$ is an object's velocity at any time t . $\vec{a}$ is the object's acceleration, and t is the time.

$$\vec{v} = \vec{v}_0 + \vec{a}t \quad (\text{for constant acceleration only}) \quad (3.8)$$

$\vec{v}_0$ is its initial velocity at $t = 0$.

$\vec{r}$ is an object's position at any time t . t is the time.

$$\vec{r} = \vec{r}_0 + \vec{v}_0t + \frac{1}{2}\vec{a}t^2 \quad (\text{for constant acceleration only}) \quad (3.9)$$

$\vec{r}_0$ is its initial position at $t = 0$. $\vec{v}_0$ is its initial velocity. $\vec{a}$ is its acceleration.

where $\vec{r}$ is the position vector. In two dimensions, each of these vector equations represents a pair of scalar equations describing constant acceleration in two mutually perpendicular directions. Equation 3.9, for example, contains the pair $x = x_0 + v_{x0}t + \frac{1}{2}a_x t^2$ and $y = y_0 + v_{y0}t + \frac{1}{2}a_y t^2$. (Remember that the components of the displacement vector $\vec{r}$ are just the coordinates x and y .) In three dimensions there would be a third equation for the z -component. Starting with these vector forms of the equations of motion, you can apply Problem-Solving Strategy 2.1 to problems in two or three dimensions.

EXAMPLE 3.3

Acceleration in Two Dimensions: Windsurfing

Worked Example with Variation Problems

You're windsurfing at 7.3 m/s when a gust hits, accelerating your sailboard at 0.82 m/s^2 at 60° to your original direction. If the gust lasts 8.7 s, what's the magnitude of the board's displacement during this time?

INTERPRET This is a problem involving constant acceleration in two dimensions. The key concept is that motion in perpendicular directions is independent, so we can treat the problem as involving two separate one-dimensional motions.

DEVELOP Equation 3.9, $\vec{r} = \vec{r}_0 + \vec{v}_0t + \frac{1}{2}\vec{a}t^2$, will give the board's displacement. We need a coordinate system, so we take the x -axis along the board's initial motion, with the origin at the point where the gust first hits. Our plan is to find the components of the acceleration vector and then apply the two components of Equation 3.9 to get the components of the displacement. In Fig. 3.12 we draw the acceleration vector to determine its components.

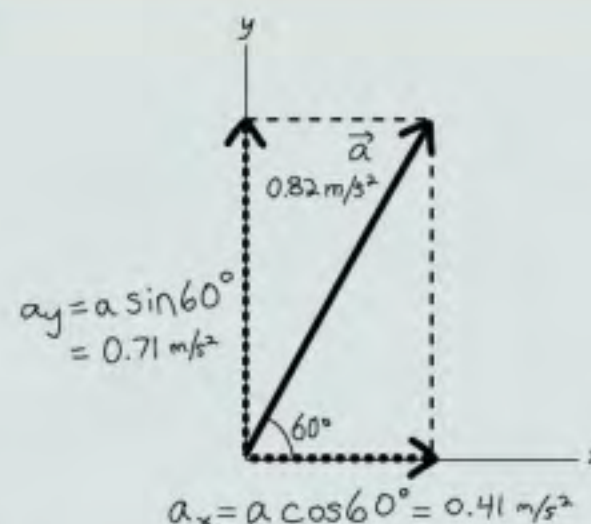


FIGURE 3.12 Our sketch of the sailboard's acceleration components.

EVALUATE With the x -direction along the initial velocity, $\vec{v}_0 = 7.3\hat{i}$ m/s. As Fig. 3.12 shows, the acceleration is $\vec{a} = 0.41\hat{i} + 0.71\hat{j}$ m/s². Our choice of origin gives $x_0 = y_0 = 0$, so the two components of Equation 3.9 are

$$x = v_{x0}t + \frac{1}{2}a_x t^2 = 79.0 \text{ m}$$

$$y = \frac{1}{2}a_y t^2 = 26.9 \text{ m}$$

where we used the appropriate components of $\vec{a}$ and where $t = 8.7$ s. The new position vector is then $\vec{r} = x\hat{i} + y\hat{j} = 79.0\hat{i} + 26.9\hat{j}$ m, giving a net displacement of $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = 83$ m.

ASSESS Make sense? Figure 3.13 shows how the acceleration deflects the sailboard from its original path and also increases its speed somewhat. Since the acceleration makes a fairly large angle with the initial velocity, the change in direction is the greater effect.

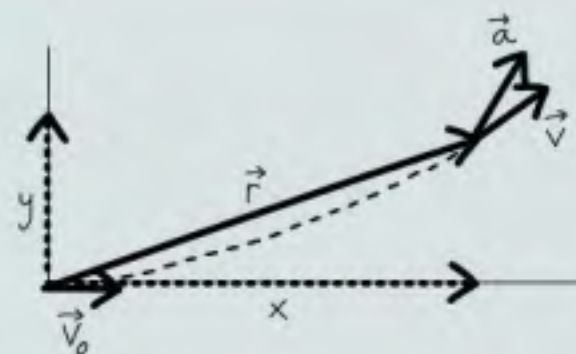


FIGURE 3.13 Our sketch of the displacement $\vec{r}$, velocity $\vec{v}$, and acceleration $\vec{a}$ at the end of the wind gust. The actual path of the sailboard during the gust is indicated by the dashed curve.

GOT IT?

3.4 An object is moving initially in the $+x$ -direction. Which of the following accelerations, all acting for the same time interval, will cause the greatest change in its speed? In its direction? (a) $10\hat{i}$ m/s²; (b) $10\hat{j}$ m/s²; (c) $10\hat{i} + 5\hat{j}$ m/s²; (d) $2\hat{i} - 8\hat{j}$ m/s²

3.5 Projectile Motion

LO 3.5 Predict the motion of projectiles subject to gravity.

A **projectile** is an object that's launched into the air and then moves predominantly under the influence of gravity. Examples are numerous; baseballs, jets of water (Fig. 3.14), fireworks, missiles, ejecta from volcanoes, drops of ink in an ink-jet printer, and leaping dolphins are all projectiles.

To treat projectile motion, we make two simplifying assumptions: (1) We neglect any variation in the direction or magnitude of the gravitational acceleration, and (2) we neglect air resistance. The first assumption is equivalent to neglecting Earth's curvature, and is valid for projectiles whose displacements are small compared with Earth's radius. Air resistance has a more variable effect; for dense, compact objects it's often negligible, but for objects whose ratio of surface area to mass is large—like ping-pong balls and parachutes—air resistance dramatically alters the motion.

To describe projectile motion, it's convenient to choose a coordinate system with the y -axis vertically upward and the x -axis horizontal. With the only acceleration provided by gravity, $a_x = 0$ and $a_y = -g$, so the components of Equations 3.8 and 3.9 become

$$v_x = v_{x0} \quad (3.10)$$

$$v_y = v_{y0} - gt \quad (3.11)$$

$$x = x_0 + v_{x0}t \quad (3.12)$$

$$y = y_0 + v_{y0}t - \frac{1}{2}gt^2 \quad (3.13)$$

(for constant
gravitational
acceleration)

We take g to be positive, and account for the downward direction using minus signs. Equations 3.10–3.13 tell us mathematically what Fig. 3.15 tells us physically: Projectile motion comprises two perpendicular and independent components—horizontal motion with constant velocity and vertical motion with constant acceleration.



FIGURE 3.14 Water droplets—each an individual projectile—combine to form graceful parabolic arcs in this fountain.

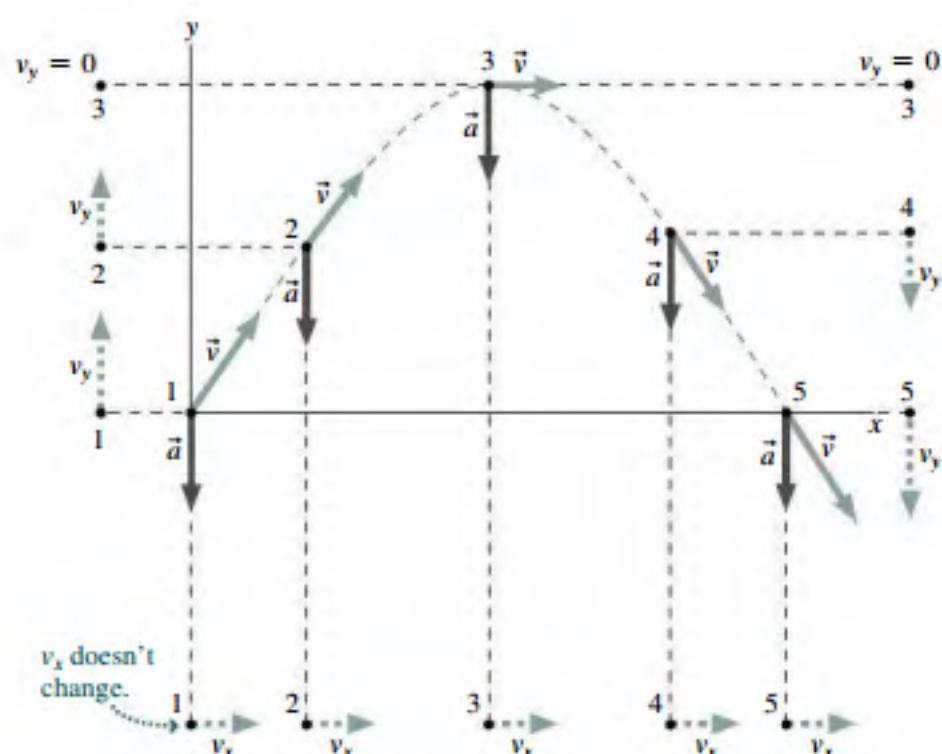


FIGURE 3.15 Velocity and acceleration at five points on a projectile's path. Also shown are horizontal and vertical components.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 3.1

Projectile Motion

INTERPRET Make sure that you have a problem involving the constant acceleration of gravity near Earth's surface, and that the motion involves both horizontal and vertical components. Identify the object or objects in question and whatever initial or final positions and velocities are given. Know what quantities you're being asked to find.

DEVELOP Establish a horizontal/vertical coordinate system, and write the separate components of the equations of motion (Equations 3.10–3.13). The equations for different components will be linked by a common variable—namely, time. Draw a sketch showing the initial motion and a rough trajectory.

EVALUATE Solve your individual equations simultaneously for the unknowns of the problem.

ASSESS Check that your answer makes sense. Consider special cases, like purely vertical or horizontal initial velocities. Because the equations of motion are quadratic in time, you may have two answers. One answer may be the one you want, but you gain more insight into physics if you consider the meaning of the second answer, too.

EXAMPLE 3.4 Finding the Horizontal Distance: Washout!

A raging flood has washed away a section of highway, creating a gash 1.7 m deep. A car moving at 31 m/s goes straight over the edge. How far from the edge of the washout does it land?

INTERPRET This is a problem involving projectile motion, and it asks for the horizontal distance the car moves after it leaves the road. We're given the car's initial speed and direction (horizontal) and the distance it falls.

DEVELOP Figure 3.16a shows the situation, and we've sketched the essentials in Fig. 3.16b. Since there's no horizontal acceleration, Equation 3.12, $x = x_0 + v_{x0}t$, would determine the unknown distance if we knew the time. But horizontal and vertical motions are independent, so we can find the time until the car hits the ground from the vertical motion alone, as determined by Equation 3.13, $y = y_0 + v_{y0}t - \frac{1}{2}gt^2$. So our plan is to get the time from Equation

3.13 and then use that time in Equation 3.12 to get the horizontal distance. If we choose the origin as the bottom of the washout, then $y_0 = 1.7$ m. Then we want the time when $y = 0$.

EVALUATE With $v_{y0} = 0$, we solve Equation 3.13 for t :

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{2y_0}{g}} = \sqrt{\frac{(2)(1.7 \text{ m})}{(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)}} = 0.589 \text{ s}$$

During this time the car continues to move horizontally at $v_{x0} = 31$ m/s, so Equation 3.12 gives $x = v_{x0}t = (31 \text{ m/s})(0.589 \text{ s}) = 18$ m.

Note that we carried three significant figures in our intermediate answer for the time t to avoid roundoff error in our final two-significant-figure answer. Often intermediate calculations in examples are done keeping many more significant figures because we work

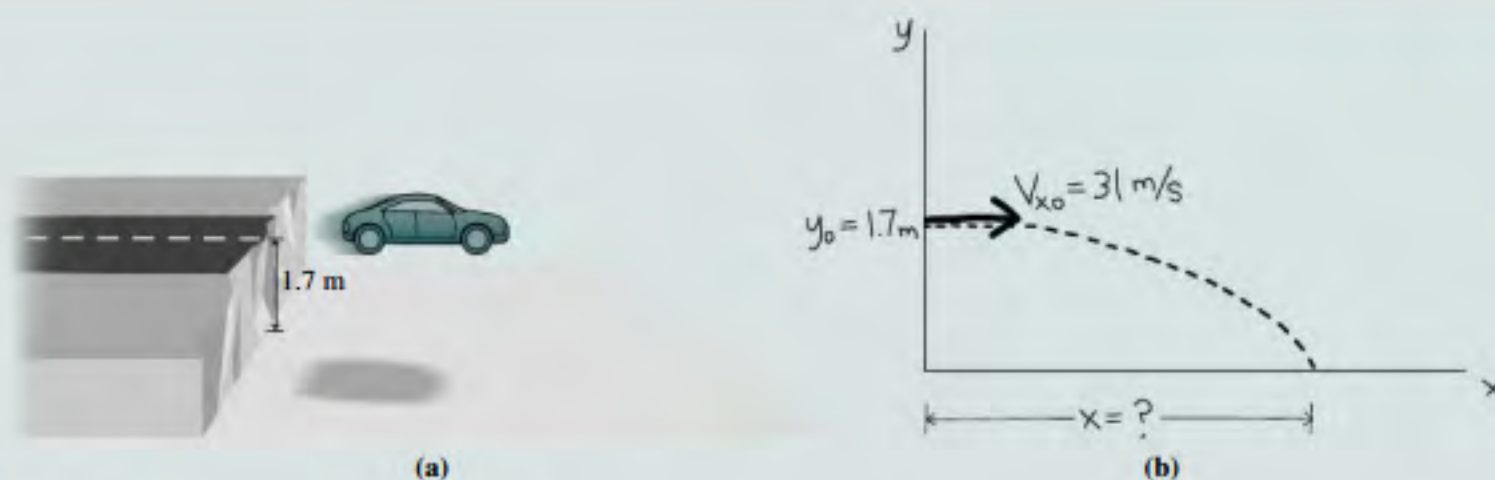


FIGURE 3.16 (a) The highway and car, and (b) our sketch.

directly from a calculator's intermediate values. Alternatively, we could have kept the time in symbolic form, $t = \sqrt{2y_0/g}$. Often you can gain more physical insight from an answer that's expressed symbolically before you put in the numbers.

ASSESS Make sense? About half a second to drop 1.7 m or about 6 ft seems reasonable, and at 31 m/s an object will go somewhat farther than 15 m in this time.



MULTISTEP PROBLEMS Example 3.4 asked for the horizontal distance the car traveled. For that we needed the time—which we weren't given. This is a common situation in all but the simplest physics problems. You need to work through several steps to get the answer—in this case solving first for the unknown time and then for the distance. In essence, we solved two problems in Example 3.4: the first involving vertical motion and the second horizontal motion.

Projectile Trajectories

We're often interested in the path, or **trajectory**, of a projectile without the details of where it is at each instant of time. We can specify the trajectory by giving the height y as a function of the horizontal position x . Consider a projectile launched from the origin at some angle θ_0 to the horizontal, with initial speed v_0 . As Fig. 3.17 suggests, the components of the initial velocity are $v_{x0} = v_0 \cos \theta_0$ and $v_{y0} = v_0 \sin \theta_0$. Then Equations 3.12 and 3.13 become

$$x = v_0 \cos \theta_0 t \quad \text{and} \quad y = v_0 \sin \theta_0 t - \frac{1}{2}gt^2$$

Solving the x equation for the time t gives

$$t = \frac{x}{v_0 \cos \theta_0}$$

Using this result in the y equation, we have

$$y = v_0 \sin \theta_0 \left(\frac{x}{v_0 \cos \theta_0} \right) - \frac{1}{2}g \left(\frac{x}{v_0 \cos \theta_0} \right)^2$$

or

$$y = x \tan \theta_0 - \frac{g}{2v_0^2 \cos^2 \theta_0} x^2 \quad (\text{projectile trajectory}) \quad (3.14)$$

Equation 3.14 gives a mathematical description of the projectile's trajectory. Since y is a quadratic function of x , the trajectory is a parabola.

The Horizontal Range of a Projectile

How far will a soccer ball go if I kick it at 12 m/s at 50° to the horizontal? If I can throw a rock at 15 m/s, can I get it across a 30-m-wide pond? How far off vertical can a rocket's

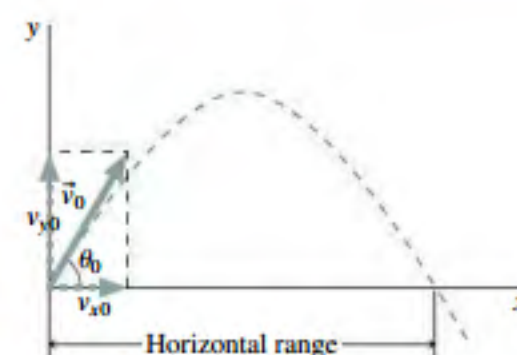


FIGURE 3.17 Parabolic trajectory of a projectile.

APPLICATION Pop Flies, Line Drives, and Hang Times

Although air resistance significantly influences baseball trajectories, to a first approximation baseballs behave like projectiles. For a given speed off the bat, this means a pop fly's "hang time" is much greater than that of a nearly horizontal line drive, and that makes the fly ball much easier to catch (see photo).



EXAMPLE 3.5 Finding the Trajectory: Out of the Hole

A construction worker stands in a 2.6-m-deep hole, 3.1 m from the edge of the hole. He tosses a hammer to a companion outside the hole. If the hammer leaves his hand 1.0 m above the bottom of the hole at an angle of 35° , what's the minimum speed it needs to clear the edge of the hole? How far from the edge of the hole does it land?

INTERPRET We're concerned about *where* an object is but not *when*, so we interpret this as a problem about the trajectory—specifically, the minimum-speed trajectory that just grazes the edge of the hole.

DEVELOP We draw the situation in Fig. 3.18, choosing a coordinate system with its origin at the worker's hand. Equation 3.14 determines the trajectory, so our plan is to find the speed that makes the trajectory pass just over the edge of the hole at $x = 3.1$ m, $y = 1.6$ m.

EVALUATE To find the minimum speed we solve Equation 3.14 for v_0 , using the coordinates of the hole's edge for x and y :

$$v_0 = \sqrt{\frac{gx^2}{2 \cos^2 \theta_0 (x \tan \theta_0 - y)}} = 11 \text{ m/s}$$

To find where the hammer lands, we need to know the horizontal position x when $y = 1.6$ m. Rearranging Equation 3.14 into the standard form for a quadratic equation gives $(g/2v_0^2 \cos^2 \theta_0)x^2 - (\tan \theta_0)x + y = 0$.

Applying the quadratic formula (Appendix A) gives $x = 3.1$ m and $x = 8.7$ m; the second value is the one we want. That 8.7 m is the distance from our origin at the worker's hand, and amounts to $8.7 \text{ m} - 3.1 \text{ m} = 5.6 \text{ m}$ from the hole's edge.

ASSESS Make sense? The other answer to the quadratic, $x = 3.1$ m, is a clue that we did the problem correctly. That 3.1 m is the distance to the edge of the hole. The fact that we get this position when we ask for a vertical height of 1.6 m confirms that the trajectory does indeed just clear the edge of the hole.

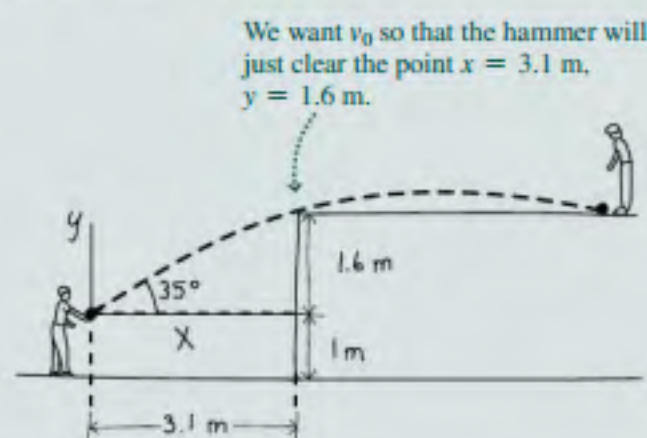


FIGURE 3.18 Our sketch for Example 3.5.

trajectory be and still land within 50 km of its launch point? As in these examples, we're frequently interested in the **horizontal range** of a projectile—that is, how far it moves horizontally over level ground.

For a projectile launched on level ground, we can determine when the projectile will return to the ground by setting $y = 0$ in Equation 3.14:

$$0 = x \tan \theta_0 - \frac{g}{2v_0^2 \cos^2 \theta_0} x^2 = x \left(\tan \theta_0 - \frac{gx}{2v_0^2 \cos^2 \theta_0} \right)$$

There are two solutions: $x = 0$, corresponding to the launch point, and

$$x = \frac{2v_0^2}{g} \cos^2 \theta_0 \tan \theta_0 = \frac{2v_0^2}{g} \sin \theta_0 \cos \theta_0$$

But $\sin 2\theta_0 = 2 \sin \theta_0 \cos \theta_0$, so this becomes

$$x = \frac{v_0^2}{g} \sin 2\theta_0 \quad (\text{horizontal range}) \quad (3.15)$$

Here the particle returns to its starting height, so Equation 3.15 applies.



(a)

Here the particle lands at a different height, so Equation 3.15 doesn't apply.



(b)

FIGURE 3.19 Equation 3.15 applies in (a) but not in (b).



KNOW YOUR LIMITS We emphasize that Equation 3.15 gives the *horizontal range*—the distance a projectile travels horizontally before returning to its starting height. From the way it was derived—setting $y = 0$ —you can see that it does *not* give the horizontal distance when the projectile returns to a different height (Fig. 3.19).

The maximum range occurs when $\sin 2\theta = 1$ in Equation 3.15, which occurs when $\theta = 45^\circ$. As Fig. 3.20 suggests, the range for a given launch speed v_0 is equal for angles equally spaced on either side of 45° —as you can prove in Problem 76.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 3.1 Projectile Flight Times

The ranges in Fig. 3.20 are equal for angles on either side of 45° . How do the flight times compare?

EVALUATE We're being asked about the times projectiles spend on the trajectories shown. Since horizontal and vertical motions are independent, flight time depends on how high the projectile

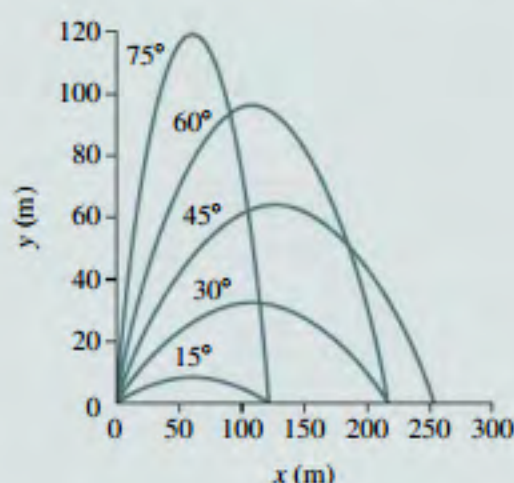


FIGURE 3.20 Trajectories for a projectile launched at 50 m/s.

goes. So we can argue from the vertical motions that the trajectory with the higher launch angle takes longer. We can also argue from horizontal motions: Horizontal distances of the paired trajectories are the same, but the lower trajectory has a greater horizontal velocity component, so again the lower trajectory takes less time.

ASSESS Consider the extreme cases of near-vertical and near-horizontal trajectories. The former goes nearly straight up and down, taking a relatively long time but returning essentially to its starting point. The latter hardly gets anywhere because it immediately hits the ground right at its starting point, so it takes just about no time!

MAKING THE CONNECTION Find the flight times for the 30° and 60° trajectories in Fig. 3.20.

EVALUATE The range of Equation 3.15 is also equal to the horizontal velocity v_x multiplied by the time: $v_x t = v_0^2 \sin 2\theta_0 / g$. Using $v_{x0} = v_0 \cos \theta_0$ and solving for t gives $t = 2v_0 \sin \theta_0 / g$. Using Fig. 3.20's $v_0 = 50$ m/s yields $t_{30} = 5.1$ s and $t_{60} = 8.8$ s. You can explore this time difference more generally in Problem 71.



KNOW THE FUNDAMENTALS Equations 3.14 and 3.15 for a projectile's trajectory and range are useful, but they're not fundamental equations of physics. Both follow directly from the equations for constant acceleration. If you think that specialized results like Equations 3.14 and 3.15 are on an equal footing with more fundamental equations and principles, then you're seeing physics as a hodgepodge of equations and missing the big picture of a science with a few underlying principles from which all else follows.

EXAMPLE 3.6 Projectile Range: Probing the Atmosphere

After a short engine firing, an atmosphere-probing rocket reaches 4.6 km/s. If the rocket must land within 50 km of its launch site, what's the maximum allowable deviation from a vertical trajectory?

INTERPRET Although we're asked about the launch angle, the 50-km criterion is a clue that we can interpret this as a problem about the horizontal range. That "short engine firing" means we can neglect the distance over which the rocket fires and consider it a projectile that leaves the ground at $v_0 = 4.6$ km/s.

DEVELOP Equation 3.15, $x = (v_0^2/g) \sin 2\theta_0$, determines the horizontal range, so our plan is to solve that equation for θ_0 with range $x = 50$ km.

EVALUATE We have $\sin 2\theta_0 = gx/v_0^2 = 0.0232$. There are two solutions, corresponding to $2\theta_0 = 1.33^\circ$ and $2\theta_0 = 180^\circ - 1.33^\circ$. The second is the one we want, giving a launch angle $\theta_0 = 90^\circ - 0.67^\circ$. Therefore the launch angle must be within 0.67° of vertical.

ASSESS Make sense? At 4.6 km/s, this rocket goes quite high, so with even a small deviation from vertical it will land far from its launch point. Again we've got two solutions. The one we rejected is like the low trajectories of Fig. 3.20; although it gives a 50-km range, it isn't going to get our rocket high into the atmosphere.

GOT IT?

3.5 Two projectiles are launched simultaneously from the same point on a horizontal surface, one at 45° to the horizontal and the other at 60° . Their launch speeds are different and are chosen so that the two projectiles travel the same horizontal distance before landing. Which of the following statements is true? (a) A and B land at the same time; (b) B's launch speed is lower than A's and B lands sooner; (c) B's launch speed is lower than A's and B lands later; (d) B's launch speed is higher than A's and B lands sooner; or (e) B's launch speed is higher than A's and B lands later.

3.6 Uniform Circular Motion

LO 3.6 Describe circular motion as accelerated motion.

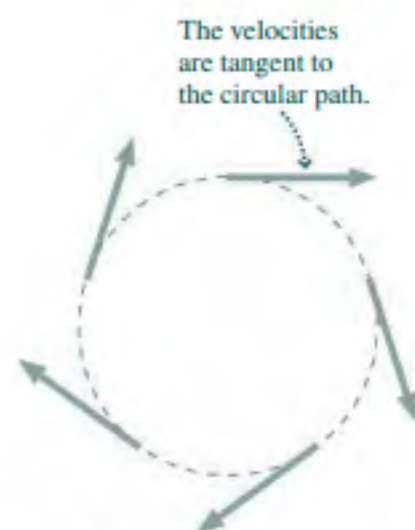


FIGURE 3.21 Velocity vectors in circular motion are tangent to the circular path.

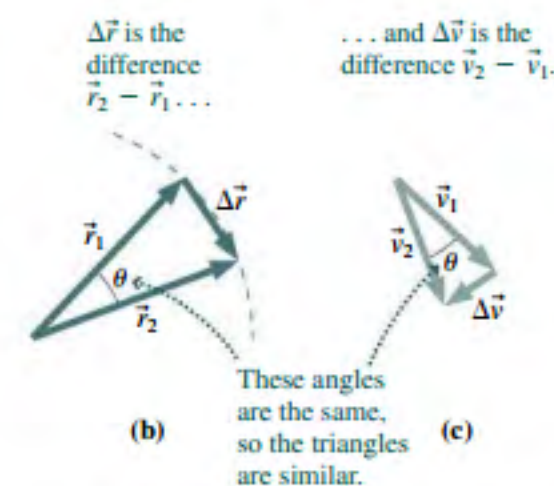
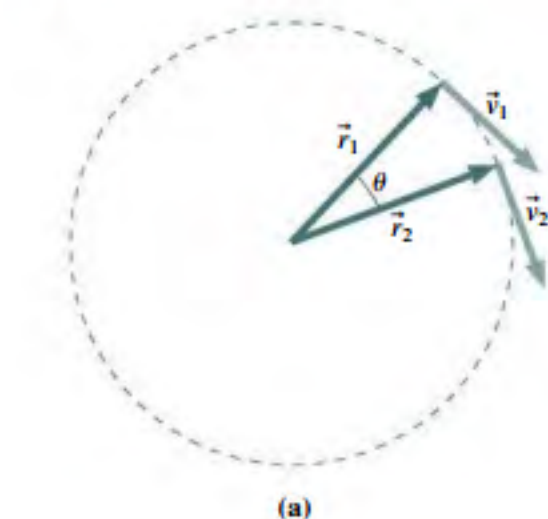


FIGURE 3.22 Position and velocity vectors for two nearby points on the circular path.

An important case of accelerated motion in two dimensions is **uniform circular motion**—that of an object describing a circular path at constant speed. Although the speed is constant, the motion is accelerated because the *direction* of the velocity is changing.

Uniform circular motion is common. Many spacecraft are in circular orbits, and the orbits of the planets are approximately circular. Earth's daily rotation carries you around in uniform circular motion. Pieces of rotating machinery describe uniform circular motion, and you're temporarily in circular motion as you drive around a curve. Electrons undergo circular motion in magnetic fields.

Here we derive an important relationship among the acceleration, speed, and radius of uniform circular motion. Figure 3.21 shows several velocity vectors for an object moving with speed v around a circle of radius r . Velocity vectors are tangent to the circle, indicating the instantaneous direction of motion. In Fig. 3.22a we focus on two nearby points described by position vectors $\vec{r}_1$ and $\vec{r}_2$, where the velocities are $\vec{v}_1$ and $\vec{v}_2$. Figures 3.22b and 3.22c show the corresponding displacement $\Delta\vec{r} = \vec{r}_2 - \vec{r}_1$ and velocity difference $\Delta\vec{v} = \vec{v}_2 - \vec{v}_1$.

Because $\vec{v}_1$ is perpendicular to $\vec{r}_1$, and $\vec{v}_2$ is perpendicular to $\vec{r}_2$, the angles θ shown in all three parts of Fig. 3.22 are the same. Therefore, the triangles in Fig. 3.22b and Fig. 3.22c are similar, and we can write

$$\frac{\Delta v}{v} = \frac{\Delta r}{r}$$

Now suppose the angle θ is small, corresponding to a short time interval Δt for motion from position $\vec{r}_1$ to $\vec{r}_2$. Then the length of the vector $\Delta\vec{r}$ is approximately the length of the circular arc joining the endpoints of the position vectors, as suggested in Fig. 3.22b. The length of this arc is the distance the object travels in the time Δt , or $v\Delta t$, so $\Delta r \approx v\Delta t$. Then the relation between similar triangles becomes

$$\frac{\Delta v}{v} \approx \frac{v \Delta t}{r}$$

Rearranging this equation gives an approximate expression for the magnitude of the average acceleration:

$$\bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} \approx \frac{v^2}{r}$$

Taking the limit $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ gives the instantaneous acceleration; in this limit the angle θ approaches 0, the circular arc and $\Delta\vec{r}$ become indistinguishable, and the relation $\Delta r \approx v\Delta t$ becomes exact. So we have

a is the magnitude of an object's acceleration when it's in uniform circular motion.

v is the object's speed, which is constant even though its *velocity* is changing.

$$a = \frac{v^2}{r} \quad (\text{uniform circular motion})$$

r is the radius of the circular path.

(3.16)

for the magnitude of the instantaneous acceleration of an object moving in a circle of radius r at constant speed v . What about its direction? As Fig. 3.22c suggests, $\Delta\vec{v}$ is very nearly perpendicular to both velocity vectors; in the limit $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$, $\Delta\vec{v}$ and the acceleration $\Delta\vec{v}/\Delta t$ become exactly perpendicular to the velocity. The direction of the acceleration vector is therefore toward the center of the circle.

Our geometric argument would work for any point on the circle, so we conclude that the acceleration has constant magnitude v^2/r and always points toward the center of the

circle. Isaac Newton coined the term *centripetal* to describe this center-pointing acceleration. However, we'll use that term sparingly because we want to emphasize that centripetal acceleration is fundamentally no different from any other acceleration: It's simply a vector describing the rate of change of velocity.

Does Equation 3.16 make sense? Yes. An increase in speed v means the time Δt for a given change in direction of the velocity becomes shorter. Not only that, but the associated velocity change $\Delta \vec{v}$ is larger. These two effects combine to give an acceleration that depends on the *square* of the speed. On the other hand, an increase in the radius with a fixed speed increases the time Δt associated with a given change in velocity, so the acceleration is inversely proportional to the radius.



CIRCULAR MOTION AND CONSTANT ACCELERATION The direction toward the center changes as an object moves around a circular path, so the acceleration vector is *not* constant, even though its magnitude is. Uniform circular motion is *not* motion with constant acceleration, and our constant-acceleration equations *do not* apply. In fact, we know that constant acceleration in two dimensions implies a parabolic trajectory, not a circle.

EXAMPLE 3.7 Uniform Circular Motion: The International Space Station

Find the orbital period (the time to complete one orbit) of the International Space Station in its circular orbit at altitude 400 km, where the acceleration of gravity is 89% of its surface value.

INTERPRET This is a problem about uniform circular motion.

DEVELOP Given the radius and acceleration, we could use Equation 3.16, $a = v^2/r$, to determine the orbital speed. But we're given the altitude, not the orbital radius, and we want the period, not the speed. So our plan is to write the speed in terms of the period and use the result in Equation 3.16. The orbital altitude is the distance from Earth's surface, so we'll need to add Earth's radius to get the orbital radius r .

EVALUATE The speed v is the orbital circumference, $2\pi r$, divided by the period T . Using this in Equation 3.16 gives

$$a = \frac{v^2}{r} = \frac{(2\pi r/T)^2}{r} = \frac{4\pi^2 r}{T^2}$$

Appendix E lists Earth's radius as $R_E = 6.37$ Mm, giving an orbital radius $r = R_E + 400$ km $= 6.77$ Mm. Solving our acceleration expression for the period then gives $T = \sqrt{4\pi^2 r/a} = 5536$ s $= 92$ min, where we used $a = 0.89g$.

ASSESS Make sense? Astronauts orbit Earth in about an hour and a half, experiencing multiple sunrises and sunsets in a 24-hour day. Our answer of 92 min is certainly consistent with that. There's no choice here; for a given orbital radius, Earth's size and mass determine the period. Because astronauts' orbits are limited to a few hundred kilometers, a distance small compared with R_E , variations in g and T are minimal. Any such "low Earth orbit" has a period of approximately 90 min. At higher altitudes, gravity diminishes significantly and periods lengthen; the Moon, for example, orbits in 27 days. We'll discuss orbits more in Chapter 8.

EXAMPLE 3.8 Uniform Circular Motion: Engineering a Road

Worked Example with Variation Problems

An engineer is designing a flat, horizontal road for an 80 km/h speed limit (that's 22.2 m/s). If the maximum acceleration of a vehicle on this road is 1.5 m/s², what's the minimum safe radius for curves in the road?

INTERPRET Even though a curve is only a portion of a circle, we can still interpret this problem as involving uniform circular motion.

DEVELOP Equation 3.16, $a = v^2/r$, gives the acceleration in terms of the speed and radius. Here we have the acceleration and speed, so our plan is to solve for the radius.

EVALUATE Using the given numbers, we have $r = v^2/a = (22.2 \text{ m/s})^2 / 1.5 \text{ m/s}^2 = 329$ m.

ASSESS Make sense? A speed of 80 km/h is pretty fast, so we need a wide curve to keep the required acceleration below its design value. If the curve is sharper, vehicles may slide off the road. We'll see more clearly in subsequent chapters how vehicles manage to negotiate high-speed curves.

The car is slowing, so its tangential acceleration $\vec{a}_t$ is opposite its velocity.

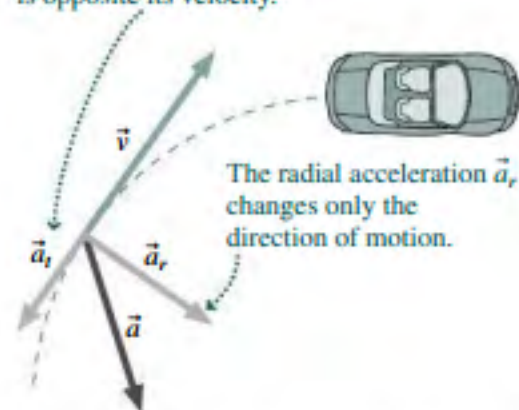


FIGURE 3.23 Acceleration of a car that slows as it rounds a curve.

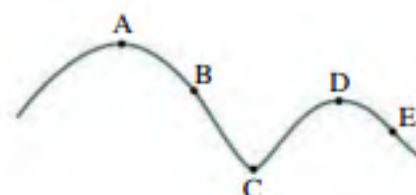
Nonuniform Circular Motion

What if an object moves in a circular path but its speed changes? Then it has components of acceleration both perpendicular and parallel to its velocity. The former, the **radial acceleration** a_r , is what changes the direction to keep the object in circular motion. Its magnitude is still v^2/r , with v now the instantaneous speed. The parallel component of acceleration, also called **tangential acceleration** a_t , because it's tangent to the circle, changes the speed but not the direction. Its magnitude is therefore the rate of change of speed, or dv/dt . Figure 3.23 shows these two acceleration components for a car rounding a curve. We'll explore these two components of acceleration further in Chapter 10, when we study rotational motion.

Finally, what if the radius of a curved path changes? At any point on a curve we can define a **radius of curvature**. Then the radial acceleration is still v^2/r , and it can vary if either v or r changes along the curve. The tangential acceleration is still tangent to the curve, and it still describes the rate of change of speed. So it's straightforward to generalize the ideas of uniform circular motion to cases where the motion is nonuniform either because the speed changes, or because the radius changes, or both.

GOT IT?

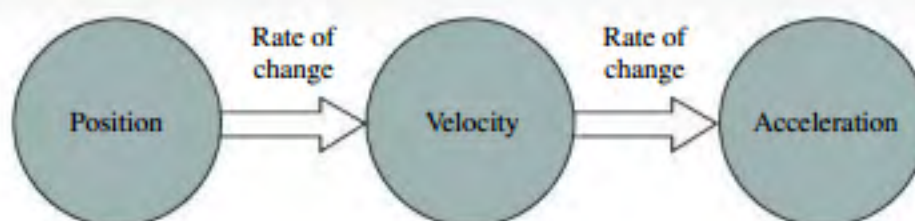
3.6 An object moves in a horizontal plane with constant speed on the path shown. At which marked point is the magnitude of its acceleration greatest?



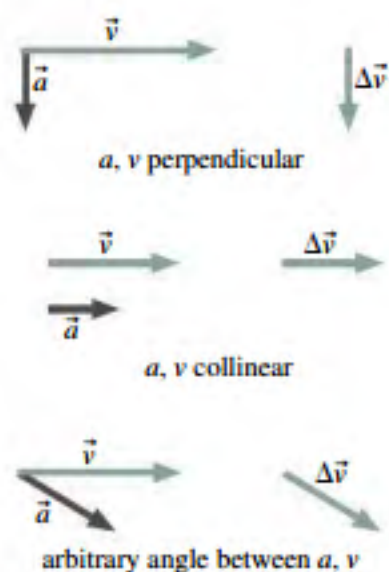
Chapter 3 Summary

Big Idea

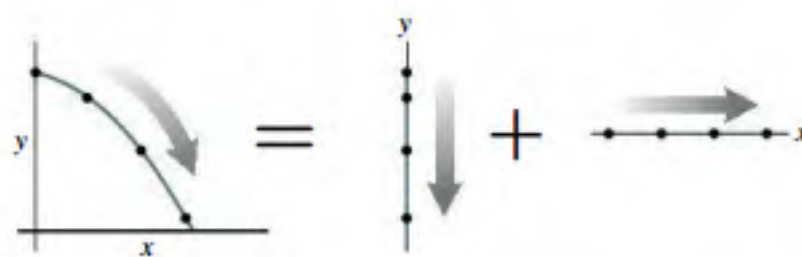
Quantities characterizing motion in two and three dimensions have both **magnitude** and **direction** and are described by **vectors**. Position, velocity, and acceleration are all vector quantities, related as they are in one dimension:



These vector quantities need not have the same direction. In particular, acceleration that's perpendicular to velocity changes the direction but not the magnitude of the velocity. Acceleration that's collinear changes only the magnitude of the velocity. In general, both change.



Components of motion in two perpendicular directions are independent. This reduces problems in two and three dimensions to sets of one-dimensional problems that can be solved with the methods of Chapter 2.



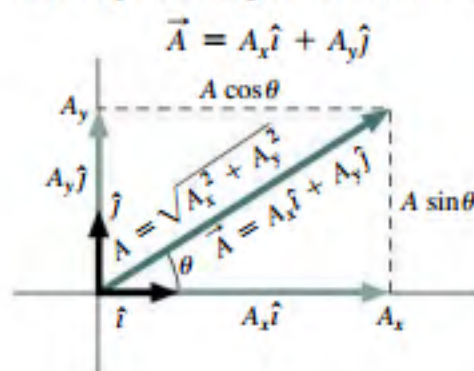
Key Concepts and Equations

Vectors can be described by magnitude and direction or by components. In two dimensions these representations are related by

$$A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{A_y}{A_x}$$

$$A_x = A \cos \theta \quad \text{and} \quad A_y = A \sin \theta$$

A compact way to express vectors involves unit vectors that have magnitude 1, have no units, and point along the coordinate axes:



Velocity is the rate of change of the position vector $\vec{r}$:

$$\vec{v} = \frac{d\vec{r}}{dt}$$

Acceleration is the rate of change of velocity:

$$\vec{a} = \frac{d\vec{v}}{dt}$$

Applications

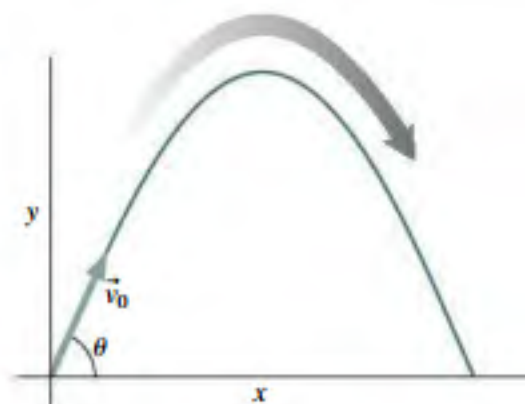
When acceleration is constant, motion is described by vector equations that generalize the one-dimensional equations of Chapter 2:

$$\vec{v} = \vec{v}_0 + \vec{a}t \quad \vec{r} = \vec{r}_0 + \vec{v}_0 t + \frac{1}{2} \vec{a}t^2$$

An important application of constant-acceleration motion in two dimensions is **projectile motion** under the influence of gravity.

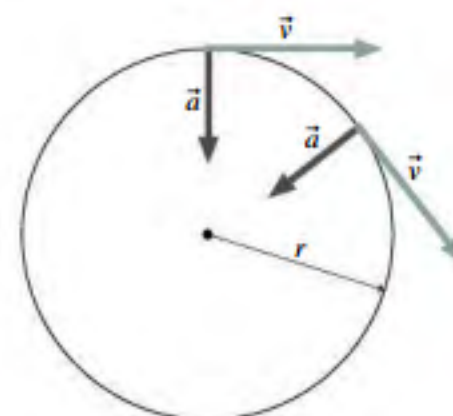
Projectile trajectory:

$$y = x \tan \theta_0 - \frac{g}{2v_0^2 \cos^2 \theta_0} x^2$$



In **uniform circular motion** the magnitudes of velocity and acceleration remain constant, but their directions continually change. For an object moving in a circular path of radius r , the magnitudes of $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{v}$ are related by

$$a = v^2/r$$



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>LO 3.1 Describe position in two and three dimensions, using vectors.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 3.1, 3.2, 3.10;
Exercises 3.11, 3.12, 3.13, 3.14, 3.15, 3.16, 3.17; Problems 3.52, 3.53, 3.61</p> <p>LO 3.2 Represent velocity and acceleration as vectors.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 3.3, 3.8; Exercises 3.18, 3.19, 3.20, 3.21, 3.22, 3.23, 3.24, 3.25; Problems 3.55, 3.56, 3.58</p> <p>LO 3.3 Relate velocities in different reference frames.
For Thought and Discussion Question 3.9; Exercises 3.26, 3.27, 3.28, 3.29; Problems 3.54, 3.60, 3.77</p> | <p>LO 3.4 Analyze motion in two dimensions.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 3.5, 3.9; Exercises 3.30, 3.31; Problems 3.63, 3.64, 3.89</p> <p>LO 3.5 Predict the motion of projectiles subject to gravity.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 3.6, 3.7; Exercises 3.32, 3.33, 3.34, 3.35, 3.36, 3.37; Problems 3.62, 3.65, 3.66, 3.67, 3.68, 3.69, 3.70, 3.71, 3.72, 3.74, 3.75, 3.76, 3.78, 3.79, 3.82, 3.83, 3.84, 3.85, 3.86, 3.87, 3.88, 3.90, 3.91, 3.94</p> <p>LO 3.6 Describe circular motion as accelerated motion.
For Thought and Discussion Question 3.4; Exercises 3.38, 3.39, 3.40, 3.41, 3.42, 3.43; Problems 3.57, 3.80, 3.81, 3.92, 3.93</p> |
|--|---|

For Thought and Discussion

- When can you replace the vector sum of two velocities or accelerations by simple addition of their magnitudes? Can you do this for more than two velocities or accelerations?
- Can two vectors of equal magnitude sum to zero? How about two vectors of unequal magnitude? Repeat for three vectors.
- Can an object have a southward acceleration while moving northward? A westward acceleration while moving northward?
- You drop a ball from the roof while your friend gives another ball a horizontal velocity from the same height. Which of the two balls would reach the ground first?
- In what sense is Equation 3.8 really two (or three) equations?
- Is a projectile's speed constant throughout its parabolic trajectory?
- Is there any point on a projectile's trajectory where velocity and acceleration are perpendicular?
- How is it possible for an object to be moving in one direction but accelerating in another?
- You're in a bus moving with constant velocity on a level road when you throw a ball straight up. When the ball returns, does it land ahead of you, behind you, or back at your hand? Explain.
- Which of the following are legitimate mathematical equations? Explain. (a) $v = 5\hat{i}$ m/s; (b) $\vec{v} = 5$ m/s; (c) $\vec{a} = dv/dt$; (d) $\vec{a} = d\vec{v}/dt$; (e) $\vec{v} = 5\hat{i}$ m/s.

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 3.1 Vectors

- You walk 1.57 km north, then 0.846 km east. Find (a) the magnitude of your displacement vector and (b) its direction, expressed as an angle relative to the northward direction.
- An ion in a mass spectrometer follows a semicircular path of radius 15.8 cm. What are (a) the distance it travels and (b) the magnitude of its displacement?
- A migrating whale follows the coast of Mexico and California. It first travels 360 km northwest, then turns due north and travels another 410 km. Determine graphically the magnitude and direction of its displacement.
- Vector $\vec{A}$ has magnitude 4.0 m and points to the right; vector $\vec{B}$ has magnitude 3.0 m and points vertically upward. Find the magnitude and direction of vector $\vec{C}$ such that $\vec{A} + \vec{B} + \vec{C} = \vec{0}$.
- Use unit vectors to express a displacement of 150 km at 35° counterclockwise from the x -axis.
- Find the magnitude of the vector $31\hat{i} + 56\hat{j}$ m, and determine its angle to the x -axis.
- (a) What's the magnitude of $\hat{i} + \hat{j}$? (b) What angle does it make with the x -axis?

Section 3.2 Velocity and Acceleration Vectors

- You're leading an international effort to save Earth from an asteroid heading toward us at 11 km/s. Your team mounts a rocket on the asteroid and fires it for 10 min, after which the asteroid is moving at 21 km/s at 24° to its original path. In a news conference, what do you report for the magnitude of the acceleration imparted to the asteroid?
- An object's velocity vector $\vec{v}$ has components related by $v_y = -v_x$. What are the possible values for the angle that $\vec{v}$ makes with the x -axis?
- A car drives north at 45 km/h for 12 min and then turns east and goes 6.0 km at 90 km/h. Finally, it goes southwest at 60 km/h for 7.0 min. Determine the car's (a) displacement and (b) average velocity for this trip.

- An object's velocity is $\vec{v} = ct^3\hat{i} + d\hat{j}$, where t is time and c and d are positive constants with appropriate units. What's the direction of the object's acceleration?
- A car, initially going eastward, rounds a 90° curve and ends up heading southward. If the speedometer reading remains constant, what's the direction of the car's average acceleration vector?
- What are (a) the average velocity and (b) the average acceleration of the tip of the 2.4-cm-long hour hand of a clock in the interval from noon to 6 PM? Use unit vector notation, with the x -axis pointing toward 3 and the y -axis toward noon.
- An object is moving with speed v when it's subject to an acceleration that leaves it moving at an angle θ to its original direction of motion, with twice its original speed. Find an expression for the angle between the acceleration vector and the original direction of the object's motion.
- An object is moving in the x -direction at 1.1 m/s when it undergoes an acceleration $\vec{a} = 0.52\hat{j}$ m/s². Find its velocity vector after 5.2 s.

Section 3.3 Relative Motion

- You're piloting a small plane on a route directly north, but there's a wind blowing from the west at 65 km/h. If your plane's airspeed (i.e., its speed relative to the air) is 470 km/h, in what direction should you head?
- You wish to row straight across a 63-m-wide river. You can row at a steady 1.3 m/s relative to the water, and the river flows at 0.57 m/s. (a) What direction should you head? (b) How long will it take you to cross the river?
- A plane with airspeed 320 km/h flies perpendicularly across the jet stream, its nose pointed into the jet stream at 38° from the perpendicular direction of its flight. Find the speed of the jet stream.
- A flock of geese is attempting to migrate due south, but the wind is blowing from the west at 4.9 m/s. If the birds can fly at 7.6 m/s relative to the air, in which direction should they be headed?

Section 3.4 Constant Acceleration

- The position of an object as a function of time is given by $\vec{r} = (3.2t + 1.8t^2)\hat{i} + (1.7t - 2.4t^2)\hat{j}$ m, with t in seconds. Find the object's acceleration vector.
- You're sailboarding at 6.5 m/s when a wind gust hits, lasting 5.8 s and accelerating your board at 0.53 m/s² at 35° to your original direction. Find the magnitude and direction of your displacement during the gust.

Section 3.5 Projectile Motion

- You toss an apple horizontally at 8.1 m/s from a height of 2.8 m. Simultaneously, you drop a peach from the same height. How long does each take to reach the ground?
- A carpenter tosses a shingle horizontally off an 8.2-m-high roof at 14 m/s. (a) How long does it take the shingle to reach the ground? (b) How far does it move horizontally?
- An arrow fired horizontally at 35 m/s travels 23 m horizontally. From what height was it fired?
- Droplets in an ink-jet printer are ejected horizontally at 12 m/s and travel a horizontal distance of 1.0 mm to the paper. How far do they fall in this interval?
- Protons drop 1.1 μ m over the 1.5-km length of a particle accelerator. What's their approximate average speed?
- If you can hit a golf ball 170 m on Earth, how far can you hit it on the Moon? (Your answer will be an underestimate because it neglects air resistance on Earth.)

Section 3.6 Uniform Circular Motion

38. China's high-speed rail network calls for a minimum turn radius of 7.0 km for 350-km/h trains. What's the magnitude of a train's acceleration in this case?
39. The minute hand of a clock is 8.50 cm long. Find the magnitude of the acceleration of its tip.
40. How fast would a car have to round a 50-m-radius turn for its acceleration to be numerically equal to that of gravity?
41. Determine the acceleration of the Moon, which completes a nearly circular orbit of 384.4 Mm radius in 27.3 days.
42. Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites circle Earth at altitudes of approximately 20,000 km, where the gravitational acceleration has 5.8% of its surface value. To the nearest hour, what's the orbital period of the GPS satellites?
43. Pilots of high-performance aircraft risk loss of consciousness if they undergo accelerations exceeding about 5g. For a military jet flying at 2470 km/h (about twice the speed of sound), what's the minimum radius for a turn that will keep the acceleration below 5g?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

44. **Example 3.3:** You're windsurfing at 6.28 m/s when a gust hits, accelerating your sailboard at 0.714 m/s^2 at 48.8° to your original direction. If the gust lasts 5.42 s, what's the magnitude of the board's displacement during this time?
45. **Example 3.3:** You're windsurfing at 5.68 m/s when a gust hits, accelerating your sailboard at 62.5° to your original direction. The gust lasts 5.42 s, and the board's displacement during this time is 37.2 m. Find the magnitude of the board's acceleration during the gust.
46. **Example 3.3:** A hockey puck glides across the ice at 27.7 m/s, when a player whacks it with her hockey stick, giving it an acceleration of 448 m/s^2 at 75.0° to its original direction. If the acceleration lasts 41.3 ms, what's the magnitude of the puck's displacement during this time?
47. **Example 3.3:** A hockey puck glides across the ice at 27.7 m/s, when a player whacks it with her hockey stick, giving it an acceleration at 64.3° to its original direction. The acceleration lasts 50.3 ms, and the puck's displacement during this time is 1.76 m. Find the magnitude of the puck's acceleration.
48. **Example 3.8:** An engineer is designing a flat, horizontal road for a 90-km/h speed limit. If the maximum acceleration of a vehicle on this road is 4.36 m/s^2 , what's the minimum safe radius for curves in the road?
49. **Example 3.8:** An engineer is designing a flat, horizontal road with a curve whose radius is 125 m. Under dry conditions, the engineer can count on an acceleration of at least 5.0 m/s^2 , provided by the tires of vehicles rounding the curve. What should be the posted speed limit, given to the nearest 10 km/h?
50. **Example 3.8:** A jet plane is capable of an acceleration of magnitude $0.564g$ when it turns. If the plane is flying at 988 km/h, what's the minimum turning radius for the plane?
51. **Example 3.8:** A jet plane is capable of an acceleration of magnitude $0.612g$ when it turns. If the plane is to make a turn of radius 8.77 km, what's its maximum possible speed?

Problems

52. Vector $\vec{A}$ has magnitude 1.3 m and points 30° clockwise from the x -axis. Vector $\vec{B}$ has magnitude 1.9 m. Find the direction of $\vec{B}$ such that $\vec{A} + \vec{B}$ is in the y -direction.
53. Let $\vec{A} = 17\hat{i} - 42\hat{j}$ and $\vec{B} = 31\hat{j} + 17\hat{k}$. Find $\vec{C}$ such that $\vec{A} + \vec{B} + \vec{C} = \vec{0}$.
54. You're a pilot beginning a 1280-km flight to a city due south of your starting point. Your plane's airspeed (i.e., its speed relative to the air) is 846 km/h, and air traffic control says you'll have to head 11.5° west of south to maintain a course due south. If the flight takes 115 min, what are the magnitude and direction of the wind velocity?
55. A particle's position is $\vec{r} = (ct^2 - 2dt^3)\hat{i} + (2ct^2 - dt^3)\hat{j}$, where c and d are positive constants. Find expressions for times $t > 0$ when the particle is moving in (a) the x -direction and (b) the y -direction.
56. An object moving at 50 m/s is subject to an acceleration of magnitude 20 m/s^2 that lasts for 2 s. At the end of that time interval, it's moving at 88 m/s. Estimate, to the nearest 30° , the angle between the initial velocity and the acceleration (i.e., is that angle closer to 0° , to 30° , to 60° , or to 90° ?). Explain your reasoning.
57. You're designing a "cloverleaf" highway interchange. Vehicles will exit the highway and slow to a constant 72 km/h before negotiating a circular turn. If a vehicle's acceleration is not to exceed $0.45g$ (i.e., 45% of Earth's gravitational acceleration), then what's the minimum radius for the turn? Assume the road is flat, not banked (more on this in Chapter 5).
58. An object undergoes acceleration $2.3\hat{i} + 3.6\hat{j} \text{ m/s}^2$ for 10 s. At the end of this time, its velocity is $33\hat{i} + 15\hat{j} \text{ m/s}$. (a) What was its velocity at the beginning of the 10-s interval? (b) By how much did its speed change? (c) By how much did its direction change? (d) Show that the speed change is not given by the magnitude of the acceleration multiplied by the time. Why not?
59. The New York Wheel is the world's largest Ferris wheel. It's 183 meters in diameter and rotates once every 37.3 min. Find the magnitudes of (a) the average velocity and (b) the average acceleration at the wheel's rim, over a 5.00-min interval. (c) Compare your answer to (b) with the wheel's instantaneous accelerations.
60. A ferryboat sails between towns directly opposite each other on a river, moving at speed v' relative to the water. (a) Find an expression for the angle it should head at if the river flows at speed V . (b) What's the significance of your answer if $V > v'$?
61. The sum of two vectors, $\vec{A} + \vec{B}$, is perpendicular to their difference, $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$. How do the vectors' magnitudes compare?
62. A delivery drone approaches a customer's porch, flying 8.65 m above the porch at 21.5 km/h. (a) At what horizontal distance from the desired landing spot should it release a package? (b) At what speed will the package hit the porch?
63. An object is initially moving in the x -direction at 5.5 m/s, when it undergoes an acceleration in the y -direction for a period of 22 s. If the object moves equal distances in the x - and y -directions during this time, what's the magnitude of its acceleration?
64. A particle leaves the origin with its initial velocity given by $\vec{v}_0 = 11\hat{i} + 18\hat{j} \text{ m/s}$, undergoing constant acceleration $\vec{a} = -1.4\hat{i} + 0.27\hat{j} \text{ m/s}^2$. (a) When does the particle cross the y -axis? (b) What's its y -coordinate at the time? (c) How fast is it moving and in what direction?
65. A kid fires a squirt gun horizontally from 1.6 m above the ground. It hits another kid 2.1 m away square in the back, 0.93 m above the ground. What was the water's initial speed?
66. A projectile has horizontal range R on level ground and reaches maximum height h . Find an expression for its initial speed.

67. You throw a baseball at a 45° angle to the horizontal, aiming straight at a friend who's sitting in a tree a distance h above level ground. At the instant you throw your ball, your friend drops another ball. (a) Show that the two balls will collide, no matter what your ball's initial speed, provided it's greater than some minimum value. (b) Find an expression for that minimum speed.
68. In a chase scene, a movie stuntman runs horizontally off the flat roof of one building and lands on another roof 1.3 m lower. If the gap between the buildings is 3.5 m wide, how fast must he run to cross the gap?
69. The meadow jumping mouse, *Zapus hudsonius*, inhabits much of
- 810 North America and can jump as high as 1 m. A jumping mouse is 48.3 cm from a 62.0-cm-high garden fence. (a) How fast and (b) at what angle should it jump so it just clears the fence without going any higher?
70. Derive a general formula for the horizontal distance covered by a projectile launched horizontally at speed v_0 from height h .
71. Consider two projectiles launched on level ground with the same speed, at angles $45^\circ \pm \alpha$. Show that the ratio of their flight times is $\tan(\alpha + 45^\circ)$.
72. You toss a protein bar to your hiking companion located 8.6 m up a 39° slope, as shown in Fig. 3.24. Determine the initial velocity vector so that when the bar reaches your friend, it's moving horizontally.

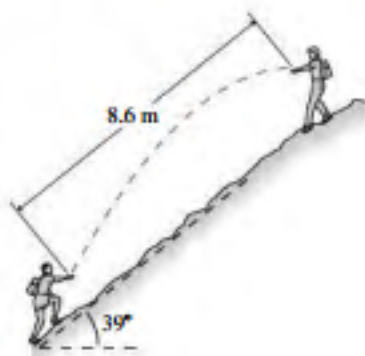


FIGURE 3.24 Problem 72

73. The table below lists position versus time for an object moving in the x - y plane, which is horizontal in this case. Make a plot of position y versus x to determine the nature of the object's path. Then determine the magnitudes of the object's velocity and acceleration.

Time, t (s)	x (m)	y (m)	Time, t (s)	x (m)	y (m)
0	0	0	0.70	2.41	3.15
0.10	0.65	0.09	0.80	2.17	3.75
0.20	1.25	0.33	0.90	1.77	4.27
0.30	1.77	0.73	1.00	1.25	4.67
0.40	2.17	1.25	1.10	0.65	4.91
0.50	2.41	1.85	1.20	0.00	5.00
0.60	2.50	2.50			

74. A projectile launched at angle θ to the horizontal reaches maximum height h . Show that its horizontal range is $4h/\tan \theta$.
75. As an expert witness, you're testifying in a case involving a motorcycle accident. A motorcyclist driving in a 50 km/h zone hit a stopped car on a level road. The motorcyclist was thrown from his bike and landed 16 m down the road. You're asked whether he was speeding. What's your answer?
76. Show that, for a given initial speed, the horizontal range of a projectile is the same for launch angles $45^\circ + \alpha$ and $45^\circ - \alpha$.
77. A basketball player is horizontally 4.5 m from the center of the basket, which is 3.05 m off the ground. At what angle should the player aim the ball from a height of 2.5 m with a speed of 8 m/s?
78. A projectile is launched from the edge of a table, a height h off the floor. It rises to a maximum height h above the table and then lands on the floor a horizontal distance $2h$ from the edge of the table. Find (a) an expression for the magnitude of the initial velocity and (b) an exact value for the launch angle.

79. Consider the two projectiles in GOT IT? 3.5. Suppose the 45° projectile is launched with speed v and that it's in the air for time t . Find expressions for (a) the launch speed and (b) the flight time of the 60° projectile, in terms of v and t .
80. In the 2015 film *The Martian*, astronauts ride the *Hermes* spaceship between Earth and Mars. To help keep the astronauts' bodies in good shape on the long interplanetary voyages, *Hermes* rotates to simulate Martian gravity. If the spacecraft's maximum diameter is 38.0 m, what should be its rotation period (the time to complete one rotation) if the acceleration at its outer edge is to equal the gravitational acceleration at Mars (see Appendix E)?
81. Your car can sustain an acceleration of $0.795g$ while turning on a dry road. You're driving at 80.0 km/h when you spot a truck jackknifed across the road. If you swerve in a circular arc, as shown in Fig. 3.25, how far from the truck do you have to start swerving to avoid the truck? Assume your speed doesn't change.

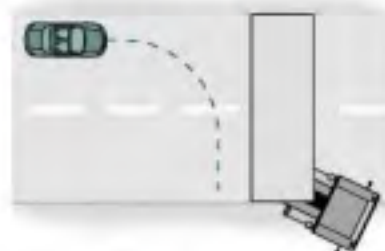


FIGURE 3.25 Problem 81

82. Your alpine rescue team is using a slingshot to send an emergency medical packet to climbers stranded on a ledge, as shown in Fig. 3.26; your job is to calculate the launch speed. What do you report?

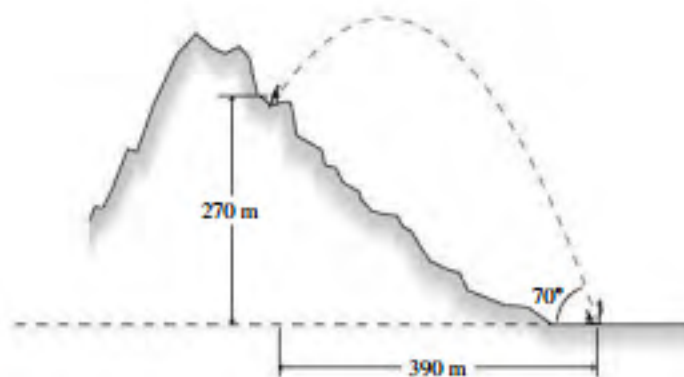


FIGURE 3.26 Problem 82

83. If you can throw a stone straight up to height h , what's the maximum horizontal distance you could throw it over level ground?
84. In a conversion from military to peacetime use, a missile with maximum horizontal range 220 km is being adapted for studying Earth's upper atmosphere. What is the maximum altitude it can achieve if launched vertically?
85. A soccer player can kick a ball 33 m on level ground, with its initial velocity at 37° to the horizontal. At the same initial speed and angle to the horizontal, what horizontal distance can the player kick the ball on a 17° upward slope?
86. A diver leaves a 3-m board on a trajectory that takes her 2.5 m above the board and then into the water 2.8 m horizontally from the end of the board. At what speed and angle did she leave the board?
87. Using calculus, you can find a function's maximum or minimum by differentiating and setting the result to zero. Do this for Equation 3.15, differentiating with respect to θ , and thus verify that the maximum range occurs for $\theta = 45^\circ$.
88. You're a consulting engineer specializing in athletic facilities, and you've been asked to help design the Olympic ski jump pictured in Fig. 3.27. Skiers will leave the jump at 28 m/s and 9.5°

below the horizontal, and land 55 m horizontally from the end of the jump. Your job is to specify the slope of the ground so skiers' trajectories make an angle of only 3.0° with the ground on landing, ensuring their safety. What slope do you specify?

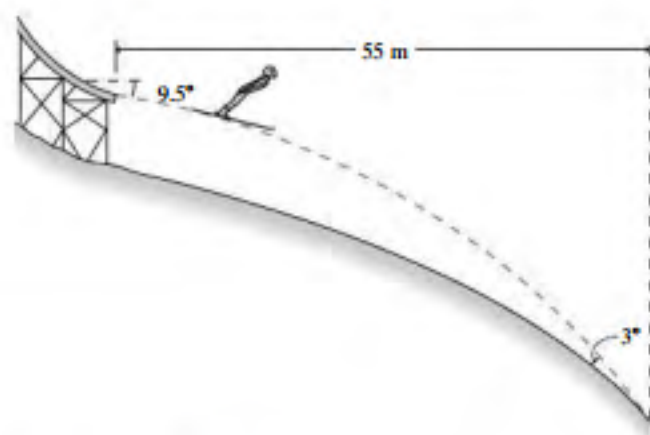


FIGURE 3.27 Problem 88

89. An object moves with constant speed in the x -direction, but in the y -direction it's subject to an acceleration that increases linearly with time: $a(t) = bt$, where b is a constant. Derive an equation analogous to Equation 3.14, giving the object's trajectory in this situation. (Assume there's no gravity.)
90. Your medieval history class is constructing a trebuchet, a catapult-like weapon for hurling stones at enemy castles. The plan is to launch stones off a 75-m-high cliff, with initial speed 36 m/s. Some members of the class think a 45° launch angle will give the maximum range, but others claim the cliff height makes a difference. What do you give for the angle that will maximize the range?
91. Generalize Problem 90 to find an expression for the angle that will maximize the range of a projectile launched with speed v_0 from height h above level ground.
92. (a) Show that the position of a particle on a circle of radius R with its center at the origin is $\vec{r} = R(\cos\theta\hat{i} + \sin\theta\hat{j})$, where θ is the angle the position vector makes with the x -axis. (b) If the particle moves with constant speed v starting on the x -axis at $t = 0$, find an expression for θ in terms of time t and the period T to complete a full circle. (c) Differentiate the position vector twice with respect to time to find the acceleration, and show that its magnitude is given by Equation 3.16 and its direction is toward the center of the circle.
93. An object moves in a circular path of radius R in the $x - y$ plane, where the origin is at the center of the circle. It starts from rest at $x = R$ and goes counterclockwise, undergoing constant tangential acceleration a_t . Find expressions for (a) the magnitude and (b) the direction (relative to the positive x -axis) of its acceleration vector when it's traversed a quarter of the circle and thus crosses the positive y -axis.
94. After launch, a projectile lands a horizontal distance $2R$ from its launch point and a vertical distance R below its launch point. Here R is the horizontal range the projectile would have had if launched over level ground at the same launch angle. Find the launch angle.

Passage Problems

Alice (A), Bob (B), and Carrie (C) all start from their dorm and head for the library for an evening study session. Alice takes a straight path,

while the paths Bob and Carrie follow are portions of circular arcs, as shown in Fig. 3.28. Each student walks at a constant speed. All three leave the dorm at the same time, and they arrive simultaneously at the library.

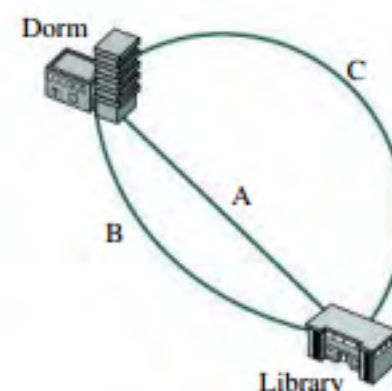


FIGURE 3.28 Passage Problems 95–98

95. Which statement characterizes the distances the students travel?
 - a. They're equal.
 - b. $C > A > B$
 - c. $C > B > A$
 - d. $B > C > A$
96. Which statement characterizes the students' displacements?
 - a. They're equal.
 - b. $C > A > B$
 - c. $C > B > A$
 - d. $B > C > A$
97. Which statement characterizes their average speeds?
 - a. They're equal.
 - b. $C > A > B$
 - c. $C > B > A$
 - d. $B > C > A$
98. Which statement characterizes their accelerations while walking (not starting and stopping)?
 - a. They're equal.
 - b. None accelerates.
 - c. $A > B > C$
 - d. $C > B > A$
 - e. $B > C > A$
 - f. There's not enough information to decide.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Assuming negligible air resistance, the penguin should leave the water at a 45° angle.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 3.1 (c)
- 3.2 (d) only
- 3.3 (1) (c); (2) (c); (3) (a)
- 3.4 (c) gives the greatest change in speed; (b) gives the greatest change in direction
- 3.5 (e)
- 3.6 (c)

Force and Motion

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 4.1 Articulate the Newtonian paradigm that it's about *change* in motion.
- LO 4.2 List Newton's three laws of motion.
- LO 4.3 Solve problems involving Newton's second law.
- LO 4.4 Name the fundamental forces of nature.
- LO 4.5 Describe quantitatively how gravity acts on objects.
- LO 4.6 Distinguish apparent weight from actual weight.
- LO 4.7 Identify Newton's third-law force pairs and find their values.
- LO 4.8 Determine the forces exerted by springs.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- How to express motion quantities as vectors (Sections 3.1–3.2)
- How to describe motion under constant acceleration (Sections 3.4–3.5)
- How to describe circular motion as a case of accelerated motion (Section 3.6)

An interplanetary spacecraft moves effortlessly, yet its engines shut down years ago. Why does it keep moving? A baseball heads toward the batter. The batter swings, and suddenly the ball is heading toward left field. Why did its motion change?

Questions about the “why” of motion are the subject of **dynamics**. Here we develop the basic laws that answer those questions. Isaac Newton first stated these laws more than 300 years ago, yet they remain a vital part of physics and engineering today, helping us guide spacecraft to distant planets, develop better cars, and manipulate the components of individual cells.

4.1 The Wrong Question

LO 4.1 Articulate the Newtonian paradigm that it's about *change* in motion.

We began this chapter with two questions: one about why a spacecraft *moved* and the other about why a baseball's motion *changed*. For nearly 2000 years following the work of Aristotle (384–322 BCE), the first question—Why do things move?—was the crucial one. And the answer seemed obvious: It took a force—a push or a pull—to keep something moving. This idea makes sense: Stop exerting yourself when jogging, and you stop moving; take your foot off the gas pedal, and your car soon stops. Everyday experience seems to suggest that Aristotle was right, and most of us carry in our heads the Aristotelian idea that motion requires a cause—something that pushes or pulls on a moving object to keep it going.



What forces did engineers have to consider when they developed the Mars *Curiosity* rover's “sky crane” landing system?

Actually, “What keeps things moving?” is the wrong question. In the early 1600s, Galileo Galilei did experiments that convinced him that a moving object has an intrinsic “quantity of motion” and needs no push to keep it moving (Fig. 4.1). Instead of answering “What keeps things moving?” Galileo declared that the question needs no answer. In so doing, he set the stage for centuries of progress in physics, beginning with the achievements of Issac Newton and culminating in the work of Albert Einstein.

The Right Question

Our first question—about why the spacecraft keeps moving—is the wrong question. So what’s the right question? It’s the second one, about why the baseball’s motion *changed*. Dynamics isn’t about what causes motion itself; it’s about what causes *changes* in motion. Changes include starting and stopping, speeding up and slowing down, and changing direction. Any *change* in motion begs an explanation, but motion itself does not. Get used to this important idea and you’ll have a much easier time with physics. But if you remain secretly an Aristotelian, looking for causes of motion itself, you’ll find it difficult to understand and apply the simple laws that actually govern motion.

Galileo identified the right question about motion. But it was Isaac Newton who formulated the quantitative laws describing how motion changes. We use those laws today for everything from designing antilock braking systems, to building skyscrapers, to guiding spacecraft.

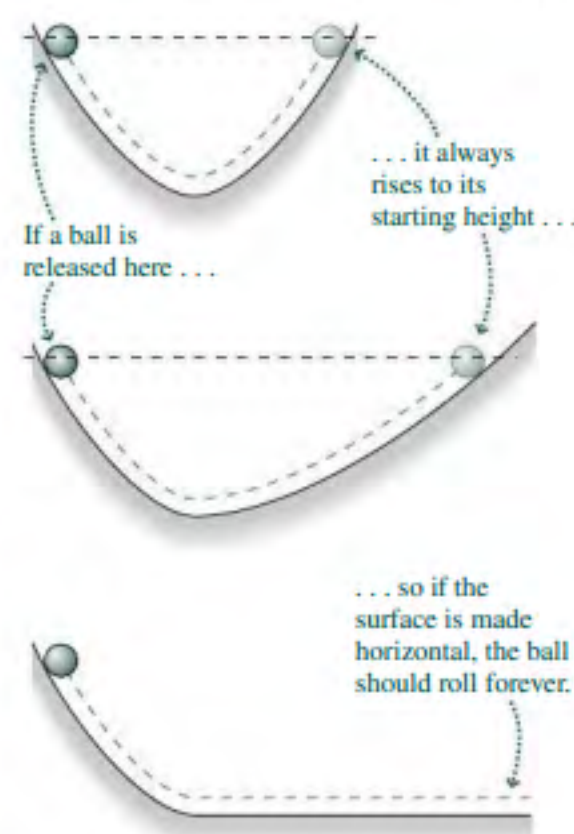


FIGURE 4.1 Galileo considered balls rolling on inclines and concluded that a ball on a horizontal surface should roll forever.

4.2 Newton's First and Second Laws

LO 4.2 List Newton's three laws of motion.

What caused the baseball’s motion to change? It was the bat’s push. The term **force** describes a push or a pull. And the essence of dynamics is simply this:

Force causes change in motion.

We’ll soon quantify this idea, writing equations and solving numerical problems. But the essential point is in the simple sentence above. If you want to change an object’s motion, you need to apply a force. If you see an object’s motion change, you know there’s a force acting. Contrary to Aristotle, and probably to your own intuitive sense, it does *not* take a force to keep something in unchanging motion; force is needed *only* to *change* an object’s motion.

The Net Force

You can push a ball left or right, up or down. Your car’s tires can push the car forward or backward, or make it round a curve. Force has direction and is a vector quantity. Furthermore, more than one force can act on an object. We call the individual forces on an object **interaction forces** because they always involve other objects interacting with the object in question. In Fig. 4.2a, for example, the interaction forces are exerted by the people pushing the car. In Fig. 4.2b, the interaction forces include the force of air on the plane, the engine force from the hot exhaust gases, and Earth’s gravitational force.

We now explore in more detail the relation between force and change in motion. Experiment shows that what matters is the **net force**, meaning the vector sum of all individual interaction forces acting on an object. If the net force on an object isn’t zero, then the object’s motion must be changing—in direction or speed or both (Fig. 4.2a). If the net force on an object is zero—no matter what individual interaction forces contribute to the net force—then the object’s motion is unchanging (Fig. 4.2b).

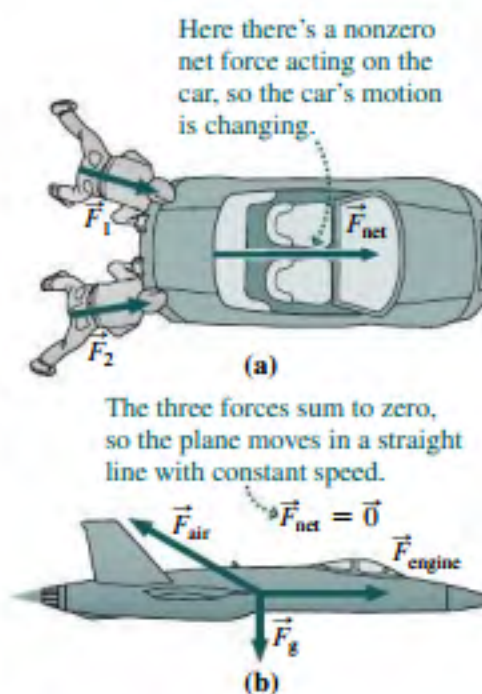


FIGURE 4.2 The net force determines the change in an object’s motion.

Newton's First Law

The basic idea that force causes change in motion is the essence of **Newton's first law**:

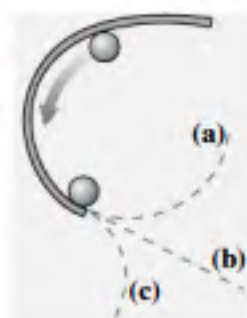
Newton's first law of motion: A body in uniform motion remains in uniform motion, and a body at rest remains at rest, unless acted on by a nonzero net force.

The word “uniform” here is essential; **uniform motion** means unchanging motion—that is, motion in a straight line at constant speed. The phrase “a body at rest” isn't really necessary because rest is just the special case of uniform motion with zero speed, but we include it for consistency with Newton's original statement.

The first law says that uniform motion is a perfectly natural state, requiring no explanation. Again, the word “uniform” is crucial. The first law does *not* say that an object moving in a circle will continue to do so without a nonzero net force; in fact, it says that an object moving in a circle—or in any other curved path—*must* be subject to a nonzero net force because its motion is changing.

GOT IT?

4.1 A curved barrier lies on a horizontal tabletop, as shown. A ball rolls along the barrier, and the barrier exerts a force that guides the ball in its curved path. After the ball leaves the barrier, which of the dashed paths shown does it follow?



Newton's first law is simplicity itself, but it's counter to our Aristotelian preconceptions; after all, your car soon stops when you take your foot off the gas. But because the motion changes, that just means—as the first law says—that there must be a nonzero net force acting. That force is often a “hidden” one, like friction, that isn't as obvious as the push or pull of muscle. Watch an ice show or hockey game, where frictional forces are minimal, and the first law becomes a lot clearer.

Newton's Second Law

Newton's second law quantifies the relation between force and change in motion. Newton reasoned that the product of mass and velocity was the best measure of an object's “quantity of motion.” The modern term is **momentum**, and we write

$$\vec{p} = m\vec{v} \quad (\text{momentum}) \quad (4.1)$$

for the momentum of an object with mass m and velocity $\vec{v}$. As the product of a scalar (mass) and a vector (velocity), momentum is itself a vector quantity. Newton's second law relates the rate of change of an object's momentum to the net force acting on that object:

Newton's second law of motion: The rate at which a body's momentum changes is equal to the net force acting on the body:

$$\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = \frac{d\vec{p}}{dt} \quad (\text{Newton's second law}) \quad (4.2)$$

When a body's mass remains constant, we can use the definition of momentum, $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$, to write

$$\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = \frac{d\vec{p}}{dt} = \frac{d(m\vec{v})}{dt} = m \frac{d\vec{v}}{dt}$$

But $d\vec{v}/dt$ is the acceleration $\vec{a}$, so

$\vec{F}_{\text{net}}$ is the net force—the vector sum of all real, physical forces acting on an object.

$m\vec{a}$ is the product of the object's mass and its acceleration; it's not a force.

$$\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a} \quad (\text{Newton's second law, constant mass}) \quad (4.3)$$

Equal sign indicates that the two sides are mathematically equal—but that doesn't mean they're the same physically. Only $\vec{F}_{\text{net}}$ involves physical forces.

We'll be using the form given in Equation 4.3 almost exclusively in the next few chapters. But keep in mind that Equation 4.2 is Newton's original expression of the second law, that it's more general than Equation 4.3, and that it embodies the fundamental concept of momentum. We'll return to Newton's law in the form of Equation 4.3, and elaborate on momentum, when we consider many-particle systems in Chapter 9.

Newton's second law includes the first law as the special case $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = \vec{0}$. In this case Equation 4.3 gives $\vec{a} = \vec{0}$, so an object's velocity doesn't change.



UNDERSTANDING NEWTON To apply Newton's law successfully, you have to understand the terms explained in the annotations to Equation 4.3. On the left is the net force $\vec{F}_{\text{net}}$ —the vector sum of all real, physical interaction forces acting on an object. On the right is $m\vec{a}$ —not a force but the product of the object's mass and acceleration. The equal sign says that they have the same value, not that they're the same thing. So don't go adding an extra force $m\vec{a}$ when you're applying Newton's second law.

Mass, Inertia, and Force

Because it takes force to change an object's motion, the first law implies that objects naturally resist changes in motion. The term **inertia** describes this resistance, and for that reason the first law is also called the **law of inertia**. Just as we describe a sluggish person as having a lot of inertia, so an object that is hard to start moving—or hard to stop once started—has a lot of inertia. If we solve the second law for the acceleration $\vec{a}$, we find that $\vec{a} = \vec{F}/m$ —showing that a given force is *less* effective in changing the motion of a *more massive* object (Fig. 4.3). The mass m that appears in Newton's laws is thus a measure of an object's inertia and determines the object's response to a given force.

By comparing the acceleration of a known and an unknown mass in response to the same force, we can determine the unknown mass. From Newton's second law for a force of magnitude F ,

$$F = m_{\text{known}}a_{\text{known}} \quad \text{and} \quad F = m_{\text{unknown}}a_{\text{unknown}}$$

where we're interested only in magnitudes so we don't use vectors. Equating these two expressions for the same force, we get

$$\frac{m_{\text{unknown}}}{m_{\text{known}}} = \frac{a_{\text{known}}}{a_{\text{unknown}}} \quad (4.4)$$

Equation 4.4 is an operational definition of mass; it shows how, given a known mass and force, we can determine other masses.

The force required to accelerate a 1-kg mass at the rate of 1 m/s^2 is defined to be 1 **newton** (N). Equation 4.3 shows that 1 N is equivalent to $1 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2$. Other common force units are the English pound (lb, equal to 4.448 N) and the dyne, a metric unit equal to 10^{-5} N . A 1-N force is rather small; you can readily exert forces measuring hundreds of newtons with your own body.

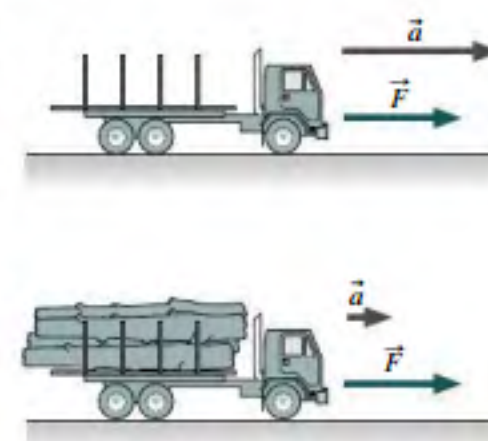


FIGURE 4.3 The loaded truck has greater mass—more inertia—so its acceleration is smaller when the same force is applied.

EXAMPLE 4.1**Force from Newton: A Car Accelerates***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A 1200-kg car accelerates from rest to 20 m/s in 7.8 s, moving in a straight line with constant acceleration. (a) Find the net force acting on the car. (b) If the car then rounds a bend 85 m in radius at a steady 20 m/s, what net force acts on it?

INTERPRET In this problem we're asked to evaluate the net force on a car (a) when it undergoes constant acceleration and (b) when it rounds a turn. In both cases the net force is entirely horizontal, so we need to consider only the horizontal component of Newton's law.

DEVELOP Figure 4.4 shows the horizontal force acting on the car in each case; since this is the net force, it's equal to the car's mass multiplied by its acceleration. We aren't actually given the acceleration in this problem, but for (a) we know the change in speed and the time involved, so we can write $a = \Delta v / \Delta t$. For (b) we're given the speed and the radius of the turn; since the car is in uniform circular motion, Equation 3.16 applies, and we have $a = v^2 / r$.

EVALUATE We solve for the unknown acceleration and evaluate the numerical answers for both cases:

$$(a) \quad F_{\text{net}} = ma = m \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = (1200 \text{ kg}) \left(\frac{20 \text{ m/s}}{7.8 \text{ s}} \right) = 3.1 \text{ kN}$$

$$(b) \quad F_{\text{net}} = ma = m \frac{v^2}{r} = (1200 \text{ kg}) \frac{(20 \text{ m/s})^2}{85 \text{ m}} = 5.6 \text{ kN}$$

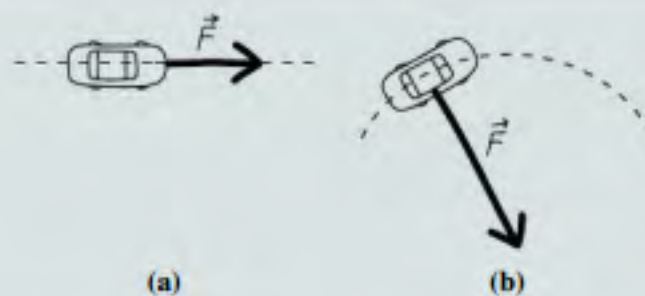


FIGURE 4.4 Our sketch of the net force on the car in Example 4.1.

ASSESS First, the units worked out; they were actually $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2$, but that defines the newton. The answers came out in thousands of newtons, but we moved the decimal point three places and changed to kilonewtons (kN) for convenience. And the numbers seem to make sense; we mentioned that 1 N is a rather small force, so it's not surprising to find forces on cars measured in kilonewtons.

Note that Newton's law doesn't distinguish between forces that change an object's speed, as in (a), and forces that change its direction, as in (b). Newton's law relates force, mass, and acceleration in *all* cases.

GOT IT?

4.2 A nonzero net force acts on an object. Which of the following is true? (a) the object necessarily moves in the same direction as the net force; (b) under some circumstances the object could move in the same direction as the net force, but in other situations it might not; (c) the object cannot move in the same direction as the net force

Inertial Reference Frames

Why don't flight attendants serve beverages when an airplane is accelerating down the runway? For one thing, their beverage cart wouldn't stay put, but would accelerate toward the back of the plane even in the absence of a net force. So is Newton's first law wrong? No, but Newton's laws don't apply in an accelerating airplane. With respect to the ground, in fact, the beverage cart is doing just what Newton says it should: It remains in its original state of motion, while all around it plane and passengers accelerate toward takeoff.

In Section 4.3 we defined a reference frame as a system against which we measure velocities; more generally, a reference frame is the "background" in which we study physical reality. Our airplane example shows that Newton's laws don't work in all reference frames; in particular, they're not valid in accelerating frames. Where they are valid is in reference frames undergoing uniform motion—called **inertial reference frames** because only in these frames does the law of inertia hold. In a noninertial frame like an accelerating airplane, a car rounding a curve, or a whirling merry-go-round, an object at rest doesn't remain at rest, even when no force is acting. A good test for an inertial frame is to check whether Newton's first law is obeyed—that is, whether an object at rest remains at rest, and an object in uniform motion remains in uniform motion, when no force is acting on it.

Strictly speaking, our rotating Earth is not an inertial frame, and therefore Newton's laws aren't exactly valid on Earth. But the acceleration associated with Earth's rotation is generally small compared with accelerations we're interested in, so we can usually treat Earth as an inertial reference frame. An important exception is the motion of oceans and atmosphere; here, scientists must take Earth's rotation into account.

If Earth isn't an inertial frame, what is? That's a surprisingly subtle question, and it pointed Einstein toward his general theory of relativity. The law of inertia is intimately related to questions of space, time, and gravity—questions whose answers lie in Einstein's theory. We'll look briefly at that theory in Chapter 33.

4.3 Forces

LO 4.4 Name the fundamental forces of nature.

The most familiar forces are pushes and pulls you apply yourself, but passive objects can apply forces, too. A car collides with a parked truck and comes to a stop. Why? Because the truck exerts a force on it. The Moon circles Earth rather than moving in a straight line. Why? Because Earth exerts a gravitational force on it. You sit in a chair and don't fall to the floor. Why not? Because the chair exerts an upward force on you, countering gravity.

Some forces, like those you apply with your muscles, can have values that you choose. Other forces take on values determined by the situation. When you sit in the chair shown in Fig. 4.5, the downward force of gravity on you causes the chair to compress slightly. The chair acts like a spring and exerts an upward force. When the chair compresses enough that the upward force is equal in magnitude to the downward force of gravity, there's no net force and you sit without accelerating. The same thing happens with **tension forces** when objects are suspended from ropes or cables—the ropes stretch until the force they exert balances the force of gravity (Fig. 4.6).

Forces like the pull you exert on your rolling luggage, the force of a chair on your body, and the force a baseball exerts on a bat are **contact forces** because the force is exerted through direct contact. Other forces, like gravity and electric and magnetic forces, are **action-at-a-distance forces** because they seemingly act between distant objects, like Earth and the Moon. Actually, the distinction isn't clear-cut; at the microscopic level, contact forces involve action-at-a-distance electric forces between molecules. And the action-at-a-distance concept itself is troubling. How can Earth “reach out” across empty space and pull on the Moon? Later we'll look at an approach to forces that avoids this quandary.

The Fundamental Forces

Gravity, tension forces, compression forces, contact forces, electric forces, friction forces—how many kinds of forces are there? At present, physicists identify three basic forces: the gravitational force, the electroweak force, and the strong force.

Gravity is the weakest of the fundamental forces, but because it acts attractively between all matter, gravity's effect is cumulative. That makes gravity the dominant force in the large-scale universe, determining the structure of planets, stars, galaxies, and the universe itself.

The **electroweak force** subsumes **electromagnetism** and the **weak nuclear force**. Virtually all the nongravitational forces we encounter in everyday life are electromagnetic, including contact forces, friction, tension and compression forces, and the forces that bind atoms into chemical compounds. The weak nuclear force is less obvious, but it's crucial in the Sun's energy production—providing the energy that powers life on Earth.

The **strong force** describes how particles called **quarks** bind together to form protons, neutrons, and a host of less-familiar particles. The force that joins protons and neutrons to make atomic nuclei is a residue of the strong force between their constituent quarks. Although the strong force isn't obvious in everyday life, it's ultimately responsible for the structure of matter. If its strength were slightly different, atoms more complex than helium couldn't exist, and the universe would be devoid of life!

Unifying the fundamental forces is a major goal of physics. Over the centuries we've come to understand seemingly disparate forces as manifestations of a more fundamental underlying force. Figure 4.7 suggests that the process continues, as physicists attempt first to unify the strong and electroweak forces, and then ultimately to add gravity to give a “Theory of Everything.”

When you sit in a chair, the chair compresses and exerts an upward force that balances gravity.



FIGURE 4.5 A compression force.



FIGURE 4.6 The climbing rope exerts an upward tension force T that balances the force of gravity.

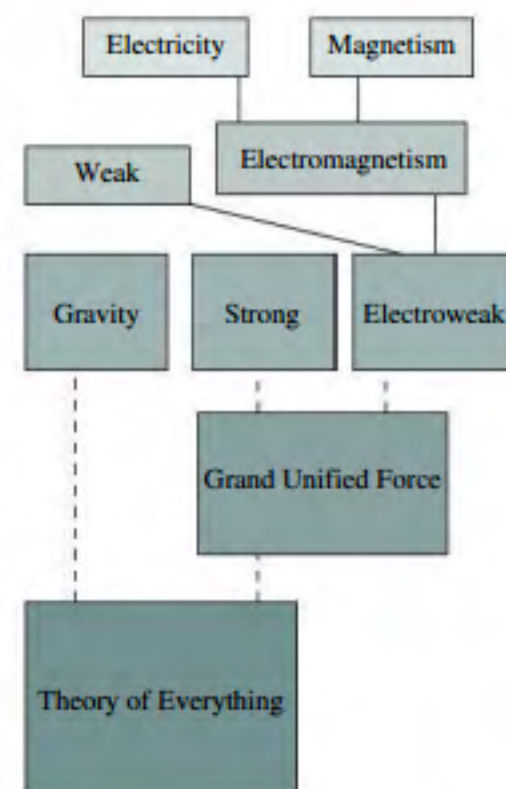


FIGURE 4.7 Unification of forces is a major theme in physics.

4.4 The Force of Gravity

LO 4.5 Describe quantitatively how gravity acts on objects.

LO 4.6 Distinguish apparent weight from actual weight.

Newton's second law shows that mass is a measure of a body's resistance to changes in motion—its inertia. A body's mass is an intrinsic property; it doesn't depend on location. If my mass is 65 kg, it's 65 kg on Earth, in an orbiting spacecraft, or on the Moon. That means no matter where I am, a force of 65 N gives me an acceleration of 1 m/s^2 .

We commonly use the term “weight” to mean the same thing as mass. In physics, though, **weight** is the *force* that gravity exerts on a body. Near Earth's surface, a freely falling body accelerates downward at 9.8 m/s^2 ; we designate this acceleration vector by $\vec{g}$. Newton's second law, $\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$, then says that the force of gravity on a body of mass m is $m\vec{g}$; this force is the body's weight:

$$\vec{w} = m\vec{g} \quad (\text{weight}) \quad (4.5)$$

Weight is a force, so it's a vector quantity, written with an arrow overscore. The vector $\vec{g}$ points downward and has magnitude g .

Weight, $\vec{w}$, is the force that gravity exerts on an object. Weight is given by the product of the object's mass and the gravitational acceleration $\vec{g}$.

With my 65-kg mass, my weight near Earth's surface is then $(65 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)$ or 640 N. On the Moon, where the acceleration of gravity is only 1.6 m/s^2 , I would weigh only 100 N. And in the remote reaches of intergalactic space, far from any gravitating object, my weight would be essentially zero.

One reason we confuse mass and weight is the common use of the SI unit kilogram to describe “weight.” At the doctor's office you may be told that you “weigh” 55 kg. You don't; you have a mass of 55 kg, so your weight is $(55 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)$ or 540 N. The unit of force in the English system is the pound, so giving your weight in pounds is correct.

That we confuse mass and weight at all results from the remarkable fact that the gravitational acceleration of all objects is the same. This makes a body's *weight*, a gravitational property, proportional to its *mass*, a measure of its inertia in terms that have nothing to do with gravity. First inferred by Galileo from his experiments with falling bodies, this relation between gravitation and inertia seemed a coincidence until the early 20th century.

EXAMPLE 4.2 Mass and Weight: Exploring Mars

The rover *Curiosity* that landed on Mars in 2012 weighed 8.82 kN on Earth. What were its mass and weight on Mars?

INTERPRET Here we're asked about the relation between mass and weight, and the object we're interested in is the *Curiosity* rover.

DEVELOP Equation 4.5 describes the relation between mass and weight. Writing this equation in scalar form because we're interested only in magnitudes, we have $w = mg$.

EVALUATE First we want to find mass from weight, so we solve for m using the Earth weight and Earth's gravity:

$$m = \frac{w}{g} = \frac{8.82 \text{ kN}}{9.81 \text{ m/s}^2} = 899 \text{ kg}$$

This mass is the same everywhere, so the weight on Mars is given by $w = mg_{\text{Mars}} = (899 \text{ kg})(3.71 \text{ m/s}^2) = 3.34 \text{ kN}$. Here we found the acceleration of gravity on Mars in Appendix E.

ASSESS Make sense? Sure: Mars's gravitational acceleration is lower than Earth's, and so is the spacecraft's weight on Mars.



FIGURE 4.8 These astronauts only *seem* weightless.

Finally Albert Einstein showed how that simple relation reflects the underlying geometry of space and time in a way that intimately links gravitation and acceleration.

Weightlessness

Aren't astronauts "weightless"? Not according to our definition. At the altitude of the International Space Station, the acceleration of gravity has about 89% of its value at Earth's surface, so the gravitational forces $m\vec{g}$ on the station and its occupants are almost as large as on Earth. But the astronauts *seem* weightless, and indeed they *feel* weightless (Fig. 4.8). What's going on?

Imagine yourself in an elevator whose cable has broken and is dropping freely downward with the gravitational acceleration g . In other words, the elevator and its occupant are in **free fall**, with only the force of gravity acting. If you let go of a book, it too falls freely with acceleration g . But so does everything else around it—and therefore the book stays put relative to you (Fig. 4.9a). To you, the book seems "weightless," since it doesn't seem to fall when you let go of it. And you're "weightless" too; if you jump off the elevator's floor, you float to the ceiling rather than falling back. You, the book, and the elevator are *all* falling, but because all have the same acceleration that isn't obvious to you. The gravitational force is still acting; it's making you fall. So you really do have weight, and your condition is best termed **apparent weightlessness**.

APPLICATION Hollywood Goes Weightless

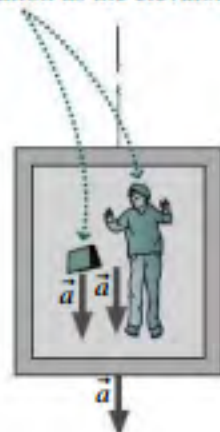
The film *Apollo 13* shows Tom Hanks and his fellow actors floating weightlessly around the cabin of their movie-set spacecraft. What special effects did Hollywood use here? None. The actors' apparent weightlessness was the real thing. But even Hollywood's budget wasn't enough to buy a space-shuttle flight. So the producers rented NASA's weightlessness training aircraft, aptly dubbed the "Vomit Comet." This airplane executes parabolic trajectories that mimic the free-fall motion of a projectile, so its occupants experience apparent weightlessness.

Movie critics marveled at how *Apollo 13* "simulated the weightlessness of outer space." Nonsense! The actors were in free fall just like the real astronauts on board the real *Apollo 13*, and they experienced exactly the same physical phenomenon—apparent weightlessness when moving under the influence of gravity alone.

In contrast to *Apollo 13*, scenes of apparent weightlessness in the 2013 film *Gravity* were done with special effects. That's one reason the film's star, Sandra Bullock, wears her hair short; it would be too difficult to simulate individual free-floating strands of long hair.

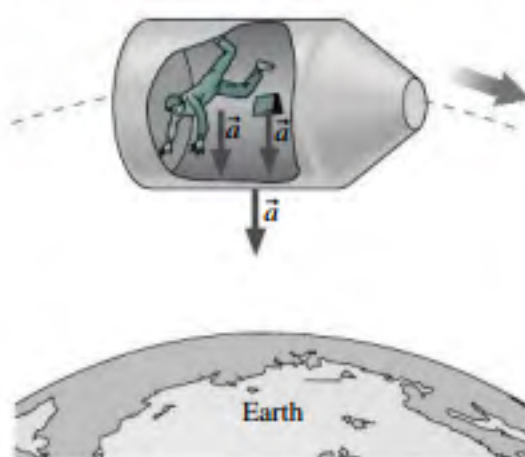


In a freely falling elevator you and your book seem weightless because both fall with the same acceleration as the elevator.



Earth
(a)

Like the elevator in (a), an orbiting spacecraft is falling toward Earth, and because its occupants also fall with the same acceleration, they experience apparent weightlessness.



(b)

FIGURE 4.9 Objects in free fall appear weightless because they all experience the same acceleration.

A falling elevator is a dangerous place; your state of apparent weightlessness would end with a deadly smash caused by nongravitational contact forces when you hit the ground. But apparent weightlessness occurs permanently in a state of free fall that doesn't intersect Earth—as in an orbiting spacecraft (Fig. 4.9b). It's not being in outer space that makes astronauts seem weightless; it's that they, like our hapless elevator occupant, are in free fall—moving under the influence of the gravitational force alone. The condition of apparent weightlessness in orbiting spacecraft is sometimes called “microgravity.”

GOT IT?

4.3 A popular children's book explains the weightlessness astronauts experience by saying there's no gravity in space. If there were no gravity in space, what would be the motion of a space shuttle, a satellite, or the Moon? (a) a circular orbit; (b) an elliptical orbit; (c) a straight line

4.5 Using Newton's Second Law

LO 4.3 Solve problems involving Newton's second law.

The interesting problems involving Newton's second law are those where more than one force acts on an object. To apply the second law, we then need the net force. For an object of constant mass, the second law relates the net force and the acceleration:

$$\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a}$$

Using Newton's second law with multiple forces is easier if we draw a **free-body diagram**, a simple diagram that shows only the object of interest and the forces acting on it.

Tactics 4.1 DRAWING A FREE-BODY DIAGRAM

Drawing a free-body diagram, which shows the forces acting on an object, is the key to solving problems with Newton's laws. To make a free-body diagram:

1. Identify the object of interest and all the forces acting on it.
2. Represent the object as a dot.
3. Draw the vectors for *only* those forces acting *on* the object, with their tails all starting on the dot.

Figure 4.10 shows two examples where we reduce physical scenarios to free-body diagrams. We often add a coordinate system to the free-body diagram so that we can express force vectors in components.

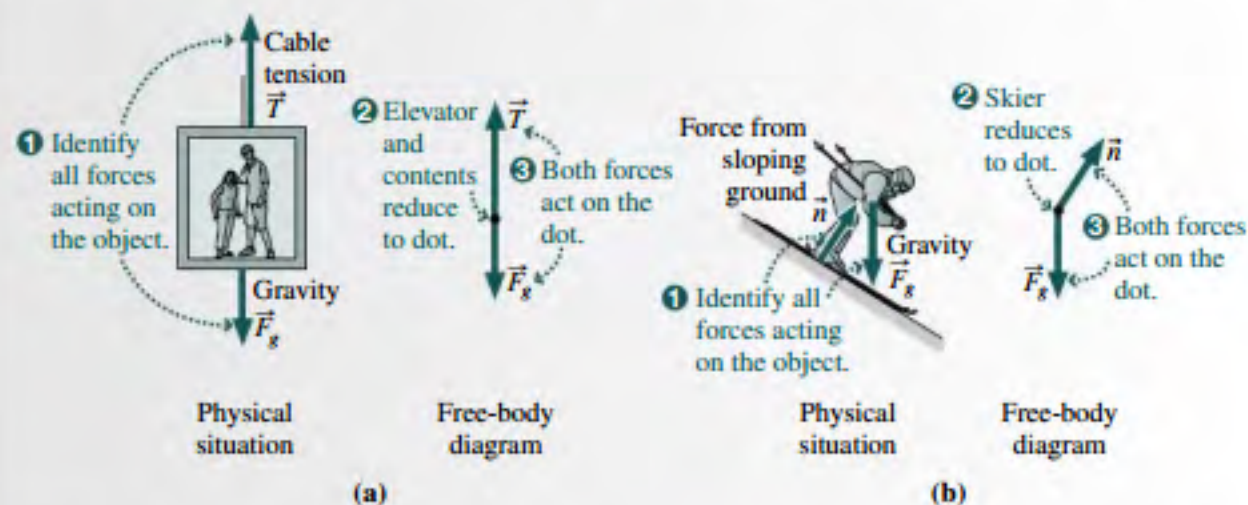


FIGURE 4.10 Free-body diagrams. (a) A one-dimensional situation like those we discuss in this chapter. (b) A two-dimensional situation. We'll deal with such cases in Chapter 5.

Our IDEA strategy applies to Newton's laws as it does to other physics problems. For the second law, we can elaborate on the four IDEA steps:

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 4.1**Newton's Second Law**

INTERPRET Interpret the problem to be sure that you know what it's asking and that Newton's second law is the relevant concept. Identify the object of interest and all the individual interaction forces acting on it.

DEVELOP Draw a free-body diagram as described in Tactics 4.1. Develop your solution plan by writing Newton's second law, $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a}$, with $\vec{F}_{\text{net}}$ expressed as the sum of the forces you've identified. Then choose a coordinate system so you can express Newton's law in components.

EVALUATE At this point the physics is done, and you're ready to execute your plan by solving Newton's second law and evaluating the numerical answer(s), if called for. Even in the one-dimensional problems of this chapter, remember that Newton's law is a vector equation; that will help you get the signs right. You need to write the components of Newton's law in the coordinate system you chose, and then solve the resulting equation(s) for the quantity(ies) of interest.

ASSESS Assess your solution to see that it makes sense. Are the numbers reasonable? Do the units work out correctly? What happens in special cases—for example, when a mass, force, or acceleration becomes very small or very large, or an angle becomes 0° or 90° ?

EXAMPLE 4.3**Newton's Second Law: In the Elevator***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A 740-kg elevator accelerates upward at 1.1 m/s^2 , pulled by a cable of negligible mass. Find the tension force in the cable.

INTERPRET In this problem we're asked to evaluate one of the forces on an object. First we identify the object of interest. Although the problem asks about the cable tension, it's the elevator on which that tension acts, so the elevator is the object of interest. Next, we identify the forces acting on the elevator. There are two: the downward force of gravity $\vec{F}_g$ and the upward cable tension $\vec{T}$.

DEVELOP Figure 4.11a shows the elevator accelerating upward; Fig. 4.11b is a free-body diagram representing the elevator as a dot with the two force vectors acting on it. The applicable equation is Newton's second law, $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a}$, with $\vec{F}_{\text{net}}$ given by the sum of the forces we've identified:

$$\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = \vec{T} + \vec{F}_g = m\vec{a} \quad (4.6)$$

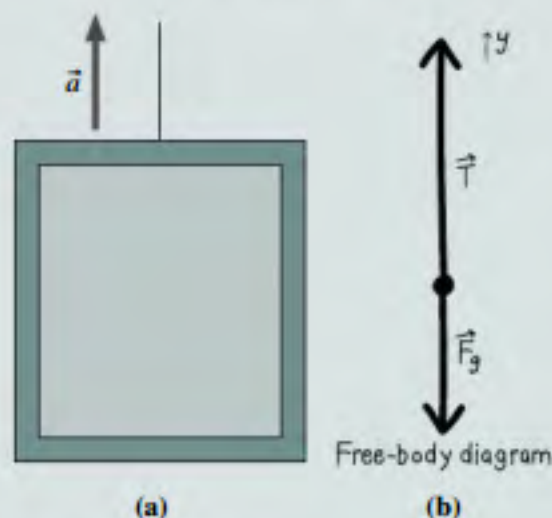


FIGURE 4.11 The forces on the elevator are the cable tension $\vec{T}$ and gravity $\vec{F}_g$.



VECTORS TELL IT ALL Are you tempted to put a minus sign in this equation because one force is downward? *Don't!* A vector contains all the information about its direction. You don't have to worry about signs until you write the components of a vector equation in the coordinate system you chose.

Now we need to choose a coordinate system. Here all the forces are vertical, so we'll choose our y-axis pointing upward.

EVALUATE Now we're ready to rewrite Newton's second law—Equation 4.6 in this case—in our coordinate system. Formally, we remove the vector signs and add coordinate subscripts—just y in this case:

$$T_y + F_{gy} = ma_y \quad (4.7)$$

There's still no need to worry about signs. Now, what is T_y ? Since the tension points upward and we've chosen that to be the positive direction, the component of tension in the y-direction is its magnitude T . What about F_{gy} ? Gravity points downward, so this component is negative. Furthermore, we know that the magnitude of the gravitational force is mg . So $F_{gy} = -mg$. Then our Newton's law equation becomes

$$T - mg = ma_y$$

so

$$T = ma_y + mg = m(a_y + g) \quad (4.8)$$

For the numbers given, this equation yields

$$T = m(a_y + g) = (740 \text{ kg})(1.1 \text{ m/s}^2 + 9.8 \text{ m/s}^2) = 8.1 \text{ kN}$$

ASSESS We can see that this answer makes sense—and learn a lot more about physics—from the algebraic form of the answer in Equation 4.8. Consider some special cases: If the acceleration a_y were zero, then the net force on the elevator would have to be zero. In that

(continued)

case Equation 4.8 gives $T = mg$. Makes sense: The cable is then supporting the elevator's weight mg but not exerting any additional force to accelerate it.

On the other hand, if the elevator is accelerating upward, then the cable has to provide an extra force in addition to the weight; that's why the tension becomes $ma_y + mg$. Numerically, our answer of 8.1 kN is *greater* than the elevator's weight—and the cable had better be strong enough to handle the extra force.

Finally, if the elevator is accelerating downward, then a_y is negative, and the cable tension is *less* than the weight. In free fall, $a_y = -g$, and the cable tension would be zero.

You might have reasoned out this problem in your head. But we did it very thoroughly because the strategy we followed will let you solve all problems involving Newton's second law, even if they're much more complicated. If you always follow this strategy and don't try to find shortcuts, you'll become confident in using Newton's second law.

GOT IT?

4.4 For each of the following situations, would the cable tension in Example 4.3 be (a) greater than, (b) less than, or (c) equal to the elevator's weight? (1) elevator starts moving upward, accelerating from rest; (2) elevator decelerates to a stop while moving upward; (3) elevator starts moving downward, accelerating from rest; (4) elevator slows to a stop while moving downward; (5) elevator is moving upward with constant speed

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 4.1 At the Equator

When you stand on a scale, the scale pushes up to support you, and the scale reading shows the force with which it's pushing. If you stand on a scale at Earth's equator, is the reading greater or less than your weight?

EVALUATE The question asks about the force the scale exerts on you, in comparison to your weight (the gravitational force on you). Figure 4.12 is our sketch, showing the scale force upward and the gravitational force downward, toward Earth's center. You're in circular motion about Earth's center, so the direction of your acceleration is toward the center (downward). According to Newton's second law, the net force and acceleration are in the same direction. The only two forces acting on you are the downward force of

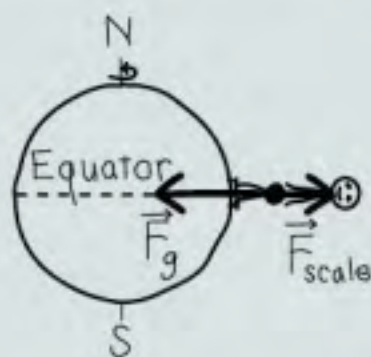


FIGURE 4.12 Our sketch for Conceptual Example 4.1.

gravity and the upward force of the scale. For them to sum to a net force that's downward, the force of gravity—your weight—must be larger. Therefore, the scale reading must be less than your weight.

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: If the two forces had equal magnitudes, the net force would be zero—inconsistent with the fact that you're accelerating. And if the scale force were greater, you'd be accelerating in the wrong direction! The same effect occurs everywhere except at the poles, but its analysis is more complicated because the acceleration is toward Earth's axis, not the center.

MAKING THE CONNECTION By what percentage is the scale reading at the equator less than your actual weight?

EVALUATE Using Earth's radius R_E from Appendix E, and its 24-hour rotation period, you can find your acceleration: From Equation 3.16, it's v^2/R_E . Following Problem-Solving Strategy 4.1 and working in a coordinate system with the vertical direction upward,

you'll find that Newton's second law becomes $F_{\text{scale}} - mg = -m \frac{v^2}{R_E}$, or $F_{\text{scale}} = mg - mv^2/R_E$. So the scale reading differs from your weight mg by mv^2/R_E . Working the numbers shows that's a difference of only 0.34%. Note that this result doesn't depend on your mass m .

Apparent Weight

How heavy do you actually feel when you're in the elevator of Example 4.3 or at Earth's equator in Conceptual Example 4.1? In the elevator, the normal force from the floor pushes upward on you, and the feeling of weight in your body is a response to that force. If the elevator isn't accelerating, then the upward normal force balances gravity, and what you feel is your actual weight—that is, the force that gravity exerts on you. But if the elevator is accelerating upward, the normal force is greater than gravity to give an upward net force,

and you feel heavier. If it's accelerating downward—whether it's moving down or up is irrelevant—then you feel lighter. We call that feeling of weight your **apparent weight**. If you stood on a spring scale in the elevator, then the scale would push up on you with a force that's reflected in the scale reading. So the scale reads your apparent weight—which may or not be the same as your actual weight. The situation in Conceptual Example 4.1 is similar: Here you have a downward acceleration associated with Earth's rotation, so the downward gravitational force is greater than the upward force that the scale exerts. The scale reading, which is your apparent weight, is therefore less than your actual weight. And you feel slightly lighter, although, as the “Making the Connection” problem in the example shows, the effect is unnoticeably small. Finally, those astronauts in Section 4.4 have zero apparent weight, which is why we called their condition “apparent weightlessness.”

4.6 Newton's Third Law

LO 4.2 List Newton's three laws of motion.

LO 4.7 Identify Newton's third-law force pairs and find their values.

LO 4.8 Determine the forces exerted by springs.

Push your book across your desk, and you feel the book push back (Fig. 4.13a). Kick a ball with bare feet, and your toes hurt. Why? You exert a force on the ball, and the ball exerts a force back on you. A rocket engine exerts forces that expel hot gases out of its nozzle—and the hot gases exert a force on the rocket, accelerating it forward (Fig. 4.13b).

Whenever one object exerts a force on a second object, the second object also exerts a force on the first. The two forces are in opposite directions, but they have equal magnitudes. This fact constitutes **Newton's third law** of motion. The familiar expression “for every action there is an equal and opposite reaction” is Newton's 17th-century language. But there's really no distinction between “action” and “reaction”; both are always present. In modern language, the third law states:

Newton's third law of motion: If object A exerts a force on object B, then object B exerts an oppositely directed force of equal magnitude on A.

Newton's third law is about forces between objects. It says that such forces always occur in pairs—that it's not possible for object A to exert a force on object B without B exerting a force back on A. You can now see why we coined the term “interaction forces”—when there's force between two objects, it's always a true *interaction*, with both objects exerting forces and both experiencing forces. We'll use the terms **interaction force pair** and **third-law pair** for the two forces described by Newton's third law.

It's crucial to recognize that the forces of a third-law pair act on *different* objects; the force $\vec{F}_{AB}$ of object A acts on object B, and the force $\vec{F}_{BA}$ of B acts on A. The forces have equal magnitudes and opposite directions, but they don't cancel to give zero net force *because they don't act on the same object*. In Fig. 4.13a, for example, $\vec{F}_{AB}$ is the force the hand exerts on the book. There's no other horizontal force acting on the book, so the net force on the book is nonzero and the book accelerates. Failure to recognize that the two forces of a third-law pair act on different objects leads to a contradiction, embodied in the famous horse-and-cart dilemma illustrated in Fig. 4.14.

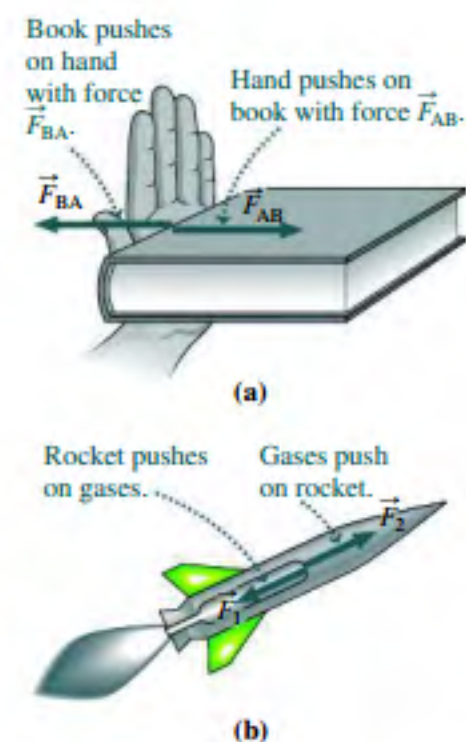


FIGURE 4.13 Newton's third law says that forces always come in pairs. With objects in contact, both forces act at the contact point. To emphasize that the two forces act on *different* objects, we draw them slightly displaced.

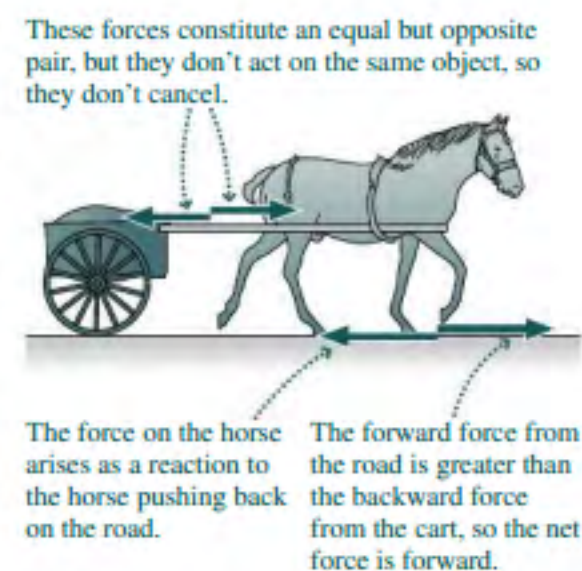
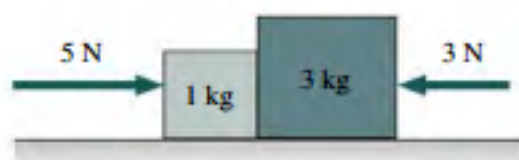


FIGURE 4.14 The horse-and-cart dilemma: The horse pulls on the cart, and the cart pulls back on the horse with a force of equal magnitude. So how can the pair ever get moving? No problem: The *net* force on the horse involves forces from *different* third-law pairs. Their magnitudes aren't equal, and the horse experiences a net force in the forward direction.

GOT IT?

4.5 The figure shows two blocks with two forces acting on the pair. Is the net force on the larger block (a) greater than 2 N, (b) equal to 2 N, or (c) less than 2 N?



EXAMPLE 4.4 Newton's Third Law: Pushing Books

On a frictionless horizontal surface, you push with force $\vec{F}$ on a book of mass m_1 that in turn pushes on a book of mass m_2 (Fig. 4.15a). What force does the second book exert on the first?

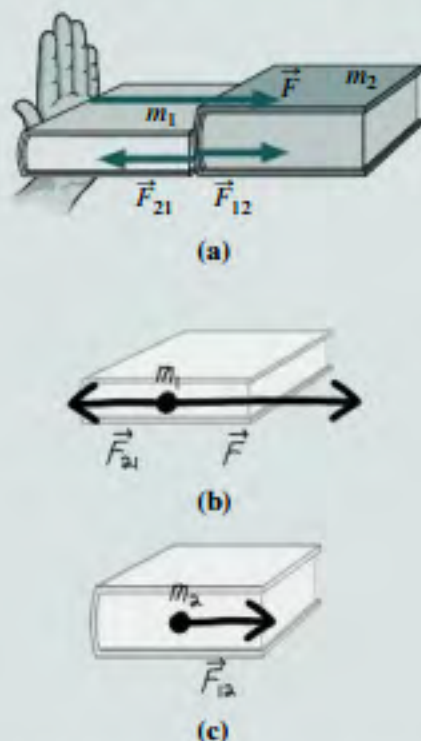


FIGURE 4.15 Horizontal forces on the books of Example 4.4. Not shown are the vertical forces of gravity and the normal force from the surface supporting the books.

INTERPRET This problem is about the interaction between two objects, so we identify both books as objects of interest.

DEVELOP In a problem with multiple objects, it's a good idea to draw a separate free-body diagram for each object. We've done that in Figs. 4.15b and 4.15c, keeping very light images of the books themselves. Now, we're asked about the force the second book exerts on the first. Newton's third law would give us that force if we knew the

force the first book exerts on the second. Since that's the only horizontal force acting on book 2, we could get it from Newton's *second* law if we knew the acceleration of book 2. So here's our plan: (1) Find the acceleration of book 2; (2) use Newton's second law to find the net force on book 2, which in this case is the single force $\vec{F}_{12}$; and (3) apply Newton's third law to get $\vec{F}_{21}$, which is what we're looking for.

EVALUATE (1) The total mass of the two books is $m_1 + m_2$, and the net force applied to the combination is $\vec{F}$. Newton's second law, $\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$, gives

$$\vec{a} = \frac{\vec{F}}{m} = \frac{\vec{F}}{m_1 + m_2}$$

for the acceleration of both books, including book 2. (2) Now that we know book 2's acceleration, we use Newton's second law to find $\vec{F}_{12}$, which, since it's the only horizontal force on book 2, is the net force on that book:

$$\vec{F}_{12} = m_2 \vec{a} = m_2 \frac{\vec{F}}{m_1 + m_2} = \frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} \vec{F}$$

(3) Finally, the forces the books exert on each other constitute a third-law pair, so we have

$$\vec{F}_{21} = -\vec{F}_{12} = -\frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} \vec{F}$$

ASSESS You can see that this result makes sense by considering the first book. It too undergoes acceleration $\vec{a} = \vec{F}/(m_1 + m_2)$, but there are *two* forces acting on it: the applied force $\vec{F}$ and the force $\vec{F}_{21}$ from the second book. So the net force on the first book is

$$\vec{F} + \vec{F}_{21} = \vec{F} - \frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} \vec{F} = \frac{m_1}{m_1 + m_2} \vec{F} = m_1 \vec{a}$$

consistent with Newton's second law. Our result shows that Newton's second and third laws are both necessary for a fully consistent description of the motion.

A contact force such as the force between the books in Example 4.4 is called a **normal force** (symbol $\vec{n}$) because it acts at right angles to the surfaces in contact. Other examples of normal forces are the upward force that a table or bridge exerts on objects it supports, and the force perpendicular to a sloping surface supporting an object (Fig. 4.16).

Newton's third law also applies to forces like gravity that don't involve direct contact. Since Earth exerts a downward force on you, the third law says that you exert an equal upward force on Earth (Fig. 4.17). If you're in free fall, then Earth's gravity causes you to accelerate toward Earth. Earth, too, accelerates toward you—but it's so massive that this acceleration is negligible.

Measuring Force

Newton's third law provides a convenient way to measure forces using the tension or compression force in a spring. A spring stretches or compresses in proportion to the force exerted on it. By Newton's third law, the force *on* the spring is equal and opposite to the

force the spring exerts on whatever is stretching or compressing it (Fig. 4.18). The spring's stretch or compression thus provides a measure of the force on whatever object is attached to the spring.

In an **ideal spring**, the stretch or compression is directly proportional to the force exerted by the spring. **Hooke's law** expresses this proportionality mathematically:

$$F_s = -kx \quad (\text{Hooke's law, ideal spring}) \quad (4.9)$$

Here F_s is the spring force, x is the distance the spring has been stretched or compressed from its normal length, and k is the **spring constant**, which measures the "stiffness" of the spring. Its units are N/m. The minus sign shows that the spring force is *opposite* the distortion of the spring: Stretch it, and the spring responds with a force *opposite* the stretching force; compress it, and the spring pushes back against the compressing force. Real springs obey Hooke's law only up to a point; stretch it too much, and a spring will deform and eventually break.

A **spring scale** is a spring with an indicator and a scale calibrated in force units (Fig. 4.19). Common examples include many bathroom scales, hanging scales in supermarkets, and laboratory spring scales. Even electronic scales are spring scales, with their "springs" materials that produce electrical signals when deformed by an applied force.

Hang an object on a spring scale, and the spring stretches until its force counters the gravitational force on the object. Or, with a stand-on scale, the spring compresses until it supports you against gravity. Either way, the spring force is equal in magnitude to the weight mg , and thus the spring indicator provides a measure of weight. Given g , this procedure also provides the object's mass.

Be careful, though: A spring scale provides the true weight only if the scale isn't accelerating; otherwise, the scale reading is only an apparent weight. Weigh yourself in an accelerating elevator and you may be horrified or delighted, depending on the direction of the acceleration. Conceptual Example 4.1 made this point qualitatively, and Example 4.5 does so quantitatively.

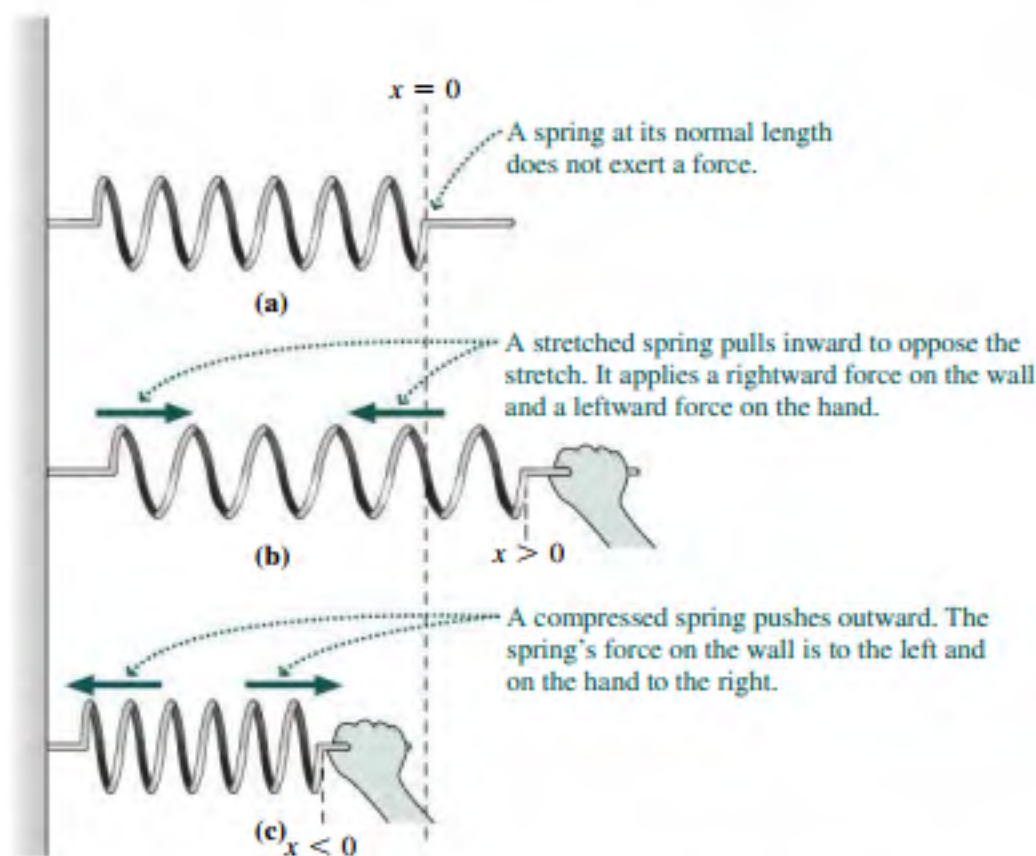
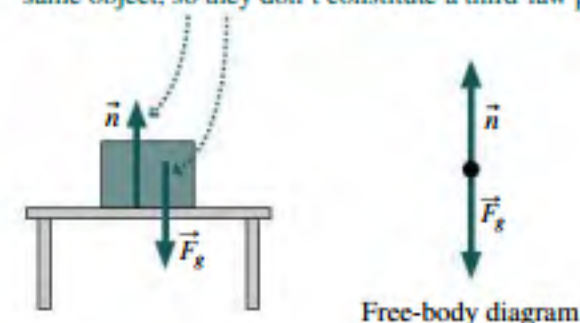


FIGURE 4.18 A spring responds to stretching or compression with an oppositely directed force.

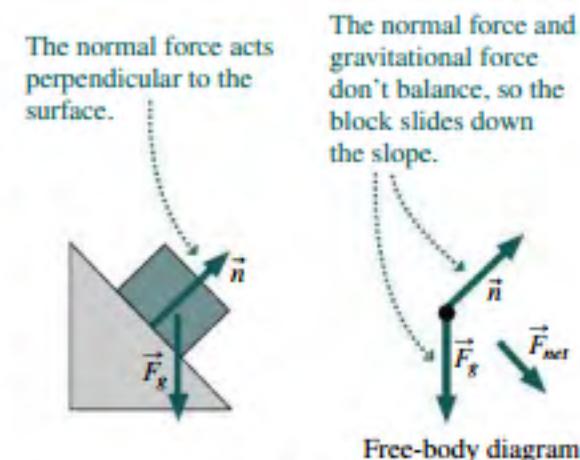
GOT IT?

4.6 (1) Would the answer to (a) in Example 4.5 change if the helicopter were not at rest but moving upward at constant speed? (2) Would the answer to (b) change if the helicopter were moving *downward* but still accelerating *upward*?

The upward normal force from the table supports the block against gravity. These two forces act on the same object, so they don't constitute a third-law pair.



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 4.16 Normal forces. Also shown in each case is the gravitational force.



FIGURE 4.17 Gravitational forces on you and on Earth form a third-law pair. Figure is obviously not to scale!

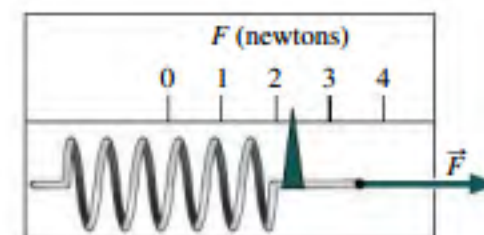


FIGURE 4.19 A spring scale.

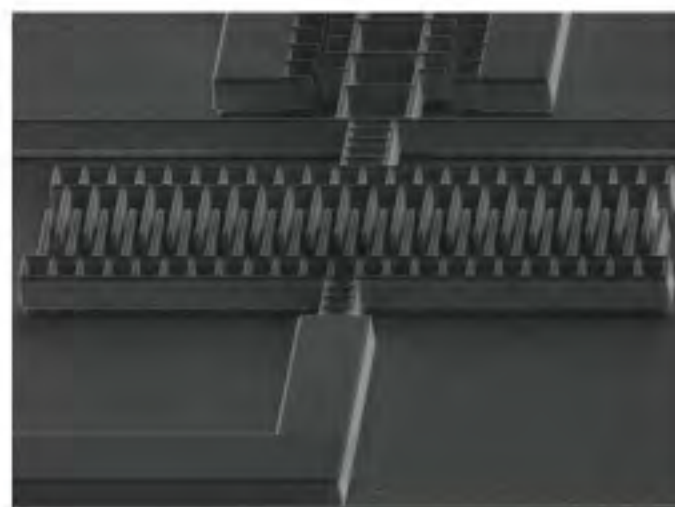
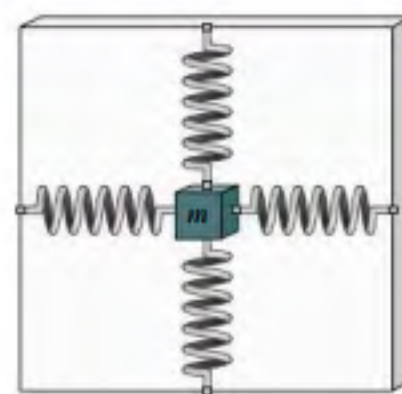
APPLICATION Accelerometers, MEMS, Airbags, and Smartphones

Hook one end of a spring to any part of an accelerating car, airplane, rocket, or whatever, and attach a mass m to the other end. The spring stretches until it provides the force needed to bring the mass along with the accelerating vehicle, sharing its acceleration. If you measure the spring's stretch and know its spring constant, you can get the force. If you know the mass m , you can then use $F = ma$ to get the acceleration. You've made an accelerometer!

Accelerometers based on this simple principle are widely used in industrial, transportation, robotics, and scientific applications. Often they're three-axis devices, with three mutually perpendicular springs to measure all three components of the acceleration vector. The drawing shows a simplified two-axis accelerometer for measuring accelerations in a horizontal plane.

Today's accelerometers are miniature devices based on technology called MEMS, for *microelectromechanical systems*. They're etched out of a tiny silicon chip that includes electronics for measuring stretch and determining acceleration. Your car employs a number of these accelerometers, including those that sense when to deploy the airbags.

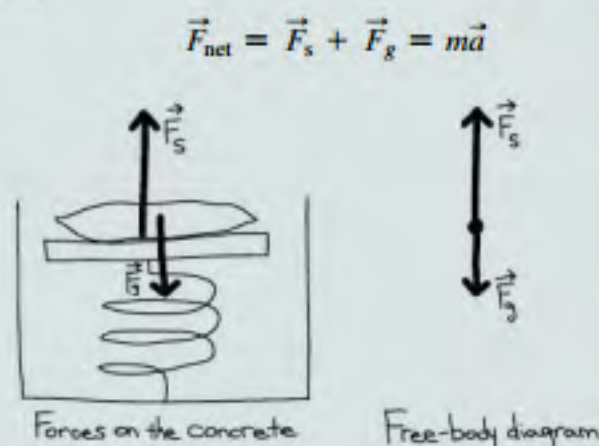
Your smartphone contains a three-axis MEMS accelerometer (see photo, which is magnified some 700 times) that determines the phone's acceleration in three mutually perpendicular directions. The components in a smartphone accelerometer are only a fraction of a millimeter across. Apps are available to record accelerometer data, making your smartphone a useful device for physics experiments. Problem 67 explores smartphone accelerometer data.

**EXAMPLE 4.5** True and Apparent Weight: A Helicopter Ride

A helicopter rises vertically, carrying concrete for a ski-lift foundation. A 35-kg bag of concrete sits in the helicopter on a spring scale whose spring constant is 3.4 kN/m. By how much does the spring compress (a) when the helicopter is at rest and (b) when it's accelerating upward at 1.9 m/s^2 ?

INTERPRET This problem is about concrete, a spring scale, and a helicopter. Ultimately, that means it's about mass, force, and acceleration—the content of Newton's laws. We're interested in the spring and the concrete mass resting on it, which share the motion of the helicopter. We identify two forces acting on the concrete: gravity and the spring force $\vec{F}_s$.

DEVELOP As with any Newton's law problem, we start with a free-body diagram (Fig. 4.20). We then write Newton's second law in its vector form,



Vectors tell it all; don't worry about signs at this point. Our equation expresses all the physics of the situation, but before we can move on to the solution, we need to choose a coordinate system. Here it's convenient to take the y -axis vertically upward.

EVALUATE The forces are in the vertical direction, so we're concerned with only the y -component of Newton's law: $F_{sy} + F_{gy} = ma_y$. The spring force is upward and, from Hooke's law, it has magnitude kx , so $F_{sy} = kx$. Gravity is downward with magnitude mg , so $F_{gy} = -mg$. The y -component of Newton's law then becomes $kx - mg = ma_y$, which we solve to get

$$x = \frac{m(a_y + g)}{k}$$

Putting in the numbers (a) with the helicopter at rest ($a_y = 0$) and (b) with $a_y = 1.9 \text{ m/s}^2$ gives

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad x &= \frac{m(a_y + g)}{k} = \frac{(35 \text{ kg})(0 + 9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)}{3400 \text{ N/m}} = 10 \text{ cm} \\ \text{(b)} \quad x &= \frac{(35 \text{ kg})(1.9 \text{ m/s}^2 + 9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)}{3400 \text{ N/m}} = 12 \text{ cm} \end{aligned}$$

ASSESS Why is the answer to (b) larger? Because, just as with the cable in Example 4.3, the spring needs to provide an additional force to accelerate the concrete upward.

FIGURE 4.20 Our drawings for Example 4.5.

Chapter 4 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea of this chapter—and of all Newtonian mechanics—is that **force** causes *change* in motion, not motion itself. Uniform motion—straight line, constant speed—needs no cause or explanation. Any deviation, in speed or direction, requires a **net force**. This idea is the essence of Newton's first and second laws. Combined with Newton's third law, these laws provide a consistent description of motion.

Newton's First Law

A body in uniform motion remains in uniform motion, and a body at rest remains at rest, unless acted on by a nonzero net force.

This law is implicit in Newton's second law.

Newton's Second Law

The rate at which a body's momentum changes is equal to the net force acting on the body.

Here **momentum** is the "quantity of motion," the product of mass and velocity.

Newton's Third Law

If object A exerts a force on object B, then object B exerts an oppositely directed force of equal magnitude on A.

Newton's third law says that forces come in pairs.

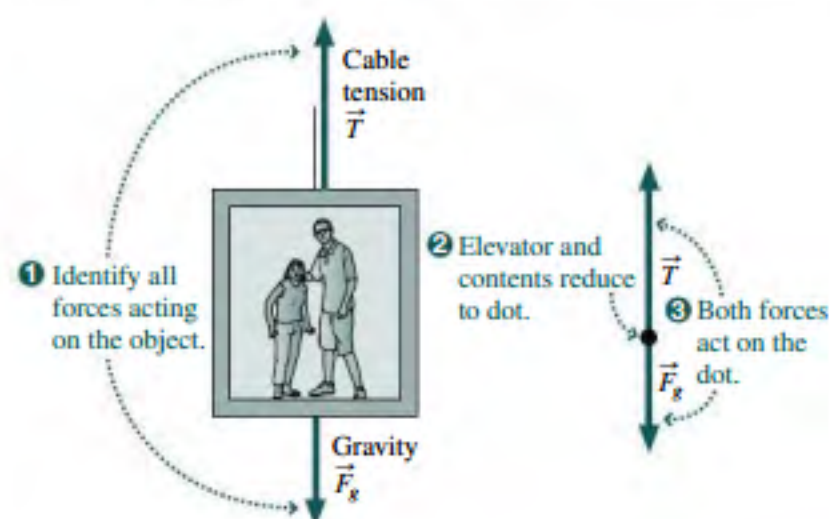
Solving Problems with Newton's Laws

INTERPRET Interpret the problem to be sure that you know what it's asking and that Newton's second law is the relevant concept. Identify the object of interest and all the individual **interaction forces** acting on it.

DEVELOP Draw a **free-body diagram** as described in Tactics 4.1. Develop your solution plan by writing Newton's second law, $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a}$, with $\vec{F}_{\text{net}}$ expressed as the sum of the forces you've identified. Then choose a coordinate system so you can express Newton's law in components.

EVALUATE At this point the physics is done, and you're ready to execute your plan by solving Newton's second law and evaluating the numerical answer(s), if called for. Remember that even in the one-dimensional problems of this chapter, Newton's law is a vector equation; that will help you get the signs right. You need to write the components of Newton's law in the coordinate system you chose, and then solve the resulting equation(s) for the quantity(ies) of interest.

ASSESS Assess your solution to see that it makes sense. Are the numbers reasonable? Do the units work out correctly? What happens in special cases—for example, when a mass, a force, an acceleration, or an angle gets very small or very large?

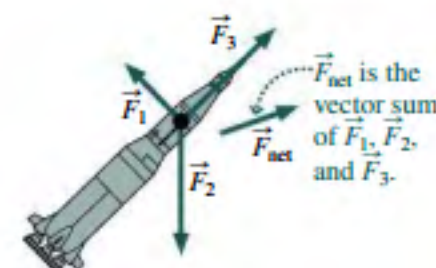


Key Concepts and Equations

Mathematically, Newton's second law is $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = d\vec{p}/dt$, where $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$ is an object's momentum, and $\vec{F}_{\text{net}}$ is the sum of all the individual forces acting on the object. When an object has constant mass, the second law takes the familiar form

$$\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a} \quad (\text{Newton's second law})$$

Newton's second law is a vector equation. To use it correctly, you must write the components of the equation in a chosen coordinate system. In one-dimensional problems the result is a single equation.



Applications

The force of gravity on an object is its **weight**. Since all objects at a given location experience the same gravitational acceleration, weight is proportional to mass:

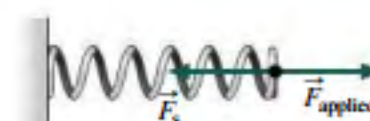
$$\vec{w} = m\vec{g} \quad (\text{weight on Earth})$$

In an accelerated reference frame, an object's **apparent weight** differs from its actual weight; in particular, an object in free fall experiences **apparent weightlessness**.

Springs are convenient force-measuring devices, stretching or compressing in response to the applied force. For an ideal spring, the stretch or compression is directly proportional to the force:

$$F_s = -kx \quad (\text{Hooke's law})$$

where k is the **spring constant**, with units of N/m.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **Comp** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>LO 4.1 Articulate the Newtonian paradigm that it's about <i>change</i> in motion.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 4.1, 4.10</i></p> <p>LO 4.2 List Newton's three laws of motion.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 4.3; Exercise 4.29; Problems 4.44, 4.52, 4.57, 4.65, 4.66, 4.72</i></p> <p>LO 4.3 Solve problems involving Newton's second law.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 4.2, 4.4, 4.8, 4.9, 4.10; Exercises 4.11, 4.12, 4.13, 4.14; 4.15, 4.16, 4.17, 4.18, 4.25, 4.26, 4.27, 4.28, 4.30; Problems 4.45, 4.46, 4.47, 4.48, 4.49, 4.50, 4.55, 4.56, 4.58, 4.59, 4.60, 4.61, 4.62, 4.63, 4.66, 4.67, 4.68, 4.69, 4.70, 4.71, 4.72, 4.73, 4.75</i></p> | <p>LO 4.4 Name the fundamental forces of nature.</p> <p>LO 4.5 Describe quantitatively how gravity acts on objects.
<i>Exercises 4.19, 4.20, 4.21, 4.22, 4.23, 4.24</i></p> <p>LO 4.6 Distinguish apparent weight from actual weight.
<i>Problems 4.45, 4.47</i></p> <p>LO 4.7 Identify Newton's third-law force pairs and find their values.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 4.2, 4.5, 4.6, 4.7; Exercises 4.31, 4.32; Problems 4.51, 4.55, 4.58, 4.61, 4.73, 4.74</i></p> <p>LO 4.8 Determine the forces exerted by springs.
<i>Exercises 4.33, 4.34, 4.35; Problems 4.53, 4.54, 4.64</i></p> |
|--|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- Distinguish the Aristotelian and Galilean/Newtonian views of the natural state of motion.
- A ball bounces off a wall with the same speed it had before it hit the wall. Has its momentum changed? Has a force acted on the ball? Has a force acted on the wall? Relate your answers to Newton's laws of motion.
- We often use the term "inertia" to describe human sluggishness. How is this usage related to the meaning of "inertia" in physics?
- Why does a ceiling fan continue to rotate even after you have switched it off?
- A truck crashes into a stalled car. A student trying to explain the physics of this event claims that no forces are involved; the car was just "in the way" so it got hit. Comment.
- A barefoot astronaut kicks a ball, hard, across a space station. Does the ball's apparent weightlessness mean the astronaut's toes don't hurt? Explain.
- What is the direction of momentum of a moving body? Does it depend on the speed of the body?
- If a body has a motion with constant velocity, does it necessarily mean that the body has zero acceleration?
- As your plane accelerates down the runway, you take your keys from your pocket and suspend them by a thread. Do they hang vertically? Explain.
- If you jump out of a moving bus, you have to run a few steps before coming to rest. Why?
- A small plane accelerates down the runway at 7.7 m/s^2 . If its propeller provides a 7.0-kN force, what's the plane's mass?
- A car leaves the road traveling at 90 km/h and hits a tree, coming to a stop in 0.16 s . What average force does a seatbelt exert on a 65-kg passenger during this collision?
- Kinesin is a "motor protein" responsible for moving materials within living cells. If it exerts a 6.2-pN force, what acceleration will it give a molecular complex with mass $4.0 \times 10^{-18} \text{ kg}$?
- Starting from rest and undergoing constant acceleration, a 920-kg racing car covers 410 m in 5.15 s . Find the force on the car.
- In an egg-dropping contest, a student encases an 83-g egg in a large Styrofoam block. If the force on the egg can't exceed 2.0 N , and if the block hits the ground at 1.7 m/s , by how much must the Styrofoam compress on impact? *Note:* The acceleration associated with stopping the egg is so great that you can neglect gravity while the Styrofoam block is slowing due to contact with the ground.
- In a front-end collision, a 1400-kg car with shock-absorbing bumpers can withstand a maximum force of 75 kN before damage occurs. If the maximum speed for a nondamaging collision is 9.0 km/h , by how much must the bumper be able to move relative to the car?

Section 4.4 The Force of Gravity

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 4.2 Newton's First and Second Laws

- A subway train's mass is $3.52 \times 10^5 \text{ kg}$. What force is required to accelerate the train at 2.25 m/s^2 ?
- A 66-Mg railroad locomotive can exert a 0.11-MN force. At what rate can it accelerate (a) by itself and (b) when pulling a 1.7-Gg train?
- A small plane accelerates down the runway at 7.7 m/s^2 . If its propeller provides a 7.0-kN force, what's the plane's mass?
- A car leaves the road traveling at 90 km/h and hits a tree, coming to a stop in 0.16 s . What average force does a seatbelt exert on a 65-kg passenger during this collision?
- Kinesin is a "motor protein" responsible for moving materials within living cells. If it exerts a 6.2-pN force, what acceleration will it give a molecular complex with mass $4.0 \times 10^{-18} \text{ kg}$?
- Starting from rest and undergoing constant acceleration, a 920-kg racing car covers 410 m in 5.15 s . Find the force on the car.
- In an egg-dropping contest, a student encases an 83-g egg in a large Styrofoam block. If the force on the egg can't exceed 2.0 N , and if the block hits the ground at 1.7 m/s , by how much must the Styrofoam compress on impact? *Note:* The acceleration associated with stopping the egg is so great that you can neglect gravity while the Styrofoam block is slowing due to contact with the ground.
- In a front-end collision, a 1400-kg car with shock-absorbing bumpers can withstand a maximum force of 75 kN before damage occurs. If the maximum speed for a nondamaging collision is 9.0 km/h , by how much must the bumper be able to move relative to the car?
- Show that the units of acceleration can be written as N/kg . Why does it make sense to give g as 9.8 N/kg when talking about mass and weight?
- Your spaceship crashes on one of the Sun's planets. Fortunately, the ship's scales are intact and show that your weight is 532 N . If your mass is 60 kg , where are you? (*Hint:* Consult Appendix E.)
- Your friend can barely lift a 35-kg concrete block on Earth. How massive a block could she lift on the Moon?
- A cereal box says "net weight 340 grams ." What's the actual weight (a) in SI units and (b) in ounces?
- You're a safety engineer for a bridge spanning the U.S.–Canadian border. U.S. specifications permit a maximum load of 10 tons . What load limit should you specify on the Canadian side, where "weight" is given in kilograms?

24. The gravitational acceleration at the International Space Station's altitude is about 89% of its surface value. What's the weight of a 68-kg astronaut at this altitude?

Section 4.5 Using Newton's Second Law

25. A 50-kg parachutist descends at a steady 40 km/h. What force does air exert on the parachute?
26. A 960-kg motorboat accelerates away from a dock at 2.1 m/s^2 . Its propeller provides a 3.9-kN thrust force. What drag force does the water exert on the boat?
27. An elevator accelerates downward at 2.1 m/s^2 . What force does the elevator's floor exert on a 61-kg passenger?
28. At 560 metric tons, the Airbus A-380 is the world's largest airliner. What's the upward force on an A-380 when the plane is (a) flying at constant altitude and (b) accelerating upward at 1.5 m/s^2 ?
29. Find an expression for the thrust (force) of a model rocket's engine required to accelerate a spacecraft of total mass M from rest on the ground to speed v while rising a vertical distance h .
30. You step into an elevator, and it accelerates to a downward speed of 8.8 m/s in 2.4 s. Quantitatively compare your apparent weight during this time with your actual weight.

Section 4.6 Newton's Third Law

31. What upward gravitational force does a 5600-kg elephant exert on Earth?
32. Your friend's mass is 63 kg. If she jumps off a 140-cm-high table, how far does Earth move toward her as she falls?
33. What force is necessary to stretch a spring 34 cm if its spring constant is 265 N/m?
34. A 35-N force is applied to a spring with spring constant $k = 260 \text{ N/m}$. How much does the spring stretch?
35. A spring with spring constant $k = 340 \text{ N/m}$ is used to weigh a 6.7-kg fish. How far does the spring stretch?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

36. **Example 4.1:** A 2280-kg car accelerates from rest to 31.2 m/s in 9.48 s, moving in a straight line with constant acceleration. (a) Find the net force acting on the car. (b) If the car then rounds a bend 166 m in radius, what net force acts on it?
37. **Example 4.1:** A 2280-kg car is subject to an 8.75-kN force that accelerates it in a straight line. (a) Starting from rest, how much time will it take the car to reach a speed of 22.8 m/s? (b) The car then enters a circular turn, where the road exerts an 8.65-kN force to keep the car on its circular path. What's the radius of the turn?
38. **Example 4.1:** A hockey player whacks a 162-g puck with her stick, applying a constant force that accelerates the puck to 86.8 m/s in 51.4 ms. (a) Find the force the stick exerts on the puck. (b) Still moving at 86.8 m/s, the puck hits the corner boards and slides around the corner of the rink. If the corner radius is 8.50 m, what force do the corner boards exert on the puck?

39. **Example 4.1:** A hockey player whacks a 162-g puck with her stick, applying a 212-N force that accelerates it to 78.3 m/s. (a) If the puck was initially at rest, for how much time did the acceleration last? (b) The puck then hits the curved corner boards, which exert a 151-N force on the puck to keep it in its circular path. What's the radius of the curve?
40. **Example 4.3:** A 975-kg elevator accelerates upward at 0.754 m/s^2 , pulled by a cable of negligible mass. Find the tension force in the cable.
41. **Example 4.3:** A 975-kg elevator is suspended by a cable of negligible mass. If the tension in the cable is 8.85 kN, what are the magnitude and direction of the elevator's acceleration?
42. **Example 4.3:** In the 2015 film *The Martian*, actor Matt Damon (mass 84.0 kg) plays an astronaut who's stranded on Mars. He eventually escapes in a rocket. If the rocket accelerates vertically upward from the Martian surface at 10.8 m/s^2 , what's the force that Damon's seat exerts on him? You'll need to consult Appendix E.
43. **Example 4.3:** In 2017 the company SpaceX became the first private company to send supplies to the International Space Station with a reusable rocket. At launch, the total mass of the rocket was 552 Mg, and the thrust force exerted by the rocket engines was 7.61 MN. What was the rocket's initial acceleration?

Problems

44. A 166-g hockey puck is gliding across the ice at 44.3 m/s. A player whacks it with her stick, sending it moving at 82.1 m/s at 45.0° to its initial direction of motion. If stick and puck are in contact for 112 ms, what are the magnitude and direction of the average force that was exerted on the puck?
45. An airplane encounters sudden turbulence, and you feel momentarily lighter. If your apparent weight seems to be about 75% of your normal weight, what are the magnitude and direction of the plane's acceleration?
46. A 70-kg tree surgeon rides a "cherry picker" lift to reach the upper branches of a tree. What force does the lift exert on the surgeon when it's (a) at rest; (b) moving upward at a steady 2.3 m/s; (c) moving downward at a steady 2.3 m/s; (d) accelerating upward at 1.3 m/s^2 ; (e) accelerating downward at 1.3 m/s^2 ?
47. A dancer executes a vertical jump during which the floor pushes up on his feet with a force 44% greater than his weight. What's his upward acceleration?
48. Find expressions for the force needed to bring an object of mass m from rest to speed v (a) in time Δt and (b) over distance Δx .
49. An elevator moves upward at 5.9 m/s. What's its minimum stopping time if the passengers are to remain on the floor?
50. A 2.50-kg object is moving along the x -axis at 1.60 m/s. As it passes the origin, two forces $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ are applied, both in the y -direction (plus or minus). The forces are applied for 3.00 s, after which the object is at $x = 4.80 \text{ m}$, $y = 10.8 \text{ m}$. If $\vec{F}_1 = 15.0\hat{j} \text{ N}$, what's $\vec{F}_2$?
51. Blocks of 1.0, 2.0, and 3.0 kg are lined up on a frictionless table, as shown in Fig. 4.21, with a 12-N force applied to the leftmost block. What's the magnitude of the force that the rightmost block exerts on the middle one?

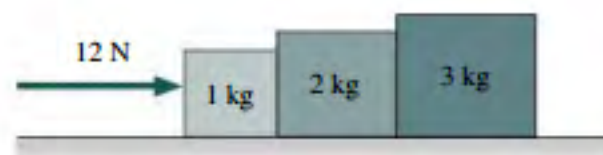


FIGURE 4.21 Problem 51

52. A child pulls an 11-kg wagon with a horizontal handle whose mass is 1.8 kg, accelerating the wagon and handle at 2.3 m/s^2 . Find the tension forces at each end of the handle. Why are they different?
53. **BIO** Biophysicists use an arrangement of laser beams called *optical tweezers* to manipulate microscopic objects. In a particular experiment, optical tweezers exerting a force of 0.373 pN were used to stretch a DNA molecule by $2.30 \text{ }\mu\text{m}$. What was the spring constant of the DNA?
54. A force F is applied to a spring of spring constant k_0 , stretching it a distance x . Consider the spring to be made up of two smaller springs of equal length, with the same force F still applied. Use $F = -kx$ to find the spring constant k_1 of each of the smaller springs.
55. A 2100-kg airplane pulls two gliders, the first of mass 340 kg and the second of mass 280 kg, down the runway with acceleration 1.7 m/s^2 (Fig. 4.22). Neglecting the mass of the two ropes and any frictional forces, determine the magnitudes of (a) the horizontal thrust of the plane's propeller, (b) the tension force in the first rope, (c) the tension force in the second rope, and (d) the net force on the first glider.



FIGURE 4.22 Problem 55

56. **BIO** A biologist is studying the growth of rats on the Space Station. To determine a rat's mass, she puts it in a 320-g cage, attaches a spring scale, and pulls so that the scale reads 0.46 N . If rat and cage accelerate at 0.40 m/s^2 , what's the rat's mass?
57. A small car, with mass 1090 kg , is stuck on frictionless ice. A tow truck hooks a 125-kg chain to the car and begins to accelerate at 0.345 m/s^2 . What's the tension in the chain (a) where it connects to the truck and (b) where it connects to the car?
58. A 2.0-kg mass and a 3.0-kg mass are on a horizontal frictionless surface, connected by a massless spring with spring constant $k = 180 \text{ N/m}$. A 15-N force is applied to the larger mass, as shown in Fig. 4.23. How much does the spring stretch from its equilibrium length?

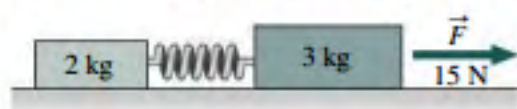


FIGURE 4.23 Problem 58

59. You're an automotive engineer designing the "crumple zone" of a new car—the region that compresses as the car comes to a stop in a head-on collision. If the maximum allowable force on a passenger in a 70 km/h collision is 20 times the passenger's weight, what do you specify for the amount of compression in the crumple zone?
60. **BIO** Frogs' tongues dart out to catch insects, with maximum tongue accelerations of about 220 m/s^2 . What force is needed to give a 500-mg tongue such an acceleration?
61. Two large crates, with masses 640 kg and 490 kg , are connected by a stiff, massless spring ($k = 8.1 \text{ kN/m}$) and propelled along an essentially frictionless factory floor by a horizontal force applied to the more massive crate. If the spring compresses 5.1 cm , what's the applied force?
62. Your engineering firm is asked to specify the maximum load for the elevators in a new building. Each elevator has mass 480 kg when empty and maximum acceleration 2.29 m/s^2 . The elevator cables can withstand a maximum tension of 21.0 kN before breaking. For safety, you need to ensure that the tension never exceeds two-thirds of that value. What do you specify for the maximum load? How many 75-kg people is that?

63. With its fuel tanks half full, an F-35A jet fighter has mass 18 Mg and engine thrust 191 kN . An Airbus A-380 has mass 560 Mg and total engine thrust 1.5 MN . Could either aircraft climb vertically with no lift from its wings? If so, what vertical acceleration could it achieve?
64. Two springs have the same unstretched length but different spring constants, k_1 and k_2 . (a) If they're connected side by side and stretched a distance x , as shown in Fig. 4.24a, show that the force exerted by the combination is $(k_1 + k_2)x$. (b) If they're connected end to end (Fig. 4.24b) and the combination is stretched a distance x , show that they exert a force $k_1 k_2 x / (k_1 + k_2)$.



FIGURE 4.24 Problem 65

65. Although we usually write Newton's second law for one-dimensional motion in the form $F = ma$, which holds when mass is constant, a more fundamental version is $F = \frac{d(mv)}{dt}$. Consider an object whose mass is changing, and use the product rule for derivatives to show that Newton's law then takes the form $F = ma + v \frac{dm}{dt}$.
66. A railroad car is being pulled beneath a grain elevator that dumps grain at the rate of 400 kg/s . Use the result of Problem 65 to find the force needed to keep the car moving at a constant 1.5 m/s .
67. A block 25% more massive than you hangs from a rope that goes over a frictionless, massless pulley. With what acceleration must you climb the other end of the rope to keep the block from falling?
68. **DATA** Figure 4.25 shows vertical accelerometer data from an iPhone that was dropped onto a pillow. The phone's accelerometer, like all accelerometers, can't distinguish gravity from acceleration, so it reads $1g$ when it's not accelerating and $0g$ when it's in free fall. Interpret the graph to determine (a) how long the phone was in free fall and therefore how far it fell; (b) how many times it bounced; (c) the maximum force the phone experienced, expressed in terms of its weight w ; and (d) when it finally came completely to rest. (Note: The phone was held flat when dropped, with the screen up for protection. In that orientation, it recorded negative values for acceleration; the graph shows the corresponding positive values that would have been recorded had it fallen screen side down.)

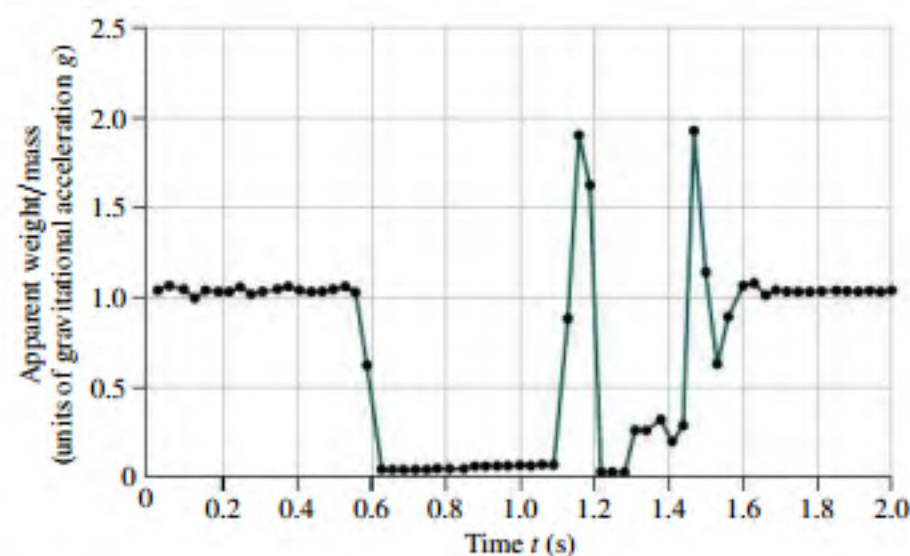


FIGURE 4.25 Accelerometer data for Problem 68.

69. A hockey stick is in contact with a 165-g puck for 22.4 ms; during this time, the force on the puck is given approximately by $F(t) = a + bt + ct^2$, where $a = -25.0 \text{ N}$, $b = 1.25 \times 10^5 \text{ N/s}$, and $c = -5.58 \times 10^6 \text{ N/s}^2$. Determine (a) the speed of the puck after it leaves the stick and (b) how far the puck travels while it's in contact with the stick.

70. After parachuting through the Martian atmosphere, the Mars Science Laboratory executed a complex series of maneuvers that successfully placed the rover *Curiosity* on the surface of Mars in 2012. The final ~22 s of the landing involved, in this order, firing rockets (1) to maintain a constant downward velocity of 32 m/s, (2) to achieve a constant deceleration that brought the downward speed to 0.75 m/s, and (3) to hold that constant velocity while the rover was lowered on cables from the rest of the spacecraft (see this chapter's opening image). The rover's touchdown was indicated by a sudden decrease in the rocket thrust needed to maintain constant velocity. Figure 4.26 shows the rocket thrust (upward force) as a function of time during these final 22 s of the flight and the first few seconds after touchdown. (a) Identify the two constant-velocity phases, the constant-deceleration phase, and the post-touchdown phase. (b) Find the magnitude of the spacecraft's acceleration during the constant-deceleration phase. Finally, determine (c) the mass of the so-called powered descent vehicle (PDV), meaning the spacecraft with the rover attached, and (d) the mass of the rover alone. Remember that all this happened at Mars, so you'll need to consult Appendix E.

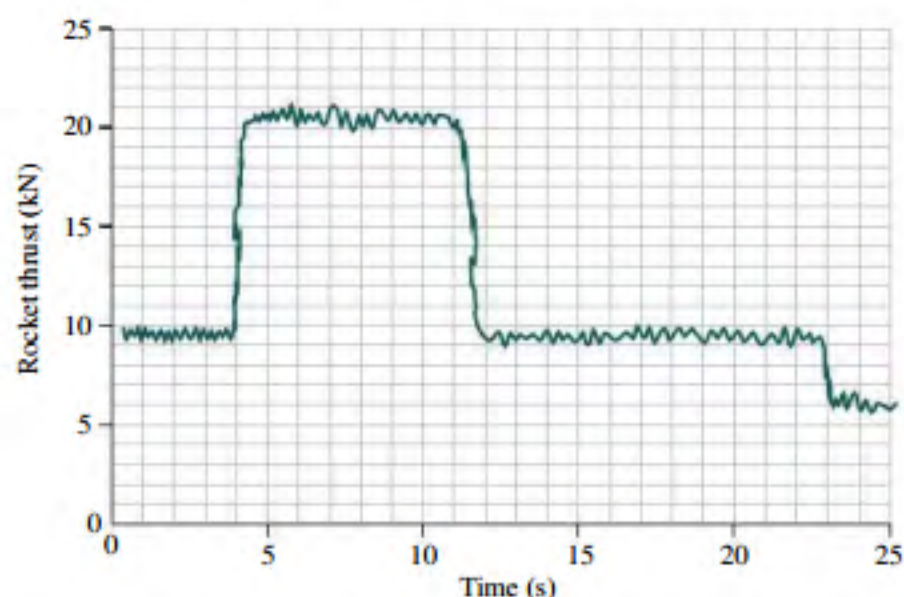


FIGURE 4.26 Rocket thrust (upward force of rocket engines) during the final descent of the Mars rover *Curiosity* (Problem 70).

71. Your airplane is caught in a brief, violent downdraft. To your amazement, pretzels rise vertically off your seatback tray, and you estimate their upward acceleration relative to the plane at 2 m/s^2 . What's the plane's downward acceleration?
72. A hot-air balloon and its basket are accelerating upward at 0.265 m/s^2 , propelled by a net upward force of 688 N. A rope of negligible mass connects the balloon and basket. The rope tension exceeds the basket's weight by 72.8 N. Find, separately, the mass of the balloon and the basket. (Incidentally, most of the balloon's mass is air.)
73. Two masses are joined by a massless string. A 30-N force applied vertically to the upper mass gives the system a constant upward acceleration of 3.2 m/s^2 . If the string tension is 18 N, what are the two masses?

74. A mass M hangs from a uniform rope of length L and mass m . Find an expression for the rope tension as a function of the distance y measured downward from the top of the rope.
75. "Jerk" is the rate of change of acceleration, and it's what can make you sick on an amusement park ride. In a particular ride, a car and passengers with total mass M are subject to a force given by $F = F_0 \sin \omega t$, where F_0 and ω are constants. Find an expression for the maximum jerk.

Passage Problems

Laptop computers are equipped with accelerometers that sense when the device is dropped and then put the hard drive into a protective mode. Your computer geek friend has written a program that reads the accelerometer and calculates the laptop's apparent weight. You're amusing yourself with this program on a long plane flight. Your laptop weighs just 5 pounds, and for a long time that's what the program reports. But then the "Fasten Seatbelt" light comes on as the plane encounters turbulence. Figure 4.27 shows the readings for the laptop's apparent weight over a 12-second interval that includes the start of the turbulence.

76. At the first sign of turbulence, the plane's acceleration
- is upward.
 - is downward.
 - is impossible to tell from the graph.
77. The plane's vertical acceleration has its greatest magnitude
- during interval B.
 - during interval C.
 - during interval D.
78. During interval C, you can conclude for certain that the plane is
- at rest.
 - accelerating upward.
 - accelerating downward.
 - moving with constant vertical velocity.
79. The magnitude of the greatest vertical acceleration the plane undergoes during the time shown on the graph is approximately
- 0.5 m/s^2 .
 - 1 m/s^2 .
 - 5 m/s^2 .
 - 10 m/s^2 .

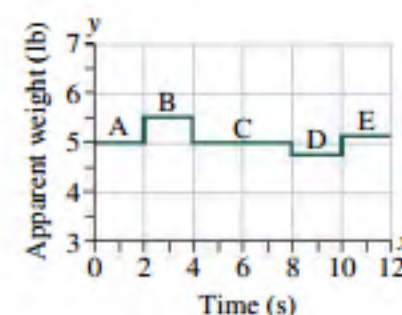


FIGURE 4.27 The laptop's apparent weight (Passage Problems 76–79).

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The engineers needed to consider Martian gravity, the upward thrust of the sky crane's rockets, and the tension in the cables used to lower the rover from the sky crane.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 4.1 (b)
 4.2 (b) (Look at Fig. 4.3.)
 4.3 (c) All would move in straight lines.
 4.4 (1) (a); (2) (b); (3) (b); (4) (a); (5) (c)
 4.5 (c) less than 2 N
 4.6 (1) No, because acceleration is still zero; (2) No, because the direction of the velocity is irrelevant to the acceleration



3

Motion in Two and
Three Dimensions

4

Force and Motion

5

6

Energy, Work, and
Power

7

Conservation of
Energy

Using Newton's Laws

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 5.1** Use a strategic approach to solve problems involving Newton's second law in two dimensions.
- LO 5.2** Solve Newton's law problems involving two connected objects.
- LO 5.3** Solve problems involving circular motion with one or more forces.
- LO 5.4** Describe the difference between static and kinetic friction.
- LO 5.5** Incorporate the frictional force into problems involving other forces.
- LO 5.6** Describe drag forces.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Newton's second law of motion (Sections 4.2)
- The concept of force and the force of gravity (Sections 4.3–4.4)
- How to solve problems involving Newton's second law in one dimension (Section 4.5)

Chapter 4 introduced Newton's three laws of motion and used them in one-dimensional situations. Now we apply Newton's laws in two dimensions. This material is at the heart of Newtonian physics, from textbook problems to systems that guide spacecraft to distant planets. The chapter consists largely of examples, to help you learn to apply Newton's laws and also to appreciate their wide range of applicability. We also introduce frictional forces and elaborate on circular motion. As you study the diverse examples, keep in mind that they all follow from the underlying principles embodied in Newton's laws.

5.1 Using Newton's Second Law

- LO 5.1** *Use a strategic approach to solve problems involving Newton's second law in two dimensions.*

Newton's second law, $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a}$, is the cornerstone of mechanics. We can use it to develop faster skis, engineer skyscrapers, design safer roads, compute a rocket's thrust, and solve myriad other practical problems.

We'll work Example 5.1 in great detail, applying Problem-Solving Strategy 4.1. Follow this example closely, and try to understand how our strategy is grounded in Newton's basic statement that the net force on an object determines that object's acceleration.



Why does an airplane tip when it's turning?

EXAMPLE 5.1 Newton's Law in Two Dimensions: Skiing

A skier of mass $m = 65 \text{ kg}$ glides down a slope at angle $\theta = 32^\circ$, as shown in Fig. 5.1. Find (a) the skier's acceleration and (b) the force the snow exerts on the skier. The snow is so slippery that you can neglect friction.



FIGURE 5.1 What's the skier's acceleration?

INTERPRET This problem is about the skier's motion, so we identify the skier as the object of interest. Next, we identify the forces acting on the object. In this case there are just two: the downward force of gravity and the normal force the ground exerts on the skier. As always, the normal force is perpendicular to the surfaces in contact—in this case, perpendicular to the slope.

DEVELOP Our strategy for using Newton's second law calls for drawing a free-body diagram that shows only the object and the forces acting on it; that's Fig. 5.2. Determining the relevant equation is straightforward here: It's Newton's second law, $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a}$. We write Newton's law explicitly for the forces we've identified:

$$\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = \vec{n} + \vec{F}_g = m\vec{a}$$

To apply Newton's law in two dimensions, we need to choose a coordinate system so that we can write this vector equation in components. Since the coordinate system is just a mathematical construct, you're free to choose any coordinate system you like—but a smart choice can make the problem a lot easier. In this example, the normal force is perpendicular to the slope, and the skier's acceleration is along the slope. If you choose a coordinate system with axes perpendicular and parallel to the slope, then these two vectors will lie along the coordinate axes, and you'll have only one vector—the gravitational force—that you'll need to break into components. So a tilted coordinate system makes this problem easier, and we've sketched this system on the free-body diagram in Fig. 5.2. But, again, any coordinate system will do. In Problem 38, you can rework this example in a horizontal/vertical coordinate system—getting the same answer at the expense of a lot more algebra.

EVALUATE The rest is math. First, we write the components of Newton's law in our coordinate system. That means writing a version of the equation for each coordinate direction by removing the arrows indicating vector quantities and adding subscripts for the coordinate directions:

$$\text{x-component: } n_x + F_{gx} = ma_x$$

$$\text{y-component: } n_y + F_{gy} = ma_y$$

Don't worry about signs until the next step, when we actually evaluate the individual terms in these equations. Let's begin with the x equation. With the x -axis parallel and the y -axis perpendicular to the slope, the normal force has only a y -component, so $n_x = 0$. Meanwhile, the acceleration points downslope—that's the positive x -direction—so $a_x = a$,

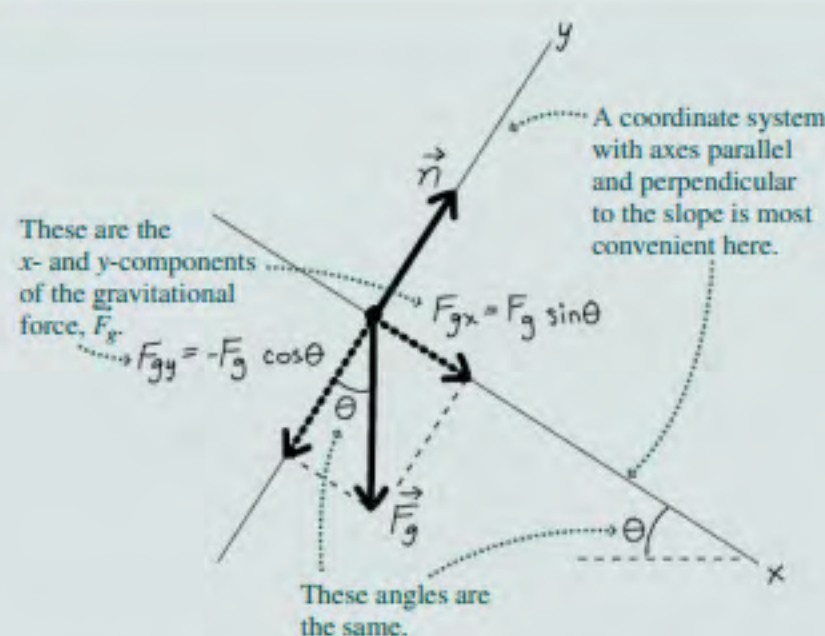


FIGURE 5.2 Our free-body diagram for the skier.

the magnitude of the acceleration. Only gravity has two nonzero components, and, as Fig. 5.2 shows, trigonometry gives $F_{gx} = F_g \sin \theta$. But F_g , the magnitude of the gravitational force, is just mg , so $F_{gx} = mg \sin \theta$. This component has a positive sign because our x -axis slopes downward. Then, with $n_x = 0$, the x equation becomes

$$\text{x-component: } mg \sin \theta = ma$$

On to the y equation. The normal force points in the positive y -direction, so $n_y = n$, the magnitude of the normal force. The acceleration has no component perpendicular to the slope, so $a_y = 0$. Figure 5.2 shows that $F_{gy} = -F_g \cos \theta = -mg \cos \theta$, so the y equation is

$$\text{y-component: } n - mg \cos \theta = 0$$

Now we can evaluate to get the answers. The x equation solves directly to give

$$a = g \sin \theta = (9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(\sin 32^\circ) = 5.2 \text{ m/s}^2$$

which is the acceleration we were asked to find in (a). Next, we solve the y equation to get $n = mg \cos \theta$. Putting in the numbers gives $n = 540 \text{ N}$. This is the answer to (b), the force the snow exerts on the skier.

ASSESS A look at two special cases shows that these results make sense. First, suppose $\theta = 0^\circ$, so the surface is horizontal. Then the x equation gives $a = 0$, as expected. The y equation gives $n = mg$, showing that a horizontal surface exerts a force that just balances the skier's weight. At the other extreme, consider $\theta = 90^\circ$, so the slope is a vertical cliff. Then the skier falls freely with acceleration g , as expected. In this case $n = 0$ because there's no contact between skier and slope. At intermediate angles, the slope's normal force lessens the effect of gravity, resulting in a lower acceleration. As the x equation shows, that acceleration is independent of the skier's mass—just as in the case of a vertical fall. The force exerted by the snow—here $mg \cos \theta$, or 540 N —is less than the skier's weight mg because the slope has to balance only the perpendicular component of the gravitational force.

If you understand this example, you should be able to apply Newton's second law confidently in other problems involving motion with forces in two dimensions.

Sometimes we're interested in finding the conditions under which an object won't accelerate. Examples are engineering problems, such as ensuring that bridges and buildings don't fall down, and physiology problems involving muscles and bones. Next we give a wilder example.

EXAMPLE 5.2 Objects at Rest: Bear Precautions

To protect her 17-kg pack from bears, a camper hangs it from ropes between two trees (Fig. 5.3). What's the tension in each rope?

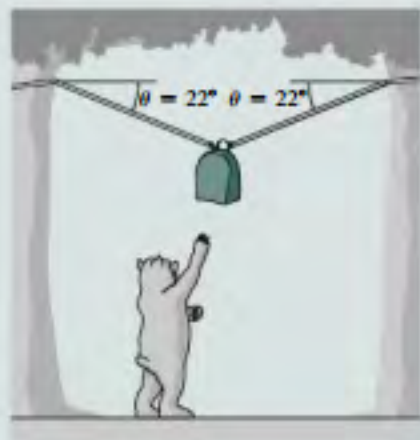


FIGURE 5.3 Bear precautions.

INTERPRET Here the pack is the object of interest. The only forces acting on it are gravity and tension forces in the two halves of the rope. To keep the pack from accelerating, they must sum to zero net force.

DEVELOP Figure 5.4 is our free-body diagram for the pack. The relevant equation is again Newton's second law, $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a}$ —this time with $\vec{a} = \vec{0}$. For the three forces acting on the pack, Newton's law is then $\vec{T}_1 + \vec{T}_2 + \vec{F}_g = \vec{0}$. Next, we need a coordinate system. The two rope tensions point in different directions that aren't perpendicular, so it doesn't make sense to align a coordinate axis with either of them. Instead, a horizontal/vertical system is simplest.

EVALUATE First we need to write Newton's law in components. Formally, we have $T_{1x} + T_{2x} + F_{gx} = 0$ and $T_{1y} + T_{2y} + F_{gy} = 0$ for the component equations. Figure 5.4 shows the components of the tension forces, and we see that $F_{gx} = 0$ and $F_{gy} = -F_g = -mg$. So our component equations become

$$\begin{aligned} \text{x-component: } T_1 \cos \theta - T_2 \cos \theta &= 0 \\ \text{y-component: } T_1 \sin \theta + T_2 \sin \theta - mg &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

The x equation tells us something that's apparent from the symmetry of the situation: Since the angle θ is the same for both halves of

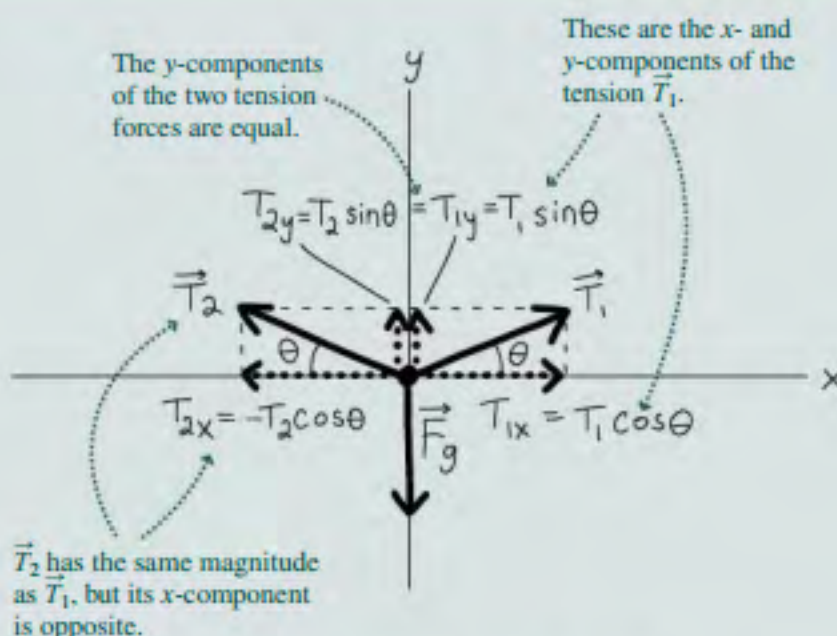


FIGURE 5.4 Our free-body diagram for the pack.

the rope, the magnitudes T_1 and T_2 of the tension forces are the same. Let's just call the magnitude T : $T_1 = T_2 = T$. Then the terms $T_1 \sin \theta$ and $T_2 \sin \theta$ in the y equation are equal, and the equation becomes $2T \sin \theta - mg = 0$, which gives

$$T = \frac{mg}{2 \sin \theta} = \frac{(17 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)}{2 \sin 22^\circ} = 220 \text{ N}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Let's look at some special cases. With $\theta = 90^\circ$, the rope hangs vertically, $\sin \theta = 1$, and the tension in each half of the rope is $\frac{1}{2}mg$. That makes sense, because each piece of the rope supports half the pack's weight. But as θ gets smaller, the ropes become more horizontal, and the tension increases. That's because the vertical tension components together still have to support the pack's weight—but now there's a horizontal component as well, increasing the overall tension. Ropes break if the tension becomes too great, and in this example that means the rope's so-called breaking tension must be considerably greater than the pack's weight. If $\theta = 0$, in fact, the tension would become infinite—demonstrating that it's impossible to support a weight with a purely horizontal rope.

EXAMPLE 5.3 Objects at Rest: Restraining a Ski Racer

A starting gate acts horizontally to restrain a 62-kg ski racer on a frictionless 30° slope (Fig. 5.5). What horizontal force does the starting gate apply to the skier?

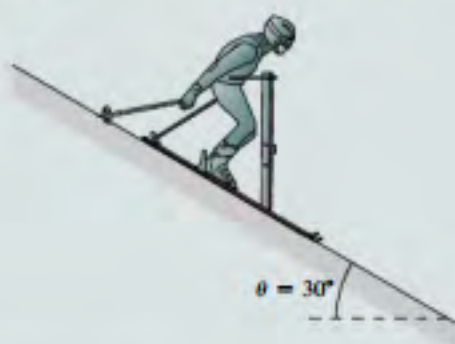


FIGURE 5.5 Restraining a skier.

INTERPRET Again, we want the skier to remain unaccelerated. The skier is the object of interest, and we identify three forces acting: gravity, the normal force from the slope, and a horizontal restraining force $\vec{F}_h$ that we're asked to find.

DEVELOP Figure 5.6 is our free-body diagram. The applicable equation is Newton's second law. Again, we want $\vec{a} = \vec{0}$, so with the forces we identified, $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a}$ becomes $\vec{F}_h + \vec{n} + \vec{F}_g = \vec{0}$. Developing our solution strategy, we choose a coordinate system. With two forces now either horizontal or vertical, a horizontal/vertical system makes the most sense; we've shown this coordinate system in Fig. 5.6.

EVALUATE As usual, the component equations follow directly from the vector form of Newton's law: $F_{hx} + n_x + F_{gx} = 0$ and $F_{hy} + n_y + F_{gy} = 0$. Figure 5.6 gives the components of the normal force and shows that $F_{hx} = -F_h$, $F_{gy} = -F_g = -mg$, and $F_{gx} = F_{hy} = 0$. Then the component equations become

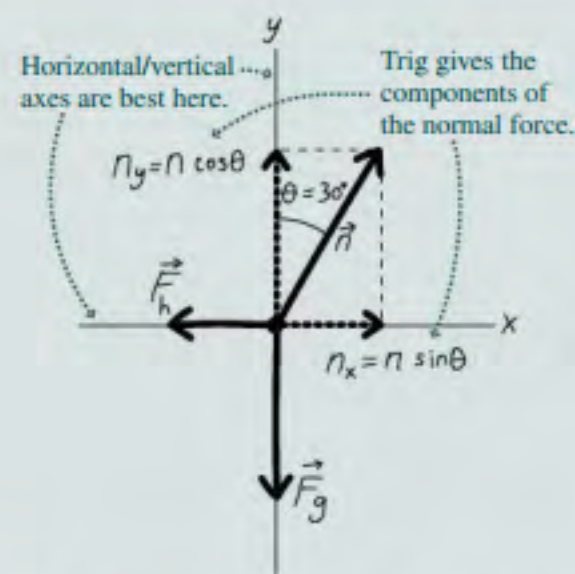


FIGURE 5.6 Our free-body diagram for the restrained skier.

$$x: -F_h + n \sin \theta = 0 \quad y: n \cos \theta - mg = 0$$

There are two unknowns here—namely, the horizontal force F_h that we're looking for and the normal force n . We can solve the y equation to get $n = mg/\cos \theta$. Using this expression in the x equation and solving for F_h then give the answer:

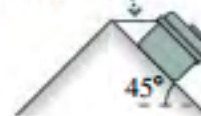
$$F_h = \frac{mg}{\cos \theta} \sin \theta = mg \tan \theta = (62 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(\tan 30^\circ) = 350 \text{ N}$$

ASSESS Again, let's look at the extreme cases. With $\theta = 0$, we have $F_h = 0$, showing that it doesn't take any force to restrain a skier on flat ground. But as the slope becomes more vertical, $\tan \theta \rightarrow \infty$, and in the vertical limit, it becomes impossible to restrain the skier with a purely horizontal force.

GOT IT?

5.1 A roofer's toolbox rests on an essentially frictionless metal roof with a 45° slope, secured by a horizontal rope as shown. Is the rope tension (a) greater than, (b) less than, or (c) equal to the box's weight?

How does the rope tension compare with the toolbox weight?



5.2 Multiple Objects

LO 5.2 Solve Newton's law problems involving two connected objects.

In the preceding examples there was a single object of interest. But often we have several objects whose motion is linked. Our Newton's law strategy still applies, with extensions to handle multiple objects.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 5.1

Newton's Second Law and Multiple Objects

INTERPRET Interpret the problem to be sure that you know what it's asking and that Newton's second law is the relevant concept. Identify the *multiple* objects of interest and all the individual interaction forces acting on *each* object. Finally, identify *connections* between the objects and the resulting *constraints* on their motions.

(continued)

DEVELOP Draw a *separate* free-body diagram showing all the forces acting on *each* object. Develop your solution plan by writing Newton's law, $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a}$, separately for each object, with $\vec{F}_{\text{net}}$ expressed as the sum of the forces acting on that object. Then choose a coordinate system appropriate to each object, so you can express each Newton's law equation in components. The coordinate systems for different objects don't need to have the same orientation.

EVALUATE At this point the physics is done, and you're ready to execute your plan by solving the equations and evaluating the numerical answer(s), if called for. Write the components of Newton's law for each object in the coordinate system you chose for each. You can then solve the resulting equations for the quantity(ies) you're interested in, using the connections you identified to relate the quantities that appear in the equations for the different objects.

ASSESS Assess your solution to see whether it makes sense. Are the numbers reasonable? Do the units work out correctly? What happens in special cases—for example, when a mass, a force, an acceleration, or an angle gets very small or very large?

EXAMPLE 5.4**Multiple Objects: Rescuing a Climber***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A 73-kg climber finds himself dangling over the edge of an ice cliff, as shown in Fig. 5.7. Fortunately, he's roped to a 940-kg rock located 51 m from the edge of the cliff. Unfortunately, the ice is frictionless, so the climber accelerates downward. What's his acceleration, and how much time does he have before the rock goes over the edge? Neglect the rope's mass.

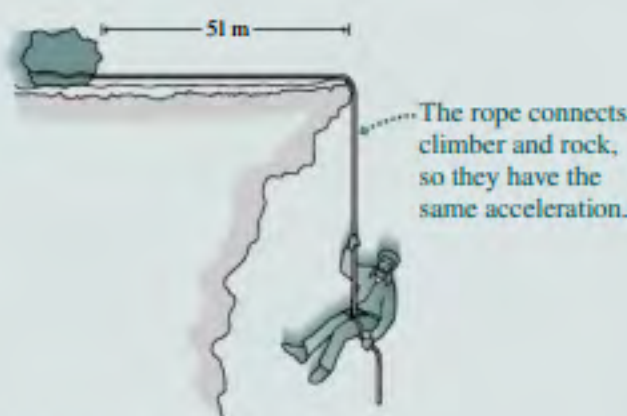


FIGURE 5.7 A climber in trouble.

INTERPRET We need to find the climber's acceleration, and from that we can get the time before the rock goes over the edge. We identify two objects of interest, the climber and the rock, and we note that the rope connects them. There are two forces on the climber: gravity and the upward rope tension. There are three forces on the rock: gravity, the normal force from the surface, and the rightward-pointing rope tension.

DEVELOP Figure 5.8 shows a free-body diagram for each object. Newton's law applies to each, so we write two vector equations:

$$\text{climber: } \vec{T}_c + \vec{F}_{gc} = m_c \vec{a}_c$$

$$\text{rock: } \vec{T}_r + \vec{F}_{gr} + \vec{n} = m_r \vec{a}_r$$

where the subscripts c and r stand for climber and rock, respectively. All forces are either horizontal or vertical, so we can use the same horizontal/vertical coordinate system for both objects, as shown in Fig. 5.8.

EVALUATE Again, the component equations follow directly from the vector forms. There are no horizontal forces on the climber, so only the y equation is significant. We're skilled enough now to skip the intermediate

step of writing the components without their actual expressions, and we see from Fig. 5.8a that the y-component of Newton's law for the climber becomes $T_c - m_c g = m_c a_c$. For the rock, the only horizontal force is the tension, pointing to the right or positive x-direction, so the rock's x equation is $T_r = m_r a_r$. Since it's on a horizontal surface, the rock has no vertical acceleration, so its y equation is $n - m_r g = 0$. In writing these equations, we haven't added the subscripts x and y because each vector has only a single nonzero component. Now we need to consider the connection between rock and climber. That's the rope, and its presence means that the magnitude of both accelerations is the same. Calling that magnitude a , we can see from Fig. 5.8 that $a_r = a$ and $a_c = -a$. The value for

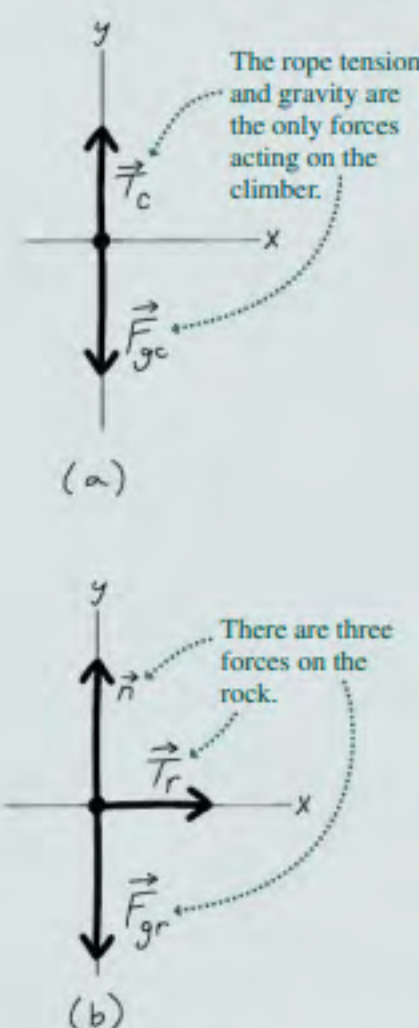


FIGURE 5.8 Our free-body diagrams for (a) the climber and (b) the rock.

the rock is positive because $\vec{T}_r$ points to the right, which we defined as the positive x -direction; the value for the climber is negative because he's accelerating downward, which we defined as the negative y -direction. The rope, furthermore, has negligible mass, so the tension throughout it must be the same (more on this point just after the example). Therefore, the tension forces on rock and climber have equal magnitude T , so $T_c = T_r = T$. Putting this all together gives us three equations:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{climber, } y: \quad T - m_c g &= -m_c a \\ \text{rock, } x: \quad T &= m_r a \\ \text{rock, } y: \quad n - m_r g &= 0\end{aligned}$$

The rock's x equation gives the tension, which we can substitute into the climber's equation to get $m_r a - m_c g = -m_c a$. Solving for a then gives the answer:

$$a = \frac{m_c g}{m_c + m_r} = \frac{(73 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)}{(73 \text{ kg} + 940 \text{ kg})} = 0.71 \text{ m/s}^2$$

We didn't need the rock's y equation, which just says that the normal force supports the rock's weight.

ASSESS Again, let's look at special cases. Suppose the rock's mass is zero; then our expression gives $a = g$. In this case there's no rope tension and the climber plummets in free fall. Also, acceleration decreases as the rock's mass increases, so with an infinitely massive rock, the climber would dangle without accelerating. You can see physically why our expression for acceleration makes sense. The gravitational force $m_c g$ acting on the climber has to accelerate both rock and climber—whose combined mass is $m_c + m_r$. The result is an acceleration of $m_c g / (m_c + m_r)$.

We're not quite done because we were also asked for the time until the rock goes over the cliff, putting the climber in real trouble. We interpret this as a problem in one-dimensional motion from Chapter 2, and we determine that Equation 2.10, $x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2} a t^2$, applies. With $x_0 = 0$ and $v_0 = 0$, we have $x = \frac{1}{2} a t^2$. We evaluate by solving for t and using the acceleration we found along with $x = 51 \text{ m}$ for the distance from the rock to the cliff edge:

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{2x}{a}} = \sqrt{\frac{(2)(51 \text{ m})}{0.71 \text{ m/s}^2}} = 12 \text{ s}$$



ROPE TENSION FORCES Tension forces can be confusing. In Example 5.4, the rock pulls on one end of the rope and the climber pulls on the other. So why isn't the rope tension the sum of these forces? And why is it important to neglect the rope's mass? The answers lie in the meaning of tension.

Figure 5.9 shows a situation similar to Example 5.4, with two people pulling on opposite ends of a rope with forces of 1 N each. You might think the rope tension is then 2 N, but it's not. To see why, consider the part of the rope that's highlighted in Fig. 5.9b. To the left is the hand pulling leftward with 1 N. The rope isn't accelerating, so there must be a 1-N force pulling to the right on the highlighted piece. The remainder of the rope provides that force. We could have divided the rope anywhere, so we conclude that every part of the rope exerts a 1-N force on the adjacent rope. That 1-N force is what we mean by the rope tension.

As long as the rope isn't accelerating, the net force on it must be zero, so the forces at the two ends have the same magnitude. That conclusion would hold even if the rope were accelerating—provided it had negligible mass. That's often a good approximation in situations involving tension forces. But if a rope, cable, or chain has significant mass and is accelerating, then the tension force differs at the two ends. That difference, according to Newton's second law, is the net force that accelerates the rope.

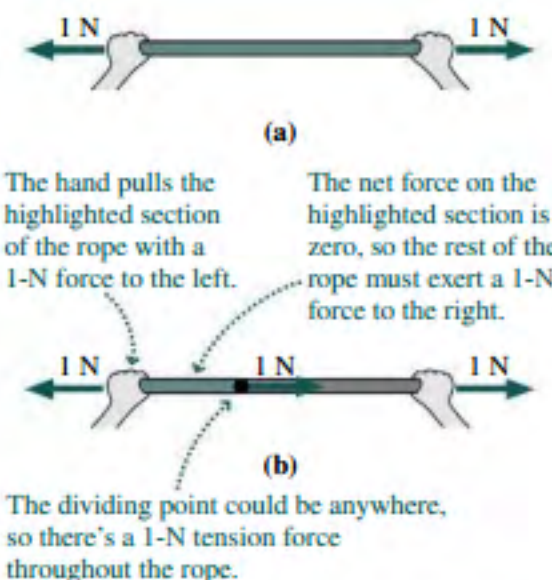


FIGURE 5.9 Understanding tension forces.

GOT IT?

5.2 In the figure below we've replaced one of the hands from Fig. 5.9 with a hook attaching the rope to a wall. On the right, the hand still pulls with a 1-N force. How do the forces now differ from what they were in Fig. 5.9? (a) there's no difference; (b) the force exerted by the hook is zero; (c) the rope tension is now 0.5 N



5.3 Circular Motion

LO 5.3 Solve problems involving circular motion with one or more forces.

A car rounds a curve. A satellite circles Earth. A proton whirls around a giant particle accelerator. Since they're not going in straight lines, Newton tells us that a force acts on each (Fig. 5.10). We know from Section 3.6 that the acceleration of an object moving with constant speed v in a circular path of radius r has magnitude v^2/r and points toward the center

A net force is necessary to change the direction of motion. The force points toward the center of the curve.

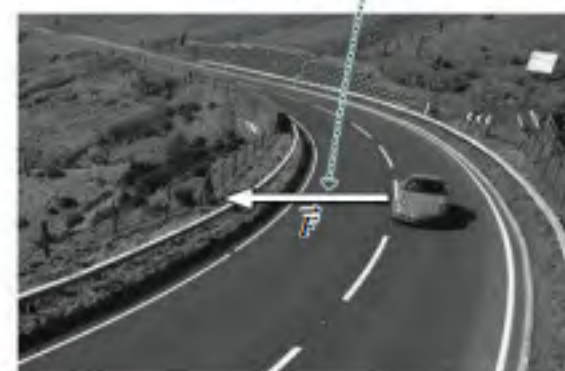


FIGURE 5.10 When a car rounds a curve a force acts toward the center of the curve.

**LOOK FOR REAL**

FORCES Centripetal force is *not* some new kind of force. It's just the name for *any* forces that keep an object in circular motion—which are always real, physical

forces. Common examples of forces involved in circular motion include the gravitational force on a satellite, friction between tires and road, magnetic forces, tension forces, normal forces, and combinations of these and other forces.

of the circle. Newton's second law then tells us that the magnitude of the net force on an object of mass m in circular motion is

$$F_{\text{net}} = ma = \frac{mv^2}{r} \quad (\text{uniform circular motion}) \quad (5.1)$$

The force is in the same direction as the acceleration—toward the center of the circular path. For that reason it's sometimes called the **centripetal force**, meaning center-seeking (from the Latin *centrum*, “center,” and *petere*, “to seek”).

Newton's second law describes circular motion exactly as it does any other motion: by relating net force, mass, and acceleration. Therefore, we can analyze circular motion with the same strategy we've used in other Newton's law problems.

EXAMPLE 5.5 Circular Motion: Whirling a Ball on a String

A ball of mass m whirls around in a horizontal circle at the end of a massless string of length L (Fig. 5.11). The string makes an angle θ with the horizontal. Find the ball's speed and the string tension.

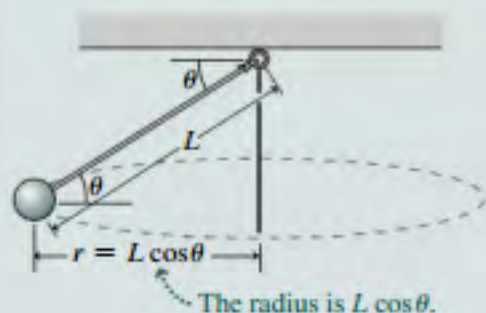


FIGURE 5.11 A ball whirling on a string.

INTERPRET This problem is similar to other Newton's law problems we've worked involving force and acceleration. The object of interest is the ball, and only two forces are acting on it: gravity and the string tension.

DEVELOP Figure 5.12 is our free-body diagram showing the two forces we've identified. The relevant equation is Newton's second law, which becomes

$$\vec{T} + \vec{F}_g = m\vec{a}$$

The ball's path is in a horizontal plane, so its acceleration is horizontal. Then two of the three vectors in our problem— $\vec{F}_g$ and $\vec{a}$ —are horizontal or vertical, so in developing our strategy, we choose a horizontal/vertical coordinate system.

**REAL FORCES ONLY!**

Were you tempted to draw a third force in Fig. 5.12, perhaps pointing outward to balance the other two? *Don't!* Because the ball is accelerating, the net force is nonzero and the individual forces *do not balance*. Or maybe you were tempted to draw an inward-pointing force, mv^2/r . *Don't!* The quantity mv^2/r is *not* another force; it's just the product of mass and acceleration that appears in Newton's law (recall Fig. 4.3 and the associated tip). Students often complicate problems by introducing forces that aren't there. That makes physics seem harder than it is!

EVALUATE We now need the x - and y -components of Newton's law. Figure 5.12 shows that $F_{gy} = -F_g = -mg$ and also gives tension components in terms of trig functions. The acceleration

is purely horizontal, so $a_y = 0$, and since the ball is in circular motion, $a_x = v^2/r$. But what's r ? It's the radius of the circular path and, as Fig. 5.11 shows, that's not the string length L but $L \cos \theta$. With all these expressions, the components of Newton's law become

$$x: T \cos \theta = \frac{mv^2}{L \cos \theta} \quad y: T \sin \theta - mg = 0$$

We can get the tension directly from the y equation: $T = mg/\sin \theta$. Using this result in the x equation lets us solve for the speed v :

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{TL \cos^2 \theta}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{(mg/\sin \theta)L \cos^2 \theta}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{gL \cos^2 \theta}{\sin \theta}}$$

ASSESS In the special case $\theta = 90^\circ$, the string hangs vertically; here $\cos \theta = 0$, so $v = 0$. There's no motion, and the string tension equals the ball's weight. But as the string becomes increasingly horizontal, both speed and tension increase. And, just as in Example 5.2, the tension becomes very great as the string approaches horizontal. Here the string tension has two jobs to do: Its vertical component supports the ball against gravity, while its horizontal component keeps the ball in its circular path. The vertical component is always equal to mg , but as the string approaches horizontal, that becomes an insignificant part of the overall tension—and thus the tension and speed grow very large.

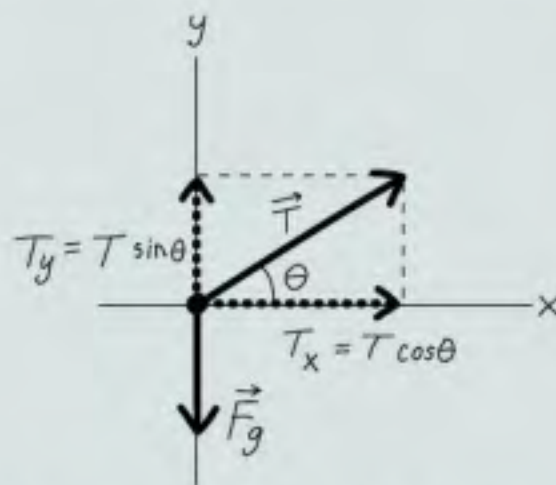


FIGURE 5.12 Our free-body diagram for the whirling ball.

EXAMPLE 5.6 Circular Motion: Engineering a Road

Roads designed for high-speed travel have banked curves to give the normal force a component toward the center of the curve. That lets cars turn without relying on friction between tires and road. At what angle should a road with 350-m curvature radius be banked for travel at 90 km/h (25 m/s)?

INTERPRET This is another example involving circular motion and Newton's second law. Although we're asked about the road, a car on the road is the object we're interested in, and we need to design the road so the car can round the curve without needing a frictional force. That means the only forces on the car are gravity and the normal force.

DEVELOP Figure 5.13 shows the physical situation, and Fig. 5.14 is our free-body diagram for the car. Newton's second law is the applicable equation, and here it becomes $\vec{n} + \vec{F}_g = m\vec{a}$. Unlike the skier of Example 5.1, the car isn't accelerating down the slope, so a horizontal/vertical coordinate system makes the most sense.

EVALUATE First we write Newton's law in components. Gravity has only a vertical component, $F_{gy} = -mg$ in our coordinate system, and Fig. 5.14 shows the two components of the normal force. The acceleration is purely horizontal and points toward the center of the curve; in our coordinate system that's the positive x -direction. Since the car is in circular motion, the magnitude of the acceleration is v^2/r . So the components of Newton's law become

$$x: n \sin \theta = \frac{mv^2}{r} \quad y: n \cos \theta - mg = 0$$

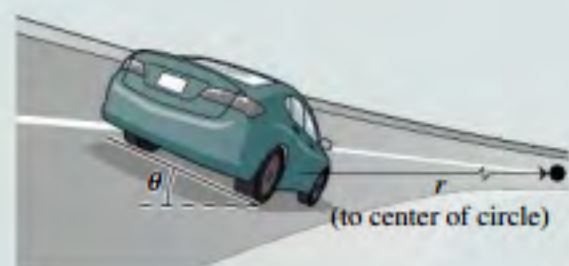


FIGURE 5.13 Car on a banked curve.

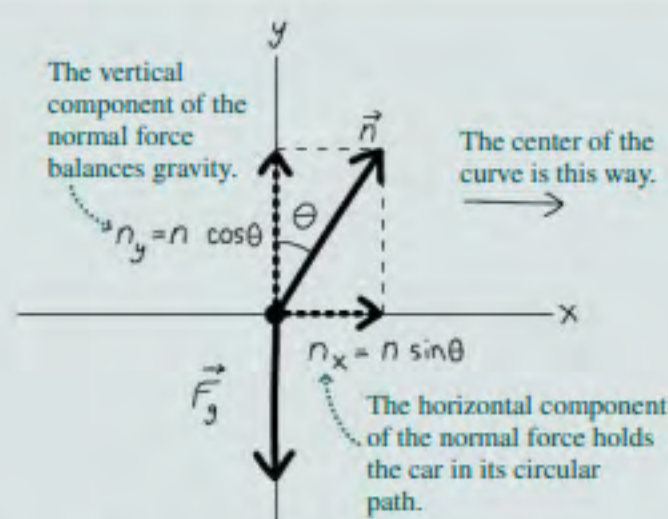


FIGURE 5.14 Our free-body diagram for the car on a banked curve.

where the 0 on the right-hand side of the y equation reflects the fact that we don't want the car to accelerate in the vertical direction. Solving the y equation gives $n = mg/\cos \theta$. Then using this result in the x equation gives $mg \sin \theta / \cos \theta = mv^2/r$, or $g \tan \theta = v^2/r$. The mass canceled, which is good news because it means our banked road will work for a vehicle of any mass. Now we can solve for the banking angle:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{v^2}{gr}\right) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{(25 \text{ m/s})^2}{(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(350 \text{ m})}\right) = 10^\circ$$

ASSESS Make sense? At low speed v or large radius r , the car's motion changes gently and it doesn't take a large force to keep it on its circular path. But as v increases or r decreases, the required force increases and so does the banking angle. That's because the horizontal component of the normal force is what keeps the car in circular motion, and the steeper the angle, the greater that component. A similar thing happens when an airplane banks to turn; then the force of the air perpendicular to the wings acquires a horizontal component, and that's what turns the plane (see this chapter's opening photo and Problem 47).

EXAMPLE 5.7 Circular Motion: Looping the Loop
Worked Example with Variation Problems

The "Great American Revolution" roller coaster at Valencia, California, includes a loop-the-loop section whose radius is 6.3 m at the top. What's the minimum speed for a roller-coaster car at the top of the loop if it's to stay on the track?

INTERPRET Again, we have circular motion described by Newton's second law. We're asked about the minimum speed for the car to stay on the track. What does it mean to stay on the track? It means there must be a normal force between car and track; otherwise, the two aren't in contact. So we can identify two forces acting on the car: gravity and the normal force from the track.

DEVELOP Figure 5.15 shows the physical situation. Things are especially simple at the top of the track, where both forces point in the same direction. We show this in our free-body diagram, Fig. 5.16 (next page). Since that common direction is downward, it makes sense to

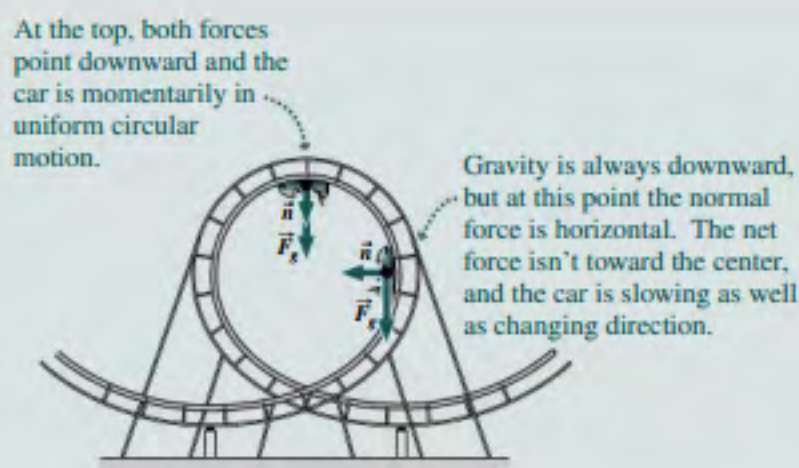


FIGURE 5.15 Forces on the roller-coaster car.

(continued)

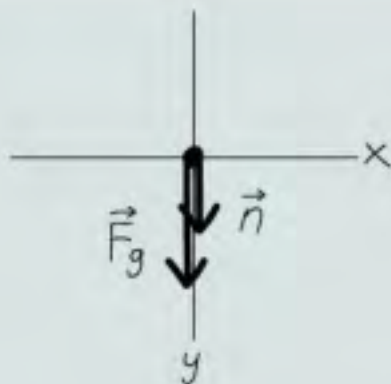


FIGURE 5.16 Our free-body diagram at the top of the loop.

choose a coordinate system with the positive y -axis *downward*. The applicable equation is Newton's second law, and with the two forces we've identified, that becomes $\vec{n} + \vec{F}_g = m\vec{a}$.

EVALUATE With both forces in the same direction, we need only the y -component of Newton's law. With the downward direction positive, $n_y = n$ and $F_{gy} = mg$. At the top of the loop, the car is in circular motion, so its acceleration is toward the center—downward—and has magnitude v^2/r . So $a_y = v^2/r$, and the y -component of Newton's law becomes

$$n + mg = \frac{mv^2}{r}$$

Solving for the speed gives $v = \sqrt{(nr/m) + gr}$. Now, the minimum possible speed for contact with the track occurs when n gets arbitrarily small right at the top of the track, so we find this minimum limit by setting $n = 0$. Then the answer is

$$v_{\min} = \sqrt{gr} = \sqrt{(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(6.3 \text{ m})} = 7.9 \text{ m/s}$$

ASSESS Do you see what's happening here? With the minimum speed, the normal force vanishes at the top of the loop, and gravity alone provides the force that keeps the object in its circular path. Since the motion is circular, that force must have magnitude mv^2/r . But the force of gravity alone is mg , and $v_{\min} = \sqrt{gr}$ follows directly from equating those two quantities. A car moving any slower than $v_{\min}$ would lose contact with the track and go into the parabolic trajectory of a projectile. For a car moving faster, there would be a nonzero normal force contributing to the downward acceleration at the top of the loop. In the "Great American Revolution," the actual speed at the loop's top is 9.7 m/s to provide a margin of safety. As with most problems involving gravity, the mass cancels. That's a good thing because it means the safe speed doesn't depend on the number or mass of the riders.

Although real roller coasters have a definite curvature radius at the top, the overall shape of the loop is more teardrop-like than circular. This gives a larger curvature radius near the bottom, and minimizes what would otherwise be a very large acceleration experienced by riders at the bottom of the loop.



FORCE AND MOTION We've said this before, but it's worth noting again: Force doesn't cause motion but rather *change* in motion. The direction of an object's motion need not be the direction of the force on the object. That's true in Example 5.7, where the car is moving horizontally at the top of the loop while subject to a downward force. What *is* in the same direction as the force is the *change* in motion, here embodied in the center-directed acceleration of circular motion.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 5.1 Bad Hair Day

What's wrong with this cartoon showing riders on a loop-the-loop roller coaster (Fig. 5.17)?



FIGURE 5.17 Conceptual Example 5.1.

EVALUATE Our objects of interest are the riders near the top of the roller coaster. We need to know the forces on them; one is obviously gravity. If the roller coaster is moving faster than Example 5.7's minimum speed—and it better be, for safety—then there are also normal forces from the seats as well as internal forces acting to accelerate parts of the riders' bodies.

Newton's law relates net force and acceleration: $\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$. This equation implies that the net force and acceleration must be in the same direction. At the top of the loop that direction is downward. Every part of the riders' bodies must therefore experience a net downward force. Again, Example 5.7 shows that the minimum force is that of gravity alone; for safety, there must be additional downward forces.

Now focus on the riders' hair, shown hanging downward. Forces on an individual hair are gravity and tension, and our safety argument shows that they should both point in the same direction—namely, downward—to provide a downward force stronger than gravity alone. How, then, can the riders' hair hang downward? That implies an *upward* tension force, inconsistent with our argument. The artist should have drawn the hair "hanging" upward.

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: To the riders, it feels like up is down! They feel the normal force of the seat pushing down, and their hairs experience a downward-pointing tension force. Even though

the riders wear seatbelts, they don't need them: If the speed exceeds Example 5.7's minimum, then they feel tightly bound to their seats. Is there some mysterious new force that pushes them against their seats and that pulls their hair up? No! Newton's second law says the net force on the riders is in the direction of their acceleration—namely, downward. And for safety, that net force must be greater than gravity. It's those additional downward forces—the normal force from the seat and the tension force in the hair—that make up feel like down.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Suppose the riders feel like they weigh 50% of what they weigh at rest on the ground. How does the roller coaster's speed compare with Example 5.7's minimum?

EVALUATE In Example 5.7, we found the speed in terms of the normal force n and other quantities: $v = \sqrt{(n/m) + gr}$. An apparent weight 50% of normal implies that $n = mg/2$. Then $v = \sqrt{(gr/2) + gr} = \sqrt{3/2} \sqrt{gr}$. Example 5.7 shows that the minimum speed is $\sqrt{gr}$, so our result is $\sqrt{3/2} \approx 1.22$ times the minimum speed. And that 50% apparent weight the riders feel is *upward*!

GOT IT?

5.3 You whirl a bucket of water around in a vertical circle and the water doesn't fall out. A Newtonian explanation of why the water doesn't fall out is that (a) the centripetal force mv^2/r balances the gravitational force, (b) there's a centrifugal force pushing the water upward, (c) the normal force plus the gravitational force together provide the downward acceleration needed to keep the water in its circular path, or (d) an upward normal force balances gravity.

5.4 Friction

LO 5.4 Describe the difference between static and kinetic friction.

LO 5.5 Incorporate the frictional force into problems involving other forces.

Your everyday experience of motion seems inconsistent with Newton's first law. Slide a book across the table, and it stops. Take your foot off the gas, and your car coasts to a stop. But Newton's law is correct, so these examples show that some force must be acting. That force is **friction**, a force that opposes the relative motion of two surfaces in contact.

On Earth, we can rarely ignore friction. Some 20% of the gasoline burned in your car is used to overcome friction inside the engine. Friction causes wear and tear on machinery and clothing. But friction is also useful; without it, you couldn't drive or walk.

The Nature of Friction

Friction is ultimately an electrical force between molecules in different surfaces. When two surfaces are in contact, microscopic irregularities adhere, as shown in Fig. 5.18a. At the macroscopic level, the result is a force that opposes any relative movement of the surfaces.

Experiments show that the magnitude of the frictional force depends on the normal force between surfaces in contact. Figure 5.18b shows why this makes sense: As the normal forces push the surfaces together, the actual contact area increases. There's more adherence, and this increases the frictional force.

At the microscopic level, friction is complicated. The simple equations we'll develop here provide approximate descriptions of frictional forces. Friction is important in everyday life, but it's not one of the fundamental physical interactions.

Frictional Forces

Try pushing a heavy trunk across the floor. At first nothing happens. Push harder; still nothing. Finally, as you push even harder, the trunk starts to slide—and you may notice that once it gets going, you don't have to push quite so hard. Why is that?

With the trunk at rest, microscopic contacts between trunk and floor solidify into relatively strong bonds. As you start pushing, you distort those bonds without breaking them;

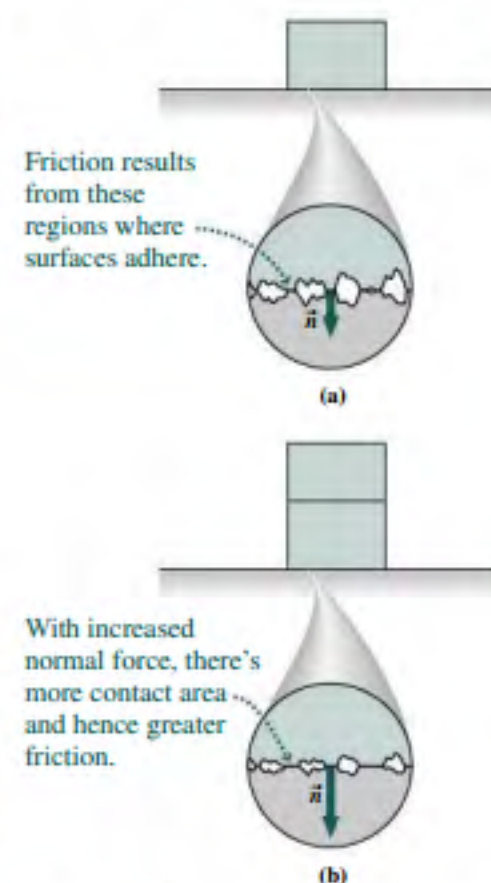


FIGURE 5.18 Friction originates in the contact between two surfaces.

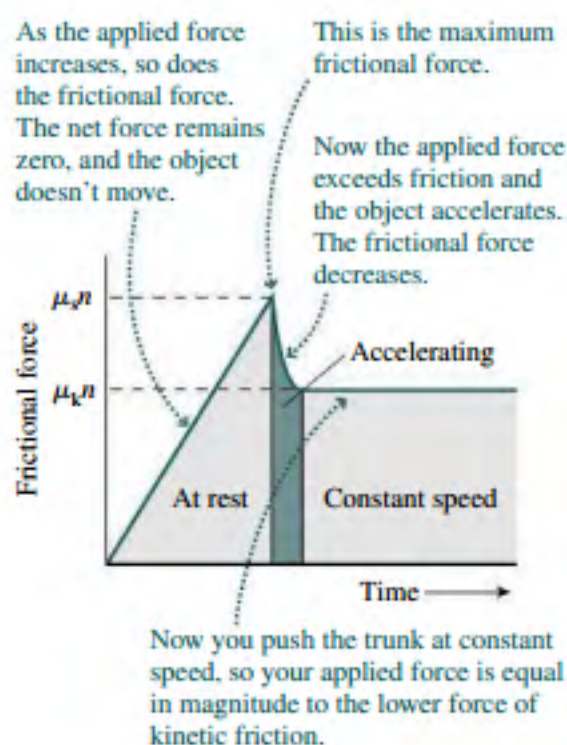


FIGURE 5.19 Behavior of frictional forces.

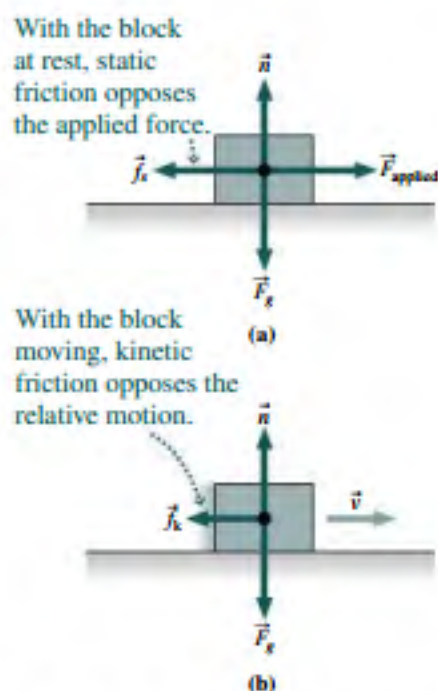


FIGURE 5.20 Direction of frictional forces.

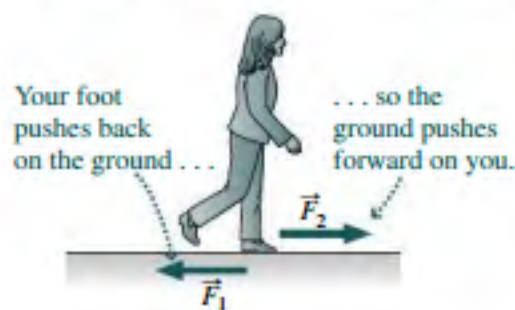


FIGURE 5.21 Walking.

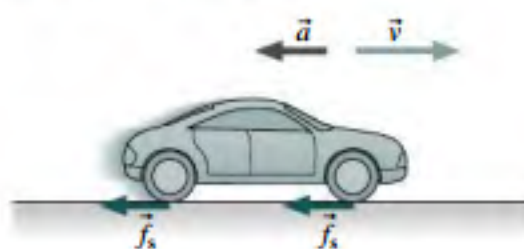


FIGURE 5.22 Friction stops the car.

they respond with a force that opposes your applied force. This is the force of **static friction**, $\vec{f}_s$. As you increase the applied force, static friction increases equally, as shown in Fig. 5.19, and the trunk remains at rest. Experimentally, we find that the maximum static-friction force is proportional to the normal force between surfaces, and we write

$$f_s \leq \mu_s n \quad (\text{static friction}) \quad (5.2)$$

Here the proportionality constant μ_s (lowercase Greek mu, with the subscript s for “static”) is the **coefficient of static friction**, a quantity that depends on the two surfaces. The $\leq$ sign indicates that the force of static friction ranges from zero up to the maximum value on the right-hand side.

Eventually you push hard enough to break the bonds between trunk and floor, and the trunk begins to move; this is the point in Fig. 5.19 where the frictional force suddenly drops. Now the microscopic bonds don’t have time to strengthen, so the force needed to overcome them isn’t so great. In Fig. 5.19 we’re assuming you then push with just enough force to overcome friction, so the trunk now moves with constant speed.

The weaker frictional force between surfaces in relative motion is the force of **kinetic friction**, $\vec{f}_k$. Again, it’s proportional to the normal force between the surfaces:

$$f_k = \mu_k n \quad (\text{kinetic friction}) \quad (5.3)$$

where now the proportionality constant is μ_k , the **coefficient of kinetic friction**. Because kinetic friction is weaker, the coefficient of kinetic friction for a given pair of surfaces is less than the coefficient of static friction. Cross-country skiers exploit that fact by using waxes that provide a high coefficient of static friction for pushing against the snow and for climbing hills, while the lower kinetic friction permits effortless gliding.

Equations 5.2 and 5.3 give only the magnitudes of the frictional forces. The direction of the frictional force is parallel to the two surfaces, in the direction that opposes any applied force (Fig. 5.20a) or the surfaces’ relative motion (Fig. 5.20b).

Since they describe proportionality between the magnitudes of two forces, the coefficients of friction are dimensionless. Typical values of μ_k range from less than 0.01 for smooth or lubricated surfaces to about 1.5 for very rough ones. Rubber on dry concrete—vital in driving an automobile—has μ_k about 0.8, and μ_s can exceed 1. A waxed ski on dry snow has $\mu_k \approx 0.04$, while the synovial fluid that lubricates your body’s joints reduces μ_k to a low 0.003.

If you push a moving object with a force equal to the opposing force of kinetic friction, then the net force is zero and, according to Newton, the object moves at constant speed. Since friction is nearly always present, but not as obvious as the push of a hand or the pull of a rope, you can see why it’s so easy to believe that force is needed to make things move—rather than, as Newton recognized, to make them accelerate.

We emphasize that the equations describing friction are empirical expressions that approximate the effects of complicated but more basic interactions at the microscopic level. Our friction equations have neither the precision nor the fundamental character of Newton’s laws.

Applications of Friction

Static friction plays a vital role in everyday activities such as walking and driving. As you walk, your foot contacting the ground is momentarily at rest, pushing back against the ground. By Newton’s third law, the ground pushes forward, accelerating you forward (Fig. 5.21). Both forces of the third-law pair arise from static friction between foot and ground. On a frictionless surface, walking is impossible.

Similarly, the tires of an accelerating car push back on the road. If they aren’t slipping, the bottom of each tire is momentarily at rest (more on this in Chapter 10). Therefore the force is static friction. The third law then requires a frictional force of the road pushing forward on the tires; that’s what accelerates the car. Braking is the opposite: The tires push forward, and the road pushes back to decelerate the car (Fig. 5.22). The brakes affect only the wheels; it’s friction between tires and road that stops the car. You know this if you’ve applied your brakes on an icy road!

EXAMPLE 5.8 Frictional Forces: Stopping a Car

The kinetic- and static-friction coefficients between a car's tires and a dry road are 0.61 and 0.89, respectively. The car is initially traveling at 90 km/h (25 m/s) on a level road. Determine (a) the minimum stopping distance, which occurs when the brakes are applied so that the wheels keep rolling as they slow and therefore static friction applies, and (b) the stopping distance with the wheels fully locked and the car skidding.

INTERPRET Since we're asked about the stopping distance, this is ultimately a question about accelerated motion in one dimension—the subject of Chapter 2. But here friction causes that acceleration, so we have a Newton's law problem. The car is the object of interest, and we identify three forces: gravity, the normal force, and friction.

DEVELOP Figure 5.23 is our free-body diagram. We have a two-part problem here: First, we need to use Newton's second law to find the acceleration, and then we can use Equation 2.11, $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a\Delta x$, to relate distance and acceleration. With the three forces acting on the car, Newton's law becomes $\vec{F}_g + \vec{n} + \vec{f}_f = m\vec{a}$. A horizontal/vertical coordinate system is most appropriate for the components of Newton's law.

EVALUATE The only horizontal force is friction, which points in the $-x$ -direction and has magnitude μn , where μ can be either the kinetic- or the static-friction coefficient. The normal force and gravity act in the vertical direction, so the component equations are

$$x: -\mu n = ma_x \quad y: -mg + n = 0$$

Solving the y equation for n and substituting in the x equation gives the acceleration: $a_x = -\mu g$. We then use this result in Equation 2.11 and solve for the stopping distance Δx . With final speed $v = 0$, this gives

$$\Delta x = \frac{v_0^2}{-2a_x} = \frac{v_0^2}{2\mu g}$$

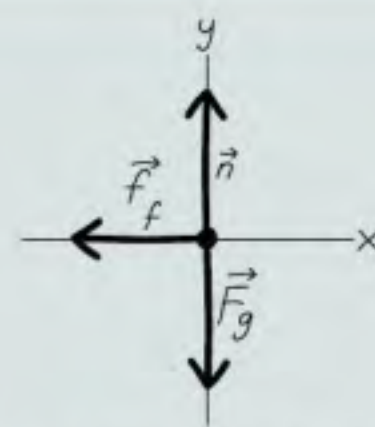


FIGURE 5.23 Our free-body diagram for the braking car.

Using the numbers given, we get (a) $\Delta x = 36$ m for the minimum stopping distance (no skid; static friction) and (b) 52 m for the car skidding with its wheels locked (kinetic friction). The difference could well be enough to prevent an accident.

ASSESS Our result $a_x = -\mu g$ shows that a higher friction coefficient leads to a larger acceleration; this makes sense because friction is what causes the acceleration. What happened to the car's mass? A more massive car requires a larger frictional stopping force for the same acceleration—but friction depends on the normal force, and the latter is greater in proportion to the car's mass. Thus the stopping distance doesn't depend on mass.

This example shows that stopping distance increases as the *square* of the speed. That's one reason high speeds are dangerous: Doubling your speed quadruples your stopping distance!

EXAMPLE 5.9 Frictional Forces: Steering

A level road makes a 90° turn with radius 73 m. What's the maximum speed for a car to negotiate this turn when the road is dry ($\mu_s = 0.88$) and when the road is snow covered ($\mu_s = 0.21$)?

INTERPRET This example is similar to Example 5.8, but now the frictional force acts perpendicular to the car's motion, keeping it in a circular path. Because the car isn't moving in the direction of the force, we're dealing with *static* friction. The car is the object of interest, and again the forces are gravity, the normal force, and friction.

DEVELOP Figure 5.24 is our free-body diagram. Newton's law is the applicable equation, and we're dealing with the acceleration v^2/r that occurs in circular motion. With the three forces acting on the car, Newton's law is $\vec{F}_g + \vec{n} + \vec{f}_s = m\vec{a}$. A horizontal/vertical coordinate system is most appropriate, and now it's most convenient to take the x -axis in the direction of the acceleration—namely, toward the center of the curve.

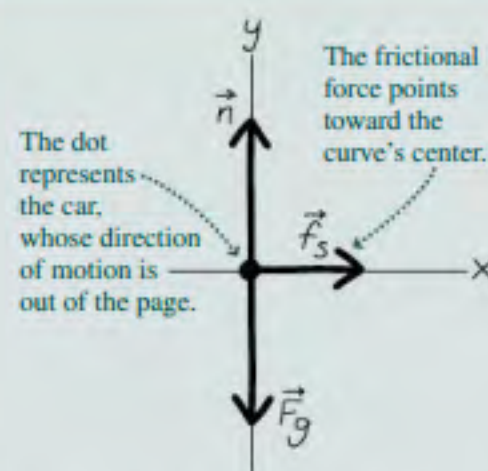


FIGURE 5.24 Our free-body diagram for the cornering car.

EVALUATE Again, the only horizontal force is friction, with magnitude $\mu_s n$. Here it points in the positive x -direction, as does the

(continued)

acceleration of magnitude v^2/r . So the x -component of Newton's law is $\mu_s n = mv^2/r$. There's no vertical acceleration, so the y -component is $-mg + n = 0$. Solving for n and using the result in the x equation give $\mu_s mg = mv^2/r$. Again the mass cancels, and we solve for v to get

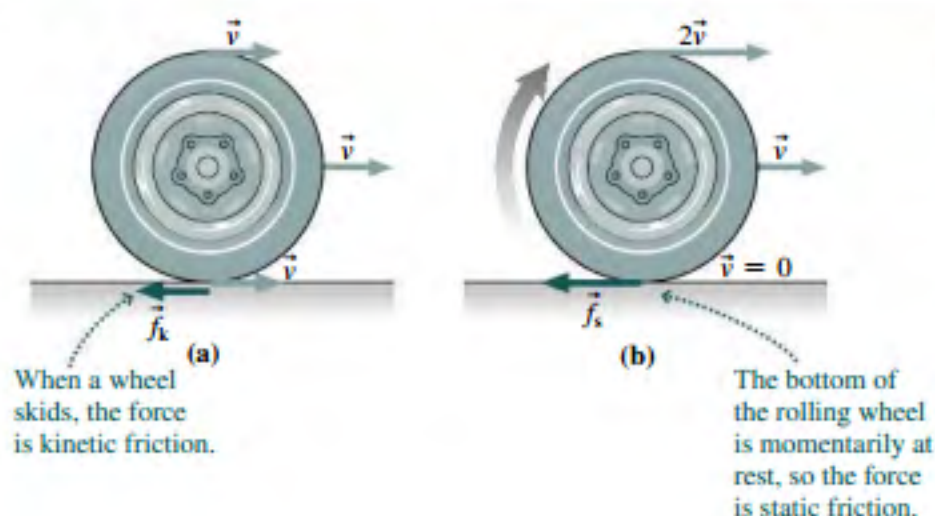
$$v = \sqrt{\mu_s gr}$$

Putting in the numbers, we get $v = 25 \text{ m/s}$ (90 km/h) for the dry road and 12 m/s (44 km/h) for the snowy road. Exceed these speeds, and

your car inevitably moves in a path with a larger radius—and that means going off the road!

ASSESS Once again, it makes sense that the car's mass doesn't matter. A more massive car needs a larger frictional force, and it gets what it needs because its larger mass results in a larger normal force. The safe speed increases with the curve radius r , and that, too, makes sense: A larger radius means a gentler turn, with less acceleration at a given speed. So less frictional force is needed.

APPLICATION Antilock Brakes



Today's cars have computer-controlled antilock braking systems (ABS). These systems exploit the fact that static friction is greater than kinetic friction. Slam on the brakes of a non-ABS car and the wheels lock and skid without turning. The force between tires and road is then *kinetic* friction (part a in the figure). But if you pump the brakes to keep the wheels from skidding, then it's the greater force of *static* friction (part b).

ABS improves on this brake-pumping strategy with a computer that independently controls the brakes at each wheel, keeping each just on the verge of slipping. Drivers of ABS cars should slam the brakes hard in an emergency; the ensuing clatter indicates the ABS is working.

Although ABS can reduce the stopping distance, its real significance is in preventing vehicles from skidding out of control as can happen when you apply the brakes with some wheels on ice and others on pavement. Increasingly, today's cars incorporate their computer-controlled brakes into sophisticated systems that enhance stability during emergency maneuvers.

EXAMPLE 5.10 Friction on a Slope: Avalanche!

A storm dumps new snow on a ski slope. The coefficient of static friction between the new snow and the older snow underneath is 0.46. What's the maximum slope angle to which the new snow can adhere?

INTERPRET The problem asks about an angle, but it's friction that holds the new snow to the old, so this is really a problem about the maximum possible static friction. We aren't given an object, but we can model the new snow as a slab of mass m resting on a slope of unknown angle θ . The forces on the slab are gravity, the normal force, and static friction $\vec{f}_s$.

DEVELOP Figure 5.25 shows the model, and Fig. 5.26 is our free-body diagram. Newton's second law is the applicable equation, here with $\vec{a} = \vec{0}$, giving $\vec{F}_g + \vec{n} + \vec{f}_s = \vec{0}$. We also need the maximum static-friction force, given in Equation 5.2, $f_{s\max} = \mu_s n$. As in Example 5.1, a tilted coordinate system is simplest and is shown in Fig. 5.26.

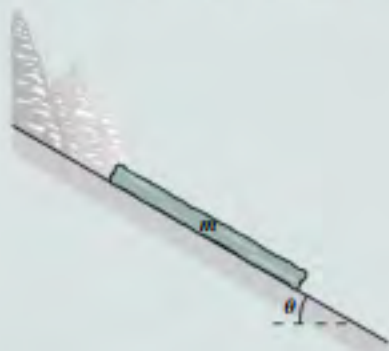


FIGURE 5.25 A layer of snow, modeled as a slab on a sloping surface.

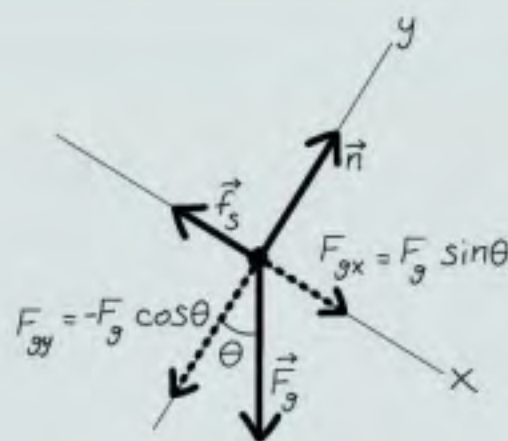


FIGURE 5.26 Our free-body diagram for the snow slab.

EVALUATE With the positive x -direction downslope, Fig. 5.26 shows that the x -component of gravity is $F_g \sin \theta = mg \sin \theta$, while the frictional force acts upslope ($-x$ -direction) and has maximum magnitude $\mu_s n$; therefore, $f_{sx} = -\mu_s n$. So the x -component of Newton's law is $mg \sin \theta - \mu_s n = 0$. We can read the y -component from Fig. 5.26: $-mg \cos \theta + n = 0$. Solving the y equation gives $n = mg \cos \theta$. Using this result in the x equation then yields $mg \sin \theta - \mu_s mg \cos \theta = 0$. Both m and g cancel, and we have $\sin \theta = \mu_s \cos \theta$ or, since $\tan \theta = \sin \theta / \cos \theta$,

$$\tan \theta = \mu_s$$

For the numbers given in this example, the result becomes $\theta = \tan^{-1} \mu_s = \tan^{-1}(0.46) = 25^\circ$.

ASSESS Make sense? Sure: The steeper the slope, the greater the friction needed to keep the snow from sliding. Two effects are at work here: First, as the slope steepens, so does the component of gravity along the slope. Second, as the slope steepens, the normal force gets

smaller, and that reduces the frictional force for a given friction coefficient. Note here that the normal force is not simply the weight mg of the snow; again, that's because of the sloping surface.

The real avalanche danger comes at angles slightly smaller than our answer $\tan \theta = \mu_s$, where a thick snowpack can build up. Changes in the snow's composition with temperature may decrease the friction coefficient and unleash an avalanche.

EXAMPLE 5.11 Friction: Dragging a Trunk

You drag a trunk of mass m across a level floor using a massless rope that makes an angle θ with the horizontal (Fig. 5.27). Given a kinetic-friction coefficient μ_k , what rope tension is required to move the trunk at constant speed?



FIGURE 5.27 Dragging a trunk.

INTERPRET Even though the trunk is moving, it isn't accelerating, so here's another problem involving Newton's law with zero acceleration. The object is the trunk, and now four forces act: gravity, the normal force, friction, and the rope tension.

DEVELOP Figure 5.28 is our free-body diagram showing all four forces acting on the trunk. The relevant equation is Newton's law. With no acceleration, it reads $\vec{F}_g + \vec{n} + \vec{f}_k + \vec{T} = \vec{0}$, with the magnitude of kinetic friction given by $f_k = \mu_k n$. All vectors except the tension force are horizontal or vertical, so the most sensible coordinate system has horizontal and vertical axes.

EVALUATE From Fig. 5.28, we can write the components of Newton's law: $T \cos \theta - \mu_k n = 0$ in the x -direction and $T \sin \theta - mg + n = 0$ in the y -direction. This time the unknown T appears in both equations. Solving the y equation for n gives $n = mg - T \sin \theta$. Putting this n in the x equation then yields $T \cos \theta - \mu_k (mg - T \sin \theta) = 0$. Factoring terms involving T and solving, we arrive at the answer:

$$T = \frac{\mu_k mg}{\cos \theta + \mu_k \sin \theta}$$

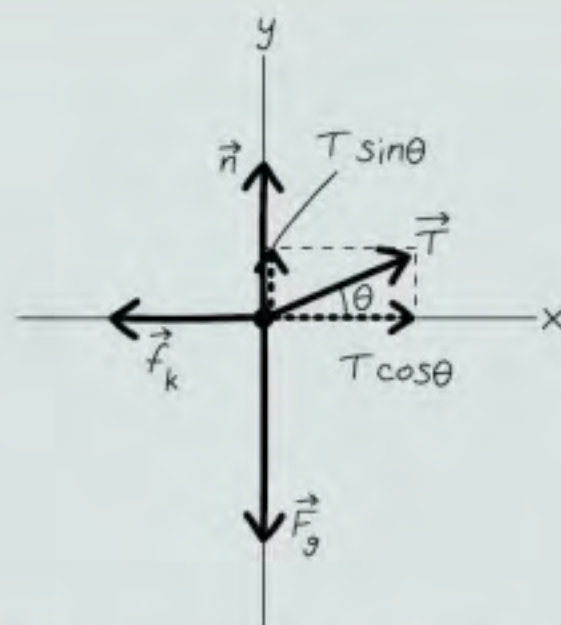


FIGURE 5.28 Our free-body diagram for the trunk.

ASSESS Make sense? Without friction, we wouldn't need any force to move the trunk at constant speed, and indeed our expression gives $T = 0$ in this case. On the other hand, if there is friction but $\theta = 0$, then $\sin \theta = 0$ and we get $T = \mu_k mg$. In this case the normal force equals the weight, so the frictional force is $\mu_k mg$. Since the frictional force is horizontal, and with $\theta = 0$ we're pulling horizontally, this is also the magnitude of the tension force. At intermediate angles, two effects come into play: First, the upward component of tension helps support the trunk's weight, and that means less normal force is needed. With less normal force, there's less friction—making the trunk easier to pull. But as the angle increases, less of the tension is horizontal, and that means a larger tension force is needed to overcome friction. In combination, these two effects mean there's an optimum angle at which the rope tension is a minimum. Problem 72 explores this point further.

GOT IT?

5.4 The figure shows a logging vehicle pulling a redwood log. Is the frictional force in this case (a) less than, (b) equal to, or (c) greater than the weight multiplied by the coefficient of friction?



5.5 Drag Forces

LO 5.6 Describe drag forces.

Friction isn't the only "hidden" force that robs objects of their motion and obscures Newton's first law. Objects moving through fluids like water or air experience **drag forces** that oppose the relative motion of object and fluid. Ultimately, drag results from collisions between fluid molecules and the object. The drag force depends on several factors, including fluid density and the object's cross-sectional area and speed.

Terminal Speed

When an object falls from rest, its speed is initially low and so is the velocity-dependent drag force. It therefore accelerates downward with nearly the gravitational acceleration g . But as the object gains speed, the drag force increases—until eventually the drag force and gravity have equal magnitudes. At that point the net force on the object is zero, and it falls with constant speed, called its **terminal speed**.

Because the drag force depends on an object's area and the gravitational force depends on its mass, the terminal speed is lower for lighter objects with large areas. A parachute, for example, is designed specifically to have a large surface area that results, typically, in a terminal speed around 5 m/s. A ping-pong ball and a golf ball have about the same size and therefore the same area, but the ping-pong ball's much lower mass leads to a terminal speed of about 10 m/s compared with the golf ball's 50 m/s. For an irregularly shaped object, the drag and thus the terminal speed depend on how large a surface area the object presents to the air. Skydivers exploit this effect to vary their rates of fall.

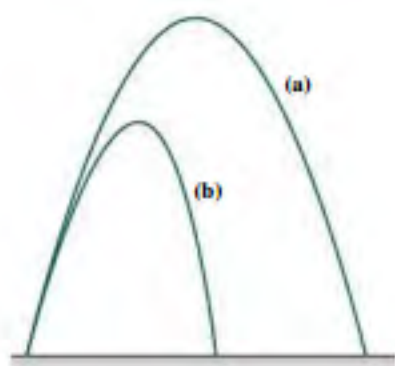


FIGURE 5.29 Projectile trajectories (a) without air resistance and (b) with substantial air resistance. Note that (b) not only achieves less height and range but that the trajectory is no longer a symmetric parabola.

Drag and Projectile Motion

In Chapter 3, we consistently neglected air resistance—the drag force of air—in projectile motion. Determining drag effects on projectiles is not trivial and usually requires computer calculations. The net effect, though, is that air resistance decreases the range of a projectile (Fig. 5.29). Despite the physicist's need for computer calculations, others—especially athletes—have a feel for drag forces that lets them play their sports by judging correctly the trajectory of a projectile under the influence of drag forces. You can explore drag forces further in Problem 73.

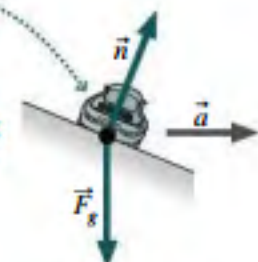
Chapter 5 Summary

Big Idea

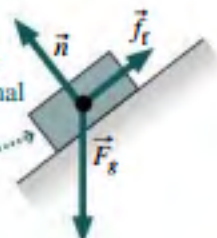
The big idea here is the same as in Chapter 4—namely, that Newton's laws are a universal description of motion, in which force causes not motion itself but change in motion. Here we focus on Newton's second law, extended to the richer and more complex examples of motion in two dimensions. To use Newton's law, we now sum forces that may point in different directions, but the result is the same: The net force determines an object's acceleration.

Common forces include gravity, the normal force from surfaces, tension forces, and a force introduced here: friction. Important examples are those where an object is accelerating, including in circular motion, and those where there's no acceleration and therefore the net force is zero.

Here's a car on a banked turn. The forces on it don't sum to zero because the car is accelerating toward the center of the turn.



A block sits at rest on a slope. The three forces—gravity, normal force, and friction—sum to zero.



Solving Problems with Newton's Laws

The problem-solving strategy in this chapter is exactly the same as in Chapter 4, except that in two dimensions the choice of coordinate system and the division of forces into components become crucial steps. You usually need both component equations to solve a problem.

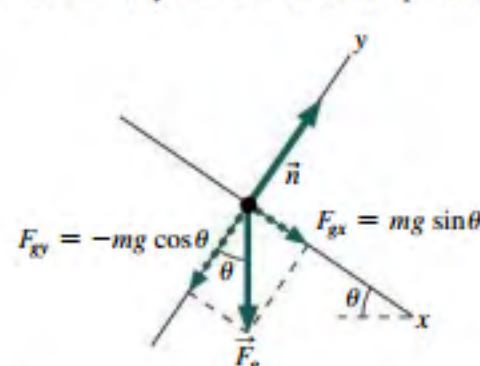
A skier on a frictionless slope



Free-body diagram showing the two forces acting



Coordinate system and vector components



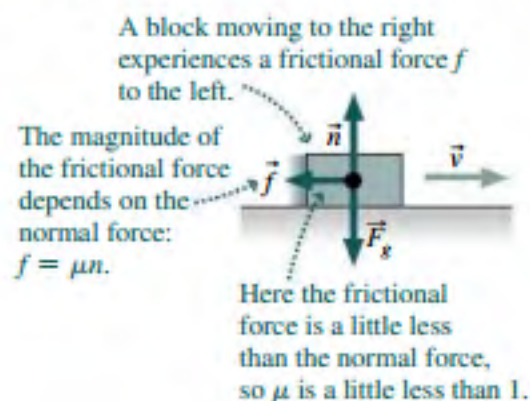
$$\vec{F} = m\vec{a} \rightarrow \vec{n} + \vec{F}_g = m\vec{a} \rightarrow \begin{cases} n_x + F_{gx} = ma_x \\ n_y + F_{gy} = ma_y \end{cases} \rightarrow \begin{cases} mg \sin \theta = ma_x \\ n - mg \cos \theta = 0 \end{cases}$$

Key Concepts and Equations

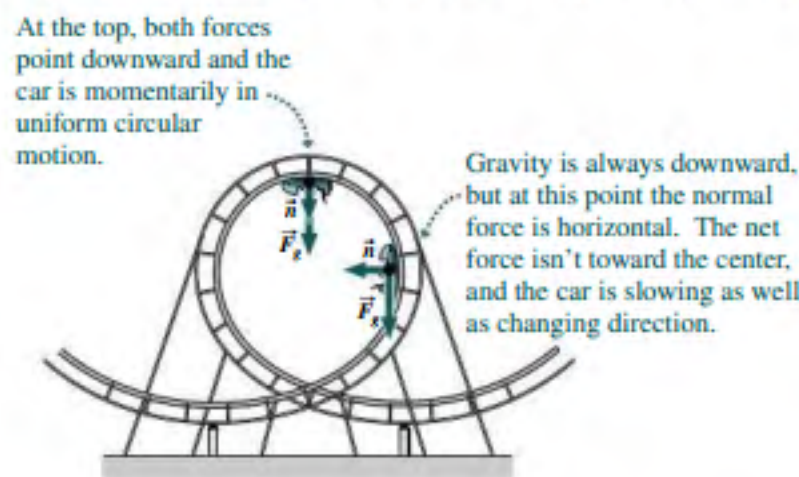
Newton's second law, $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = m\vec{a}$, is the key equation in this chapter. It's crucial to remember that it's a *vector* equation, representing a pair of scalar equations for its two components in two dimensions.

Applications

When an object is in uniform circular motion, the net force is toward the center of the circle and has magnitude mv^2/r . If the speed of the circular motion is changing, then the net force has an additional component tangent to the circle.



Friction acts between surfaces to oppose their relative motion, and its strength depends on the normal force $\vec{n}$ between the surfaces. When the surfaces aren't in relative motion, the force is **static friction**, given by $f_s \leq \mu_s n$. For surfaces in relative motion, the force is **kinetic friction**, given by $f_k = \mu_k n$. Here μ_s and μ_k are the **coefficients of static and kinetic friction**, respectively, where $\mu_k < \mu_s$.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!

BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems



Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>LO 5.1 Use a strategic approach to solve problems involving Newton's second law in two dimensions.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 5.8, 5.10; Exercises 5.11, 5.12, 5.13, 5.14, 5.15, 5.16; Problems 5.38, 5.39, 5.40, 5.41, 5.42, 5.44, 5.46, 5.75</i></p> <p>LO 5.2 Solve Newton's law problems involving two connected objects.
<i>Exercises 5.17, 5.18, 5.19; Problems 5.51, 5.76</i></p> <p>LO 5.3 Solve problems involving circular motion with one or more forces.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 5.2, 5.4, 5.5, 5.6, 5.9; Exercises 5.20, 5.21, 5.22, 5.23, 5.24, 5.25; Problems 5.43, 5.45, 5.47, 5.48, 5.49, 5.54, 5.62, 5.63, 5.64, 5.65, 5.66, 5.67, 5.71</i></p> | <p>LO 5.4 Describe the difference between static and kinetic friction.</p> <p>LO 5.5 Incorporate the frictional force into problems involving other forces.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 5.1, 5.3, 5.7, 5.9; Exercises 5.26, 5.27, 5.28, 5.29; Problems 5.50, 5.51, 5.52, 5.53, 5.54, 5.55, 5.56, 5.57, 5.58, 5.59, 5.60, 5.61, 5.63, 5.66, 5.67, 5.68, 5.70, 5.72, 5.74</i></p> <p>LO 5.6 Describe drag forces.
<i>Problem 5.73</i></p> |
|--|--|

For Thought and Discussion

1. The force of static friction acts only between surfaces at rest. Yet that force is essential in walking and in accelerating or braking a car. Explain.
2. A jet plane flies at constant speed in a vertical circular loop. At what point in the loop does the seat exert the greatest force on the pilot? The least force?
3. In cross-country skiing, skis should easily glide forward but should remain at rest when the skier pushes back against the snow. What frictional properties should the ski wax have to achieve this goal?
4. Why do airplanes bank when turning?
5. Why would a small, light revolver recoil more than a heavy rifle while firing the same bullet?
6. Is it possible for a body to be at rest when several forces are acting on it? Explain.
7. Why is it necessary to put a caution board on a newly waxed floor?
8. A fishing line has a 9-kg breaking strength. Is it possible to break the line while reeling in a 7-kg fish? Explain.
9. You're on a plane undergoing a banked turn, so steep that out the window you see the ground below. Yet your pretzels stay put on the seatback tray rather than sliding downward. Why?
10. A backcountry skier weighing 700 N skis down a steep slope, unknowingly crossing a snow bridge that spans a deep, hidden crevasse. If the bridge can support 580 N—meaning that's the maximum normal force it can sustain without collapsing—is there any chance the mountaineer can cross safely? Explain.

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 5.1 Using Newton's Second Law

11. Two forces, both in the x - y plane, act on a 3.25-kg mass that accelerates at 5.48 m/s^2 in a direction 38.0° counterclockwise from the x -axis. One force has magnitude 8.63 N and points in the $+x$ -direction. Find the other force.
12. Two forces act on a 3.1-kg mass that undergoes acceleration $\vec{a} = 0.95\hat{i} - 0.32\hat{j} \text{ m/s}^2$. If one force is $-0.80\hat{i} - 2.1\hat{j} \text{ N}$, what's the other?
13. At what angle should you tilt an air table (on Earth) to simulate free fall at the surface of Mars, where $g = 3.71 \text{ m/s}^2$?
14. A skier starts from rest at the top of a 24° slope 1.5 km long. Neglecting friction, how long does it take to reach the bottom?
15. **BIO** Studies of gymnasts show that their high rate of injuries to the Achilles tendon is due to tensions in the tendon that typically reach 10 times body weight. That force is provided by a pair of muscles,



FIGURE 5.30 Exercise 5.15

each exerting a force at 25° to the vertical, with their horizontal components opposite. For a 55-kg gymnast, find the force in each of these muscles.

16. Find the minimum slope angle for which the skier in Question 12 can safely traverse the snow bridge.

Section 5.2 Multiple Objects

17. Your 14-kg baby sister pulls on the bottom of the tablecloth with all her weight. On the table, 80 cm from the edge, is a 5.3-kg birthday cake. (a) What's the cake's acceleration? (b) From the time your sister starts pulling, how long do you have to intervene before the cake goes over the edge? Neglect friction.
18. Suppose the angles shown in Fig. 5.31 are 52° and 25° . If the left-hand mass is 2.5 kg, what should the right-hand mass be so that it accelerates (a) downslope at 0.64 m/s^2 and (b) upslope at 0.76 m/s^2 ?



FIGURE 5.31 Exercise 5.18

19. Two unfortunate climbers, roped together, are sliding freely down an icy mountainside. The upper climber (mass 80 kg) is on a slope at 16° to the horizontal, but the lower climber (mass 65 kg) has gone over the edge to a steeper slope at 32° . (a) Assuming frictionless ice and a massless rope, what's the acceleration of the pair? (b) The upper climber manages to stop the slide with an ice ax. After the climbers have come to a complete stop, what force must the ax exert against the ice?

Section 5.3 Circular Motion

20. Suppose the Moon were held in its orbit not by gravity but by tension in a massless cable. Estimate the magnitude of the cable tension. (*Hint:* See Appendix E.)
21. Show that the force needed to keep a mass m in a circular path of radius r with period T is $4\pi^2 mr/T^2$.
22. A 980-g rock is whirled at the end of a 1.80-m-long string in a horizontal circle. (a) If the breaking strength of the string is 150 N, what's the minimum angle the string can make with the horizontal? (b) At this minimum angle, what's the rock's speed?
23. You're investigating a subway accident in which a train derailed while rounding an unbanked curve of radius 150 m, and you're asked to determine whether the train exceeded the 50-km/h speed limit for this curve. You interview a passenger who had been standing and holding a strap; she noticed that an unused strap was hanging at about a 15° angle to the vertical just before the accident. What do you conclude?
24. A tetherball on a 1.55-m rope is struck so that it goes into circular motion in a horizontal plane, with the rope making a 12.0° angle to the horizontal. What's the ball's speed?
25. An airplane goes into a turn 4.0 km in radius. If the banking angle required is 22° from the horizontal, what's the plane's speed?

Section 5.4 Friction

26. Movers slide a 79-kg file cabinet along a floor where the coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.85. What's the frictional force on the cabinet?

27. A hockey puck is given an initial speed of 11 m/s. If it comes to rest in 60 m, what's the coefficient of kinetic friction?
28. Starting from rest, a skier slides 100 m down a 28° slope. How much longer does the run take if the coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.17 instead of 0?
29. A curve on a flat road has curvature radius 115 m, and a caution sign urges drivers to slow to 60 km/h before negotiating the curve. Is that speed sufficiently slow if the road is covered with snow, reducing the frictional coefficient to 0.20?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

30. **Example 5.4:** A 63.2-kg climber finds herself dangling over the edge of a cliff (see Fig. 5.7). Fortunately, she's connected by a rope of negligible mass to a 1220-kg rock located 48.6 m from the edge of the cliff. Unfortunately, the ice is frictionless, so the climber accelerates downward. What's her acceleration, and how much time does she have before the rock goes over the edge?
31. **Example 5.4:** A 63.2-kg climber finds herself dangling over the edge of a cliff (see Fig. 5.7). Fortunately, she's connected by a rope of negligible mass to a rock located 48.6 m from the edge of the cliff, and help is on the way. Unfortunately, it will be 36.5 s before help arrives, and the ice is frictionless. How massive must the rock be if she's to be saved?
32. **Example 5.4:** In an experimental setup like that shown in Fig. 5.39 (with Problem 76), the masses are $m_1 = 14.9$ g and $m_2 = 326$ g and the distance between m_2 and the end of the air track is 67.2 cm. Mass m_1 is initially 1 m above the floor, so it won't hit the floor before m_2 reaches the end of the track. If both masses are initially at rest, how long will it take for m_2 to reach the end of the track?
33. **Example 5.4:** Using an experimental setup like that shown in Fig. 5.39 (Problem 76), you want to simulate the acceleration of gravity on Jupiter's moon Callisto. If $m_2 = 326$ g, what should m_1 be so that m_1 accelerates downward at the same rate as if it were dropped just above the surface of Callisto? You'll need to consult Appendix E.
34. **Example 5.7:** The "Full Throttle" roller coaster in California includes a loop-the-loop whose radius is 19.5 m at the top. What's the minimum speed for a roller-coaster car at the top of the loop if it's to stay on the track?
35. **Example 5.7:** A roller-coaster car is going at 17.7 m/s as it passes through the top of the loop-the-loop section of the "Full Throttle" roller coaster, where the curvature radius is 19.5 m. What are the magnitude and direction normal force that the car's seat exerts on a 72.1-kg passenger at the top of the loop?
36. **Example 5.7:** You whirl a bucket of water around in a vertical circle of radius 1.22 m. What minimum speed at the top of the circle will keep the water in the bucket?

37. **Example 5.7:** The bucket in the preceding problem can tolerate a maximum force of 65 N from water in the bucket; beyond that, the bucket will break. You fill the bucket with 3.96 kg of water and whirl it around in a vertical circle where the speed of the bucket at the top of the circle is 6.17 m/s. Does the bucket survive?

Problems

38. Repeat Example 5.1, this time using a horizontal/vertical coordinate system.
39. A block is launched with initial speed of 2.5 m/s up a 30° frictionless ramp. How far up the ramp does it slide?
40. **BIO** In the process of mitosis (cell division), two motor proteins pull on a spindle pole, each with a 6.9-pN force. The two force vectors make a 70° angle. What's the magnitude of the force the two motor proteins exert on the spindle pole?
41. A 14.6-kg monkey hangs from the middle of a massless rope, each half of which makes an 11.0° angle with the horizontal. What's the rope tension? Compare with the monkey's weight.
42. A camper hangs a 26-kg pack between two trees using separate ropes of different lengths, as shown in Fig. 5.32. Find the tension in each rope.

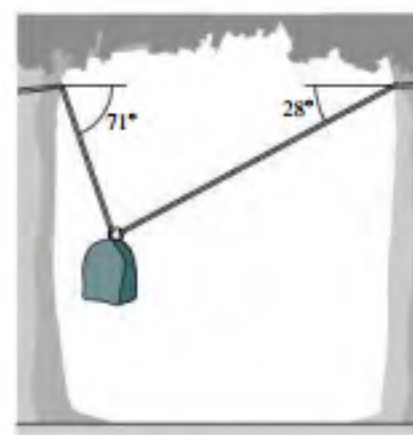


FIGURE 5.32 Problem 42

43. A mass m_1 undergoes circular motion of radius R on a horizontal frictionless table, connected by a massless string through a hole in the table to a second mass m_2 (Fig. 5.33). If m_2 is stationary, find expressions for (a) the string tension and (b) the period of the circular motion.

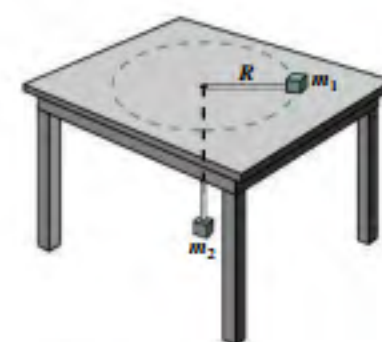


FIGURE 5.33 Problem 43

44. **BIO** Patients with severe leg breaks are often placed in traction, with an external force countering muscles that would pull too hard on the broken bones. In the arrangement shown in Fig. 5.34, the mass m is 4.6 kg, and the pulleys can be considered massless and frictionless. Find the horizontal traction force applied to the leg.

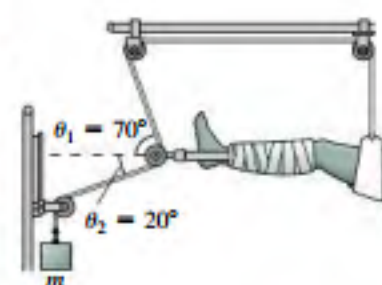


FIGURE 5.34 Problem 44

45. Riders on the "Great American Revolution" loop-the-loop roller coaster of Example 5.7 wear seatbelts as the roller coaster negotiates its 6.7-m-radius loop at 9.5 m/s. At the top of the loop, what are the magnitude and direction of the force exerted on a 55-kg rider (a) by the roller-coaster seat and (b) by the seatbelt? (c) What would happen if the rider unbuckled at this point?
46. A 46-kg skater rounds a 5.0-m-radius turn at 6.1 m/s. (a) What are the horizontal and vertical components of the force the ice exerts on her skate blades? (b) At what angle can she lean without falling over?

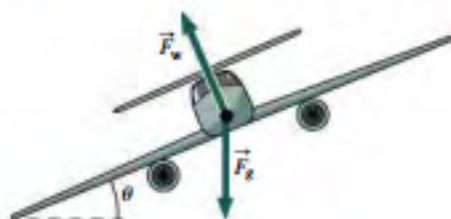


FIGURE 5.35 Problem 47

47. When a plane turns, it banks as shown in Fig. 5.35 to give the wings' lifting force $\vec{F}_w$ a horizontal component that turns the plane. If a plane is flying level at 960 km/h and the banking angle θ is not to exceed 35° , what's the minimum curvature radius for the turn?
48. You whirl a bucket of water in a vertical circle of radius 60 cm. What's the minimum speed that will keep the water from falling out?
49. A child sleds down a 6.3° slope at constant speed. What's the frictional coefficient between slope and sled?
50. The handle of a 26-kg lawnmower makes a 37° angle with the horizontal. If the coefficient of friction between lawnmower and ground is 0.68, what magnitude of force, applied in the direction of the handle, is required to push the mower at constant velocity? Compare with the mower's weight.
51. Repeat Example 5.4, now assuming that the coefficient of kinetic friction between rock and ice is 0.049.
52. A bat crashes into the vertical front of an accelerating subway train. If the frictional coefficient between bat and train is 0.84, what's the minimum acceleration of the train that will allow the bat to remain in place?
53. The coefficient of static friction between steel train wheels and steel rails is 0.58. The engineer of a train moving at 140 km/h spots a stalled car on the tracks 150 m ahead. If he applies the brakes so the wheels don't slip, will the train stop in time?
54. A bug crawls outward from the center of a CD spinning at 200 revolutions per minute. The coefficient of static friction between the bug's sticky feet and the disc surface is 1.3. How far does the bug get from the center before slipping?
55. A 310-g paperback book rests on a 1.2-kg textbook. A force is applied to the textbook, and the two books accelerate together from rest to 96 cm/s in 0.42 s. The textbook is then brought to a stop in 0.33 s, during which time the paperback slides off. Within what range does the coefficient of static friction between the two books lie?
56. Children sled down a 41-m-long hill inclined at 25° . At the bottom, the slope levels out. If the coefficient of friction is 0.12, how far do the children slide on the level ground?
57. In a typical front-wheel-drive car, 70% of the car's weight rides on the front wheels. If the coefficient of friction between tires and road is 0.61, what's the car's maximum acceleration?
58. A police officer investigating an accident estimates that a moving car hit a stationary car at 24 km/h. Before the collision, the car left 47-m-long skid marks as it braked. The officer determines that the coefficient of kinetic friction was 0.71. What was the initial speed of the moving car?
59. A slide inclined at 35° takes bathers into a swimming pool. With water sprayed onto the slide to make it essentially frictionless, a bather spends only one-third as much time on the slide as when it's dry. What's the coefficient of friction on the dry slide?

60. You try to move a heavy trunk, pushing down and forward at an angle of 50° below the horizontal. Show that, no matter how hard you push, it's impossible to budge the trunk if the coefficient of static friction exceeds 0.84.
61. A block is shoved up a 22° slope with an initial speed of 1.4 m/s. The coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.70. (a) How far up the slope will the block get? (b) Once stopped, will it slide back down?
62. A ball at the end of a string of length L is being whirled around in a horizontal circle. The string makes an angle $\pi/6$ with the vertical. Find an expression for the ball's speed.
63. You're in traffic court, arguing against a speeding citation. You entered a 230-m-radius banked turn designed for 76 km/h, which was also the posted speed limit. The road was icy, yet you stayed in your lane, so you argue that you must have been going at the design speed. But police measurements show there was a frictional coefficient $\mu = 0.20$ between tires and road. Is it possible you were speeding? If so by how much?

64. A space station is in the shape of a hollow ring, 450 m in diameter (Fig. 5.36). At how many revolutions per minute should it rotate in order to simulate Earth's gravity—that is, so the normal force on an astronaut at the outer edge would equal the astronaut's weight on Earth?

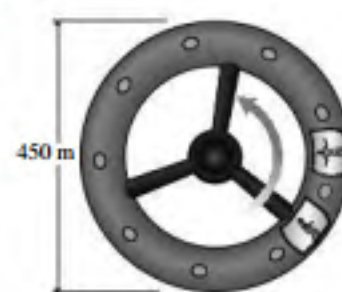


FIGURE 5.36 Problem 64

65. In a loop-the-loop roller coaster, show that a car moving too slowly would leave the track at an angle ϕ given by $\cos \phi = v^2/rg$, where ϕ is the angle made by a vertical line through the center of the circular track and a line from the center to the point where the car leaves the track.
66. Find an expression for the minimum frictional coefficient needed to keep a car with speed v on a banked turn of radius R designed for speed v_0 .
67. An astronaut is training in an earthbound centrifuge that consists of a small chamber whirled horizontally at the end of a 5.1-m-long shaft. The astronaut places a notebook on the vertical wall of the chamber and it stays in place. If the coefficient of static friction is 0.72, what's the minimum rate, expressed in revolutions per minute, at which the centrifuge must be revolving?
68. Disc brakes are becoming increasingly popular on bicycles of all types, in part because the brake disc can tolerate large forces that would damage the wheel rim in a rim-brake system. In a typical disc brake, the force of the brake pads against the brake disc is 3.5 kN. (a) If the coefficient of friction is 0.51, what's the frictional force on the disc? (b) Compare with the frictional force associated with rim brakes, where the force of the brakes against the rim is 870 N and the frictional coefficient is 0.39. (This isn't the whole story, though, as you'll learn when you study torque in Chapter 10.)
69. Driving in thick fog on a horizontal road, you spot a tractor-trailer truck jackknifed across the road. To avert a collision, you could brake to a stop or swerve in a circular arc, as suggested in Fig. 5.37. Which option offers the greater margin of safety? Assume that there is the same coefficient of static friction in both cases, and that you maintain constant speed if you swerve.

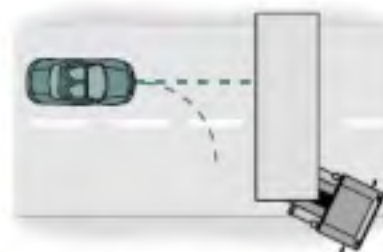


FIGURE 5.37 Problem 69

70. **CH** A block is projected up an incline at angle θ . It returns to its initial position with half its initial speed. Show that the coefficient of kinetic friction is $\mu_k = \frac{2}{3} \tan \theta$.
71. A 2.1-kg mass is connected to a spring with spring constant $k = 150 \text{ N/m}$ and unstretched length 18 cm. The two are mounted on a frictionless air table, with the free end of the spring attached to a frictionless pivot. The mass is set into circular motion at 1.4 m/s. Find the radius of its path.
72. **CH** A car moving at 90 km/h negotiates a 110-m-radius banked turn designed for 60 km/h. What's the minimum coefficient of friction needed if the car is to stay on the road?
73. **CH** Moving through a liquid, an object of mass m experiences a resistive drag force proportional to its velocity, $F_{\text{drag}} = -bv$, where b is a constant. (a) Find an expression for the object's speed as a function of time, when it starts from rest and falls vertically through the liquid. (b) Show that it reaches a terminal velocity mg/b .
74. **CH** A block is launched with speed v_0 up a slope making an angle θ with the horizontal; the coefficient of kinetic friction is μ_k . (a) Find an expression for the distance d the block travels along the slope. (b) Use calculus to determine the angle that minimizes d .
75. A florist asks you to make a window display with two hanging pots as shown in Fig. 5.38. The florist is adamant that the strings be as invisible as possible, so you decide to use fishing line but want to use the thinnest line you can. Will fishing line that can withstand 100 N of tension work?

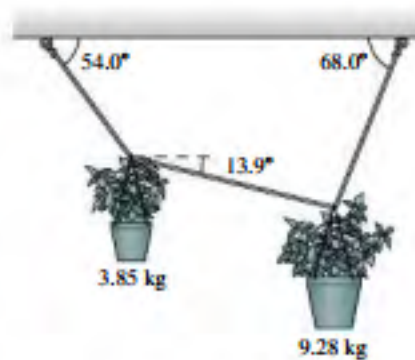


FIGURE 5.38 Problem 75

76. **DATA** Figure 5.39 shows an apparatus used to verify Newton's second law. A "pulling mass" m_1 hangs vertically from a string of negligible mass that passes over a pulley, also of negligible mass and with nearly frictionless bearings. The other end of the string is attached to a glider of mass m_2 riding on an essentially frictionless, horizontal air track. Both m_1 and m_2 may be varied by placing additional masses on the pulling mass and glider. The experiment consists of starting the glider from rest and letting the pulling mass accelerate it down the track. Three photogates are used to time the glider over two distance intervals, and an experimental value for its acceleration is determined from these data, using constant-acceleration equations from Chapter 2. The table in the next column lists the measured acceleration for a number of mass combinations. (a) Determine a quantity that, when plotted on the horizontal axis of a graph, should result in a straight line of slope g when acceleration is plotted on the vertical axis. (b) Make your plot, fit a line to the plotted data, and report the experimentally determined value of g .

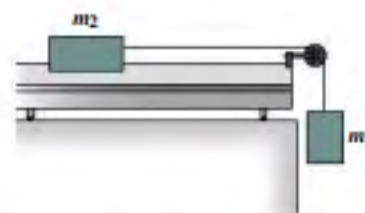


FIGURE 5.39 Problem 32, 33, and 76

m_1 (g)	m_2 (g)	a (m/s ²)
10.0	170	0.521
10.0	270	0.376

m_1 (g)	m_2 (g)	a (m/s ²)
10.0	370	0.274
20.0	170	1.06
20.0	270	0.652
20.0	370	0.534

Passage Problems

A *spiral* is an ice-skating position in which the skater glides on one foot with the other foot held above hip level. It's a required element in women's singles figure-skating competition and is related to the arabesque performed in ballet. Figure 5.40 shows Canadian skater Kaetlyn Osmond executing a spiral during her medal-winning performance at the 2018 Winter Olympics in Gangneung, South Korea.



FIGURE 5.40 Passage Problems 77–80

77. From the photo, you can conclude that the skater is
- executing a turn to her left.
 - executing a turn to her right.
 - moving in a straight line out of the page.
78. The net force on the skater
- points to her left.
 - points to her right.
 - is zero.
79. If the skater were to execute the same maneuver but at higher speed, the tilt evident in the photo would be
- less.
 - greater.
 - unchanged.
80. The tilt angle θ that the skater's body makes with the vertical is given approximately by $\theta = \tan^{-1}(0.5)$. From this you can conclude that the skater's centripetal acceleration has approximate magnitude
- 0.
 - 0.5 m/s^2 .
 - 5 m/s^2 .
 - can't be determined without knowing the skater's speed.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The airplane tips, or *banks*, so there's a horizontal component of the aerodynamic force on the wings. That component provides the mv^2/r force that keeps the plane in its circular path. The vertical component of the aerodynamic force is what balances the gravitational force, keeping the plane aloft.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 5.1 (c) Equal—but only because of the 45° slope. At larger angles, the tension would be greater than the weight; at smaller angles, less.
- 5.2 (a) The left hand in Fig. 5.9 and the hook in this figure play exactly the same role, balancing the 1-N tension force in the rope.
- 5.3 (c)
- 5.4 (c) Greater because the chain is pulling downward, making the normal force greater than the log's weight.

Energy, Work, and Power

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Newton's second law of motion (Section 4.2)
- The forces due to gravity and springs (Sections 4.4 and 4.6)
- The calculus operation of integration (we'll introduce this if you haven't yet seen it in your calculus course)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 6.1 Explain the terms *energy* and *work* in the context of physics.
- LO 6.2 Find the work done by a force that doesn't vary with position.
- LO 6.3 Calculate the dot product of two vectors.
- LO 6.4 Find the work done by a force that varies with position.
- LO 6.5 Define *kinetic energy* and find its value given an object's mass and speed.
- LO 6.6 State the work–kinetic energy theorem.
- LO 6.7 Distinguish energy from power.

Figure 6.1a shows a skier starting from rest at the top of a uniform slope. What's the skier's speed at the bottom? You can solve this problem by applying Newton's second law to find the skier's constant acceleration and then the speed. But what about the skier in Fig. 6.1b? Here the slope is continuously changing and so is the acceleration. Constant-acceleration equations don't apply, so solving for the details of the skier's motion would be difficult.

There are many cases where motion involves changing forces and accelerations. In this chapter, we introduce the important physical concepts of **work** and **energy**. These powerful concepts enable us to “shortcut” the detailed application of Newton's law to analyze these more complex situations. But these new concepts have significance far beyond their practical applications in problem solving. Energy, in particular, is a fundamental aspect of the universe—a “substance” akin to, and every bit as real as, matter itself. In fact, as you'll see when you explore relativity in Chapter 33, energy and matter are really both aspects of a single “substance,” linked by Einstein's equation $E = mc^2$.

6.1 Energy

LO 6.1 Explain the terms *energy* and *work* in the context of physics.

“Energy” is a word you hear every day. You buy energy when you fill your car's gas tank. You use energy to heat your home and cook your food. You experience the awesome energy of a hurricane, a tornado, or an explosion. You sense the energy inherent in a truck barreling down the highway, or the energy generated by an airplane's engines as it surges down the runway. A power line crosses the countryside and, even though you can't see anything but the wires, you know that the line is carrying energy to a distant city. Your cell phone dies, its battery discharged, and you know that it needs to be replenished with energy. Your own body produces energy, which you sense as you climb a



Climbing a mountain, these cyclists do work against gravity. Does that work depend on the route chosen?

mountain, cycle, walk, or even think. You may have helped insulate or weatherize a home to reduce its energy loss. And the colossal rate at which humankind consumes energy is much on our minds as we become increasingly aware of the impact energy consumption has on our planet.

Actually, words like “consume,” “generate,” “produce,” and “loss,” although widely used in the context of energy, are misleading. That’s because energy is *conserved*—meaning that it can change forms but cannot be created or destroyed. Much of your study of energy will involve ways to transform energy from one form to another or transfer it from place to place—all the while conserving the total amount of energy. Conservation of energy is a profound idea in physics, one whose richness we’ll explore throughout the rest of this book.

Here in Part 1, we’ll focus on *mechanical energy*, associated with macroscopic objects such as cars, planets, baseballs, people, and springs. This chapter introduces *kinetic energy*, the energy of motion, as applied to such macroscopic objects. You’ll see how the act of doing *work* is one way to transfer energy to an object. Chapter 7 will add the idea of *potential energy* and will develop a statement of energy conservation as it applies to mechanical energy. We’ll also need to consider so-called *internal energy*, associated with random motions and configuration changes at the molecular level. In Part 3 (thermodynamics), we’ll explore internal energy and show how it’s incorporated into a broader statement of energy conservation. In Part 3, you’ll also see how *heat* describes another way of transferring energy. In Part 4, on electricity and magnetism, we’ll introduce forms of *electromagnetic energy* and associated energy-transfer processes. In Part 6, you’ll see that energy concepts survive even into the realm of quantum physics—no mean feat given that many other ideas from classical physics become meaningless in the quantum realm.

Energy and Systems

What’s got energy? A moving car does. So does a whole highway full of cars. A warm house has energy. So does a stretched spring. A hurricane has energy, and so does our whole planet. When we’re accounting for energy and studying energy flows and transformations, we need to have in mind a **system** whose energy we’re interested in. Typically the system contains one or more objects, and it’s defined by a closed boundary. Everything within the boundary is part of the system, whereas everything outside comprises the environment that surrounds the system. Like coordinate axes, a system is something you define for your convenience. Once you’ve defined a system, then you can talk about the system’s energy and what forms it takes; about energy transformations within the system; and about any transfers of energy into or out of the system. Figure 6.2 shows conceptually how to think about energy in the context of a system, while the Application shows how the idea behind Fig. 6.2 is applied in the important case of climate modeling.

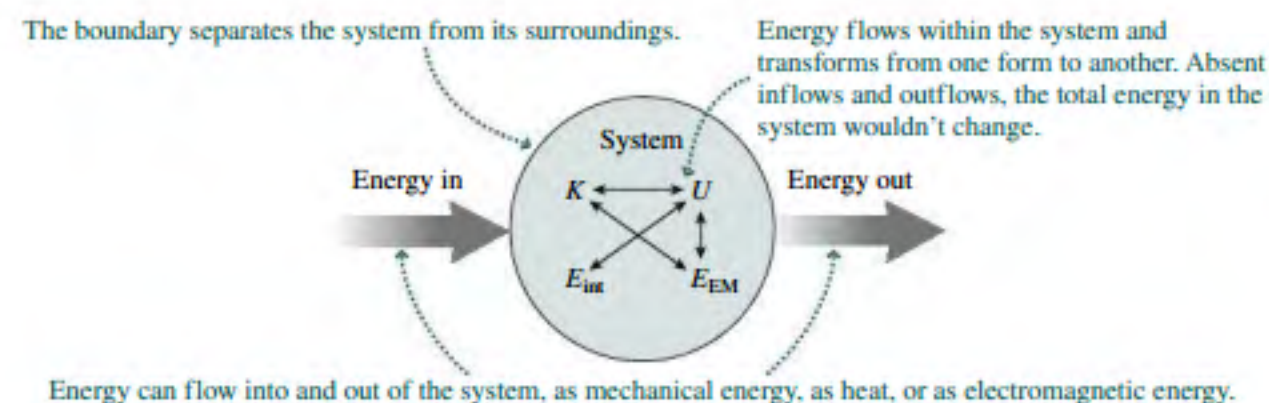


FIGURE 6.2 Diagram showing energy flows both within a system and across its boundaries, as well as transformations between different types of energy within the system. We show four common forms of energy: kinetic energy (K) and potential energy (U), subjects of this chapter and the next; internal or thermal energy (E_{int}), a subject of Part 3; and electromagnetic energy, covered in Part 4.



FIGURE 6.1 Two skiers.

APPLICATION

Climate Modeling

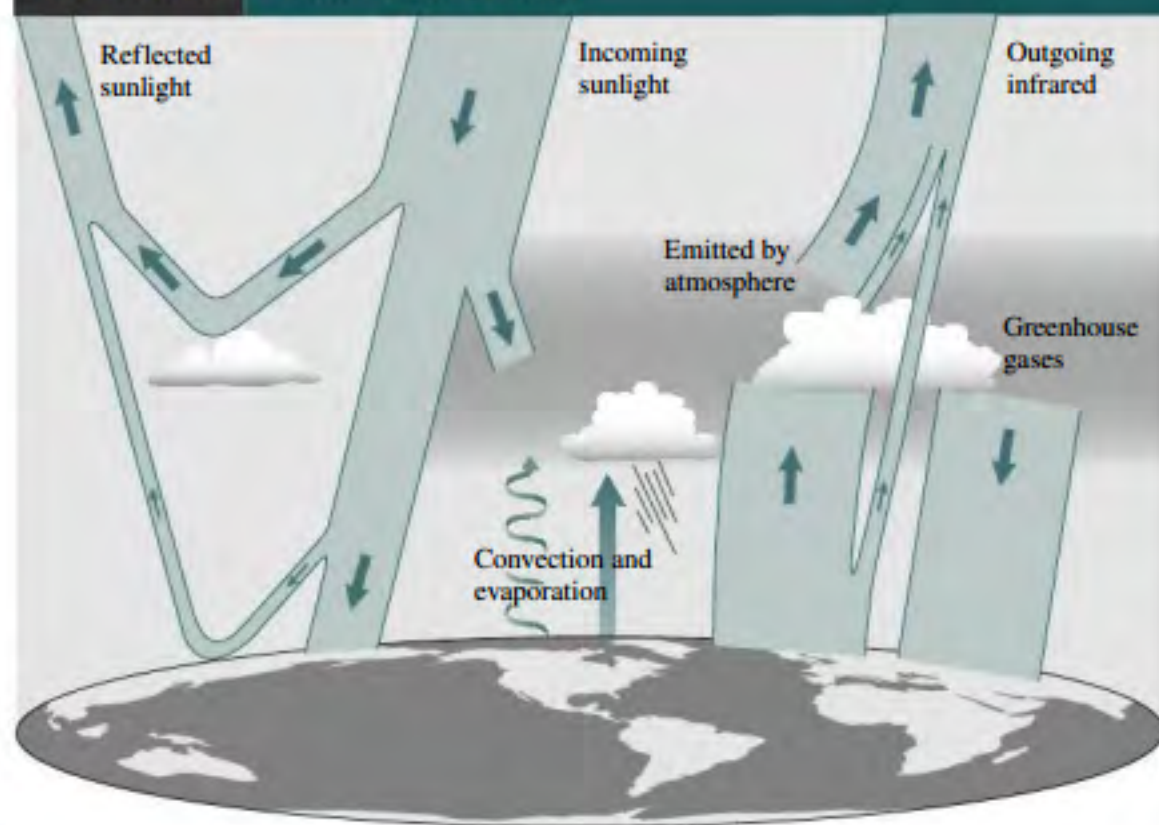


Figure 6.2 isn't just a pedagogical aid to understanding energy and systems concepts; it's a framework for realistic models used to characterize energy-related systems ranging from biological organisms to nuclear power plants to Earth's climate. The figure here shows the energy–systems concept as climate scientists use it. The system comprises Earth and its atmosphere. Many of the arrows represent energy flows and transformations between Earth and atmosphere—that is, within the system. These involve electromagnetic energy emitted in the form of infrared radiation, as well as energy associated with warm air and water vapor rising into the atmosphere. The three arrows at the top show energy exchanges with the planet's surroundings—that is, energy crossing the system boundary. As you'll see in Chapter 16, the incoming and outgoing flows must balance for climate to remain stable.

In this chapter, we'll often choose our system to coincide with a single object, and in that case we'll use the term “object” interchangeably with “system.” But in Chapter 7, we'll need to consider systems comprising at least two interacting objects, and when we get to Chapter 9, we'll be dealing with systems of many particles. In these more complex situations we'll have to decide carefully what's in our system and what's outside it, and we'll need to make more use of systems terminology.

6.2 Work

LO 6.2 Find the work done by a force that doesn't vary with position.

LO 6.3 Calculate the dot product of two vectors.

One way to transfer energy to a system is to act on the system with an external force—a force applied by an entity that isn't part of the system. In this case we say that the force does **work** on the system. Doing work is an inherently mechanical process, involving the concept of force that you're already familiar with from Newtonian mechanics.

Imagine carrying a box upstairs. You have to apply an upward force on the box as you climb the stairs. Define the box as your system, and the force you apply is an external force that does work on the system. Thus you transfer energy from your body to the box by doing mechanical work.

You've already got an intuitive sense of work and how it's quantified. Make that box heavier, or the stairs higher, and you do more work. Or try pushing a stalled car: The harder you push, or the farther you push, the more work you do. The precise definition of work reflects your intuition:

For an object moving in one dimension, the work W done on the object by constant applied force $\vec{F}$ is

$$W = F_x \Delta x \quad (6.1)$$

where F_x is the component of the force in the direction of the object's motion and Δx is the object's displacement.

The force $\vec{F}$ need not be the net force. If you're interested, for example, in how much work *you* must do to drag a heavy box across the floor, then $\vec{F}$ is the force *you apply* and W is the work *you do*.

Equation 6.1 shows that the SI unit of work is the newton-meter ($\text{N}\cdot\text{m}$). One newton-meter is given the name **joule**, in honor of the 19th-century British physicist and brewer James Joule.

Our definition of work involves an object's displacement. What that means is clear in the case of a rigid object like a block or a ball. But what about a spring, which can stretch or compress in response to an applied force? Or your own body, whose configuration alters as you lift, run, jump, dance, or swim? Or a complex system of many parts, with a force applied to just one part? In all these cases our definition of work still applies, provided we interpret "displacement" to mean the displacement of the point at which the force is applied. For a system consisting of a rigid object, that's the same as the object's displacement. For a system consisting of a flexible object or many independent particles, it's not necessarily the same as the system's overall displacement.

Figure 6.3 considers several cases of work done on rigid objects. According to Equation 6.1, the person pushing the car in Fig. 6.3a does work equal to the force he applies times the distance the car moves. But the person pulling her luggage in Fig. 6.3b does work equal to only the horizontal component of the force she applies times the distance the luggage moves. Furthermore, by our definition, the waiter of Fig. 6.3c does no work on the tray as he carries it at constant velocity. Why not? Because the force on the tray is vertical while the tray's displacement is horizontal; there's no component of force in the direction of the tray's motion.

Work can be positive or negative (Fig. 6.4). When a force acts in the same general direction as the motion, it does positive work. A force acting at 90° to the motion does no work. And when a force acts to oppose motion, it does negative work.

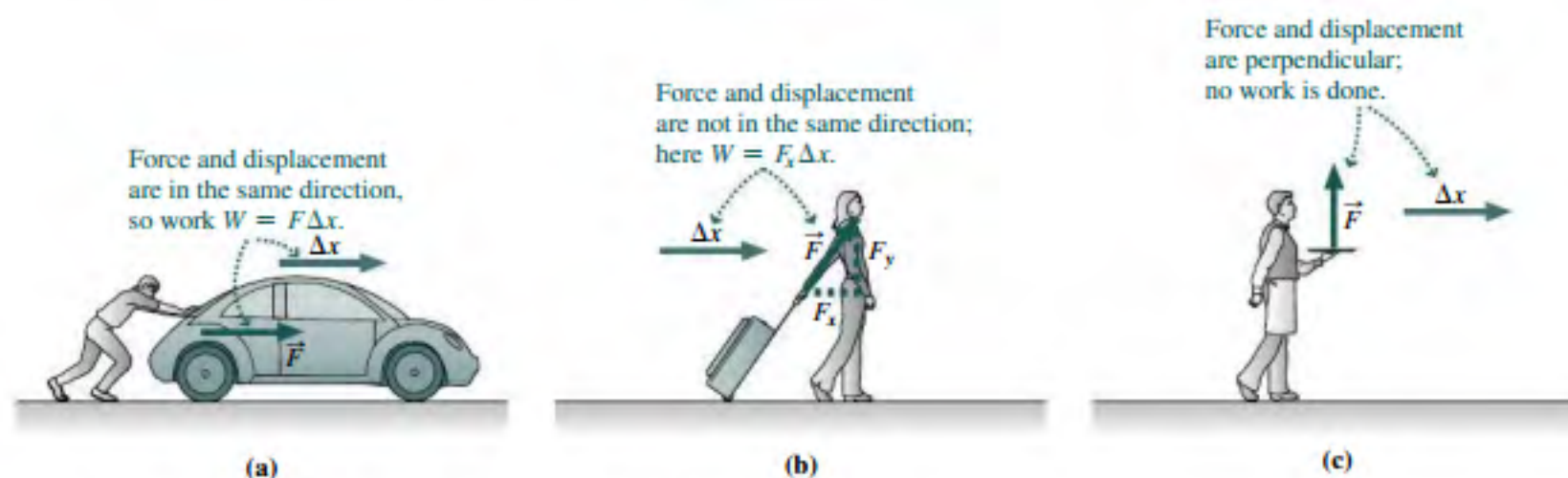


FIGURE 6.3 Work depends on the orientation of force and displacement.

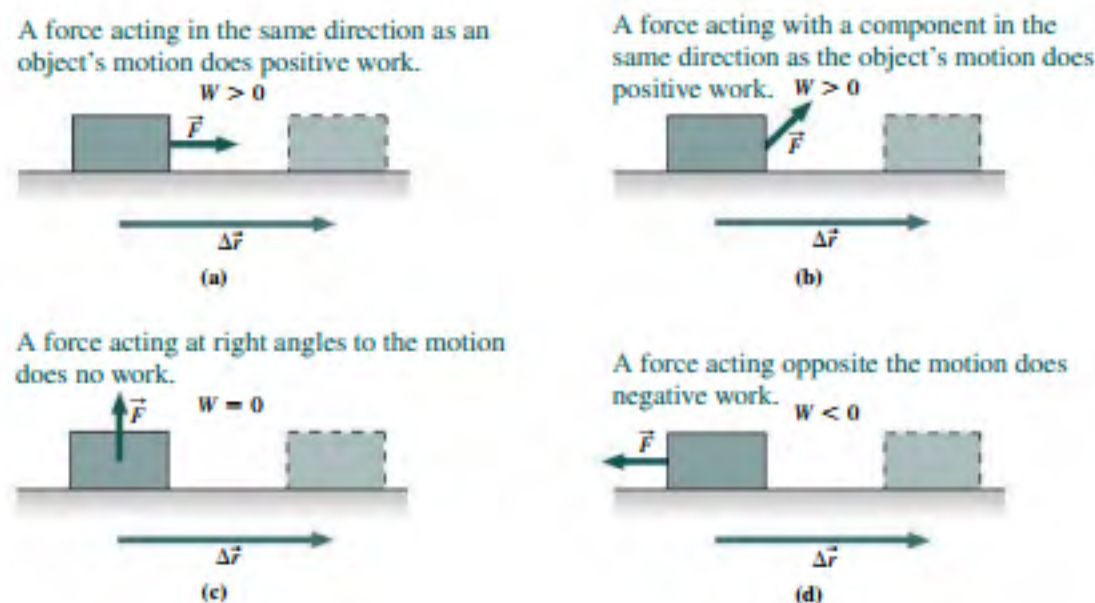


FIGURE 6.4 The sign of the work depends on the relative directions of force and motion. We use $\Delta\vec{r}$ here to indicate that the displacement can be any vector.

EXAMPLE 6.1 Calculating Work: Pushing a Car

The person in Fig. 6.3a pushes with a force of 650 N, moving the car a distance of 4.3 m. How much work does he do?

INTERPRET This problem is about work. We identify the car as the object *on* which the work is done and the person as the agent *doing* the work.

DEVELOP Figure 6.3a is our drawing. Equation 6.1, $W = F_x \Delta x$, is the relevant equation, so our plan is to apply that equation. The

force is in the same direction as the displacement, so 650 N is the component we need.

EVALUATE We apply Equation 6.1 to get

$$W = F_x \Delta x = (650 \text{ N})(4.3 \text{ m}) = 2.8 \text{ kJ}$$

ASSESS Make sense? The units work out, with newtons times meters giving joules—here expressed in kilojoules for convenience.

EXAMPLE 6.2 Calculating Work: Pulling Luggage

The airline passenger in Fig. 6.3b exerts a 60-N force on her luggage, pulling at 35° to the horizontal. How much work does she do in pulling the luggage 45 m on a level floor?

INTERPRET Again, this example is about work—here done *by* the passenger *on* the luggage.

DEVELOP Equation 6.1, $W = F_x \Delta x$, applies here, but because the displacement is horizontal while the force isn't, we need to find the horizontal force component. We've redrawn the force vector in Fig. 6.5 to determine F_x .

EVALUATE Applying Equation 6.1 to the x -component from Fig. 6.5, we get

$$W = F_x \Delta x = [(60 \text{ N})(\cos 35^\circ)](45 \text{ m}) = 2.2 \text{ kJ}$$

ASSESS The answer of 2.2 kJ is less than the product of 60 N and 45 m, and that makes sense because only the x -component of that 60-N force contributes to the work.

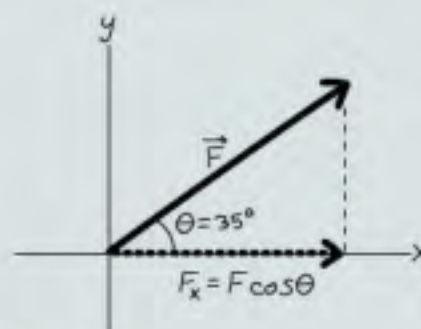


FIGURE 6.5 Our sketch for Example 6.2.

Work and the Scalar Product

Work is a *scalar* quantity; it's specified completely by a single number and has no direction. But Fig. 6.3 shows that work involves a relation between two *vectors*: the force $\vec{F}$ and the displacement, designated more generally by $\Delta\vec{r}$. If θ is the angle between these two vectors, then the component of the force along the direction of motion is $F \cos \theta$, and the work is

$$W = (F \cos \theta)(\Delta r) = F \Delta r \cos \theta \quad (6.2)$$

This equation is a generalization of our definition 6.1. If we choose the x -axis along $\Delta\vec{r}$, then $\Delta r = \Delta x$ and $F \cos \theta = F_x$, so we recover Equation 6.1.

Equation 6.2 shows that work is the product of the magnitudes of the vectors $\vec{F}$ and $\Delta\vec{r}$ and the cosine of the angle between them. This combination occurs so often that it's given a special name: the **scalar product** of two vectors.

The scalar product of any two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ is defined as

$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB \cos \theta \quad (6.3)$$

where A and B are the magnitudes of the vectors and θ is the angle between them.

The term *scalar product* should remind you that $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ is itself a *scalar*, even though it's formed from two vectors. A centered dot designates the scalar product; for this reason, it's also called the **dot product**. Figure 6.6 gives a geometric interpretation.

The scalar product is commutative: $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = \vec{B} \cdot \vec{A}$, and it's also distributive:

$\vec{A} \cdot (\vec{B} + \vec{C}) = \vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} + \vec{A} \cdot \vec{C}$. With vectors expressed in unit vector notation, Problem 52 shows how the distributive law gives a simple form for the scalar product. If $\vec{A} = A_x \hat{i} + A_y \hat{j} + A_z \hat{k}$ and $\vec{B} = B_x \hat{i} + B_y \hat{j} + B_z \hat{k}$, then

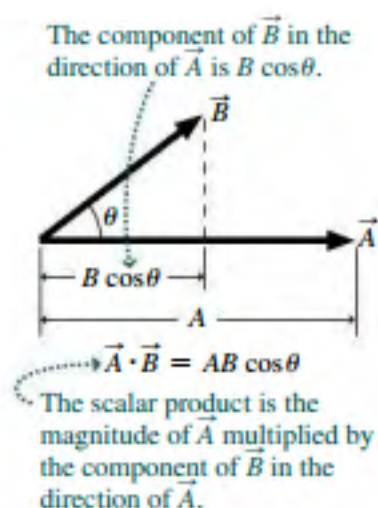


FIGURE 6.6 Geometric interpretation of the scalar product.

$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = A_x B_x + A_y B_y + A_z B_z \quad (6.4)$$

Comparing Equation 6.2 with Equation 6.3 shows that the work done by a constant force $\vec{F}$ moving an object through a straight-line displacement $\Delta\vec{r}$ can be expressed using the dot product:

W is the work done by a force that doesn't vary with position and that acts on an object as it moves in a straight line.

$\vec{F}$ is the force.

$\Delta\vec{r}$ is the displacement the object undergoes while the force $\vec{F}$ acts on it.

$$W = \vec{F} \cdot \Delta\vec{r} \quad (6.5)$$

The dot product means to multiply the magnitudes of the two vectors and the sine of the angle between them: $\vec{F} \cdot \Delta\vec{r} = F \Delta r \sin \theta$.

As the examples below show, either Equation 6.3 or Equation 6.4 can be used in evaluating the dot product in this expression for work.

EXAMPLE 6.3 Work and the Scalar Product: A Tugboat

A tugboat pushes a cruise ship with force $\vec{F} = 1.2\hat{i} + 2.3\hat{j}$ MN, moving the ship along a straight path with displacement $\Delta\vec{r} = 380\hat{i} + 460\hat{j}$ m. Find (a) the work done by the tugboat and (b) the angle between the force and displacement.

INTERPRET Part (a) is about calculating work given force and displacement in unit vector notation. Part (b) is less obvious, but knowing that work involves the angle between force and displacement provides a clue, suggesting that the answer to (a) may lead us to (b).

DEVELOP Figure 6.7 is a sketch of the two vectors, which will serve as a check on our final answer. For (a), we want to use Equation 6.5, $W = \vec{F} \cdot \Delta\vec{r}$, with the scalar product in unit vector notation given by Equation 6.4. That will give us the work W . We also have the vectors $\vec{F}$ and $\Delta\vec{r}$, so we can find their magnitudes. That suggests a strategy for (b): Given the work and the vector magnitudes, we can write Equation 6.3 with a single unknown, the angle θ that we're asked to find.

EVALUATE For (a), we use Equations 6.5 and 6.4, respectively, to write

$$\begin{aligned} W &= \vec{F} \cdot \Delta\vec{r} = F_x \Delta x + F_y \Delta y \\ &= (1.2 \text{ MN})(380 \text{ m}) + (2.3 \text{ MN})(460 \text{ m}) = 1510 \text{ MJ} \end{aligned}$$

The first equality is from Equation 6.5; the second gives the scalar product in unit vector form from Equation 6.4. Δx and Δy are the components of the displacement $\Delta\vec{r}$. Now that we have the work, we can get the angle. The magnitude of a vector comes from

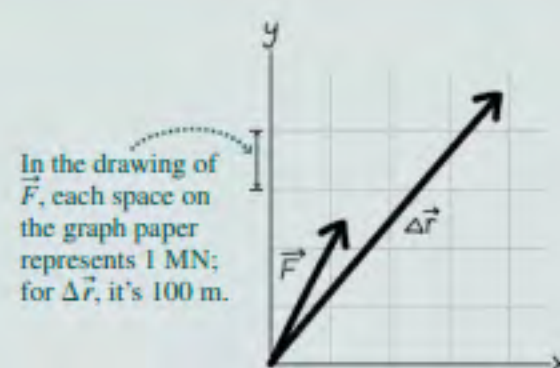


FIGURE 6.7 Our sketch of the vectors in Example 6.3.

the Pythagorean theorem, as expressed in Equation 3.1. So we have $F = \sqrt{F_x^2 + F_y^2} = \sqrt{(1.2 \text{ MN})^2 + (2.3 \text{ MN})^2} = 2.59 \text{ MN}$; a similar calculation gives $\Delta r = 597 \text{ m}$. Now we solve Equation 6.3 for θ :

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{W}{F \Delta r}\right) = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{1510 \text{ MJ}}{(2.59 \text{ MN})(597 \text{ m})}\right) = 12^\circ$$

ASSESS This small angle is consistent with our sketch in Fig. 6.7. And it makes good physical sense: A tugboat is most efficient when pushing in the direction the ship is supposed to go. Note how the units work out in that last calculation: MJ in the numerator and MN·m in the denominator. But 1 N·m is 1 J, so that's MJ in the denominator, too, giving the dimensionless cosine.

GOT IT?

6.1 Two objects are each displaced the same distance, one by a force F pushing in the direction of motion and the other by a force $2F$ pushing at 45° to the direction of motion. Which force does more work? (a) F ; (b) $2F$; (c) they do equal work

6.3 Forces That Vary

LO 6.4 Find the work done by a force that varies with position.

Often the force applied to an object varies with position. Important examples include electric and gravitational forces, which vary with the distance between interacting objects. The

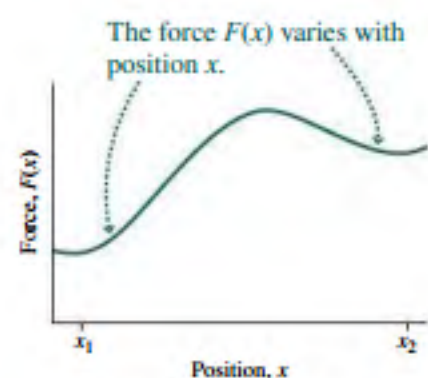


FIGURE 6.8 A varying force.

force of a spring that we encountered in Chapter 4 provides another example; as the spring stretches, the force increases.

Figure 6.8 is a plot of a force F that varies with position x . We want to find the work done as an object moves from x_1 to x_2 . We can't simply write $F(x_2 - x_1)$; since the force varies, there's no single value for F . What we can do, though, is divide the region into rectangles of width Δx , as shown in Fig. 6.9a. If we make Δx small enough, the force will be nearly constant over the width of each rectangle (Fig. 6.9b). Then the work ΔW done in moving the width Δx of one such rectangle is approximately $F(x) \Delta x$, where $F(x)$ is the force at the midpoint x of that rectangle. We write $F(x)$ to show explicitly that the force is a function of position. Note that the quantity $F(x) \Delta x$ is the area of the rectangle expressed in the appropriate units (N·m, or, equivalently, J).

Suppose there are N rectangles. Let x_i be the midpoint of the i th rectangle. Then the total work done in moving from x_1 to x_2 is given approximately by the sum of the individual amounts of work ΔW_i associated with each rectangle, or

$$W \approx \sum_{i=1}^N \Delta W_i = \sum_{i=1}^N F(x_i) \Delta x \quad (6.6)$$

How good is this approximation? That depends on how small we make the rectangles. Suppose we let them get arbitrarily small. Then the number of rectangles grows arbitrarily large. In the limit of infinitely many infinitesimally small rectangles, the approximation in Equation 6.6 becomes exact (Fig. 6.9c). Then we have

$$W = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \sum_i F(x_i) \Delta x \quad (6.7)$$

where the sum is over all the infinitesimal rectangles between x_1 and x_2 . The quantity on the right-hand side of Equation 6.7 is the **definite integral** of the function $F(x)$ over the interval from x_1 to x_2 . We introduce special symbolism for the limiting process of Equation 6.7:

$$W = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} F(x) dx \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{work done by a varying} \\ \text{force in one dimension} \end{array} \right) \quad (6.8)$$

Equation 6.8 means exactly the same thing as Equation 6.7: It tells us to divide the interval from x_1 to x_2 into many small rectangles of width Δx , to multiply the value of the function $F(x)$ at each rectangle by the width Δx , and to sum those products. In the limit of infinitely many infinitesimally small rectangles, the result of this process gives us the value of the definite integral. You can think of the symbol $\int$ in Equation 6.8 as standing for “sum” and the symbol dx as a limiting case of arbitrarily small Δx . The definite integral has a simple geometric interpretation: It's the area under the curve $F(x)$ between the limits x_1 and x_2 (Fig. 6.9c).

Computers approximate the infinite sum implied in Equation 6.8 using a large number of very small rectangles. But calculus often provides a better way.

Tactics 6.1 INTEGRATING

In your calculus course you've learned, or will soon learn, that integrals and derivatives are inverses. In Section 2.2, you saw that the derivative of x^n is nx^{n-1} ; therefore, the integral of x^n is $(x^{n+1})/(n+1)$, as you can verify by differentiating. We determine the value of a definite integral by evaluating this expression at upper and lower limits and subtracting:

$$\int_{x_1}^{x_2} x^n dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \Big|_{x_1}^{x_2} = \frac{x_2^{n+1}}{n+1} - \frac{x_1^{n+1}}{n+1} \quad (6.9)$$

where the middle term, with the vertical bar and the upper and lower limits, is a shorthand notation for the difference given in the rightmost term. Appendix A includes a review of integration and a table of common integrals.

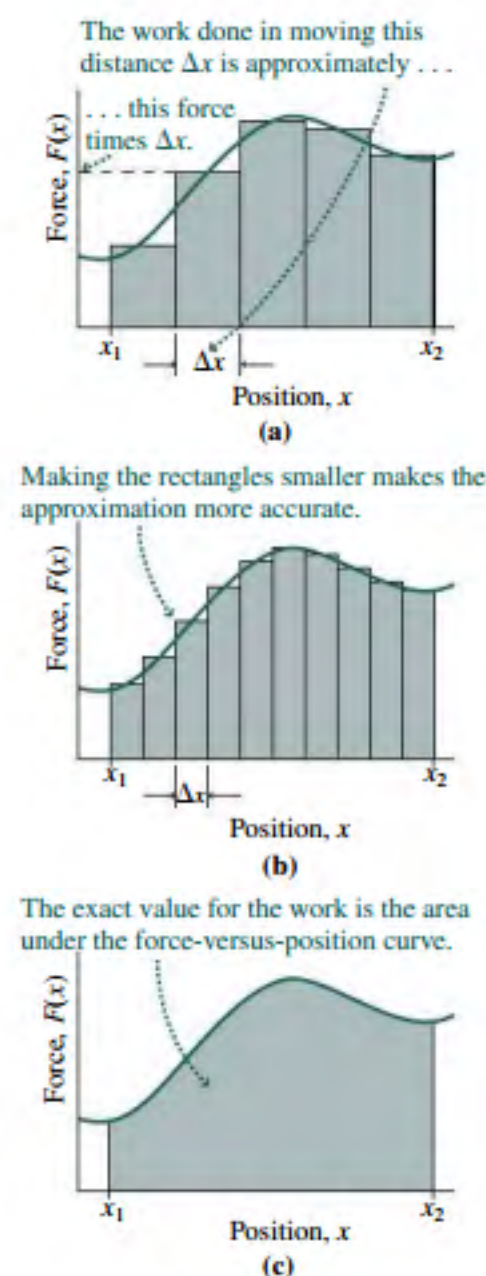


FIGURE 6.9 Work done by a varying force.

Stretching a Spring

A spring provides an important example of a force that varies with position. We've seen that an ideal spring exerts a force proportional to its displacement from equilibrium: $F = -kx$, where k is the spring constant and the minus sign shows that the spring force is opposite the direction of the displacement. It's not just coiled springs that we're interested in here;

many physical systems, from molecules to skyscrapers to stars, behave as though they contain springs. The work and energy considerations we develop here apply to those systems as well.

The force exerted *by* a stretched spring is $-kx$, so the force exerted *on* the spring *by* the external stretching force is $+kx$. If we let $x = 0$ be one end of the spring at equilibrium and if we hold the other end fixed and pull the spring until its free end is at a new position x , as shown in Fig. 6.10, then Equation 6.8 shows that the work done on the spring by the external force is

$$W = \int_0^x F(x) dx = \int_0^x kx dx = \frac{1}{2} kx^2 \Big|_0^x = \frac{1}{2} kx^2 - \frac{1}{2} k(0)^2 = \frac{1}{2} kx^2 \quad (6.10)$$

where we used Equation 6.9 to evaluate the integral. The more we stretch the spring, the greater the force we must apply—and that means we must do more work for a given amount of additional stretch. Figure 6.11 shows graphically why the work depends quadratically on the displacement. Although we used the word *stretch* in developing Equation 6.10, the result applies equally to compressing a spring a distance x from equilibrium. Note here that we're explicitly using the displacement of the force application point—the end of the spring—which in this case of this flexible system isn't the same as the displacement of the whole spring.

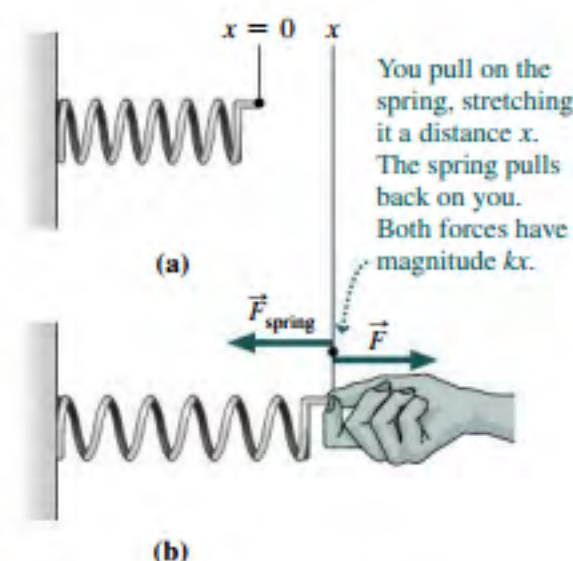


FIGURE 6.10 Stretching a spring.

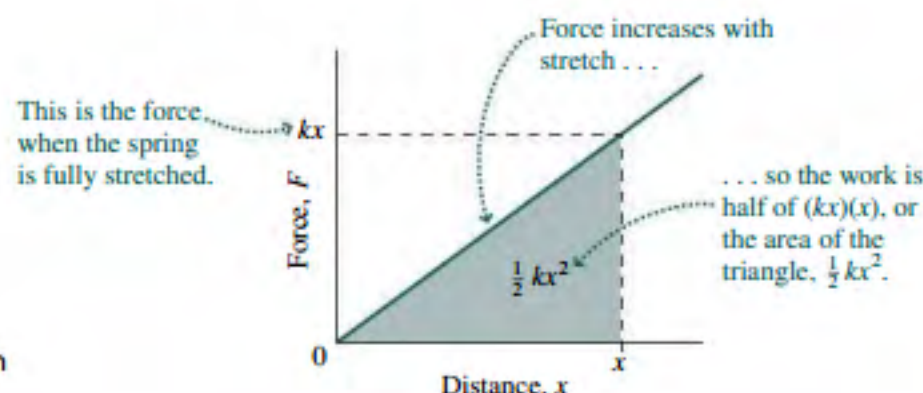


FIGURE 6.11 Work done in stretching a spring.

EXAMPLE 6.4

The Spring Force: Bungee Jumping Worked Example with Variation Problems

An elastic cord used in bungee jumping is normally 11 m long and has spring constant $k = 250 \text{ N/m}$. At the lowest point in a jump, the cord length has doubled. How much work has been done on the cord?

INTERPRET The bungee cord behaves like a spring—as we can tell because we're given its spring constant. So this example is about the work done in stretching a spring. We're told the 11-m-long cord length doubles in length, so it's stretched another 11 m.

DEVELOP Equation 6.10 gives the work done in stretching the cord a distance x from its unstretched configuration.

EVALUATE Applying Equation 6.10 gives

$$W = \frac{1}{2} kx^2 = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(250 \text{ N/m})(11 \text{ m})^2 = 15 \text{ kN}\cdot\text{m} = 15 \text{ kJ}$$

ASSESS As you'll see shortly, that's just about equal to the work done by gravity on a 70-kg person dropping the 22-m distance from the attachment point of the cord to its full stretched extent. You'll see in the next chapter why this is no coincidence.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 6.1 Bungee Details

In Example 6.4, is the work done as the cord stretches its final meter greater than, less than, or equal to the work done in the first meter of stretch?

EVALUATE We're asked to compare the work done during the beginning and end of the bungee cord's stretch. We know that work is the area under the force–distance curve. We've sketched the force–distance curve in Fig. 6.12, highlighting the first and last meters. The figure makes it clear that the area associated with the last meter of stretch is much larger. Therefore, the work is greater.

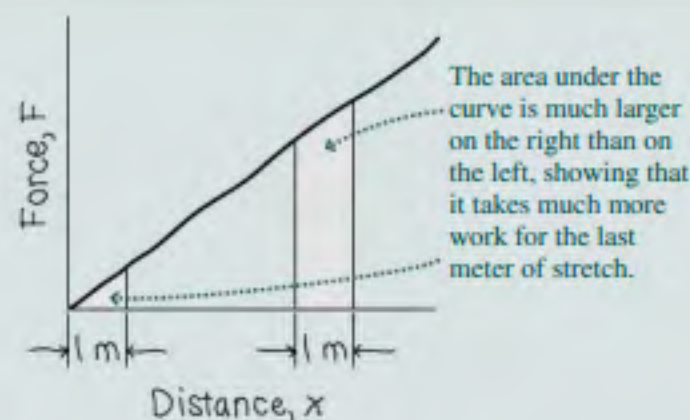


FIGURE 6.12 Conceptual Example 6.1.

(continued)

ASSESS Makes sense! Once the cord has stretched 10 m, it exerts a large force. That makes it much harder to stretch farther—and thus the final meter requires a lot of work. The first meter takes much less work because at first the cord exerts very little force.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Find the work involved in stretching during the first and last meters, and compare.

EVALUATE We can use Equation 6.10, but instead of the limits 0 and x , we'll use 0 and 1 m for the first meter of stretch, and 10 and 11 m for the last meter. The results are 125 J and 2.6 kJ. Stretching the final meter takes more than 20 times the work required for the first meter!

EXAMPLE 6.5 A Varying Friction Force: Rough Sliding

Workers pushing a 180-kg trunk across a level floor encounter a 10-m-long region where the floor becomes increasingly rough. The coefficient of kinetic friction here is given by $\mu_k = \mu_0 + ax^2$, where $\mu_0 = 0.17$, $a = 0.0062 \text{ m}^{-2}$, and x is the distance from the beginning of the rough region. How much work does it take to push the trunk across the region?

INTERPRET This example asks for the work needed to push the trunk. To move the trunk at constant speed, the workers must apply a force equal in magnitude to the frictional force. That force varies with position, so we're dealing with a varying force.

DEVELOP Our drawing, the force–position curve in Fig. 6.13, emphasizes that we have a varying force. Therefore, we have to integrate using

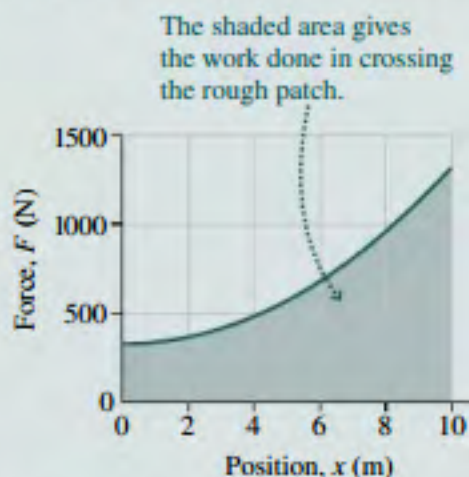


FIGURE 6.13 Force versus position for Example 6.5.

Equation 6.8, $W = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} F(x) dx$. And we need to know the frictional force, which is given by Equation 5.3: $f_k = \mu_k n$. On a level floor, the normal force is equal in magnitude to the weight, mg , so Equation 6.8 becomes $W = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \mu_k mg dx = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} mg(\mu_0 + ax^2) dx$.

EVALUATE We evaluate the integral using Equation 6.9. Actually, we have two integrals here: one of dx alone and the other of $x^2 dx$. According to Equation 6.9, the former gives x and the latter $x^3/3$. So the result is

$$\begin{aligned} W &= \int_{x_1}^{x_2} mg(\mu_0 + ax^2) dx = mg\left(\mu_0 x + \frac{1}{3} ax^3\right) \Big|_{x_1}^{x_2} \\ &= mg\left[(\mu_0 x_2 + \frac{1}{3} ax_2^3) - (\mu_0 x_1 + \frac{1}{3} ax_1^3)\right] \end{aligned}$$

Putting in the values given for μ_0 , a , and m , using $g = 9.8 \text{ m/s}^2$, and taking $x_1 = 0$ and $x_2 = 10 \text{ m}$ for the endpoints of the rough interval, we get 6.6 kJ for our answer.

ASSESS Is this answer reasonable? Figure 6.13 shows that the maximum force is approximately 1.3 kN. If this force acted over the entire 10-m interval, the work would be about 13 kJ. But it's approximately half that because the coefficient of kinetic friction and therefore the force start out quite low. You can see that the area under the curve in Fig. 6.13 is about half the area of the full rectangle, so our answer of 6.6 kJ makes sense.



DON'T JUST MULTIPLY! When force depends on position, there's no single value for the force, so you can't just multiply force by distance to get work. You need either to integrate, as in Example 6.5, or to use a result that's been derived by integration, as with the equation $W = \frac{1}{2} kx^2$ used in Example 6.4.

Force and Work in Two and Three Dimensions

Sometimes a force varies in both magnitude and direction or an object moves on a curved path; either way, the angle between force and motion may vary. Then we have to take the scalar products of the force $\vec{F}$ with small displacements $d\vec{r}$, writing $\Delta W = \vec{F} \cdot \Delta\vec{r}$ for the work involved in one such small displacement. Adding them all gives the total work, which in the limit of very small displacements becomes a **line integral**:

W is the work done by a force that may vary with position as it acts on an object moving on an arbitrary path. When the force doesn't vary and the path is straight, this reduces to Equation 6.5.

The integral sums all the work done in traversing the path, starting at position $\vec{r}_1$ and ending at $\vec{r}_2$.

$$W = \int_{\vec{r}_1}^{\vec{r}_2} \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r} \quad (6.11)$$

$\vec{F}$ is the force, whose magnitude and/or direction may vary along the path.

$d\vec{r}$ is an infinitesimal vector along the path.

The product $\vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}$ is the infinitesimal work done in traversing $d\vec{r}$.

where the integral is taken over a specific path between positions $\vec{r}_1$ and $\vec{r}_2$. We've highlighted Equation 6.11 because it's the most general expression for work. Figure 6.14 shows

the meaning of this equation—which reduces to the much simpler Equation 6.5 when the force doesn't vary and the path is straight. We won't pursue line integrals further here, but they'll prove useful in later chapters.

Work Done against Gravity

When an object moves upward or downward on an arbitrary path, the angle between its displacement and the gravitational force varies. But here we don't really need the line integral of Equation 6.11 because we can consider any path as consisting of small horizontal and vertical steps (Fig. 6.15). Only the vertical steps contribute to the work, which then becomes simply $W = mgh$, where h is the total height the object rises—a result that's independent of the particular path taken. (As in our earlier work with gravity, this result holds only near Earth's surface, where we can neglect the variation in gravity with height.)

GOT IT?

6.2 Three forces have magnitudes in newtons that are numerically equal to these quantities: (a) x , (b) x^2 , and (c) $\sqrt{x}$, where x is the position in meters. Each force acts on an object as it moves from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$ m. Notice that all three forces have the same values at the two endpoints—namely, 0 N and 1 N. Which of the forces (a), (b), or (c) does the most work? Which does the least?

6.4 Kinetic Energy

LO 6.5 Define kinetic energy and find its value given an object's mass and speed.

LO 6.6 State the work–kinetic energy theorem.

Doing work on a system by applying a force is the mechanical way to transfer energy to the system. How does that energy manifest itself? Under some conditions it shows up as kinetic energy—energy of the system's motion. Here we develop a relation between the *net work* done by all forces acting on a system that consists of a single rigid object and the resulting change in the object's kinetic energy. In the process we'll develop a simple formula for kinetic energy.

We'll start by evaluating the net work done on the object and then apply Newton's second law. With our single object, the net work is the work done by the sum of all forces acting on the object—that is, by the net force. So we'll use the net force in our expression for work. We'll consider the simple case of one-dimensional motion, with force and displacement along the same line. In that case, Equation 6.8 gives the net work:

$$W_{\text{net}} = \int F_{\text{net}} dx$$

But the net force can be written in terms of Newton's second law: $F_{\text{net}} = ma$, or $F_{\text{net}} = m dv/dt$, so

$$W_{\text{net}} = \int m \frac{dv}{dt} dx$$

The quantities dv , dt , and dx arose as the limits of small numbers Δv , Δt , and Δx . In calculus, you've seen that the limit of a product or quotient is the product or quotient of the individual terms involved. For these reasons, we can rearrange the symbols dv , dt , and dx to rewrite our expression in the form

$$W_{\text{net}} = \int m dv \frac{dx}{dt}$$

But $dx/dt = v$, so we have

$$W_{\text{net}} = \int mv dv$$

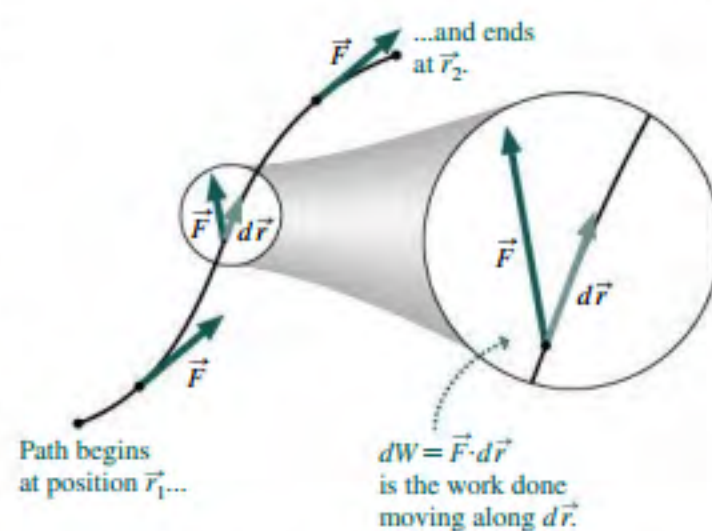


FIGURE 6.14 Meaning of Equation 6.11. We focus on a very small segment $d\vec{r}$ of the path, so small that it's essentially straight and the force doesn't vary significantly over the small segment.

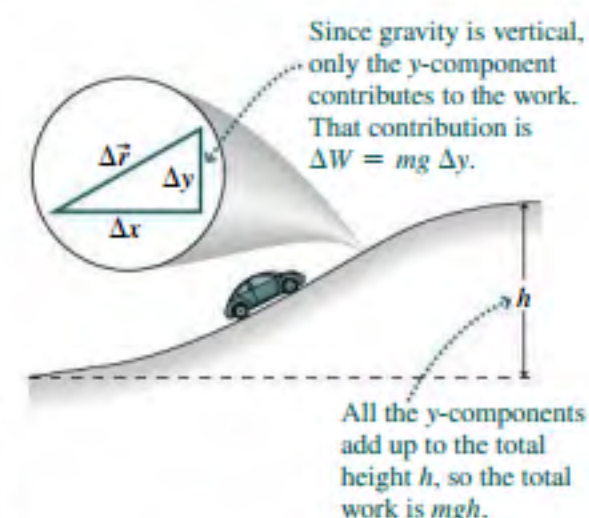


FIGURE 6.15 A car climbs a hill with varying slope.

The integral here is like $\int x dx$, which we evaluate by raising the exponent and dividing by the new exponent. What about the limits? Suppose our object starts at some speed v_1 and ends at v_2 . Then we have

$$W_{\text{net}} = \int_{v_1}^{v_2} mv \, dv = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 \Big|_{v_1}^{v_2} = \frac{1}{2}mv_2^2 - \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2 \quad (6.12)$$

Equation 6.12 shows that an object has associated with it a quantity $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ that changes when, and only when, net work is done on the object. This quantity is the object's **kinetic energy**:

The kinetic energy K of an object of mass m moving at speed v is

K is kinetic energy—the energy associated with an object's motion. No vectors signs; it's a scalar.

m is the object's mass.

$$K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$$

v is the object's speed. It's squared, showing that direction of motion doesn't matter.

(6.13)

Like velocity, kinetic energy is a relative term; its value depends on the reference frame in which it's measured. But unlike velocity, kinetic energy is a *scalar*. And since it depends on the *square* of the velocity, kinetic energy is never negative. All moving objects possess kinetic energy.

Equation 6.12 equates the change in an object's kinetic energy with the net work done on the object, a result known as the **work–kinetic energy theorem**:

Work–kinetic energy theorem: The change in an object's kinetic energy is equal to the net work done on the object:

ΔK is the change in an object's kinetic energy.

W_{net} is the work done on the object by the *net* force—the vector sum of all the forces acting on it.

$$\Delta K = W_{\text{net}}$$

The equal sign shows that kinetic energy changes only when net work is done on an object.

(6.14)

Equations 6.12 and 6.14 are equivalent statements of the work–kinetic energy theorem.

We've seen that work can be positive or negative; the work–kinetic energy theorem (Equation 6.14) therefore shows that changes in kinetic energy are correspondingly positive or negative. If I stop a moving object, for example, I reduce its kinetic energy from $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ to zero—a change $\Delta K = -\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. So I do negative work by applying a force directed opposite to the motion. By Newton's third law, the object exerts an equal but oppositely directed force on me, therefore doing positive work $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ on me. So an object of mass m moving at speed v can do work equal to its initial kinetic energy, $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$, if it's brought to rest.

EXAMPLE 6.6 Work and Kinetic Energy: Passing Zone

A 1400-kg car enters a passing zone and accelerates from 70 to 95 km/h. (a) How much work is done on the car? (b) If the car then brakes to a stop, how much work is done on it?

INTERPRET Here we're asked about work, but we aren't given any forces as we were in previous examples. However, we now know the work–kinetic energy theorem. Kinetic energy depends on speed, which we're given. So this is a problem involving the work–kinetic energy theorem.

DEVELOP The relevant equation is Equation 6.14 or its more explicit form, Equation 6.12. Since we're given speeds, it's easiest to work with Equation 6.12.

EVALUATE For (a), Equation 6.12 gives

$$\begin{aligned} W_{\text{net}} &= \frac{1}{2}mv_2^2 - \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2 = \frac{1}{2}m(v_2^2 - v_1^2) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(1400 \text{ kg})[(26.4 \text{ m/s})^2 - (19.4 \text{ m/s})^2] = 220 \text{ kJ} \end{aligned}$$

where we converted the speeds to meters per second before doing the calculation. The work–kinetic energy theorem applies equally to the braking car in (b), for which $v_1 = 26.4 \text{ m/s}$ and $v_2 = 0$. Here we have

$$\begin{aligned} W_{\text{net}} &= \frac{1}{2}m(v_2^2 - v_1^2) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(1400 \text{ kg})[0^2 - (26.4 \text{ m/s})^2] \\ &= -490 \text{ kJ} \end{aligned}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: There's a greater change in speed and thus in kinetic energy in the braking case, so the magnitude of the work involved is greater. Our second answer is negative because

stopping the car means applying a force that *opposes* its motion—and that means negative work is done on the car.

GOT IT?

6.3 For each situation, tell whether the net work done on a soccer ball is (a) positive, (b) negative, or (c) 0. (1) You carry the ball out to the field, walking at constant speed. (2) You kick the stationary ball, starting it flying through the air. (3) The ball rolls along the field, gradually coming to a halt.

Energy Units

Since work is equal to the change in kinetic energy, the units of energy are the same as those of work. In SI, the unit of energy is therefore the joule, equal to 1 newton-meter. In science, engineering, and everyday life, though, you'll encounter other energy units. Scientific units include the **erg**, used in the centimeter-gram-second system of units and equal to 10^{-7} J; the **electronvolt**, used in nuclear, atomic, and molecular physics; and the **calorie**, used in thermodynamics and to describe the energies of chemical reactions. English units include the **foot-pound** and the **British thermal unit** (Btu); the latter is commonly used in engineering of heating and cooling systems. Your electric company charges you for energy use in **kilowatt-hours** (kW·h); we'll see in the next section how this unit relates to the SI joule. Appendix C contains an extensive table of energy units and conversion factors as well as the energy contents of common fuels.

6.5 Power

LO 6.7 Distinguish energy from power.

Climbing a flight of stairs requires the same amount of work no matter how fast you go. But it's harder to *run* up the stairs than to walk. Harder in what sense? In the sense that you do the same work in a shorter time; the *rate* at which you do the work is greater. We define **power** as the rate of doing work:

If an amount of work ΔW is done in time Δt , then the average power $\bar{P}$ is

$\bar{P}$ is average power—the average *rate* of doing work.

ΔW is the work done...

$$\bar{P} = \frac{\Delta W}{\Delta t} \quad (\text{average power}) \quad (6.15)$$

...during the time interval Δt .

Often the rate of doing work varies with time. Then we define the **instantaneous power** as the average power taken in the limit of an arbitrarily small time interval Δt :

$$P = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta W}{\Delta t} = \frac{dW}{dt} \quad (\text{instantaneous power}) \quad (6.16)$$

Equations 6.15 and 6.16 both show that the units of power are joules/second. One J/s is given the name **watt** (W) in honor of James Watt, a Scottish engineer and inventor who was instrumental in developing the steam engine as a practical power source. Watt himself defined another unit, the horsepower. One horsepower (hp) is about 746 J/s or 746 W.

When power is constant, so the average power and instantaneous power are the same, Equation 6.15 shows that the amount of work W done in time Δt is

$$W = P \Delta t \quad (6.17)$$

EXAMPLE 6.7 Power: Climbing Mount Washington

A 55-kg hiker ascends New Hampshire's Mount Washington, making the vertical rise of 1300 m in 2 h. A 1500-kg car drives up the Mount Washington Auto Road, taking half an hour. Neglecting energy lost to friction, what's the average power output for each?

INTERPRET This example is about power, which we identify as the *rate* at which hiker and car expend energy. So we need to know the work done by each and the corresponding time.

DEVELOP Equation 6.15, $\bar{P} = \Delta W / \Delta t$, is relevant, since we want the *average* power. To use this equation we'll need to find the work done in climbing the mountain. As you learned in Section 6.2, work done against gravity is independent of the path taken and is given by mgh , where h is the total height of the climb.

EVALUATE We apply Equation 6.15 in the two cases:

$$\bar{P}_{\text{hiker}} = \frac{\Delta W}{\Delta t} = \frac{(55 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(1300 \text{ m})}{(2.0 \text{ h})(3600 \text{ s/h})} = 97 \text{ W}$$

$$\bar{P}_{\text{car}} = \frac{\Delta W}{\Delta t} = \frac{(1500 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(1300 \text{ m})}{(0.50 \text{ h})(3600 \text{ s/h})} = 11 \text{ kW}$$

ASSESS Do these values make sense? A power of 97 W is typical of the sustained long-term output of the human body, as you can confirm by considering a typical daily diet of 2000 “calories” (actually kilocalories; see Exercise 29). The car's output amounts to 14 hp, which you may find low, given that the car's engine is probably rated at several hundred horsepower. But cars are notoriously inefficient machines, with only a small fraction of the rated horsepower available to do useful work. Most of the rest is lost to friction and heating.

When power isn't constant, we can consider small amounts of work ΔW , each taken over so small a time interval Δt that the power is nearly constant. Adding all these amounts of work and taking the limit as Δt becomes arbitrarily small, we have

$$W = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \sum P \Delta t = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} P dt \quad (6.18)$$

where t_1 and t_2 are the beginning and end of the time interval over which we calculate the work.

EXAMPLE 6.8 Energy and Power: Yankee Stadium

Each of the 884 floodlights at Yankee Stadium uses electrical energy at the rate of 1650 W. How much does it cost to run these lights during a 5-h night game, if electricity costs 21¢/kW·h?

INTERPRET We're given a single floodlight's power consumption and the cost of electricity per kilowatt-hour, a unit of energy. So this problem is about calculating energy given power and time, with a little economics thrown in.

DEVELOP Since the power is constant, we can calculate the energy used over time with Equation 6.17, $W = P \Delta t$.

EVALUATE At 1.65 kW each, all 884 floodlights use energy at the rate $(884)(1.65 \text{ kW}) = 1459 \text{ kW}$. Then the total for a 5-h game is

$$W = P \Delta t = (1459 \text{ kW})(5 \text{ h}) = 7295 \text{ kW}\cdot\text{h}$$

The cost is then $(7295 \text{ kW}\cdot\text{h})(\$0.21/\text{kW}\cdot\text{h}) = \1532 .

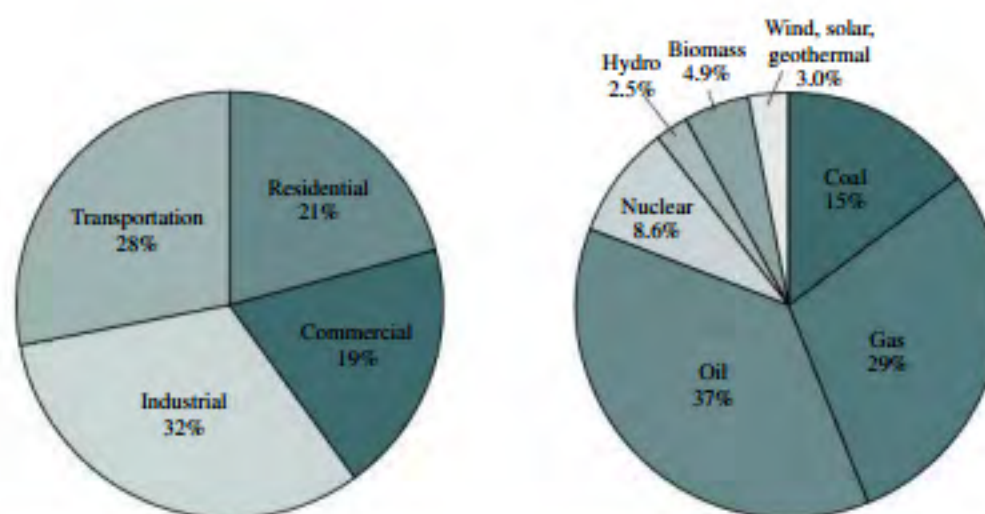
ASSESS Do we have the right units here? Yes: With power in kilowatts and time in hours, the energy comes out immediately in kilowatt-hours.

APPLICATION Energy and Society

Humankind's rate of energy consumption is a matter of concern, especially given our dependence on fossil fuels whose carbon dioxide emissions threaten global climate change. Just how rapidly are we using energy?

Example 6.7 suggests that the average power output of the human body is approximately 100 W. Before our species harnessed fire and domesticated animals, that was all the power available to each of us. But in today's high-energy societies, we use energy at a much greater rate. For the average citizen of the United States in the early 21st century, for example, the rate of energy consumption is about 11 kW—the equivalent of more than a hundred human bodies. The rate is lower in most other industrialized countries, but it still amounts to many tens of human bodies' worth.

What do we do with all that energy? And where does it come from? The first pie chart shows that most of the United States's energy consumption goes for industry and transportation, with lesser amounts used in the residential and commercial sectors. The second chart is a stark reminder that our energy supply is neither diversified nor renewable, with some 81% coming from the fossil fuels coal, oil, and natural gas. That's going to have to change in the coming decades, as a result of both limited fossil-fuel resources and the environmental consequences of fossil-fuel combustion—especially climate change. Much of what you learn in an introductory physics course has direct relevance to the energy challenges we face today.



Power and Velocity

We can derive an expression relating power, applied force, and velocity by noting that the work dW done by a force $\vec{F}$ acting on an object that undergoes an infinitesimal displacement $d\vec{r}$ follows from Equation 6.5:

$$dW = \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}$$

Dividing both sides by the associated time interval dt gives the power:

$$P = \frac{dW}{dt} = \vec{F} \cdot \frac{d\vec{r}}{dt}$$

But $d\vec{r}/dt$ is the velocity $\vec{v}$, so

$$P = \vec{F} \cdot \vec{v}$$



DON'T CONFUSE ENERGY AND POWER Is that 11-kW per-capita energy consumption per year, per day, or what? That question reflects a common confusion of energy and power. Power is the rate of energy use; it doesn't need any "per time" attached to it. It's just 11 kW, period.

EXAMPLE 6.9

Power and Velocity: Bicycling

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Riding your 9.0-kg bicycle at a steady 16 km/h (4.4 m/s), you experience an 8.2-N force from air resistance. If your mass is 66 kg, what power must you supply on level ground and going up a 5° incline?

INTERPRET This example asks about power in two different situations: one with air resistance alone and the other when climbing. We identify the forces involved as air resistance and gravity. You need to exert forces of equal magnitude to overcome them.

DEVELOP Given that we have force and velocity, Equation 6.19, $P = \vec{F} \cdot \vec{v}$, applies. The force you apply to propel the bicycle is in the same direction as its motion, so $\vec{F} \cdot \vec{v}$ in that equation becomes just Fv .

EVALUATE On level ground, we have $P = Fv = (8.2 \text{ N})(4.4 \text{ m/s}) = 36 \text{ W}$. Climbing the hill, you have to exert an additional force to

overcome the downslope component of gravity, which in Example 5.1 we found to be $mg \sin \theta$. So here we have

$$\begin{aligned} P &= Fv = (F_{\text{air}} + mg \sin \theta)v \\ &= [8.2 \text{ N} + (75 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(\sin 5^\circ)](4.4 \text{ m/s}) = 320 \text{ W} \end{aligned}$$

where we used your combined mass, body plus bicycle.

ASSESS Both numbers make sense. The values go from considerably less than to a lot more than your body's average power output of around 100 W, and as you've surely experienced, even a modest slope takes much more cycling effort than level ground. Top cyclists on mountain sections of the Tour de France can sustain power outputs of close to 500 W for extended periods.

GOT IT?

6.4 A newspaper reports that a new power plant will produce "50 megawatts per hour." What's wrong with this statement?

Chapter 6 Summary

Big Idea

Energy and work are the big ideas here. Doing work is a mechanical means of transferring energy. A force acting on a system does work when the system (here a single object) undergoes a displacement and the force has a component in the direction of that displacement. A force at right angles to the displacement does no work, and a force with a component opposite the displacement does negative work.

Kinetic energy is the energy associated with an object's motion. An object's kinetic energy changes only when net work is done on the object.

Key Concepts and Equations

Work is the product of force and displacement, but only the component of force in the direction of displacement counts toward the work. For a constant force and displacement in the x -direction,

$$W = F_x \Delta x \quad (\text{constant force only})$$

More generally, for a constant force $\vec{F}$ and arbitrary displacement $\Delta\vec{r}$, the work is

$$W = \vec{F} \cdot \Delta\vec{r} = F \Delta r \cos \theta \quad (\text{constant force only})$$

Here F and Δr are the magnitudes of the force and displacement vectors, and θ is the angle between them. We've written work here using the shorthand notation of the scalar product, defined for any two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ as the product of their magnitudes and the cosine of the angle between them:

$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB \cos \theta \quad (\text{scalar product})$$

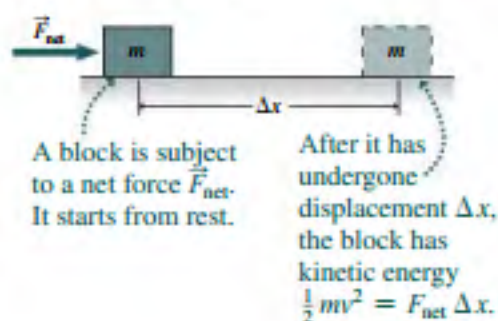
Kinetic energy is a scalar quantity that depends on an object's mass and speed:

$$K = \frac{1}{2} mv^2$$

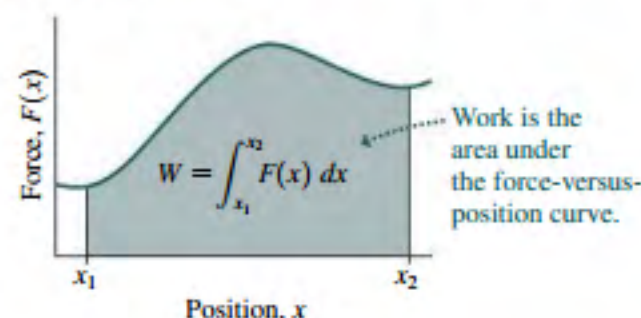
The **work-kinetic energy theorem** states that the change in an object's kinetic energy is equal to the net work done on it:

$$\Delta K = W_{\text{net}} \quad (\text{work-kinetic energy theorem})$$

The unit of energy and work is the joule (J), equal to 1 newton-meter.



When force varies with position, calculating the work involves integrating. In one dimension:



Most generally, work is the **line integral** of a varying force over an

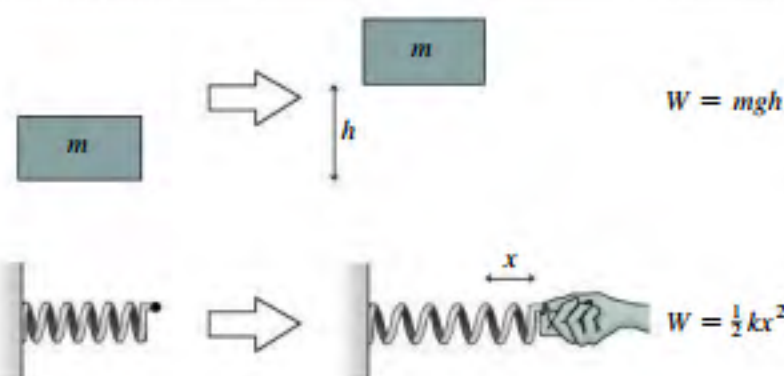
$$\text{arbitrary path: } W = \int \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}$$

Power is the rate at which work is done or energy is used. The unit of power is the **watt (W)**, equal to 1 joule/second.

$$P = \frac{dW}{dt} = \vec{F} \cdot \vec{v}$$

Applications

Common applications of work done against everyday forces are the work mgh needed to raise an object of mass m a distance h against gravity, and the work $\frac{1}{2} kx^2$ needed to stretch or compress a spring of spring constant k a distance x from its equilibrium length.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 6.1 Explain the terms <i>energy</i> and <i>work</i> in the context of physics.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions</i> 6.2, 6.4, 6.5</p> <p>LO 6.2 Find the work done by a force that doesn't vary with position.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question</i> 6.3; <i>Exercises</i> 6.11, 6.12, 6.13, 6.14, 6.15, 6.16, 6.17, 6.18, 6.19; <i>Problems</i> 6.49, 6.50, 6.51, 6.58, 6.60, 6.61, 6.73, 6.75, 6.91</p> <p>LO 6.3 Calculate the dot product of two vectors.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question</i> 6.1; <i>Exercise</i> 6.18; <i>Problems</i> 6.52, 6.53, 6.67</p> <p>LO 6.4 Find the work done by a force that varies with position.
<i>Exercises</i> 6.20, 6.21, 6.22, 6.23, 6.24; <i>Problems</i> 6.54, 6.55, 6.56, 6.57, 6.65, 6.66, 6.83, 6.85, 6.86, 6.87, 6.88, 6.90</p> | <p>LO 6.5 Define <i>kinetic energy</i> and find its value given an object's mass and speed.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions</i> 6.6, 6.8; <i>Exercises</i> 6.25, 6.26, 6.27, 6.28, 6.29, 6.30; <i>Problem</i> 6.59</p> <p>LO 6.6 State the work–kinetic energy theorem.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions</i> 6.6, 6.8, 6.10</p> <p>LO 6.7 Distinguish energy from power.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions</i> 6.7, 6.9; <i>Exercises</i> 6.31, 6.32, 6.33, 6.34, 6.35, 6.36, 6.37, 6.38, 6.39, 6.40; <i>Problems</i> 6.62, 6.63, 6.64, 6.68, 6.69, 6.70, 6.71, 6.72, 6.74, 6.75, 6.76, 6.77, 6.78, 6.79, 6.80, 6.81, 6.82, 6.84, 6.89</p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- If the scalar product of two nonzero vectors is zero, what can you conclude about their relative directions?
- Must you do work to whirl a ball around on the end of a string? Explain.
- You want to raise a piano a given height using a ramp. With a fixed, nonzero coefficient of friction, will you have to do more work if the ramp is steeper or more gradual? Explain.
- Does the gravitational force of the Sun do work on a planet in a circular orbit? On a comet in an elliptical orbit? Explain.
- A pendulum bob swings back and forth on the end of a string, describing a circular arc. Does the tension force in the string do any work?
- Does your car's kinetic energy change if you drive at constant speed for 1 hour?
- A watt-second is a unit of what quantity? Relate it to a more standard SI unit.
- A truck is moving northward at 55 mi/h. Later, it's moving eastward at the same speed. Has its kinetic energy changed? Has work been done on the truck? Has a force acted on the truck? Explain.
- A news article reports that a new solar farm will produce 143 kilowatt-hours of electricity. Criticize this statement. What did the writer probably mean?
- Is it possible for *you* to do work on an object without changing the object's kinetic energy? Explain.

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Sections 6.1 and 6.2 Energy and Work

- How much work do you do as you exert a 65-N force to push a shopping cart through a 20-m-long supermarket aisle?
- If the coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.22, how much work do you do when you slide a 55-kg box at constant speed across a 4.8-m-wide room?
- A crane lifts a 650-kg beam vertically upward 23 m and then swings it eastward 18 m. How much work does the crane do? Neglect friction, and assume the beam moves with constant speed.
- The world's highest waterfall, the Cherun-Meru in Venezuela, has a total drop of 980 m. How much work does gravity do on a cubic meter of water dropping down the Cherun-Meru?

- A meteorite plunges to Earth, embedding itself 75 cm in the ground. If it does 140 MJ of work in the process, what average force does the meteorite exert on the ground?
- An elevator of mass m rises a vertical distance h with upward acceleration equal to one-tenth g . Find an expression for the work the elevator cable does on the elevator.
- Show that the scalar product obeys the distributive law: $\vec{A} \cdot (\vec{B} + \vec{C}) = \vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} + \vec{A} \cdot \vec{C}$.
- Find the work done by a force $\vec{F} = 3.1\hat{i} + 1.9\hat{j}$ N as it acts on an object moving from the origin to the point $24\hat{i} + 45\hat{j}$ m.
- To push a stalled car, you apply a 470-N force at 17° to the car's motion, doing 860 J of work in the process. How far do you push the car?

Section 6.3 Forces That Vary

- Find the total work done by the force shown in Fig. 6.16 as the object on which it acts moves (a) from $x = 0$ to $x = 3$ km and (b) from $x = 3$ km to $x = 4$ km.
- How much work does it take to stretch a spring with $k = 200$ N/m (a) 10 cm from equilibrium and (b) from 10 cm to 20 cm from equilibrium?
- Uncompressed, the spring for an automobile suspension is 40 cm long. It needs to be fitted into a space 32 cm long. If the spring constant is 3.6 kN/m, how much work does a mechanic have to do to fit the spring?
- You do 9.5 J of work to stretch a spring with $k = 175$ N/m, starting with the spring unstretched. How far does the spring stretch?
- Spider silk is a remarkable elastic material. A particular strand has spring constant 70 mN/m, and it stretches 8.9 cm when a fly hits it. How much work did the fly's impact do on the silk strand?

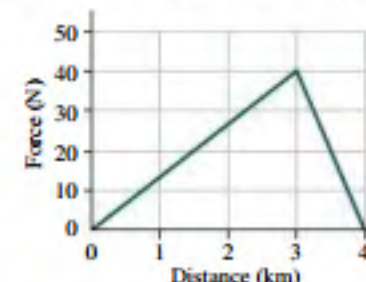


FIGURE 6.16 Exercise 20

Section 6.4 Kinetic Energy

- What's the kinetic energy of a 7.9×10^4 -kg airplane cruising at 850 km/h?
- A cyclotron accelerates protons from rest to 26 Mm/s. How much work does it do on each proton?
- At what speed must a 2.6×10^4 -kg truck be moving to have the same kinetic energy as an 1150-kg car going 95 km/h?

28. A 60-kg skateboarder comes over the top of a hill at 4.0 m/s and reaches 12 m/s at the bottom. Find the total work done on the skateboarder between the top and bottom of the hill.
29. After a tornado, a 5.0-g graphite pencil was found embedded 5.8 cm in a tree. Subsequent measurements showed that the tree exerted a stopping force of 76 N on the pencil. What was the pencil's speed?
30. From what height would you have to drop a car for its impact to be equivalent to a 20-mi/h collision?

Section 6.5 Power

31. A typical human diet is "2000 calories" per day, where the "calorie" describing food energy is actually 1 kilocalorie. Express 2000 kcal/day in watts.
32. A horse plows a 250-m-long furrow in 6.0 min, exerting a 700-N force. Find its power output, measured in watts and in horsepower.
33. A typical car battery stores about 2 kW · h of energy. What's its power output if it drains completely in (a) 1 minute, (b) 1 hour, and (c) 1 day?
34. A sprinter completes a 100-m dash in 10.6 s, doing 22.4 kJ of work. What's her average power output?
35. How much work can a 3.8-hp lawnmower engine do in 30 min?
36. A 75-kg long-jumper takes 3.1 s to reach a prejump speed of 10 m/s. What's his power output?
37. Estimate your power output as you do deep knee bends at the rate of one per second.
38. In midday sunshine, solar energy strikes Earth at the rate of about **EW** 1 kW/m². How long would it take a perfectly efficient solar collector of 4.0-m² area to collect 10 kW · h of energy? (Note: This is roughly the energy content of a liter of petrol.)
39. It takes about 20 kJ to melt an ice cube. A typical microwave oven produces 900 W of microwave power. How long will it take a typical microwave to melt the ice cube?
40. Which consumes more energy, a 1.2-kW hair dryer used for 10 min or a 7-W night-light left on for 24 h?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

41. **Example 6.4:** A cord used in bungee jumping is normally 9.58 m long and has spring constant $k = 235 \text{ N/m}$. At the lowest point in a jump, the cord length has doubled. How much work has been done on the cord?
42. **Example 6.4:** Unstretched, a cord used in bungee jumping is 12.2 m long. When a jumper reaches the lowest point in her jump, the cord has stretched to 26.3 m and she's done 15.4 kJ of work on the cord. What's the spring constant of the cord?
43. **Example 6.4:** A 2.35- μm strand of DNA has an effective spring constant of $1.63 \times 10^{-7} \text{ N/m}$. Find the work required to compress the strand so its length shrinks by 1.00%.
44. **Example 6.4:** Find the effective spring constant of a DNA molecule, given that it takes $6.92 \times 10^{-24} \text{ J}$ of work to compress it 4.48 nm.
45. **Example 6.9:** You and a partner are pedaling a 16.0-kg tandem bicycle up a 6.22° incline at 18.5 km/h. There's a 10.8-N force from air resistance. If the combined mass of you and your partner is 132 kg, what power must the two of you supply?
46. **Example 6.9:** You and your cycling partner are capable of producing 955 W of power. What's the fastest you can pedal up a 4.40° slope if the combined mass of your tandem bicycle and both riders is 152 kg and you face a 14.5-N force from air resistance?

47. **Example 6.9:** A Boeing 787-9 jetliner has a mass of 245,000 kg including passengers. Its two engines produce a combined thrust force of 642 kN, and the aircraft cruises at 913 km/h in level flight—in which case drag from the air is the only force the plane needs to overcome. Find the engines' power output (a) while cruising and (b) when it's climbing at a 23.0° angle at 622 km/h. Assume air resistance doesn't change—although in reality it's greater at the higher speed.
48. **Example 6.9:** You're an aircraft designer charged with determining the maximum speed for a new aircraft when it's climbing at a 15.4° angle. The total mass of the plane is 138,000 kg, and its total engine power is 105 MW. While climbing it encounters a force of 193 kN from air resistance. What do you report for the maximum speed while climbing?

Problems

49. You slide a box of books at constant speed up a 30° ramp, applying a force of 200 N directed up the slope. The coefficient of sliding friction is 0.18. (a) How much work have you done when the box has risen 1 m vertically? (b) What's the mass of the box?
50. Two people push a stalled car at its front doors, each applying a 280-N force at 25° to the forward direction, as shown in Fig. 6.17. How much work does each person do in pushing the car 5.9 m?

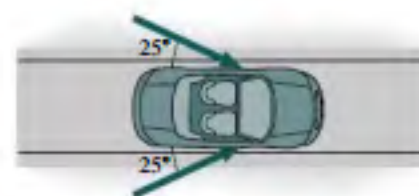


FIGURE 6.17 Problem 50

51. You pull a box 23 m horizontally, using the rope shown in Fig. 6.18. If the rope tension is 120 N, and if the rope does 2500 J of work on the box, what angle θ does the rope make with the horizontal?

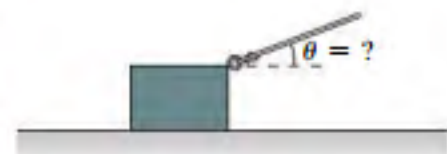


FIGURE 6.18 Problem 51

52. (a) Find the scalar products $\hat{i} \cdot \hat{i}$, $\hat{j} \cdot \hat{j}$, and $\hat{k} \cdot \hat{k}$. (b) Find $\hat{i} \cdot \hat{j}$, $\hat{j} \cdot \hat{k}$, and $\hat{k} \cdot \hat{i}$. (c) Use the distributive law to multiply out the scalar product of two arbitrary vectors $\vec{A} = A_x \hat{i} + A_y \hat{j} + A_z \hat{k}$ and $\vec{B} = B_x \hat{i} + B_y \hat{j} + B_z \hat{k}$, and use the results of (a) and (b) to verify Equation 6.4.
53. (a) Find the scalar product of the vectors $a\hat{i} + b\hat{j}$ and $b\hat{i} - a\hat{j}$, where a and b are arbitrary constants. (b) What's the angle between the two vectors?
54. A force $\vec{F}$ acts in the x -direction, its magnitude given by $F = ax^2$, where x is in meters and $a = 3.0 \text{ N/m}^2$. Find the work done by this force as it acts on a particle moving from $x = 0$ to $x = 6.0 \text{ m}$.
55. A certain amount of work is required to stretch spring A a certain distance. Twice as much work is required to stretch spring B half that distance. Compare the spring constants of the two.
56. A force with magnitude given by $F = a\sqrt{x} - bx^2$ acts in the x -direction, where $a = 25.2 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^{-1/2}$ and $b = 3.87 \text{ N/m}^2$. Find the work this force does on an object moving from (a) $x = 0$ to $x = 2.00 \text{ m}$ and (b) from $x = 2.00 \text{ m}$ to $x = 3.75 \text{ m}$.
57. The force exerted by a rubber band is given approximately by

CH

$$F = F_0 \left[\frac{L_0 - x}{L_0} - \frac{L_0^2}{(L_0 + x)^2} \right]$$

where L_0 is the unstretched length, x is the stretch, and F_0 is a constant. Find an expression for the work needed to stretch the rubber band a distance x .

58. You put your little sister (mass m) on a swing whose chains have length L and pull slowly back until the swing makes an angle ϕ with the vertical. Show that the work you do is $mgL(1 - \cos \phi)$.
59. Two unknown elementary particles pass through a detection chamber. If they have the same kinetic energy and their mass ratio is 9:1, what's the ratio of their speeds?
60. A tractor tows a plane from its airport gate, doing 8.3 MJ of work. The link from the plane to the tractor makes a 19° angle with the plane's motion, and the tension in the link is 0.41 MN. How far does the tractor move the plane?
61. *E. coli* bacteria swim by means of flagella that rotate about 100 times per second. A typical *E. coli* bacterium swims at $22 \mu\text{m/s}$, its flagella exerting a force of 0.57 pN to overcome the resistance due to its liquid environment. (a) What's the bacterium's power output? (b) How much work would it do in traversing the 25-mm width of a microscope slide?
62. On February 15, 2013, an asteroid moving at 19 km/s entered Earth's atmosphere over Chelyabinsk, Russia, and exploded at an altitude of more than 20 km. This was the largest object known to have entered the atmosphere in over a century. The asteroid's kinetic energy just before entering the atmosphere was estimated as the energy equivalent of 500 kilotons of the explosive TNT. (Kilotons [kt] and megatons [Mt] are energy units used to describe the explosive yields of nuclear weapons, and you'll find the energy equivalent of 1 Mt in Appendix C.) What was the approximate mass of the Chelyabinsk asteroid?
63. An elevator ascends from the ground floor to the 10th floor, a height of 41 m, in 35 s. If the mass of the elevator and passengers is 840 kg, what's the power necessary to lift the elevator? (Your answer is greater than the actual power needed because elevators are counterweighted, thus reducing the work the motor needs to do.)
64. You're asked to assess the reliability of a nuclear power plant, as measured by the *capacity factor*—the ratio of the energy it actually produces to what it could produce if it operated all the time. The plant is rated at 840 MW of electrical power output, and in a full year it produces $6.8 \times 10^9 \text{ kW}\cdot\text{h}$ of electrical energy. What's its capacity factor?
65. A force pointing in the x -direction is given by $F = F_0(x/x_0)^2$, where F_0 and x_0 are constants and x is position. Find an expression for the work done by this force as it acts on an object moving from $x = 0$ to $x = x_0$.
66. A force pointing in the x -direction is given by $F = ax^{3/2}$, where a is a constant. The force does 1.86 kJ of work on an object as the object moves from $x = 0$ to $x = 18.5 \text{ m}$. Find the constant a .
67. Two vectors have equal magnitude, and their scalar product is half the square of their magnitude. Find the angle between them.
68. At what rate can a half-horsepower well pump deliver water to a tank 50 m above the water level in the well? Give your answer in kg/s and gal/min.
69. The European Union imports about 500 million gallons of crude oil each day. Use the "Energy Content of Fuels" table in Appendix C to estimate the corresponding power, measured in gigawatts.
70. By measuring oxygen uptake, sports physiologists have found that long-distance runners' power output is given approximately by $P = m(bv - c)$, where m and v are the runner's mass and speed, and b and c are constants given by $b = 4.27 \text{ J/kg m}$ and $c = 1.83 \text{ W/kg}$. Determine the work done by a 54-kg runner who runs a 9-km race at 5.3 m/s.
71. The motor in a 2590-kg Tesla Model S electric car supplies energy to the wheels at the rate of 285.0 kW. (a) What's the maximum speed for the Model S when it's ascending a 23.8° slope using only its electric motor? (b) What's the motor's power output in horsepower? Neglect air resistance.
72. A 1400-kg car ascends a mountain road at a steady 60 km/h, against a 550-N force of air resistance. If the engine supplies energy to the drive wheels at the rate of 38 kW, what's the slope angle of the road?
73. You do 2.2 kJ of work pushing a 78-kg trunk at constant speed 3.1 m along a ramp inclined upward at 22° . What's the frictional coefficient between trunk and ramp?
74. (a) Find the work done in lifting 1 L of blood (mass 1 kg) from the foot to the head of a 1.6-m-tall person. (b) If blood circulates through the body at the rate of 5.0 L/min, estimate the heart's power output. (Your answer underestimates the power by a factor of about 5 because it neglects fluid friction and other factors.)
75. You push a 68.5-kg chest of drawers at 0.123 m/s for a distance of 3.45 m across a level floor, where the coefficient of friction is 0.595. Find (a) the power needed and (b) the work you do. (c) Repeat for the case of a ramp sloping upward at 6.35° , with all other quantities unchanged.
76. You mix flour into bread dough, exerting a 39-N force on the spoon, which you move at 0.23 m/s. (a) What power do you supply? (b) How much work do you do if you stir for 1.0 min?
77. One machine does work at a constant rate P_0 . A second machine does work at a rate given by $P(t) = 2P_0\left(1 - \frac{(t - t_0)^2}{t_0^2}\right)$, where t_0 is a constant with the units of time. Both machines start at time $t = 0$. Find expressions for (a) the peak power output of the second machine and (b) the earliest time at which both machines have done the same amount of work.
78. A typical bumblebee has mass 0.25 mg. It beats its wings 100 times per second, and the wings undergo an average displacement of about 1.6 mm. When the bee is hovering over a flower, the average force between wings and air must support the bee's weight. Estimate the average power the bee expends in hovering.
79. You're trying to decide whether to buy an energy-efficient 225-W refrigerator for \$1150 or a standard 425-W model for \$850. The standard model will run 20% of the time, but better insulation means the energy-efficient model will run 11% of the time. If electricity costs 9.5¢/kW·h, how long would you have to own the energy-efficient model to make up the difference in cost? Neglect interest you might earn on your money.
80. Your friend does five reps with a barbell, on each rep lifting 45 kg 0.50 m. She claims the work done is enough to "burn off" a chocolate bar with energy content 230 kcal (see Exercise 31). Is that true? If not, how many lifts would it take?
81. A machine delivers power at a decreasing rate $P = P_0 t_0^2/(t + t_0)^2$, where P_0 and t_0 are constants. The machine starts at $t = 0$ and runs forever. Show that it nevertheless does only a finite amount of work, equal to $P_0 t_0$.
82. A locomotive accelerates a freight train of total mass M from rest, applying constant power P . Determine the speed and position of the train as functions of time, assuming all the power goes to increasing the train's kinetic energy.
83. A force given by $F = b/\sqrt{x}$ acts in the x -direction, where b is a constant with the units $\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^{1/2}$. Show that even though the force becomes arbitrarily large as x approaches zero, the work done in moving from x_1 to x_2 remains finite even as x_1 approaches zero. Find an expression for that work in the limit $x_1 \rightarrow 0$.
84. You're assisting a cardiologist in planning a stress test for a 75-kg patient. The test involves rapid walking on an inclined treadmill, and the patient is to reach a peak power output of 350 W. If the patient's maximum walking speed is 8.0 km/h, what should be the treadmill's inclination angle?
85. You're an engineer for a company that makes bungee-jump cords, and you're asked to develop a formula for the work involved in

stretching cords to double their length. Your cords have force-distance relations described by $F = -(kx + bx^2 + cx^3 + dx^4)$, where k , b , c , and d are constants. (a) Given a cord with unstretched length L_0 , what's your formula? (b) Evaluate the work done in doubling the stretch of a 10-m cord with $k = 420 \text{ N/m}$, $b = -86 \text{ N/m}^2$, $c = 12 \text{ N/m}^3$, and $d = -0.50 \text{ N/m}^4$.

86. You push an object of mass m slowly partway up a loop-the-loop track of radius R , starting from the bottom, and ending at a height $h < R$ above the bottom. The coefficient of friction between the object and the track is a constant. Show that the work you do against friction is $\mu mg \sqrt{2hR - h^2}$.
87. A particle moves from the origin to the point $x = 3 \text{ m}$, $y = 6 \text{ m}$ along the curve $y = ax^2 - bx$, where $a = 2 \text{ m}^{-1}$ and $b = 4$. It's subject to a force $cxy\hat{i} + d\hat{j}$, where $c = 10 \text{ N/m}^2$ and $d = 15 \text{ N}$. Calculate the work done by the force.
88. Repeat Problem 87 for the following cases: (a) the particle moves first along the x -axis from the origin to the point $(3 \text{ m}, 0)$ and then parallel to the y -axis until it reaches $(3 \text{ m}, 6 \text{ m})$; (b) it moves first along the y -axis from the origin to the point $(0, 6 \text{ m})$ and then parallel to the x -axis until it reaches $(3 \text{ m}, 6 \text{ m})$.
89. The world's fastest elevator, in Taiwan's Taipei 101 skyscraper (Fig. 6.19), ascends at the rate of 1010 m/min. Counterweights balance the weight of the elevator car, so the motor doesn't have to lift the car's weight. If the motor produces 330 kW of power, what's the maximum number of 67-kg people the elevator can accommodate? (Your answer somewhat overestimates the actual rated load of 24 people.)

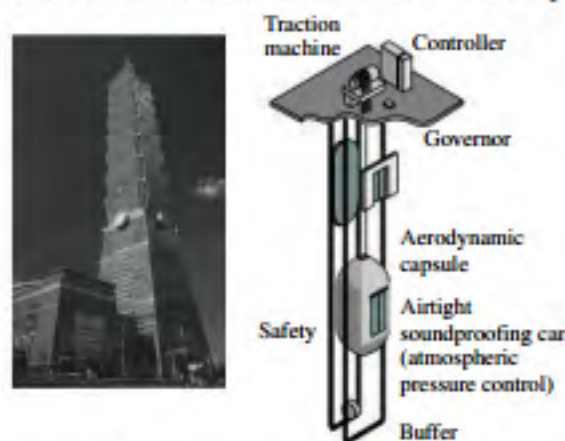


FIGURE 6.19 Problem 89

90. An experimental measurement of the force required to stretch a slingshot is given in the table below. Plot the force-distance curve for this slingshot and use graphical integration to determine the work done in stretching the slingshot the full 40-cm distance.

Stretch (cm)	Force (N)
0	0
5.00	0.885
10.0	1.89
15.0	3.05
20.0	4.48
25.0	6.44
30.0	8.22
35.0	9.95
40.0	12.7

91. You're an expert witness in a medical malpractice lawsuit. A hospital patient's leg slipped off a stretcher, and his heel hit the floor. The defense attorney for the hospital claims the leg, with mass 14 kg, hit the floor with a force equal to the weight of the leg—about 140 N—and any damage was due to a prior injury. You argue that the leg and heel dropped freely for 0.6 m, then hit the floor and stopped in 2 cm. What do you tell the jury about the force on the heel?

Passage Problems

The energy in a batted baseball comes from the power delivered while the bat is in contact with the ball. The most powerful hitters can supply some 10 horsepower during the brief contact time, propelling the ball to over 100 miles per hour. Figure 6.20 shows data taken from a particular hit, giving the power the bat delivers to the ball as a function of time.

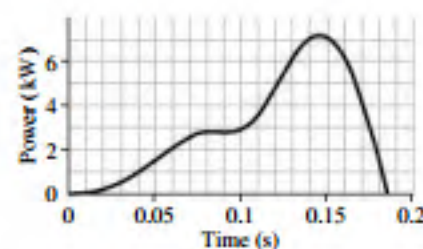


FIGURE 6.20 Passage Problems 92–95

92. Which of the following is greatest at the peak of the curve?
- the ball's kinetic energy
 - the ball's speed
 - the rate at which the bat supplies energy to the ball
 - the total work the bat has done on the ball
93. The ball has its maximum speed at about
- 85 ms.
 - 145 ms.
 - 185 ms.
 - whenever the force is greatest.
94. As a result of being hit, the ball's kinetic energy increases by about
- 550 J.
 - 1.3 kJ.
 - 7.0 kJ.
 - You can't tell because you don't know its speed coming from the pitcher.
95. The force on the ball is greatest approximately
- at 185 ms.
 - at the peak in Fig. 6.20.
 - before the peak in Fig. 6.20.
 - after the peak in Fig. 6.20 but before 185 ms.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

No. The work done against gravity in climbing a particular height is independent of the path. A rider on a bicycle with a combined mass of 80 kg does roughly 400 kJ or 100 kcal of work against gravity regardless of the path up a 500-m mountain. To climb such a mountain in 20 min, the rider's power output must exceed 300 W.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 6.1 (b) $2F$ does $\sqrt{2}$ more work than F does. That's because $2F$'s component along the direction of motion is $2F \cos 45^\circ$, or $2F\sqrt{2}/2 = F\sqrt{2}$.
- 6.2 (c) $\sqrt{x}$ does the most work. (b) x^2 does the least. You can see this by plotting these two functions from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$ and comparing the areas under each. The case of x is intermediate.
- 6.3 (1) (c): Kinetic energy doesn't change, so the net work done on the ball is zero. (2) (a): Kinetic energy increases, so the net work is positive. (3) (b): Kinetic energy decreases, so the net work is negative.
- 6.4 The megawatt is a unit of power; the "per time" is already built in. A correct statement would be that the power plant will produce "energy at the rate of 50 megawatts."

Conservation of Energy

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 7.1 Distinguish conservative from nonconservative forces.
- LO 7.2 Calculate potential energy, especially with gravity and springs.
- LO 7.3 Use conservation of mechanical energy to solve problems that would be difficult using Newton's second law.
- LO 7.4 Evaluate situations where nonconservative forces result in loss of mechanical energy.
- LO 7.5 Distinguish internal energy from mechanical energy.
- LO 7.6 Work with potential-energy curves for a wide variety of systems.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The concept of work (Section 6.1)
- The concept of kinetic energy (Section 6.4)
- The work–kinetic energy theorem (Section 6.4)

The rock climber of Fig. 7.1a does work as she ascends the vertical cliff. So does the mover of Fig. 7.1b as he pushes a heavy chest across the floor. But there's a difference. If the rock climber lets go, down she goes, gaining kinetic energy as she falls. If the mover lets go of the chest, though, he and the chest stay right where they are.

This contrast highlights a distinction between two types of forces, called *conservative* and *nonconservative*. That distinction will help us develop one of the most important principles in physics: **conservation of energy**. The introduction to Chapter 6 briefly mentioned three forms of energy: kinetic energy, potential energy, and internal energy—although there we worked quantitatively only with kinetic energy. Here we'll develop the concept of potential energy and show how it's associated with conservative forces. Nonconservative forces, in contrast, are associated with irreversible transformations of mechanical energy into internal energy. We'll take a brief look at such transformations here and formulate a broad statement of energy conservation. In Chapters 16–19 we'll elaborate on internal energy and see how it's related to temperature, and we'll expand our statement of energy conservation to include not only work but also heat as modes of energy transfer.

How many different energy conversions take place as the Yellowstone River plunges over Yellowstone Falls?



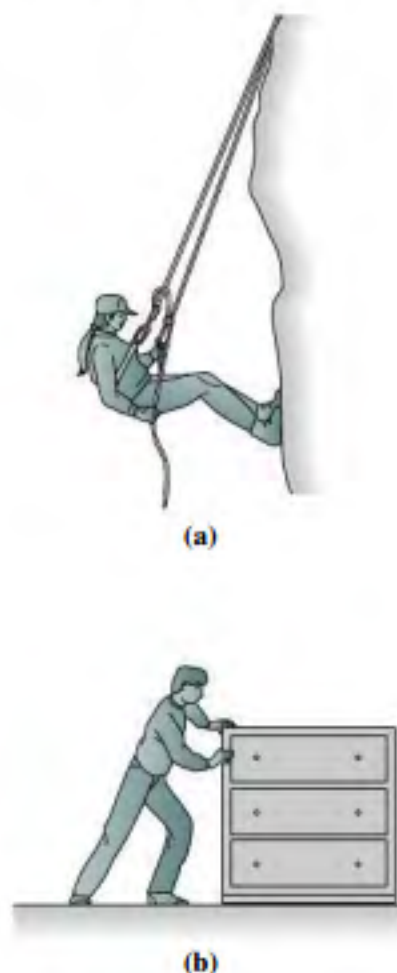


FIGURE 7.1 Both the rock climber and the mover do work, but only the climber can recover that work as kinetic energy.

7.1 Conservative and Nonconservative Forces

LO 7.1 Distinguish conservative from nonconservative forces.

Both the climber and the mover in Fig. 7.1 are doing work against forces—gravity for the climber and friction for the mover. The difference is this: If the climber lets go, the gravitational force “gives back” the energy she supplied by doing work, which then manifests itself as the kinetic energy of her fall. But the frictional force doesn’t “give back” the energy supplied by the mover, in the sense that this energy can’t be recovered as kinetic energy.

A **conservative force** is a force like gravity or a spring that “gives back” energy that was transferred by doing work. A more precise description of what it means for a force to be conservative follows from considering the work involved as an object moves over a closed path—one that ends where it started. Suppose our rock climber ascends a cliff of height h and then descends to her starting point. As she climbs, the gravitational force is directed opposite to her motion, so gravity does negative work $-mgh$ (recall Fig. 6.4). When she descends, the gravitational force is in the same direction as her motion, so the gravitational work is $+mgh$. The total work that gravity does on the climber as she traverses the closed path up and down the cliff is therefore zero.

Now consider the mover in Fig. 7.1b. Suppose he pushes the chest across a room, discovers it’s the wrong room, and pushes it back to the door. Like the climber, the mover and chest describe a closed path. But the frictional force always acts to oppose the chest’s motion. The mover needs to apply a force to oppose friction, so he ends up doing positive work as he crosses the room in both directions. Therefore, the total work he does is positive even when he moves the chest over a closed path. That’s the nature of the frictional force, and, in contrast to the conservative gravitational force the climber had to deal with, this makes friction a **nonconservative force**.

Our two examples clearly distinguish between conservative and nonconservative forces: Only for *conservative* forces is the work done in moving around a closed path equal to zero. This fact provides a precise definition of a conservative force:

When the total work done by a force $\vec{F}$ acting as an object moves over any closed path is zero, then the force is conservative.

This definition suggests a related property of conservative forces. Suppose a conservative force acts on an object in the region shown in Fig. 7.2. Move the object along the straight path from point A to point B , and designate the work done by the conservative force as W_{AB} . Since the work done over any closed path is zero, the work W_{BA} done in moving back from B to A must be $-W_{AB}$, whether we return along the straight path, the curved path, or any other path. So, going from A to B involves work W_{AB} , regardless of the path taken. In other words:

The work done by a conservative force in moving between two points is independent of the path taken.

Important examples of conservative forces include gravity and the static electric force. The force of an ideal spring—fundamentally an electric force—is also conservative. Nonconservative forces include friction, drag forces, and the electric force in the presence of time-varying magnetic effects, which we’ll encounter in Chapter 27.

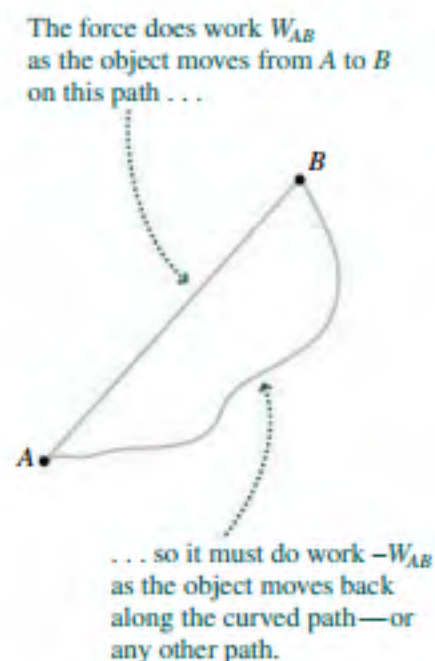


FIGURE 7.2 The work done by a conservative force is independent of path.

GOT IT?

7.1 Suppose it takes the same amount of work to push a trunk straight across a rough floor as it does to lift a weight the same distance straight upward. If both trunk and weight are moved instead on identically shaped curved paths between the same two points as before, is the work (a) still the same for both, (b) greater for the weight, or (c) greater for the trunk?

Equation 6.11 introduced a general expression for the work done when an object moves along an arbitrary path, subject to a force that might vary with position: $W = \int_A^B \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}$,

where A and B are the endpoints of the path. For a closed path, the two endpoints are the same, which we designate by putting a circle on the integral sign. Thus, our definition of a conservative force can be written mathematically as

$$\oint \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r} = 0 \quad (\text{conservative force}) \quad (7.1)$$

Following Fig. 7.2, we can equally well describe a conservative force with the statement

that $\int_A^B \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}$ is independent of the path taken between the endpoints A and B .

7.2 Potential Energy

LO 7.2 Calculate potential energy, especially with gravity and springs.

The climber in Fig. 7.1a did work ascending the cliff, and the energy transferred as she did that work was somehow stored, in that she could get it back in the form of kinetic energy. She's acutely aware of that stored energy, since it gives her the potential for a dangerous fall. *Potential* is an appropriate word here: The stored energy is **potential energy**, in the sense that it has the potential to be converted into kinetic energy.

We'll give potential energy the symbol U , and we begin by defining *changes* in potential energy. Specifically:

The change ΔU_{AB} in potential energy associated with a conservative force is the negative of the work done by that force as it acts over any path from point A to point B :

ΔU_{AB} is the change in an object's potential energy as it moves from point A to point B under the influence of a conservative force $\vec{F}$.

$\vec{F}$ is the conservative force. $d\vec{r}$ is an infinitesimal displacement.

$$\Delta U_{AB} = - \underbrace{\int_A^B \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}}_{\text{(potential energy)}} \quad (7.2)$$

The minus sign arises because an *increase* in potential energy results when the object moves *against* the conservative force, in which case the force does negative work.

Equation 6.11 showed that this integral is the work done *by* the conservative force.

The annotations on Equation 7.2 explain the minus sign. But another way to think about this is to consider the work *you* would have to do in order to counter a conservative force like gravity. If $\vec{F}$ is the conservative force (e.g., gravity, pointing down), then you'd have

to apply a force $-\vec{F}$ (e.g., upward), and the work you do would be $\int_A^B (-\vec{F}) \cdot d\vec{r}$ or $-\int_A^B \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}$, which is the right-hand side of Equation 7.2. Your work represents a transfer

of energy, which here ends up stored as potential energy. So another way of interpreting Equation 7.2 is to say that the change in potential energy is equal to the work an external agent would have to do in just countering a conservative force.

Changes in potential energy are all that ever matter physically; the actual value of potential energy is meaningless. Often, though, it's convenient to establish a reference point

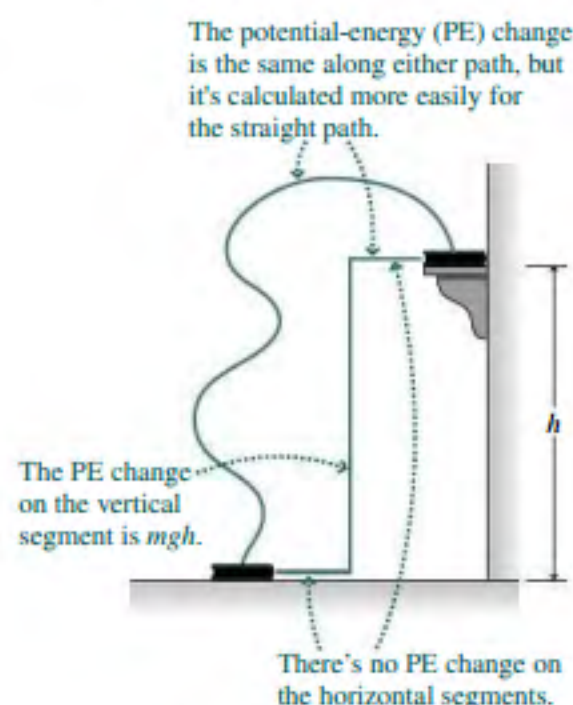


FIGURE 7.3 A good choice of path makes it easier to calculate the potential-energy change.

at which the potential energy is defined to be zero. When we say “the potential energy U ,” we really mean the potential-energy difference ΔU between that reference point and whatever other point we’re considering. Our rock climber, for example, might find it convenient to take the zero of potential energy at the base of the cliff. But the choice is purely for convenience; only potential-energy *differences* really matter. We’ll often drop the subscript AB and write simply ΔU for a potential-energy difference. Keeping the subscript is important, though, when we need to be clear about whether we’re going from A to B or from B to A.

Equation 7.2 is a completely general definition of potential energy, applicable in all circumstances. Often, though, we can consider a path where force and displacement are parallel (or antiparallel). Then Equation 7.2 simplifies to

$$\Delta U = - \int_{x_1}^{x_2} F(x) dx \quad (7.2a)$$

where x_1 and x_2 are the starting and ending points on the x -axis, taken to coincide with the path. When the force is constant, this equation simplifies further to

$$\Delta U = -F(x_2 - x_1) \quad (7.2b)$$



UNDERSTAND YOUR EQUATIONS Equation 7.2b provides a very simple expression for potential-energy changes, but it applies *only* when the force is constant. Equation 7.2b is a special case of Equation 7.2a that follows because a constant force can be taken outside the integral.

Gravitational Potential Energy

We’re frequently moving things up and down, causing changes in potential energy. Figure 7.3 shows two possible paths for a book that’s lifted from the floor to a shelf of height h . Since the gravitational force is conservative, we can use either path to calculate the potential-energy change. It’s easiest to use the path consisting of straight segments. No work or potential-energy change occurs on the horizontal segments since the gravitational force is perpendicular to the motion. For the vertical lift, the force of gravity is constant and Equation 7.2b immediately gives $\Delta U = mgh$, where the minus sign in Equation 7.2b cancels with the minus sign associated with the *downward* direction of gravity. This result is quite general: When a mass m undergoes a vertical displacement Δy near Earth’s surface, gravitational potential energy changes by

$$\Delta U = mg \Delta y \quad (\text{gravitational potential energy}) \quad (7.3)$$

The quantity Δy can be positive or negative, depending on whether the object moves up or down; correspondingly, the potential energy can either increase or decrease. We emphasize that Equation 7.3 applies *near Earth’s surface*—that is, for distances small compared with Earth’s radius. That assumption allows us to treat the gravitational force as constant over the path. We’ll explore the more general case in Chapter 8.

We’ve found the *change* in potential energy associated with raising the book, but what about the potential energy itself? That depends on where we define the zero of potential energy. If we choose $U = 0$ at the floor, then $U = mgh$ on the shelf. But we could just as well take $U = 0$ at the shelf; then potential energy when the book is on the floor would be $-mgh$. Negative potential energies arise frequently, and that’s OK because only *differences* in potential energy really matter. Figure 7.4 shows a plot of potential energy versus height with $U = 0$ taken at the floor. The *linear* increase in potential energy with height reflects the *constant* gravitational force.

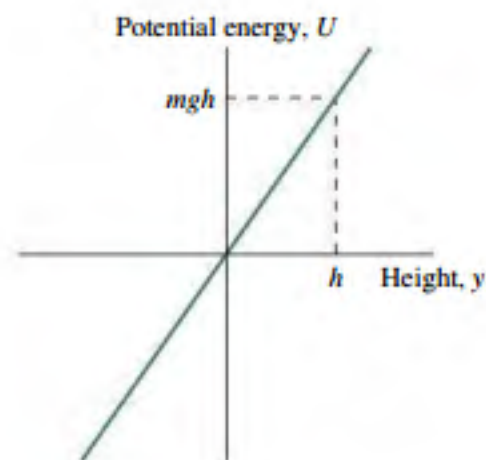


FIGURE 7.4 Gravitational force is constant, so potential energy increases linearly with height.

Elastic Potential Energy

When you stretch or compress a spring or other elastic object, you do work against the spring force, and that work ends up stored as **elastic potential energy**. For an ideal spring, the force is $F = -kx$, where x is the distance the spring is stretched from equilibrium, and

EXAMPLE 7.1 Gravitational Potential Energy: Riding the Elevator

A 55-kg engineer leaves her office on the 33rd floor of a skyscraper and takes an elevator up to the 59th floor. Later she descends to street level. If the engineer chooses the zero of potential energy at her office and if the distance from one floor to the next is 3.5 m, what's the potential energy when the engineer is (a) in her office, (b) on the 59th floor, and (c) at street level?

INTERPRET This is a problem about gravitational potential energy relative to a specified point of zero energy—namely, the engineer's office.

DEVELOP Equation 7.3, $\Delta U = mg \Delta y$, gives the change in gravitational energy associated with a change Δy in vertical position. We're given positions in floors, not meters, so we need to convert using the given factor 3.5 m per floor.

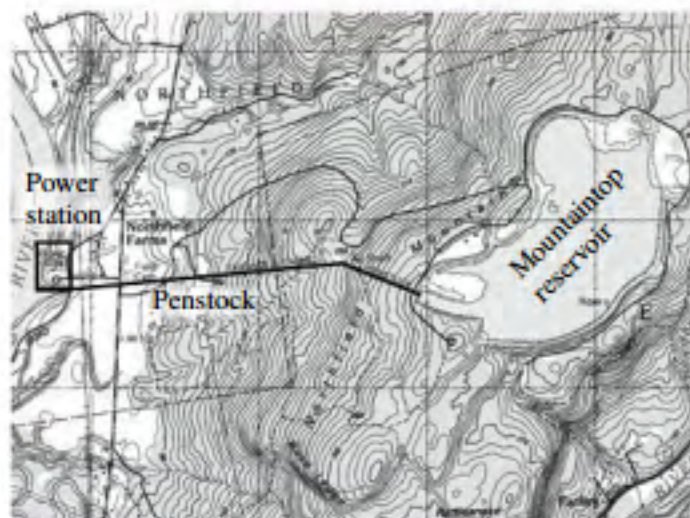
EVALUATE (a) When the engineer is in her office, the potential energy is zero, since she defined it that way. (b) The 59th floor is $59 - 33 = 26$ floors higher, so the potential energy when she's there is

$$U_{59} = mg \Delta y = (55 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(26 \text{ floors})(3.5 \text{ m/floor}) = 49 \text{ kJ}$$

Here we can write U rather than ΔU because we're calculating the potential-energy *change* from the place where $U = 0$. (c) The street level is 32 floors *below* the engineer's office, so

$$U_{\text{street}} = mg \Delta y = (55 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(-32 \text{ floors})(3.5 \text{ m/floor}) = -60 \text{ kJ}$$

ASSESS Makes sense: When the engineer goes *up*, the potential energy relative to her office is positive; when she goes *down*, it's negative. And the distance down is a bit farther, so the magnitude of the change is greater going down.

APPLICATION Pumped Storage

Electricity is a wonderfully versatile form of energy, but it's not easy to store. Large electric power plants are most efficient when operated continuously, yet the demand for power fluctuates. Renewable energy sources like wind and solar vary, not necessarily with demand. Energy storage can help in both cases. Today, the only practical way to store large amounts of excess electrical energy is to convert it to gravitational potential energy. In so-called pumped-storage facilities, surplus electric power pumps water from a lower reservoir to a higher one, thereby increasing gravitational potential energy. When power demand is high, water runs back down, turning the pump motors into generators that produce electricity. The map here shows the Northfield Mountain Pumped Storage Project in Massachusetts, including the mountaintop reservoir, the location of the power station 214 m below on the Deerfield River, and the *penstock*, the pipe that conveys water in both directions between the power station and the reservoir. You can explore this facility quantitatively in Problem 35.

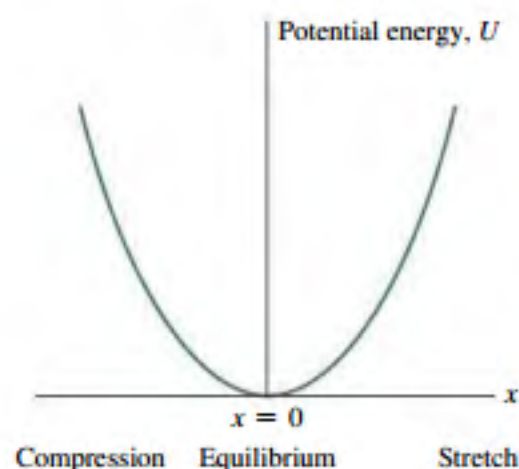


FIGURE 7.5 The potential-energy curve for a spring is a parabola.

the minus sign shows that the force opposes the stretching or compression. Since the force varies with position, we use Equation 7.2a to evaluate the potential energy:

$$\Delta U = - \int_{x_1}^{x_2} F(x) dx = - \int_{x_1}^{x_2} (-kx) dx = \frac{1}{2} kx_2^2 - \frac{1}{2} kx_1^2$$

where x_1 and x_2 are the initial and final values of the stretch. If we take $U = 0$ when $x = 0$ (that is, when the spring is neither stretched nor compressed) then we can use this result to write the potential energy at an arbitrary stretch (or compression) x as

$$U = \frac{1}{2} kx^2 \quad (\text{elastic potential energy}) \quad (7.4)$$

Comparison with Equation 6.10, $W = \frac{1}{2} kx^2$, shows that this is equal to the work done in stretching the spring. Thus the energy transferred by doing work gets stored as potential energy. Figure 7.5 shows potential energy as a function of the stretch or compression of a spring. The *parabolic* shape of the potential-energy curve reflects the *linear* change of the spring force with stretch or compression.

EXAMPLE 7.2 Energy Storage: Springs versus Gasoline

A car's suspension consists of springs with an overall effective spring constant of 120 kN/m. How much would you have to compress the springs to store the same amount of energy as in 1 g of gasoline?

INTERPRET This problem is about the energy stored in a spring, as compared with the chemical energy of gasoline.

DEVELOP Equation 7.4, $U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$, gives a spring's stored energy when it's been compressed a distance x . Here we want that energy to equal the energy in 1 g of gasoline. We can get that value from the "Energy Content of Fuels" table in Appendix C, which lists 44 MJ/kg for gasoline.

EVALUATE At 44 MJ/kg, the energy in 1 g of gasoline is 44 kJ. Setting this equal to the spring energy $\frac{1}{2}kx^2$ and solving for x , we get

$$x = \sqrt{\frac{2U}{k}} = \sqrt{\frac{(2)(44 \text{ kJ})}{120 \text{ kN/m}}} = 86 \text{ cm}$$

ASSESS This answer is absurd. A car's springs couldn't compress anywhere near that far before the underside of the car hit the ground. And 1 g isn't much gasoline. This example shows that springs, though useful energy-storage devices, can't possibly compete with chemical fuels.

EXAMPLE 7.3 Elastic Potential Energy: A Climbing Rope

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Ropes used in rock climbing are "springy" so that they cushion a fall. A particular rope exerts a force $F = -kx + bx^2$, where $k = 223 \text{ N/m}$, $b = 4.10 \text{ N/m}^2$, and x is the stretch. Find the potential energy stored in this rope when it's been stretched 2.62 m, taking $U = 0$ at $x = 0$.

INTERPRET Like Example 7.2, this one is about elastic potential energy. But this one isn't so easy because the rope isn't a simple $F = -kx$ spring for which we already have a potential-energy formula.

DEVELOP Because the rope force varies with stretch, we'll have to integrate. Since force and displacement are in the same direction, we

can use Equation 7.2a, $\Delta U = -\int_{x_1}^{x_2} F(x) dx$. But that's not so much a formula as a strategy for deriving one.

EVALUATE Applying Equation 7.2 to this particular rope, we have

$$\begin{aligned} U &= -\int_{x_1}^{x_2} F(x) dx = -\int_0^x (-kx + bx^2) dx = \frac{1}{2}kx^2 - \frac{1}{3}bx^3 \Big|_0^x \\ &= \frac{1}{2}kx^2 - \frac{1}{3}bx^3 \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(223 \text{ N/m})(2.62 \text{ m})^2 - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)(4.1 \text{ N/m}^2)(2.62 \text{ m})^3 \\ &= 741 \text{ J} \end{aligned}$$

ASSESS This result is about 3% less than the potential energy $U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$ of an ideal spring with the same spring constant. This shows the effect of the extra term $+bx^2$, whose positive sign reduces the restoring force and thus the work needed to stretch the spring.

GOT IT?

7.2 Gravitational force actually decreases with height, but that decrease is negligible near Earth's surface. To account for the decrease, would the exact value for the potential-energy change associated with a height change h be (a) greater than, (b) less than, or (c) equal to mgh , where g is the gravitational acceleration at Earth's surface?

Where's the Stored Energy and What's the System?

In discussing the climber of Fig. 7.1a, the book of Fig. 7.3, and the engineer of Example 7.1, we were careful not to use phrases like "the climber's potential energy," "the potential energy of the book," or "the engineer's potential energy." After all, the climber herself hasn't changed in going from the bottom to the top of the cliff; nor is the book any different after you've returned it to the shelf. So it doesn't make a lot of sense to say that potential energy is somehow a property of these objects. Indeed, the idea of potential energy requires that two (or more) objects interact via a force. In the examples of the climber, the book, and the engineer, that force is gravity—and the pairs of interacting objects are, correspondingly, the climber and Earth, the book and Earth, and the engineer and Earth. So to characterize potential energy, we need in each case to consider a system consisting of at least two objects. In each example the *configuration* of that system changes, because the relative positions of the objects making up the system are altered. In each case, one member of the system—climber, book, or engineer—has moved relative to Earth. So

potential energy is energy associated with the *configuration of a system*. It really makes no sense to talk about the potential energy of a single, structureless object. That's in contrast with kinetic energy, which is associated with the motion of a system that might be as simple as a single object.

So where is potential energy stored? In the system of interacting objects. Potential energy is inherently a property of a system and can't be assigned to individual objects. In the case of gravity, we can go further and say that the energy is stored in the *gravitational field*—a concept that we'll introduce in the next chapter. It's the gravitational field that changes, not the individual objects, when we change the configuration of a system whose components interact via gravity.

What about a spring? We *can* talk about “the potential energy of a spring” because any flexible object, including a spring, necessarily comprises a system of interacting parts. In the case of a spring, the individual molecules in the spring ultimately interact via electric forces, and the associated *electric field* is what changes as the spring stretches or compresses. And, as we'll see quantitatively in Chapter 23, it's in the electric field that the potential energy resides. When we talk about “elastic potential energy” we're really describing potential energy stored in molecular electric fields.

7.3 Conservation of Mechanical Energy

LO 7.3 Use conservation of mechanical energy to solve problems that would be difficult using Newton's second law.

The work–kinetic energy theorem, developed in Section 6.3, shows that the change ΔK in an object's kinetic energy is equal to the net work done on it:

$$\Delta K = W_{\text{net}}$$

Here we'll consider the case where the only forces acting are conservative; then, as our interpretation of Equation 7.2 shows, the work done is the negative of the potential-energy change: $W_{\text{net}} = -\Delta U$. As a result, we have $\Delta K = -\Delta U$, or

$$\Delta K + \Delta U = 0$$

What does this equation tell us? It says that any change ΔK in kinetic energy K must be compensated by an opposite change ΔU in potential energy U in order that the two changes sum to zero. If kinetic energy goes up, then potential energy goes down by the same amount, and vice versa. In other words, the total **mechanical energy**, defined as the sum of kinetic and potential energy, does not change.

Remember that at this point we're considering the case where only conservative forces act. For that case, we've just shown that mechanical energy is conserved. This principle, called **conservation of mechanical energy**, is expressed mathematically in the two equivalent ways we've just discussed:

ΔK and ΔU are changes in kinetic and potential energy, respectively. If one goes up, the other must go down so that there's no overall change in mechanical energy.

The two equations are equivalent. Equation 7.5 talks about *changes* in kinetic and potential energy, while Equation 7.6 talks about the *total* mechanical energy.

$$\Delta K + \Delta U = 0$$

(7.5)

and, equivalently,

$$K + U = \text{constant} = K_0 + U_0$$

(7.6)

(conservation of mechanical energy)

K_0 and U_0 are the kinetic and potential energy at some point. Their sum is the total mechanical energy.

K and U are the kinetic and potential energy at any other point. Their sum doesn't change.

The work–kinetic energy theorem—which itself follows from Newton’s second law—is what lies behind the principle of mechanical energy conservation. Although we derived the work–kinetic energy theorem by considering a single object, the principle of mechanical energy conservation holds for any isolated system of macroscopic objects, no matter how complex, as long as its constituents interact only via conservative forces. Individual constituents of a complex system may exchange kinetic energy as, for example, they undergo collisions. Furthermore, the system’s potential energy may change as the configuration of the system changes—but add all the constituents’ kinetic energies and the potential energy contained in the entire system, and you’ll find that the sum remains unchanged.

Keep in mind that we’re considering here only isolated systems. If energy is transferred to the system from outside, by external forces doing work, then the system’s mechanical energy increases. And if the system does work on its environment, then its mechanical energy decreases. Ultimately, however, energy is always conserved, and if you make the system large enough to encompass all interacting objects, and if those objects interact only via conservative forces, then the system’s mechanical energy will be strictly conserved.

Conservation of mechanical energy is a powerful principle. Throughout physics, from the subatomic realm through practical problems in engineering and on to astrophysics, the principle of energy conservation is widely used in solving problems that would be intractable without it. Here we consider its use in macroscopic systems subject only to conservative forces; later we’ll expand the principle to more general cases.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 7.1

Conservation of Mechanical Energy

When you’re using energy conservation to solve problems, Equation 7.6 basically tells it all. Our IDEA problem-solving strategy adapts well to such problems.

INTERPRET First, interpret the problem to be sure that conservation of mechanical energy applies. Are all the forces conservative? If so, mechanical energy is conserved. Next, identify a point at which you know both the kinetic and the potential energy; then you know the total mechanical energy, which is what’s conserved. If the problem doesn’t do so and it’s not implicit in the equations you use, you may need to identify the zero of potential energy—although that’s your own arbitrary choice. You also need to identify the quantity the problem is asking for and the situation in which it has the value you’re after. The quantity may be the energy itself or a related quantity like height, speed, or spring compression. In some situations, you may have to deal with several types of potential energy—such as gravitational and elastic potential energy—appearing in the same problem.

DEVELOP Draw your object first in the situation where you know the energies and then in the situation that contains the unknown. It’s helpful to draw simple bar charts suggesting the relative sizes of the potential- and kinetic-energy terms; we’ll show you how in several examples. Then you’re ready to set up the quantitative statement of mechanical energy conservation, Equation 7.6: $K + U = K_0 + U_0$. Consider which of the four terms you know or can calculate from the given information. You’ll probably need secondary equations like the expressions for kinetic energy and for various forms of potential energy. Consider how the quantity you’re trying to find is related to an energy.

EVALUATE Write Equation 7.6 for your specific problem, including expressions for kinetic or potential energy that contain the quantity you’re after. Solving is then a matter of algebra.

ASSESS As usual, ask whether your answer makes physical sense. Does it have the right units? Are the numbers reasonable? Do the signs make sense? Is your answer consistent with the bar charts in your drawing?

EXAMPLE 7.4 Energy Conservation: Tranquilizing an Elephant

A biologist uses a spring-loaded gun to shoot tranquilizer darts into an elephant. The gun's spring has $k = 940 \text{ N/m}$ and is compressed a distance $x_0 = 25 \text{ cm}$ before firing a 38-g dart. Assuming the gun is pointed horizontally, at what speed does the dart leave the gun?

INTERPRET We're dealing with a spring, assumed ideal, so conservation of mechanical energy applies. We identify the initial state—dart at rest, spring fully compressed—as the point where we know both kinetic and potential energy. The state we're then interested in is when the dart just leaves the gun, when potential energy has been converted to kinetic energy and before gravity has changed its vertical position.

DEVELOP In Fig. 7.6 we've sketched the two states, giving the potential and kinetic energy for each. We've also sketched bar graphs showing the relative sizes of the energies. To use the statement of energy conservation, Equation 7.6, we also need expressions for the kinetic energy ($\frac{1}{2}mv^2$) and the spring potential energy ($\frac{1}{2}kx^2$; Equation 7.4). Incidentally, using Equation 7.4 implicitly sets the zero of elastic potential energy when the spring is in its equilibrium position. We might as well set the zero of gravitational energy at the height of the gun, since there's no change in the dart's vertical position between our initial and final states.

EVALUATE We're now ready to write Equation 7.6, $K + U = K_0 + U_0$. We know three of the terms in this equation: The initial kinetic energy K_0 is 0, since the dart is initially at rest. The initial potential energy is that of the compressed spring, $U_0 = \frac{1}{2}kx_0^2$. The final potential energy is $U = 0$ because the spring is now in its equilibrium position and we've taken the gravitational potential energy to be zero. What we don't know is the final kinetic energy, but we do know that it's given by $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$. So Equation 7.6 becomes $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 + 0 = 0 + \frac{1}{2}kx_0^2$, which solves to give

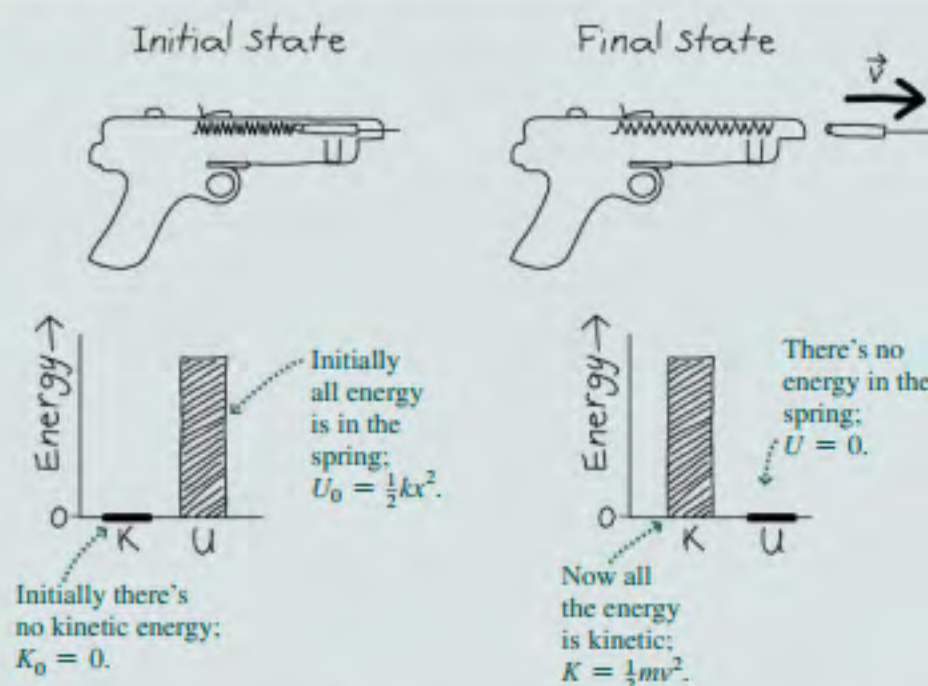


FIGURE 7.6 Our sketches for Example 7.4, showing bar charts for the initial and final states.

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}x_0 = \left(\sqrt{\frac{940 \text{ N/m}}{0.038 \text{ kg}}}\right)(0.25 \text{ m}) = 39 \text{ m/s}$$

ASSESS Take a look at the answer in algebraic form; it says that a stiffer spring or a greater compression will give a higher dart speed. Increasing the dart mass, on the other hand, will decrease the speed. All this makes good physical sense. And the outcome shows quantitatively what our bar charts suggest—that the dart's energy starts out all potential and ends up all kinetic.

Example 7.4 shows the power of the conservation-of-energy principle. If you had tried to find the answer using Newton's law, you would have been stymied by the fact that the spring force and thus the acceleration of the dart vary continuously. But you don't need to worry about those details; all you want is the final speed, and energy conservation gets you there, shortcutting the detailed application of $\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$.

EXAMPLE 7.5 Conservation of Energy: A Spring and Gravity
Worked Example with Variation Problems

The spring in Fig. 7.7 has $k = 140 \text{ N/m}$. A 50-g block is placed against the spring, which is compressed 11 cm. When the block is released, how high up the slope does it rise? Neglect friction.

INTERPRET This example is similar to Example 7.4, but now we have changes in both elastic and gravitational potential energy. Since friction is negligible, we can consider that only conservative forces act, in which case we can apply conservation of mechanical energy. We identify the initial state as the block at rest against the compressed spring; the final state is the block momentarily at rest

at its topmost point on the slope. We'll take the zero of gravitational potential energy at the bottom.

DEVELOP Figure 7.7 shows the initial and final states, along with bar charts for each. We've drawn separate bars for the spring and gravitational potential energies, U_s and U_g . Now apply Equation 7.6, $K + U = K_0 + U_0$.

EVALUATE In both states the block is at rest, so kinetic energy is zero. In the initial state we know the potential energy U_0 : It's the spring

(continued)

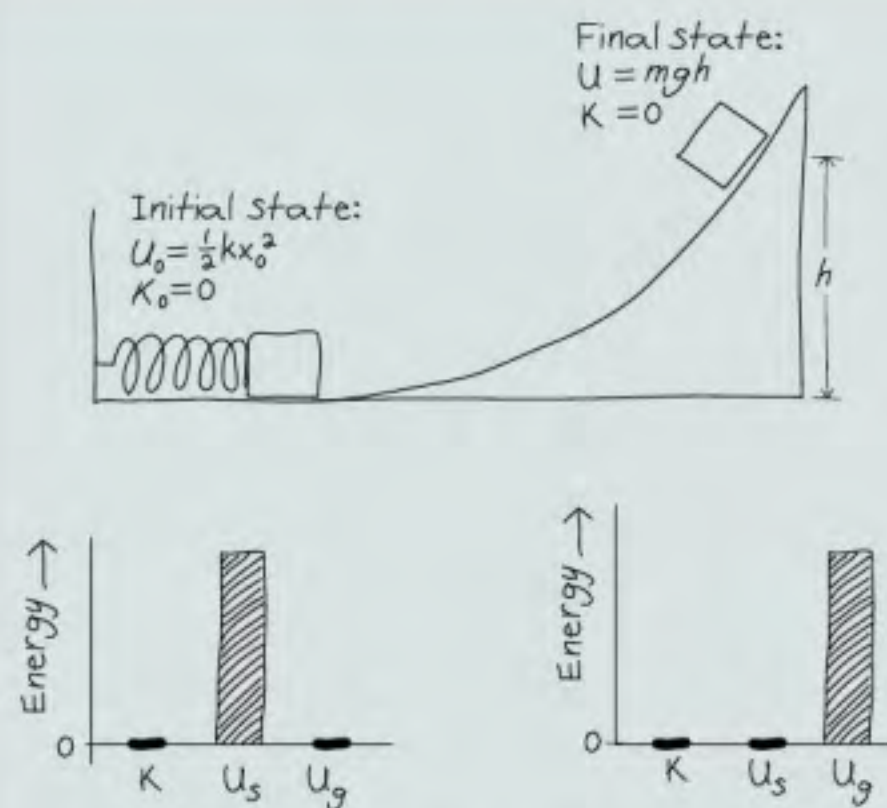


FIGURE 7.7 Our sketches for Example 7.5.

energy $\frac{1}{2} kx_0^2$. We don't know the final-state potential energy, but we do know that it's gravitational energy—and with the zero of potential energy at the bottom, it's $U = mgh$. With $K = K_0 = 0$, $U_0 = \frac{1}{2} kx_0^2$, and $U = mgh$, Equation 7.6 reads $0 + mgh = 0 + \frac{1}{2} kx_0^2$. We then solve for the unknown h to get

$$h = \frac{kx_0^2}{2mg} = \frac{(140 \text{ N/m})(0.11 \text{ m})^2}{(2)(0.050 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)} = 1.7 \text{ m}$$

ASSESS Again, the answer in algebraic form makes sense; the stiffer the spring or the more it's compressed, the higher the block will go. But if the block is more massive or gravity is stronger, then the block won't get as far.



SAVE STEPS You might be tempted to solve first for the block's speed when it leaves the spring and then equate $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ to mgh to find the height. You could—but conservation of mechanical energy shortcuts all the details, getting you right from the initial to the final state. As long as energy is conserved, you don't need to worry about what happens in between.

GOT IT?

7.3 A bowling ball is tied to the end of a long rope and suspended from the ceiling. A student stands at one side of the room and holds the ball to her nose, then releases it from rest. Should she duck as it swings back? Explain.



7.4 Nonconservative Forces

LO 7.4 Evaluate situations where nonconservative forces result in loss of mechanical energy.

In the examples in Section 7.3, we assumed that mechanical energy was strictly conserved. In the everyday world of friction and other nonconservative forces, however, conservation of mechanical energy is sometimes a reasonable approximation and sometimes not. When it's not, we have to consider energy transformations associated with nonconservative forces.

Friction is a nonconservative force. Recall from Chapter 5 that friction is actually a complex phenomenon, involving the making and breaking of microscopic bonds between two surfaces in contact (review Fig. 5.18). Associated with these bonds are myriad force application points, and different points may undergo different displacements depending on the strengths of the temporary bonds. For these reasons it's difficult to calculate, or even to define unambiguously, the work done by friction.

What friction and other nonconservative forces do, however, is unambiguous: They convert the kinetic energy of macroscopic objects into kinetic energy associated with the random motions of individual molecules. Although we're still talking about kinetic energy, there's a huge difference between the kinetic energy of a macroscopic object like a moving car, with all its parts participating in a common motion, versus the random motions of molecules going helter-skelter in every direction with a range of speeds. We'll explore that difference in Chapter 19, where we'll find that, among other profound implications, it places serious constraints on our ability to extract useful energy from fuels.

You'll also see, in Chapter 18, that molecular energy may include potential energy associated with stretching of spring-like molecular bonds. The combination of molecular kinetic and potential energy is called **internal energy** or **thermal energy**, and we give it the symbol E_{int} . Here "internal" implies that this energy is contained within an object and that it isn't as obvious as the kinetic energy associated with overall motion of the entire object. The alternative term "thermal" hints that internal energy is associated with temperature, heat, and related phenomena. We'll see in Chapters 16–19 that temperature is a measure of the internal energy per molecule, and that what you probably think of as "heat" is actually internal energy. In physics, "heat" has a very specific meaning: It designates another way of transferring energy to a system, in addition to the mechanical work we've considered in Chapters 6 and 7.

So friction and other nonconservative forces convert mechanical energy into internal energy. How much internal energy? Both theory and experiment give a simple answer: The amount of mechanical energy converted to internal energy is given by the product of the nonconservative force with the distance over which it acts. With friction, that means $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = f_k d$, where d is the distance over which the frictional force acts. (Here we write *kinetic* friction f_k explicitly because *static* friction f_s does not convert mechanical energy to internal energy because there's no relative motion involved.) Since the increase in internal energy comes at the expense of mechanical energy $K + U$, we can write

$$\Delta K + \Delta U = -\Delta E_{\text{int}} = -f_k d \quad (7.7)$$

Example 7.6 describes a system in which friction converts mechanical energy to internal energy.

GOT IT?

7.4 For which of the following systems is (1) mechanical energy conserved and (2) total energy conserved? (a) the system is isolated, and all forces among its constituents are conservative; (b) the system is not isolated, and work is done on it by external forces; (c) the system is isolated, and some forces among its constituents are not conservative

EXAMPLE 7.6 Nonconservative Forces: A Sliding Block

A block of mass m is launched from a spring of constant k that's initially compressed a distance x_0 . After leaving the spring, the block slides on a horizontal surface with frictional coefficient μ . Find an expression for the distance the block slides before coming to rest.

INTERPRET The presence of friction means that mechanical energy isn't conserved. But we can still identify the kinetic and

potential energy in the initial state: The kinetic energy is zero and the potential energy is that of the spring. In the final state, there's no mechanical energy at all. The nonconservative frictional force converts the block's mechanical energy into internal energy of the block and the surface it's sliding on. The block comes to rest when all its mechanical energy has been converted.

(continued)

DEVELOP Figure 7.8 shows the situation. With $K_0 = 0$, we determine the total initial energy from Equation 7.4, $U_0 = \frac{1}{2}kx_0^2$. As the block slides a distance d , Equation 7.7 shows that the frictional force converts mechanical energy equal to $f_k d$ into internal energy. All the mechanical energy will be gone, therefore, when $f_k d = \frac{1}{2}kx_0^2$. Here the frictional force has magnitude $f_k = \mu n = \mu mg$, where in this case of a horizontal surface the normal force n has the same magnitude as the weight mg . So our statement that all the mechanical energy gets converted to internal energy becomes $\frac{1}{2}kx_0^2 = \mu mgd$.

EVALUATE We solve this equation for the unknown distance d to get $d = kx_0^2/2\mu mg$. Since we weren't given numbers, there's nothing further to evaluate.

ASSESS Make sense? The stiffer the spring or the more it's compressed, the farther the block goes. The greater the friction or the normal force mg , the sooner the block stops. If $\mu = 0$, mechanical energy is once again conserved; then our result shows that the block would slide forever.

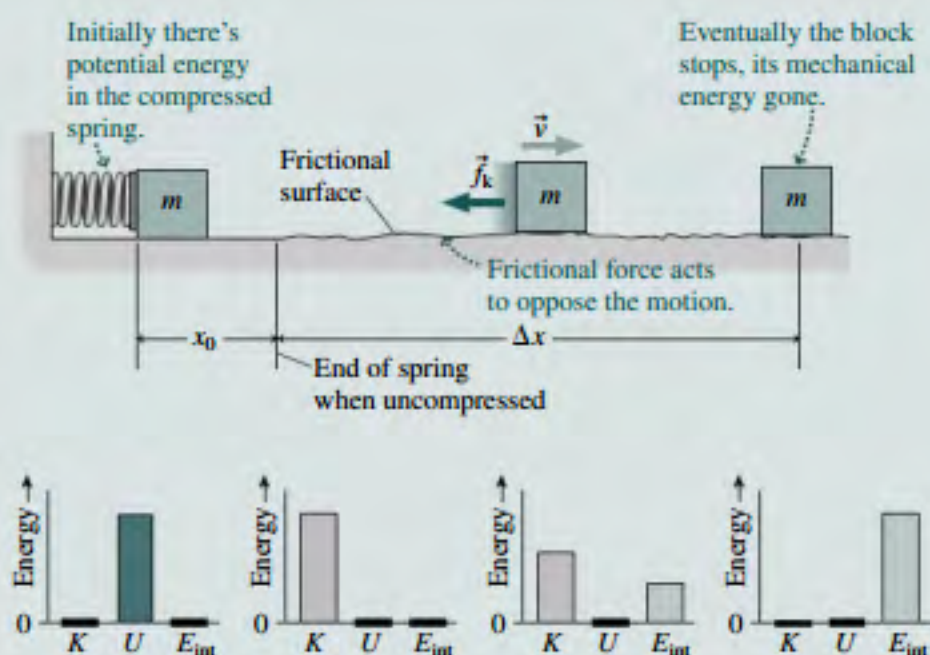


FIGURE 7.8 Intermediate bar charts show gradual conversion of mechanical energy into internal energy.

7.5 Conservation of Energy

LO 7.5 Distinguish internal energy from mechanical energy.

We often speak of energy being “lost” due to friction, or to air resistance, or to electrical resistance in power transmission. But that energy isn’t really lost; instead, as we’ve just seen for friction, it’s converted to internal energy. Physically, the internal energy manifests itself by warming the system. So the energy really is still there; it’s just that we can’t get it back as the kinetic energy of macroscopic objects.

Accounting for internal energy leads to a broader statement of energy conservation. Rearranging the first equality of Equation 7.7 lets us write

$$\Delta K + \Delta U + \Delta E_{\text{int}} = 0$$

This equation shows that the sum of the kinetic, potential, and internal energy of an isolated system doesn’t change even though energy may be converted among these three different forms. You can see this conservation of energy graphically in Fig. 7.8, which plots all three forms of energy for the situation of Example 7.6.

So far we’ve considered only isolated systems, in which all forces are internal to the system. For Example 7.6 to be about an isolated system, for instance, that system had to include the spring, the block, and the surface on which the block slides. What if a system isn’t isolated? Then external forces may do work on it, increasing its energy. Or the system may do work on its environment, decreasing its energy. In that case we can generalize Equation 7.7 to read

$$\Delta K + \Delta U + \Delta E_{\text{int}} = W_{\text{ext}} \quad (7.8)$$

where W_{ext} is the work done on the system by forces acting from outside. If W_{ext} is positive, then this external work adds energy to the system; if it’s negative, then the system does work on its surroundings, and its total energy decreases. Recall that doing work is the *mechanical* means of transferring energy; in Chapters 16–18 we’ll introduce *heat* as a nonmechanical energy-transfer mechanism, and we’ll develop a statement like Equation 7.8 that includes energy transfers by both work and heat.

Energy Conservation: The Big Picture

So far we’ve considered kinetic energy, potential energy, and internal energy, and we’ve explored energy transfer by mechanical work and by dissipative forces like friction.

We've also hinted at energy transfer by heat, to be defined in Chapter 16. But there are other forms of energy, and other energy-transfer mechanisms. In Part 3, you'll explore electromagnetism, and you'll see how energy can be stored in both electric and magnetic fields; their combination into electromagnetic waves results in energy transfer by *electromagnetic radiation*—the process that delivers life-sustaining energy from Sun to Earth and that also carries your cell phone conversations and data. Electromagnetic fields interact with matter, so energy transfers among electromagnetic, mechanical, and internal energy are important processes in the everyday physics of both natural and technological systems. But again, for any isolated system, such transfers only interchange *types* of energy and don't change the total *amount* of energy. Energy, it seems, is strictly conserved.

In Newtonian physics, conservation of energy stands alongside the equally fundamental principle of conservation of mass (the statement that the total mass of an isolated system can't change). A closer look, however, shows that neither principle stands by itself. If you measure precisely enough the mass of a system before it emits energy, and again afterward, you'll find that the mass has decreased. Einstein's equation $E = mc^2$ describes this effect, which ultimately shows that mass and energy are interchangeable. So Einstein replaces the separate conservation laws for mass and energy with a single statement: **conservation of mass-energy**. You'll see how mass-energy interchangeability arises when we study relativity in Chapter 33. Until then, we'll be dealing in the realm of Newtonian physics, where it's an excellent approximation to assume that energy and mass are separately conserved.

GOT IT?

7.5 Consider Earth and its atmosphere as a system. Which of the following processes conserves the total energy of this system? (a) a volcano erupts, spewing hot gases and particulate matter high into the atmosphere; (b) a small asteroid plunges into Earth's atmosphere, heating and exploding high over the planet; (c) over geologic time, two continents collide, and the one that is subducted under the other heats up and undergoes melting; (d) a solar flare delivers high-energy particles to Earth's upper atmosphere, lighting the atmosphere with colorful auroras; (e) a hurricane revs up its winds, extracting energy from water vapor evaporated from warm tropical seas; (f) coal burns in numerous power plants, and uranium fissions in nuclear reactors, with both processes sending electrical energy into the world's power grids and dumping warmed water into the environment

7.6 Potential-Energy Curves

LO 7.6 Work with potential-energy curves for a wide variety of systems.

Figure 7.9 shows a frictionless roller-coaster track. How fast must a car be coasting at point A if it's to reach point D? Conservation of mechanical energy provides the answer. To get to D, the car must clear peak C. Clearing C requires that the total energy exceed the potential energy at C; that is, $\frac{1}{2}mv_A^2 + mgh_A > mgh_C$, where we've taken the zero of potential energy with the car at the bottom of the track. Solving for v_A gives $v_A > \sqrt{2g(h_C - h_A)}$. If v_A satisfies this inequality, the car will reach C with some kinetic energy remaining and will coast over the peak.

Figure 7.9 is a drawing of the actual roller-coaster track. But because gravitational potential energy is directly proportional to height, it's also a plot of potential energy versus position: a **potential-energy curve**. Conceptual Example 7.1 shows how we can study the car's motion by plotting total energy on the same graph as the potential-energy curve.

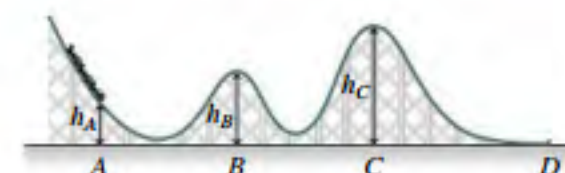


FIGURE 7.9 A roller-coaster track.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 7.1 Potential-Energy Curves

Figure 7.10 plots potential energy for our roller-coaster system, along with three possible values for the total mechanical energy. Since mechanical energy is conserved in the absence of nonconservative forces, the total-energy curve is a horizontal line. Use these graphs to describe the motion of a roller-coaster car, initially at point A and moving to the right.

EVALUATE We're assuming there are no nonconservative forces (an approximation for a real roller coaster), so mechanical energy

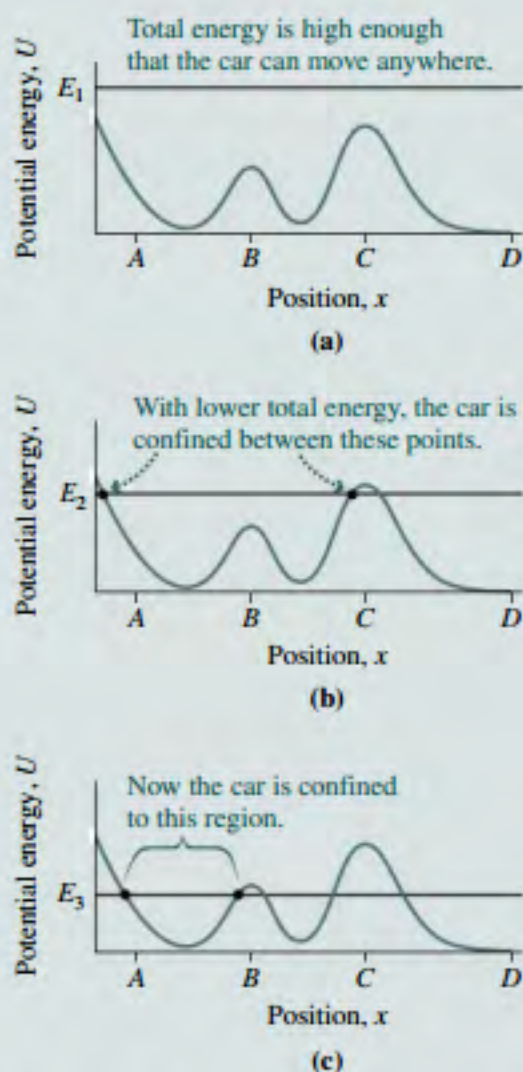


FIGURE 7.10 Potential and total energy for a roller coaster.

is conserved. In each figure, the sum of kinetic and potential energy therefore remains equal to the value set by the line indicating the total energy. When the roller-coaster car rises, potential energy increases and kinetic energy consequently decreases. But as long as potential energy remains below the total energy, the car still has kinetic energy and is still moving. Anywhere potential energy equals the total energy, the car has no kinetic energy and is momentarily at rest.

In Fig. 7.10a the car's total energy exceeds the maximum potential energy. Therefore, it can move anywhere from its initial position at A. Since it's initially moving to the right, it will clear peaks B and C and will end up at D still moving to the right—and, since D is lower than A, it will be moving faster than it was at A.

In Fig. 7.10b the highest peak in the potential-energy curve exceeds the total energy; so does the very leftmost portion of the curve. Therefore, the car will move rightward from A, clearing peak B, but will come to a stop just before peak C, a so-called **turning point** where potential energy equals the total energy. Then it will roll back down to the left, again clearing peak B and climbing to another turning point where the potential-energy curve and total-energy line again intersect. Absent friction, it will run back and forth between the two turning points.

In Fig. 7.10c the total energy is lower, and the car can't clear peak B. So now it will run back and forth between the two turning points we've marked.

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: The higher the total energy, the larger the extent of the car's allowed motion. That's because, for a given potential energy, the car has more energy available in the form of kinetic energy.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Find a condition on the speed at A that will allow the car to move beyond peak B.

EVALUATE With total energy equal to U_B , the car could just barely clear peak B. The initial energy is $\frac{1}{2}mv_A^2 + mgh_A$, where v_A and h_A are the car's speed and height at A, and where we've taken the zero of potential energy at the bottom of the curve. Requiring that this quantity exceed $U_B = mgh_B$ then gives $v_A > \sqrt{2g(h_B - h_A)}$.

Even though the car in Figs. 7.10b and c can't get to D, the total energy still exceeds the potential energy at D. But the car is blocked from reaching D by the **potential barrier** of peak C. We say that it's **trapped** in a **potential well** between its turning points.

Potential-energy curves are useful even with nongravitational forces where there's no direct correspondence with hills and valleys. The terminology used here—potential barriers, wells, and trapping—remains appropriate in such cases and indeed is widely used throughout physics.

Figure 7.11 shows the potential energy of a system comprising a pair of hydrogen atoms, as a function of their separation. This energy is associated with attractive and repulsive electrical forces involving the electrons and the nuclei of the two atoms. The potential-energy curve exhibits a potential well, showing that the atoms can form a **bound system** in which they're unable to separate fully. That bound system is a hydrogen molecule (H_2). The minimum energy, -7.6×10^{-19} J, corresponds to the molecule's equilibrium separation of 0.074 nm. It's convenient to define the zero of potential energy when the atoms are infinitely far apart; Fig. 7.11 then shows that any total energy less than zero results in a bound system. But if the total energy is greater than zero, the atoms are free to move arbitrarily far apart, so they don't form a molecule.

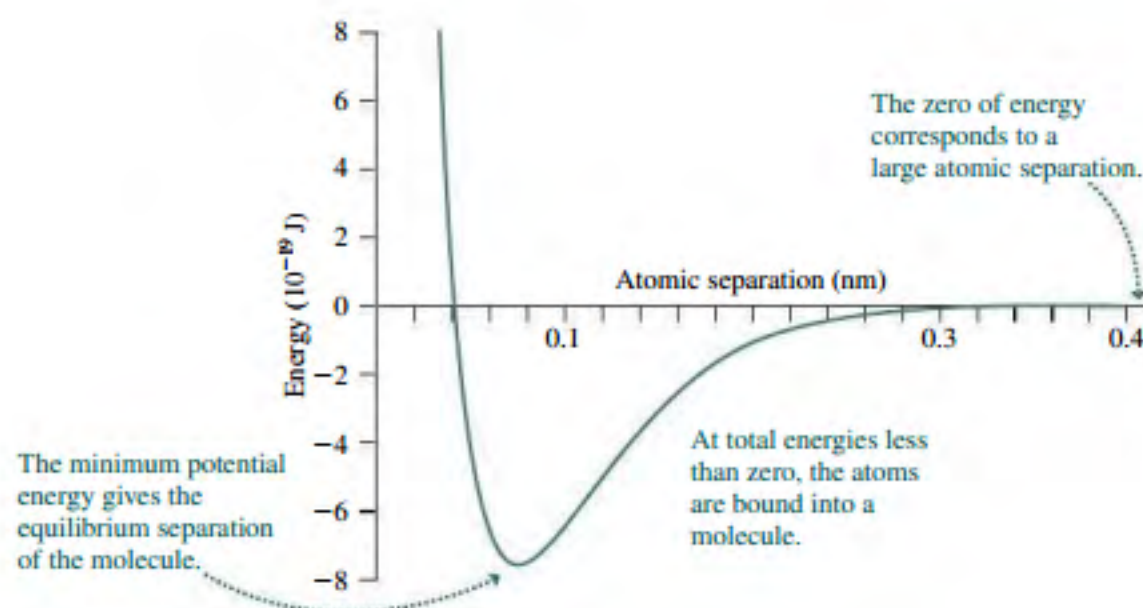


FIGURE 7.11 Potential-energy curve for two hydrogen atoms.

EXAMPLE 7.7 Molecular Energy: Finding Atomic Separation

Very near the bottom of the potential well in Fig. 7.11, the potential energy of the two-atom system is given approximately by $U = U_0 + a(x - x_0)^2$, where $U_0 = -0.760$ aJ, $a = 286$ aJ/nm², and $x_0 = 0.0741$ nm is the equilibrium separation. What range of atomic separations is allowed if the total energy is -0.717 aJ?

INTERPRET This problem sounds complicated, with strange units and talk of molecular energies. But it's about just what's shown in Figs. 7.10 and 7.11. Specifically, we're given the total energy and asked to find the turning points—the points where the line representing total energy intersects the potential-energy curve. If the units look strange, remember the SI prefixes (there's a table inside the front cover), which we use to avoid writing large powers of 10. Here 1 aJ $= 10^{-18}$ J and 1 nm $= 10^{-9}$ m.

DEVELOP Figure 7.12 is a plot of the potential-energy curve from the function we've been given. The straight line represents the total energy E . The turning points are the values of atomic separation where the two curves intersect. We could read them off the graph, or we can solve algebraically by setting the total energy equal to the potential energy.

EVALUATE With the potential energy given by $U = U_0 + a(x - x_0)^2$ and the total energy E , the two turning points occur when $E = U_0 + a(x - x_0)^2$. We could solve directly for x , but then we'd have to use the quadratic formula. Solving for $x - x_0$ is easier:

$$\begin{aligned} x - x_0 &= \pm \sqrt{\frac{E - U_0}{a}} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{-0.717 \text{ aJ} - (-0.760 \text{ aJ})}{286 \text{ aJ/nm}^2}} \\ &= \pm 0.0123 \text{ nm} \end{aligned}$$

Then the turning points are at $x_0 \pm 0.0123$ nm—namely, 0.0864 nm and 0.0618 nm.

ASSESS Make sense? A look at Fig. 7.12 shows that we've correctly located the turning points. The fact that its potential-energy curve is parabolic (like a spring's $U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$) shows that the molecule can be modeled approximately as two atoms joined by a spring. Chemists frequently use such models and even talk of the "spring constant" of the bond joining atoms into a molecule.

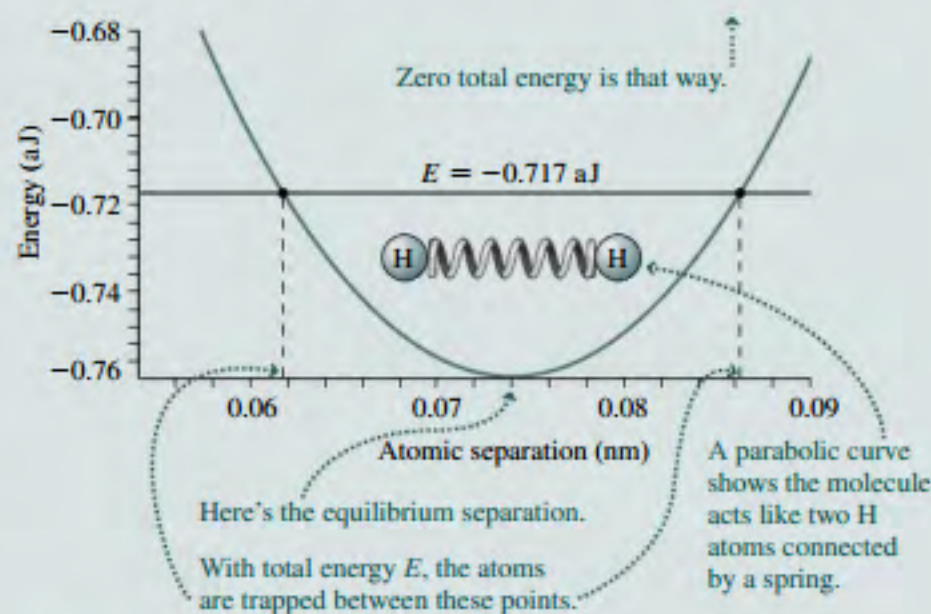


FIGURE 7.12 Analyzing the hydrogen molecule.

Force and Potential Energy

The roller-coaster track in Fig. 7.9 traces the potential-energy curve for a car on the track. But it also shows the force acting to accelerate the car: Where the graph is steep—that is, where the potential energy is changing rapidly—the force is greatest. At the peaks and valleys, the force is zero. So it's the *slope* of the potential-energy curve that tells us about the force (Fig. 7.13).

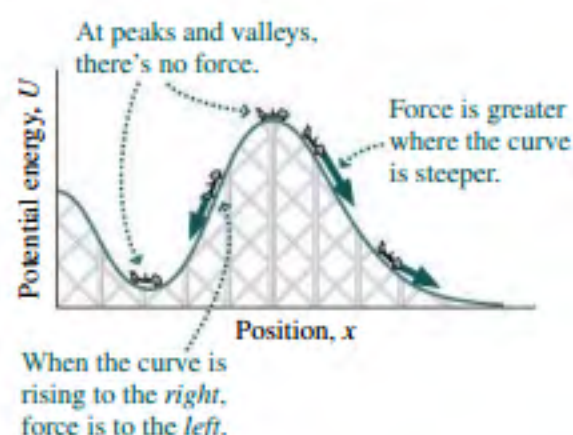


FIGURE 7.13 Force depends on the slope of the potential-energy curve.

Just how strong is this force? Consider a small change Δx , so small that the force is essentially constant over this distance. Then we can use Equation 7.2b to write $\Delta U = -F_x \Delta x$, or $F_x = -\Delta U/\Delta x$. In the limit $\Delta x \rightarrow 0$, $\Delta U/\Delta x$ becomes the derivative, and we have

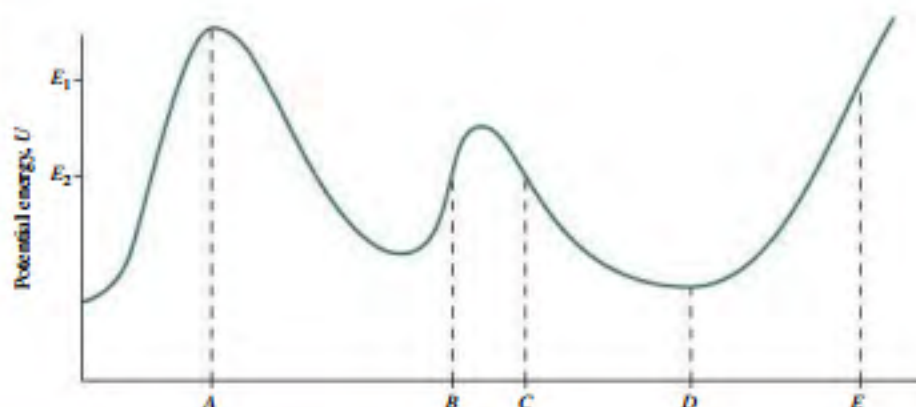
$$F_x = -\frac{dU}{dx} \quad (7.9)$$

This equation makes mathematical as well as physical sense. We've already written potential energy as the *integral* of force over distance, so it's no surprise that force is the *derivative* of potential energy. Equation 7.9 gives the force component in the x -direction only. In a three-dimensional situation, we'd have to take derivatives of potential energy with respect to y and z to find the full force vector.

Why the minus sign in Equation 7.9? You can see the answer in the molecular energy curve of Fig. 7.11, where pushing the atoms too close together—moving to the *left* of equilibrium—results in a repulsive force to the *right*, and pulling them apart—moving to the *right*—gives an attractive force to the *left*. You can see the same thing for the roller coaster in Fig. 7.13. In both cases the forces tend to drive the system back toward a minimum-energy state. We'll explore such minimum-energy equilibrium states further in Chapter 12.

GOT IT?

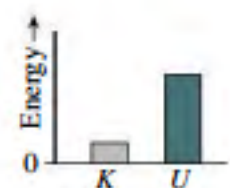
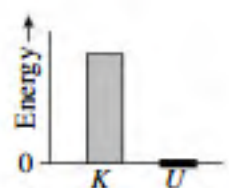
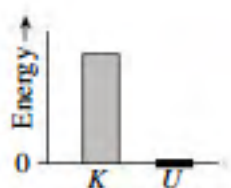
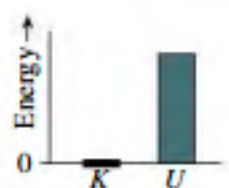
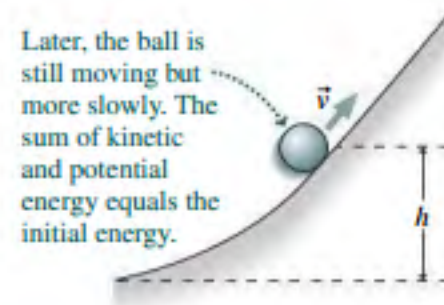
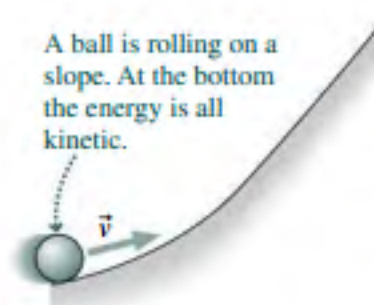
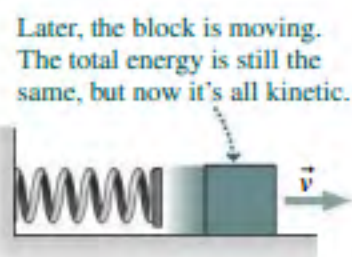
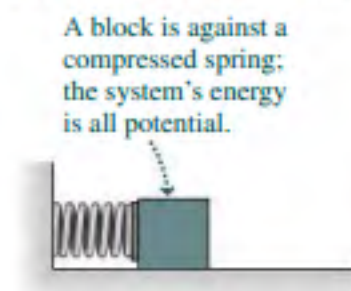
7.6 The figure shows the potential energy associated with an electron in a microelectronic device. From among the labeled points, find (1) the point where the force on the electron is greatest, (2) the rightmost position possible if the electron has total energy E_1 , (3) the leftmost position possible if the electron has total energy E_2 and starts out to the right of D , (4) a point where the force on the electron is zero, and (5) a point where the force on the electron points to the left. In some cases there may be more than one answer.



Chapter 7 Summary

Big Ideas

The big idea here is conservation of energy. This chapter emphasizes the special case of systems subject only to conservative forces, in which case the total mechanical energy—the sum of kinetic and potential energy—cannot change. Energy may change from kinetic to potential, and vice versa, but the total remains constant. Applying conservation of mechanical energy requires the concept of potential energy—energy stored in a system as a result of work done against conservative forces.



If nonconservative forces act in a system, then mechanical energy isn't conserved; instead, mechanical energy gets converted to internal energy.

Key Concepts and Equations

The important new concept here is potential energy, defined as the negative of the work done by a conservative force. Only the change ΔU has physical significance. Expressions for potential energy include:

$$\Delta U_{AB} = -\int_A^B \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}$$

This one is the most general, but it's mathematically involved. The force can vary over an arbitrary path between points A and B .

$$\Delta U = -\int_{x_1}^{x_2} F(x) dx$$

This is a special case, when force and displacement are in the same direction and force may vary with position.

$$\Delta U = -F(x_2 - x_1)$$

This is the most specialized case, where the force is constant.

Given the concept of potential energy, the principle of conservation of mechanical energy follows from the work-kinetic energy theorem of Chapter 6. Here's the mathematical statement of *mechanical energy conservation*:

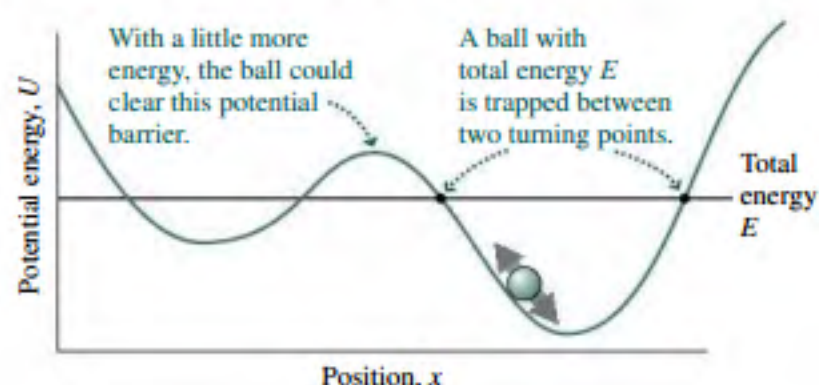
$$K + U = K_0 + U_0$$

K and U are the kinetic and potential energy at some point where we don't know one of these quantities.

The total mechanical energy is conserved, as indicated by the equal sign.

K_0 and U_0 are the kinetic and potential energy at some point where both are known. $K_0 + U_0$ is the *total mechanical energy*.

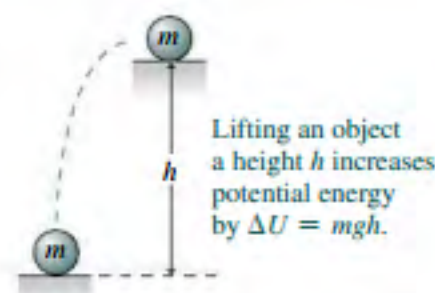
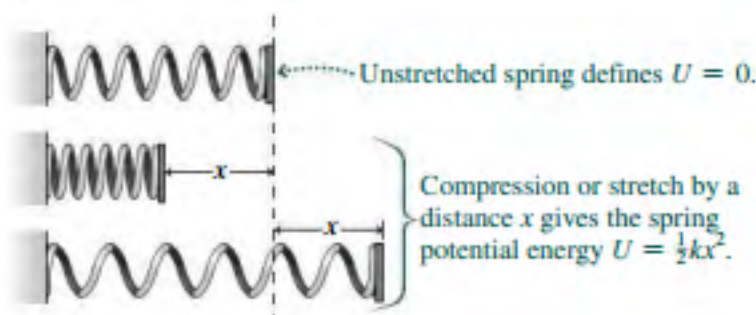
We can describe a wide range of systems—from molecules to roller coasters to planets—in terms of **potential-energy curves**. Knowing the total energy then lets us find **turning points** that determine the range of motion available to the system.



Applications

Two important cases of potential energy are the elastic potential energy of a spring, $U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$, and the gravitational potential energy change, $\Delta U = mgh$, associated with lifting an object of mass m through a height h .

The former is limited to ideal springs for which $F = -kx$, the latter to the proximity of Earth's surface, where the variation of gravity with height is negligible.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!

BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems



Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter, you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 7.1 Distinguish conservative from nonconservative forces.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 7.1, 7.3, 7.8;
Exercises 7.9, 7.10</p> <p>LO 7.2 Calculate potential energy, especially with gravity and springs.
For Thought and Discussion Question 7.4; Exercises 7.11,
7.12, 7.13, 7.14, 7.15, 7.16; Problems 7.35, 7.36, 7.37, 7.38,
7.39, 7.44, 7.51, 7.54, 7.58, 7.63, 7.68</p> <p>LO 7.3 Use conservation of mechanical energy to solve problems
that would be difficult using Newton's second law.
For Thought and Discussion Question 7.2; Exercises 7.17,
7.18, 7.19, 7.20, 7.21; Problems 7.40, 7.41, 7.42, 7.43, 7.45,</p> | <p>7.46, 7.47, 7.48, 7.49, 7.55, 7.59, 7.62, 7.63, 7.65, 7.66, 7.67,
7.69</p> <p>LO 7.4 Evaluate situations where nonconservative forces result in
loss of mechanical energy.
Exercises 7.22, 7.23; Problems 7.53, 7.56, 7.57, 7.61, 7.64</p> <p>LO 7.5 Distinguish internal energy from mechanical energy.</p> <p>LO 7.6 Work with potential-energy curves for a wide variety of
systems.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 7.5, 7.6, 7.7, 7.8;
Exercises 7.24, 7.25, 7.26; Problems 7.50, 7.52, 7.60</p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- Figure 7.14 shows force vectors at different points in space for two forces. Which is conservative and which nonconservative? Explain.

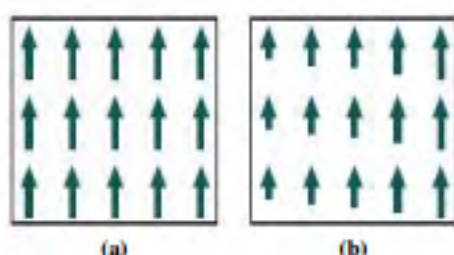


FIGURE 7.14 For Thought and Discussion 1

- Is the conservation-of-mechanical-energy principle related to Newton's laws, or is it an entirely separate physical principle? Discuss.
- What determines whether a force is conservative or not?
- Can potential energy be negative? Can kinetic energy? Can total mechanical energy? Explain.
- If the potential energy is zero at a given point, must the force also be zero at that point? Give an example.
- If the force is zero at a given point, must the potential energy also be zero at that point? Give an example.
- Why does a basketball player always need to lower his body to jump while netting a ball?
- If conservation of energy is a law of nature, why do we have programs—like mileage requirements for cars or insulation standards for buildings—designed to encourage energy conservation?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 7.1 Conservative and Nonconservative Forces

- Determine the work you would have to do to move a block of mass m from point 1 to point 2 at constant speed over the two paths shown in Fig. 7.15. The coefficient of friction has the constant value μ over the surface. *Note:* The diagram lies in a horizontal plane.
- Now take Fig. 7.15 to lie in a vertical plane, and find the work done by the gravitational force as an object moves from point 1 to point 2 over each of the paths shown.

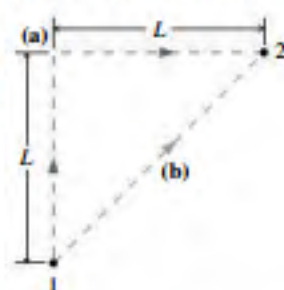


FIGURE 7.15 Exercises 9 and 10

Section 7.2 Potential Energy

- Rework Example 7.1, now taking the zero of potential energy at street level.
- Find the potential energy associated with a 78-kg hiker (a) atop New Hampshire's Mount Washington, 1900 m above sea level and (b) in Death Valley, California, 86 m below sea level. Take the zero of potential energy at sea level.
- You fly from Boston's Logan Airport, at sea level, to Denver, altitude 1.6 km. Taking your mass as 67 kg and the potential energy at Boston as zero, what's the gravitational potential energy when you're (a) at the plane's 11-km cruising altitude and (b) in Denver?

- How much energy can be stored in a spring with $k = 440 \text{ N/m}$ if the maximum allowed stretch is 20 cm?
- How far would you have to stretch a spring with $k = 1.5 \text{ kN/m}$ for it to store 280 J of energy?
- A biophysicist grabs the ends of a DNA strand with optical tweezers and stretches it 26 μm . How much energy is stored in the stretched molecule if its spring constant is $0.046 \text{ pN}/\mu\text{m}$?

Section 7.3 Conservation of Mechanical Energy

- A skier starts down a frictionless 32° slope. After a vertical drop of 25 m, the slope temporarily levels out and then slopes down at 20° , dropping an additional 38 m vertically before leveling out again. Find the skier's speed on the two level stretches.
- A $1.1 \times 10^4\text{-kg}$ navy jet lands on an aircraft carrier and snags a cable to slow it down. The cable is attached to a spring with $k = 45 \text{ kN/m}$. If the spring stretches 25 m to stop the plane, what was its landing speed?
- A 130-g arrow is shot vertically from a bow whose effective spring constant is 400 N/m. If the bow is drawn 85 cm before shooting, to what height does the arrow rise?
- In a railroad yard, a $2.5 \times 10^4\text{-kg}$ boxcar moving at 8.5 m/s is stopped by a spring-loaded bumper mounted at the end of the level track. If $k = 3.4 \text{ MN/m}$, how far does the spring compress in stopping the boxcar?
- You work for a toy company, and you're designing a spring-launched model rocket. The launching apparatus has room for a spring that can be compressed 14 cm, and the rocket's mass is 65 g. If the rocket is to reach an altitude of 33 m, what should you specify for the spring constant?

Section 7.4 Nonconservative Forces

- A 54-kg ice skater pushes off the wall of the rink, giving herself an initial speed of 3.2 m/s. She then coasts with no further effort. If the frictional coefficient between skates and ice is 0.023, how far does she go?
- You push a 65-kg table across a 3.7-m-wide room. In the process, 1.7 kJ of mechanical energy gets converted to internal energy of the table/floor system. What's the coefficient of kinetic friction between table and floor?

Section 7.6 Potential-Energy Curves

- A particle slides along the frictionless track shown in Fig. 7.16, starting at rest from point A. Find (a) its speed at B, (b) its speed at C, and (c) the approximate location of its right-hand turning point.

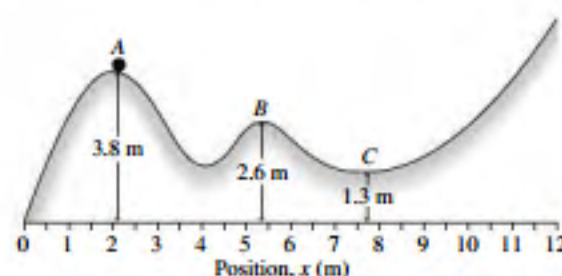


FIGURE 7.16 Exercise 24

- A particle slides back and forth on a frictionless track whose height as a function of horizontal position x is $y = ax^2$, where $a = 0.95 \text{ m}^{-1}$. If the particle's maximum speed is 9.2 m/s, find its turning points.
- A particle is trapped in a potential well described by $U(x) = 1.7x^2 - b$, with U in joules, x in meters, and $b = 4.4 \text{ J}$. Find the force on the particle when it's at (a) $x = 2.9 \text{ m}$, (b) $x = 0$, and (c) $x = -1.9 \text{ m}$.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

27. **Example 7.3:** A climbing rope is designed to exert a force given by $F = -kx + bx^3$, where $k = 244 \text{ N/m}$, $b = 3.24 \text{ N/m}^3$, and x is the stretch in meters. Find the potential energy stored in the rope when it's been stretched 4.68 m. Take $U = 0$ when the rope isn't stretched—that is, when $x = 0$. Is this more or less than if the rope were an ideal spring with the same spring constant k ?
28. **Example 7.3:** A climbing rope exerts a force given by $F = -kx - cx^2$. Find an expression for c such that when the rope is stretched a distance d its potential energy is twice what it would be if the rope were an ideal spring with $F = -kx$.
29. **Example 7.3:** The force on an electron in an experimental nanoscale electronic device is given by $F = -kx + bx^3$, where $k = 0.113 \text{ nN/nm}$, $b = 0.00185 \text{ nN/nm}^3$, and x is measured in nanometers from the electron's equilibrium position at $x = 0$. Find the potential energy when the electron is 2.14 nm from its equilibrium position.
30. **Example 7.3:** The potential energy of an electron in an experimental nanoscale electronic device is given by $U = 1.27x^2 - 0.260x^4$, where U is in aJ ($1 \text{ aJ} = 10^{-18} \text{ J}$) and x is the electron's position in nanometers. Find the x -component of the force on the electron when it's at $x = 1.47 \text{ nm}$.
31. **Example 7.5:** In Fig. 7.7, take the spring to have $k = 87.5 \text{ N/m}$ and consider the track to be frictionless. A 50.2-g mass is initially pushed against the spring, compressing it 7.88 cm. When the mass is released, to what vertical height up the track does it rise?
32. **Example 7.5:** In Fig. 7.7, take the spring to have $k = 107 \text{ N/m}$. You're using the spring to launch a 75.0-g mass, and you want it to rise to a vertical height of 96.8 cm. How far should you compress the spring?
33. **Example 7.5:** In a railroad switchyard, a rail car of mass 28,600 kg starts from rest and rolls down an incline and onto a level stretch of track. It then hits a spring bumper at the end of the track. If the spring constant is 1.88 MN/m and if the spring compresses a maximum of 1.03 m, what's the height at which the car started? Neglect friction.
34. **Example 7.5:** In a railroad switchyard, a rail car of mass 41,700 kg starts from rest and rolls down a 2.65-m-high incline and onto a level stretch of track. It then hits a spring bumper, whose spring compresses 89.4 cm. Find the spring constant.

Problems

35. **EW** The reservoir at Northfield Mountain Pumped Storage Project is 214 m above the pump/generators and holds $2.1 \times 10^{10} \text{ kg}$ of water (see Application on p. 133). The generators can produce electrical energy at the rate of 1.08 GW. Find (a) the gravitational potential energy stored, taking zero potential energy at the generators, and (b) the length of time the station can generate power before the reservoir is drained.
36. A carbon monoxide molecule can be modeled as a carbon atom and an oxygen atom connected by a spring. If a displacement of the carbon by 1.46 pm from its equilibrium position relative to the oxygen increases the molecule's potential energy by 0.0125 eV, what's the spring constant?

37. A more accurate expression for the force law of the rope in Example 7.3 is $F = -kx + bx^2 - cx^3$, where k and b have the values given in Example 7.3 and $c = 3.1 \text{ N/m}^3$. Find the energy stored in stretching the rope 2.62 m. By what percentage does your result differ from that of Example 7.3?
38. **BIO** For small stretches, the Achilles tendon can be modeled as an ideal spring. Experiments using a particular tendon showed that it stretched 2.66 mm when a 125-kg mass was hung from it. (a) Find the spring constant of this tendon. (b) How much would it have to stretch to store 40.0 J of energy?
39. A particle moves along the x -axis under the influence of a force $F = ax^2 + b$, where a and b are constants. Find the potential energy as a function of position, taking $U = 0$ at $x = 0$.
40. As a highway engineer, you're asked to design a runaway truck lane on a mountain road. The lane will head uphill at 22° and should be able to accommodate a $1.5 \times 10^4\text{-kg}$ truck with failed brakes entering the lane at 90 km/h. How long should you make the lane? Neglect friction.
41. A spring of constant k , compressed a distance x , is used to launch a mass m up a frictionless slope at angle θ . Find an expression for the maximum distance along the slope that the mass moves after leaving the spring.
42. A child is on a swing whose 3.8-m-long chains make a maximum angle of 39° with the vertical. What's the child's maximum speed?
43. With $x - x_0 = h$ and $a = g$, Equation 2.11 gives the speed of an object thrown downward with initial speed v_0 after it's dropped a distance h : $v = \sqrt{v_0^2 + 2gh}$. Use conservation of mechanical energy to derive the same result.
44. **BIO** The *nuchal ligament* is a cord-like structure that runs along the back of the neck and supports much of the head's weight in animals like horses and cows. The ligament is extremely stiff for small stretches, but loosens as it stretches further, thus functioning as a biological shock absorber. Figure 7.17 shows the force–distance curve for a particular nuchal ligament; the curve can be modeled approximately by the expression $F(x) = 0.43x - 0.033x^2 + 0.00086x^3$, with F in kN and x in cm. Find the energy stored in the ligament when it's been stretched (a) 8.0 cm and (b) 16 cm.

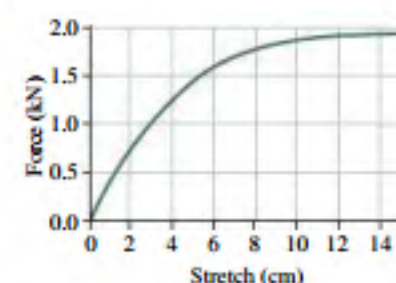


FIGURE 7.17 Problem 44

45. A 100-g block slides back and forth on a frictionless surface between two springs, as shown in Fig. 7.18. The left-hand spring has $k = 110 \text{ N/m}$ and its maximum compression is 21 cm. The right-hand spring has $k = 240 \text{ N/m}$. Find (a) the maximum compression of the right-hand spring and (b) the speed of the block as it moves between the springs.



FIGURE 7.18 Problem 45

46. Automotive standards call for bumpers that sustain essentially no damage in a 4-km/h collision with a stationary object. As an automotive engineer, you'd like to improve on that. You've developed a spring-mounted bumper with effective spring constant 1.6 MN/m . The springs can compress up to 6.0 cm before damage occurs. For a 1200-kg car, what do you claim as the maximum collision speed?

47. A block slides on the frictionless loop-the-loop track shown in Fig. 7.19. Find the minimum height h at which it can start from rest and still make it around the loop.

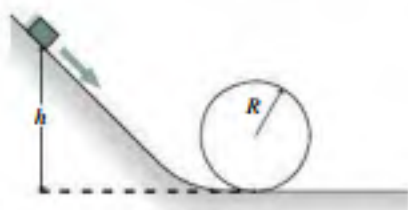


FIGURE 7.19 Problem 47

48. The maximum speed of the pendulum bob in a grandfather clock is 0.60 m/s. If the pendulum makes a maximum angle of 6.2° with the vertical, what's the pendulum's length?
49. A mass m is dropped from height h above the top of a spring of constant k mounted vertically on the floor. Show that the spring's maximum compression is given by $(mg/k)(1 + \sqrt{1 + 2kh/mg})$.
50. A particle with total energy 5.1 J is trapped in a potential well described by $U = 7.0 - 8.0x + 1.7x^2$, where U is in joules and x in meters. Find its turning points.
51. (a) Derive an expression for the potential energy of an object subject to a force $F_x = ax^2 + bx^3$ where $a = -26.5 \text{ N/m}^2$, $b = 12.2 \text{ N/m}^3$, and x is in meters. Take $U = 0$ at $x = 0$. (b) Plot the potential energy as a function of position on the interval $0 < x < 3 \text{ m}$, and (c) determine graphically the locations of the turning points for an object whose total energy is -10.0 J .
52. In ionic solids such as NaCl (salt), the potential energy of a pair of ions takes the form $U = b/r^n - a/r$, where r is the separation of the ions. For NaCl, a and b have the SI values 4.04×10^{-28} and 5.52×10^{-98} , respectively, and $n = 8.22$. Find the equilibrium separation in NaCl.
53. Repeat Exercise 17 for the case when the coefficient of kinetic friction on both slopes is 0.11, while the level stretches remain frictionless.
54. As an energy-efficiency consultant, you're asked to assess a pumped-storage facility. Its reservoir sits 160 m above its generating station and holds $7.6 \times 10^9 \text{ kg}$ of water. The power plant generates 310 MW of electric power while draining the reservoir over an 8.0-h period. Its efficiency is the percentage of the stored potential energy that gets converted to electricity. What efficiency do you report?
55. A spring of constant $k = 290 \text{ N/m}$ is used to launch a 1.9-kg block along a horizontal surface whose coefficient of sliding friction is 0.29. If the spring is compressed 22 cm, how far does the block slide?
56. A bug slides back and forth in a bowl 12 cm deep, starting from rest at the top, as shown in Fig. 7.20. The bowl is frictionless except for a 1.8-cm-wide sticky patch on its flat bottom, where the coefficient of friction is 0.83. How many times does the bug cross the sticky region?

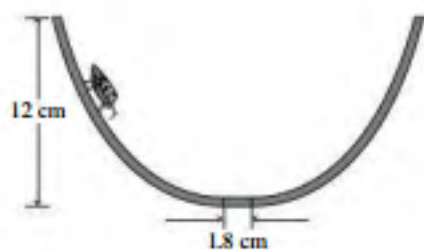


FIGURE 7.20 Problem 56

57. A 190-g block is launched by compressing a spring of constant $k = 200 \text{ N/m}$ by 15 cm. The spring is mounted horizontally, and the surface directly under it is frictionless. But beyond the equilibrium position of the spring end, the surface has frictional coefficient $\mu = 0.27$. This frictional surface extends 85 cm, followed by a frictionless curved rise, as shown in Fig. 7.21. After it's launched, where does the block finally come to rest? Measure from the left end of the frictional zone.

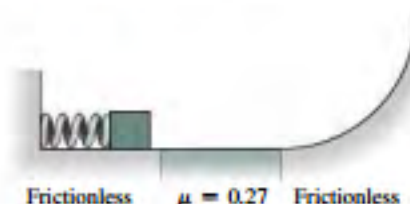


FIGURE 7.21 Problem 57

58. In 2017 Hurricane Maria dumped nearly 20" of rain on Puerto Rico. Give an order-of-magnitude estimate for the change in potential energy of all this rain as it fell from the hurricane.
59. An 710-kg roller-coaster car is launched from a giant spring with $k = 34 \text{ kN/m}$ into a frictionless loop-the-loop track of radius 7.5 m, as shown in Fig. 7.22. What's the minimum spring compression that will ensure the car stays on the track?



FIGURE 7.22 Problem 59

60. A particle slides back and forth on a frictionless parabolic track whose height is given by $h = ax^2$, where x is the horizontal coordinate. Find an expression for the position x of the turning points of an object sliding on this track, if its speed at the bottom is v .
61. A child sleds down a frictionless hill whose vertical drop is 7.2 m. At the bottom is a level but rough stretch where the coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.51. How far does she slide across the level stretch?
62. A bug lands on top of the frictionless, spherical head of a bald man. It begins to slide down his head (Fig. 7.23). Show that the bug leaves the head when it has dropped a vertical distance one-third of the head's radius.



FIGURE 7.23 Problem 62

63. A particle of mass m is subject to a force $\vec{F} = (a\sqrt{x}) \hat{i}$, where a is a constant. The particle is initially at rest at the origin and is given a slight nudge in the positive x -direction. Find an expression for its speed as a function of position x .
64. A block of weight 4.5 N is launched up a 30° inclined plane 2.0 m long by a spring with $k = 2.0 \text{ kN/m}$ and maximum compression 10 cm. The coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.50. Does

the block reach the top of the incline? If so, how much kinetic energy does it have there? If not, how close to the top, along the incline, does it get?

65. Your engineering department is asked to evaluate the performance of a new 460-hp sports car. You know that 29% of the engine's power can be converted to kinetic energy of the 1400-kg car and that the power delivered is independent of the car's velocity. What do you report for the time it will take to accelerate from rest to 100 km/h on a level road?
66. Your roommate is writing a science fiction novel and asks your advice about a plot point. Her characters are mining ore on the Moon and launching it toward Earth. Bins with 1500 kg of ore will be launched by a large spring, to be compressed 17 m. It takes a speed of 2.4 km/s to escape the Moon's gravity. What do you tell her is an appropriate spring constant?
67. You have a summer job at your university's zoology department, where you'll be working with an animal behavior expert. She's assigned you to study videos of different animals leaping into the air. Your task is to compare their power outputs as they jump. You'll have the mass m of each animal from data collected in the field. From the videos, you'll be able to measure both the vertical distance d over which the animal accelerates when it pushes off the ground and the maximum height h it reaches. Your task is to find an algebraic expression for power in terms of these parameters.
68. Biomechanical engineers developing artificial limbs for prosthetic and robotic applications have developed a two-spring design for their replacement Achilles tendon. The first spring has constant k and the second ak , where $a > 1$. When the artificial tendon is stretched from $x = 0$ to $x = x_1$, only the first spring is engaged. For $x > x_1$, a mechanism engages the second spring, giving a configuration like that described in part (a) of Chapter 4's Problem 65. Find an expression for the energy stored in the artificial tendon when it's stretched a distance $2x_1$.
69. Blocks with different masses are pushed against a spring one at a time, compressing it different amounts. Each is then launched onto an essentially frictionless horizontal surface that then curves upward, still frictionless (like Fig. 7.21 but without the frictional part). The table below shows the masses, spring compressions, and maximum vertical height each block achieves. Determine a quantity that, when you plot h against it, should yield a straight line. Plot the data, determine a best-fit line, and use its slope to determine the spring constant.

Mass m (g)	50.0	85.2	126	50.0	85.2
Compression x (cm)	2.40	3.17	5.40	4.29	1.83
Height h (cm)	10.3	11.2	19.8	35.2	3.81

Passage Problems

Nuclear fusion is the process that powers the Sun. Fusion occurs when two low-mass atomic nuclei fuse together to make a larger nucleus, in the process releasing substantial energy. This is hard to achieve because atomic nuclei carry positive electric charge, and their electrical repulsion makes it difficult to get them close enough for the short-range nuclear force to bind them into a single nucleus. Figure 7.24 shows the potential-energy curve for fusion of two deuterons (heavy hydrogen nuclei). The energy is measured in million electron volts

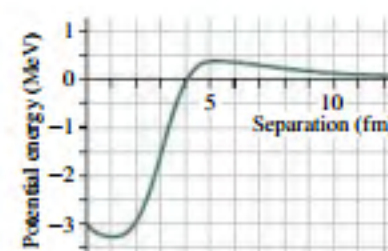


FIGURE 7.24 Potential energy for two deuterons (Passage Problems 70–73)

(MeV), a unit commonly used in nuclear physics, and the separation is in femtometers ($1 \text{ fm} = 10^{-15} \text{ m}$).

70. The force between the deuterons is zero at approximately
- 3 fm.
 - 4 fm.
 - 5 fm.
 - the force is never zero.
71. In order for initially two widely separated deuterons to get close enough to fuse, their kinetic energy must be about
- 0.1 MeV.
 - 3 MeV.
 - −3 MeV.
 - 0.3 MeV.
72. The energy available in fusion is the energy difference between that of widely separated deuterons and the bound deuterons after they've "fallen" into the deep potential well shown in the figure. That energy is about
- 0.3 MeV.
 - 1 MeV.
 - 3.3 MeV.
 - 3.6 MeV.
73. When two deuterons are 4 fm apart, the force acting on them
- is repulsive.
 - is attractive.
 - is zero.
 - can't be determined from the graph.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Potential energy turns into kinetic energy, sound, and internal energy.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 7.1 (c) On the curved paths, the work is greater for the trunk. The gravitational force is conservative, so the work is independent of path. But the frictional force isn't conservative, and the longer path means more work needs to be done.
- 7.2 (b) The potential-energy change will be slightly less because at greater heights, the gravitational force is lower and so, therefore, is the work done in traversing a given distance.
- 7.3 No. Mechanical energy is conserved, so if the ball is released from rest, it cannot climb higher than its initial height.
- 7.4 (1) (a) only; (2) (a) and (c)
- 7.5 (a), (c), (e), (f)
- 7.6 (1) B; (2) E; (3) C; (4) A or D; (5) B or E

Gravity

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Newton's second law applied to circular motion (Section 5.3)
- Kinetic and potential energy (Sections 6.4, 7.2)
- Conservation of mechanical energy (Section 7.3)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter, you should be able to

- LO 8.1 Describe the evolution of our understanding of planetary motion.
- LO 8.2 Use the law of universal gravitation to find the gravitational force between masses.
- LO 8.3 Solve problems involving circular orbits.
- LO 8.4 Solve conservation-of-energy problems involving universal gravitation.
- LO 8.5 Calculate escape speeds.
- LO 8.6 Distinguish closed and open orbits based on total energy.
- LO 8.7 Explain the field concept as applied to the gravitational field.

Gravity is the most obvious of nature's fundamental forces. Theories of gravity have brought us new understandings of the nature and evolution of the universe. We've used our knowledge of gravity to explore the solar system and to engineer a host of space-based technologies. In nearly all applications we still use the theory of gravity that Isaac Newton developed in the 1600s. Only in the most extreme astrophysical situations or where—as with Global Positioning System satellites—we need exquisite precision do we use the successor to Newtonian gravitation, namely, Einstein's general theory of relativity.

8.1 Toward a Law of Gravity

LO 8.1 *Describe the evolution of our understanding of planetary motion.*

Newton's theory of gravity was the culmination of a scientific revolution that began in 1543 with Polish astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus's radical suggestion that the planets orbit not Earth but the Sun. Fifty years after Copernicus's work was published, the Danish noble Tycho Brahe began a program of accurate planetary observations. After Tycho's death in 1601, his assistant Johannes Kepler worked to make sense of the observations. Success came when Kepler took a radical step: He gave up the long-standing idea that the planets moved in perfect circles. Kepler summarized his new insights in three laws, described in Fig. 8.1. Kepler based his laws solely on observation and gave no theoretical explanation. So Kepler knew *how* the planets moved, but not *why*.

Shortly after Kepler published his first two laws, Galileo trained his first telescopes on the heavens. Among his discoveries were four moons orbiting



In 2015, more than nine years after its launch, *New Horizons* became the first spacecraft to fly by Pluto. What condition on *New Horizons*' total energy determines whether it will ever return to our Solar System?

Jupiter, sunspots that blemished the supposedly perfect sphere of the Sun, and the phases of Venus (Fig. 8.2). His observations called into question the notion that all celestial objects were perfect and also lent credence to the Copernican view of the Sun as the center of planetary motion.

By Newton's time the intellectual climate was ripe for the culmination of the revolution that had begun with Copernicus. Legend has it that Newton was sitting under an apple tree when an apple struck him on the head, causing him to discover gravity. That story is probably a myth, but if it were true the other half would be that Newton was staring at the Moon when the apple struck. Newton's genius was to recognize that *the motion of the apple and the motion of the Moon were the same, that both were "falling" toward Earth under the influence of the same force*. Newton called this force **gravity**, from the Latin *gravitas*, "heaviness." In one of the most sweeping syntheses in human thought, Newton inferred that everything in the universe, on Earth and in the celestial realm, obeys the same physical laws.

8.2 Universal Gravitation

LO 8.2 Use the law of universal gravitation to find the gravitational force between masses.

Newton generalized his new understanding of gravity to suggest that any two particles in the universe exert attractive forces on each other, with magnitude given by

F is the magnitude of the gravitational force between any two masses. The force is always attractive.

$$F = \frac{Gm_1m_2}{r^2} \quad (\text{universal gravitation})$$

G is the constant of universal gravitation, approximately $6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$.

m_1 and m_2 are the two masses . . .
 . . . and r is the distance between them.

(8.1)

Here m_1 and m_2 are the particle masses, r the distance between them, and G the **constant of universal gravitation**, whose value—which was determined after Newton's time—is $6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$. The constant G is truly universal; observation and theory suggest that it has the same value throughout the universe.

The force of gravity acts *between* two particles; that is, m_1 exerts an attractive force on m_2 , and m_2 exerts an equal but oppositely directed force on m_1 . The two forces therefore obey Newton's third law.

Newton's law of universal gravitation applies strictly only to point particles that have no extent. But, as Newton showed using his newly developed calculus, it also holds for spherically symmetric objects of any size if the distance r is measured from their centers. It also applies approximately to arbitrarily shaped objects provided the distance between them is large compared with their sizes. For example, the gravitational force of Earth on the International Space Station is given accurately by Equation 8.1 because (1) Earth is essentially spherical and (2) the station, though irregular in shape, is vastly smaller than its distance from Earth's center.

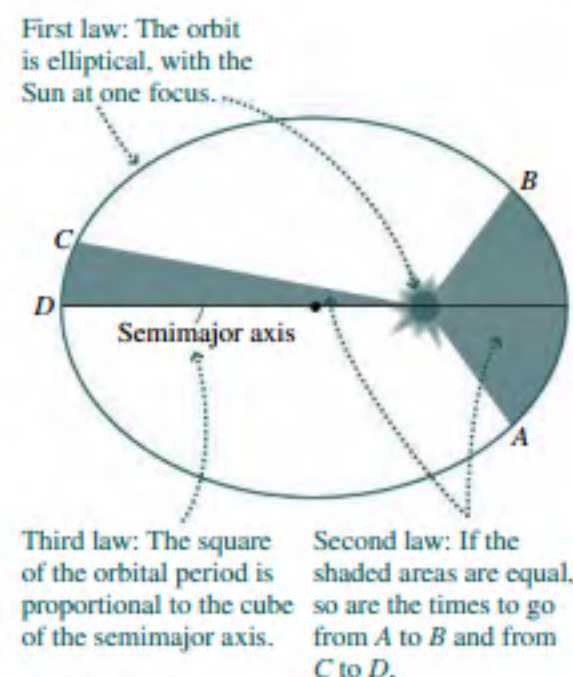


FIGURE 8.1 Kepler's laws.



FIGURE 8.2 Phases of Venus. In an Earth-centered system, Venus would always appear the same size because of its constant distance from Earth.

EXAMPLE 8.1 The Acceleration of Gravity: On Earth and in Space

Use the law of universal gravitation to find the acceleration of gravity at Earth's surface, at the 380-km altitude of the International Space Station, and on the surface of Mars.

INTERPRET The problem statement tells us this is about universal gravitation, but what's that got to do with the acceleration of gravity?

The gravitational force is what causes that acceleration, so we can interpret this problem as being about the force between Earth (or Mars) and some arbitrary mass.

DEVELOP Since the problem involves universal gravitation, Equation 8.1 applies. But we're asked about acceleration, not force. Newton's second law,

(continued)

$F = ma$, relates the two. So our plan is to use Equation 8.1, $F = Gm_1m_2/r^2$, to find the gravitational force on an arbitrary mass and then use Newton's second law to get the acceleration. We'll also need the masses of Earth and Mars and their radii. Astrophysical data like these are in Appendix E.

EVALUATE Equation 8.1 gives the force a planet of mass M exerts on an arbitrary mass m a distance r from the planet's center: $F = GMm/r^2$. (Here we set m_1 in Equation 8.1 to the large planetary mass M , and m_2 to the smaller mass m .) But Newton's second law says that this force is equal to the product of mass and acceleration for a body in free fall, so we can write $ma = GMm/r^2$. The mass m cancels, and we're left with the acceleration:

$$a = \frac{GM}{r^2} \quad (8.2)$$

The distance r is measured from the *center* of the object providing the gravitational force, so to find the acceleration at Earth's surface we use R_E , the radius of Earth, for r . Taking R_E and M_E from Appendix E, we have

$$\begin{aligned} a &= \frac{GM_E}{R_E^2} \\ &= \frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.97 \times 10^{24} \text{ kg})}{(6.37 \times 10^6 \text{ m})^2} = 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Our result here is the value of g —the acceleration due to gravity at Earth's surface.

At the space station's altitude, we have $r = R_E + 380 \text{ km}$, so

$$\begin{aligned} a &= \frac{GM_E}{r^2} \\ &= \frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.97 \times 10^{24} \text{ kg})}{(6.37 \times 10^6 \text{ m} + 380 \times 10^3 \text{ m})^2} = 8.74 \text{ m/s}^2 \end{aligned}$$

A similar calculation using Appendix E data yields 3.73 m/s^2 for the acceleration of gravity at the surface of Mars.

ASSESS As we've seen, our result for Earth is just what we expect. The acceleration at the space station is lower but still about 90% of the surface value. This confirms Chapter 4's point that weightlessness doesn't mean the absence of gravity. Rather, as Equation 8.2 shows, an object's gravitational acceleration is independent of its mass—so all objects “fall” together. Finally, our answer for Mars is lower than for Earth, as befits its lower mass—although not as much lower as mass alone would imply. That's because Mars is also smaller, so r in the denominator of Equation 8.2 is a smaller number.



TIP **G AND g** Don't confuse G and g ! Both quantities are associated with gravity, but G is a universal constant, while g describes the gravitational acceleration at a particular place—namely, Earth's surface—and its value depends on Earth's size and mass.

The variation of gravitational acceleration with distance from Earth's center provided Newton with a clue that the gravitational force should vary as the inverse square of the distance. Newton knew the Moon's orbital period and distance from Earth; from these he could calculate its orbital speed and thus its acceleration v^2/r . Newton found—as you can in Exercise 12—that the Moon's acceleration is about $1/3600$ the gravitational acceleration g at Earth's surface. The Moon is about 60 times farther from Earth's center than is Earth's surface; since $60^2 = 3600$, the decrease in gravitational acceleration with distance from Earth's center is consistent with a gravitational force that varies as $1/r^2$.

Tactics 8.1 UNDERSTANDING “INVERSE SQUARE”

Newton's universal gravitation is the first of several inverse-square force laws you'll encounter, and it's important to understand what this term means. In Equation 8.1 the distance r between the two masses is *squared*, and it occurs in the *denominator*; hence the force depends on the *inverse square* of the distance. Double the distance and the force drops to $1/2^2$, or $1/4$ of its original value. Triple the distance and the force drops to $1/3^2$, or $1/9$. Although you can always grind through the arithmetic of Equation 8.1, you should use these simple ratio calculations whenever possible. The same considerations apply to gravitational acceleration, since it's proportional to force (Fig. 8.3).

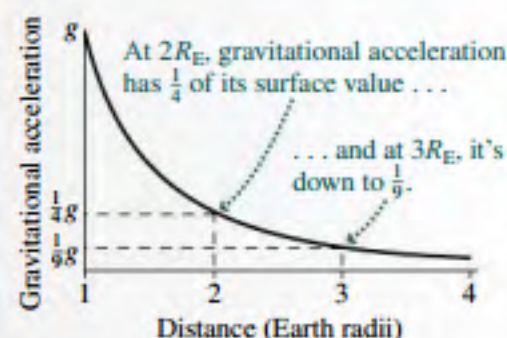


FIGURE 8.3 Meaning of the inverse-square law.

GOT IT?

8.1 Suppose the distance between two objects is cut in half. Is the gravitational force between them (a) quartered, (b) halved, (c) doubled, or (d) quadrupled?

The Cavendish Experiment: Weighing the Earth

Given Earth's mass and radius and the measured value of g , we could use Equation 8.1 to determine the universal constant G . Unfortunately, the only way to determine Earth's mass accurately is to measure its gravitational effect and then use Equation 8.1. But that requires knowing G .

To determine G , we need to measure the gravitational force of a *known* mass. Given the weak gravitational force of normal-sized objects, this is a challenging task. It was accomplished in 1798 through an ingenious experiment by the British physicist Henry Cavendish. Cavendish mounted two 5-cm-diameter lead spheres on the ends of a rod suspended from a thin fiber. He then brought two 30-cm lead spheres nearby (Fig. 8.4). Their gravitational attraction caused a slight movement of the small spheres, twisting the fiber. Knowing the properties of the fiber, Cavendish could determine the force. With the known masses and their separation, he then used Equation 8.1 to calculate G . His result determined Earth's mass; indeed, his published paper was entitled "On Weighing the Earth."

Gravity is the weakest of the fundamental forces, and, as the Cavendish experiment suggests, the gravitational force between everyday objects is negligible. Yet gravity shapes the large-scale structure of matter and indeed the entire universe. Why, if it's so weak? The answer is that gravity, unlike the stronger electric force, is always attractive; there's no "negative mass." So large concentrations of matter produce substantial gravitational effects. Electric charge, in contrast, can be positive or negative, and electric effects in normal-sized objects tend to cancel. We'll explore this distinction further in Chapter 20.

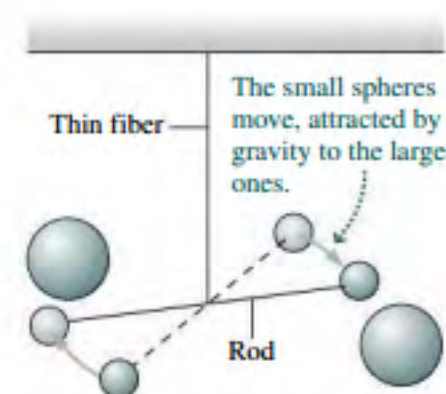


FIGURE 8.4 The Cavendish experiment to determine G .

8.3 Orbital Motion

LO 8.3 Solve problems involving circular orbits.

Orbital motion occurs when gravity is the dominant force acting on a body. It's not just planets and spacecraft that are in orbit. An individual astronaut floating outside the space station is orbiting Earth. The Sun itself orbits the center of the galaxy, taking about 200 million years to complete one revolution. If we neglect air resistance, even a baseball is temporarily in orbit. Here we discuss quantitatively the special case of circular orbits; then we describe qualitatively the general case.

Newton's genius was to recognize that the Moon is held in its circular orbit by the same force that pulls an apple to the ground. From there, it was a short step for Newton to realize that human-made objects could be put into orbit. Nearly 300 years before the first artificial satellites, he imagined a projectile launched horizontally from a high mountain (Fig. 8.5). The projectile moves in a curve, as gravity pulls it from the straight-line path it would follow if no force were acting. As its initial speed is increased, the projectile travels farther before striking Earth. Finally, there comes a speed for which the projectile's path bends in a way that exactly follows Earth's curvature. It's then in **circular orbit**, continuing forever unless a nongravitational force acts.

Why doesn't an orbiting satellite fall toward Earth? It does! Under the influence of gravity, it gets ever closer to Earth than it would be on a straight-line path. It's behaving exactly as Newton's second law requires of an object under the influence of a force—by accelerating. For a *circular* orbit, that acceleration amounts to a change in the direction, but not the magnitude, of the satellite's velocity.

Remember that Newton's laws aren't so much about *motion* as they are about *changes* in motion. To ask why a satellite doesn't fall to Earth is to adopt the archaic Aristotelian view and assume that an object must move in the direction of the force acting on it. The correct Newtonian question, in contrast, is based on the idea that motion *changes* in response to a force: Why doesn't the satellite move in a straight line? And the answer is simple: because a force is acting. That force—gravity—is exactly analogous to the tension force that keeps a ball on a string whirling in its circular path.

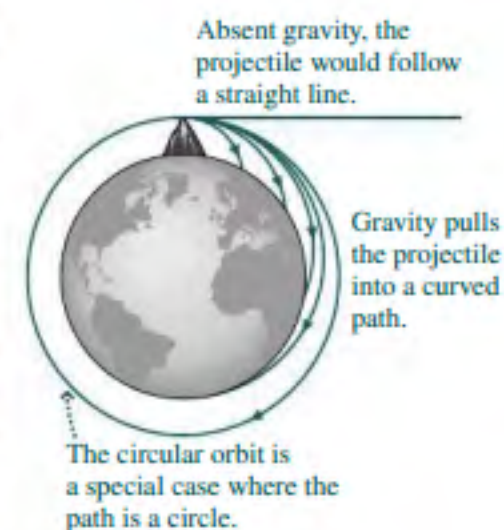


FIGURE 8.5 Newton's "thought experiment" showing that projectile and orbital motions are essentially the same.

We can analyze circular orbits quantitatively because we know that a force of magnitude mv^2/r is required to keep an object of mass m and speed v in a circular path of radius r . In the case of an orbit, that force is gravity, so we have

$$\frac{GMm}{r^2} = \frac{mv^2}{r}$$

where m is the mass of the orbiting object and M the mass of the object about which it's orbiting. We assume here that $M \gg m$, so the gravitating object can be considered essentially at rest—a reasonable approximation with Earth satellites or planets orbiting the much more massive Sun. Solving for the orbital speed gives

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{GM}{r}} \quad (\text{speed, circular orbit}) \quad (8.3)$$

Often we're interested in the **orbital period**, or the time to complete one orbit. In one period T , the orbiting object moves the orbital circumference $2\pi r$, so its speed is $v = 2\pi r/T$. Squaring Equation 8.3 then gives

$$\left(\frac{2\pi r}{T}\right)^2 = \frac{GM}{r}$$

or

$$T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2 r^3}{GM} \quad (\text{orbital period, circular orbit}) \quad (8.4)$$

In deriving Equation 8.4, we've proved Kepler's third law—that the square of the orbital period is proportional to the cube of the semimajor axis—for the special case of a circular orbit, whose semimajor axis is identical to its radius.

Note that orbital speed and period are independent of the orbiting object's mass m —another indication that all objects experience the same gravitational acceleration. Astronauts, for example, have the same orbital parameters as the space station. That's why astronauts seem weightless inside the station and why they don't float away if they step outside.

EXAMPLE 8.2

Orbital Speed and Period: The Space Station

Worked Example with Variation Problems

The International Space Station is in a circular orbit at altitude 380 km. What are its orbital speed and period?

INTERPRET This problem involves the speed and period of a circular orbit about Earth.

DEVELOP We can compute the orbit's radius and then use Equation 8.3, $v = \sqrt{GM/r}$, to find the speed and Equation 8.4, $T^2 = 4\pi^2 r^3/GM$, to find the period because the orbit is circular.

EVALUATE As always, the distance is measured from the center of the gravitating body, so r in these equations is Earth's 6.37-Mm radius plus the station's 380-km altitude. So we have

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \sqrt{\frac{GM_E}{r}} = \sqrt{\frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.97 \times 10^{24} \text{ kg})}{6.37 \times 10^6 \text{ m} + 380 \times 10^3 \text{ m}}} \\ &= 7.68 \text{ km/s} \end{aligned}$$

or about 17,000 mi/h. We can get the orbital period from the speed and radius, or directly from Equation 8.4, $T = \sqrt{4\pi^2 r^3/GM_E}$. Using the numbers in the calculation for v gives $T = 5.52 \times 10^3 \text{ s}$, or about 90 min.

ASSESS Make sense? Both answers have the correct units, and 90 min seems reasonable for the period of an orbit at a small fraction of the Moon's distance from Earth. Astronauts who want a circular orbit 380 km up have no choice but this speed and period. In fact, for any "near-Earth" orbit, with altitude much less than Earth's radius, the orbital period is about 90 min. If there were no air resistance and if you could throw a baseball fast enough, it too would go into orbit, skimming Earth's surface with a roughly 90-min period.

Example 8.2 shows that the near-Earth orbital period is about 90 min. The Moon, on the other hand, takes 27 days to complete its nearly circular orbit. So there must be a distance where the orbital period is 24 h—the same as Earth's rotation. A satellite at this distance will remain fixed with respect to Earth's surface provided its orbit is parallel to the equator. TV, weather, and communication satellites are often placed in such a **geostationary orbit**.

EXAMPLE 8.3 Geostationary Orbit: Finding the Altitude

What altitude is required for geostationary orbit?

INTERPRET Here we're given an orbital period—24 h or 86,400 s—and asked to find the corresponding altitude for a circular orbit.

DEVELOP Equation 8.4, $T^2 = 4\pi^2 r^3 / GM$, relates the period T and distance r from Earth's center. Our plan is to solve for r and then subtract Earth's radius to find the altitude (distance from the surface).

EVALUATE Solving for r , we get

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \left(\frac{GM_E T^2}{4\pi^2} \right)^{1/3} \\ &= \left[\frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.97 \times 10^{24} \text{ kg})(8.64 \times 10^4 \text{ s})^2}{4\pi^2} \right]^{1/3} \\ &= 4.22 \times 10^7 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

or 42,200 km from Earth's center. Subtracting Earth's radius then gives an altitude of about 36,000 km, or 22,000 miles.

ASSESS Make sense? This is a lot higher than the 90-min low-Earth orbit, but a lot lower than the Moon's 384,000-km distance. Our answer defines one of the most valuable pieces of "real estate" in space—a place where satellites appear suspended over a fixed spot on Earth. Every TV dish antenna points to such a satellite, positioned 22,000 mi over the equator. A more careful calculation would use Earth's so-called sidereal rotation period, measured with respect to the distant stars rather than the Sun. Because Earth isn't a perfect sphere, geostationary satellites drift slightly, and therefore they need to fire small rockets every few weeks to stay in position.

Elliptical Orbits

Using his laws of motion and gravity, Newton was able to prove Kepler's assertion that the planets move in elliptical paths with the Sun at one focus. Circular orbits represent the special case where the two foci of the ellipse coincide, so the distance from the gravitating center remains constant. Most planetary orbits are nearly, but not quite, circular; Earth's distance from the Sun, for example, varies by about 3% throughout the year. But the orbits of comets and other smaller bodies are often highly elliptical (Fig. 8.6). Their orbital speeds vary, as they gain speed "falling" toward the Sun, whip quickly around the Sun at the point of closest approach (**perihelion**), and then "climb" ever more slowly to their most distant point (**aphelion**) before returning.

In Chapter 3, we showed that the trajectory of a projectile is a parabola. But our derivation neglected Earth's curvature and the associated variation in g with altitude. In fact, a projectile is just like any orbiting body. If we neglect air resistance, it too describes an elliptical orbit with Earth's center at one focus. Only for trajectories whose height and range are small compared with Earth's radius are the true elliptical path and the parabola of Chapter 3 generally indistinguishable (Fig. 8.7).

Are missiles and baseballs really in orbit? Yes. But their orbits happen to intersect Earth's surface. At that point, nongravitational forces put an end to orbital motion. If Earth suddenly shrank to the size of a grapefruit (but kept the same mass), a baseball would continue happily in orbit, as the dashed continuation of the smaller orbit in Fig. 8.7 suggests. Newton's ingenious intuition was correct: Barring air resistance, there's truly no difference between the motion of everyday objects near Earth and the motion of celestial objects.

Open Orbits

With elliptical and circular orbits, the motion repeats indefinitely because the orbit is a closed path. But closed orbits aren't the only possibility. Imagine again Newton's thought experiment—only now fire the projectile faster than necessary for a circular orbit (Fig. 8.8). The projectile goes farther from Earth than before, describing an ellipse that's closest to Earth at the launch site. Faster, and the ellipse gets more elongated. But with great enough initial speed, the projectile describes a hyperbolic trajectory that takes it ever farther from Earth. We'll see in the next section how energy determines the type of orbit.



FIGURE 8.6 Orbits of most known comets, like the one shown here, are highly elliptical.



FIGURE 8.7 Projectile trajectories are actually elliptical.

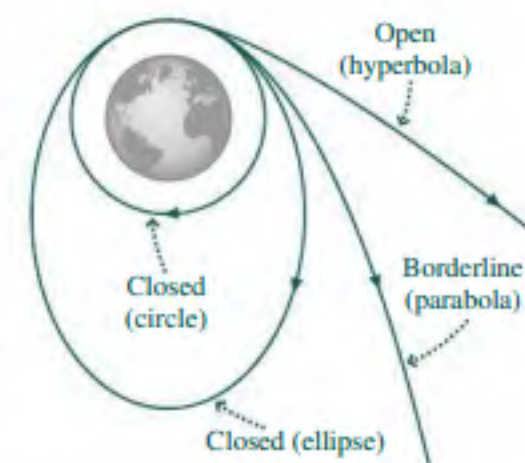


FIGURE 8.8 Closed and open orbits.

GOT IT?

8.2 Suppose the paths in Fig. 8.8 are the paths of four projectiles. Rank each path (circular, elliptical, parabolic, and hyperbolic) according to the initial speed of the corresponding projectile. Assume all are launched from their common point at the top of the figure.

8.4 Gravitational Energy

LO 8.4 Solve conservation-of-energy problems involving universal gravitation.

LO 8.5 Calculate escape speeds.

LO 8.6 Distinguish closed and open orbits based on total energy.

How much energy does it take to boost a satellite to geostationary altitude? Our simple answer mgh won't do here, since g varies substantially over the distance involved. So, as we found in Chapter 7, we have to integrate to determine the potential energy.

Figure 8.9 shows two points at distances r_1 and r_2 from the center of a gravitating mass M , in this case Earth. Equation 7.2 gives the change in potential energy associated with moving a mass m from r_1 to r_2 :

$$\Delta U_{12} = - \int_{r_1}^{r_2} \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}$$

Here the force points radially inward and has magnitude GMm/r^2 , while the path element $d\vec{r}$ points radially outward. Then $\vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r} = -(GMm/r^2) dr$, where the minus sign comes from the factor $\cos 180^\circ$ in the dot product of oppositely directed vectors. This minus sign cancels the minus sign in the expression given for ΔU_{12} , so here the potential energy difference becomes

$$\Delta U_{12} = \int_{r_1}^{r_2} \frac{GMm}{r^2} dr = GMm \int_{r_1}^{r_2} r^{-2} dr = GMm \left. \frac{r^{-1}}{-1} \right|_{r_1}^{r_2} = GMm \left(\frac{1}{r_1} - \frac{1}{r_2} \right) \quad (8.5)$$

Does this make sense? Yes: For $r_1 < r_2$, ΔU_{12} is positive, showing that potential energy increases with height—consistent with our simpler result $\Delta U = mgh$ near Earth's surface. Although we derived Equation 8.5 for two points on a radial line, Fig. 8.10 shows that it holds for any two points at distances r_1 and r_2 from the gravitating center.

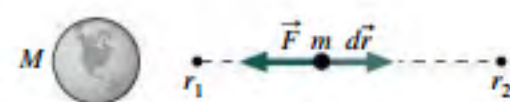


FIGURE 8.9 Finding the potential-energy change requires integration.

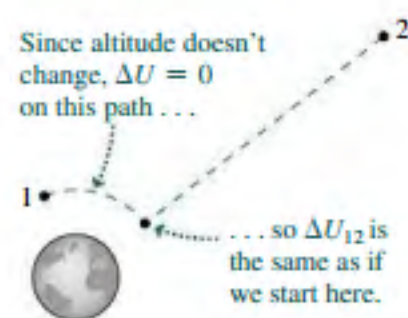


FIGURE 8.10 Gravity is conservative, so we can use any path to evaluate the potential-energy change. Only the radial part of the path contributes to ΔU .

The Zero of Potential Energy

Equation 8.5 has an interesting feature: The potential-energy difference remains finite even when the points are infinitely far apart, as you can see by setting either r_1 or r_2 to infinity. Although the gravitational force always acts, it weakens so rapidly that its effect is finite over even infinite distances. This property makes it convenient to set the zero of potential energy when the two gravitating masses M and m are infinitely far apart. Setting $r_1 = \infty$ and dropping the subscript on r_2 , we then have an expression for the gravitational potential energy of a system comprising a mass m located a distance r from the center of another mass M .

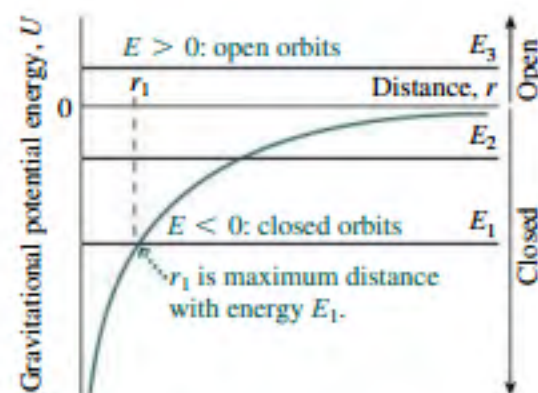


FIGURE 8.11 A gravitational potential-energy curve. Distance is measured from the center of a gravitating object like a star or planet. Closed orbits, which occur when total energy E is less than 0, are elliptical or circular; orbits with $E > 0$ are hyperbolas. The intermediate case $E = 0$ gives parabolic orbits.

U is the gravitational potential energy associated with two masses m and M .

M and m are the two masses...

$$U(r) = - \frac{GMm}{r} \quad (\text{gravitational potential energy}) \quad (8.6)$$

...and r is the distance between them.

The potential energy is negative because we chose $U = 0$ when $r = \infty$. When the two masses are closer than infinitely far apart, the system has lower—hence negative—potential energy.

Knowing the gravitational potential energy allows us to apply the powerful conservation-of-energy principle. Figure 8.11 shows the potential-energy curve given by Equation 8.6. Superposing three values of total energy E shows that orbits with $E < 0$ have a turning point where they intersect the potential-energy curve, and are therefore closed. Orbits with $E > 0$, in contrast, are open because they never intersect the curve and therefore extend to infinity. That distinction—between total energy greater than or less than zero—determines the difference between the open and closed orbits in Fig. 8.8. The borderline parabola has $E = 0$.

EXAMPLE 8.4**Conservation of Energy: Blast Off!***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A rocket is launched vertically upward at 3.1 km/s. How high does it go?

INTERPRET This sounds like a problem from Chapter 2, but here we'll see that the rocket rises high enough that we can't ignore the variation in gravity. So the acceleration isn't constant, and we can't use the constant-acceleration equations of Chapter 2. But the conservation-of-mechanical-energy principle lets us cut through those details, so we can apply the methods of Chapter 7. "How high does it go?" in the problem statement means we're dealing with the initial launch state and a final state where the rocket is momentarily at rest at the top of its trajectory.

DEVELOP Equation 7.6 describes conservation of mechanical energy: $K + U = K_0 + U_0$. Here we're given speed v at the bottom, so $K_0 = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$. We're going to be using Equation 8.6, $U(r) = -GMm/r$, for potential energy, and that's already established the zero of potential energy at infinity. So U_0 isn't zero but is given by Equation 8.6 with r equal to Earth's radius. Finally, at the top, $K = 0$ and U is also given by Equation 8.6, but now we don't know r . Our plan is to solve for that r and from it get the rocket's altitude. Figure 8.12 shows "before" and "after" diagrams with bar graphs, like those we introduced in Chapter 7.

EVALUATE With our values for the kinetic and potential energies, the equation $K + U = K_0 + U_0$ becomes

$$-\frac{GM_E m}{r} = \frac{1}{2}mv_0^2 - \frac{GM_E m}{R_E}$$

where m is the rocket's mass, r is the distance from Earth's center at the peak, and Earth's radius R_E is the distance at launch. Solving for r gives

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \left(\frac{1}{R_E} - \frac{v_0^2}{2GM_E} \right)^{-1} \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{6.37 \times 10^6 \text{ m}} - \frac{(3100 \text{ m/s})^2}{2(6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.97 \times 10^{24} \text{ kg})} \right)^{-1} \\ &= 6.90 \text{ Mm} \end{aligned}$$

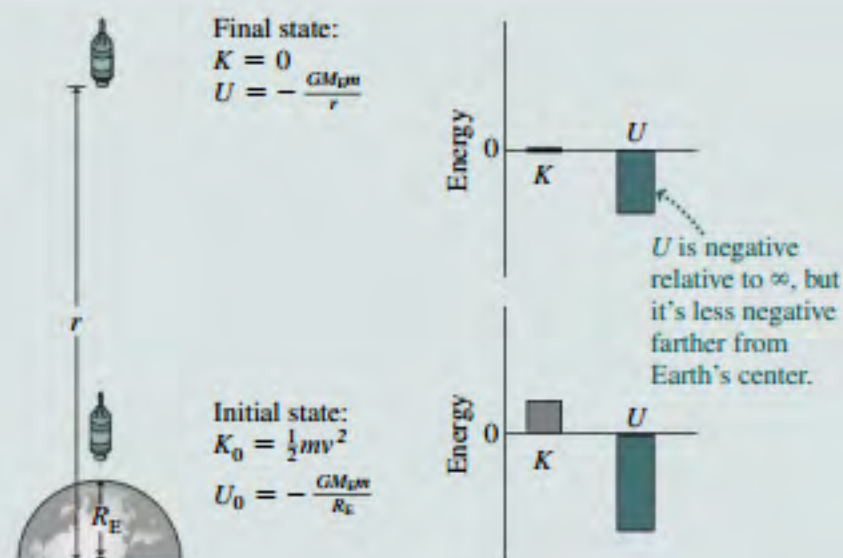


FIGURE 8.12 Diagrams for Example 8.4.

Again, this is the distance from Earth's center; subtracting Earth's radius then gives a peak altitude of 530 km.

ASSESS Make sense? Yes. Our answer of 530 km is significantly greater than the 490 km you'd get assuming a potential-energy change of $\Delta U = mgh$. That's because the decreasing gravitational force lets the rocket go higher before all its kinetic energy becomes potential energy.



TIP ALL CONSERVATION-OF-ENERGY PROBLEMS ARE THE SAME This problem is essentially the same as throwing a ball straight up and solving for its maximum height using $U = mgh$ for potential energy. The only difference is the more complicated potential-energy function $U = -GMm/r$, used here because the variation in gravity is significant over the rocket's trajectory. Recognize what's common to all similar problems, and you'll begin to see how physics really is based on just a few simple principles.

Escape Speed

What goes up comes down, right? Not always! Figure 8.11 shows that when total energy is zero or greater, an object can escape infinitely far from a gravitating body, never to return. Consider an object of mass m at the surface of a gravitating body of mass M and radius r . The gravitational potential energy is given by Equation 8.6, $U = -GMm/r$. Toss the object upward with speed v , and there's also kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. The total energy will be zero if

$$0 = K + U = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{GMm}{r}$$

The speed v here that makes the total energy zero is called the **escape speed** because an object with this speed or greater has enough energy to escape forever from the gravitating body. Solving for v in the preceding equation gives the escape speed:

v_{esc} is the speed an object would need to escape to infinity when it's a distance r from the center of a gravitating mass M .

M is the mass the object might escape from...

$$v_{\text{esc}} = \sqrt{\frac{2GM}{r}} \quad (\text{escape speed})$$

...and r is the object's distance from M 's center.

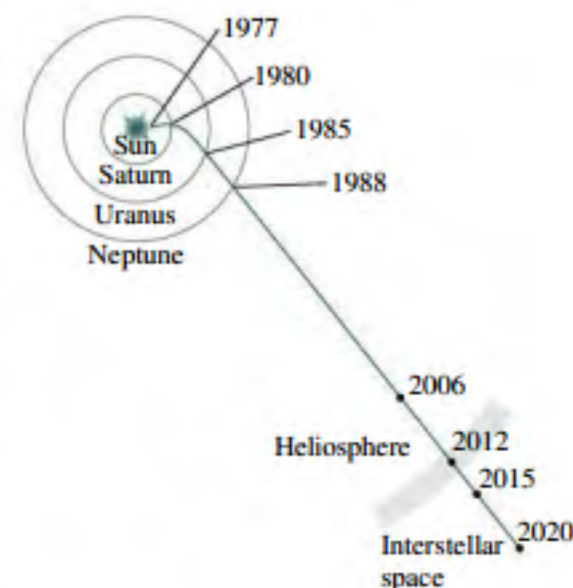


FIGURE 8.13 In 2012 Voyager 1 crossed into interstellar space. Voyager should continue sending data to Earth until about 2020.

At Earth's surface, $v_{\text{esc}} = 11.2 \text{ km/s}$. Earth-orbiting spacecraft have lower speeds. Moon-bound astronauts go at just under v_{esc} , so if anything goes wrong (as with *Apollo 13*), they can return to Earth. Planetary spacecraft have speeds greater than v_{esc} . The *Pioneer* and *Voyager* missions to the outer planets gained enough additional energy in their encounters with Jupiter that they now have escape speed relative to the Sun and will coast indefinitely through our galaxy. In 2012, *Voyager 1* became the first human-made object to leave the Sun's realm entirely, as it escaped the "bubble" created by the Sun's magnetic field and entered interstellar space (see Fig. 8.13 and this chapter's opening image).

APPLICATION Close Encounters

In 2013, Earth experienced two unusually close asteroid encounters. Although unrelated, they occurred within only 16 hours of each other. The larger of the two asteroids, dubbed 2012 DA₁₄, passed within 35,000 km of Earth—less than one-tenth of the Earth–Moon distance and closer than geostationary satellites. With a mass of some 40 kt (kilotonnes) and speed of 12.7 km/s relative to Earth (29.9 km/s relative to the Sun), this one could have caused major damage had it struck Earth. Since 12.7 km/s is above Earth's escape speed, 2012 DA₁₄ could not be orbiting Earth. But, as you can show in Problem 68, its total energy relative to the Sun is negative, putting it in a bound solar orbit. We can expect another close approach of 2012 DA₁₄ in the year 2123. Sixteen hours before 2012 DA₁₄'s closest approach in 2013, a 12-kt asteroid entered Earth's atmosphere over Siberia, moving at 19.0 km/s relative to Earth and 35.5 km/s relative to the Sun. It underwent a series of explosive fragmentations at altitudes ranging from 45 to 30 km and then disintegrated into small pieces at 22 km altitude (see photo). Shock waves from these explosions caused significant damage in the Russian city of Chelyabinsk

and injured some 1600 people. The Chelyabinsk asteroid was the largest object to enter Earth's atmosphere in over 100 years. As Problems 49 and 68 show, it too was in a bound orbit about the Sun before its demise in Earth's atmosphere.



EXAMPLE 8.5 An Extrasolar Visitor

In 2017 astronomers for the first time spotted an object that had entered our solar system from interstellar space. Named Oumuamua (the Hawaiian word for *scout*), the object had a speed of some 50 km/s when it was at approximately Earth's distance from the Sun. Determine the sign of Oumuamua's total energy and use the result to argue for its interstellar origin.

INTERPRET This is a problem about the total energy of an object subject to the Sun's gravity. Our question is whether that total energy E is greater than or less than zero. If it's greater, then the object is *not* bound to the solar system—making a strong case that it's of interstellar origin.

DEVELOP Total energy comprises gravitational potential energy, given by Equation 8.6, and kinetic energy, given by $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. The total energy is their sum—which might be less than zero because the gravitational energy is always negative.

EVALUATE The sum of the potential and kinetic energies is

$$E = -\frac{GM_{\text{Sun}}m}{r} + \frac{1}{2}mv^2$$

where m is Oumuamua's mass, r its distance from the Sun, and v its speed. Because the mass m appears in both energies, we don't need to

know it to find out if the energy is positive or negative. It suffices to find the sign of $-\frac{GM_{\text{Sun}}}{r} + \frac{1}{2}v^2$:

$$-\frac{GM_{\text{Sun}}}{r} + \frac{1}{2}v^2 = -\frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(1.99 \times 10^{30} \text{ kg})}{1.50 \times 10^{11} \text{ km}} + \frac{1}{2}(50 \times 10^3 \text{ km/s})^2 = 3.7 \times 10^8 \text{ J/kg}$$

This result is positive, showing that Oumuamua has more than enough energy to keep it from being bound by the Sun's gravity—strong evidence that it's of interstellar origin rather than a resident of our own Solar System. We found the Sun's mass and Earth's orbital radius (which we used for r in Equation 8.6) in the table inside the back cover. They're also in Appendix E.

ASSESS Our approach is equivalent to checking whether Oumuamua's speed at Earth's orbit is greater than or less than escape speed at that distance from the Sun. Our calculation came out in J/kg instead of J because we effectively divided out Oumuamua's unknown mass m .

Energy in Circular Orbits

In the special case of a circular orbit, kinetic and potential energies are related in a simple way. In Section 8.3, we found that the speed in a circular orbit is given by

$$v^2 = \frac{GM}{r}$$

where r is the distance from a gravitating center of mass M . So the kinetic energy of an object in circular orbit is

$$K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{GMm}{2r}$$

while potential energy is given by Equation 8.6:

$$U = -\frac{GMm}{r}$$

Comparing these two expressions shows that $U = -2K$ for a circular orbit. The total energy is therefore

$$E = U + K = -2K + K = -K \quad (8.8a)$$

or, equivalently,

$$E = \frac{1}{2}U = -\frac{GMm}{2r} \quad (8.8b)$$

The total energy in these equations is negative, showing that circular orbits are bound orbits. We stress that these results apply only to *circular* orbits; in elliptical orbits, there's a continuous interchange between kinetic and potential energy as the orbiting object moves relative to the gravitating center.

Equation 8.8a shows that *higher* kinetic energy corresponds to *lower* total energy. This surprising result occurs because *higher* orbital speed corresponds to a *lower* orbit, with lower potential energy.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 8.1 Space Maneuvers

Astronauts heading for the International Space Station find themselves in the right circular orbit, but well behind the station. How should they maneuver to catch up?

EVALUATE To catch up, the astronauts will have to go faster than the space station. That means increasing their kinetic energy—and, as we've just seen, that corresponds to *lowering* their total energy. So they'll need to drop into a lower orbit.

Figure 8.14 shows the catch-up sequence. The astronauts fire their rocket backward, decreasing their energy and dropping briefly into a lower-energy elliptical orbit. They then fire their rocket to circularize the orbit. Now they're in a lower-energy but faster orbit than the space station. When they're correctly positioned, they fire their rocket to boost themselves into a higher-energy elliptical orbit, then fire again to circularize that orbit in the vicinity of the station.

ASSESS Our solution sounds counterintuitive—as if a car, to speed up, had to apply its brakes. But that's what's needed here, thanks to the interplay between kinetic and potential energy in circular orbits.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Suppose the astronauts reach the space station's 380-km altitude, but find themselves one-fourth of an orbit behind the station. If the maneuver described above drops their spacecraft into a 320-km circular orbit, how many orbits must they make before catching up with the station? Neglect the time involved in transferring between circular orbits.

EVALUATE Applying Equation 8.4 gives periods $T_1 = 92.0$ min for the space station and $T_2 = 90.8$ min for the astronauts in their lower orbit. So with each orbit the astronauts gain 1.2 min on the station. They've got to make up one-fourth of an orbit, or 23 min. That will take $(23 \text{ min})/(1.2 \text{ min/orbit}) = 19$ orbits, or just over a day.

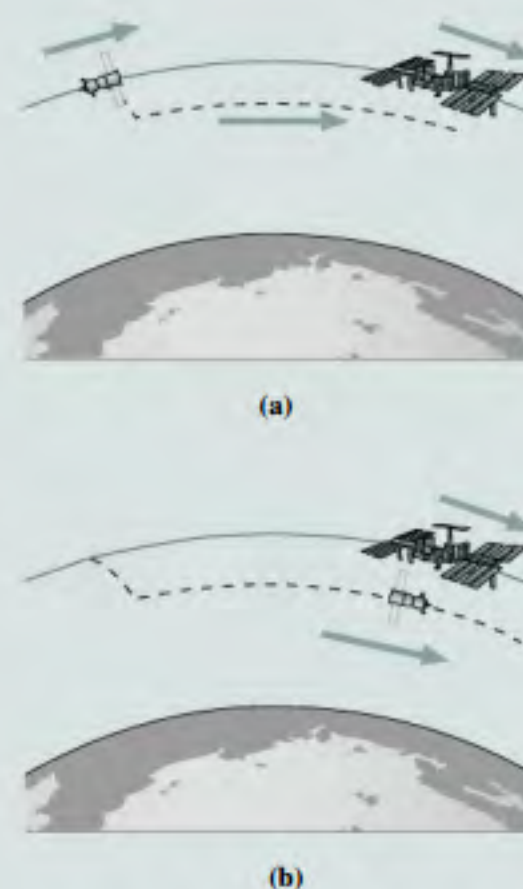


FIGURE 8.14 Playing catch-up with the space station.

GOT IT?

8.3 Two identical spacecraft A and B are in circular orbits about Earth, with B at a higher altitude. Which of the following statements are true? (a) B has greater total energy; (b) B is moving faster; (c) B takes longer to complete its orbit; (d) B has greater potential energy; (e) a larger proportion of B's total energy is potential energy

8.5 The Gravitational Field

LO 8.7 Explain the field concept as applied to the gravitational field.

Our description of gravity so far suggests that a massive body like Earth somehow “reaches out” across empty space to pull on objects like falling apples, satellites, or the Moon. This view—called **action-at-a-distance**—has bothered both physicists and philosophers for centuries. How can the Moon, for example, “know” about the presence of the distant Earth?

An alternative view holds that Earth creates a **gravitational field** and that objects respond to the field in their immediate vicinity. The field is described by vectors that give the force per unit mass that would arise at each point if a mass were placed there. Near Earth's surface, for instance, the gravitational field vectors point vertically downward and have magnitude 9.8 N/kg. We can express this field vectorially by writing

$$\vec{g} = -g\hat{j} \quad (\text{gravitational field near Earth's surface}) \quad (8.9)$$

where we've assumed a coordinate system with the y-axis upward. More generally, the field points toward a spherical gravitating center, and its strength decreases inversely with the square of the distance:

$\vec{g}$ is the gravitational field at a point in the vicinity of a mass M . Its magnitude is the field strength in N/kg.

M is the gravitating mass.

$\hat{r}$ is a unit vector pointing radially away from M 's center.

$$\vec{g} = -\frac{GM}{r^2}\hat{r} \quad (\text{gravitational field of a spherical mass } M) \quad (8.10)$$

Equivalently, $\vec{g}$ gives the magnitude and direction of the gravitational acceleration.

The minus sign shows that the field points toward M .

r is the distance from the center of M to the point where the field is being evaluated.

where $\hat{r}$ is a unit vector that points radially outward. Figure 8.15 shows pictorial representations of Equations 8.9 and 8.10. You can show that the units of gravitational field (N/kg) are equivalent to those of acceleration (m/s^2), so the field is really just a vectorial representation of g , the local acceleration of gravity.

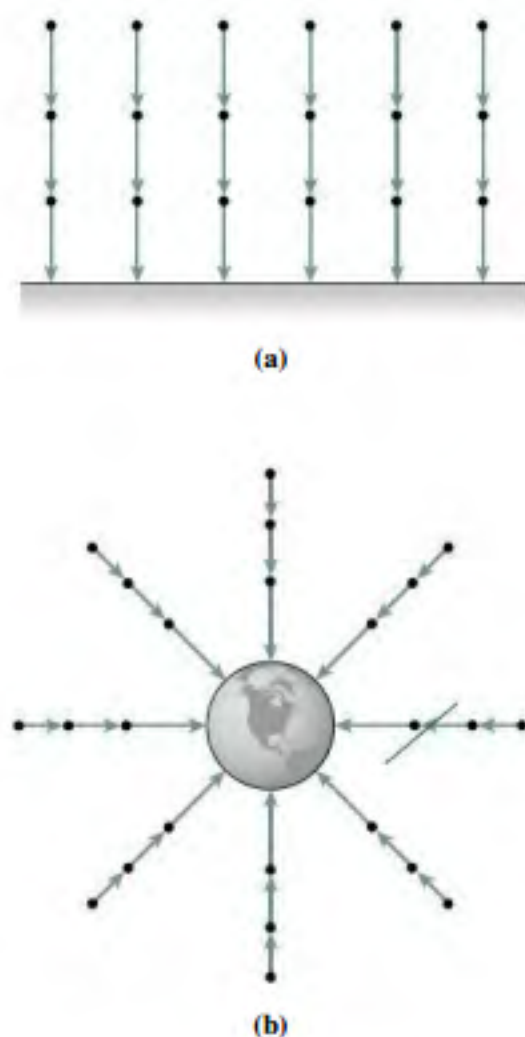
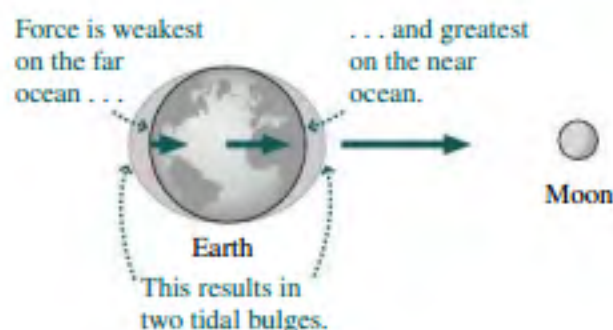


FIGURE 8.15 Gravitational field vectors at points (a) near Earth's surface and (b) on a larger scale.

APPLICATION Tides

If the gravitational field were uniform, all parts of a freely falling object would experience exactly the same acceleration. But gravity does vary, and the result is a force—not from gravity itself but from *changes* in gravity with position—that tends to stretch or compress an object. Ocean tides result from this **tidal force**, as the nonuniform gravitational forces of Sun and Moon stretch the oceans and create bulges that move across Earth as the planet rotates. The figure shows that the greatest force is on the ocean nearest the Moon, causing one tidal bulge. The solid Earth experiences an intermediate force, pulling it away from the ocean on the far side. The water that's “left behind” forms a second bulge opposite the Moon. The bulges shown are highly exaggerated. Furthermore, shoreline effects and the differing relative positions of the Moon and Sun complicate this simple picture that suggests two equal high tides and two equal low tides a day. Tidal

forces also cause internal heating of satellites like Jupiter's moon Io and contribute to the formation of planetary rings.



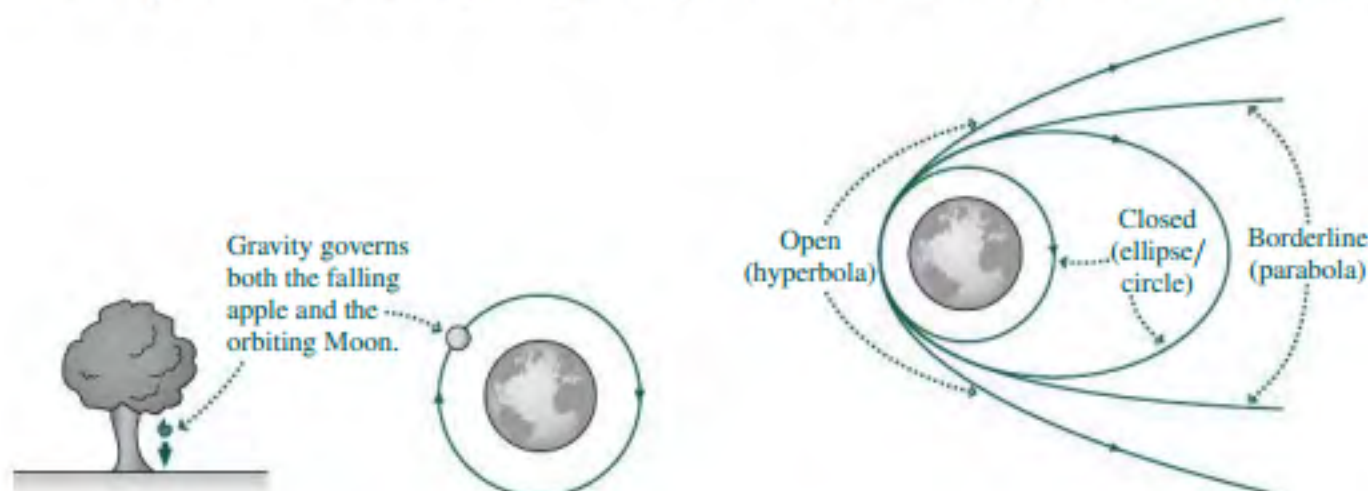
What do we gain by this field description? As long as we deal with situations where nothing changes, the action-at-a-distance and field descriptions are equivalent. But what if, for example, Earth suddenly gains mass? How does the Moon know to adjust its orbit? Under the field view, its orbit doesn't change immediately; instead, it takes a small but nonzero time for the information about the more massive Earth to propagate out to the Moon. The Moon always responds to the gravitational field *in its immediate vicinity*, and it takes a short time for the field itself to change. That description is consistent with Einstein's notion that instantaneous transmission of information is impossible; the action-at-a-distance view is not.

More generally, the field view provides a powerful way of describing interactions in physics. We'll see fields again when we study electricity and magnetism, and you'll find that fields aren't just mathematical or philosophical conveniences but are every bit as real as matter itself.

Chapter 8 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is **universal gravitation**—an attractive force that acts between all matter with a strength that depends directly on the product of two interacting masses and inversely on the square of the distance between them. Gravitation is responsible for the familiar behavior of falling objects and also for the orbits of planets and satellites. Depending on energy, orbits may be closed (elliptical/circular) or open (hyperbolic/parabolic).



Key Concepts and Equations

Mathematically, Newton's law of universal gravitation describes the attractive force F between two masses m_1 and m_2 located a distance r apart:

$$F = \frac{Gm_1m_2}{r^2} \quad (\text{universal gravitation})$$



This equation applies to point masses of negligible size and to spherically symmetric masses of any size. It's an excellent approximation for any objects whose size is much smaller than their separation. In all cases, r is measured from the centers of the gravitating objects.

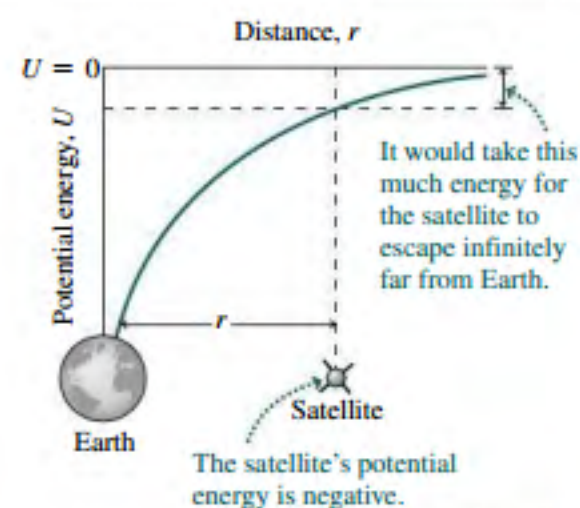
Because the strength of gravity varies with distance, potential-energy changes over large distances aren't just a product of force and distance. Integration shows that the potential-energy change ΔU involved in moving a mass m originally a distance r_1 from the center of a mass M to a distance r_2 is

$$\Delta U = GMm \left(\frac{1}{r_1} - \frac{1}{r_2} \right) \quad (\text{change in potential energy})$$

With gravity, it's convenient to choose the zero of potential energy at infinity; then

$$U = -\frac{GMm}{r} \quad (\text{potential energy, } U = 0 \text{ at infinity})$$

for the potential energy of a system comprising a mass m located a distance r from the center of another mass M .



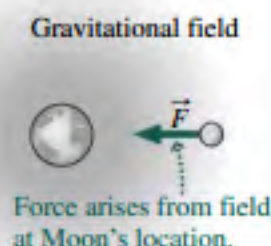
(continued)

Applications

A total energy—kinetic plus potential—of zero marks the dividing line between closed and open orbits. An object located a distance r from a gravitating mass M must have at least the **escape speed** to achieve an open orbit and escape M 's vicinity forever:

$$v_{\text{esc}} = \sqrt{\frac{2GM}{r}}$$

The **gravitational field** concept provides a way to describe gravity that avoids the troublesome action at a distance. A gravitating mass creates a field in the space around it, and a second mass responds to the field in its immediate vicinity.



Circular orbits are readily analyzed using Newton's laws and concepts from circular motion. A circular orbit of radius r about a mass M has a period given by

$$T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2 r^3}{GM}$$

Kinetic and potential energies are related by $U = -2K$. Total energy is negative, as appropriate for a closed orbit, and the object actually moves faster the lower its total energy.

A special orbit is the **geostationary orbit**, parallel to Earth's equator at an altitude of about 36,000 km. Here the orbital period is 24 h, so a satellite in geostationary orbit appears from Earth's surface to be fixed in the sky. TV, communications, and weather satellites use geostationary orbits.

Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter, you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 8.1 Describe the evolution of our understanding of planetary motion.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 8.1</i></p> <p>LO 8.2 Use the law of universal gravitation to find the gravitational force between masses.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.8; Exercises 8.11, 8.12, 8.13, 8.14, 8.15, 8.16, 8.17; Problems 8.38, 8.39, 8.40, 8.47, 8.66, 8.69, 8.70, 8.74, 8.75</i></p> <p>LO 8.3 Solve problems involving circular orbits.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 8.5, 8.6, 8.7, 8.9; Exercises 8.12, 8.18, 8.19, 8.20, 8.21, 8.22, 8.23; Problems 8.39, 8.43, 8.44, 8.45, 8.46, 8.47, 8.48, 8.54, 8.57, 8.59, 8.64, 8.67, 8.70, 8.71, 8.73</i></p> | <p>LO 8.4 Solve conservation-of-energy problems involving universal gravitation.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 8.10; Exercises 8.24, 8.25, 8.26, 8.27; Problems 8.41, 8.42, 8.46, 8.49, 8.50, 8.51, 8.52, 8.53, 8.55, 8.56, 8.58, 8.60, 8.62, 8.63, 8.64, 8.65, 8.68</i></p> <p>LO 8.5 Calculate escape speeds.
<i>Exercises 8.28, 8.29; Problems 8.53, 8.54, 8.58, 8.72</i></p> <p>LO 8.6 Distinguish closed and open orbits based on total energy.
<i>Problem 8.61</i></p> <p>LO 8.7 Explain the field concept as applied to the gravitational field.</p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- If the Earth ever comes to rest, will it fall toward the Sun?
- Explain the difference between G and g .
- When you stand on Earth, the distance between you and Earth is zero. So why isn't the gravitational force infinite?
- Though the Sun's gravitational pull is much stronger than that of the Moon, the ocean tides on the Earth are caused principally by the Moon. Why?
- A friend who knows nothing about physics asks what keeps an orbiting satellite from falling to Earth. Give an answer that will satisfy your friend.
- Could you put a satellite in an orbit that keeps it stationary over the south pole? Explain.
- Why are satellites generally launched eastward and from low latitudes? (*Hint:* Think about Earth's rotation.)
- Does your body experience the gravitational pull of the moon?
- Even the smallest of space debris poses serious threats to operational satellites. Why?
- Does the gravitational force of the Sun do work on a planet in a circular orbit? In an elliptical orbit? Explain.

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 8.2 Universal Gravitation

- Space explorers land on a planet with the same mass as Earth but find they weigh three times as much as they would on Earth. What's the planet's radius?
- Use data for the Moon's orbit from Appendix E to compute the Moon's acceleration in its circular orbit, and verify that the result is consistent with Newton's law of gravitation.
- To what fraction of its current radius would Earth have to shrink (with no change in mass) for the gravitational acceleration at its surface to double?

14. Calculate the gravitational acceleration at the surface of (a) Mercury and (b) Saturn's moon Titan.
15. Two identical lead spheres with their centers 14 cm apart attract each other with a $0.25\text{-}\mu\text{N}$ force. Find their mass.
16. What's the approximate value of the gravitational force between a 69-kg astronaut and a 77,000-kg spacecraft when they're 80 m apart?
17. A sensitive gravimeter is carried to the top of the Shanghai Tower, where its reading for the acceleration of gravity is 1.944 mm/s^2 lower than that at street level. Find the building's height.

Section 8.3 Orbital Motion

18. At what altitude will a satellite complete a circular orbit of Earth in 2.0 h?
19. Find the speed of a satellite in geostationary orbit.
20. Mars's orbit has a diameter 1.52 times that of Earth's orbit. How long does it take Mars to orbit the Sun?
21. Calculate the orbital period for Jupiter's moon Europa, which orbits $6.71 \times 10^5\text{ km}$ from the planet's center.
22. An astronaut hits a golf ball horizontally from the top of the Olympus Mons volcano, the highest point on Mars, so fast that it goes into circular orbit. What's its orbital period?
23. The Mars *Reconnaissance Orbiter* circles the red planet with a 114-min period. What's the spacecraft's altitude?

Section 8.4 Gravitational Energy

24. Earth's distance from the Sun varies from 147 Gm at perihelion to 152 Gm at aphelion because its orbit isn't quite circular. Find the change in potential energy as Earth goes from perihelion to aphelion.
25. So-called suborbital missions take scientific instruments into space for brief periods without the expense of getting into orbit; their trajectories are often simple "up and down" vertical paths. How much energy does it take to launch a 250-kg instrument on a vertical trajectory that peaks at a 1700-km altitude?
26. A rocket is launched vertically upward from Earth's surface at 5.2 km/s. What's its maximum altitude?
27. What vertical launch speed is necessary to get a rocket to an altitude of 1200 km?
28. The escape speed from a planet of mass $2.5 \times 10^{24}\text{ kg}$ is 6.9 km/s. Find the planet's radius.
29. Determine escape speeds from (a) Jupiter's moon Callisto and (b) a neutron star, with the Sun's mass crammed into a sphere of radius 5.7 km. See Appendix E for relevant data.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

30. **Example 8.2:** The *Hubble Space Telescope* orbits Earth at an altitude of 569 km. Find its (a) speed and (b) orbital period.
31. **Example 8.2:** The satellites that comprise the Global Positioning System (GPS) are in circular orbits with periods of 11.97 h. Find their (a) altitude and (b) speed.
32. **Example 8.2:** The *ExoMars Trace Gas Orbiter* is a joint project of the European and Russian space agencies, designed to help determine the origin of methane in the Martian atmosphere. *ExoMars* reached the red planet in 2016, and in 2018 its orbit

was circularized at approximately 400 km altitude. Estimate *ExoMars*' (a) speed and (b) orbital period.

33. **Example 8.2:** Find the altitude and speed of a spacecraft in stationary orbit above Mars' equator (this is analogous to a geostationary orbit at Earth and is called an *areostationary* orbit).
34. **Example 8.4:** A rocket is launched vertically from Earth's surface at 8.31 km/s. How high does it go?
35. **Example 8.4:** A rocket is launched vertically from Earth's surface and reaches a maximum altitude of 2150 km. What was its launch speed?
36. **Example 8.4:** A coronal mass ejection (CME) is an eruption of material from the Sun's atmosphere. Electromagnetic forces accelerate a particular CME to 550 km/s at an altitude of 2.0 solar radii above the Sun's surface. After that, the CME coasts, heading directly outward from the Sun, under the influence of solar gravity alone. Find its speed when it passes Earth's orbit.
37. **Example 8.4:** In September 2017, the *Cassini* spacecraft ended its 20-year mission to Saturn with a self-destructive plunge into the planet's atmosphere (this was done in part to avoid contaminating any of Saturn's many moons). *Cassini* entered Saturn's atmosphere at 123,000 km/h. Was this greater than or less than the speed *Cassini* would have had if it had simply started from rest and dropped onto Saturn from a great distance, and by how much?

Problems

38. The gravitational acceleration at a planet's surface is 25.0 m/s^2 . Find the acceleration at an altitude equal to half the planet's radius.
39. You're the navigator on a spaceship studying an unexplored planet. Your ship has just gone into a circular orbit around the planet, and you determine that the gravitational acceleration at your orbital altitude is a third of what it would be at the surface. What do you report for your altitude in terms of the planet's radius?
40. If you're standing on the ground 10 m directly below the center of a spherical water tank containing $3 \times 10^6\text{ kg}$ of water, by what fraction is your weight reduced due to the water's gravitational attraction?
41. On January 1, 2019, the 450-kg *New Horizons* spacecraft made the farthest-ever encounter with an object in our Solar System, flying by the Kuiper Belt object MU69 at some 51,000 km/h relative to the Sun. This encounter took place 6.5 billion km from the Sun, when *New Horizons* was already 1.6 billion km beyond its 2015 encounter with Pluto. Find *New Horizons*' total energy and use it to determine whether or not the spacecraft is bound to the Sun.
42. Equation 7.9 relates force to the derivative of potential energy. Use this fact to differentiate Equation 8.6 for gravitational potential energy, and show that you recover Newton's law of gravitation.
43. During the *Apollo* Moon landings, one astronaut remained with the command module in lunar orbit, about 130 km above the surface. For half of each orbit, this astronaut was completely cut off from the rest of humanity as the spacecraft rounded the far side of the Moon. How long did this period last?
44. A white dwarf is a collapsed star with roughly the Sun's mass compressed into the size of Earth. What would be (a) the orbital speed and (b) the orbital period for a spaceship in orbit just above the surface of a white dwarf?
45. Given that our Sun orbits the galaxy with a period of 200 My at $2.6 \times 10^{20}\text{ m}$ from the galactic center, estimate the galaxy's mass. Assume (incorrectly) that the galaxy is essentially spherical and that most of its mass lies interior to the Sun's orbit.
46. You're standing at the highest point on the Moon, 10,786 m above the level of the Moon's mean radius. You've got a golf club and a golf ball. (a) How fast would you need to hit the ball horizontally so it goes into a circular orbit? (b) If you hit the ball vertically with the same speed, to what height above you would it rise?

47. **CH** Exact solutions for gravitational problems involving more than two bodies are notoriously difficult. One solvable problem involves a configuration of three equal-mass objects spaced in an equilateral triangle. Forces due to their mutual gravitation cause the configuration to rotate. Suppose three identical stars, each of mass M , form a triangle of side L . Find an expression for the period of their orbital motion.
48. Satellites A and B are in circular orbits, with A three times as far from Earth's center as B. How do their orbital periods compare?
49. The asteroid that exploded over Chelyabinsk, Russia, in 2013 (see Application on page 158) was moving at 35.5 km/s relative to the Sun just before it entered Earth's atmosphere. Calculations based on orbital observations show that it was moving at 11.2 km/s at aphelion (its most distant point from the Sun). Find the distance at aphelion, expressed in astronomical units (1 AU is the average distance of Earth from Sun; see Appendix E).
50. **ENW** We still don't have a permanent solution for the disposal of radioactive waste. As a nuclear waste specialist with the Department of Energy, you're asked to evaluate a proposal to shoot waste canisters into the Sun. You need to report the speed at which a canister, dropped from rest in the vicinity of Earth's orbit, would hit the Sun. What's your answer?
51. In November 2013, Comet ISON reached its perihelion (closest approach to the Sun) at 1.87 Gm from the Sun's center (only 1.17 Gm from the solar surface); at that point ISON was moving at 378 km/s relative to the Sun. Do a calculation to determine whether its orbit was elliptical or hyperbolic. (Most of ISON's cometary nucleus was destroyed in its close encounter with the Sun.)
52. Neglecting air resistance, to what height would you have to fire a rocket for the constant-acceleration equations of Chapter 2 to give a height in error by 0.50%? Would those equations overestimate or underestimate the height?
53. Show that an object released from rest very far from Earth reaches Earth's surface at essentially escape speed.
54. By what factor must an object's speed in circular orbit be increased to reach escape speed from its orbital altitude?
55. In 2017 North Korea developed ballistic missiles capable of hitting targets anywhere in the continental United States. The missiles were actually tested on near-vertical trajectories, but using the missile's maximum height, U.S. scientists could determine the launch speed, and from that, using the physics of elliptical orbits, they could determine the maximum range. In its first test, the North Korean Hwasong-15 missile reached an altitude of 4500 km—more than 10 times the 408-km altitude of the International Space Station (ISS). Find the missile's launch speed, assuming it's achieved at essentially zero altitude (although the rocket motors actually burn out at several hundred kilometers).

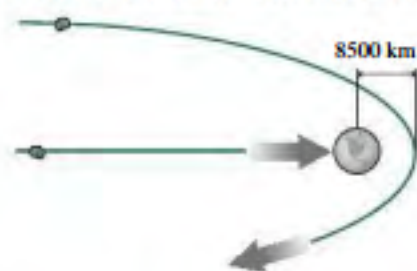


FIGURE 8.16 Problem 56

57. **CH** Neglecting Earth's rotation, show that the energy needed to launch a satellite of mass m into circular orbit at altitude h is
- $$\left(\frac{GM_E m}{R_E}\right) \left(\frac{R_E + 2h}{2(R_E + h)}\right).$$

58. **CH** A projectile is launched vertically upward from a planet of mass M and radius R ; its initial speed is $\sqrt{2}$ times the escape speed. Derive an expression for its speed as a function of the distance r from the planet's center.
59. **CH** A spacecraft is in circular orbit 5800 km above Earth's surface. How much will its altitude decrease if it moves to a new circular orbit where (a) its orbital speed is 10% higher or (b) its orbital period is 10% shorter?
60. Two meteoroids are 150,000 km from Earth's center and heading straight toward Earth, one at 6 km/s, the other at 12 km/s. At what speeds will they strike Earth?
61. The *New Horizons* mission to Pluto had the fastest launch speed of any space probe—16.26 km/s. Assuming this speed was achieved at negligible altitude compared with Earth's radius, find *New Horizons'* speed when it crossed the Moon's orbit.
62. A satellite is in an elliptical orbit at altitudes ranging from 230 to 890 km. At its highest point, it's moving at 7.23 km/s. How fast is it moving at its lowest point?
63. A missile's trajectory takes it to a maximum altitude of 1500 km. If its launch speed is 6.2 km/s, how fast is it moving at the peak of its trajectory?
64. A 750-kg spacecraft has total energy -0.57 TJ and is in circular orbit around the Sun. Find (a) its orbital radius, (b) its kinetic energy, and (c) its speed.
65. Mercury's orbital speed varies from 38.8 km/s at aphelion to 59.0 km/s at perihelion. If the planet is 6.99×10^{10} m from the Sun's center at aphelion, how far is it at perihelion?
66. **CH** Show that the form $\Delta U = mg \Delta r$ follows from Equation 8.5 when $r_1 \approx r_2$. [Hint: Write $r_2 = r_1 + \Delta r$ and apply the binomial approximation (Appendix A).]
67. **CH** Two satellites are in geostationary orbit but in diametrically opposite positions (Fig. 8.17). In order to catch up with the other, one satellite descends into a lower circular orbit (see Conceptual Example 8.1 for a description of this maneuver). How far should it descend if it's to catch up in 10 orbits? Neglect rocket firing times and time spent moving between the two circular orbits.
68. The two asteroids described in the Application on page 158 both set records for being the largest objects of their sizes to come as close to Earth in recent times as they did. Use appropriate data given in the Application to find the total energy for each asteroid—that is, each asteroid's kinetic energy plus potential energy in the asteroid–Sun system. What do your results show about the asteroids' orbits?
69. **DATA** A spacecraft is orbiting a spherical asteroid when it deploys a probe that falls toward the asteroid's surface. The spacecraft radios to Earth the probe's position and its acceleration; the data are shown in the table below. Determine a quantity that, when you plot a against it, should yield a straight line. Plot the data, determine a best-fit line, and use its slope to determine the asteroid's mass.



FIGURE 8.17 Problem 67

Probe position r (km from asteroid's center)	80.0	55.0	40.0	35.0	30.0
Acceleration a (mm/s ²)	0.172	0.353	0.704	0.858	1.18

70. We derived Equation 8.4 on the assumption that the massive gravitating center remains fixed. Now consider two objects with equal mass M orbiting each other, as shown in Fig. 8.18. Show that the orbital period is given by $T^2 = 2\pi^2 d^3/GM$, where d is the distance between the objects.

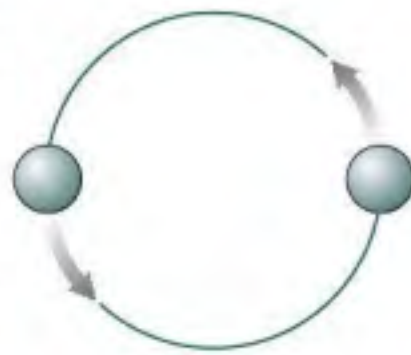


FIGURE 8.18 Problem 70

71. Tidal effects in the Earth–Moon system cause the Moon’s orbital period to increase at a current rate of about 35 ms per century. Assuming the Moon’s orbit is circular, to what rate of change in the Earth–Moon distance does this correspond? (*Hint:* Differentiate Kepler’s third law, Equation 8.4, and consult Appendix E.)
72. **BIO** As a member of the 2040 Olympic committee, you’re considering a new sport: asteroid jumping. On Earth, world-class high jumpers routinely clear 2 m. Your job is to make sure athletes jumping from asteroids will return to the asteroid. Make the simplifying assumption that asteroids are spherical, with average density 1700 kg/m^3 . For safety, make sure even a jumper capable of 2.8 m on Earth will return to the surface. What do you report for the minimum asteroid diameter?
73. The Olympic Committee is keeping you busy! You’re now asked to consider a proposal for martian golf. The record speed for a golf drive is 349 km/h. Is there any danger that golf balls will go into Martian orbit?
74. **CH** Tidal forces are proportional to the variation in gravity with position. By differentiating Equation 8.1, estimate the ratio of the tidal forces due to the Sun and the Moon. Compare your answer with the ratio of the gravitational forces that the Sun and Moon exert on Earth. Use data from Appendix E.
75. **COMP** Spacecraft that study the Sun are often placed at the so-called L1 Lagrange point, located sunward of Earth on the Sun–Earth line. L1 is the point where Earth’s and Sun’s gravity together produce an orbital period of one year, so that a spacecraft at L1 stays fixed relative to Earth as both planet and spacecraft orbit the Sun. This placement ensures an uninterrupted view of the Sun, without being periodically eclipsed by Earth as would occur in Earth orbit. Find L1’s location relative to Earth. (*Hint:* This problem calls for numerical methods or solving a higher-order polynomial equation.)

Passage Problems

The Global Positioning System (GPS) uses a “constellation” of some 30 satellites to provide accurate positioning for any point on Earth (Fig. 8.19). GPS receivers time radio signals traveling at the speed of

light from three of the satellites to find the receiver’s position. Signals from one or more additional satellites provide corrections, eliminating the need for high-accuracy clocks in individual GPS receivers. GPS satellites are in circular orbits at 20,200 km altitude.

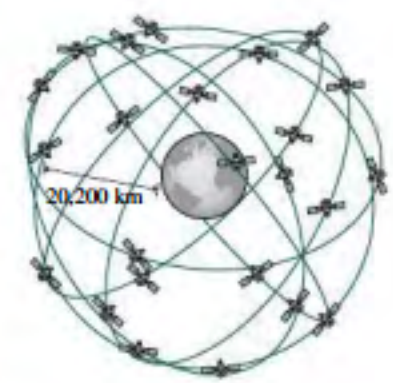


FIGURE 8.19 GPS satellites (Passage Problems 76–79)

76. What’s the approximate orbital period of GPS satellites?
- 90 min
 - 8 h
 - 12 h
 - 24 h
 - 1 week
77. What’s the approximate speed of GPS satellites?
- 9.8 m/s
 - 500 m/s
 - 1.7 km/s
 - 4 km/s
 - 12 km/s
78. What’s the approximate escape speed at GPS orbital distance?
- 4 km/s
 - 5.5 km/s
 - 6.3 km/s
 - 9.8 km/s
 - 11 km/s
79. The current generation of GPS satellites have masses of 844 kg. What’s the approximate total energy of such a satellite?
- 6 GJ
 - 3 GJ
 - 3 GJ
 - 6 GJ
 - 8 GJ

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

New Horizons’ total energy—kinetic energy plus potential energy associated with the Sun’s gravitational field—is greater than zero. Put another way, *New Horizons* has escape speed relative to the Sun.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 8.1 (d) Quadrupled. If the original distance were r , the original force would be proportional to $1/r^2$. At half that distance, the force is proportional to $1/(r/2)^2 = 4/r^2$.
- 8.2 Hyperbolic > parabolic > elliptical > circular
- 8.3 (a), (c), and (d). Since B has higher total energy, it must have lower kinetic energy and is therefore moving slower. B is farther from the gravitating body, so its potential energy is higher—still negative, but less so than A’s. For circular orbits, the ratio of potential energy to total energy is always the same—namely, $U = 2E$.

Systems of Particles

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The concept of momentum (Section 4.2)
- Newton's second law expressed as $\vec{F} = d\vec{p}/dt$ (Section 4.2)
- Newton's third law (Section 4.6)
- Your knowledge of integral calculus

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 9.1 Find the center of mass of a system of discrete particles.
- LO 9.2 Describe the motion of a system's center of mass.
- LO 9.3 Use integration to find the center of mass of a continuous object.
- LO 9.4 Determine the total momentum of a system.
- LO 9.5 Solve problems involving conservation of momentum.
- LO 9.6 Break a system's kinetic energy into center-of-mass and internal components.
- LO 9.7 Describe what constitutes a collision and distinguish elastic from inelastic collisions.
- LO 9.8 Analyze totally inelastic collisions using conservation of momentum.
- LO 9.9 Analyze elastic collisions using conservation of momentum and kinetic energy.

So far we've generally treated objects as point particles, ignoring the fact that most are composed of smaller parts. In Chapter 6's introduction of energy, however, we needed also to develop the idea of a system that might comprise more than one object, and in Chapter 7 we found that the concept of potential energy necessarily required us to consider systems of at least two interacting particles. Here we deal explicitly with systems of many particles. These include **rigid bodies**—objects such as baseballs, cars, and planets whose constituent particles are stuck together in fixed orientations—as well as systems like human bodies, exploding fireworks, or flowing rivers, whose parts move relative to one another. In subsequent chapters we'll look at specific instances of many-particle systems, including the rotational motion of rigid bodies (Chapter 10) and the behavior of fluids (Chapter 15).

9.1 Center of Mass

- LO 9.1 *Find the center of mass of a system of discrete particles.*
- LO 9.3 *Use integration to find the center of mass of a continuous object.*
- LO 9.2 *Describe the motion of a system's center of mass.*



Most parts of the dancer's body undergo complex motions during this jump, yet one special point follows the parabolic trajectory of a projectile. What is that point, and why is it special?

The motion of the dancer in the photo on the previous page is complex, with each part of his body moving on a different path. But the superimposed curve shows one point following the parabola we expect of a projectile (Section 3.5). This point is the **center of mass**, an average position of all the mass making up the dancer. Since the net force on the dancer as a whole is gravity, the photo, with its parabolic arc, suggests that the center of mass obeys Newton's second law, $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = M\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$, where M is the dancer's total mass and $\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$ is the acceleration of the center of mass. (We'll use the subscript cm for quantities associated with the center of mass.) To find the center of mass, we therefore need to locate a point whose acceleration obeys $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = M\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$, with $\vec{F}_{\text{net}}$ the net force on the entire system.

Consider a system of many particles. To find the center of mass, we want an equation like Newton's second law that involves the total mass of the system and the net force on the entire system. If we apply Newton's second law to the i th particle in the system, we have

$$\vec{F}_i = m_i \vec{a}_i = m_i \frac{d^2 \vec{r}_i}{dt^2} = \frac{d^2 m_i \vec{r}_i}{dt^2}$$

where $\vec{F}_i$ is the net force on the particle, m_i is its mass, and we've written the acceleration $\vec{a}_i$ as the second derivative of the position $\vec{r}_i$. The total force on the system is the sum of the forces acting on all N particles. We write this sum compactly using the summation symbol Σ :

$$\vec{F}_{\text{total}} = \sum_{i=1}^N \vec{F}_i = \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{d^2 m_i \vec{r}_i}{dt^2}$$

where the sum runs over all particles composing the system, from $i = 1$ to N . But the sum of derivatives is the derivative of the sum, so

$$\vec{F}_{\text{total}} = \frac{d^2 (\sum m_i \vec{r}_i)}{dt^2}$$

We can now put this equation in the form of Newton's second law. Multiplying and dividing the right-hand side by the total mass $M = \sum m_i$, and distributing this constant M through the differentiation, we have

$$\vec{F}_{\text{total}} = M \frac{d^2}{dt^2} \left(\frac{\sum m_i \vec{r}_i}{M} \right) \quad (9.1)$$

Equation 9.1 has a form like Newton's law applied to the total mass if we define

$\vec{r}_{\text{cm}}$ is the position of the center of mass. Think of this vector equation as being three scalar equations for coordinates x_{cm} , y_{cm} , and z_{cm} .

$\vec{r}_{\text{cm}}$ involves a sum of the positions $\vec{r}_i$ weighted by the masses m_i .

$$\vec{r}_{\text{cm}} = \frac{\sum m_i \vec{r}_i}{M} \quad (\text{center of mass}) \quad (9.2)$$

M is the total mass, given by $\sum m_i$.

Then the derivative in Equation 9.1 becomes $d^2 \vec{r}_{\text{cm}}/dt^2$, which we recognize as the center-of-mass acceleration, $\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$. So now Equation 9.1 reads $\vec{F}_{\text{total}} = M\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$. This is almost Newton's law—but not quite, because the force here is the sum of all the forces acting on all the particles of the system, and we want just the net **external force**—the net force applied from *outside* the system. We can write the force $\vec{F}_{\text{total}}$ as

$$\vec{F}_{\text{total}} = \sum \vec{F}_{\text{ext}} + \sum \vec{F}_{\text{int}}$$

where $\sum \vec{F}_{\text{ext}}$ is the sum of all the external forces and $\sum \vec{F}_{\text{int}}$ the sum of the internal forces—those acting between particles within the system. According to Newton's third law, each of

the internal forces has an equal but oppositely directed force that itself acts on a particle of the system and is therefore included in the sum $\sum \vec{F}_{\text{int}}$. (Each external force is also part of a third-law pair, but forces paired with the external forces act *outside* the system and therefore aren't included in the sum.) Added vectorially, the internal forces therefore cancel in pairs, so $\sum \vec{F}_{\text{int}} = \vec{0}$, and the force $\vec{F}_{\text{total}}$ in Equation 9.1 is just the net *external* force applied to the system. So the point $\vec{r}_{\text{cm}}$ defined in Equation 9.2 does obey Newton's law, written in the form

$$\vec{F}_{\text{net ext}} = M \vec{a}_{\text{cm}} = M \frac{d^2 \vec{r}_{\text{cm}}}{dt^2} \quad (9.3)$$

where $\vec{F}_{\text{net ext}}$ is the net external force applied to the system and M is the total mass.

We've defined the center of mass $\vec{r}_{\text{cm}}$ so we can apply Newton's second law to the entire system rather than to each individual particle. As far as its overall motion is concerned, a complex system acts as though all its mass were concentrated at the center of mass.

Finding the Center of Mass

Equation 9.2 shows that the center-of-mass position is an average of the positions of the individual particles, weighted by their masses. For a one-dimensional system, Equation 9.2 becomes $x_{\text{cm}} = \sum m_i x_i / M$; in two and three dimensions, there are similar equations for the center-of-mass coordinates y_{cm} and z_{cm} . Finding the center of mass (CM) is a matter of establishing a coordinate system and then using the components of Equation 9.2.

EXAMPLE 9.1 Center of Mass in One Dimension: Weightlifting

Find the center of mass of a barbell consisting of 50-kg and 80-kg weights at the opposite ends of a 1.5-m-long bar of negligible mass.

INTERPRET This is a problem about center of mass. We identify the system as consisting of two “particles”—namely, the two weights.

DEVELOP Figure 9.1 shows the barbell. Here, with just two particles, we have a one-dimensional situation and Equation 9.2, $\vec{r}_{\text{cm}} = \sum m_i \vec{r}_i / M$, becomes $x_{\text{cm}} = (m_1 x_1 + m_2 x_2) / (m_1 + m_2)$. Before we can apply this equation, however, we need a coordinate system. As always, any coordinate system will do—but a smart choice makes the math easier. Let's

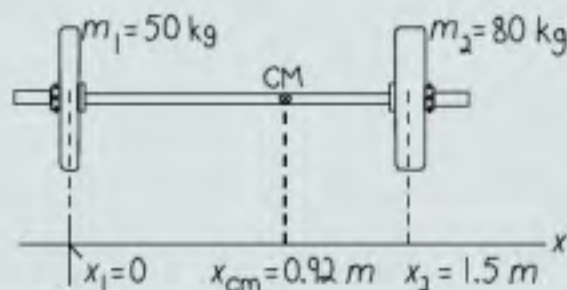


FIGURE 9.1 Our sketch of the barbell.

take $x = 0$ at the 50-kg mass, so the term $m_1 x_1$ becomes zero. Our plan is then to find the center-of-mass coordinate x_{cm} using our one-dimensional version of Equation 9.2.

EVALUATE With $x = 0$ at the left end of the barbell, the coordinate of the 80-kg mass is $x_2 = 1.5$ m. So our equation becomes

$$x_{\text{cm}} = \frac{m_1 x_1 + m_2 x_2}{m_1 + m_2} = \frac{m_2 x_2}{m_1 + m_2} = \frac{(80 \text{ kg})(1.5 \text{ m})}{(50 \text{ kg} + 80 \text{ kg})} = 0.92 \text{ m}$$

where the equation simplified because of our choice $x_1 = 0$.

ASSESS As Fig. 9.1 shows, this result makes sense: The center of mass is closer to the heavier weight. If the weights had been equal, the center of mass would have been right in the middle.



CHOOSING THE ORIGIN Choosing the origin at one of the masses here conveniently makes one of the terms in the sum $\sum m_i x_i$ zero. But, as always, the choice of origin is purely for convenience and doesn't influence the actual physical location of the center of mass. Exercise 12 demonstrates this point, repeating Example 9.1 with a different origin.

EXAMPLE 9.2 Center of Mass in Two Dimensions: A Space Station

Figure 9.2 shows a space station consisting of three modules arranged in an equilateral triangle, connected by struts of length L and of negligible mass. Two modules have mass m , the other $2m$. Find the center of mass.

INTERPRET We're after the center of mass of the system consisting of the three modules.

DEVELOP Figure 9.2 is our drawing. We'll use Equation 9.2, $\vec{r}_{\text{cm}} = \sum m_i \vec{r}_i / M$, to find the center-of-mass coordinates x_{cm} and y_{cm} . A sensible coordinate system has the origin at the module with mass $2m$ and the y -axis downward, as shown in Fig. 9.2.

EVALUATE Labeling the modules from left to right, we see that $x_1 = -L \sin 30^\circ = -\frac{1}{2}L$, $y_1 = L \cos 30^\circ = L\sqrt{3}/2$; $x_2 = y_2 = 0$; and $x_3 = -x_1 = \frac{1}{2}L$, $y_3 = y_1 = L\sqrt{3}/2$. Writing explicitly the x - and y -components of Equation 9.2 for this case gives

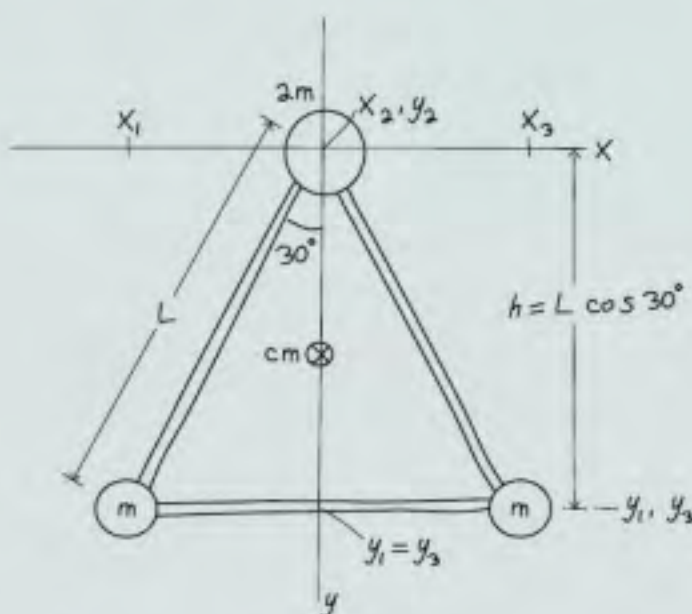


FIGURE 9.2 Our sketch of the space station.

$$x_{\text{cm}} = \frac{mx_1 + mx_3}{4m} = \frac{m(x_1 - x_1)}{4m} = 0$$

$$y_{\text{cm}} = \frac{my_1 + my_3}{4m} = \frac{2my_1}{4m} = \frac{1}{2}y_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}L = 0.43L$$

Although there are three “particles” here, our choice of coordinate system left only two nonzero terms in the numerator, both associated with the same mass m . The more massive module is still in the problem, though; its mass $2m$ contributes to make the total mass M in the denominator equal to $4m$.

ASSESS That $x_{\text{cm}} = 0$ is apparent from symmetry (more on this in the following Tip). How about the result for y_{cm} ? We have $2m$ at the top of the triangle, and $m + m = 2m$ at the bottom—so shouldn’t the center of mass lie midway up the triangle? It does! Expressing the center of mass in terms of the triangle side L obscures this fact. The triangle’s height is $h = L \cos 30^\circ = L\sqrt{3}/2$, and our answer for y_{cm} is indeed half this value. We marked the center of mass (cm) on Fig. 9.2.



EXPLOIT SYMMETRIES It’s no accident that x_{cm} here lies on the vertical line that bisects the triangle; after all, the triangle is symmetric about that line, so its mass is distributed evenly on either side. Exploit symmetry whenever you can; that can save you a lot of computation throughout physics!

Continuous Distributions of Matter

We’ve expressed the center of mass as a sum over individual particles. Ultimately, matter *is* composed of individual particles. But it’s often convenient to consider that it’s continuously distributed; we don’t want to deal with 10^{23} atoms to find the center of mass of a macroscopic object! We can think of continuous matter as being composed of individual pieces of mass Δm_i , with position vectors $\vec{r}_i$; we call these pieces **mass elements** (Fig. 9.3). The center of mass of the entire chunk is then given by Equation 9.2: $\vec{r}_{\text{cm}} = (\sum \Delta m_i \vec{r}_i)/M$, where $M = \sum \Delta m_i$ is the total mass. In the limit as the mass elements become arbitrarily small, this expression becomes an integral:

$$\vec{r}_{\text{cm}} = \lim_{\Delta m_i \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sum \Delta m_i \vec{r}_i}{M} = \frac{\int \vec{r} dm}{M} \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{center of mass,} \\ \text{continuous matter} \end{array} \right) \quad (9.4)$$

With continuous matter the masses $m_i \dots$...become infinitesimal mass elements $dm \dots$
 ...and the sum... ...becomes an integral.

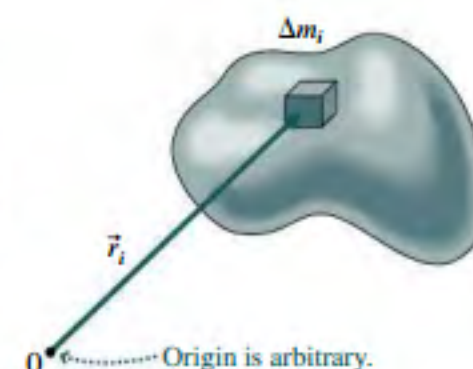


FIGURE 9.3 A chunk of continuous matter, showing one mass element Δm_i and its position vector $\vec{r}_i$.

where the integration is over the entire object. Like the sum in Equation 9.2, the integral of the vector $\vec{r}$ stands for three separate integrals for the components of the center-of-mass position.

EXAMPLE 9.3 Continuous Matter: An Aircraft Wing

A supersonic aircraft wing is an isosceles triangle of length L , width w , and negligible thickness. It has mass M , distributed uniformly over the wing. Where’s its center of mass?

INTERPRET Here the matter is distributed continuously, so we need to integrate to find the center of mass. We identify an axis of symmetry through the wing, which we designate the x -axis. By symmetry, the

center of mass lies along this x -axis, so $y_{\text{cm}} = 0$ and we’ll need to calculate only x_{cm} .

DEVELOP Figure 9.4 shows the wing. Equation 9.4 applies, and we need only the x -component because the y -component is evident from symmetry. The x -component of Equation 9.4 is $x_{\text{cm}} = (\int x dm)/M$. Developing a plan for dealing with an integral

(continued)

like this requires some thought; we'll first do the work and then summarize the general steps involved.

Our goal is to find an appropriate mass element dm , and express it in terms of the infinitesimal coordinate interval dx . As shown in Fig. 9.4, here it's easiest to use a vertical strip of width dx . Each such strip has a different height h , depending on its position x . If we choose a coordinate system with origin at the wing apex, then, as you can see from the figure, the height grows linearly from 0 at $x = 0$ to w at $x = L$. So $h = (w/L)x$. This strip is infinitesimally narrow, so its sloping edges don't matter and its area dA is that of a very thin rectangle—namely, $dA = h dx = (w/L)x dx$. Now comes the important step where we relate dm and dx : The strip's mass dm is the same

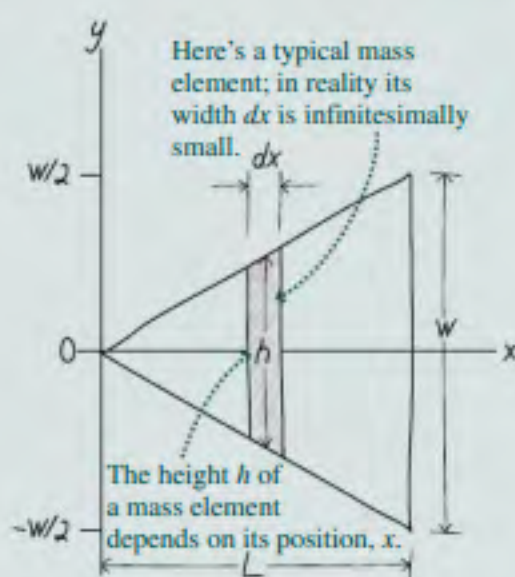


FIGURE 9.4 Our sketch of the supersonic aircraft wing.

fraction of the total wing mass M as its area dA is of the total wing area $A = \frac{1}{2}wL$; that is,

$$\frac{dm}{M} = \frac{dA}{A} = \frac{(w/L)x dx}{\frac{1}{2}wL} = \frac{2x dx}{L^2}$$

so $dm = 2Mx dx/L^2$.

In the integral we weight each mass element dm by its distance x from the origin, and then sum—that is, integrate—over all mass elements. So, from Equation 9.4, we have

$$x_{\text{cm}} = \frac{1}{M} \int x dm = \frac{1}{M} \int_0^L x \left(\frac{2Mx}{L^2} dx \right) = \frac{2}{L^2} \int_0^L x^2 dx$$

As always, constants can come outside the integral. We set the limits 0 and L to cover all the mass elements in the wing. Now we're finally ready to find x_{cm} .

EVALUATE The hard part is done. All that's left is to evaluate the integral:

$$x_{\text{cm}} = \frac{2}{L^2} \int_0^L x^2 dx = \frac{2}{L^2} \left. \frac{x^3}{3} \right|_0^L = \frac{2L^3}{3L^2} = \frac{2}{3}L$$

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: Our answer puts the center of mass toward the back of the wing where, because of its increasing width, most of the mass lies. In a complicated calculation like this one, it's reassuring to see that the answer is a quantity with the units of length.

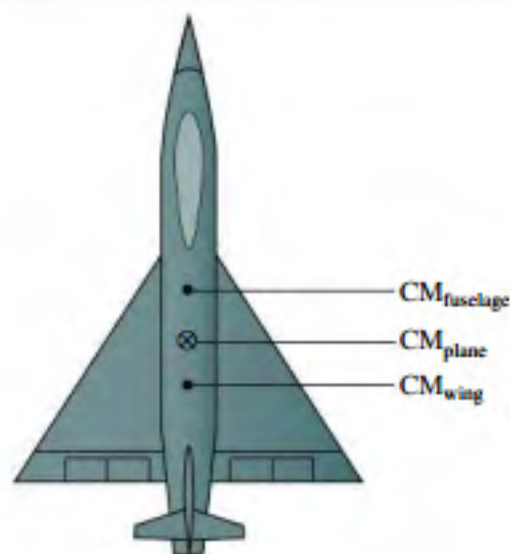


FIGURE 9.5 The center of mass of the airplane is found by treating the wing and fuselage as point particles located at their respective centers of mass.

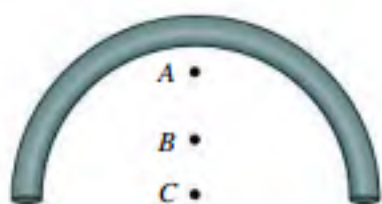


FIGURE 9.6 Got it? The center of mass lies outside the semicircular wire, but which point is it?

Tactics 9.1 SETTING UP AN INTEGRAL

An integral like $\int x dm$ can be confusing because you see both x and dm after the integral sign and they don't seem related. But they are, and here's how to proceed:

1. Find a suitable shape for your mass elements, preferably one that exploits any symmetry in the situation. One dimension of the elements should involve an infinitesimal interval in one of the coordinates x , y , or z . In Example 9.3, the mass elements were strips, symmetric about the wing's centerline and with width dx .
2. Find an expression for the infinitesimal area of your mass elements (in a one-dimensional problem it would be the length; in a three-dimensional problem, the volume). In Example 9.3, the infinitesimal area of each mass element was the strip height h multiplied by the width dx .
3. Form ratios that relate the infinitesimal coordinate interval to the physical quantity in the integral—which in Example 9.3 is the mass element dm . Here we formed the ratio of the area of a mass element to the total area, and equated that to the ratio of dm to the total mass M .
4. Solve your ratio statement for the infinitesimal quantity, in this case dm , that appears in your integral. Then you're ready to evaluate the integral.

Sometimes you'll be given a density—mass per volume, per area, or per length—and then in place of steps 3 and 4 you find dm by multiplying the density by the infinitesimal volume, area, or length you identified in step 2.

Although we described this procedure in the context of Example 9.3, it also applies to other integrals you'll encounter in different areas of physics.

With more complex objects, it's convenient to find the centers of mass of subparts and then treat those as point particles to find the center of mass of the entire object (Fig. 9.5).

The center of mass need not lie within an object, as Fig. 9.6 shows. High jumpers exploit this fact as they straddle the bar with arms and legs dangling on either side (Fig. 9.7). Although the jumper's entire body clears the bar, his center of mass doesn't need to!

GOT IT?

9.1 A thick wire is bent into a semicircle, as shown in Fig. 9.6. Which of the points shown is the center of mass?

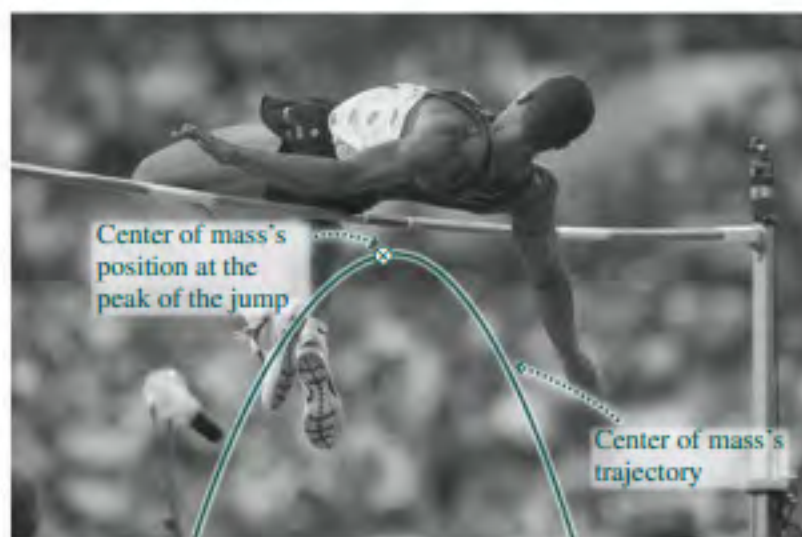


FIGURE 9.7 A high jumper clears the bar, but his center of mass doesn't!

Motion of the Center of Mass

We defined the center of mass so its motion obeys Newton's law $\vec{F}_{\text{net ext}} = M\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$, with $\vec{F}_{\text{net ext}}$ the net external force on the system and M the total mass. When gravity is the only external force, the center of mass follows the trajectory of a point particle. But if the net external force is zero, then the center-of-mass acceleration $\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$ is also zero, and the center of mass moves with constant velocity. In the special case of a system at rest, the center of mass remains at rest despite any motions of its internal parts.

EXAMPLE 9.4 Center-of-Mass Motion: Circus Train

Jumbo, a 4.8-t elephant, stands near one end of a 15-t railcar at rest on a frictionless horizontal track. (Here t is for tonne, or metric ton, equal to 1000 kg.) Jumbo walks 19 m toward the other end of the car. How far does the car move?

INTERPRET We're asked about the car's motion, but we can interpret this problem as being about the center of mass. We identify the system as comprising Jumbo and the car. Because there's no net external force acting on the system, its center of mass can't move.

DEVELOP Figure 9.8a shows the initial situation. The symmetric car has its CM at its center. Let's take a coordinate system that's fixed to the ground and that has $x = 0$ at this *initial* location of the car's center. Equation 9.2 applies—here in the simpler one-dimensional, two-object form we used in Example 9.1: $x_{\text{cm}} = (m_J x_J + m_c x_c)/M$, where we use the subscripts J and c for Jumbo and the car, respectively, and where $M = m_J + m_c$ is the total mass. The center of mass of the system can't move, so we'll write two versions of this expression, before and after Jumbo's walk. We'll then set them equal to state mathematically that the CM doesn't move; that is, $x_{\text{cm}i} = x_{\text{cm}f}$, where the subscripts i and f designate quantities associated with the initial and final states, respectively.

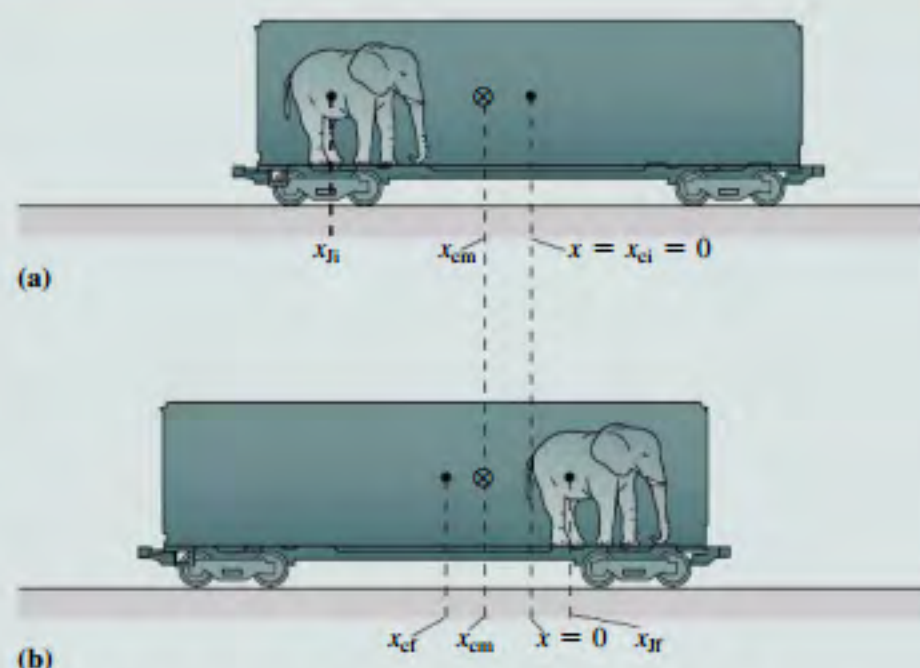


FIGURE 9.8 Jumbo walks, but the system's center of mass doesn't move.

We chose our coordinate system so that the car's initial position was $x_{ci} = 0$, so our expression for the initial position of the system's center of mass becomes

(continued)

$$x_{\text{cm}i} = m_J x_{Ji} / M$$

The final center-of-mass position, after Jumbo's walk, is $x_{\text{cm}f} = (m_J x_{Jf} + m_c x_{cf}) / M$. We don't know either of the final coordinates x_{Jf} or x_{cf} here, but we do know that Jumbo walks 19 m *with respect to the car*. Jumbo's final position x_{Jf} is therefore 19 m to the right of x_{Ji} , *adjusted for the car's displacement*. Therefore Jumbo ends up at $x_{Jf} = x_{Ji} + 19 \text{ m} + x_{cf}$. You might think we need a minus sign because the car moves to the left. That's true, but the sign of x_{cf} will take care of that. Trust algebra! So our expression for the final center-of-mass position is

$$x_{\text{cm}f} = \frac{m_J x_{Jf} + m_c x_{cf}}{M} = \frac{m_J (x_{Ji} + 19 \text{ m} + x_{cf}) + m_c x_{cf}}{M}$$

EVALUATE Finally, we equate our expressions for the initial and final positions of the center of mass. Again, that's because there are no forces external to the elephant-car system acting in the horizontal direction, so the center-of-mass position x_{cm} can't change. Thus we have $x_{\text{cm}i} = x_{\text{cm}f}$, or

$$\frac{m_J x_{Ji}}{M} = \frac{m_J (x_{Ji} + 19 \text{ m} + x_{cf}) + m_c x_{cf}}{M}$$

The total mass M cancels, so we're left with the equation $m_J x_{Ji} = m_J (x_{Ji} + 19 \text{ m} + x_{cf}) + m_c x_{cf}$. We aren't given x_{Ji} , but the term $m_J x_{Ji}$ is on both sides of this equation, so it cancels, leaving $0 = m_J (19 \text{ m} + x_{cf}) + m_c x_{cf}$. We solve for the unknown x_{cf} to get

$$x_{cf} = -\frac{(19 \text{ m})m_J}{(m_J + m_c)} = -\frac{(19 \text{ m})(4.8 \text{ t})}{(4.8 \text{ t} + 15 \text{ t})} = -4.6 \text{ m}$$

The minus sign here indicates a displacement to the left, as we anticipated (Fig. 9.8b). Because the masses appear only in ratios, we didn't need to convert to kilograms.

ASSESS The car's 4.6-m displacement is quite a bit less than Jumbo's (which is $19 \text{ m} - 4.6 \text{ m}$, or 14.4 m relative to the ground). That makes sense because Jumbo is considerably less massive than the car.

9.2 Momentum

LO 9.4 Determine the total momentum of a system.

LO 9.5 Solve problems involving conservation of momentum.

In Chapter 4 we defined the linear momentum $\vec{p}$ of a particle as $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$, and we first wrote Newton's law in the form $\vec{F} = d\vec{p}/dt$. We suggested that this form would play an important role in many-particle systems. We're now ready to explore that role.

The momentum of a system of particles is the vector sum of the individual momenta: $\vec{P} = \sum \vec{p}_i = \sum m_i \vec{v}_i$, where m_i and $\vec{v}_i$ are the masses and velocities of the individual particles. But we'd rather not have to keep track of all the particles in the system. Is there a simpler way to express the total momentum? There is, and it comes from writing the individual velocities as time derivatives of position: $\vec{v} = d\vec{r}/dt$. Then

$$\vec{P} = \sum m_i \frac{d\vec{r}_i}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} \sum m_i \vec{r}_i$$

where the last step follows because the individual particle masses are constant and because the sum of derivatives is the derivative of the sum. In Section 9.1, we defined the center-of-mass position $\vec{r}_{\text{cm}}$ as $\sum m_i \vec{r}_i / M$, where M is the total mass. So the total momentum becomes

$$\vec{P} = \frac{d}{dt} M \vec{r}_{\text{cm}}$$

or, assuming the system mass M remains constant,

$$\vec{P} = M \frac{d\vec{r}_{\text{cm}}}{dt} = M \vec{v}_{\text{cm}} \quad (9.5)$$

where $\vec{v}_{\text{cm}} = d\vec{r}_{\text{cm}}/dt$ is the center-of-mass velocity. So a system's momentum is given by an expression similar to that of a single particle; it's the product of the system's mass and its velocity—that is, the velocity of its center of mass. If this seems obvious, watch out! We'll see soon that the same is *not* true for the system's total energy.

If we differentiate Equation 9.5 with respect to time, we have

$$\frac{d\vec{P}}{dt} = M \frac{d\vec{v}_{\text{cm}}}{dt} = M\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$$

where $\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$ is the center-of-mass acceleration. But we defined the center of mass so its motion obeyed Newton's second law, $\vec{F} = M\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$, with $\vec{F}$ the net external force on the system. So we can write simply

$$\vec{F}_{\text{net ext}} = \frac{d\vec{P}}{dt} \quad \text{Newton's second law for a system says that the rate of change of the system's momentum...} \quad (9.6)$$

...is equal to the net force applied from outside the system.

showing that the momentum of a system of particles changes only if there's a net external force on the system. Remember the hidden role of Newton's third law in all this: Only because forces *internal* to the system cancel in pairs can we ignore them and consider just the external force.

Equation 9.6 might remind you of Equation 7.8, which said that the total energy of a system changes only if external forces—those acting from outside the system—do work on the system. Equation 9.6 is similar, except that it's talking about momentum instead of energy: It states that the total momentum of a system changes only if there's a net external force acting on the system. Just as Equation 7.8 allows transformations and transfers of energy within the system, so Equation 9.6 allows for the transfer of momentum among the system's constituent particles. It's only a system's total energy or total momentum that's constrained by the broad statements embodied in Equations 7.8 and 9.6.

Conservation of Momentum

In the special case when the net external force is zero, Equation 9.6 gives $d\vec{P}/dt = \vec{0}$, so

In the absence of a net external force, the momentum $\vec{P}$ of a system doesn't change.

The arrow is a reminder that momentum is a vector quantity.

$$\vec{P} = \text{constant} \quad (\text{conservation of linear momentum}) \quad (9.7)$$

Equation 9.7 describes **conservation of linear momentum**, one of the most fundamental laws of physics:

Conservation of linear momentum: When the net external force on a system is zero, the total momentum $\vec{P}$ of the system—the vector sum of the individual momenta $m\vec{v}$ of its constituent particles—remains constant.

Momentum conservation holds no matter how many particles are involved and no matter how they're moving. It applies to systems ranging from atomic nuclei to pool balls, from colliding cars to galaxies. Although we derived Equation 9.7 from Newton's laws, momentum conservation is even more basic, since it applies to subatomic and nuclear systems where the laws and even the language of Newtonian physics are hopelessly inadequate. The following examples show the range and power of momentum conservation.

GOT IT?

9.2 A 500-g fireworks rocket is moving with velocity $\vec{v} = 60\hat{j}$ m/s at the instant it explodes. If you were to add the momentum vectors of all its fragments just after the explosion, what would be the result?

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 9.1 Conservation of Momentum: Kayaking

Jess (mass 53 kg) and Nick (mass 72 kg) sit in a 26-kg kayak at rest on frictionless water. Jess tosses Nick a 17-kg pack, giving it horizontal speed 3.1 m/s relative to the water. What's the kayak's speed after Nick catches the pack? Why can you answer without doing any calculations?

EVALUATE Figure 9.9 shows the kayak before Jess tosses the pack and again after Nick catches it. The water is frictionless, so there's no net external force on the system comprising Jess, Nick, the kayak, and the pack. Since there's no net external force, the system's momentum is conserved. Everything is initially at rest, so that momentum is zero. Therefore, it's also zero after Nick catches the pack. At that point Jess, Nick, pack, and kayak are all at rest with respect to each other, so the only way the system's momentum can be zero is if they're also all at rest relative to the water. Therefore, the kayak's final speed is zero.

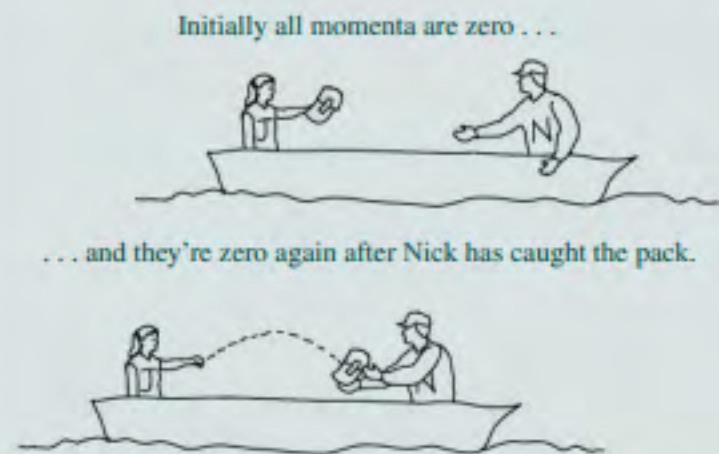


FIGURE 9.9 Our sketch for Conceptual Example 9.1.

ASSESS We didn't need any calculations here because the powerful conservation-of-momentum principle relates the initial and final states, without our having to know what happens in between.

MAKING THE CONNECTION What's the kayak's speed while the pack is in the air?

EVALUATE Momentum conservation still applies, and the system's total momentum is still zero. Now it consists of the pack's momentum $m_p \vec{v}_p$ and the momentum $(m_J + m_N + m_k) \vec{v}_k$ of Jess, Nick, and kayak, with common velocity $\vec{v}_k$ (Fig. 9.10). Sum these momenta, set the sum to zero, and solve, using the given quantities, to get $v_k = -0.35$ m/s. Here we've dropped vector signs; the minus sign then shows that the kayak's velocity is opposite the pack's. Since kayak and passengers are much more massive than the pack, it makes sense that their speed is lower.

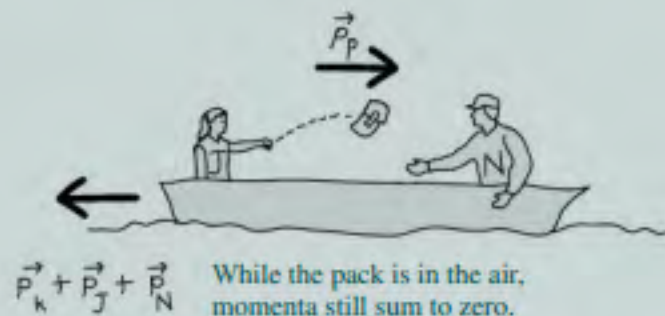


FIGURE 9.10 Our sketch for Making the Connection 9.1.

EXAMPLE 9.5**Conservation of Momentum: Radioactive Decay***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A lithium-5 nucleus (${}^5\text{Li}$) is moving at 1.6 Mm/s when it decays into a proton (${}^1\text{H}$, or p) and an alpha particle (${}^4\text{He}$, or α). [Superscripts are the total numbers of nucleons and give the approximate masses in unified atomic mass units (u).] The alpha particle is detected moving at 1.4 Mm/s, at 33° to the original velocity of the ${}^5\text{Li}$ nucleus. What are the magnitude and direction of the proton's velocity?

INTERPRET Although the physical situation here is entirely different from the preceding example, we interpret this one, too, as being about momentum conservation. But there are two differences: First, in this case the total momentum isn't zero, and, second, this situation involves two dimensions. The fundamental principle is the same, however: In the absence of external forces, a system's total momentum can't change. Whether a pack gets tossed or a nucleus decays makes no difference.

DEVELOP Figure 9.11 shows what we know: the velocities for the Li and He nuclei. You can probably guess that the proton must emerge with a downward momentum component, but we'll let the math confirm that. We determine that Equation 9.7, $\vec{P} = \text{constant}$, applies with

the constant equal to the ${}^5\text{Li}$ momentum. After the decay, we have two momenta to account for, so Equation 9.7 becomes

$$m_{\text{Li}} \vec{v}_{\text{Li}} = m_p \vec{v}_p + m_\alpha \vec{v}_\alpha$$

Let's choose the x -axis along the direction of $\vec{v}_{\text{Li}}$. Then the two components of the momentum conservation equation become

$$x\text{-component: } m_{\text{Li}} v_{\text{Li}} = m_p v_{px} + m_\alpha v_{\alpha x}$$

$$y\text{-component: } 0 = m_p v_{py} + m_\alpha v_{\alpha y}$$

Our plan is to solve these equations for the unknowns v_{px} and v_{py} . From these we can get the magnitude and direction of the proton's velocity.

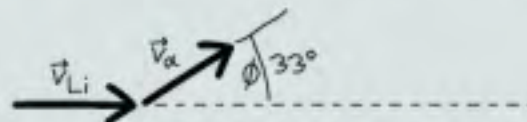


FIGURE 9.11 Our sketch for Example 9.5: what we're given.

EVALUATE From Fig. 9.11 it's evident that $v_{ax} = v_a \cos \phi$ and $v_{ay} = v_a \sin \phi$. So we can solve our two equations to get

$$\begin{aligned} v_{px} &= \frac{m_{\text{Li}} v_{\text{Li}} - m_a v_{ax}}{m_p} = \frac{m_{\text{Li}} v_{\text{Li}} - m_a v_a \cos \phi}{m_p} \\ &= \frac{(5.0 \text{ u})(1.6 \text{ Mm/s}) - (4.0 \text{ u})(1.4 \text{ Mm/s})(\cos 33^\circ)}{1.0 \text{ u}} \\ &= 3.30 \text{ Mm/s} \\ v_{py} &= -\frac{m_a v_{ay}}{m_p} = -\frac{m_a v_a \sin \phi}{m_p} \\ &= -\frac{(4.0 \text{ u})(1.4 \text{ Mm/s})(\sin 33^\circ)}{1.0 \text{ u}} = -3.05 \text{ Mm/s} \end{aligned}$$

We've kept three significant figures in these intermediate results so we can get an accurate two-figure result for our final answer.

Thus the proton's speed is $v_p = \sqrt{v_{px}^2 + v_{py}^2} = 4.5 \text{ Mm/s}$, and its direction is $\theta = \tan^{-1}(v_{py}/v_{px}) = -43^\circ$. Note that here, as in

Example 9.4, the masses appear only in ratios so we don't need to change units.

ASSESS Make sense? That negative θ tells us the proton's velocity is downward, as we anticipated. Figure 9.12 makes our result clear. Here we multiplied the velocities by the masses to get momentum vectors. The two momenta after the decay event have equal but opposite vertical components, reflecting that the total momentum of the system never had a vertical component. And the two horizontal components sum to give the initial momentum of the lithium nucleus. Momentum is indeed conserved.

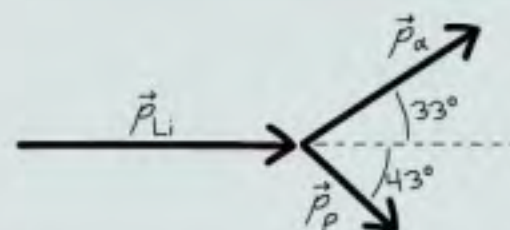


FIGURE 9.12 Our momentum diagram for Example 9.5.

A system's momentum is conserved only if no external forces act. Whether a force is internal or external depends on your choice of what constitutes the system—a choice that, as we noted in Chapter 6, is entirely up to you. In the two preceding examples, it was convenient to choose systems that weren't subject to external forces; then we could apply momentum conservation. Sometimes it's more convenient to deal with systems that do experience external forces; then, since $d\vec{P}/dt = \vec{F}$, the system's momentum changes at a rate equal to the external force. Example 9.6 makes this point.

EXAMPLE 9.6 Changing Momentum: Fighting a Fire

A firefighter directs a stream of water against the window of a burning building, hoping to break the window so water can get to the fire. The hose delivers water at the rate of 45 kg/s, and the water hits the window moving horizontally at 32 m/s. After hitting the window, the water drops vertically. What horizontal force does the water exert on the window?

INTERPRET We're asked about the window, but we're told a lot more about the water. The water stops at the window, so clearly the window exerts a force on the water—and by Newton's third law, that force is equal in magnitude to the force we're after—namely, the force of the water on the window. So we identify the water as our system and recognize that it's subject to an external force from the window.

DEVELOP Newton's law in the form $\vec{F} = d\vec{P}/dt$ applies to the water. So our plan is to find the rate at which the water's momentum changes. By Newton's second law, that's equal to the window's force on the water, and by Newton's third law, that's equal to the water's force on the window.

EVALUATE The water strikes the window at 32 m/s, so each kilogram of water loses 32 kg·m/s of momentum. Water strikes the window at the rate of 45 kg/s, so the rate at which it loses momentum to the window is

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = (45 \text{ kg/s})(32 \text{ m/s}) = 1400 \text{ kg·m/s}^2$$

By Newton's second law, that's equal to the force on the water, and by the third law, that in turn is equal in magnitude to the force on the window. So the window experiences a 1400-N force from the water. Since the window is rigidly attached to the building and Earth, it doesn't experience significant acceleration—until it breaks and the glass fragments accelerate violently.

ASSESS 1400 N is about twice the weight of a typical person, and a fire hose produces quite a blast of water, so this number seems reasonable. Check the units, too: 1 kg·m/s² is equal to 1 N, so our answer does have the units of force.

GOT IT?

9.3 Two skaters toss a basketball back and forth on frictionless ice. Which of the following does not change? (a) the momentum of an individual skater; (b) the momentum of the basketball; (c) the momentum of the system consisting of one skater and the basketball; (d) the momentum of the system consisting of both skaters and the basketball

APPLICATION Rockets

Rockets provide propulsion in the vacuum of space, where there's nothing for a wheel or propeller to push against. If no external forces act, total momentum stays constant. As the rocket's exhaust carries away momentum, the result is an equal but oppositely directed momentum gain for the rocket. The rate of momentum change is the force on the rocket, which engineers call *thrust*. As with the fire hose in Example 9.6, thrust is the product of the exhaust rate dM/dt and exhaust speed v_{ex} : $F = v_{ex} dM/dt$. Because the rocket has to carry the mass it's going to exhaust, the most efficient rockets use high exhaust velocities and therefore need less fuel. You can explore the physics of rocket propulsion quantitatively in Problem 83.

What actually propels the rocket? It's ultimately hot gases inside the rocket engine pushing on the front of the engine chamber. The rocket doesn't "push against" anything outside itself; all the pushing is done *inside* the rocket engine, accelerating the rocket forward. That's why rockets work just fine in the vacuum of space.

The photo shows the 2011 launch of the *Juno* spacecraft, heading for its 2016 rendezvous with Jupiter.



9.3 Kinetic Energy of a System

LO 9.6 Break a system's kinetic energy into center-of-mass and internal components.

We've seen how the momentum of a many-particle system is determined entirely by the motion of its center of mass; the detailed behavior of the individual particles doesn't matter. For example, a firecracker sliding on ice has the same total momentum before and after it explodes.

The same, however, is *not* true of a system's kinetic energy. Energetically, that firecracker is very different after it explodes; internal potential energy has become kinetic energy of the fragments. Nevertheless, the center-of-mass concept remains useful in categorizing the kinetic energy associated with a system of particles.

The total kinetic energy of a system is the sum of the kinetic energies of the constituent particles: $K = \sum \frac{1}{2} m_i v_i^2$. But the velocity $\vec{v}_i$ of a particle can be written as the vector sum of the center-of-mass velocity $\vec{v}_{cm}$ and a velocity $\vec{v}_{i\text{rel}}$ of that particle relative to the center of mass: $\vec{v}_i = \vec{v}_{cm} + \vec{v}_{i\text{rel}}$. Then the total kinetic energy of the system is

$$K = \sum \frac{1}{2} m_i (\vec{v}_{cm} + \vec{v}_{i\text{rel}}) \cdot (\vec{v}_{cm} + \vec{v}_{i\text{rel}}) = \sum \frac{1}{2} m_i v_{cm}^2 + \sum m_i \vec{v}_{cm} \cdot \vec{v}_{i\text{rel}} + \sum \frac{1}{2} m_i v_{i\text{rel}}^2 \quad (9.8)$$

Let's examine the three sums making up the total kinetic energy. Since the center-of-mass speed v_{cm} is common to all particles, it can be factored out of the first sum, so $\sum \frac{1}{2} m_i v_{cm}^2 = \frac{1}{2} v_{cm}^2 \sum m_i = \frac{1}{2} M v_{cm}^2$ where M is the total mass. This is the kinetic energy of a particle with mass M moving at speed v_{cm} , so we call it K_{cm} , the **kinetic energy of the center of mass**.

The center-of-mass velocity can also be factored out of the second term in Equation 9.8, giving $\sum m_i \vec{v}_{cm} \cdot \vec{v}_{i\text{rel}} = \vec{v}_{cm} \cdot \sum m_i \vec{v}_{i\text{rel}}$. Because the $\vec{v}_{i\text{rel}}$'s are the particle velocities relative to the center of mass, the sum here is the total momentum relative to the center of mass. But that's zero, so the entire second term in Equation 9.8 is zero.

The third term in Equation 9.8, $\sum \frac{1}{2} m_i v_{i\text{rel}}^2$ is the sum of the individual kinetic energies measured in a frame of reference moving with the center of mass. We call this term K_{int} , the **internal kinetic energy**.

With the middle term gone, Equation 9.8 shows that the kinetic energy of a system breaks into two terms:

A system's kinetic energy K consists of two parts.

K_{int} is the sum of the kinetic energies of the individual parts of the system, associated with their motion relative to the center of mass.

$$K = K_{cm} + K_{int} \quad (\text{kinetic energy of a system}) \quad (9.9)$$

K_{cm} is energy associated with the motion of the center of mass.

The first term, the kinetic energy of the center of mass, depends only on the center-of-mass motion. In our firecracker example, K_{cm} doesn't change when the firecracker explodes. The second term, the internal kinetic energy, depends only on the motions of the individual particles relative to the center of mass. The explosion dramatically increases this internal kinetic energy.

GOT IT?

9.4 Which of the following systems has (1) zero internal kinetic energy and (2) zero center-of-mass kinetic energy? (a) a pair of ice skaters, arms linked, skating together in a straight line; (b) a pair of skaters who start from rest facing each other and then push off so they're moving in opposite directions; (c) a pair of skaters as in (b) but who initially are moving together along the ice before they push off

9.4 Collisions

LO 9.7 Describe what constitutes a collision and distinguish elastic from inelastic collisions.

A **collision** is a brief, intense interaction between objects. Examples abound: automobile collisions; collisions of balls on a pool table; the collision of a tennis ball and racket, baseball and bat, or football and foot; an asteroid colliding with a planet; and collisions of high-energy particles that probe the fundamental structure of matter. Less obvious are collisions among galaxies that last a hundred million years, the interaction of a spacecraft with a planet as the craft gains energy for a voyage to the outer solar system, and the repulsive interaction of two protons that approach but never touch. All these collisions meet two criteria. First, they're brief, lasting but a short time in the overall context of the colliding objects' motions. On a pool table, the collision time is short compared with the time it takes for a ball to roll across the table. An automobile collision lasts a fraction of a second. A baseball spends far more time coming from the pitcher than it does interacting with the bat. And even 10^8 years is short compared with the lifetime of a galaxy. Second, collisions are intense: Forces among the interacting objects are far larger than any external forces that may be acting on the system. External forces are therefore negligible during the collision, so the total momentum of the colliding objects remains essentially unchanged.

Impulse

The forces between colliding objects are *internal* to the system comprising those objects, so they can't alter the total momentum of the system. But they dramatically alter the motions of the colliding objects. How much depends on the magnitude of the force and how long it's applied.

If $\vec{F}$ is the average force acting on one object during a collision that lasts for time Δt , then Newton's second law reads $\vec{F} = \Delta\vec{p}/\Delta t$ or

$$\Delta\vec{p} = \vec{F}\Delta t \quad (9.10a)$$

The product of average force and time that appears in this equation is called **impulse**. It's given the symbol $\vec{J}$, and its units are newton-seconds.

An impulse $\vec{J}$ produces the same momentum change regardless of whether it involves a larger force exerted over a shorter time or a smaller force exerted over a longer time. The force in a collision usually isn't constant and can fluctuate wildly. In that case, we find the impulse by integrating the force over time, so the momentum change becomes

$$\Delta\vec{p} = \vec{J} = \int \vec{F}(t) dt \quad (\text{impulse}) \quad (9.10b)$$

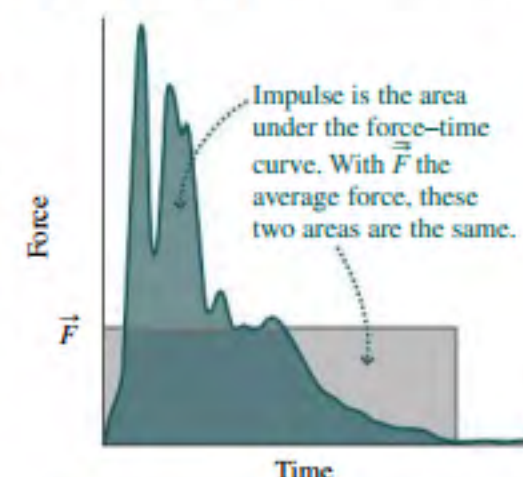
Although we introduced impulse in the context of collisions, it's useful in other situations involving intense forces applied over short times. For example, small rocket engines are characterized by the impulse they impart.

Energy in Collisions

Kinetic energy may or may not be conserved in a collision. If it is, then the collision is **elastic**; if not, it's **inelastic**. An elastic collision requires that the forces between colliding objects be conservative; then kinetic energy is stored briefly as potential energy and released when the collision is over. Interactions at the atomic and nuclear scales are often truly elastic. In the macroscopic realm, nonconservative forces convert kinetic energy into internal energy, heating the colliding objects, or they may permanently deform the objects; either way, nonconservative forces rob the system of mechanical energy. But even many macroscopic collisions are close enough to elastic that we can neglect mechanical energy loss during the collision.

APPLICATION Crash Tests

Automotive engineers perform crash tests to assess the safety of their vehicles. Sensors measure the rapidly varying forces as the test car collides with a fixed barrier. The graph below is a force-versus-time curve from a typical crash test; impulse is the area under the curve. In addition to force sensors on the vehicle, accelerometers in crash-test dummies determine the maximum accelerations of the heads and other body parts to assess potential injuries.



GOT IT?

9.5 Which of the following qualifies as a collision? Of the collisions, which are nearly elastic and which inelastic? (a) A basketball rebounds off the backboard; (b) two magnets approach, their north poles facing; they repel and reverse direction without touching; (c) a basketball flies through the air on a parabolic trajectory; (d) a truck strikes a parked car and the two slide off together, crumpled metal hopelessly intertwined; (e) a snowball splats against a tree, leaving a lump of snow adhering to the bark.

9.5 Totally Inelastic Collisions

LO 9.8 Analyze totally inelastic collisions using conservation of momentum.

In a **totally inelastic collision**, the colliding objects stick together to form a single object. Even then, kinetic energy is usually not all lost. But a totally inelastic collision entails the maximum energy loss consistent with momentum conservation. The motion after a totally inelastic collision is determined entirely by momentum conservation, and that makes totally inelastic collisions easy to analyze.

Consider masses m_1 and m_2 with initial velocities $\vec{v}_1$ and $\vec{v}_2$ that undergo a totally inelastic collision. After colliding, they stick together to form a single object of mass $m_1 + m_2$ and final velocity $\vec{v}_f$. Conservation of momentum states that the initial and final momenta of this system must be the same:

$$m_1\vec{v}_1 + m_2\vec{v}_2 = (m_1 + m_2)\vec{v}_f \quad (\text{totally inelastic collision}) \quad (9.11)$$

In a totally inelastic collision, only momentum is conserved. There's only one final velocity because the objects stick together.

Here are the momenta of the colliding particles before the collision. Here's the final momentum, associated with both objects stuck together.

Given four of the five quantities m_1 , $\vec{v}_1$, m_2 , $\vec{v}_2$, and $\vec{v}_f$, we can solve for the fifth.

EXAMPLE 9.7 An Inelastic Collision: Hockey

The hockey captain, a physics major, decides to measure the puck's speed. She loads a small Styrofoam chest with sand, giving a total mass of 6.4 kg. She places it at rest on frictionless ice. The 160-g puck strikes the chest and embeds itself in the Styrofoam. The chest moves off at 1.2 m/s. What was the puck's speed?

INTERPRET This is a totally inelastic collision. We identify the system as consisting of puck and chest. Initially, all the system's momentum is in the puck; after the collision, it's in the combination puck + chest. In this case of a single nonzero velocity before collision and a single velocity after, momentum conservation requires that both motions be in the same direction. Therefore, we have a one-dimensional problem.

DEVELOP Figure 9.13 is a sketch of the situation before and after the collision. With a totally inelastic collision, Equation 9.11—the statement of momentum conservation—tells it all. In our one-dimensional situation, this equation becomes $m_p v_p = (m_p + m_c)v_c$, where the subscripts p and c stand for puck and chest, respectively.

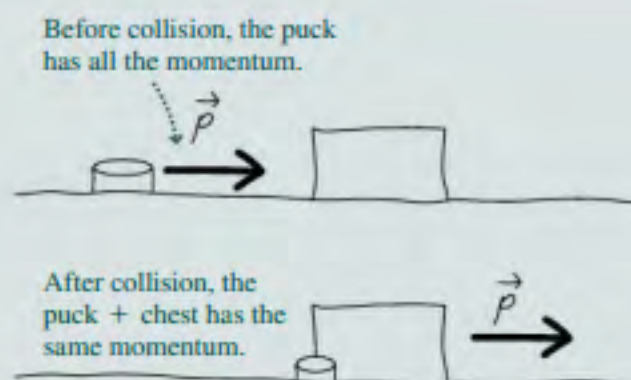


FIGURE 9.13 Our sketch for Example 9.7.

EVALUATE Here we want the initial puck velocity, so we solve for v_p :

$$v_p = \frac{(m_p + m_c)v_c}{m_p} = \frac{(0.16 \text{ kg} + 6.4 \text{ kg})(1.2 \text{ m/s})}{0.16 \text{ kg}} = 49 \text{ m/s}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: The puck's mass is small, so it needs a much higher speed to carry the same momentum as the much more massive chest. Variations on this technique are often used to determine speeds that would be difficult to measure directly.

EXAMPLE 9.8 Conservation of Momentum: Fusion

In a fusion reaction, two deuterium nuclei (${}^2\text{H}$) join to form helium (${}^4\text{He}$). Initially, one of the deuterium nuclei is moving at 3.5 Mm/s, the second at 1.8 Mm/s at a 64° angle to the velocity of the first. Find the speed and direction of the helium nucleus.

INTERPRET Although the context is very different, this is another totally inelastic collision. But here both objects are initially moving, and in different directions, so we have a two-dimensional situation. We identify the system as consisting of initially the two deuterium nuclei and finally the single helium nucleus. We're asked for the final velocity of the helium, expressed as magnitude (speed) and direction.

DEVELOP Figure 9.14 shows the situation. Momentum is conserved, so Equation 9.11 applies; solving that equation for $\vec{v}_f$ gives $\vec{v}_f = (m_1\vec{v}_1 + m_2\vec{v}_2)/(m_1 + m_2)$. In two dimensions, this represents two equations for the two components of $\vec{v}_f$. We need a coordinate system, and Fig. 9.14 shows our choice, with the x -axis along the motion

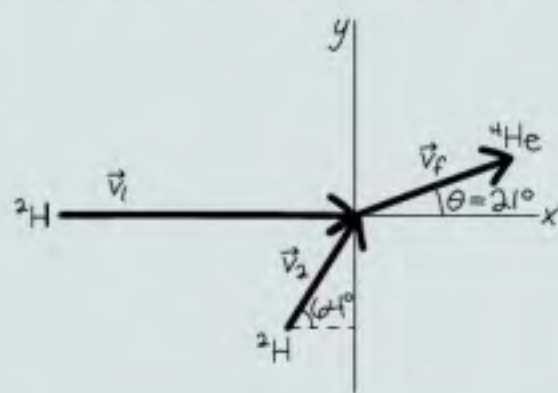


FIGURE 9.14 Our sketch of the velocity vectors for Example 9.8.

of the first deuterium nucleus. We need the components of the initial velocities in order to apply our equation for $\vec{v}_f$.

EVALUATE With $\vec{v}_1$ in the x -direction, we have $v_{1x} = 3.5$ Mm/s and $v_{1y} = 0$. Figure 9.14 shows that $v_{2x} = (1.8 \text{ Mm/s})(\cos 64^\circ) = 0.789$ Mm/s and $v_{2y} = (1.8 \text{ Mm/s})(\sin 64^\circ) = 1.62$ Mm/s. So the components of our equation become

$$\begin{aligned} v_{fx} &= \frac{m_1 v_{1x} + m_2 v_{2x}}{m_1 + m_2} \\ &= \frac{(2 \text{ u})(3.5 \text{ Mm/s}) + (2 \text{ u})(0.789 \text{ Mm/s})}{2 \text{ u} + 2 \text{ u}} = 2.14 \text{ Mm/s} \\ v_{fy} &= \frac{m_1 v_{1y} + m_2 v_{2y}}{m_1 + m_2} \\ &= \frac{0 + (2 \text{ u})(1.62 \text{ Mm/s})}{2 \text{ u} + 2 \text{ u}} = 0.809 \text{ Mm/s} \end{aligned}$$

As in Example 9.5, the superscripts are the nuclear masses in u, and because the mass units cancel, there's no need to convert to kilograms.

From these velocity components we can get the final speed and direction: $v_f = \sqrt{v_{fx}^2 + v_{fy}^2} = 2.3$ Mm/s and $\theta = \tan^{-1}(v_{fy}/v_{fx}) = 21^\circ$. We show this final velocity on the diagram in Fig. 9.14.

ASSESS In this example the two incident particles have the same masses, so their velocities are proportional to their momenta. Figure 9.14 shows that the total initial momentum is largely horizontal, with a smaller vertical component, so the 21° angle of the final velocity makes sense. The magnitude of $\vec{v}_f$ also makes sense: Now the total momentum is contained in a single, more massive particle, so we expect a final speed comparable to the initial speeds.

EXAMPLE 9.9 The Ballistic Pendulum

The ballistic pendulum measures the speeds of fast-moving objects like bullets. It consists of a wooden block of mass M suspended from vertical strings (Fig. 9.15). A bullet of mass m strikes and embeds itself in the block, and the block swings upward through a vertical distance h . Find an expression for the bullet's speed.



FIGURE 9.15 A ballistic pendulum (Example 9.9).

INTERPRET Interpreting this example is a bit more involved. We actually have two separate events: the bullet striking the block and the subsequent rise of the block. We can interpret the first event as a one-dimensional totally inelastic collision, as in Example 9.7. Momentum is conserved during this event but, because the collision is inelastic, mechanical energy is not. Then the block rises, and now

a net external force—from string tension and gravity—acts to change the momentum. But gravity is conservative, and the string tension does no work, so now mechanical energy is conserved.

DEVELOP Figure 9.15 is our drawing. Our plan is to separate the two parts of the problem and then to combine the results to get our final answer. First is the inelastic collision; here momentum is conserved, so Equation 9.11 applies. In one dimension, that reads $mv = (m + M)V$, where v is the initial bullet speed and V is the speed of the block with embedded bullet just after the collision. Solving gives $V = mv/(m + M)$. Now the block swings upward. Momentum isn't conserved, but mechanical energy is. Setting the zero of potential energy in the block's initial position, we have $U_0 = 0$ and—using the situation just after the collision as the initial state— $K_0 = \frac{1}{2}(m + M)V^2$. At the peak of its swing the block is momentarily at rest, so $K = 0$. But it's risen a height h , so the potential energy is $U = (m + M)gh$. Conservation of mechanical energy reads $K_0 + U_0 = K + U$ —in this case, $\frac{1}{2}(m + M)V^2 = (m + M)gh$.

EVALUATE Now we've got two equations describing the two parts of the problem. Using our expression for V from momentum conservation in the energy-conservation equation, we get

(continued)

$$\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{mv}{m+M} \right)^2 = gh$$

Solving for the bullet speed v then gives our answer:

$$v = \left(\frac{m+M}{m} \right) \sqrt{2gh}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: The smaller the bullet mass m , the higher velocity it must have to carry a given momentum; that's reflected by the factor m alone in the denominator. The higher the rise h , the greater the bullet speed. But the speed scales not as h itself but as $\sqrt{h}$. That's because kinetic energy—which turned into potential energy of the rise—depends on velocity *squared*.

GOT IT?

9.6 Which of the following collisions qualify as totally inelastic? (a) Two equal-mass objects approach from opposite directions at different speeds. They collide head-on and stick together; the combined object continues to move; (b) two equal-mass objects approach from opposite directions at the same speed. They collide head-on and stick together; the combined object is then at rest; (c) two equal-mass objects approach from opposite directions at the same speed. They collide head-on and rebound, but with lower speed than before.

9.6 Elastic Collisions

LO 9.9 Analyze elastic collisions using conservation of momentum and kinetic energy.

We've seen that momentum is essentially conserved in any collision. In an elastic collision, kinetic energy is conserved as well. In the most general case of a two-body collision, we consider two objects of masses m_1 and m_2 , moving initially with velocities $\vec{v}_{1i}$ and $\vec{v}_{2i}$, respectively. Their final velocities after collision are $\vec{v}_{1f}$ and $\vec{v}_{2f}$. Then the conservation statements for momentum and kinetic energy become

$$m_1 \vec{v}_{1i} + m_2 \vec{v}_{2i} = m_1 \vec{v}_{1f} + m_2 \vec{v}_{2f} \quad (9.12)$$

and

$$\frac{1}{2} m_1 v_{1i}^2 + \frac{1}{2} m_2 v_{2i}^2 = \frac{1}{2} m_1 v_{1f}^2 + \frac{1}{2} m_2 v_{2f}^2 \quad (9.13)$$

Given initial velocities, we'd like to predict the outcome of a collision. In the totally inelastic two-dimensional collision, we had enough information to solve the problem. Here, in the two-dimensional elastic case, we have two components of momentum conservation (Equation 9.12) and a single scalar equation for energy conservation (Equation 9.13). But we have four unknowns—the magnitudes and directions of both final velocities. With three equations and four unknowns, we don't have enough information to solve the general two-dimensional elastic collision. Later we'll see how other information can help solve such problems. First, though, we look at the special case of one-dimensional elastic collisions.

Elastic Collisions in One Dimension

When two objects collide head-on, the internal forces act along the same line as the incident motion, and the objects' subsequent motion must therefore be along that same line (Fig. 9.16a). Although such one-dimensional collisions are a special case, they do occur and they provide much insight into the more general case.

In the one-dimensional case, the momentum conservation (Equation 9.12) has only one nontrivial component:

$$m_1 v_{1i} + m_2 v_{2i} = m_1 v_{1f} + m_2 v_{2f} \quad (9.12a)$$

where the v 's stand for velocity components, rather than magnitudes, and can therefore be positive or negative. If we collect together the terms in Equations 9.12a and 9.13 that are associated with each mass, we have

$$m_1(v_{1i} - v_{1f}) = m_2(v_{2f} - v_{2i}) \quad (9.12b)$$

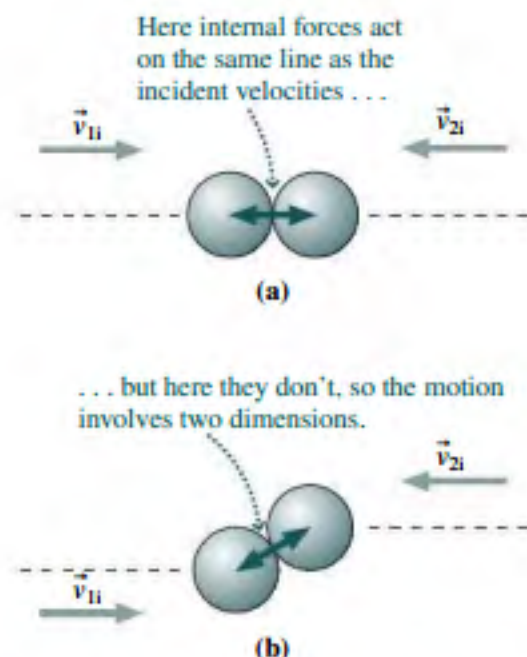


FIGURE 9.16 Only a head-on collision is one-dimensional.

and

$$m_1(v_{1i}^2 - v_{1f}^2) = m_2(v_{2f}^2 - v_{2i}^2) \quad (9.13a)$$

But $a^2 - b^2 = (a + b)(a - b)$, so Equation 9.13a can be written

$$m_1(v_{1i} - v_{1f})(v_{1i} + v_{1f}) = m_2(v_{2f} - v_{2i})(v_{2f} + v_{2i}) \quad (9.13b)$$

Dividing the left and right sides of Equation 9.13b by the corresponding sides of Equation 9.12b then gives

$$v_{1i} + v_{1f} = v_{2f} + v_{2i}$$

Rearranging shows that

$$v_{1i} - v_{2i} = v_{2f} - v_{1f} \quad (9.14)$$

What does this equation tell us? Both sides describe the relative velocity between the two particles; the equation therefore shows that the relative speed remains unchanged after the collision, although the direction reverses. If the two objects are approaching at a relative speed of 5 m/s, then after collision they'll separate at 5 m/s.

Continuing our search for the final velocities, we solve Equation 9.14 for v_{2f} :

$$v_{2f} = v_{1i} - v_{2i} + v_{1f}$$

and use this result in Equation 9.12a:

$$m_1 v_{1i} + m_2 v_{2i} = m_1 v_{1f} + m_2 (v_{1i} - v_{2i} + v_{1f})$$

Solving for v_{1f} then gives

$$v_{1f} = \frac{m_1 - m_2}{m_1 + m_2} v_{1i} + \frac{2m_2}{m_1 + m_2} v_{2i} \quad (9.15a)$$

Problem 75 asks you to show similarly that

$$v_{2f} = \frac{2m_1}{m_1 + m_2} v_{1i} + \frac{m_2 - m_1}{m_1 + m_2} v_{2i} \quad (9.15b)$$

Equations 9.15 are our result, expressing the final velocities in terms of the initial velocities.

To see that these results make sense, we suppose that $v_{2i} = 0$. (This really isn't a special case, since we can always work in a reference frame with m_2 initially at rest.) We then consider the three special cases of one-dimensional elastic collisions illustrated in Fig. 9.17.

Case 1: $m_1 \ll m_2$ (Fig. 9.17a) Picture a ping-pong ball colliding with a bowling ball, or any object colliding elastically with a perfectly rigid surface. If we set $v_{2i} = 0$ in Equations 9.15, and drop m_1 as being negligible compared with m_2 , Equations 9.15 become simply

$$v_{1f} = -v_{1i}$$

and

$$v_{2f} = 0$$

That is, the lighter object rebounds with no change in speed, while the heavier object remains at rest. Does this make sense in light of the conservation laws that Equations 9.15 are supposed to reflect? First consider energy conservation: The kinetic energy of m_2 remains zero and, because m_1 's speed doesn't change, neither does its kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}m_1 v_1^2$. So kinetic energy is conserved. But what about momentum? The momentum of the lighter object has changed, from $m_1 v_{1i}$ to $-m_1 v_{1i}$. But momentum *is* conserved; the momentum given up by the lighter object is absorbed by the heavier object. In the limit of an arbitrarily large m_2 , the heavier object can absorb huge amounts of momentum mv without acquiring significant speed. If we "back off" from the extreme case where m_1 can be neglected altogether, we would find that a lighter object striking a heavier one rebounds with reduced speed and that the heavier object begins moving slowly in the opposite direction.

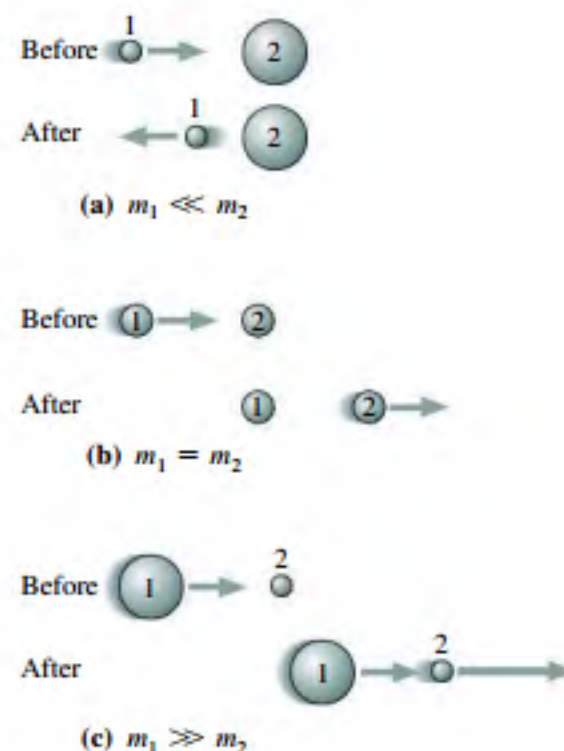


FIGURE 9.17 Special cases of elastic collisions in one dimension.

Case 2: $m_1 = m_2$ (Fig. 9.17b) Again with $v_{2i} = 0$, Equations 9.15 now give

$$v_{1f} = 0$$

and

$$v_{2f} = v_{1i}$$

So the first object stops abruptly, transferring all its energy and momentum to the second. A head-on collision between billiard balls is an almost perfect example of this type of collision. For purposes of energy transfer, two equal-mass particles are perfectly “matched.” We’ll encounter analogous instances of energy transfer “matching” when we discuss wave motion and again in connection with electric circuits.

Case 3: $m_1 \gg m_2$ (Fig. 9.17c) Now Equations 9.15 give

$$v_{1f} = v_{1i}$$

and

$$v_{2f} = 2v_{1i}$$

where we’ve neglected m_2 compared with m_1 . So here the more massive object barrels right on with no change in motion, while the lighter one heads off with twice the speed of the massive one. This result is entirely consistent with our earlier claim that the relative speed remains unchanged in a one-dimensional elastic collision. How are momentum and energy conserved in this case? In the extreme limit where we neglect the mass m_2 , its energy and momentum are negligible. Essentially all the energy and momentum remain with the more massive object, and both these quantities are essentially unchanged in the collision. In the less extreme case where an object of finite mass strikes a less massive object initially at rest, both objects move off in the initial direction of the incident object, with the lighter one moving faster.

EXAMPLE 9.10

Elastic Collisions: Nuclear Engineering

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Nuclear power reactors include a substance called a *moderator*, whose job is to slow the neutrons liberated in nuclear fission, making them more likely to induce additional fission and thus sustain a nuclear chain reaction. A Canadian reactor design uses so-called *heavy water* as its moderator. In heavy water, ordinary hydrogen atoms are replaced by deuterium, the rare form of hydrogen whose nucleus consists of a proton and a neutron. The mass of this *deuteron* is thus about 2 u, compared with a neutron’s 1 u. Find the fraction of a neutron’s kinetic energy that’s transferred to an initially stationary deuteron in a head-on elastic collision.

INTERPRET We have a head-on collision, so we’re dealing with a one-dimensional situation. The system of interest consists of the neutron and the deuteron. We’re not told much else except the masses of the two particles. That should be enough, though, because we’re not asked for the final velocities but rather for a ratio of related quantities—namely, kinetic energies.

DEVELOP Since we have a one-dimensional elastic collision, Equations 9.15 apply. We’re asked for the fraction of the neutron’s kinetic energy that gets transferred to the deuteron, so we need to express the deuteron’s final velocity in terms of the neutron’s initial velocity. If we take the neutron to be particle 1, then we want Equation 9.15b. With the deuteron initially at rest, $v_{2i} = 0$ and the equation becomes $v_{2f} = 2m_1 v_{1i} / (m_1 + m_2)$. Our plan is to use this equation to determine the kinetic-energy ratio.

EVALUATE The kinetic energies of the two particles are given by $K_1 = \frac{1}{2} m_1 v_1^2$ and $K_2 = \frac{1}{2} m_2 v_2^2$. Using our equation for v_{2f} gives

$$K_2 = \frac{1}{2} m_2 \left(\frac{2m_1 v_1}{m_1 + m_2} \right)^2 = \frac{2m_2 m_1^2 v_1^2}{(m_1 + m_2)^2}$$

We want to compare this with K_1 :

$$\frac{K_2}{K_1} = K_2 \left(\frac{1}{K_1} \right) = \left(\frac{2m_2 m_1^2 v_1^2}{(m_1 + m_2)^2} \right) \left(\frac{1}{\frac{1}{2} m_1 v_1^2} \right) = \frac{4m_1 m_2}{(m_1 + m_2)^2} \quad (9.16)$$

In this case $m_1 = 1$ u and $m_2 = 2$ u, so we have $K_2/K_1 = 8/9 \approx 0.89$. Thus 89% of the incident energy is transferred in a single collision, leaving the neutron with 11% of its initial energy.

ASSESS Let’s take a look at Equation 9.16 in the context of our three special cases. We numbered this equation because it’s a general result for the fractional energy transfer in any one-dimensional elastic collision. In case 1, $m_1 \ll m_2$, so we neglect m_1 compared with m_2 in the denominator; then our energy ratio is approximately $4m_1/m_2$. This becomes zero in the extreme limit where m_1 ’s mass is negligible—consistent with our case 1 where the massive object didn’t move at all. In case 2, $m_1 = m_2$, and Equation 9.16 becomes $4m^2/(2m)^2 = 1$, where m is the mass of both objects. That too agrees with our earlier analysis: The incident object stops and transfers all its energy to the struck object. Finally, in case 3, $m_1 \gg m_2$, so we neglect m_2 in the denominator. Now the energy ratio becomes $4m_2/m_1$. As in case 1, this approaches zero as the mass ratio gets extremely large. So the maximum energy transfer occurs with two equal masses, and tails off toward zero if the mass ratio becomes extreme in either direction.

For the particles in this example, the mass ratio 1:2 is close enough to equality that the energy transfer is nearly 90% efficient. Problem 84 explores further this energy transfer.

GOT IT?

9.7 One ball is at rest on a level floor. A second ball collides elastically with the first, and the two move off separately but in the same direction. What can you conclude about the masses of the two balls?

Elastic Collisions in Two Dimensions

Analyzing an elastic collision in two dimensions requires the full vector statement of momentum conservation (Equation 9.12), along with the statement of energy conservation (Equation 9.13). But these equations alone don't provide enough information to solve a problem. In a collision between reasonably simple macroscopic objects, that information may be provided by the so-called **impact parameter**, a measure of how much the collision differs from being head-on (Fig. 9.18). More typically—especially with atomic and nuclear interactions—the necessary information must be supplied by measurements done after the collision. Knowing the direction of motion of one particle after collision, for example, provides enough information to analyze a collision if the masses and initial velocities are also known.

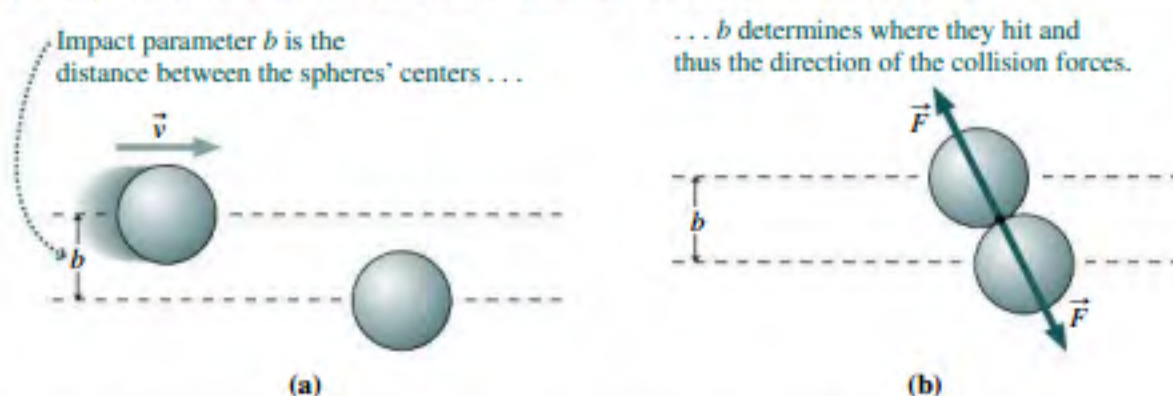


FIGURE 9.18 The impact parameter b determines the directions of the collision forces.

EXAMPLE 9.11 A Two-Dimensional Elastic Collision: Croquet

A croquet ball strikes a stationary ball of equal mass. The collision is elastic, and the incident ball goes off at 30° to its original direction. In what direction does the other ball move?

INTERPRET We've got an elastic collision, so both momentum and kinetic energy are conserved. The system consists of the two croquet balls. We aren't given a lot of information, but since we're asked only for a direction, the magnitudes of the velocities won't matter. Thus we've got what we need to know about the initial velocities, and we've got one other piece of information, so we have enough to solve the problem.

DEVELOP Figure 9.19 shows the situation, in which we're after the unknown angle θ . Since the collision is elastic, Equations 9.12 (momentum conservation) and 9.13 (energy conservation) both apply. The masses are equal, so they cancel from both equations. With $v_{2i} = 0$, we then have $\vec{v}_{1i} = \vec{v}_{1f} + \vec{v}_{2f}$ for momentum conservation and $v_{1i}^2 = v_{1f}^2 + v_{2f}^2$ for energy conservation. The rest will be algebra.

EVALUATE Solving for one unknown in terms of another is going to get messy here, with some velocities squared and some not. Here's a more clever approach: Rather than write the momentum equation in two components, let's take the dot product of each side with itself. That will bring in velocity-squared terms, letting us combine the momentum and energy equations. And the dot product includes an angle—which is what we're asked to find.

The dot product is distributive and commutative, so here's what we get when we dot the momentum equation with itself:

$$\vec{v}_{1i} \cdot \vec{v}_{1i} = (\vec{v}_{1f} + \vec{v}_{2f}) \cdot (\vec{v}_{1f} + \vec{v}_{2f}) = \vec{v}_{1f} \cdot \vec{v}_{1f} + \vec{v}_{2f} \cdot \vec{v}_{2f} + 2\vec{v}_{1f} \cdot \vec{v}_{2f}$$

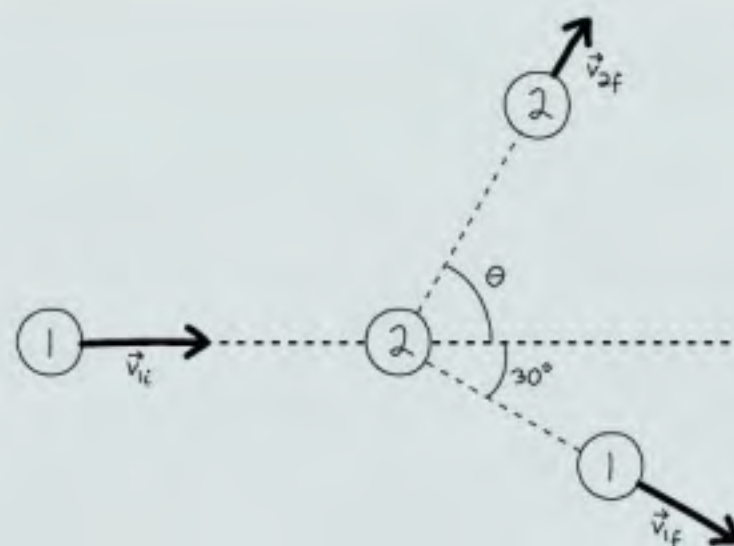


FIGURE 9.19 Our sketch of the collision between croquet balls of equal mass (Example 9.11).

Recall that the dot product of two vectors is the product of their magnitudes with the cosine of the angle between them: $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB \cos \theta$. Since the angle between a vector and itself is zero, the dot product of a vector with itself is the square of its magnitude: $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{A} = A^2 \cos(0) = A^2$. So our equation becomes

$$v_{1i}^2 = v_{1f}^2 + v_{2f}^2 + 2v_{1f}v_{2f} \cos(\theta + 30^\circ)$$

where the argument of the cosine follows because, as Fig. 9.19 shows, the angle between $\vec{v}_{1f}$ and $\vec{v}_{2f}$ is $\theta + 30^\circ$. We now subtract the energy equation from this new equation to get

(continued)

$$2v_{1f}v_{2f}\cos(\theta + 30^\circ) = 0$$

But neither of the final speeds is zero, so this equation requires that $\cos(\theta + 30^\circ) = 0$. Thus $\theta + 30^\circ = 90^\circ$, and our answer follows: $\theta = 60^\circ$.

ASSESS This result seems reasonable, although we don't have a lot to go on because we haven't calculated the final speeds. But it's intriguing that the two balls go off at right angles to each other. Is this a coincidence? No: It happens in any two-dimensional elastic collision between objects of equal mass when one is initially at rest. You can prove this in Problem 76.

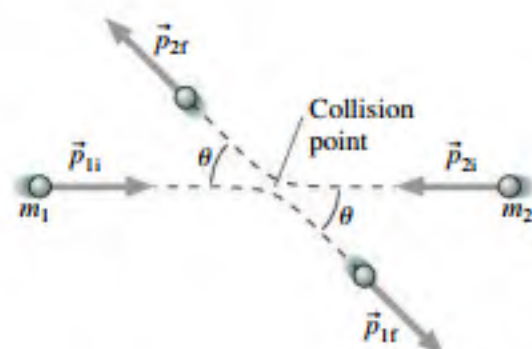


FIGURE 9.20 An elastic collision viewed in the center-of-mass frame, showing that the initial and final momentum vectors form pairs with equal magnitudes and opposite directions.

The Center-of-Mass Frame

Two-dimensional collisions take a particularly simple form in a frame of reference moving with the center of mass of the colliding particles, since the total momentum in such a frame must be zero. That remains true after a collision, which involves only *internal* forces that don't affect the center of mass. Therefore, both the initial and final momenta form pairs of oppositely directed vectors of equal magnitude, as shown in Fig. 9.20. In an elastic collision, energy conservation requires further that the incident and final momenta have the same values, so a single number—the angle θ in Fig. 9.20—completely describes the collision.

It's often easier to analyze a collision by transforming to the center-of-mass frame, doing the analysis, and then transforming the resulting momentum and velocity vectors back to the original or “lab” frame. High-energy physicists routinely make such transformations as they seek to understand the fundamental forces between elementary particles. Those forces are described most simply in the center-of-mass frame of colliding particles, but in some experiments—those where lighter particles slam into massive nuclei or stationary targets—the physicists and their particle accelerators are not in the center-of-mass frame.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 9.2

In the Center-of-Mass Frame

Figure 9.21 shows initial and final velocities for a collision between two equal masses as observed in their center-of-mass reference frame. What would a comparable diagram look like in a reference frame where m_2 is initially at rest?

INTERPRET Since the masses are equal, momenta and velocity vectors are proportional. Thus Fig. 9.21 does indeed show a collision in the center-of-mass reference frame. We need to transform the diagram to a frame where m_2 is initially at rest.

EVALUATE To get from Fig. 9.21 to a reference frame where m_2 is initially at rest, we need to add $-\vec{v}_{2i}$ to m_2 's initial velocity—and therefore to all other velocities. That makes $\vec{v}_{1i}$ twice as long and adds an equal-length but perpendicular vector to each final velocity, making them both $\sqrt{2}$ times as long as in the center-of-mass frame and pointing at 45° . Figure 9.22 is our result.

ASSESS In the ASSESS step of Example 9.11, you learned that a two-dimensional collision between equal masses, with one initially at rest, results in the final velocities being perpendicular. Our result is consistent with that fact, and its symmetry is consistent with the symmetry shown in the center-of-mass frame.

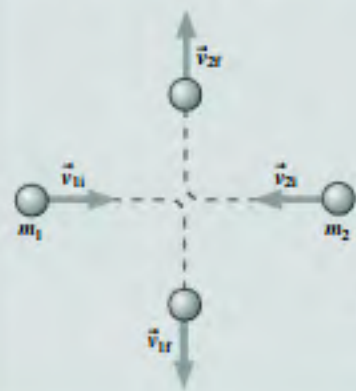


FIGURE 9.21 A two-dimensional collision between equal masses in the center-of-mass frame.

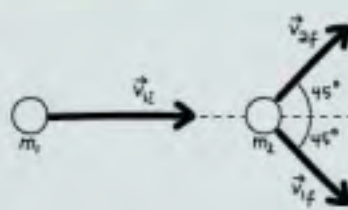


FIGURE 9.22 The same collision in a frame with m_2 initially at rest.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Consider a collision in the center-of-mass frame, as shown in Fig. 9.20, but now with equal-mass objects. If the angle θ shown in Fig. 9.20 is 70° , what are the angles shown in a diagram analogous to Fig. 9.19, in a frame where one of the objects is initially at rest?

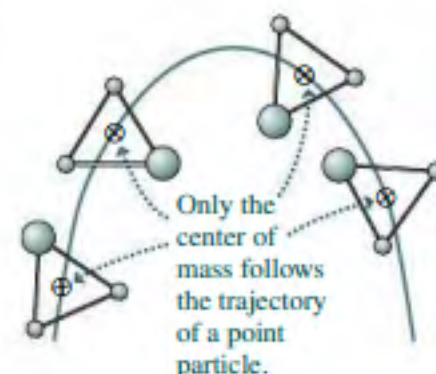
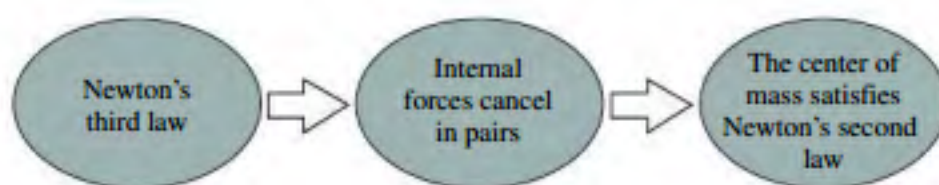
EVALUATE Since the objects' masses are equal, in the zero-momentum center-of-mass frame they must be approaching each other with equal speeds v . We also know that the two velocities after collision must be equal and opposite in the center-of-mass frame; again, that's because the total momentum of the two equal-mass balls is zero in the center-of-mass frame. Furthermore, to conserve kinetic energy the speeds in the center-of-mass frame must be the same as they were before the collision. So the collision looks like Fig. 9.20, and we can replace the momentum vectors with equal-magnitude velocity vectors since the objects have equal masses. To get to a reference frame where m_2 is initially at rest, we need to add a rightward velocity $\vec{v}$ to all the vectors shown in the center-of-mass frame. That will give m_1 an after-collision velocity whose components are $v_{1x} = v \cos \theta + v$ and $v_{1y} = -v \sin \theta$, with the minus sign designating the downward direction in Fig. 9.20. The angle of m_1 's velocity, analogous to the 30° angle in Fig. 9.19, is then $\tan^{-1}[-\sin \theta / (1 + \cos \theta)]$. Work this out for $\theta = 70^\circ$, and you'll get 35° . In fact, you could show in general that, for equal-mass objects, the angles in the center-of-mass frame and in the frame with one object initially at rest are always related by a factor of 2.

Chapter 9 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea of this chapter is that systems consisting of many particles exhibit simple behaviors that don't depend on the complexities of their internal structure or motions. That, in turn, allows us to understand those internal details. In particular, a system responds to external forces as though it were a point particle located at the **center of mass**. If the net external force on a system is zero, then the center of mass does not accelerate and the system's total momentum is conserved. Conservation of momentum holds to a very good approximation during the brief, intense encounters called **collisions**, allowing us to relate particles' motions before and after colliding.

Newton's second and third laws are behind these big ideas. The third law, in particular, says that forces *internal* to a system cancel in pairs, and therefore they don't contribute to the net force on the system. That's what allows us to describe a system's overall motion without having to worry about what's going on internally.



Key Concepts and Equations

The **center of mass** position $\vec{r}_{\text{cm}}$ is a weighted average of the positions of a system's constituent particles:

$$\vec{r}_{\text{cm}} = \frac{\sum m_i \vec{r}_i}{M} \text{ or, with continuous matter, } \vec{r}_{\text{cm}} = \frac{\int \vec{r} dm}{M}$$

Here M is the system's total mass and the sum or integral is taken over the entire system. The center of mass obeys Newton's second law:

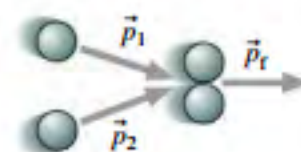
$$\vec{F}_{\text{net ext}} = M \vec{a}_{\text{cm}} = \frac{d\vec{P}}{dt}$$

where $\vec{F}_{\text{net ext}}$ is the net external force on the system, $\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$ the acceleration of the center of mass, and $\vec{P}$ the system's total momentum.

A **collision** is a brief, intense interaction between particles involving large internal forces. External forces have little effect during a collision, so to a good approximation the total momentum of the interacting particles is conserved.

In a **totally inelastic collision**, the colliding objects stick together to form a composite; in that case momentum conservation entirely determines the outcome:

$$m_1 \vec{v}_1 + m_2 \vec{v}_2 = (m_1 + m_2) \vec{v}_f \quad (\text{conservation of momentum, totally inelastic collision})$$

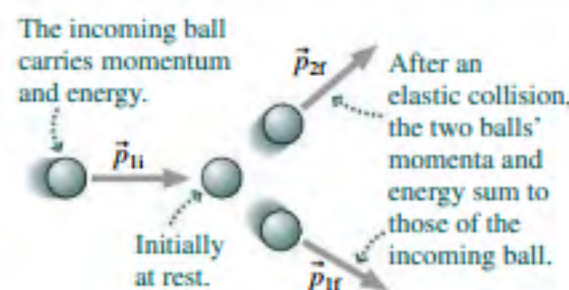


An **elastic collision** conserves kinetic energy as well as momentum, and the colliding particles separate after the collision:

$$m_1 \vec{v}_{1i} + m_2 \vec{v}_{2i} = m_1 \vec{v}_{1f} + m_2 \vec{v}_{2f} \quad (\text{conservation of momentum, elastic collision})$$

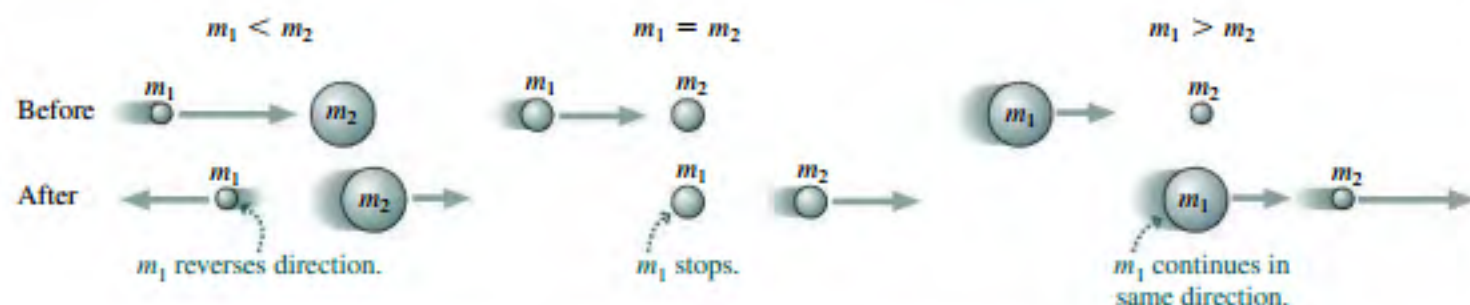
$$\frac{1}{2} m_1 v_{1i}^2 + \frac{1}{2} m_2 v_{2i}^2 = \frac{1}{2} m_1 v_{1f}^2 + \frac{1}{2} m_2 v_{2f}^2 \quad (\text{conservation of energy, elastic collision})$$

In the special case of a one-dimensional elastic collision, knowledge of the mass and initial velocities is sufficient to determine the outcome. To analyze elastic collisions in two dimensions requires an additional piece of information, such as the impact parameter or the direction of one of the particles after the collision.



Applications

One-dimensional collisions with one object initially at rest provide insights into the nature of collisions. There are three cases, depending on the relative masses:



Rockets provide a technological application of momentum conservation. A rocket exhausts matter out the back at high velocity; momentum conservation then requires that the rocket gain momentum in the forward direction. Rocket propulsion requires no interaction with any external material, which is why rockets work in space.



Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>LO 9.1 Find the center of mass of a system of discrete particles.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 9.1, 9.2;
 Exercises 9.10, 9.11, 9.12, 9.13, 9.14; Problems 9.41, 9.90</i></p> <p>LO 9.2 Describe the motion of a system's center of mass.
 <i>Problems 9.44, 9.59</i></p> <p>LO 9.3 Use integration to find the center of mass of a continuous object.
 <i>Problems 9.47, 9.55, 9.86, 9.87, 9.88, 9.91</i></p> <p>LO 9.4 Determine the total momentum of a system.</p> <p>LO 9.5 Solve problems involving conservation of momentum.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Question 9.3; Exercises 9.16,
 9.17, 9.18, 9.19; Problems 9.45, 9.48, 9.51, 9.54, 9.56, 9.57,
 9.58, 9.60, 9.63, 9.65, 9.67, 9.68, 9.70, 9.83, 9.89, 9.92</i></p> <p>LO 9.6 Break a system's kinetic energy into center-of-mass and internal components.
 <i>Exercises 9.19, 9.20; Problem 9.43</i></p> | <p>LO 9.7 Describe what constitutes a collision and distinguish elastic from inelastic collisions.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 9.4, 9.6, 9.7, 9.9;
 Exercises 9.21, 9.22, 9.23; Problems 9.42, 9.46, 9.81</i></p> <p>LO 9.8 Analyze totally inelastic collisions using conservation of momentum.
 <i>Exercises 9.24, 9.25, 9.26, 9.27; Problems 9.49, 9.50, 9.52,
 9.64, 9.66, 9.69, 9.71, 9.79</i></p> <p>LO 9.9 Analyze elastic collisions using conservation of momentum and kinetic energy.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 9.5, 9.8; Exercises
 9.28, 9.29, 9.30, 9.31, 9.32; Problems 9.53, 9.61, 9.62,
 9.72, 9.73, 9.74, 9.75, 9.76, 9.77, 9.78, 9.80, 9.82, 9.84,
 9.85, 9.93</i></p> |
|---|---|

For Thought and Discussion

- Name three household objects that have their centers of mass lying outside them.
- The center of mass of a solid sphere is clearly at its center. If the sphere is cut in half and the two halves are stacked as in Fig. 9.23, is the center of mass at the point where they touch? If not, roughly where is it? Explain.
- The momentum of a system of pool balls is the same before and after they are hit by the cue ball. Is it still the same after one of the balls strikes the edge of the table? Explain.
- Why does a liquid-carrying tanker usually have a baffled tank, where the tank is divided into several small parts with holes that let the liquid flow through them?
- Why does a good hunter always shoot his rifle while holding it tightly against his shoulder?
- Why don't we need to consider external forces acting on a system as its constituent particles undergo a collision?
- How is it possible to have a collision between objects that don't ever touch? Give an example of such a collision.
- A pitched baseball moves no faster than the pitcher's hand. But a batted ball can move much faster than the bat. What's the difference?
- Two identical satellites are going in opposite directions in the same circular orbit when they collide head-on. Describe their subsequent motion if the collision is (a) elastic or (b) totally inelastic.

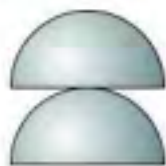


FIGURE 9.23 For Thought and Discussion 2

- Two particles of equal mass m are at the vertices of the base of an equilateral triangle. The triangle's center of mass is midway between the base and the third vertex. What's the mass at the third vertex?
- Rework Example 9.1 with the origin at the center of the barbell, showing that the physical location of the center of mass doesn't depend on your coordinate system.
- Three equal masses lie at the corners of an equilateral triangle of side L . Find the center of mass.
- How far from Earth's center is the center of mass of the Earth–Moon system? (*Hint:* Consult Appendix E.)

Section 9.2 Momentum

- A popcorn kernel at rest in a hot pan bursts into two pieces, with masses 86 mg and 69 mg. The more massive piece moves horizontally at 49 cm/s. Describe the motion of the second piece.
- A 72-kg skater, at rest on frictionless ice, tosses a 10-kg snowball with velocity $\vec{v} = 53.0\hat{i} + 14.0\hat{j}$ m/s, where the x - and y -axes are in the horizontal plane. Find the skater's subsequent velocity.
- A plutonium-239 nucleus at rest decays into a uranium-235 nucleus by emitting an alpha particle (${}^4\text{He}$) with kinetic energy 5.15 MeV. Find the speed of the uranium nucleus.
- A toboggan of mass 9.4 kg is moving horizontally at 17 km/h. As it passes under a tree, 17 kg of snow drop onto it. Find its subsequent speed.

Section 9.3 Kinetic Energy of a System

- At the peak of its trajectory, a 995-g fireworks rocket is moving horizontally at 18.6 m/s. It's a dud, and instead of exploding gloriously, it bursts into two pieces. One of them, with mass 372 g, continues in the original direction at 31.3 m/s. How much energy did the two pieces gain when the rocket burst?
- An object with kinetic energy K explodes into two pieces, each of which moves with twice the speed of the original object. Find the ratio of the internal kinetic energy to the center-of-mass energy after the explosion.

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 9.1 Center of Mass

- A 31-kg child sits at one end of a 3.3-m-long seesaw. Where should her 78-kg father sit so the center of mass will be at the center of the seesaw?

Section 9.4 Collisions

21. The graph shown with the Application: Crash Tests on page 177 shows the force exerted on a 2000-kg test car as it crashes into a stationary barrier and comes to rest. Take the horizontal axis to extend from 0 to 800 ms and the vertical axis from 0 to 100 kN. Estimate (a) the impulse imparted to the car and (b) its initial speed.
22. High-speed photos of a 220- μ g flea jumping vertically show that the jump lasts 1.2 ms and involves an average vertical acceleration of 100g. What (a) average force and (b) impulse does the ground exert on the flea during its jump? (c) What's the change in the flea's momentum during its jump?
23. You're working in mission control for an interplanetary space probe. A trajectory correction calls for a rocket firing that imparts an impulse of 5.62 N $\cdot$ s. If the rocket's average thrust is 126 mN, how long should the rocket fire?

Section 9.5 Totally Inelastic Collisions

24. In a railroad switchyard, a 56-ton freight car is sent at 7.0 mi/h toward a 31-ton car moving in the same direction at 2.6 mi/h. (a) What's the speed of the cars after they couple? (b) What fraction of the initial kinetic energy was lost in the collision?
25. In a totally inelastic collision between two equal masses, with one initially at rest, show that half the initial kinetic energy is lost.
26. A neutron (mass 1.01 u) strikes a deuteron (mass 2.01 u), and they combine to form a tritium nucleus (mass 3.02 u). If the neutron's initial velocity was $23.5\hat{i} + 14.4\hat{j}$ Mm/s and if the tritium leaves the reaction with velocity $15.1\hat{i} + 22.6\hat{j}$ Mm/s, what was the deuteron's velocity?
27. Two identical trucks have mass 5500 kg when empty, and the maximum permissible load for each is 8000 kg. The first truck, carrying 3800 kg, is at rest. The second truck plows into it at 65 km/h, and the pair moves away at 37 km/h. As an expert witness, you're asked to determine whether the second truck was overloaded. What do you report?

Section 9.6 Elastic Collisions

28. An alpha particle (${}^4\text{He}$) strikes a stationary gold nucleus (${}^{197}\text{Au}$) head-on. What fraction of the alpha's kinetic energy is transferred to the gold? Assume a totally elastic collision.
29. Playing in the street, a child accidentally tosses a ball at 18 m/s toward the front of a car moving toward him at 15 m/s. What's the ball's speed after it rebounds elastically from the car?
30. A block of mass m undergoes a one-dimensional elastic collision with a block of mass M initially at rest. If both blocks have the same speed after colliding, how are their masses related?
31. A proton moving at 6.1 Mm/s collides elastically head-on with a second proton moving in the opposite direction at 9.2 Mm/s. Find their subsequent velocities.
32. A head-on, elastic collision between two particles with equal initial speed v leaves the more massive particle (m_1) at rest. Find (a) the ratio of the particle masses and (b) the final speed of the less massive particle.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two worked examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

33. **Example 9.5:** A lithium-5 nucleus (${}^5\text{Li}$) is moving at 2.25 Mm/s when it decays into a proton (${}^1\text{H}$) and an alpha particle (${}^4\text{He}$). The alpha particle is detected moving at 1.03 Mm/s at 23.6° to the original velocity of the ${}^5\text{Li}$ nucleus. Find the magnitude and direction of the proton's velocity.
34. **Example 9.5:** A lithium-5 nucleus (${}^5\text{Li}$) decays into a proton (${}^1\text{H}$) and an alpha particle (${}^4\text{He}$). The alpha particle is detected moving at 2.43 Mm/s at 31.5° above the x -axis (i.e., with a positive y -component), while the proton is moving at 1.78 Mm/s at 24.7° below the x -axis. Find the original velocity of the lithium-5 nucleus, expressed in unit vector notation.
35. **Example 9.5:** A spacecraft consists of a 549-kg orbiter and a 235-kg lander. It's moving at 81.6 km/s relative to a nearby space station. Explosive bolts separate the orbiter and lander, after which the orbiter is moving at 55.2 km/s at a 41.4° angle to the motion of the original composite spacecraft. Find the magnitude and direction of the lander's velocity.
36. **Example 9.5:** A spacecraft consists of a 784-kg orbiter and a 392-kg lander. Explosive bolts separate the orbiter and lander, after which the orbiter's velocity is $225\hat{i} + 107\hat{j}$ m/s and the lander's is $-75.4\hat{i} - 214\hat{j}$ m/s. Find the velocity of the composite spacecraft before the separation.
37. **Example 9.10:** Some nuclear reactors, especially in England and Russia, use graphite (pure carbon and nearly all ${}^{12}\text{C}$) for the moderator. When a neutron hits a stationary ${}^{12}\text{C}$ nucleus in a head-on elastic collision, what percentage of its kinetic energy is transferred to the carbon?
38. **Example 9.10:** A neutron undergoes an elastic head-on collision with an initially stationary nucleus, and 48.4% of the neutron's kinetic energy is transferred to the struck nucleus. How does the mass of the nucleus compare with that of the neutron?
39. **Example 9.10:** A 685-g block is sliding on a frictionless surface when it collides elastically and head-on with a stationary block of mass 232 g. What percentage of the more massive block's kinetic energy is transferred to the lighter block?
40. **Example 9.10:** A mass m_1 collides elastically and head-on with a stationary mass m_2 , and three-fourths of m_1 's initial kinetic energy is transferred to m_2 . How are the two masses related?

Problems

41. Find the center of mass of a pentagon with five equal sides of length a , but with one triangle missing (Fig. 9.24). (Hint: See Example 9.3, and treat the pentagon as a group of triangles.)



FIGURE 9.24 Problem 41

42. Wildlife biologists fire 19-g rubber bullets to stop a rhinoceros charging at 0.75 m/s. The bullets strike the rhino and drop vertically to the ground. The biologists' gun fires 15 bullets each second, at 74 m/s, and it takes 30 s to stop the rhino. (a) What impulse does each bullet deliver? (b) What's the rhino's mass? Neglect forces between rhino and ground.

43. Three 200-g objects have velocities given by $\vec{v}_1 = 15.0\hat{j}$ m/s, $\vec{v}_2 = 6.7\hat{i} - 3.45\hat{j}$ m/s, and $\vec{v}_3 = -6.7\hat{i} - 4.32\hat{j}$ m/s. Find the kinetic energy of the center of mass and the internal kinetic energy of this system.
44. You're with 14 other people on a boat at rest in frictionless water. The group's total mass is 1200 kg, and the boat's mass is 13,000 kg. The entire party walks the 5.8-m distance from bow to stern. How far does the boat move?
45. A hemispherical bowl is at rest on a frictionless counter. A mouse drops onto the bowl's rim from a cabinet directly overhead. The mouse climbs down inside the bowl to eat crumbs at the bottom. If the bowl moves along the counter a distance equal to one-tenth of its diameter, how does the mouse's mass compare with the bowl's mass?
46. Physicians perform *needle biopsies* to sample tissue from internal organs. A spring-loaded gun shoots a hollow needle into the tissue; extracting the needle brings out the tissue core. A particular device uses 8.6-g needles that take 86 ms to stop in the tissue, which exerts a stopping force of 39 mN. (a) Find the impulse imparted by the tissue. (b) How far into the tissue does the needle penetrate?
47. Find the center of mass of the uniform, solid cone of height h , base radius R , and constant density ρ shown in Fig. 9.25. (Hint: Integrate over disk-shaped mass elements of thickness dy , as shown in the figure.)
48. A firecracker, initially at rest, explodes into two fragments. The first, of mass 14 g, moves in the $+x$ -direction at 43 m/s. The second moves at 30 m/s. Find the second fragment's mass and the direction of its motion.
49. An 11,000-kg freight car rests against a spring bumper at the end of a railroad track. The spring has constant $k = 0.32$ MN/m. The car is hit by a second car of 9400-kg mass moving at 8.5 m/s, and the two couple together. Find (a) the maximum compression of the spring and (b) the speed of the two cars when they rebound together from the spring.
50. On an icy road, a 1200-kg car moving at 50 km/h strikes a 4400-kg truck moving in the same direction at 35 km/h. The pair is soon hit from behind by a 1500-kg car speeding at 65 km/h, and all three vehicles stick together. Find the speed of the wreckage.
51. Kids are pelting a window with snowballs. On average, two snowballs of roughly 400-g mass hit the window each second, moving horizontally at some 12 m/s. The snowballs drop vertically to the ground after hitting the window. Estimate the average force exerted on the window.
52. A 1250-kg car is moving with velocity $\vec{v}_1 = 36.2\hat{i} + 12.7\hat{j}$ m/s. It skids on a frictionless icy patch and collides with a 448-kg hay wagon with velocity $\vec{v}_2 = 13.8\hat{i} + 10.2\hat{j}$ m/s. If the two stay together, what's their velocity?
53. Mass m moving at speed v , approaches mass $2m$, moving in the opposite direction at speed $2v$. The two collide elastically head-on. Show that mass $2m$ stops while mass m rebounds at speed $3v$.
54. A ^{238}U nucleus is moving in the x -direction at 4.1×10^5 m/s when it decays into an alpha particle (^4He) and a ^{234}Th nucleus. The alpha moves at 1.5×10^7 m/s at 36° above the x -axis. Find the recoil velocity of the thorium.
55. Find an expression for the center of mass of a solid hemisphere, given as the distance from the center of the flat part of the hemisphere.

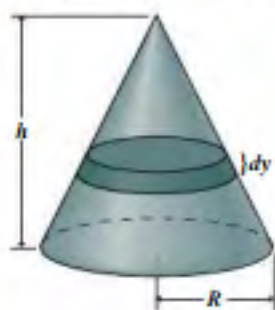


FIGURE 9.25 Problem 47

56. A 55-g firecracker is at rest at the origin when it explodes into three pieces. The first, with mass 7 g, moves along the x -axis at 33 m/s. The second, with mass 15 g, moves along the y -axis at 26 m/s. Find the velocity of the third piece.
57. A 67-kg astronaut floating in space simultaneously tosses away an 18-kg oxygen tank and a 5.4-kg camera. The tank moves in the x -direction at 1.1 m/s, and the astronaut recoils at 0.66 m/s in a direction 200° counterclockwise from the x -axis. Find the camera's velocity.
58. Assuming equal-mass pieces in Exercise 20, find the angles of the two velocities relative to the direction of motion before the explosion.
59. A 55-kg sprinter stands on the left end of a 180-kg cart moving leftward at 6.9 m/s. She runs to the right end and continues horizontally off the cart. What should be her speed relative to the cart so that once she's off the cart she has no horizontal velocity relative to the ground?
60. You're a production engineer in a cookie factory, where mounds of dough drop vertically onto a conveyor belt at the rate of one 11-g mound every 2 seconds. You're asked to design a mechanism that will keep the conveyor belt moving at a constant 52 cm/s. What average force must the mechanism exert on the belt?
61. Mass m , moving at speed $2v$, approaches mass $4m$, moving at speed v . The two collide elastically head-on. Find expressions for their subsequent speeds.
62. Verify explicitly that kinetic energy is conserved in the collision of the preceding problem.
63. While standing on frictionless ice, you (mass 65.0 kg) toss a 4.50-kg rock with initial speed 12.0 m/s. If the rock is 15.2 m from you when it lands, (a) at what angle did you toss it? (b) How fast are you moving?
64. You're an accident investigator at a scene where a drunk driver in a 2400-kg car has plowed into a 1700-kg parked car with its brake set. You measure skid marks showing that the combined wreckage moved 25 m before stopping, and you determine a frictional coefficient of 0.75. What do you report for the drunk driver's speed just before the collision?
65. A fireworks rocket is launched vertically upward at 40 m/s. At the peak of its trajectory, it explodes into two equal-mass fragments. One reaches the ground 2.75 s after the explosion. When does the second reach the ground?
66. Two objects moving in opposite directions with the same speed v undergo a totally inelastic collision, and two-thirds of the initial kinetic energy is lost. Find the ratio of their masses.
67. Explosive bolts separate a 950-kg communications satellite from its 640-kg booster rocket, imparting a 350-N·s impulse. At what relative speed do satellite and booster separate?
68. You're working in quality control for a model rocket manufacturer, testing a class-D rocket whose specifications call for an impulse between 10 and 20 N·s. The rocket's burn time is $\Delta t = 2.8$ s, and its thrust during that time is $F(t) = at(t - \Delta t)$, where $a = -4.6$ N/s². Does the rocket meet its specs?
69. You're investigating a crash in which a 1640-kg Nissan Leaf electric car and a 3220-kg Toyota Land Cruiser SUV collided at right angles in an intersection. The combined wreckage skidded 17.6 m before stopping. You measure the coefficient of friction between tires and road and find it to be 0.697. Show that at least one car must have exceeded the 70-km/h speed limit at the intersection. You'll need to consider each car separately, assuming that it was at the speed limit and finding the other car's speed, which you should report in your answer.

70. A 400-mg popcorn kernel is skittering across a nonstick frying pan at 8.2 cm/s when it pops and breaks into two equal-mass pieces. If one piece ends up at rest, how much energy was released in the popping?
71. Two identical objects with the same initial speed collide and stick together. If the composite object moves with half the initial speed of either object, what was the angle between the initial velocities?
72. A proton (mass 1 u) moving at 6.90 Mm/s collides elastically head-on with a second particle moving in the opposite direction at 2.80 Mm/s. After the collision, the proton is moving opposite its initial direction at 8.62 Mm/s. Find the mass and final velocity of the second particle.
73. Two objects, one initially at rest, undergo a one-dimensional elastic collision. If half the kinetic energy of the initially moving object is transferred to the other object, what is the ratio of their masses?
74. Blocks *B* and *C* have masses $2m$ and m , respectively, and are at rest on a frictionless surface. Block *A*, also of mass m , is heading at speed v toward block *B* as shown in Fig. 9.26. Determine the final velocity of each block after all subsequent collisions are over. Assume all collisions are elastic.

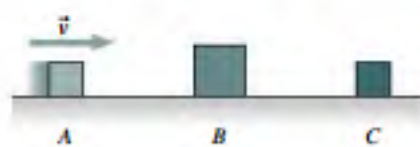


FIGURE 9.26 Problem 74

75. Derive Equation 9.15b.
76. An object collides elastically with an equal-mass object initially at rest. If the collision isn't head-on, show that the final velocity vectors are perpendicular.
77. A proton (mass 1 u) collides elastically with a stationary deuteron (mass 2 u). If the proton is deflected 37° from its original direction, what fraction of its kinetic energy does it transfer to the deuteron?
78. Two identical billiard balls are initially at rest when they're struck symmetrically by a third identical ball moving with velocity $\vec{v}_0 = v_0 \hat{i}$ (Fig. 9.27). Find the velocities of all three balls after this elastic collision.
79. A 124-g Frisbee is lodged on a tree branch 7.25 m above the ground. To free it, you lob a 240-g dirt clod vertically upward. The dirt leaves your hand at a point 1.23 m above the ground, moving at 18.7 m/s. It sticks to the Frisbee. Find (a) the maximum height reached by the Frisbee-dirt combination and (b) the speed with which the combination hits the ground.

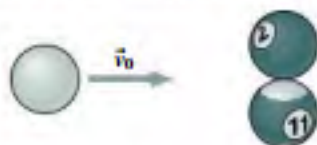


FIGURE 9.27 Problem 78

80. You set a small ball of mass m atop a large ball of mass $M \gg m$ and drop the pair from height h . Assuming the balls are perfectly elastic, show that the smaller ball rebounds to height $9h$.
81. A car moving at speed v undergoes a one-dimensional collision with an identical car initially at rest. The collision is neither elastic nor fully inelastic; $7/32$ of the initial kinetic energy is lost. Find the velocities of the two cars after the collision.
82. A 200-g block is released from rest at a height of 25 cm on a frictionless 30° incline. It slides down the incline and then along a frictionless surface until it collides elastically with an 800-g block at rest 1.4 m from the bottom of

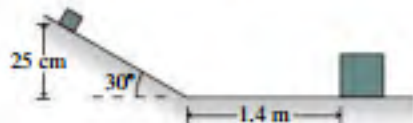


FIGURE 9.28 Problem 82

the incline (Fig. 9.28). How much later do the two blocks collide again?

83. A rocket of mass M moving at speed v ejects an infinitesimal mass dm out its exhaust nozzle at speed v_{ex} . (a) Show that conservation of momentum implies that $M dv = v_{ex} dm$, where dv is the change in the rocket's speed. (b) Integrate this equation from some initial speed v_i and mass M_i to a final speed v_f and mass M_f to show that the rocket's final velocity is given by the expression $v_f = v_i + v_{ex} \ln(M_i/M_f)$.
84. A block of mass m_1 undergoes a one-dimensional elastic collision with an initially stationary block of mass m_2 . Find an expression for the fraction of the initial kinetic energy transferred to the second block, and plot your result for mass ratios m_1/m_2 from 0 to 20.
85. Two objects of unequal mass, one initially at rest, undergo a one-dimensional elastic collision. For a given mass ratio, show that the fraction of the initial energy transferred to the initially stationary object doesn't depend on which object it is.
86. In Figure 9.6, the uniform semicircular wire has radius R . How far above the center of the semicircle is its center of mass?
87. Find the center of mass of a uniform slice of pizza with radius R and angular width θ .
88. In a ballistic pendulum demonstration gone bad, a 0.52-g pellet, fired horizontally with kinetic energy 3.25 J, passes straight through a 400-g Styrofoam pendulum block. If the pendulum rises a maximum height of 0.52 mm, how much kinetic energy did the pellet have after emerging from the Styrofoam?
89. A 75-kg astronaut has become detached from the safety line connecting her to the International Space Station. She's 235 m from the station, at rest relative to it, and has 5 min of air remaining. To get herself back, she tosses a 15-kg tool kit in the direction opposite to the station at 5.0 m/s. Will she make it back in time?
90. Astronomers detect extrasolar planets by measuring the slight movement of stars around the center of mass of the star-planet system. Considering just the Sun and Saturn, determine the radius of the circular orbit the Sun makes about the Sun-Saturn center of mass.
91. A thin rod extends from $x = 0$ to $x = L$. It carries a nonuniform mass per unit length $\mu = Mx^a/L^{1+a}$, where M is a constant with units of mass, and a is a non-negative dimensionless constant. Find expressions for (a) the rod's mass and (b) the location of its center of mass. (c) Are your results what you expect when $a = 0$?
92. Model rocket motors are specified by giving the impulse they provide, in N·s, over the entire time the rocket is firing. The table below shows the results of rocket-motor tests with different motors used to launch rockets of different masses. Determine two data-based quantities that, when plotted against each other, should give a straight line and whose slope should allow you to determine g . Plot the data, establish a best-fit line, and determine g . Assume that the maximum height is much greater than the distance over which the rocket motor is firing, so you can neglect the latter. You're also neglecting air resistance—but explain how that affects your experimentally determined value for g .

Impulse, J (N·s)	4.5	7.8	4.5	7.8	11
Rocket mass (g) (including motor)	180	485	234	234	485
Maximum height achieved (m)	22	13	19	51	23

93. A block of mass M is moving at speed v_0 on a frictionless surface that ends in a rigid wall, heading toward a stationary block of mass nM , where $n \geq 1$ (Fig. 9.29). Collisions between the

two blocks or the left-hand block and the wall are elastic and one-dimensional. (a) Show that the blocks will undergo only one collision with each other if $n \leq 3$.

(b) Show that the blocks will undergo two collisions with each other if $n = 4$. (c) How many collisions will the blocks undergo if $n = 10$, and what will be their final speeds?

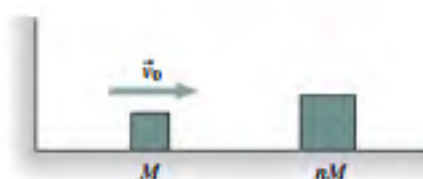


FIGURE 9.29 Problem 93

Passage Problems

You're interested in the intersection of physics and sports, and you recognize that many sporting events involve collisions—bat and baseball, foot and football, hockey stick and puck, basketball and floor. Using strobe photography, you embark on a study of such collisions. Figure 9.30 is your strobe photo of a ball bouncing off the floor. The ball is launched from a point near the top left of the photo, and your camera then captures it undergoing three subsequent collisions with the floor.

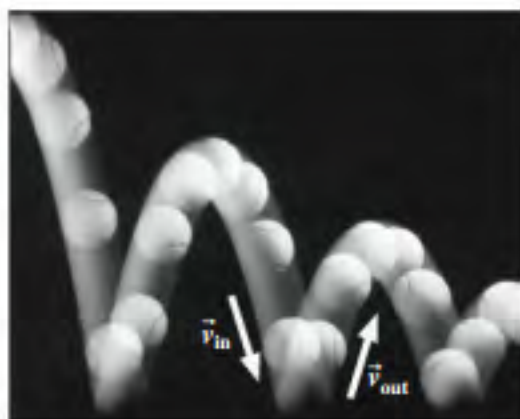


FIGURE 9.30 Passage Problems 94–97

94. The collisions between ball and floor are
 - a. totally elastic.
 - b. totally inelastic.
 - c. neither totally elastic nor totally inelastic.
95. The fraction of the ball's mechanical energy that's lost in the second collision is
 - a. about 10%.
 - b. a little less than half.

- c. a little more than half.
- d. about 90%.

96. The component of the ball's velocity whose magnitude is most affected by the collisions is
 - a. horizontal.
 - b. vertical.
 - c. Both are affected equally.
97. Compared with the time between bounces, the duration of each collision is
 - a. a tiny fraction of the time between bounces.
 - b. a significant fraction of the time between bounces.
 - c. much longer than the time between bounces.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The dancer's center of mass follows the simple path of a projectile because, as Newton's laws show, the dancer's mass acts like it's all concentrated at this point.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 9.1 The center of mass is the uppermost point A. You can see this by imagining horizontal strips through the loop; the higher the strip the more mass is included, so the center of mass must lie nearer the top of the loop. The bottommost point would be the center of mass for a complete circle.
- 9.2 Momentum is conserved, so the momentum both before and after the explosion is the same: $\vec{P} = m\vec{v} = (0.50 \text{ kg})(60\hat{j} \text{ m/s}) = 30\hat{j} \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$.
- 9.3 Only (d). The individual skaters experience external forces from the ball, as does the ball from the skaters. A system consisting of the ball and one skater experiences external forces from the other skater. Only the system of all three has no net external force and therefore has conserved momentum.
- 9.4 (1) (a); (2) (b)
- 9.5 all but (c) are collisions; (a) and (b) are nearly elastic; (d) and (e) are inelastic
- 9.6 (a) and (b) are totally inelastic; (c) is inelastic but not totally so
- 9.7 The ball initially at rest is less massive; otherwise, the incident ball would have reversed direction (or stopped if the masses were equal).

Rotational Motion

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Kinematics of constant acceleration in one dimension (Section 2.4)
- Newton's second law expressed as $F = ma$ (Section 4.2)
- Your knowledge of integral calculus

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 10.1 Identify and calculate rotational analogs of position, velocity, acceleration, force, and mass.
- LO 10.2 Solve rotational analogs of one-dimensional constant-acceleration problems.
- LO 10.3 Calculate rotational inertias by summing or integrating.
- LO 10.4 Apply the rotational analog of Newton's second law.
- LO 10.5 Solve problems involving coupled linear and rotational motion.
- LO 10.6 Calculate rotational kinetic energy.
- LO 10.7 Describe quantitatively the behavior of rolling objects.

You're sitting on a rotating planet. The wheels of your car rotate. Your favorite movie comes from a rotating DVD. A circular saw rotates to rip its way through a board. A dancer pirouettes, and a satellite spins about its axis. Even molecules rotate. Rotational motion is commonplace throughout the physical universe.

In principle, we could treat rotational motion by analyzing the motion of each particle in a rotating object. But that would be a hopeless task for all but the simplest objects. Instead, we'll describe rotational motion by analogy with linear motion as governed by Newton's laws.

This chapter parallels our study of one-dimensional motion in Chapters 2 and 4. In the next chapter we introduce a full vector description to treat multidimensional rotational motion.

10.1 Angular Velocity and Acceleration

LO 10.1 *Identify and calculate rotational analogs of position, velocity, acceleration, force, and mass.*

LO 10.2 *Solve rotational analogs of one-dimensional constant-acceleration problems.*

You slip a DVD into a player, and it starts spinning. You could describe its motion by giving the speed and direction of each point on the disc. But it's much easier just to say that the disc is rotating at 800 revolutions per minute (rpm). As long as the disc is a **rigid body**—one whose parts remain in fixed positions relative to one another—then that single statement suffices to describe the motion of the entire disc.



For a given blade mass, how should you engineer a wind turbine's blades so it's easiest for the wind to get the turbine rotating?

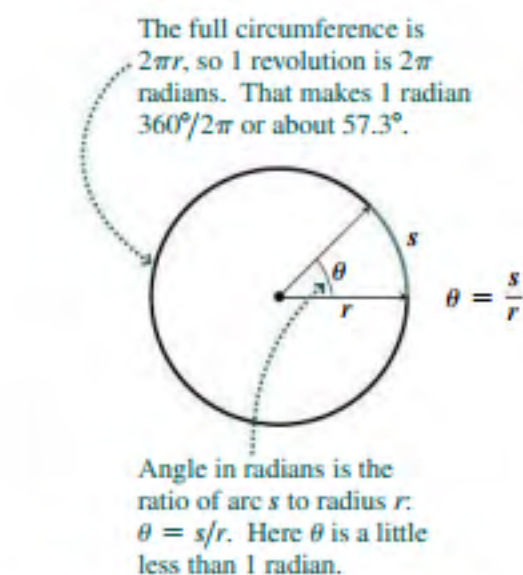


FIGURE 10.1 Radian measure of angles.

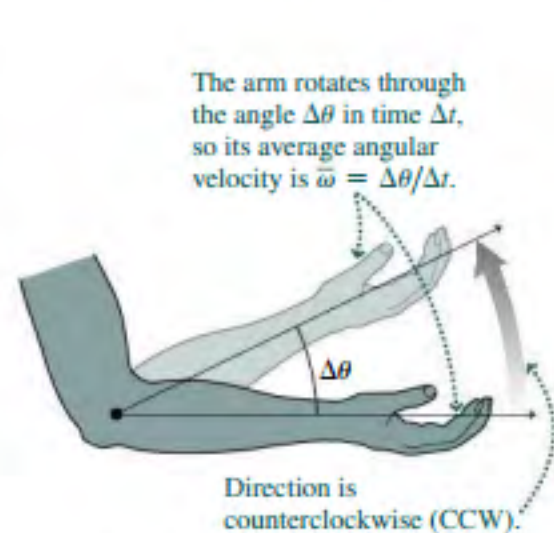


FIGURE 10.2 Average angular velocity.

Angular Velocity

The rate at which a body rotates is its **angular velocity**—the rate at which the angular position of any point on the body changes. With our 800-rpm DVD, the unit of angle was one full revolution (360° , or 2π radians), and the unit of time was the minute. But we could equally well express angular velocity in revolutions per second (rev/s), degrees per second ($^\circ/\text{s}$), or radians per second (rad/s or simply s^{-1} since radians are dimensionless). Because of the mathematically simple nature of radian measure, we often use radians in calculations involving rotational motion (Fig. 10.1).

We use the symbol ω (lowercase Greek omega) for angular velocity and define **average angular velocity** $\bar{\omega}$ as

$$\bar{\omega} = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t} \quad (\text{average angular velocity}) \quad (10.1)$$

where $\Delta\theta$ is the **angular displacement**—that is, the change in angular position—occurring in the time Δt (Fig. 10.2). When angular velocity is changing with time, we define **instantaneous angular velocity** as the limit over arbitrarily short time intervals:

$$\omega = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\theta}{dt} \quad (\text{instantaneous angular velocity}) \quad (10.2)$$

ω is the instantaneous angular velocity.

ω comes from applying the limiting procedure to the average angular velocity $\Delta\theta/\Delta t$.

Thus, ω is the derivative $d\theta/dt$ —the rate of change of angular position with respect to time.

These definitions are analogous to those of average and instantaneous linear velocity introduced in Chapter 2. Just as we use the term *speed* for the magnitude of velocity, so we define **angular speed** as the magnitude of the angular velocity.

Velocity is a vector quantity, with magnitude and direction. Is angular velocity also a vector? Yes, but we'll wait until the next chapter for the full vector description of rotational motion. In this chapter, it's sufficient to know whether an object's rotation is clockwise (CW) or counterclockwise (CCW) about a fixed axis—as suggested by the curved arrow in Fig. 10.2. This restriction to a fixed axis is analogous to Chapter 2's restriction to one-dimensional motion.

Angular and Linear Speed

Individual points on a rotating object undergo circular motion. Each point has an instantaneous linear velocity $\vec{v}$ whose magnitude is the linear speed v . We now relate this linear speed v to the angular speed ω . The definition of angular measure in radians (Fig. 10.1) is $\theta = s/r$. Differentiating this expression with respect to time, we have

$$\frac{d\theta}{dt} = \frac{1}{r} \frac{ds}{dt}$$

because the radius r is constant. The left-hand side of this equation is the angular velocity ω , as defined in Equation 10.2. Because s is the arc length—the actual distance traversed by a point on the rotating object—the term ds/dt is just the linear speed v , so $\omega = v/r$, or

$$v = \omega r \quad (10.3)$$

v is the linear speed a distance r from the rotation axis...

...of an object rotating with angular angular velocity ω .

The equality only holds if ω is measured in radians/second or s^{-1} .

Thus the linear speed of any point on a rotating object is proportional both to the angular speed of the object and to the distance from that point to the axis of rotation (Fig. 10.3).

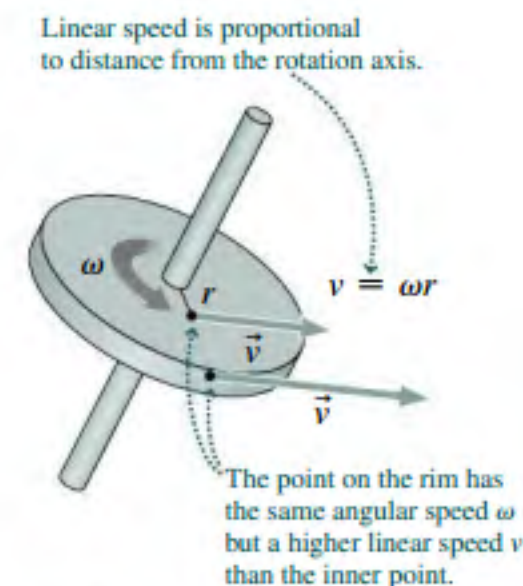


FIGURE 10.3 Linear and rotational speeds.



RADIAN MEASURE Equation 10.3 was derived using the definition of angle *in radians* and therefore holds for only angular speed measured in radians per unit time. If you're given other angular measures—degrees or revolutions, for example—you should convert to radians before using Equation 10.3.

EXAMPLE 10.1 Angular Speed: A Wind Turbine

A wind turbine's blades are 28 m long and rotate at 21 rpm. Find the angular speed of the blades in radians per second, and determine the linear speed at the tip of a blade.

INTERPRET This problem is about converting between two units of angular speed, revolutions per minute and radians per second, as well as finding linear speed given angular speed and radius.

DEVELOP We'll first convert the units to radians per second and then calculate the linear speed using Equation 10.3, $v = \omega r$.

EVALUATE One revolution is 2π rad, and 1 min is 60 s, so we have

$$\omega = 21 \text{ rpm} = \frac{(21 \text{ rev/min})(2\pi \text{ rad/rev})}{60 \text{ s/min}} = 2.2 \text{ rad/s}$$

The speed at the tip of a 28-m-long blade then follows from Equation 10.3: $v = \omega r = (2.2 \text{ rad/s})(28 \text{ m}) = 62 \text{ m/s}$.

ASSESS With ω in radians per second, multiplying by length in meters gives correct velocity units of meters per second because radians are dimensionless.

Angular Acceleration

If the angular velocity of a rotating object changes with time, then the object undergoes **angular acceleration** α , defined analogously to linear acceleration:

Angular acceleration α is defined analogously to linear acceleration a ...

...as the rate of change, or time derivative, of angular velocity ω .

$$\alpha = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta \omega}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\omega}{dt} \quad (\text{angular acceleration}) \quad (10.4)$$

Taking the limit gives the instantaneous angular acceleration; if we don't take the limit, then we have an average over the time interval Δt . The SI units of angular acceleration are rad/s^2 , although we sometimes use other units such as rpm/s or rev/s^2 .

Angular acceleration has the same direction as angular velocity—CW or CCW—if the angular speed is increasing, and the opposite direction if it's decreasing. These situations are analogous to a car that's speeding up (acceleration and velocity in the same direction) or braking (acceleration opposite velocity).

When a rotating object undergoes angular acceleration, points on the object speed up or slow down. Therefore, they have **tangential acceleration** dv/dt directed parallel or antiparallel to their linear velocity (Fig. 10.4). We introduced this idea of tangential acceleration back in Chapter 3; here we can recast it in terms of the angular acceleration:

$$a_t = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d(\omega r)}{dt} = r \frac{d\omega}{dt} = r\alpha \quad (\text{tangential acceleration}) \quad (10.5)$$

Whether or not there's angular acceleration, all the points on a rotating object also have **radial acceleration** because they're in circular motion. Radial acceleration is given, as usual, by $a_r = v^2/r$; using $v = \omega r$ from Equation 10.3, we can recast this in angular terms as $a_r = \omega^2 r$.

Because angular velocity and acceleration are defined analogously to linear velocity and acceleration, all the relations among linear position, velocity, and acceleration automatically apply among angular position, angular velocity, and angular acceleration. If angular acceleration is constant, then all our constant-acceleration formulas of Chapter 2 apply when we make the substitutions θ for x , ω for v , and α for a . Table 10.1 summarizes this direct analogy

Table 10.1 Angular and Linear Position, Velocity, and Acceleration

Linear Quantity	Angular Quantity
Position x	Angular position θ
Velocity $v = \frac{dx}{dt}$	Angular velocity $\omega = \frac{d\theta}{dt}$
Acceleration $a = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2}$	Angular acceleration $\alpha = \frac{d\omega}{dt} = \frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2}$

Equations for Constant Linear Acceleration	Equations for Constant Angular Acceleration
$\bar{v} = \frac{1}{2}(v_0 + v)$ (2.8)	$\bar{\omega} = \frac{1}{2}(\omega_0 + \omega)$ (10.6)
$v = v_0 + at$ (2.7)	$\omega = \omega_0 + \alpha t$ (10.7)
$x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$ (2.10)	$\theta = \theta_0 + \omega_0 t + \frac{1}{2}\alpha t^2$ (10.8)
$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0)$ (2.11)	$\omega^2 = \omega_0^2 + 2\alpha(\theta - \theta_0)$ (10.9)

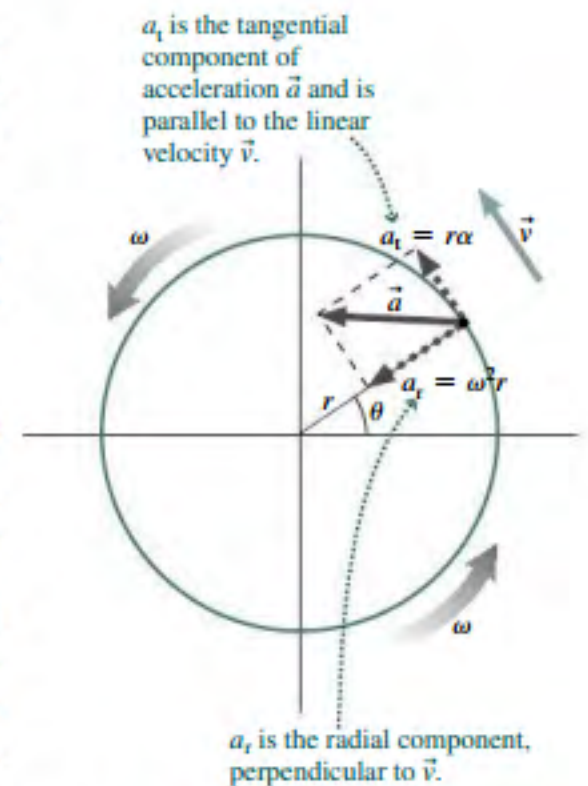


FIGURE 10.4 Radial and tangential acceleration.

between linear and rotational quantities. With Table 10.1, problems involving rotational motion are analogous to the one-dimensional linear problems you solved in Chapter 2.

EXAMPLE 10.2 Linear Analogies: Spin-down

When the wind dies, the turbine of Example 10.1 spins down with constant angular acceleration of magnitude 0.12 rad/s^2 . How many revolutions does the turbine make before coming to a stop?

INTERPRET The key to problems involving rotational motion is to identify the analogous situation for linear motion. This problem is analogous to asking how far a braking car travels before coming to a stop. We identify the number of rotations—the angular displacement—as the analog of the car’s linear displacement. The given angular acceleration is analogous to the car’s braking acceleration. The initial angular speed (2.2 rad/s , from Example 10.1) is analogous to the car’s initial speed. And in both cases the final state we’re interested in has zero speed—whether linear or angular.

DEVELOP Our plan is to develop the analogy further so we can find the angular displacement. The easiest way to solve the linear problem would be to use Equation 2.11, $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0)$, with $v = 0$, v_0 the initial velocity, a the car’s acceleration, and $\Delta x = x - x_0$ the

distance we’re solving for. In Table 10.1, Equation 10.9 is the analogous equation for rotational motion: $\omega^2 = \omega_0^2 + 2\alpha\Delta\theta$, where we’ve written $\theta - \theta_0 = \Delta\theta$ for the rotational displacement during the spin-down.

EVALUATE We solve for $\Delta\theta$:

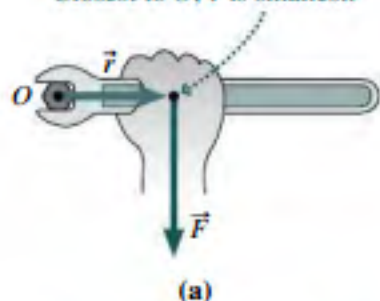
$$\Delta\theta = \frac{\omega^2 - \omega_0^2}{2\alpha} = \frac{0 - (2.2 \text{ rad/s})^2}{(2)(-0.12 \text{ rad/s}^2)} = 20 \text{ rad} = 3.2 \text{ revolutions}$$

where the last conversion follows because 1 revolution is 2π radians.

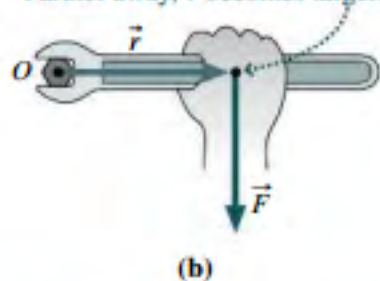
ASSESS The turbine blades are turning rather slowly—less than 1 revolution every second—so it’s not surprising that a small angular acceleration can bring them to a halt in a short angular “distance.” Note, too, how the units work out. Also, by taking ω as positive, we needed to treat α as negative because the angular acceleration is opposite the angular velocity when the rotation rate is slowing—just as the braking car’s linear acceleration is opposite its velocity.

The same force is applied at different points on the wrench.

Closest to O , τ is smallest.



Farther away, τ becomes larger.



Farthest away, τ becomes greatest.

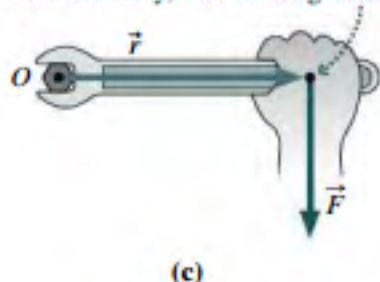
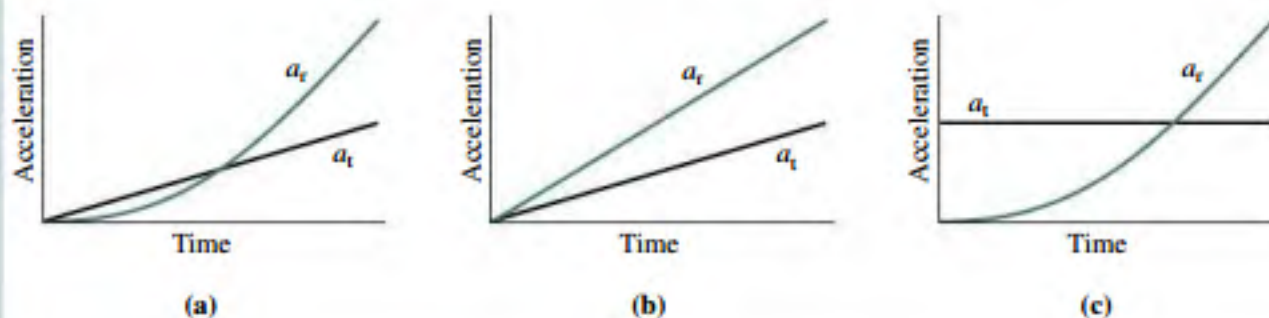


FIGURE 10.5 Torque increases with the distance r from the rotation axis O to the point where force is applied.

GOT IT?

10.1 A wheel undergoes constant angular acceleration, starting from rest. Which graph describes correctly the time dependence of both the transverse and radial accelerations of a point on the wheel’s rim? Explain.



10.2 Torque

LO 10.1 Identify and calculate rotational analogs of position, velocity, acceleration, force, and mass.

Newton’s second law, $\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$, proved very powerful in our study of motion. Ultimately Newton’s law governs all motion, but its application to every particle in a rotating object would be terribly cumbersome. Can we instead formulate an analogous law that deals with rotational quantities?

To develop such a law, we need rotational analogs of force, mass, and acceleration. Angular acceleration α is the analog of linear acceleration; in the next two sections we develop analogs for force and mass.

How can a small child balance her father on a seesaw? By sitting far from the seesaw’s rotation axis; that way, her smaller weight at a greater distance from the pivot is as effective as her father’s greater weight closer to the pivot. In general, the effectiveness of a force in bringing about changes in rotational motion—a quantity called **torque**—depends not only on the magnitude of the force but also on how far from the rotation axis it’s applied (Fig. 10.5). The effectiveness of the force also depends on the *direction* in which it’s applied, as Fig. 10.6 suggests. Based on these considerations, we define torque as the product of the distance r

The same force is applied at different angles.

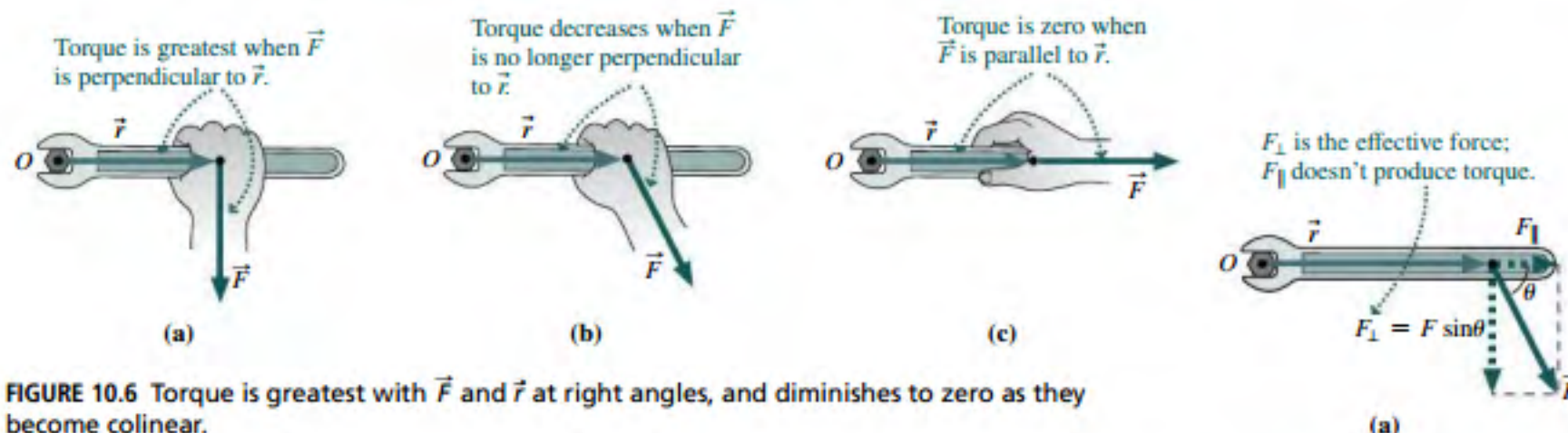


FIGURE 10.6 Torque is greatest with $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{r}$ at right angles, and diminishes to zero as they become colinear.

from the rotation axis and the component of force perpendicular to that axis. Torque is given the symbol τ (Greek tau, pronounced to rhyme with “how”). Then we can write

$$\tau = rF \sin \theta \quad (10.10)$$

where θ is the angle between the force vector and the vector $\vec{r}$ from the rotation axis to the force application point. Figure 10.7 shows two interpretations of Equation 10.10. Figure 10.7b also defines the so-called **lever arm**.

Torque, which you can think of as a “twisting force,” plays the role of force in the rotational analog of Newton’s second law. Equation 10.10 shows that torque is measured in newton-meters. Although this is the same unit as energy, torque is a different physical quantity, so we reserve the term *joule* ($=1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$) for energy.

Does torque have direction? Yes, and we’ll extend our notion of torque to provide a vector description in the next chapter. For now we’ll specify the direction as either clockwise or counterclockwise.

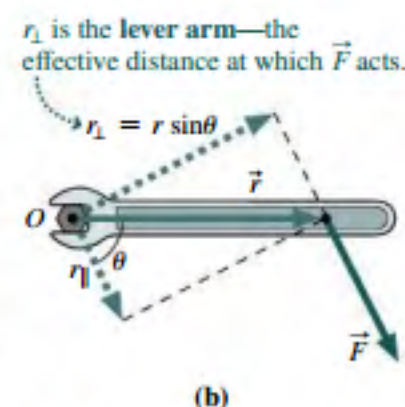


FIGURE 10.7 Two ways of thinking about torque. (a) $\tau = rF_{\perp}$; (b) $\tau = r_{\perp}F$. Both give $\tau = rF \sin \theta$.

EXAMPLE 10.3 Torque: Changing a Tire

You’re tightening your car’s wheel nuts after changing a flat tire. The instructions specify a tightening torque of $95 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ so the nuts won’t come loose. If your 45-cm-long wrench makes a 67° angle with the horizontal, with what force must you pull horizontally to produce the required torque?

INTERPRET We need to find the force required to produce a specific torque, given the distance from the rotation axis and the angle the force makes with the wrench.

DEVELOP Figure 10.8 is our drawing, and we’ll calculate the torque using Equation 10.10, $\tau = rF \sin \theta$. With the force applied horizontally, comparison of Figs. 10.7a and 10.8 shows that the angle θ in Equation 10.10 is $180^\circ - 67^\circ = 113^\circ$.

EVALUATE We solve Equation 10.10 for the force F :

$$F = \frac{\tau}{r \sin \theta} = \frac{95 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}}{(0.45 \text{ m})(\sin 113^\circ)} = 230 \text{ N}$$

ASSESS Is a 230-N force reasonable? Yes: It’s roughly the force needed to lift a 23-kg (~ 50 -lb) suitcase. Tightening torques, as in this

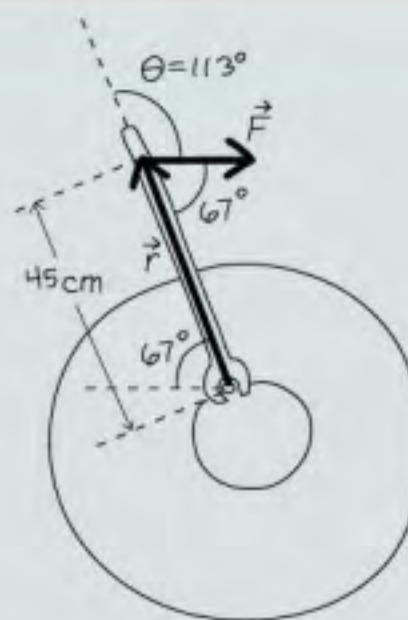


FIGURE 10.8 Our sketch of the wrench and wheel nut.

example, are often specified for nuts and bolts in critical applications. Mechanics use specially designed “torque wrenches” that provide a direct indication of the applied torque.

GOT IT?

10.2 The forces in Figs. 10.5 and 10.6 all have the same magnitude. (1) Which of Figs. 10.5a, 10.5b, and 10.6b has the greatest torque? (2) Which of these has the least torque?



SPECIFY THE AXIS Torque depends on where the force is applied *relative to some rotation axis*. The same physical force results in different torques about different axes. Be sure the rotation axis is specified before you make a calculation involving torque.

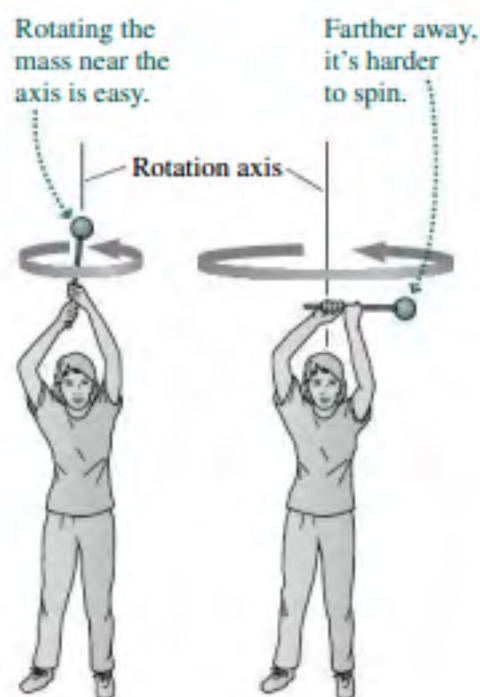


FIGURE 10.9 It's easier to set an object rotating if the mass is concentrated near the axis.

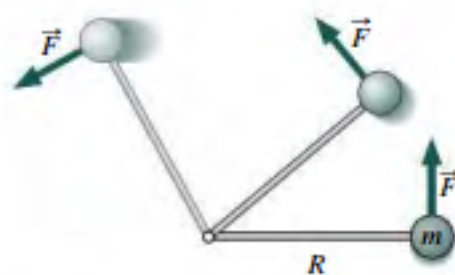


FIGURE 10.10 A force applied perpendicular to the rod results in angular acceleration.

10.3 Rotational Inertia and the Analog of Newton's Law

LO 10.3 Calculate rotational inertias by summing or integrating.

LO 10.4 Apply the rotational analog of Newton's second law.

LO 10.5 Solve problems involving coupled linear and rotational motion.

Torque and angular acceleration are the rotational analogs of force and linear acceleration. To develop a rotational analog of Newton's law, we still need the rotational analog of mass.

The mass m in Newton's law is a measure of a body's inertia—of its resistance to changes in motion. So we want a quantity that describes resistance to changes in rotational motion. Figure 10.9 shows that it's easier to set an object rotating when its mass is concentrated near the rotation axis. Therefore, our rotational analog of inertia must depend not only on mass itself but also on the distribution of mass relative to the rotation axis.

Suppose the object in Fig. 10.9 consists of an essentially massless rod of length R with a ball of mass m on the end. We allow the object to rotate about an axis through the free end of the rod and apply a force $\vec{F}$ to the ball, always at right angles to the rod (Fig. 10.10). The ball undergoes a tangential acceleration given by Newton's law: $F = ma_t$. (There's also a tension force in the rod, but because it acts along the rod, it doesn't contribute to the torque or angular acceleration.) We can use Equation 10.5 to express the tangential acceleration in terms of the angular acceleration α and the distance R from the rotation axis: $F = ma_t = m\alpha R$. We can also express the force F in terms of its associated torque. Since the force is perpendicular to the rod, Equation 10.10 gives $\tau = RF$. Using our expression for F , we have

$$\tau = (mR^2)\alpha$$

Here we have Newton's law, $F = ma$, written in terms of rotational quantities. The torque—analogue to force—is the product of the angular acceleration and the quantity mR^2 , which must therefore be the rotational analog of mass. We call this quantity the **rotational inertia** or **moment of inertia** and give it the symbol I . Rotational inertia is measured in $\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$ and accounts for both an object's mass and the distribution of that mass. Like torque, the value of the rotational inertia depends on the location of the rotation axis. Given the rotational inertia I , our rotational analog of Newton's law becomes

Torque τ is the rotational analog of force F . Angular acceleration α is the rotational analog of linear acceleration a .

$$\tau = I\alpha \quad (\text{rotational analog of Newton's second law}) \quad (10.11)$$

Rotational inertia I is the rotational analog of mass m .

Although we derived Equation 10.11 for a single, localized mass, it applies to extended objects if we interpret τ as the net torque on the object and I as the sum of the rotational inertias of the individual mass elements making up the object.

Calculating the Rotational Inertia

When an object consists of a number of discrete mass points, its rotational inertia about an axis is the sum of the rotational inertias of the individual mass points:

Rotational inertia I of an object... ...is the sum of the rotational inertias $m_i r_i^2$ of its constituent particles.

$$I = \sum m_i r_i^2 \quad (\text{rotational inertia}) \quad (10.12)$$

Here m_i is the mass of the i th mass point, and r_i is its distance from the rotation axis.

EXAMPLE 10.4 Rotational Inertia: A Sum

A dumbbell-shaped object consists of two equal masses $m = 0.64 \text{ kg}$ on the ends of a massless rod of length $L = 85 \text{ cm}$. Calculate its rotational inertia about an axis one-fourth of the way from one end of the rod and perpendicular to it.

INTERPRET Here we have two discrete masses, so this problem is asking us to calculate the rotational inertia by summing over the individual masses.

DEVELOP Figure 10.11 is our sketch. We'll use Equation 10.12, $I = \sum m_i r_i^2$, to sum the two individual rotational inertias.

EVALUATE

$$I = \sum m_i r_i^2 = m\left(\frac{1}{4}L\right)^2 + m\left(\frac{3}{4}L\right)^2 = \frac{5}{8}mL^2 \\ = \frac{5}{8}(0.64 \text{ kg})(0.85 \text{ m})^2 = 0.29 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$$

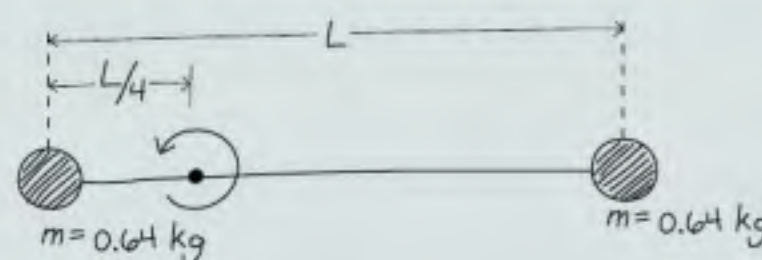


FIGURE 10.11 Our sketch for Example 10.4, showing rotation about an axis perpendicular to the page.

ASSESS Make sense? Even though there are two masses, our answer is less than the rotational inertia mL^2 of a single mass rotated about a rod of length L . That's because distance from the rotation axis is *squared*, so it contributes more in determining rotational inertia than does mass.

GOT IT?

10.3 Would the rotational inertia of the two-mass dumbbell in Example 10.4 (a) increase, (b) decrease, or (c) stay the same (1) if the rotation axis were at the center of the rod? (2) If it were at one end?

With continuous distributions of matter, we consider a large number of very small mass elements dm throughout the object, and sum the individual rotational inertias $r^2 dm$ over the entire object (Fig. 10.12). In the limit of an arbitrarily large number of infinitesimally small mass elements, that sum becomes an integral:

I is the rotational inertia of an object.

With continuous matter the sum becomes an integral.

dm is an infinitesimal mass element...

$$I = \int r^2 dm \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{rotational inertia,} \\ \text{continuous matter} \end{array} \right) \quad (10.13)$$

...and r is dm 's distance from the rotation axis.

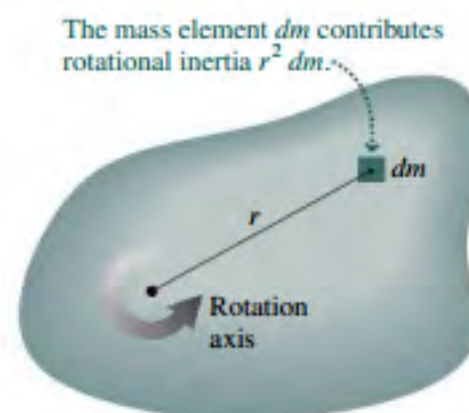


FIGURE 10.12 Rotational inertia can be found by integrating the rotational inertias $r^2 dm$ of the mass elements making up an object.

where the limits of integration cover the entire object.

EXAMPLE 10.5 Rotational Inertia by Integration: A Rod
Worked Example with Variation Problems

Find the rotational inertia of a uniform, narrow rod of mass M and length L about an axis through its center and perpendicular to the rod.

INTERPRET The rod is a continuous distribution of matter, so calculating the rotational inertia is going to involve integration. We identify the rotation axis as being in the center of the rod.

DEVELOP Figure 10.13 shows the rod and rotation axis; we added a coordinate system with x -axis along the rod and the origin at the rotation axis. With a continuous distribution, Equation 10.13, $I = \int r^2 dm$, applies. To develop a solution plan, we need to set up the integral in Equation 10.13. That equation may seem confusing because the integral contains both the geometric variable r and the mass element dm . How are they related? At this point you might want to review Tactics 9.1 (page 170); we'll follow its steps here. (1) We first find a suitable mass element; here, with a one-dimensional rod, that can be a short section of the rod. We marked a typical mass element in Fig. 10.13. (2) This step is straightforward in this

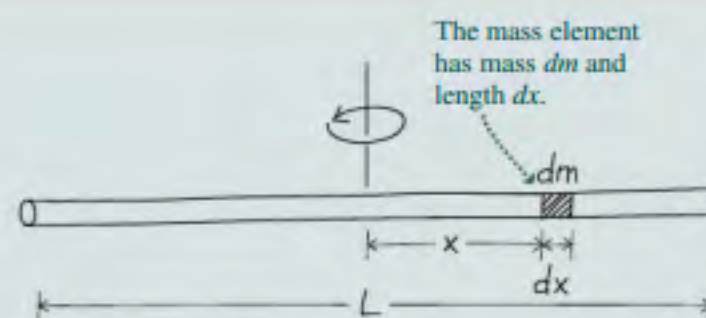


FIGURE 10.13 Our sketch of the uniform rod of Example 10.5.

one-dimensional case; the length of the mass element is dx , signifying an infinitesimally short piece of the rod. (3) Now we relate dx and the mass element dm . The total mass of the rod is M , and its total length is L . With the mass distributed uniformly, that means dx is the same fraction of L that dm is of M , or $dx/L = dm/M$. (4) We solve for the mass element: $dm = (M/L) dx$.

(continued)

We're almost done. But the integral in Equation 10.13 contains r , and we've related dm and dx . No problem: On the one-dimensional rod, distances from the rotation axis are just the coordinates x . So r becomes x in our integral, and we have

$$I = \int r^2 dm = \int_{-L/2}^{L/2} x^2 \frac{M}{L} dx$$

We chose the limits to include the entire rod; with the origin at the center, it runs from $-L/2$ to $L/2$.

EVALUATE The constants M and L come outside the integral, so we have

$$I = \int_{-L/2}^{L/2} x^2 \frac{M}{L} dx = \frac{M}{L} \int_{-L/2}^{L/2} x^2 dx = \frac{M}{L} \frac{x^3}{3} \bigg|_{-L/2}^{L/2} = \frac{1}{12} ML^2 \quad (10.14)$$

ASSESS Make sense? In Example 10.4 we found $I = \frac{5}{8} mL^2$ for a rod with two masses m on the ends. If you thought about GOT IT? 10.3, you probably realized that the rotational inertia would be $\frac{1}{2} mL^2$ for rotation about the rod's center. The total mass for that one was $M = 2m$, so in terms of total mass the rotational inertia about the center would be $I = \frac{1}{4} ML^2$ —a lot larger than what we've found for the continuous rod. That's because much of the continuous rod's mass is close to the rotation axis, so it contributes less to the rotational inertia.

EXAMPLE 10.6 Rotational Inertia by Integration: A Ring

Find the rotational inertia of a thin ring of radius R and mass M about the ring's axis.

INTERPRET This example is similar to Example 10.5, but the geometry has changed from a rod to a ring.

DEVELOP Figure 10.14 shows the ring with a mass element dm . All the mass elements in the ring are the same distance R from the rotation axis, so r in Equation 10.13 is the constant R , and the equation becomes

$$I = \int R^2 dm = R^2 \int dm$$

where the integration is over the ring.

EVALUATE Because the sum of the mass elements over the ring is the total mass M , we find

$$I = MR^2 \quad (\text{thin ring}) \quad (10.15)$$



FIGURE 10.14 Our sketch of a thin ring, showing one mass element dm .

ASSESS The rotational inertia of the ring is the same as if all the mass were concentrated in one place a distance R from the rotation axis; the angular distribution of the mass about the axis doesn't matter. Notice, too, that it doesn't matter whether the ring is narrow like a loop of wire or long like a section of hollow pipe, as long as it's thin enough that all of it is essentially equidistant from the rotation axis (Fig. 10.15).



FIGURE 10.15 The rotational inertia is MR^2 for any thin ring, whether it's narrow like a wire loop or long like a pipe.

EXAMPLE 10.7 Rotational Inertia by Integration: A Disk

A disk of radius R and mass M has uniform density. Find the rotational inertia of the disk about an axis through its center and perpendicular to the disk.

INTERPRET Again we need to find the rotational inertia for a piece of continuous matter, this time a disk.

DEVELOP Because the disk is continuous, we need to integrate using Equation 10.13, $I = \int r^2 dm$. We'll condense the strategy we applied in Example 10.5. The result of Example 10.6 suggests dividing the disk into rings, as shown in Fig. 10.16a. Equation 10.15, with $M \rightarrow dm$, shows that a ring of radius r and mass dm contributes $r^2 dm$ to the rotational inertia of the disk. Then the total inertia will be $I = \int_0^R r^2 dm$, where we chose the limits to pick up contributions from all the mass elements on the disk. Again we need to relate r and dm . Think of "unwinding" the ring, as shown in Fig. 10.16b; it becomes essentially a rectangle whose area dA is its circumference multiplied by its width: $dA = 2\pi r dr$. Next, we form ratios. The ring area dA is to

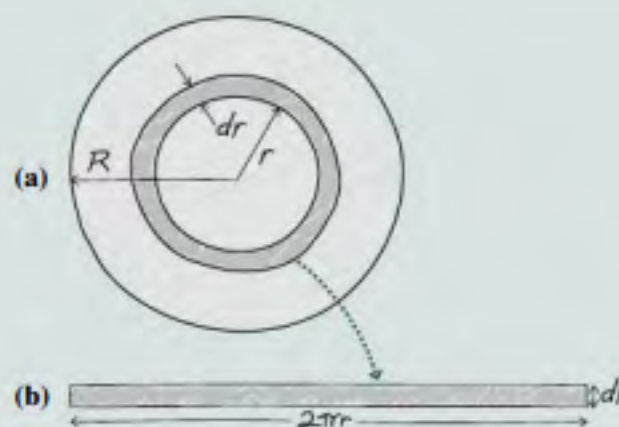


FIGURE 10.16 A disk may be divided into ring-shaped mass elements of mass dm , radius r , and width dr .

the total disk area πR^2 as the ring mass dm is to the total mass M : $2\pi r dr / \pi R^2 = dm / M$. Solving for dm gives $dm = (2Mr/R^2) dr$.

EVALUATE We now evaluate the integral:

$$I = \int_0^R r^2 dm = \int_0^R r^2 \left(\frac{2Mr}{R^2} \right) dr$$

$$= \frac{2M}{R^2} \int_0^R r^3 dr = \frac{2M}{R^2} \left[\frac{r^4}{4} \right]_0^R = \frac{1}{2} MR^2 \quad (\text{disk}) \quad (10.16)$$

ASSESS Again, this result makes sense. In the disk, some of the mass is closer to the rotation axis, so the rotational inertia should be less than the value MR^2 for the ring.



CONSTANTS AND VARIABLES Note the different roles of R and r here. R represents a fixed quantity—the actual radius of the disk—and it's a constant that can go outside the integral. In contrast, r is the *integration variable*, and it changes as we range from the disk's center to its edge, adding up all the infinitesimal mass elements. Because r is a variable over the region of integration, we can't take it outside the integral.

The rotational inertias of other shapes about various axes are found by integration as in these examples. Table 10.2 lists results for some common shapes. Note that more than one rotational inertia is listed for some shapes, since the rotational inertia depends on the rotation axis.

If we know the rotational inertia I_{cm} about an axis through the center of mass of a body, a useful relation called the **parallel-axis theorem** allows us to calculate the rotational inertia I through any parallel axis. The parallel-axis theorem states that

$$I = I_{\text{cm}} + Md^2 \quad (10.17)$$

where d is the distance from the center-of-mass axis to the parallel axis and M is the total mass of the object. Figure 10.17 shows the meaning of the parallel-axis theorem, which you can prove in Problem 78.

GOT IT?

10.4 Explain why the rotational inertia of the solid sphere in Table 10.2 is less than that of the spherical shell with the same radius and the same mass.

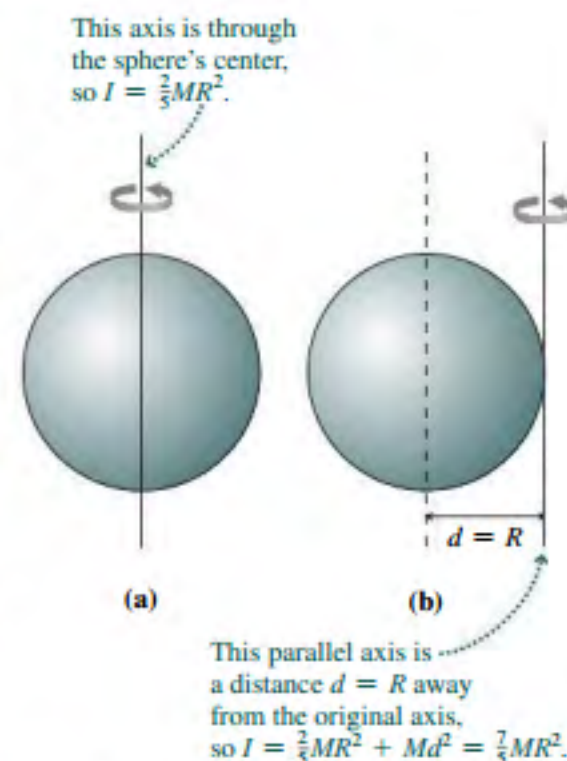


FIGURE 10.17 Meaning of the parallel-axis theorem.

Table 10.2 Rotational Inertias

Thin rod about center $I = \frac{1}{12}ML^2$	Thin ring or hollow cylinder about its axis $I = MR^2$	Solid sphere about diameter $I = \frac{2}{5}MR^2$	Flat plate about perpendicular axis $I = \frac{1}{12}M(a^2 + b^2)$
Thin rod about end $I = \frac{1}{3}ML^2$	Disk or solid cylinder about its axis $I = \frac{1}{2}MR^2$	Hollow spherical shell about diameter $I = \frac{2}{3}MR^2$	Flat plate about central axis $I = \frac{1}{12}Ma^2$

Rotational Dynamics

Knowing a body's rotational inertia, we can use the rotational analog of Newton's second law (Equation 10.11) to determine its behavior, just as we used Newton's law itself to analyze linear motion. Like the force in Newton's law, the torque in Equation 10.11 is the *net* external torque—the sum of all external torques acting on the body.

EXAMPLE 10.8 Rotational Dynamics: De-Spinning a Satellite

A cylindrical satellite is 1.4 m in diameter, with its 940-kg mass distributed uniformly. The satellite is spinning at 10 rpm but must be stopped so that astronauts can make repairs. Two small jets, each with 20-N thrust, are mounted on opposite sides of the satellite and fire tangent to the satellite's rim. How long must the jets be fired in order to stop the satellite's rotation?

INTERPRET This is ultimately a problem about angular acceleration, but we're given the forces the jets exert. So it becomes a problem about calculating torque and then acceleration—that is, a problem in rotational dynamics using the rotational analog of Newton's law.

DEVELOP Figure 10.18 shows the situation. We're asked about the time, which we can get from the angular acceleration and initial angular speed. We can find the acceleration using the rotational analog of Newton's law, Equation 10.11, if we know both torque and rotational inertia. So here's our plan: (1) Find the satellite's rotational inertia from Table 10.2, treating it as a solid cylinder. (2) Find the torque due to the jets using Equation 10.10, $\tau = rF \sin \theta$. (3) Use the rotational analog of Newton's law—Equation 10.11,

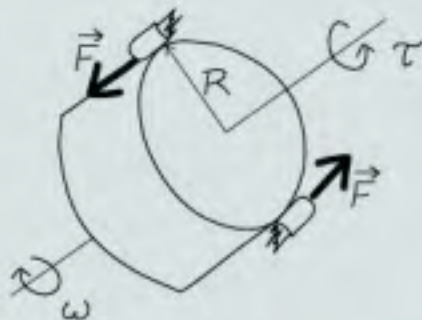


FIGURE 10.18 Torque from the jets stops the satellite's rotation.

$\tau = I\alpha$ —to find the angular acceleration. (4) Use the change in angular speed to get the time.

EVALUATE Following our plan, (1) the rotational inertia from Table 10.2 is $I = \frac{1}{2}MR^2$. (2) With the jets tangent to the satellite, $\sin \theta$ in Equation 10.10 is 1, so each jet contributes a torque of magnitude RF , where R is the satellite radius and F the jet thrust force. With two jets, the net torque then has magnitude $\tau = 2RF$. (3) Equation 10.11 gives $\alpha = \tau/I = (2RF)/(\frac{1}{2}MR^2) = 4F/MR$. (4) We want this torque to drop the angular speed from $\omega_0 = 10$ rpm to zero, so the magnitude of the speed change is

$$\Delta\omega = 10 \text{ rev/min} = (10 \text{ rev/min})(2\pi \text{ rad/rev})/(60 \text{ s/min}) = 1.05 \text{ rad/s}$$

Since angular acceleration is $\alpha = \Delta\omega/\Delta t$, our final answer is

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta\omega}{\alpha} = \frac{MR \Delta\omega}{4F} = \frac{(940 \text{ kg})(0.70 \text{ m})(1.05 \text{ rad/s})}{(4)(20 \text{ N})} = 8.6 \text{ s}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: The thrust F appears in the denominator, showing that a larger force and hence torque will bring the satellite more rapidly to a halt. Larger M and R contribute to a larger rotational inertia, thus lengthening the stopping time—although a larger R also means a larger torque, an effect that reduces the R dependence from the R^2 that appears in the expression for rotational inertia.

A single problem can involve both rotational and linear motion with more than one object. The strategy for dealing with such problems is similar to the multiple-object strategy we developed in Chapter 5, where we identified the objects whose motions we were interested in, drew a free-body diagram for each, and then applied Newton's law separately to each object. We used the physical connections among the objects to relate quantities appearing in the separate Newton's law equations. Here we do the same thing, except that when an object is rotating, we use Equation 10.11, the rotational analog of Newton's law. Often the physical connection will entail relations between the force on an object in linear motion and the torque on a rotating object, as well as between the objects' linear and rotational accelerations.

EXAMPLE 10.9 Rotational and Linear Dynamics: Into the Well

A solid cylinder of mass M and radius R is mounted on a frictionless horizontal axle over a well, as shown in Fig. 10.19. A rope of negligible mass is wrapped around the cylinder and supports a bucket of mass m . Find an expression for the bucket's acceleration as it falls down the well shaft.

INTERPRET If it weren't connected to the cylinder, the bucket would fall with acceleration g . But the rope exerts an upward tension force $\vec{T}$ on the bucket, reducing its acceleration and at the same time exerting a torque on the cylinder. So we have a problem involving both

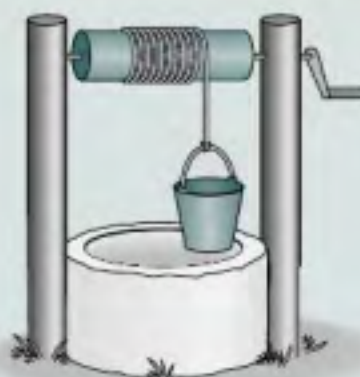


FIGURE 10.19 Example 10.9.

rotational and linear dynamics. We identify the bucket and the cylinder as the objects of interest; the bucket is in linear motion while the cylinder rotates. The connection between them is the rope.

DEVELOP Figure 10.20 shows free-body diagrams for the two objects; note that both involve the rope tension, $\vec{T}$. We chose the downward direction as positive in the bucket diagram and the clockwise direction as positive in the cylinder diagram. Now we're ready to write Newton's second law and its analog—Equation 10.11, $\tau = I\alpha$ —for the two objects. Our plan is to formulate both equations and solve using the connection between them—physically the rope and mathematically the magnitude of the rope tension. We have to express the torque on the cylinder in terms of the tension force, using Equation 10.10, $\tau = rF \sin \theta$. We also need to relate the cylinder's angular acceleration to the bucket's linear acceleration, using Equation 10.5, $a_t = r\alpha$.

EVALUATE With the downward direction positive, Newton's second law for the bucket reads $F_{\text{net}} = mg - T = ma$. For the cylinder

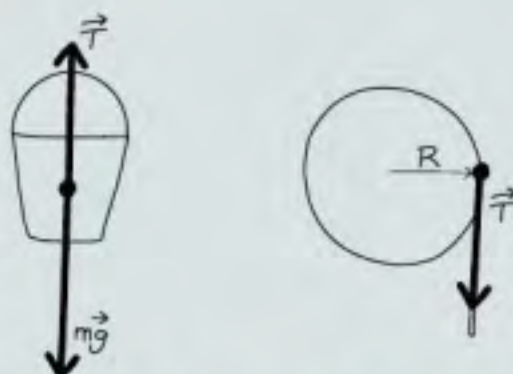


FIGURE 10.20 Our free-body diagrams for the bucket and cylinder.

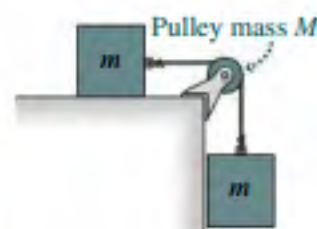
we have the rotational analog of Newton's second law: $\tau = I\alpha$. But here the torque is due to the rope tension, which exerts a force T at right angles to a line from the rotation axis and so produces torque RT . Then the Newton's law analog becomes $RT = I\alpha$. As the rope unwinds, the tangential acceleration of the cylinder's edge must be equal to the bucket's linear acceleration; thus, using Equation 10.5, we have $\alpha = a/R$, and the cylinder equation becomes $RT = Ia/R$ or $T = Ia/R^2$. But the cylinder's rotational inertia, from Table 10.2, is $I = \frac{1}{2}MR^2$, so $T = \frac{1}{2}Ma$. Using this result in the bucket equation gives $ma = mg - T = mg - \frac{1}{2}Ma$; solving for a , we then have

$$a = \frac{mg}{m + \frac{1}{2}M}$$

ASSESS Make sense? If $M = 0$, there would be no rotational inertia and we would have $a = g$. With no torque needed to accelerate the cylinder, there would be no rope tension and the bucket would fall freely with acceleration g . But as the cylinder's mass M increases, the bucket's deceleration drops as greater torque and thus rope tension are needed to give the cylinder its rotational acceleration. You may be surprised to see that the cylinder radius doesn't appear in our answer. That, too, makes sense: The rotational inertia scales as R^2 , but both the torque and the tangential acceleration scale with R . Since the cylinder's tangential acceleration is the same as the bucket's acceleration, the increases in torque and tangential acceleration cancel the effect of a greater rotational inertia.

GOT IT?

10.5 The figure shows two identical masses m connected by a string that passes over a frictionless pulley whose mass M is *not* negligible. One mass rests on a frictionless table; the other hangs vertically, as shown. Is the magnitude of the tension force in the vertical section of the string (a) greater than, (b) equal to, or (c) less than that in the horizontal section? Explain.



10.4 Rotational Energy

LO 10.6 Calculate rotational kinetic energy.

A rotating object has kinetic energy because all its parts are in motion. We define an object's **rotational kinetic energy** as the sum of the kinetic energies of all its individual mass elements, taken with respect to the rotation axis. Figure 10.21 shows that an individual mass element dm a distance r from the rotation axis has kinetic energy given by $dK = \frac{1}{2}(dm)(v^2) = \frac{1}{2}(dm)(\omega r)^2$. The rotational kinetic energy is given by summing—that is, integrating—over the entire object:

$$K_{\text{rot}} = \int dK = \int \frac{1}{2}(dm)(\omega r)^2 = \frac{1}{2}\omega^2 \int r^2 dm$$

where we've taken ω^2 outside the integral because it's the same for every mass element in the rigid, rotating object. The remaining integral is just the rotational inertia I , so we have

$$K_{\text{rot}} = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2 \quad (\text{rotational kinetic energy}) \quad (10.18)$$

K_{rot} is the rotational analog of linear kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$.

Rotational inertia I is the analog of mass m .

Angular velocity ω is the analog of linear velocity v .

A mass element dm has linear speed $v = \omega r$, giving it kinetic energy $dK = \frac{1}{2}(dm)(\omega r)^2$.

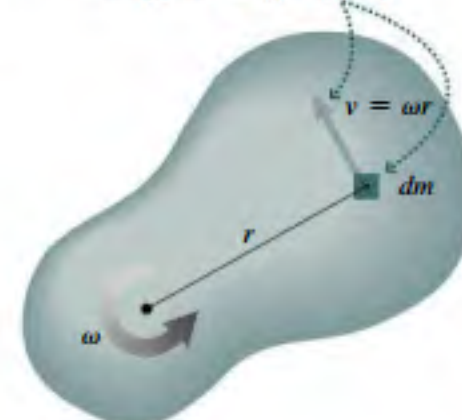


FIGURE 10.21 Kinetic energy of a mass element.

This formula makes sense in light of our analogies between linear and rotational motion: Since I and ω are the rotational analogs of mass and speed, Equation 10.18 is the rotational equivalent of $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$.

EXAMPLE 10.10 Rotational Energy: Flywheel Storage

A flywheel has a 135-kg solid cylindrical rotor with radius 30 cm and spins at 31,000 rpm. How much energy does it store?

INTERPRET We're being asked about kinetic energy stored in a rotating cylinder.

DEVELOP Equation 10.18, $K_{\text{rot}} = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$, gives the rotational energy. To use it, we need the rotational inertia from Table 10.2, and we need to convert the rotation rate in revolutions per minute to angular speed ω in radians per second.

EVALUATE Table 10.2 gives the rotational inertia, $I = \frac{1}{2}MR^2 = (\frac{1}{2})(135 \text{ kg})(0.30 \text{ m})^2 = 6.1 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$, and 31,000 rpm is equivalent to

$(31,000 \text{ rev/min})(2\pi \text{ rad/rev})/(60 \text{ s/min}) = 3246 \text{ rad/s}$. Then Equation 10.18 gives

$$K_{\text{rot}} = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2 = (\frac{1}{2})(6.1 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2)(3246 \text{ rad/s})^2 = 32 \text{ MJ}$$

ASSESS 32 MJ is roughly the energy contained in a liter of gasoline. The advantages of the flywheel over a fuel or a chemical battery are more concentrated energy storage and greater efficiency at getting energy into and out of storage; see the Application below. Can you see why the solid disk of this example isn't the most efficient flywheel design? You can explore this question further in Question 9 and Problem 77.



WHEN TO USE RADIANS We derived Equation 10.18, $K = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$, using Equation 10.3, $v = \omega r$. Since that equation works only with radian measure, the same is true of Equation 10.18.

Energy and Work in Rotational Motion

In Section 6.3 we proved the work–kinetic energy theorem, which states that the change in an object's linear kinetic energy is equal to the net work done on the object. There the work was the product (or the integral, for a changing force) of the net force and the distance the object moves. Not surprisingly, there's an analogous relation for rotational motion: The change in an object's rotational kinetic energy is equal to the net work done on the object. Now the work is, analogously, the product (or the integral, when torque varies with angle) of the torque and the angular displacement:

$$W = \int_{\theta_i}^{\theta_f} \tau d\theta = \Delta K_{\text{rot}} = \frac{1}{2}I\omega_f^2 - \frac{1}{2}I\omega_i^2 \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{work–kinetic energy theorem,} \\ \text{rotational motion} \end{array} \right) \quad (10.19)$$

Here the subscripts refer to the initial and final states.

APPLICATION Flywheel Energy Storage

Flywheels provide an attractive alternative to batteries in applications requiring short bursts of power. Examples include acceleration and hill climbing in hybrid vehicles, industrial lifting equipment and amusement park rides, power management on the electric grid, and uninterruptible power supplies. Flywheel-based hybrid vehicles would achieve high efficiency by storing mechanical energy in the flywheel during braking rather than dissipating it as heat in conventional brakes or even storing it in a chemical battery as in today's hybrids.

Equation 10.18 shows that the stored energy can be substantial, provided the flywheel has significant rotational inertia and angular speed—the latter being especially important because the energy scales as the *square* of the angular speed. Modern flywheels can supply tens of kilowatts of power for as long as a minute; unlike batteries, their output isn't reduced in cold weather. They achieve rotation rates of 30,000 rpm and more using advanced carbon composite materials that can withstand the forces needed to maintain the radial acceleration of magnitude $\omega^2 r$. Advanced flywheels spin in vacuum, using magnetic bearings to minimize friction. Some even use superconducting materials, which eliminate electrical losses that we'll examine in Chapter 26. The photo shows a high-speed flywheel for hybrid buses. It can be retrofitted into existing buses and results in some 30% increase in fuel efficiency.



EXAMPLE 10.11 Work and Rotational Energy: Balancing a Tire

An automobile wheel with tire has rotational inertia $2.7 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. What constant torque does a tire-balancing machine need to apply in order to spin this tire up from rest to 700 rpm in 25 revolutions?

INTERPRET The wheel's rotational kinetic energy changes as it spins up, so the machine must be doing work by applying a torque. Therefore, the concept behind this problem is the work–kinetic energy theorem for rotational motion.

DEVELOP The work–kinetic energy theorem of Equation 10.19 relates the work to the change in rotational kinetic energy:

$$W = \int_{\theta_i}^{\theta_f} \tau d\theta = \Delta K_{\text{rot}} = \frac{1}{2} I \omega_f^2 - \frac{1}{2} I \omega_i^2.$$

We're given the initial and final angular velocities, although we have to convert them to radians per second. With constant torque, the

integral in Equation 10.19 becomes the product $\tau \Delta\theta$, so we can solve for the torque.

EVALUATE The initial angular speed ω_i is zero, and the final speed $\omega_f = (700 \text{ rev/min})(2\pi \text{ rad/rev})/(60 \text{ s/min}) = 73.3 \text{ rad/s}$. The angular displacement $\Delta\theta$ is $(25 \text{ rev})(2\pi \text{ rad/rev}) = 157 \text{ rad}$. Then Equation 10.19 becomes $W = \tau \Delta\theta = \frac{1}{2} I \omega_f^2$, which gives

$$\tau = \frac{\frac{1}{2} I \omega_f^2}{\Delta\theta} = \frac{(\frac{1}{2})(2.7 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2)(73.3 \text{ rad/s})^2}{157 \text{ rad}} = 46 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$$

ASSESS If this torque results from a force applied at the rim of a typical 40-cm-radius tire, then the magnitude of the force would be just over 100 N, about the weight of a 10-kg mass and thus a reasonable value.

GOT IT?

10.6 A wheel is rotating at 100 rpm. To spin it up to 200 rpm will take (a) less; (b) more; (c) the same work as it took to get it from rest to 100 rpm.

10.5 Rolling Motion

LO 10.7 Describe quantitatively the behavior of rolling objects.

A rolling object exhibits both rotational motion and translational motion—the motion of the whole object from place to place. How much kinetic energy is associated with each?

In Section 9.3, we found that the kinetic energy of a composite object comprises two terms: the kinetic energy of the center of mass and the internal kinetic energy relative to the center of mass. That is, $K = K_{\text{cm}} + K_{\text{internal}}$. A wheel of mass M moving with speed v has center-of-mass kinetic energy $K_{\text{cm}} = \frac{1}{2} M v^2$. In the center-of-mass frame, the wheel is simply rotating with angular speed ω about the center of mass, so its internal kinetic energy is $K_{\text{internal}} = \frac{1}{2} I_{\text{cm}} \omega^2$, where the rotational inertia is taken about the center of mass. The total energy is the sum of K_{cm} and K_{internal} :

$$K_{\text{total}} = \frac{1}{2} M v^2 + \frac{1}{2} I_{\text{cm}} \omega^2 \quad (10.20)$$

When a wheel is *rolling*—moving without slipping against the ground—its translational speed v and angular speed ω about its center of mass are related. Imagine a wheel that rolls half a revolution and therefore moves horizontally half its circumference (Fig. 10.22). Then the wheel's angular speed is the angular displacement $\Delta\theta$, here half a revolution, or π radians, divided by the time Δt : $\omega = \pi/\Delta t$. Its translational speed is the actual distance the wheel travels divided by the same time interval. But we've just argued that the wheel travels half a circumference, or πR , where R is its radius. So its translational speed is $v = \pi R/\Delta t$. Comparing our expressions for v and ω , we see that

$$v = \omega R \quad (\text{rolling motion}) \quad (10.21)$$

Equation 10.21 looks deceptively like Equation 10.3. But it says more. In Equation 10.3, $v = \omega r$, v is the linear speed of a point a distance r from the center of a rotating object. In Equation 10.21, v is the translational speed of the whole object and R is its radius. The two equations look similar because, as our argument leading to Equation 10.21 shows, an object that rolls without slipping moves with respect to the ground at the same rate that a point on its rim moves in the center-of-mass frame.

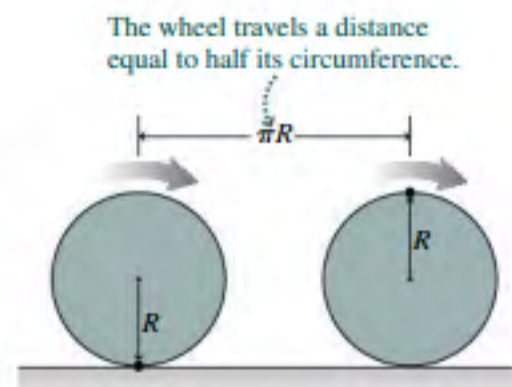


FIGURE 10.22 A rolling wheel turns through half a revolution.

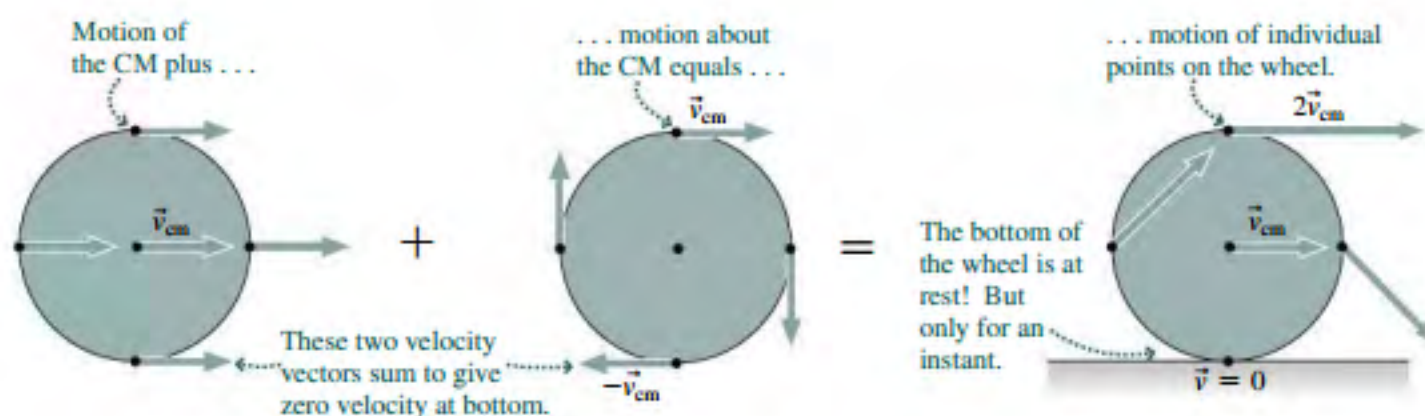


FIGURE 10.23 Motion of a rolling wheel, decomposed into translation of the entire wheel plus rotation about the center of mass.

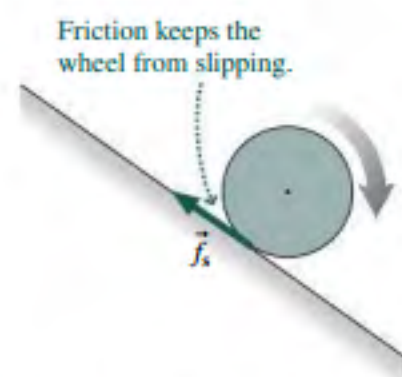


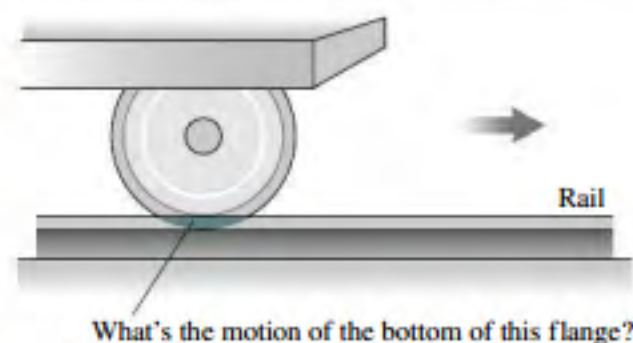
FIGURE 10.24 Rolling down a slope.

Our description of rolling motion leads to a point you may at first find absurd: In a rolling wheel, the point in contact with the ground is, instantaneously, at rest! Figure 10.23 shows how this surprising situation comes about.

Why would an object roll without slipping? The answer is friction. On an icy slope, a wheel just slides down without rolling. Normally, though, the force of static friction keeps it from sliding. Instead, it rolls (Fig. 10.24). Because the contact point is at rest, the frictional force does no work and therefore mechanical energy is conserved. This lets us use the conservation-of-energy principle to analyze rolling objects.

GOT IT?

10.7 The wheels of trains, subway cars, and other rail vehicles include a flange that extends beyond the part of the wheel that rolls on top of the rail, as shown. The flanges keep the train from running off the rails. Consider the bottommost point on the flange: Is it (a) moving in the direction of the train's motion; (b) instantaneously at rest; or (c) moving backward, opposite the train's motion?



EXAMPLE 10.12

Energy Conservation: Rolling Downhill

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A solid ball of mass M and radius R starts from rest and rolls down a hill. Its center of mass drops a total distance h . Find the ball's speed at the bottom of the hill.

INTERPRET This is similar to conservation-of-energy problems from Chapter 7, but now we identify two types of kinetic energy: translational and rotational. The ball starts on the slope with some gravitational potential energy, which ends up as kinetic energy at the bottom. The frictional force that keeps the ball from slipping does no work, so we can apply conservation of mechanical energy.

DEVELOP Figure 10.25 shows the situation, including bar graphs showing the distribution of energy in the ball's initial and final states. We've determined that conservation of mechanical energy holds, so $K_0 + U_0 = K + U$. Here $K_0 = 0$ and, if we take the zero of potential energy at the bottom, then $U_0 = Mgh$ and $U = 0$. Finally, K consists of both translational and rotational kinetic energy as expressed in Equation 10.20, $K_{\text{total}} = \frac{1}{2}Mv^2 + \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$. Our plan is to use this expression in the conservation-of-energy statement and solve for v . It looks like there's an

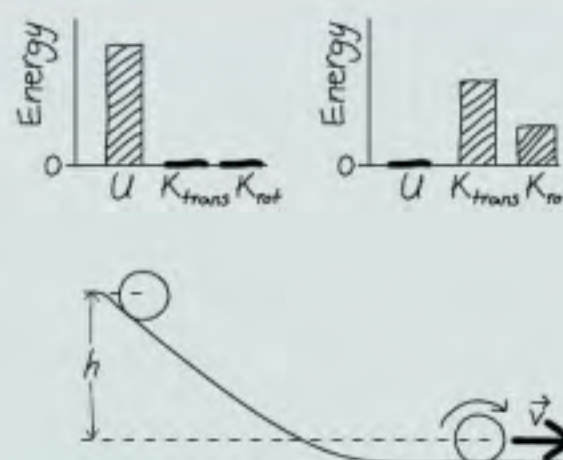


FIGURE 10.25 How fast is the ball moving at the bottom of the hill?

extra variable, ω , that we don't know. But the ball isn't slipping, so Equation 10.21 holds and gives $\omega = v/R$. Then conservation of energy becomes

$$Mgh = \frac{1}{2}Mv^2 + \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2 = \frac{1}{2}Mv^2 + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{2}{5}MR^2\right)\left(\frac{v}{R}\right)^2 = \frac{7}{10}Mv^2$$

where we found the rotational inertia of a solid sphere, $\frac{2}{5}MR^2$, from Table 10.2.

EVALUATE Solving for v gives our answer:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{10}{7}gh}$$

ASSESS This result is less than the speed $v = \sqrt{2gh}$ for an object that slides down a frictionless incline. Make sense? Yes: Some

of the energy the rolling object gains goes into rotation, leaving less for translational motion. As often happens with gravitational problems, mass doesn't matter. Neither does radius: That factor $\frac{7}{10}$ results from the distribution of mass that gives the sphere its particular rotational inertia and would be the same for all spheres regardless of radius or mass.

Example 10.12 shows that the final speed of an object that rolls down an incline depends on the details of its mass distribution. Therefore, objects that look superficially identical may reach the bottom of an incline at different times, if they have different mass distributions. Conceptual Example 10.1 helps you think further about this point. Another difference that can affect the speed of rolling objects is whether they roll as rigid bodies or not. When a can of liquid rolls down a ramp, for instance, the liquid need not spin as fast as the can itself (or it may not even spin at all), and therefore less energy goes into rotation—leaving more for translational motion. You can see an example by viewing the video tutorial “Canned Food Race” accessed from the QR code on page 207. After watching the video, can you see how you might distinguish a hard-boiled egg from a raw one?

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 10.1 A Rolling Race

A solid ball and a hollow ball roll without slipping down a ramp. Which reaches the bottom first?

EVALUATE Example 10.12 shows that when a ball rolls down a slope, some of its potential energy gets converted into rotational kinetic energy—leaving less for translational kinetic energy. As a result, it moves more slowly, and therefore takes more time, than an object that slides without rolling. Here we want to compare two rolling objects—the solid ball treated in Example 10.12 and a hollow one. With its mass concentrated at its surface, far from the rotation axis, the hollow ball has greater rotational inertia. Thus more of its energy goes into rotation, meaning its translational speed is lower, so it reaches the bottom later.

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: Energy is conserved for both balls, but for the hollow ball more of that energy is in rotation and less in translation. As Example 10.12 shows, neither the mass nor the radius of a ball affects its speed; all that matters is its mass distribution and hence its rotational inertia.

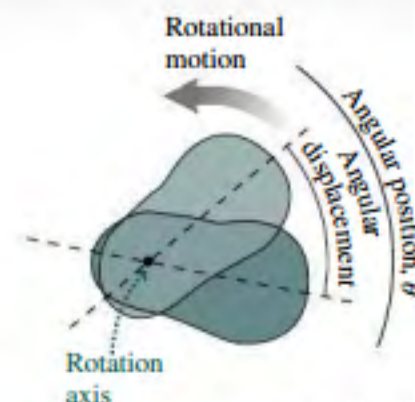
MAKING THE CONNECTION Compare the final speeds of the two balls in this example.

EVALUATE Example 10.12 gives $\sqrt{10gh/7}$ for the speed of the solid ball after it's rolled down a vertical drop h . Substituting the hollow ball's rotational inertia, $I = \frac{2}{3}MR^2$ from Table 10.2, in the calculation of Example 10.12 gives $v = \sqrt{6gh/5}$. So the solid ball is faster by a factor $\sqrt{10/7}/\sqrt{6/5} \approx 1.1$.

Chapter 10 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea of this chapter is rotational motion, quantified as the rate of change of angular position of any point on a rotating object. All the quantities used to describe linear motion have analogs in rotational motion. The analogs of force, mass, and acceleration are, respectively, torque, rotational inertia, and angular acceleration—and together they obey the rotational analog of Newton's second law.



(continued)

Key Concepts and Equations

The defining relations for rotational quantities are analogous to those for linear quantities, as is the statement of Newton’s second law for rotational motion. Key concepts include angular velocity and acceleration, torque, and rotational inertia.

Angular velocity, ω

Time t $t + \Delta t$

$\bar{\omega} = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t}$

Torque, τ

Rotation axis

$\tau = rF \sin\theta$

Rotational inertia, I

Mass closer to axis: lower I

Same mass, farther from axis: greater I

$I = \sum m_i r_i^2 \rightarrow \int r^2 dm$

Discrete masses Continuous matter

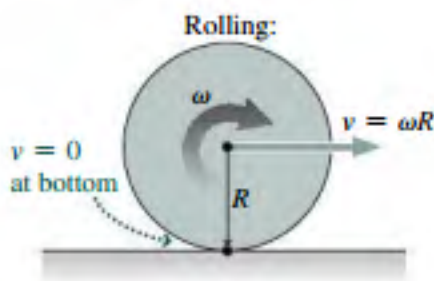
Linear Quantity or Equation	Angular Quantity or Equation	Relation between Linear and Angular Quantities
Position x	Angular position θ	
Speed $v = dx/dt$	Angular speed $\omega = d\theta/dt$	$v = \omega r$
Acceleration a	Angular acceleration α	$a_t = \alpha r$
Mass m	Rotational inertia I	$I = \int r^2 dm$
Force F	Torque τ	$\tau = rF \sin\theta$
Kinetic energy $K_{\text{trans}} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$	Kinetic energy $K_{\text{rot}} = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$	
Newton’s second law (constant mass or rotational inertia):		
$F = ma$	$\tau = I\alpha$	

This table summarizes the analogies between linear and rotational quantities, along with quantitative relations that link rotational and linear quantities. Many of these relations require that angles be measured in radians, and most require explicit specification of a rotation axis.

Applications

Equations for Constant Linear Acceleration	Equations for Constant Angular Acceleration
$\bar{v} = \frac{1}{2}(v_0 + v)$ (2.8)	$\bar{\omega} = \frac{1}{2}(\omega_0 + \omega)$ (10.6)
$v = v_0 + at$ (2.7)	$\omega = \omega_0 + \alpha t$ (10.7)
$x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$ (2.10)	$\theta = \theta_0 + \omega_0 t + \frac{1}{2}\alpha t^2$ (10.8)
$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0)$ (2.11)	$\omega^2 = \omega_0^2 + 2\alpha(\theta - \theta_0)$ (10.9)

Constant angular acceleration: When angular acceleration is constant, equations analogous to those of Chapter 2 apply.



Rolling motion: When an object of radius R rolls without slipping, the point in contact with the ground is instantaneously at rest. In this case the object’s translational and rotational speeds are related by $v = \omega R$. The object’s kinetic energy is shared among translational kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}Mv^2$ and rotational kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$, with the division between these forms dependent on the rotational inertia.

Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 10.1 Identify and calculate rotational analogs of position, velocity, acceleration, force, and mass.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4; Exercises 10.11, 10.12, 10.13, 10.18, 10.19, 10.20, 10.21, 10.22; Problems 10.53, 10.76</i></p> <p>LO 10.2 Solve rotational analogs of one-dimensional constant-acceleration problems.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 10.7, 10.8; Exercises 10.14, 10.15, 10.16, 10.17</i></p> <p>LO 10.3 Calculate rotational inertias by summing or integrating.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 10.9; Exercises 10.23, 10.24, 10.25, 10.26, 10.27, 10.28, 10.29; Problems 10.50, 10.51, 10.52, 10.54, 10.56, 10.59, 10.65, 10.69, 10.71, 10.73, 10.74, 10.78</i></p> | <p>LO 10.4 Apply the rotational analog of Newton's second law.
<i>Exercises 10.27, 10.28, 10.29; Problems 10.45, 10.46, 10.47, 10.48, 10.49, 10.55, 10.58, 10.59</i></p> <p>LO 10.5 Solve problems involving coupled linear and rotational motion.
<i>Problems 10.57, 10.60, 10.66, 10.79</i></p> <p>LO 10.6 Calculate rotational kinetic energy.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 10.5, 10.6, 10.10; Exercises 10.30, 10.31, 10.32, 10.33; Problems 10.63, 10.64, 10.70, 10.72, 10.77</i></p> <p>LO 10.7 Describe quantitatively the behavior of rolling objects.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 10.5, 10.6, 10.10; Exercises 10.34, 10.35, 10.36; Problems 10.61, 10.62, 10.64, 10.67, 10.68</i></p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- Why is a forklift truck with a longer arm capable of loading larger equipment?
- Will a child standing at the rim of a merry-go-round revolving with a constant angular velocity have any tangential acceleration? What will happen if the angular velocity increases uniformly?
- Two forces act on an object, but the net force is zero. Must the net torque be zero? If so, why? If not, give a counterexample.
- Is it possible to apply a counterclockwise torque to an object that's rotating clockwise? If so, how will the object's motion change? If not, why not?
- A solid sphere and a hollow sphere of the same mass and radius are rolling along level ground. If they have the same total kinetic energy, which is moving faster?
- A solid cylinder and a hollow cylinder of the same mass and radius are rolling along level ground at the same speed. Which has more kinetic energy?
- A circular saw takes a long time to stop rotating after the power is turned off. Without the saw blade mounted, the motor stops much more quickly. Why?
- The lower part of a horse's leg contains essentially no muscle.
- BIO** How does this help the horse to run fast? Explain in terms of rotational inertia.
- All the planets in the solar system rotate around the Sun in the same direction. Does our solar system have its own angular velocity?
- A ball starts from rest and rolls without slipping down a slope, then starts up a frictionless slope (Fig. 10.26). Compare its maximum height on the frictionless slope with its starting height on the first slope.

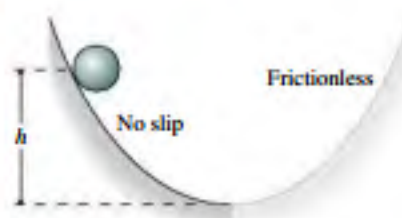


FIGURE 10.26 For Thought and Discussion 10, Problem 64

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 10.1 Angular Velocity and Acceleration

- Determine the angular speed, in rad/s, of (a) Earth about its axis; (b) the minute hand of a clock; (c) the hour hand of a clock; and (d) an eggbeater turning at 300 rpm.
- What's the linear speed of a point (a) on Earth's equator and (b) at your latitude?
- Express each of the following in radians per second: (a) 720 rpm; (b) 50°/h; (c) 1000 rev/s; (d) 1 rev/year (Earth's angular speed in its orbit).
- A 32-cm-diameter circular saw blade spins at 2100 rpm. How fast would you have to push a straight hand saw to have the teeth move through the wood at the same rate as the circular saw teeth?
- A compact disc's rotation varies from about 190 rpm to 480 rpm. If the disc plays for 71 min, what's its average angular acceleration in (a) rpm/s and (b) rad/s²?
- During startup, a power plant's turbine accelerates from rest at 0.60 rad/s². (a) How long does it take to reach its 5400-rpm operating speed? (b) How many revolutions does it make during this time?
- A merry-go-round starts from rest and accelerates with angular acceleration 0.011 rad/s² for 14 s. (a) How many revolutions does it make during this time? (b) What's its average angular speed?

Section 10.2 Torque

- A 540-N frictional force acts on the rim of a 1.0-m-diameter wheel to oppose its rotational motion. Find the torque about the wheel's central axis.
- Conventional rim brakes on a bicycle apply an approximately 1-kN force at the rim of the wheel, some 60 cm in diameter. Disc brakes, which are becoming increasingly popular, apply roughly 4 kN near the outer edge of a 200-mm-diameter disc. Estimate

the torques to determine which braking system exerts the greater torque and by approximately what factor.

20. A car tune-up manual calls for tightening the spark plugs to a torque of $32.0 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$. To achieve this torque, with what force must you pull on the end of a 23.5-cm -long wrench if you pull (a) at a right angle to the wrench shaft and (b) at an angle of 104° to the wrench shaft?
21. A 30-g mouse runs out to the end of the 22-cm -long minute hand of a grandfather clock when the clock reads 10 past the hour. What torque does the mouse's weight exert about the rotation axis of the clock hand?
22. You have your bicycle upside down for repairs. The front wheel is free to rotate and is perfectly balanced except for the 22-g valve stem. If the valve stem is 32 cm from the rotation axis and at 23° below the horizontal, what's the resulting torque about the wheel's axis?

Section 10.3 Rotational Inertia and the Analog of Newton's Law

23. Four equal masses m are located at the corners of a square of side L , connected by essentially massless rods. Find the rotational inertia of this system about an axis (a) that coincides with one side and (b) that bisects two opposite sides.
24. The shaft connecting a power plant's turbine and electric generator is a solid cylinder of mass 6.4 Mg and diameter 91 cm . Find its rotational inertia.
25. The chamber of a rock-tumbling machine is a hollow cylinder with mass 100 g and radius 7.3 cm . The chamber is closed by end caps in the form of uniform circular disks, each of mass 24 g . Find (a) the rotational inertia of the chamber about its central axis and (b) the torque needed to give the chamber an angular acceleration of 3.2 rad/s^2 .
26. A wheel's diameter is 87 cm , and its rotational inertia is $7.1 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. (a) What's the minimum mass it could have? (b) How could it have more mass?
27. (a) Estimate Earth's rotational inertia, assuming it to be a uniform solid sphere. (b) What torque applied to Earth would cause the length of a day to change by 1 second every century?
28. A 102-g Frisbee is 23 cm in diameter and has half its mass spread uniformly in the disk and the other half concentrated in the rim. (a) What's the Frisbee's rotational inertia? (b) With a quarter-turn flick of the wrist, a student sets the Frisbee rotating at 450 rpm . What's the magnitude of the torque, assumed constant, that the student applied?
29. At the MIT Magnet Laboratory, energy is stored in huge solid flywheels of mass $7.7 \times 10^4 \text{ kg}$ and radius 2.4 m . The flywheels ride on shafts 41 cm in diameter. If a frictional force of 34 kN acts tangentially on the shaft, how long will it take the flywheel to come to a stop from its usual 360-rpm rotation rate?

Section 10.4 Rotational Energy

30. A 33-cm -diameter circular saw blade has mass 0.85 kg , distributed uniformly in a disk. (a) What's its rotational kinetic energy at 2500 rpm ? (b) What average power must be applied to bring the blade from rest to 2500 rpm in 3.5 s ?
31. Humankind currently uses energy at the rate of about 18 TW . Suppose we found a way to extract this energy from Earth's rotation. Estimate how long it would take before the length of the day increased by 1 second.
32. A 120-g baseball is pitched at 26 m/s spinning at 45 rad/s . You can treat the baseball as a uniform solid sphere of radius 3.0 cm . What fraction of its kinetic energy is rotational?

33. (a) Find the energy stored in the flywheel of Exercise 29 when it's rotating at 360 rpm . (b) The wheel is attached to an electric generator and the rotation rate drops from 360 rpm to 300 rpm in 3.0 s . What's the average power output?

Section 10.5 Rolling Motion

34. A solid 2.6-kg sphere is rolling at 7.1 m/s . Find (a) its translational kinetic energy and (b) its rotational kinetic energy.
35. What fraction of a solid disk's kinetic energy is rotational if it's rolling without slipping?
36. A rolling ball has total kinetic energy 100 J , 40 J of which is rotational energy. Is the ball solid or hollow?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two worked examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

37. **Example 10.5:** (a) Find the rotational inertia of a meter stick with mass 172 g about a perpendicular axis through its center. Treat the stick as a thin rod. (b) The meter stick's width is 2.54 cm . You can treat the stick more accurately as a flat plate (see Table 10.2). If you do so, by what percentage is your answer to part (a) in error?
38. **Example 10.5:** The rotational inertia of a thin rod of mass M and length L about a perpendicular axis is $ML^2/9$. Where's the axis?
39. **Example 10.5:** NASA's Ames Research Center has a large centrifuge used for astronaut training. The centrifuge consists of a 3880-kg , 18.0-m -long tubular structure, which rotates about its center. Find the centrifuge's rotational inertia when two 105-kg seats are mounted at either end of the tube, 7.92 m from the rotation axis, and both are occupied by 72.6-kg astronauts. Treat the tube as a thin rod and the astronauts and seats as point masses.
40. **Example 10.5:** Repeat the preceding problem, now treating the arm more accurately as a tube with square cross section of side 2.10 m and the astronaut/chair combination as a cube with side 1.85 m with its center at 7.92 m from the rotation axis.
41. **Example 10.12:** A marble rolls down an incline, starting from rest 24.2 cm above the bottom. What's its speed when it reaches the bottom?
42. **Example 10.12:** A marble rolls down an incline, and when it's halfway down it's going at 1.12 m/s . Find (a) its starting height and (b) its speed at the bottom.
43. **Example 10.12:** A 29.5-kg wheel with radius 40.6 cm and rotational inertia $3.58 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$ starts from rest and rolls down a 12.6-m -high incline. (a) Find its speed at the bottom. (b) Is the wheel uniformly solid, or is its mass concentrated at the rim, or is its structure somewhere in between?
44. **Example 10.12:** A wheel with total mass 14.7 kg consists of a solid wooden disk with a thin metal rim bonded to the disk's edge. It starts from rest and rolls down an incline of height 1.00 m . At the bottom it's going at 3.38 m/s . Find the masses of the disk and the rim.

Problems

45. A wheel turns through 3.0 revolutions while accelerating from rest at 17 rpm/s. (a) What's its final angular speed? (b) How long does it take?
46. You're an engineer designing kitchen appliances, and you're working on a two-speed food blender, with 3800 rpm and 2000 rpm settings. Specs call for the blender to make no more than 60 revolutions while it's switching from high to low speed. If it takes 2.0 s to make the transition, does it meet its specs?
47. You rev your car's engine and watch the tachometer climb steadily from 1200 rpm to 5500 rpm in 2.7 s. What are (a) the engine's angular acceleration and (b) the tangential acceleration of a point on the edge of the engine's 3.5-cm-diameter crankshaft? (c) How many revolutions does the engine make during this time?
48. A circular saw spins at 5400 rpm, and its electronic brake is supposed to stop it in less than 2 s. As a quality-control specialist, you're testing saws with a device that counts the number of blade revolutions. A particular saw turns 75 revolutions while stopping. Does it meet its specs?
49. Full-circle rotation is common in mechanical systems, but less evident in biology. Yet many single-celled organisms are propelled by spinning, tail-like *flagella*. The flagellum of the bacterium *E. coli* spins at some 600 rad/s, propelling the bacterium at speeds around 25 $\mu\text{m/s}$. How many revolutions does *E. coli*'s flagellum make as the bacterium crosses a microscope's field of view, which is 150- μm wide?
50. A square frame is made from four thin rods, each of length L and mass m . Calculate its rotational inertia about the three axes shown in Fig. 10.27.

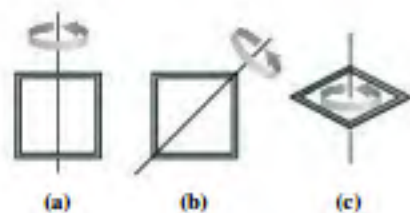


FIGURE 10.27 Problem 50

51. A thick ring has inner radius $\frac{1}{2}R$, outer radius R , and mass M . Find an expression for its rotational inertia. (*Hint*: Consult Example 10.7.)
52. A uniform rectangular flat plate has mass M and dimensions a by b . Use the parallel-axis theorem in conjunction with Table 10.2 to show that its rotational inertia about the side of length b is $\frac{1}{3}Ma^2$.
53. The cellular motor driving the flagellum in *E. coli* (see Problem 49) exerts a typical torque of 420 pN·nm on the flagellum. If this torque results from a force applied tangentially to the outside of the 15-nm-radius flagellum, what's the magnitude of that force?
54. Verify by direct integration Table 10.2's entry for the rotational inertia of a flat plate about a central axis. (*Hint*: Divide the plate into strips parallel to the axis.)
55. You're an astronaut in the first crew of a new space station. The station is shaped like a wheel 18 m in diameter, with essentially all its 9×10^5 -kg mass at the rim. When the crew arrives, it will be set rotating at a rate that requires an object at the rim to have radial acceleration g , thereby simulating Earth's surface gravity. This will be accomplished using two small rockets, each with 140-N thrust, mounted on the station's rim. Your

job is to determine how long to fire the rockets and the number of revolutions the station will make during the firing.

56. (a) Estimate the rotational inertia of a 65-kg ice skater by considering his body to be a cylinder and making reasonable estimates of the appropriate dimensions. Assume he's holding his arms tight to his torso so they don't contribute significantly to his rotational inertia. (b) Then estimate the percentage increase in rotational inertia if he extends his arms fully. As you'll see in Chapter 11, the ability to change rotational inertia is what allows the skater to spin rapidly.
57. A 3.0-kg block rests on a slope and is attached by a string of negligible mass to a solid drum of mass 0.90 kg and radius 4.5 cm, as shown in Fig. 10.28. When released, the block accelerates down the slope at 1.9 m/s². Find the coefficient of friction between block and slope.

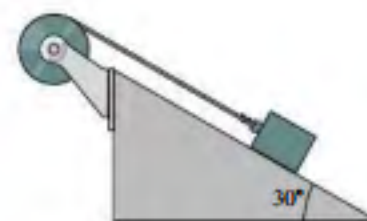


FIGURE 10.28 Problem 57

58. You've got your bicycle upside down for repairs, with its 66-cm-diameter wheel spinning freely at 230 rpm. The wheel's mass is 1.9 kg, concentrated mostly at the rim. You hold a wrench against the tire for 3.1 s, applying a 2.7-N normal force. If the coefficient of friction between wrench and tire is 0.46, what's the final angular speed of the wheel?
59. A potter's wheel is a stone disk 75 cm in diameter with mass 140 kg. If the potter's foot pushes at the outer edge of the initially stationary wheel with a 60-N force for one-eighth of a revolution, what will be the final speed?
60. A ship's anchor weighs 5.0 kN. Its cable passes over a roller of negligible mass and is wound around a hollow cylindrical drum of mass 380 kg and radius 1.1 m, mounted on a frictionless axle. The anchor is released and drops 16 m to the water. Use energy considerations to determine the drum's rotation rate when the anchor hits the water. Neglect the cable's mass.
61. Starting from rest, a hollow ball rolls down a ramp inclined at angle θ to the horizontal. Find an expression for its speed after it's gone a distance d along the incline.
62. A hollow ball rolls along a horizontal surface at 2.5 m/s when it encounters an upward incline. If it rolls without slipping up the incline, what maximum height will it reach?
63. As an automotive engineer, you're charged with improving the fuel economy of your company's vehicles. You realize that the rotational kinetic energy of a car's wheels is a significant factor in fuel consumption, and you set out to lower it. For a typical car, the wheels' rotational energy is 37% of their translational kinetic energy. You propose a redesigned wheel with the same radius but 20% lower rotational inertia and 26% less mass. What do you report for the decrease in the wheel's total kinetic energy at a given speed?
64. A solid ball of mass M and radius R starts at rest at height h above the bottom of the path in Fig. 10.26. It rolls without slipping down the left side. The right side of the path, starting at the bottom, is frictionless. To what height does the ball rise on the right?

65. A disk of radius R has an initial mass M . Then a hole of radius $R/4$ is drilled, with its edge at the disk center (Fig. 10.29). Find the new rotational inertia about the central axis. (Hint: Find the rotational inertia of the missing piece, and subtract it from that of the whole disk. You'll find the parallel-axis theorem helpful.)

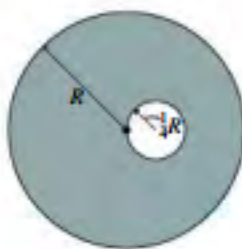


FIGURE 10.29 Problems 65 and 70

66. A 20-kg mass is tied to a massless rope wrapped around a solid cylindrical drum mounted on a frictionless horizontal axle. When the mass is released, it falls with acceleration $a = 5.0 \text{ m/s}^2$. Find (a) the rope tension and (b) the drum's mass.
67. Each wheel of a 300-kg motorcycle is 61 cm in diameter and has rotational inertia $1.5 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. The cycle and its 72-kg rider are coasting at 75 km/h on a flat road when they encounter a hill. If the cycle rolls up the hill with no applied power and no significant internal friction, what vertical height will it reach?
68. A solid marble starts from rest and rolls without slipping on the loop-the-loop track in Fig. 10.30. Find the minimum starting height from which the marble will remain on the track through the loop. Assume the marble's radius is small compared with R —but that doesn't mean you can neglect it altogether!

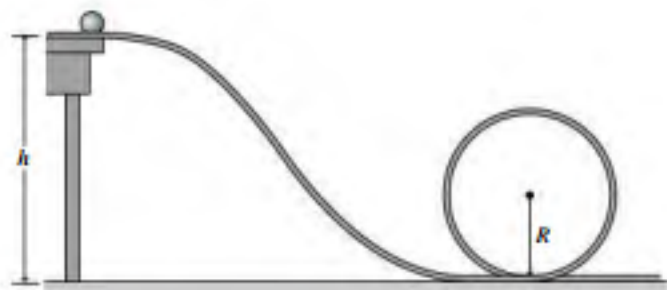


FIGURE 10.30 Problem 68

69. A disk of radius R and thickness w has a mass density that increases from the center outward, given by $\rho = \rho_0 r/R$, where r is the distance from the disk axis. Calculate (a) the disk's total mass M and (b) its rotational inertia about its axis in terms of M and R . Compare with the results for a solid disk of uniform density and for a ring.
70. The disk in Fig. 10.29 is rotating freely about a frictionless horizontal axle. Since the disk is unbalanced, its angular speed varies as it rotates. If the maximum angular speed is ω_{max} , find an expression for the minimum speed. (Hint: How does potential energy change as the wheel rotates?)
71. A solid disk of mass M and radius R has a thickness that's negligible compared with R . Calculate the rotational inertia of this disk about an axis coinciding with a diameter.
72. A lighter car requires less power for a given acceleration. Consider a car of mass M , including its four wheels. You can approximate the wheels, with tires, as solid disks, each of mass m . (a) Derive an expression for power as the rate of change of the total kinetic energy. Your answer should contain M , m , the car's acceleration a , and the car's speed v . Next, consider a car with

total mass 1780 kg, including four 15.8-kg wheels. Suppose you reduce this car's total mass by 10.0 kg. By what percentage does the power requirement decrease if you take this mass off (b) the nonrolling parts of the car or (c) off the wheels?

73. Calculate the rotational inertia of a solid, uniform right circular cone of mass M , height h , and base radius R about its axis.
74. A thick ring of mass M has inner radius R_1 and outer radius R_2 . Show that its rotational inertia is given by $\frac{1}{2}M(R_1^2 + R_2^2)$.
75. In the well and bucket of Example 10.9, suppose you want to turn the crank to lift the bucket with upward acceleration a . Derive an expression for the power you need to apply, as a function of a and the instantaneous speed v of the bucket.
76. The local historical society has asked your assistance in writing the interpretive material for a display featuring an old steam locomotive. You have information on the torque on a flywheel but need to know the force applied by means of an attached horizontal rod. The rod joins the wheel with a flexible connection 86 cm from the wheel's axis. The maximum torque the rod produces on the flywheel is $12.0 \text{ kN}\cdot\text{m}$. What force does the rod apply?
77. You're skeptical about a new hybrid car that stores energy in a flywheel. The manufacturer claims the flywheel stores 12 MJ of energy and can supply 40 kW of power for 5 minutes. You dig deeper and find that the flywheel is a 34-cm-diameter ring with mass 44 kg that rotates at 30,000 rpm. Are the specs correct?
78. Figure 10.31 shows an object of mass M with one axis through its center of mass and a parallel axis through an arbitrary point A . Both axes are perpendicular to the page. The figure shows an arbitrary mass element dm and vectors connecting the center of mass, the point A , and dm . (a) Use the law of cosines (Appendix A) to show that $r^2 = r_{\text{cm}}^2 + h^2 - 2\vec{h} \cdot \vec{r}_{\text{cm}}$. (b) Use this result in $I = \int r^2 dm$ to calculate the object's rotational inertia about the axis through A . Each term in your expression for r^2 leads to a separate integral. Identify one as the rotational inertia about the CM, another as the quantity Mh^2 , and argue that the third is zero. Your result is a statement of the parallel-axis theorem (Equation 10.17).

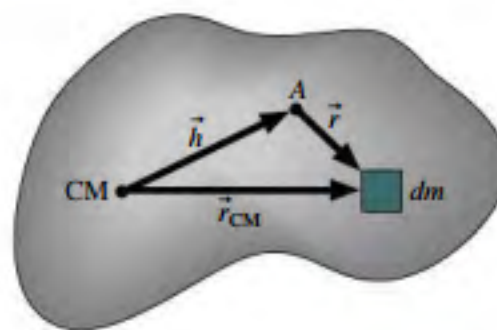


FIGURE 10.31 Problem 78

79. Figure 10.32 shows an apparatus used to measure rotational inertias of various objects, in this case spheres of varying masses M and radii R . The spheres are made of different materials, and some are hollow while others are solid. To perform the experiment, a sphere is mounted to a vertical axle held in a frame with essentially frictionless bearings. A spool of radius $b = 2.50 \text{ cm}$ is also mounted to the axle, and a string is wrapped around the spool. The string runs horizontally over an essentially massless, frictionless pulley and is tied to a mass $m = 77.8 \text{ g}$. As the mass falls, the string imparts a torque to the spool/axle/disk combination, resulting in angular acceleration. The mass of the string

is negligible, but the combination of axle and spool has non-negligible rotational inertia I_0 whose value isn't known in advance. In each experimental run, the mass m is suspended a height $h = 1.00$ m above the floor and the rotating system is initially at rest. The mass is released, and experimenters measure the time to reach the floor. Results are given in the tables below. Determine an appropriate function of the time t which, when plotted against other quantities including M and R , should yield two straight lines—one for the hollow spheres and one for the solid ones. Plot your data, establish best-fit lines, and use the resulting slopes to verify the numerical factors $2/5$ and $2/3$ in the expressions for the rotational inertias of spheres given in Table 10.2. You should also find a value for the rotational inertia of the axle and drum together.

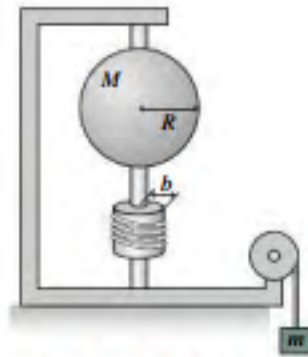


FIGURE 10.32 Problem 79

Sphere mass M (g)	783	432	286	677	347
Sphere radius R (cm)	6.25	3.86	9.34	9.42	9.12
Fall time t (s)	2.36	1.22	2.72	3.24	2.91

Sphere mass M (g)	947	189	821	544	417
Sphere radius R (cm)	6.71	5.45	6.55	4.67	9.98
Fall time t (s)	2.75	1.41	2.51	1.93	3.47

Passage Problems

Centrifuges are widely used in biology and medicine to separate cells and other particles from liquid suspensions. Figure 10.33 shows top and side views of two centrifuge designs. In both designs, the round holes are for tubes holding samples to be separated; the side views show two tubes in place. The total mass and radius of the rotating structure are the same for both, the sample-hole tubes are at the same radius, and the sample tubes are identical.

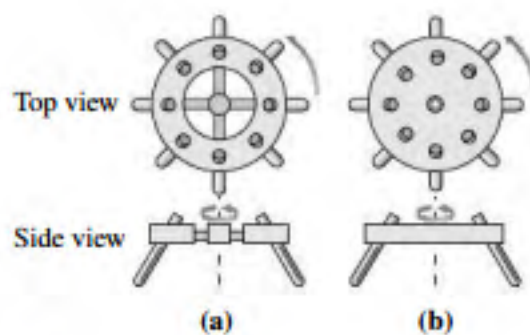


FIGURE 10.33 Two centrifuge designs, shown from the top and the side (Passage Problems 80–84).

80. Which design has greater rotational inertia?
 - a. design A
 - b. design B
 - c. Both have the same rotational inertia.
81. If both centrifuges are made thicker in the vertical direction, without changing their masses or mass distribution, their rotational inertias will
 - a. remain the same.
 - b. increase.
 - c. decrease.
82. If the sample tubes are made longer, the rotational inertia of the centrifuges with sample tubes inserted will
 - a. remain the same.
 - b. increase.
 - c. decrease.
83. While the centrifuges are spinning, the net force on samples in the tubes is
 - a. outward.
 - b. inward.
 - c. zero.
84. If a centrifuge's radius and mass are both doubled without otherwise changing the design, its rotational inertia will
 - a. double.
 - b. quadruple.
 - c. increase by a factor of 8.
 - d. increase by a factor of 16.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The blade mass should be concentrated toward the rotation axis, thus lowering the turbine's rotational inertia—the rotational analog of mass.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 10.1 (c) The linear speed v increases linearly with time, and the radial acceleration increases as v^2 . Tangential acceleration is constant because it's proportional to angular acceleration, which we're told is constant.
- 10.2 (1) $10.5b$; (2) $10.5a$.
- 10.3 (1) (b) rotational inertia with axis at the center, $(mL^2/2)$; (2) (a) rotational inertia with the axis at the end, (mL^2)
- 10.4 The mass of the shell is farther from the rotation axis.
- 10.5 (a) There must be a net torque acting to increase the pulley's clockwise angular velocity. The difference in the two tension forces provides that torque.
- 10.6 (b) because the wheel's rotational kinetic energy, and hence the work required, increases as the square of its rotational speed.
- 10.7 (c)

Rotational Vectors and Angular Momentum

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 11.1 Identify rotational quantities as vectors and determine their directions.
- LO 11.2 Calculate vector cross products.
- LO 11.3 Determine the angular momentum of a system.
- LO 11.4 Solve problems involving conservation of angular momentum.
- LO 11.5 Explain precession and determine its direction.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Rotational analogs of one-dimensional position, velocity, and acceleration (Section 10.1)
- Rotational analogs of force, mass, and Newton's second law (Sections 10.2–10.3)
- Rotational energy (Section 10.4)

Summer, fall, winter, spring: The cycle of the seasons is ultimately determined by the vector direction of Earth's angular velocity. The changing angular velocity of protons in living tissue produces MRI images that give physicians a noninvasive look inside the human body. Rising and rotating, moist, heated air forms itself into the ominous funnel of a tornado. You ride your bicycle, the rotating wheels helping stabilize what seems a precarious balance. These examples all involve rotational motion in which not only the magnitude but also the *direction* matters. They're best understood in terms of the rotational analog of Newton's law, which we introduce here in full vector form involving a rotational analog of momentum. The transition from Chapter 10 to Chapter 11 is analogous to the leap from Chapter 2's one-dimensional description of motion to the full vector description in Chapter 3. Here, as there, we'll find a new richness of phenomena involving motion.

11.1 Angular Velocity and Acceleration Vectors

LO 11.1 Identify rotational quantities as vectors and determine their directions.

So far we've ascribed direction to rotational motion using the terms *clockwise* and *counterclockwise*. But that's not enough: To describe rotational motion fully we need to specify the direction of the rotation axis. We therefore define **angular velocity** $\vec{\omega}$ as a vector whose magnitude is the angular speed ω and whose direction is parallel to the rotation axis. There's an ambiguity in this definition, since there are two possible directions parallel to the axis. We resolve the ambiguity with the **right-hand rule**: If you curl the fingers of your right hand to follow the rotation, then your right thumb points in the direction of the angular velocity (Fig. 11.1). This refinement means that $\vec{\omega}$ not only gives the angular speed and the direction of the rotation axis but also distinguishes what we would have described previously as clockwise or counterclockwise rotation.



Earth isn't quite round. How does this affect its rotation axis, and what's this got to do with ice ages? (The deviation from roundness is exaggerated in this photo.)

By analogy with the linear acceleration vector, we define angular acceleration as the rate of change of the angular velocity vector:

The angular acceleration vector $\vec{\alpha}$... is the rate of change of the angular velocity $\vec{\omega}$.

$$\vec{\alpha} = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta \vec{\omega}}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\vec{\omega}}{dt} \quad (\text{angular acceleration vector}) \quad (11.1)$$

where, as with Equation 10.4, we get the average angular acceleration if we don't take the limit.

Equation 11.1 says that angular acceleration points in the direction of the *change* in angular velocity. If that change is only in magnitude, then $\vec{\omega}$ simply grows or shrinks, and $\vec{\alpha}$ is parallel or antiparallel to the rotation axis (Fig. 11.2a, b). But a change in *direction* is also a change in angular velocity. When the angular velocity $\vec{\omega}$ changes only in direction, then the angular acceleration vector is perpendicular to $\vec{\omega}$ (Fig. 11.2c). More generally, both the magnitude and direction of $\vec{\omega}$ may change; then $\vec{\alpha}$ is neither parallel nor perpendicular to $\vec{\omega}$. These cases are exactly analogous to the situations we treated in Chapter 3, where acceleration parallel to velocity changes only the speed, while acceleration perpendicular to velocity changes only the direction of motion.

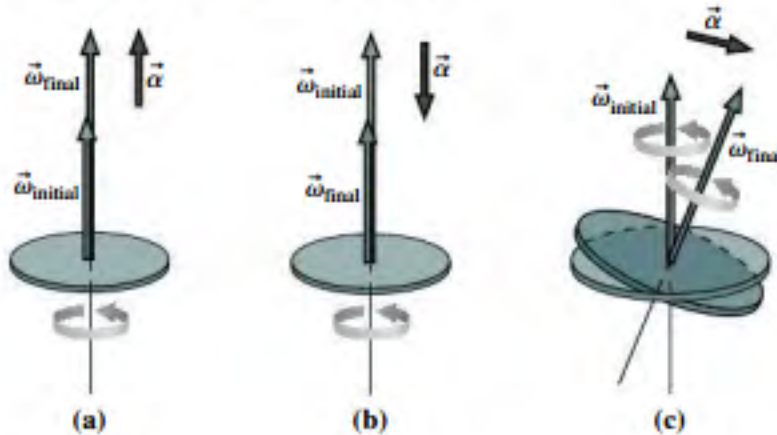


FIGURE 11.2 Angular acceleration can (a) increase or (b) decrease the magnitude of the angular velocity, or (c) change its direction.



FIGURE 11.1 The right-hand rule gives the direction of the angular velocity vector.

GOT IT?

11.1 You're standing on the sidewalk watching a car go by on the adjacent road, moving from left to right. The direction of the angular velocities of the car's wheels is (a) toward the sidewalk; (b) in the direction of the car's forward motion; (c) toward the back of the car; (d) vertically upward; (e) away from the sidewalk; (f) different for each of the four wheels.

11.2 Torque and the Vector Cross Product

LO 11.2 Calculate vector cross products.

Figure 11.3 shows a wheel, initially stationary, with a force applied at its rim. The torque associated with this force sets the wheel rotating in the direction shown; applying the right-hand rule, we see that angular velocity vector $\vec{\omega}$ points upward. Since the angular speed is increasing, the angular acceleration $\vec{\alpha}$ also points upward. So that our rotational analog of Newton's law—angular acceleration proportional to torque—will hold for directions as well as magnitudes, we'd like the torque to have an upward direction, too.

We already know the magnitude of the torque: From Equation 10.10, it's $\tau = rF \sin \theta$, where θ is the angle between the vectors $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$ in Fig. 11.3. We define the direction of the torque as being perpendicular to both $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$, as given by the right-hand rule shown in Fig. 11.4. You can verify that this rule gives an upward direction for the torque in Fig. 11.3.

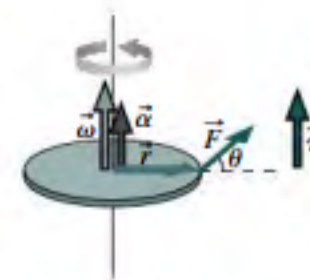


FIGURE 11.3 The torque vector is perpendicular to $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$ and in the same direction as the angular acceleration. Here $\vec{F}$ lies in the plane of the disk.

The Cross Product

The magnitude of the torque, $\tau = rF \sin \theta$, is determined by the magnitudes of the vectors $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$ and the angle between them; the direction of the torque is determined by the

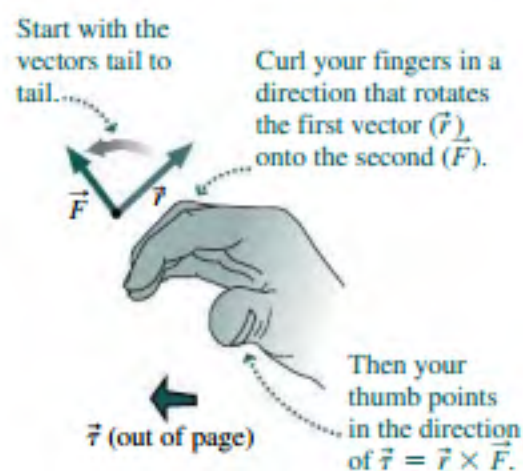


FIGURE 11.4 The right-hand rule for the direction of torque.

vectors $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$ through the right-hand rule. This operation—forming from two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ a third vector $\vec{C}$ of magnitude $C = AB \sin \theta$ and direction given by the right-hand rule—occurs frequently in physics and is called the **cross product**:

The cross product $\vec{C}$ of two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ is written

$$\vec{C} = \vec{A} \times \vec{B}$$

and is a vector with magnitude $AB \sin \theta$, where θ is the angle between $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$, and where the direction of $\vec{C}$ is given by the right-hand rule of Fig. 11.4.

Torque is an instance of the cross product, and we can write the torque vector simply as

$$\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F} \quad (\text{torque vector}) \quad (11.2)$$

Torque is a vector quantity...
...given by the cross product of vectors $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$.

$\vec{r}$ is a vector from an arbitrary point to the point where the force is applied.
 $\vec{F}$ is the force that produces the torque.

Both direction and magnitude are described succinctly in this equation.

Tactics 11.1 MULTIPLYING VECTORS

The cross product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ is the second way of multiplying vectors that you've encountered. The first was the scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB \cos \theta$ introduced in Chapter 6 and also called the dot product. Both depend on the product of the vector magnitudes and on the angle between them. But where the dot product depends on the *cosine* of the angle and is therefore maximum when the two vectors are parallel, the cross product depends on the *sine* and is therefore maximum for perpendicular vectors. There's another crucial distinction between dot product and cross product: The dot product is a *scalar*—a single number, with no direction—while the cross product is a *vector*. That's why $AB \cos \theta$ completely specifies the dot product, but $AB \sin \theta$ gives only the magnitude of the cross product; it's also necessary to specify the direction via the right-hand rule.

The cross product obeys the usual distributive rule: $\vec{A} \times (\vec{B} + \vec{C}) = \vec{A} \times \vec{B} + \vec{A} \times \vec{C}$, but it's *not* commutative; in fact, as you can see by rotating $\vec{F}$ onto $\vec{r}$ instead of $\vec{r}$ onto $\vec{F}$ in Fig. 11.4, $\vec{B} \times \vec{A} = -\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$.

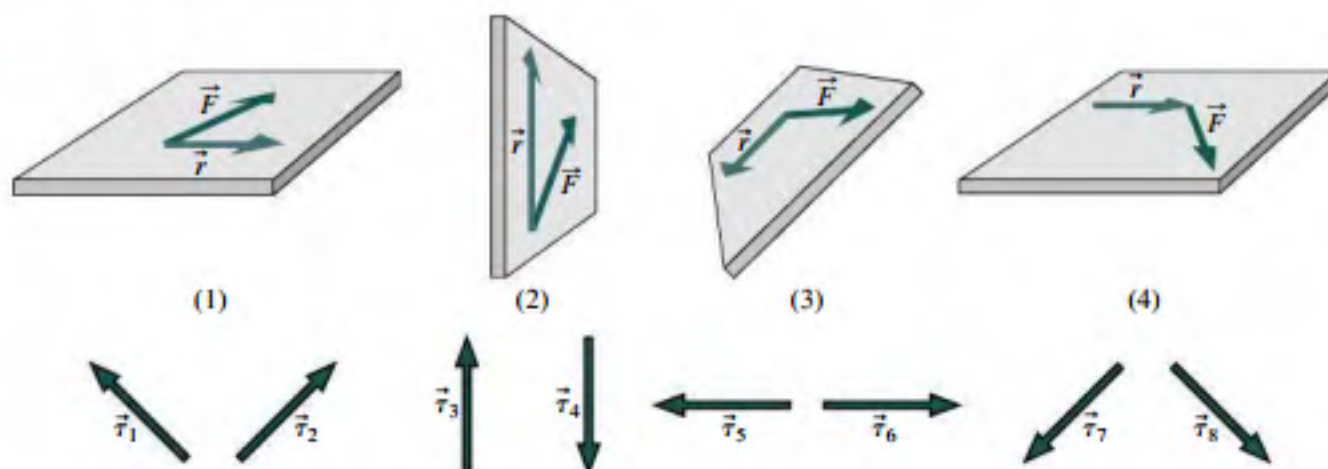
With the vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ in component form, we developed Equation 6.4 to express the dot product in terms of components, as you can show in Problem 51:

$$\vec{A} \times \vec{B} = (A_y B_z - A_z B_y)\hat{i} + (A_z B_x - A_x B_z)\hat{j} + (A_x B_y - A_y B_x)\hat{k}$$

This expression is more complicated than Equation 6.4 for the dot product because the cross product is a vector, and also because that vector is perpendicular to both $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$.

GOT IT?

11.2 The figure shows four pairs of force and radius vectors and eight torque vectors. Which numbered torque vector goes with each pair of force–radius vectors? Consider only direction, not magnitude.



11.3 Angular Momentum

LO 11.3 Determine the angular momentum of a system.

We first used Newton's law in the form $\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$, but later found the momentum form $\vec{F} = d\vec{p}/dt$ especially powerful. The same is true in rotational motion: To explore fully some surprising aspects of rotational dynamics, we need to define angular momentum and develop a relation between its rate of change and the applied torque. Once we've done that, we'll be able to answer questions like why a gyroscope doesn't fall over and how spinning protons yield MRI images of your body's innards.

Like other rotational quantities, angular momentum is always specified with respect to a given point or axis. We begin with the **angular momentum** $\vec{L}$ of a single particle:

If a particle with linear momentum $\vec{p}$ is at position $\vec{r}$ with respect to some point, then its angular momentum $\vec{L}$ about that point is defined as

$$\vec{L} = \vec{r} \times \vec{p} \quad (\text{angular momentum}) \quad (11.3)$$

$\vec{L}$ is the angular momentum vector for a single particle.

It's given by the cross product of vectors $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{p}$.

$\vec{r}$ is the particle's position relative to an arbitrary point or axis.

$\vec{p}$ is the particle's linear momentum $m\vec{v}$.

EXAMPLE 11.1

Calculating Angular Momentum: A Single Particle

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A particle of mass m moves counterclockwise at speed v around a circle of radius r in the x - y plane. Find its angular momentum about the center of the circle, and express the answer in terms of its angular velocity.

INTERPRET We're given the motion of a particle—namely, uniform motion in a circle—and asked to find the corresponding angular momentum and its relation to angular velocity.

DEVELOP Figure 11.5 is our sketch, showing the particle in its circular path. We added an xyz coordinate system with the circular path in the x - y plane. Equation 11.3, $\vec{L} = \vec{r} \times \vec{p}$, gives the angular momentum in terms of the position vector $\vec{r}$ and the linear momentum $\vec{p}$. We know that linear momentum is the product $m\vec{v}$, so we have everything we need to apply Equation 11.3. We'll then express our result in terms of angular velocity using $v = \omega r$.

EVALUATE Figure 11.5 shows that the linear momentum $m\vec{v}$ is perpendicular to $\vec{r}$, so $\sin \theta = 1$ in the cross product, and the magnitude of the angular momentum becomes $L = mvr$. Applying the right-hand rule shows that $\vec{L}$ points in the z -direction, so we can write $\vec{L} = mvr\hat{k}$. But $v = \omega r$, and the right-hand rule shows that $\vec{\omega}$, too, points in the z -direction. So we can write

$$\vec{L} = mvr\hat{k} = mr^2\omega\hat{k} = mr^2\vec{\omega}$$

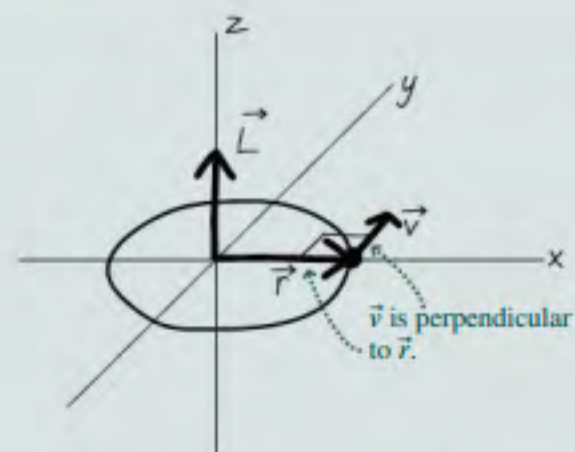


FIGURE 11.5 Finding the angular momentum $\vec{L}$ of a particle moving in a circle.

ASSESS Make sense? The faster the particle is going, the more linear momentum it has. But angular momentum depends on linear momentum and distance from the rotation axis, so at a given angular speed, the angular momentum scales as the *square* of the radius.

Angular momentum is the rotational analog of linear momentum $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$. Since rotational inertia I is the analog of mass m , and angular velocity $\vec{\omega}$ is the analog of linear velocity $\vec{v}$, you might expect that we could write

$$\vec{L} = I\vec{\omega} \quad (11.4)$$

The rotational inertia of a single particle is mr^2 , so you can see that the result of Example 11.1 can indeed be written $\vec{L} = I\vec{\omega}$. Equation 11.4 also holds for symmetric objects like a wheel or sphere rotating about a fixed axis. But in more complicated cases, Equation 11.4 may not hold; surprisingly, $\vec{L}$ and $\vec{\omega}$ can even have different directions. We'll leave such cases for more advanced courses.

We emphasize again that angular momentum isn't absolute, but—as with other rotational quantities—it depends on your choice of rotation axis. If that arbitrariness bothers you, note that there's an analogous arbitrariness to linear momentum. If an object has velocity $\vec{v}$ with respect to you, then it's got linear momentum $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$ —but only as measured by you or others at rest with respect to you. Jump into another reference frame, where the object is moving with some other velocity $\vec{v}'$, and now its momentum has the different value $m\vec{v}'$ —which might even be zero if you're at rest with respect to the object. No problem; you just have to know what reference frame you're working in. Analogously, with angular momentum, you have to know what rotation axis or point you're considering as you calculate $\vec{L}$.

Torque and Angular Momentum

We're now ready to develop the full vector analog of Newton's law in the form $\vec{F} = d\vec{P}/dt$. Recall that $\vec{F}$ here is the *net* external force on a system, and $\vec{P}$ is the system's momentum—the vector sum of the momenta of its constituent particles. Can we write, by analogy, $\vec{\tau} = d\vec{L}/dt$? To see that we can, we write the angular momentum of a system as the sum of the angular momenta of its constituent particles:

$$\vec{L} = \sum \vec{L}_i = \sum (\vec{r}_i \times \vec{p}_i)$$

where the subscript i refers to the i th particle. Differentiating gives

$$\frac{d\vec{L}}{dt} = \sum \left(\vec{r}_i \times \frac{d\vec{p}_i}{dt} + \frac{d\vec{r}_i}{dt} \times \vec{p}_i \right)$$

where we've applied the product rule for differentiation, being careful to preserve the order of the cross product since it's not commutative. But $d\vec{r}_i/dt$ is the velocity of the i th particle, so the second term in the sum is the cross product of velocity $\vec{v}$ and momentum $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$. Since these two vectors are parallel, their cross product is zero, and we're left with only the first term in the sum:

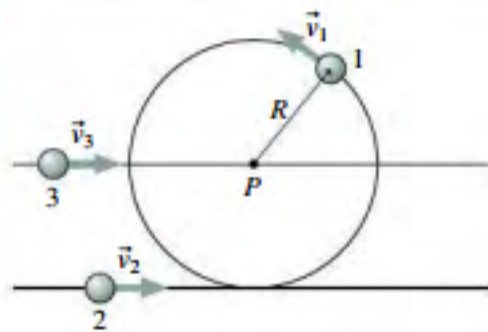
$$\frac{d\vec{L}}{dt} = \sum \left(\vec{r}_i \times \frac{d\vec{p}_i}{dt} \right) = \sum (\vec{r}_i \times \vec{F}_i)$$

where we've used Newton's law to write $d\vec{p}_i/dt = \vec{F}_i$. But $\vec{r}_i \times \vec{F}_i$ is the torque $\vec{\tau}_i$ on the i th particle, so

$$\frac{d\vec{L}}{dt} = \sum \vec{\tau}_i$$

The sum here includes both external and internal torques—the latter due to interactions among the particles of the system. Newton's third law assures us that internal *forces* cancel in pairs, but what about *torques*? They'll cancel, too, provided the internal forces act along lines joining pairs of particles. This condition is stronger than Newton's third law alone,

GOT IT?



11.3 The figure shows three particles with the same mass m , all moving with the same constant speed v . Particle (1) moves in a circle of radius R about the point P , particle (2) in a straight line whose closest approach to point P is the same as the circle's radius R , and particle (3) in a straight line that passes through P . Which of these statements correctly describes the magnitudes of the particles' angular momenta?

- (a) $L_1 = L_2 = L_3 \neq 0$; (c) $L_1 > L_2 > L_3 = 0$;
 (b) $L_1 > 0, L_2 = L_3 = 0$; (d) $L_2 = L_1 \neq 0, L_3 = 0$

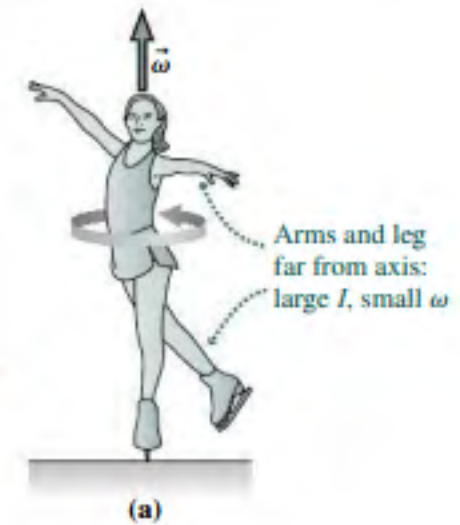
and it usually but not always holds. When it does, the sum of torques reduces to the net *external* torque, and we have

$d\vec{L}/dt$ is the rate of change of a system's angular momentum. It's analogous to the rate of change of linear momentum, $d\vec{p}/dt$.

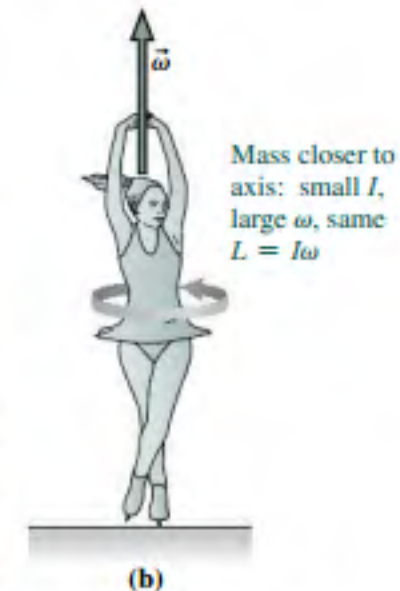
$\vec{\tau}$ is the net external torque applied to the system. It's analogous to the net external force $\vec{F}$.

$$\frac{d\vec{L}}{dt} = \vec{\tau} \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{rotational analog,} \\ \text{Newton's second law} \end{array} \right)$$

where $\vec{\tau}$ is the net external torque. Thus our analogy between linear and rotational motion holds for momentum as well as for the other quantities we've discussed.



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 11.6 As the skater's rotational inertia decreases, her angular speed increases to conserve angular momentum.

11.4 Conservation of Angular Momentum

LO 11.4 Solve problems involving conservation of angular momentum.

When there's no external torque on a system, Equation 11.5 tells us that angular momentum is constant. This statement—that the angular momentum of an isolated system cannot change—is of fundamental importance in physics, and applies to systems ranging from subatomic particles to galaxies. Because a composite system can change its configuration—and hence its rotational inertia I —conservation of angular momentum requires that angular speed increase if I decreases, and vice versa. The classic example is a figure skater who starts spinning relatively slowly with arms and leg extended and then pulls in her limbs to spin rapidly (Fig. 11.6). A more dramatic example is the collapse of a star at the end of its lifetime, explored in the next example.

EXAMPLE 11.2

Conservation of Angular Momentum: Pulsars Worked Example with Variation Problems

A star rotates once every 45 days. At the end of its life, it undergoes a supernova explosion, hurling much of its mass into the interstellar medium. But the inner core of the star, whose radius is initially 20 Mm, collapses into a neutron star only 6 km in radius. As it rotates, the neutron star emits regular pulses of radio waves, making it a *pulsar*. Calculate the rotation rate, which is the same as the pulse rate that radio astronomers detect. Consider the core to be a uniform sphere, and assume that no external torques act during the collapse.

INTERPRET Here we're given the radius and rotation rate of the stellar core before collapse and asked for the rotation rate afterward. That

kind of “before and after” question often calls for the application of a conservation law. In this case there's no external torque, so it's angular momentum that's conserved.

DEVELOP The magnitude of the angular momentum is $I\omega$, so our plan is to write this expression before and after collapse, and then equate the two to find the new rotation rate: $I_1\omega_1 = I_2\omega_2$. We need to use Table 10.2's expression for the rotational inertia of a solid sphere: $I = \frac{2}{5}MR^2$.

EVALUATE Given I , our statement of angular momentum conservation becomes $\frac{2}{5}MR_1^2\omega_1 = \frac{2}{5}MR_2^2\omega_2$, or

(continued)

$$\omega_2 = \omega_1 \left(\frac{R_1}{R_2} \right)^2 = \left(\frac{1 \text{ rev}}{45 \text{ day}} \right) \left(\frac{2 \times 10^7 \text{ m}}{6 \times 10^3 \text{ m}} \right)^2 = 2.5 \times 10^5 \text{ rev/day}$$

ASSESS Our answer is huge, about 3 revolutions per second. But that makes sense. This neutron star is a fantastic thing—an object with

more mass than the entire Sun, crammed into a diameter of about 8 miles. It's because of that dramatic reduction in radius—and thus in rotational inertia—that the pulsar's rotation rate is so high. Note that in a case like this, where ω appears on both sides of the equation, it isn't necessary to convert to radian measure.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 11.1 On the Playground

A merry-go-round is rotating freely when a boy runs radially inward, straight toward the merry-go-round's center, and leaps on. Later, a girl runs tangent to the merry-go-round's edge, in the same direction the edge is moving, and also leaps on. Does the merry-go-round's angular speed increase, decrease, or stay the same in each case?

EVALUATE Because the merry-go-round is rotating freely, the only torques are those exerted by the children as they leap on. If we consider a system consisting of the merry-go-round and both children, then those torques are internal, and the system's angular momentum is conserved. In Fig. 11.7 we've sketched the situation, before either child leaps onto the merry-go-round and after both are on board.

The boy, running radially, carries no angular momentum (his linear momentum and the radius vector are in the same direction, making $\vec{L}$ zero), so you might think he doesn't change the merry-go-round's angular speed. Yet he does, because he adds mass and therefore rotational inertia. At the same time, he doesn't change the angular momentum, so with I increased, ω must therefore drop.

Running in the same direction as the merry-go-round's tangential velocity, the girl adds angular momentum to the system—an addition that would tend to increase the angular speed. But she also adds mass, and thus increases the rotational inertia—which, as in the boy's case, tends to decrease angular speed. So which wins out? That depends on her speed. Without knowing that, we can't tell whether the merry-go-round speeds up or slows down.

ASSESS The angular momentum the girl adds is the product of her linear momentum mv and the merry-go-round's radius R , while she increases the rotational inertia by mR^2 . With small m and large v , she could add a lot of angular momentum without increasing the rotational inertia significantly. That would increase the merry-go-round's rotation rate. But with a large m and small v —giving the same additional angular momentum—the increase in rotational inertia would more than offset the angular momentum added, and the merry-go-round would slow down. We can't answer the question about the merry-go-round's angular speed without knowing the numbers. “Making the Connection,” right column, solves this example for a particular set of values, and you can explore a similar situation more generally in Problem 55.

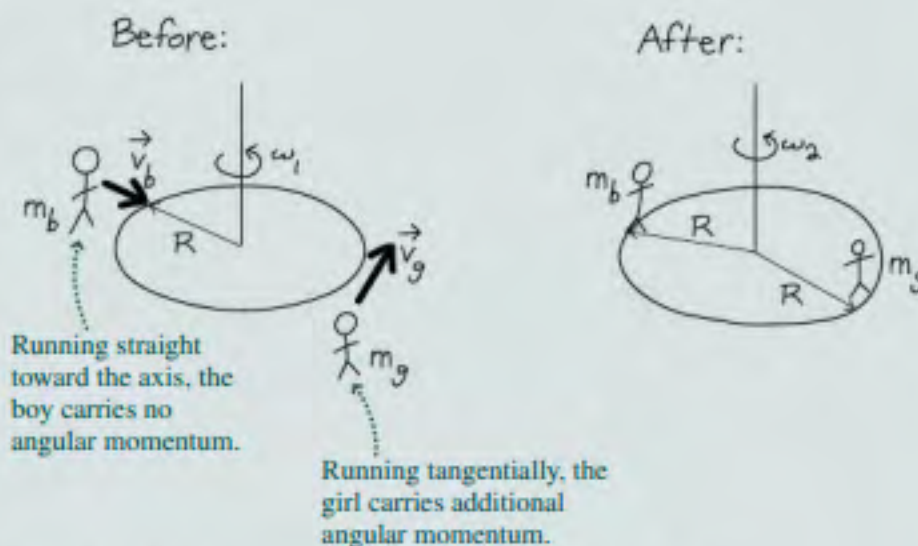


FIGURE 11.7 Our diagrams for Conceptual Example 11.1.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Take the merry-go-round's radius to be $R = 1.3 \text{ m}$, its rotational inertia $I = 240 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$, and its initial angular speed $\omega_{\text{initial}} = 11 \text{ rpm}$. The boy's and girl's masses are, respectively, 28 kg and 32 kg , and they run, respectively, at 2.5 m/s and 3.7 m/s . Find the merry-go-round's angular speed ω_{final} after both children are on board.

EVALUATE Following the conceptual example, take the system to include the merry-go-round and the two children. Before the children leap on, both the merry-go-round itself and the girl carry angular momentum; afterward, with children and merry-go-round rotating with a common angular speed, they all do. Thus conservation of angular momentum reads

$$I\omega_{\text{initial}} + m_g v_g R = I\omega_{\text{final}} + m_b R^2 \omega_{\text{final}} + m_g R^2 \omega_{\text{final}}$$

Solving with the given numbers yields $\omega_{\text{final}} = 12 \text{ rpm}$. That's not much change, so the girl's effect must have been a speed increase, but only a little more than enough to overcome the boy's slowing effect. Note that the boy's speed didn't matter, since it didn't contribute to angular momentum or rotational inertia. And be careful with units: You've got to express all angular momenta in the same units. That means converting angular speeds to radians per second or expressing the girl's angular momentum $m_g v_g R$ in unusual units, $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{rpm}$.

TIP

ANGULAR MOMENTUM IN STRAIGHT-LINE MOTION You don't have to be rotating to have angular momentum. The girl in Conceptual Example 11.1 was running in a straight line, yet she had nonzero angular momentum with respect to the merry-go-round's rotation axis. Problem 40 explores this point further.

In a popular demonstration, a student stands on a stationary turntable holding a wheel rotating about a vertical axis. The student flips the wheel upside down, and the turntable starts rotating. Figure 11.8 shows how angular momentum conservation explains this behavior. Once again, though, mechanical energy isn't conserved. In this case the student does work, exerting forces that result in torques on her body and the turntable. The end result is a greater rotational kinetic energy than was initially present.

GOT IT?

11.4 You step onto an initially nonrotating turntable like the one in Fig. 11.8, holding a nonrotating wheel with its axis vertical. You're careful not to exert any torques so that the turntable remains stationary as you step on. (1) If you then spin the wheel counterclockwise as viewed from above, will you and the turntable rotate (a) clockwise or (b) counterclockwise? (2) If you now turn the spinning wheel upside down, will your rotation rate (a) increase, (b) decrease, or (c) remain the same? (3) As you turn the wheel upside down, will the direction of rotation (a) remain unchanged or (b) reverse?

11.5 Gyroscopes and Precession

LO 11.5 Explain precession and determine its direction.

Angular momentum—a vector quantity with direction as well as magnitude—is conserved in the absence of external torques. For symmetric objects, angular momentum has the same direction as the rotation axis, so the axis can't change direction unless an external torque acts. This is the principle behind the gyroscope—a spinning object whose rotation axis remains fixed in space. The faster a gyroscope spins, the larger its angular momentum and thus the harder it is to change its orientation. Gyroscopes are widely used for navigation, where their direction-holding capability provides an alternative to the magnetic compass. More sophisticated gyroscope systems guide missiles and submarines and stabilize ships in heavy seas. Space telescopes start and stop gyroscopic wheels oriented along three perpendicular axes; to conserve angular momentum, the entire telescope reorients itself to point toward a desired astronomical object. This approach avoids rocket exhaust that would foul the telescope's superb viewing and ensures that there's no fuel to run out. Instead, solar-generated electricity operates the wheels' drive motors.

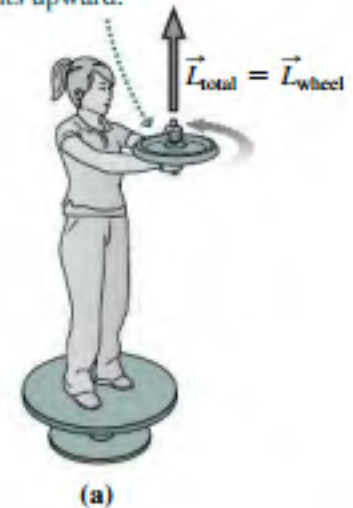
If you have a modern smartphone, it, too, contains gyroscopes. They're used to determine the phone's orientation in space; among other uses, they tell the phone how to orient its display. You can even get applications that access data from these gyroscopes directly (Fig. 11.9a). Smartphone gyroscopes are microelectromechanical systems (MEMS) devices, and they're based on vibrating rather than rotating structures (Fig. 11.9b). Similar MEMS gyroscopes are used in computer mice and video game consoles, and MEMS gyros stabilize the Segway Human Transporter.

Precession

If an object does experience a net external torque, then, according to the rotational analog of Newton's law (Equation 11.5, $d\vec{L}/dt = \vec{\tau}$), its angular momentum must change. For rapidly rotating objects, the result is the surprising phenomenon of **precession**—a continual change in the direction of the rotation axis, which traces out a circle. You may have seen a toy gyroscope or top precess instead of simply falling over as you might expect.

Figure 11.10 shows why precession occurs. Here a spinning gyroscope is tilted, so there's a gravitational torque acting on it. Yet it doesn't fall over. Why not? Apply the right-hand rule to the vector $\vec{r}$ and the gravitational force vector $\vec{F}_g$ shown in the figure, and you'll see that the torque $\vec{\tau}$ points into the page. So, by $\vec{\tau} = d\vec{L}/dt$, that must also be the direction of the *change* in the angular momentum $\vec{L}$. And that's just what's happening: The *change* $\Delta\vec{L}$ in the angular momentum vector is indeed into the page. So the

The student stands on a stationary turntable holding a wheel that spins counterclockwise; the wheel's angular momentum points upward.



She flips the spinning wheel, reversing its angular momentum. The total angular momentum is conserved, so turntable and student (ts) must rotate the other way.

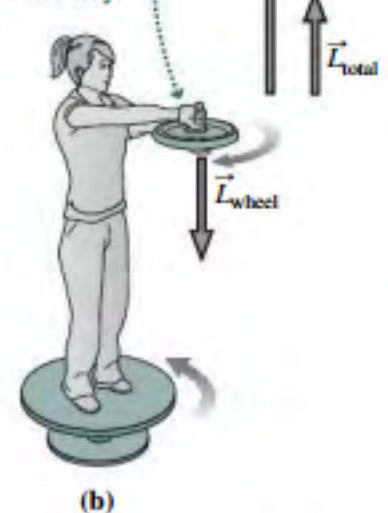


FIGURE 11.8 A demonstration of angular momentum conservation.

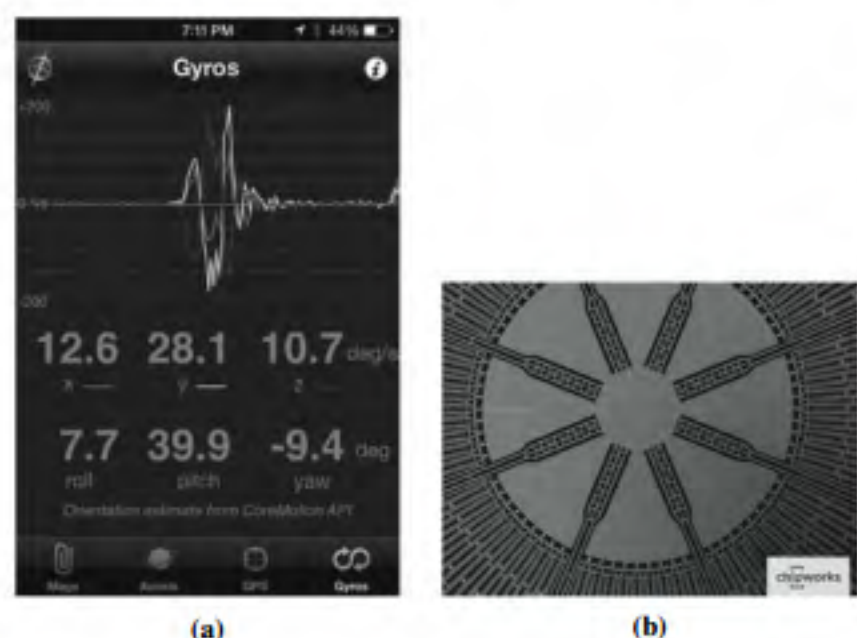


FIGURE 11.9 (a) Smartphone displaying data from its internal gyroscopes, indicating the phone's orientation and its rate of change. Graph at top shows that the phone was recently reoriented. (b) Micro photo of a MEMS gyro like those used in smartphones. The entire structure is only about 0.5 mm across.

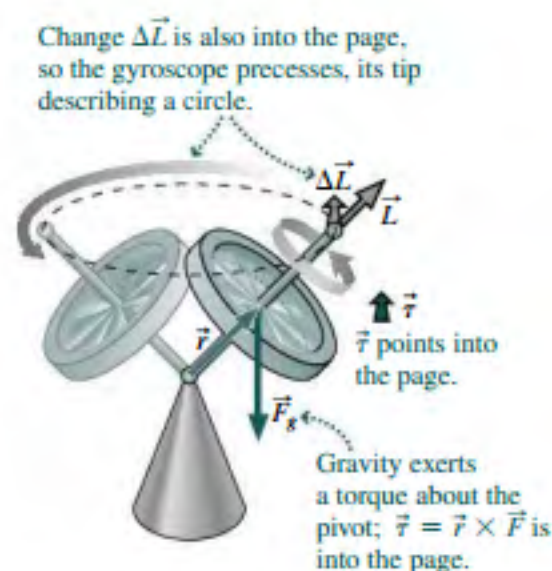


FIGURE 11.10 Why doesn't the spinning gyroscope fall over?

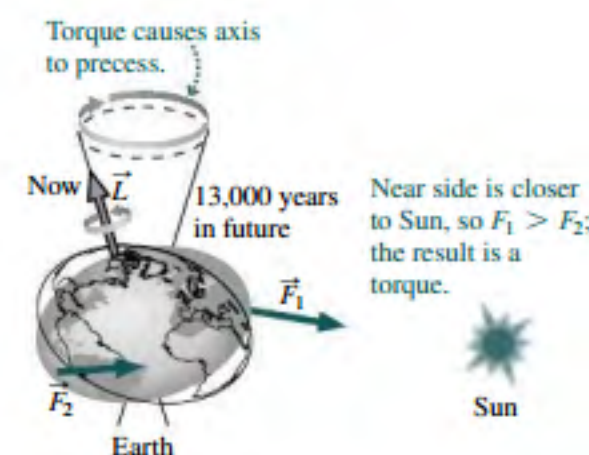


FIGURE 11.11 Earth's precession. The equatorial bulge is highly exaggerated.

axis of the gyroscope—which coincides with the angular momentum vector—moves into the page. Repeat this argument, and you'll see that the change $\Delta\vec{L}$ is always perpendicular to $\vec{L}$; as a result, the angular momentum vector describes a circular path, continually changing in direction but not magnitude.

So is there something special about a *rotating* gyroscope? Wouldn't a nonrotating gyroscope also obey the rotational analog of Newton's law? It would, and you can see that by applying the argument of the previous paragraph, now assuming that the gyroscope in Fig. 11.10 isn't rotating. The gravitational force and torque are still the same, with the torque into the page. The rotational analog of Newton's second law still holds, so the change $\Delta\vec{L}$ in angular momentum is still into the page. But here's the difference: In this case the initial angular momentum is zero, so the gyroscope needs to acquire an angular momentum that points into the page. It does that by falling over, rotating about its pivot as it does so. Apply the right-hand rule to the gyroscope as it falls, and the result is an angular momentum pointing into the page. Again, the rotational analog of Newton's law is satisfied. If you're bothered that the gyroscope doesn't rotate about its shaft as before, note that there's nothing in the rotational analog of Newton's law that says how or about what

axis something has to rotate. Its falling over is a perfectly good rotational motion—although it will end when the gyroscope hits the floor and nongravitational torques begin to act.

The difference between the rotating and nonrotating gyroscope is like the difference between a satellite in circular orbit and a ball that's simply dropped from rest. Newton's law, $\vec{F} = d\vec{p}/dt$, governs both cases, and says that the *change* in linear momentum is in the direction of the gravitational force. The satellite already has momentum, and since it's going at the right speed for a circular orbit, this change amounts to a change in direction only. The ball has no initial momentum, so it acquires a momentum in the direction of the force—namely, downward. Substitute “rotating gyroscope” for “satellite,” “nonrotating gyroscope” for “ball,” “angular momentum” for “linear momentum,” and “torque” for “force,” and you've got the analogous explanations for the two gyroscope situations.

What determines the rate of precession? You can explore that question qualitatively in Question 10, and quantitatively in Problem 61.

Precession on the atomic scale helps explain the medical imaging technique MRI (*magnetic resonance imaging*). Protons in the body's abundant hydrogen precess because of torque resulting from a strong magnetic field. The MRI imager detects signals emitted at the precession frequency. By spatially varying the magnetic field, the device localizes the precessing protons and thus constructs high-resolution images of the body's interior.

On a much larger scale, Earth itself precesses. Because of its rotation, the planet bulges slightly at the equator. Solar gravity exerts a torque on the equatorial bulge, causing Earth's rotation axis to precess with a period of about 26,000 years (Fig. 11.11). The axis now points toward Polaris, which for that reason we call the North Star, but it won't always do so. This precession, in connection with deviations in Earth's orbit from a perfect circle, results in subtle climatic changes that are believed to be partly responsible for the onset of ice ages.

GOT IT?

11.5 You push horizontally at right angles to the shaft of a spinning gyroscope, as shown in the figure. Does the shaft move (a) upward, (b) downward, (c) in the direction of your push, or (d) opposite the direction of your push?



APPLICATION **Bicycling**

The rotational analog of Newton's second law helps explain why bicycles don't tip over. The photo shows why. If the bicycle is perfectly vertical, the gravitational force exerts no torque. But if it tips to the rider's left, as in the photo, then there's a torque $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}_g$ toward the rear. A stationary bicycle, with no angular momentum, would respond by tipping further left, rotating about a front-to-back axis and gaining angular momentum toward the rear. That's just as Newton requires: a change in angular momentum in the direction of the torque. But a moving bicycle already has angular momentum $\vec{L}$ of its rotating wheels; as the photo shows, that angular momentum points generally to the rider's left. A rearward change in angular momentum then requires just a slight turn of the front wheel to the left. The rider subconsciously makes that turn, at once satisfying Newton and helping to keep the bicycle stable.

The physics of cycling is a complicated subject, and the role of angular momentum described here is only one of several effects that contribute to bicycle stability.



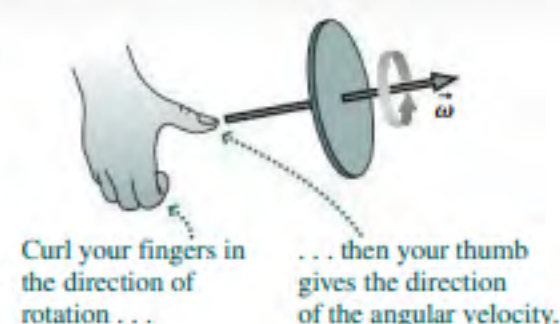
Gravitational torque is toward back of bicycle, into page.

Wheel turns to rider's left, changing angular momentum vector in direction of torque.

Chapter 11 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea of this chapter is that rotational quantities can be described as vectors, with the vector direction at right angles to the plane in which the action—motion, acceleration, or effects associated with torque—is occurring. The direction is given by the right-hand rule. A new concept, angular momentum, is the rotational analog of linear momentum. The rotational analog of Newton's law equates the net torque on a system with the rate of change of its angular momentum. In the absence of a net torque, angular momentum is conserved.



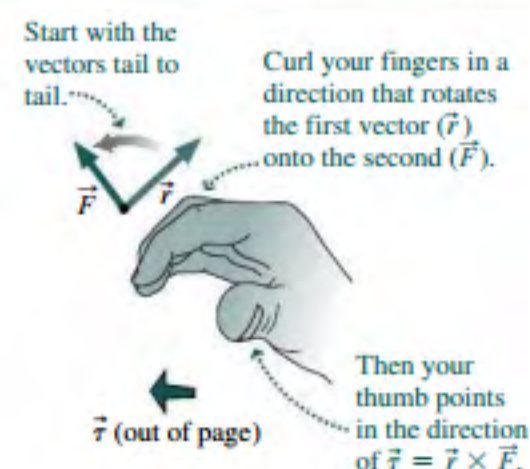
Key Concepts and Equations

The **vector cross product** is a way of multiplying two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ to produce a third vector $\vec{C}$ of magnitude $C = AB \sin \theta$ and direction at right angles to the other two, as given by the right-hand rule. It's written as

$$\vec{C} = \vec{A} \times \vec{B}$$

Torque is a vector defined as the cross product of the radius vector $\vec{r}$ from a given axis to the point where a force $\vec{F}$ is applied:

$$\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$$



(continued)

Angular momentum $\vec{L}$ is the rotational analog of linear momentum $\vec{p}$. It's always defined with respect to a particular axis. For a point particle at position $\vec{r}$ with respect to the axis, moving with linear momentum $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$, the angular momentum is defined as

$$\vec{L} = \vec{r} \times \vec{p}$$

For a symmetric object with rotational inertia I rotating with angular velocity $\vec{\omega}$, angular momentum becomes $\vec{L} = I\vec{\omega}$. In terms of angular momentum, the rotational analog of Newton's law states that the rate of change of angular momentum is equal to the net external torque:

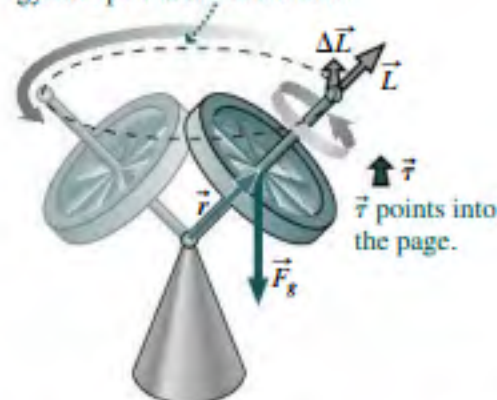
$$\frac{d\vec{L}}{dt} = \vec{\tau}_{\text{net}}$$

If the external torque on a system is zero, then its angular momentum cannot change.

Applications

Conservation of angular momentum explains the action of gyroscopes—spinning objects whose rotation axis remains fixed in the absence of a net external torque. If an external torque is applied, the rotation axis undergoes a circular motion known as **precession**. Precession occurs in systems ranging from subatomic particles to tops and gyroscopes and on to planets.

The axis of the precessing gyroscope traces out a circle.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!

BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems



Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 11.1** Identify rotational quantities as vectors and determine their directions.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 11.1, 11.2, 11.3; Exercises 11.11, 11.12, 11.13, 11.14
- LO 11.2** Calculate vector cross products.
For Thought and Discussion Question 11.4; Exercises 11.15, 11.16, 11.17; Problems 11.35, 11.36, 11.37, 11.38, 11.42, 11.51, 11.52, 11.64
- LO 11.3** Determine the angular momentum of a system.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 11.7, 11.8; Exercise 11.18, 11.21; Problems 11.39, 11.40, 11.41, 11.43, 11.44, 11.45, 11.54, 11.56, 11.60, 11.63, 11.64

- LO 11.4** Solve problems involving conservation of angular momentum.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 11.5, 11.6; Problems 11.46, 11.47, 11.48, 11.49, 11.50, 11.53, 11.55, 11.57, 11.58, 11.62
- LO 11.5** Explain precession and determine its direction.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 11.9, 11.10; Problem 11.61

For Thought and Discussion

- Does Earth's angular velocity vector point north or south?
- Figure 11.12 shows four forces acting on a body. In what directions are the associated torques about point O ? About point P ?

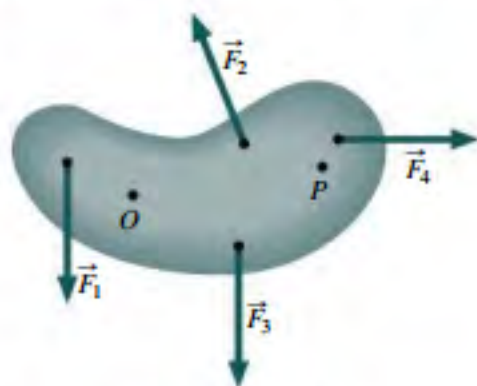


FIGURE 11.12 For Thought and Discussion 2

- You stand with your right arm extended horizontally to the right. What's the direction of the gravitational torque about your shoulder?
- Can a small force ever exert a greater torque than a larger force? Explain.
- Why does a diver jump on the diving board before doing a somersault?
- A group of polar bears is standing around the edge of a slowly rotating ice floe. If the bears all walk to the center, what happens to the rotation rate?
- Tornadoes in the northern hemisphere rotate counterclockwise as viewed from above. A far-fetched idea suggests that driving on the right side of the road may increase the frequency of tornadoes. Does this idea have *any* merit? Explain in terms of the angular momentum imparted to the air as two cars pass going in opposite directions.

8. Does a particle moving at constant speed in a straight line have angular momentum about a point on the line? About a point not on the line? In either case, is its angular momentum constant?
9. Why is it easier to balance a basketball on your finger if it's spinning?
10. If you increase the rotation rate of a precessing gyroscope, will the precession rate increase or decrease?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 11.1 Angular Velocity and Acceleration Vectors

11. A car is headed north at 70 km/h. Give the magnitude and direction of the angular velocity of its 62-cm-diameter wheels.
12. If the car of Exercise 11 makes a 90° left turn lasting 25 s, determine the average angular acceleration of the wheels.
13. A wheel is spinning at 45 rpm with its axis vertical. After 15 s, it's spinning at 60 rpm with its axis horizontal. Find (a) the magnitude of its average angular acceleration and (b) the angle the average angular acceleration vector makes with the horizontal.
14. A wheel is spinning about a horizontal axis with angular speed 140 rad/s and with its angular velocity pointing east. Find the magnitude and direction of its angular velocity after an angular acceleration of 35 rad/s^2 , pointing 68° west of north, is applied for 5.0 s.

Section 11.2 Torque and the Vector Cross Product

15. A 12-N force is applied at the point $x = 3 \text{ m}$, $y = 1 \text{ m}$. Find the torque about the origin if the force points in (a) the x -direction, (b) the y -direction, and (c) the z -direction.
16. A force $\vec{F} = 1.3\hat{i} + 2.7\hat{j} \text{ N}$ is applied at the point $x = 3.0 \text{ m}$, $y = 0 \text{ m}$. Find the torque about (a) the origin and (b) the point $x = -1.3 \text{ m}$, $y = 2.4 \text{ m}$.
17. When you hold your arm outstretched, it's supported primarily by the deltoid muscle. Figure 11.13 shows a case in which the deltoid exerts a 62-N force at 15° to the horizontal. If the force-application point is 18 cm horizontally from the shoulder joint, what torque does the deltoid exert about the shoulder?

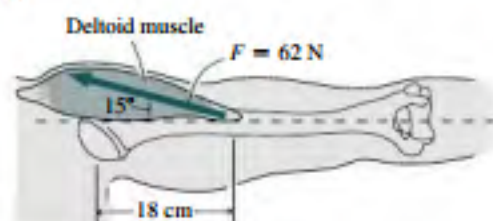


FIGURE 11.13 Exercise 17

Section 11.3 Angular Momentum

18. Express the units of angular momentum (a) using only the fundamental units kilogram, meter, and second; (b) in a form involving newtons; (c) in a form involving joules.
19. Use data from Appendix E to make an order-of-magnitude estimate for the angular momentum of our Solar System about the galactic center.
20. A gymnast of rotational inertia $63 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$ is tumbling head over heels with angular momentum $460 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}$. What's her angular speed?
21. A 660-g hoop 95 cm in diameter is rotating at 170 rpm about its central axis. What's its angular momentum?
22. A 4.3-cm-diameter golf ball has mass 45 g and is spinning at 3000 rpm. Treating the golf ball as a uniform solid sphere, what's its angular momentum?

Section 11.4 Conservation of Angular Momentum

23. A potter's wheel with rotational inertia $6.20 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$ is spinning freely at 20.0 rpm. The potter drops a 2.50-kg lump of clay onto

the wheel, where it sticks 48.0 cm from the rotation axis. What's the wheel's subsequent angular speed?

24. A 3.0-m-diameter merry-go-round with rotational inertia $120 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$ is spinning freely at 0.50 rev/s. Four 25-kg children sit suddenly on the edge of the merry-go-round. (a) Find the new angular speed, and (b) determine the total energy lost to friction between children and merry-go-round.
25. A uniform, spherical cloud of interstellar gas has mass $2.0 \times 10^{30} \text{ kg}$, has radius $1.0 \times 10^{13} \text{ m}$, and is rotating with period 1.5×10^6 years. The cloud collapses to form a star $7.5 \times 10^8 \text{ m}$ in radius. Find the star's rotation period.
26. A skater has rotational inertia $3.8 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$ with her fists held to her chest and $5.3 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$ with her arms outstretched. The skater is spinning at 3.0 rev/s while holding a 1.8-kg weight in each outstretched hand; the weights are 68 cm from her rotation axis. If she pulls her hands in to her chest, so they're essentially on her rotation axis, how fast will she be spinning?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two worked examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

27. **Example 11.1:** A 2150-kg SUV going at 65 km/h rounds a circular turn of radius 175 m on a horizontal road. What's the magnitude of its angular momentum?
28. **Example 11.1:** A 1150-kg car rounds a circular turn of radius 125 m, toward the left, on a horizontal road. Its angular momentum about the center of the turn has magnitude $2.86 \times 10^6 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}$. What are (a) the direction of the car's angular momentum, (b) its speed, and (c) the magnitude of its angular momentum about the center of the turn, once it's exited the turn and is on a straight stretch of the road?
29. **Example 11.1:** You attach a 58.2-g tennis ball to a string and whirl it around over your head in a horizontal circle of radius 84.3 cm, with speed 5.87 m/s. From your perspective, looking up at the ball, it's going counterclockwise. Find (a) the magnitude and (b) direction of the ball's angular momentum about the center of the circular path.
30. **Example 11.1:** A 58.2-g tennis ball is attached to a 1.00-m-long string and whirled around in a horizontal circle with angular momentum of magnitude $0.347 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}$ about the center of the circular path. Find (a) the angle the string makes with the horizontal and (b) the ball's speed. *Hint:* Consult Example 5.5.
31. **Example 11.2:** A star is rotating with a period of 34.4 days. At the end of its lifetime it sheds its outermost layers, leaving a core of radius $4.96 \times 10^8 \text{ m}$. The core then collapses into a white dwarf of radius $4.21 \times 10^6 \text{ m}$. Assuming that no torques have acted on the core, find its rotation period after the collapse.
32. **Example 11.2:** Astronomers observe a neutron star of radius 7.10 km and determine that it's rotating at 21.9 rpm. If the stellar core that collapsed to form the neutron star was originally rotating with a period of 49.3 days, what was its radius?
33. **Example 11.2:** The skater in Fig. 11.6a is spinning at 1.66 rev/s. With her arms outstretched and leg extended (Fig. 11.6a), her rotational inertia is $3.56 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$. When she pulls in her arms and leg (Fig. 11.6b), her rotational inertia drops to $1.21 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$. What's her final spin rate?

34. **Example 11.2:** A skater has rotational inertia $5.31 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$ with his arms outstretched and a baseball glove on each hand; the pocket of each glove is 123 cm from his rotation axis. He's spinning with angular velocity pointing upward and with magnitude 0.950 rev/s . He catches a 146-g baseball moving at 24.7 m/s perpendicular to his arms and heading straight toward the pocket of his glove. Find his subsequent spin rate if he catches the ball with (a) his left hand and (b) his right hand.

Problems

35. You slip a wrench over a bolt. Taking the origin at the bolt, the other end of the wrench is at $x = 25 \text{ cm}$, $y = 6.5 \text{ cm}$. You apply a force $\vec{F} = 62\hat{i} - 16\hat{j} \text{ N}$ to the end of the wrench. What's the torque on the bolt?
36. Vector $\vec{A}$ points 30° counterclockwise from the x -axis. Vector $\vec{B}$ has twice the magnitude of $\vec{A}$. Their product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ has magnitude A^2 and points in the negative z -direction. Find the direction of vector $\vec{B}$.
37. A baseball player extends his arm straight up to catch a 145-g baseball moving horizontally at 41 m/s . It's 59 cm from the player's shoulder joint to the point the ball strikes his hand, and his arm remains stiff while it rotates about the shoulder during the catch. The player's hand recoils 3.00 cm horizontally while he stops the ball. What average torque does the player's arm exert on the ball?
38. Show that $\vec{A} \cdot (\vec{A} \times \vec{B}) = 0$ for any vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$.
39. A thin rod of length a and mass m is rotating about a perpendicular axis through one of its ends. The rotation rate is such that the other end of the rod moves with speed v . Find an expression for the rod's angular momentum about its rotation axis.
40. A particle of mass m moves in a straight line at constant speed v . Show that its angular momentum about a point located a perpendicular distance b from its line of motion is mbv regardless of where the particle is on the line.
41. Two identical 1900-kg cars are traveling in opposite directions at 75 km/h . Each car's center of mass is 2.3 m from the center of the highway (Fig. 11.14). What are the magnitude and direction of the angular momentum of the system consisting of the two cars about a point on the centerline of the highway?

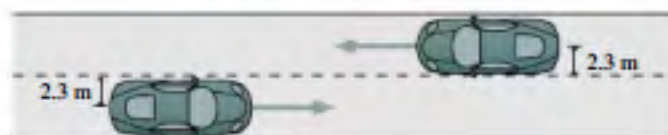


FIGURE 11.14 Problem 41

42. The dot product of two vectors is one-third the magnitude of their cross product. What's the angle between the two vectors?
43. Biomechanical engineers have developed micromechanical devices for measuring blood flow as an alternative to dye injection following angioplasty to remove arterial plaque. One experimental device consists of a $290\text{-}\mu\text{m}$ -diameter, $2.3\text{-}\mu\text{m}$ -thick silicon rotor inserted into blood vessels. Moving blood spins the rotor, whose rotation rate provides a measure of blood flow. This device exhibited an 830-rpm rotation rate in tests with water flows at several meters per second. Treating the rotor as a disk, what was its angular momentum at 830 rpm ? (Hint: You'll need to find the density of silicon.)
44. Figure 11.15 shows the dimensions of a 930-g wooden baseball bat whose rotational inertia about its center of mass is $0.048 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. If the bat is swung so its far end moves at 47 m/s ,

find (a) its angular momentum about the pivot P and (b) the constant torque applied about P to achieve this angular momentum in 0.25 s . (Hint: Remember the parallel-axis theorem.)

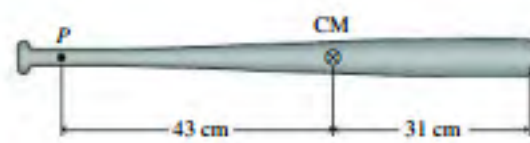


FIGURE 11.15 Problem 44

45. As an automotive engineer, you're charged with redesigning a car's wheels with the goal of decreasing each wheel's angular momentum by 30% for a given linear speed of the car. Other design considerations require that the wheel diameter go from 38 cm to 35 cm . If the old wheel had rotational inertia $0.29 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$, what do you specify for the new rotational inertia?
46. A turntable of radius 15 cm and rotational inertia $0.0115 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$ is spinning freely at 32.0 rpm about its central axis, with a 20.5-g mouse on its outer edge. The mouse walks from the edge to the center. Find (a) the new rotation speed and (b) the work done by the mouse.
47. A 20-kg dog is standing on the edge of a stationary, frictionless turntable of rotational inertia $85 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$ and radius 1.95 m . The dog walks once around the turntable. What fraction of a full circle does the dog's motion make with respect to the ground?
48. A physics student is standing on an initially motionless, frictionless turntable with rotational inertia $0.31 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. She's holding a wheel with rotational inertia $0.22 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$ spinning at 130 rpm about a vertical axis, as in Fig. 11.8. When she turns the wheel upside down, student and turntable begin rotating at 70 rpm . (a) Find the student's mass, considering her to be a 30-cm -diameter cylinder. (b) Neglecting the distance between the axes of the turntable and wheel, determine the work she did in turning the wheel upside down.
49. You're choreographing your school's annual ice show. You call for eight 65-kg skaters to join hands and skate side by side in a line extending 11 m . The skater at one end is to stop abruptly, so the line will rotate rigidly about that skater. For safety, you don't want the fastest skater to be moving at more than 9.8 m/s , and you don't want the force on that skater's hand to exceed 300 N . What do you determine is the greatest speed the skaters can have before they execute their rotational maneuver?
50. A day on Mars lasts 1.03 Earth days, which is inconvenient because Mars time keeps slipping behind Earth time. Suppose that residents of a future Martian settlement decide to solve this problem by launching a huge projectile horizontally off the Martian equator, in such a direction as to increase the planet's rotation rate just enough to make the length of the Martian day equal to that of Earth's day. If their technology can achieve a launch speed of 2.44 Mm/s , what mass of projectile will give the desired result? You can approximate Mars as a uniform solid sphere.
51. Show that the cross product of two vectors $\vec{A} = A_x\hat{i} + A_y\hat{j} + A_z\hat{k}$ and $\vec{B} = B_x\hat{i} + B_y\hat{j} + B_z\hat{k}$ is given by $\vec{A} \times \vec{B} = (A_yB_z - A_zB_y)\hat{i} + (A_zB_x - A_xB_z)\hat{j} + (A_xB_y - A_yB_x)\hat{k}$. (Hint: You'll need to work out cross products of all possible pairs of the unit vectors $\hat{i}$, $\hat{j}$, and $\hat{k}$ —including with themselves.)
52. If you're familiar with determinants, show that the cross product can be written as a determinant:

$$\vec{A} \times \vec{B} = \begin{vmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ A_x & A_y & A_z \\ B_x & B_y & B_z \end{vmatrix}$$

(Hint: See the preceding problem.)

53. Jumbo is back! Jumbo is the 4.8-Mg elephant from Example 9.4. This time he's standing at the outer edge of a 15-Mg turntable of radius 8.5 m , rotating with angular velocity 0.15 s^{-1} on

frictionless bearings. Jumbo then walks to the center of the turntable. Treating Jumbo as a point mass and the turntable as a solid disk, find (a) the angular velocity of the turntable once Jumbo reaches the center and (b) the work Jumbo does in walking to the center.

54. An anemometer for measuring wind speeds consists of four small cups, each with mass 120 g, mounted on a pair of 29.5-cm-long rods with mass 67.5 g each, as shown in Fig. 11.16. Find the angular momentum of the anemometer when it's spinning at 11.7 rev/s. You can treat the cups as point masses.

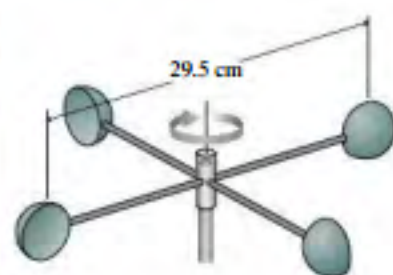


FIGURE 11.16 Problem 54

55. A turntable has rotational inertia I and is rotating with angular speed ω about a frictionless vertical axis. A wad of clay with mass m is tossed onto the turntable and sticks a distance d from the rotation axis. The clay hits horizontally with its velocity $\vec{v}$ at right angles to the turntable's radius, and in the same direction as the turntable's rotation (Fig. 11.17). Find expressions for v that will result in (a) the turntable's angular speed dropping to half its initial value, (b) no change in the turntable's angular speed, and (c) the angular speed doubling.

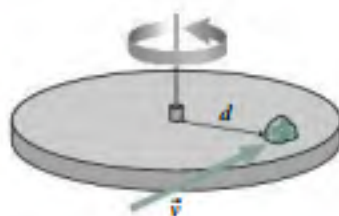


FIGURE 11.17 Problem 55

56. About 99.9% of the solar system's total mass lies in the Sun. Using data from Appendix E, estimate what fraction of the solar system's angular momentum about its center is associated with the Sun. Where is most of the rest of the angular momentum?
57. You're a civil engineer for an advanced civilization on a solid spherical planet of uniform density. Running out of room for the expanding population, the government asks you to redesign your planet to give it more surface area. You recommend reshaping the planet, without adding any material or angular momentum, into a hollow shell whose thickness is one-fifth its outer radius. How much will your design increase the surface area, and how will it change the length of the day?

58. In Fig. 11.18, the lower disk, of mass 480 g and radius 3.2 cm, is rotating at 180 rpm on a frictionless shaft of negligible radius. The upper disk, of mass 250 g and radius 2.0 cm, is initially not rotating. It drops freely down onto the lower disk, and frictional

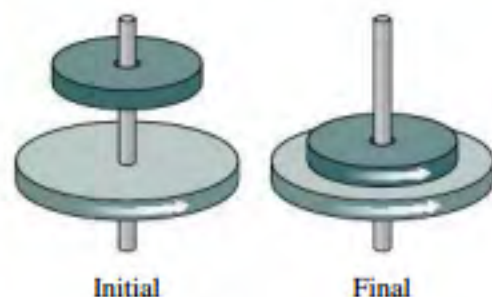


FIGURE 11.18 Problem 58

- forces bring the two disks to a common rotational speed. Find (a) that common speed and (b) the fraction of the initial kinetic energy lost to friction.
59. A solid ball of mass M and radius R is spinning with angular velocity ω_0 about a horizontal axis. It drops vertically onto a surface where the coefficient of kinetic friction with the ball is μ_k (Fig. 11.19). Find expressions for (a) the final angular velocity once it's achieved pure rolling motion and (b) the time it takes to achieve this motion.

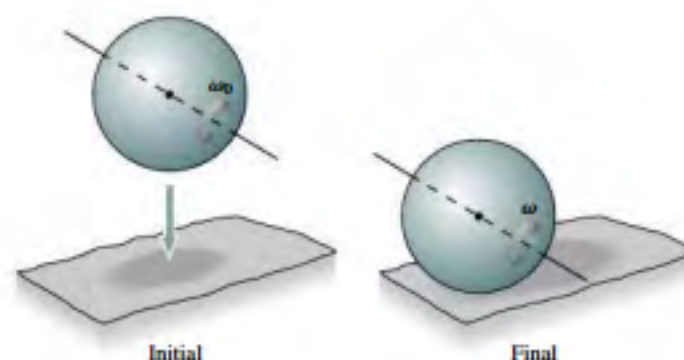


FIGURE 11.19 Problem 59

60. A time-dependent torque given by $\tau = a + b \sin ct$ is applied to an object that's initially stationary but is free to rotate. Here a , b , and c are constants. Find an expression for the object's angular momentum as a function of time, assuming the torque is first applied at $t = 0$.
61. Consider a rapidly spinning gyroscope whose axis is precessing uniformly in a horizontal circle of radius r , as shown in Fig. 11.10. Apply $\vec{\tau} = d\vec{L}/dt$ to show that the angular speed of precession about the vertical axis through the center of the circle is mgr/L .
62. When a star like our Sun exhausts its fuel, thermonuclear reactions in its core cease, and it collapses to become a *white dwarf*. Often the star will blow off its outer layers and lose some mass before it collapses. Suppose a star with the Sun's mass and radius is rotating with period 25 days and then collapses to a white dwarf with 55% of the Sun's mass and a rotation period of 131 s. What's the radius of the white dwarf? Compare your answer with the radii of Earth and the Sun.
63. Pulsars—the rapidly rotating neutron stars described in Example 11.2—have magnetic fields that interact with charged particles in the surrounding interstellar medium. The result is torque that causes the pulsar's spin rate and therefore its angular momentum to decrease very slowly. The table below gives values for the rotation period of a given pulsar as it's been observed at the same date every 5 years for two decades. The pulsar's rotational inertia is known to be $1.12 \times 10^{38} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$. Make a plot of the pulsar's angular momentum over time, and use the associated best-fit line, along with the rotational analog of Newton's law, to find the torque acting on the pulsar.

Year of observation	1995	2000	2005	2010	2015
Angular momentum ($10^{37} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}$)	7.844	7.831	7.816	7.799	7.787

64. A system has total angular momentum $\vec{L}$ about an axis O . Show that the system's angular momentum about a parallel axis O' is given by $\vec{L}' = \vec{L} - \vec{h} \times \vec{p}$, where $\vec{p}$ is the system's linear momentum and $\vec{h}$ is a vector from O to O' (see Fig. 11.20, which also shows vectors $\vec{r}_i$ and $\vec{r}'_i$ from each axis to the system's i th mass element m_i).

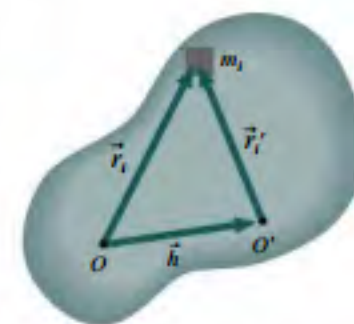


FIGURE 11.20 Problem 64

Passage Problems

Figure 11.21 shows a demonstration gyroscope, consisting of a solid disk mounted on a shaft. The disk spins about the shaft on essentially frictionless bearings. The shaft is mounted on a stand so it's free to

pivot both horizontally and vertically. A weight at the far end of the shaft balances the disk, so in the configuration shown there's no torque on the system. An arrowhead mounted on the disk end of the shaft indicates the direction of the disk's angular velocity.

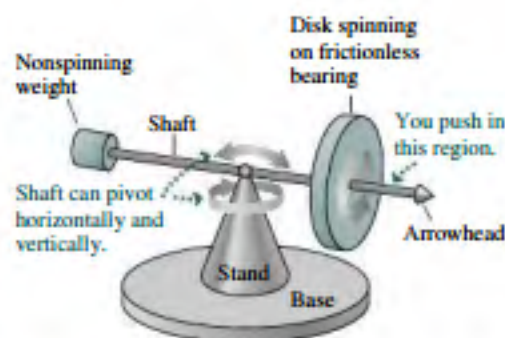


FIGURE 11.21 A gyroscope (Passage Problems 65–68)

65. If you push on the shaft between the arrowhead and the disk, pushing horizontally away from you (i.e., into the page in Fig. 11.21), the arrowhead end of the shaft will move
- away from you (i.e., into the page).
 - toward you (i.e., out of the page).
 - downward.
 - upward.
66. If you push on the shaft between the arrowhead and the disk, pushing directly upward on the bottom of the shaft, the arrowhead end of the shaft will move
- away from you (i.e., into the page).
 - toward you (i.e., out of the page).
 - downward.
 - upward.
67. If an additional weight is hung on the left end of the shaft, the arrowhead will
- pivot upward until the weighted end of the shaft hits the base.
 - pivot downward until the arrowhead hits the base.
 - precess counterclockwise when viewed from above.
 - precess clockwise when viewed from above.

68. If the system is precessing, and only the disk's rotation rate is increased, the precession rate will
- decrease.
 - increase.
 - stay the same.
 - become zero.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The rotation axis precesses—changes orientation—over a 26,000-year cycle. This alters the relation between sunlight intensity and seasons, triggering ice ages.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 11.1 (e)
 11.2 (1) $\vec{\tau}_3$; (2) $\vec{\tau}_5$; (3) $\vec{\tau}_1$; (4) $\vec{\tau}_4$
 11.3 (d)
 11.4 (1) (a) to keep the total angular momentum at 0;
 (2) (c) so L_{total} remains 0; (3) (b)
 11.5 (a)

Static Equilibrium

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Newton's second law (Section 4.2) and its use in two dimensions (Section 5.1)
- Torque and how to calculate it (Sections 10.2, 11.2)
- Your calculus knowledge of second derivatives

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 12.1 Describe quantitatively the conditions for static equilibrium.
- LO 12.2 Locate the center of gravity of a system and calculate gravitational torques.
- LO 12.3 Solve problems involving static equilibrium.
- LO 12.4 Distinguish stable from unstable equilibria.



The Alamillo Bridge in Seville, Spain, is the work of architect Santiago Calatrava. What conditions must be met to ensure the stability of this dramatic structure?

Architect Santiago Calatrava envisioned the boldly improbable bridge shown here. But it took engineers to make sure that the bridge would be stable in the face of what looks like an obvious tendency to topple to the left. The key to the engineers' success is **static equilibrium**—the condition in which a structure or system experiences neither a net force nor a net torque. Engineers use the principles of static equilibrium to design buildings, bridges, and aircraft. Scientists apply equilibrium principles at scales from molecular to astrophysical. Here we explore the conditions for static equilibrium required by the laws of physics.

12.1 Conditions for Equilibrium

LO 12.1 Describe quantitatively the conditions for static equilibrium.

A body is in **equilibrium** when the net external force and torque on it are both zero. In the special case when the body is also at rest, it's in **static equilibrium**. Systems in static equilibrium include not only engineered structures but also trees, molecules, and even your bones and muscles when you're at rest.

We can write the conditions for static equilibrium mathematically by setting the sums of all the external forces and torques both to zero:

The net external force on a system... must be $\vec{0}$ for static equilibrium.

$$\sum \vec{F}_i = \vec{0} \quad (12.1)$$

$$\sum \vec{\tau}_i = \sum (\vec{r}_i \times \vec{F}_i) = \vec{0} \quad (12.2)$$

The net external torque must also be $\vec{0}$.

Here the subscripts i label the forces $\vec{F}$ acting on an object, the positions $\vec{r}$ of the force-application points, and the associated torques $\vec{\tau}$.

In Chapters 10 and 11, we noted that torque depends on the choice of a rotation axis. Actually, the issue is not so much an axis but a single point—the

point of origin of the vectors $\vec{r}$ that enter the expression $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$. In this chapter, where we have objects in equilibrium so they aren't rotating, we'll talk of this "pivot point" rather than a rotation axis. So the torque $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$ depends on the choice of pivot point. Then there seems to be an ambiguity in Equation 12.2, since we haven't specified a pivot point.

For an object to be in static equilibrium it can't rotate about *any* point, so Equation 12.2 must hold no matter what point we choose. Must we then check every possible point? Fortunately, no. If the first equilibrium condition holds—that is, if the net force on an object is zero—and if the net torque about *some* point is zero, then the net torque about *any other* point is also zero. Problem 57 leads you through the proof of this statement.

In solving equilibrium problems, we're thus free to choose any convenient point about which to evaluate the torques. An appropriate choice is often the application point of one of the forces; then $\vec{r} = \vec{0}$ for that force, and the associated torque $\vec{r} \times \vec{F}$ is zero. This leaves Equation 12.2 with one term fewer than it would otherwise have.

EXAMPLE 12.1 Choosing the Pivot: A Drawbridge

The raised span of the drawbridge shown in Fig. 12.1a has its 11,000-kg mass distributed uniformly over its 14-m length. Find the magnitude of the tension in the supporting cable.

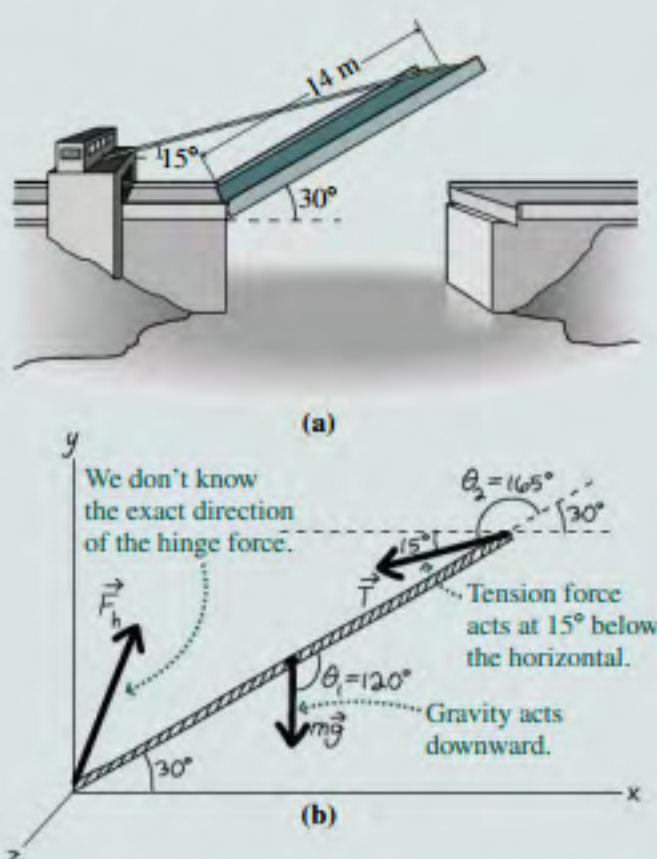


FIGURE 12.1 (a) A drawbridge. (b) Our sketch showing forces supporting the bridge.

INTERPRET Because the drawbridge is at rest, it's in static equilibrium.

DEVELOP Here we'll demonstrate how a sensible choice of the pivot point can make solving static-equilibrium problems easier. Figure 12.1b is a simplified diagram of the bridge, showing the three forces acting on it. These forces must satisfy both Equations 12.1 and 12.2, but we aren't asked about the hinge force $\vec{F}_h$, so it makes sense to choose the pivot at the hinge. We can then focus on Equation 12.2, $\sum \vec{\tau}_i = \vec{0}$, in which the only torques are due to gravity and tension. Gravity acts at the center of mass, half the bridge length L from the pivot (we'll prove this shortly). Therefore, it exerts a torque $\tau_g = -(L/2)mg \sin \theta_1$, where θ_1 is the angle between the gravitational force and a vector from the pivot. This torque is into the page, or in the negative z -direction—hence the negative sign. Similarly, the tension force, applied at the full length L , exerts a torque $\tau_T = LT \sin \theta_2$. Equation 12.2 then becomes

$$-\frac{L}{2}mg \sin \theta_1 + LT \sin \theta_2 = 0$$

EVALUATE We solve for the tension T :

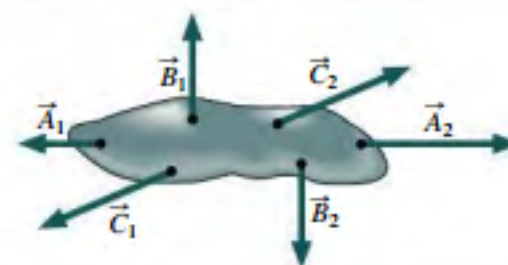
$$T = \frac{mg \sin \theta_1}{2 \sin \theta_2} = \frac{(11,000 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(\sin 120^\circ)}{(2)(\sin 165^\circ)} = 180 \text{ kN}$$

ASSESS This tension force is considerably larger than the approximately 110-kN weight of the bridge because the tension acts at a small angle to produce a torque that balances the torque due to gravity.

One point of this example is that a wise choice of the pivot point can eliminate a lot of work—in this case, allowing us to solve the problem using only Equation 12.2. If we had chosen a different pivot, then the force $\vec{F}_h$ would have appeared in the torque equation, and we would have had to eliminate it using the force equation, Equation 12.1 (see Exercise 11).

GOT IT?

12.1 The figure shows three pairs of forces acting on an object. Which pair, acting as the *only* forces on the object, results in static equilibrium? Explain why the others don't.



12.2 Center of Gravity

LO 12.2 Locate the center of gravity of a system and calculate gravitational torques.

In Fig. 12.1*b* we drew the gravitational force acting at the center of mass of the bridge. That seems sensible, but is it correct? After all, gravity acts on all parts of an object. How do we know that the resulting torque is equivalent to the torque due to a single force acting at the center of mass? To see that it is, consider the gravitational forces on all parts of an object of mass M . The vector sum of those forces is $M\vec{g}$, but what about the torques? Figure 12.2 shows the ingredients we need to calculate the torque $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$ associated with one mass element; summing gives the total torque:

$$\vec{\tau} = \sum \vec{r}_i \times \vec{F}_i = \sum \vec{r}_i \times m_i \vec{g} = \left(\sum m_i \vec{r}_i \right) \times \vec{g}$$

We can rewrite this equation by multiplying the right-hand side by M/M , with M the total mass:

$$\vec{\tau} = \left(\frac{\sum m_i \vec{r}_i}{M} \right) \times M\vec{g}$$

The term in parentheses is the position of the center of mass (Section 9.1), and the right-hand term is the total weight. Therefore, the net torque on the body due to gravity is that of the gravitational force $M\vec{g}$ acting at the center of mass. In general, the point at which the gravitational force seems to act is called the **center of gravity**. We've just proven an important point: **The center of gravity coincides with the center of mass when the gravitational field is uniform.**

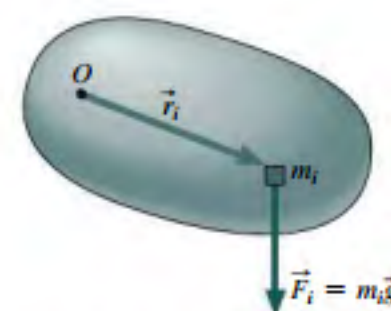


FIGURE 12.2 The gravitational force $\vec{F}_i$ on the mass element m_i produces a torque about point O .

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 12.1 Finding the Center of Gravity

Explain how you can find an object's center of gravity by suspending it from a string.

EVALUATE Suspend an object from a string and it will quickly come to equilibrium, as shown in Figs. 12.3*a* and *b*. In equilibrium there's no torque on the object and so, as Fig. 12.3*b* shows, its center of gravity (CG) must be directly below the suspension point. So far all we know is that the CG lies on a vertical line extending from the suspension point. But two intersecting lines determine a point, so all we have to do is suspend the object from a *different* point. In its new equilibrium, the CG again lies on a vertical line from the suspension point. Where the two lines meet is the center of gravity (Fig. 12.3*c*).

ASSESS Here's a quick, easy, and practical way to find the center of gravity—at least for two-dimensional objects.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Do the experiment! Determine the center of gravity of an isosceles triangle made from material of uniform density.

EVALUATE Cut a triangle of cardboard or wood and follow the procedure described here. You should get good agreement with Example 9.3: The triangle's CG (which is the same as its center of mass) lies two-thirds of the way from the apex to the base.

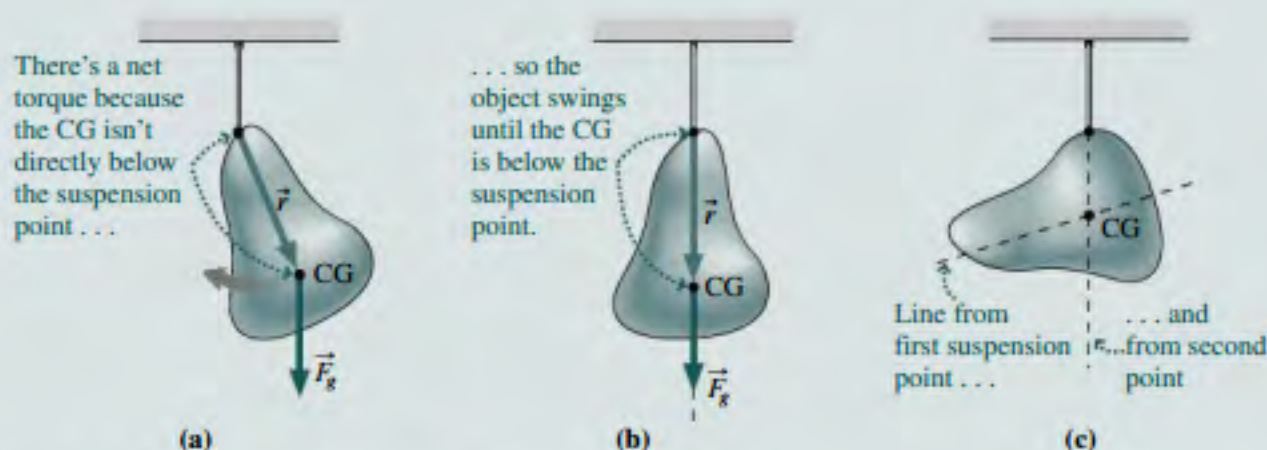


FIGURE 12.3 Finding the center of gravity.

GOT IT?

12.2 The dancer in the figure is balanced; that is, she's in static equilibrium. Which of the three lettered points could be her center of gravity?



12.3 Examples of Static Equilibrium

LO 12.3 Solve problems involving static equilibrium.

It's frequently the case that all the forces acting on a system lie in a plane, so Equation 12.1—the statement that there's no net force in static equilibrium—becomes two equations for the two force components in that plane. And with all the forces in a plane, the torques are all at right angles to that plane, so Equation 12.2—the statement that there's no net torque—becomes a single equation. We'll restrict ourselves to such cases in which the conditions for static equilibrium reduce to three scalar equations. Sometimes, as in Example 12.1, the torque equation alone will give what we're looking for, but often that's not the case.

Solving static-equilibrium problems is much like solving Newton's law problems; after all, the equations for static equilibrium are Newton's law and its rotational analog, both with acceleration set to zero. Here we adapt our Newton's law strategy from Chapter 4 to problems of static equilibrium. The examples that follow illustrate the use of this strategy.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 12.1 Static-Equilibrium Problems

INTERPRET Interpret the problem to be sure it's about static equilibrium, and identify the object that you want to keep in equilibrium. Next, identify all the forces acting on the object.

DEVELOP Draw a diagram showing the forces acting on your object. Since you've got torques to calculate, it's important to show *where* each force is applied. So don't represent your object as a single dot but show it semirealistically with the force-application points. This is a static-equilibrium problem, so Equations 12.1, $\sum \vec{F}_i = \vec{0}$, and 12.2, $\sum \vec{\tau}_i = \vec{0}$, apply. Develop your solution by choosing a coordinate system that will help resolve the force vectors into components *and* choose its origin at an appropriate pivot point—usually the application point of one of the forces. In some problems the unknown is itself a force; in that case, draw a force vector that you think is appropriate and let the algebra take care of the signs and angles.

EVALUATE At this point the physics is done, and you're ready to evaluate your answer. Begin by writing the two components of Equation 12.1 in your coordinate system. Then evaluate the torques about your chosen origin, and write Equation 12.2 as a single scalar equation showing that the torques sum to zero. Now you've got three equations, and you're ready to solve. Since there are three equations, there will be three unknowns even if you're asked for only one final answer. You can use the equations to eliminate the unknowns you don't want.

ASSESS Assess your solution to see whether it makes sense. Are the numbers reasonable? Do the directions of forces and torques make sense in the context of static equilibrium? What happens in special cases—for example, when a force or mass goes to zero or gets very large, or for special values of angles among the various vectors?

EXAMPLE 12.2

Static Equilibrium: Ladder Safety Worked Example with Variation Problems

A ladder of mass m and length L is leaning against a wall, as shown in Fig. 12.4a (next page). The wall is frictionless, and the coefficient of static friction between ladder and ground is μ . Find an expression for the minimum angle ϕ at which the ladder can lean without slipping.

INTERPRET This problem is about static equilibrium, and the ladder is the object we want to keep in equilibrium. We identify four forces acting on the ladder: gravity, normal forces from the floor and wall, and static friction from the ground.

DEVELOP Figure 12.4b shows the four forces and the unknown angle ϕ . We'll get the minimum angle when static friction is greatest: $f_s = \mu n_1$. Since we're dealing with static equilibrium, Equations 12.1 and 12.2 apply. In a horizontal/vertical coordinate system, Equation 12.1 has the two components:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Force, } x: \quad & \mu n_1 - n_2 = 0 \\ \text{Force, } y: \quad & n_1 - mg = 0\end{aligned}$$

Now for the torques: If we choose the bottom of the ladder as the pivot, we eliminate two forces from the torque equation. That leaves

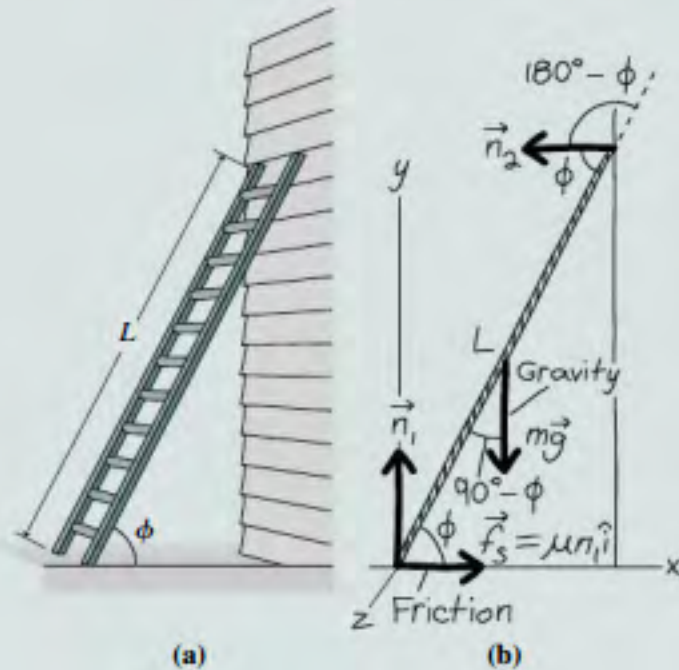


FIGURE 12.4 (a) At what angle will the ladder slip? (b) Our sketch.

only the gravitational torque and the torque due to the wall's normal force; both involve the unknown angle ϕ . The gravitational torque is into the page, or the negative z -direction, so it's given by $\tau_g = -(L/2)mg \sin(90^\circ - \phi) = -(L/2)mg \cos \phi$. The torque due to the wall is out of the page: $\tau_w = Ln_2 \sin(180^\circ - \phi) = Ln_2 \sin \phi$. We used two trig identities here: $\sin(90^\circ - \phi) = \cos \phi$ and $\sin(180^\circ - \phi) = \sin \phi$. Then Equation 12.2 becomes

$$\text{Torque:} \quad Ln_2 \sin \phi - \frac{L}{2} mg \cos \phi = 0$$

EVALUATE We have three unknowns: n_1 , n_2 , and ϕ . The y -component of the force equation gives $n_1 = mg$, showing that the ground supports the ladder's weight. Using this result in the x -component of the force equation gives $n_2 = \mu mg$. Then the torque equation becomes $\mu mgL \sin \phi - (L/2)mg \cos \phi = 0$. The term mgL cancels, giving $\mu \sin \phi - \frac{1}{2} \cos \phi = 0$. We solve for the unknown angle ϕ by forming its tangent:

$$\tan \phi = \frac{\sin \phi}{\cos \phi} = \frac{1}{2\mu}$$

ASSESS Make sense? The larger the frictional coefficient, the more horizontal force holding the ladder in place, and the smaller the angle at which it can safely lean. On the other hand, a very small frictional coefficient makes for a very large tangent—meaning the angle approaches 90° . With no friction, you could stand the ladder only if it were strictly vertical. A word of caution: We worked this example with no one on the ladder. With the extra weight of a person, especially near the top, the minimum safe angle will be a lot larger. Problem 35 explores this situation.



WATCH THAT ANGLE! Just because there's an angle marked in a diagram doesn't necessarily mean that's the angle whose sine you use in calculating torques. In Example 12.2, for instance, the angle ϕ isn't the angle between any of the vector pairs $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$. As Fig. 12.4b shows, in fact, one of those angles is $90^\circ - \phi$ and the other is $180^\circ - \phi$. Trig identities let us write the appropriate sine in terms of ϕ . In the case of the gravitational torques, that gives $\cos \phi$, while for the torque associated with the wall force, it gives $\sin \phi$. So don't assume that just because you have an angle, it's the one whose sine goes into calculating the torque!

EXAMPLE 12.3 Static Equilibrium: In the Body

Figure 12.5a shows a human arm holding a pumpkin, with masses and distances marked. Find the magnitudes of the biceps tension and the contact force at the elbow joint.

INTERPRET This problem is about static equilibrium, with the arm and pumpkin together being the object in equilibrium. We identify four forces: the weights of the arm and the pumpkin, the biceps tension, and the contact force at the elbow.

DEVELOP Figure 12.5b shows the four forces, including the elbow contact force $\vec{F}_c$, whose exact direction we don't know. We can read the horizontal and vertical components of Equation 12.1, the force balance equation, from the diagram:

$$\text{Force, } x: \quad F_{cx} - T \cos \theta = 0$$

$$\text{Force, } y: \quad T \sin \theta - F_{cy} - mg - Mg = 0$$

Choosing the elbow as the pivot eliminates the contact force from the torque equation, giving

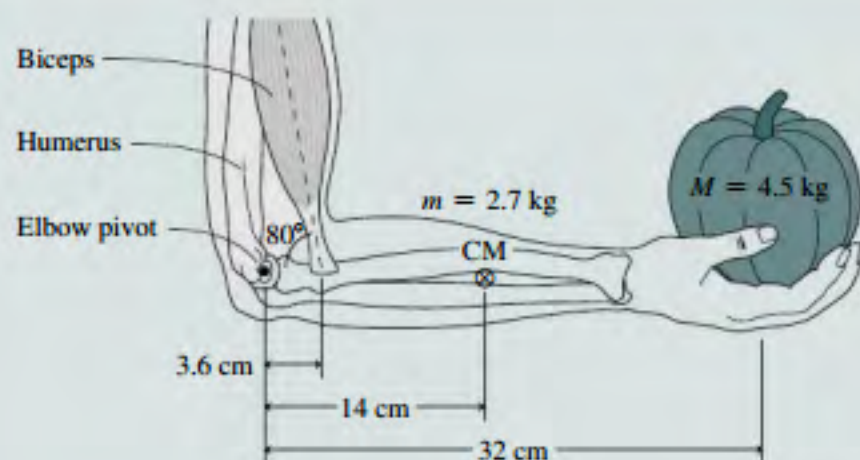
$$\text{Torque:} \quad x_1 T \sin \theta - x_2 mg - x_3 Mg = 0$$

where the x values are the coordinates of the three force-application points.

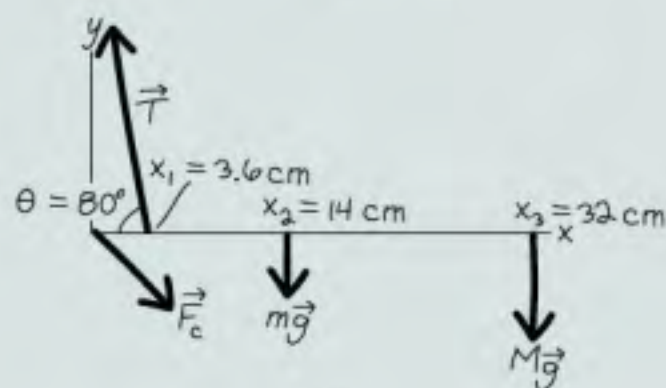
EVALUATE We begin by solving the torque equation for the biceps tension:

$$T = \frac{(x_2 m + x_3 M)g}{x_1 \sin \theta} = 500 \text{ N}$$

(continued)



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 12.5 (a) Holding a pumpkin. (b) Our sketch.

where we used the values in Fig. 12.5 to evaluate the numerical answer. The force equations then give the components of the elbow contact force:

$$F_{cx} = T \cos \theta = 87 \text{ N} \quad \text{and} \quad F_{cy} = T \sin \theta - (m + M)g = 420 \text{ N}$$

The magnitude of the contact force at the elbow then becomes

$$F_c = \sqrt{87^2 + 420^2} \text{ N} = 430 \text{ N}.$$

ASSESS These answers may seem huge—both the biceps tension and the elbow contact force are roughly 10 times the weight of the pumpkin, on the order of 100 pounds. But that's because the biceps muscle is attached so close to the elbow; given this small lever arm, it takes a large force to balance the torque from the weight of pumpkin and arm. This example shows that the human body routinely experiences forces substantially greater than the weights of objects it's lifting.

GOT IT?

12.3 The figure shows a person in static equilibrium leaning against a wall. Which of the following must be true? (a) There must be a frictional force at the wall but not necessarily at the floor. (b) There must be a frictional force at the floor but not necessarily at the wall. (c) There must be frictional forces at both floor and wall.

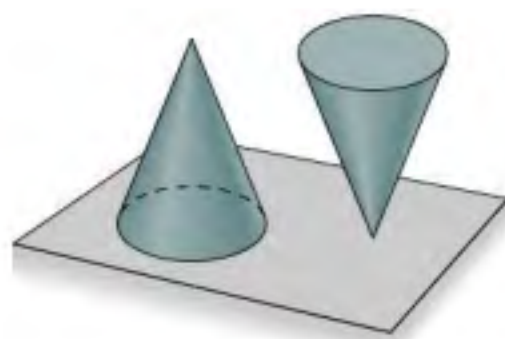


FIGURE 12.6 Stable (left) and unstable (right) equilibria.

12.4 Stability

LO 12.4 Distinguish stable from unstable equilibria.

If a body is disturbed from equilibrium, it generally experiences nonzero torques or forces that cause it to accelerate. Figure 12.6 shows two very different possibilities for the subsequent motion of two cones initially in equilibrium. Tip the cone on the left slightly, and a torque develops that brings it quickly back to equilibrium. Tip the cone on the right, and over it goes. The torque arising from even a slight displacement swings the cone permanently away from its original equilibrium. The former situation is an example of **stable equilibrium**, the latter of **unstable equilibrium**. Nearly all the equilibria we encounter in nature are stable, since a body in unstable equilibrium won't remain so. The slightest disturbance will set it in motion, bringing it to a very different equilibrium state.

APPLICATION Vehicle Stability Control

When a car or other vehicle rounds a curve, the force of static friction between road and wheels provides the centripetal acceleration that keeps the car in its circular path. These frictional forces act at the road, and so they exert a torque that tends to rotate the vehicle about its center of gravity (see drawing). The effect is to increase the normal force on the wheels at the outside of the turn and decrease it on the wheels at the inside of the turn. In extreme cases, the inside wheels may leave the road—a condition that can rapidly worsen and lead to a rollover.

Consider the case of a vehicle whose inside wheels are just about to leave the road, so there's neither a normal force nor a frictional force on the wheels at the inside of the turn. Applying Newton's second law to the remaining forces (see the drawing) gives $f = mv^2/r$ in the horizontal direction and $n = mg$ in the vertical direction. Meanwhile, the torques associated with these two forces are fh and $nt/2$, where h is the height of the center of gravity above the road and t is the width between the wheels. The drawing shows that these torques are in opposite directions; setting the net torque to zero and substituting for the two forces then gives the **rollover condition**:

$$\frac{v^2}{rg} = \frac{t}{2h}$$

The term on the right depends only on the geometry of the vehicle (including how it's loaded with passengers and cargo), and is called the *static stability factor* (SSF). The equation shows that if v^2/rg exceeds the SSF, the vehicle's inner tires will leave the road, setting the stage for a rollover. The equation also shows that the wider the tire spacing t , the higher the SSF and the more stable the vehicle. But the higher the center of gravity, as given by h , the lower the SSF and the less stable the vehicle. That's why SUVs and vans have had high rates of rollover accidents—among the most serious of single-vehicle accidents.

Today's cars and SUVs increasingly include electronic stability control systems (ECS), which monitor speed, tilt angle, and steering wheel position and apply brakes to individual wheels so as to prevent rollover; ECS may also throttle back the engine as needed. Studies show that ECS can reduce SUV accidents by two-thirds and fatal rollovers by as much as 80%. Extensive use of ECS in recent SUVs has actually made late-model SUVs less likely to experience rollover than non-ECS cars.

Our simple analysis doesn't take into account factors like the vehicle's suspension and the deformation of its tires—both of which can exacerbate rollover danger by allowing the vehicle to tilt even before its tires leave the road.

But wait! A vehicle rounding a curve is hardly in static equilibrium; after all, it's both moving and, more importantly, accelerating. But our analysis nevertheless applies, provided we recognize that the nonzero net force means we can no longer conclude that zero torque about one point implies zero torque about all other points. In this case, though, rotation tends to begin about the center of gravity, so our analysis involving that point is what's relevant here.

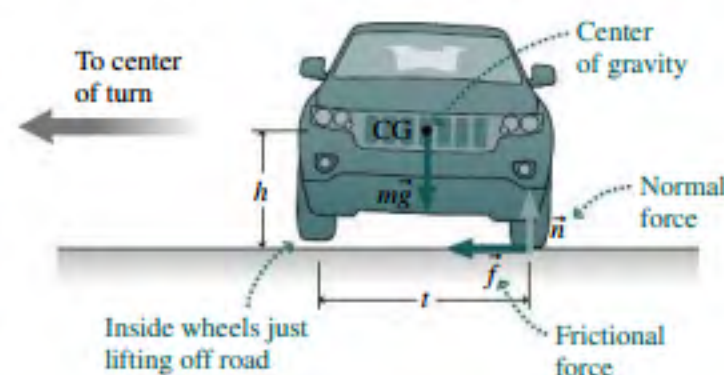


Figure 12.7 shows a ball in four different equilibrium situations. Situation (a) is stable and (b) is unstable. Situation (c) is neither stable nor unstable; it's called **neutrally stable**. But what about (d)? For small disturbances, the ball will return to its original state, so the equilibrium is stable. But for larger disturbances—large enough to push the ball over the highest points on the hill—it's unstable. Such an equilibrium is **conditionally stable** or **metastable**.

A system disturbed from stable equilibrium can take a while to return to equilibrium. In Fig. 12.7a, for example, displacing the ball results in its rolling back and forth. Eventually friction dissipates its energy, and it comes to rest at equilibrium. Back-and-forth motion is common to many systems—from nuclei and atoms to skyscrapers and bridges—that are displaced from stable equilibrium. Such motion is the topic of the next chapter.

Stability is closely associated with potential energy. Because gravitational potential energy is directly proportional to height, the shapes of the hills and valleys in Fig. 12.7 are in fact potential-energy curves. In all cases of equilibrium, the ball is at a minimum or maximum of the potential-energy curve—at a place where the force (i.e., the derivative of potential energy with respect to position) is zero. For the stable and metastable equilibria, the potential energy at equilibrium is a local minimum. A deviation from equilibrium requires that work be done against the force that tends to restore the ball to equilibrium. The unstable equilibrium, in contrast, occurs at a maximum in potential energy. Here, a deviation from equilibrium results in lower potential energy and in a force that accelerates the ball farther from equilibrium. For the neutrally stable equilibrium, there's no change in potential energy as the ball moves; consequently it experiences no force. Figure 12.8 gives another example of equilibria in the context of potential energy.

We can sum up our understanding of equilibrium and potential energy in two simple mathematical statements. First, the force must be zero; that requires a local maximum or minimum in potential energy:

$$\frac{dU}{dx} = 0 \quad (\text{equilibrium condition}) \quad (12.3)$$

where U is the potential energy of a system and x is a variable describing the system's configuration. For the simple systems we've been considering, x measures the position or

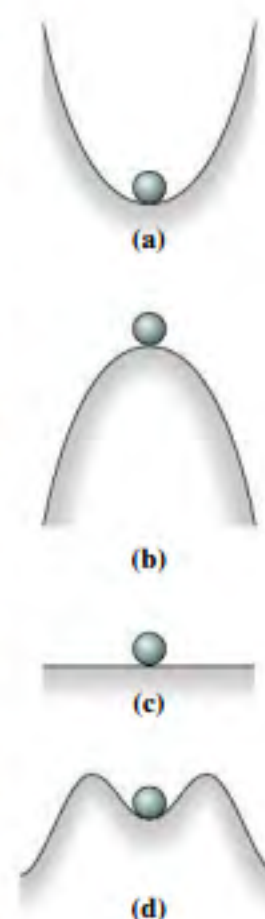


FIGURE 12.7 (a) Stable, (b) unstable, (c) neutrally stable, and (d) metastable equilibria.

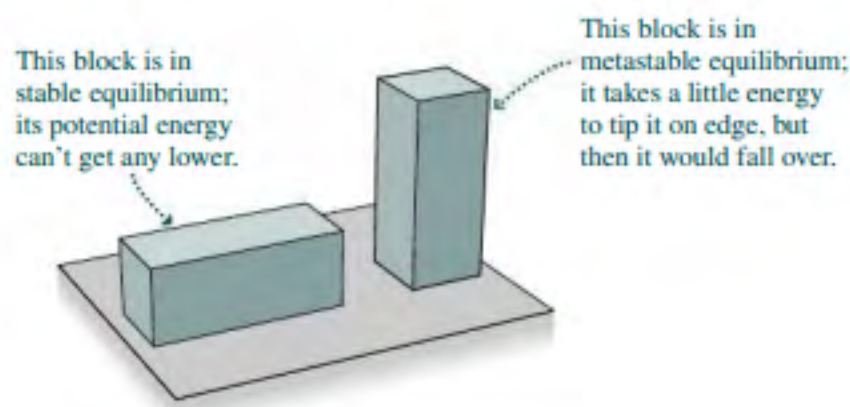


FIGURE 12.8 Identical blocks in stable and metastable equilibria.

orientation of an object, but for more complicated systems, it could be another quantity such as the system's volume or even its composition. For a stable equilibrium, we require a local minimum, so the potential-energy curve is concave upward. (See Tactics 12.1 to review the relevant calculus.) Mathematically,

$$\frac{d^2U}{dx^2} > 0 \quad (\text{stable equilibrium}) \quad (12.4)$$

This condition applies to metastable equilibria as well because they're *locally* stable. In contrast, unstable equilibrium occurs where the potential energy has a local maximum, or

$$\frac{d^2U}{dx^2} < 0 \quad (\text{unstable equilibrium}) \quad (12.5)$$

The intermediate case $d^2U/dx^2 = 0$ corresponds to neutral stability.

Tactics 12.1 FINDING MAXIMA AND MINIMA

1. Begin by sketching a plot of the function, which will give a visual check for your numerical answers.
2. Next, take the function's first derivative and set it to zero. As Fig. 12.7 suggests, a hill (maximum) or valley (minimum) is level right at its top or bottom. So by setting the first derivative to zero, you're requiring that its slope be zero and therefore requiring the function to be at a maximum or minimum.
3. Find the sign of the function's second derivative at the points where you found the first derivative is zero. Your sketch should show this; where the curve is concave upward, as in Figs. 12.7a and d, the second derivative is positive and the point is a minimum. Where it's concave downward, as in Fig. 12.7b, d^2U/dx^2 is negative and you've got a maximum. If it wasn't obvious how to sketch the function, you can use calculus to determine the second derivative and then find its sign at the equilibrium points.
4. Check that the values you found for maxima and minima agree with your plot of the function.

EXAMPLE 12.4

Stability Analysis: Semiconductor Engineering

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Physicists develop a new semiconductor device in which the potential energy associated with an electron's being at position x is given by $U(x) = ax^2 - bx^4$, where x is in nm, U is the potential energy in aJ (10^{-18} J), and constants a and b are 8 aJ/nm^2 and 1 aJ/nm^4 , respectively. Find the equilibrium positions for the electron, and describe their stability.

INTERPRET This problem is about stability in the context of a given potential-energy function. We're interested in the electron, and we're asked to find the values of x where it's in equilibrium and then examine their stability.

DEVELOP The potential-energy curve gives us insight into this problem, so we've drawn it by plotting the function $U(x)$ in Fig. 12.9. Equation 12.3, $dU/dx = 0$, determines the equilibria, while Equations 12.4, $d^2U/dx^2 > 0$, and 12.5, $d^2U/dx^2 < 0$, determine the stability. Our plan is first to find the equilibrium positions using Equation 12.3 and then to examine their stability.

EVALUATE Equation 12.3 states that equilibria occur where the potential energy has a maximum or minimum—that is, where its derivative is zero. Taking the derivative of U and setting it to zero gives

$$0 = \frac{dU}{dx} = 2ax - 4bx^3 = 2x(a - 2bx^2)$$

This equation has solutions when $x = 0$ and when $a = 2bx^2$ or $x = \pm\sqrt{a/2b} = \pm 2 \text{ nm}$. We could take second derivatives to

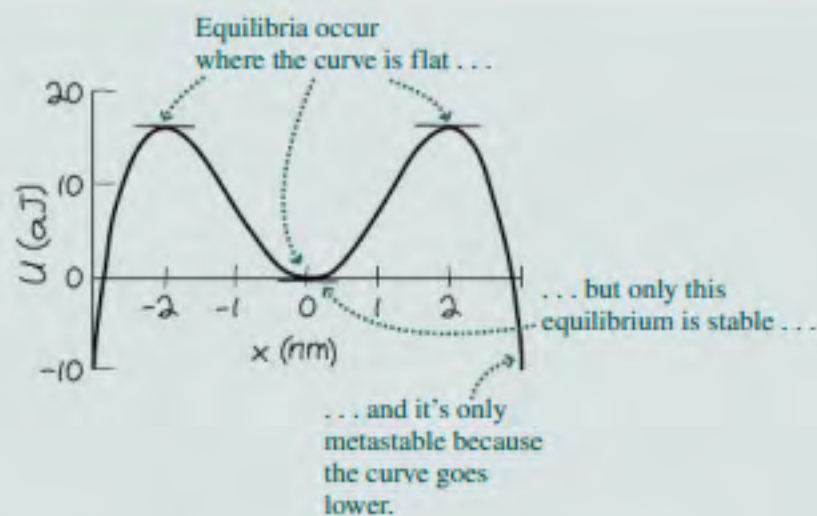


FIGURE 12.9 Our sketch of the potential-energy curve for Example 12.4.

evaluate the stability, but the situation is evident from our plot: $x = 0$ lies at a local minimum of the potential-energy curve, so this equilibrium is metastable. The other two equilibria, at maxima of U , are unstable.

ASSESS Do our numerical answers make sense? Yes: The potential-energy curve has zero slope at the points $x = -2 \text{ nm}$, $x = 0$, and $x = 2 \text{ nm}$, so we've found all the equilibria. Note that the equilibrium at $x = 0$ is only metastable; given enough energy, an electron disturbed from this position could make it all the way over the peaks and never return to $x = 0$.

Stability considerations apply to the overall arrangements of matter. A mixture of hydrogen and oxygen, for example, is in metastable equilibrium at room temperature. Lighting a match puts some atoms over the maxima in their potential-energy curves, at which point they rearrange into a state of lower potential energy—the state we call H_2O . Similarly, a uranium nucleus is at a local minimum of its potential-energy curve, and a little excess energy can result in its splitting into two smaller nuclei whose total potential energy is much lower. That transition from a less stable to a more stable equilibrium describes the basic physics of nuclear fission.

Potential-energy curves for complex structures like molecules or skyscrapers can't be described fully with one-dimensional graphs. If potential energy varies in different ways when the structure is altered in different directions, then in order to determine stability we need to consider all possible ways potential energy might vary. For example, a snowball sitting on a mountain pass—or any other system with a saddle-shaped potential-energy curve—is stable against displacements in one direction but not another (Fig. 12.10). Stability analysis of complex physical systems, ranging from nuclei and molecules to bridges and buildings and machinery, and on to stars and galaxies, is an important part of contemporary work in engineering and science.

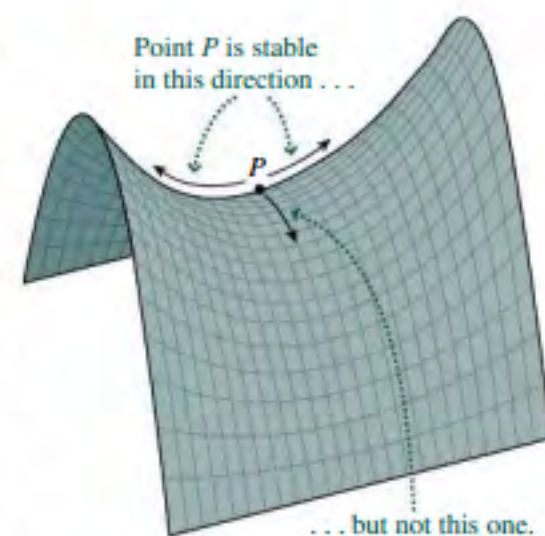
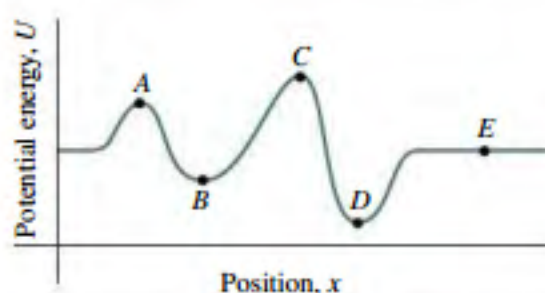


FIGURE 12.10 Equilibrium on a saddle-shaped potential-energy curve.

GOT IT?

12.4 Which of the labeled points in the figure are stable, metastable, unstable, or neutrally stable equilibria?

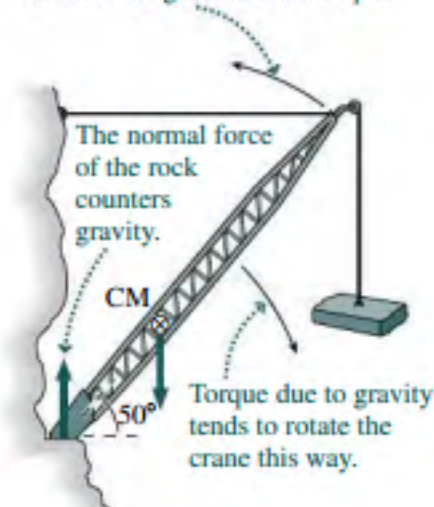


Chapter 12 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is **static equilibrium**—the state in which a system at rest remains at rest because there's no net force to accelerate it and no net torque to start it rotating. An equilibrium is stable if a disturbance of the system results in its returning to the original equilibrium state.

Torque due to the horizontal cable counters the gravitational torque.



Key Concepts and Equations

Static equilibrium requires that there be no net force and no net torque on a system; mathematically:

$$\sum \vec{F}_i = \vec{0}$$

and

$$\sum \vec{\tau}_i = \sum (\vec{r}_i \times \vec{F}_i) = \vec{0}$$

where the sums include all the forces applied to the system. Solving an equilibrium problem involves identifying all the forces $\vec{F}_i$ acting on the system, choosing an appropriate origin about which to evaluate the torques, and requiring that forces and torques sum to zero.

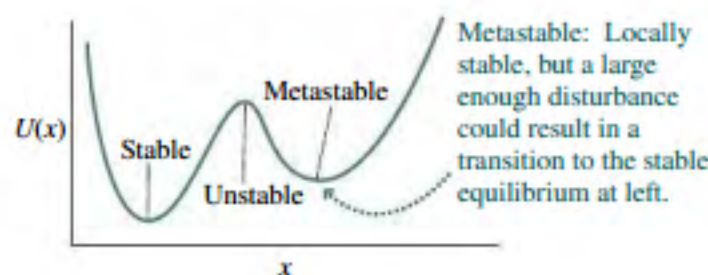
Equilibria occur where a system's potential energy $U(x)$ has a maximum or a minimum:

$$\frac{dU}{dx} = 0 \quad (\text{equilibrium condition})$$

$$\frac{d^2U}{dx^2} > 0 \quad (\text{stable equilibrium})$$

$$\frac{d^2U}{dx^2} < 0 \quad (\text{unstable equilibrium})$$

Stable equilibria occur at minima of U and unstable equilibria at maxima.



Applications

The **center of gravity** of a system is the point where the force of gravity appears to act. When the gravitational field is uniform over the system, the center of gravity coincides with the center of mass. This provides a handy way to locate the center of mass.

Suspend the object from any point; the CM lies somewhere directly below.



The same is true for any other point, so the CM is where the lines cross.

Four different types of equilibrium are **stable**, **unstable**, **neutrally stable**, and **metastable**.

The lowest point in a valley is stable.



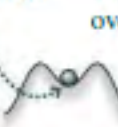
The highest point on a hill is unstable.



A level surface is neutrally stable.



This point is metastable.



Note that the hill goes lower over here.

Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 12.1** Describe quantitatively the conditions for static equilibrium.
For Thought and Discussion Question 12.1; Exercises 12.10, 12.11, 12.12; Problem 12.57
- LO 12.2** Locate the center of gravity of a system and calculate gravitational torques.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 12.2, 12.3, 12.4, 12.9; Exercises 12.13, 12.14, 12.15; Problem 12.65
- LO 12.3** Solve problems involving static equilibrium.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 12.5, 12.6, 12.7;
- Exercises 12.16, 12.17, 12.18, 12.19; Problems 12.30, 12.31, 12.32, 12.33, 12.34, 12.35, 12.36, 12.37, 12.38, 12.39, 12.40, 12.42, 12.46, 12.47, 12.48, 12.51, 12.52, 12.53, 12.58, 12.59, 12.60, 12.61, 12.62, 12.63, 12.64, 12.66*
- LO 12.4** Distinguish stable from unstable equilibria.
For Thought and Discussion Question 12.8; Exercises 12.20, 12.21; Problems 12.41, 12.43, 12.44, 12.45, 12.49, 12.50, 12.54, 12.55, 12.56, 12.67

For Thought and Discussion

- Give an example of an object on which the net force is zero, but that isn't in static equilibrium.
- The best way to lift a heavy weight is to squat with your back vertical, rather than to lean over. Why?
- Pregnant women often assume a posture with their shoulders held far back from their normal position. Why?
- Why is a half-filled tumbler more stable than an empty one or a completely filled one?
- Is a ladder more likely to slip when you stand near the top or the bottom? Explain.
- Why does an acrobat in a circus carry a long pole in his hands while walking on a tightrope?
- If you take the pivot point at the application point of one force in a static-equilibrium problem, that force doesn't enter the torque equation. Does that make the force irrelevant to the problem? Explain.
- A short dog and a tall person are standing on a slope. If the slope angle increases, which will fall over first? Why?
- A stiltwalker is standing motionless on one stilt. What can you say about the location of the stiltwalker's center of mass?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 12.1 Conditions for Equilibrium

- A body is subject to three forces: $\vec{F}_1 = 2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j}$ N, applied at the point $x = 3$ m, $y = 0$ m; $\vec{F}_2 = -5\hat{i} - 7\hat{j}$ N, applied at the point $x = -1$ m, $y = 2$ m; and $\vec{F}_3 = 3\hat{i} + 4\hat{j}$ N, applied at the point $x = -2$ m, $y = 6$ m. Show that (a) the net force and (b) the net torque about the origin are both zero.
- To demonstrate that the choice of pivot point doesn't matter, show that the torques in Exercise 10 sum to zero when evaluated about the points $(3$ m, 4 m) and $(1$ m, -3 m).
- In Fig. 12.11 the forces shown all have the same magnitude F . For each case shown, is it possible to place a third force so as to meet both conditions for static equilibrium? If so, specify the force and a suitable application point. If not, why not?

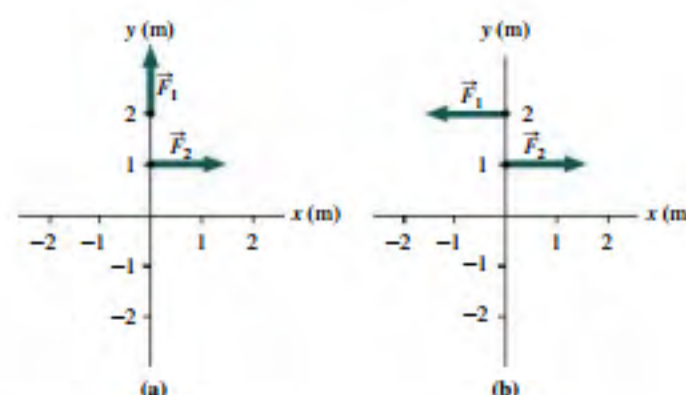


FIGURE 12.11 Exercise 12

Section 12.2 Center of Gravity

- Figure 12.12a shows a thin, uniform square plate of mass m and side L . The plate is in a vertical plane. Find the magnitude of the gravitational torque on the plate about each of the three points shown.

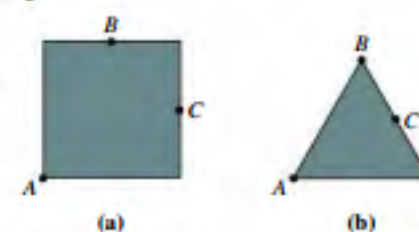


FIGURE 12.12 Exercises 13 and 14

- Repeat the preceding problem for the equilateral triangle in Fig. 12.12b, which has side L .
- A 23-m-long log of irregular cross section lies horizontally, supported by a wall at one end and a cable attached 4.0 m from the other end, as shown in Fig. 12.13. The log weighs 8.3 kN and the tension in the cable is 6.1 kN. Find the log's center of gravity.

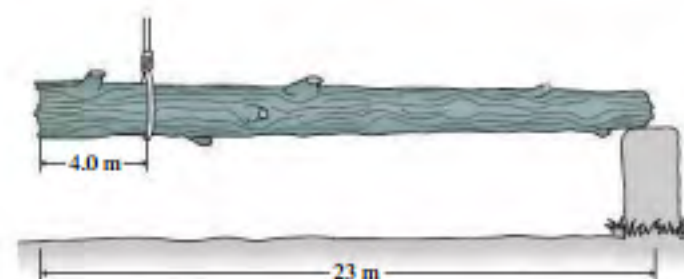


FIGURE 12.13 Exercise 15

Section 12.3 Examples of Static Equilibrium

16. A 70-kg uniform board 2.8 m long is supported by a pivot 110 cm from the left end and by a scale at the right end (Fig. 12.14). How far from the left end should a 30-kg child sit for the scale to read zero?



FIGURE 12.14 Exercises 16 and 17

17. Where should the child in Fig. 12.14 sit if the scale is to read (a) 90 N and (b) 220 N?
18. A 4.2-m-long beam is supported by a cable at its center. A 65-kg steelworker stands at one end of the beam. Where should a 190-kg bucket of concrete be suspended for the beam to be in static equilibrium?
19. Figure 12.15 shows how a scale with a capacity of only 250 N can be used to weigh a heavier person. The 3.4-kg board is 3.0 m long and has uniform density. It's free to pivot about the end farthest from the scale. Assume that the beam remains essentially horizontal. What's the weight of the person shown squatting 1.2 m from the pivot end if the scale reads 210 N?

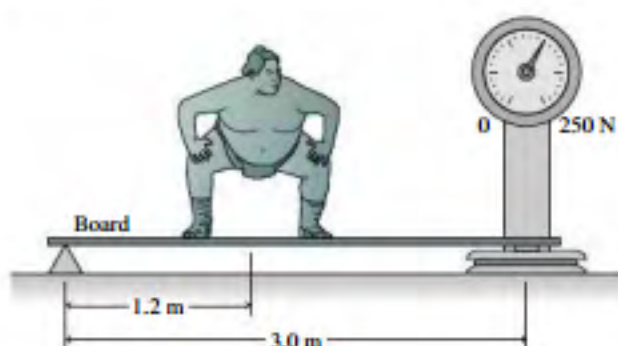


FIGURE 12.15 Exercise 19

Section 12.4 Stability

20. A portion of a roller-coaster track is described by the equation $h = 0.65x - 1.3 \times 10^{-2}x^2$, where h and x are the height and horizontal position in meters. (a) Find a point where the roller-coaster car could be in static equilibrium on this track. (b) Is this equilibrium stable or unstable?
21. The potential energy associated with a particle at position x is given by $U = 2x^3 - 2x^2 - 7x + 10$, with x in meters and U in joules. Find the positions of any stable and unstable equilibria.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two worked examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

22. **Example 12.2:** A construction worker leans a uniform board against a frictionless wall. Its bottom end rests on a concrete driveway where the coefficient of friction between board and

driveway is 0.483. What's the minimum angle the board can make with the horizontal if it's not to slip?

23. **Example 12.2:** A 4.00-m, 6.47-kg ladder rests against a wall, inclined at 70.0° to the horizontal. The wall is frictionless, while the coefficient of friction between the bottom of the ladder and the ground is 0.265. How far up the ladder can a person with mass 68.8 kg climb before the ladder starts to slip?
24. **Example 12.2:** Climbers attempting to cross a stream place a 224-kg log against a vertical, frictionless ice cliff, as shown in Fig. 12.16. The center of gravity of the log is one-third of the way along its length, and the frictional coefficient between log and ground is 0.982. Find the lowest value for the angle ϕ for which the log won't slip when a 77.3-kg climber is standing as shown, halfway across the log.
25. **Example 12.2:** Suppose the angle ϕ in Fig. 12.16 is 26° . Will the climber in the preceding problem be able to get to the right-hand end of the log without it slipping? Assume the same log mass and frictional coefficient as in the preceding problem. If your answer is "no," how far along the log can the climber get? If it's "yes," how massive a climber could make it to the log's end?

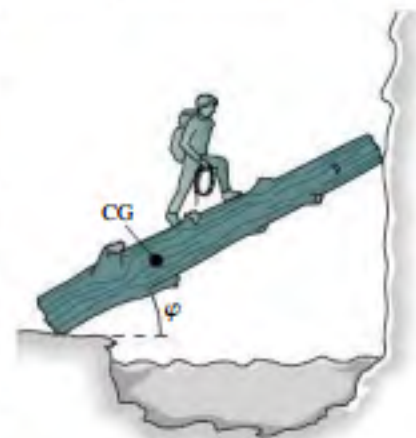


FIGURE 12.16 Problem 24 and 25

26. **Example 12.4:** Consider the potential-energy curve in Example 12.4, but now with $a = -8 \text{ J/nm}^2$ and b unchanged at 1 J/nm^4 . Determine the locations and stability of the corresponding equilibria.
27. **Example 12.4:** With the constant b in Example 12.4 unchanged at $b = 1 \text{ J/nm}^4$, (a) find a value for a that results in unstable equilibria at $x = \pm 3 \text{ nm}$. (b) Is there still a stable equilibrium at $x = 0$?
28. **Example 12.4:** A potential-energy curve is given by $U(x) = \text{COMP} \sin x / (x^2 + 10)$. Use graphical or numerical techniques to find any equilibria between $x = 0$ and $x = 10$, and determine their stability.
29. **Example 12.4:** A potential-energy function in two dimensions is given by $U(x, y) = a(x^2 - y^2)$, where x and y measure position in m and a is a positive constant with the units of J/m^2 . (a) Show that this function has an equilibrium at $x = 0, y = 0$. (b) Is the equilibrium stable against small displacements in the x -direction? What about the y -direction?

Problems

30. You're a highway safety engineer, and you're asked to specify bolt sizes so the traffic signal in Fig. 12.17 won't fall over. The figure indicates the masses and positions of the structure's various parts. The structure is mounted with two bolts, located symmetrically about the vertical member's centerline, as shown. What tension force must the left-hand bolt be capable of withstanding?

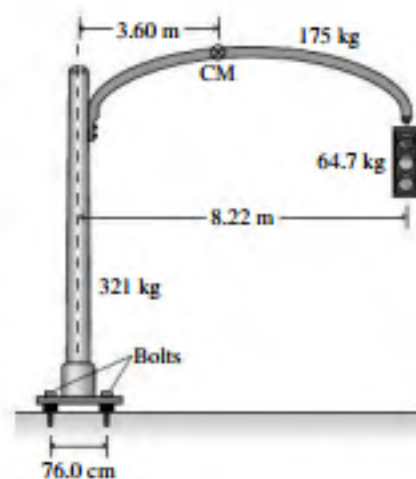


FIGURE 12.17 Problem 30

31. Figure 12.18a shows an outstretched arm with mass 4.2 kg. The arm is 56 cm long, and its center of gravity is 21 cm from the shoulder. The hand at the end of the arm holds a 6.0-kg mass. (a) Find the torque about the shoulder due to the weight of the arm and the 6.0-kg mass. (b) If the arm is held in equilibrium by the deltoid muscle, whose force on the arm acts at 5° below the horizontal at a point 18 cm from the shoulder joint (Fig. 12.18b), what's the force exerted by the muscle?

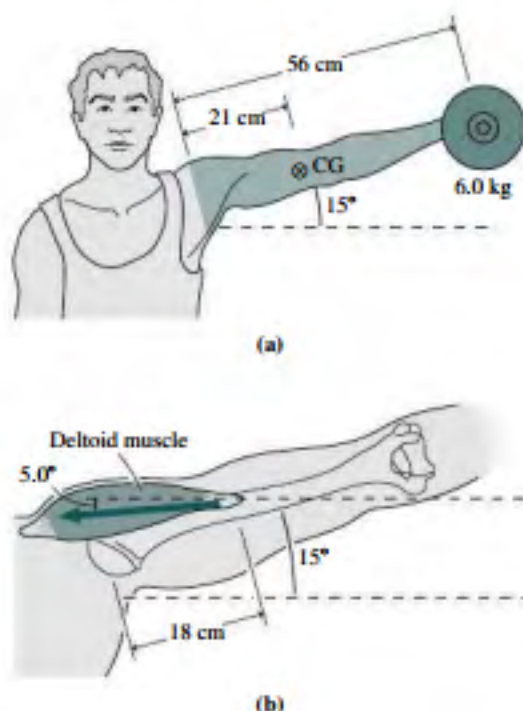


FIGURE 12.18 Problem 31

32. A uniform sphere of radius R is supported by a rope attached to a vertical wall, as shown in Fig. 12.19. The rope joins the sphere at a point where a continuation of the rope would intersect a horizontal line through the sphere's center a distance $\frac{1}{2}R$ beyond the center, as shown. What's the smallest possible value for the coefficient of friction between wall and sphere?
33. CH You work for a garden equipment company, and you're designing a new garden cart. Specifications to be listed include the horizontal force that must be applied to push the fully loaded cart (mass 65 kg, 60-cm-diameter wheels) up an abrupt 8.0-cm step, as shown in Fig. 12.20. What do you specify for the force?



FIGURE 12.19 Problem 32

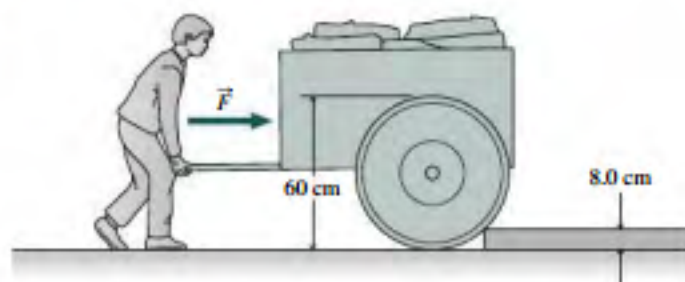


FIGURE 12.20 Problem 33

34. BIO Figure 12.21 shows the foot and lower leg of a person standing on the ball of one foot. Three forces act to maintain this equilibrium: the tension force $\vec{T}$ in the Achilles tendon, the contact force $\vec{F}_c$ at the ankle joint, and the normal force $\vec{n}$ that supports the person's 735-N weight. The application points for these forces are shown in Fig. 12.21. The person's center of gravity is directly above the contact point with the ground, and you can treat the mass of the foot itself as being

negligible. Find the magnitudes of (a) the tension in the Achilles tendon and (b) the contact force at the ankle joint.

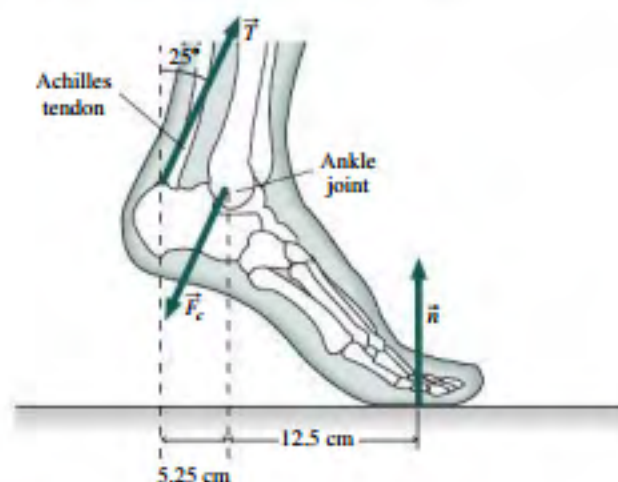


FIGURE 12.21 Problem 34

35. A uniform 5.0-kg ladder is leaning against a frictionless vertical wall, with which it makes a 15° angle. The coefficient of friction between ladder and ground is 0.26. Can a 65-kg person climb to the top of the ladder without it slipping? If not, how high can that person climb? If so, how massive a person would make the ladder slip?
36. The boom in the crane of Fig. 12.22 is free to pivot about point P and is supported by the cable attached halfway along its 18-m length. The cable passes over a pulley and is anchored at the back of the crane. The boom has mass 1750 kg distributed uniformly along its length, and the mass hanging from the boom is 2200 kg. The boom makes a 50° angle with the horizontal. Find the tension in the cable.

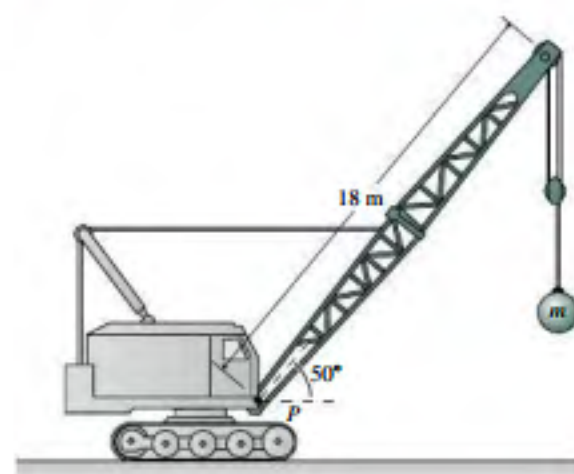


FIGURE 12.22 Problem 36

37. CH A uniform board of length L and weight W is suspended between two vertical walls by ropes of length $L/2$ each. When a weight w is placed on the left end of the board, it assumes the configuration shown in Fig. 12.23. Find the weight w in terms of the board weight W .

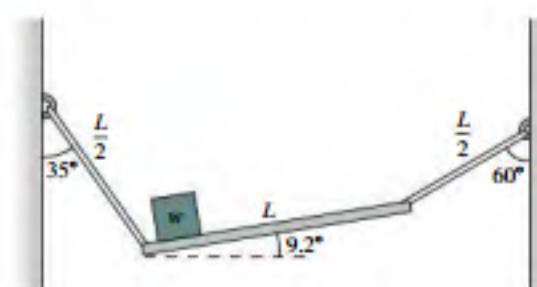


FIGURE 12.23 Problem 37

38. Figure 12.24 shows a 1270-kg car that has slipped over an embankment. People are trying to hold the car in place by pulling on a horizontal rope. The car's bottom is pivoted on the edge of the embankment, and its center of mass lies farther back, as shown. If the car makes a 34° angle with the horizontal, what force must the people apply to hold it in place?

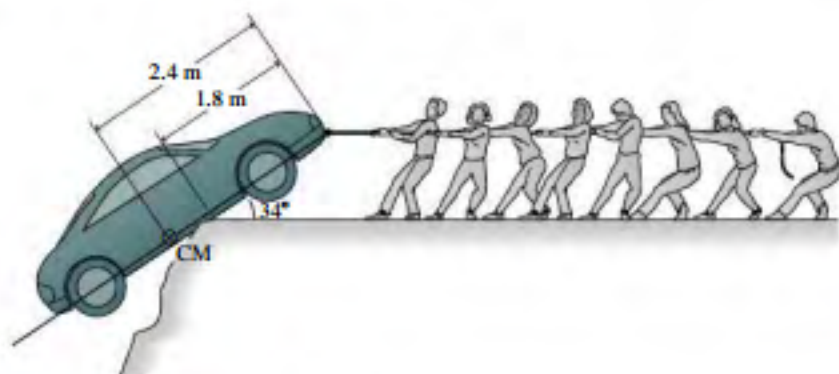


FIGURE 12.24 Problem 38

39. Repeat Example 12.2, now assuming that the coefficient of friction at the ground is μ_1 and at the wall is μ_2 . Show that the minimum angle at which the ladder won't slip is now given by $\phi = \tan^{-1}[(1 - \mu_1\mu_2)/2\mu_1]$. Assume that both frictional forces take their maximum possible values.

40. You are headwaiter at a new restaurant, and your boss asks you to hang a sign for her. You're to hang the sign, whose mass is 51 kg, in the configuration shown in Fig. 12.25. A uniform horizontal rod of mass 8.0 kg and length 2.3 m holds the sign. At one end, the rod is attached to the wall by a pivot; at the other end, it's supported by a cable that can withstand a maximum tension of 755 N. You're to determine the minimum height h above the pivot for anchoring the cable to the wall.



FIGURE 12.25 Problem 40

41. A cylindrical pipe of mass M , length L , and diameter D is standing vertically, resting on one end. In this configuration it's in a metastable equilibrium. Find an expression for the energy needed to bring the pipe to the adjacent unstable equilibrium, from which it can fall into the more stable configuration where it's lying on its side.

42. A crane in a marble quarry is mounted on the quarry's rock walls and is supporting a 2500-kg marble slab as shown in Fig. 12.26. The center of mass of the 830-kg boom is located one-third of the way from the pivot end of its 15-m length, as shown. Find the tension in the horizontal cable that supports the boom.

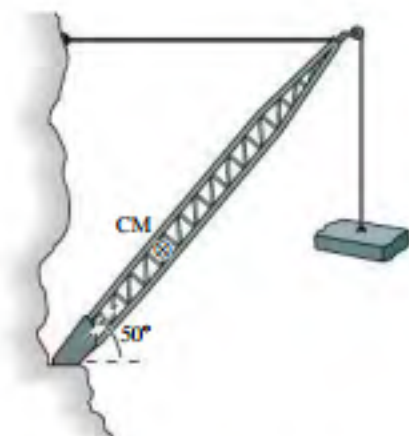


FIGURE 12.26 Problem 42

43. A rectangular block measures $w \times w \times L$, where L is the longer dimension. It's on a horizontal surface, resting on its long side. Use geometrical arguments to find an expression for the angle through which you would have to tilt it in order to put it in an unstable equilibrium, resting on a short edge.
44. The potential energy as a function of position for a particle is given by

$$U(x) = U_0 \left(\frac{x^3}{x_0^3} + a \frac{x^2}{x_0^2} + 4 \frac{x}{x_0} \right)$$

where x_0 and a are constants. For what values of a will there be two static equilibria? Comment on the stability of these equilibria.

45. A rectangular block of mass m measures $w \times w \times L$, where L is the longer dimension. It's on a horizontal surface, resting on its long side, as in the left-hand block in Fig. 12.8. (a) Taking the zero of potential energy when the block is lying on its long side, find an expression for its potential energy as a function of the angle θ that the long dimension of the block makes with the horizontal, starting with $\theta = 0$ in the left-hand configuration of Fig. 12.8 and continuing through the upright position shown at the right ($\theta = 90^\circ$). (b) Use calculus to find the angle θ where your function has a maximum, and check that it agrees with the answer to Problem 43. (c) Use calculus to show that this is a point of unstable equilibrium.

46. A 160-kg highway sign of uniform density is 2.3 m wide and 1.4 m high. At one side it's secured to a pole with a single bolt, mounted a distance d from the top of the sign. The only other place where the sign contacts the pole is at its bottom corner. If the bolt can sustain a horizontal tension of 2.1 kN, what's the maximum permissible value for the distance d ?

47. In Example 12.2, consider the ladder to be wider and, therefore, heavier at the bottom, so its center of mass lies only one-third of the way along its length. Find a new expression for the minimum angle ϕ for which the ladder won't slip.

48. If the biceps and tendon in Example 12.3 can tolerate a maximum tension of 600 N without injury, what's the maximum mass that could replace the pumpkin in that example?

49. A uniform, solid cube of mass m and side s is in stable equilibrium when sitting on a level tabletop. How much energy is required to bring it to an unstable equilibrium where it's resting on its corner?

50. An isosceles triangular block of mass m and height h is in stable equilibrium, resting on its base on a horizontal surface. How much energy does it take to bring it to unstable equilibrium, resting on its apex?

51. You're investigating ladder safety for the Consumer Product Safety Commission. Your test case is a uniform ladder of mass m leaning against a frictionless vertical wall with which it makes an angle θ . The coefficient of static friction at the floor is μ . Your job is to find an expression for the maximum mass of a person who can climb to the top of the ladder without its slipping. With that result, you're to show that *anyone* can climb to the top if $\mu \geq \tan \theta$ but that *no one* can if $\mu < \frac{1}{2} \tan \theta$.

52. A 2.0-m-long rod has density λ in kilograms per meter of length described by $\lambda = a + bx$, where $a = 1.0 \text{ kg/m}$, $b = 2.0 \text{ kg/m}^2$, and x is the distance from the left end of the rod. The rod rests horizontally with each end supported by a scale. What do the two scales read?

53. What horizontal force applied at its highest point is necessary to keep a wheel of mass M from rolling down a slope inclined at angle θ to the horizontal?

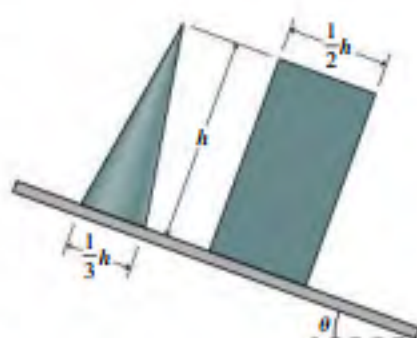


FIGURE 12.27 Problems 54, 55, and 56

54. A rectangular block twice as high as it is wide is resting on a board. The coefficient of static friction between board and incline is 0.46. If the board's inclination angle θ (shown in Fig. 12.27) is gradually increased, will the block first tip over or first begin sliding?
55. What condition on the coefficient of friction in Problem 54 will cause the block to tip before it slides?
56. A uniform solid cone of height h and base diameter $\frac{1}{3}h$ sits on the board of Fig. 12.27. What condition on the coefficient of friction will cause the cone to tip before it slides? (Hint: Start with an integration to find the center of mass.)

57. Prove the statement in Section 12.1 that the choice of pivot point doesn't matter when applying conditions for static equilibrium. Figure 12.28 shows an object on which the net force is assumed to be zero. The net torque about the point O is also zero. Show that the net torque about any other point P is also zero. To do so, write the net torque about P as $\vec{\tau}_P = \sum \vec{r}_{Pi} \times \vec{F}_i$, where the vectors $\vec{r}_{Pi}$ go from P to the force-application points, and the index i labels the different forces. In Fig. 12.28, note that $\vec{r}_{Pi} = \vec{r}_{Oi} + \vec{R}$, where $\vec{R}$ is a vector from P to O . Use this result in your expression for $\vec{\tau}_P$ and apply the distributive law to get two separate sums. Use the assumptions that $\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = \vec{0}$ and $\vec{\tau}_O = \vec{0}$ to argue that both terms are zero. This completes the proof.

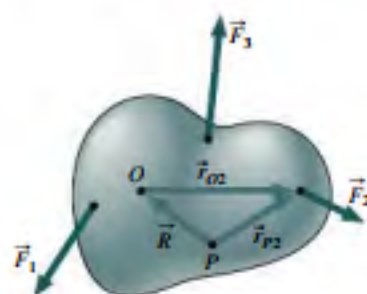


FIGURE 12.28 Problem 57

58. Three identical books of length L are stacked over the edge of a table as shown in Fig. 12.29. The top book overhangs the middle one by $L/2$, so it just barely avoids falling. The middle book overhangs the bottom one by $L/4$. How much of the bottom book can overhang the edge of the table without the books falling?

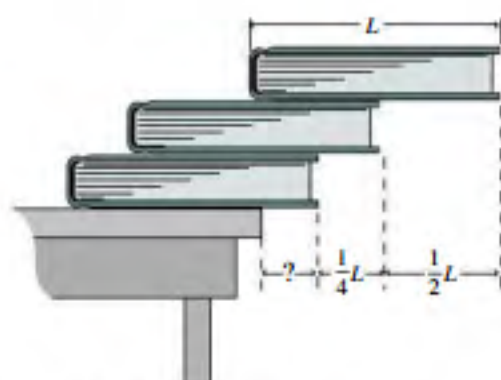


FIGURE 12.29 Problem 58

59. A uniform pole of mass M is at rest on an incline of angle θ secured by a horizontal rope as shown in Fig. 12.30. Find the minimum frictional coefficient that will keep the pole from slipping.

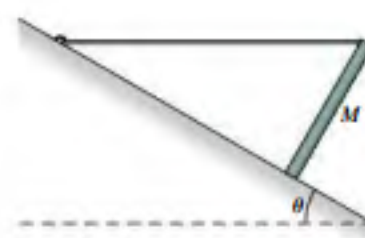


FIGURE 12.30 Problems 59 and 60

60. For what angle does the situation in Problem 59 require the greatest coefficient of friction?

61. Figure 12.31 shows a popular system for mounting bookshelves. An aluminum bracket is mounted on a vertical aluminum support by small tabs inserted into vertical slots. Contact between the bracket and support occurs only at the upper tab and at the bottom of the bracket, 4.5 cm below the upper tab. If each bracket in the shelf system supports 35 kg of books, with the center of gravity 12 cm out from the vertical support, what is the horizontal component of the force exerted on the upper bracket tab?

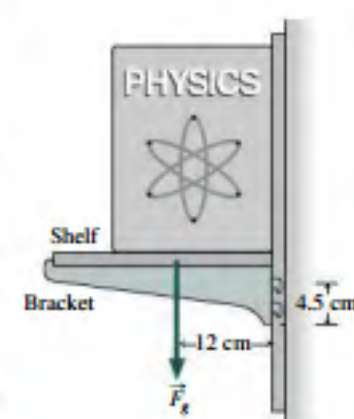


FIGURE 12.31 Problem 61

62. The *nuchal ligament* is a thick, cordlike structure that supports the head and neck in animals like horses. Figure 12.32 shows the nuchal ligament and its attachment points on a horse's skeleton, along with an approximation to the spine as a rigid rod. Centers of mass of head and neck are also shown. If the masses of head and neck are 29 kg and 68 kg, respectively, what's the tension in the nuchal ligament? (Note: Your answer will be an overestimate because muscles also provide support.)

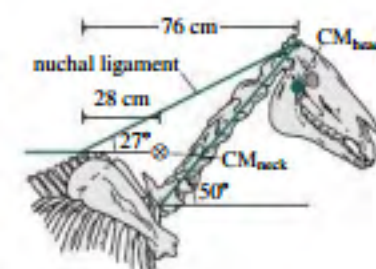


FIGURE 12.32 Problem 62

63. A 3.6-kg plant hangs from the bracket shown in Fig. 12.33. The bracket's mass is 0.65 kg, and its center of mass lies 9.0 cm from the wall. A single screw holds the bracket to the wall, as shown. Find the horizontal tension in the screw. (Hint: Imagine that the bracket is slightly loose and pivoting about its bottom end. Assume the wall is frictionless.)

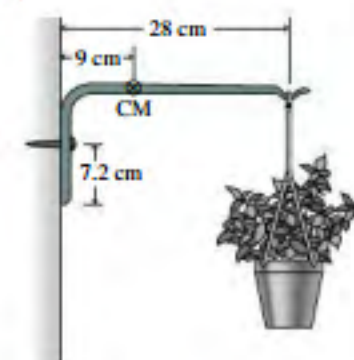


FIGURE 12.33 Problem 63

64. The wheel in Fig. 12.34 has mass M and is weighted with an additional mass m as shown. The coefficient of friction is sufficient to keep the wheel from sliding; however, it might still roll.

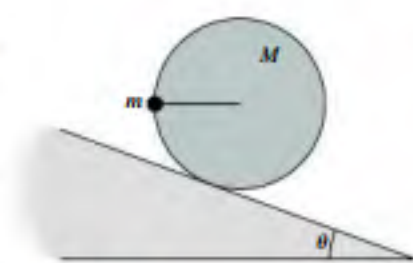


FIGURE 12.34 Problem 64

Show that it won't roll only if $m > \frac{M \sin \theta}{1 - \sin \theta}$.

65. An interstellar spacecraft from an advanced civilization is hovering above Earth, as shown in Fig. 12.35. The ship consists of two pods of mass m separated by a rigid shaft of negligible mass and one Earth radius (R_E) long. Find (a) the magnitude and direction of the net gravitational force on the ship and (b) the net torque about the center of mass. (c) Show that the ship's center of gravity is displaced approximately $0.083R_E$ from its center of mass.



FIGURE 12.35 Problem 65

66. You'll need to study the Application on page 233 to do this problem. An SUV without ECS has $\text{SSF} = 1.06$ with its two passengers on board. (a) Can it successfully negotiate a 70-m-radius turn on a flat road, going at the speed limit of 90 km/h? (b) With its passengers, the SUV's total mass is 2100 kg, and the left-to-right spacing between its tires is 1.63 m. If a 300-kg load of cargo is secured to the roof, with its center of gravity 2.1 m above the road, what's the maximum safe speed on the same road?
67. Engineers designing a new semiconductor device measure the potential energy that results when they move an electron to different positions within their device. The device is one-dimensional, so the positions all lie along a line. The table below gives the resulting data. Plot these data and from your plot, determine the approximate positions of any equilibria and whether such equilibria are stable or unstable.

Position x (nm)	0	3.26	5.85	6.41	7.12	9.37	10.5	12.2	14.0	14.5	15.3	17.2
Potential energy U (aJ)	1.5	0.65	0.30	0.47	0.85	2.7	3.3	2.1	-0.47	-0.86	-0.72	3.2

Passage Problems

You've been hired by your state's environmental agency to monitor carbon dioxide levels just above rivers, with the goal of understanding whether river water acts as a source or sink of CO_2 . You've constructed the apparatus shown in Fig. 12.36, consisting of a boom mounted on a pivot, a vertical support, and a rope with pulley for raising and lowering the boom so its end can extend different distances over the river. In addition, there's a separate rope and pulley for dropping the sampling apparatus so it's just above the river.

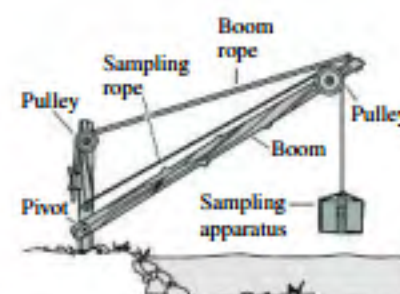


FIGURE 12.36 Passage Problems 68–71

68. When the boom rope is horizontal, it can't exert any vertical force. Therefore,
- it's impossible to hold the boom with the boom rope horizontal.
 - the boom rope tension becomes infinite.
 - the pivot supplies the necessary vertical force.
 - the boom rope exerts no torque.
69. The tension in the boom rope will be greatest when
- the boom is horizontal.
 - the boom rope is horizontal.
 - the boom is vertical.
 - in some orientation other than (a), (b), or (c).
70. If you secure the boom at a fixed angle and lower the sampling apparatus at constant speed, the boom rope tension will
- increase.
 - decrease.
 - remain the same.
 - increase only if the sampling apparatus is more massive than the boom.
71. If you pull the boom rope with constant speed, the angle the boom makes with the horizontal will
- increase at a constant rate.
 - increase at an increasing rate.
 - increase at a decreasing rate.
 - decrease.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Both the net force and the net torque on all parts of the bridge must be zero.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 12.1 Pair C; pair A produces nonzero net force, while pair B produces nonzero net torque
- 12.2 B; It's located directly over the point of contact with the floor, ensuring there's no gravitational torque.
- 12.3 (b) A frictional force at the floor is necessary to balance the normal force from the wall.
- 12.4 D: stable; B: metastable; A and C: unstable; E: neutrally stable

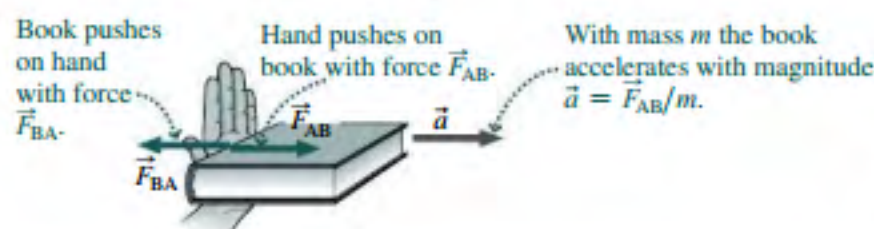
The big idea of Part One is Newton's realization that forces—pushes and pulls—don't cause motion but instead cause *changes* in motion. Newton's second law quantifies this idea. With momentum $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$ as Newton's measure of "quantity of motion," the second law equates the net force on an object to the rate of change of its momentum: $\vec{F} = d\vec{p}/dt$ or, for constant mass, $\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$. The second law encompasses the first law, also called the law of inertia: In the absence of a net force, an object continues in uniform motion, unchanging in speed or direction—a state that includes the special case of being at rest. Newton's third law rounds out the picture, providing a fully consistent description of motion with its statement that forces come in pairs: If object A exerts a force on B, then B exerts a force of equal magnitude but opposite direction on A.

Newton's laws provide a full description of motion.

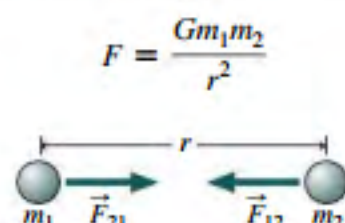
Newton's first law: Force causes a change in motion.

Newton's second law: $\vec{F} = d\vec{p}/dt$ or, for constant mass, $\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$

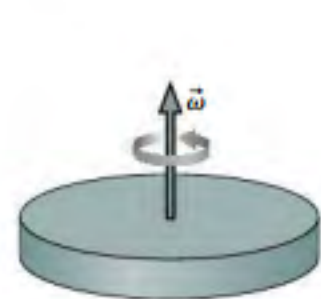
Newton's third law: $\vec{F}_{AB} = -\vec{F}_{BA}$



Universal gravitation describes the attractive force between all matter in the universe.



Rotational motion is described by quantities analogous to those of linear motion.



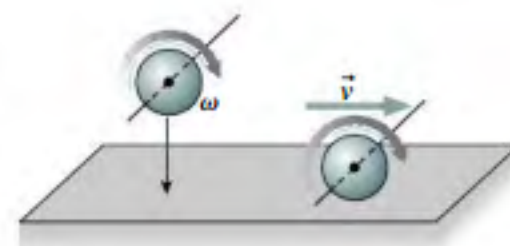
$$\begin{aligned} \vec{v} &\rightarrow \vec{\omega} \\ \vec{a} &\rightarrow \vec{\alpha} \\ \vec{p} &\rightarrow \vec{L} \\ \vec{F} &\rightarrow \vec{\tau} \\ m &\rightarrow I \end{aligned}$$

$$\vec{F} = m\vec{a} \rightarrow \vec{\tau} = I\vec{\alpha}$$

$$K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 \rightarrow K = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$$

Part One Challenge Problem

A solid ball of radius R is set spinning with angular speed ω about a horizontal axis. The ball is then lowered vertically with negligible speed until it just touches a horizontal surface and is released (see figure). If the coefficient of kinetic friction between the ball and the surface is μ , find (a) the linear speed of the ball once it achieves pure rolling motion, (b) the distance it travels before it achieves this motion, and (c) the fraction of the ball's initial rotational kinetic energy that's been lost to friction.



From the concept of force and Newton's laws follow the essential ideas of energy and work, including kinetic and potential energy and the conservation of mechanical energy in the absence of nonconservative forces like friction. One important force is gravity, which Newton described through his law of universal gravitation and applied to explain the motions of the planets. Application of Newton's laws to systems comprising multiple objects gives us the concept of center of mass and lets us describe the interactions of colliding objects. Finally, Newton's laws explain circular and rotational motion, the latter through the analogy between force and torque. That, in turn, gives us the tools needed to determine static equilibrium—the state in which an object at rest remains at rest, subject neither to a net force nor to a net torque.

Energy and work are related concepts; work is a mechanical means of transferring energy.

Work: $W = \vec{F} \cdot \Delta\vec{r}$ or, for a varying

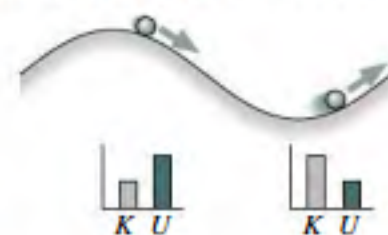
$$\text{force, } W = \int \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}$$

Work-kinetic energy theorem:

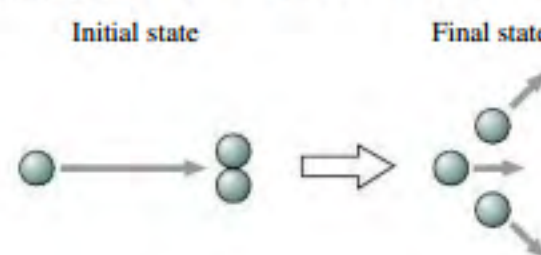
$\Delta K = W$ with kinetic energy

$$K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$$

For conservative forces, energy that gets transferred by doing work is stored as potential energy U . Then $K + U = \text{constant}$.



Momentum is conserved in a system that's not subject to external forces.



Initial momentum = Final momentum

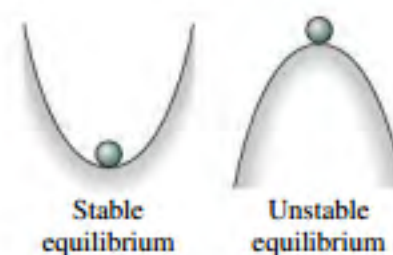
$$\vec{P}_i = \sum m_i \vec{v}_i = m_1 \vec{v}_{1i} \Rightarrow \vec{P}_f = \sum m_f \vec{v}_f = m_1 \vec{v}_{1f} + m_2 \vec{v}_{2f} + m_3 \vec{v}_{3f}$$

A system is in **static equilibrium** when the net force and the net torque on the system are both zero:

$$\vec{F}_{\text{net}} = \vec{0}$$

and

$$\vec{\tau}_{\text{net}} = \vec{0}$$



Oscillations, Waves, and Fluids



High-speed photo shows complex fluid behavior and spreading circular waves on water.

OVERVIEW

A tsunami crashes on shore, dissipating energy that has traveled across thousands of kilometers of open ocean. Near the epicenter of the earthquake that spawned the tsunami, a skyscraper sways in response but suffers no damage thanks to a carefully engineered system that counters quake-induced vibrations. An electric guitar sounds loud during a rock concert, the sound waves following the vibrations of the guitar strings. Inside your smartphone, a tiny quartz crystal undergoes millions of vibrations each second to help time the GPS signals that determine your location. A radar-equipped police officer waits around the next turn in

the highway ready to ticket your speeding car, while astrophysicists use the same principle to measure the expansion of the universe. A rafting party enters a narrow gorge, getting a wild ride as the river's speed increases. A plane cruises far overhead, supported by the force of air on its wings. All these examples involve the collective motion of many particles. In the next three chapters, we first explore the repetitive motion called oscillation and then show how oscillations in many-particle systems lead to wave motion. Finally, we apply the laws of motion to reveal the fascinating and sometimes surprising behavior of fluids like air and water.

Oscillatory Motion

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Newton's second law (Section 4.2)
- Force and energy in springs (Sections 4.6 and 7.2)
- Calculus, including derivatives of trig functions

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 13.1 Characterize oscillatory motion by its amplitude, frequency, and period.
- LO 13.2 State the physical conditions that result in simple harmonic motion.
- LO 13.3 Describe simple harmonic motion quantitatively in a mass-spring system.
- LO 13.4 Describe other simple harmonic motion systems, including torsional oscillators and pendulums.
- LO 13.5 Relate simple harmonic motion to circular motion.
- LO 13.6 Outline energy exchanges in simple harmonic motion.
- LO 13.7 Explain why simple harmonic motion is ubiquitous throughout the universe.
- LO 13.8 Describe the effect of damping on simple harmonic motion.
- LO 13.9 Explain resonance in driven oscillatory systems.



A tiny quartz tuning fork sets the timekeeping of a quartz watch. It oscillates at 32,768 Hz. What does this mean, and why this number?

Displace a system from stable equilibrium, and forces or torques tend to restore that equilibrium. But, like the ball in Fig. 13.1, the system often overshoots its equilibrium and goes into **oscillatory motion** back and forth about equilibrium. In the absence of friction, this oscillation would continue forever; in reality, the system eventually settles into equilibrium.

Oscillatory motion occurs throughout the physical world. A uranium nucleus oscillates before it fissions. Water molecules oscillate to heat the food in a microwave oven. Carbon dioxide molecules in the atmosphere oscillate, absorbing energy and thus contributing to global warming. A watch—whether an old-fashioned mechanical one or a modern quartz timepiece—is a carefully engineered oscillating system. Buildings and bridges undergo oscillatory motion, sometimes with disastrous results. Even stars oscillate. And waves—from sound to ocean waves to seismic waves in the solid Earth—ultimately involve oscillatory motion.

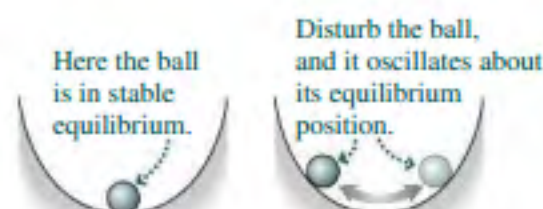


FIGURE 13.1 Disturbing a system results in oscillatory motion.

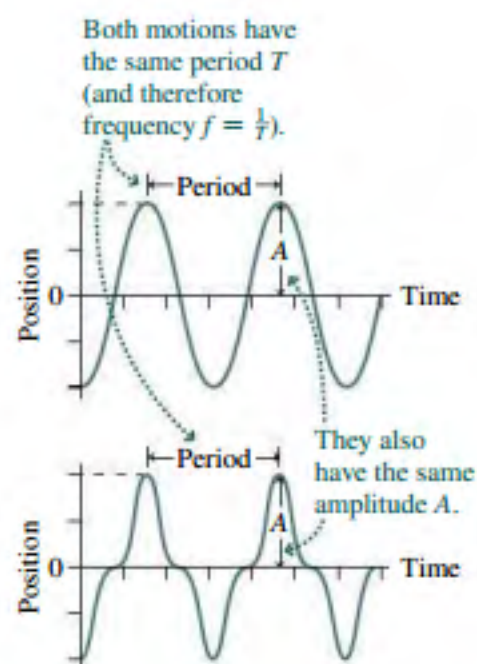


FIGURE 13.2 Position–time graphs for two oscillatory motions with the same amplitude A and period T (and therefore frequency).

Oscillatory motion is universal because systems in stable equilibrium naturally tend to return toward equilibrium when they're displaced. And it's not just the qualitative phenomenon of oscillation that's universal: Remarkably, the mathematical description of oscillatory motion is the same for systems ranging from atoms and molecules to cars and bridges and on to stars and galaxies.

13.1 Describing Oscillatory Motion

LO 13.1 Characterize oscillatory motion by its amplitude, frequency, and period.

Figure 13.2 shows two quantities that characterize oscillatory motion: **Amplitude** is the maximum displacement from equilibrium, and **period** is the time it takes for the motion to repeat itself. Another way to express the time aspect is **frequency**, or number of oscillation cycles per unit time. Frequency f and period T are complementary ways of conveying the same information, and mathematically they're inverses:

$$f = \frac{1}{T} \quad (13.1)$$

The unit of frequency is the **hertz** (Hz), named after the German Heinrich Hertz (1857–1894), who was the first to produce and detect radio waves. One hertz is equal to one oscillation cycle per second.

EXAMPLE 13.1 Amplitude, Period, Frequency: An Oscillatory Distraction

Tired of homework, a student holds one end of a flexible plastic ruler against a desk and idly strikes the other end, setting it into oscillation (Fig. 13.3). The student notes that 28 complete cycles occur in 10 s and that the end of the ruler moves a total distance of 8.0 cm. What are the amplitude, period, and frequency of this oscillatory motion?



FIGURE 13.3 A ruler undergoing oscillatory motion.

INTERPRET We've got a case of oscillatory motion, and we're asked to describe it quantitatively in terms of amplitude, period, and frequency.

DEVELOP We can work from the definitions of these quantities: Amplitude is the maximum displacement from equilibrium, period is the time to complete a full oscillation, and frequency is the inverse of the period (Equation 13.1).

EVALUATE The ruler moves a total of 8.0 cm from one extreme to the other. Since the motion takes it to both sides of its equilibrium position, the amplitude is 4.0 cm. With 28 cycles in 10 s, the time per cycle, or the period, is

$$T = \frac{10 \text{ s}}{28} = 0.36 \text{ s}$$

The frequency is the inverse of the period: $f = 1/T = 1/0.36 \text{ s} = 2.8 \text{ Hz}$. We can also get this directly: 28 cycles/10 s = 2.8 Hz.

ASSESS Make sense? With a period that's less than 1 s, the frequency must be more than 1 cycle per second or 1 Hz. Our definition of amplitude as the maximum displacement from equilibrium led to our 4.0-cm amplitude; the full 8.0 cm between extreme positions is called the **peak-to-peak amplitude**.

Amplitude and frequency don't provide all the details of oscillatory motion, since two quite different motions can have the same frequency and amplitude (Fig. 13.2). The differences reflect the restoring forces that return systems to equilibrium. Remarkably, though, restoring forces in many physical systems have the same mathematical form—a form we encountered before, when we introduced the force of an ideal spring in Chapter 4.

GOT IT?

13.1 A typical human heart rate is about 65 beats per minute. The corresponding period and frequency are (a) period just over 1 s and frequency just under 1 Hz; (b) period just under 1 s and frequency just under 1 Hz; (c) period just under 1 s and frequency just over 1 Hz; or (d) period just over 1 minute and frequency of 70 Hz.

13.2 Simple Harmonic Motion

LO 13.2 State the physical conditions that result in simple harmonic motion.

LO 13.3 Describe simple harmonic motion quantitatively in a mass–spring system.

In many systems, the restoring force that develops when the system is displaced from equilibrium increases approximately in direct proportion to the displacement—meaning that if you displace the system twice as far from equilibrium, the force tending to restore equilibrium becomes twice as great. In the rest of this chapter, we therefore consider the case of a restoring force directly proportional to displacement. This is an approximation for most real systems, but often a very good approximation, especially for small displacements from equilibrium.

The type of motion that results from a restoring force proportional to displacement is called **simple harmonic motion** (SHM). Mathematically, we describe such a force by writing

$$F = -kx \quad (\text{restoring force in SHM}) \quad (13.2)$$

F is the force that tends to restore a system to equilibrium.

k is the spring constant (or analogous quantity for other systems).

SHM results whenever the restoring force is directly proportional to the displacement.

The minus sign shows that *F* is a restoring force, directed opposite the displacement.

x is the displacement from equilibrium.

where *F* is the force, *x* is the displacement, and *k* is a constant of proportionality between them. The minus sign in Equation 13.2 indicates a *restoring* force: If the object is displaced in one direction, the force is in the *opposite* direction, so it tends to restore the equilibrium.

You've seen Equation 13.2 before: It's the force exerted by an ideal spring of spring constant *k*. So a system consisting of a mass attached to a spring undergoes simple harmonic motion (Fig. 13.4). Many other systems—including atoms and molecules—can be modeled as miniature mass–spring systems.

How does a body in simple harmonic motion actually move? We can find out by applying Newton's second law, $F = ma$, to the mass–spring system of Fig. 13.4. Here the force on the mass *m* is $-kx$, so Newton's law becomes $-kx = ma$, where we take the *x*-axis along the direction of motion, with $x = 0$ at the equilibrium position. Now, the acceleration *a* is the second derivative of position, so we can write our Newton's law equation as

$$m \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -kx \quad (\text{Newton's second law for SHM}) \quad (13.3)$$

d^2x/dt^2 is acceleration...

The right-hand side is the net force *F*, given by Equation 13.2.

...so this term is *ma* from Newton's second law.

The solution to this equation is the position *x* as a function of time. What sort of function might it be? We expect periodic motion, so let's try periodic functions like sine and cosine. Suppose we pull the mass in Fig. 13.4 to the right and, at time $t = 0$, release it. Since it starts with a nonzero displacement, cosine is the appropriate function [recall that $\cos(0) = 1$, and $\sin(0) = 0$]. We don't know the amplitude or frequency, so we'll try a form that has two unknown constants:

$$x(t) = A \cos \omega t \quad (13.4)$$

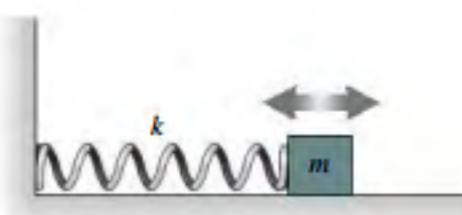
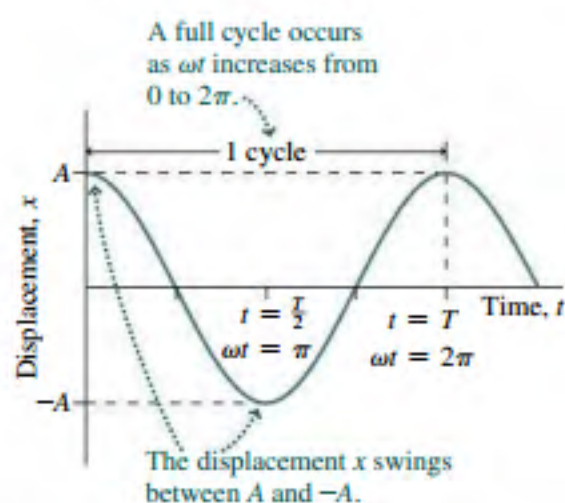


FIGURE 13.4 A mass attached to a spring undergoes simple harmonic motion.

FIGURE 13.5 The function $A \cos \omega t$.**TIP**

WHY RADIANS? Here, as in Chapter 10, we use the angular quantity ω because it provides the simplest mathematical description of the motion. In fact, the relationship between angular frequency and frequency in hertz is the same as Chapter 10's relationship between angular speed in radians per second and in revolutions per second. We'll explore this similarity further in Section 13.4.

Because the cosine function itself varies between $+1$ and -1 , A in Equation 13.4 is the amplitude—the greatest displacement from equilibrium (Fig. 13.5). What about ω ? The cosine function undergoes a full cycle as its argument increases by 2π radians, or 360° , as shown in Fig. 13.5. In Equation 13.4, the argument of the cosine is ωt . Since the time for a full cycle is the period T , the argument ωt must go from 0 to 2π as the time t goes from 0 to T . So we have $\omega T = 2\pi$, or

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} \quad (13.5)$$

The frequency of the motion is then

$$f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} \quad (13.6)$$

Equation 13.6 shows that ω is a measure of the frequency, although it differs from the frequency f by the factor 2π . The quantity ω is called the **angular frequency**, and its units are radians per second or, since radians are dimensionless, simply inverse seconds (s^{-1}).

Writing the displacement x in the form 13.4 doesn't guarantee that we have a solution; we still need to see whether this form satisfies Equation 13.3. With $x(t)$ given by Equation 13.4, its first derivative is

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(A \cos \omega t) = -A\omega \sin \omega t$$

where we've used the chain rule for differentiation (see Appendix A). Then the second derivative is

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right) = \frac{d}{dt}(-A\omega \sin \omega t) = -A\omega^2 \cos \omega t$$

We can now try out our assumed solution for x (Equation 13.4) and its second derivative in Equation 13.3. Substituting $x(t)$ and d^2x/dt^2 in the appropriate places gives

$$m(-A\omega^2 \cos \omega t) \stackrel{?}{=} -k(A \cos \omega t)$$

where the $?$ indicates that we're still trying to find out whether this is indeed an equality. If it is, the equality must hold *for all values of time t* . Why? Because Newton's law holds at all times, and we derived our questionable equality from Newton's law. Fortunately, the time-dependent term $\cos \omega t$ appears on both sides of the equation, so we can cancel it. Also, the amplitude A and the minus sign cancel from the equation, leaving only $m\omega^2 = k$, or

ω is the angular frequency of a mass-spring system, measured in rad/s or simply s^{-1} .

k is the spring constant...

Equations 13.7b and c express this alternatively in terms of frequency f and period T .

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \quad (\text{angular frequency, simple harmonic motion}) \quad (13.7a)$$

...and m is the mass.

Thus, Equation 13.4 is a solution of Equation 13.3, *provided* the angular frequency ω is given by Equation 13.7a.

Frequency and Period in Simple Harmonic Motion

We can recast Equation 13.7a in terms of the more familiar frequency f and period T using Equation 13.6, $f = \omega/2\pi$. This gives

$$f = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \quad \text{and} \quad T = \frac{1}{f} = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} \quad (13.7b,c)$$

Do these relationships make sense? If we increase the mass m , it becomes harder to accelerate and we expect slower oscillations. This is reflected in Equations 13.7a and b, where m appears in the denominator. Increasing k , on the other hand, makes the spring stiffer and therefore results in greater force. That increases the oscillation frequency—as shown by the presence of k in the numerators of Equations 13.7a and b.

Physical systems display a wide range of m and k values and a correspondingly large range of oscillation frequencies. A molecule, with its small mass and its “springiness” provided by electric forces, may oscillate at 10^{14} Hz or more. A massive skyscraper, in contrast, typically oscillates at about 0.1 Hz.

Amplitude in Simple Harmonic Motion

The amplitude A canceled from our equations, so our analysis works for *any* value of A . This means that the oscillation frequency doesn't depend on amplitude. Frequency that's independent of amplitude is an essential feature of simple harmonic motion and arises because the restoring force is *directly proportional* to the displacement. When the restoring force does not have the simple form $F = -kx$, then frequency *does* depend on amplitude and the analysis of oscillatory motion becomes much more complicated. In many systems the relation $F = -kx$ breaks down if the displacement x gets too big; for this reason, simple harmonic motion usually occurs only for small oscillation amplitudes.

Phase

Equation 13.4 isn't the only solution to Equation 13.3; you can readily show that $x = A \sin \omega t$ works just as well. We chose the cosine because we took time $t = 0$ at the point of maximum displacement. Had we set $t = 0$ as the mass passed through its equilibrium point, sine would have been the appropriate function. More generally we can take the zero of time at some arbitrary point in the oscillation cycle. Then, as Fig. 13.6 shows, we can represent the motion by the form

This is the most general solution of Equation 13.3. It gives displacement x as a function of time.

A is the amplitude—i.e., the maximum displacement.

t is time.

ϕ is the phase constant, which tells where the mass is at time $t = 0$. If $\phi = 0$, the mass is at its maximum displacement when $t = 0$.

The cosine—a periodic function—shows that the motion is periodic.

ω is the angular frequency, given by Equation 13.7a.

$$x(t) = A \cos(\omega t + \phi) \quad (\text{simple harmonic motion}) \quad (13.8)$$

where the **phase constant** ϕ has the effect of shifting the cosine curve to the left (for $\phi > 0$) or right ($\phi < 0$) but doesn't affect the frequency or amplitude.

Velocity and Acceleration in Simple Harmonic Motion

Equation 13.4 (or, more generally, Equation 13.8) gives the position of an object in simple harmonic motion as a function of time, so its first derivative must be the object's velocity:

$$v(t) = \frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(A \cos \omega t) = -\omega A \sin \omega t \quad (13.9)$$

Because the maximum value of the sine function is 1, this expression shows that the maximum velocity is ωA . This makes sense because a higher-frequency oscillation requires that the object traverse the distance A in a shorter time—so it must move faster. Equation 13.9 shows that the velocity $v(t)$ is a sine function when the displacement $x(t)$ is a cosine. Thus velocity is a maximum when displacement is zero, and vice versa; mathematically, we express this by saying that displacement and velocity differ in phase by $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians or 90° . Does this make sense? Sure, because at the extremes of its motion, the object is instantaneously at rest as it reverses direction: maximum displacement, zero speed. And when

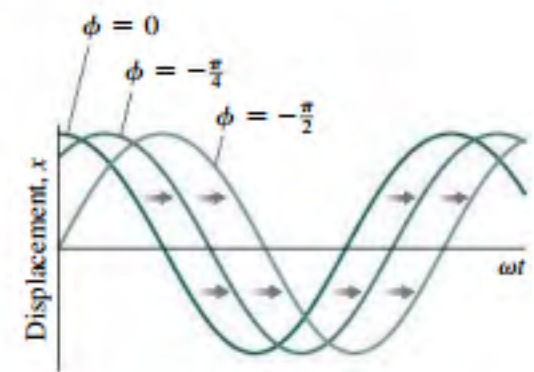


FIGURE 13.6 A negative phase constant shifts the curve to the right.

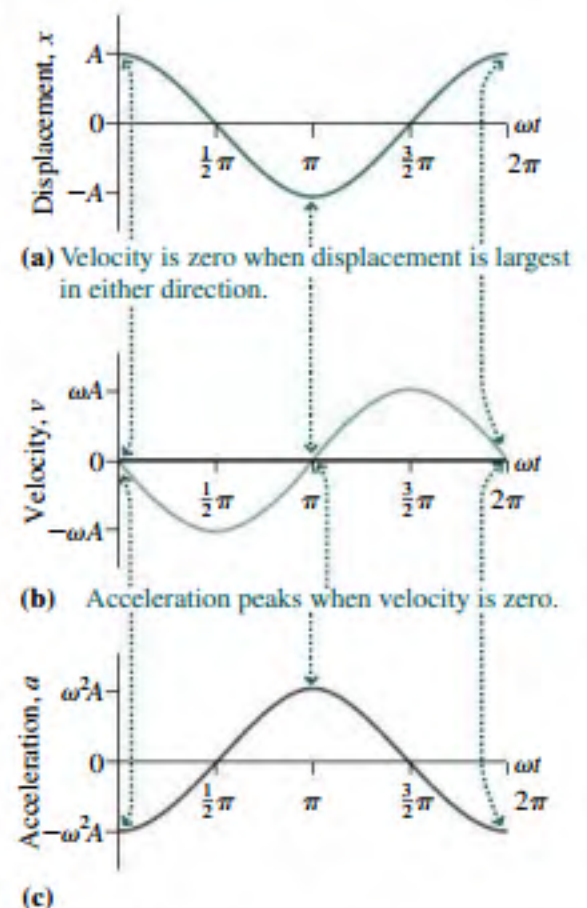


FIGURE 13.7 Displacement, velocity, and acceleration in simple harmonic motion.

it passes through its equilibrium position, the object is going fastest. Figures 13.7a and b show graphically the relationship between displacement and velocity in simple harmonic motion.

Just as velocity is the derivative of position, so acceleration is the derivative of velocity, or the second derivative of position:

$$a(t) = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(-\omega A \sin \omega t) = -\omega^2 A \cos \omega t \quad (13.10)$$

Thus the maximum acceleration is $\omega^2 A$. Since acceleration is a cosine function if velocity is a sine, each reaches its maximum value when the other is zero (Figs. 13.7b, c).

GOT IT?

13.2 Two identical mass–spring systems are displaced different amounts from equilibrium and then released at different times. Of the amplitudes, frequencies, periods, and phase constants of the subsequent motions, which are the same for both systems, and which are different?

EXAMPLE 13.2

Simple Harmonic Motion: A Tuned Mass Damper

Worked Example with Variation Problems

The tuned mass damper in New York’s Citicorp Tower (see Application on page 251) consists of a 373-Mg concrete block that completes one oscillation in 6.80 s. The oscillation amplitude in a high wind is 110 cm. Determine the spring constant and the maximum speed and acceleration of the block.

INTERPRET This is a problem involving simple harmonic motion, with the concrete block and spring making up the oscillating system. We’re given the period, mass, and amplitude.

DEVELOP Equation 13.7c, $T = 2\pi\sqrt{m/k}$, will give the spring constant. Equations 13.9 and 13.10 show that the maximum speed and acceleration are $v_{\max} = \omega A$ and $a_{\max} = \omega^2 A$, and we can get the angular frequency ω from the period using Equation 13.5: $\omega = 2\pi/T$.

EVALUATE First we solve Equation 13.7c for the spring constant:

$$k = \frac{4\pi^2 m}{T^2} = \frac{(4\pi^2)(3.73 \times 10^5 \text{ kg})}{(6.80 \text{ s})^2} = 3.18 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}$$

The angular frequency is $\omega = 2\pi/T = 0.924 \text{ s}^{-1}$. Then we have $v_{\max} = \omega A = (0.924 \text{ s}^{-1})(1.10 \text{ m}) = 1.02 \text{ m/s}$ and $a_{\max} = \omega^2 A = 0.939 \text{ m/s}^2$.

ASSESS The large spring constant and relatively low velocity and acceleration make sense given the huge mass involved. Note that we had to convert the mass, given as 373 Mg ($373 \times 10^6 \text{ g}$), to kilograms before evaluating.

13.3 Applications of Simple Harmonic Motion

LO 13.4 Describe other simple harmonic motion systems, including torsional oscillators and pendulums.

Simple harmonic motion occurs in any system where the tendency to return to equilibrium increases in direct proportion to the displacement from equilibrium. Analysis of such systems is like that of the mass–spring system we just considered but may involve different physical quantities.

The Vertical Mass–Spring System

A mass hanging vertically from a spring is subject to gravity as well as the spring force (Fig. 13.8). In equilibrium the spring stretches enough for its force to balance gravity: $mg - kx_1 = 0$, where x_1 is the new equilibrium position. Stretching the spring an additional amount Δx increases the spring force by $k \Delta x$, and this increased force tends to restore the equilibrium. So once again we have a restoring force that’s directly proportional to displacement. And here, with the same spring constant k and mass m , our previous analysis still applies and we get simple harmonic motion with frequency $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$. Thus gravity changes only the equilibrium position and doesn’t affect the frequency.

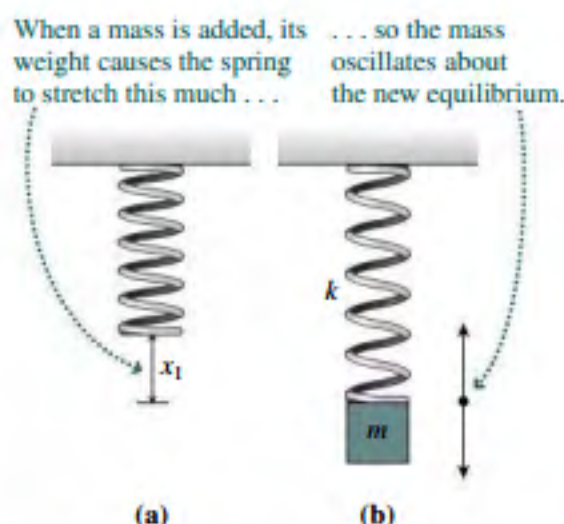
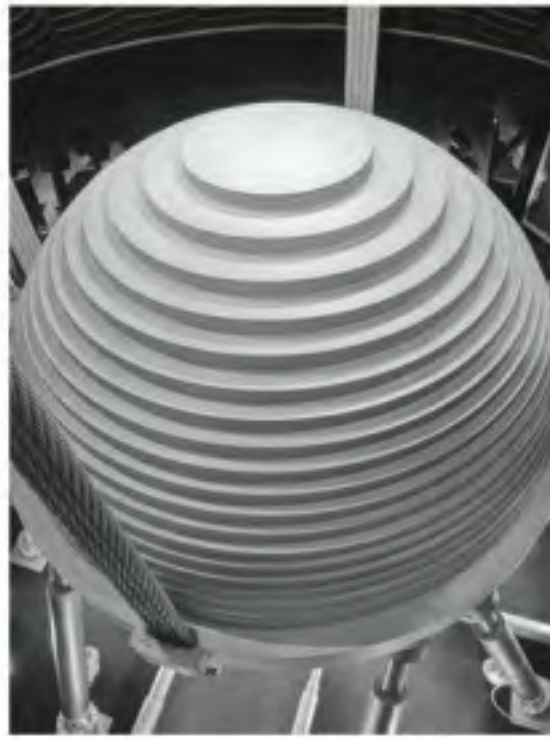


FIGURE 13.8 A vertical mass–spring system oscillates about a new equilibrium position x_1 , with the same frequency $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$.

APPLICATION Swaying Skyscrapers

Skyscrapers are tall, thin, flexible structures. High winds and earthquakes can set them oscillating, much like the ruler of Example 13.1. Wind-driven oscillations are uncomfortable to occupants of a building's upper floors, and earthquake-induced oscillations can be downright destructive.

Modern skyscrapers use so-called tuned mass dampers (TMDs) to counteract building oscillations. These devices are large mass-spring systems or pendulums mounted high in the building. They're engineered to oscillate with the same frequency as the building (hence the term "tuned") but 180° out of phase, thus reducing the amplitude of the building's own oscillation. The result is increased comfort for the building's occupants and improved safety for buildings in earthquake-prone regions. TMDs also find applications in tall smokestacks, airport control towers, power-plant cooling towers, bridges, ski lifts, balconies, and even the Grand Canyon skywalk. By suppressing vibrations, tuned mass dampers enable architects and engineers to design structures that don't need as much intrinsic stiffness, so they can be lighter and less expensive. The photos show the world's largest tuned mass damper and the building that houses it, Taiwan's Taipei 101 skyscraper. The damper helps the building survive earthquakes and typhoons. Example 13.2 explores a different building's TMD.



The Torsional Oscillator

Figure 13.9 shows a disk suspended from a wire. Rotate the disk slightly, and a torque develops in the wire. Let go, and the disk oscillates by rotating back and forth. This is a **torsional oscillator**, and it's best described using the language of rotational motion. The **angular displacement** θ , **restoring torque** τ , and **torsional constant** κ relate the torque and displacement: $\tau = -\kappa\theta$, where again the minus sign indicates that the torque is opposite the displacement, tending to restore the system to equilibrium. The rotational analog of Newton's law, $\tau = I\alpha$, describes the system's behavior; here the rotational inertia I plays the role of mass. But the angular acceleration α is the second derivative of the angular position, so Newton's law becomes

$$I \frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\kappa\theta \quad (13.11)$$

This is identical to Equation 13.3 for the linear oscillator, with I replacing m , θ replacing x , and κ replacing k . So we can immediately write $\theta(t) = A \cos \omega t$ for the angular displacement and, in analogy with Equation 13.7a,

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{\kappa}{I}} \quad (13.12)$$

for the angular frequency. Note that the units of κ are $\text{N}\cdot\text{m}/\text{rad}$.

Torsional oscillators constitute the timekeeping mechanism in mechanical watches, and they can provide accurate measures of rotational inertia.

The Pendulum

A **simple pendulum** consists of a point mass suspended from a massless string. Real systems approximate this ideal when a suspended object's size is negligible compared with the suspension length and its mass is much greater than that of the suspension. The pendulum in a grandfather clock is essentially a simple pendulum. Figure 13.10 shows a pendulum of mass m and length L displaced slightly from equilibrium. The gravitational force exerts a torque given by $\tau = -mgL \sin \theta$, where the minus sign indicates that the



FIGURE 13.9 A torsional oscillator.

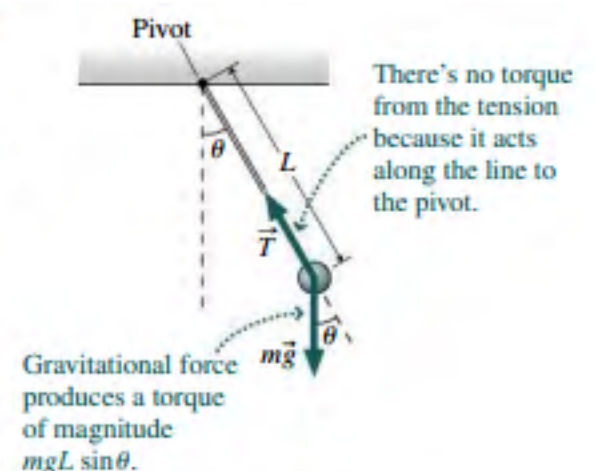


FIGURE 13.10 Forces on a pendulum.

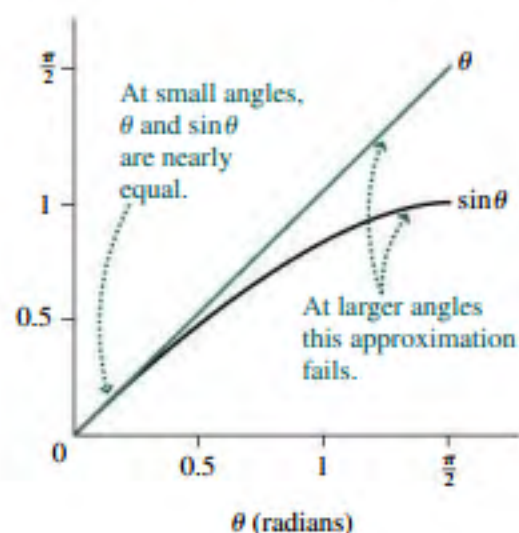


FIGURE 13.11 For θ much less than 1 radian, $\sin \theta$ and θ are nearly equal.

torque tends to rotate the pendulum back toward equilibrium. The rotational analog of Newton's law, $\tau = I\alpha$, then becomes

$$I \frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -mgL \sin \theta$$

where we've written the angular acceleration as the second derivative of the angular displacement. This looks like Equation 13.11 for the torsional oscillator—but not quite, since the torque involves $\sin \theta$ rather than θ itself. Thus the restoring torque is not *directly* proportional to the angular displacement, and the motion is therefore *not* simple harmonic.

If, however, the amplitude of the motion is small, then it *approximates* simple harmonic motion. Figure 13.11 shows that for small angles, $\sin \theta$ and θ are essentially equal. For a small-amplitude pendulum we can therefore replace $\sin \theta$ with θ to get

$$I \frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -mgL\theta$$

This is essentially Equation 13.11, with mgL playing the role of κ . So the small-amplitude pendulum undergoes simple harmonic motion, with its angular frequency given by Equation 13.12 with $\kappa = mgL$:

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{mgL}{I}} \quad (13.13)$$

For a *simple* pendulum, the rotational inertia I is that of a point mass m a distance L from the rotation axis, or $I = mL^2$, as we found in Chapter 10. Then we have

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{mgL}{mL^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{g}{L}} \quad (\text{simple pendulum}) \quad (13.14)$$

or, from Equation 13.5,

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} \quad (\text{simple pendulum}) \quad (13.15)$$

These equations show that the frequency and period of a simple pendulum are independent of its mass, depending only on length and gravitational acceleration.

EXAMPLE 13.3 A Pendulum: Rescuing Tarzan

Tarzan stands on a branch as a leopard threatens. Fortunately, Jane is on a nearby branch of the same height, holding a 25-m-long vine attached directly above the point midway between her and Tarzan. She grasps the vine and steps off with negligible velocity. How soon does she reach Tarzan?

INTERPRET This is a problem about a pendulum, which we identify as consisting of Jane and the vine. The period of the pendulum is the time for a full swing back and forth, so the answer we're after—the time to reach Tarzan—is half the period.

DEVELOP We sketched the situation in Fig. 13.12. Equation 13.15, $T = 2\pi\sqrt{L/g}$, determines the period, so we can use this equation to find the half-period.

EVALUATE Equation 13.15 gives

$$\frac{1}{2}T = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(2\pi)\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} = (\pi)\sqrt{\frac{25 \text{ m}}{9.8 \text{ m/s}^2}} = 5.0 \text{ s}$$

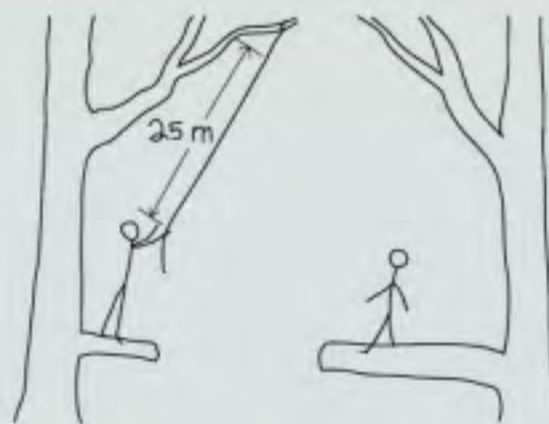


FIGURE 13.12 Our sketch for Example 13.3. Vine length is not to scale.

ASSESS This seems a reasonable answer for a problem involving human-scale objects and many meters of vine. One caution: Jane's rescue will be successful only if the vine is strong enough—not only to support her weight but also to provide the acceleration that keeps her moving in a circular arc. You can explore that issue in Problem 56.

GOT IT?

13.3 What happens to the period of a pendulum if (1) its mass is doubled; (2) it's moved to a planet whose gravitational acceleration is one-fourth that of Earth; and (3) its length is quadrupled?

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 13.1 The Nonlinear Pendulum

A pendulum consists of a weight on the end of a rigid rod of negligible mass, hanging vertically from a frictionless pivot at the opposite end of the rod. For small-amplitude disturbances from equilibrium, the system constitutes a simple pendulum. But for larger disturbances it becomes a *nonlinear pendulum*, so named because the restoring torque is no longer proportional to the displacement. Quantitative analysis of a nonlinear pendulum is difficult, but you can still understand it conceptually.

- (a) As the pendulum's amplitude increases, how will its period change?
- (b) If you start the pendulum by striking it when it's hanging vertically, will it undergo oscillatory motion no matter how hard it's hit?

EVALUATE

- (a) Before we made the small-amplitude approximation, we showed that a pendulum's restoring torque is, in general, proportional to $\sin \theta$. But Fig. 13.11 shows that $\sin \theta$ doesn't increase as fast as θ itself. So for large-amplitude swings, the restoring torque is *less* than it would be in the small-amplitude approximation. This suggests the pendulum should return more slowly toward equilibrium—and thus its period should increase.
- (b) When you strike the pendulum, you give it kinetic energy. If that energy is insufficient to invert it completely, then the pendulum will swing to one side, eventually stop, and return, undergoing back-and-forth oscillatory motion. But hit it hard enough, and it will go “over the top,” reaching its fully inverted position with kinetic energy to spare. Round and round it goes, executing motion that's periodic and circular, but not oscillatory. This circular motion isn't uniform, because it moves more slowly at the top and faster at the bottom.

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: Consider a pendulum with just a little less energy than it takes to go “over the top.” It will move very slowly near the top of its trajectory, so its period will be quite long. And its angular-position-versus-time curve will be flatter than the sine curve of a simple pendulum. Give it just a little more energy, and it goes into

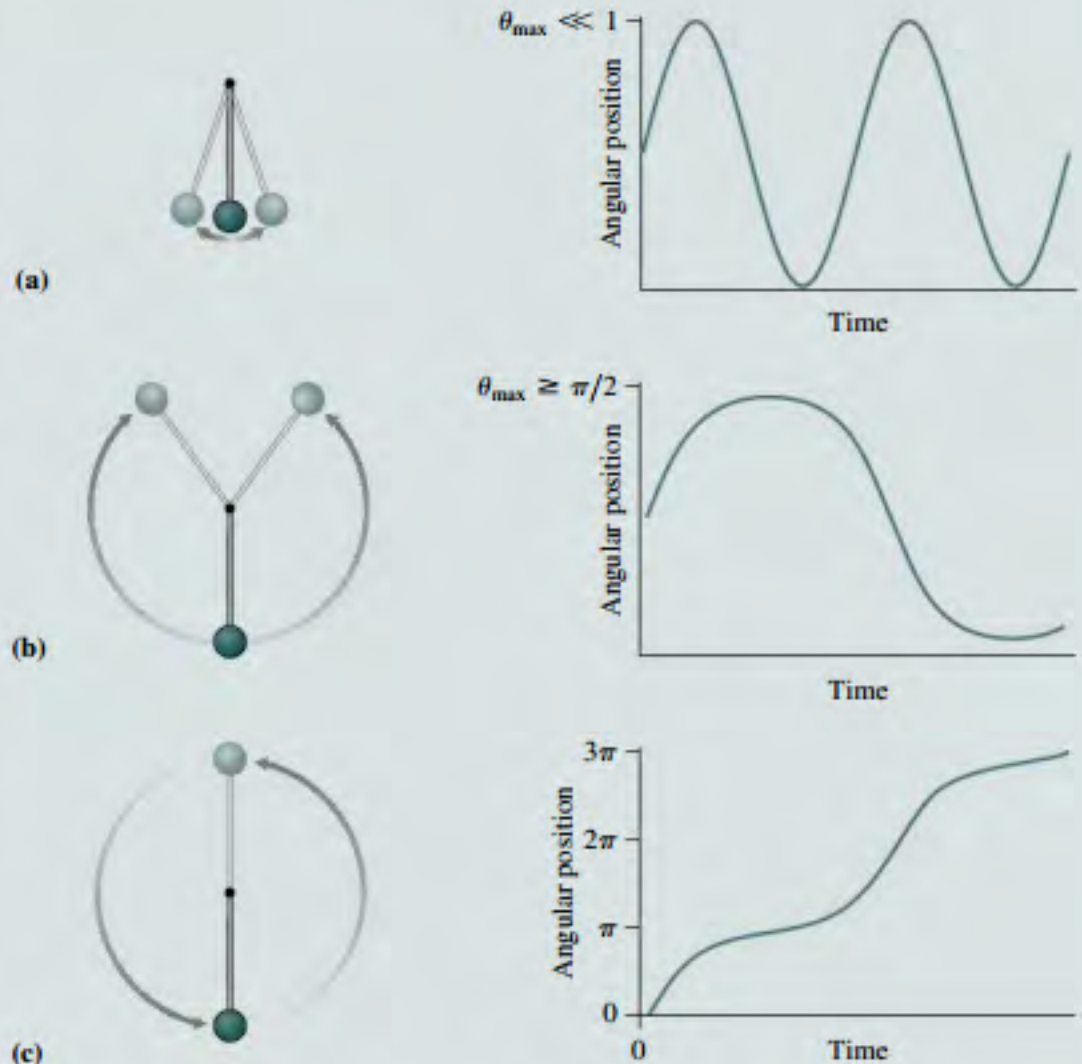


FIGURE 13.13 Conceptual Example 13.1: (a) Small-amplitude oscillations; (b) large-amplitude oscillations; (c) circular motion.

circular motion. Figure 13.13 illustrates all three situations. You can explore the nonlinear pendulum computationally in Problem 85.

MAKING THE CONNECTION If the pendulum has length L , what's the minimum speed that will get it “over the top,” into periodic non-uniform circular motion?

EVALUATE Potential energy at the top is $U = mg(2L)$, so kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ has to be at least this large. That gives $v > 2\sqrt{gL}$.

The Physical Pendulum

A **physical pendulum** is an object of arbitrary shape that's free to swing (Fig. 13.14). It differs from a simple pendulum in that mass may be distributed over its entire length. Physical pendulums are everywhere: Examples include the legs of humans and other animals (see Example 13.4), a skier on a chair lift, a boxer's punching bag, a frying pan

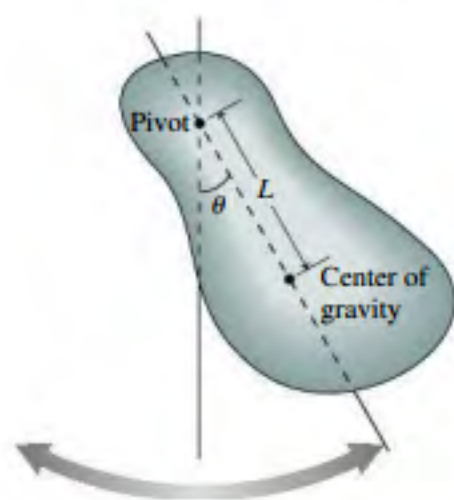


FIGURE 13.14 A physical pendulum.

hanging from a rack, and a crane lifting any object of significant extent. In our analysis of the simple pendulum, we used the fact that mass was concentrated at the bottom only in the final step, when we wrote mL^2 for the rotational inertia. Our analysis before that step therefore applies to the physical pendulum as well.

In particular, a physical pendulum displaced slightly from equilibrium undergoes simple harmonic motion with frequency given by Equation 13.13. But how are we to interpret the length L in that equation? Because gravity—which provides the restoring torque for *any* pendulum—acts on an object's center of gravity, L must be the distance from the pivot to the center of gravity, as marked in Fig. 13.14.

EXAMPLE 13.4 A Physical Pendulum: Walking

When walking, the leg not in contact with the ground swings forward, acting like a physical pendulum. Approximating the leg as a uniform rod, find the period of this pendulum motion for a leg of length 90 cm.

INTERPRET This problem is about a physical pendulum, here identified as a uniform rod approximating the leg.

DEVELOP Figure 13.15 is our drawing, showing the leg as a rod pivoting at the hip. The center of mass of a uniform rod is at its center, so the effective length L is half the leg's length, or 45 cm. Equation 13.13, $\omega = \sqrt{mgLI}$, determines the angular frequency, from which we can get the period using Equation 13.5, $T = 2\pi/\omega$. We also need the rotational inertia; from Table 10.2, that's $I = \frac{1}{3}M(2L)^2$, where we use $2L$ because Table 10.2's expression involves the *full* length of the rod.

EVALUATE Putting this all together, we evaluate to get the answer:

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{I}{mgL}} = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{\frac{1}{3}m(2L)^2}{mgL}} = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{4L}{3g}}$$

Using $L = 0.45$ m gives $T = 1.6$ s.

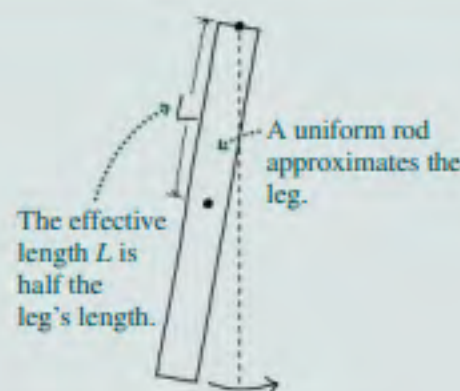


FIGURE 13.15 A human leg treated as a pendulum.

ASSESS The leg swings forward to complete a full stride in half a period, or 0.8 s. This seems a reasonable value for the pace in walking.

13.4 Circular Motion and Harmonic Motion

LO 13.5 Relate simple harmonic motion to circular motion.

Look down on the solar system, and you see Earth in circular motion about the Sun (Fig. 13.16a). But look in from the plane of Earth's orbit, and Earth appears to be moving back and forth (Fig. 13.16b). Figure 13.17 shows that this apparent back-and-forth motion is a single component of the actual circular motion, and that this component describes a sinusoidal function of time. Specifically, the position vector $\vec{r}$ for Earth or any other object in circular motion makes an angle that increases linearly with time: $\theta = \omega t$, where we measure θ with respect to the x -axis and take $t = 0$ when the object is on the x -axis. Then the two components $x = r \cos \theta$ and $y = r \sin \theta$ of the object's position become

$$x(t) = r \cos \omega t \quad \text{and} \quad y(t) = r \sin \omega t$$

These are the equations for two different simple harmonic motions, one in the x -direction and the other in the y -direction. Because one is a cosine and the other is a sine, they're out of phase by $\frac{\pi}{2}$ or 90° .

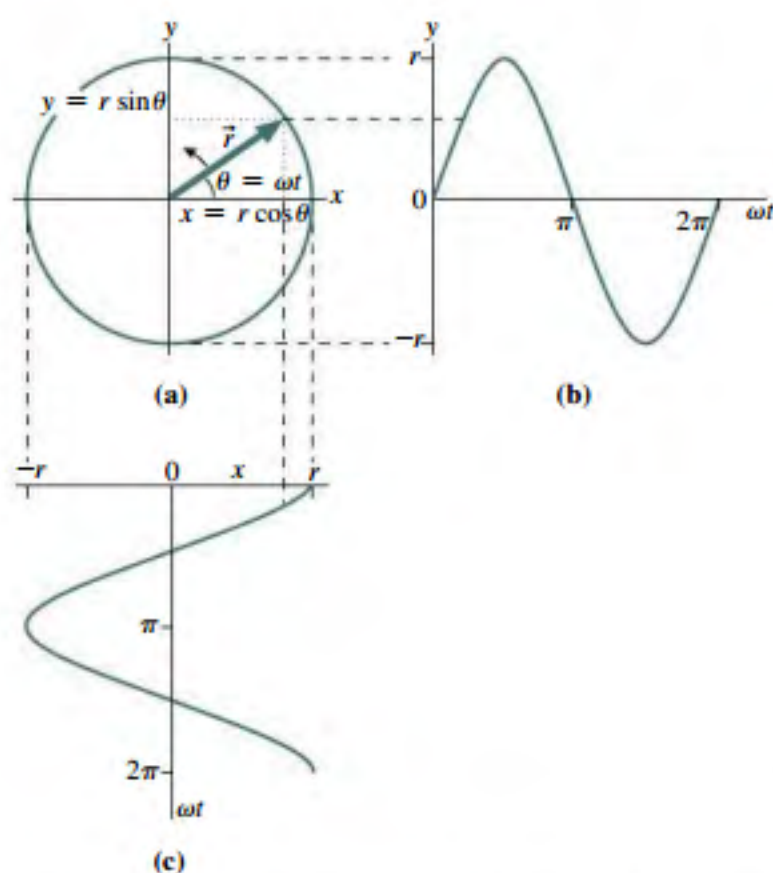


FIGURE 13.17 As the position vector $\vec{r}$ traces out a circle, its x - and y -components are sinusoidal functions of time.

So we can think of circular motion as resulting from perpendicular simple harmonic motions, with the same amplitude and frequency but 90° out of phase. This should help you to understand why we use the term *angular frequency* for simple harmonic motion even though there's no angle involved. The argument ωt in the description of simple harmonic motion is the same as the physical angle θ in the corresponding circular motion. The time for one cycle of simple harmonic motion is the same as the time for one revolution in the circular motion, so the values of T and therefore ω are exactly the same.

You can verify that two mutually perpendicular simple harmonic motions of the same amplitude and frequency sum vectorially to give circular motion (see Problem 53). If the amplitudes or frequencies aren't the same, then interesting complex motions occur, as shown in Fig. 13.18.

GOT IT?

13.4 Figure 13.18 shows the paths traced in the horizontal plane by two pendulums swinging with different frequencies in two perpendicular directions. What's the ratio of x -direction frequency to y -direction frequency for (1) path (a) and (2) path (b)?

13.5 Energy in Simple Harmonic Motion

LO 13.6 Outline energy exchanges in simple harmonic motion.

LO 13.7 Explain why simple harmonic motion is ubiquitous throughout the universe.

Displace a mass–spring system from equilibrium, and you do work as you build up potential energy in the spring. Release the mass, and it accelerates toward equilibrium, gaining kinetic energy at the expense of potential energy. It passes through its equilibrium position with maximum kinetic energy; at that point there's no potential energy in the system. The mass then slows and potential energy builds as the mass compresses the spring. If there's no energy loss, this process continues indefinitely. In oscillatory motion, energy is continuously transferred back and forth between its kinetic and potential forms (Fig. 13.19).

For a mass–spring system, the potential energy is given by Equation 7.4: $U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$, where x is the displacement from equilibrium. Meanwhile, the kinetic energy is $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$.

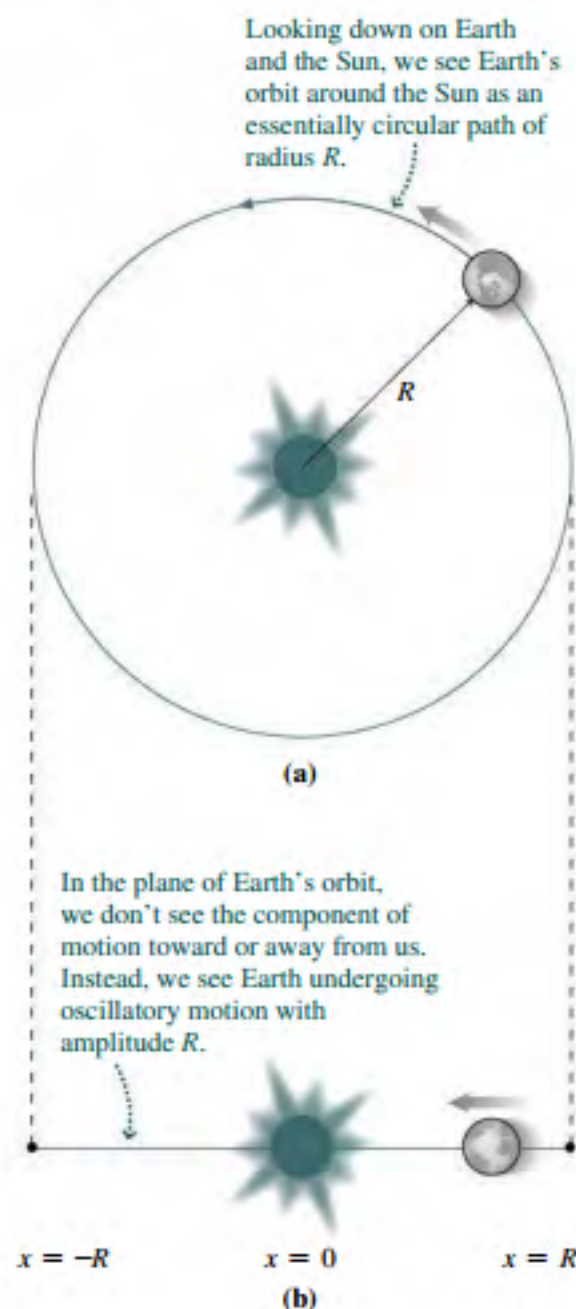


FIGURE 13.16 Two views of Earth's orbital motion.

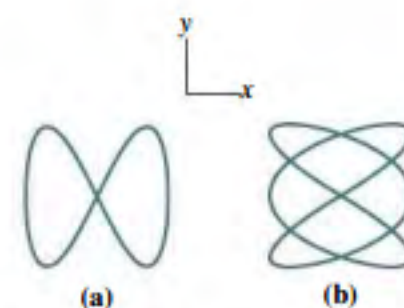


FIGURE 13.18 Complex paths resulting from different frequencies in different directions. Can you determine the frequency ratios?

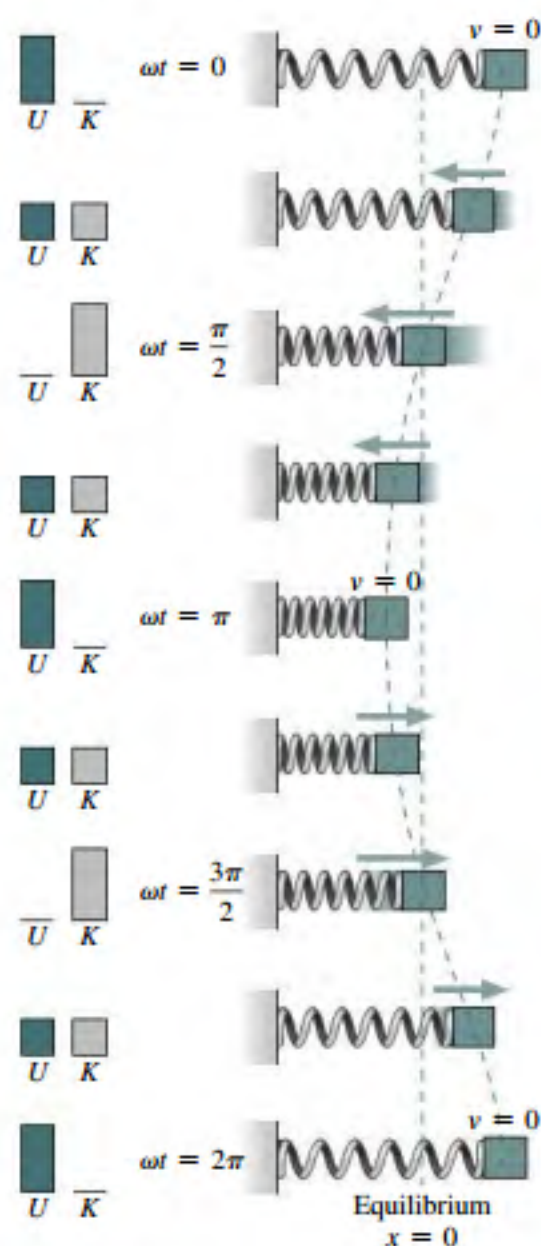


FIGURE 13.19 Kinetic and potential energy in simple harmonic motion. Dashed curve is the position of the mass; straight dashed line marks the equilibrium position $x = 0$.

We can illustrate explicitly the interchange of kinetic and potential energy in simple harmonic motion by using x from Equation 13.4 and v from Equation 13.9 in the expressions for potential and kinetic energy. Then we have

$$U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2 = \frac{1}{2}k(A \cos \omega t)^2 = \frac{1}{2}kA^2 \cos^2 \omega t$$

and

$$K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{1}{2}m(-\omega A \sin \omega t)^2 = \frac{1}{2}m\omega^2 A^2 \sin^2 \omega t = \frac{1}{2}kA^2 \sin^2 \omega t$$

where we used $\omega^2 = k/m$. Both energy expressions have the same maximum value— $\frac{1}{2}kA^2$ —equal to the initial potential energy of the stretched spring. But the potential energy is a maximum when the kinetic energy is zero, and vice versa. What about the total energy? It's

$$E = U + K = \frac{1}{2}kA^2 \cos^2 \omega t + \frac{1}{2}kA^2 \sin^2 \omega t = \frac{1}{2}kA^2$$

where we used $\sin^2 \omega t + \cos^2 \omega t = 1$.

Our result is a statement of the conservation of mechanical energy—the principle we introduced in Chapter 7—applied to a simple harmonic oscillator. Although the kinetic and potential energies K and U both vary with time, their sum—the total energy E —does not (Fig. 13.20).

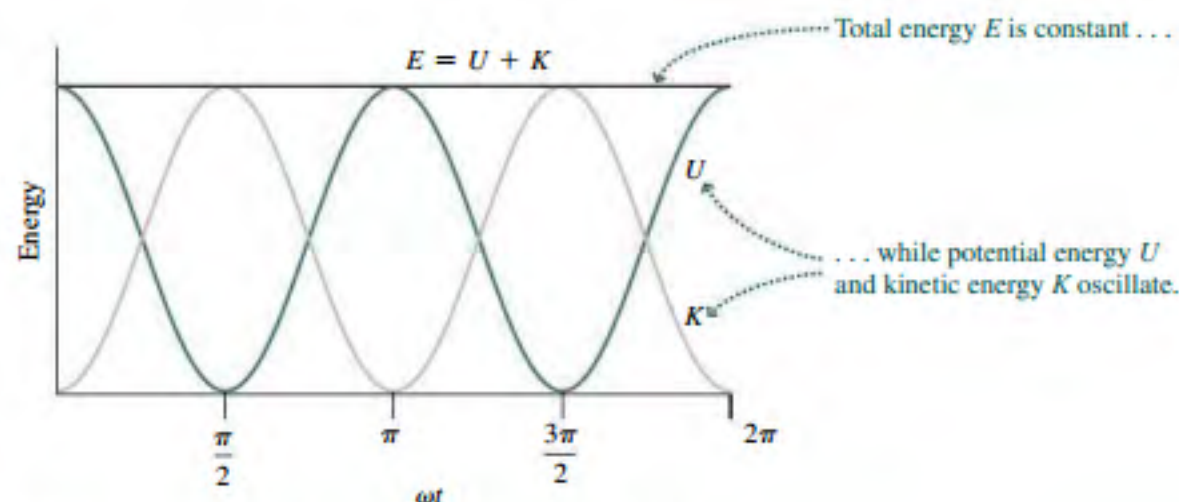


FIGURE 13.20 Energy of a simple harmonic oscillator.

EXAMPLE 13.5

Energy in Simple Harmonic Motion Worked Example with Variation Problems

A mass–spring system undergoes simple harmonic motion with angular frequency ω and amplitude A . Find its speed at the point where the kinetic and potential energies are equal.

INTERPRET This example involves the concept of energy conservation in simple harmonic motion. We're asked to find a speed, which is related to kinetic energy.

DEVELOP When the kinetic energy equals the potential energy, each must be half the total energy. What is that total? The speed is at its maximum, $v_{\max} = \omega A$ from Equation 13.9, when the energy is all kinetic. Thus the total energy is $E = \frac{1}{2}mv_{\max}^2 = \frac{1}{2}m\omega^2 A^2$. The speed

v we're after occurs when the kinetic energy has half this value, or $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{1}{2}(\frac{1}{2}m\omega^2 A^2) = \frac{1}{4}m\omega^2 A^2$.

EVALUATE Solving for v gives our answer:

$$v = \frac{\omega A}{\sqrt{2}}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: The speed at this point must be less than the maximum speed, since half the energy is tied up as potential energy in the spring. And because kinetic energy depends on the *square* of the speed, it's lower not by a factor of 2 but of $\sqrt{2}$.

Potential-Energy Curves and Simple Harmonic Motion

We arrived at the expression $U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$ for the potential energy of a spring by integrating the spring force, $-kx$, over distance. Since every simple harmonic oscillator has a restoring force or torque proportional to displacement, integration always results in a potential

energy proportional to the *square* of the displacement—that is, in a parabolic potential-energy curve. Conversely, any system with a parabolic potential-energy curve exhibits simple harmonic motion. The simplest mathematical approximation to a smooth curve near a minimum is a parabola, and for that reason potential-energy curves for complex systems often approximate parabolas near their stable equilibrium points (Fig. 13.21). Small disturbances from these equilibria therefore result in simple harmonic motion, and that's why simple harmonic motion is so common throughout the physical world.

GOT IT?

13.5 Two different mass–spring systems are oscillating with the same amplitude and frequency. If one has twice as much total energy as the other, how do (1) their masses and (2) their spring constants compare? (3) What about their maximum speeds?

13.6 Damped Harmonic Motion

LO 13.8 Describe the effect of damping on simple harmonic motion.

In real oscillating systems, forces such as friction or air resistance normally dissipate the oscillation energy. This energy loss causes the oscillation amplitude to decrease, and the motion is said to be **damped**.

If dissipation is sufficiently weak that only a small fraction of the system's energy is lost in each oscillation cycle, then we expect that the system should behave essentially as in the undamped case, except for a gradual decrease in amplitude (Fig. 13.22).

In many systems the damping force is approximately proportional to the velocity and in the opposite direction:

$$F_d = -bv = -b \frac{dx}{dt}$$

where b is a constant giving the strength of the damping. We can write Newton's law as before, now including the damping force along with the restoring force. For a mass–spring system, we have

$$m \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -kx - b \frac{dx}{dt} \quad (13.16)$$

We won't solve this equation, but simply state its solution:

$$x(t) = Ae^{-bt/2m} \cos(\omega t + \phi) \quad (13.17)$$

This equation describes sinusoidal motion whose amplitude decreases exponentially with time. How fast depends on the damping constant b and mass m : When $t = 2m/b$, the amplitude has dropped to $1/e$ of its original value. When the damping is so weak that only a small fraction of the total energy is lost in each cycle, the frequency ω in Equation 13.17 is essentially equal to the undamped frequency $\sqrt{k/m}$. But with stronger damping, the damping force slows the motion, and the frequency becomes lower. As long as oscillation occurs, the motion is said to be **underdamped** (Fig. 13.23a). For sufficiently strong damping, though, the effect of the damping force is as great as that of the spring force. Under this condition, called **critical damping**, the system returns to its equilibrium state without undergoing any oscillations (Fig. 13.23b). If the damping is made still stronger, the system becomes **overdamped**. The damping force now dominates, so the system returns more slowly to equilibrium (Fig. 13.23c).

Many physical systems, from atoms to the human leg, can be modeled as damped oscillators. Engineers often design systems with specific amounts of damping. Automobile shock absorbers, for example, coordinate with the springs to give critical damping. This results in rapid return to equilibrium while absorbing the energy imparted by road bumps.

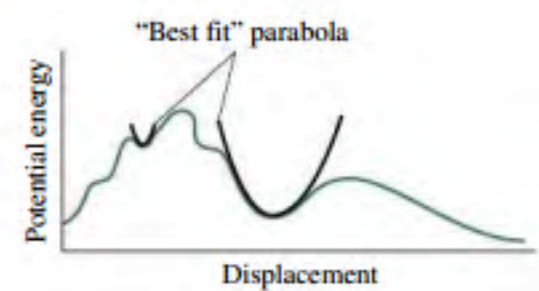


FIGURE 13.21 Near their minima, potential-energy curves often approximate parabolas. This results in simple harmonic motion.

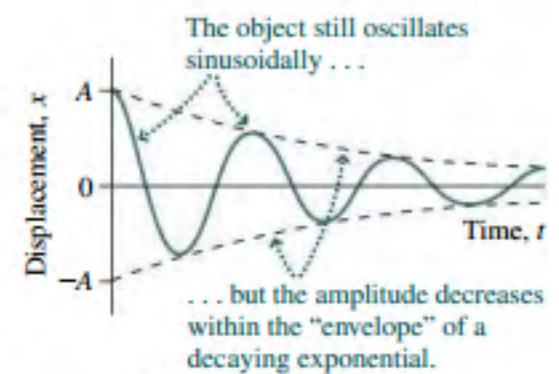


FIGURE 13.22 Weakly damped motion.

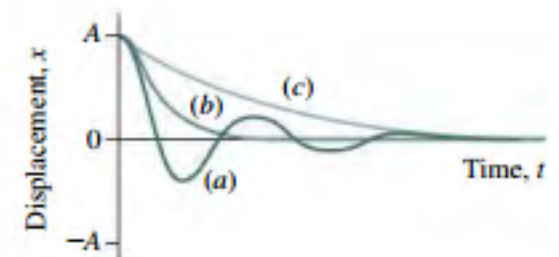


FIGURE 13.23 (a) Underdamped, (b) critically damped, and (c) overdamped oscillations.

EXAMPLE 13.6 Damped Simple Harmonic Motion: Bad Shocks

A car's suspension acts like a mass–spring system with $m = 1200$ kg and $k = 58$ kN/m. Its worn-out shock absorbers provide a damping constant $b = 230$ kg/s. After the car hits a pothole, how many oscillations will it make before the amplitude drops to half its initial value?

INTERPRET We interpret this problem as being about damped simple harmonic motion, and we identify the car as the oscillating system.

DEVELOP Our plan is to find out how long it takes the amplitude to decrease by half and then find the number of oscillation cycles in this time. Equation 13.17, $x(t) = Ae^{-bt/2m} \cos(\omega t + \phi)$, describes the motion, with the factor $e^{-bt/2m}$ giving the decrease in amplitude. At $t = 0$ this factor is 1, so we want to know when it's equal to one-half: $e^{-bt/2m} = \frac{1}{2}$.

EVALUATE Taking the natural logarithms of both sides gives $bt/2m = \ln 2$, where we used the facts that $\ln(x)$ and e^x are inverse functions and $\ln(1/x) = -\ln(x)$. Then

$$t = \frac{2m}{b} \ln 2 = \frac{(2)(1200 \text{ kg})}{230 \text{ kg/s}} \ln 2 = 7.23 \text{ s}$$

is the time for the amplitude to drop to half its original value. For weak damping, the period is very close to the undamped period, which is

$$T = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{1200 \text{ kg}}{58 \times 10^3 \text{ N/m}}} = 0.904 \text{ s}$$

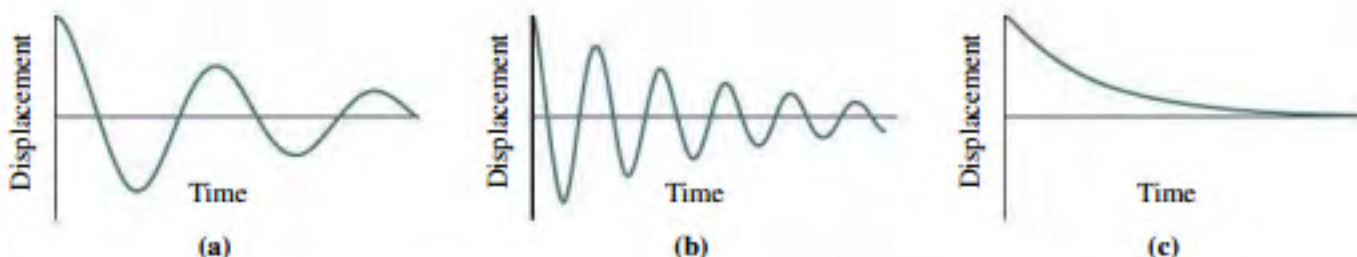
Then the number of cycles during the 7.23 s it takes the amplitude to drop in half is

$$\frac{7.23 \text{ s}}{0.904 \text{ s}} = 8$$

ASSESS That the number of oscillations is much greater than 1 tells us that the damping is weak, justifying our use of the undamped period. It also tells us that those are really bad shocks!

GOT IT?

13.6 The figure shows displacement-versus-time graphs for three mass–spring systems, with different masses m , spring constants k , and damping constants b . The time on the horizontal axis is the same for all three. (1) For which system is damping the most significant? (2) For which system is damping the least significant?

**13.7 Driven Oscillations and Resonance**

LO 13.9 Explain resonance in driven oscillatory systems.

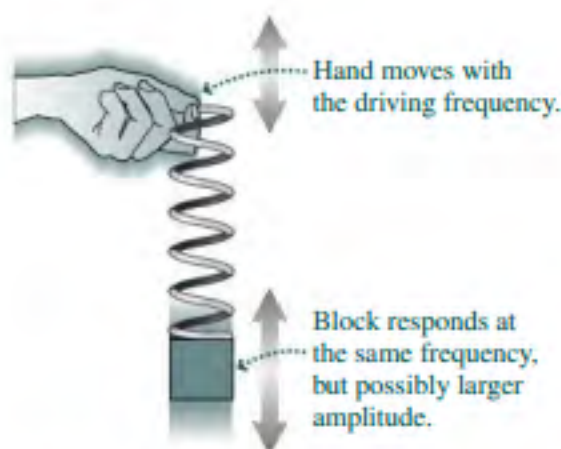


FIGURE 13.24 Driving a mass–spring system results in a large amplitude if the driving frequency is near the natural frequency $\sqrt{k/m}$.

Pushing a child on a swing, you can build up a large amplitude by giving a relatively small push once each oscillation cycle. If your pushing were not in step with the swing's natural oscillatory motion, then the same force would have little effect.

When an external force acts on an oscillatory system, we say that the system is **driven**. Consider a mass–spring system, which you might drive as suggested in Fig. 13.24. Suppose the driving force is given by $F_d \cos \omega_d t$, where ω_d is called the **driving frequency**. Then Newton's law is

$$m \frac{d^2 x}{dt^2} = -kx - b \frac{dx}{dt} + F_d \cos \omega_d t \quad (13.18)$$

where the first term on the right-hand side is the restoring force, the second the damping force, and the third the driving force. Since the system is being driven at the frequency ω_d , we expect it to undergo oscillatory motion at this frequency. So we guess that the solution to Equation 13.18 might have the form

$$x = A \cos(\omega_d t + \phi)$$

Substituting this expression and its derivatives into Equation 13.18 (see Problem 73) shows that the equation is satisfied if

$$A(\omega_d) = \frac{F_d}{m\sqrt{(\omega_d^2 - \omega_0^2)^2 + b^2\omega_d^2/m^2}} \quad (13.19)$$

where ω_0 is the undamped **natural frequency** $\sqrt{k/m}$, as distinguished from the driving frequency ω_d .

Figure 13.25 shows **resonance curves**—plots of Equation 13.19 as a function of driving frequency—for three values of the damping constant. As long as the system is underdamped, the curve has a maximum at some nonzero frequency, and for weak damping, that maximum occurs at very nearly the natural frequency. The weaker the damping, the more sharply peaked is the resonance curve. Thus, in weakly damped systems, it's possible to build up large-amplitude oscillations with relatively small driving forces—a phenomenon known as **resonance**.

Most physical systems, from molecules to cars, and loudspeakers to buildings and bridges, exhibit one or more natural modes of oscillation. If these oscillations are weakly damped, then the buildup of large-amplitude oscillations through resonance can cause serious problems—sometimes even destroying the system (Fig. 13.26). Engineers designing complex structures spend a lot of their time exploring all possible oscillation modes and taking steps to avoid resonance. In an earthquake-prone area, for example, a building's natural frequencies would be designed to avoid the frequency of typical earthquake motions. A loudspeaker should be engineered so its natural frequency isn't in the range of sound it's intended to reproduce. Damping systems such as the shock absorbers of Example 13.6 or the tuned mass damper of Example 13.2 help limit resonant oscillations in cases where natural frequencies aren't easily altered.

Resonance is also important in microscopic systems. The resonant behavior of electrons in a special tube called a magnetron produces the microwaves that cook food in a microwave oven; the same resonant process heats ionized gases in some experiments designed to harness fusion energy. Carbon dioxide in Earth's atmosphere absorbs infrared radiation because CO_2 molecules—acting like miniature mass-spring systems—resonate at some of the frequencies of infrared radiation. The result is the greenhouse effect, which now threatens Earth with significant climatic change. The process called nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) uses the resonant behavior of protons to probe the structure of matter and is the basis of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) used in medicine. In NMR, the resonance involves the natural precession frequency of the protons due to magnetic torques; we described a classical model of this process in Chapter 11.

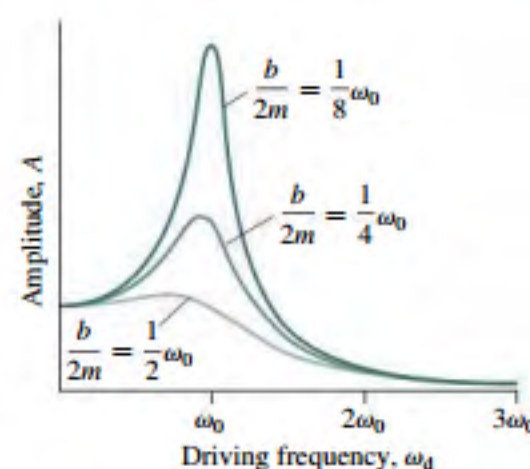


FIGURE 13.25 Resonance curves for three damping strengths; ω_0 is the undamped natural frequency $\sqrt{k/m}$.



FIGURE 13.26 Oscillations of the ground during an earthquake can drive resonant oscillations in buildings whose natural frequencies include those of the earthquake oscillations. This helps explain why some buildings collapse while neighboring buildings sustain only modest damage. Photo shows the aftermath of the 1985 magnitude-8.1 earthquake in Mexico City.

GOT IT?

13.7 The photo shows a wineglass shattering in response to sound. What's more important here, the amplitude or the frequency of the sound?

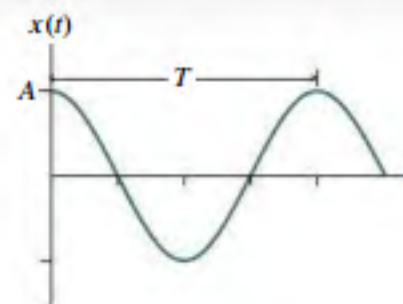
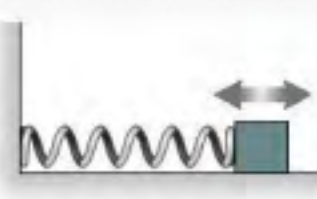


Chapter 13 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is **simple harmonic motion (SHM)**, oscillatory motion that is ubiquitous and that occurs whenever a disturbance from equilibrium results in a restoring force or torque that is directly proportional to the displacement. Position in SHM is a sinusoidal function of time:

$$x(t) = A \cos \omega t$$



Key Concepts and Equations

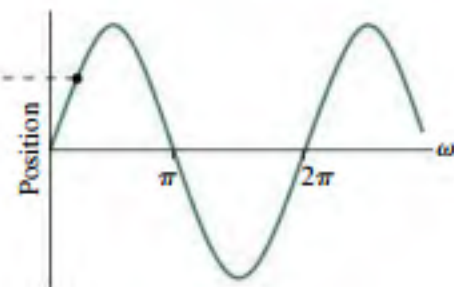
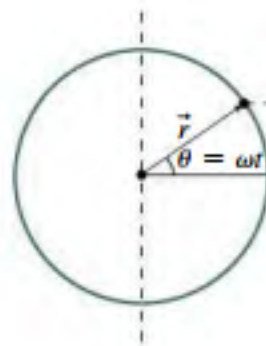
Period T is the time to complete one oscillation cycle; its inverse is **frequency**, or number of oscillations per unit time:

$$f = \frac{1}{T}$$

Another measure of frequency is **angular frequency ω** , given by

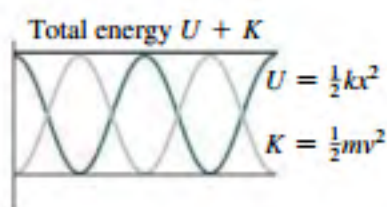
$$\omega = 2\pi f = \frac{2\pi}{T}$$

Angular frequency can be understood in terms of the close relationship between circular motion and simple harmonic motion.



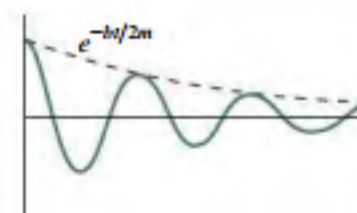
In the absence of friction and other dissipative forces, energy in SHM is conserved, although it's transformed back and forth between kinetic and potential forms:

$$E = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 + \frac{1}{2}kx^2 = \text{constant}$$



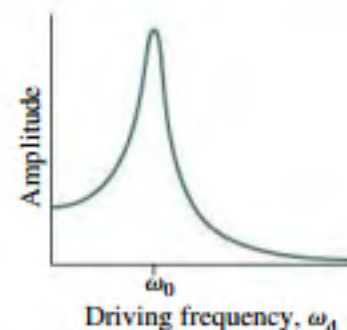
When dissipative forces act, the motion is **damped**. For small dissipative forces the oscillation amplitude decreases exponentially with time:

$$x(t) = Ae^{-bt/2m} \cos(\omega t + \phi)$$



If a system is driven at a frequency near its natural oscillation frequency ω_0 , then large-amplitude oscillations can build; this is **resonance**. The amplitude A depends on the driving force F_d , the driving frequency ω_d , the natural frequency $\omega_0 = \sqrt{k/m}$, and the damping constant b :

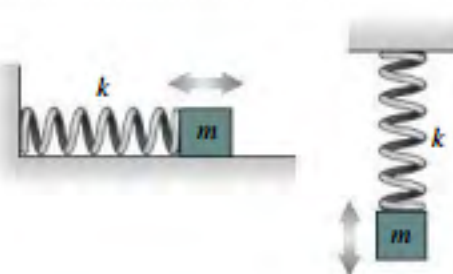
$$A(\omega_d) = \frac{F_d}{m\sqrt{(\omega_d^2 - \omega_0^2)^2 + b^2\omega_d^2/m^2}}$$



Applications

In mass-spring systems, the angular frequency is given by

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$$



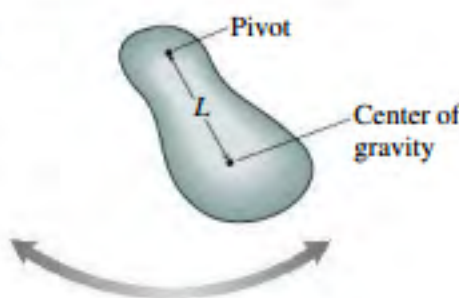
In systems involving rotational oscillations, the analogous relation involves the torsional constant and rotational inertia:

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{\kappa}{I}}$$



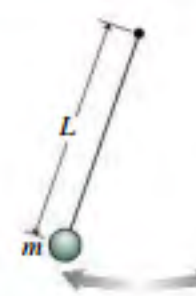
A special case is the **pendulum**, for which (with small-amplitude oscillations)

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{mgL}{I}}$$



In the case of a **simple pendulum**, the angular frequency reduces to

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{g}{L}}$$



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!

BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems



Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>LO 13.1 Characterize oscillatory motion by its amplitude, frequency, and period.
<i>Exercises 13.11, 13.12, 13.13, 13.14, 13.15</i></p> <p>LO 13.2 State the physical conditions that result in simple harmonic motion.
<i>Problem 13.85</i></p> <p>LO 13.3 Describe simple harmonic motion quantitatively in a mass–spring system.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 13.1, 13.2, 13.3, 13.4, 13.5, 13.10; Exercises 13.16, 13.17, 13.18, 13.19, 13.28; Problems 13.40, 13.42, 13.43, 13.44, 13.47, 13.50, 13.54, 13.57, 13.59, 13.60, 13.74, 13.80</i></p> <p>LO 13.4 Describe other simple harmonic motion systems, including torsional oscillators and pendulums.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 13.4, 13.6, 13.10; Exercises 13.20, 13.21, 13.22, 13.23; Problems 13.41,</i></p> | <p><i>13.45, 13.46, 13.48, 13.49, 13.50, 13.51, 13.52, 13.55, 13.56, 13.58, 13.61, 13.63, 13.64, 13.67, 13.68, 13.69, 13.70, 13.75, 13.76, 13.77, 13.78, 13.81, 13.82, 13.83, 13.84</i></p> <p>LO 13.5 Relate simple harmonic motion to circular motion.
<i>Exercises 13.24, 13.25; Problem 13.53</i></p> <p>LO 13.6 Outline energy exchanges in simple harmonic motion.
<i>Exercises 13.26, 13.27; Problems 13.62, 13.71, 13.72</i></p> <p>LO 13.7 Explain why simple harmonic motion is ubiquitous throughout the universe.
<i>Problems 13.60, 13.61, 13.63, 13.64, 13.69, 13.75</i></p> <p>LO 13.8 Describe the effect of damping on simple harmonic motion.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 13.7, 13.8; Exercises 13.29, 13.30; Problems 13.65, 13.66</i></p> <p>LO 13.9 Explain resonance in driven oscillatory systems.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 13.9; Exercise 13.31; Problem 13.73, 13.79</i></p> |
|--|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- The vibration frequencies of molecules are much higher than those of macroscopic mechanical systems. Why?
- Is the frequency of a simple harmonic motion independent of the physical configuration of the oscillating body? Explain.
- How does the frequency of a simple harmonic oscillator depend on its amplitude?
- How would the frequency of a horizontal mass–spring system change if it were taken to the Moon? Of a vertical mass–spring system? Of a simple pendulum?
- When in its cycle is the acceleration of an undamped simple harmonic oscillator zero? When is the velocity zero?
- One pendulum consists of a solid rod of mass m and length L , and another consists of a compact ball of the same mass m on the end of a massless string of the same length L . Which has the greater period? Why?
- Why is critical damping desirable in a car's suspension?
- Explain why the frequency of a damped system is lower than that of the equivalent undamped system.
- Why do soldiers walk over a bridge instead of marching?
- What will happen to the period of a mass–spring system if it's placed in a jetliner accelerating down a runway? What will happen to the period of a pendulum in the same situation?

- The vibration frequency of a hydrogen chloride molecule is 8.66×10^{13} Hz. How long does it take the molecule to complete one oscillation?
- The top of a skyscraper sways back and forth, completing 95 full oscillation cycles in 10 minutes. Find (a) the period and (b) the frequency (in Hz) of its oscillatory motion.
- A hummingbird's wings vibrate at about 45 Hz. What's the corresponding period?

Section 13.2 Simple Harmonic Motion

- A 160-g mass is attached to a spring of constant $k = 5.6$ N/m and set into oscillation with amplitude $A = 22$ cm. Determine (a) the frequency in hertz, (b) the period, (c) the maximum velocity, and (d) the maximum force in the spring.
- An automobile suspension has an effective spring constant of 26 kN/m, and the car's suspended mass is 2100 kg. In the absence of damping, with what frequency and period will the car undergo simple harmonic motion?
- A 342-g mass is attached to a spring and undergoes simple harmonic motion. Its maximum acceleration is 18.6 m/s², and its maximum speed is 1.75 m/s. Determine (a) the angular frequency, (b) the amplitude, and (c) the spring constant.
- A particle undergoes simple harmonic motion with amplitude 27 cm and maximum speed 4.6 m/s. Find the (a) angular frequency, (b) period, and (c) maximum acceleration.

Section 13.3 Applications of Simple Harmonic Motion

- How long should you make a simple pendulum so its period is (a) 200 ms, (b) 5.0 s, and (c) 2.0 min?
- At the heart of a grandfather clock is a simple pendulum 1.35 m long; the clock ticks each time the pendulum reaches its maximum displacement in either direction. What's the time interval between ticks?
- A 280-g volleyball with a 21.0-cm diameter is suspended by a wire and is undergoing torsional oscillations at 1.57 Hz. Find the torsional constant of the wire.

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 13.1 Describing Oscillatory Motion

- A doctor counts 75 heartbeats in 1.0 minute. What are the corresponding period and frequency?
- A violin string playing the note A oscillates at 440 Hz. What's its oscillation period?

23. A meter stick is suspended from one end and set swinging. Find the period of the resulting small-amplitude oscillations.

Section 13.4 Circular and Harmonic Motion

24. A wheel rotates at 720 rpm. Viewed from the edge, a point on the wheel appears to undergo simple harmonic motion. What are (a) the frequency in Hz and (b) the angular frequency for this SHM?
25. The x - and y -components of an object's motion are harmonic with frequency ratio 5.75:1. How many oscillations must each component undergo before the object returns to its initial position?

Section 13.5 Energy in Simple Harmonic Motion

26. A 450-g mass on a spring is oscillating at 1.2 Hz, with total energy 0.51 J. What's the oscillation amplitude?
27. A torsional oscillator of rotational inertia $1.6 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$ and torsional constant $3.4 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m/rad}$ has total energy 4.4 J. Find its maximum angular displacement and maximum angular speed.
28. A 1600-kg car is going at 90 km/h. It's got bad shock absorbers, and it's executing vertical SHM with amplitude and frequency of approximately 15 cm and 1.1 Hz, respectively. Estimate the percentage of the car's kinetic energy that is in the oscillation.

Sections 13.6 and 13.7 Damped Harmonic Motion and Resonance

29. The vibration of a piano string can be described by an equation analogous to Equation 13.17. If the quantity analogous to $b/2m$ in that equation has the value 4.4 s^{-1} , how long will it take the amplitude to drop to half its original value?
30. A mass-spring system has $b/m = \omega_0/5$, where b is the damping constant and ω_0 the natural frequency. How does its amplitude at ω_0 compare with its amplitude when driven at frequencies 10% above and below ω_0 ?
31. A car's front suspension has a natural frequency of 0.45 Hz. The car's front shock absorbers are worn and no longer provide critical damping. The car is driving on a bumpy road with bumps 48 m apart. At a certain speed, the driver notices that the car begins to shake violently. What is this speed?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two worked examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

32. **Example 13.2:** Mass-spring systems are used as tuned mass dampers to diminish the vibrations of the balconies of a performing arts center. The oscillation frequency of the TMDs is 6.85 Hz, the oscillating mass is 142 kg, and the oscillation amplitude is 4.86 cm. What are (a) the spring constant, (b) the maximum speed, and (c) the maximum acceleration of the mass?
33. **Example 13.2:** A tuned mass damper for a skyscraper consists of a mass-spring system with spring constant 0.288 MN/m . What should be its mass if it's to oscillate with a period of 5.71 s?
34. **Example 13.2:** An alternative to the mass-spring tuned mass damper of Example 13.2 is to use a large pendulum. The Taipei 101 mass damper (see Application, page 251) is such a damper. It uses a solid ball with diameter 5.49 m and mass 660,000 kg, suspended from multiple cables. Find the period of this system.

Although the real system is more complex, treat this TMD as a simple pendulum with a single 8.40-m-long cable attached to the top of the ball, and measuring the length L from the suspension point to the center of the ball (which is *not* the same as the cable length). Neglect the mass of the cable.

35. **Example 13.2:** Repeat the preceding problem, now treating the mass damper more accurately as a physical pendulum but still neglecting the cable mass. *Hint:* You'll find the parallel-axis theorem useful.
36. **Example 13.5:** A mass-spring system is oscillating with frequency $f = 0.377 \text{ Hz}$ and amplitude 28.2 cm. Find its speed at the point where its kinetic and potential energies are equal.
37. **Example 13.5:** A mass-spring system with spring constant $k = 63.7 \text{ N/m}$ is oscillating with angular frequency 2.38 s^{-1} and total energy 7.69 J. Find (a) its amplitude and (b) its maximum speed.
38. **Example 13.5:** A simple pendulum is swinging with period $T = 2.62 \text{ s}$ and amplitude 8.85° . Find the following quantities at the point where the pendulum's kinetic and potential energies are equal: (a) the angle the pendulum makes with the vertical and (b) the speed of the pendulum bob.
39. **Example 13.5:** A simple pendulum of mass m is swinging with period T and amplitude θ_{max} . Find expressions for (a) its total energy and (b) its maximum speed.

Problems

40. A simple model for carbon dioxide consists of three mass points (atoms) connected by two springs (electric forces), as shown in Fig. 13.27. One way this system can oscillate is if the carbon atom stays fixed and the two oxygens move symmetrically on either side of it. If the frequency of this oscillation is $4.0 \times 10^{13} \text{ Hz}$, what's the effective spring constant? (*Note:* The mass of an oxygen atom is 16 u.)
41. **CH** A pendulum consists of a 320-g solid ball 15.0 cm in diameter, suspended by an essentially massless string 80.0 cm long. Calculate the period of this pendulum, treating it first as a simple pendulum and then as a physical pendulum. What's the error in the simple-pendulum approximation? (*Hint:* Remember the parallel-axis theorem.)
42. **BIO** The human eye and the muscles that hold it can be modeled as a mass-spring system with typical values $m = 7.5 \text{ g}$ and $k = 2.5 \text{ kN/m}$. What's the resonant frequency of this system? Shaking your head at this frequency blurs vision, as the eyeball undergoes resonant oscillations.
43. A mass m slides along a frictionless horizontal surface at speed v_0 . It strikes a spring of constant k attached to a rigid wall, as shown in Fig. 13.28. After an elastic encounter with the spring, the mass heads back in the direction it came from. In terms of k , m , and v_0 , determine (a) how long the mass is in contact with the spring and (b) the spring's maximum compression.



FIGURE 13.27 Problem 40



FIGURE 13.28 Problem 43

44. Show by substitution that $x(t) = A \sin \omega t$ is a solution to Equation 13.3.
45. A physics student, bored by a lecture on simple harmonic motion, idly picks up his pencil (mass 8.65 g, length 18.8 cm) by

the tip with his frictionless fingers, and allows it to swing back and forth with small amplitude. If the pencil completes 5974 full cycles during the lecture, how long does the lecture last?

46. A pendulum of length L is mounted in a rocket. Find expressions for its period if the rocket is (a) at rest on its launch pad, (b) accelerating upward with acceleration $a = \frac{1}{2}g$, (c) accelerating downward with $a = \frac{1}{2}g$, and (d) in free fall.

47. The protein dynein powers the flagella that propel some unicellular organisms. Biophysicists have found that dynein is intrinsically oscillatory, and that it exerts peak forces of about 1.0 pN when it attaches to structures called microtubules. The resulting oscillations have amplitude 16 nm. (a) If this system is modeled as a mass-spring system, what's the associated spring constant? (b) If the oscillation frequency is 72 Hz, what's the effective mass?

48. A mass is attached to a vertical spring, which then goes into oscillation. At the high point of the oscillation, the spring is in the original unstretched equilibrium position it had before the mass was attached; the low point is 3.0 cm below this. Find the oscillation period.

49. Derive the period of a simple pendulum by considering the horizontal displacement x and the force acting on the bob, rather than the angular displacement and torque.

50. A solid disk of radius R is suspended from a spring of spring constant k and torsional constant κ , as shown in Fig. 13.29. In terms of k and κ , what value of R will give the same period for the vertical and torsional oscillations of this system?

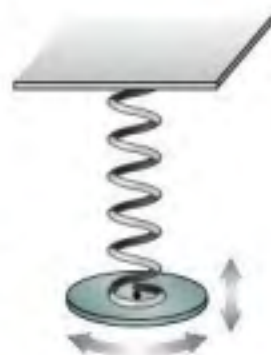


FIGURE 13.29 Problem 50

51. A thin steel beam is suspended from a crane and is undergoing torsional oscillations. Two 83-kg steelworkers leap onto opposite ends of the beam, as shown in Fig. 13.30.



FIGURE 13.30 Problem 51

- If the frequency of torsional oscillations diminishes by 19.0%, what is the beam's mass?

52. A cyclist turns her bicycle upside down to repair it. She then notices that the front wheel is executing a slow, small-amplitude, back-and-forth rotational motion with period 14 s. Treating the wheel as a thin ring of mass 600 g and radius 30 cm, whose only irregularity is the tire valve stem, determine the mass of the valve stem.

53. An object undergoes simple harmonic motion in two mutually perpendicular directions, its position given by $\vec{r} = A \sin \omega t \hat{i} + A \cos \omega t \hat{j}$. (a) Show that the object remains a fixed distance from the origin (i.e., that its path is circular), and find that distance. (b) Find an expression for the object's velocity. (c) Show that the speed remains constant, and find its value. (d) Find the angular speed of the object in its circular path.

54. The muscles that drive insect wings minimize the energy needed for flight by "choosing" to move at the natural oscillation frequency of the wings. Biologists study this phenomenon by clipping an insect's wings to reduce their mass. If the wing system is modeled as a simple harmonic oscillator, by what percent will the frequency change if the wing mass is decreased by 15%? Will it increase or decrease?

55. A hollow ball of diameter D is suspended from a string of negligible mass whose length is equal to the ball's diameter. The string is attached to the surface of the ball. Find an expression for the period of this physical pendulum in the small-amplitude approximation.

56. If Jane and Tarzan are initially 8.0 m apart in Fig. 13.12, and Jane's mass is 60 kg, what's the maximum tension in the vine, and at what point does it occur?

57. A *small mass measuring device* (SMMD) used for research on the biological effects of spaceflight consists of a small spring-mounted cage. Rats or other small subjects are introduced into the cage, which is set into oscillation. Calibration of an SMMD gives a linear function for the square of the oscillation period versus the subject's mass m in kg: $T^2 = 3.3 \text{ s}^2 + (4.5 \text{ s}^2/\text{kg})m$. Find (a) the spring constant and (b) the mass of the cage alone.

58. A thin, uniform hoop of mass M and radius R is suspended from a horizontal rod and set oscillating with small amplitude, as shown in Fig. 13.31. Show that the period of the oscillations is $2\pi\sqrt{2R/g}$. (Hint: You may find the parallel-axis theorem useful.)



FIGURE 13.31 Problem 58

59. A mass m is mounted between two springs with constants k_1 and k_2 , as shown in Fig. 13.32. Show that the angular frequency of oscillation is $\omega = \sqrt{(k_1 + k_2)/m}$.

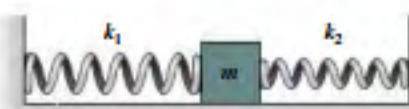


FIGURE 13.32 Problem 59

60. Two mass-spring systems are oscillating with the same total energy, but system A's amplitude is twice that of system B. How do their spring constants compare?

61. Show that the potential energy of a simple pendulum is proportional to the square of the angular displacement in the small-amplitude limit.

62. The total energy of a mass-spring system is the sum of its kinetic and potential energy: $E = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 + \frac{1}{2}kx^2$. Assuming E remains constant, differentiate both sides of this expression with respect to time and show that Equation 13.3 results. (Hint: Remember that $v = dx/dt$.)

63. A solid cylinder of mass M and radius R is mounted on an axle through its center. The axle is attached to a horizontal spring of constant k , and the cylinder rolls back and forth without slipping (Fig. 13.33). Write the statement of energy conservation for this system, and differentiate it to obtain an equation analogous to Equation 13.3 (see Problem 62).

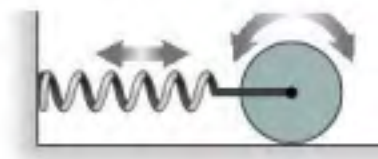


FIGURE 13.33 Problem 63

- Comparing your result with Equation 13.3, determine the angular frequency of the motion.

64. A mass m is free to slide on a frictionless track whose height y as a function of horizontal position x is $y = ax^2$, where a is a constant with units of inverse length. The mass is given an initial displacement from the bottom of the track and then released. Find an expression for the period of the resulting motion.

65. A 340-g mass is mounted on a spring of constant $k = 3.3 \text{ N/m}$. The damping constant for this system is $b = 8.4 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kg/s}$. How many oscillations will the system undergo before the amplitude decays to $1/e$ of its original value?

66. A harmonic oscillator is underdamped if the damping constant b is less than $\sqrt{2}m\omega_0$, where ω_0 is the natural frequency of undamped motion. Show that for an underdamped oscillator, Equation 13.19 has a maximum at a driving frequency less than ω_0 .

67. A massless spring with $k = 74 \text{ N/m}$ hangs from the ceiling. A 550-g mass is hooked onto the unstretched spring and allowed to drop. Find (a) the amplitude and (b) the period of the resulting motion.
68. A meter stick is suspended from a frictionless rod through a small hole at the 30-cm mark. Find the period of small-amplitude oscillations about the stick's equilibrium position.
69. A particle of mass m has potential energy given by $U = ax^2$, where a is a constant and x is the particle's position. Find an expression for the frequency of simple harmonic oscillations this particle undergoes.
70. Two balls with the same unknown mass m are mounted on opposite ends of a 1.5-m-long rod of mass 450 g. The system is suspended from a wire attached to the center of the rod and set into torsional oscillations. If the wire has torsional constant $0.63 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m/rad}$ and the period of the oscillations is 5.6 s, what's the unknown mass m ?
71. Two mass-spring systems with the same mass are undergoing oscillatory motion with the same amplitudes. System 1 has thrice the frequency of system 2. How do (a) their energies and (b) their maximum accelerations compare?
72. Two mass-spring systems have the same mass and the same total energy. The amplitude of system 1 is 4 times that of system 2. How do (a) their frequencies and (b) their maximum accelerations compare?
73. Show by direct substitution that $x = A\cos(\omega_d t + \phi)$ satisfies Equation 13.18, with A given by Equation 13.19.
74. A 600-g block on a frictionless, horizontal surface is attached to a rather limp spring with $k = 8.7 \text{ N/m}$. A second block rests on the first, and the whole system executes simple harmonic motion with period 2.1 s. When the amplitude of the motion is increased to 35 cm, the upper block just begins to slip. What's the coefficient of static friction between the blocks?
75. Repeat Problem 64 for a small solid ball of mass M and radius R that rolls without slipping on the parabolic track.
76. This problem explores what would happen if a hole were drilled through Earth's center and out the other side, and an object were dropped into the hole. Approximating Earth as a uniform solid sphere, the gravitational acceleration within the planet (including inside the hypothetical hole) would be $g(r) = g_0(r/R_E)$, where g_0 is the value at Earth's surface, r is the distance from Earth's center, and R_E is Earth's radius. This gravitational acceleration is directed toward Earth's center. (a) Write an expression for the force on a mass m at any point r in the hole, apply Newton's second law, and show that you get an equation analogous to Equation 13.3. Neglect air resistance. (b) Use your analogy to find an expression for the period of the simple harmonic motion that results when the mass is dropped into the hole. (c) Use appropriate values to find a numerical value for the period, and compare with the period for circular low-Earth orbit that we found in Chapter 8.

77. A disk of radius R is suspended from a pivot somewhere between its center and edge (Fig. 13.34). For what point will the period of this physical pendulum be a minimum?

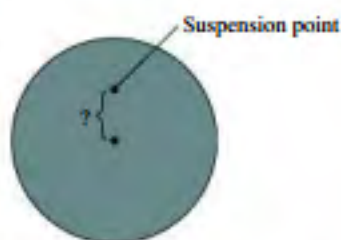


FIGURE 13.34 Problem 77

78. A *variable star* is a star whose radius and therefore brightness varies periodically. Variable stars are especially important because they help astronomers establish the cosmic distance scale. If a star's radius at equilibrium is R_0 , then, under some simplifying assumptions about the behavior of the gas making up the star, the deviation δR from R_0 obeys the equation

$$\frac{d^2(\delta R)}{dt^2} = -\frac{GM}{R_0^3} \delta R,$$

where M is the star's mass and G is the constant of universal gravitation. Use this fact to estimate the period of the star Delta Cephei, whose mass and radius are, respectively, about 5 and 50 times those of the Sun. (Your answer is off by a factor of about 3 because of the approximations made here.)

79. You're a structural engineer working on a design for a steel beam, and you need to know its resonant frequency. The beam's mass is 3320 kg. You test the beam by clamping one end and deflecting the other so it bends, and you determine the associated potential energy. The table below gives the results:

Beam deflection x (cm)	Potential energy U (J)
-4.54	164
-3.49	141
-2.62	71.9
-1.22	9.15
-0.448	0.162
0	0
0.730	4.13
1.29	16.3
2.13	34.0
3.39	115
4.70	225

Find a quantity which, when U is plotted against it, should give a straight line. Make your plot, determine the best-fit line, and use its slope to determine the resonant frequency of the beam.

80. Show that $x(t) = a \cos \omega t - b \sin \omega t$ represents simple harmonic motion, as in Equation 13.8, with $A = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ and $\phi = \tan^{-1}(b/a)$.

81. You're working for the summer with an ornithologist who knows you've studied physics. She asks you for a noninvasive way to measure birds' masses. You propose using a bird feeder in the shape of a 50-cm-diameter disk of mass 340 g, suspended by a wire with torsional constant $5.00 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m/rad}$ (Fig. 13.35). Two birds land on opposite sides and the feeder goes into torsional oscillation at 2.6 Hz. Assuming the birds have the same mass, what is it?



FIGURE 13.35 Problem 81

82. While waiting for your plane to take off, you suspend your keys from a thread and set the resulting pendulum oscillating. It completes exactly 90 cycles in 1 minute. You repeat the experiment as the plane accelerates down the runway, and now measure exactly 93 cycles in 1 minute. Find the plane's acceleration.

83. You're working for a playground equipment company, which wants to know the rotational inertia of its swing with a child on board; the combined mass is 32.6 kg. You observe the child twirling around in the swing, twisting the ropes as shown in Fig. 13.36. As a result,

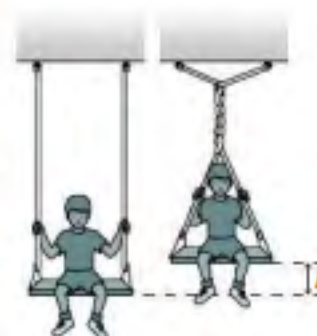


FIGURE 13.36 Problem 83

child and swing rise slightly, with the rise h in cm equal to the square of the number of full turns. When the child stops twisting, the swing begins torsional oscillations. You measure the period at 18.4 s. What do you report for the rotational inertia of the child–swing system?

84. The pendulum in an antique clock consists of a thin, uniform rod of length 30.00 cm and negligible mass, on which is mounted a solid disk of mass 692.2 g and diameter 6.350 cm, as shown in Fig. 13.37. A nut of negligible mass allows the disk to be moved up or down slightly to adjust the clock's timekeeping. By how much does the period of the pendulum change when the nut is moved upward 1.000 mm (i.e., when the small distance h shown in the figure increases by 1 mm)?

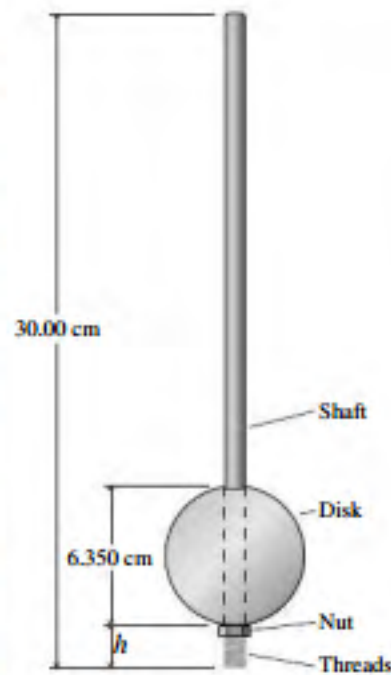


FIGURE 13.37 Problem 84

85. This problem explores the nonlinear pendulum discussed qualitatively in Conceptual Example 13.1. You can tackle this problem if you have experience with your calculator's differential-equation solving capabilities or if you've used a software program like *Mathematica* or *Maple* that can solve differential equations numerically. On page 252 we wrote Newton's law for a pendulum as $I d^2\theta/dt^2 = -mgL \sin\theta$. (a) Rewrite this equation in a form suitable for a simple pendulum, but without making the approximation $\sin\theta \approx \theta$. Although it won't affect the form of the equation, assume that your pendulum uses a massless rigid rod rather than a string, so it can turn completely upside down without collapsing. (b) Enter your equation into your calculator or software, and produce graphical solutions to the equation for the situation where you specify the initial kinetic energy K_0 when the pendulum is at its bottommost position. In particular, describe solutions for (i) $K_0 \ll U_{\max}$, (ii) $K_0 \approx U_{\max}$, and (iii) $K_0 > U_{\max}$. Here $U_{\max}$ is the maximum possible potential energy for the system, which occurs when the pendulum is completely upside down; $U_0 = 2Lmg$, where L is the pendulum's length.

Passage Problems

Physicians and physiologists are interested in the long-term effects of apparent weightlessness on the human body. Among these effects are redistribution of body fluids to the upper body, loss of muscle tone, and overall mass loss. One method of measuring mass in the apparent weightlessness of an orbiting spacecraft is to strap the astronaut into a chairlike device mounted on springs (Fig. 13.38). This *body mass measuring device* (BMMD) is set oscillating in simple harmonic motion, and measurement of the oscillation period, along with the known spring constant and mass of the chair itself, then yields the astronaut's mass. When a 60-kg astronaut is strapped into the 20-kg chair, the time for three oscillation periods is measured to be 6.0 s.



FIGURE 13.38 Astronaut Tamara Jernigan uses a body mass measuring device in the Spacelab Life Sciences Module (Passage Problems 86–89).

86. If a 90-kg astronaut is "weighed" with this BMMD, the time for three periods will be
 a. 50% longer.
 b. shorter by less than 50%.
 c. longer by less than 50%.
 d. longer by more than 50%.
87. If the same device were used on Earth, the results for a given astronaut (assuming mass hasn't yet been lost in space) would be
 a. the same.
 b. greater than in an orbiting spacecraft.
 c. less than in an orbiting spacecraft.
 d. meaningless, because the device won't work on Earth.
88. If an astronaut's mass declines linearly with time while she's in orbit, the oscillation period of the BMMD will
 a. decrease at an ever-decreasing rate.
 b. decrease linearly with time.
 c. decrease at an ever-increasing rate.
 d. increase linearly with time.
89. The spring constant for the BMMD described here is
 a. 80 N/m.
 b. 80π N/m.
 c. 2 N/m.
 d. $80\pi^2$ N/m.
 e. none of the above.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

1 Hz is 1 cycle per second, so that's 32,768 oscillation cycles per second. This number is 2^{15} , so it takes 15 divisions by two to reduce to the one "tick" per second that drives the watch.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 13.1 (c)
 13.2 Frequencies and periods are the same; amplitudes and phase constants are different because of the different initial displacements and times of release, respectively.
 13.3 (1) no change; (2) doubles; (3) doubles
 13.4 (1) 1:2; (2) 3:2
 13.5 The more energetic oscillator has (1) twice the mass and (2) twice the spring constant. (3) Their maximum speeds are equal.
 13.6 (1) c; (2) b
 13.7 The frequency, which needs to be at the glass's resonant frequency (although, even at resonance, a sound that's too weak won't break the glass).



Wave Motion

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 14.1 Describe waves qualitatively and distinguish longitudinal from transverse waves.
- LO 14.2 Describe wave motion quantitatively using functions of space and time.
- LO 14.3 Explain how Newtonian physics describes waves on strings.
- LO 14.4 Evaluate the energy carried by waves.
- LO 14.5 Describe sound waves and quantify sound intensity in decibels.
- LO 14.6 Describe wave interference in one and two dimensions.
- LO 14.7 Describe wave reflection and standing waves.
- LO 14.8 Describe the Doppler effect and shock waves.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Newton's second law (Section 4.2)
- Power (Section 6.5)
- Simple harmonic motion (Section 13.2)
- Trig identities involving multiple angles

Humans and other animals communicate using sound waves. Light and related waves enable us to visualize our surroundings and provide most of our information about the universe beyond Earth. Our cell phones keep us connected via radio waves. Physicians probe our bodies with ultrasound waves. Radio waves connect our wireless devices to the Internet and cook the food in our microwave ovens. Earthquakes trigger waves in the solid Earth and may generate dangerous tsunamis. Black holes collide in the distant universe, generating waves that ripple the fabric of space and time. **Wave motion** is an essential feature of our physical environment.

All these examples involve a disturbance that moves or **propagates** through space. The disturbance carries energy but not matter. Air doesn't move from your mouth to a listener's ear, but sound energy does. Water doesn't move across the open ocean, but wave energy does. **A wave is a traveling disturbance that transports energy but not matter.**

14.1 Waves and Their Properties

LO 14.1 Describe waves qualitatively and distinguish longitudinal from transverse waves.

In this chapter we'll deal with **mechanical waves**, which are disturbances of some material **medium**, such as air, water, a violin string, or Earth's interior. Visible and infrared light waves, radio waves, ultraviolet and X rays, in contrast, are **electromagnetic waves**. They share many properties with mechanical waves, but they don't require a material medium. We'll treat electromagnetic waves in Chapters 29–32. **Gravitational waves**, first detected in 2015, are also nonmechanical waves. We'll explore them further in Chapter 33.



Ocean waves travel thousands of kilometers across the open sea before breaking on shore. How much water moves with the waves?

Mechanical waves occur when a disturbance in one part of a medium is communicated to adjacent parts. Figure 14.1 shows a multiple mass–spring system that serves as a model for many types of mechanical waves. Disturb one mass, and it goes into simple harmonic motion. But because the masses are connected, that motion is communicated to the adjacent mass. As a result, both the disturbance and its associated energy propagate along the mass–spring system, disturbing successive masses as they go.



WAVE MOTIONS A wave moves energy from place to place but not matter. However, that doesn't mean that the matter making up the wave medium doesn't move. It does, undergoing localized oscillatory motion as the wave passes. But once the wave is gone, the disturbed matter returns to its equilibrium state. Don't confuse this localized motion of the medium with the motion of the wave itself. Both occur, but only the latter carries energy from one place to another.

Longitudinal and Transverse Waves

In Fig. 14.1, we disturbed the system by displacing one block so its subsequent oscillations were back and forth along the structure—in the same direction as the wave propagation. The result is a **longitudinal wave**. Sound is a longitudinal wave, as we'll see in Section 14.5. We could equally well displace a mass at right angles, as in Fig. 14.2. Then we get a **transverse wave**, whose disturbance is at right angles to the wave propagation. Some waves include both longitudinal and transverse motions, as shown for a water wave in Fig. 14.3.

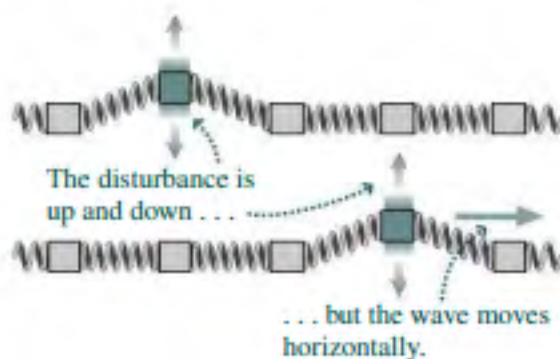


FIGURE 14.2 A transverse wave.

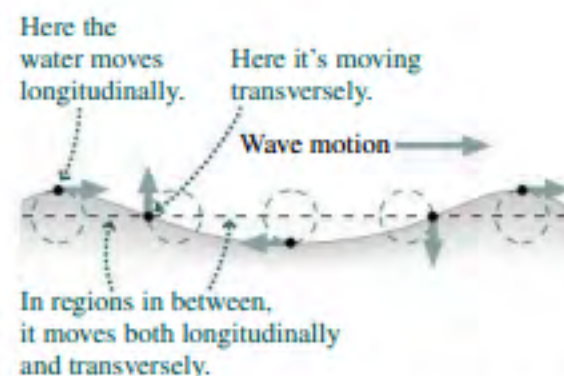


FIGURE 14.3 A water wave has both longitudinal and transverse components.

Amplitude and Waveform

The maximum value of a wave's disturbance is the wave **amplitude**. For a water wave, amplitude is the maximum height above the undisturbed water level; for a sound wave, it's the maximum excess air pressure; for the waves of Figs. 14.1 and 14.2, it's the maximum displacement of a mass.

Wave disturbances come in many shapes, called **waveforms** (Fig. 14.4). An isolated disturbance is a **pulse**, which occurs when the medium is disturbed only briefly. A **continuous wave** results from an ongoing periodic disturbance. Intermediate between these extremes is a **wave train**, resulting from a periodic disturbance lasting a finite time.

Wavelength, Period, and Frequency

A continuous wave repeats in both space and time. The **wavelength** λ is the *distance* over which the wave pattern repeats (Fig. 14.5). The wave **period** T is the *time* for one complete oscillation. The **frequency** f , or number of wave cycles per unit time, is the inverse of the period.

Wave Speed

A wave travels at a specific speed through its medium. The speed of sound in air is about 340 m/s. Small ripples on water move at about 20 cm/s, while earthquake waves travel at

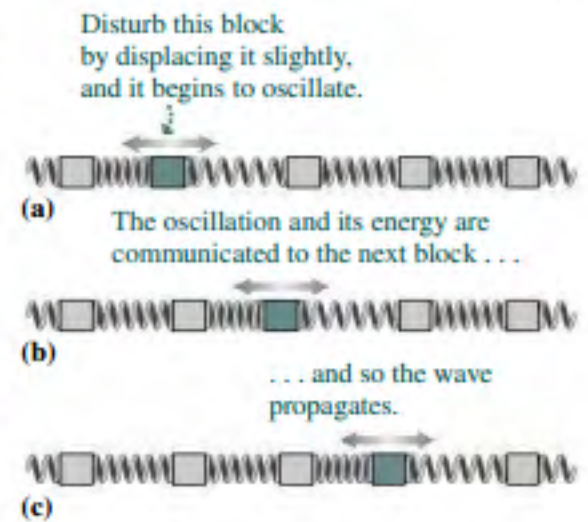


FIGURE 14.1 Wave propagation in a mass–spring system.

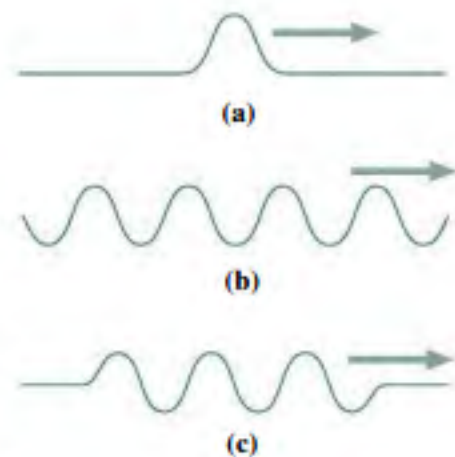


FIGURE 14.4 (a) A pulse, (b) a continuous wave, and (c) a wave train.

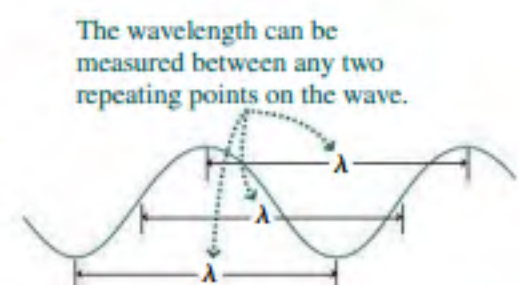


FIGURE 14.5 The wavelength λ is the distance over which the wave pattern repeats.

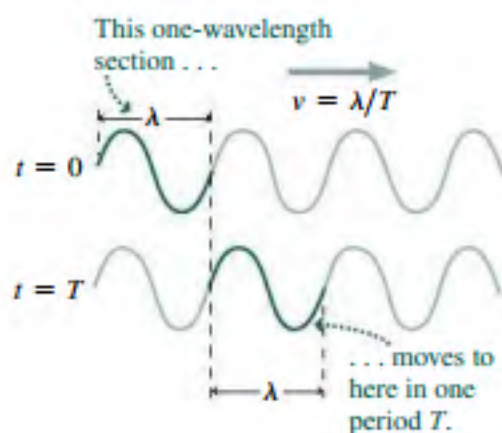


FIGURE 14.6 One full cycle passes a given point in one wave period T ; the wave speed is therefore $v = \lambda/T$.

several kilometers per second. The physical properties of the medium ultimately determine the wave speed, as we'll see in Section 14.3.

Wave speed, wavelength, and period are related. In one wave period, a fixed observer sees one complete wavelength go by (Fig. 14.6). Thus, the wave moves one wavelength in one period, so its speed is

v is the speed at which a wave propagates. The wave moves one wavelength λ ...

$$v = \frac{\lambda}{T} = \lambda f \quad (\text{wave speed})$$

(14.1)

...in one period T , so the wave speed is λ/T . Frequency $f = 1/T$, so v is also λf .

where the second equality follows because period and frequency are inverses.

GOT IT?

14.1 A boat bobs up and down on a water wave, moving 2 m vertically in 1 s. A wave crest moves 10 m horizontally in 2 s. Is the wave speed (a) 2 m/s or (b) 5 m/s? Explain.

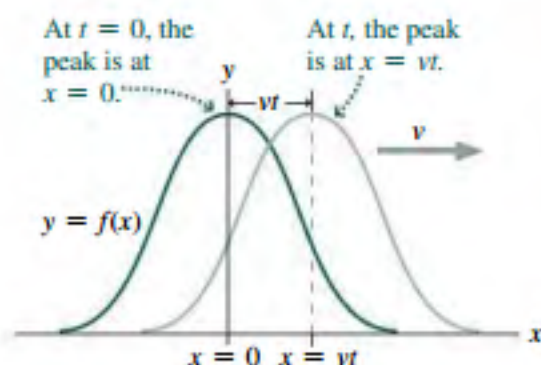


FIGURE 14.7 The wave pulse moves a distance vt in time t , but its shape stays the same.

14.2 Wave Math

LO 14.2 Describe wave motion quantitatively using functions of space and time.

Figure 14.7 shows “snapshots” of a wave pulse at time $t = 0$ and at some later time t . Initially the wave disturbance y is some function of position: $y = f(x)$. Later the pulse has moved to the right a distance vt , but its shape, described by the function f , is the same. We can represent this displaced pulse by replacing x with $x - vt$ as the argument of the function f . Then x has to be larger—by the amount vt —to give the same value of f as it did before. For example, this particular pulse peaks when the argument of f is zero. Initially, that occurred when x was zero. Replacing x by $x - vt$ ensures that the argument becomes zero when $x = vt$, putting the peak at this new position. As time increases, so does vt and therefore the value of x corresponding to the peak. Thus $f(x - vt)$ correctly represents the moving pulse.

Although we considered a single pulse, this argument applies to *any* function $f(x)$, including continuous waves: Replace the argument x with $x - vt$, and the function $f(x - vt)$ describes a wave moving in the positive x -direction with speed v . You can convince yourself that a function of the form $f(x + vt)$ describes a wave moving in the negative x -direction.

A particularly important case is a **simple harmonic wave**, for which a “snapshot” at time $t = 0$ shows a sinusoidal function. We'll choose coordinates so that $x = 0$ is at a maximum of the wave, making the function a cosine (Fig. 14.8a). Then $y(x, 0) = A \cos kx$, where A is the amplitude and k is a constant, called the **wave number**. We can find k because we know that the wave repeats in one wavelength λ . Since the period of the cosine function is 2π , we therefore want kx to be 2π when x equals λ . Then $k\lambda = 2\pi$, or

k is the wave number, the spatial analog of the angular frequency ω . Just as ω is $2\pi/T$, so k is $2\pi/\lambda$...

$$k = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \quad (\text{wave number})$$

(14.2)

...where λ is the wavelength.

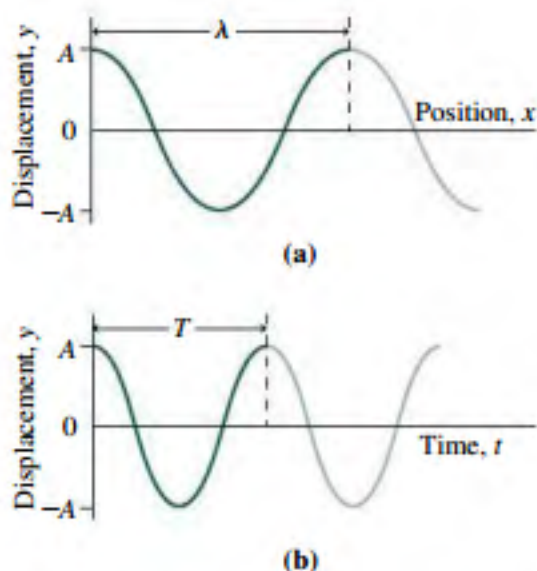


FIGURE 14.8 A sinusoidal wave (a) as a function of position at fixed time $t = 0$ and (b) as a function of time at fixed position $x = 0$.

To describe a wave moving with speed v , we replace x in the expression $A \cos kx$ with $x - vt$, giving $y(x, t) = A \cos[k(x - vt)]$. If we now sit at the point $x = 0$, we'll see an oscillation described by $y(0, t) = A \cos(-kvt) = A \cos(kvt)$, where the last step follows because $\cos(-x) = \cos x$. But we found that $k = 2\pi/\lambda$, and Equation 14.1 shows that $v = \lambda/T$, so the argument of the cosine function becomes $kvt = (2\pi/\lambda)(\lambda/T)t = 2\pi t/T$.

In Chapter 13, we introduced the **angular frequency** $\omega = 2\pi/T$ in describing simple harmonic motion; here the same quantity arises in describing wave motion. And no wonder: At a fixed point in space, the wave medium undergoes simple harmonic motion with angular frequency $\omega = 2\pi/T$ (Fig. 14.8b). Putting this all together, we can write a traveling sinusoidal wave in the form

$$y(x, t) = A \cos(kx \pm \omega t) \quad (\text{sinusoidal wave}) \quad (14.3)$$

A wave's displacement y is a function of both position x and time t .
 A is the wave amplitude.
 k is the wave number, and x is the position where we're evaluating y .
 ω is the angular frequency, and t is the time when we're evaluating y .
 Here we're describing a sinusoidal wave.

where we've written $\pm$ so we can describe a wave going in the positive x -direction ($-$ sign) or the negative x -direction ($+$ sign). The argument of the cosine is called the wave's **phase**. Note that k and ω are related to the more familiar wavelength λ and period T in the same way: $k = 2\pi/\lambda$ and $\omega = 2\pi/T$. Just as ω is a measure of frequency—oscillation cycles per unit *time*, with an extra factor of 2π —so is k a measure of **spatial frequency**—oscillation cycles per unit *distance*, again with that factor of 2π to make the math simpler. The relations between k , λ and ω , T allow us to rewrite the wave speed of Equation 14.1 in terms of k and ω :

$$v = \frac{\lambda}{T} = \frac{2\pi/k}{2\pi/\omega} = \frac{\omega}{k} \quad (14.4)$$

EXAMPLE 14.1

Describing a Wave: Surfing

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A surfer paddles out beyond the breaking surf to where the waves are sinusoidal in shape, with crests 14 m apart. The surfer bobs a vertical distance 3.6 m from trough to crest, a process that takes 1.5 s. Find the wave speed, and describe the wave using Equation 14.3.

INTERPRET This is a problem about a simple harmonic wave—that is, a wave with sinusoidal shape.

DEVELOP We'll take $x = 0$ at the location of a wave crest when $t = 0$, so Equation 14.3, $y(x, t) = A \cos(kx \pm \omega t)$, applies. Let's take the positive x -direction toward shore, so we'll use the minus sign in Equation 14.3. In Fig. 14.9a we sketched a "snapshot" of the wave, showing the spatial information we're given. Figure 14.9b shows the temporal information.

EVALUATE The 1.5-s trough-to-crest time in Fig. 14.9b is half the full crest-to-crest period T , so $T = 3.0$ s. The crest-to-crest distance in Fig. 14.9a is the wavelength λ , so $\lambda = 14$ m. Then Equation 14.1 gives

$$v = \frac{\lambda}{T} = \frac{14 \text{ m}}{3.0 \text{ s}} = 4.7 \text{ m/s}$$

To describe the wave with Equation 14.3 we need the amplitude A , wave number k , and angular frequency ω . The amplitude is half the crest-to-trough displacement, or $A = 1.8$ m, as shown in Fig. 14.9a. The wave number k and angular frequency ω then follow from λ and T : $k = 2\pi/\lambda = 0.449 \text{ m}^{-1}$ and $\omega = 2\pi/T = 2.09 \text{ s}^{-1}$. Then the wave description is

$$y(x, t) = 1.8 \cos(0.449x - 2.09t)$$

with y and x in meters and t in seconds.

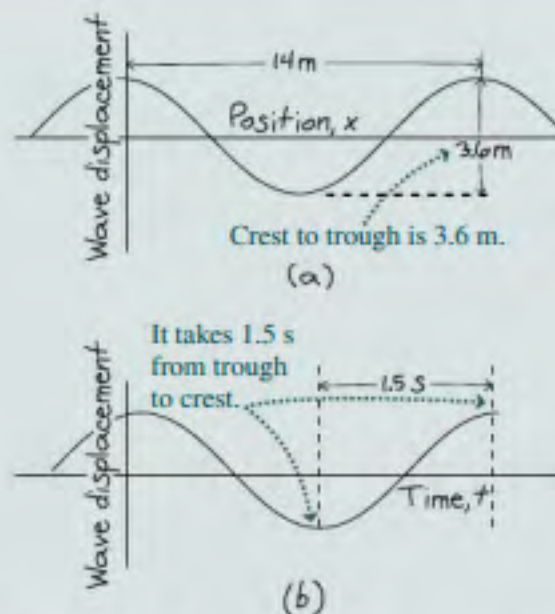
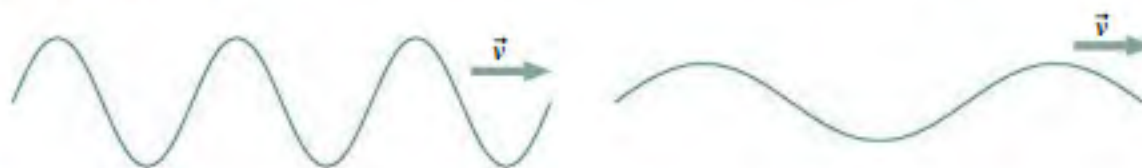


FIGURE 14.9 Our sketch of displacement versus (a) position and (b) time.

ASSESS As a check on our answer, let's see whether our values of ω and k satisfy Equation 14.4: $v = \omega/k = 2.09 \text{ s}^{-1}/0.449 \text{ m}^{-1} = 4.7 \text{ m/s}$. Thus the pairs λ , T and ω , k are equivalent ways to describe the same wave.

GOT IT?

14.2 The figure shows snapshots of two waves propagating with the same speed. Which has the greater (1) amplitude, (2) wavelength, (3) period, (4) wave number, and (5) frequency?



The Wave Equation

We argued our way to Equation 14.3 for a sinusoidal wave on mathematical grounds alone. Whether such waves are actually possible depends on the physical properties of the medium. Many media do, in fact, support waves as described by Equation 14.3. We'll explore one case in detail in the next section. More generally, physicists analyze the behavior of a medium in response to disturbances. Often the analysis results in a particular equation relating the space and time derivatives of the disturbed quantity:

Because the wave displacement y is a function of both x and t , we use partial derivatives, writing ∂ instead of d .

Here's the second partial derivative of the wave displacement with respect to time.

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{v^2} \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \quad (\text{wave equation}) \quad (14.5)$$

The $=$ sign relates the spatial and temporal second derivatives of the wave displacement y .

v is the wave speed.

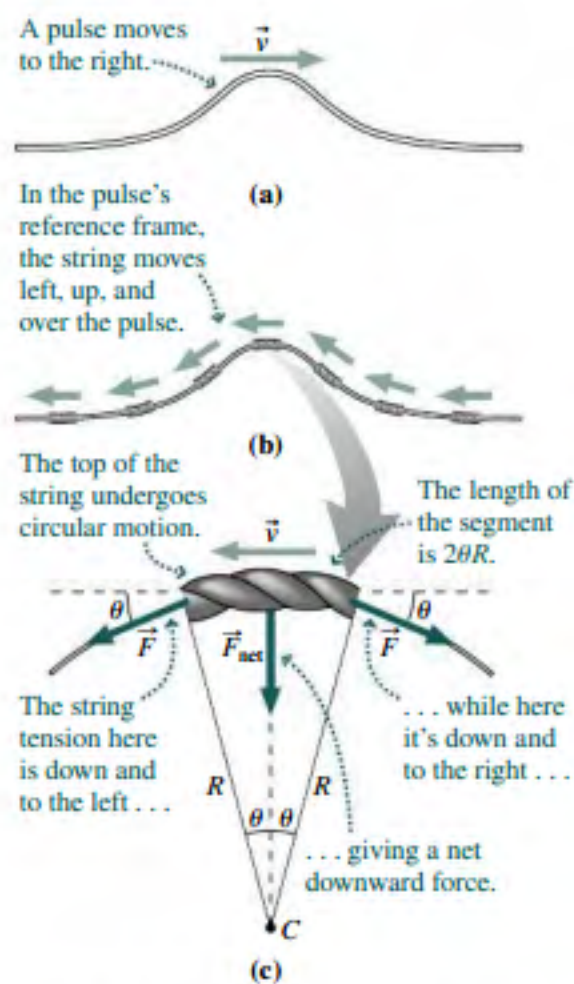


FIGURE 14.10 A wave pulse moving on a string. In (c), each of the diagonal forces shown contributes a downward component $F \sin \theta$.

This is the **wave equation** for waves propagating in one dimension. Here y is the wave disturbance—the height of a water wave, the pressure in a sound wave, and so on. The quantity v is the wave speed, which usually appears as a combination of quantities related to properties of the medium, and thus allows physicists to deduce the wave speed. Because the wave disturbance is a function of the two variables x (spatial position) and t (time), the derivatives here are **partial derivatives**, designated with the symbol ∂ and indicating differentiation with respect to one variable while the other is held constant. Thus the wave equation is a **partial differential equation**. Solving such equations requires more advanced math courses, but you can show directly (Problem 71) that Equation 14.3 satisfies the wave equation, with wave speed $v = \omega/k$. More generally, *any* function of the form $f(x \pm vt)$ satisfies the wave equation, as you can show in Problem 72. You'll encounter the wave equation again in Chapter 29, when you study electromagnetic waves.

14.3 Waves on a String

LO 14.3 Explain how Newtonian physics describes waves on strings.

Scientists and engineers generally explore wave possibilities in a medium by applying the laws of physics and deriving a wave equation similar to Equation 14.5. Such analysis reveals the wave speed and other wave properties. Here we'll take a simpler approach to one special case: transverse waves on a stretched string. Our results are directly applicable to musical instruments, climbing ropes, bridge cables, and other elongated structures.

Our string has mass per unit length μ in kilograms per meter, and it's stretched to a tension force F . Consider a wave pulse propagating to the right, as shown in Fig. 14.10a. We'll use Newton's law to analyze the string's motion and determine the speed of the pulse. It's easiest to do this in a frame of reference moving with the pulse; in that frame, the entire string moves *leftward* with the pulse speed v . At the pulse location, however, the string's motion deviates from horizontal as it rides up and down over the pulse (Fig. 14.10b).

Whatever the pulse shape, a small section at the top forms a circular arc of some radius R , as shown in Fig. 14.10c. Then the string right at the top of the pulse undergoes circular motion with speed v and radius R ; if its mass is m , Newton's law requires that a force of magnitude mv^2/R act toward the center of curvature to keep the string on its circular path. This force is provided by the difference in the direction of the string tension between the two ends of the section; as Fig. 14.10c shows, the tension at each end contributes a downward component $F \sin \theta$. Then the net force on the segment has magnitude $2F \sin \theta$ and points toward the center of curvature.

Now we make an additional assumption: that the disturbance of the string is small, in the sense that the string remains almost horizontal even at the pulse. Then the angle θ is small, and we can apply the approximation $\sin \theta \approx \theta$. Therefore, the net force on the string section becomes approximately $2F\theta$. Furthermore, the small-disturbance approximation means that the tension doesn't vary significantly from its undisturbed value, so F in this expression is essentially the same F we're using to characterize the tension throughout the string. Finally, our curved string section forms a circular arc whose length, from Fig. 14.10c, is $2\theta R$. Multiplying by the mass per unit length μ gives its mass: $m = 2\theta R\mu$. Now we can apply Newton's law, equating the net force $2F\theta$ to the mass times acceleration:

$$2F\theta = \frac{mv^2}{R} = \frac{2\theta R\mu v^2}{R} = 2\theta\mu v^2$$

Solving for the wave speed v then gives

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{F}{\mu}} \quad (14.6)$$

Does this make sense? The greater the tension F , the greater the string's acceleration, and the more rapidly the wave should propagate. The string's inertia, on the other hand, limits the acceleration, and therefore a greater mass per unit length should slow the wave. Equation 14.6, with F in the numerator and μ in the denominator, reflects both these trends.

We've made no assumptions here other than to assume that the disturbance is small. Therefore, Equation 14.6 applies to small-amplitude pulses, continuous waves, and wave trains of any shape.

EXAMPLE 14.2 Wave Speed and Tension Force: Rock Climbing

A 43-m-long rope of mass 5.0 kg joins two climbers. One climber strikes the rope, and 1.4 s later the second climber feels the effect. What's the rope tension?

INTERPRET We're asked for the rope tension. Although wave speed isn't mentioned explicitly, we just learned to relate wave speed and rope tension. Striking the rope produces a wave, which the second climber feels. We're given the time it takes that wave to propagate along the rope.

DEVELOP Equation 14.6, $v = \sqrt{F/\mu}$, gives the relations among rope tension, mass per unit length, and wave speed. Our plan is to solve for the rope tension, but first we need to find μ and v from the given information.

EVALUATE We're given the rope's mass m and length L , so its mass per unit length is $\mu = m/L$. We're given the time t for the wave to travel the rope length L , so the wave speed is $v = L/t$. Solving Equation 14.6 for F then gives

$$F = \mu v^2 = \left(\frac{m}{L}\right)\left(\frac{L}{t}\right)^2 = \frac{mL}{t^2} = \frac{(5.0 \text{ kg})(43 \text{ m})}{(1.4 \text{ s})^2} = 110 \text{ N}$$

ASSESS Is this number reasonable? A typical adult weighs around 700 N, so the rope is supporting only a small fraction of the lower climber's weight—a reasonable situation.

14.4 Wave Energy

LO 14.4 Evaluate the energy carried by waves.

Waves carry energy, so a moving wave is characterized by its power—the rate at which it carries energy. We quantify that power in slightly different ways depending on the geometry of the wave.

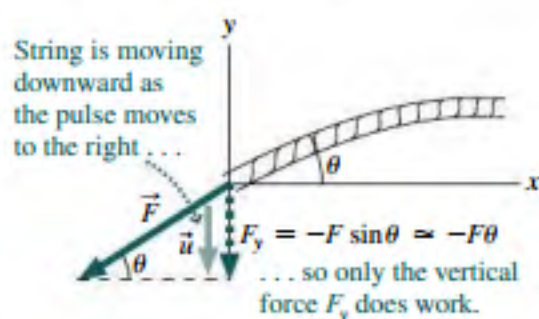


FIGURE 14.11 The vertical force component does work on the string; for small θ , $\sin \theta \approx \theta$, so $F_y \approx F\theta$.

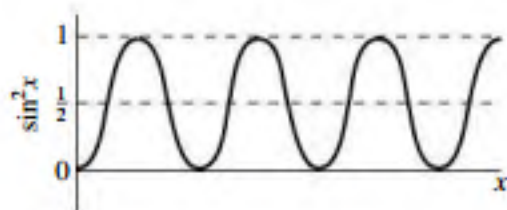


FIGURE 14.12 The function $\sin^2 x$ swings symmetrically between 0 and 1, so its average value is $\frac{1}{2}$.

Wave Power

Waves carry energy. For a wave on a string, the vertical component of the tension force does work that transfers energy along the string. Figure 14.11 shows that the vertical force on the string at the left side of the pulse is approximately $-F\theta$. As we showed in Chapter 6, power—the rate of doing work—is the product of force and velocity, so the power here is $P = -F\theta u$, where u is the vertical velocity of the string—not the wave speed. Rather, the vertical velocity is the rate of change of the string displacement y . For a simple harmonic wave, $y(x, t) = A \cos(kx - \omega t)$. We can differentiate this to get

$$u = \frac{dy}{dt} = A\omega \sin(kx - \omega t)$$

where we used the chain rule, differentiating cosine to $-\sin$ and then multiplying by the derivative, $-\omega$, of the cosine's argument $kx - \omega t$. As Fig. 14.11 shows, the tangent of the angle θ is the slope, dy/dx , of the string. For small angles, $\tan \theta \approx \theta$ so $\theta \approx dy/dx = -kA \sin(kx - \omega t)$. Putting these results for u and θ in our expression for power gives $P = -F\theta u = F\omega k A^2 \sin^2(kx - \omega t)$. The sine term shows that the power fluctuates in space and time. Usually we're interested in the *average* power, $\bar{P} = \frac{1}{2} F\omega k A^2$, which follows because the average value of $\sin^2$ is $\frac{1}{2}$ (Fig. 14.12). We can give this a more physical meaning if we use Equations 14.4 and 14.6 to write $k = \omega/v$ and $F = \mu v^2$, with v the wave speed. Then we have

$$\bar{P} = \frac{1}{2} \mu \omega^2 A^2 v \quad (14.7)$$

This equation gives the sensible result that wave power is directly proportional to the speed v at which energy moves along the wave.

Wave Intensity

Total power is useful in describing waves confined to narrow structures like strings for mechanical waves or optical fibers for electromagnetic waves. But for waves in three-dimensional media, like sound in air, it makes more sense to talk about the **intensity**, or the rate at which the wave carries energy across a unit area perpendicular to the wave propagation. Intensity is thus power per unit area, measured in watts per square meter (W/m^2).

Wavefronts are surfaces on which the wave phase is constant—for example, wave crests. A **plane wave** is one whose wavefronts are planes. Since the wave doesn't spread out, its intensity remains constant (Fig. 14.13a). But as waves propagate from a localized source, they spread and their intensity drops. **Spherical waves** originate from point sources, and spherical wavefronts spread in all directions. Since the area of a sphere is $4\pi r^2$, the intensity of a spherical wave decreases as the inverse square of the distance from its source:

$$I = \frac{P}{A} = \frac{P}{4\pi r^2} \quad (\text{spherical wave}) \quad (14.8)$$

Note that energy isn't lost here; rather, the same energy is spread over ever-larger areas as the wave propagates (Fig. 14.13b). Table 14.1 lists some typical wave intensities.

Table 14.1 Wave Intensities

Wave	Intensity, W/m^2
Sound, 4 m from loud rock band	1
Sound, jet aircraft at 50 m	10
Sound, whisper at 1 m	10^{-10}
Light, sunlight at Earth's orbit	1360
Light, sunlight at Jupiter's orbit	50
Light, 1 m from typical camera flash	4000
Light, at target of laser fusion experiment	10^{18}
TV signal, 5 km from 50-kW transmitter	1.6×10^{-4}
Microwaves, inside microwave oven	6000
Earthquake wave, 5 km from Richter 7.0 quake	4×10^4

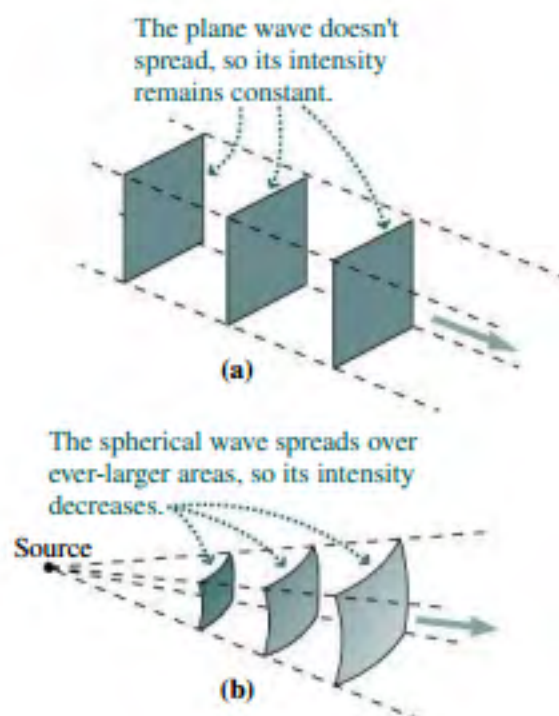


FIGURE 14.13 (a) Plane and (b) spherical waves.

EXAMPLE 14.3 Evaluating Wave Intensity: A Reading Light

Your book is 1.9 m from a 9.2-W LED lamp, and the light is barely adequate for reading. How far from a 4.9-W LED would the book have to be to get the same intensity at the page?

INTERPRET This is a problem about wave intensity, and we identify the LEDs as sources of spherical waves.

DEVELOP Equation 14.8, $I = P/(4\pi r^2)$, gives the intensity. We want both LEDs to produce the same intensity, so we have $I = P_{9.2}/(4\pi r_{9.2}^2) = P_{4.9}/(4\pi r_{4.9}^2)$.

EVALUATE We then solve for the unknown distance $r_{4.9}$:

$$r_{4.9} = r_{9.2} \sqrt{\frac{P_{4.9}}{P_{9.2}}} = (1.9 \text{ m}) \sqrt{\frac{4.9 \text{ W}}{9.2 \text{ W}}} = 1.4 \text{ m}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Although the 4.9-W LED has only about half the power output, the decrease in distance isn't as great as you might expect because the intensity depends on the inverse *square* of the distance. By the way, those energy-efficient LEDs are approximately equivalent to 75-W and 40-W incandescent bulbs, respectively.

GOT IT?

14.3 Two identical stars are different distances from Earth, and the intensity of the light from the more distant star as received at Earth is only 1% that of the closer star. Is the more distant star (a) twice as far away, (b) 100 times as far away, (c) 10 times as far away, or (d) $\sqrt{10}$ times as far away?

14.5 Sound Waves

LO 14.5 Describe sound waves and quantify sound intensity in decibels.

Sound waves are longitudinal mechanical waves that propagate through gases, liquids, and solids. Most familiar is sound in air. Here the wave disturbance comprises a small change in air pressure and density accompanied by a back-and-forth motion of the air (Fig. 14.14). The speed of sound in air and other gases depends on the background pressure p (force per unit area) and density ρ (mass per unit volume):

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma p}{\rho}} \quad (14.9)$$

where γ is a constant characteristic of the gas. For air and other diatomic gases, γ is $\frac{7}{5}$; for monatomic gases like helium, it's $\frac{5}{3}$. Sound propagates faster in liquids and solids because they're less compressible. For dry air at 20°C, Equation 14.9 gives 343 m/s, comparable to the approximate value 340 m/s that we gave in Section 14.1.

Sound and the Human Ear

The human ear responds to a wide range of sound intensities and frequencies, as shown in Fig. 14.15. Audible frequencies range from around 20 Hz to 20 kHz, although the upper limit drops with age. Figure 14.15 shows that the minimum intensity for sound to be audible increases at high and low frequencies; that's the reason for the "loudness" switch on your stereo system, which boosts lows and highs to make the sound richer at low volumes. Dolphins, bats, and other creatures can hear much higher frequencies than we humans; bats locate their prey with sound waves at frequencies approaching 100 kHz. Medical ultrasound frequencies extend to tens of MHz.

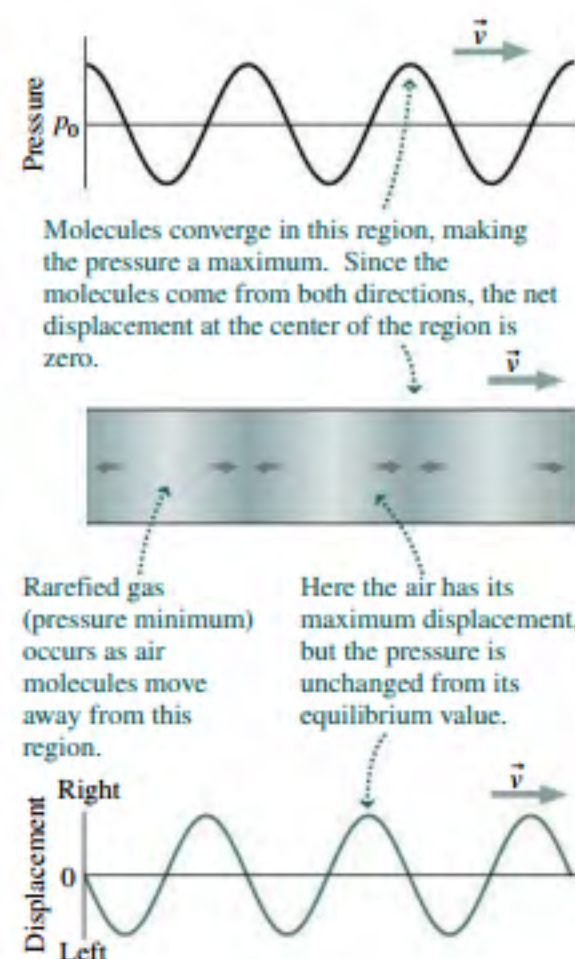


FIGURE 14.14 A sound wave consists of alternating regions of compression (higher density and pressure) and rarefaction (lower density and pressure) propagating through the air.

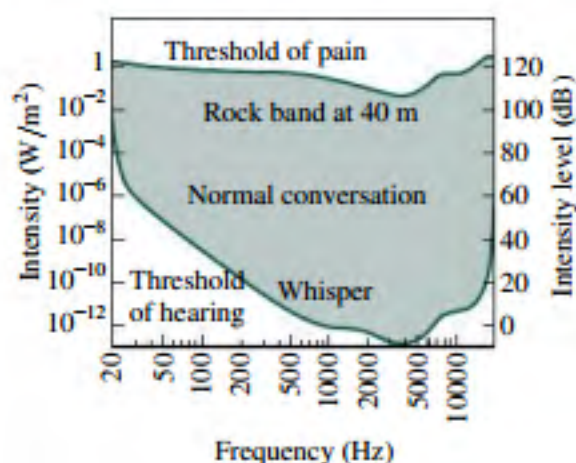


FIGURE 14.15 The human ear responds to sound whose intensity and frequency lie within the shaded region.

Decibels

Figure 14.15 shows that the human ear responds to an extremely broad range of sound intensities, covering some 12 orders of magnitude; that's why Fig. 14.15 has a logarithmic scale. We therefore quantify sound levels using a logarithmic unit called the **decibel** (dB). The **sound intensity level** β in decibels is defined by

$$\beta = 10 \log \left(\frac{I}{I_0} \right) \quad (14.10)$$

where I is the intensity in W/m^2 and $I_0 = 10^{-12} \text{ W/m}^2$ is a reference level chosen as the approximate threshold of hearing at 1 kHz. Since the logarithm of 10 is 1, an increase of 10 dB corresponds to a factor-of-10 increase in the intensity I . Your ears, however, don't respond linearly, and for intensity levels above about 40 dB, you perceive a 10-dB increase as making the sound roughly twice as loud.

EXAMPLE 14.4 Decibels: Turn Down the TV!

Your sister is watching TV, the sound blasting at 75 dB. You yell to her to turn down the volume, and she lowers the intensity level to 60 dB. By what factor has the power dropped?

INTERPRET This problem is about the relation between power and sound intensity level as measured in decibels.

DEVELOP Equation 14.10, $\beta = 10 \log(I/I_0)$, relates the decibel level to the intensity, or power per unit area. At a fixed distance, the sound intensity is proportional to the power from the TV speaker, so in this example we can replace I by P in Equation 14.10.

EVALUATE Call the original 75-dB level β_1 ; then Equation 14.10 reads $\beta_1 = 10 \log(P_1/P_0) = 10 \log P_1 - 10 \log P_0$, where P_1 is the corresponding power and P_0 is the reference-level power. At the turned-down power P_2 , the equation reads $\beta_2 = 10 \log P_2 - 10 \log P_0$. Subtracting our two equations gives

$$\beta_2 - \beta_1 = 10 \log P_2 - 10 \log P_1 = 10 \log \left(\frac{P_2}{P_1} \right)$$

Therefore, $\log(P_2/P_1) = (\beta_2 - \beta_1)/10 = (60 - 75)/10 = -1.5$. The answer we want is the ratio P_2/P_1 , and because logarithms and exponentials are inverses, we have $P_2/P_1 = 10^{-1.5} = 0.032$.

ASSESS Although we worked this problem using Equation 14.10, you can often do decibels in your head. Here the intensity level has dropped by 15 dB, corresponding to 1.5 orders of magnitude in actual intensity. So the intensity—and therefore the TV's power—has dropped by a factor of $10^{-1.5}$, or $1/(10\sqrt{10})$. Since $\sqrt{10}$ is about 3, that's about $1/30$. Because you perceive each 10-dB change as a factor of about 2 in loudness, the reduced volume will sound somewhere between one-fourth and one-half as loud as before.

GOT IT?

14.4 Your band needs a new guitar amplifier, and the available models range from 25 W to 250 W of audio power. Will the sound intensity level for the most powerful amplifier compared with the least powerful be (a) 10 times greater, (b) greater by 2.25 dB, or (c) greater by 10 dB?

14.6 Interference

LO 14.6 Describe wave interference in one and two dimensions.

Figure 14.16 shows two wave trains approaching from opposite directions. Where they meet, experiment shows that the net displacement is the sum of the individual displacements. This is true for most waves, at least when the amplitude isn't too large. Waves whose displacements simply add are said to obey the **superposition principle**.

At the point shown in Fig. 14.16b, the wave crests coincide and so do the troughs. The resulting wave is, momentarily, twice as big. This is **constructive interference**—two waves superposing to produce a larger wave displacement. A little later, in Fig. 14.16c, the two waves cancel; this is **destructive interference**. Wave interference occurs throughout

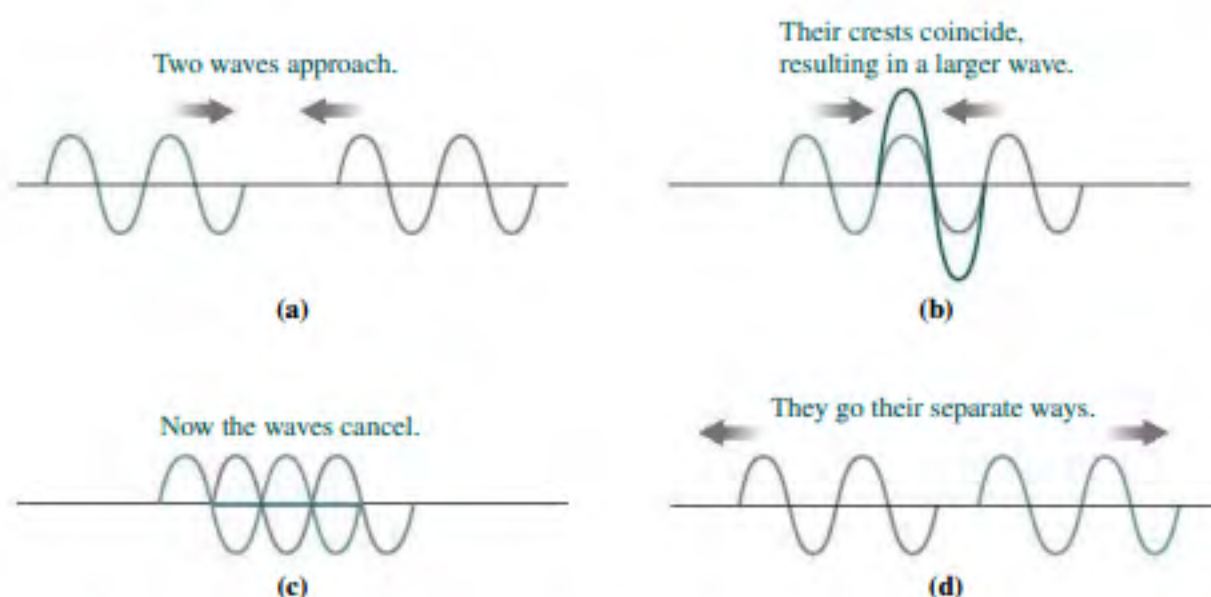


FIGURE 14.16 Wave superposition showing (b) constructive interference and (c) destructive interference.

physics, from mechanical waves to light and even with the quantum-mechanical waves that describe matter at the atomic scale. Here we take a quick look at wave interference; we'll consider the interference of light waves in more detail in Chapter 32.

Fourier Analysis

The superposition principle lets us build complex wave shapes by superposing simpler ones. The French mathematician Jean Baptiste Joseph Fourier (1768–1830) showed that *any* periodic wave can be written as a sum of simple harmonic waves, a process now known as **Fourier analysis**. Figure 14.17 shows a square wave—important, for example, as the “clock” signal that sets the speed of your computer—represented as a superposition of individual sine waves. Fourier analysis has applications ranging from music to structural engineering to communications because it helps us understand how a complex wave behaves if we know how its harmonic components behave. The mix of Fourier components in the waveform from a musical instrument determines the exact sound we hear and accounts for the different sounds from different instruments even when they're playing the same note (Fig. 14.18).

Dispersion

When wave speed is independent of wavelength, the simple harmonic components making up a complex waveform travel at the same speed. As a result, the waveform maintains its shape. But for some media, wave speed depends on wavelength. Then, individual harmonic waves travel at different speeds, and a complex waveform changes shape as it

APPLICATION Noise-Cancelling Headphones

Why does the airline passenger in the photo look so content? Because he's wearing noise-cancelling headphones. These devices exploit interference to actively cancel ambient noise, leaving the headphone signal loud and clear. Each headphone contains a tiny microphone sensing the ambient sound and an amplifier that also inverts the phase of the signal, so crests become troughs and vice versa. The phase-inverted signal is fed to the headphones along with the desired audio. Since the ambient noise delivered to the headphone is inverted—that is, out of phase—relative to the noise coming directly to the ear, the result is destructive interference that greatly reduces the listener's perception of the ambient noise. Peace and quiet!

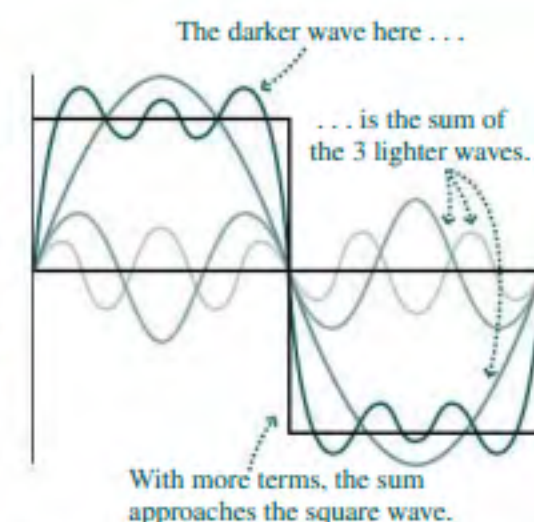


FIGURE 14.17 A square wave built up as a sum of simple harmonic waves. In this case the sum has the form $y(t) = A \sin(\omega t) + \frac{1}{3}A \sin(3\omega t) + \frac{1}{5}A \sin(5\omega t) + \dots$. Only the first three terms are shown.

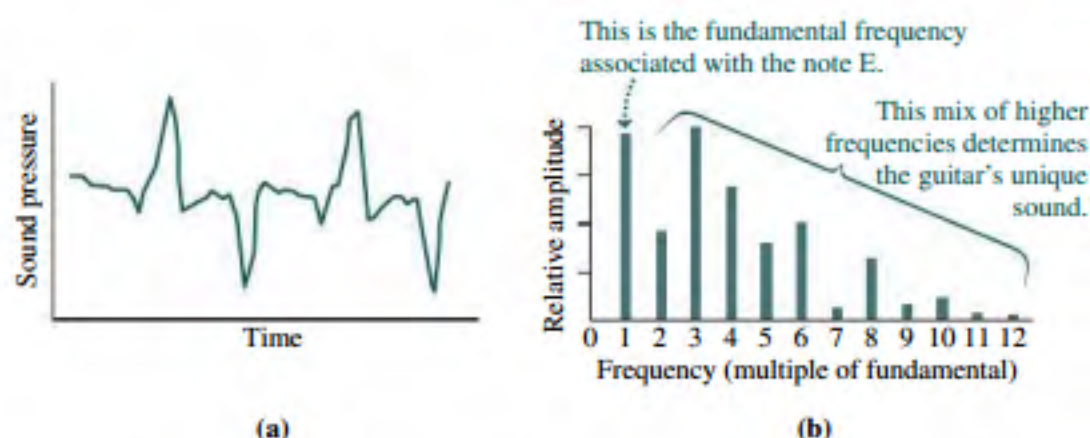


FIGURE 14.18 (a) An electric guitar plays the note E, producing a complex waveform. (b) Fourier analysis shows the relative strengths of the individual sine waves whose sum produces the waveform.

moves. This phenomenon is called **dispersion** and is illustrated in Fig. 14.19. Waves on the surface of deep water, for example, have speed given by

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\lambda g}{2\pi}} \quad (14.11)$$

where λ is the wavelength and g the acceleration of gravity. Because v depends on λ , the waves are dispersive. Dispersion is also important in communications systems; for example, dispersion of the square wave pulses carrying digital data sets the maximum lengths for wires and optical fibers used in computer networks.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 14.1 Storm Brewing!

It's a lovely, sunny day at the coast, but large waves, their crests far apart, are crashing on the beach. How do these waves tell of a storm at sea that may affect you later?

EVALUATE The phrase “crests far apart” is a clue: It says we're dealing with long-wavelength waves. Equation 14.11 shows that longer-wavelength waves on the ocean surface travel faster. Most ocean waves are generated by frictional forces between wind and water, so there must be strong winds somewhere out at sea. The longest wavelengths travel faster, so they reach shore well in advance of the storm.

ASSESS High-surf warnings often go up in advance of a storm, for the very reason elucidated in this example. Incidentally, wind isn't the only source of ocean waves; so are earthquakes. But the tsunamis they

produce are shallow-water waves that don't obey Equation 14.11. You can explore tsunamis further in the Passage Problems.

MAKING THE CONNECTION A storm develops 600 km offshore and starts moving toward you at 40 km/h. Large waves with crests 250 m apart are your first hint of the storm. How long after you observe these waves will the storm hit?

EVALUATE At 40 km/h, it's going to take 15 hours for the storm to reach shore. Equation 14.11 gives 71 km/h for the wave speed when $\lambda = 250$ m. So the waves took 8.4 hours to reach shore. The storm is then 6.6 hours away.

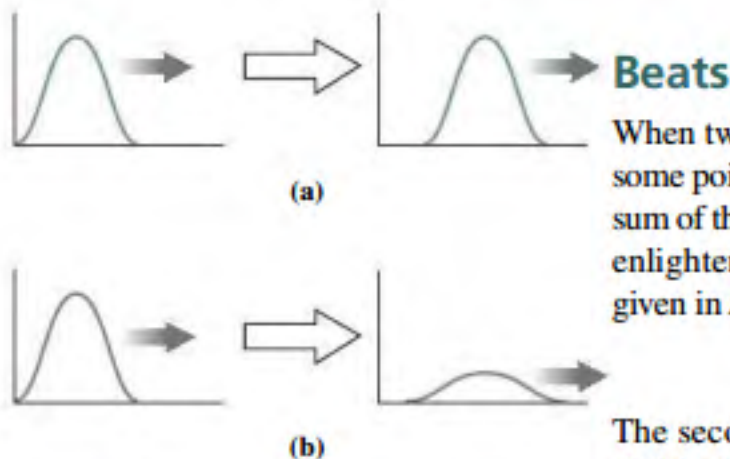


FIGURE 14.19 (a) A wave pulse in a non-dispersive medium holds its shape as it propagates. (b) In a dispersive medium, the pulse shape changes.

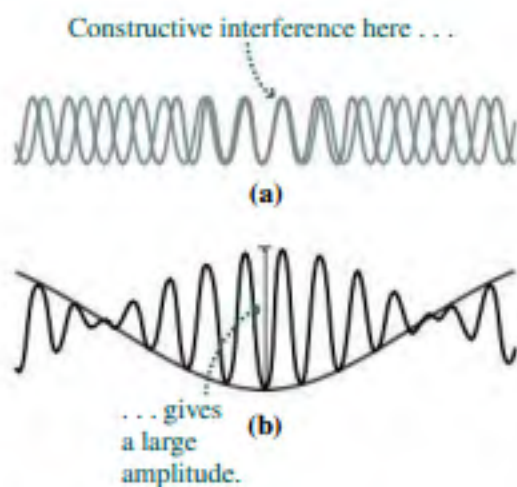


FIGURE 14.20 The origin of beats.

Beats

When two waves of slightly different frequencies superpose, they interfere constructively at some points and destructively at others (Fig. 14.20a). Quantitatively, the combined wave is the sum of the two individual waves: $y(t) = A \cos \omega_1 t + A \cos \omega_2 t$. We can express this in a more enlightening form using the identity $\cos \alpha + \cos \beta = 2 \cos \left[\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta) \right] \cos \left[\frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) \right]$ given in Appendix A. Then we have

$$y(t) = 2A \cos \left[\frac{1}{2}(\omega_1 - \omega_2)t \right] \cos \left[\frac{1}{2}(\omega_1 + \omega_2)t \right]$$

The second cosine factor represents a sinusoidal oscillation at the average of the two individual frequencies. The first term oscillates at a lower frequency—half the difference of the individual frequencies. If we think of the entire term $2A \cos \left[\frac{1}{2}(\omega_1 - \omega_2)t \right]$ as the “amplitude” of the higher-frequency oscillation, then this amplitude itself varies with time, as Fig. 14.20b shows. Note that there are *two* amplitude peaks for each cycle of the slow oscillation, so the frequency with which the amplitude varies is simply $\omega_1 - \omega_2$.

For sound waves, interference of two nearly equal frequencies produces intensity variations called **beats**; the closer the two frequencies, the longer the period between beats. Pilots, for example, synchronize airplane engines by reducing the beat frequency toward zero; musicians use the same trick to tune instruments. Beating of electromagnetic waves forms the basis for some very sensitive measurements.

Interference in Two Dimensions

Waves propagating in two and three dimensions exhibit a rich variety of interference phenomena. Figure 14.21 shows one of the simplest and most important examples—the interference of waves from two point sources oscillating at the same frequency. Points on a perpendicular line midway between the sources are equidistant from both sources, and therefore waves arrive at this line in phase. Thus, they interfere constructively, producing a large amplitude. Some distance from the center line, the waves arrive exactly half a period

out of phase. They therefore interfere destructively, producing a **nodal line** where the wave amplitude is very small. Since waves travel half a wavelength in half a period, the nodal line occurs where the distances to the two sources differ by half a wavelength. Additional nodal lines occur where those distances differ by $1\frac{1}{2}$ wavelengths, $2\frac{1}{2}$ wavelengths, and so forth. In practice, two-source interference is observable only when the source separation is comparable to the wavelength. If it's much larger, then the regions of constructive and destructive interference are so close that they blur together.

Two-source interference also results when plane waves pass through two closely spaced apertures that act as sources of circular or spherical wavefronts. Such two-slit interference experiments are important in optics and modern physics and are of historical interest because they were first used to demonstrate the wave nature of light.

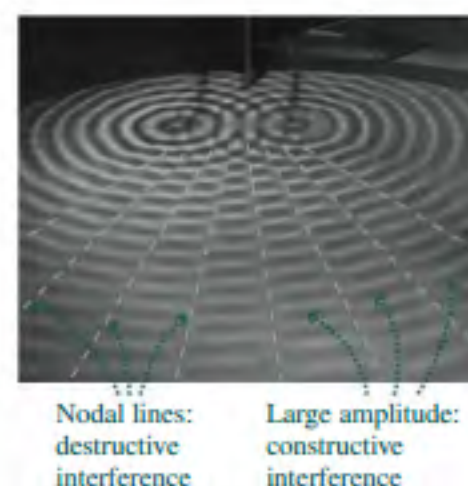


FIGURE 14.21 Water waves from two sources interfere to produce regions of low and high amplitude.

EXAMPLE 14.5 Wave Interference in Two Dimensions: Calm Water

Ocean waves pass through two small openings, 20 m apart, in a breakwater. You're in a boat 75 m from the breakwater and initially midway between the openings, but the water is pretty rough. You row 33 m parallel to the breakwater and, for the first time, find yourself in relatively calm water. What's the wavelength of the waves?

INTERPRET This is a problem about wave interference. The water is rough at your initial location because constructive interference produces large-amplitude waves. You find calm water at the first nodal line, where destructive interference reduces the wave amplitude.

DEVELOP We sketched the situation in Fig. 14.22. We've seen that the first nodal line occurs when the path lengths from two sources differ by half a wavelength. So our plan is to calculate the wavelength by applying this fact to the distances AP and BP .

EVALUATE Applying the Pythagorean theorem gives

$$AP = \sqrt{(75 \text{ m})^2 + (43 \text{ m})^2} = 86.5 \text{ m}$$

$$BP = \sqrt{(75 \text{ m})^2 + (23 \text{ m})^2} = 78.4 \text{ m}$$

The wavelength is twice the difference between these lengths, so

$$\lambda = 2(AP - BP) = 2(86.5 \text{ m} - 78.4 \text{ m}) = 16 \text{ m}$$

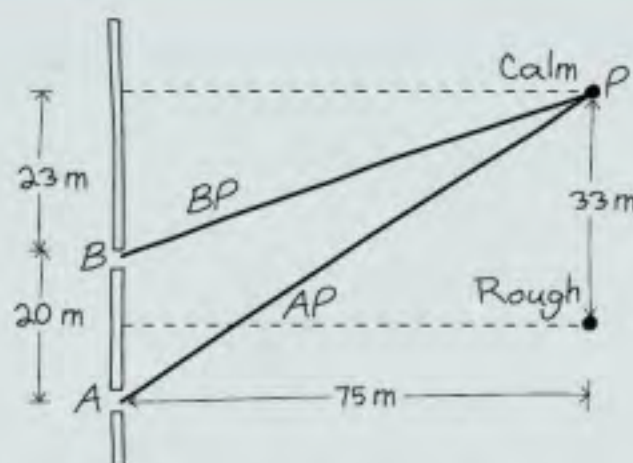


FIGURE 14.22 Calm water at P implies that paths AP and BP differ by half a wavelength.

ASSESS We expect two-source interference to be obvious when the source spacing is comparable to the wavelength. Here the 20-m spacing is indeed comparable to the 16-m wavelength, so our answer makes sense.

GOT IT?

14.5 Light shines through two small holes into a dark room, and a screen is mounted opposite the holes. The hole spacing is comparable to the wavelength of the light. Looking at the screen, will you see (a) two bright spots opposite the two holes or (b) a pattern of light and dark patches? Explain.

14.7 Reflection and Refraction

LO 14.7 Describe wave reflection and standing waves.

You shout in a mountain valley and hear echoes. You look in a mirror and see your reflection. A metal screen reflects microwaves to keep them in your oven. A physician's ultrasound probes your body, reflecting off internal structures. A bat uses reflected sound to home in on its prey. All these are examples of wave **reflection**.

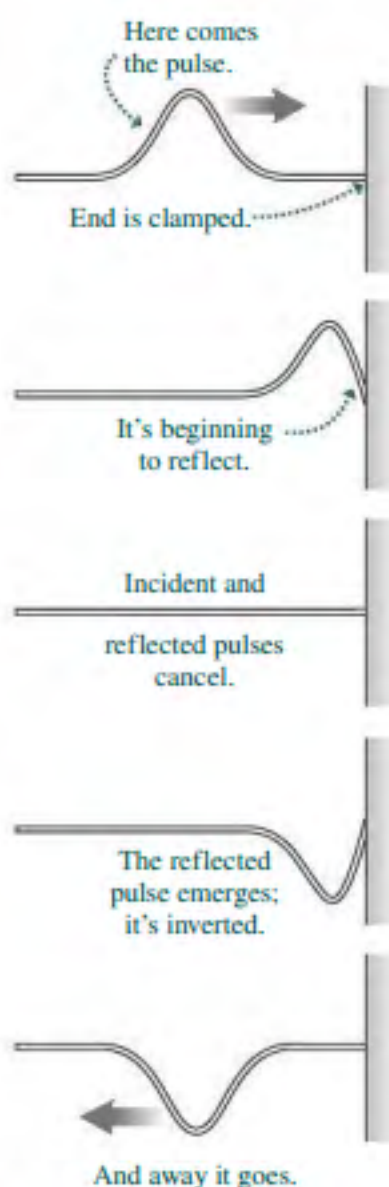


FIGURE 14.23 Reflection of a wave pulse at the rigidly clamped end of string.

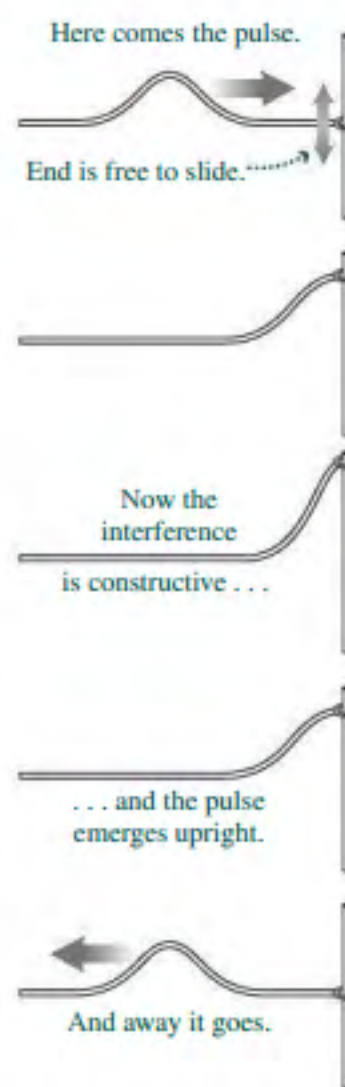


FIGURE 14.24 Reflection of a wave pulse at a free end.

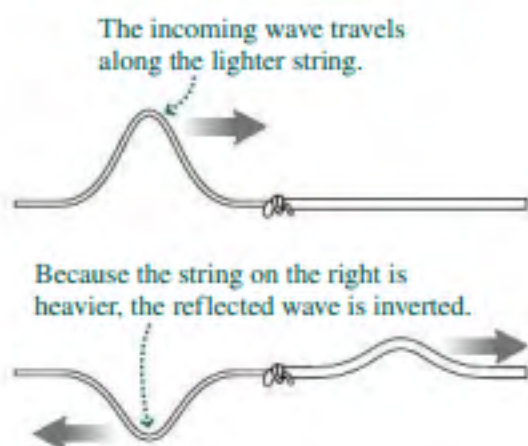


FIGURE 14.25 Partial reflection occurs at the junction between two strings.

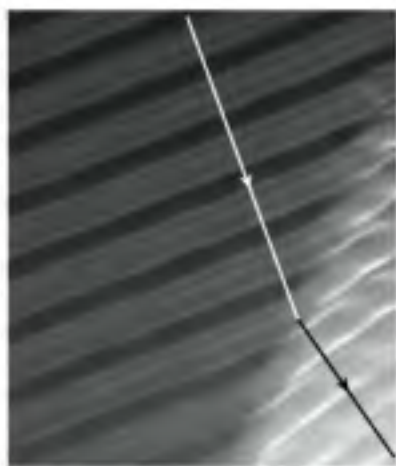


FIGURE 14.26 Waves in shallow water refract at the interface between two different water depths.

You can see that wave reflection *must* occur when a wave hits a medium in which it can't propagate; otherwise, where would the wave energy go? The figures above detail the reflection process for waves on a stretched string, in the two cases where the string end is clamped at a rigid wall (Fig. 14.23) or, in contrast, free to move up and down (Fig. 14.24). In the first case, the wave amplitude must remain zero at the end, so the incident and reflected pulses interfere destructively and the reflected wave is therefore inverted. In the second case, the displacement is a maximum at the free end, and the reflected wave is not inverted.

Between the extremes of a rigid wall and a perfectly free end lies the case of one string connected to another with different mass per unit length. In this case, some wave energy is transmitted to the second string and some is reflected back along the first (Fig. 14.25).

The phenomenon of partial reflection and transmission at a junction of strings has its analog in the behavior of all sorts of waves at interfaces between different media. For example, shallow-water waves are partially reflected if the water depth changes abruptly. Light incident on even the clearest glass undergoes partial reflection because of the difference in the light-transmitting properties of air and glass (much more on this in Chapter 30). Partial reflection of ultrasound waves at the interfaces of body tissues with different densities makes ultrasound a valuable medical diagnostic.

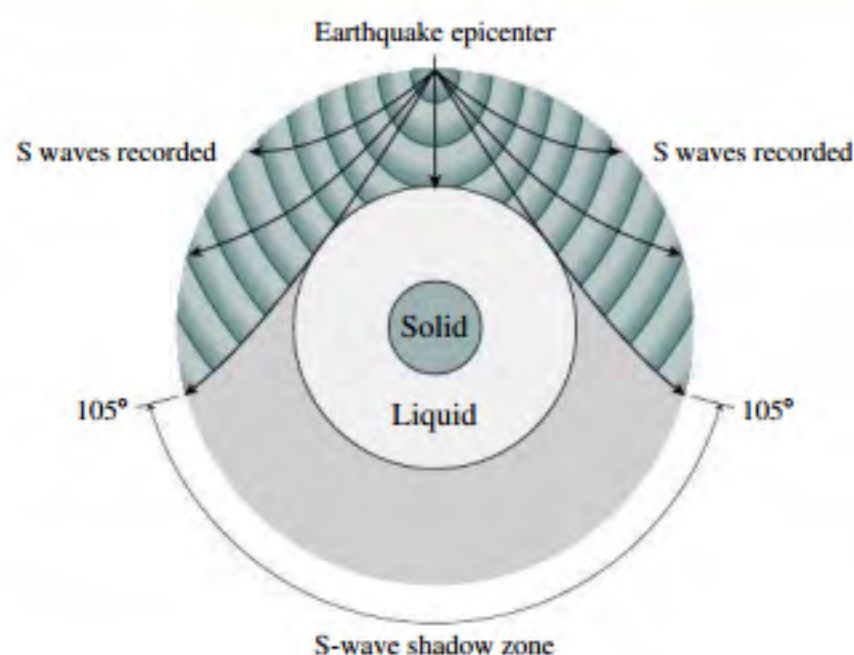
When waves strike an interface between two media at an oblique angle and are capable of propagating in the second medium, the phenomenon of **refraction** occurs. In refraction, the direction of wave propagation changes because of a difference in wave speed between the two media (Fig. 14.26). We'll discuss the mathematics of refraction in Chapter 30.

APPLICATION Probing the Earth

Waves propagating and reflecting inside the Earth help geologists deduce the planet's interior structure. That's because Earth's interior supports two types of waves. Longitudinal waves, also called P waves, propagate in both solids and liquids. Transverse, or S waves, propagate only in solids. Earthquakes generate S waves that propagate throughout the solid Earth. But as the figure suggests, they can't get through the liquid outer core, so they leave a "shadow" where seismographs don't record any S-wave activity. This effect is our clearest evidence that Earth has a liquid core.

P waves, however, do propagate through the liquid core. But they undergo partial reflections farther in—evidence for an abrupt change in core density. Careful analysis shows that wave speeds in the inner core are consistent with its being solid—giving our planet the solid–liquid–solid structure suggested in the figure.

Studies of Earth's large-scale structure generally use earthquake waves, although inner-core evidence also comes from underground nuclear explosions. At a smaller scale, explosive charges or machines that "thump" the ground produce waves whose reflections from rock layers down to a few kilometers depth help reveal oil and gas deposits.



GOT IT?

14.6 You're holding one end of a taut rope, and you can't see the other end. You tweak the rope to give it an upward displacement, sending a pulse down the rope. A while later, a pulse comes back toward you. Its displacement is upward, but with considerably lower amplitude than the initial displacement you provided. Assuming there's no energy loss in the rope itself, you can conclude that the far end of the rope is (a) attached to a rigid anchor point, (b) attached in such a way that it's free to slide up and down, (c) tied to another rope with less mass per unit length, or (d) tied to another rope with more mass per unit length.

14.8 Standing Waves

LO 14.7 Describe wave reflection and standing waves.

Imagine a string clamped tightly at both ends. Waves propagate back and forth by reflecting at the ends. But because the ends are clamped, the wave displacement at each end must always be zero. Only certain waves can satisfy this requirement; as Fig. 14.27 suggests, they're waves for which an integer number of half-wavelengths just fits the string's length L .

The waves in Fig. 14.27 are **standing waves**, so called because they essentially stand still, confined to the length of the string. At each point the string executes simple harmonic motion perpendicular to its undisturbed state. We can describe standing waves mathematically as arising from the superposition of two waves propagating in opposite directions and reflecting at the ends of the string. If we take the x -axis to coincide with the string, then we can write the string displacements in two such waves as $y_1(x, t) = A \cos(kx - \omega t)$ for the wave propagating in the $+x$ -direction (recall Equation 14.3) and $y_2(x, t) = -A \cos(kx + \omega t)$ for the wave propagating in the $-x$ -direction. (The minus sign in y_2 accounts for the phase change that occurs on reflection at a rigid boundary, as you saw in Fig. 14.23.) Their superposition is then

$$y(x, t) = y_1 + y_2 = A[\cos(kx - \omega t) - \cos(kx + \omega t)]$$

Appendix A lists a trig identity for the difference of two cosines:

$$\cos \alpha - \cos \beta = -2 \sin \left[\frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) \right] \sin \left[\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta) \right]$$

Applying this identity with $\alpha = kx - \omega t$ and $\beta = kx + \omega t$ gives

$$y(x, t) = 2A \sin kx \sin \omega t \quad (14.12)$$

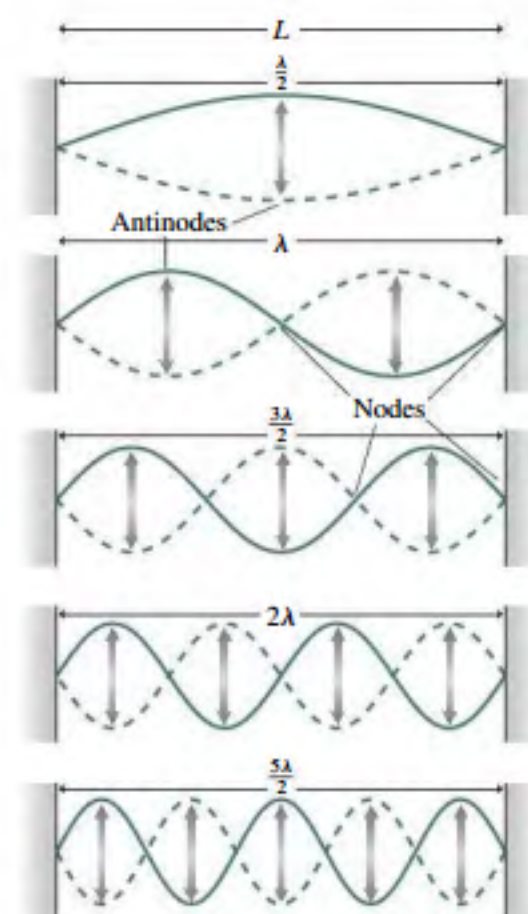


FIGURE 14.27 Standing waves on a string clamped at both ends; shown are the fundamental and four overtones.

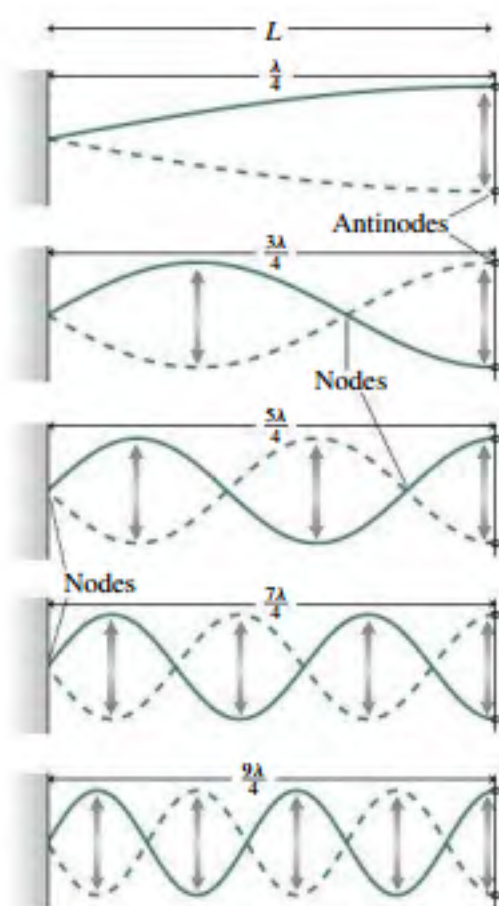


FIGURE 14.28 When one end of the string is fixed and the other free, the string can accommodate only an odd number of quarter-wavelengths.

Equation 14.12 is the mathematical description of a standing wave, and it affirms our qualitative description that each point on the string simply oscillates up and down. Pick any point—that is, any fixed value of x —and Equation 14.12 does indeed describe simple harmonic motion in the y -direction, through the factor $\sin \omega t$. The amplitude of that motion depends on the point x you’ve chosen and is given by the factor that multiplies $\sin \omega t$ —namely, $2A \sin kx$.

Because the string is clamped at both ends, the amplitude at the ends must be zero. Our amplitude factor $2A \sin kx$ does give $y = 0$ in Equation 14.12 at $x = 0$, but what about at $x = L$? Here we’ll get zero only if $\sin kL = 0$ —and that requires kL to be a multiple of π . So we must have $kL = m\pi$, where m is any integer. But the wave number k is related to the wavelength λ by $k = 2\pi/\lambda$. Our condition $kL = m\pi$ can then be written

$$L = \frac{m\lambda}{2}, \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (14.13)$$

This is just the condition we already guessed from Fig. 14.27—namely, that the string length L be an integer number of half-wavelengths.

Given a particular string length L , Equation 14.13 limits the allowed standing waves on the string to a discrete set of wavelengths. Those allowed waves are called **modes** or **harmonics**, and the integer m is the **mode number**. The $m = 1$ mode is the **fundamental** and is the longest-wavelength standing wave that can exist on the string. The higher modes are **overtones**.

Figure 14.27 shows that there are points where the string doesn’t move at all. These are called **nodes**. Points where the amplitude of the wave displacement is a maximum, in contrast, are **antinodes**.

When a string is clamped rigidly at one end but is free at the other, its clamped end is a node but its free end is an antinode. Figure 14.28 shows that the string length must then be an odd multiple of a quarter-wavelength—a result that you can also get from Equation 14.12 by requiring $\sin kL = 1$ to give maximum amplitude at $x = L$.

Standing-Wave Resonance

We’ve discussed standing waves in terms of constraints on the wavelength λ rather than on the frequency f . But because waves on a string have a fixed speed v , and because $f\lambda = v$, Equation 14.13’s discrete set of allowed wavelengths corresponds to a set of discrete frequencies. The lowest allowed frequency, the fundamental, corresponds to the longest wavelength; the overtones have higher frequencies.

Because a stretched string can oscillate in any of its allowed frequencies, the resonant behavior that we discussed in Chapter 13 can occur close to any of those frequencies. Buildings and other structures, in analogy with our simple string, support a variety of standing-wave modes. For example, a skyscraper is like the string of Fig. 14.28, with its base clamped to Earth but its top free to swing. Engineers must be sure to identify all possible modes of structures they design in order to avoid harmful resonances. The disastrous oscillations of the Tacoma Narrows Bridge shown in Fig. 13.26 are actually torsional standing waves.

Other Standing Waves

Standing waves are common phenomena. Water waves in confined spaces exhibit standing waves, and entire lakes can develop very slow oscillations corresponding to low-mode-number standing waves. Standing electromagnetic waves occur inside closed metal cavities; in microwave ovens the nodes of the standing-wave pattern would result in “cold” spots were not either the food or the source of microwaves kept in motion. Standing sound waves in the Sun help astrophysicists probe the solar interior. And even atomic structure can be understood in terms of standing waves associated with electrons.

Musical Instruments

Our analysis of standing waves on strings applies directly to stringed musical instruments such as violins, guitars, and pianos. Standing-wave vibrations in the instrument strings are communicated to the air as sound waves, usually through the intermediary of a sounding box or electronic amplifiers. For instruments in the violin family, the body of the instrument itself undergoes standing-wave vibrations, excited by the vibration of the string, that establish each individual instrument’s peculiar sound quality (Fig. 14.29). Similarly, the



FIGURE 14.29 Standing waves on a violin, imaged using holographic interference of laser light waves.

stretched membranes of drums exhibit a variety of standing-wave patterns representing the allowed modes on these two-dimensional surfaces.

Wind instruments generate standing sound waves in air columns, as suggested in Fig. 14.30. These must be open at one end to allow sound to escape; in many instruments the column is effectively open at both ends. An open end has its pressure fixed at atmospheric pressure; it is therefore a pressure node and thus, from Fig. 14.14, a displacement antinode. As a result, an instrument open at one end supports odd-integer multiples of a quarter-wavelength (Fig. 14.30a), in analogy with Fig. 14.28. An instrument open at both ends, on the other hand, supports integer multiples of a half-wavelength (Fig. 14.30b).

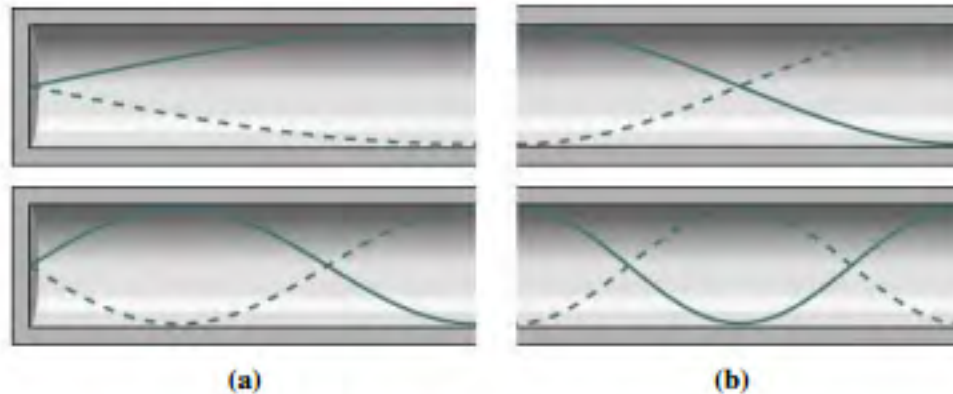


FIGURE 14.30 Standing waves in wind instruments: (a) open at one end and (b) open at both ends.

EXAMPLE 14.6 Standing-Wave Modes: The Double Bassoon

The double bassoon is the lowest-pitched instrument in a normal orchestra. The instrument is “folded” to achieve an effective air column 5.5 m long, and it acts like a pipe open at both ends. What’s the frequency of the double bassoon’s fundamental note? Assume the sound speed is 343 m/s.

INTERPRET This is a problem about standing-wave modes in a hollow pipe open at both ends.

DEVELOP Figure 14.30b applies to a pipe that’s open at both ends. So our sketch of the fundamental mode in Fig. 14.31 looks like the upper of the two pictures in Fig. 14.30b. We can find the wavelength and then use Equation 14.1, $v = \lambda f$, to get the frequency.

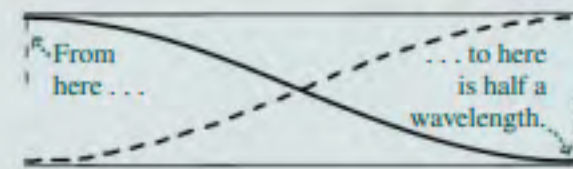


FIGURE 14.31 Sketch for Example 14.6.

EVALUATE The wavelength is twice the instrument’s 5.5-m length, or 11 m. Then Equation 14.1 gives

$$f = \frac{v}{\lambda} = \frac{343 \text{ m/s}}{11 \text{ m}} = 31 \text{ Hz}$$

ASSESS This frequency is the note B_0 , which lies near the low-frequency limit of the human ear. Like most wind instruments, the bassoon has a number of holes that, when uncovered, alter the positions of the antinodes and therefore change the pitch.

GOT IT?

14.7 A string 1 m long is clamped tightly at one end and is free to slide up and down at the other. Which of the following are possible wavelengths for standing waves on this string: $\frac{4}{5}$ m, 1 m, $\frac{4}{3}$ m, $\frac{3}{2}$ m, 2 m, 3 m, 4 m, 5 m, 6 m, 7 m, 8 m?

14.9 The Doppler Effect and Shock Waves

LO 14.8 Describe the Doppler effect and shock waves.

The speed v of a wave is its speed relative to the medium through which it propagates. A point source at rest in the medium radiates waves uniformly in all directions (Fig. 14.32). But when the source moves, wave crests bunch up in the direction toward which the source is moving, resulting in a decreased wavelength (Fig. 14.33). In the opposite direction, wave crests spread out and the wavelength increases.

The wave speed is determined by the properties of the medium, so it doesn’t change with source motion. Thus the equation $v = \lambda f$ still holds. This means that an observer

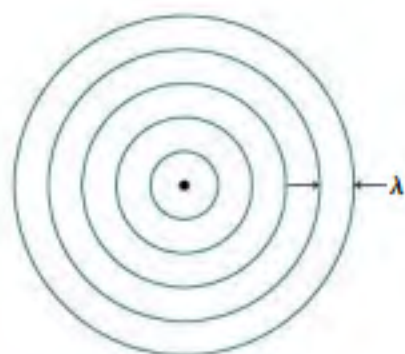


FIGURE 14.32 Circular waves from a source at rest with respect to the medium.

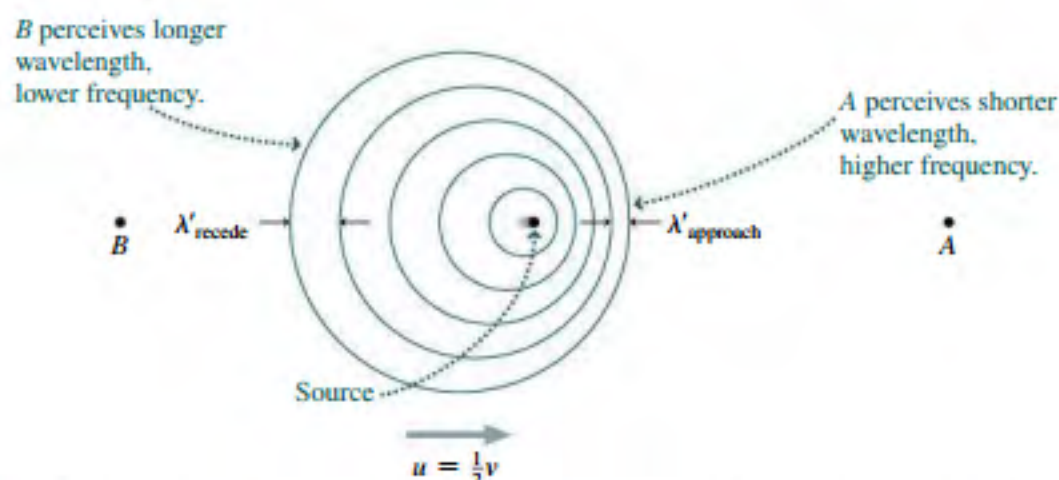


FIGURE 14.33 Origin of the Doppler effect, shown for a source moving with half the wave speed.

in front of the moving source, where λ is smaller, experiences a higher wave frequency as more wave crests pass per unit time. Similarly, an observer behind the source experiences a lower frequency. This change in wavelength and frequency from a moving source is the **Doppler effect** or **Doppler shift**, after the Austrian physicist Christian Johann Doppler (1803–1853).

To analyze the Doppler effect, let λ be the wavelength measured when the source is stationary, and λ' the wavelength when the source is moving at speed u through a medium where the wave speed is v . At the source, the time between wave crests is the wave period T , and a wave crest moves one wavelength λ in this time. But during the same time T , the moving source covers a distance uT , after which it emits the next wave crest. So the distance between wave crests, as seen by an observer in front of the moving source, is $\lambda' = \lambda - uT$. Writing $T = \lambda/v$, we get

$$\lambda' = \lambda - u \frac{\lambda}{v} = \lambda \left(1 - \frac{u}{v} \right) \quad (\text{source approaching}) \quad (14.14a)$$

The situation is similar in the direction opposite the source motion, except that now the wavelength *increases* by the amount $\lambda u/v$, giving

$$\lambda' = \lambda \left(1 + \frac{u}{v} \right) \quad (\text{source receding}) \quad (14.14b)$$

We can recast these expressions in terms of frequency using the relations $\lambda = v/f$ and $\lambda' = v/f'$, where f' is the frequency of waves from the moving source as measured by an observer at rest in the medium. Substituting these relations in our expressions for λ' and then solving for f' gives

$$f' = \frac{f}{1 \pm u/v} \quad (\text{Doppler shift, moving source}) \quad (14.15)$$

f' is the frequency you perceive when a wave source moves toward you.
 f is the frequency emitted by the source.
 u is the source speed relative to you...
 ...and v is the wave speed relative to the medium.
 Use $-$ if the source moves toward you and $+$ if it moves away.

for the Doppler-shifted frequency, where the $+$ and $-$ signs correspond to receding and approaching sources, respectively.

You've probably experienced the Doppler effect for sound when standing near a highway. A loud truck approaches with a high-pitched sound "aaaaaaaaaaaa." As it passes, the pitch drops abruptly: "aaaaaaaaaeiooooooooooooo," and stays low as the truck recedes. Practical uses of the Doppler effect are numerous. The Doppler shift in reflected ultrasound measures blood flow and fetal heartbeat. Police radar uses the Doppler shift of high-frequency radio waves reflected from moving cars. The Doppler shift of starlight reveals stellar motions, and Doppler-shifted light from distant galaxies is evidence that our entire universe is expanding.

EXAMPLE 14.7
Doppler Effect: The Wrong Note
Worked Example with Variation Problems

A car speeds down the highway with its stereo blasting. An observer with perfect pitch is standing by the roadside and, as the car approaches, notices that a musical note that should be G ($f = 392 \text{ Hz}$) sounds like A (440 Hz). How fast is the car moving?

INTERPRET This problem is about the Doppler effect in sound from a moving source.

DEVELOP Equation 14.15, $f' = f/(1 \pm u/v)$, relates the original and shifted frequencies to the source speed u , so our plan is to solve this equation for u . We'll use the minus sign because the source is approaching. We'll also need the sound speed v , which Example 14.6 gave as 343 m/s .

EVALUATE Solving Equation 14.15 for u gives

$$u = v \left(1 - \frac{f}{f'} \right) = (343 \text{ m/s}) \left(1 - \frac{392 \text{ Hz}}{440 \text{ Hz}} \right) = 37.4 \text{ m/s}$$

ASSESS Our answer—some 134 km/h or 84 mi/h —seems reasonable for a speeding car, though not a particularly safe speed! And it's a little more than 10% of the sound speed, consistent with the roughly 10% change in the sound frequency.

Moving Observers

A Doppler shift in frequency, but not wavelength, also occurs when a moving observer approaches a stationary source—meaning a source at rest with respect to the wave medium. An observer moving toward a stationary source passes wave crests more often than would happen if the observer were at rest, and thus measures a shorter wave period and therefore a higher frequency. The result, as you can show in Problem 78, is a shifted frequency given by

f' is the frequency you perceive when you move toward or away from a wave source.

f is the frequency emitted by the source.

u is your speed relative to the source...

(Doppler shift, moving observer) (14.16)

$$f' = f \left(1 \pm \frac{u}{v} \right)$$

Use + if you move toward the source and - if you move away.

... and v is the wave speed relative to the medium.

with the positive sign for an observer approaching the source and the negative sign for an observer receding. For observer velocities u small compared with the wave speed v , Equations 14.15 and 14.16 give essentially the same results.

Waves from a stationary source that reflect from a moving object undergo a Doppler shift *twice*. First, because the frequency as received at the reflecting object is shifted, according to Equation 14.16, due to the object's motion relative to the source. Then a stationary observer sees the reflected waves as coming from a moving source, so there's another shift, this time given by Equation 14.15. Police radar and other Doppler-based speed measurements make use of this double Doppler shift that occurs on reflection.



FIGURE 14.35 (a) A shock wave trails from a supersonic aircraft. The plane is flying low over the ocean, and the humid air condenses at the shock, making it visible. (b) The wake trailing from this boat is also a shock wave that arises because the boat is moving faster than the speed of water waves.

The Doppler Effect for Light

Although light and other electromagnetic waves do not require a material medium, they, too, are subject to the Doppler shift. Both Doppler formulas we derived here apply to electromagnetic waves, but only as approximations when the relative speed between source and observer is much lower than the speed of light.

The Doppler shift for electromagnetic waves is the same whether it's the source that moves or the observer. This reflects a profound fact at the root of Einstein's relativity: that "stationary" and "moving" are meaningful only as relative terms. Electromagnetic waves, unlike mechanical waves, do not require a medium—and therefore terms such as "stationary source" and "moving observer" are meaningless. All that matters is the relative motion between source and observer. We'll explore this point further in Chapter 33.

Shock Waves

Equation 14.14a suggests that wavelength goes to zero if a source approaches at exactly the wave speed. This happens because wave crests can't get away from the source, so they pile up just ahead of it to form a large-amplitude wave called a **shock wave** (Fig. 14.34). When the source moves faster than the wave speed, waves pile up on a cone whose half-angle is given by $\sin \theta = v/u$, as shown. The ratio u/v of source speed to wave speed is called the **Mach number**, and the cone angle is the **Mach angle**.

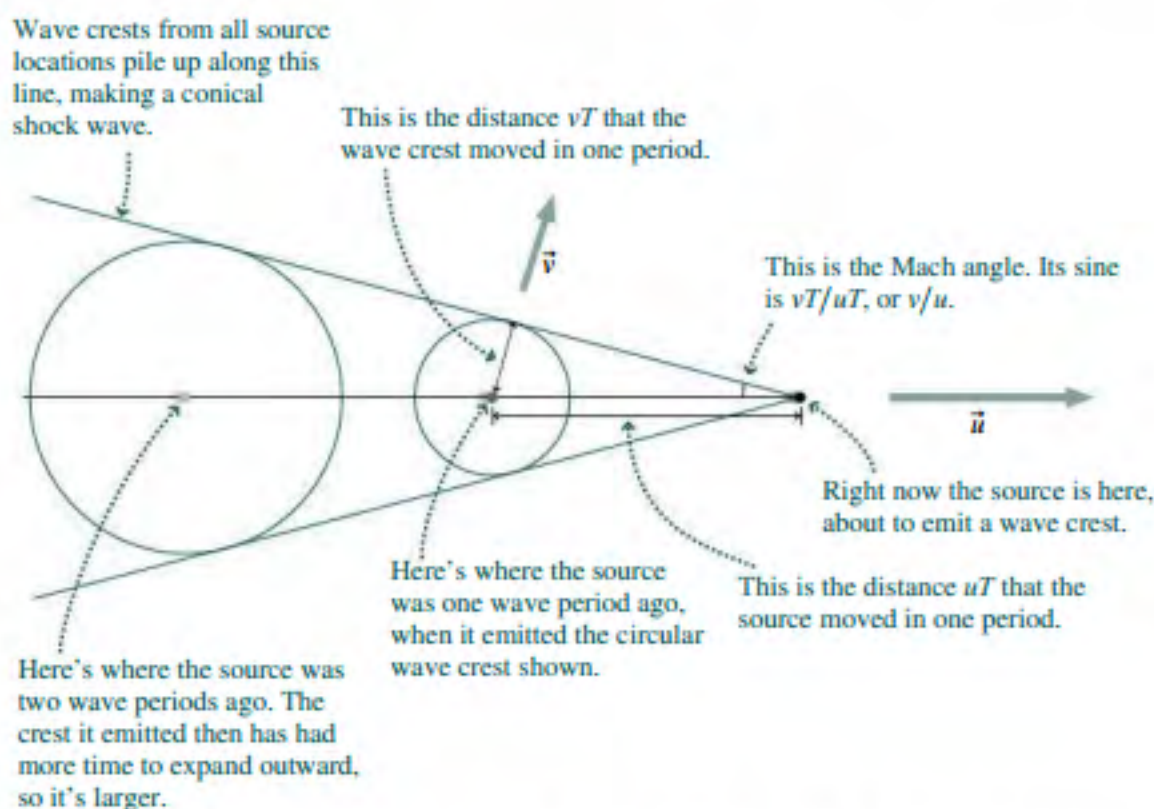


FIGURE 14.34 Shock waves form when the source speed u exceeds the wave speed v .

Shock waves occur in a wide variety of physical situations (Fig. 14.35). Sonic booms are shock waves from supersonic aircraft. The bow wave of a boat is a shock wave on the water surface. On a much larger scale, a huge shock wave forms in space as the solar wind—a high-speed flow of particles from the Sun—encounters Earth's magnetic field.

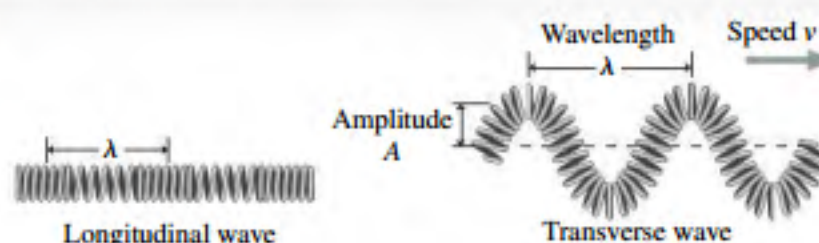
GOT IT?

14.8 In Fig. 14.35, which is moving faster in relation to the wave speed in the medium through which they're traveling, the airplane or the boat?

Chapter 14 Summary

Big Idea

Waves are the big idea here. A wave is a propagating disturbance that carries energy but not matter. Waves are characterized by their amplitude, wavelength, and speed. They can be **longitudinal** or **transverse**.



Key Concepts and Equations

Wave **period** is the time for one complete wave cycle. Period and frequency are inverses, and wavelength λ , period T or frequency f , and wave speed v are all related:

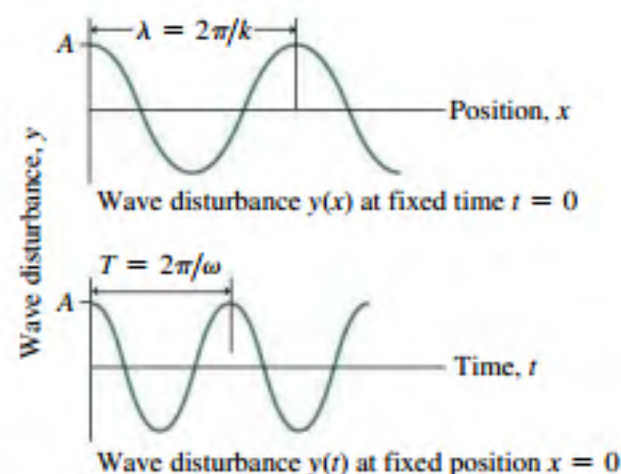
$$v = \frac{\lambda}{T} = \lambda f$$

A **simple harmonic wave** is sinusoidal in shape. The wave disturbance is a function of position and time and is most simply described in terms of its **wave number** k and **angular frequency** ω :

$$y(x, t) = A \cos(kx - \omega t)$$

They're related to wavelength and period by

$$k = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \quad \text{and} \quad \omega = \frac{2\pi}{T}$$



Wave **intensity** is the power per unit area carried by the wave: $I = P/A$. For a spherical wave that spreads in all directions from a localized source, intensity decreases as the inverse square of the distance from the source: $I = P/(4\pi r^2)$.

Applications

Wave **speed** is a characteristic of the medium.

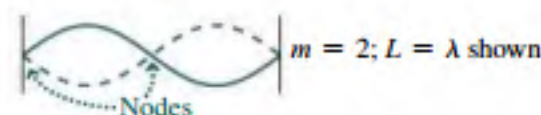
Transverse waves on strings: $v = \sqrt{\frac{F}{\mu}}$

Longitudinal sound waves in a gas: $v = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma P}{\rho}}$, about 343 m/s in air under standard conditions

Surface waves in deep water: $v = \sqrt{\frac{\lambda g}{2\pi}}$

Standing waves on strings

Clamped at both ends, string length is an integer multiple of a half-wavelength: $L = m\lambda/2$



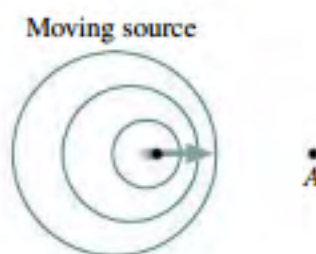
Clamped at one end, string length is an odd-integer multiple of a quarter-wavelength:



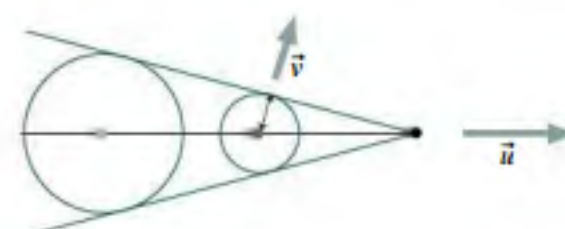
The **Doppler effect** is a frequency and/or wavelength shift due to the motion u of an observer or source relative to the medium with wave speed v .

Moving source: $f' = \frac{f}{(1 \pm u/v)}$, + for receding, - for approaching; λ also changes

Moving observer: $f' = f(1 \pm u/v)$, + for approaching, - for receding; no change in λ



Shock waves occur when a wave source (speed u) moves through a medium at greater than the wave speed (v).



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 14.1 Describe waves qualitatively and distinguish longitudinal from transverse waves.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 14.1</i></p> <p>LO 14.2 Describe wave motion quantitatively using functions of space and time.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 14.2, 14.3; Exercises 14.11, 14.12, 14.13, 14.14, 14.15, 14.16, 14.17, 14.18, 14.19, 14.20; Problems 14.55, 14.56, 14.71, 14.72</i></p> <p>LO 14.3 Explain how Newtonian physics describes waves on strings.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 14.4, 14.5; Exercises 14.21, 14.22, 14.23, 14.24; Problems 14.50, 14.57, 14.58, 14.61, 14.62, 14.68</i></p> <p>LO 14.4 Quantitatively characterize the energy carried by waves.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 14.6; Exercises 14.25, 14.26; Problems 14.51, 14.52, 14.53, 14.54, 14.56, 14.59, 14.60, 14.75</i></p> | <p>LO 14.5 Describe sound waves and quantify sound intensity in decibels.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 14.7, 14.8; Exercise 14.27, 14.28, 14.29, 14.30, 14.31; Problems 14.63, 14.64, 14.65, 14.66, 14.67, 14.82</i></p> <p>LO 14.6 Describe wave interference in one and two dimensions.
<i>Exercises 14.32, 14.33; Problems 14.80, 14.79</i></p> <p>LO 14.7 Describe wave reflection and standing waves.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 14.9; Exercises 14.34, 14.35, 14.36, 14.37; Problems 14.68, 14.69, 14.70, 14.74</i></p> <p>LO 14.8 Describe the Doppler effect and shock waves.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 14.10; Exercise 14.38, 14.39, 14.40, 14.41; Problems 14.73, 14.76, 14.77, 14.78, 14.79</i></p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- What distinguishes a wave from an oscillation?
- Red light has a longer wavelength than blue light. Compare their frequencies.
- Will a sound wave and a light wave with the same wavelength move at the same speed in air?
- If you doubled the tension in a string, what would happen to the speed of waves on the string?
- A heavy cable is hanging vertically, its bottom end free. How will the speed of transverse waves near the top and bottom of the cable compare? Why?
- The intensity of light from a localized source decreases as the inverse square of the distance from the source. Does this mean that the light loses energy as it propagates?
- Medical ultrasound uses frequencies around 10^7 Hz, far above the range of the human ear. In what sense are these waves “sound”?
- If you double the pressure of a gas while keeping its density the same, what happens to the sound speed?
- If you place a perfectly clear piece of glass in perfectly clear water, you can still see the glass. Why?
- Why can a boat easily produce a shock wave on the water surface, while only a very high-speed aircraft can produce a sonic boom?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 14.1 Waves and Their Properties

- Ocean waves with 18-m wavelength travel at 5.3 m/s. What's the time interval between wave crests passing a boat moored at a fixed location?
- Ripples in a shallow puddle propagate at 35 cm/s. If the wave frequency is 5.1 Hz, find (a) the period and (b) the wavelength.
- A 95.8-MHz FM radio wave propagates at the speed of light. What's its wavelength?

- A seismograph located 1350 km from an earthquake detects seismic waves 4.64 min after the quake occurs. The seismograph oscillates in step with the waves, at 3.17 Hz. Find the wavelength.
- Medical ultrasound waves travel at about 1500 m/s in soft tissue. Higher frequencies provide clearer images but don't penetrate to deeper organs. Find the wavelengths of (a) 8.0-MHz ultrasound used in fetal imaging and (b) 3.5-MHz ultrasound used to image an adult's kidneys.

Section 14.2 Wave Math

- An ocean wave has period 4.5 s and wavelength 10.4 m. Find its (a) wave number and (b) angular frequency.
- Find the (a) amplitude, (b) wavelength, (c) period, and (d) speed of a wave whose displacement is given by $y = 1.6 \cos(0.67x + 30t)$, where x and y are in centimeters and t in seconds. (e) In which direction is the wave propagating?
- Ultrasound used in a medical imager has frequency 4.86 MHz and wavelength 0.313 mm. Find (a) the angular frequency, (b) the wave number, and (c) the wave speed.
- Figure 14.36 shows a simple harmonic wave at time $t = 0$ and later at $t = 2.6$ s. Write a mathematical description of this wave.

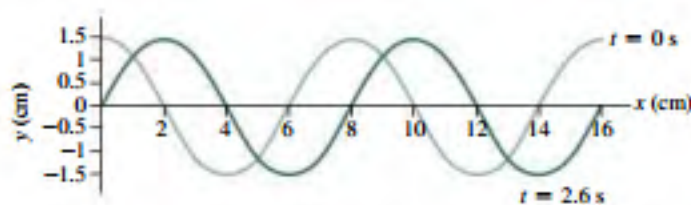


FIGURE 14.36 Exercise 23

- Analysis of waves in shallow water (depth much less than wavelength) yields the following wave equation:

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{gh} \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2}$$

where h is the water depth and g the gravitational acceleration. Give an expression for the wave speed.

Section 14.3 Waves on a String

21. The main cables supporting New York's George Washington Bridge have a mass per unit length of 4100 kg/m and are under 250-MN tension. At what speed would a transverse wave propagate on these cables?
22. A transverse wave 1.2 cm in amplitude propagates on a string; its frequency is 44 Hz . The string is under 21-N tension and has mass per unit length 15 g/m . Determine its speed.
23. Transverse waves propagate at 11 m/s on a string under 15-N tension. What will be the wave speed if the tension is increased to 50 N ?
24. A rope is stretched between supports 17.5 m apart; its tension is 75.1 N . If one end of the rope is tweaked, the resulting disturbance reaches the other end 565 ms later. Find the rope's mass.

Section 14.4 Wave Energy

25. A rope with 280 g of mass per meter is under 550-N tension. Find the average power carried by a wave with frequency 3.7 Hz and amplitude 6.0 cm propagating on the rope.
26. Cell phones typically transmit with a power of 0.60 W when they're in urban areas with closely spaced cell towers. In rural areas, however, the power increases to 3.0 W . By what factor does this power boost increase a phone's range—that is, the distance at which the phone's signal has a given intensity?

Section 14.5 Sound Waves

27. Find the sound speed in air under standard conditions with pressure 101 kN/m^2 and density 1.20 kg/m^3 .
28. Timers in sprint races start their watches when they see smoke from the starting gun, not when they hear the sound. Why? How much error would be introduced by timing a 100-m race from the sound of the gun?
29. The specific heat ratio γ for nitrous oxide (N_2O) is 1.31 . Find the sound speed in N_2O at $1.95 \times 10^4\text{-N/m}^2$ pressure and 0.352-kg/m^3 density.
30. A gas with density 1.0 kg/m^3 and pressure 76 kN/m^2 has sound speed 327 m/s . Are the gas molecules monatomic or diatomic?
31. Divers in an underwater habitat breathe a special mixture of oxygen and neon to prevent the possibly fatal effects of nitrogen in ordinary air. With pressure $6.2 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}^2$ and density 4.5 kg/m^3 , the effective γ value for the mixture is 1.61 . Find the frequency in this mixture for a 37-cm -wavelength sound wave, and compare with its frequency in air under normal conditions.

Section 14.6 Interference

32. You're flying in a twin-engine turboprop aircraft, with its two propellers turning at 975 and 980 rpm , respectively. How often do you hear a peak in the engine sound?
33. What's the wavelength of the ocean waves in Example 14.5 if the calm water you encounter at 33 m is the *second* calm region on your voyage from the center line?

Section 14.8 Standing Waves

34. A 2.5-m -long string is clamped at both ends. (a) Find the longest wavelength standing wave possible on this string. (b) If the wave speed is 56 m/s , what's the lowest standing-wave frequency?
35. When a stretched string is clamped at both ends, its fundamental frequency is 160 Hz . (a) What's the next higher frequency? If the same string, with the same tension, is now clamped at one end

and free at the other, what are (b) the fundamental and (c) the next higher frequency?

36. A string is clamped at both ends and tensioned until its fundamental frequency is 83 Hz . If the string is then held rigidly at its midpoint, what's the lowest frequency at which it will vibrate?
37. A crude model of the human vocal tract treats it as a pipe closed at one end. Find the effective length of a vocal tract whose fundamental tone is 620 Hz . Take $V_{\text{sound}} = 354 \text{ m/s}$ at body temperature.

Section 14.9 The Doppler Effect and Shock Waves

38. A car horn emits a 360-Hz sound. If the car moves at 18 m/s with its horn blasting, what frequency will a person standing in front of the car hear?
39. A fire station's siren is blaring at 87 Hz . What's the frequency perceived by a firefighter racing toward the station at 100 km/h ?
40. A fire truck's siren at rest wails at 1400 Hz ; standing by the roadside as the truck approaches, you hear it at 1510 Hz . How fast is the truck going?
41. Red light emitted by hydrogen atoms at rest in the laboratory has wavelength 656 nm . Light emitted in the same process on a distant galaxy is received at Earth with wavelength 708 nm . Describe the galaxy's motion relative to Earth.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two worked examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

42. **Example 14.1:** A surfer paddles out beyond the breaking surf to where waves are sinusoidal in shape, with crests 59.6 m apart. The surfer bobs a vertical distance of 4.28 m , taking 3.09 s to go from trough to crest. (a) Find the wave speed and (b) describe the wave using Equation 14.3.
43. **Example 14.1:** A surfer just misses catching a big wave. If the wavelength is 78.2 m , and if she stays in the same place, how long will she have to wait for the next wave? *Hint:* You'll find Equation 14.11 useful.
44. **Example 14.1:** A Mars rover includes an experiment designed to explore Mars' atmosphere using sound waves. The experiment generates sound waves of a known frequency and measures their wavelength. For a frequency of 482 Hz , the measured wavelength is 50.6 cm . Find the sound speed on Mars.
45. **Example 14.1:** The speed of sound in water is 1480 m/s . (a) Find the wavelength of sound waves emitted by a blue whale vocalizing at a frequency of 14.5 Hz . (b) How does this compare with the wavelength in air of sound with the same frequency, assuming a sound speed of 343 m/s ?
46. **Example 14.7:** A car speeds down the highway with its stereo blasting. An observer with perfect pitch is standing by the roadside and, as the car approaches, notices that a musical note that should be B at a frequency of 494 Hz sounds like D at 523 Hz . Find the car's speed, assuming a sound speed of 343 m/s .
47. **Example 14.7:** The speed limit on a highway is 95.0 km/h . A car whose horn emits 352-Hz sound is approaching you. What frequency will you hear if the car is going at the speed limit, assuming a sound speed of 343 m/s ?

48. **Example 14.7:** The Sun undergoes oscillations with periods on the order of 5 min and amplitudes, measured as variations in the height of the solar surface, of a few m. The corresponding velocity of the solar surface is on the order of 10 cm/s, and this can be measured by carefully observing the Doppler effect on light emitted at the solar surface. One space-based instrument observes light from singly ionized nickel atoms, emitted with a wavelength of 676.8 nm. If the instrument observes this light Doppler shifted by 3.52×10^{-7} nm, what is the velocity at the Sun's surface?
49. **Example 14.7:** A star is orbiting the galactic center, and at a point in its orbit when it's heading in the direction toward Earth, it's moving at 64.8 km/s. An astronomer observes a spectral line emitted by hydrogen atoms in the star's atmosphere; the wavelength relative to the emitting atoms is 656.28 nm. By how much will the astronomer observe this wavelength to be shifted?

Problems

50. A uniform cable hangs vertically under its own weight. Show that the speed of waves on the cable is given by $v = \sqrt{yg}$, where y is the distance from the bottom of the cable.
51. Find the maximum speed for transmission of waves on a rope with $\mu = 76.5$ g/m if the rope's breaking tension is 390 N.
52. A loudspeaker emits energy at the rate of 54 W, spread in all directions. Find the intensity of sound 17 m from the speaker.
53. Light intensity 4.2 m from a lamp is 0.36 W/m^2 . Find the lamp's power output, assuming it radiates equally in all directions.
54. An experiment based at New Mexico's Apache Point observatory uses a laser beam to measure the distance to the Moon with millimeter precision. The laser power is 120 GW, although it's pulsed on for only 90 ps. The beam emerges from the laser with a diameter of 7.0 mm. It's then beamed into a telescope aimed at the Moon. When the beam leaves the telescope, it has the telescope's full 3.5-m diameter. By the time it reaches the Moon, the beam has expanded to a diameter of 6.5 km. Find the intensity of the beam (a) as it leaves the laser, (b) as it leaves the telescope, and (c) as it reaches the Moon. Do any of these intensities exceed that of bright sunlight on Earth (about 1000 W/m^2)?
55. Two waves have the same angular frequency ω , wave number k , and amplitude A , but they differ in phase: $y_1 = A \cos(kx - \omega t)$ and $y_2 = A \cos(kx - \omega t + \phi)$. Show that their superposition is also a simple harmonic wave, and determine its amplitude as a function of the phase difference ϕ .
56. A wire is under 32.8-N tension, carrying a wave described by $y = 1.75 \sin(0.211x - 466t)$, where x and y are in centimeters and t is in seconds. What are (a) the wave amplitude, (b) the wavelength, (c) the wave period, (d) the wave speed, and (e) the power carried by the wave?
57. A spring of mass m and spring constant k has an unstretched length L_0 . Find an expression for the speed of transverse waves on this spring when it's been stretched to a length L .
58. **CH** When a 400-g spring is stretched to a total length of 35 cm, it supports transverse waves propagating at 4.2 m/s. When it's stretched to 63 cm, the waves propagate at 12 m/s. Find (a) the spring's unstretched length and (b) its spring constant.
59. At a point 12 m from a source of spherical sound waves, you measure the intensity as 690 mW/m^2 . How far do you need to walk, directly away from the source, until the intensity is 260 mW/m^2 ?
60. Figure 14.38 shows two observers 20 m apart on a line that connects them to a spherical light source. If the observer nearer the source measures a light intensity 52% greater than the other observer, how far is the nearer observer from the source?

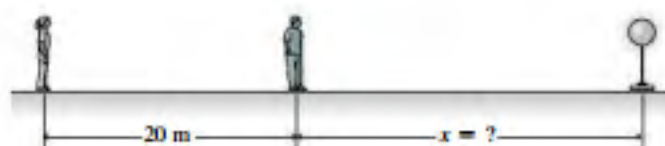


FIGURE 14.37 Problem 60

61. **CH** An ideal spring is stretched to a total length L_1 . When that length is doubled, the speed of transverse waves on the spring triples. Find an expression for the unstretched length of the spring.
62. **CH** Show that the time it takes a wave to propagate up the cable in Problem 50 is $t = 2\sqrt{L/g}$, where L is the cable length.
63. You see an airplane 5.4 km straight overhead. Sound from the plane, however, seems to be coming from a point back along the plane's path at 38° to the vertical. What's the plane's speed, assuming an average sound speed of 343 m/s?
64. What are the intensities in W/m^2 of sound with intensity levels of (a) 65 dB and (b) -5 dB?
65. Show that a doubling of sound intensity corresponds to approximately a 3-dB increase in the decibel level.
66. Sound intensity from a localized source decreases as the inverse square of the distance, according to Equation 14.8. If the distance from the source doubles, what happens to (a) the intensity and (b) the decibel level?
67. At 2.0 m from a localized sound source you measure the intensity level as 75 dB. How far away must you be for the perceived loudness to drop in half (i.e., to an intensity level of 65 dB)?
68. The A-string (440 Hz) on a piano is 38.9 cm long and is clamped at both ends. If the string tension is 667 N, what's its mass?
69. Show that the standing-wave condition of Equation 14.13 is equivalent to the requirement that the time it takes a wave to make a round trip from one end of the medium to the other and back be an integer multiple of the wave period.
70. You're designing an organ for a new concert hall; the lowest note is to be 22 Hz. The architects have asked you to minimize the lengths of the organ pipes. How long will the longest pipe be if it's (a) closed at one end and (b) open at both ends?
71. **CH** Show by differentiation and substitution that a wave described by Equation 14.3 satisfies the wave equation (Equation 14.5), with wave speed $v = \omega/k$.
72. **CH** Show by differentiation and substitution that any function of the form $y = f(x \pm vt)$ satisfies the wave equation (Equation 14.5).
73. **CH** You're a marine biologist concerned with the effect of sonic booms on plankton, and you need to estimate the altitude of a supersonic aircraft flying directly over you at 2.0 times the speed of sound. You hear its sonic boom 24 s later. Assuming a constant 343 m/s sound speed, find the plane's altitude.
74. **CH** A 2.25-m-long pipe has one end open. Among its possible standing-wave frequencies is 345 Hz; the next higher frequency is 483 Hz. Find (a) the fundamental frequency and (b) the sound speed.
75. Gravitational waves were first detected in 2015, using the LIGO detectors at Livingston, Louisiana, and Hanford, Washington. The gravitational waves, propagating as plane waves, reached the Livingston detector 7.0 ms before they reached Hanford. (a) Did the waves come from the southern or northern hemisphere of the sky? (b) Estimate the straight-line distance between Livingston and Hanford and, using the fact that gravitational waves propagate at the speed of light, find the approximate angle between the direction of the waves' propagation and the Livingston-Hanford line. Knowing this angle helped LIGO scientists to determine an approximate location of the source.

76. **BIO** Obstetricians use ultrasound to monitor fetal heartbeat. If 5.0-MHz ultrasound reflects off the moving heart wall with a 100-Hz frequency shift, what's the speed of the heart wall? (*Hint: You have two shifts to consider.*)
77. You're in court, trying to argue your way out of a speeding ticket. You were stopped going 120 km/h in a 90-km/h zone. A technical expert testifies that the 70-GHz police radar signal underwent a 15.6-kHz frequency shift when it reflected off your car. You claim that corresponds to an impossible 240 km/h, so the radar must be defective. How should the judge rule?
78. You move at speed u toward a wave source that's stationary with respect to the medium in which waves of wavelength λ propagate with speed v . Your speed relative to the wave crests is therefore $v + u$. Show that for you, the time between wave crests is $T' = \lambda/(v + u)$, and from this show that you perceive a frequency given by Equation 14.16, with the + sign.
79. You're a meteorologist specifying a new Doppler radar system that determines the velocity of distant raindrops by reflecting radar signals (which travel at the speed of light) off them and measuring the Doppler shift. You need a system that will measure speeds as low as 2.5 km/h. A vendor offers a 5.0-GHz radar that can detect a frequency shift of only 50 Hz. Is that sufficient?
80. **COMP** Use a computer to form the sum implied in the caption of Figure 14.17, taking $\omega = 1 \text{ s}^{-1}$ and using (a) the three terms shown and (b) 10 terms (note that only odd harmonics appear in the sum). Plot your result over one cycle (t from 0 to 2π) and compare with the square wave shown in the figure.
81. Two loudspeakers are mounted 2.85 m apart, pointing in the same direction and producing identical sound waves of a fixed frequency. You're standing 10.0 m from the speakers, on the perpendicular bisector of the line between them. You move in direction parallel to the line between the speakers and find that the sound intensity diminishes, reaching a minimum when you've moved 2.44 m. If the sound speed is 343 m/s, what is the frequency of the sound waves?
82. **DATA** An airport neighborhood is concerned about the basing of the new F-35 jet fighter. They've got the following data for the sound intensity level measured at different distances from the plane as it takes off. They'd like to know the total sound power emitted by the plane. As a physics student, you're called to help. First, convert the sound intensity levels to actual intensity. Then find a quantity which, when you plot intensity against it, should give a straight line. Make your plot, determine the best-fit line, and use its slope to report the total sound power.

Distance (m)	1000	1200	1500	2000	3000	4000
Sound intensity level (dB)	80.7	79.4	76.9	74.2	71.6	68.8

Passage Problems

Tsunamis are ocean waves generally produced when earthquakes suddenly displace the ocean floor, and with it a huge volume of water. Unlike ordinary waves on the ocean surface, a tsunami involves the entire water column, from surface to bottom. To a tsunami, the ocean is shallow—and that makes tsunamis *shallow-water waves*, whose speed is $v = \sqrt{gd}$, where d is the water depth and g the gravitational



FIGURE 14.38 People flee as the devastating tsunami of December 2004 strikes Thailand (Passage Problems 83–86).

acceleration. Tsunamis can travel thousands of kilometers across an ocean to reach the shore with their initial energy nearly intact; when they do, they can cause massive damage and loss of life (Fig. 14.38).

83. As a tsunami approaches shore, it
- speeds up.
 - slows down.
 - maintains its speed.
84. For a tsunami to behave as a shallow-water wave, its wavelength
- must be comparable to or longer than the ocean depth.
 - must be shorter than the ocean depth.
 - can have any value.
85. A tsunami is traveling at 430 km/h when the ocean depth abruptly doubles. Its new speed is roughly
- 860 km/h.
 - 610 km/h.
 - 305 km/h.
 - 215 km/h.
86. On the open ocean, a tsunami has relatively small amplitude—typically 1 m or less. As the tsunami approaches shore, its amplitude increases and its wavelength decreases. As a result,
- its total energy increases.
 - the rate at which it carries energy shoreward increases.
 - the wave frequency increases.
 - none of these quantities changes.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

None. The waves transport energy, but not matter.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 14.1 (b) 5 m/s, because that's the speed of the wave crest
 14.2 (1) upper wave; (2) lower; (3) lower; (4) upper; (5) upper
 14.3 (c)
 14.4 (c)
 14.5 (b) because of interference analogous to Fig. 14.21
 14.6 (c)
 14.7 $\frac{4}{3}\text{m}$, $\frac{4}{3}\text{m}$, 4 m
 14.8 the boat

Fluid Motion

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 15.1 Characterize fluids by density and pressure.
- LO 15.2 Describe how fluid pressure varies in hydrostatic equilibrium.
- LO 15.3 Use Archimedes' principle as it applies to floating and submerged objects.
- LO 15.4 Apply conservation of mass and energy in fluid dynamics.
- LO 15.5 Apply Bernoulli's principle to applications in fluid dynamics.
- LO 15.6 Qualitatively describe the roles of viscosity and turbulence.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Kinetic energy (Section 6.4)
- Gravitational potential energy (Section 7.2)
- Conservation of mechanical energy (Section 7.3)

A tornado whirls across a darkened sky. A plane flies, supported by air pressure on its wings. Gas from a giant star forms a cosmic whirlpool before plunging into a black hole. Fluid in your car's brake system amplifies the force of your foot on the brake pedal. Your own body is sustained by air moving into and out of your lungs, and by the flow of blood throughout your tissues. All these examples involve fluid motion.

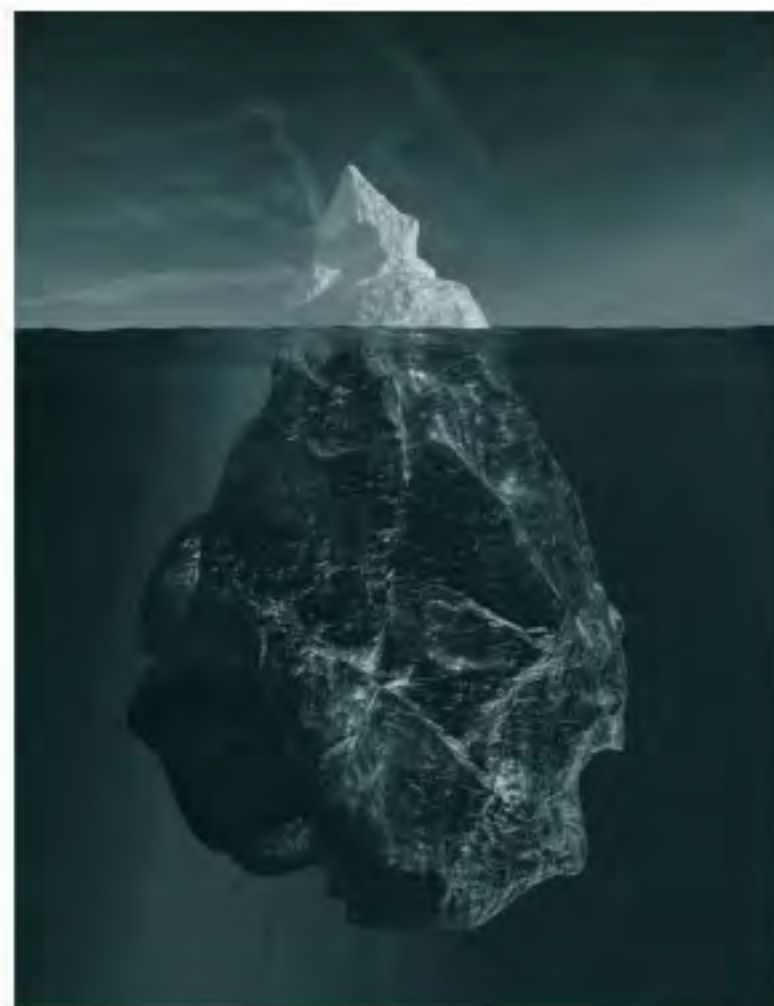
Fluid is matter that flows under the influence of external forces. Fluids include both liquids and gases. The intermolecular forces are weaker in fluids than in solids, and as a result the molecules move around readily. In a liquid, those forces are strong enough to keep the molecules in close contact, while in a gas they're almost negligible and the molecules are usually widely spaced. Mobility of the individual molecules means that a fluid spreads out to take the shape of its container.

15.1 Density and Pressure

LO 15.1 Characterize fluids by density and pressure.

If we could observe a fluid on the molecular scale, we would find large numbers of molecules in continuous motion, colliding with each other and with the walls of their containers. This molecular behavior is governed by the laws of mechanics, and in principle we could study fluids by applying those laws to all the individual molecules. But even a drop of water contains about 10^{21} molecules; to calculate the motions of all those molecules would take the fastest computers many times the age of the universe!

Because the number of molecules is so large, we approximate a fluid by treating it as continuous rather than composed of discrete particles. In this approximation, valid for fluid samples large compared with the distance between molecules, we describe the fluid by specifying macroscopic properties such as density and pressure.



Why is only the "tip of the iceberg" above water?

Density

Density (symbol ρ , Greek rho) measures the mass per unit volume; its SI units are kg/m^3 . Water's density is normally about 1000 kg/m^3 ; air's is about a factor of 1000 smaller. Because their molecules are essentially in contact, liquids are **incompressible**, meaning that their densities remain nearly constant. Gases, in contrast, are **compressible**: With relatively large intermolecular distances, their densities can change readily.

Pressure

Pressure measures the normal force per unit area exerted by a fluid (Fig. 15.1):

Pressure is a scalar... ...that describes the force per unit area in a fluid.

$$p = \frac{F}{A} \quad (\text{pressure}) \quad (15.1)$$

The SI pressure unit is N/m^2 , given the name **pascal** (Pa) after the French mathematician, scientist, and philosopher Blaise Pascal (1623–1662). Another commonly used pressure unit is the **atmosphere** (atm), defined as Earth's normal atmospheric pressure at sea level and equal to 101.3 kPa (in English units, that's 14.7 pounds per square inch, or psi).

Pressure is a scalar quantity; at a given point in a fluid, pressure is exerted equally in all directions (Fig. 15.1), so it makes no sense to associate a direction with it. This property explains an aspect of pressure that you may find puzzling. Although the atmosphere bears down on your body with a pressure of 14.7 pounds on every square inch, you don't feel that burden. That's because the force arising from this pressure is everywhere perpendicular to your body, and your body fluids respond by compressing until they're at the same pressure. If you've had your ears "pop" in a fast elevator or airplane, or when diving underwater, you know the pain that can develop when the pressure on your body is temporarily imbalanced.

GOT IT?

15.1 What quantity of water has the same mass as 1 m^3 of air under normal conditions? (a) 1 m^3 ; (b) 100 cm^3 ; (c) 1 L; (d) 0.1 m^3

15.2 Hydrostatic Equilibrium

LO 15.2 Describe how fluid pressure varies in hydrostatic equilibrium.

For a fluid to remain at rest, the net force everywhere in the fluid must be zero; this condition is **hydrostatic equilibrium**. In the absence of any external forces, hydrostatic equilibrium requires that the pressure be constant throughout the fluid; otherwise, pressure differences would result in a net force, and the fluid would move in response. As Fig. 15.2 suggests, it's pressure *difference*, rather than pressure itself, that gives rise to forces within fluids.

Hydrostatic Equilibrium with Gravity

Hydrostatic equilibrium in the presence of gravity requires a pressure force to counteract the gravitational force. Since forces arise only from pressure differences, the fluid pressure must therefore vary with depth.

Figure 15.3 shows the forces on a fluid element of area A , thickness dh , and mass dm . A gravitational force acts downward on this fluid element; for it to be in equilibrium there must therefore be an upward pressure force—and that requires a greater pressure on the bottom. Suppose the pressures at the top and bottom are p and $p + dp$, respectively. Since pressure is force per unit area, the net pressure force is $dF_{\text{press}} = (p + dp)A - pA = A dp$. The gravitational force is $dF_g = -g dm$, where the minus sign designates the downward direction. But the mass dm is the density times the volume, so $dF_g = -g dm = -g\rho A dh$. Hydrostatic equilibrium requires that these forces sum to zero: $A dp - g\rho A dh = 0$, or

The fluid exerts pressure internally as well as on the container. The internal pressure is the same in all directions.

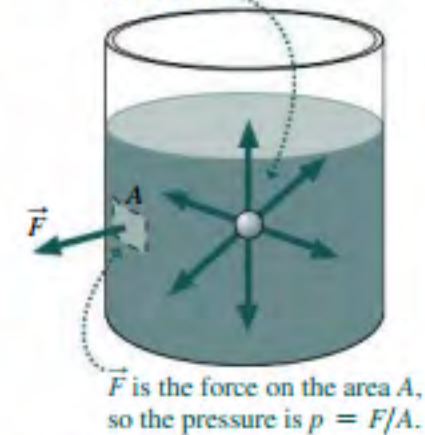
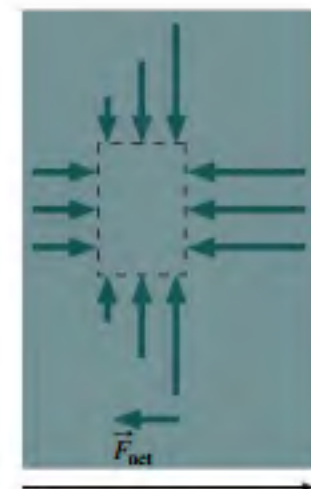
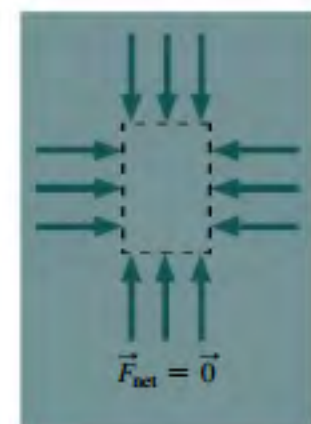


FIGURE 15.1 Pressure, the force per unit area, is exerted equally in all directions.



Increasing pressure
(a)



Constant pressure
(b)

FIGURE 15.2 If pressure varies with position, then there's a net force on a volume of fluid.

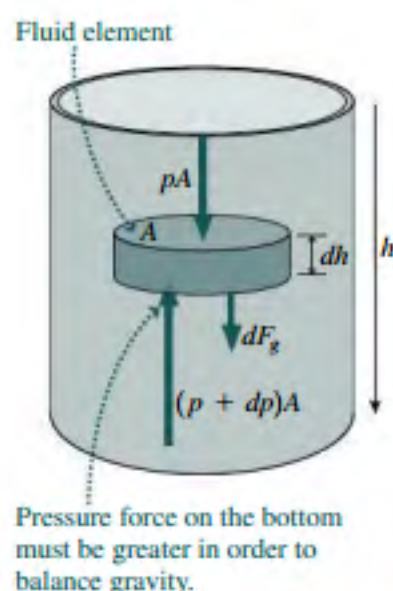


FIGURE 15.3 Forces on a fluid element in hydrostatic equilibrium.

The derivative dp/dh is the rate of change of pressure p with depth h .

In hydrostatic equilibrium, dp/dh is the product of fluid density ρ and gravitational acceleration g .

$$\frac{dp}{dh} = \rho g \quad (\text{hydrostatic equilibrium}) \quad (15.2)$$

This equation shows that dp/dh —the variation in pressure with depth h —is positive, confirming that pressure increases with depth. For a liquid, which is essentially incompressible, ρ is constant, and Equation 15.2 shows that pressure increases linearly with depth:

$$p = p_0 + \rho gh \quad (15.3)$$

where p_0 is the pressure at the liquid surface.

Equation 15.2 applies to *any* fluid in a uniform gravitational field; Equation 15.3 follows from Equation 15.2 for the special case of a liquid. It's also possible to integrate Equation 15.2 to find the pressure in a gas that's subject to the gravitational force. Because the gas density isn't constant, this is a little more involved mathematically. Problem 72 explores the variation of pressure with height in Earth's atmosphere.

EXAMPLE 15.1 Calculating Pressure: Ocean Depths

(a) At what water depth is the pressure twice atmospheric pressure?
(b) What's the pressure at the bottom of the 11-km-deep Marianas Trench, the deepest point in the ocean? Take atmospheric pressure as 101 kPa and the density of seawater as 1030 kg/m^3 .

INTERPRET This problem is about hydrostatic equilibrium, with water the fluid.

DEVELOP We determine that Equation 15.3, $p = p_0 + \rho gh$, applies, with p_0 equal to the atmospheric pressure at the water surface. Then at twice atmospheric pressure, $p = 2p_0$, and we can solve for h to answer part (a). Because pressure increases linearly with depth, we can extrapolate our result for part (a) to find the answer to part (b).

EVALUATE Solving our equation for the depth h and substituting the given numbers in, we find for part (a):

$$h = \frac{p - p_0}{\rho g} = \frac{2.02 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa} - 1.01 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa}}{(1030 \text{ kg/m}^3)(9.81 \text{ m/s}^2)} = 10.0 \text{ m}$$

This result implies that the pressure increases by 100 kPa for every 10 m of depth. In the Marianas Trench, $11 \times 10^3 \text{ m}$ deep, the pressure increase is then

$$(11 \times 10^3 \text{ m})(100 \text{ kPa}/10 \text{ m}) = 110 \text{ MPa}$$

which is our answer to (b).

ASSESS This is over a thousand times atmospheric pressure, or more than 8 tons per square inch! Creatures living at these depths are in pressure equilibrium with their surroundings. To bring them to the surface for study, scientists must maintain their natural pressure or they'll explode. A similar plight awaits scuba divers who hold their breath while ascending; air in the lungs expands, bursting the alveoli. Problem 64 involves film producer James Cameron's 2012 dive to the bottom of the Marianas Trench.

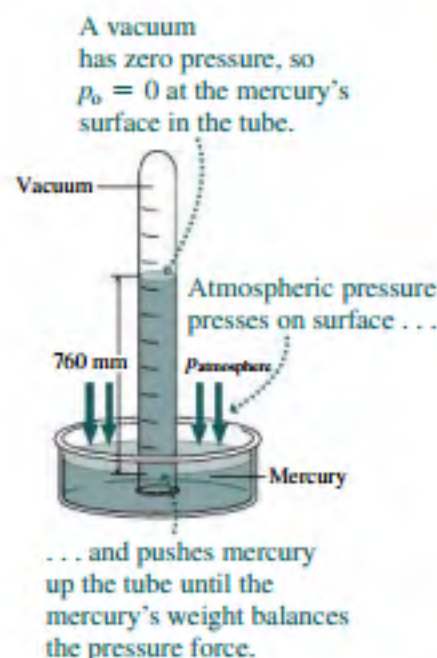


FIGURE 15.4 A mercury barometer.

Measuring Pressure

Figure 15.4 shows a **barometer**, in which air pressure acts on the open pool of mercury, pushing the liquid into the evacuated tube. Since $p_0 = 0$ in the vacuum at the top of the tube, Equation 15.3 becomes simply $p = \rho gh$, showing that the height h of the mercury is directly proportional to atmospheric pressure p . Standard atmospheric pressure of 101.3 kPa supports a mercury column 760 mm or 29.92 in. high. Pressure varies slightly with meteorological conditions, and weather forecasters regularly report atmospheric pressure in millimeters or inches of mercury. Mercury's high density makes for a reasonable-sized barometer. Example 15.1 shows that a water-filled barometer would need to be 10 m long!

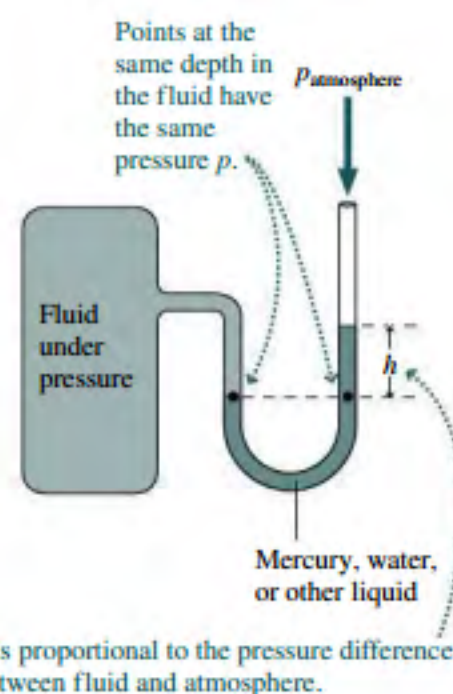
A **manometer** is a U-shaped tube filled with liquid and used to measure pressure differences. A pressure difference between the two ends results in a height difference h between the liquid surfaces (Fig. 15.5, next page). Equation 15.3 shows that h is directly proportional to the pressure difference.

Barometers and manometers are the classic pressure-measuring instruments, and understanding them will help you grasp the meaning of pressure. But pressure-measuring devices today are usually electronic, using the pressure force to alter electrical properties and produce an electrical signal proportional to pressure.

The term **gauge pressure** describes the excess pressure above atmospheric. Inflation instructions for tires and sports equipment specify gauge pressure. A tire inflated to 200 kPa (about 30 psi) has an absolute pressure of about 300 kPa because of the additional 100-kPa atmospheric pressure.

Pascal's Law

Equation 15.3 shows that an increase in surface pressure p_0 results in the same pressure increase throughout the fluid. More generally, a pressure increase anywhere is felt throughout the fluid—a fact known as **Pascal's law**. Pascal applied this principle in his invention of the hydraulic press. Today hydraulic systems, based on Pascal's law, control machinery ranging from brakes in motor vehicles and some bicycles to aircraft wings, bulldozers, cranes, and robots.



h is proportional to the pressure difference between fluid and atmosphere.

FIGURE 15.5 A manometer used to measure the pressure difference between a closed container and the atmosphere.

EXAMPLE 15.2 Applying Pascal's Law: A Hydraulic Lift

In the hydraulic lift of Fig. 15.6, a large piston supports a car; the total mass of car and piston is 3200 kg. What force must be applied to the smaller piston to support the car?

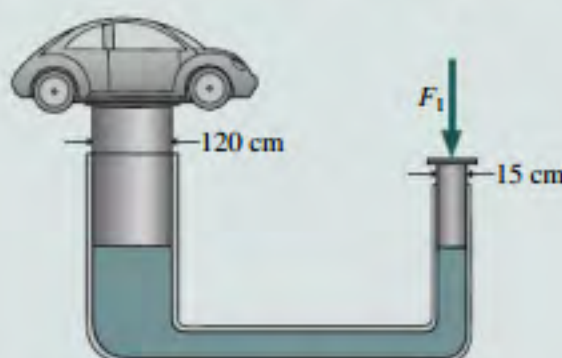


FIGURE 15.6 A hydraulic lift.

INTERPRET We interpret this as a problem involving Pascal's law. Whatever pressure results from the force on the smaller piston is transmitted through the fluid to the larger piston and thus supports the car.

DEVELOP We're given a drawing. Having determined that Pascal's law applies, and neglecting pressure variations with depth, we conclude that the pressure is the same throughout the system. Our plan, then, is to write expressions involving the pressures at both pistons and use the fact that they're equal to solve for the unknown force. We'll use the fact that the pressure on a piston is the applied force divided by the piston's area.

EVALUATE The small piston exerts a pressure $p = F_1/A_1 = F_1/\pi R_1^2$, where F_1 is the unknown force. The pressure at the large piston is the same and produces a force $F_2 = pA_2$. This force supports the weight mg of piston and car; therefore, we have

$$mg = pA_2 = p\pi R_2^2 = \frac{F_1}{\pi R_1^2} \pi R_2^2 = F_1 \left(\frac{R_2}{R_1} \right)^2$$

Solving for F_1 gives our answer:

$$F_1 = mg \left(\frac{R_1}{R_2} \right)^2 = (3200 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2) \left(\frac{15 \text{ cm}}{120 \text{ cm}} \right)^2 = 490 \text{ N}$$

We used the diameters from Fig. 15.3, rather than the radii, because their ratio is the same.

ASSESS How can a 490-N force—about 100 lb—support the car? Through the constant fluid pressure, this smaller force is effectively multiplied by the ratio of the piston areas. What about energy? Do we get something for nothing here? GOT IT? 15.2 explores this question.

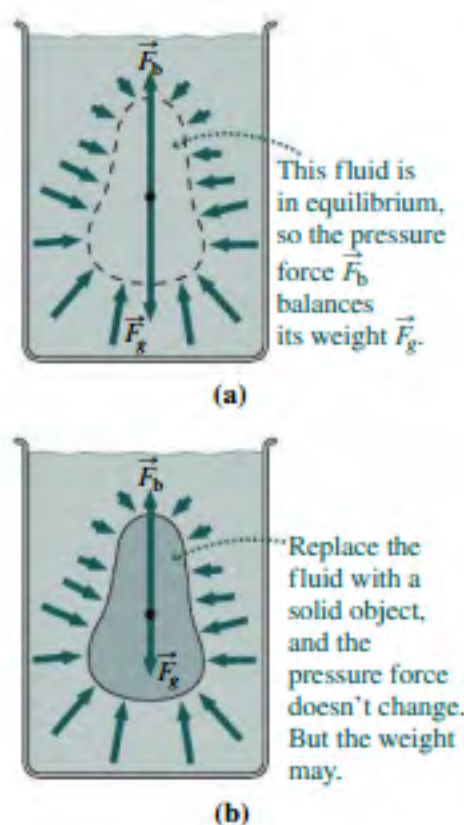


FIGURE 15.7 The buoyancy force $\vec{F}_b$ arises because pressure increases with depth.

APPLICATION

Swimming Like a Fish

Fish glide through the water, maintaining depth with little effort and rising or diving at will. That's possible because they're in neutral buoyancy, with density equal to that of the surrounding water. The fish's *swim bladder*—a pair of gas-filled sacs—expands and contracts under the influence of water pressure, maintaining neutral buoyancy. Biologists believe that the lungs of terrestrial organisms may have evolved from the swim bladders of our ancestral fish. The ballast tanks of submarines serve a similar function to keep these vessels in neutral buoyancy. Analogously, the burner that's fired periodically to heat the air in a hot-air balloon serves the same function; by introducing hot, lower-density air, the balloonist can keep the craft in neutral buoyancy or induce it to rise.



GOT IT?

15.2 If you lift the car in Fig. 15.6 by pushing down on the smaller piston, is the work you do (a) more, (b) less, or (c) the same work as is done on the car? Explain.

15.3 Archimedes' Principle and Buoyancy

LO 15.3 Use Archimedes' principle as it applies to floating and submerged objects.

Why do some objects float while others sink? Figure 15.7a shows the upward pressure force on an arbitrary fluid volume balancing the downward gravitational force. Now imagine replacing the fluid volume with a solid object of identical shape (Fig. 15.7b). The remaining fluid hasn't changed, so it continues to exert an upward force on the object—a force whose magnitude equals the weight of the *original fluid volume*. This force is the **buoyancy force**, and in giving its magnitude we've stated **Archimedes' principle**: The buoyancy force on an object is equal to the weight of the fluid displaced by the object.

If the submerged object weighs more than the displaced fluid, then the gravitational force exceeds the buoyancy force and the object sinks. If the object weighs less than the displaced fluid, buoyancy is greater and the object rises. Therefore, an object floats or sinks depending on whether its average density is greater than or less than that of the fluid. In between is the case of **neutral buoyancy**, when an object's average density is the same as that of the fluid. The Application on this page gives examples of neutral buoyancy.

EXAMPLE 15.3 Finding the Buoyancy Force: Working Underwater

You're setting up a raft in a swimming area, and you need to move a 60-kg concrete block on the lake bottom. What's the apparent weight of the block as you lift it underwater? The density of concrete is 2200 kg/m^3 .

INTERPRET We interpret this as a problem about buoyancy; the concrete will seem to weigh less underwater because of the upward buoyancy force. We identify the apparent weight as the force you'll need to apply to lift the block off the lake bottom.

DEVELOP Figure 15.8 is our sketch, showing gravity and the buoyancy force on the block; you'll need to apply a force equal but opposite to their sum. Archimedes' principle applies, giving a buoyancy force equal to the weight of water that occupies the same volume as the concrete block. So our plan is to find that force and compare it with the gravitational force on the block.

EVALUATE The concrete block's mass is m_c , so its weight is the gravitational force $F_g = m_c g$. Its volume is $V_c = m_c / \rho_c$, which also equals the volume of the displaced water: $V_w = V_c = m_c / \rho_c$. Archimedes' principle says that the weight of this displaced water is the magnitude of the

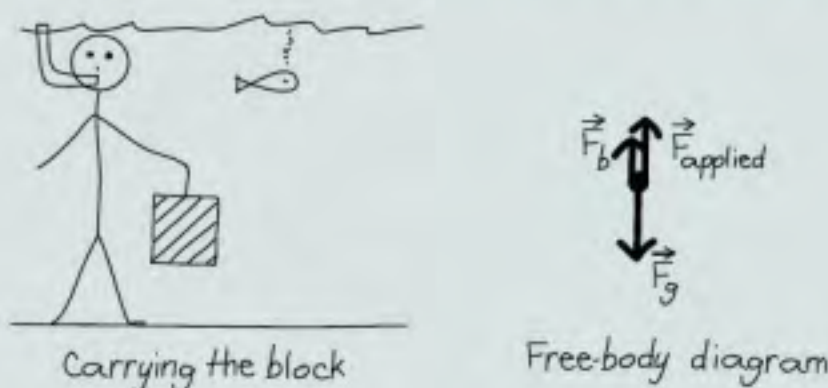


FIGURE 15.8 What's the apparent weight of the concrete block?

buoyancy force, so $F_b = m_w g = V_w \rho_w g = m_c g (\rho_w / \rho_c)$. Then the upward buoyancy force and the downward gravitational force sum to give a downward force of magnitude:

$$\begin{aligned} F_g - F_b &= m_c g - m_c g \left(\frac{\rho_w}{\rho_c} \right) = m_c g \left(1 - \frac{\rho_w}{\rho_c} \right) \\ &= (60 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2) \left(1 - \frac{1}{2.2} \right) = 320 \text{ N} \end{aligned}$$

You have to apply an upward force of equal magnitude to lift the block off the bottom.

ASSESS This is about 70 lb—a lot more manageable than the block's weight mg of nearly 600 N or about 130 lb in air. Knowing the apparent weight of a submerged object would let us turn this problem around to determine its density. Archimedes purportedly used his principle in this way to find the density of the king's crown, and thus show that it was not pure gold.

Floating Objects

Archimedes' principle still holds for a floating object. But with the object in equilibrium at a liquid surface, the buoyancy force now must balance the object's weight—which will happen if the fluid displaced by the submerged part of the object weighs the same as the object. This condition determines how high in the water the object floats, as Example 15.4 illustrates.

EXAMPLE 15.4 Floating Objects: The Tip of the Iceberg

Worked Example with Variation Problems

The average density of a typical arctic iceberg is 0.86 that of seawater. What fraction of an iceberg's volume is submerged?

INTERPRET We interpret this problem also as being about buoyancy, but now we have a floating object with buoyancy balancing gravity. Only the submerged portion contributes to the buoyancy force, so the condition of force balance will enable us to find how much of the iceberg is submerged.

DEVELOP Figure 15.9 is our sketch, showing gravitational and buoyancy forces of equal magnitude. Archimedes' principle applies here and states that the buoyancy force is equal to the weight of water displaced by the submerged portion of the iceberg. So our plan is to find the gravitational and buoyancy forces, and then equate their magnitudes to get the submerged volume. Since we're looking for volume, we'll write any masses as products of density and volume.

EVALUATE The iceberg's weight is $w_{\text{ice}} = m_{\text{ice}} g = \rho_{\text{ice}} V_{\text{ice}} g$, where V_{ice} is the volume of the *entire* iceberg. Only the submerged portion displaces water, so the volume of displaced water is V_{sub} , and the weight of the displaced water is therefore $w_{\text{water}} = m_{\text{water}} g = \rho_{\text{water}} V_{\text{sub}} g$. By Archimedes' principle, w_{water} is equal in magnitude to the buoyancy

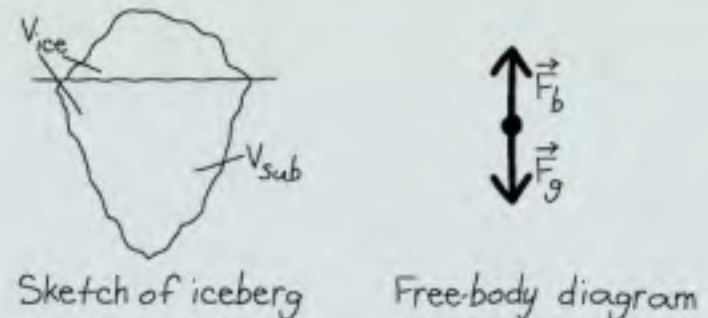


FIGURE 15.9 How much of the iceberg is submerged?

force, which balances gravity when the iceberg is in equilibrium. Equating the two gives $\rho_{\text{water}} V_{\text{sub}} g = \rho_{\text{ice}} V_{\text{ice}} g$, which we solve to get

$$\frac{V_{\text{sub}}}{V_{\text{ice}}} = \frac{\rho_{\text{ice}}}{\rho_{\text{water}}} = 0.86$$

ASSESS Our result means that 86% of the iceberg's volume is under water, leaving only 14% showing. Tip of the iceberg, indeed! Note that the volume ratio is just the density ratio $\rho_{\text{ice}}/\rho_{\text{water}}$, showing that the closer an object's density is to that of water, the lower it floats.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 15.1 The Shrinking Arctic

Arctic sea ice is melting rapidly as a result of global warming. Does this contribute to rising sea levels?

EVALUATE Your first answer might be “yes,” but think again! Archimedes' principle tells us that the floating ice displaces a volume of

water whose weight is equal to that of the *entire* ice—although only the submerged portion does the displacing. When the ice melts, it becomes water that, because it no longer sticks above the surface, displaces a volume equal to its entire weight. But since the weight hasn't changed, the amount of water displaced is the same. That means the water level is unchanged.

(continued)

ASSESS Melting ice doesn't contribute to sea-level rise—as long as it's sea ice that melts. Land ice is a different story: Melting glaciers and “calving” of glaciers to form icebergs together cause about half of contemporary sea-level rise. Thermal expansion, which we'll explore in Chapter 17, causes the rest. According to the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, these two processes are expected to result in sea-level rise in the range of 50 cm to more than 1 m by the year 2100.

MAKING THE CONNECTION The land-based Greenland ice cap occupies some 3 million km^3 , while some 15,000 km^3 of ice are afloat in the Arctic Ocean. Compare the approximate rise in the world's oceans that would result from complete melting of these two ice volumes.

EVALUATE As this conceptual example shows, melting sea ice won't contribute to sea-level rise, but land-based ice will add water to the oceans. Its volume will be about 86% that of the ice (see Example 15.4), or about 2.6 million km^3 . With oceans covering about 71% of Earth's surface area ($4\pi R_E^2$, where R_E is Earth's radius), the meltwater will spread in a layer of thickness d and therefore volume $V = (0.71)(4\pi R_E^2)d$. Setting this quantity equal to the $2.6 \times 10^{15} \text{ m}^3$ volume of meltwater and solving for d then gives $d = 7 \text{ m}$ —enough to inundate most of today's coastal cities.

GOT IT?

15.3 The density of a rubber ball is three-fifths that of water. When placed in water, will the ball (a) float with less than half of it out of the water, (b) float with more than half of it out of the water, or (c) sink?

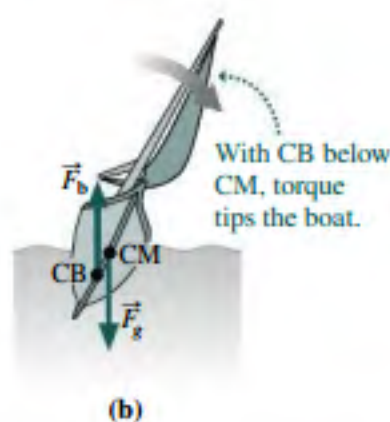
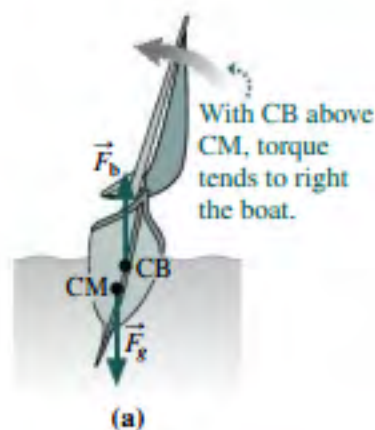


FIGURE 15.10 A boat's stability requires the center of buoyancy (CB) to be above the center of mass (CM).

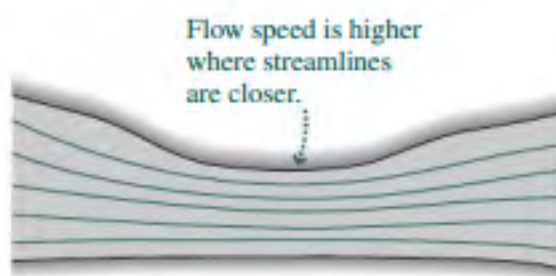


FIGURE 15.11 Streamlines represent flow velocity in a river.

Center of Buoyancy

The buoyancy force acts not at the center of mass of a floating object but at the center of mass of the water that would be there if the object weren't. This point is called the **center of buoyancy**, and for an object to float in stable equilibrium, the center of buoyancy must lie above the center of mass. Otherwise, a net torque results that tends to tip the object. The stability of watercraft depends critically on this condition (Fig. 15.10).

15.4 Fluid Dynamics

LO 15.4 Apply conservation of mass and energy in fluid dynamics.

We now turn our attention to moving fluids, described by the flow velocity at each point in the fluid and at each instant of time. We illustrate flow velocity by drawing continuous lines called **streamlines** that are everywhere tangent to the local flow direction (Fig. 15.11). Their spacing is a measure of flow speed, with closely spaced streamlines indicating higher speed. Small particles introduced into moving fluids follow streamlines and therefore give a visual indication of the flow velocity pattern.

In **steady flow**, the pattern of fluid motion remains the same at each point, even though individual fluid elements are in continuous motion. A river in steady flow always looks the same, even though you're not seeing the same water each time you look. At a given point, the water velocity is always the same. **Unsteady flow**, in contrast, involves fluid motion that changes with time. Blood flow in your arteries is unsteady; with each contraction of the heart ventricles, the pressure rises and the flow velocity increases. We'll restrict our quantitative description of fluid motion to steady flow.

Like all other motion in classical physics, fluid motion is governed by Newton's laws. It's possible to write Newton's second law in a form that explicitly involves the fluid velocity as a function of position and time. But the resulting equation is difficult to solve in any but the simplest cases. Instead of applying Newton's law directly, we'll approach fluid dynamics using energy conservation.

GOT IT?

15.4 The photo shows smoke particles tracing streamlines in a test of a car's aerodynamic properties. Is the flow speed greater (a) over the roof or (b) over the hood?



Conservation of Mass: The Continuity Equation

In mechanics we had no trouble keeping track of the individual objects. But a fluid is continuous and deformable, so it's not easy to follow an individual fluid element as it moves. Yet fluid is conserved; as it moves, new fluid is neither created nor destroyed.

Consider a steady fluid flow represented by streamlines, as shown in Fig. 15.12a. We shaded a **flow tube**—a small tubelike region bounded on its sides by streamlines and on its ends by areas at right angles to the flow. The flow tube has a sufficiently small cross section that fluid velocity and other properties don't vary significantly over any cross section; however, fluid properties may vary along the flow tube. Although our flow tube has no physical boundaries, it nevertheless acts like a pipe because fluid flows *along*, not across, the streamlines. In steady flow, the rate at which fluid enters the tube at its left end must equal the rate at which it exits at the right.

Figure 15.12b shows a small fluid element just about to enter the flow tube, a process that will take some time Δt . Suppose the fluid is moving at speed v_1 ; since it takes time Δt to cross the tube end, its length is $v_1 \Delta t$. With cross-sectional area A_1 , length $v_1 \Delta t$, and density ρ_1 , the mass of the entering fluid is $m = \rho_1 A_1 v_1 \Delta t$.

Another fluid element is shown just about to leave the tube. Suppose it has the *same* mass m as the entering fluid element. Then it must exit the tube in the *same* time Δt in order to keep the total mass in the tube constant. Its mass can be written as $m = \rho_2 A_2 v_2 \Delta t$.

Equating our two expressions for m shows that $\rho_1 v_1 A_1 = \rho_2 v_2 A_2$. Since the endpoints of the tube are arbitrary, we conclude that the quantity $\rho v A$ must have the same value anywhere along the flow tube:

The mass flow rate, in kg/s, at which fluid crosses a given area A is the product of fluid density ρ , flow velocity v , and area A .

For steady flow, conservation of mass dictates that the mass flow rate can't change along a flow tube.

$$\rho v A = \text{constant along a flow tube} \quad \left(\text{continuity equation, any fluid} \right) \quad (15.4)$$

Equation 15.4 is the **continuity equation**, which expresses the conservation of mass in steady fluid flow. The units of $\rho v A$ here are $(\text{kg/m}^3)(\text{m/s})(\text{m}^2)$, or simply kg/s. This quantity is therefore the **mass flow rate** or mass of fluid per unit time passing through the flow tube. Equation 15.4 says that the mass flow rate is constant in steady flow.

For a liquid, the density ρ is constant, and the continuity equation becomes simply

vA is the volume flow rate, in m^3/s .

Because a liquid's density doesn't vary, conservation of mass implies that the volume flow rate is constant for a liquid.

$$vA = \text{constant along a flow tube} \quad \left(\text{continuity equation, liquid} \right) \quad (15.5)$$

Now the constant quantity is just vA , with units of $(\text{m/s})(\text{m}^2)$, or m^3/s . This is the **volume flow rate**. Equation 15.5 makes sense: Where a liquid's cross-sectional area is large, it flows slowly to transport a given volume of fluid per unit time. But in a constricted area, it must flow faster to carry the same volume. With a gas, obeying Equation 15.4 but not necessarily 15.5, the situation is slightly more ambiguous because density variations also

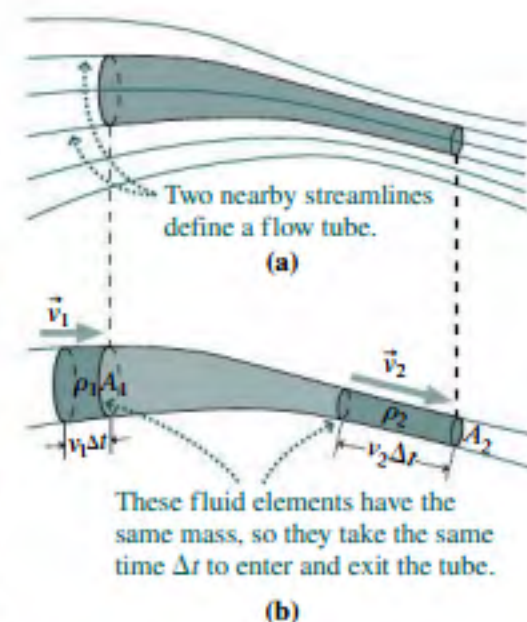


FIGURE 15.12 In steady flow, fluid enters and leaves a flow tube at the same rate.

play a role. For flow speeds below the speed of sound in a gas, it turns out that smaller area implies a higher flow speed just as for a liquid. But when the gas flow speed exceeds the sound speed, density changes become so great that flow speed actually decreases with smaller area.

EXAMPLE 15.5 Using the Continuity Equation: Ausable Chasm

The Ausable River in upstate New York is about 40 m wide. Under typical early summer conditions, it's 2.2 m deep and flows at 4.5 m/s. Just before it reaches Lake Champlain, the river enters Ausable Chasm, a deep gorge only 3.7 m wide. If the flow rate in the gorge is 6.0 m/s, how deep is the river at this point? Assume a rectangular cross section with uniform flow speed.

INTERPRET The concept behind this problem is mass conservation, embodied in the continuity equation for a liquid, Equation 15.5. Since the flow is uniform over the river's cross section, we can treat the entire river as a single flow tube.

DEVELOP Equation 15.5 says that the product vA is constant. For the river's rectangular cross section, the area A is the product of width

w and depth d . Then Equation 15.5 becomes $v_1 w_1 d_1 = v_2 w_2 d_2$, where the subscripts indicate values upstream and in the gorge. Our plan is to solve for the depth d_2 in the gorge.

EVALUATE Solving gives

$$d_2 = \frac{v_1 w_1 d_1}{v_2 w_2} = \frac{(4.5 \text{ m/s})(40 \text{ m})(2.2 \text{ m})}{(6.0 \text{ m/s})(3.7 \text{ m})} = 18 \text{ m}$$

ASSESS This is about 60 feet, quite a depth for a small river! But conservation of mass requires it. In the gorge, the river is much narrower but its flow speed is only a little higher, so it's got to be a lot deeper.

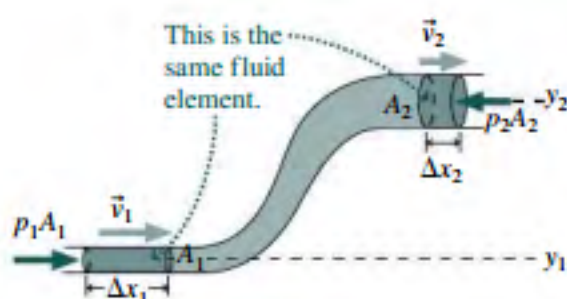


FIGURE 15.13 A flow tube showing the same fluid element entering and leaving. The work done by pressure and gravitational forces equals the change in kinetic energy of the fluid element.

Conservation of Energy: Bernoulli's Equation

We now turn to conservation of fluid energy. Figure 15.13 shows the same fluid element as it enters and again as it leaves a flow tube. If it enters with speed v_1 and leaves with speed v_2 , the change in its kinetic energy is

$$\Delta K = \frac{1}{2}m(v_2^2 - v_1^2)$$

The work–kinetic energy theorem (Equation 6.14) equates this change to the net work done on the fluid element. As the element enters the tube, it's subject to a pressure force $p_1 A_1$ from the fluid to its left. This external force acts over the length Δx_1 of the fluid element as it enters, so it does work $W_1 = p_1 A_1 \Delta x_1$. Similarly, as it leaves the tube, the fluid element experiences a force $p_2 A_2$ from the fluid to its right. Because this force is opposite the flow direction, it does negative work $W_2 = -p_2 A_2 \Delta x_2$. External forces from adjacent flow tubes act at right angles to the flow, so they do no work. Finally, the fluid element rises a distance $y_2 - y_1$ as it traverses the tube; therefore, gravity does negative work $W_g = -mg(y_2 - y_1)$. Summing these three contributions and applying the work–kinetic energy theorem, we have $W_1 + W_2 + W_g = \Delta K$, or $p_1 A_1 \Delta x_1 - p_2 A_2 \Delta x_2 - mg(y_2 - y_1) = \frac{1}{2}m(v_2^2 - v_1^2)$. The quantities $A_1 \Delta x_1$ and $A_2 \Delta x_2$ are the volumes of the fluid element as it enters and leaves the flow, respectively. If we restrict ourselves to incompressible fluids, then those volumes are equal. Dividing through by this common volume $V = A \Delta x$ and noting that $m/V = \rho$, we get $p_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho g y_1 = p_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 + \rho g y_2$, or

Pressure p is a measure of internal energy per unit volume of fluid.

Absent any mechanisms that add or remove energy, the sum of the three terms remains unchanged.

$$p + \frac{1}{2}\rho v^2 + \rho g y = \text{constant along a flow tube} \quad (\text{Bernoulli's equation}) \quad (15.6)$$

This term is the kinetic energy per unit volume in the fluid flowing with speed v ...

... and this is the gravitational potential energy per unit volume when the fluid is at vertical position y .

This is **Bernoulli's equation**, after the Swiss mathematician Daniel Bernoulli (1700–1782).

What do the terms in Bernoulli's equation mean? The quantity $\frac{1}{2}\rho v^2$ looks like kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$, except it has mass per unit volume ρ instead of mass m . It's therefore the

kinetic energy per unit volume, or kinetic-energy density. Similarly, ρgy is the gravitational potential energy per unit volume. Pressure p , too, has the units of energy density and represents internal energy of the fluid. Bernoulli's equation therefore says that the total energy per unit volume of fluid is conserved as the fluid moves.

Bernoulli's equation in the form 15.6 applies to incompressible fluids. It neglects fluid friction, also called *viscosity*, that may dissipate fluid kinetic energy. It also neglects energy transfers associated with machinery such as turbines or pumps that may extract or add to the fluid's energy. Engineers often include those effects in Bernoulli's equation.

15.5 Applications of Fluid Dynamics

LO 15.5 Apply Bernoulli's principle to applications in fluid dynamics.

The laws of mass and energy conservation that we just derived for fluids allow us to analyze a wide variety of natural and technological phenomena. We'll usually need both the continuity equation and Bernoulli's equation, considering the values of the appropriate constant quantities at two points in a fluid flow. As you study the examples and applications that follow, remember that they're ultimately based in the same Newtonian principles we've been using to describe mechanical systems.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 15.1 Fluid Dynamics

The continuity equation and Bernoulli's equation are the keys to solving problems in fluid dynamics. Here's a strategy that will help you focus these two equations on a problem.

INTERPRET The form of Bernoulli's equation we derived applies only to incompressible fluids. So be sure you're dealing either with a liquid or with a gas flowing at speeds well below its sound speed.

DEVELOP

- Identify a flow tube. This may be a physical pipe or other structure, or a mathematical tube bounded by streamlines.
- Draw a sketch of the situation, showing the flow tube.
- Determine the point where you're interested in solving for some aspect of the flow, and another point where you know the quantities that go into the continuity equation and Bernoulli's equation. Note those quantities that you know at each point. Mark the two points on your sketch.
- Write the continuity equation and Bernoulli's equation, with the known quantities forming the terms on one side and the other side containing your unknown(s).

EVALUATE Evaluate by solving your equations for the unknown quantity or quantities. Often this will involve solving the continuity equation first and then using the result in Bernoulli's equation.

ASSESS Ask whether your result makes sense. Does flow speed increase at a constriction? Does pressure go up when flow speed drops, or vice versa? Are there any limitations that apply, or insights to be gained?

APPLICATION

An Airplane Speedometer

A car speedometer works by counting rotations of its wheels as they turn on the road. But airplanes can't do that; instead, they use Bernoulli's principle to measure airspeed—the plane's speed relative to the air. The device that accomplishes this is a *Pitot tube*, which samples the pressure of air moving past the plane, as well as the pressure of air that's been stopped relative to the plane. Bernoulli's equation relates the difference of the two pressures to the relative speed of the air and plane, providing the pilots with a direct indication of their airspeed. Knowing the wind speed—often substantial at aircraft altitudes—then lets the plane's computers determine the speed relative to the ground. The photo shows a pair of external Pitot tubes on an aircraft fuselage. You can explore the physics of the Pitot tube in Problem 68, where you'll also find a simplified diagram of the device.



EXAMPLE 15.6 Bernoulli's Equation: Draining a Tank

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A large, open tank is filled to height h with liquid of density ρ . Find the speed of liquid emerging from a small hole at the base of the tank.

INTERPRET We're dealing with a flow of water, an incompressible liquid. So we can apply our problem-solving strategy for fluid dynamics.

DEVELOP We take the tank to be a rather oddly shaped flow tube, and Fig. 15.14 is our sketch. We're interested in the water's velocity at the hole, so the hole is one of the points we'll use in the fluid equations. Since the hole is open to the atmosphere, the pressure at the hole is atmospheric pressure p_a . The top surface is also open to the

(continued)

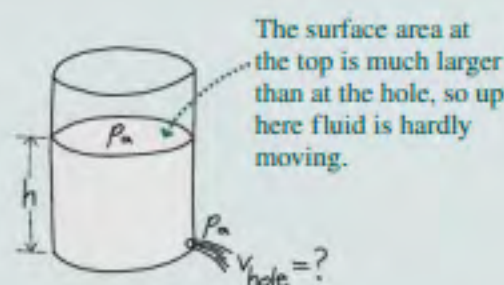


FIGURE 15.14 How fast does the liquid emerge from the tank?

atmosphere, so here the pressure is also p_a . Now, because the hole is very small in relation to the tank, the water level drops only slowly. Therefore, we can make the approximation $v = 0$ at the top—and thus we know both p and v at the top. Although we didn't write a formal equation here, that approximation follows from the continuity equation because the ratio of hole to top surface area is so small. We also need the potential-energy terms in Bernoulli's equation. If we take $y = 0$ at the hole, then those terms are zero at the hole and ρgh at the top. Then Bernoulli's equation, $p + \frac{1}{2}\rho v^2 + \rho gy = \text{constant}$, becomes

$$p_a + \rho gh = p_a + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_{\text{hole}}^2$$

where the terms on the left are at the top surface and those on the right are at the hole. We've taken care of the continuity equation through our assumption of negligible flow speed at the top.

EVALUATE Atmospheric pressure cancels, and we solve for the unknown flow velocity at the hole:

$$v_{\text{hole}} = \sqrt{2gh}$$

ASSESS This is the same result we would get by dropping an object from a height h —and for the same reason: conservation of energy. Draining a gram of water from the hole is energetically equivalent to removing a gram of water from the top and dropping it. Just as the speed of a falling object is independent of its mass, so the speed of the liquid is independent of its density. As the liquid drains, however, the height decreases and so does the flow rate. That's a calculus challenge you can try in Problem 71.



REASONABLE APPROXIMATIONS Making reasonable approximations is often important in solving realistic problems. Look for opportunities to approximate a physical quantity, especially when other terms appear more significant. But always be sure that your approximations are reasonable. In this example, we reasoned that the fluid's speed at the top of the tank was negligible because it's proportional to the ratio of the hole area to the top surface area, a very small value.

Venturi Flows and the Bernoulli Effect

A constriction in a pipe carrying incompressible fluid requires that the flow speed increase in order to maintain constant mass flow. Such a constriction is a **venturi**. Because of the increased speed, Bernoulli's equation requires the pressure to be lower in the venturi. The next example shows how this effect provides a measure of fluid flow.

EXAMPLE 15.7 Measuring Flow Speed: A Venturi Flowmeter

An incompressible fluid of density ρ flows through a horizontal pipe of cross-sectional area A_1 . The pipe has a venturi constriction of area A_2 , and a gauge measures the pressure difference Δp between the unstricted pipe and the venturi. Find an expression for the flow speed in the unstricted pipe.

INTERPRET This is a problem about incompressible fluid flow, so our strategy applies.

DEVELOP For a flow tube, we choose a section of pipe that includes the venturi. Figure 15.15 is a sketch showing some streamlines through this tube. We're interested in the flow velocity in the unstricted pipe, so any point outside the venturi will do. The other point should be in the venturi. The continuity equation then reads $v_1 A_1 = v_2 A_2$, where the subscript 1 refers to the unstricted pipe and 2 to the venturi. The pipe is horizontal, so the potential-energy term ρgh in Bernoulli's equation is the same on both sides, and it drops out. Bernoulli's equation then reads

$$p_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 = p_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2$$

EVALUATE We can eliminate the velocity v_2 by solving the continuity equation: $v_2 = (A_1/A_2)v_1 = bv_1$, where we defined b as

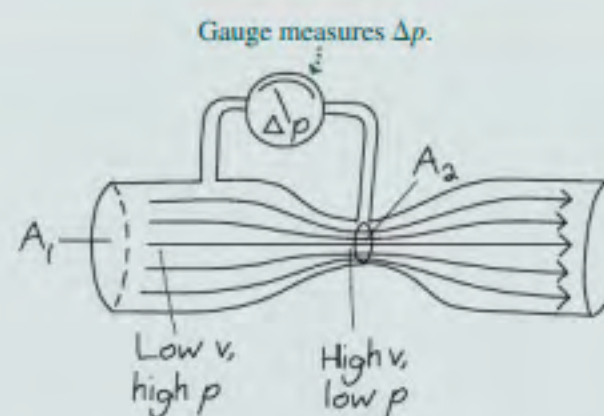


FIGURE 15.15 Our sketch of a venturi flowmeter.

the ratio of the larger to smaller area: $b = A_1/A_2$. Using this result in Bernoulli's equation gives $p_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 = p_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho b^2 v_1^2$. In terms of the pressure difference $\Delta p = p_1 - p_2$, this becomes $\Delta p = \frac{1}{2}\rho b^2 v_1^2 - \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 = \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 (b^2 - 1)$. We then solve for v_1 to get our answer:

$$v_1 = \sqrt{\frac{2\Delta p}{\rho(b^2 - 1)}}$$

ASSESS Make sense? The pressure difference results from the change in speed; no flow, no pressure difference. So it's reasonable that v increases with Δp . But a given pressure difference Δp is easier to get with a larger area ratio b , so flow speed depends inversely on b .

Finally, the greater inertia of a denser fluid means a given pressure difference produces less acceleration, implying a lower initial speed; that's why ρ appears in the denominator.

The occurrence of lower pressure with higher flow speeds, and vice versa—the **Bernoulli effect**—has numerous manifestations. The dirt around a prairie dog's hole is mounded up in a way that forces wind to accelerate over the hole, resulting in lower pressure above the hole. Biologists speculate that prairie dogs have evolved this design to provide natural ventilation (Figure 15.16). The Bernoulli effect is often invoked to explain a number of striking and counterintuitive demonstrations involving fluid flow. Because Bernoulli's principle is based in the fundamental physics of energy conservation, there's often a grain of truth in these Bernoulli-based explanations. But other fluid phenomena, including interaction of fluid flows with curved surfaces, are also involved. Ultimately, all phenomena involving forces on objects in fluid flows are manifestations of Newton's third law—a point we'll make explicit in the next section.

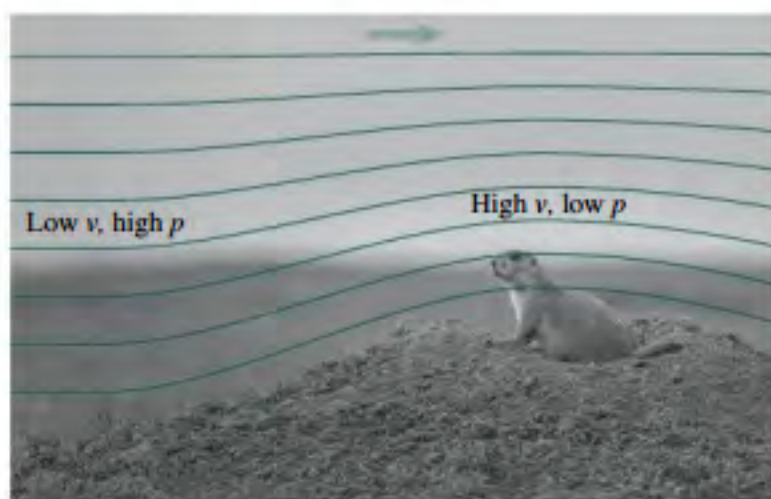
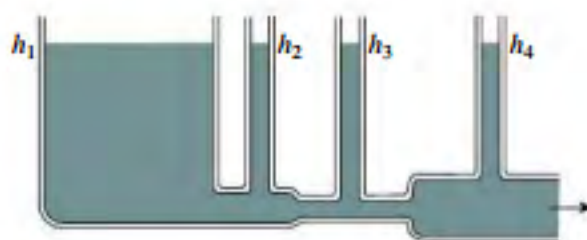


FIGURE 15.16 Streamlines show higher wind speed and therefore lower pressure over a prairie dog burrow. Might this be a way of providing natural ventilation for the burrow?

GOT IT?

15.5 A large tank is filled with liquid to the level h_1 shown in the figure. It drains through a small pipe whose diameter varies; emerging from each section of pipe are vertical tubes open to the atmosphere. Although the picture shows the same liquid level in each pipe, they really won't be the same. Rank levels h_1 through h_4 in order from highest to lowest.



Flight and Lift

Airplanes, helicopters, and birds fly using forces resulting from their dynamic interaction with the air. Hydrofoil boats, water skis, and sailboards have analogous interactions with water. Projectiles such as baseballs, though not supported by the air, have their trajectories substantially modified by aerodynamic forces.

One of the simplest examples of aerodynamic **lift** is the helicopter (Fig. 15.17). Its whirling blades are shaped and tilted so they force air downward as they move, just like a

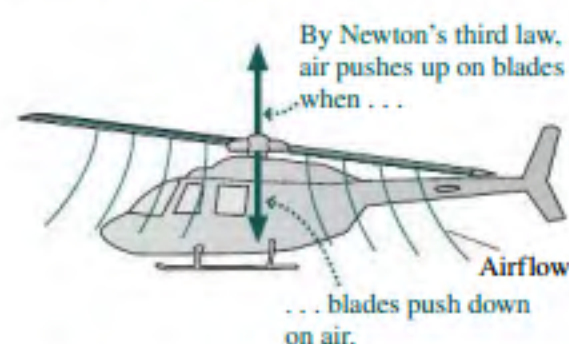


FIGURE 15.17 Newton's third law explains the helicopter's flight.

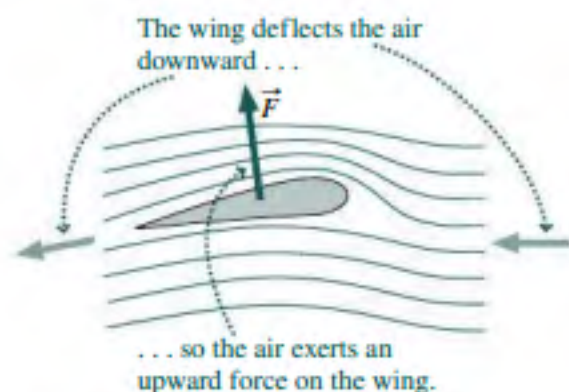


FIGURE 15.18 Flow past a wing.

giant fan. By Newton's third law, the air exerts an upward force on the blades, ultimately supporting the helicopter. An airplane wing works in the same way, except that it moves forward in a straight line instead of describing a circle. Wings are shaped to maximize the downward deflection of the air even with the wing horizontal, but in principle even a flat board would function as a wing if it were tilted to the oncoming air. Figure 15.18 shows the airflow around a wing. Note how the flow, initially horizontal, leaves the wing moving downward—a clear indication that the wing has exerted a downward force on the air. The third law requires a corresponding upward force, and that's what supports the plane.

Baseball's "curve ball" provides another example of aerodynamic lift. Figure 15.19a is a top view of the airflow around a baseball that's not spinning; the flow is symmetric and the air isn't deflected. But if the ball spins as shown in Fig. 15.19b, air is dragged around the ball and deflected. A corresponding third-law force then acts on the ball, curving its path.

Bernoulli's equation is frequently invoked to explain lift forces. It's true, as Figs. 15.18 and 15.19b suggest, that flow speeds are higher, and therefore—according to Bernoulli's equation—pressures are lower on top of a wing or on one side of a spinning ball. Forces associated with that pressure difference provide the lift, so Bernoulli can help explain what's going on. But those pressure differences are manifestations of a simpler underlying phenomenon—namely, the paired forces of Newton's third law.

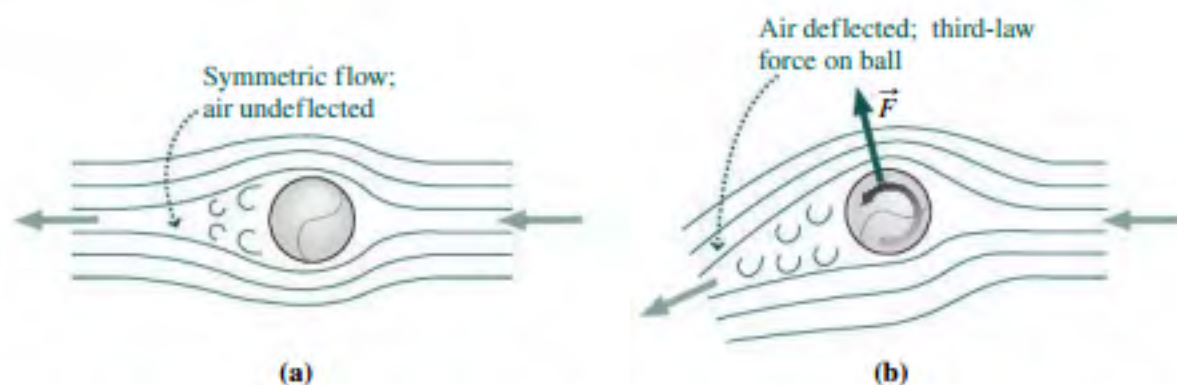


FIGURE 15.19 Top views of airflow around a baseball: (a) no spin; (b) spinning, resulting in a curve ball.

APPLICATION Wind Energy

Wind turbines extract kinetic energy from moving air. In a wind with speed v , Bernoulli's equation shows that the air has kinetic-energy density $\frac{1}{2}\rho v^2$. A chunk of air that passes through a wind turbine in time Δt has length $v \Delta t$ and volume $vA \Delta t$, where A is the area swept out by the blades. The kinetic energy in this volume is the energy density times the volume: $\Delta K = (\frac{1}{2}\rho v^2)(vA \Delta t) = \frac{1}{2}\rho v^3 A \Delta t$. Dividing by $A \Delta t$ gives the energy per time per unit area—that is, the power per unit area available from the wind:

$$\text{wind power per unit area} = \frac{1}{2}\rho v^3$$

Unfortunately, we can't extract *all* this energy because then the air would come to a complete stop behind the turbine, halting the flow. A careful analysis shows that the maximum rate for wind-energy extraction is $\frac{8}{27}\rho v^3$, about 59% of the wind's energy. Given air's density of 1.2 kg/m^3 , this means a 10-m/s wind amounts to some 350 W/m^2 . The factor v^3 shows that the available power increases rapidly at higher speeds. The best practical wind turbines can achieve about 80% of the theoretical maximum. Wind is the fastest-growing component of the world's energy supply, and in some European countries it provides as much as 20% of the electrical energy.



15.6 Viscosity and Turbulence

LO 15.6 Qualitatively describe the roles of viscosity and turbulence.

Moving fluid interacts with the surfaces it contacts, resulting in a kind of fluid friction called **viscosity**. Viscosity also results from the transfer of momentum among adjacent layers within a fluid. Viscosity is especially important right near fluid boundaries because viscous forces bring the fluid to a complete stop at the boundary (Fig. 15.20). This boundary effect produces drag forces on objects moving through fluids—but it's the same drag at the surfaces of airplane and ship propellers that exerts a force on the fluid. Without viscosity, propellers would spin uselessly and planes and ships would go nowhere.

Viscosity depends on fluid properties and dimensions. Honey is more viscous than water, but at the tiny scales of a human capillary or a bacterium wiggling its flagella for propulsion, water too can be extremely viscous. Viscosity is also important in stabilizing flows that would otherwise become **turbulent**, or chaotically unsteady. Turbulence results from the growth of waves that gain energy at the expense of the flow, turning a smooth flow into a chaotic mess (Fig. 15.21). Turbulence is still not fully understood and presents ongoing challenges to scientists and engineers.

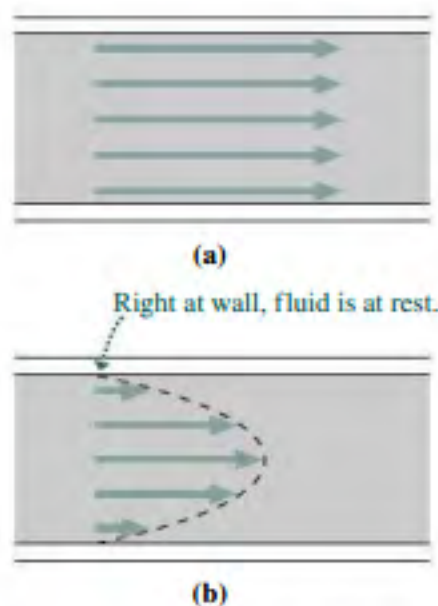


FIGURE 15.20 Velocity profiles in flows that are (a) inviscid (without viscosity) and (b) viscous.

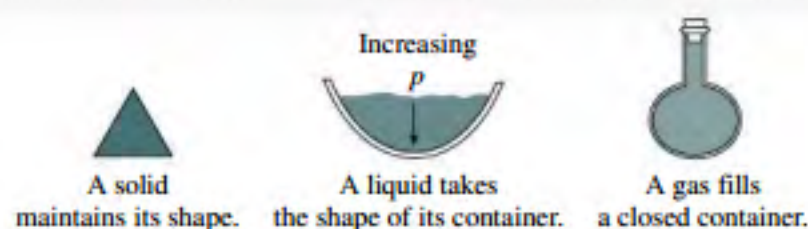


FIGURE 15.21 Smooth flow becomes turbulent, shown here in a column of rising smoke.

Chapter 15 Summary

Big Idea

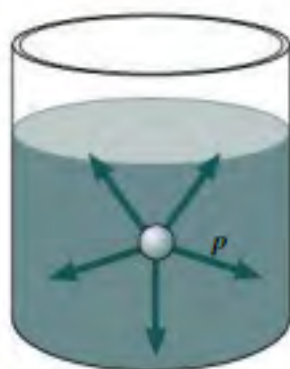
Fluid is matter that readily deforms and flows under the influence of forces. Pressure, density, and flow velocity characterize fluids. Liquids and slowly moving gases are **incompressible**, meaning their density is essentially constant. A fluid that isn't moving is in **hydrostatic equilibrium**. In the presence of gravity, equilibrium requires that fluid pressure increase with depth.



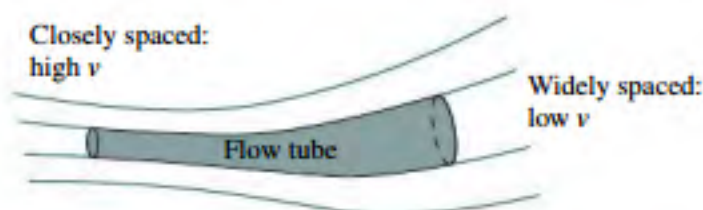
(continued)

Key Concepts and Equations

Pressure is the force per unit area: $p = F/A$. The pressure in a fluid exerts itself equally in all directions.



Streamlines represent a moving fluid.



The **continuity equation** describes the conservation of mass along a flow tube:

$$\rho v A = \text{constant (any fluid)}$$

$$v A = \text{constant (incompressible fluid)}$$

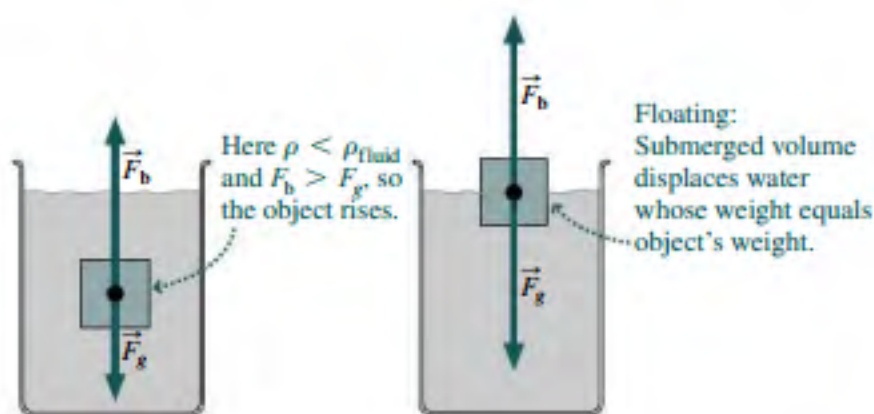
Bernoulli's equation describes the conservation of energy:

$$p + \frac{1}{2}\rho v^2 + \rho g y = \text{constant (incompressible fluid, neglecting viscosity)}$$

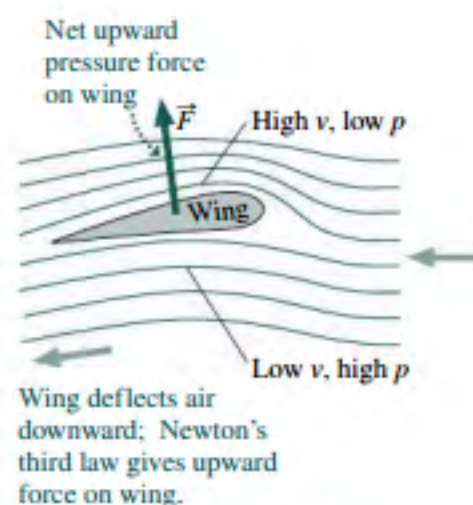
Viscosity, or fluid friction, is especially important when fluids interact with solid objects.

Applications

Archimedes' principle states that the **buoyancy force** $\vec{F}_b$ due to pressure on an object has the same magnitude as the weight of the displaced fluid. For an object less dense than a fluid, the buoyancy force exceeds gravity and the object floats; otherwise, it sinks or is in neutral buoyancy.



Bernoulli's principle helps explain lift forces, although ultimately these are based in Newton's third law.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!

BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems



Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 15.1 Characterize fluids by density and pressure.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 15.1, 15.2; Exercises 15.11, 15.12, 15.13, 15.14, 15.15, 15.16, 15.21; Problems 15.40, 15.41, 15.42, 15.67, 15.77
- LO 15.2 Describe how fluid pressure varies in hydrostatic equilibrium.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 15.3, 15.6, 15.7; Exercises 15.17, 15.18, 15.19, 15.20, 15.22; Problems 15.43, 15.44, 15.45, 15.46, 15.47, 15.63, 15.64, 15.65, 15.72, 15.73, 15.74, 15.75, 15.76, 15.78
- LO 15.3 Use Archimedes' principle as it applies to floating and submerged objects.

- For Thought and Discussion Questions 15.4, 15.5, 15.8, 15.9; Exercises 15.23, 15.24, 15.25, 15.26; Problems 15.48, 15.49, 15.50, 15.51, 15.52, 15.53, 15.54, 15.60, 15.70, 15.79
- LO 15.4 Apply conservation of mass and energy in fluid dynamics.
Exercises 15.27, 15.28, 15.29, 15.30, 15.31; Problem 15.66
- LO 15.5 Apply Bernoulli's principle to applications in fluid dynamics.
For Thought and Discussion Question 15.10; Problems 15.55, 15.56, 15.57, 15.58, 15.59, 15.61, 15.62, 15.68, 15.69, 15.71
- LO 15.6 Qualitatively describe the roles of viscosity and turbulence.

For Thought and Discussion

1. Why do your ears “pop” when you drive up a mountain?
2. You have two spheres of the same volume, one made of steel and the other of wood. Which one do you expect to float in a pool of water? Why?
3. The three containers in Fig. 15.22 are filled to the same level and are open to the atmosphere. How do the pressures at the bottoms of the three containers compare?



FIGURE 15.22 For Thought and Discussion 3.

4. Why is it easier to float in the ocean than in fresh water?
5. Figure 15.23 shows a cork suspended from the bottom of a sealed container of water. The container is on a turntable rotating about a vertical axis, as shown. Explain the position of the cork.

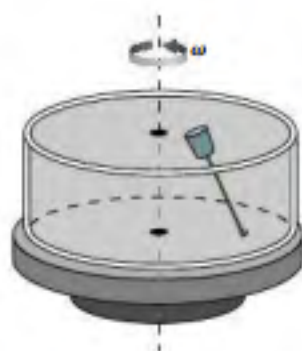


FIGURE 15.23 For Thought and Discussion 5.

6. Why are dams thicker at the bottom than at the top?
7. Mercury is used in barometers to measure atmospheric pressure. Why is Mercury a better option than water?
8. A helium-filled balloon stops rising long before it reaches the “top” of the atmosphere, but a cork released from the bottom of a lake rises all the way to the surface. Why the difference?
9. A barge filled with steel beams overturns in a lake, spilling its cargo. Does the water level in the lake rise, fall, or remain the same?
10. Why do airplanes take off into the wind?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 15.1 Density and Pressure

11. The density of molasses is 1600 kg/m^3 . Find the mass of the molasses in a 0.95-L jar.
12. Atomic nuclei have densities around 10^{17} kg/m^3 , while water’s density is 10^3 kg/m^3 . Roughly what fraction of water’s volume is *not* empty space?
13. Compressed air with mass 9.8 kg is stored in a 0.041-m^3 cylinder. (a) What’s the density of the compressed air? (b) What volume would the same gas occupy at a typical atmospheric density of 1.2 kg/m^3 ?
14. What’s the weight of a column of air with cross-sectional area 1 m^2 extending from Earth’s surface to the top of the atmosphere?

15. The *diamond anvil* is used by scientists and engineers to study matter under extreme pressures, simulating conditions such as those found at the centers of planets. A typical anvil consists of two diamonds with parallel faces measuring some $200 \mu\text{m}$ in diameter. The sample under study is placed between the diamonds, and a force is applied to the diamonds. Estimate the pressure that results when the force on the diamonds is 6 kN.
16. You unbend a paper clip made from 0.8-mm-diameter wire and push the end against the wall. What force must you apply to give a pressure of 135 atm?

Section 15.2 Hydrostatic Equilibrium

17. What’s the density of a fluid whose pressure increases at the rate of 100 kPa for every 8.0 m of depth?
18. A research submarine can withstand an external pressure of 57.5 MPa when its internal pressure is 101.3 kPa. How deep can it dive?
19. Scuba equipment provides a diver with air at the same pressure as the surrounding water. But at pressures higher than about 1 MPa, the nitrogen in air becomes dangerously narcotic. At what depth does nitrogen narcosis become a hazard?
20. A vertical tube open at the top contains 5.0 cm of oil with density 0.82 g/cm^3 , floating on 5.0 cm of water. Find the gauge pressure at the bottom of the tube.
21. A child attempts to drink water through a 36-cm-long straw but finds that the water rises only 25 cm. By how much has the child reduced the pressure in her mouth below atmospheric pressure?
22. Barometric pressure in the eye of a hurricane is 0.94 atm (714.4 mm of mercury). How does the level of the ocean surface under the eye compare with the level under a distant fair-weather region where the pressure is 1.0 atm?

Section 15.3 Archimedes’ Principle and Buoyancy

23. On land, the most massive concrete block you can carry is 25 kg. Given concrete’s 2200-kg/m^3 density, how massive a block could you carry underwater?
24. An 8.3-g jewel has apparent weight 56 mN when submerged in water. Could the jewel be a sapphire (density 3.98 g/cm^3)?
25. Styrofoam’s density is 160 kg/m^3 . What percent error is introduced by weighing a Styrofoam block in air (density 1.2 kg/m^3), which exerts an upward buoyancy force, rather than in vacuum?
26. A steel drum has volume 0.23 m^3 and mass 16 kg. Will it float in water when filled with (a) water or (b) gasoline (density 860 kg/m^3)?

Sections 15.4 and 15.5 Fluid Dynamics and Applications

27. Water flows through a 2.6-cm-diameter pipe at 1.7 m/s. If the pipe narrows to 1.6-cm diameter, what’s the flow speed in the constriction?
28. Show that pressure has the units of energy density.
29. A typical mass flow rate for the Nile River is $2.8 \times 10^7 \text{ kg/s}$. Find (a) the volume flow rate and (b) the flow speed in a region where the river is 1.8 km wide and averages 8.2 m deep.
30. A fire hose 10 cm in diameter delivers water at 22 kg/s. The hose terminates in a 2.1-cm-diameter nozzle. What are the flow speeds (a) in the hose and (b) at the nozzle?
31. A typical human aorta, the main artery from the heart, is 1.8 cm in diameter and carries blood at 35 cm/s. Find the flow speed around a clot that reduces the flow area by 80%.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two worked examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you’ve seen before.

The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

32. **Example 15.4:** An iceberg derived from a Greenland glacier contains gravel entrained in the ice as it moved across the land before calving into the sea. The entrained gravel increases the iceberg's density to 952 kg/m^3 . What fraction of the iceberg's volume is submerged when it's floating in ocean water with density 1030 kg/m^3 ?
33. **Example 15.4:** An iceberg has mass 138,000 tonnes (1 tonne = 1000 kg) and is composed of pure ice with density 917 kg/m^3 and entrained gravel from rock with density 2750 kg/m^3 . If 95.5% of the iceberg's volume is submerged, how much of its mass is ice and how much is rock? Take the density of seawater to be 1030 kg/m^3 .
34. **Example 15.4:** The Michelson–Morley experiment (see Chapter 33) was a very precise optical experiment that helped pave the way for Einstein's theory of relativity. To isolate it from external vibrations, the entire experiment was mounted on a square slab of sandstone 0.30 m thick and 1.5 m on a side, with a mass of 1.7 tonnes (1700 kg). The slab, in turn, floated in a trough of liquid mercury (density 13.69 tonnes/m^3). What percentage of the slab's volume was below the surface of the mercury?
35. **Example 15.4:** Lakes on Saturn's moon Titan are filled with liquid hydrocarbons—largely methane but also some ethane. Suppose scientists want to send a probe to explore Titan's largest lake (which is about the size of Earth's Lake Ontario). The probe is to be a cylinder 56.3 cm in diameter, with a mass of 135 kg, and it's supposed to float with the long dimension vertical, half submerged and half above the lake surface. If the liquid in the lake has density 482 kg/m^3 , what should be the probe's length?
36. **Example 15.6:** A large cylindrical tank is filled with water to a depth of 2.68 m. There's a small-diameter pipe emerging from the bottom of the tank, with a valve. If you open the valve, at what speed will water flow from the tank?
37. **Example 15.6:** You'd like to determine the depth of water in a large tank, but you don't have any way to measure it directly. However, there's a small-diameter pipe emerging from the bottom of the tank, and when you open the valve on this pipe, you observe water spraying out at 5.46 m/s. What's the depth of the water in the tank?
38. **Example 15.6:** A sealed tank holds water to a depth of 2.68 m. Above the water is air, pressurized to 186 kPa. If you open a small hole in the bottom of the tank, exposing the water at the bottom to standard atmospheric pressure, at what speed will the water initially emerge?
39. **Example 15.6:** A fire extinguisher consists of a water-filled sealed canister with a hose whose diameter is much smaller than that of the canister. What should be the pressure of the water if it's to emerge initially from the hose at 18.8 m/s? Assume normal atmospheric pressure at the hose nozzle, and neglect pressure variation with height inside the container.

Problems

40. When a couple with total mass 150 kg lies on a water bed, pressure in the bed increases by 4700 Pa. What surface area of the two bodies is in contact with the bed?
41. A fully loaded Volvo station wagon has mass 1950 kg. If each of its four tires is inflated to a gauge pressure of 270 kPa, what's the total tire area in contact with the road?
42. You're stuck in the exit row on a long flight, and you suddenly worry that your seatmate, who's next to the window, might pull the emergency window inward while you're in flight. The window measures 50 cm by 60 cm. Cabin pressure is 0.8 atm, and atmospheric pressure at the plane's altitude is 0.2 atm. Should you worry?
43. A vertical tube 1.7 cm in diameter and open at the top contains 5.6 g of oil (density 0.82 g/cm^3) floating on 5.6 g of water. Find the gauge pressure (a) at the oil–water interface and (b) at the bottom.
44. Dam breaks present a serious risk of widespread property damage and loss of life. You're asked to assess a 1500-m-wide dam holding back a lake 95 m deep. The dam was built to withstand a force of 100 GN, which is supposed to be at least 50% over the force it actually experiences. Should the dam be reinforced? (Hint: You'll need your calculus skills.)
45. A U-shaped tube open at both ends contains water and a quantity of oil occupying a 2.0-cm length of the tube, as shown in Fig. 15.24. If the oil's density is 92% of water's, what's the height difference h ?

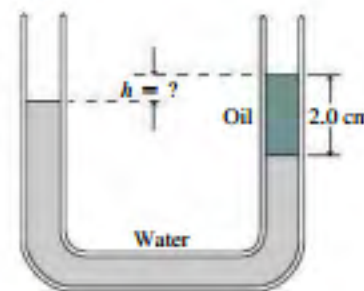


FIGURE 15.24 Problem 45

46. You're a robotics engineer designing a hydraulic system to move a robotic arm. The hydraulic cylinder that drives the arm has diameter 6.0 cm and can exert a maximum force of 6.1 kN. Hydraulic tubing comes rated in multiples of 1/2 MPa, and, for safety, you're to specify tubing capable of withstanding 50% greater pressure than it will ever experience in use. What pressure rating do you specify?
47. Hydraulic brake systems are increasingly common on bicycles, especially those using disc brakes. The Magura MT4 brake system, widely used on mountain bikes, has a small piston and cylinder of diameter 1.04 cm connected to the brake actuation lever on the handlebars, and a larger 2.10-cm-diameter piston/cylinder that pushes the brake pads against the rotating brake disc. (a) What force must be applied to the smaller piston to produce a force of 3.25 kN on the larger piston? (b) If the smaller piston moves a maximum of 8.80 mm, what's the corresponding motion of the larger piston? (c) How much work is done on each piston as they undergo the motions of part (b)?
48. Archimedes purportedly used his principle to verify that the king's crown was pure gold by weighing the crown submerged in water. Suppose the crown's actual weight was 25.0 N. What would be its apparent weight if it were made of (a) pure gold and (b) 75% gold and 25% silver, by volume? The densities of gold, silver, and water are 19.3 g/cm^3 , 10.5 g/cm^3 , and 1.00 g/cm^3 , respectively.
49. You're testifying in a drunk-driving case for which a blood alcohol measurement is unavailable. The accused weighs 140 lb, and would be legally impaired after consuming 36 oz of beer. The accused was observed at a beach party where a keg with interior diameter 40 cm was floating in the lake to keep it cool. After the accused's drinking stint, the keg floated 1.2 cm higher than before. Beer's density is essentially that of water. Does your testimony help or hurt the accused's case?
50. A glass beaker measures 12 cm high by 7.0 cm in diameter. Empty, it floats in water with one-third of its height submerged. How many 16-g rocks can be placed in the beaker before it sinks?
51. A typical supertanker has mass $2.0 \times 10^6 \text{ kg}$ and carries twice that much oil. If 8.0 m of the ship is submerged when it's empty, what's the minimum water depth needed for it to navigate when full? Assume the sides of the ship are vertical.
52. A balloon contains gas of density ρ_g and is to lift a mass M , including the balloon but not the gas. Show that the minimum mass of gas required is $m_g = M\rho_g/(\rho_a - \rho_g)$, where ρ_a is the atmospheric density.
53. (a) How much helium (density 0.18 kg/m^3) is needed to lift a balloon carrying two people, if the total mass of people, basket, and balloon

(but not gas) is 280 kg? (b) Repeat for a hot-air balloon whose air density is 10% less than that of the surrounding atmosphere.

54. A newfangled swim float, the MaxRaft by WaterMat, measures $1.8 \text{ m} \times 2.4 \text{ m}$ and is only 10 cm thick. Its mass is 20 kg. How many 50-kg children can the float accommodate before the water comes over its top surface? Assume the float stays perfectly level.
55. If the blood pressure in the unobstructed artery of Exercise 31 is 16 kPa gauge (about 120 mm of mercury, the unit commonly reported by doctors), what will it be at the clot? (Note: Blood's density is 1.06 g/cm^3 .)
56. You're a consultant for maple syrup producers. They tap maple trees and collect sap with plastic tubing that connects to a common pipe delivering sap to an evaporator. There it's boiled to produce thick, tasty syrup. The system can be modeled as a pipe with one end, of cross-sectional area A , exposed to atmospheric pressure. The pipe drops through a vertical distance h_1 while its area decreases to $A/2$, as shown in Fig. 15.25. A small vertical glass tube extends from the lower portion, as shown, and is open to atmospheric pressure. You're asked to provide a formula for the volume flow rate of the sap as a function of the height h_2 of sap in the tube.

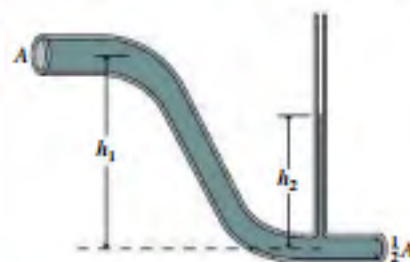


FIGURE 15.25 Problem 56

57. The water in a garden hose is at 120-kPa gauge pressure and is moving at negligible speed. The hose terminates in a sprinkler consisting of many small holes. Find the maximum height reached by the water emerging from the holes.
58. The venturi flowmeter shown in Fig. 15.26 is used to measure the flow rate of water in a solar collector system. The flowmeter is inserted in a pipe with diameter 1.9 cm; at the venturi, the diameter is 0.64 cm. The manometer tube contains oil with density 0.82 times that of water. If the difference in oil levels on the two sides of the manometer tube is 1.9 cm, what's the volume flow rate?

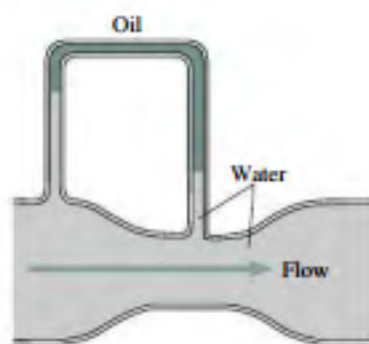


FIGURE 15.26 Problem 58

59. A 1.3-cm-diameter venturi flowmeter is inserted in a 2.3-cm diameter pipe carrying water (density 1000 kg/m^3). Find (a) the flow speed in the pipe and (b) the volume flow rate if the pressure difference between venturi and unstricted pipe is 15 kPa.
60. A balloon's mass is 1.6 g when it's empty. It's inflated with helium (density 0.18 kg/m^3) to form a sphere 28 cm in diameter. How many 0.63-g paper clips can you hang from the balloon before it loses buoyancy?
61. Blood with density 1.06 g/cm^3 and 10-kPa gauge pressure flows through an artery at 31 cm/s. It encounters a plaque deposit where the pressure drops by 6%. What fraction of the artery's area is obstructed?
62. A venturi flowmeter in an oil pipeline has a radius half that of the pipe. Oil flows in the unstricted pipe at 1.9 m/s. If the pressure difference between unstricted flow and venturi is 16 kPa, what's the oil's density?
63. Homes in rural areas of the developed world generally get their water from wells. Two types of pumps are used to move water from the well to the house. For shallow wells, a pump mounted inside the home produces a partial vacuum that results in air pressure pushing water out of the well. Deeper wells, on the other hand, require submerged pumps, because there's a limit to

how high air pressure can lift the well water. Suppose a given shallow-well pump can produce a partial vacuum whose pressure is 33.3% of standard atmospheric pressure. What's the maximum well depth at which this pump will function?

64. In 2012, film producer James Cameron (*Terminator*, *Titanic*, *Avatar*) rode his submersible *Deepsea Challenger* to the bottom of the 11-km-deep Marianas Trench, the deepest spot in Earth's oceans. Cameron could barely fit into *Deepsea Challenger*'s crew compartment, a steel sphere with inside diameter 109 cm and walls 6.4 cm thick. Find the total pressure force exerted on the sphere at the bottom of the trench. (The total force is the sum of all pressure forces without regard to direction; it's not the same as the buoyancy force, which is the *net* pressure force—a vectorial sum.)
65. A probe descending through Mars' atmosphere records pressure as a function of altitude; the data are in the table below. Plot the natural logarithm of the pressure versus altitude and fit a line to your plotted points. Mars' atmospheric pressure is governed by the same equation that describes Earth's; see Problem 72. Use your fitted line, in connection with that equation, to determine (a) Mars' surface pressure and (b) the scale height h_0 .

Altitude (km)	10	20	30	40	50	60
Pressure (Pa)	242	98.7	37.6	16.2	7.21	2.38

66. Water emerges from a faucet of diameter d_0 in steady, near-vertical flow with speed v_0 . Show that the diameter of the falling water column is given by $d = d_0[v_0^2/(v_0^2 + 2gh)]^{1/4}$, where h is the distance below the faucet (Fig. 15.27).

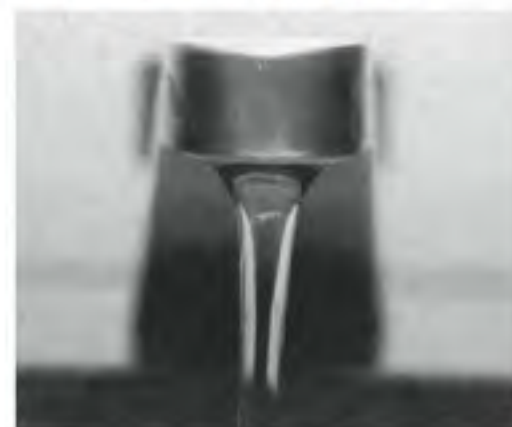


FIGURE 15.27 Problem 66

67. Assuming normal atmospheric pressure, how massive an object can a 4.0-cm-diameter suction cup support on a vertical wall if the coefficient of friction between cup and wall is 0.68?
68. Figure 15.28 shows a simplified diagram of a Pitot tube, used for measuring aircraft speeds. The tube is mounted on the aircraft with opening A at right angles to the flow and opening B pointing into the flow. The gauge prevents airflow through the tube. Use Bernoulli's equation to show that the plane's speed relative to the air is $v = \sqrt{2 \Delta p / \rho}$, where Δp is the pressure difference between the tubes and ρ is the density of air. (Hint: The flow must be stopped at B, but continues past A with its normal speed.)

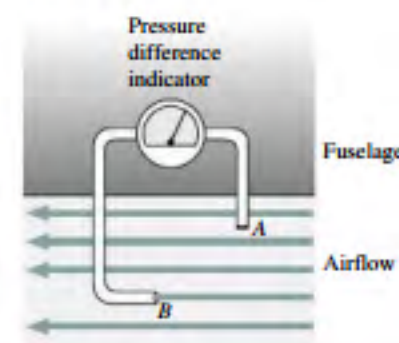


FIGURE 15.28 Problem 68

69. At a hearing on a proposed wind farm, a wind-energy advocate says an installation of 900 turbines, with blade diameter 110 m, could displace a 1-GW nuclear power plant. You're asked if that's really possible. How do you answer, given an average wind speed of 10 m/s and a turbine power output that averages 30% of the theoretical maximum?

70. **CH** A pencil is weighted so it floats vertically with length L submerged. It's pushed vertically downward without being totally submerged, then released. Show that it undergoes simple harmonic motion with period $T = 2\pi\sqrt{L/g}$.

71. **CH** A can of height h and cross-sectional area A_0 is initially full of water. A small hole of area $A_1 \ll A_0$ is cut in the bottom of the can. Find an expression for the time it takes all the water to drain from the can. (*Hint:* Call the water depth y , use the continuity equation, and integrate.)

72. **CH** In the approximation of constant atmospheric temperature, density and pressure in Earth's atmosphere are related by $p = p_0 e^{-h/h_0}$, where $h_0 = 8.2$ km is a constant called the *scale height* and g is the gravitational acceleration. (a) Integrate Equation 15.2 for this case to show that atmospheric pressure as a function of height h above the surface is given by $p = p_0 e^{-h/h_0}$, where p_0 is the surface pressure. (b) At what height will the pressure have dropped to half its surface value?

73. **CH** (a) Use the result of Problem 72 to express Earth's atmospheric density as a function of height. (b) Use your result from (a) to find the height below which half of Earth's atmospheric mass lies (this will require integration).

74. **CH** A circular pan of liquid with density ρ is centered on a horizontal turntable rotating with angular speed ω , as shown in Fig. 15.29. Atmospheric pressure is p_a . Find expressions for (a) the pressure at the bottom of the pan and (b) the height of the liquid surface, both as functions of the distance r from the axis, given that the height at the center is h_0 .

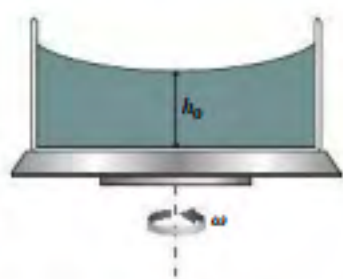


FIGURE 15.29 Problem 74

75. Find the torque that the water exerts about the bottom edge of the dam in Problem 44.
76. **CH** One vertical wall of a swimming pool is a regular trapezoid, with its bottom 15 m long and its top 22 m long. The pool is 3.3 m deep, and it's full to the brim with water. Find the pressure force the water exerts on this side of the pool.
77. You're a private investigator assisting a fine food manufacturer in tracking down counterfeit deluxe salad dressing. The genuine dressing is, by volume, one part traditional Reggio Emilia balsamic vinegar (density 1.20 g/cm^3) to three parts olive oil (density 0.92 g/cm^3). The counterfeit dressing uses ordinary balsamic vinegar (density 1.06 g/cm^3). You measure the density of a dressing sample and find it to be 0.99 g/cm^3 . Has the dressing been altered?
78. A plumber comes to your ancient apartment building where you have a part-time job as caretaker. He's checking the hot-water heating system, and notes that the water pressure in the basement is 18 psi. He asks, "How high is the building?" "Three stories, each about 11 feet," you reply. "OK, about 33 feet," he says, pausing to do some calculations in his head. "The pressure is fine," he declares. On what basis did he come to that conclusion?

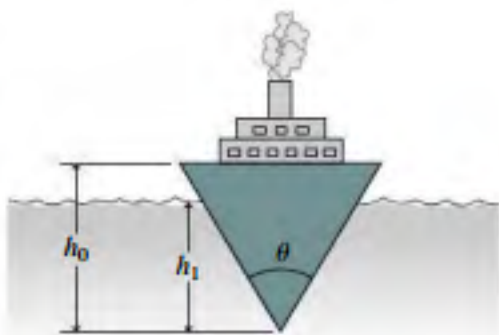


FIGURE 15.30 Problem 79

79. Your class in naval architecture is working on the design for a ship with a V-shaped cross section, as shown in Fig. 15.30. The ship

has total length L and keel-to-deck height h_0 . When empty, the distance from waterline to keel is h_1 . You're asked for the maximum load the ship can carry below deck if water is not to come over the deck. Answer in terms of h_0 , h_1 , L , θ , and the water density ρ .

Passage Problems

Arterial stenosis is a constriction of an artery, often due to plaque buildup on the artery's inner walls. Serious medical conditions can result, depending on the affected artery. Stenosis of the carotid arteries that supply blood to the brain is a leading cause of stroke, while stenosis of the renal arteries can lead to kidney failure. Pulmonary artery stenosis results from birth defects, and can result in insufficient oxygen supply. Because the heart has to work harder to get blood through a constricted artery, stenosis can contribute to high blood pressure.

In answering the questions below, assume steady flow (which is true in arteries only on short timescales).

80. How does the volume flow rate of blood at a stenosis compare with the rate in the surrounding artery?
- lower
 - the same
 - higher
81. How does the blood flow speed at a stenosis compare with the speed in the surrounding artery?
- lower
 - the same
 - higher
82. Which of the following medical problems is more likely to occur?
- An artery might collapse because of lower blood pressure at the stenosis.
 - An artery might burst because of higher blood pressure at the stenosis.
 - Neither; pressure at the stenosis is the same as in the surrounding artery.
83. If the artery has circular cross section even at the stenosis, but the diameter at the stenosis is half that in the surrounding artery, the blood flow speed in the stenosis will be
- one-fourth that in the surrounding artery.
 - one-half that in the surrounding artery.
 - the same as in the surrounding artery.
 - $\sqrt{2}$ times that in the surrounding artery.
 - four times that in the surrounding artery.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Because the density of ice is only slightly less than that of water.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

15.1 (c)

15.2 (c) $\vec{F}$ moves the small piston a lot farther than the upward pressure force moves the large piston; the products of force and displacement are the same for both pistons, so the work done is the same.

15.3 (a)

15.4 (a) over the top where the streamlines are closer together

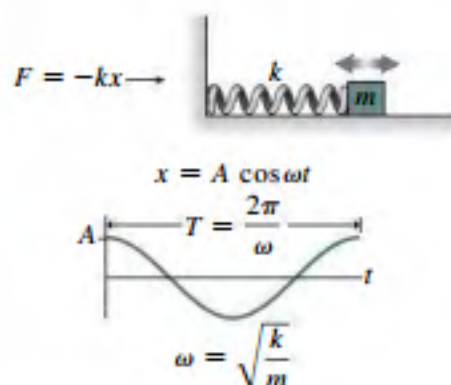
15.5 $h_1 > h_4 > h_2 > h_3$ reflecting higher pressure with lower flow speed

Summary

Part Two has extended Newtonian mechanics to systems that undergo oscillatory motion and wave motion or that involve the motion of

Oscillatory motion describes the back-and-forth motion of a system disturbed from a stable equilibrium.

When the force or torque tending to restore equilibrium is directly proportional to the displacement, the result is simple harmonic motion.



Oscillations, Waves, and Fluids

fluids. Behind these more complex motions are the fundamental concepts of force, mass, and energy and their roles in characterizing motion.

A **wave** is a propagating disturbance that carries energy but not matter.

Simple harmonic waves are sinusoidal:

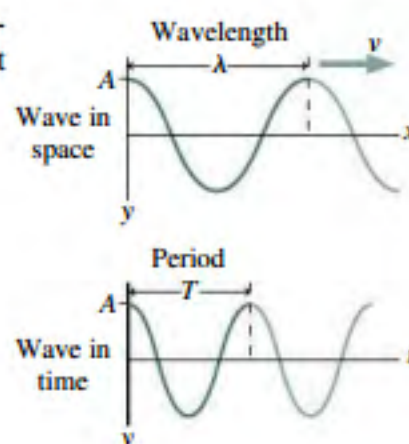
$$y(x, t) = A \cos(kx - \omega t)$$

Angular frequency: $\omega = 2\pi f$

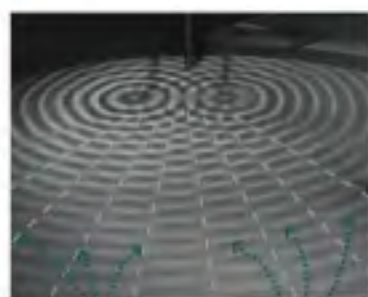
Wave number: $k = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}$

Wave period: $T = \frac{1}{f}$

Wave speed: $v = \frac{\omega}{k} = \frac{\lambda}{T} = f\lambda$

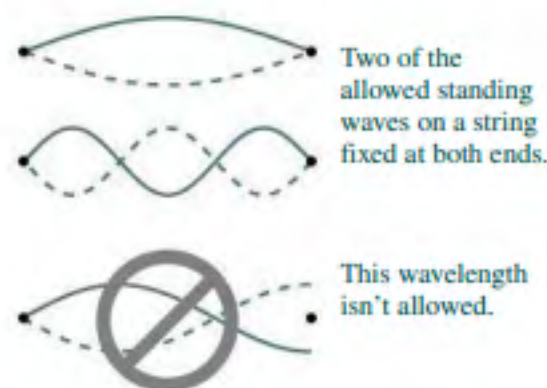


When waves overlap, the result is **interference**, which is constructive when the waves reinforce and destructive when they tend to cancel.



Nodal lines: destructive interference
Large amplitude: constructive interference

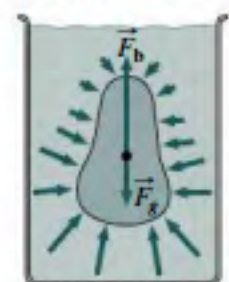
Standing waves occur when the medium has limited extent. Only certain wavelengths and frequencies are allowed, depending on the medium's length:



Two of the allowed standing waves on a string fixed at both ends.

This wavelength isn't allowed.

Fluids in **hydrostatic equilibrium** exhibit a depth-dependent pressure that results in an upward buoyancy force $\vec{F}_b$.



Archimedes' principle states that the buoyancy force is equal to the weight of the displaced fluid.

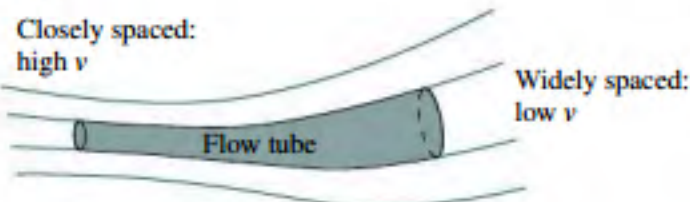
Moving fluids obey conservation of mass and, in the absence of fluid friction (viscosity), they also conserve energy.

In **fluid dynamics**, the continuity equation and Bernoulli's equation express these conservation laws. Both equations hold along a flow tube:

Continuity: $\rho v A = \text{constant}$

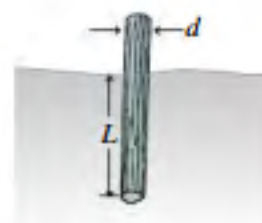
Bernoulli:

$$p + \frac{1}{2}\rho v^2 + \rho g y = \text{constant}$$



Part Two Challenge Problem

A cylindrical log of total mass M and uniform diameter d has an uneven mass distribution that causes it to float in a vertical position, as shown in the figure. (a) Find an expression for the length L of the submerged portion of the log when it's floating in equilibrium, in terms of M , d , and the water density ρ . (b) If the log is displaced vertically from its equilibrium position and released, it will undergo simple harmonic motion. Find an expression for the period of this motion, neglecting viscosity and other frictional effects.



Thermodynamics



This huge steam turbine converts the energy of high-pressure steam to mechanical energy and then, via the generator at the right end of the system, to electricity. The inset shows the turbine blades that spin when struck by high-pressure steam. Systems like this one produce nearly all the world's electrical energy, and their operation and efficiency are governed by the laws of thermodynamics.

OVERVIEW

Humanity consumes energy at the prodigious rate of some 2×10^{13} watts. Nearly all that energy comes from the combustion of fossil fuels—a process governed by the laws of thermodynamics. Engines that extract mechanical energy from burning fuels propel our cars, trucks, and airplanes, and produce most of our electricity. Despite the efforts of the cleverest engineers, the laws of thermodynamics set fundamental limitations on our ability to convert thermal energy to mechanical energy. Many of the energy and environmental challenges humanity faces today are grounded in thermodynamics.

Many natural systems are also thermodynamic. Without the Sun's energy, radiated across a hundred

million miles of empty space, Earth would be a lifeless, frozen rock. Heat flowing throughout Earth, its oceans, and its atmosphere governs processes ranging from continental drift to ocean currents to weather and climate. Concern over human-induced climate change is rooted in thermodynamic properties of the atmosphere as they affect energy flows. On a grander scale, thermodynamic principles govern much of the energy that flows throughout the universe.

Thermodynamics—the study of heat and its connection to the all-important concept of energy—is the subject of the next four chapters.

Temperature and Heat

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The concept of energy (Chapters 6 and 7)
- The distinction between energy and power (Section 6.5)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 16.1 Define *heat*, *temperature*, and *thermodynamic equilibrium*, and convert between temperature scales.
- LO 16.2 Solve problems involving heat capacity and specific heat.
- LO 16.3 Describe the three main heat-transfer mechanisms.
- LO 16.4 Solve problems involving conductive heat transfer, including applications to building insulation.
- LO 16.5 Solve problems involving radiative heat transfer.
- LO 16.6 Evaluate temperatures for systems in thermal-energy balance, including applications in climate science.



How does this infrared photo reveal heat loss from the house? And how can you tell that the car was recently driven?

Your own body gives you a good sense of “hot” and “cold.” Questions about heat and temperature are ultimately about energy, and these concepts are crucial to understanding the energy flows that drive natural systems like Earth’s climate and technologies such as engines, power plants, and refrigerators.

Properties like mass and kinetic energy apply equally to microscopic atoms and molecules and to cars and planets. But other properties, including temperature and pressure, apply only to macroscopic systems. It makes no sense to talk about the temperature or pressure of a single air molecule. **Thermodynamics** is the branch of physics that deals with these macroscopic properties. Ultimately, the thermodynamic behavior of matter follows from the motions of its constituent particles in response to the laws of mechanics. **Statistical mechanics** relates the macroscopic description of matter to the underlying microscopic processes. Historically, thermodynamics developed before the atomic theory of matter was fully established. The subsequent explanation of thermodynamics through statistical mechanics—the mechanics of atoms and molecules—was a triumph for physics.

16.1 Heat, Temperature, and Thermodynamic Equilibrium

LO 16.1 Define *heat*, *temperature*, and *thermodynamic equilibrium*, and convert between temperature scales.

Take a bottle of soda from the refrigerator, and eventually it reaches room temperature. At that point the soda and the room are in **thermodynamic equilibrium**, a state in which their macroscopic properties are no longer

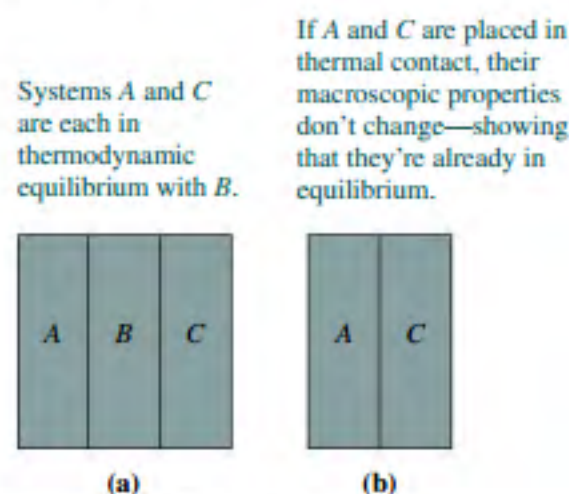


FIGURE 16.1 The zeroth law of thermodynamics.

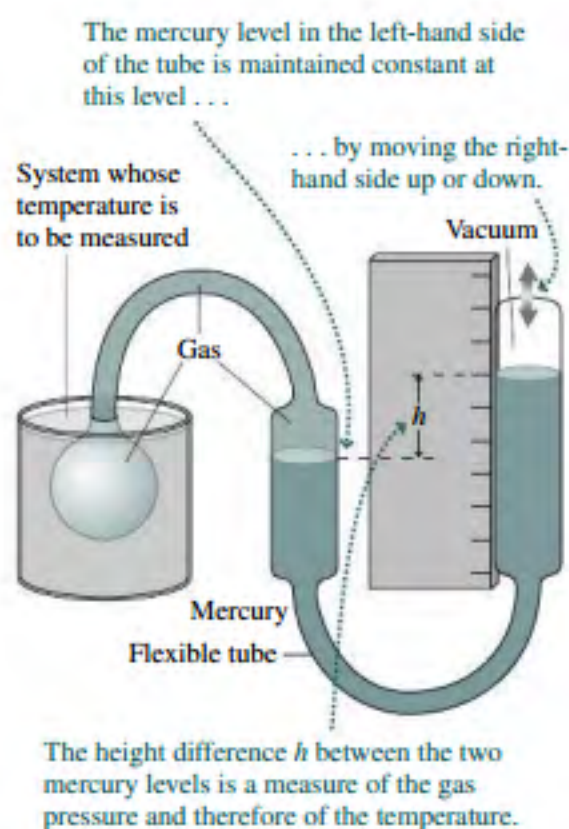


FIGURE 16.2 A constant-volume gas thermometer.

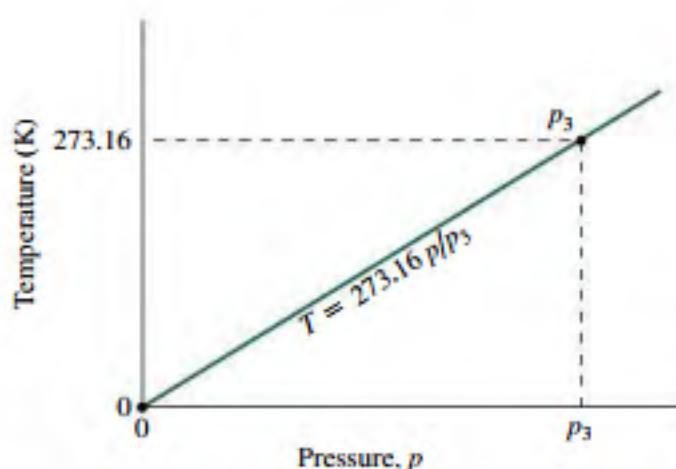


FIGURE 16.3 Two points establish a temperature scale. Before the 2019 SI revision, the kelvin scale was defined by the values of absolute zero and the unique temperature of water's triple point, whose pressure is designated p_3 and whose temperature was defined as 273.16 K.

changing. To check for thermodynamic equilibrium we can consider any macroscopic property—length, volume, pressure, electrical resistance, whatever. If any macroscopic property changes when two systems are placed together, then they weren't originally in thermodynamic equilibrium. When changes cease, the systems have reached equilibrium.

The phrase “placed together” here has a definite meaning, stated more precisely as “placed in thermal contact.” Two systems are in **thermal contact** if heating one of them results in macroscopic changes in the other. If that doesn't readily happen—for example, with a Styrofoam cup of coffee and its surroundings—then the systems are **thermally insulated**.

We can now begin to define temperature: **Two systems have the same temperature if they are in thermodynamic equilibrium.** Consider two systems *A* and *C* in thermal contact with a third system *B* but not with each other (Fig. 16.1*a*). Even though they're not in direct contact, *A* and *C* have the same temperature; that is, if you place *A* and *C* in thermal contact (Fig. 16.1*b*), no further changes occur. This fact—that two systems in equilibrium with a third system are therefore in equilibrium with each other—is so fundamental that it's called the **zeroth law of thermodynamics**.

A **thermometer** is a system with a conveniently observed macroscopic property that changes with temperature. It could be the length of a mercury column, gas pressure, electrical resistance, or the bending of a bimetal strip in a dial thermometer. Let the thermometer come to equilibrium with some system, and its temperature-dependent physical property provides a measure of temperature. The zeroth law assures consistency, in that two systems for which the thermometer gives the same reading must have the same temperature.

The Kelvin Scale and Gas Thermometers

One of the most versatile thermometers is the **constant-volume gas thermometer** (Fig. 16.2), in which the pressure of a gas provides an indication of temperature. Gas thermometers function over a wide range, including very low temperatures, and before 2019 they provided the definition of the Kelvin temperature scale used in the SI system. As Fig. 16.3 shows, the zero of the Kelvin scale was defined as the temperature at which the gas pressure would become zero. Since a gas can't have negative pressure, this point is **absolute zero**—a concept whose meaning we'll explore further in Chapter 19. A second fixed temperature was provided by the so-called **triple point** of water, the unique temperature at which solid, liquid, and gaseous water can coexist in equilibrium (more on this in Chapter 17). In the pre-2019 SI definition, water's triple point was defined to be exactly 273.16 kelvins (symbol K; *not* “degrees kelvin” or °K). Other temperatures then followed by linear extrapolation, as suggested in Fig. 16.3. Although the triple-point definition of the kelvin was, in principle, a reproducible operational standard, issues with purity and the isotopic composition of water made this standard less than ideal.

In the 2019 revision of the SI unit system, the kelvin was given a new explicit-constant definition, by setting an exact value for the so-called *Boltzmann constant*. This constant establishes a direct relation between temperature and molecular energy, which we'll explore further in Chapter 17. With this new definition, the triple point of water becomes a measured quantity very close to 273.16 K but, as with all measured quantities, involving some uncertainty.

Temperature Scales

Other temperature scales include Celsius (°C), Fahrenheit (°F), and Rankine (°R) (Fig. 16.4). One Celsius degree represents the same temperature difference as one kelvin, but the zero of the Celsius scale occurs at 273.15 K, so

$$T_C = T - 273.15 \quad (16.1)$$

where T is the temperature in kelvins. On the Celsius scale the melting point of ice at standard atmospheric pressure is exactly 0°C, while the boiling point is 100°C. The triple point of water occurs at 0.01°C, which accounts for the 273.15 difference between the kelvin and Celsius scales. Equation 16.1 shows that absolute zero occurs at −273.15°C.

The Fahrenheit and Rankine scales, from the British unit system, are used primarily in the United States. Fahrenheit has water melting at 32°F and boiling at 212°F, so the relation between Fahrenheit and Celsius temperatures is

$$T_F = \frac{9}{5}T_C + 32 \quad (16.2)$$

A Rankine degree is the same size as a Fahrenheit degree, but the zero of the Rankine scale is at absolute zero (Fig. 16.4). Engineers in the United States often use Rankine.

Heat and Temperature

A match will burn your finger, but it doesn't provide much heat. This example shows our intuitive sense of temperature and heat: Heat measures an *amount* of “something,” whereas temperature is the *intensity* of that “something.”

Scientists once considered heat to be a material fluid, called **caloric**, that flowed from hot bodies to colder ones. But in the late 1700s, the American-born scientist Benjamin Thompson observed essentially limitless amounts of heat being produced in the boring of cannon, and he concluded that heat could not be a conserved fluid. Instead, Thompson suggested, heat was associated with mechanical work done by the boring tool. In the next half-century, a series of experiments confirmed the association between heat and energy. These culminated in the work of the British physicist James Joule (1818–1889), who quantified the relation between heat and energy. In so doing, Joule brought thermal phenomena under the powerful conservation-of-energy principle. In recognition of this major synthesis in physics, the SI energy unit bears Joule's name. The 2019 redefinition of the kelvin formalized the relation between temperature and energy, since the Boltzmann constant, which now defines the kelvin, has the units of J/K.

We rarely make statements about the amount of “heat” in an object; we're more concerned that the temperature be appropriate. Rather, we think of heat as something that gets transferred from one object to another, causing a temperature change. The scientific definition reflects this sense of heat as energy in transit: **Heat is energy being transferred from one object to another because of a temperature difference alone.** Strictly speaking, **heat** refers only to energy in transit. Following heat transfer, we say that the **internal energy** or **thermal energy** of the object has increased, not that it contains more heat. This distinction reflects the fact that processes other than heating—such as transfer of mechanical or electrical energy—can also change an object's temperature. We briefly explored internal energy and its relation to mechanical energy transfers when we dealt with nonconservative forces in Chapter 7.

GOT IT?

16.1 Is there (a) no temperature, (b) one temperature, or (c) more than one temperature where the Celsius and Fahrenheit scales agree?

16.2 Heat Capacity and Specific Heat

LO 16.2 Solve problems involving heat capacity and specific heat.

Because temperature and energy are related, it's not surprising that the heat energy Q transferred to an object and the resulting temperature change ΔT are proportional: $Q = C \Delta T$, where the proportionality constant C is called the **heat capacity** of the object. Since heat is a measure of energy transfer, the units of heat capacity are J/K. The heat capacity C applies to a specific object and depends on its mass and on the substance from which it's made. We characterize different substances in terms of their **specific heat** c , or heat capacity per unit mass. The heat capacity of an object is then the product of its mass and specific heat, so we can write

$$Q = mc \Delta T \quad (16.3)$$

The SI units of specific heat are J/kg·K. Table 16.1 lists specific heats of common materials.

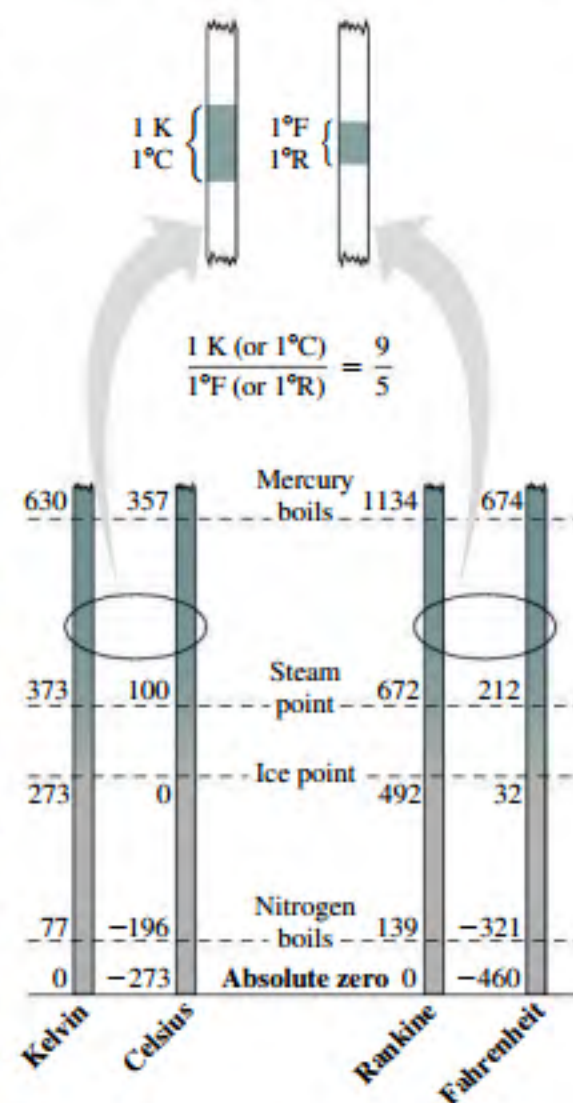


FIGURE 16.4 Relationships among four temperature scales.

Table 16.1 Specific Heats of Some Common Materials*

Substance	Specific Heat, c	
	SI Units: J/kg·K	cal/g·°C, kcal/kg·°C, or Btu/lb·°F
Aluminum	900	0.215
Concrete (varies with mix)	880	0.21
Copper	386	0.0923
Iron	447	0.107
Glass	753	0.18
Mercury	140	0.033
Steel	502	0.12
Stone (granite)	840	0.20
Water:		
Liquid	4184	1.00
Ice, -10°C	2050	0.49
Wood	1400	0.33

*Temperature range 0°C to 100°C except as noted.

Scientists first studied thermodynamic phenomena before they knew the relation between heat and energy, and they used other units for heat. The **calorie** (cal) was defined as the heat needed to raise the temperature of 1 g of water from 14.5°C to 15.5°C ; consequently, the specific heat of water is $1\text{ cal/g}\cdot^{\circ}\text{C}$. Several different definitions of the calorie exist today, based on different methods for establishing the heat–energy equivalence. In this book we use the so-called thermochemical calorie, defined as exactly 4.184 J. The “calorie” used in describing the energy content of foods is actually a kilocalorie. In the British system, still widely used in engineering in the United States, the unit of heat is the **British thermal unit** (Btu). One Btu is the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of 1 lb of water from 63°F to 64°F , and is equal to 1054 J.

EXAMPLE 16.1 Specific Heat: Waiting to Shower

Your whole family has showered before you, dropping the temperature in the water heater to 18°C . If the heater holds 150 kg of water, how much energy will it take to bring it up to 50°C ? If the energy is supplied by a 5.0-kW electric heating element, how long will that take?

INTERPRET Here we’re interested in the energy it takes to raise the water temperature, so we interpret this problem as involving specific heat. For the second part, we’re given the heater’s power output and asked for the time, so we need to recall (Chapter 6) that power is energy per time.

DEVELOP Equation 16.3, $Q = mc\Delta T$, relates energy and temperature change via specific heat, so our plan is to calculate the required energy from this equation. We’ll then use the relation between power and energy to find the time.

EVALUATE Equation 16.3 gives the energy:

$$Q = mc\Delta T = (150\text{ kg})(4184\text{ J/kg}\cdot\text{K})(50^{\circ}\text{C} - 18^{\circ}\text{C}) = 20\text{ MJ}$$

where we found the specific heat of water in Table 16.1. The heating element supplies energy at the rate of 5.0 kW or $5.0 \times 10^3\text{ J/s}$. At that rate the time needed to supply 20 MJ is

$$\Delta t = \frac{2.0 \times 10^7\text{ J}}{5.0 \times 10^3\text{ J/s}} = 4000\text{ s}$$

or a little over an hour.

ASSESS That’s a long time to wait, but it’s not an unreasonable answer!



IS THAT °C OR K? It doesn’t matter when we’re talking about temperature *differences*. That’s why we could mix units, multiplying the specific heat in J/kg·K by the difference of Celsius temperatures.

For common materials around room temperature, specific heat is nearly constant over a substantial temperature range. But at very low temperatures, specific heat varies significantly with temperature. When that’s the case, we write Equation 16.3 in terms of infinitesimal heat flows dQ and corresponding temperature changes dT : $dQ = mc(T)dT$. We can then integrate to relate the overall heat flow and temperature change over a wide temperature range. Problems 75 and 76 explore this situation.

Specific heat also depends on whether an object's pressure or its volume changes when it's heated. For solids and liquids, which don't expand much, that distinction isn't very important. But it makes a big difference whether a gas is confined or allowed to expand when heated. Consequently, gases have two different specific heats, depending on whether volume or pressure is constant. We'll deal with that issue in Chapter 18, where we explore the thermodynamic behavior of gases.

The Equilibrium Temperature

When objects at different temperatures are in thermal contact, heat flows from the hotter object to the cooler one until they reach thermodynamic equilibrium. If the objects are thermally insulated from their surroundings, then all the energy leaving the hotter object ends up in the cooler one. Mathematically, this statement reads

$$m_1 c_1 \Delta T_1 + m_2 c_2 \Delta T_2 = 0 \quad (16.4)$$

For the hotter object, ΔT is negative, so the two terms in Equation 16.4 have opposite signs. One term represents the outflow of heat from the hotter object, the other inflow into the cooler one. Example 16.2 explores the application of Equation 16.4 in finding the equilibrium temperature.

GOT IT?

16.2 A hot rock with mass 250 g is dropped into an equal mass of cool water. Which temperature changes more, that of (a) the rock or (b) the water? Explain.

EXAMPLE 16.2

Finding the Equilibrium Temperature: Cooling Down

Worked Example with Variation Problems

An aluminum frying pan of mass 1.5 kg is at 180°C when it's plunged into a sink containing 8.0 kg of water at 20°C. Assuming that none of the water boils and that no heat is lost to the surroundings, find the equilibrium temperature of the water and pan.

INTERPRET Here we have two objects, initially at different temperatures, that come to thermal equilibrium. So this is a problem about the equilibrium temperature, with the system of interest comprising the pan and the water.

DEVELOP Equation 16.4, $m_1 c_1 \Delta T_1 + m_2 c_2 \Delta T_2 = 0$, applies. However, we're asked for the common equilibrium temperature T , so we write the temperature differences ΔT in terms of T and the initial

temperatures T_p and T_w of pan and water. Equation 16.4 then becomes $m_p c_p (T - T_p) + m_w c_w (T - T_w) = 0$.

EVALUATE We now solve for the equilibrium temperature T :

$$T = \frac{m_p c_p T_p + m_w c_w T_w}{m_p c_p + m_w c_w}$$

Using the given values of m_p , T_p , m_w , and T_w , and taking c_p and c_w from Table 16.1, we get $T = 26^\circ\text{C}$.

ASSESS The water has much greater mass and higher specific heat, so it makes sense that its 6°C temperature change is a lot less than the 154°C drop in the pan's temperature.

16.3 Heat Transfer

LO 16.3 Describe the three main heat-transfer mechanisms.

LO 16.4 Solve problems involving conductive heat transfer, including applications to building insulation.

LO 16.5 Solve problems involving radiative heat transfer.

How is heat transferred? Engineers need to know so they can design heating and cooling systems. Scientists need to know so they can anticipate temperature changes, as in global warming. Here we'll consider three common heat-transfer mechanisms: conduction, convection, and radiation. In some situations, a single mechanism dominates; in other cases, we may need to take all three into account.

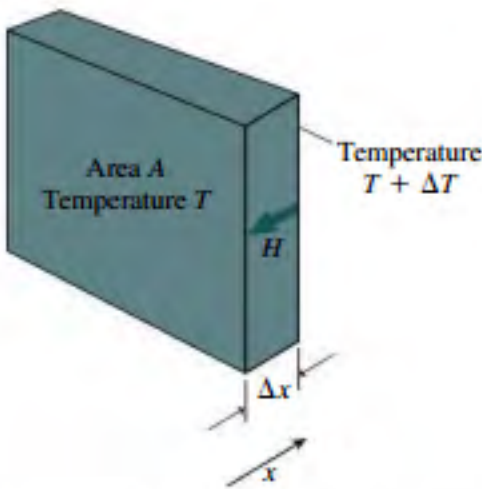


FIGURE 16.5 Heat flows from the hotter to the cooler face of the slab.

Conduction

Conduction is heat transfer through direct physical contact. It occurs as molecules in a hotter region collide with and transfer energy to those in an adjacent cooler region. **Thermal conductivity** (symbol k ; SI unit $\text{W/m}\cdot\text{K}$) characterizes this process. Common materials exhibit a broad range of thermal conductivities, from about $400\text{ W/m}\cdot\text{K}$ for copper—a good conductor—to $0.029\text{ W/m}\cdot\text{K}$ for Styrofoam, a good thermal insulator. Table 16.2 lists some thermal conductivities; they’re given in both SI and British units because the latter are widely used in heat-loss calculations for buildings. The k values in Table 16.2 reflect physical properties of the materials. Metals, for example, are good thermal conductors because they contain free electrons that move quickly. Insulators like fiberglass and Styrofoam owe their insulating properties to a physical structure that traps small volumes of air or other gas.

Figure 16.5 shows a slab of thickness Δx and area A . One side is at temperature T and the other at $T + \Delta T$. The temperature difference ΔT drives a conductive heat flow through the slab. That heat flow is proportional to the temperature difference, the slab area, and the thermal conductivity k . The thicker the slab, on the other hand, the more resistance to heat flow, so the flow depends inversely on thickness. Therefore,

H is heat flow by conduction through a slab of material, measured in watts.

k is the thermal conductivity of the material.

ΔT is the temperature difference between two faces of the slab.

$H = -kA \frac{\Delta T}{\Delta x}$ (conductive heat flow)

The minus sign shows that the heat flows from hotter to cooler.

A is the slab's area...

...and Δx is its thickness.

(16.5)

where $H = dQ/dt$ is the rate of heat flow in watts, and where the minus sign shows that the flow is opposite the direction of increasing temperature—that is, from hotter to cooler.

Equation 16.5 is strictly correct only when the temperature varies uniformly from one surface to the other. That’s the case when two surfaces at different temperatures have the same area. With other geometries—as in the insulation surrounding a cylindrical pipe—we need to write $\Delta T/\Delta x$ as the derivative dT/dx and integrate to find the heat flow. Problem 78 explores this situation.

Table 16.2 Thermal Conductivities*

Material	Thermal Conductivity, k	
	SI Units: $\text{W/m}\cdot\text{K}$	British Units: $\text{Btu}\cdot\text{in/h}\cdot\text{ft}^2\cdot^\circ\text{F}$
Air	0.026	0.18
Aluminum	237	1644
Concrete (varies with mix)	1	7
Copper	401	2780
Fiberglass	0.042	0.29
Glass	0.7–0.9	5–6
Goose down	0.043	0.30
Helium	0.14	0.97
Iron	80.4	558
Steel	46	319
Styrofoam	0.029	0.20
Water	0.61	4.2
Wood (pine)	0.11	0.78

*Temperature range 0°C to 100°C .

EXAMPLE 16.3 Conduction: Warming a Lake

A lake with a flat bottom and steep sides has surface area 1.5 km^2 and is 8.0 m deep. On a summer day, the surface water is at 30°C and the bottom water at 4.0°C . What's the rate of heat conduction through the lake?

INTERPRET This is a problem about heat conduction.

DEVELOP Our sketch, Fig. 16.6, shows that we can treat the lake like the slab shown in Fig. 16.5, provided we neglect heat flow out the sides. Then Equation 16.5, $H = -kA(\Delta T/\Delta x)$, will give the heat-flow rate.

EVALUATE Substituting numerical values, including water's thermal conductivity from Table 16.2, we get

$$\begin{aligned} H &= -kA \frac{\Delta T}{\Delta x} \\ &= -(0.61 \text{ W/m} \cdot \text{K})(1.5 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^2) \frac{30^\circ\text{C} - 4.0^\circ\text{C}}{8.0 \text{ m}} = -3.0 \text{ MW} \end{aligned}$$

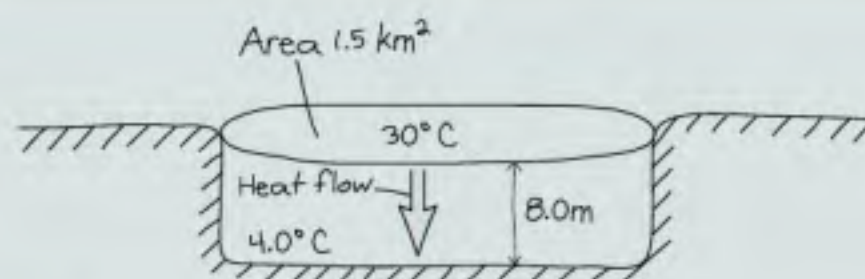


FIGURE 16.6 Our sketch for Example 16.3.

ASSESS This is a significant energy flow, but with direct sunlight averaging about 1 kW on every square meter, the lake's 1.5-km^2 surface area absorbs plenty of solar energy, and that's what maintains the temperature difference that drives the conductive heat flow. Figure 16.5 shows x increasing in the direction of increasing temperature, so the negative sign in our answer indicates that the flow is downward.

Often heat flows through several different materials. A building wall, for example, may contain wood, drywall, and fiberglass insulation. Figure 16.7 shows such a composite structure, with temperature T_1 on one side and T_3 on the other. The heat-flow rate H must be the same through both slabs so energy doesn't accumulate at the interface between the two. Then Equation 16.5 gives

$$H = -k_1 A \frac{T_2 - T_1}{\Delta x_1} = -k_2 A \frac{T_3 - T_2}{\Delta x_2}$$

where k_1 and k_2 are the thermal conductivities of the two materials, and T_2 is the temperature at the interface. We can express the heat-flow rate in terms of the surface temperatures T_1 and T_3 alone if we define the **thermal resistance** R of each slab:

$$R = \frac{\Delta x}{kA} \quad (16.6)$$

The SI units of R are K/W . Unlike the thermal conductivity k , which is a property of a material, R is a property of a particular piece of material, reflecting both its conductivity and its geometry. In terms of thermal resistance, our heat-flow equation becomes

$$H = -\frac{T_2 - T_1}{R_1} = -\frac{T_3 - T_2}{R_2}$$

so $R_1 H = T_1 - T_2$ and $R_2 H = T_2 - T_3$. Adding these two equations gives

$$(R_1 + R_2)H = T_1 - T_2 + T_2 - T_3 = T_1 - T_3$$

or

$$H = \frac{T_1 - T_3}{R_1 + R_2} \quad (16.7)$$

Equation 16.7 shows that the composite slab acts like a single slab whose thermal resistance is the sum of the resistances of the two slabs that compose it. We could easily extend this treatment to show that the thermal resistances of three or more slabs add when the slabs are arranged so the same heat flows through all of them.

If H weren't the same through both slabs, energy would accumulate at the interface.

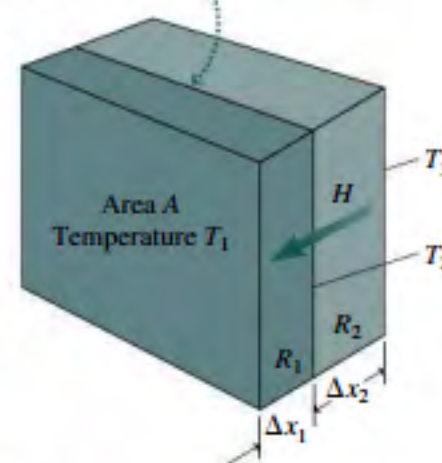


FIGURE 16.7 A composite slab.

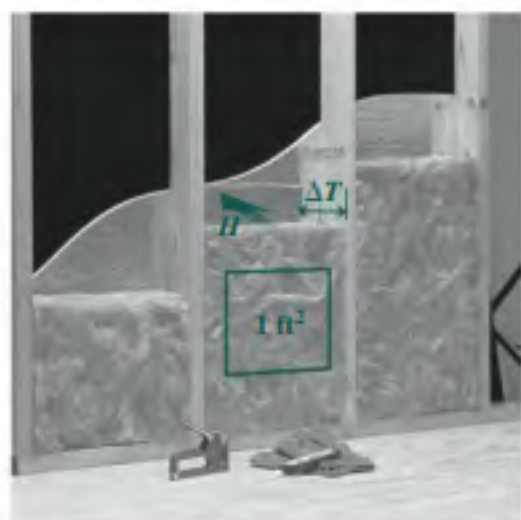
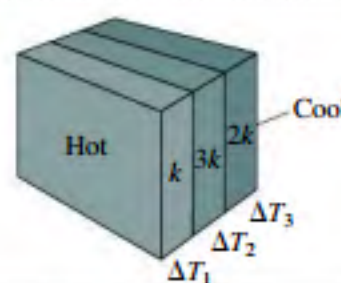


FIGURE 16.8 Each square foot of this $\mathcal{R}$ -19 fiberglass insulation loses $\frac{1}{19}$ Btu per hour for every $^{\circ}\text{F}$ of temperature difference ΔT .

GOT IT?

16.3 The figure shows three slabs with the same thickness but different thermal conductivities: k , $3k$, and $2k$; the left side is hotter, as shown. Rank in order, from smallest to largest, the three temperature differences ΔT .



Insulating properties of building materials are described by the $\mathcal{R}$ -factor, which is the thermal resistance for a slab of unit area:

$$\mathcal{R} = RA = \frac{\Delta x}{k} \quad (16.8)$$

The SI units of $\mathcal{R}$ are $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}/\text{W}$, and that's how you'll find it listed if you buy insulation in Europe or other SI-based regions. In the United States, $\mathcal{R}$ is in $\text{ft}^2 \cdot ^{\circ}\text{F} \cdot \text{h}/\text{Btu}$, although the units are almost never stated. This means that $\mathcal{R}$ -19 fiberglass insulation loses $\frac{1}{19}$ Btu per hour for each square foot of insulation for each degree Fahrenheit temperature across the insulation (Fig. 16.8). The inverse of the $\mathcal{R}$ -factor is the U value, often used in characterizing heat loss through windows.

EXAMPLE 16.4 Calculating Heat Loss: The Cost of Oil

Figure 16.9 shows a house whose walls consist of drywall ($\mathcal{R} = 0.45$), $\mathcal{R}$ -11 fiberglass insulation, plywood ($\mathcal{R} = 0.65$), and cedar shingles ($\mathcal{R} = 0.55$). The roof has the same construction except it uses $\mathcal{R}$ -30 fiberglass insulation. The average outdoor temperature in winter is 20°F , and the house is maintained at 70°F . The house's oil furnace produces 100,000 Btu for every gallon of oil, and oil costs \$2.87 per gallon. How much does it cost to heat the house for a month?

INTERPRET Although the problem asks for the monthly cost of oil, this isn't economics! We interpret this as a problem about heat loss and identify the walls and roof as systems for which we need to know the heat flow. This is a rare case of a problem stated in English units.

DEVELOP We're given the drawing in Fig. 16.9. We have the $\mathcal{R}$ -factors; in English units, their inverses give the heat-loss rate on a square-foot basis. So our plan is to find the square footage of the walls and roof separately, calculate the total heat-loss rate, and then find the amount and cost of oil to compensate for a month's heat loss.

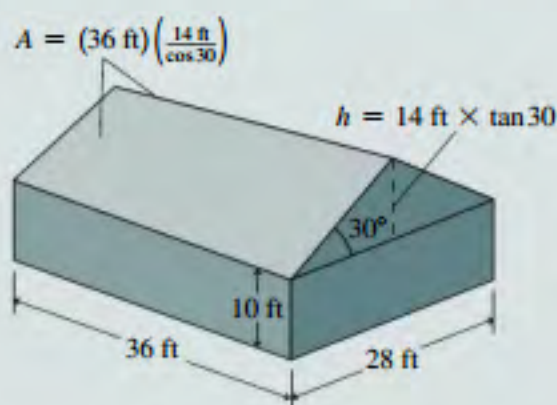


FIGURE 16.9 House for Example 16.4.

EVALUATE The $\mathcal{R}$ -factors for the wall materials sum to give $\mathcal{R}_{\text{wall}} = 12.65$; similarly, $\mathcal{R}_{\text{roof}} = 31.65$. The perimeter of the house measures $2 \times 28 \text{ ft} + 2 \times 36 \text{ ft} = 128 \text{ ft}$, so the 10-ft vertical walls have area 1280 ft^2 . There are also the triangular gables. Since there are two of them, each with area $\frac{1}{2}bh$, they give another bh or $(28 \text{ ft})(14 \text{ ft} \tan 30^{\circ}) = 226 \text{ ft}^2$, so $A_{\text{wall}} = 1506 \text{ ft}^2$. These $\mathcal{R}$ -12.65 walls lose $1/12.65 \text{ Btu/h/ft}^2/^{\circ}\text{F}$. With 1506 ft^2 and a temperature difference of 50°F , the total heat-loss rate through the walls is

$$H_{\text{wall}} = \left(\frac{1}{12.65} \text{ Btu/h/ft}^2/^{\circ}\text{F} \right) (1506 \text{ ft}^2) (50^{\circ}\text{F}) = 5953 \text{ Btu/h}$$

The area of the pitched roof is larger than that of a flat roof by the factor $1/\cos 30^{\circ}$, so the heat-loss rate through the roof is

$$H_{\text{roof}} = \left(\frac{1}{31.65} \text{ Btu/h/ft}^2/^{\circ}\text{F} \right) \frac{(36 \text{ ft})(28 \text{ ft})}{\cos 30^{\circ}} (50^{\circ}\text{F}) = 1839 \text{ Btu/h}$$

The total heat-loss rate is then 7792 Btu/h . In a month, this results in a heat loss of $Q = (7792 \text{ Btu/h})(30 \text{ days/month})(24 \text{ h/day}) = 5.61 \text{ MBtu}$.

Now for the oil: With 10^5 Btu (0.1 MBtu) per gallon, we'll burn 56.1 gallons per month to produce that 5.61 MBtu . At \$2.87/gal, that will cost \$161.

ASSESS If you've paid for heat in a northern climate, you know that this figure is, if anything, low. That's because we neglected heat losses through windows, doors, and the floor, as well as cold-air infiltration. On the other hand, we also left out any solar energy gained through the windows on sunny days. Problem 71 provides a more realistic look at this house.

Convection

Convection is heat transfer by fluid motion. It occurs as heated fluid becomes less dense and therefore rises. Figure 16.10a shows two plates at different temperatures, with fluid between them. Fluid heated by the lower plate rises and transfers heat to the upper plate. The cooled fluid sinks, and the process repeats. The pattern of rising and sinking fluid often acquires a striking regularity, as shown in Fig. 16.10b.

Convection is important in many technological and natural environments. When you heat water on a stove, convection carries heat through the water. Houses usually rely on convection from heat sources near floor level to circulate warm air throughout a room. Insulating materials trap air and thereby inhibit convection that would otherwise cause excessive heat loss. Convection associated with solar heating of Earth's surface drives the vast air movements that establish our overall climate. Violent convection, as in thunderstorms, is associated with localized temperature differences. On a much longer time scale, convection in Earth's mantle drives continental drift. Convection plays a crucial role in many astrophysical processes, including the generation of magnetic fields in stars and planets.

As with conduction, the convective heat-loss rate often is approximately proportional to the temperature difference. But the calculation of convective heat loss is complicated because of the associated fluid motion. The study of convection processes is an important research area in many fields of contemporary science and engineering.

Radiation

Turn an electric stove burner to “high” and it glows brightly; turn it to “low” and you can still sense its heat although it doesn’t glow visibly. Either way, the burner loses energy by emitting electromagnetic waves, or **radiation**. The radiated power P increases rapidly with temperature, as described by the **Stefan–Boltzmann law**:

$$P = e\sigma AT^4 \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{Stefan–Boltzmann law;} \\ \text{radiated power} \end{array} \right) \quad (16.9)$$

P is the power, in watts, radiated by a surface.
 σ is a constant with SI value $5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W/m}^2 \cdot \text{K}^4$.
 e is emissivity; e ranges between 0 and 1, and describes how effective the surface is at radiating.
 A is the surface area...
 T is the surface temperature in kelvins.

where A is the area of the emitting surface, T the temperature in kelvins, and σ the **Stefan–Boltzmann constant**, approximately $5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W/m}^2 \cdot \text{K}^4$. The quantity e is the **emissivity**, a number from 0 to 1 that measures the material’s effectiveness in emitting radiation. For radiation of a given wavelength, a material is equally good at emitting and absorbing radiation. A perfect emitter has $e = 1$ and is also a perfect absorber. Such an object would appear black at room temperature and is therefore called a **blackbody**. A shiny object, in contrast, reflects most of the radiation that hits it and is therefore also a poor emitter. Wood stoves are often painted black to increase their emissivity; Thermos bottles, on the other hand, have a shiny coating to reduce radiation.

Because of the strong T^4 temperature dependence, radiation is generally the dominant heat-loss mechanism at high temperatures but is less important at low temperatures. Radiation also dominates for objects in vacuum, since there’s no material to carry conductive or convective heat flows; that makes Equation 16.9 crucial in understanding the climates of Earth and other planets.

Objects also absorb radiant energy from their surroundings, at a rate given by Equation 16.9 using the ambient temperature T_a , so the *net* radiated power becomes $P = e\sigma A(T^4 - T_a^4)$. For an object that’s much hotter than its surroundings, the second term is negligible. But for an object that’s only a little warmer, like a human body, it’s significant.

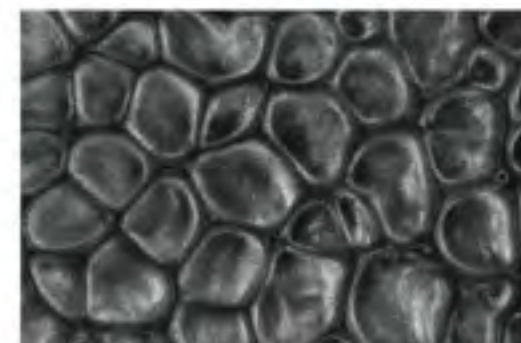
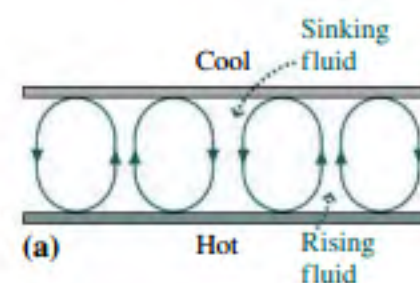


FIGURE 16.10 (a) Convection between two plates at different temperatures. (b) Top view of convection cells in a laboratory experiment. Fluid rises at the centers and sinks at the edges of the convection cells.

It's not just the amount of radiation that changes with temperature; as our stove burner example suggests, it's also the wavelength. Objects at room temperature, for example, emit mostly invisible infrared radiation, while very hot objects like the Sun emit more visible light. We'll take a quantitative look at this relation in Chapter 34.

GOT IT?

16.4 Name the dominant form of heat transfer from (1) a red-hot stove burner with nothing on it, (2) a burner in direct contact with a pan of water, and (3) the bottom to the top of the water in the pan once it's begun to boil.

EXAMPLE 16.5 Calculating Radiation: The Sun's Temperature

The Sun radiates energy at the rate $P = 3.83 \times 10^{26}$ W, and its radius is 6.96×10^8 m. Treating the Sun as a blackbody ($e = 1$), find its surface temperature.

INTERPRET This is a problem about the radiation from a hot object.

DEVELOP The Stefan–Boltzmann law, Equation 16.9, gives the radiated power in terms of the temperature, emissivity, and surface area: $P = e\sigma AT^4$. Our plan is to solve this equation for T . For the Sun, radiation comes from the entire spherical surface of area $4\pi R^2$, as our sketch shows (Fig. 16.11).

EVALUATE Using the Sun's spherical surface area and solving Equation 16.9 for T gives

$$T = \left(\frac{P}{4\pi R^2 \sigma} \right)^{1/4} = \left[\frac{3.83 \times 10^{26} \text{ W}}{4\pi (6.96 \times 10^8 \text{ m})^2 (5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W/m}^2 \cdot \text{K}^4)} \right]^{1/4} = 5770 \text{ K}$$

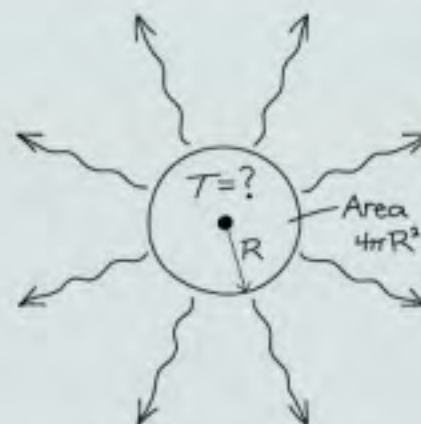


FIGURE 16.11 The Sun radiates from its spherical surface area $4\pi R^2$.

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: Our answer has the unit of temperature and agrees with observational measurements. Despite its bright glow, the Sun is essentially a blackbody, because it absorbs all radiation incident on it. But the Sun is so much hotter than its surroundings that we can neglect absorbed radiation in this calculation.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 16.1 Energy-Saving Windows

Why do double-pane windows reduce heat loss greatly compared with single-pane windows? Why is a window's $\mathcal{R}$ -factor higher if the spacing between panes is small? And why do the best windows have "low-E" coatings?

EVALUATE Table 16.2 gives glass's thermal conductivity as around $0.8 \text{ W/m}\cdot\text{K}$, while good insulators like air and Styrofoam have $k \sim 0.03 \text{ W/m}\cdot\text{K}$. That's why a layer of air between window panes greatly increases the window's $\mathcal{R}$ -factor. But if the pane spacing is too great, convection currents develop between the sheets of glass, transferring heat from the warmer to the cooler surface; that's why narrower pane spacing is better. Finally, warm glass loses energy by radiation, and a thin coating of material with low emissivity ("low-E") reduces radiant heat loss.

ASSESS High-quality windows include all three features described here, so they suppress all three kinds of heat loss we've discussed. The best windows also use an inert gas—usually argon—between panes to reduce heat loss further.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Compare the $\mathcal{R}$ -factor for a single-pane window made from 3.0-mm-thick glass with that of a double-pane window made from the same glass with a 5.0-mm air gap between panes.

EVALUATE Compute the $\mathcal{R}$ -factors for the glass and air space, and you'll get about $0.004 \text{ m}^2\cdot\text{K/W}$ for the single pane and, adding two layers of glass and the air space, $0.2 \text{ m}^2\cdot\text{K/W}$ for the double-pane window. That's a factor of 50 improvement! In English units our answers translate into $\mathcal{R}$ -factors of 0.02 and 1.1—although again they're lower than for actual windows because they neglect "dead air" layers and the other improvements discussed above. The best commercially available windows, in fact, achieve $\mathcal{R}$ -factors of 5 and higher, and some multilayer windows exceed $\mathcal{R}$ -10.

16.4 Thermal-Energy Balance

LO 16.6 Evaluate temperatures for systems in thermal-energy balance, including applications in climate science.

You keep your house at a comfortable temperature in winter by balancing heat loss with energy from your heating system (Fig. 16.12). This state of **thermal-energy balance** occurs throughout science and engineering. Understanding thermal-energy balance enables engineers to specify a building's heat sources and helps scientists predict Earth's future climate.

Engineered systems actively control the thermal-energy balance to achieve a desired temperature. But even without active control, systems with a fixed rate of energy input naturally tend toward energy balance. That's because all heat-loss mechanisms give increased loss with increasing temperature. If the rate of energy input to a system is greater than the loss rate, then the system gains energy and its temperature increases—and so, therefore, does the loss rate. Eventually the two come to balance at some fixed temperature. If the loss exceeds the gain, the system cools until again it's in balance. Problems involving thermal-energy balance are similar regardless of the energy-loss mechanism or whether the application is to a technological or a natural system.

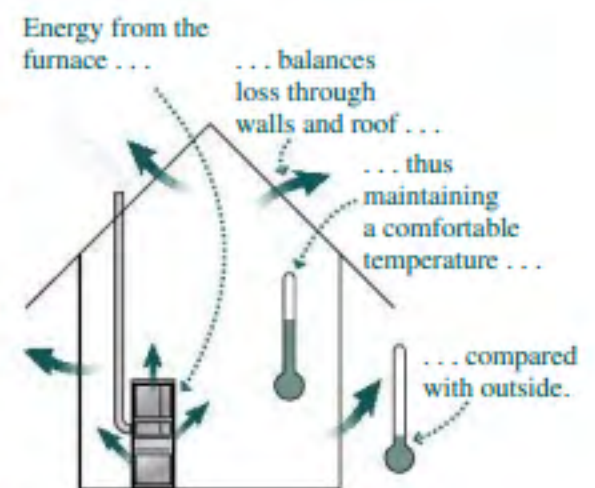


FIGURE 16.12 A house in thermal-energy balance.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 16.1 Thermal-Energy Balance

INTERPRET Interpret the problem to be sure it deals with heat gains and losses. Identify the system of interest, the source(s) of energy input to the system, and the significant heat-loss mechanism(s).

DEVELOP Determine which equation(s) govern the heat loss; these will necessarily involve the system's temperature. Your plan is then to equate the rate of energy loss with the rate of energy input.

EVALUATE Write an equation that expresses equality of energy loss and input. Then evaluate by solving for the quantity the problem asks for—often the system's temperature.

ASSESS If your answer is a temperature, does it seem reasonable? Is the temperature of a heated system higher than that of its surroundings?

EXAMPLE 16.6 Thermal-Energy Balance: Hot Water

A poorly insulated electric water heater loses heat by conduction at the rate of 120 W for each Celsius degree difference between the water and its surroundings. It's heated by a 2.5-kW electric heating element and is located in a basement kept at 15°C. What's the water temperature if the heating element operates continuously?

INTERPRET The concept here is energy balance, and we identify the system of interest as the water. Its energy input comes from the heating element at the rate of 2.5 kW. The heat loss is by conduction.

DEVELOP Figure 16.13 is a sketch suggesting energy balance in the heater. We're given the conductive heat loss of 120 W/°C, meaning that the total heat-loss rate is $H = (120 \text{ W/}^\circ\text{C})(\Delta T)$. We then equate the heat-loss rate to the energy-input rate: $(120 \text{ W/}^\circ\text{C})(\Delta T) = 2.5 \text{ kW}$.

EVALUATE Solving for ΔT gives

$$\Delta T = \frac{2.5 \text{ kW}}{120 \text{ W/}^\circ\text{C}} = 21^\circ\text{C}$$

With the basement at 15°C, the water temperature is then 36°C.

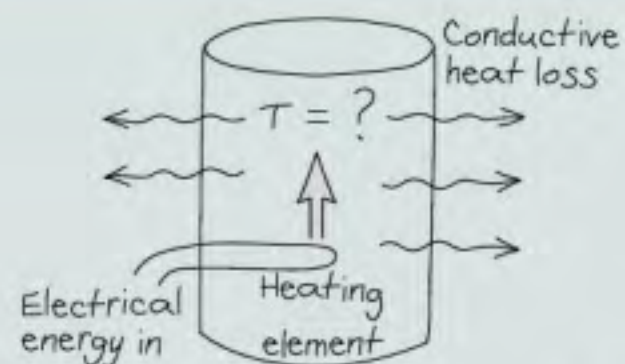


FIGURE 16.13 Balance between the heat supplied by the electric element and the conductive loss determines the water temperature.

ASSESS Is this answer reasonable? Not if you want a hot shower; our answer is 1°C below body temperature! But we're told the insulation is bad, so it's time for a new water heater!

EXAMPLE 16.7**Thermal-Energy Balance: A Solar Greenhouse***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A solar greenhouse has 300 ft² of opaque $\mathcal{R}$ -30 walls and 250 ft² of $\mathcal{R}$ -1.8 double-pane glass that admits solar energy at the average rate of 40 Btu/h/ft². Find the greenhouse temperature on a day when the outdoor temperature is 15°F.

INTERPRET Again the concept is energy balance, now with the greenhouse as the system of interest. We're given $\mathcal{R}$ -factors, suggesting that the energy loss is by conduction through walls and glazing. The energy input is sunlight.

DEVELOP As we saw in Example 16.4, the $\mathcal{R}$ -factor determines a heat-loss rate that is related directly to area and temperature difference and inversely to the $\mathcal{R}$ -factor. So we have

$$H_w = \frac{A_w \Delta T}{\mathcal{R}_w} = \left(\frac{300}{30} \right) \Delta T = (10 \text{ Btu/h/}^\circ\text{F}) \Delta T$$

for the heat loss through the walls and

$$H_g = \frac{A_g \Delta T}{\mathcal{R}_g} = \left(\frac{250}{1.8} \right) \Delta T = (139 \text{ Btu/h/}^\circ\text{F}) \Delta T$$

for the heat loss through the glass, giving a total heat loss $H = (149 \text{ Btu/h/}^\circ\text{F}) \Delta T$. Meanwhile, the energy input through the

entire 250 ft² of glass is $(40 \text{ Btu/h/ft}^2)(250 \text{ ft}^2) = 1.0 \times 10^4 \text{ Btu/h}$. Our plan is to equate energy input and loss and then solve for ΔT .

EVALUATE Equating loss and gain gives

$$(149 \text{ Btu/h/}^\circ\text{F}) \Delta T = 1.0 \times 10^4 \text{ Btu/h.}$$

We then solve for ΔT :

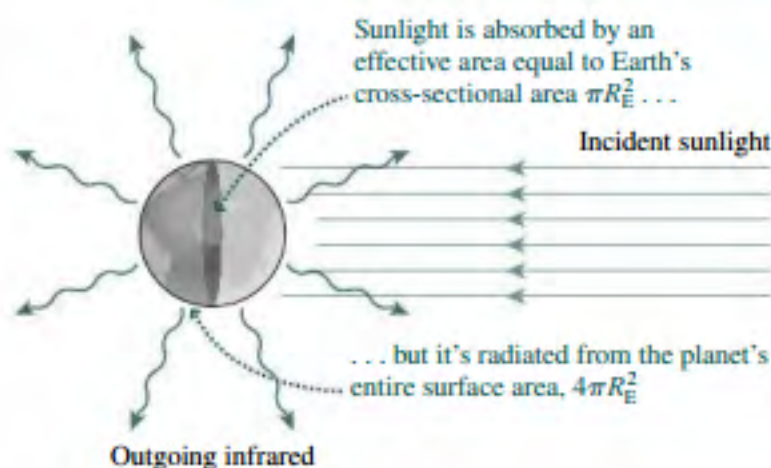
$$\Delta T = \frac{1.0 \times 10^4 \text{ Btu/h}}{149 \text{ Btu/h/}^\circ\text{F}} = 67^\circ\text{F}$$

So when it's 15°F outside, the greenhouse is at a tropical 82°F.

ASSESS This seems a reasonable greenhouse temperature. Our calculation assumes that solar input remains constant; in a real greenhouse the temperature would fluctuate as the Sun's angle changes and clouds pass over. We could minimize these fluctuations by giving the greenhouse a large heat capacity, perhaps by incorporating a massive concrete slab or concrete walls.

GOT IT?

16.5 A house's thermostat fails, leaving the furnace running continuously. As a result, will the temperature of the house (a) increase indefinitely, (b) eventually stabilize, or (c) drop below the thermostat setting? Explain.

APPLICATION**The Greenhouse Effect and Global Warming**

The Earth-atmosphere system absorbs energy from the Sun at an average rate of 960 W for each square meter of the planet's cross-sectional area, πR_E^2 , where R_E is Earth's radius (see the diagram). This quantity is designated S , so we write $S = 960 \text{ W/m}^2$. This value accounts for night and day; for clouds; and for the reflection of sunlight from ice, snow, deserts, and other highly reflective surfaces and especially from particulate matter in the atmosphere. Therefore, the rate at which the entire Earth-atmosphere system absorbs energy is $P_{\text{incoming}} = \pi R_E^2 S$. This incoming energy causes Earth to warm until it loses energy at the same rate. Since it's surrounded by the vacuum of space, Earth can only lose energy by radiation. Since Earth is much cooler than the Sun, that radiation is in the form of invisible infrared. Furthermore, as the diagram shows, Earth radiates from its entire surface area, $4\pi R_E^2$. Earth's

emissivity for infrared radiation is essentially 1, so Earth radiates energy at a rate given by the Stefan-Boltzmann law, Equation 16.9:

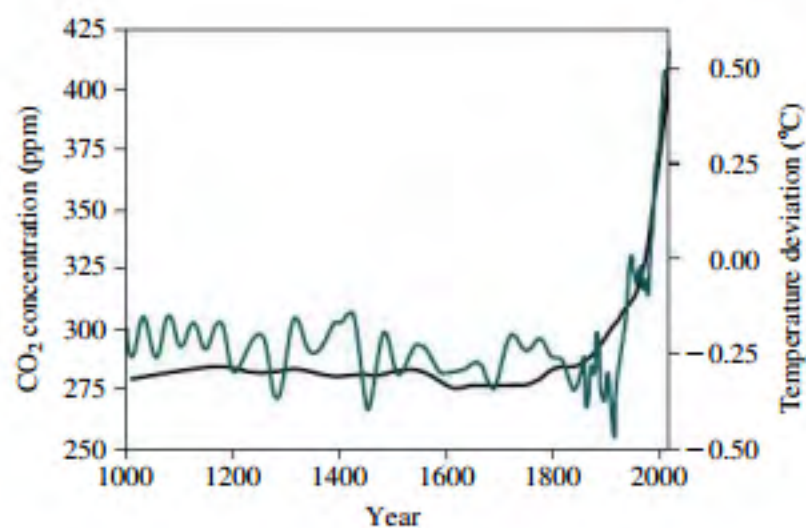
$$P_{\text{outgoing}} = \sigma 4\pi R_E^2 T^4$$

where T is Earth's average temperature. Equating this outgoing power to the rate at which solar energy arrives from the Sun gives a statement of energy balance:

$$\pi R_E^2 S = \sigma 4\pi R_E^2 T^4$$

Solving for the temperature then gives $T = 255 \text{ K} = -18^\circ\text{C}$ or 0°F . Is this reasonable? It's certainly in the right ballpark—not so hot as to boil the oceans or so cold as to freeze the atmosphere. But 0°F seems a bit cold for a global average temperature. And it is: Earth's average temperature is around 15°C or 59°F . Why the discrepancy?

The answer lies with Earth's atmosphere. The dominant atmospheric gases, nitrogen and oxygen, are largely transparent to both incoming sunlight and outgoing infrared. But others—the so-called **greenhouse gases**, especially water vapor and carbon dioxide—let sunlight pass through but impede outgoing infrared. As a result, Earth's surface temperature has to be higher to get the same total radiation to space. This is the **natural greenhouse effect**, and it explains the 33°C temperature difference between our simple calculation and Earth's actual surface temperature. Neighbor planets confirm this reasoning. Mars, with very little atmosphere, exhibits almost no greenhouse warming. Venus, whose atmosphere is 100 times denser than Earth's and largely CO_2 , has a "runaway" greenhouse effect that keeps its surface hotter than an oven. You can explore the climates of our neighbor planets in Problem 77.

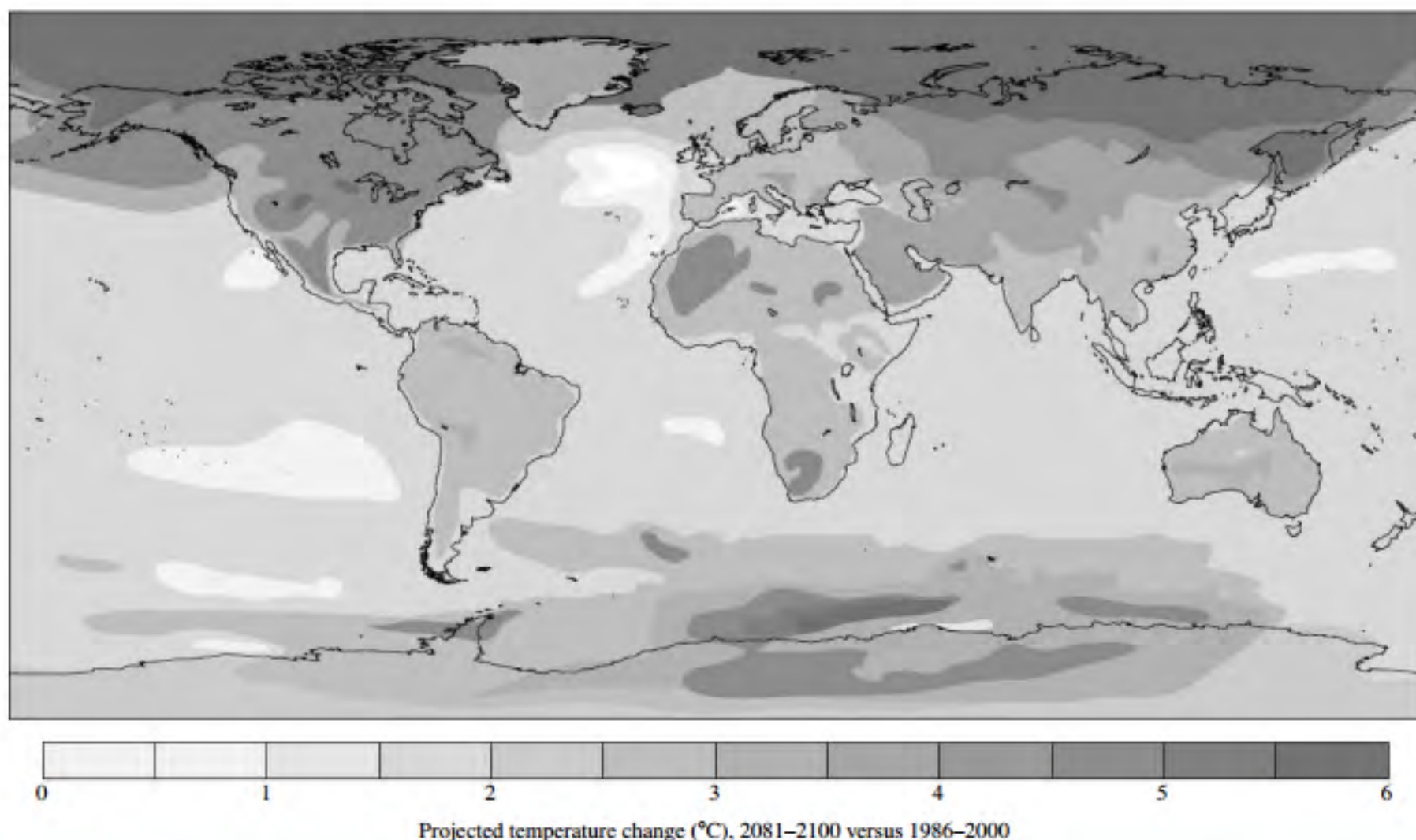


Atmospheric CO₂ concentration (black) and global temperature (color) from CE 1000–2018. Temperature is given as a deviation from the average for 1961–1990. Data through 1859 are reconstructed based on tree rings and other proxies; data from 1859 on are 10-year averages from thermometer records. The industrial era began around 1750.

As the graph shows, humans have increased atmospheric carbon dioxide more than 40% since the start of the industrial era, to a level—now over 410 parts per million—that the planet has not seen for millions of years. Combustion of fossil fuels is the dominant source of this CO₂, although

processes like deforestation and cement production also contribute. Other greenhouse gases, such as methane, also contribute to humankind's enhancement of the greenhouse effect. Basic physics then dictates that Earth's surface temperature should rise. How much and how fast depend on complex interactions among atmosphere, surface, oceans, and life, and on future greenhouse-gas emissions. Nevertheless, a consensus among climate scientists suggests that Earth has warmed by some 1°C since the mid-19th century, with most of this warming attributable to human activities—especially combustion of fossil fuels and the resulting CO₂ emissions (see the graph). Further warming in the range of 1.5°C–5°C is projected by the year 2100, with the low end requiring substantial curtailing of greenhouse-gas emissions and the high end corresponding to “business as usual.”

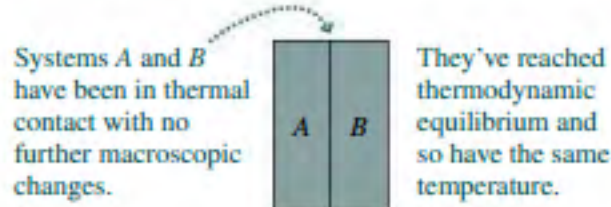
Although even a 5°C increase may seem modest, the *rate* of increase in all scenarios for the 21st century is far greater than most natural climate change. Furthermore, as the map shows, warming will not be distributed evenly over the globe but will be greatest in the arctic and over most land masses. One of many serious consequences of this rapid warming is a rise in sea level, which is already occurring substantially more rapidly than its average rate over the past 2000 years. During the last so-called interglacial warm period, some 120,000 years ago, sea level was between 5 and 10 m higher than it is today—enough to swamp Earth's coastal cities. The temperature at that time was likely only a little more than 2°C above the pre-industrial temperature of the 18th and 19th centuries. Considerations such as this have led the world's governments to adopt the goal of limiting the planet's industrial-era temperature rise to no more than 2°C. Given that we're about halfway there already, achieving this goal will require drastic changes in the way we produce energy.



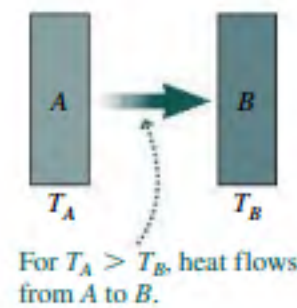
Chapter 16 Summary

Big Ideas

The big ideas here are **temperature** and **heat**. **Temperature** is a property common to systems in **thermodynamic equilibrium**. Temperature is quantified in SI units using the **Kelvin scale**, currently defined in terms of gas-based thermometers.



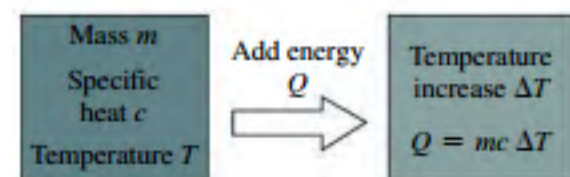
Heat is energy in transit as a result of a temperature difference.



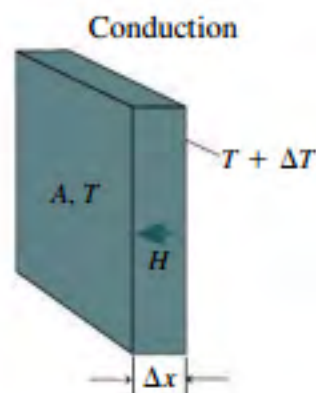
Key Concepts and Equations

Heat capacity and **specific heat** quantify the energy Q required to raise an object's temperature by ΔT :

$$Q = mc \Delta T$$

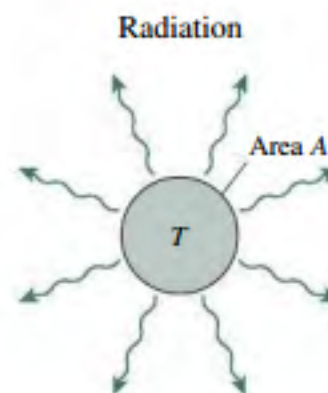
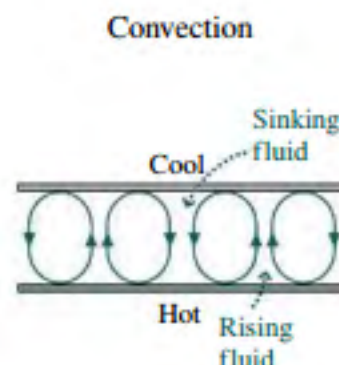


Three important heat-transfer mechanisms are:



$$H = -kA \frac{\Delta T}{\Delta x}$$

(conductive heat flow)

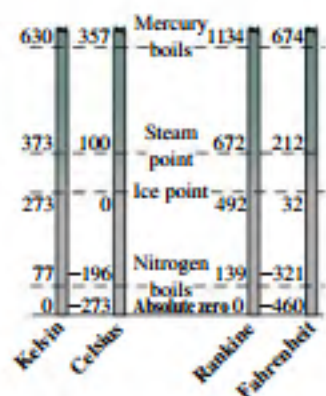


$$P = e\sigma AT^4$$

(Stefan-Boltzmann law; radiated power)

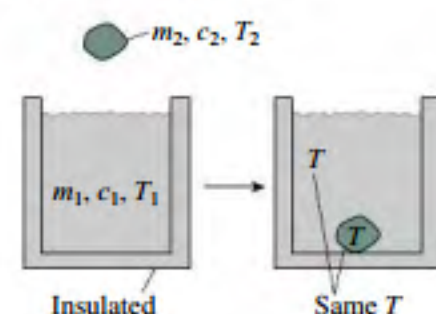
Applications

Temperature scales include Kelvin (K), Celsius ($^{\circ}\text{C}$), Fahrenheit ($^{\circ}\text{F}$), and Rankine ($^{\circ}\text{R}$).

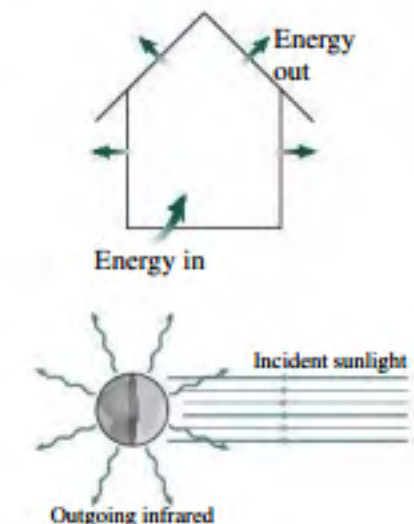


The Kelvin and Celsius scales are related by $T_C = T - 273.15$. The relation between Fahrenheit and Celsius scales is $T_F = \frac{9}{5}T_C + 32$.

Equilibrium temperature: Combining two systems at different temperatures results in a common equilibrium temperature given by $m_1c_1\Delta T_1 + m_2c_2\Delta T_2 = 0$.



Energy balance: A system experiencing both energy input and energy loss comes to energy balance at the temperature for which the energy-loss rate equals the rate of energy input.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>LO 16.1 Define <i>heat</i>, <i>temperature</i>, and <i>thermodynamic equilibrium</i>, and convert between temperature scales.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 16.1, 16.2, 16.3; Exercises 16.11, 16.12, 16.13, 16.14, 16.15, 16.16, 16.17; Problems 16.43, 16.44, 16.45</i></p> <p>LO 16.2 Solve problems involving heat capacity and specific heat.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 16.4, 16.5, 16.10; Exercises 16.18, 16.19, 16.20, 16.21, 16.22, 16.23; Problems 16.46, 16.47, 16.48, 16.49, 16.50, 16.51, 16.52, 16.53, 16.54, 16.55, 16.57, 16.58, 16.59, 16.60, 16.67, 16.68, 16.74, 16.75, 16.76</i></p> <p>LO 16.3 Describe the three main heat-transfer mechanisms.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 16.6, 16.7</i></p> | <p>LO 16.4 Solve problems involving conductive heat transfer, including applications to building insulation.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 16.8, 16.9; Exercises 16.24, 16.25, 16.26, 16.27, 16.28, 16.29; Problems 16.61, 16.62, 16.65, 16.66, 16.71, 16.78, 16.80</i></p> <p>LO 16.5 Solve problems involving radiative heat transfer.
 <i>Exercise 16.30; Problems 16.56, 16.65, 16.69, 16.70, 16.72, 16.73</i></p> <p>LO 16.6 Evaluate temperatures for systems in thermal-energy balance, including applications in climate science.
 <i>Exercises 16.31, 16.32, 16.33, 16.34; Problems 16.63, 16.64, 16.77, 16.79, 16.81, 16.82</i></p> |
|---|---|

For Thought and Discussion

- Does a thermometer measure its own temperature or the temperature of its surroundings? Explain.
- Compare the relative sizes of the kelvin, the degree Celsius, the degree Fahrenheit, and the degree Rankine.
- If you put a thermometer in direct sunlight, what do you measure: the air temperature, the temperature of the Sun, or some other temperature?
- When wooden and metal chairs are kept in the garden overnight, the metal ones always seem colder. Why?
- Deserts are always very hot during the day and get very cold at night. Why?
- Should a material used as a heating element have low or high thermal conductivity? Why?
- What is the difference between heat energy and internal energy?
- Glass and fiberglass are made from the same material, yet have dramatically different thermal conductivities. Why?
- To keep your hands warm while skiing, you should wear mittens instead of gloves. Why?
- Global warming at Earth's surface is generally producing greater temperature rises over land than over the oceans. Why might this be?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 16.1 Heat, Temperature, and Thermodynamic Equilibrium

- A 2017 Stanford University study suggests there's a 50% chance **ENV** that the global temperature increase by the year 2100 will lie in the range 3.0°C to 4.2°C . Translate this range into Fahrenheit.
- An American meteorologist predicts an overnight low of 14°F . How would a Mexican meteorologist express that prediction?
- Normal room temperature is 75°F . What's this in Celsius?
- The outdoor temperature rises by 27°F . What's that rise in Celsius?

- At what temperature do the Fahrenheit and Celsius scales coincide?
- The normal boiling point of nitrogen is 77.3 K . Express this in Celsius and Fahrenheit.
- A sick child's temperature reads 39.5 on a Celsius thermometer. What's the temperature in Fahrenheit?

Section 16.2 Heat Capacity and Specific Heat

- Find the heat capacity of a 55-tonne concrete slab.
- Find the energy needed to raise the temperature of a 2.2-kg chunk of aluminum by 18°C .
- What's the specific heat of a material if it takes 7.5 kJ to increase the temperature of a 1-kg sample by 3.0°C ?
- The average human diet contains about 2000 kcal per day. If all **BIO** this food energy is released rather than stored as fat, what's the approximate average power output of the human body?
- Walking at 3 km/h requires an energy expenditure rate of about **BIO** 200 W. How far would you have to walk to "burn off" a 390-kcal slice of chocolate cake?
- (a) How much heat does it take to bring a 3.4-kg iron skillet from 20°C to 130°C ? (b) If the heat is supplied by a stove burner at the rate of 2.0 kW, how long will it take to heat the pan?

Section 16.3 Heat Transfer

- Building heat loss in the United States is usually expressed in Btu/h. What's 1 Btu/h in SI units?
- Find the magnitude of the heat-loss rate per square meter through slabs of (a) wood and (b) Styrofoam, each 5.0 cm thick, if one surface is at 20°C and the other is at -5°C .
- You're a builder who's advising a homeowner to have her foundation walls insulated with 2 inches of Styrofoam. To make **ENV** your point, you tell her how thick the concrete walls (normally 8 inches) would have to be to have the same insulating value as 2 inches of Styrofoam. What's this thickness?
- A 17 m by 4.5 m house is built on a concrete slab 17 cm thick. Find the heat-loss rate through the floor if the interior is at 30°C while the ground is at 20°C .
- Find the $\mathcal{R}$ -factor for a wall that loses 0.040 Btu each hour through each square foot for each $^{\circ}\text{F}$ temperature difference.

29. Compute the $\mathcal{R}$ -factors for 1-inch thicknesses of air, concrete, fiberglass, glass, Styrofoam, and wood.
30. A horseshoe has surface area 50 cm^2 , and a blacksmith heats it to a red-hot 880°C . At what rate does it radiate energy?

Section 16.4 Thermal-Energy Balance

31. An oven loses energy at the rate of 16 W per $^\circ\text{C}$ temperature difference between its interior and the 18°C temperature of the kitchen. What average power must be supplied to maintain the oven at 240°C ?
32. You're having your home's heating system replaced, and the heating contractor has specified a new system that supplies energy at the maximum rate of 40 kW . You know that your house loses energy at the rate of 1.3 kW per $^\circ\text{C}$ temperature difference between interior and exterior, and the minimum winter temperature in your area is -15°C . You'd like to maintain 20°C (68°F) indoors. Should you go with the system your contractor recommends?
33. The filament of a 100-W lightbulb is at 3.0 kK . What's the filament's surface area?
34. A typical human body has surface area 1.4 m^2 and skin temperature 33°C . If the body's emissivity is about 1, what's the net radiation from the body when the ambient temperature is 20°C ?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two worked examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

35. **Example 16.2:** An iron frying pan of mass 2.65 kg is at 144°C when it's plunged into a sink full of 10.9 kg of water at 21.0°C . Assuming no heat loss, what's the equilibrium temperature of the water and pan?
36. **Example 16.2:** You've got a 2.33-kg aluminum skillet on a hot stove burner, and the skillet is at a sizzling 286°C . You plan to plunge the skillet into 25°C water to cool it. What's the minimum amount of water that will keep the equilibrium temperature below 40°C ?
37. **Example 16.2:** During the refueling of a nuclear power plant, 248 spent fuel assemblies are moved from the reactor to a spent fuel pool. Each fuel assembly has mass 322 kg and specific heat $284 \text{ J/kg}\cdot\text{K}$, and they come from the reactor at an average temperature of 658°C . The spent fuel pool contains 1720 tonnes (1720 Mg) of water initially at 15.0°C . By how much does the water temperature increase once it comes to equilibrium with the fuel rods? (In this situation, though, the water temperature rises further because of energy generated by radioactive decay in the fuel rods.)
38. **Example 16.2:** A manufacturer of brass starts with 755 kg of molten copper at 1350°C , then adds molten zinc at 469°C . The specific heats of molten copper and zinc are respectively $572 \text{ J/kg}\cdot\text{K}$ and $497 \text{ J/kg}\cdot\text{K}$. If the equilibrium temperature of the mix is 1170°C , what percent of the alloy's mass is zinc?
39. **Example 16.7:** A solar greenhouse has 435 ft^2 of $\mathcal{R}$ -45 walls and 285 ft^2 of $\mathcal{R}$ -2.1 glass that admits solar energy at the average rate of $35.6 \text{ Btu/h}\cdot\text{ft}^2$. Find the greenhouse temperature on a day when the outdoor temperature is -10.5°F .
40. **Example 16.7:** A solar greenhouse in Europe has 51.5 m^2 of walls insulated to $\mathcal{R} = 9.56 \text{ m}^2\cdot\text{K/W}$ and 32.3 m^2 of glass with

$\mathcal{R} = 0.21 \text{ m}^2\cdot\text{K/W}$ that admits solar energy at the average rate of 112 W/m^2 . What's the minimum outdoor temperature for which the greenhouse interior will stay above freezing?

41. **Example 16.7:** An asteroid in the belt between Mars and Jupiter absorbs solar energy at the average rate of 96.2 W for every square meter of its surface. If the asteroid behaves like a blackbody, what's its surface temperature?
42. **Example 16.7:** The *habitable zone* around a given star is defined as the region in which a planet's surface temperature is consistent with the existence of liquid water. The red dwarf star Trappist-1 has a luminosity (total power output) only 0.000522 that of the Sun. Determine the range of distances from Trappist-1 that mark its habitable zone. Assume terrestrial atmospheric pressure, under which water freezes at 0°C and boils at 100°C . Assume also that any planet in this range behaves like a blackbody and, for the reason described in this chapter's Application: The Greenhouse Effect and Global Warming, that a planet absorbs solar energy over its cross-sectional area but radiates from its entire surface. *Hint:* You'll need to consult the inside back cover and maybe review Section 14.4. (There are, in fact, seven planets in Trappist-1's habitable zone.)

Problems

43. A constant-volume gas thermometer is filled with air whose pressure is 101 kPa at the normal melting point of ice. What would its pressure be at (a) the normal boiling point of water (373 K), (b) the normal boiling point of oxygen (90.2 K), and (c) the normal boiling point of mercury (630 K)?
44. A constant-volume gas thermometer is at 55-kPa pressure at the triple point of water. By how much does its pressure change for each kelvin temperature change?
45. In Fig. 16.2's gas thermometer, the height h is 60.4 mm at the triple point of water. When the thermometer is immersed in boiling sulfur dioxide, the height drops to 57.7 mm . What is the boiling point of SO_2 in kelvins and in degrees Celsius?
46. If your mass is 67 kg , what's the minimum number of calories (kcal) you would "burn off" climbing a 1600-m -high mountain? (Note: The actual metabolic energy used would be much greater.)
47. Typical fats contain about 9 kcal per gram. If the energy in body fat could be utilized with 100% efficiency, how much mass would a runner lose in a 26.2-mile marathon while consuming 125 kcal/mile ?
48. A circular lake 1.0 km in diameter is 10 m deep (Fig. 16.14). Solar energy is incident on the lake at an average rate of 200 W/m^2 . If the lake absorbs all this energy and does not exchange heat with its surroundings, how long will it take to warm from 10°C to 20°C ?
49. How much heat is required to raise a 770-g copper pan from 14°C to 90°C if (a) the pan is empty or contains (b) 1.1 kg of water and (c) 4.2 kg of mercury?
50. Initially, 100 g of water and 100 g of another substance listed in Table 16.1 are at 20°C . Heat is then transferred to each substance at the same rate for 1.0 min . At the end of that time, the water is at 29°C and the other substance at 95°C . (a) What's the other substance? (b) What's the heating rate?
51. You draw 300 mL of 15°C water from the tap and pop it into a 900-W microwave oven to heat for tea. How long should you microwave the water so it just reaches the boiling point?
52. Two families travel to the U.S. during winter and rent two houses for their holidays. Both houses have not been heated and the

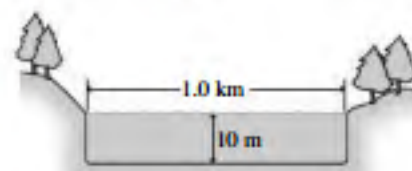


FIGURE 16.14 Problem 48

temperature inside is a frigid 32°F . Each house has a furnace that can supply 100,000 Btu/h. One house is made of stone and weighs 70 tons. The other is wood and weighs 17 tons. How long does it take each house to reach 68°F ? Neglect heat loss, and assume the entire house mass reaches a uniform temperature.

53. You're arguing with your roommate about whether it's quicker to heat water on a stove burner or in a microwave. The burner supplies energy at the rate of 1.0 kW, the microwave at 625 W. You can heat water in the microwave in a paper cup of negligible heat capacity, but the stove requires a pan with heat capacity 1.4 kJ/K. How much water do you need before it becomes quicker to heat on the stovetop? Neglect energy loss to the surroundings.
54. In the 2011 nuclear accident at Fukushima, Japan, an **ENW** earthquake-triggered tsunami wiped out emergency generators, leaving three reactors without a source of cooling water. Although safety systems shut down the reactors during the earthquake, radioactive decay continued to generate thermal energy at the rate of some 33 MW. In a desperate attempt to cool the reactors, operators used fire engines to pump seawater into the reactors. If 650 m^3 of 10°C seawater were injected into a reactor, how long would it take that 33 MW of thermal power to bring the water to the boiling point?
55. A 1.0-kg iron tea kettle sits on a 2.2-kW stove burner. If it takes 5.9 min to bring the kettle and the water in it from 21°C to the boiling point, how much water is in the kettle?
56. The temperature of the eardrum provides a reliable measure of **BIO** deep body temperature and is measured quickly with ear thermometers that sense infrared radiation. A thermometer that "views" 1 mm^2 of the eardrum requires 100 μJ of energy for a reliable reading at normal 37°C body temperature. How long does the measurement take?
57. A 2100-kg car moving at 85 km/h is brought to a sudden stop. If all the car's energy is dissipated in heating its four 5.8-kg steel brake disks, by how much do the disk temperatures increase?
58. A washing machine's "warm" setting calls for water at 34.0°C . If the cold-water supply is at 12.4°C and the hot-water supply is at 51.7°C , what ratio of hot to cold water should the washing machine's fill valves admit to the machine?
59. A piece of copper at 260°C is dropped into 1.4 kg of water at 24°C . If the equilibrium temperature is 29°C , what's the mass of the copper?
60. While camping, you boil water to make spaghetti. Your pot contains 2.1 kg of water initially at 10°C . You stoke up the campfire, and as a result the water gains energy at an increasing rate: $P = a + bt$, where $a = 1.1\text{ kW}$, $b = 2.5\text{ W/s}$, and t is the time in s. To the nearest minute, how long will it take to bring the water to a boil?
61. A biology lab's walk-in cooler measures 3.0 m by 2.0 m by 2.3 m and is insulated with 8.0-cm-thick Styrofoam. If the surrounding building is at 20°C , at what average rate must the cooler's refrigeration unit remove heat in order to maintain 4.0°C in the cooler?
62. One end of an iron rod 36 cm long and 2.8 cm in diameter is in ice water, the other in boiling water (Fig. 16.15). The rod is well insulated so no heat is lost out the sides. Find the heat-flow rate along the rod.

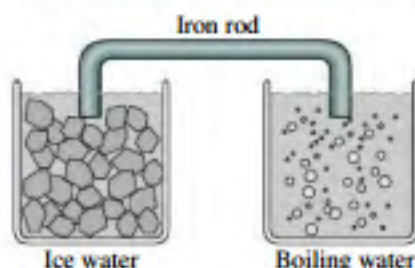


FIGURE 16.15 Problem 62

63. You arrive for a party on a night when it's 8°C outside. Your hosts meet you at the door and say the party may need to be cancelled, because the heating system has failed and they don't want to discomfort their guests. You say, "Not so fast!" A total of 36 people are expected,

the average power output of a human body is 100 W, and the house loses energy at the rate $320\text{ W/}^{\circ}\text{C}$. Will the house remain comfortable?

64. An electric stove burner has surface area 325 cm^2 and emissivity $e = 1$. The burner consumes 1500 W and is at 900 K. If room temperature is 300 K, what fraction of the burner's heat loss is from radiation?
65. In a low-temperature physics experiment, a metal block is **CH** surrounded on five faces by near-perfect insulation that prevents any conductive heat loss, and it's coated on those faces with a perfect reflector that prevents radiation. The remaining face is painted black so it behaves like a blackbody of emissivity 1, and it's covered with a slab of material with thermal conductivity k and thickness d that's transparent to radiation. The other side of the slab is in contact with liquid helium at nearly 0 K. (a) Find an expression for the temperature of the metal block if it loses energy equally by radiation and conduction. You can assume that heat flows straight through the slab, perpendicular to its interface with the metal block, with no heat loss out its sides. (b) Evaluate your expression when the slab is 2.85 cm thick and is made of insulating foam with $k = 0.0166$.
66. You're considering purchasing a new sleeping bag whose manufacturer claims it will keep you warm to -10°F . The bag has down insulation with 4.0-cm loft (thickness). Your body produces heat at the rate of 100 W and has area 1.5 m^2 . Considering only conductive heat loss, will you be able to maintain normal body temperature in the bag at -10°F ?
67. A blacksmith heats a 1.1-kg iron horseshoe to 550°C , then plunges it into a bucket containing 15 kg of water at 20°C . What's the equilibrium temperature?
68. What's the power output of a microwave oven that can heat 430 g of water from 20°C to the boiling point in 2.5 min? Neglect the container's heat capacity.
69. A cylindrical log 15 cm in diameter and 65 cm long is glowing red hot in a fireplace. The log's emissivity is essentially 1. If it's emitting radiation at the rate of 34 kW, what's its temperature?
70. A blue giant star whose surface temperature is 23 kK radiates energy at the rate of $3.4 \times 10^{30}\text{ W}$. Find the star's radius, assuming it behaves like a blackbody.
71. Rework Example 16.4, now assuming the house has 10 **ENW** single-glazed windows, each measuring 2.5 ft by 5.0 ft. Four of the windows are on the south, and each admits solar energy at the average rate of 30 Btu/h $\cdot\text{ft}^2$. All the windows lose heat; their $\mathcal{R}$ -factor is 0.90. (a) Find the total heating cost for the month. (b) How much is the solar gain worth?
72. In 2014 the European Space Agency's *Rosetta* spacecraft was 5000 km from the comet 67P/Churyumov-Gerasimenko. *Rosetta* turned its infrared sensors toward the comet and measured a flux of 96.3 W per square meter of cometary surface. Assuming the dark, dusty comet radiated like a blackbody, what was its temperature?
73. Estimate the average temperature on Pluto, treating the dwarf planet as a blackbody whose great distance from the Sun means that it receives energy from the Sun at the rate of only 0.876 W/m^2 .
74. The table below shows temperature versus time for 500 g of water heated in a microwave oven. In a microwave, essentially all the microwave energy goes into the water-containing food in the oven. Plot the data, determine a best-fit line, and use the slope of your line to determine the microwave power of this particular oven. Assume that water's specific heat is independent of temperature (which is only approximately true; see Problem 75).

Time (s)	0	25	60	95	125	160	190
Temperature ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	12	20	39	53	64	83	93

75. Water's specific heat in the range from 0°C to 100°C varies with temperature according to the equation $c(T) = c_0 + aT + bT^2$, where $c_0 = 4207.9 \text{ J/kg}\cdot\text{K}$, $a = -1.292 \text{ J/kg}\cdot\text{K}^2$, and $b = 0.01330 \text{ J/kg}\cdot\text{K}^3$. Use this expression to find the heat required to raise the temperature of 1.000 kg of water from 0°C to 100°C . By what percentage does this differ from the result you would get using the value of c in Table 16.1 over the entire temperature range?
76. At low temperatures, the specific heats of solids are approximately proportional to the cube of the temperature: $c(T) = a(T/T_0)^3$. For copper, $a = 31 \text{ J/g}\cdot\text{K}$ and $T_0 = 343 \text{ K}$. Find the heat required to bring 33 g of copper from 13.0 K to 29.0 K .
77. The Application on global warming (page 322) gives 960 W/m^2 as the average rate at which solar energy reaches Earth. You can approximate the solar energy rate reaching other planets by scaling this quantity by the inverse square of the planet's distance from the Sun (see Appendix E)—although what you'll get is only an approximation because that 960 W/m^2 includes effects of clouds and reflection that are unique to Earth and, more importantly, it neglects the greenhouse effect. Follow the procedure used in the Application to find approximations to the temperatures of Mars and Venus, and compare with their mean measured surface temperatures (you'll have to research those). Your results suggest that Mars has very little greenhouse effect, while Venus exhibits a "runaway" greenhouse effect resulting in a very high surface temperature.
78. In a cylindrical pipe where area isn't constant, Equation 16.5 takes the form $H = -kA(dT/dr)$, where r is the radial coordinate measured from the pipe axis. Use this equation to show that the heat-loss rate from a cylindrical pipe of radius R_1 and length L is

$$H = \frac{2\pi kL(T_1 - T_2)}{\ln(R_2/R_1)}$$

where the pipe is surrounded by insulation of outer radius R_2 and thermal conductivity k and where T_1 and T_2 are the temperatures at the pipe surface and the outer surface of the insulation, respectively. (Hint: Consider the heat flow through a thin section of pipe, with thickness dr , as shown in Fig. 16.16. Then integrate.)

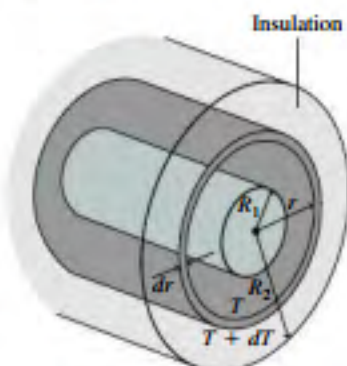


FIGURE 16.16 Problem 78

79. A friend who's skeptical about climate change argues that the roughly 0.85°C increase in Earth's temperature during the industrial era could be caused by an increase in the Sun's power output. The Sun's average power has, in fact, increased by about 0.05% during this time. Could your friend be right?
80. You are planning to insulate the walls in your home, and you are told that the minimum insulation level needed is $\mathcal{R}$ -factor $3.5 \text{ m}^2\cdot\text{K/W}$. You've got some U.S.-made $\mathcal{R}$ -19 fiberglass insulation. Will it do?
81. A passive solar house has south-facing windows that, in winter, admit solar energy at an average rate of 2.1 kW . The house is well insulated, losing only 60 W for every $^\circ\text{C}$ temperature difference between inside and outside. What's the minimum outdoor temperature for which the house can maintain 20°C inside?
82. A more realistic approach to the solar greenhouse of Example 16.7 considers the time dependence of the solar input. A function that approximates the solar input is $(40 \text{ Btu/h/ft}^2) \sin^2(\pi t/24)$, where t is the time in hours, with $t = 0$ at midnight. Then the greenhouse is no longer in energy balance, but is described instead by the differential form of Equation 16.3 with Q the time-varying energy input. Use computer software or a calculator with differential-equation-solving capability to find the time-dependent temperature of the greenhouse,

and determine the maximum and minimum temperatures. Assume the same numbers as in Example 16.7, along with a heat capacity $C = 1500 \text{ Btu/}^\circ\text{F}$ for the greenhouse. You can assume any reasonable value for the initial temperature, and after a few days your greenhouse temperature should settle into a steady oscillation independent of the initial value.

Passage Problems

Fiberglass is a popular, economical, and fairly effective building insulation. It consists of fine glass fibers—often including recycled glass—formed loosely into rectangular slabs or rolled into blankets (Fig. 16.17). One side is often faced with heavy paper or aluminum foil. Fiberglass insulation comes in thicknesses compatible with common building materials—for example, 3.5 inch and 6 inch for wood-framed walls. Standard 6-inch fiberglass has an $\mathcal{R}$ -factor of 19.



FIGURE 16.17 End view of a slab of fiberglass insulation (Passage Problems 83–86).

83. Fiberglass insulation owes its insulating quality primarily to
- the low thermal conductivity of glass.
 - its ability to block cold air infiltration.
 - the low thermal conductivity of air trapped between the glass fibers.
84. One purpose of foil facing on fiberglass insulation is to reduce heat loss by
- conduction.
 - convection.
 - radiation.
85. Fiberglass insulation for attics is available in 12-inch thickness. Its $\mathcal{R}$ -factor is
- 38.
 - 76.
 - 29.
86. Since fiberglass insulation is readily compressible, you could squash two slabs initially 6 inches wide into a 6-inch wall space. This would
- double the overall $\mathcal{R}$ -factor.
 - increase the overall $\mathcal{R}$ -factor but not double it.
 - decrease the overall $\mathcal{R}$ -factor.
 - not change the overall $\mathcal{R}$ -factor.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The photo is taken in infrared light, and the amount of infrared radiation increases rapidly with increasing temperature. The car's wheels are glowing with infrared, a result of frictional heating when the brakes were recently applied.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 16.1 (b)
- 16.2 (a) The rock's temperature changes more because its specific heat is lower.
- 16.3 $\Delta T_2 < \Delta T_3 < \Delta T_1$; Since H and Δx are the same for each slab, the product $k \Delta T$ must be constant, so a higher conductivity means a lower ΔT .
- 16.4 (1) Radiation; (2) conduction; (3) convection
- 16.5 (b) Because as the temperature rises so does the heat-loss rate—eventually bringing the house into energy balance.

The Thermal Behavior of Matter

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The concept of temperature (Section 16.1)
- Kinetic energy (Section 6.4)
- Newton's second and third laws (Chapter 4)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 17.1 Describe gases quantitatively using the ideal-gas law.
- LO 17.2 Describe the distribution of molecular speeds and deviations from ideal-gas behavior.
- LO 17.3 Determine energies involved in phase changes.
- LO 17.4 Analyze phase diagrams.
- LO 17.5 Calculate thermal expansion and contraction of materials, including water.



What unusual property of water is evident in this photo?

Matter responds to heating in several ways. It may get hotter or may melt. It may change size, shape, or pressure. This chapter explores the thermal behavior of matter. We start with a simple gaseous state, whose behavior follows from Newtonian mechanics at the molecular level. We then move to liquids and solids, whose behavior is still grounded in the molecular properties of matter, but whose description is more empirical.

17.1 Gases

- LO 17.1 *Describe gases quantitatively using the ideal-gas law.*
- LO 17.2 *Describe the distribution of molecular speeds and deviations from ideal-gas behavior.*

Gases are simple because their molecules are far apart and only rarely interact. That makes gas behavior and its physical explanation particularly straightforward. Developing that explanation will clarify the relation between macroscopic properties—such as temperature and pressure—and the underlying microscopic properties of gas molecules.

The Ideal-Gas Law

The macroscopic state of a gas in thermodynamic equilibrium is determined by its temperature, pressure, and volume. Moreover, it turns out that all gases exhibit, to a very good approximation, the same relation among these three quantities.

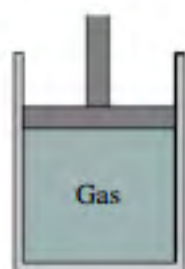


FIGURE 17.1 A piston-cylinder system.

A simple system for studying gas behavior consists of a gas-filled cylinder sealed by a movable piston (Fig. 17.1). This is not just a pedagogical abstraction: Practical devices including engines, pumps, and air compressors contain piston-cylinder systems, while lungs, balloons, gas bubbles, and many other natural systems are analogous to our piston-cylinder system.

If we maintain the system of Fig. 17.1 at constant temperature and move the piston to vary the gas volume, we find that the pressure varies inversely with the volume. If we increase the temperature while holding the volume fixed, the pressure rises in direct proportion to the temperature. If we double the amount of gas while holding temperature and volume constant, the pressure doubles. Putting all these results together, we can write

The ideal-gas law relates the product of pressure p ... and volume V ... to the number N of gas molecules... and the gas temperature T .

$$pV = NkT \quad (\text{ideal-gas law}) \quad (17.1)$$

k is Boltzmann's constant, with the approximate value $1.38 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K}$.

with p , V , and T the pressure, volume, and temperature, respectively, and N the number of molecules in the gas. Equation 17.1 is the **ideal-gas law**. Most real gases obey this law to a very good approximation. The constant k that appears in the ideal-gas law is **Boltzmann's constant**, named for the Austrian physicist Ludwig Boltzmann (1844–1906), who was instrumental in developing the microscopic description of thermal phenomena. In this chapter we'll use the approximate value $k = 1.38 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K}$. The new SI, though, gives k an exact value, providing an explicit-constant definition of the kelvin in terms of the joule. That definition reflects a fundamental relationship between temperature and energy, which we'll develop very soon.

Because the number of molecules N in a typical gas sample is astronomically large, we often express the ideal-gas law in terms of the number of **moles** (mol) of gas molecules. One mole is an SI unit equal to Avogadro's number, N_A , of atoms or molecules. N_A is approximately 6.022×10^{23} , but in the new SI it's been given an exact value that provides an explicit-constant definition of the mole.

If we have n moles of a gas, then $N = nN_A$ is the number of molecules, so the ideal-gas law becomes

$$pV = nN_A kT = nRT \quad (17.2)$$

where $R = N_A k = 8.314 \text{ J/K} \cdot \text{mol}$ is called the **universal gas constant**.

EXAMPLE 17.1**The Ideal-Gas Law: STP***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

What volume is occupied by 1.00 mol of an ideal gas at standard temperature and pressure (STP), where $T = 0^\circ\text{C}$ and $p = 101.3 \text{ kPa}$?

INTERPRET We're dealing with an ideal gas, and we're given the amount of gas, the temperature, and the pressure.

DEVELOP Because we're given the number of moles n , we'll use the ideal-gas law in the form of Equation 17.2, $pV = nRT$, to find the volume.

EVALUATE Solving for V gives

$$V = \frac{nRT}{p} = \frac{(1.00 \text{ mol})(8.314 \text{ J/K} \cdot \text{mol})(273.15 \text{ K})}{1.013 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa}} = 22.4 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3 = 22.4 \text{ L}$$

where we expressed $T = 0^\circ\text{C}$ as 273.15 K.

ASSESS This result may be familiar from earlier chemistry or physics courses: 1 mole of any ideal gas—no matter what its chemical composition—occupies 22.4 L at standard temperature and pressure.

The ideal-gas law is remarkably simple. Neither its form nor the constants k and R depend on the substance making up the gas or on the mass of the gas molecules. Yet most real gases follow the ideal-gas law very closely over a wide range of pressures. This nearly ideal behavior is what gives gas thermometers their high precision over a wide temperature range.

Kinetic Theory of the Ideal Gas

Why do gases obey such a simple relation among temperature, pressure, and volume? Here we answer that question with an analysis based ultimately on Newtonian mechanics.

We start with some simplifying assumptions:

1. The gas consists of many identical molecules, each with mass m but negligible size and no internal structure. This assumption is approximately true for real gases when the distance between molecules is large compared with their size. This allows us to neglect intermolecular collisions, an assumption that simplifies our analysis but isn't crucial to the ideal-gas model.
2. The molecules don't exert action-at-a-distance forces on each other. Thus there's no intermolecular potential energy, and therefore the molecules have only kinetic energy. This assumption is fundamental to an ideal gas.
3. The molecules move in random directions with a distribution of speeds that's independent of direction.
4. Collisions with the container walls are elastic, conserving the molecules' energy and momentum. Here's where we tie our gas model to Newtonian mechanics.

Consider N molecules confined to a rectangular box with length L (Fig. 17.2). Each molecule that collides with a wall exerts a force. There are so many molecules that individual collisions aren't evident; instead the wall experiences an essentially constant average force. The gas pressure p is a measure of this force on a unit area. We're going to find an expression for p and use it to gain deep insights into the ideal-gas law and the meaning of temperature.

Figure 17.3 shows one molecule colliding with the right-hand wall. Since the collision is elastic, the y -component of the molecule's velocity is unchanged, while the x -component reverses sign. Thus the molecule undergoes a momentum change of magnitude $2mv_{xi}$, where i labels this particular molecule. After the molecule collides with the right-hand wall, nothing will change its x velocity until it hits the left-hand wall and its x velocity again reverses. So it will be back at the right-hand wall in the time $\Delta t_i = 2L/v_{xi}$ that it takes to go back and forth along the container.

Now each time our molecule collides with the right-hand wall, it delivers momentum $2mv_{xi}$ to the wall. Newton's second law says that force is the rate of change of momentum. So we can calculate the average force $\bar{F}_i$ due to one molecule by dividing the momentum delivered, $2mv_{xi}$, by the time, $2L/v_{xi}$, between collisions:

$$\bar{F}_i = \frac{2mv_{xi}}{2L/v_{xi}} = \frac{mv_{xi}^2}{L}$$

To get the total force on the wall, we sum over all N molecules with their different x velocities. Dividing by the wall area A then gives the pressure:

$$p = \frac{\bar{F}}{A} = \frac{\sum \bar{F}_i}{A} = \frac{\sum mv_{xi}^2/L}{A} = \frac{m \sum v_{xi}^2}{AL}$$

The last step follows because the box length L and molecular mass m are the same for all molecules, so they factor out of the sum. We can simplify by noting that the denominator AL is just the volume V . Let's also multiply by 1 in the form N/N , with N the number of molecules. Then we have

$$p = \frac{m \sum v_{xi}^2}{AL} = \frac{mN}{V} \frac{\sum v_{xi}^2}{N}$$

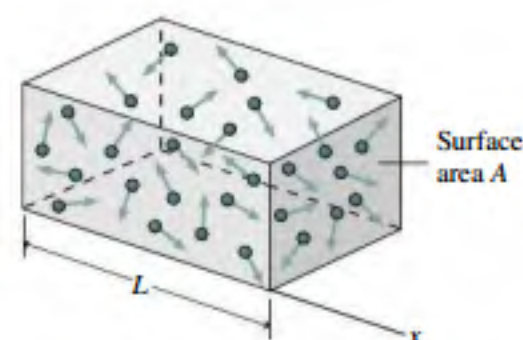


FIGURE 17.2 Gas molecules confined to a rectangular box.

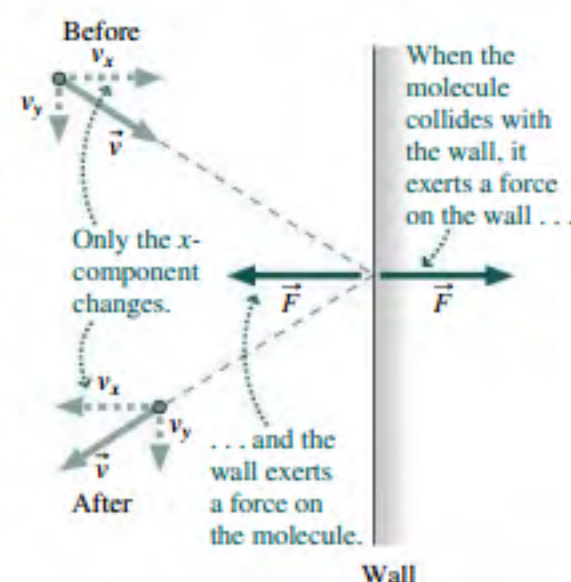


FIGURE 17.3 A molecule undergoes an elastic collision, reversing its x -component and transferring momentum $2mv_x$ to the wall.

In the final expression here, the term $\sum v_{xi}^2/N$ is the average of the squares of all the x velocity components of all the molecules; we designate this quantity $\overline{v_x^2}$. So the pressure becomes

$$p = \frac{mN}{V} \overline{v_x^2}$$

We still haven't used assumption 3—that the molecules move in random directions with speeds independent of direction. If we grab a molecule at random, that means we're just as likely to find it moving in the x -direction, the y -direction, the z -direction, or any direction in between—and its speed, on average, won't depend on its direction of motion. So the average quantities $\overline{v_x^2}$, $\overline{v_y^2}$, and $\overline{v_z^2}$ must be equal. Since the three directions x , y , and z are perpendicular, the average of the molecular speeds squared is $\overline{v^2} = \overline{v_x^2} + \overline{v_y^2} + \overline{v_z^2}$. We've just argued that all three terms on the right are equal, so we can write $\overline{v^2} = 3\overline{v_x^2}$, or $\overline{v_x^2} = \frac{1}{3}\overline{v^2}$. Then our expression for pressure becomes

$$p = \frac{mN}{3V} \overline{v^2}$$

Multiplying through by V and by 1 in the form $2/2$, we have

$$pV = \frac{2}{3}N \left(\frac{1}{2}m\overline{v^2} \right)$$

This looks a lot like the ideal-gas law (Equation 17.1), except that instead of kT we have $\frac{2}{3} \left(\frac{1}{2}m\overline{v^2} \right)$. Take a good look at the quantity in parentheses: You'll see that it's just the average kinetic energy of a gas molecule.

Think about what we've done here. We applied the fundamental laws of mechanics to an ideal gas and came up with an equation that looks like the experimentally verified ideal-gas law, except that it's expressed in terms of a microscopic quantity—molecular kinetic energy—rather than the macroscopic quantity temperature. Since our equation describes the behavior of an ideal gas, it *must be* the ideal-gas law. Comparing with the ideal-gas law in the form 17.1, we must therefore have

On the left is the mean
molecular kinetic energy.

On the right is the
temperature T .

$$\frac{1}{2}m\overline{v^2} = \frac{3}{2}kT \quad (\text{temperature and molecular energy}) \quad (17.3)$$

The equality connects a microscopic quantity—molecular energy—with a macroscopic quantity—temperature.

Our derivation shows why, in terms of Newtonian mechanics, a gas obeying our four assumptions should obey the ideal-gas law. In Equation 17.3 we get an added bonus—a microscopic understanding of the meaning of temperature: **Temperature measures the average kinetic energy associated with random translational motion of the molecules.**

This fundamental connection between temperature and energy is what lies behind the upcoming redefinition of the kelvin in terms of Boltzmann's constant. In Chapter 18 you'll see how, with more complex molecules, we need to broaden energy here to include other forms of molecular energy in addition to translational kinetic energy.

EXAMPLE 17.2 Molecular Energy and Speed: An Air Molecule

Find the average kinetic energy of a molecule in air at room temperature (20°C or 293 K), and determine the speed of a nitrogen molecule (N_2) with this energy.

INTERPRET This problem asks about the linkage between thermodynamic quantities and molecular energy. We just found that linkage: The temperature of a gas is a measure of the average kinetic energy of its molecules.

DEVELOP Equation 17.3, $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{3}{2}kT$, quantifies the relation between temperature and molecular kinetic energy. Once we find the molecular kinetic energy, we'll need the molecular mass to determine the speed. We can get that using the atomic weight of nitrogen and the fact that an N_2 molecule contains two atoms.

EVALUATE We first evaluate the average molecular kinetic energy:

$$\bar{K} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{3}{2}kT = \frac{3}{2}(1.38 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K})(293 \text{ K}) = 6.07 \times 10^{-21} \text{ J}$$

We can solve for the corresponding speed if we know the molecular mass m . A nitrogen molecule consists of two atoms each with mass 14 u (see Appendix D), so its mass is

$$m = 2(14 \text{ u})(1.66 \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg/u}) = 4.65 \times 10^{-26} \text{ kg}$$

Since $\bar{K} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$, the speed corresponding to this kinetic energy is

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{2\bar{K}}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(6.07 \times 10^{-21} \text{ J})}{4.65 \times 10^{-26} \text{ kg}}} = 511 \text{ m/s}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Not surprisingly, the answer is the same order of magnitude as the speed of sound ($\sim 340 \text{ m/s}$) in air at room temperature. At the microscopic level, the speed of the individual molecules limits the rate at which information can be transmitted by disturbances—sound waves—propagating through the gas.

We call the speed calculated in Example 17.2 the **thermal speed**. In terms of temperature, Equation 17.3 shows

$$v_{\text{th}} = \sqrt{\frac{3kT}{m}} \quad (17.4)$$

GOT IT?

17.1 If you double the kelvin temperature of a gas, what happens to the thermal speed of the gas molecules? (a) it doubles; (b) it quadruples; (c) it increases by $\sqrt{2}$

The Distribution of Molecular Speeds

The thermal speed v_{th} is a typical molecular speed, but it doesn't tell us much about the distribution of speeds. Are molecular speeds limited to a narrow band about v_{th} ? Or are lots of molecules moving much faster or much slower?

In the 1860s, the Scottish physicist James Clerk Maxwell showed that elastic collisions among molecules result in a speed distribution that peaks near the thermal speed but may extend considerably higher. Figure 17.4 plots this **Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution** for two different temperatures. Note that increasing temperature results in a higher thermal speed, as expected, but that it also broadens the distribution so there are more molecules at lower and higher speeds. The high-speed "tail" of the distribution is especially important to chemists because high-energy molecules participate most readily in chemical reactions. The rapid extension of the high-energy tail with increasing temperature shows why reaction rates are strongly temperature sensitive, and therefore explains why foods keep much longer with even modest refrigeration. High-energy molecules are also the first to evaporate from a liquid, leaving slower, cooler molecules behind. This explains the phenomenon of evaporative cooling, which your own body uses as you sweat. Without evaporative cooling, Earth's atmosphere would be much drier and it would rain far less frequently. You can explore the Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution quantitatively in Problem 74.

Real Gases

The ideal-gas law is a good approximation to the behavior of most real gases, but it's not perfect because our assumptions aren't entirely realistic. Two factors are especially important. First, real molecules take up space. This reduces the available volume, altering the

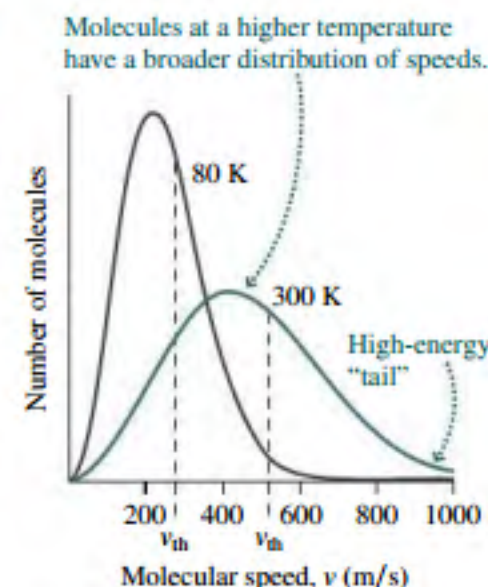


FIGURE 17.4 Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution of molecular speeds for nitrogen (N_2) at temperatures of 80 K and 300 K.

ideal-gas law. Second, electrical effects that we'll explore in Chapter 20 result in a weak attractive force between nearby molecules. As they move apart, molecules do work against this **van der Waals force**, and their kinetic energy drops. This, too, results in a deviation from ideal-gas behavior. You can learn more about these effects by working Problem 75.

17.2
Phase Changes

LO 17.3 Determine energies involved in phase changes.

LO 17.4 Analyze phase diagrams.

Step out of a steamy shower, and you'll find the mirror fogged with water condensed on the cool glass. Climb a mountain in winter, and you'll be treated to the lovely spectacle of every branch and pine needle covered with a delicate coating of frost that's formed right from the air. Burn a rewritable CD or DVD, and you've stored information with a laser that melts tiny spots on the spinning disc. These examples involve **phase changes** between gas and liquid, gas and solid, and solid and liquid.

Heat and Phase Changes

Drop ice cubes into a drink and stir. What's the temperature of the drink? It's 0°C, and it stays at 0°C as long as any ice remains. The melting of a pure solid occurs at a fixed temperature. During the process, energy goes into breaking the molecular bonds that hold the material in its solid form. This increases the molecules' potential energy but not their kinetic energy. Since temperature is a measure of molecular kinetic energy, that means the temperature doesn't change either.

The energy per unit mass required to change phase is called a **heat of transformation** and is given the symbol L ; for the solid–liquid change it's the **heat of fusion** L_f , and for liquid–gas it's the **heat of vaporization** L_v . Less familiar is the **heat of sublimation** for the transition from solid directly to gas. These quantities have units of J/kg, so the energy required to change the phase of a mass m is

$$Q = Lm \quad (\text{heat of transformation}) \tag{17.5}$$

Q is the energy involved in changing the phase of a substance.

m is the mass of the substance...

...and L is the substance's heat of transformation—the energy per unit mass associated with a phase change.

To reverse the change requires removing the same energy. Table 17.1 lists heats of transformation for some common materials. These quantities are typically quite large; water's heat of fusion, for example, is 334 kJ/kg or 80 cal/g—meaning it takes as much energy to melt 1 gram of ice as to heat the resulting water to 80°C.

Table 17.1 Heats of Transformation (at Atmospheric Pressure)

Substance	Melting Point (K)	L_f (kJ/kg)	Boiling Point (K)	L_v (kJ/kg)
Alcohol, ethyl	159	109	351	879
Copper	1357	205	2840	4726
Lead	601	24.7	2013	858
Mercury	234	11.3	630	296
Oxygen	54.8	13.8	90.2	213
Sulfur	388	53.6	718	306
Water	273.15	334	373.15	2257
Uranium dioxide	3120	259	3815	1533

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 17.1 Water Phases

You put a block of ice initially at -20°C in a pan on a hot stove with a constant power output, and heat it until it has melted, boiled, and evaporated. Make a sketch of temperature versus time for this experiment.

EVALUATE As the ice starts heating, its temperature goes up, so our graph (Fig. 17.5) begins with an upward slope. At 0°C the ice starts

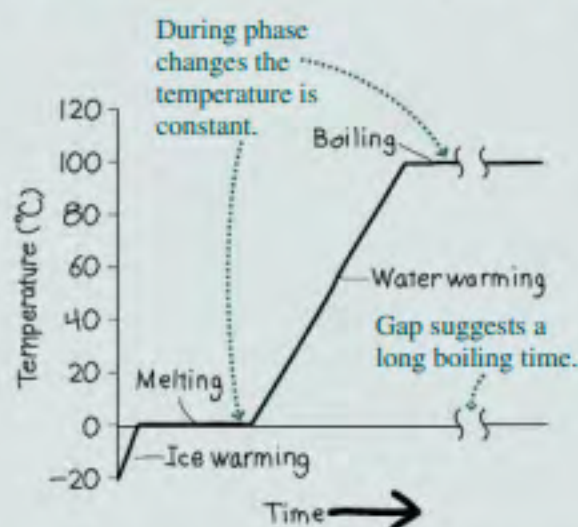


FIGURE 17.5 Temperature versus time for what's initially a block of ice at -20°C , supplied with energy at a constant rate. The process takes place at atmospheric pressure.

melting, and while that's happening its temperature doesn't change, so the graph stays horizontal for a while. When the ice is all melted, the water starts to warm. Table 16.1 shows that liquid water's specific heat is about twice that of ice; given the same power input, that means the water heats more slowly than the ice. So our graph has a lower slope as the water goes from 0°C to the boiling point at 100°C . Then the water starts turning to vapor, and stays at 100°C until it's all evaporated. Table 17.1 shows that water's heat of vaporization is much greater than its heat of fusion, so it takes much more time to boil the water away than it did to melt the ice. Our graph reflects that time difference.

ASSESS Makes sense: It takes a lot longer to boil a pan dry than to bring it to a boil.

MAKING THE CONNECTION If you start with 0.95 kg of ice at -20°C and supply heat at the rate of 1.6 kW, how much time will it take until you're left with only water vapor?

EVALUATE Use Equation 16.3 for heating, with specific heats from Table 16.1. Use Equation 17.4 for phase changes, with heats of transformation from Table 17.1. The result is 2.9 MJ of heat required for the whole process; at 1.6 kW or 1.6 kJ/s, that takes 1.8 ks, or half an hour.

GOT IT?

17.2 You bring a pot of water to boil and then forget about it. Ten minutes later you come back to the kitchen to find the water still boiling. Is its temperature (a) less than, (b) greater than, or (c) equal to 100°C ?

EXAMPLE 17.3 The Heat of Fusion: Meltdown!

A nuclear power plant's reactor vessel cracks, and all the cooling water drains out. Although nuclear fission stops, radioactive decay continues to heat the reactor's 2.5×10^5 kg of uranium-dioxide fuel at the rate of 120 MW. Once the melting point is reached, how much energy will it take to melt the fuel? How long will this take?

INTERPRET Since this problem is about melting, it must involve the heat of fusion. We identify the material as uranium dioxide (UO_2).

DEVELOP Our plan is to find UO_2 's heat of fusion in Table 17.1 and then use Equation 17.5, $Q = L_f m$, to calculate the energy required for melting. We're given the rate of energy generation by radioactive decay, and from that we'll be able to get the time.

EVALUATE Using UO_2 's L_f value from Table 17.1 in Equation 17.5, we have

$$Q = L_f m = (259 \text{ kJ/kg})(2.5 \times 10^5 \text{ kg}) = 65 \text{ GJ}$$

With a heating rate of 120 MW or 0.12 GJ/s, the time to melt the fuel is $(65 \text{ GJ})/(0.12 \text{ GJ/s}) = 540 \text{ s}$.

ASSESS The time to meltdown is just under 10 minutes! Failsafe emergency cooling systems are essential to prevent nuclear meltdowns.

Often we're interested in the total energy needed to bring a material to its transition point and then to make the phase transition. Then we need to combine specific-heat considerations of Chapter 16 with the heats of transformation introduced here.

EXAMPLE 17.4 Heating and Phase Change: Enough Ice?
Worked Example with Variation Problems

When 200 g of ice at -10°C are added to 1.0 kg of water at 15°C , is there enough ice to cool the water to 0°C ? If so, how much ice is left in the mixture?

INTERPRET This problem involves both a temperature rise and a phase change. We identify water as the substance involved.

(continued)

DEVELOP Equation 16.3, $Q = mc \Delta T$, determines the energy for the temperature rise, and Equation 17.5, $Q = Lm$, determines the phase-change energy. But we don't know whether all the ice melts. So our plan is to find the energy that it *would* take to heat the ice to 0°C and then melt all of it; if *more* than that much is available in cooling the water to 0°C , we'll know that we end up with all water at $T > 0^\circ\text{C}$. But if there isn't sufficient energy, then we'll have a mixture with both ice and water at 0°C , and we can use the energy extracted in cooling the water to find out how much ice melts.

EVALUATE We begin by evaluating the energy Q_1 to heat the ice and then melt it all, adding the energies from Equations 16.3 and 17.5 and then getting the specific heat and heat of fusion from Tables 16.1 and 17.1, respectively:

$$\begin{aligned} Q_1 &= m_{\text{ice}}c_{\text{ice}}\Delta T_{\text{ice}} + m_{\text{ice}}L_f \\ &= (0.20\text{ kg})(2.05\text{ kJ/kg}\cdot\text{K})(10\text{ K}) + (0.20\text{ kg})(334\text{ kJ/kg}) \\ &= 4.1\text{ kJ} + 66.8\text{ kJ} = 70.9\text{ kJ} \end{aligned}$$

Cooling the water to 0°C would extract energy Q_2 given by Equation 16.3:

$$Q_2 = m_{\text{water}}c_{\text{water}}\Delta T_{\text{water}} = (1.0\text{ kg})(4.184\text{ kJ/kg}\cdot\text{K})(15\text{ K}) = 62.8\text{ kJ}$$

This is far more than the 4.1 kJ needed to bring the ice to 0°C , but not quite the 70.9 kJ needed to leave it all melted. So there's enough ice to cool the water to 0°C , with some left over. How much? Our calculation of Q_1 shows that 4.1 kJ go into raising the ice temperature. Of the 62.8 kJ extracted from the water, the remaining 58.7 kJ go to melting ice. From Equation 17.5, the amount of ice melted is then

$$m_{\text{melted}} = \frac{Q}{L_f} = \frac{58.7\text{ kJ}}{334\text{ kJ/kg}} = 0.176\text{ kg} = 176\text{ g}$$

So we're left with 24 g of ice in 1176 g of water, all at 0°C .

ASSESS Make sense? Our 62.8 kJ was nearly enough to bring all the ice to the liquid phase, so it makes sense that only a small fraction of the ice remains.

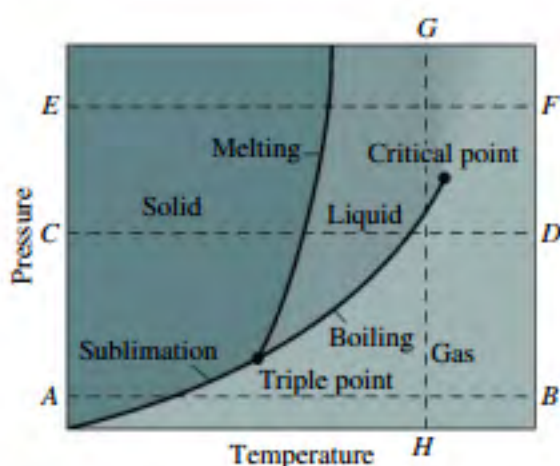


FIGURE 17.6 A phase diagram showing solid, liquid, and gas phases on a plot of pressure versus temperature.

Phase Diagrams

Why can't mountaineers enjoy piping hot coffee? Because water's boiling point drops with the decreasing pressure at high altitudes. In general, the temperatures at which phase changes occur depend on pressure. A **phase diagram** shows the different phases on a plot of pressure versus temperature. Figure 17.6 is a phase diagram for a typical substance. Most phase diagrams are similar, although water's is slightly unusual for reasons we'll discuss in the next section.

The phase diagram divides pressure-temperature space into regions corresponding to solid, liquid, and gas phases. Curves separating these regions mark the phase transitions. Everyday experience suggests that heating takes a substance from solid, to liquid, to gas—as with water in Fig. 17.5. But Fig. 17.6 shows that this sequence doesn't always occur. At low pressure (line AB in Fig. 17.6) the substance goes directly from solid to gas. This is **sublimation**. We don't see this with water because normal atmospheric pressure is too high. For carbon dioxide, though, atmospheric pressure is low in the phase diagram, which is why “dry ice” turns directly into gaseous CO_2 without becoming liquid. At higher pressures (line CD) we get the familiar solid-liquid-gas sequence. Higher still (line EF), we're above the **critical point**, where the abrupt distinction between liquid and gas disappears. Instead, the substance starts out as a thick fluid whose properties change gradually from liquidlike to gaslike as it's heated.

We think of changing phase by applying heat, but Fig. 17.6 shows we can also change phase by changing pressure. Lowering pressure along line GH, for example, takes the substance from liquid to gas while the temperature remains constant. Since heat requires a temperature difference, there's no heat involved in this constant-temperature phase transition. You may have seen a demonstration of water boiling vigorously at room temperature in a closed container pumped down to low pressure.

Don't let Fig. 17.6 fool you into thinking that phase transitions occur instantaneously. Those heats of transformation are large, and a substance moving, say, along line CD in response to heating will linger at each phase transition until all of it has changed phase; that's what the level portions of Fig. 17.5 showed.

The dividing curves in Fig. 17.6 show where two phases can coexist simultaneously, like ice floating in water at 0°C and atmospheric pressure. It's because phase changes occur along curves that terms like “melting point” and “boiling point” are meaningless unless pressure is specified. But there's one unique **triple point** where solid, liquid, and gas all coexist in equilibrium. Here temperature and pressure have unique, unambiguous values—which is why the 273.16-K triple point of water used to be the basis for the definition of the kelvin.

17.3 Thermal Expansion

LO 17.5 Calculate thermal expansion and contraction of materials, including water.

We've seen how heating causes changes in temperature and phase. But heating also results in pressure or volume changes. For a gas at constant pressure, for example, the ideal-gas law shows that volume increases in direct proportion to temperature. The volume and pressure relations for liquids and solids aren't so simple. Because their molecules are closely spaced, liquids and solids aren't very compressible, so thermal expansion is less pronounced.

We characterize the change in the volume with temperature using the **coefficient of volume expansion** β , defined as the fractional change in volume when a substance undergoes a small temperature change ΔT :

$$\beta = \frac{\Delta V/V}{\Delta T} \quad (17.6)$$

This equation assumes that β is independent of temperature; if it varies significantly, then we would need to define β in terms of the derivative dV/dT (Problem 66). Our definition of β also assumes constant pressure; we could entirely inhibit thermal expansion with appropriate pressure increases.

Often we want to know how one linear dimension of a solid changes with temperature. This is especially true with long structures, where the absolute change is greatest along the long dimension (Fig. 17.7). We then speak of the **coefficient of linear expansion** α , defined by

$$\alpha = \frac{\Delta L/L}{\Delta T} \quad (17.7)$$

The volume- and linear-expansion coefficients are related in a simple way: $\beta = 3\alpha$, as you can show in Problem 69. However, the linear-expansion coefficient α is really meaningful only with solids, because liquids and gases deform and don't expand proportionately in all directions. Table 17.2 lists the expansion coefficients for some common substances.

Table 17.2 Expansion Coefficients*

Solids	α (K^{-1})	Liquids and Gases	β (K^{-1})
Aluminum	24×10^{-6}	Air	3.7×10^{-3}
Brass	19×10^{-6}	Alcohol, ethyl	75×10^{-5}
Copper	17×10^{-6}	Gasoline	95×10^{-5}
Glass (Pyrex)	3.2×10^{-6}	Mercury	18×10^{-5}
Ice	51×10^{-6}	Water, 1°C	-4.8×10^{-5}
Invar†	0.9×10^{-6}	Water, 20°C	20×10^{-5}
Steel	12×10^{-6}	Water, 50°C	50×10^{-5}

*At approximately room temperature unless noted.

†Invar, consisting of 64% iron and 36% nickel, is an alloy designed to minimize thermal expansion.



FIGURE 17.7 Thermal expansion distorted these tracks, causing a derailment. Expansion of long structures like this is best described using the coefficient of linear expansion.

GOT IT?

17.3 The figure shows a donut-shaped object. If it's heated, will the hole get (a) larger or (b) smaller?



EXAMPLE 17.5 Thermal Expansion: Spilled Gasoline

A steel gas can holds 20 L at 10°C. It's filled to the brim with gas at 10°C. If the temperature now increases to 25°C, by how much does the can's volume increase? How much gas spills out?

INTERPRET This is a problem about thermal expansion. Since it involves volume, we identify the relevant quantity as the coefficient of volume expansion β .

(continued)

DEVELOP Equation 17.6, $\beta = (\Delta V/V)/\Delta T$, determines the volume change. Our plan is to calculate the expanded volume of the tank and then of the gasoline. The difference will be the amount that spills out. Table 17.2 lists β for gasoline but α for steel; therefore, we'll use the equation $\beta = 3\alpha$ for the steel.

EVALUATE First we use Equation 17.6 to evaluate the volume change ΔV of the steel can. Using $\beta = 3\alpha$, we have

$$\Delta V_{\text{can}} = \beta V \Delta T = (3)(12 \times 10^{-6} \text{ K}^{-1})(20 \text{ L})(15 \text{ K}) = 0.0108 \text{ L}$$

Similarly, for the gasoline,

$$\Delta V_{\text{gas}} = \beta V \Delta T = (95 \times 10^{-5} \text{ K}^{-1})(20 \text{ L})(15 \text{ K}) = 0.285 \text{ L}$$

We therefore lose 0.275 L.

ASSESS Make sense? The thermal-expansion coefficient for gasoline is so much greater than for steel that the can's expansion is negligible and the gas has nowhere to go. By the way, that spill wastes nearly 10 MJ of energy!

Here we calculated the expansion of the tank's volume, which is mostly empty space, using the expansion coefficient for steel. Why was that right? Think about GOT IT? 17.3, and you'll understand why.

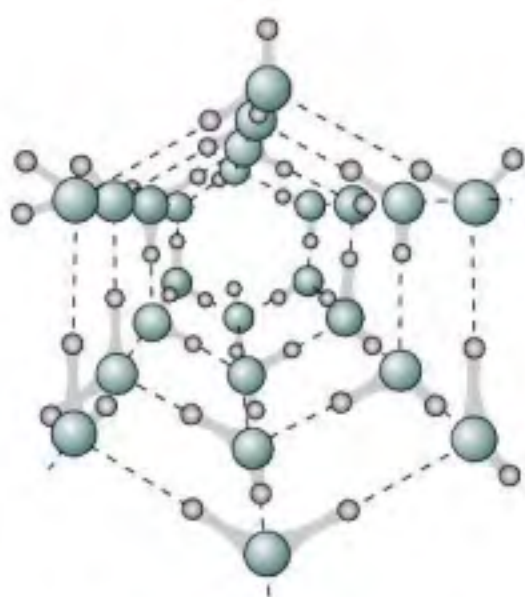


FIGURE 17.8 Water molecules in an ice crystal form an open structure, giving solid water a lower density than the liquid.

Thermal Expansion of Water

The entry for water at 1°C in Table 17.2 is remarkable, the negative expansion coefficient showing that water at this temperature actually *contracts* on heating. This unusual behavior occurs because ice has a relatively open crystal structure (Fig. 17.8) and therefore is less dense than liquid water. That's why ice floats. Immediately above the melting point, the intermolecular forces that bond H_2O molecules in ice still exert an influence, giving cold liquid water a lower density than at slightly higher temperatures. At 4°C water reaches its maximum density, and above this temperature the effect of molecular kinetic energy in keeping molecules apart wins out over intermolecular forces. From there on, water exhibits the more normal behavior of expansion with increasing temperature.

This unusual property of water near its melting point is reflected in its phase diagram, shown in Fig. 17.9. Note that the solid–liquid boundary extends leftward from the triple point, in contrast to the more typical behavior in Fig. 17.6. That means that ice at a fixed temperature will melt if the pressure is *increased*—an unusual property known as pressure melting.

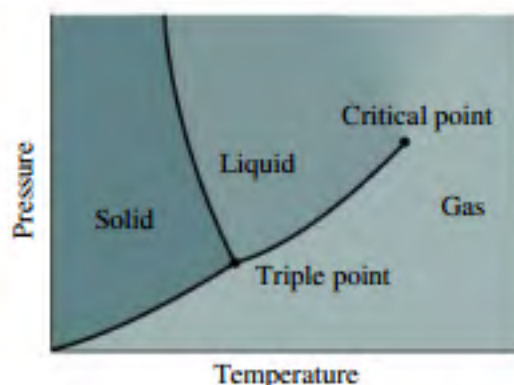


FIGURE 17.9 Phase diagram for water. Compare the solid–liquid boundary with that of Fig. 17.6.

APPLICATION Aquatic Life and Lake Turnover



The anomalous behavior of water has important consequences for life. If ice didn't float, then ponds, lakes, and even oceans would freeze from the bottom up,

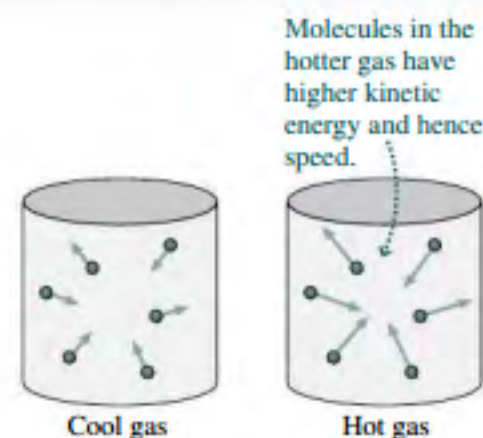
making aquatic life impossible. What actually happens, instead, is that a thin layer of ice forms on the surface, insulating the water below and keeping it liquid; as a result, ice cover in temperate climates rarely exceeds a meter or so. Because water's density is greatest at 4°C , water at this temperature sinks to the bottom. At lake depths greater than a few meters, sunlight is inadequate to raise the temperature, which therefore remains year-round at 4°C .

Water's unusual density behavior also causes the twice-yearly turnover of lakes in temperate climates. In the summer, a lake's surface water is warm, but deep water remains at 4°C . In the winter, water just beneath the ice is at 0°C , while the bottom water is still at 4°C . Both situations are stable, with less dense and therefore more buoyant water at the surface. But in the spring, ice melts and the surface water warms. When that water reaches 4°C , there's no density variation and the lake water mixes freely. This is the spring overturning. A similar overturning occurs in the fall, as the surface water cools through 4°C . Turnover is important to aquatic life because it brings up nutrients that would otherwise be trapped in the deep water.

Chapter 17 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is that matter responds to heating in a variety of ways in addition to changing temperature. Other responses include changes of phase and of volume and/or pressure. The ideal gas provides a particularly simple system for understanding volume and pressure changes. Analyzing ideal-gas behavior provides a link between the Newtonian mechanics of molecules and macroscopic thermodynamics, showing that temperature is a measure of the average molecular kinetic energy.

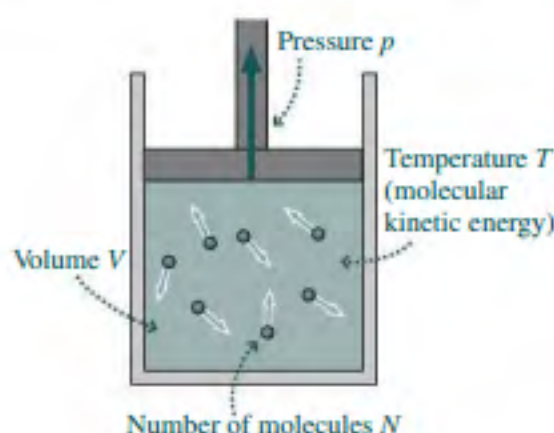


Key Concepts and Equations

The **ideal-gas law** relates pressure, volume, temperature, and the number of molecules in a gas:

$$pV = NkT \quad (\text{ideal-gas law})$$

where **Boltzmann's constant** k is approximately $1.381 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K}$.



In terms of the number of moles n , the ideal-gas law is

$$pV = nN_A kT = nRT$$

where the **universal gas constant** $R = N_A k = 8.314 \text{ J/K} \cdot \text{mol}$.

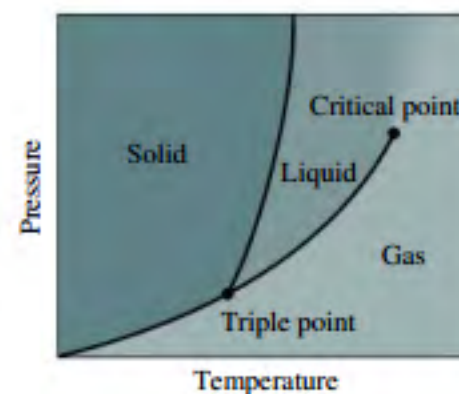
The temperature of an ideal gas is a measure of the gas molecules' average kinetic energy:

$$\frac{1}{2} m \overline{v^2} = \frac{3}{2} kT \quad (\text{temperature and molecular energy})$$

Heats of transformation L describe the energy per unit mass needed to effect phase changes. The total energy required to change the phase of a mass m is given by

$$Q = Lm \quad (\text{heat of transformation})$$

Phase diagrams plot solid, liquid, and gas phases against temperature and pressure and reveal the **triple point**, where all three phases can coexist, and the **critical point**, where the liquid–gas distinction disappears.



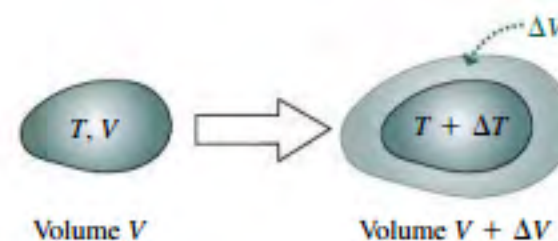
Applications

Thermal expansion is characterized by the **coefficient of volume expansion** and its linear counterpart. The volume-expansion coefficient relates the fractional volume change $\Delta V/V$ to the temperature change ΔT :

$$\beta = \frac{\Delta V/V}{\Delta T} \quad (\text{volume-expansion coefficient})$$

while the **coefficient of linear expansion** relates the fractional length $\Delta L/L$ change to ΔT :

$$\alpha = \frac{\Delta L/L}{\Delta T} \quad (\text{linear-expansion coefficient})$$



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 17.1 Describe gases quantitatively using the ideal-gas law.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 17.1, 17.2; Exercises 17.11, 17.12, 17.13, 17.14, 17.15, 17.16; Problems 17.35, 17.36, 17.37, 17.38, 17.39, 17.70, 17.73</i></p> <p>LO 17.2 Describe the distribution of molecular speeds and deviations from ideal-gas behavior.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 17.3, 17.4, 17.5; Exercise 17.17; Problems 17.74, 17.75</i></p> <p>LO 17.3 Determine energies involved in phase changes.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 17.7, 17.8; Exercises 17.18, 17.19, 17.20, 17.21; Problems 17.40,</i></p> | <p><i>17.41, 17.42, 17.43, 17.44, 17.45, 17.46, 17.47, 17.48, 17.49, 17.50, 17.51, 17.52, 17.53, 17.54, 17.55, 17.56, 17.62, 17.63, 17.72</i></p> <p>LO 17.4 Analyze phase diagrams.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 17.9</i></p> <p>LO 17.5 Calculate thermal expansion and contraction of materials, including water.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 17.6, 17.10; Exercises 17.22, 17.23, 17.24, 17.25, 17.26; Problems 17.57, 17.58, 17.59, 17.60, 17.61, 17.64, 17.65, 17.66, 17.67, 17.68, 17.69, 17.71</i></p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- If the volume of an ideal gas is increased, must the pressure drop proportionately? Explain.
- Why are you supposed to check tire pressure when your tires are cold?
- Why is it essential to keep a small gap between consecutive strips of metal on railway tracks?
- Suppose you start running while holding a closed jar of air. Do you change the average speed of the air molecules? The average velocity? The temperature?
- Two different gases are at the same temperature, and both have low enough densities that they behave like ideal gases. Do their molecules have the same thermal speeds? Explain.
- In making a snowman, how do two snowballs stick together when they are pressed and then released?
- Ice and water have been together in a glass for a long time. Is the water hotter than the ice?
- Which takes more heat: melting a gram of ice already at 0°C , or bringing the melted water to the boiling point?
- The triple point of water occurs at a precise temperature, but the freezing point doesn't. Why the difference?
- A bimetallic strip consists of thin pieces of brass and steel bonded together (Fig. 17.10). What happens when the strip is heated? (*Hint: Consult Table 17.2.*)



FIGURE 17.10 For Thought and Discussion 10

- What's the pressure of an ideal gas if 2.9 mol of the gas occupy 2.2 L at -130°C ?
- Your professor asks you to order a tank of argon gas for a lab experiment. You obtain a "type C" gas cylinder with interior volume 6.88 L. The supplier claims it contains 45 mol of argon. You measure its pressure to be 14 MPa at room temperature (20°C). Did you get what you paid for?
- (a) If 2.0 mol of an ideal gas are initially at temperature 250 K and pressure 1.5 atm, what's the gas volume? (b) The pressure is now increased to 4.0 atm, and the gas volume drops to half its initial value. What's the new temperature?
- A pressure of 10^{-10} Pa is readily achievable with laboratory vacuum apparatus. If the residual air in this "vacuum" is at 0°C , how many air molecules are in 1 L?
- In which gas are the molecules moving faster: hydrogen at 75 K or sulfur dioxide at 350 K?

Section 17.2 Phase Changes

- How much energy does it take to melt a 63-g ice cube?
- It takes 200 J to melt an 8.0-g sample of one of the substances in Table 17.1. What's the substance?
- If it takes 920 kJ to vaporize a sample of liquid oxygen, how large is the sample?
- Carbon dioxide *sublimes* (changes from solid to gas) at 195 K. The heat of sublimation is 573 kJ/kg. How much heat must be extracted from 295 g of CO_2 gas at 195 K in order to solidify it?

Section 17.3 Thermal Expansion

- A power line wire spans 250 m between two support towers. The wire is made of aluminum, and on a winter day when the temperature is -12°C the wire's actual length is 250.42 m. By how much does its length increase on a summer day when it's 29.5°C ?
- You have exactly 1.00 L of ethyl alcohol at room temperature (23°C). You put it in a refrigerator at 4°C . What's its new volume?
- A Pyrex glass marble is 1.00000 cm in diameter at 20°C . What will be its diameter at 85°C ?
- At 0°C , the hole in a steel washer is 9.52 mm in diameter. To what temperature must it be heated in order to fit over a 9.55-mm-diameter bolt?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 17.1 Gases

- Mars's atmospheric pressure is about 1% that of Earth, and its average temperature is around 215 K. Find the volume of 1 mol of the Martian atmosphere.
- How many molecules are in an ideal-gas sample at 390 K that occupies 9.5 L when the pressure is 210 kPa?

26. Suppose a single piece of welded steel railroad track stretched 5000 km across the Sahara desert. If the track were free to expand, by how much would its length change if the entire track went from a night temperature of -3°C to a day temperature of 37°C ?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two worked examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

27. **Example 17.1:** Typical atmospheric pressure at the summit of Earth's highest mountain (Chomolungma, or Everest) is 33.7 kPa, and even the warmest month (July) has an average temperature of -19°C . Find the volume occupied by 1.00 mol of air under these conditions.
28. **Example 17.1:** Mountaineers take a 10.0-mL sample of air on a mountaintop and measure its temperature and pressure to be -5.50°C and 76.4 kPa, respectively. (a) What's the density of the air in moles per liter, and (b) how does that compare with the density at STP as determined in Example 17.1?
29. **Example 17.1:** In 2005 the *Cassini* spacecraft's *Huygens* probe became the first human artifact to land on a body in the outer solar system. *Huygens* touched down on Saturn's moon Titan, where it recorded a surface temperature of -180°C and a surface pressure 1.47 times that of standard atmospheric pressure on Earth. Find the volume occupied by 1.00 mol of Titan's atmosphere.
30. **Example 17.1:** The solar corona is the Sun's hot, diffuse outer atmosphere. Typical coronal conditions include a temperature of 1 MK and a density of 10^8 particles per cm^3 . Make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the ratio of the pressure in the corona to atmospheric pressure at Earth's surface.
31. **Example 17.4:** Repeat the calculation of Example 17.4 with an initial ice mass of 66 g.
32. **Example 17.4:** Find the minimum mass of ice that could be added to the water in Example 17.4 in order to end up with a final temperature of 0°C .
33. **Example 17.4:** A mountain glacier ends in a small lake that holds $185,000 \text{ m}^3$ of water, initially at 6.40°C . An iceberg with mass $17.3 \times 10^6 \text{ kg}$, initially at -10.0°C , calves off the glacier and floats in the lake. Assuming no energy exchanges except those between the lake water and the iceberg, determine the final temperature and how much, if any, ice remains.
34. **Example 17.4:** Find the minimum mass for the iceberg in the preceding problem that will ensure an equilibrium temperature of 0°C .
- (a) How many moles of air are in the cylinder? (b) What volume would this air occupy at 1.0 atm and room temperature?
38. You're a lawyer with an unusual case. A whipped-cream can burst at a wedding, damaging the groom's expensive tuxedo. The can warned against temperatures in excess of 55°C , and the manufacturer has evidence that it reached 60°C . You don't contest this, but you point out that the can was only half full of cream when it burst, meaning that the gas propellant had available more than twice the volume it would in a full can and that some of the propellant had already been used. You argue that the real safety criterion is pressure and that the can's maximum pressure wasn't exceeded. Who's right?
39. A 3800-mL flask is initially open in a room containing air at 1.00 atm and 20°C . The flask is then closed and immersed in boiling water. When the air in the flask has reached thermodynamic equilibrium, the flask is opened, and air is allowed to escape. The flask is then closed and cooled back to 20°C . Find (a) the maximum pressure reached in the flask, (b) the number of moles that escape when air is released, and (c) the final pressure in the flask.
40. **BIO** The recommended treatment for frostbite is rapid heating in a water bath. Suppose a frostbitten hand with mass 150 g is immersed in water that conducts energy into the hand at the rate of 750 W. Treating the hand as essentially water, initially frozen solid, how long will it take for it to thaw and return to body temperature (37°C)?
41. A stove burner supplies heat to a pan at the rate of 1200 W. How long will it take to boil away 2.0 kg of water once the water reaches its boiling point?
42. If a 1-megaton nuclear bomb were exploded deep in the Greenland ice cap, how much ice would it melt? Assume the ice is initially at about its freezing point, and consult Appendix C for the appropriate energy conversion.
43. A metal-cutting torch produces 2.35 kW of thermal power. Assuming that 45.0% of the torch's power goes into melting metal, how long would it take the torch to melt a 2.00-cm-diameter hole through a 9.00-cm-thick piece of stainless steel? The steel's heat of fusion is 268 kJ/kg, and its density is 7970 kg/m^3 .
44. **EW** At winter's end, Lake Superior's surface is frozen to a depth of 1.3 m; the ice density is 917 kg/m^3 . (a) How much energy does it take to melt the ice? (b) If the ice disappears in 3 weeks, what's the average power supplied to melt it?
45. A refrigerator extracts energy from its contents at the rate of 97 W. How long will it take to freeze 750 g of water already at 0°C ?
46. **EW** Climatologists have recently recognized that black carbon (soot) from burning fossil fuels and biomass contributes significantly to arctic warming. You're asked to determine whether this effect might cause ice to melt that would normally stay frozen year-round. Consider an ice layer 2.5 m thick that normally reflects 90% of the incident solar energy and absorbs the rest. Suppose black carbon darkens the ice so it now reflects only 50% of the incident solar energy. The arctic summertime solar input averages 300 W/m^2 . You can assume 0°C for the initial ice temperature, and an ice density of 917 kg/m^3 . What do you conclude?
47. How much energy does it take to melt 12.5 kg of ice initially at -10°C ?
48. Water is brought to its boiling point and then allowed to boil away completely. If the energy needed to raise the water to the boiling point is one-tenth of that needed to boil it away, what was the initial temperature?
49. **EW** Repeat Problem 54 of Chapter 16, but now find the time from the injection of the 10°C seawater until that water boils entirely away. Assume there's no replenishment of the water. (Much of the fuel

Problems

35. The solar corona is a hot (2 MK) extended atmosphere surrounding the Sun's cooler visible surface. The coronal gas pressure is about 0.03 Pa. What's the coronal density in particles per cubic meter? Compare with Earth's atmosphere.
36. A helium balloon occupies 7.4 L at 20°C and 1.0-atm pressure. The balloon rises to an altitude where the air pressure is 0.70 atm and the temperature is -10°C . What's its volume when it reaches equilibrium at the new altitude?
37. A compressed air cylinder stands 100 cm tall and has internal diameter 20.0 cm. At room temperature, the pressure is 180 atm.

- in reactor units 1, 2, and 3 at Fukushima melted, although water loss by leakage also contributed to the meltdowns.)
50. A bowl contains 14 kg of punch (essentially water) at a warm 31°C . What's the minimum amount of ice at 0°C needed to cool the punch to 0°C ?
 51. A 50-g ice cube at -10°C is placed in an equal mass of water. What must the initial water temperature be if the final mixture still contains equal amounts of ice and water?
 52. Evaporation of sweat is the human body's cooling mechanism. **BIO** At body temperature, it takes 2.4 MJ/kg to evaporate water. Marathon runners typically lose about 3 L of sweat each hour. How much energy gets lost to sweating during a 2.9-hour marathon?
 53. What power is needed to melt 25 kg of ice in 10 min?
 54. You put 400 g of water at 20°C into a 600-W microwave oven and accidentally set the time for 20 min instead of 2.0 min. How much water is left at the end of 20 min?
 55. A *lava bomb* is a blob of molten lava ejected during a volcanic eruption. Suppose a 15.4-Mg lava bomb at its 984°C melting point lands in a residential swimming pool holding 20.4 Mg of water at 24.0°C . The lava's heat of fusion is 419 kJ/kg, and the specific heat of solid lava is 1.04 kJ/kg·K. (a) Will the pool water reach the boiling point? (b) If so, will it boil completely away? Neglect energy interchanges except those between the water and the lava.
 56. Describe the composition and temperature of the equilibrium mixture formed after 1.0 kg of ice at -34°C is added to 1.0 kg of water at 7.0°C .
 57. A glass marble 1.000 cm in diameter is to be dropped through a hole in a steel plate. At room temperature the hole diameter is 0.998 cm. By how much must the plate's temperature be raised so the marble will fit through the hole?
 58. A thermometer uses ethyl alcohol, dyed red for visibility. The thermometer tube itself has an inside diameter of 0.167 mm, and at the bottom is a bulb of much greater diameter that contains most of the alcohol. What should be the volume of alcohol in the bulb in order that a temperature increase of exactly 1°C moves the alcohol level up exactly 1 mm in the tube? Neglect expansion of the glass itself.
 59. A steel ball bearing is encased in a Pyrex glass cube 1.0 cm on a side. At 380 K, the ball bearing fits tightly inside the cube. At what temperature will it have a clearance of 1.0 μm all around?
 60. Fuel systems of modern cars are designed so thermal expansion **ENW** of gasoline doesn't result in wasteful and polluting fuel spills. As an engineer, you're asked to specify the size of an expansion tank that will handle this overflow. You know that gasoline comes from its underground storage at 10°C , and your expansion tank must handle the expansion of a full 50-L gas tank when the gas reaches a hot summer day's temperature of 35°C . How large an expansion tank do you specify?
 61. A rod of length L_0 is clamped rigidly at both ends. Its temperature increases by ΔT , and in the ensuing expansion, it cracks to form two straight pieces, as shown in Fig. 17.11. Find an expression for the distance d shown in the figure, in terms of L_0 , ΔT , and the linear expansion coefficient α .
 62. You're home from college on vacation, and there's a power failure. The power company says it will be 10 hours before it's repaired. Your parents send you out to buy ice to keep the 'fridge cold. You look up the thermal resistance of the refrigerator's walls; it's 0.12 K/W. If room temperature is 20°C , how much ice should you buy?
 63. A solar-heated house stores energy in 5.0 tons of Glauber salt **ENW** ($\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4 \cdot 10\text{H}_2\text{O}$), which melts at 90°F . The heat of fusion of Glauber salt is 104 Btu/lb, and the specific heats of the solid and liquid are, respectively, 0.46 Btu/lb·°F and 0.68 Btu/lb·°F. After a week of sunny weather, the storage medium is all liquid at 95°F . Then comes a cloudy period during which the house loses heat at an average of 20,000 Btu/h. (a) How long is it before the temperature of the storage medium drops below 60°F ? (b) How much of this time is spent at 90°F ?
 64. Show that the coefficient of volume expansion of an ideal gas at constant pressure is the reciprocal of its kelvin temperature.
 65. Water's coefficient of volume expansion in the temperature range from 0°C to about 20°C is given approximately by $\beta = a + bT + cT^2$, where T is in Celsius and $a = -6.43 \times 10^{-5}^{\circ}\text{C}^{-1}$, $b = 1.70 \times 10^{-5}^{\circ}\text{C}^{-2}$, and $c = -2.02 \times 10^{-7}^{\circ}\text{C}^{-3}$. Show that water has its greatest density at approximately 4.0°C .
 66. When the expansion coefficient varies with temperature, **CH** Equation 17.6 is written $\beta = (1/V)(dV/dT)$. If a sample of water occupies 1.60000 L at 0°C , find its volume at 20°C (*Hint*: Use the information from Problem 65, and integrate the equation above.)
 67. A 100-mL graduated cylinder is made from Pyrex glass and contains 50.000 mL of water at 50°C . If the temperature of the water and the cylinder is raised by exactly 25°C , what will the cylinder measure for the new volume of water? Do not neglect thermal expansion of the cylinder itself, but do neglect variations in the expansion coefficients with temperature.
 68. The timekeeping of a grandfather clock is regulated by a brass **CH** pendulum 1.35 m long. If the clock is accurate at 20°C but is in a room at 17°C , how soon will the clock be off by 1 minute? Will it be fast or slow?
 69. Prove the equation $\beta = 3\alpha$ (Section 17.3) by considering a cube of side s and therefore volume $V = s^3$ that undergoes a small temperature change dT and corresponding length and volume changes ds and dV .
 70. You're on a team planning a mission to Venus to collect atmospheric samples for analysis. The design specs call for a 1-L sample container, while the scientists want at least 1 mol of gas. Venus's atmospheric pressure is 90 times that of Earth's, and its average temperature is 730 K. Will the design work?
 71. Figure 17.12 shows an apparatus used to determine the linear **CH** expansion coefficient of a metal wire. The wire is attached to two points a distance d apart (you don't know d). A mass hangs from the middle of the wire. The wire's total length is 100.00 cm at 0°C . The distance y from the suspension points to the top of the mass is measured, and the results are given in the table below. (a) Find an expression for y as a function of temperature, and manipulate your expression to get a linear relation between some function of y and some function of temperature T . You'll encounter the expression L^2 , where L is the length of the wire, and, because the change in length is small, you can drop terms involving α^2 when you expand L^2 . (b) Calculate the quantities in your relation from the given data, and plot. Determine a best-fit line and use it to determine the coefficient of linear expansion α and the separation d . (c) Consult Table 17.2 to identify the metal

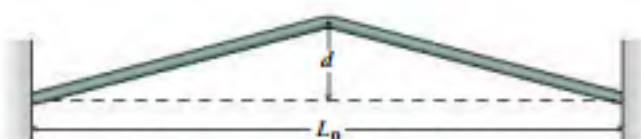


FIGURE 17.11 Problem 61

the wire is made of. Ignore any stretching of the wire due to its “springiness”; that is, consider only thermal expansion.

Temperature, T ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	0	20	40	60	80	100	120
y (cm)	30.00	30.05	30.07	30.11	30.16	30.19	30.24

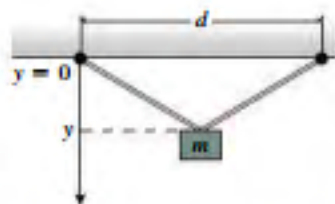


FIGURE 17.12 Problem 71

72. The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change estimates that Greenland is losing ice, as a result of global warming, at approximately 250 Pg/year. (a) Find the energy needed to melt 250 Pg of ice. (b) Greenland’s ice melt results most immediately from an imbalance between incoming and outgoing energy—an imbalance created largely by the absorption of infrared radiation by human-produced greenhouse gases. Use your answer to part (a) to express Greenland’s energy imbalance in watts per square meter of the Greenland ice sheet’s surface area. That your result is larger than the global imbalance of somewhat less than 1 W/m² shows that the impact of global warming is greater in the Arctic.
73. (a) Show that, for an ideal gas, the speed of sound given by Equation 14.9 can be written $v_{\text{sound}} = \sqrt{\gamma kT/m}$. (b) For diatomic gases like N₂ and O₂ that are the dominant constituents of air, $\gamma = 7/5$. Use your result to show that, for diatomic gases, the speed of sound is about 68% of the thermal speed given by Equation 17.4.
74. The Maxwell–Boltzmann distribution, plotted in Fig. 17.4, is given by

$$N(v) \Delta v = 4\pi N \left(\frac{m}{2\pi kT} \right)^{3/2} v^2 e^{-mv^2/2kT} \Delta v$$

where $N(v)\Delta v$ is the number of molecules in a small speed range Δv around speed v , N is the total number of molecules in the gas, m is the molecular mass, k is Boltzmann’s constant, and T is the temperature. Use this equation to show that the most probable speed for a gas molecule—the speed at the peak of the curves in Fig. 17.4—is $\sqrt{2kT/m}$. Note that the thermal speed (Equation 17.4), which is the *average* molecular speed, is a factor of $\sqrt{3/2}$ or about 20% greater than the most probable speed—a fact that reflects the long, high-energy “tail” of the Maxwell–Boltzmann distribution.

75. At high gas densities, the *van der Waals equation* modifies the ideal-gas law to account for nonzero molecular volume and for the van der Waals force that we discussed in Section 17.1. The van der Waals equation is

$$\left(p + \frac{n^2 a}{V^2} \right) (V - nb) = nRT$$

where a and b are constants that depend on the particular gas. For nitrogen (N₂), $a = 0.14 \text{ Pa} \cdot \text{m}^6/\text{mol}^2$ and $b = 3.91 \times 10^{-5} \text{ m}^3/\text{mol}$. For 1.000 mol of N₂ at 10.00 atm pressure, confined to a volume of 2.000 L, find the temperatures predicted (a) by the ideal-gas law and (b) by the van der Waals equation.

Passage Problems

A *pressure cooker* is a sealed pot that cooks food much faster than most other methods because increased pressure allows water to reach higher temperatures than the normal boiling point (Fig. 17.13). Pressure cookers afford many advantages: faster cooking, lower energy consumption, and less vitamin loss. The pressure-cooker principle is also used in autoclaves for sterilizing surgical instruments in hospitals and equipment in biology labs.



FIGURE 17.13 A pressure cooker (Passage Problems 76–79)

76. In water’s phase diagram (Fig. 17.9), normal boiling occurs at a point on the line between the triple point and the critical point. In a pressure cooker, boiling occurs
- at a point in the diagram directly above where it normally occurs.
 - higher up on the line between the triple and critical points.
 - at a point directly to the right of where it normally occurs.
 - beyond the critical point.
77. A typical pressure cooker operates at twice normal atmospheric pressure, raising water’s boiling point to about 120°C. Compared with steam at 1 atm and the normal 100°C boiling point, the density of steam in a pressure cooker is
- double.
 - somewhat more than double.
 - somewhat less than double.
 - quadruple.
78. Because some pathogens can survive 120°C temperatures, medical autoclaves typically operate at 3 atm pressure, where water boils at 134°C. Based on this information and that given in the preceding problem, you can conclude that
- Fig. 17.9’s depiction of the liquid–gas interface for water is correct in being concave upward.
 - Fig. 17.9’s liquid–gas interface should actually be concave downward.
 - autoclaves operate above the critical point.
 - at its operating temperature, there can’t be any liquid water in the autoclave.
79. A pressure cooker has a regulating mechanism that releases steam so as to maintain constant pressure. If that mechanism became clogged,
- the pressure would nevertheless level off once water in the cooker began to boil.
 - the pressure would continue to rise although the temperature would remain constant.
 - both temperature and pressure would continue to rise.
 - the density of the steam would decrease.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Water’s solid phase is less dense than the liquid, which causes ice to float. Our world would be a very different place if ice were denser than water.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

17.1 (a)

17.2 (c)

17.3 (a) The hole gets larger because all of the object’s linear dimensions expand equally.

Heat, Work, and the First Law of Thermodynamics

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 18.1 Describe the first law of thermodynamics as a statement of energy conservation.
- LO 18.2 Calculate the work done by or on an ideal gas for different thermodynamic processes.
- LO 18.3 Determine values of pressure and temperature during different thermodynamic processes.
- LO 18.4 Explain the specific heats of ideal gases based on their molecular structure.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The concept of work (Sections 6.2 and 6.3)
- The concept of pressure (Section 15.1)
- The ideal-gas law (Section 17.1)

In Chapter 7, we introduced the powerful idea that energy is conserved, and we developed the principle of energy conservation as a quantitative statement for mechanical energy in the presence of conservative forces. We also introduced nonconservative forces and briefly described their role in converting mechanical energy into the random molecular energy that we call **internal energy**. In Chapters 16 and 17 you've learned that thermal processes involve energy—a realization that sets the stage for us to extend the conservation-of-energy principle to encompass thermodynamic systems. In this chapter, we'll explore this broader principle of energy conservation and see how it describes energy interchanges in systems ranging from engines to atmospheres.

18.1 The First Law of Thermodynamics

LO 18.1 Describe the first law of thermodynamics as a statement of energy conservation.

Figure 18.1 shows two ways to raise the temperature in a beaker of water: by heating with a flame and by stirring vigorously with a spoon. Using the flame involves heat—energy in transit because of the temperature difference between flame and water. But there's no temperature difference between spoon and water; here the energy transfer occurs because the spoon does mechanical work on the water. We already know that doing work can increase the kinetic or potential energy of a macroscopic object; here we see it, instead,



A jet engine converts the energy of burning fuel into mechanical energy. How does energy conservation apply in this process?

changing the internal energy associated with the motions of individual molecules. The point is that both processes—heating and mechanical work—result in exactly the same final state—namely, water with a higher temperature and therefore greater internal energy. It's this common result that made possible Joule's quantitative identification of heat as a form of energy (Fig. 18.2).

Keep track of all the energy entering and leaving a system—both heat and work—and you'll find that the change in the system's internal energy depends only on the net energy transferred. In one sense this is hardly surprising; it just extends the idea of energy conservation to include heat. But in another way it's remarkable; it doesn't matter at all *how* the energy gets into the system—heat, work, or some combination of the two. This statement constitutes the **first law of thermodynamics**:

First law of thermodynamics The change in the internal energy of a system depends only on the net heat transferred to the system and the net work done on the system, independent of the particular processes involved.

Mathematically, the first law is

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q + W \quad (\text{first law of thermodynamics}) \quad (18.1)$$

ΔE_{int} is the change in a system's internal energy. Q is heat that flows into the system... and W is work done on the system.

The equality shows that energy is conserved.

where ΔE_{int} is the change in a system's internal energy, Q the heat transferred to the system, and W the work done on the system.* The first law says that the change in a system's internal energy doesn't depend on how the energy gets transferred, but only on the net energy. Internal energy is therefore a **thermodynamic state variable**, meaning a quantity that helps characterize the state of a thermodynamic system. Thermodynamic state variables are important because their values don't depend on how a system got into its particular state. The first law shows that this is the case for internal energy, which is why E_{int} is a state variable. Other state variables include temperature and pressure. Heat and work, in contrast, aren't state variables because they describe processes—flows of energy—and not the state of a system.

We're frequently concerned with *rates* of energy flow. Differentiating the first law with respect to time gives a statement about rates:

$$\frac{dE_{\text{int}}}{dt} = \frac{dQ}{dt} + \frac{dW}{dt} \quad (18.2)$$

where dE_{int}/dt is the rate of change of a system's internal energy, dQ/dt the rate of heat transfer to the system, and dW/dt the rate at which work is done on the system.

*Some older books define W as the work done *by* the system, in which case there's a minus sign in the first law. This is because the law was first introduced in connection with engines, which take in heat and put out mechanical work.

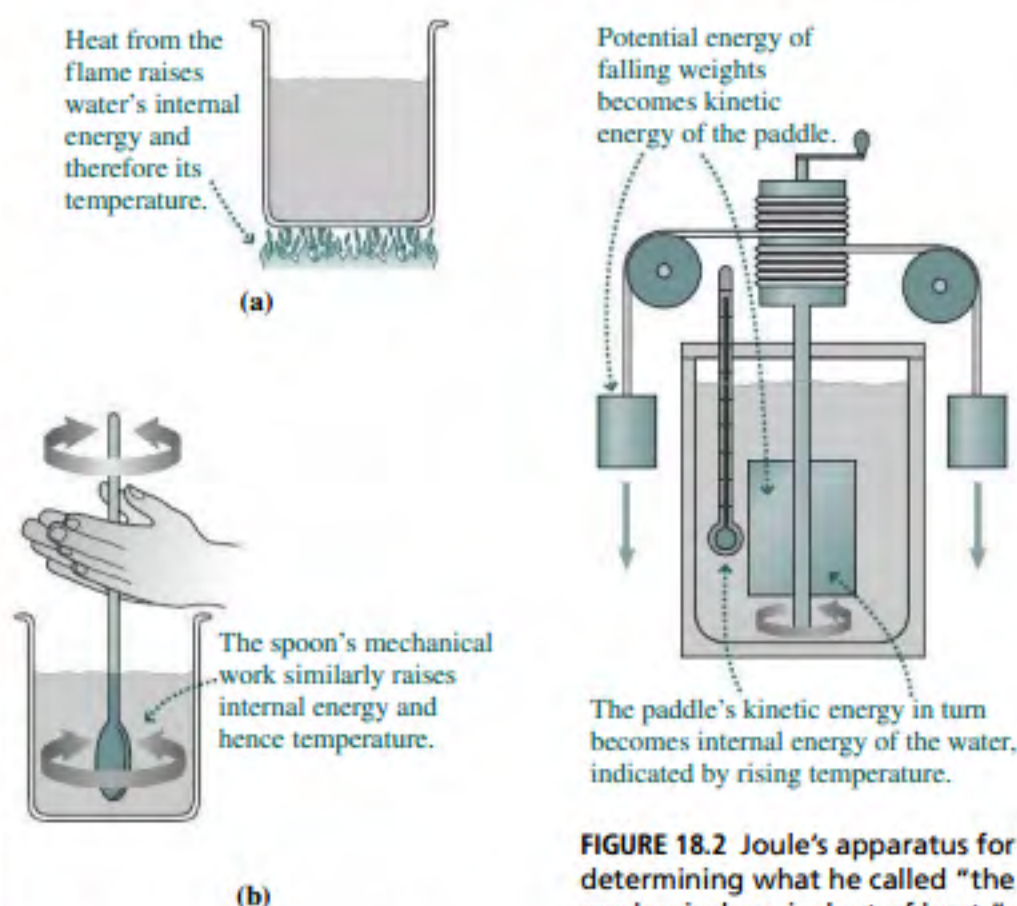


FIGURE 18.2 Joule's apparatus for determining what he called "the mechanical equivalent of heat."

EXAMPLE 18.1 The First Law of Thermodynamics: Thermal Pollution

The reactor in a nuclear power plant supplies energy at the rate of 3.0 GW, boiling water to produce steam that turns a turbine-generator. The spent steam is then condensed through thermal contact with water taken from a river. If the power plant produces electrical energy at the rate of 1.0 GW, at what rate is heat transferred to the river?

INTERPRET This problem is about heat and mechanical energy, which are related by the first law of thermodynamics. We identify the system as the entire power plant, comprising the nuclear reactor, including its fuel, and the turbine-generator. We identify E_{int} as the energy in the fuel, W as the mechanical work that ends up as electrical energy, and Q as the heat transferred to the river.

DEVELOP Since we're dealing here with *rates*, Equation 18.2, $dE_{\text{int}}/dt = dQ/dt + dW/dt$, applies. The reactor extracts energy from its fuel, so the rate dE_{int}/dt is negative. The power plant delivers electrical energy to the outside world, so it's *doing* work; since W in the first law is the work done *on* the system, dW/dt is therefore *negative*. Our plan is then to solve for dQ/dt , the rate of energy transfer to the river.

EVALUATE Solving, we have

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = \frac{dE_{\text{int}}}{dt} - \frac{dW}{dt} = -3.0 \text{ GW} - (-1.0 \text{ GW}) = -2.0 \text{ GW}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Since positive Q represents heat transferred *to* the system, the minus sign shows that heat is transferred *from* the power plant to the river at the rate of 2 GW. The numbers here are typical for large nuclear and coal-burning power plants, and show that about two-thirds of the energy extracted from the fuel is wasted in heating the environment. We'll see in the next chapter just why this waste occurs.



IDENTIFY THE SYSTEM The first law of thermodynamics deals with energy flows into and out of a system. We first introduced the system concept in the context of energy in our discussion surrounding Fig. 6.1. Here, as there, it's up to you to define the system. How you do so affects the meanings of the terms in the first law. In this example we included the nuclear reactor, with the internal energy of its fuel, as part of the system. If we had considered only the turbine-generator, then we would have had 3 GW of heat coming in from the reactor and no change in internal energy. But the result would be the same: 1 GW going out as electricity and 2 GW of heat dumped into the river.

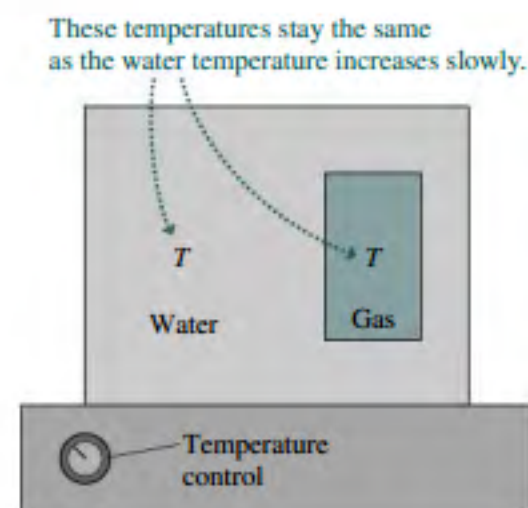


FIGURE 18.3 A quasi-static, or reversible, process keeps water and gas always in equilibrium.

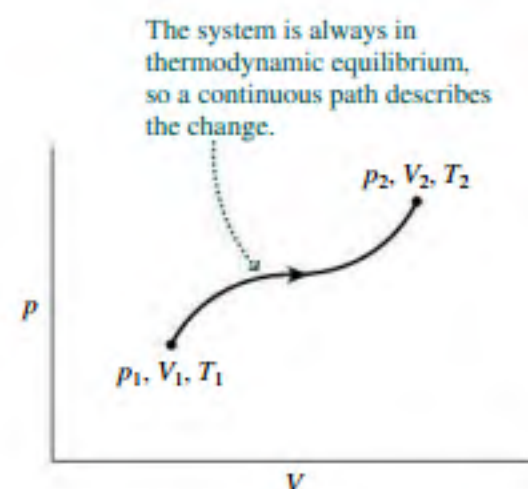


FIGURE 18.4 The pV diagram of a system undergoing quasi-static change.

18.2 Thermodynamic Processes

LO 18.2 Calculate the work done by or on an ideal gas for different thermodynamic processes.

LO 18.3 Determine values of pressure and temperature during different thermodynamic processes.

Although the first law applies to *any* system, it's easiest to understand when applied to an ideal gas. The ideal-gas law relates the temperature, pressure, and volume of a given gas sample: $pV = nRT$. The thermodynamic state is completely determined by any two of the quantities p , V , or T . We'll find it convenient to represent different states as points on a **pV diagram**—a graph whose vertical and horizontal axes represent pressure and volume, respectively.

Reversible and Irreversible Processes

Imagine a gas sample immersed in a large reservoir of water and allowed to come to equilibrium (Fig. 18.3). If we then raise the reservoir temperature very slowly, both water and gas temperatures will rise essentially in unison, and the gas will remain in equilibrium. Such a slow change is called a **quasi-static process**. Because a system undergoing a quasi-static process is always in thermodynamic equilibrium, its evolution from one state to another is described by a continuous sequence of points—a curve—in its pV diagram (Fig. 18.4).

We could reverse this heating process by slowly lowering the reservoir temperature; the gas would cool, reversing its path in the pV diagram. For that reason, a quasi-static process is also a **reversible process**. A process like suddenly plunging a cool gas sample into hot water is, in contrast, **irreversible**. During an irreversible process the system isn't in equilibrium, and thermodynamic variables like temperature and pressure don't have well-defined values. It therefore makes no sense to think of a path in the pV diagram. A process may be irreversible even though it returns a system to its original state. The distinction lies not in the end states but in the *process* that takes the system between states.

There are many ways to change a system's thermodynamic state. Here we consider important special cases involving an ideal gas. These illustrate the physical principles behind a myriad of technological devices and natural phenomena, from the operation of a gasoline engine to the propagation of a sound wave to the oscillations of a star.

Our system consists of an ideal gas confined to a cylinder sealed with a movable piston (Fig. 18.5). The piston and the cylinder walls are perfectly insulating—they block all heat transfer—and the bottom is a perfect conductor of heat. We can change the thermodynamic state of the gas mechanically by moving the piston, or thermally by transferring heat through the bottom. We'll consider only reversible processes, which we can describe by paths in the pV diagram for the gas.

Work and Volume Changes

We begin by developing an expression for the work done on a gas that holds for all processes. If our piston–cylinder system has cross-sectional area A and gas pressure p , then $F_{\text{gas}} = pA$ is the force the gas exerts on the piston. If the piston moves a small distance Δx , the gas does work $\Delta W_{\text{gas}} = F_{\text{gas}} \Delta x = pA \Delta x = p \Delta V$, where $\Delta V = A \Delta x$ is the change in gas volume (Fig. 18.6a). Our expression for the first law of thermodynamics involves the work done *on* the gas; by Newton's third law, the piston exerts a force on the gas that's equal but opposite to F_{gas} , so the work done *on* the gas is $\Delta W = -F_{\text{gas}} \Delta x = -p \Delta V$. Pressure may vary with volume, so we find the total work done as the gas goes from volume V_1 to volume V_2 by replacing ΔV with the infinitesimal quantity dV and integrating:

W is the work done on a gas as its volume changes. V_1 and V_2 are the initial and final volumes. dV is an infinitesimal change in volume.

$$W = \int dW = - \int_{V_1}^{V_2} p dV \quad (\text{work done on gas during volume change}) \quad (18.3)$$

We need to integrate whenever p varies as the volume changes. p is the gas pressure. The product $p dV$ is the infinitesimal work dW .

Figure 18.6b shows that the work done on the gas is the negative of the area under the pV curve. That work is positive if the gas is compressed ($V_2 < V_1$) and negative if it expands ($V_2 > V_1$).

We'll now explore several basic thermodynamic processes, in each case holding one thermodynamic variable constant.

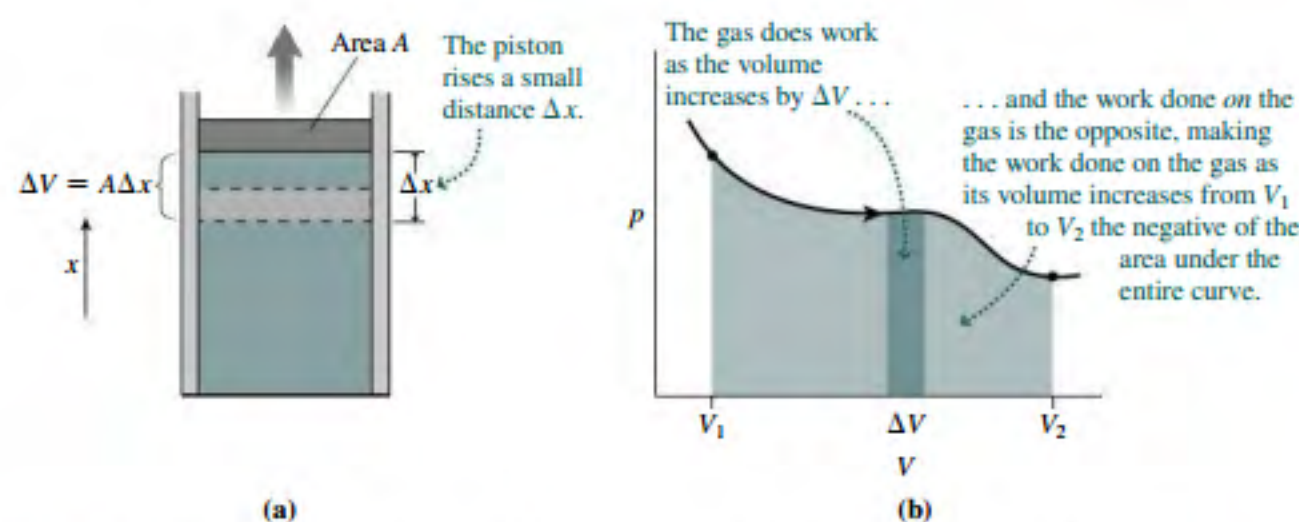


FIGURE 18.6 Work done *on* the gas as the piston rises (a) is the negative of the area under the pV curve (b).

GOT IT?

18.1 Two identical gas–cylinder systems are taken from the same initial state to the same final state, but by different processes. Which of the following is or are the same in both cases? (a) the work done on or by the gas; (b) the heat added or removed; or (c) the change in internal energy

Isothermal Processes

An **isothermal process** occurs at constant temperature. Figure 18.7 shows one way to effect an isothermal process: Place a gas cylinder in thermal contact with a heat reservoir whose temperature is constant. Then move the piston to change the gas volume, slowly

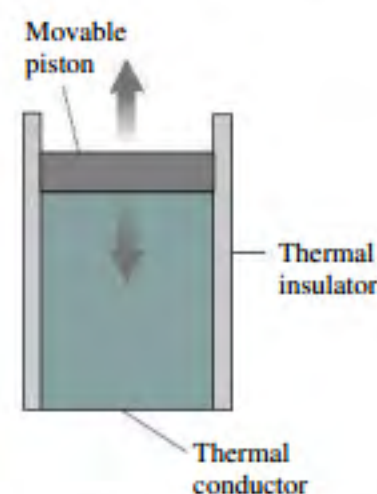


FIGURE 18.5 A gas–cylinder system with insulating walls and a conducting bottom.

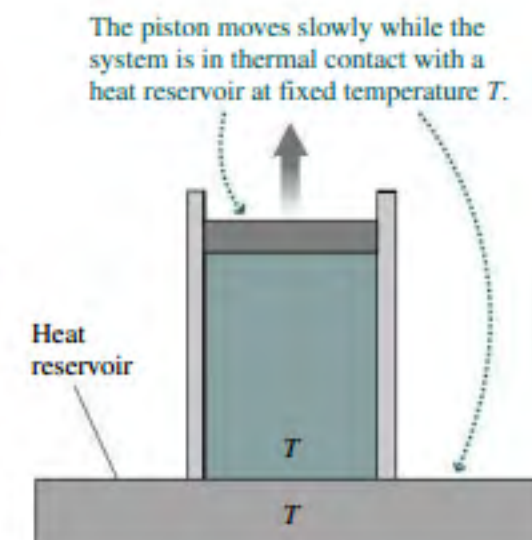
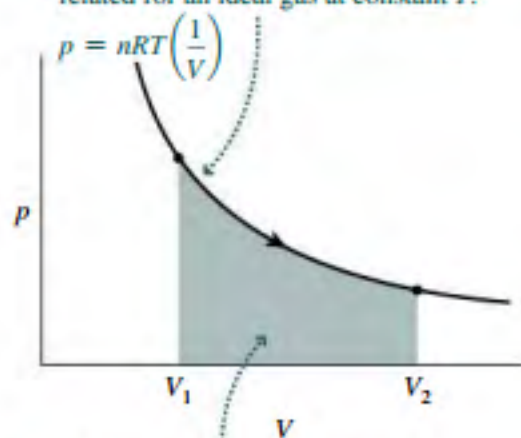


FIGURE 18.7 An isothermal process.

An isotherm is a hyperbola because pressure and volume are inversely related for an ideal gas at constant T :



Work done *on* the gas is the negative of the area under the pV curve:

$$W = -\int_{V_1}^{V_2} p dV$$

FIGURE 18.8 A pV diagram for an isothermal process.

enough that the gas remains in equilibrium with the heat reservoir. The system moves from its initial state to its final state along a curve of constant temperature—an **isotherm**—in the pV diagram (Fig. 18.8). The work done on the gas is given by Equation 18.3 and is the negative of the area under the isotherm.

To find that work, we relate pressure and volume through the ideal-gas law: $p = (nRT)/V$. Then Equation 18.3 becomes

$$W = -\int_{V_1}^{V_2} \frac{nRT}{V} dV$$

For an isothermal process, the temperature T is constant, giving

$$W = -nRT \int_{V_1}^{V_2} \frac{dV}{V} = -nRT \ln V \Big|_{V_1}^{V_2} = -nRT \ln \left(\frac{V_2}{V_1} \right)$$

The internal energy of an ideal gas consists only of the kinetic energy of its molecules, which, in turn, depends only on temperature. That dependence of internal energy on temperature alone is a defining feature of the ideal gas. Thus, there's no change in the internal energy of an ideal gas during an isothermal process. The first law of thermodynamics then gives $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = 0 = Q + W$, so

$$Q = -W = nRT \ln \left(\frac{V_2}{V_1} \right) \quad (\text{isothermal process}) \quad (18.4)$$

Q is the heat supplied to a system during an isothermal process.

W is the work done *on* the system.

This term is the natural logarithm of the ratio of final to initial volume.

$Q = -W$ because there's no change in temperature or internal energy.

n is the number of moles and T is the temperature. R is the gas constant.

Does this result $Q = -W$ make sense? Recall that Q is the heat transferred to the gas and W is the work done on it. So $-W$ is the work done *by* the gas, and our result shows that for a gas to do work without its temperature changing, it must absorb an equal amount of heat. Similarly, if work is done on the gas, it must transfer an equal amount of heat to its surroundings if it's to maintain a constant temperature.

EXAMPLE 18.2

An Isothermal Process: Bubbles! Worked Example with Variation Problems

A scuba diver is 25 m down, where the pressure is 3.5 atm. The air she exhales forms bubbles 8.0 mm in radius. How much work does each bubble do as it rises to the surface, assuming the bubbles remain at the uniform 300 K temperature of the water?

INTERPRET The constant 300 K temperature tells us we're dealing with an isothermal process.

DEVELOP Equation 18.4 determines the work: $-W = nRT \ln(V_2/V_1)$. Here $-W$ is just what we're after: the work done *by* the gas in the bubble. To use this equation, we need the quantity nRT and the volume ratio V_2/V_1 . We know p and V (actually the radius, from which we can get V) at the 25-m depth, so we can use the ideal-gas law $pV = nRT$ to get nRT and also the bubble volume just before it reaches the surface. Then we'll have everything we need to apply Equation 18.4.

EVALUATE The ideal-gas law gives $nRT = pV = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3 p$. The number of moles n doesn't change and R is a constant, so pV is itself constant in the isothermal process. That means $p_1 V_1 = p_2 V_2$, showing

that the volume expands by a factor of 3.5 as the pressure drops from 3.5 atm to 1 atm at the surface—so $V_2/V_1 = 3.5$. Then Equation 18.4 gives

$$-W = nRT \ln \left(\frac{V_2}{V_1} \right) = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3 p \ln 3.5$$

Using the 8-mm bubble radius and the 3.5-atm pressure gives 0.95 J for the work. In this calculation we needed the pressure in SI units, which we got using the conversion 1 atm = 101.3 kPa. When we found the volume ratio, any units would do because V_2/V_1 followed from the pressure ratio p_1/p_2 .

ASSESS Make sense? The work $-W$ done *by* the gas is positive because an expanding bubble pushes water outward and ultimately upward. It therefore raises the ocean's gravitational potential energy. When the bubble breaks, this excess potential energy becomes kinetic energy, appearing as small waves on the water surface. The bubble, in turn, gets its energy from heat that flows in to keep it at constant temperature. Energy is conserved!

Constant-Volume Processes and Specific Heat

A **constant-volume process** (also called isometric, isochoric, or isovolumic) occurs in a rigid closed container whose volume can't change. We could tightly clamp the piston in Fig. 18.5 for a constant-volume process. Because the piston doesn't move, the gas does no work, and the first law becomes simply $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q$. To express this result in terms of a temperature change ΔT , we introduce the **molar specific heat at constant volume** C_V , defined by

$$Q = nC_V \Delta T \quad (\text{constant-volume process}) \quad (18.5)$$

where n is the number of moles. This molar specific heat is like the specific heat defined in Chapter 16, except it's per mole rather than per unit mass. Using Equation 18.5 for Q in our first-law statement $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q$ gives

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = nC_V \Delta T \quad (\text{any process}) \quad (18.6)$$

For an ideal gas, the internal energy is a function of temperature alone, so $\Delta E_{\text{int}}/\Delta T$ has the same value no matter what process the gas undergoes. Therefore, Equation 18.6, relating the temperature change ΔT and internal-energy change ΔE_{int} , applies not only to a constant-volume process but to *any* ideal-gas process. Why, then, have we been so careful to label C_V the specific heat *at constant volume*? Although Equation 18.6, $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = nC_V \Delta T$, holds for any process, it's only when there's no work that the first law lets us write $Q = \Delta E_{\text{int}}$, and therefore only for a constant-volume process that Equation 18.5 holds.

Isobaric Processes and Specific Heat

Isobaric means constant pressure. Processes occurring in systems exposed to the atmosphere are essentially isobaric. In a reversible isobaric process, a system moves along an isobar, or curve of constant pressure, in its pV diagram (Fig. 18.9). The work done on the gas as the volume changes from V_1 to V_2 is the negative of the rectangular area under the isobar, or

$$W = -p(V_2 - V_1) = -p \Delta V \quad (18.7)$$

a result we could obtain formally by integrating Equation 18.3.

Solving the first law (Equation 18.1) for Q and using our expression for work gives $Q = \Delta E_{\text{int}} - W = \Delta E_{\text{int}} + p \Delta V$. For an ideal gas, we've just found that the change in internal energy is $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = nC_V \Delta T$ for *any* process. Therefore, $Q = nC_V \Delta T + p \Delta V$ for an ideal gas undergoing an isobaric process. We define the **molar specific heat at constant pressure** C_p as the heat required to raise 1 mol of gas by 1 K at constant pressure, or $Q = nC_p \Delta T$. Equating our two expressions for Q gives

$$nC_p \Delta T = nC_V \Delta T + p \Delta V \quad (\text{isobaric process}) \quad (18.8)$$

This is a useful form for calculating temperature changes in an isobaric process if we know both specific heats C_p and C_V . However, we really need only one of these specific heats because a simple relation holds between the two. The ideal-gas law, $pV = nRT$, allows us to write $p \Delta V = nR \Delta T$ for an isobaric process. Using this expression in Equation 18.8 gives $nC_p \Delta T = nC_V \Delta T + nR \Delta T$, so

$$C_p = C_V + R \quad (\text{molar specific heats}) \quad (18.9)$$

Does this make sense? Specific heat measures the heat needed to cause a given temperature change. In a constant-volume process, no work is done and all the heat goes into raising the internal energy and thus the temperature of an ideal gas. In a constant-pressure process, work *is* done and some of the added heat ends up as mechanical energy, leaving less available for raising the temperature. Therefore, a constant-pressure process requires *more* heat for a given temperature change. Thus the specific heat at constant pressure is greater than at constant volume, as reflected in Equation 18.9.

Why didn't we distinguish specific heats at constant volume and constant pressure earlier? Because we were concerned mostly with solids and liquids, whose coefficients of expansion are far lower than those of gases. As a result, much less work is done by a solid or liquid than by a gas. Since work is what gives rise to the difference between C_V and C_p , the

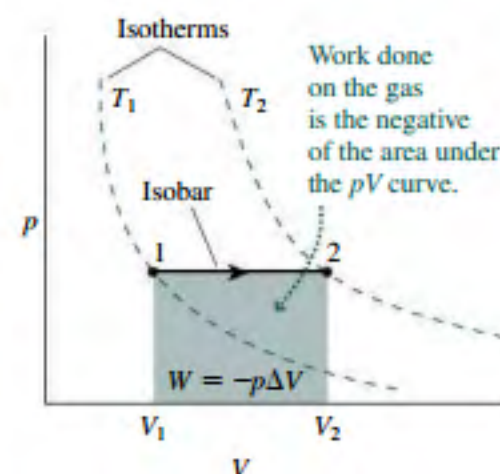


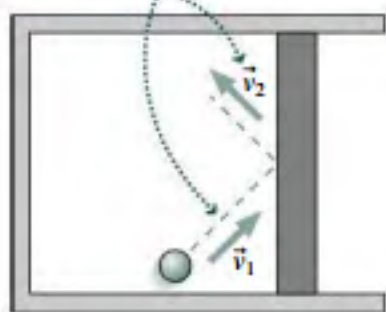
FIGURE 18.9 A pV diagram for an isobaric process; also shown are isotherms for the initial and final temperatures.

Application BOILING WATER

You slip a mug of water into the microwave to boil for tea, or you put a pot of water on the stove to cook pasta. Boiling water is an example of an isobaric process, because the water is exposed to atmospheric pressure as it boils. At its normal 100°C boiling point, water's volume increases some 2000-fold as it goes from liquid to vapor. According to Equation 18.7, the work done *by* the gas as it expands is $p \Delta V$. That 2000-fold expansion means that ΔV is very nearly the same as the final volume V , so the work done by the gas is essentially pV . Then the ideal-gas law in the form of Equation 17.2, $pV = nRT$, implies that the work done per mole of gas is RT . With $T = 100^\circ\text{C}$ or 373 K , that amounts to some 3.1 kJ/mol . Converting moles to kg of H_2O gives an equivalent of 170 kJ/kg . The energy needed to do that work must be included in the heat of vaporization, which we introduced in Chapter 17. There, Table 17.1 gave 2257 kJ/kg as water's heat of vaporization at its boiling point. Our 170 kJ/kg shows that only about 8% of the energy supplied to boil water goes into expanding the vaporized water against atmospheric pressure. The rest is due largely to the breaking of the hydrogen bonds that keep H_2O molecules close together in the liquid state.

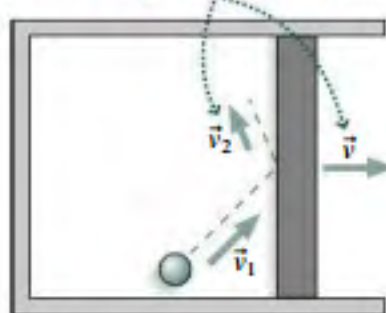


Molecules rebound with the same speed, and the gas's internal energy doesn't change.



(a) Stationary piston

Rebounding molecules have lower speed as energy is transferred to the outward-moving piston. With the decrease in internal energy comes a drop in temperature.



(b) Moving piston

FIGURE 18.10 In an adiabatic expansion, a gas does work on the piston and its internal energy decreases. Part (b) shows microscopically how this occurs.

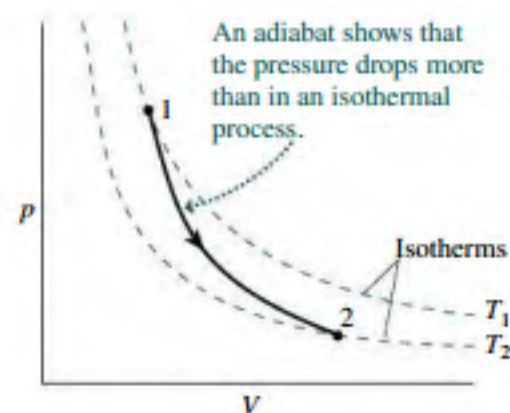


FIGURE 18.11 A pV curve for an adiabatic expansion (dark curve).

distinction is less significant for solids and liquids. As a practical matter, measured specific heats are usually at constant pressure.

Adiabatic Processes

In an **adiabatic process**, no heat flows between a system and its environment. The way to achieve this is to surround the system with perfect thermal insulation. Even without insulation, processes that occur quickly are often approximately adiabatic because they're over before significant heat transfer has had time to occur. In a gasoline engine, for example, compression of the gasoline-air mixture and expansion of the combustion products are nearly adiabatic because they occur so rapidly that little heat flows through the cylinder walls.

Since the heat Q is zero in an adiabatic process, the first law becomes simply

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = W \quad (\text{adiabatic process}) \quad (18.10)$$

ΔE_{int} is the change in a system's internal energy. W is the work done on the system.

Because there's no heat flow Q during an adiabatic process, the first law equates ΔE_{int} and W .

This says that if we do work on a system and there's no heat transfer, then the system must gain an equal amount of internal energy. Conversely, if the system does work on its environment, then it loses internal energy (Fig. 18.10).

As a gas expands adiabatically, its volume increases while its internal energy and temperature decrease. The ideal-gas law, $pV = nRT$, then requires that the pressure decrease as well—and by more than it would in an isothermal process where T remains constant. In a pV diagram, the path of an adiabatic process—called an **adiabat**—is therefore steeper than the isotherms (Fig. 18.11).

Tactics 18.1 details the math involved in finding the adiabatic path; the result is

$$pV^\gamma = \text{constant} \quad (\text{adiabatic process}) \quad (18.11a)$$

p is the gas pressure. V is the gas volume. The exponent γ is the ratio of the molar specific heats of the gas. Even though p and V change, pV^γ remains constant during an adiabatic process.

where $\gamma = C_p/C_V$ is the ratio of the specific heats. Because $C_p = C_V + R$, the ratio $\gamma = C_p/C_V$ is always greater than 1. As expected, an adiabatic process therefore results in a greater pressure change than would a comparable isothermal process, as reflected in the steeper adiabatic path in Fig. 18.11. Physically, the adiabatic path is steeper because the gas loses internal energy as it does work, so its temperature drops. Problem 71 shows how to rewrite Equation 18.11a in terms of temperature:

$$TV^{\gamma-1} = \text{constant} \quad (\text{adiabatic process}) \quad (18.11b)$$

It's another exercise in calculus to integrate Equation 18.3 for the work done on the gas in an adiabatic process. You can do this in Problem 69; the result is

$$W = \frac{p_2 V_2 - p_1 V_1}{\gamma - 1} \quad (18.12)$$

Tactics 18.1 DERIVING THE ADIABATIC EQUATION

Equation 18.6 gives the infinitesimal change in internal energy for *any* process: $dE_{\text{int}} = nC_V dT$. The corresponding work is $dW = p dV$ so, with $Q = 0$ in an adiabatic process, the first law becomes $nC_V dT = -p dV$. We can eliminate dT by differentiating the ideal-gas law, now letting *both* p and V change: $nR dT = d(pV) = p dV + V dp$. Solving for dT , substituting in our first-law statement, and multiplying through by R leads to $C_V V dp + (C_V + R)p dV = 0$. But $C_V + R = C_p$; substituting this and dividing through by $C_V pV$ gives

$$\frac{dp}{p} + \frac{C_p}{C_v} \frac{dV}{V} = 0$$

Defining $\gamma = C_p/C_v$ and integrating gives

$$\ln p + \gamma \ln V = \ln(\text{constant})$$

where we've chosen to call the constant of integration $\ln(\text{constant})$. Since $\gamma \ln V = \ln V^\gamma$, it follows by exponentiation that

$$pV^\gamma = \text{constant}$$

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 18.1 Ideal-Gas Law versus the Adiabatic Equation

The ideal-gas law says $pV = nRT$, but, seemingly in contrast, Equation 18.11a says $pV^\gamma = \text{constant}$ for an ideal gas undergoing an adiabatic process. Which is right?

EVALUATE The ideal-gas law is fundamental, so we know it's right. And we derived Equation 18.11a based on the behavior of an ideal gas. So *both* must be right. But how can that be, when one equation talks about pV and the other about pV^γ ? The answer lies in the right-hand side of the ideal-gas law: nRT . For an adiabatic process, T isn't constant and therefore pV isn't constant—but pV^γ is.

ASSESS Compare the adiabatic process with an isothermal process. In the isothermal case, T is constant and we would write $pV = \text{constant}$.

Both processes obey the ideal-gas law, but the relation of p and V differs, so there's no contradiction.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Suppose you halve the volume of an ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.4$. What happens to the pressure if the process is (a) isothermal and (b) adiabatic?

EVALUATE For the isothermal process $pV = \text{constant}$, so halving the volume doubles the pressure. For the adiabatic process it's pV^γ that's constant. Setting $p_1 V_1^\gamma = p_2 V_2^\gamma$ with $V_2 = V_1/2$ gives $p_2 = 2^\gamma p_1$. With $\gamma = 1.4$, that means the pressure increases by a factor of 2.64. The pressure increase is greater than in the isothermal case because the temperature goes up.

EXAMPLE 18.3 An Adiabatic Process: Diesel Power

Fuel ignites in a diesel engine because of the temperature rise that results from compression as the piston moves toward the top of the cylinder; there's no spark plug as in a gasoline engine. Compression is fast enough that the process is essentially adiabatic. If the ignition temperature is 500°C , what compression ratio $V_{\text{max}}/V_{\text{min}}$ is needed (Fig. 18.12)? Air's specific-heat ratio is $\gamma = 1.4$, and before compression the air is at 20°C .

INTERPRET We identify the thermodynamic process here as adiabatic compression.

DEVELOP The problem involves temperature and volume, so Equation 18.11b applies, giving $T_{\text{min}} V_{\text{min}}^{\gamma-1} = T_{\text{max}} V_{\text{max}}^{\gamma-1}$.

EVALUATE Solving for the compression ratio $V_{\text{max}}/V_{\text{min}}$ gives

$$\frac{V_{\text{max}}}{V_{\text{min}}} = \left(\frac{T_{\text{min}}}{T_{\text{max}}} \right)^{1/(\gamma-1)} = \left(\frac{773 \text{ K}}{293 \text{ K}} \right)^{1/0.4} = 11$$

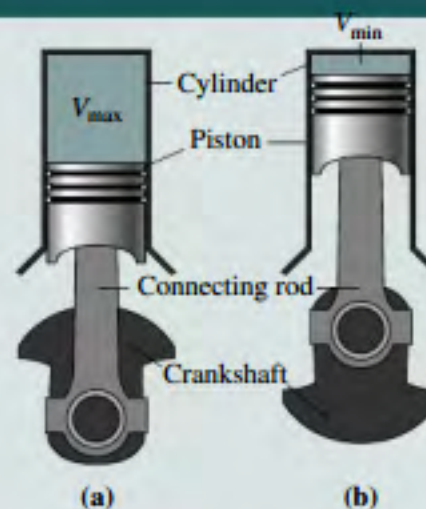


FIGURE 18.12 One cylinder of a diesel engine, shown with the piston (a) at the bottom of its stroke and (b) at the top. The compression ratio is $V_{\text{max}}/V_{\text{min}}$.

ASSESS Practical diesel engines have higher ratios to ensure reliable ignition. Their high compression makes diesels heavier than their gasoline counterparts, but also more fuel efficient. You can explore the diesel engine further in Chapter 19.

APPLICATION

Smog Alert!



The smog that blankets urban areas is an unfortunate manifestation of our prolific fossil-fueled energy consumption. Adiabatic processes in the atmosphere determine whether or not smog lingers over a city. Consider a volume of air that’s heated, perhaps because it’s over hot pavement that absorbs solar energy. The air becomes less dense, and its buoyancy makes it rise. As it ascends into regions of lower pressure, it expands, doing work against the surrounding atmosphere. Air is a poor heat conductor, so the process is essentially adiabatic. Therefore, the gas cools as it does work.

Now, temperature in the atmosphere normally decreases with altitude. So here’s the crucial question: Does the rising air cool faster or slower than the surrounding atmosphere? If it cools more slowly, then it continues to be warmer, and it continues to rise. Any pollution is carried high into the atmosphere where it’s dispersed. But if the decrease in air temperature with altitude isn’t so great, or in an **inversion** where it’s actually warmer aloft, the rising air will soon reach equilibrium with its surroundings and won’t rise any higher. The effect is to trap air and its entrained pollutants near the surface, as shown in this photo of Los Angeles. Smog alert!

GOT IT?

18.2 Name the basic thermodynamic process involved when each of the following is done to a piston–cylinder system containing ideal gas, and tell also whether temperature, pressure, volume, and internal energy increase or decrease: (1) The piston is locked in place and a flame is applied to the bottom of the cylinder; (2) the cylinder is completely insulated and the piston is pushed downward; (3) the piston is exposed to atmospheric pressure and is free to move, while the cylinder is cooled by placing it on a block of ice.

Cyclic Processes

Many natural and technological systems undergo **cyclic processes**, in which the system returns periodically to the same thermodynamic state. Engineering examples include engines and refrigerators whose mechanical construction ensures cyclic behavior. Many natural oscillations, like those of a sound wave or a pulsating star, are essentially cyclic.

Cyclic processes often involve the four basic processes we’ve just explored, as summarized in Table 18.1. We’ve seen that the work done in any reversible process is just the

Table 18.1 Ideal-Gas Processes

	ISOTHERMAL	CONSTANT-VOLUME	ISOBARIC	ADIABATIC
<i>pV</i> diagram				
Defining characteristic	$T = \text{constant}$	$V = \text{constant}$	$p = \text{constant}$	$Q = 0$
First law	$Q = -W$	$Q = \Delta E_{\text{int}}$	$Q = \Delta E_{\text{int}} - W$	$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = W$
Work done on gas	$W = -nRT \ln\left(\frac{V_2}{V_1}\right)$	$W = 0$	$W = -p(V_2 - V_1)$	$W = \frac{p_2V_2 - p_1V_1}{\gamma - 1}$
Other relationships	$pV = \text{constant}$	$Q = nC_V\Delta T$	$Q = nC_p\Delta T$ $C_p = C_V + R$	$pV^\gamma = \text{constant}$ $TV^{\gamma-1} = \text{constant}$

area under the pV curve. A cyclic process returns to the same point in the pV diagram, so it involves both expansion and compression (Fig. 18.13). During compression, work is done on the gas; during expansion, the gas does work on its surroundings. The net work done on the gas is the difference between the two, shown in Fig. 18.13 as the area enclosed by the cyclic path in the pV diagram.

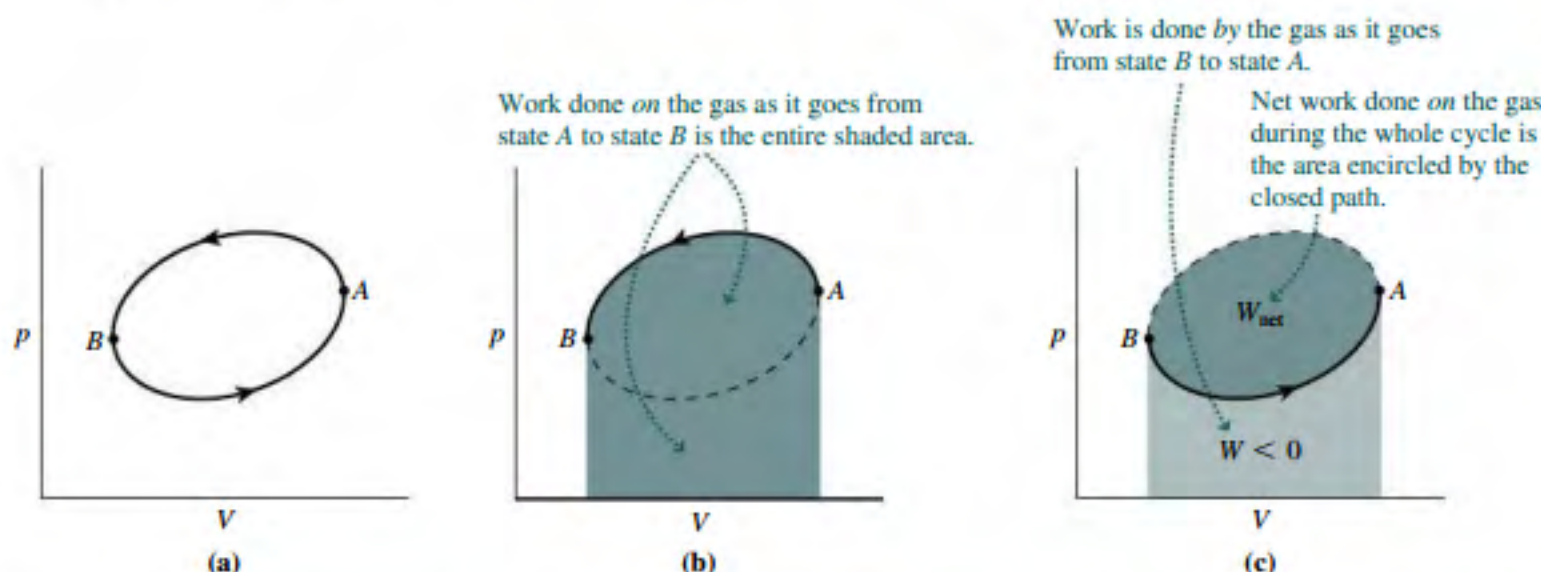


FIGURE 18.13 (a) A pV diagram for a cyclic process. (b), (c) Work done on the gas over one cycle is the area inside the closed path.

EXAMPLE 18.4 A Cyclic Process: Finding the Work

Worked Example with Variation Problems

An ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.4$ occupies 4.0 L at 300 K and 100 kPa pressure. It's compressed adiabatically to one-fourth of its original volume, then cooled at constant volume back to 300 K, and finally allowed to expand isothermally to its original volume. How much work is done on the gas?

INTERPRET This problem involves a cyclic process, and we identify three separate thermodynamic processes that make up the cycle: adiabatic, constant-volume, and isothermal.

DEVELOP Here it helps to draw a pV diagram, shown in Fig. 18.14. Our plan is to use equations in Table 18.1 to determine the work for each of the basic processes and then combine them to get the net work. For the adiabatic process AB , Table 18.1 gives $W_{AB} = (p_B V_B - p_A V_A)/(\gamma - 1)$; for the constant-volume process BC , $W_{BC} = 0$; and for the isothermal process CA , the work is $W_{CA} = -nRT \ln(V_A/V_C)$.

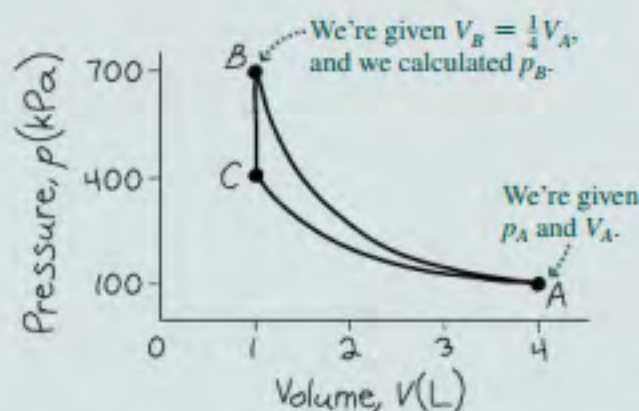


FIGURE 18.14 The cyclic process $ABCA$ of Example 18.4 includes adiabatic (AB), constant-volume (BC), and isothermal (CA) sections.

EVALUATE For the adiabatic process AB we're given all quantities except p_B . This we get from the adiabatic equation $pV^\gamma = \text{constant}$, or

$p_B V_B^\gamma = p_A V_A^\gamma$. Solving gives $p_B = p_A (V_A/V_B)^\gamma = 696.4$ kPa, where we used the given information $p_A = 100$ kPa, $\gamma = 1.4$, and a compression to one-fourth the original volume ($V_A/V_B = 4$). We now have enough information to find the work done over the adiabatic path:

$$W_{AB} = \frac{p_B V_B - p_A V_A}{\gamma - 1} = 741 \text{ J}$$

where, with pressures in kPa ($=10^3$ Pa) and volumes in L ($=10^{-3}$ m³), the factors $10^{\pm 3}$ cancel and there's no need to convert. The work W_{AB} is positive because work is done on the gas when it's compressed.

In the expression $W_{CA} = -nRT \ln(V_A/V_C)$ for the isothermal work, we can evaluate the quantity nRT at any point on the isothermal curve because T is constant. The ideal-gas law says that $nRT = pV$, and we know both p and V at point A. So $nRT = p_A V_A = 400$ J, where again we could multiply $p_A = 100$ kPa by $V_A = 4.0$ L to get an answer in SI units. The isothermal work is then

$$W_{CA} = -nRT \ln\left(\frac{V_A}{V_C}\right) = -(400 \text{ J})(\ln 4) = -555 \text{ J}$$

This is negative because the gas does work in expanding from C to A.

Combining our results for all three segments gives the net work:

$$W_{ABCA} = W_{AB} + W_{BC} + W_{CA} = 741 \text{ J} + 0 \text{ J} - 555 \text{ J} = 186 \text{ J}$$

ASSESS Make sense? The final answer is positive because we've done net work on the gas; that's always the case in going counter-clockwise around a cyclic path in a pV diagram. Since the system returns to its original state, its internal energy undergoes no net change. That means all the work that's done on it must be transferred to its surroundings as heat. Since no heat flows during the adiabatic process AB , and since the gas *absorbs* heat during the isothermal expansion CA , the only time it transfers heat *to* its surroundings is during the constant-volume cooling process BC .

18.3 Specific Heats of an Ideal Gas

LO 18.4 Explain the specific heats of ideal gases based on their molecular structure.

We've found that the thermodynamic behavior of an ideal gas depends on the specific heats C_V and C_p . What are the values of those quantities?

Our ideal-gas model of Chapter 17 assumed the gas molecules were structureless point particles with only translational kinetic energy. The internal energy E_{int} of the gas is the sum of all those molecular kinetic energies. But the average kinetic energy is directly proportional to the temperature: $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{3}{2}kT$. If we have n moles of gas, the internal energy is then $E_{\text{int}} = nN_A(\frac{1}{2}mv^2) = \frac{3}{2}nN_AkT$, where N_A is Avogadro's number. But $N_Ak = R$, the gas constant, so $E_{\text{int}} = \frac{3}{2}nRT$. Solving Equation 18.6 for the molar specific heat then gives

$$C_V = \frac{1}{n} \frac{\Delta E_{\text{int}}}{\Delta T} = \frac{3}{2}R \quad (18.13)$$

For this gas of structureless particles, the adiabatic exponent γ is therefore

$$\gamma = \frac{C_p}{C_V} = \frac{C_V + R}{C_V} = \frac{\frac{5}{2}R}{\frac{3}{2}R} = \frac{5}{3} = 1.67$$

Some gases, notably the inert gases helium (He), neon (Ne), argon (Ar), and others in the last column of the periodic table, have adiabatic exponents and specific heats given by these equations. But others do not. At room temperature, for example, hydrogen (H_2), oxygen (O_2), and nitrogen (N_2) obey adiabatic laws with γ very nearly $\frac{7}{5}$ ($=1.4$) and, correspondingly, specific heat $C_V = \frac{5}{2}R$. On the other hand, sulfur dioxide (SO_2) and nitrogen dioxide (NO_2) have specific-heat ratios close to 1.3 and therefore C_V of about $3.4R$.

What's going on here? A clue lies in the structure of individual gas molecules, reflected in their chemical formulas. The inert-gas molecules are **monatomic**, consisting of single atoms. To the extent that these atoms behave like structureless mass points, the only energy they can have is kinetic energy of translational motion. We can think of that kinetic energy as being a sum of *three* terms, each associated with motion in one of the three mutually perpendicular directions. We call each separate term in the energy of a system a **degree of freedom**, meaning a way that system can take on energy. So a monatomic molecule has three degrees of freedom.

In contrast, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen molecules are **diatomic**, as shown in Fig. 18.15. Although a gas of such molecules should still obey the ideal-gas law $pV = nRT$, these molecules can have rotational as well as translational kinetic energy. Then the kinetic energy of a diatomic molecule consists of *five* terms, three for the three directions of translational motion and two for rotational motions about the two mutually perpendicular axes shown in Fig. 18.15. So a diatomic molecule has five degrees of freedom. You'll now see how this difference between *three* degrees of freedom for monatomic molecules and *five* for diatomic molecules accounts for the difference between their specific heats.

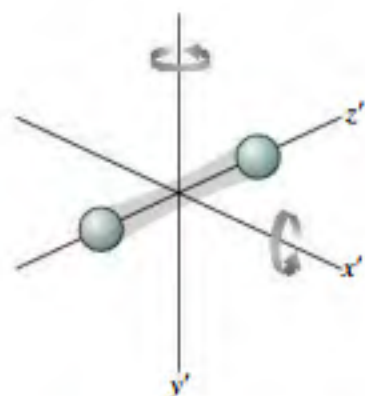


FIGURE 18.15 A diatomic molecule can have significant rotation about two perpendicular axes.

The Equipartition Theorem

We showed in Chapter 17 that the average kinetic energy associated with a gas molecule's motion in one direction is $\frac{1}{2}kT$. We then argued that all three directions are equally probable, making the molecular kinetic energy, on average, $\frac{3}{2}kT$. The argument from one direction to three is based on the assumption that random collisions will share energy equally among the possible motions. When a molecule can rotate as well as translate, energy should be shared also among possible rotational motions. The 19th-century Scottish physicist James Clerk Maxwell first proved this fact, which is known as the **equipartition theorem**:

EQUIPARTITION THEOREM When a system is in thermodynamic equilibrium, the average energy per molecule is $\frac{1}{2}kT$ for each degree of freedom.

We've just seen that a diatomic molecule has five degrees of freedom: three translational and two rotational. The average energy of such a molecule is then $5(\frac{1}{2}kT) = \frac{5}{2}kT$,

so the total internal energy in n moles of a diatomic gas is $E_{\text{int}} = nN_A \left(\frac{5}{2} kT \right) = \frac{5}{2} nRT$. Equation 18.6 then gives the molar specific heat at constant volume:

$$C_V = \frac{1}{n} \frac{\Delta E_{\text{int}}}{\Delta T} = \frac{5}{2} R \quad (\text{diatomic molecule})$$

Our result $C_p = C_V + R$ still holds, since it was derived from the first law of thermodynamics without regard to molecular structure, so $C_p = \frac{7}{2} R$ and $\gamma = C_p/C_V = \frac{7}{5} = 1.4$. These results describe the observed behavior of diatomic gases like hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen at room temperature.

A polyatomic molecule like NO_2 can rotate about any of three perpendicular axes (Fig. 18.16). It then has a total of six degrees of freedom, giving $E_{\text{int}} = 3nRT$ and corresponding specific heats $C_V = 3R$ and $C_p = C_V + R = 4R$. The adiabatic exponent is then $\gamma = \frac{4}{3} \approx 1.33$, reasonably close to the experimental value $\gamma = 1.29$ for NO_2 .

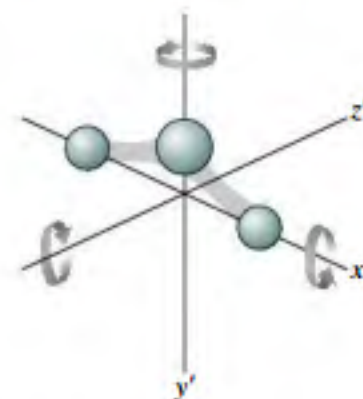


FIGURE 18.16 A triatomic molecule like NO_2 has three rotational degrees of freedom.

EXAMPLE 18.5 Specific Heat: A Gas Mixture

A gas mixture consists of 2.0 mol of oxygen (O_2) and 1.0 mol of argon (Ar). Find the volume specific heat of the mixture.

INTERPRET This problem is about specific heat and molecular structure. We identify the molecules involved as diatomic O_2 and monatomic Ar.

DEVELOP Equation 18.6, $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = nC_V \Delta T$, determines the volume specific heat, so we need to find how the internal energy E_{int} depends on temperature. Our plan is to use the equipartition theorem to get the energy per molecule for each gas, then find the total energy as a function of temperature, and from that the specific heat.

EVALUATE Being diatomic, O_2 has five degrees of freedom, so the equipartition theorem gives the average energy per molecule as $\frac{5}{2} kT$. Then the total energy in $n = 2$ moles of oxygen is $E_{\text{intO}_2} = nN_A \left(\frac{5}{2} kT \right) = \frac{5}{2} nRT = 5.0RT$, where we used $N_A k = R$. Monatomic Ar has three degrees of freedom, so the internal energy in our 1 mole of argon is, similarly, $E_{\text{intAr}} = \frac{3}{2} nRT = 1.5RT$. The total internal energy is then $E_{\text{int}} = 6.5RT$, so Equation 18.6 gives

$$C_V = \frac{1}{n} \frac{\Delta E_{\text{int}}}{\Delta T} = \frac{6.5R}{3.0 \text{ mol}} = 2.2R$$

ASSESS Make sense? Our answer lies between the values $1.5R$ and $2.5R$ that we found for monatomic and diatomic gases, respectively. It's closer to $2.5R$ because there's more oxygen in the mixture.

GOT IT?

18.3 The same amount of heat flows into equal volumes of nitrogen (N_2) and nitrogen dioxide (NO_2), while both are held at constant pressure. Is the resulting temperature rise (a) greater for N_2 , (b) the same for both, or (c) greater for NO_2 ?

Quantum Effects

Relating molecular structure and gas behavior is a remarkable triumph for Newtonian physics. But hidden in our analysis is an assumption that Newtonian physics can't justify. Real atoms have size, so even monatomic molecules should rotate. Why not more degrees of freedom? The answer lies in quantum physics, which requires a certain minimum energy for a periodic motion such as rotation. At normal temperatures, the average thermal energy is too low to excite rotation of monatomic molecules, or of diatomic molecules about their long axis. So these molecules exhibit three and five degrees of freedom, respectively. That results in the volume specific heats $\frac{3}{2} R$ and $\frac{5}{2} R$ that we've seen. For diatomic molecules at higher temperatures, still another motion comes into play—the simple harmonic oscillation of the two atoms due to the springlike bond between them. That adds two more degrees of freedom, corresponding to the kinetic and potential energies of this oscillation, and the specific heat increases correspondingly. At very low temperatures, in contrast, there isn't enough thermal energy to excite any rotation in a diatomic gas, and it then exhibits the specific heat $C_V = \frac{3}{2} R$ that we normally associate with a monatomic gas. Figure 18.17 shows these effects for diatomic hydrogen (H_2).

Are you bothered by the strange restrictions quantum mechanics imposes on molecular rotation and vibration? You should be! Nothing in your experience suggests that a rotating object can't have any amount of energy you care to give it. But quantum mechanics deals with a realm much smaller than that of our daily experience. The quantization of energy is only one of many unusual things that occur in the quantum realm. We'll explore more quantum phenomena in Part 6.

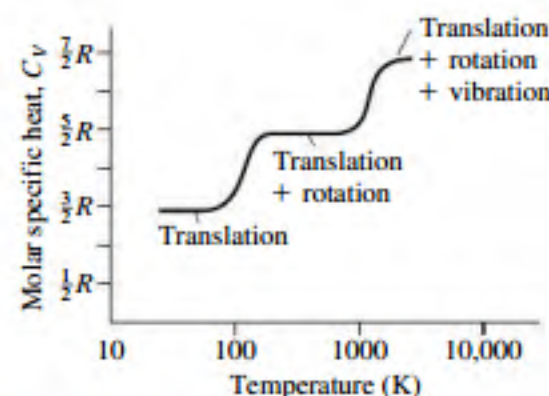


FIGURE 18.17 Molar specific heat of H_2 gas at constant volume, as a function of temperature. Below 20 K hydrogen is liquid, and above 3200 K it dissociates into individual atoms.

Chapter 18 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is conservation of energy, now expanded to include heat. The expanded statement of energy conservation is the **first law of thermodynamics**, which relates the change in a system's internal energy to the heat flowing into the system and the work done on the system. The first law can be used with the ideal-gas law to give a quantitative description of basic thermodynamic processes applied to ideal gases; these are described graphically using **pV diagrams**. The **equipartition theorem** states that in thermodynamic equilibrium, internal energy is shared equally among the possible energy modes of a system.

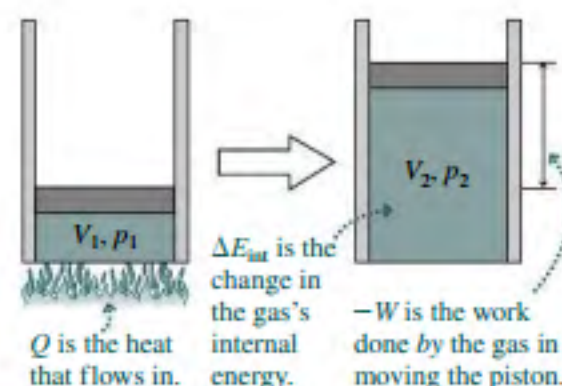
Key Concepts and Equations

Quantitatively, the first law of thermodynamics states

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q + W$$

Meaning of terms in the first law:

- ΔE_{int} is the change in a system's internal energy.
- Q is the heat transferred *to* the system.
 - Positive Q means a net heat input to the system.
 - Negative Q means heat leaves the system.
- W is the work done *on* the system.
 - Positive W means work is done on the system.
 - Negative W means the system does work on its surroundings.



In general, the work done by a system is related to the changes in pressure and volume:

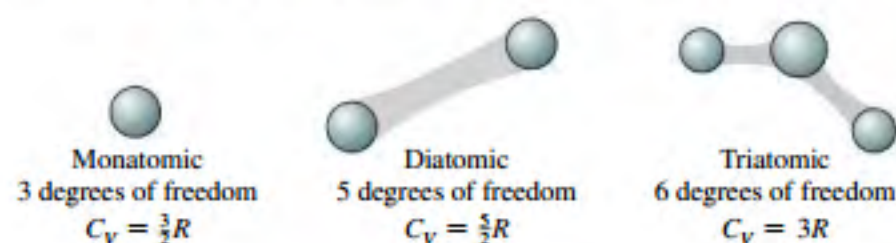
$$W = - \int_{V_1}^{V_2} p \, dV$$

Applications

Ideal-gas processes:

ISOTHERMAL	CONSTANT-VOLUME	ISOBARIC	ADIABATIC
$T = \text{constant}$	$V = \text{constant}$	$p = \text{constant}$	$Q = 0$
$Q = -W$	$Q = \Delta E_{\text{int}}$	$Q = \Delta E_{\text{int}} - W$	$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = W$
$W = -nRT \ln\left(\frac{V_2}{V_1}\right)$	$W = 0$	$W = -p(V_2 - V_1)$	$W = \frac{p_2 V_2 - p_1 V_1}{\gamma - 1}$
$pV = \text{constant}$	$Q = nC_V \Delta T$	$Q = nC_p \Delta T$ $C_p = C_V + R$	$pV^\gamma = \text{constant}$ $TV^{\gamma-1} = \text{constant}$

The specific heats of an ideal gas follow from the **degrees of freedom** of each molecule:



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 18.1** Describe the first law of thermodynamics as a statement of energy conservation.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 18.1, 18.2; Exercises 18.11, 18.12, 18.13, 18.14, 18.15
- LO 18.2** Calculate the work done by or on an ideal gas for different thermodynamic processes.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 18.3, 18.4, 18.5, 18.6; Exercises 18.16, 18.17, 18.18, 18.19, 18.20, 18.23; Problems 18.36, 18.37, 18.39, 18.40, 18.54, 18.55, 18.58, 18.59, 18.62, 18.63, 18.66, 18.68
- LO 18.3** Determine values of pressure and temperature during different thermodynamic processes.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 18.7, 18.8, 18.9; Exercise 18.22; Problems 18.38, 18.41, 18.42, 18.43, 18.44, 18.45, 18.46, 18.47, 18.48, 18.49, 18.50, 18.51, 18.52, 18.53, 18.54, 18.55, 18.56, 18.57, 18.60, 18.61, 18.62, 18.63, 18.67, 18.69, 18.70, 18.71, 18.72, 18.73, 18.74, 18.75, 18.76, 18.78, 18.79
- LO 18.4** Explain the specific heats of ideal gases based on their molecular structure.
For Thought and Discussion Question 18.10; Exercises 18.21, 18.22, 18.23, 18.24, 18.25, 18.26, 18.27; Problems 18.64, 18.65, 18.77

For Thought and Discussion

- If an ice cube melts into water at 0°C , is there any work done on the system during the change?
- In Question 1, is there any change in the internal energy of the system?
- Why can't an irreversible process be described by a path in a pV diagram?
- Are the initial and final equilibrium states of an irreversible process describable by points in a pV diagram? Explain.
- A quasi-static process begins and ends at the same temperature. Is the process necessarily isothermal?
- Figure 18.18 shows two processes, A and B , that connect the same initial and final states, 1 and 2. For which process is more heat added to the system?
- When you let air out of a tire, the air seems cool. Why? What kind of process is occurring?
- Blow on the back of your hand with your mouth wide open. Your breath will feel hot. Now tighten your lips into a small opening and blow again. Now your breath feels cool. Why?
- Three identical gas-cylinder systems are compressed from the same initial state to final states that have the same volume, one isothermally, one adiabatically, and one isobarically. Which system has the most work done on it? The least?
- Why is specific heat at constant pressure greater than at constant volume?

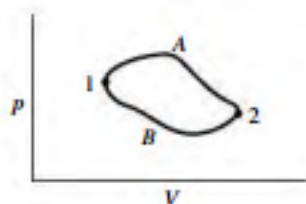


FIGURE 18.18 For Thought and Discussion 6

- A 40-W heat source is applied to a gas sample for 40 s, during which time the gas expands and does 750 J of work on its surroundings. By how much does the internal energy of the gas change?
- Find the rate of heat flow into a system whose internal energy is increasing at the rate of 65 W, given that the system is doing work at the rate of 175 W.
- In a certain automobile engine, 17% of the total energy released in burning gasoline ends up as mechanical work. What's the engine's mechanical power output if its heat output is 68 kW?

Section 18.2 Thermodynamic Processes

- An ideal gas expands from the state (p_1, V_1) to the state (p_2, V_2) , where $p_2 = 2p_1$ and $V_2 = 2V_1$. The expansion proceeds along the diagonal path AB in Fig. 18.19. Find an expression for the work done by the gas during this process.
- Repeat Exercise 16 for a process that follows the path ACB in Fig. 18.19.

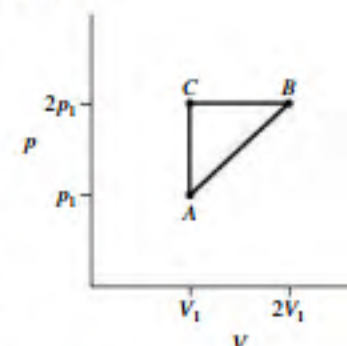


FIGURE 18.19 Exercises 16, 17 and Problem 75

- A balloon contains 0.30 mol of helium. It rises, while maintaining a constant 300-K temperature, to an altitude where its volume has expanded five times. Neglecting tension forces in the balloon, how much work is done by the helium during this isothermal expansion?
- The balloon of Exercise 18 starts at 100 kPa pressure and rises to an altitude where $p = 75$ kPa, maintaining a constant 300 K temperature. (a) By what factor does its volume increase? (b) How much work does the gas in the balloon do?
- How much work does it take to compress 3.3 mol of an ideal gas to half its original volume while maintaining a constant temperature of 290 K?
- By what factor must the volume of a gas with $\gamma = 1.28$ be changed in an adiabatic process if the kelvin temperature is to double?
- Nitrogen gas ($\gamma = 1.4$) at 18°C is compressed adiabatically until its volume is reduced to one-fourth of its initial value. By how much does its temperature increase?
- A carbon-sequestration scheme calls for isothermally compressing 6.3 m^3 of carbon dioxide, initially at atmospheric pressure, until it occupies only 7.0% of its original volume. Find the work required.

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 18.1 The First Law of Thermodynamics

- In a perfectly insulated container, 2.5 kg of water is stirred vigorously until its temperature rises by 2.0°C . How much work is done on the water?
- In a closed but uninsulated container, 500 g of water are shaken violently until the temperature rises by 3.0°C . The mechanical work done in the process is 9.0 kJ. (a) How much heat is transferred to the surroundings during the shaking? (b) How much mechanical energy would have been required if the container had been perfectly insulated?

Section 18.3 Specific Heats of an Ideal Gas

24. A gas mixture contains 2.5 mol of O_2 and 3.0 mol of Ar. What are this mixture's molar specific heats C_V and C_p at constant volume and constant pressure?
25. A mixture of monatomic and diatomic gases has a specific-heat ratio $\gamma = 1.62$. What fraction of its molecules are monatomic?
26. What should be the approximate specific-heat ratio of a gas consisting of 55% NO_2 molecules ($\gamma = 1.29$), 35% O_2 ($\gamma = 1.40$), and 10% Ar ($\gamma = 1.67$)?
27. By how much does the temperature of (a) an ideal monatomic gas and (b) an ideal diatomic gas (with molecular rotation but no vibration) change in an adiabatic process in which 5.5 kJ of work are done on each mole of gas?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two worked examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

28. **Example 18.2:** A diver is working at a depth where the pressure is 2.85 times the standard atmospheric pressure at the water's surface. The air she exhales forms bubbles 17.6 mm in diameter. How much work does a bubble do as it rises to the surface, assuming it remains at a constant temperature?
29. **Example 18.2:** A gas bubble develops from decomposing ooze at the bottom of a freshwater lake, where the pressure is 417 kPa. Initially the bubble is 1.58 cm in diameter. The lake is at a uniform $3.98^\circ C$, and the bubble maintains this temperature as it rises to the surface, which is at normal atmospheric pressure. How much heat is absorbed by the bubble as it rises?
30. **Example 18.2:** A pearl diver fills his lungs with 5.25 L of air at normal atmospheric pressure and then dives to 24.6 m, where the pressure is 3.46 atm. If the air in his lungs stays at body temperature, how much work is done on the air as it compresses?
31. **Example 18.2:** A spherical balloon is placed inside a closed chamber connected to a vacuum pump. The chamber is initially at normal atmospheric pressure, but when the pump starts the pressure drops. The balloon then maintains a constant temperature but expands by a factor of 3.50, and in the process absorbs 147 J of heat from its surroundings. Find (a) the final pressure in the chamber and (b) the balloon's original diameter.
32. **Example 18.4:** An ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.40$ occupies 8.26 L at 335 K and 89.2 kPa pressure. It's compressed adiabatically to one-third of its original volume, then cooled at constant volume back to 335 K. Finally, it's allowed to expand isothermally to its original volume. How much work is done on the gas?
33. **Example 18.4:** An ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.40$ and temperature 288 K fills a cylinder whose volume is initially 25.0 L. The gas is then compressed adiabatically to half of its original volume, then cooled at constant volume back to 288 K. Finally, it's allowed to expand isothermally to its original volume. If the work done on the gas during this cycle is 436 J, what was the gas pressure at the start of the cycle?
34. **Example 18.4:** An ideal gas with $\gamma = 7/5$ is initially at pressure p_A and occupies volume V_A . The gas then undergoes a cycle consisting of four steps: (1) It's heated at constant volume until its kelvin temperature doubles; (2) it's compressed adiabatically until its volume is one-fifth of its original volume; (3) it's cooled at constant pressure until it's back to its original temperature; and (4) it expands isothermally until it reaches its initial state. (a) Find an exact expression, in terms of p_A and V_A , for the work done on the gas during this cycle. (b) Evaluate your result to give a numerical expression for the work, again in terms of p_A and V_A , and good to three significant figures.
35. **Example 18.4:** An ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.40$ is initially at 273 K and occupies a volume of 2.00 L. The gas then undergoes a cycle consisting of four steps: (1) It's heated at constant volume to 373 K; (2) it's compressed adiabatically until its volume is one-eighth of its original volume; (3) it's cooled at constant pressure until it's back to its original temperature; and (4) it expands isothermally until it reaches its initial state. If the work done on the gas in one complete cycle is 0.910 kJ, what was the original pressure?

Problems

36. An ideal gas expands to 10 times its original volume, maintaining a constant 440 K temperature. If the gas does 3.3 kJ of work on its surroundings, (a) how much heat does it absorb, and (b) how many moles of gas are there?
37. During vigorous bicycling, the human body typically releases stored energy from food at the rate of 500 W and produces about 120 W of mechanical power. At what rate does the body produce heat while bicycling?
38. A 0.35-mol sample of ideal gas initially occupies 4.0 L. If it takes 68 J of work to compress the gas isothermally to 3.5 L, what's the temperature?
39. As the heart beats, blood pressure in an artery varies from a high of 125 mm of mercury to a low of 80 mm. These values are gauge pressures—that is, excesses over atmospheric pressure. An air bubble trapped in an artery has diameter 1.52 mm when blood pressure is at its minimum. (a) What will its diameter be at maximum pressure? (b) How much work does the blood (and ultimately the heart) do in compressing this bubble, assuming the air remains at the same $37.0^\circ C$ temperature as the blood?
40. It takes 0.8 kJ to compress a gas isothermally to half its original volume. How much work would it take to compress it by a factor of 15 starting from its original volume?
41. A gas undergoes an adiabatic compression during which its volume drops to half its original value. If the gas pressure increases by a factor of 2.51, what's its specific-heat ratio γ ?
42. A gas with $\gamma = 1.40$ occupies 6.25 L when it's at 98.5 kPa pressure. (a) What's the pressure after the gas is compressed adiabatically to 4.18 L? (b) How much work does that compression require?
43. A gas sample undergoes the cyclic process $ABCA$ shown in Fig. 18.20, where AB is an isotherm. The pressure at A is 60 kPa. Find (a) the pressure at B and (b) the net work done on the gas.
44. Repeat Problem 43 taking AB as an adiabat and using specific-heat ratio $\gamma = 1.4$.
45. A gasoline engine has compression ratio 8.5 (see Example 18.3 for the meaning of this term), and the fuel–air mixture compresses adiabatically with $\gamma = 1.4$. If the mixture enters the engine at $34^\circ C$, what will its temperature be at maximum compression?

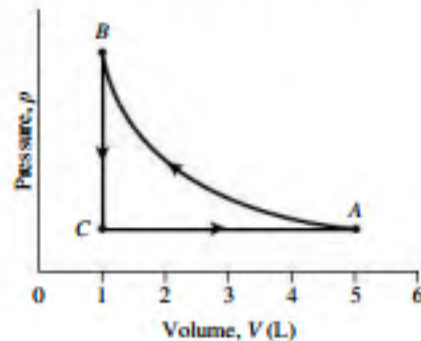


FIGURE 18.20 Problems 43 and 44

46. By what factor must the volume of a gas with $\gamma = 1.4$ be changed in an adiabatic process if the pressure is to double?
47. Volvo's B4204 engine, used in the XC70 series cars, has a compression ratio of 10.8, and the fuel-air mixture undergoes adiabatic compression with $\gamma = 1.40$. The engine's turbocharger supplies air at 342 K and 1.50 times normal atmospheric pressure. If this air fills the engine's cylinders at their maximum volume, what will be (a) the temperature and (b) the pressure at the point of maximum compression?
48. A research balloon is prepared for launch by pumping into it $1.75 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$ of helium gas at 12°C and 1.00 atm pressure. It rises high into the atmosphere to where the pressure is only 0.340 atm. Assuming the balloon doesn't exchange significant heat with its surroundings, find (a) its volume and (b) its temperature at the higher altitude.
49. Monatomic argon gas is initially at a chilly 33 K. By what factor would you have to increase its pressure, adiabatically, to bring it to room temperature (293 K)?
50. By what factor does the internal energy of an ideal diatomic gas change when it's compressed to half its original volume (a) isothermally, (b) isobarically, or (c) adiabatically?
51. A 3.50-mol sample of ideal gas with molar specific heat $C_V = \frac{5}{2}R$ is initially at 255 K and 101 kPa pressure. Determine the final temperature and the work done by the gas when 1.75 kJ of heat are added to the gas (a) isothermally, (b) at constant volume, and (c) isobarically.
52. Prove that the slope of an adiabat at a given point in a pV diagram is γ times the slope of the isotherm passing through the same point.
53. An ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.28$ starts at point A in Fig. 18.21, where its volume and pressure are 1.00 m^3 and 250 kPa, respectively. It undergoes an adiabatic expansion that triples its volume, ending at B. It's then heated at constant volume to C and compressed isothermally back to A. Find (a) the pressure at B, (b) the pressure at C, and (c) the net work done on the gas.
54. The gas of Example 18.4 starts at state A in Fig. 18.14 and is compressed adiabatically until its volume is 2.0 L. It's then cooled at constant pressure until it reaches 300 K, then allowed to expand isothermally back to state A. Find (a) the net work done on the gas and (b) the minimum volume of the gas.
55. The gas of Example 18.4 starts at state A in Fig. 18.14 and is heated at constant volume until its pressure has doubled. It's then compressed adiabatically until its volume is one-fourth its original value, then cooled at constant volume to 300 K, and finally allowed to expand isothermally to its original state. Find the net work done on the gas.
56. Show that the relation between pressure and temperature in an adiabatic process is $p^{1-\gamma} T^\gamma = \text{constant}$.
57. You're the product safety officer for a company that makes cycling accessories. You're given a new design for a bicycle pump that includes a cylinder 35 cm long when the pump handle is all the way out. To keep the pump from getting too hot, you specify that the temperature rise should not exceed 75°C when the handle is pushed rapidly, with the outlet blocked, until the internal length of the cylinder is 20 cm. Assuming air initially at 18°C , does the pump meet your temperature-rise criterion?

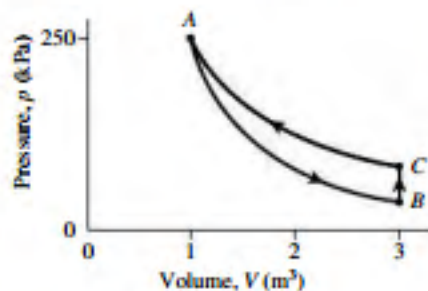


FIGURE 18.21 Problem 53

58. Figure 18.22 shows data and a fit curve from an experimental measurement of the pressure-volume curve for a human lung. Estimate the work involved in fully inflating the lung.
59. Gasoline and diesel engines often use turbochargers to compress air supplied to the engine, thus providing greater power or greater fuel efficiency. When a particular turbocharger compresses 1.00 mol of air, the air transfers 158 J of heat to its surroundings. Nevertheless, the air temperature rises by 48.6°C . Find the work the turbocharger does on this air. Treat the air as an ideal diatomic gas.
60. A gas with $\gamma = 7/5$ is at 273 K when it's compressed isothermally to half of its original volume and then further compressed adiabatically to one-third of its original volume. Find its final temperature.
61. An ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.3$ is initially at 275 K and 100 kPa. The gas is compressed adiabatically to 240-kPa pressure. Find its final temperature.
62. The curved path in Fig. 18.23 lies on the 350-K isotherm for an ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.4$. (a) Calculate the net work done on the gas as it goes around the cyclic path ABCA. (b) How much heat flows into or out of the gas on the segment AB?
63. Repeat part (a) of Problem 62 for the path ACDA in Fig. 18.23. (b) How much heat flows into or out of the gas on the segment CD?
64. A gas mixture contains monatomic argon and diatomic oxygen. An adiabatic expansion that triples its volume results in the pressure dropping to one-fifth of its original value. What fraction of the molecules are argon?
65. How much of a triatomic gas with $C_V = 3R$ would you have to add to 6.0 mol of a monatomic gas to get a mixture whose thermodynamic behavior was like that of a diatomic gas?
66. A 2.5-kg rock at 0°C is dropped into a well-insulated vat containing a mixture of ice and water at 0°C . When equilibrium is reached, there is 1.3 g less ice. From what height was the rock dropped?
67. A piston-cylinder arrangement containing 0.70 mol of nitrogen at high pressure is in thermal equilibrium with an ice-water bath containing 300 g of ice. The pressure of the ambient air is 1.0 atm. The gas is allowed to expand isothermally until it's in pressure balance with its surroundings. After the process is complete, the bath contains 320 g of ice. What was the original gas pressure?
68. Experimental studies show that the pV curve for a frog's lung can be approximated by $p = 10v^3 - 67v^2 + 220v$, with v in mL and p in Pa. Find the work done when such a lung inflates from zero to 3.9 mL volume.
69. Show that the application of Equation 18.3 to an adiabatic process results in Equation 18.12.
70. Two identical gas samples are initially at the same temperature. Both are compressed—one isothermally and one adiabatically—until their volume is halved. (a) Find a symbolic expression for

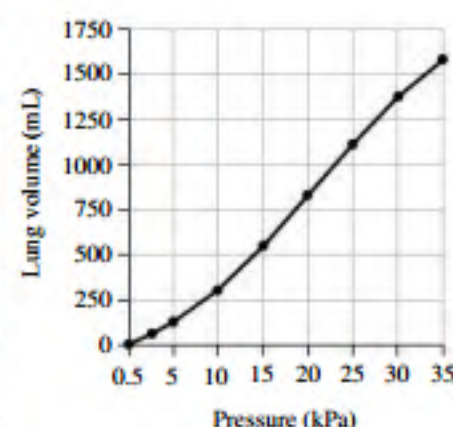


FIGURE 18.22 Problem 58

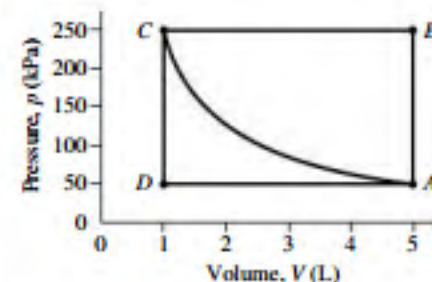


FIGURE 18.23 Problems 62 and 63

the ratio of the work done during the adiabatic compression to the work done during the isothermal compression. (b) Evaluate your expression for a diatomic gas with $\gamma = 1.40$.

71. Use the ideal-gas law to eliminate pressure in Equation 18.11a, and show that the result can be written as Equation 18.11b.
72. The table below shows measured values of pressure versus volume for an ideal gas undergoing a thermodynamic process. Make a log-log plot (logarithm of p versus logarithm of V) of these data and use it to determine (a) whether the process is isothermal or adiabatic and (b) the temperature if it's isothermal or the adiabatic exponent γ if it's adiabatic.

Volume, V (L)	1.1	1.27	1.34	1.56	1.82	2.14	2.37
Pressure, p (atm)	0.998	0.823	0.746	0.602	0.493	0.372	0.344

73. Air with initial volume $V_0 = 4.50$ L and initial pressure $p_0 = 1.00$ atm is compressed reversibly in such a way that pressure and volume are related by the equation $PV^2 = P_0V_0^2$ throughout the reversible process. Find the work that's been done when the gas pressure has reached 2.00 atm.
74. A real gas is more accurately described using the van der Waals equation: $[p + a(n/V)^2](V - nb) = nRT$, where a and b are constants. Find an expression, corresponding to Equation 18.4, for the work done by a van der Waals gas undergoing an isothermal expansion from V_1 to V_2 .
75. Repeat Exercise 16 for an expansion along the path $p = p_1[1 + (V - V_1)^2/V_1^2]$.
76. The *adiabatic lapse rate* is the rate at which air cools as it rises and expands adiabatically in the atmosphere (see Application: Smog Alert, on page 352). Express dT in terms of dp for an adiabatic process, and use the hydrostatic equation (Equation 15.2) to express dp in terms of dy . Then, calculate the lapse rate dT/dy . Take air's average molecular weight to be 29 u and $\gamma = 1.4$, and remember that the altitude y is the negative of the depth h in Equation 15.2.
77. A power plant extracts thermal energy from its fuel at the rate of 3810 MW and produces electrical energy at the rate of 1250 MW. There's a proposal to use the waste heat from this plant to heat nearby homes. If the average home requires 43.2 GJ of energy in a winter month, how many homes could be served if 100% of the waste heat from the power plant were available for home heating?
78. Your class on alternative habitats is designing an underwater habitat. A small diving bell will be lowered to the habitat. A hatch at the bottom of the bell is open so water can enter to compress the air and thus keep the air pressure inside equal to the pressure of the surrounding water. The bell is lowered slowly enough that the inside air remains at the same temperature as the water. But the water temperature increases with depth in such a way that the air pressure and volume are related by $p = p_0\sqrt{V_0/V}$, where $V_0 = 16$ m³ and $p_0 = 1.0$ atm are the surface values. Suppose the diving bell's air volume cannot be less than 8.5 m³ and the pressure must not exceed 1.4 atm when submerged. Are these criteria met?
79. One scheme for reducing greenhouse-gas emissions from coal-fired power plants calls for capturing carbon dioxide and pumping it into the deep ocean, where the pressure is at least 350 atm. You're called to assess the energy cost of such a scheme for a power plant that produces electrical energy at the rate of 1.0 GW while at the same time emitting CO₂ at the rate of 1100 tonnes/hour. If CO₂ is extracted from the plant's smokestack at 320 K and 1 atm pressure and then compressed adiabatically to 350 atm, what fraction of the plant's power output would be needed for the compression?

Take $\gamma = 1.3$ for CO₂. (Your answer is a rough estimate because CO₂ doesn't behave like an ideal gas at very high pressures; also, it doesn't include the energy cost of separating the CO₂ from other stack gases or of transporting it to the compression site.)

Passage Problems

- ENV Warm winds called *Chinooks* (a Native American term meaning "snow eaters") sometimes sweep across the plains just east of the Rocky Mountains. These winds carry air from high in the mountains down to the plains rapidly enough that the air has no time to exchange heat with its surroundings (Fig. 18.24). On a particular Chinook day, temperature and pressure high in the Colorado Rockies are 60 kPa and 260 K (-13°C), respectively; the plain below is at 90 kPa.

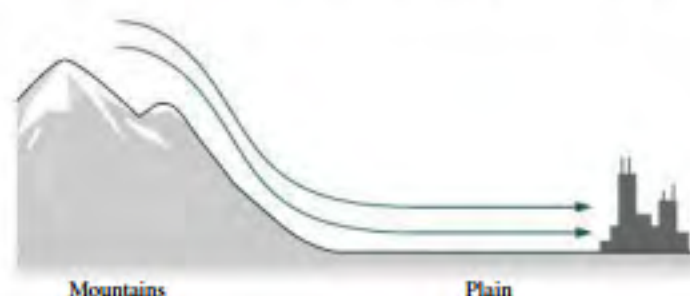


FIGURE 18.24 Chinooks (Passage Problems 80–83)

80. The process the air undergoes as it descends the mountains is
- isothermal.
 - isovolumic.
 - isobaric.
 - adiabatic.
81. As the air descends, its internal energy
- increases.
 - decreases.
 - is unchanged.
82. As the air descends, its volume
- increases by 50%.
 - increases by less than 50%.
 - decreases by 50%.
 - decreases by less than 50%.
 - is unchanged.
83. When the air reaches the plain, its temperature is approximately
- 240 K.
 - 260 K.
 - 290 K.
 - 390 K.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Energy is conserved, provided thermal energy is included. The engine produces both mechanical energy and thermal energy of its exhaust gases; together, they sum to the energy released in combustion.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 18.1 (c) Only the internal energy is the same, since it's a thermodynamic state variable unique to a point in the pV diagram.
- 18.2 (1) Constant-volume, T and p increase, V doesn't change, E_{int} increases as heat flows into the gas; (2) Adiabatic, T and p increase, V decreases, E_{int} increases as work is done on the gas; (3) Isobaric, T decreases, p doesn't change, V decreases, E_{int} decreases as heat flows out of the gas.
- 18.3 (a) because the energy is spread over fewer degrees of freedom

The Second Law of Thermodynamics

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The first law of thermodynamics (Section 18.1)
- Ideal-gas processes (Section 18.2)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 19.1 Distinguish reversible and irreversible thermodynamic processes.
- LO 19.2 Articulate the second law of thermodynamics as it applies to engines and refrigerators, and calculate thermodynamic efficiencies.
- LO 19.3 Describe practical implications of the second law, especially for engines, power plants, and heat pumps.
- LO 19.4 Describe entropy and its relation to energy quality.
- LO 19.5 Determine quantitatively the entropy changes in simple thermodynamic processes.
- LO 19.6 Articulate the second law of thermodynamics in terms of entropy.



Most of the energy extracted from fuel in power plants is discarded as waste heat. The large cooling tower shown here dumps this waste heat into the environment. Why is so much energy wasted?

The first law of thermodynamics relates heat and other forms of energy. Much of our world depends on this relationship. Cars extract energy from the heat of burning gasoline. Most of our electricity originates in heat released by burning fuels or fissioning uranium. Our own bodies run on energy that originates as heat flowing from the Sun's core. But the first law doesn't tell the whole story. Heat and mechanical energy aren't the same, and the difference makes the conversion of heat to work a more subtle task than the first law would imply.

19.1 Reversibility and Irreversibility

LO 19.1 *Distinguish reversible and irreversible thermodynamic processes.*

Figure 19.1 shows a movie of a bouncing ball. Play it backward and it still makes sense. Figure 19.2 shows a block sliding along a table, slowing because of friction—and warming in the process. Play this film backward and it makes no sense. You'll never see a block at rest suddenly start to move, cooling as it goes. Yet energy would be conserved if it did, so the first law of thermodynamics would be satisfied. Beat an egg, blending yolk and white. Reverse the beater, and you'll never see them separate again. Mix hot and cold water; the hot water cools and the cold water warms. The opposite never occurs—although energy would still be conserved.

Why are these events **irreversible**? In each case we start with matter in an organized state. The molecules of the sliding block share a common motion. The yolk molecules are all in one place. The hot water has more energetic molecules. Of all possible states, these *organized* ones are rare. There are

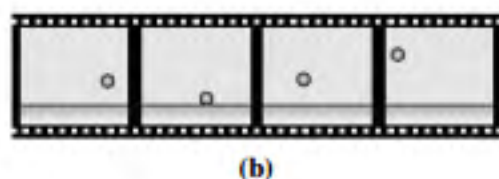
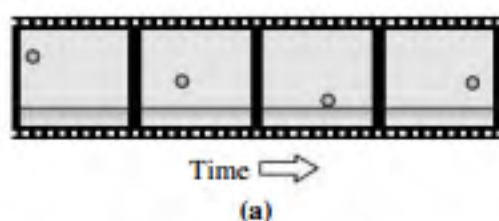


FIGURE 19.1 A movie of a bouncing ball makes sense whether it's shown (a) forward or (b) backward.

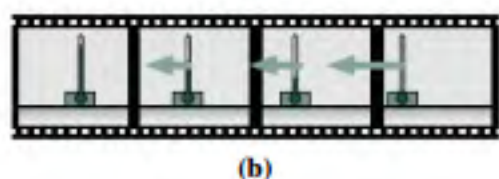
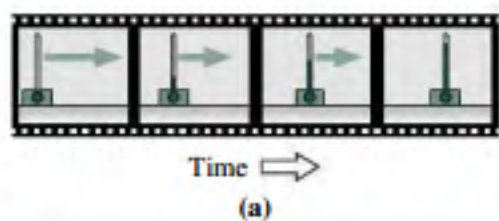
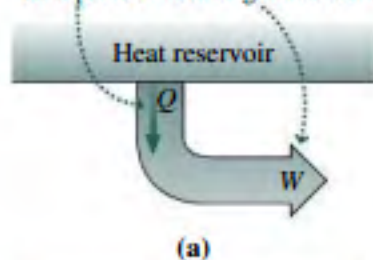


FIGURE 19.2 (a) A block warming (note thermometer) as friction dissipates its kinetic energy and it slows to a stop. (b) The reverse sequence would never happen, even though it doesn't violate energy conservation.

All the heat Q extracted from the reservoir of a perfect heat engine becomes work.



Extract heat Q_h from the high-temperature reservoir of a real heat engine.

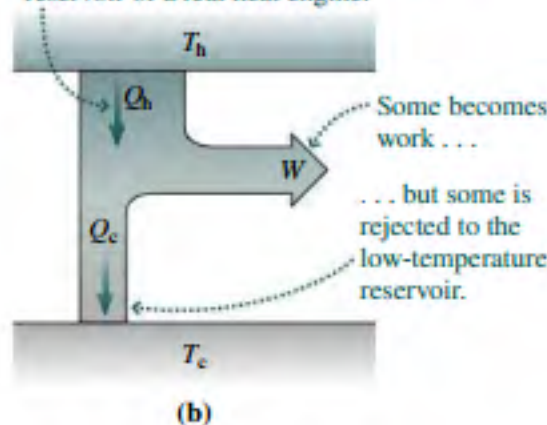


FIGURE 19.3 (a) Energy-flow diagram for a perfect heat engine. (b) A real engine delivers as work only a fraction of the energy extracted from the high-temperature reservoir.

many more *disorganized* states—for example, all the possible arrangements of molecules in a scrambled egg. As a system evolves, chances are it will end up less organized, simply because there are far more such states available to it. It's very unlikely to assume spontaneously a more organized state.

A key word here is “spontaneous.” We could restore organization—for example, by putting one cup of water in the refrigerator and the other in the microwave—but that requires a rather deliberate and energy-consuming process.

Irreversibility is a probabilistic notion. Events that *could* occur without violating the principles of Newtonian physics nevertheless *don't* occur because they're too improbable. As a practical consequence, harnessing the internal energy associated with random molecular motions is difficult because those motions won't spontaneously become organized. That makes much of the world's energy unavailable for doing useful work.

GOT IT?

19.1 Which of these processes is irreversible? (a) stirring sugar into coffee; (b) building a house; (c) demolishing a house with a wrecking ball; (d) demolishing a house by taking it apart piece by piece; (e) harnessing the energy of falling water to drive machinery; (f) harnessing the energy of falling water to heat a house

19.2 The Second Law of Thermodynamics

LO 19.2 Articulate the second law of thermodynamics as it applies to engines and refrigerators, and calculate thermodynamic efficiencies.

Heat Engines

It's impossible to convert *all* the internal energy of a system to useful work. But **heat engines** extract *some* of that internal energy. Examples include gasoline and diesel engines, fossil-fueled and nuclear power plants, and jet aircraft engines.

Figure 19.3a is an energy-flow diagram for a “perfect” heat engine—one that extracts heat from a heat reservoir and converts it all to work. Such an engine would do exactly what we've just argued against: It would convert the random energy of thermal motion entirely to the ordered motion associated with mechanical work. In fact a perfect heat engine is impossible, for the same reason that we can't unscramble an egg or make a block accelerate spontaneously using its internal energy. This fact leads to one statement of the **second law of thermodynamics**:

Second law of thermodynamics (Kelvin–Planck statement) It is impossible to construct a heat engine operating in a cycle that extracts heat from a reservoir and delivers an equal amount of work.

The phrase “in a cycle” means that a practical engine goes through a repeated sequence of steps, as in the back-and-forth motions of the pistons in a gasoline engine.

A simple heat engine consists of a gas–cylinder system and a hot reservoir, the latter kept hot, perhaps, by burning a fuel. With the gas initially at high pressure, we place the cylinder in contact with the heat reservoir. The gas expands and does work W on the piston. In this isothermal process, the gas extracts heat $Q = W$ from the reservoir. Eventually the gas reaches pressure equilibrium and stops expanding. The piston must then be returned to its original position if it's to do more work.

If we just push the piston back, we'll have to do as much work as we got during the expansion, and our engine won't produce any net work. Instead we can cool the gas to reduce its volume, through contact with a cool reservoir. But then some energy leaves the system as heat rather than work, as shown conceptually in Fig. 19.3b. Our engine extracts heat from a source and delivers mechanical work, but over a full cycle the work delivered is less than the heat extracted. The remaining energy is rejected to the lower-temperature reservoir, usually the environment. That's why much of the energy released from fuels in car engines and power plants ends up as waste heat.

The second law of thermodynamics says we can't build a perfect heat engine. But how close can we come? We define the **efficiency** e of an engine as the ratio of the work W we get from it to what we have to supply—namely, the heat Q_h : $e = W/Q_h$. Since the process is cyclic, there's no net change in internal energy over one cycle. The first law of thermodynamics then shows that the work W done by the engine is the difference between the heat Q_h extracted from the high-temperature reservoir and the heat Q_c rejected to the cool reservoir:

$$e = \frac{W}{Q_h} = \frac{Q_h - Q_c}{Q_h} = 1 - \frac{Q_c}{Q_h} \quad (19.1)$$

W is the mechanical work done by the engine. Q_h is the heat extracted from the *hot* reservoir, ... Q_c is the heat rejected to the *cool* reservoir. e is the efficiency of any heat engine.

In this chapter we'll often use W for the work done *by* an engine; in the first law it's the work done *on* a system. That's why W here is equal to the net heat $Q_h - Q_c$.

Figure 19.4 shows a heat engine whose efficiency we can calculate. The engine consists of a cylinder containing an ideal gas, sealed by a movable piston. The piston is connected to a rod that turns a wheel. The engine gets its energy from a hot reservoir at temperature T_h , and it rejects heat to a cooler reservoir at temperature T_c . Figure 19.5 shows how the engine works in a cycle of four steps, starting with the piston in its leftmost position (state A in Fig. 19.5), where the gas volume is a minimum:

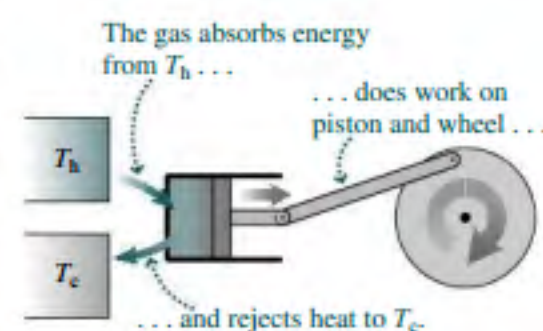


FIGURE 19.4 A simple heat engine.

1. **Isothermal expansion:** The high-temperature reservoir is placed in thermal contact with the cylinder. The gas absorbs heat Q_h from the hot reservoir and expands isothermally along path AB . Since temperature remains constant, so does internal energy. The first law then shows that the engine does work $W = Q$ on the piston and wheel.
2. **Adiabatic expansion:** At B we remove the hot reservoir, so the gas can no longer exchange heat. Thus the expansion becomes adiabatic and follows path BC . We design the engine so the gas has cooled to T_c when the piston reaches its rightmost position (state C), the point of maximum gas volume.
3. **Isothermal compression:** At C we bring the cool reservoir into thermal contact with the cylinder. The wheel's inertia keeps it turning, so the piston does work on the gas, compressing it isothermally from state C to D . This work ends up as heat rejected to the cool reservoir.
4. **Adiabatic compression:** At D we remove the cool reservoir and the compression continues adiabatically until the gas temperature is once again at T_h and the engine is back at state A .

This cyclic process of two isothermal and two adiabatic steps is the **Carnot cycle** and the engine is a **Carnot engine**, after the French engineer Sadi Carnot (1796–1832). The particular configuration of the engine isn't important, nor is the choice of an ideal gas as the engine's **working fluid**. What distinguishes the Carnot cycle from others is the sequence of thermodynamic processes and the fact that these processes are reversible. The Carnot engine is an example of a **reversible engine**—one in which thermodynamic equilibrium is maintained so that all steps could, in principle, be reversed.

What's the efficiency of a Carnot engine? To find out, we need the heats Q_h and Q_c absorbed and rejected during the isothermal parts of the cycle shown in Fig. 19.5. Equation 18.4 gives the heat Q_h absorbed during the isothermal expansion AB :

$$Q_h = nRT_h \ln\left(\frac{V_B}{V_A}\right)$$

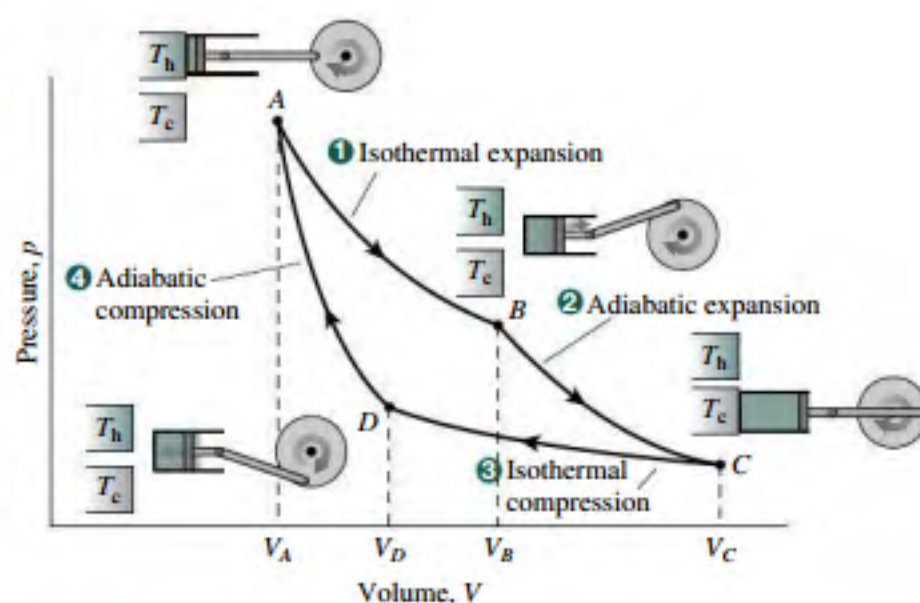
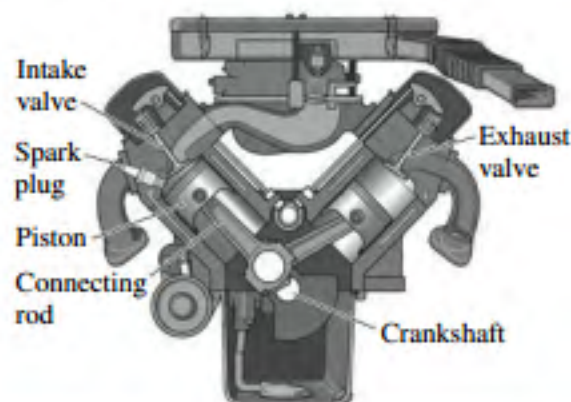


FIGURE 19.5 A pV diagram for the Carnot engine.

APPLICATION Internal Combustion Engines

Internal combustion engines (ICEs) power most of the world's cars and trucks and will continue to do so for some time despite inroads by electric propulsion systems. Their name refers to the fact that combustion in an ICE takes place within the engine itself, as opposed to external combustion in systems like power plants (look ahead to Fig. 19.10), industrial boilers, and old-fashioned steam locomotives. Today's ICEs build on more than a century of engineering development, and coupled with modern electronic sensors and control systems, they represent a pinnacle of engineering design.

ICEs include the common gasoline and diesel engines. Both these engines undergo cycles involving back-and-forth motion of pistons that's converted to rotary motion that usually drives a vehicle's wheels. ICEs are heat engines, but standard gasoline and diesel engines aren't Carnot engines. Gasoline engines, for example, operate on a cycle that consists approximately of two adiabatic and two constant-volume segments. Because heat transfer doesn't occur at fixed high and low temperatures, the efficiency is less than the Carnot limit of Equation 19.1. The diesel cycle, consisting approximately of adiabatic, isobaric, and constant-volume segments, is, for the same reason, also less efficient than the Carnot limit. You learned about the adiabatic compression phase of a diesel engine in Example 18.3, and you can explore engines further in Problems 60–62. The image shows a cutaway view of a modern gasoline engine.



and the heat Q_c rejected during the isothermal compression CD :

$$Q_c = -nRT_c \ln\left(\frac{V_D}{V_C}\right) = nRT_c \ln\left(\frac{V_C}{V_D}\right)$$

We put the minus sign here because the first law takes Q to be the heat *absorbed*, while Equation 19.1 for the engine efficiency requires that Q_c be the heat *rejected*. To calculate engine efficiency according to Equation 19.1, we need the ratio Q_c/Q_h :

$$\frac{Q_c}{Q_h} = \frac{T_c \ln(V_C/V_D)}{T_h \ln(V_B/V_A)} \quad (19.2)$$

This expression can be simplified by applying Equation 18.11b to the adiabatic processes BC and DA in the Carnot cycle: $T_h V_B^{\gamma-1} = T_c V_C^{\gamma-1}$ and $T_h V_A^{\gamma-1} = T_c V_D^{\gamma-1}$. Dividing the first of these two equations by the second gives

$$\left(\frac{V_B}{V_A}\right)^{\gamma-1} = \left(\frac{V_C}{V_D}\right)^{\gamma-1} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{V_B}{V_A} = \frac{V_C}{V_D}$$

so Equation 19.2 becomes simply $Q_c/Q_h = T_c/T_h$. Using this result in Equation 19.1 then gives the efficiency of the Carnot engine:

$$e_{\text{Carnot}} = 1 - \frac{T_c}{T_h} \quad (\text{Carnot engine efficiency}) \quad (19.3)$$

e_{Carnot} is the efficiency of an engine using the Carnot cycle.

T_c is the temperature of the cool reservoir to which the engine rejects heat.

T_h is the temperature of the hot reservoir from which the engine extracts heat.

The Carnot efficiency is the maximum possible efficiency for *any* heat engine.

where the temperatures are measured on an absolute scale (Kelvin or Rankine). Equation 19.3 shows that the Carnot engine's efficiency depends only on the highest and lowest temperatures of its working fluid. In practice, the low temperature is usually that of the environment; then maximizing efficiency requires making the high temperature as high as possible. Real engines trade off efficiency with the ability of materials to withstand high temperature and pressure.

EXAMPLE 19.1

Calculating Efficiency: A Carnot Engine

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A Carnot engine extracts 240 J from its hot reservoir during each cycle and rejects 100 J to the environment at 15°C. How much work does the engine do in one cycle? What's its efficiency? What's the temperature of the hot reservoir?

INTERPRET This problem is about a Carnot engine, which operates via the Carnot cycle.

DEVELOP Equation 19.3, $e_{\text{Carnot}} = 1 - (T_c/T_h)$, relates the two temperatures and the efficiency. Here $Q_h = 240$ J, $Q_c = 100$ J, and $T_c = 15^\circ\text{C}$ or 288 K. The first law of thermodynamics relates work and heat flows. So our plan is to use the first law to find the work, then find the efficiency, and then use Equation 19.3 to find T_h .

EVALUATE Since there's no change in internal energy over one cycle, the first law requires that the work W done by the engine be equal to the net heat absorbed—namely, 240 J – 100 J. So $W = 140$ J. The efficiency is the ratio of work delivered to heat extracted, so $e = W/Q_h = 140 \text{ J}/240 \text{ J} = 58.3\%$. Knowing the efficiency, we solve Equation 19.3 for T_h :

$$T_h = \frac{T_c}{1 - e} = \frac{288 \text{ K}}{1 - 0.583} = 691 \text{ K} = 418^\circ\text{C}$$

ASSESS Make sense? The engine rejects somewhat less than half the 240 J as waste heat, so we should expect efficiency somewhat over 50%. And T_h must be greater than T_c , as our calculation confirms.

Engines, Refrigerators, and the Second Law

Why this emphasis on the Carnot engine? Because understanding this device will help answer the broader question of how much work we can hope to extract from thermal energy. That, in turn, will help you understand practical limitations on humankind's attempts to harness ever more energy and will lead to a deeper understanding of the second law of thermodynamics.

Why is Carnot's engine special? Couldn't you build a better engine with greater efficiency? The answer is no. The special role of the Carnot cycle is embodied in **Carnot's theorem**:

Carnot's theorem All Carnot engines operating between temperatures T_h and T_c have the same efficiency, $e_{\text{Carnot}} = 1 - (T_c/T_h)$, and no other engine operating between the same two temperatures can have a greater efficiency.

To prove Carnot's theorem, we introduce the **refrigerator**. A refrigerator is the opposite of an engine: It extracts heat from a cool reservoir and rejects it to a hotter one, using work in the process (Fig. 19.6). A refrigerator forces heat to flow from cold to hot, but to do so it requires work. A household refrigerator cools its contents and warms the house (you can feel the heat coming out the back), but it uses electricity. That heat doesn't flow spontaneously from cold to hot leads to another statement of the second law of thermodynamics:

Second law of thermodynamics (Clausius statement) It is impossible to construct a refrigerator operating in a cycle whose sole effect is to transfer heat from a cooler object to a hotter one.

The Clausius statement rules out a perfect refrigerator (Fig. 19.7).

Suppose the Clausius statement were false. Then we could build the device of Fig. 19.8a, consisting of a reversible Carnot engine and a perfect refrigerator. In each cycle the engine would extract, say, 100 J from the hot reservoir, put out 60 J of useful work, and reject 40 J to the cool reservoir. The perfect refrigerator could transfer the 40 J back to the hot reservoir. The net effect would be to extract 60 J from the hot reservoir and convert it entirely to work (Fig. 19.8b)—and we would have a perfect heat engine, in violation of the Kelvin–Planck statement of the second law. A similar argument (Problem 44) shows that if a perfect heat engine is possible, then so is a perfect refrigerator. So the Clausius and Kelvin–Planck statements of the second law are equivalent, in that if one is false, then so is the other.

Because the Carnot engine is reversible, we could run it backward and reverse its path in Fig. 19.5. The engine would extract heat from the cool reservoir, take in work, and reject heat to the hot reservoir. It would be a refrigerator. Although real refrigerators aren't designed exactly like engines, the two are, in principle, interchangeable.

We're now ready to prove Carnot's assertion that Equation 19.3 gives the maximum engine efficiency. Consider again the Carnot engine in Fig. 19.8a. It extracts 100 J of heat and delivers 60 J of work, so it's 60% efficient. Suppose we had another engine operating between the same two reservoirs, but with 70% efficiency. Since the Carnot engine is reversible, we can run it as a refrigerator. If we put the two together, we get the device of Fig. 19.9a. Its net effect is to extract 10 J from the cool reservoir and deliver 10 J of work—so it's a perfect heat engine, in violation of the second law (Fig. 19.9b). It's therefore impossible to make an engine that's more efficient than a Carnot engine, and thus Equation 19.3 gives the maximum possible efficiency for *any* heat engine operating between the same two fixed temperatures. For that reason the Carnot efficiency of Equation 19.3 is also called the **thermodynamic efficiency**.

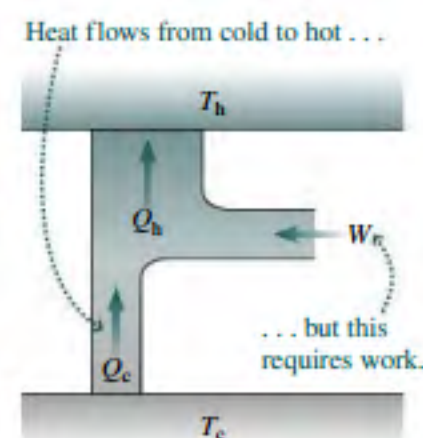


FIGURE 19.6 Energy-flow diagram for a real refrigerator.

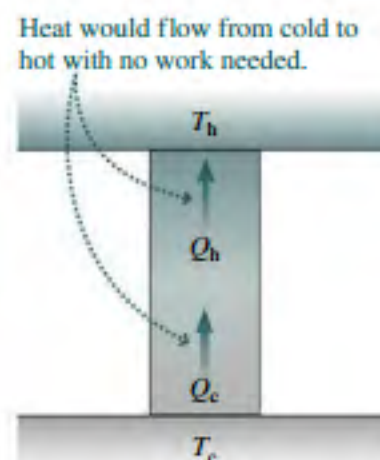


FIGURE 19.7 A perfect refrigerator is impossible.

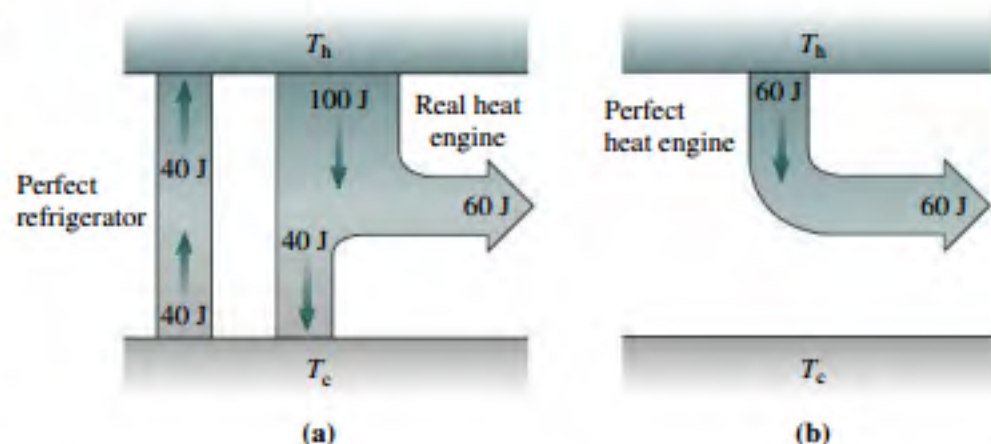


FIGURE 19.8 (a) A real heat engine combined with a perfect refrigerator is equivalent to (b) a perfect heat engine.

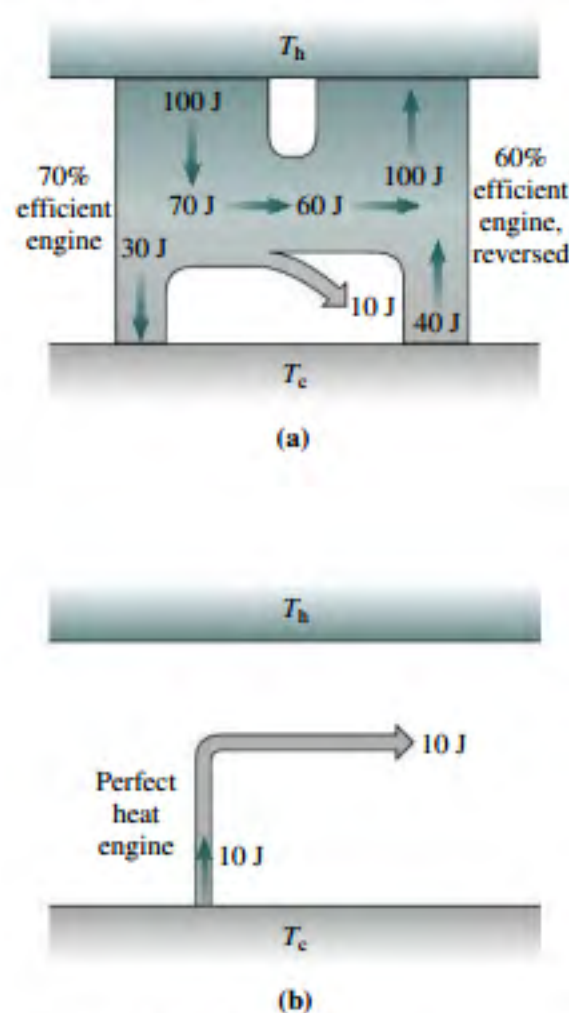


FIGURE 19.9 (a) A 60% efficient reversible engine run as a refrigerator, along with a hypothetical engine with 70% efficiency. (b) The combination is equivalent to a perfect heat engine.

Irreversible engines, because they involve processes that dissipate organized motion, are necessarily *less* efficient. So are reversible engines, if their heat exchange doesn't take place solely at the highest and lowest temperatures. The ordinary gasoline engine is a case in point; even if it could be made perfectly reversible, its efficiency would be less than that of a comparable Carnot engine (see Problem 60 and the Application on page 365).

GOT IT?

19.2 The low temperature for a practical heat engine is generally set by the ambient environment, at about 300 K. With that value for T_c , what will happen to the efficiency of a Carnot engine if you reengineer it so its high temperature T_h doubles? (a) efficiency will double; (b) efficiency will quadruple; (c) efficiency will increase by an amount that depends on the original value of T_h ; (d) efficiency will decrease

19.3 Applications of the Second Law

LO 19.3 Describe practical implications of the second law, especially for engines, power plants, and heat pumps.

The world abounds with thermal energy, but the second law of thermodynamics limits our ability to use that energy. Any device we construct that involves the interchange of heat and work is a heat engine or refrigerator, subject to the second law.

Limitations on Heat Engines

Most of our electricity is produced in *thermal power plants*, which are large heat engines powered by the fossil fuels coal, oil, or natural gas, or by nuclear fission. Figure 19.10 diagrams such a power plant. The working fluid is water, heated in a boiler and converted to steam at high pressure. The steam expands adiabatically to spin a fanlike turbine. The turbine turns a generator that converts mechanical work to electrical energy.

Steam leaving the turbine is still gaseous and is hotter than the water supplied to the boiler. Here's where the second law applies: Had the water returned from the turbine in its original state, we would have extracted as work all the energy acquired in the boiler, in violation of the second law. Therefore, we must run the steam through a **condenser**, where it contacts pipes carrying cool water, typically from a river, lake, or ocean. The condensed steam, now cool water, is fed back into the boiler to repeat the cycle.

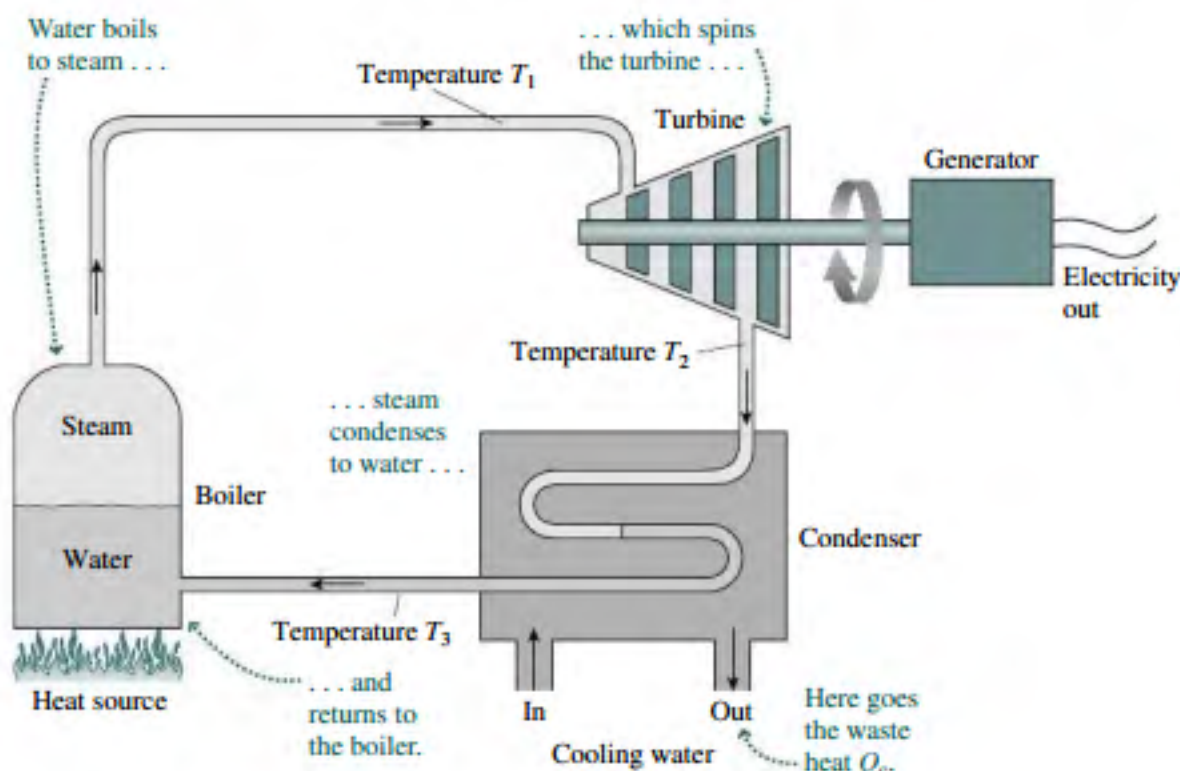


FIGURE 19.10 Schematic diagram of an electric power plant.

The maximum steam temperature in a power plant is limited by the materials used in its construction. For a conventional fossil-fuel plant, current technology permits high temperatures of around 650 K. Potential damage to nuclear fuel rods limits the temperature in a nuclear plant to around 570 K. The average temperature of the cooling water is about 40°C (310 K), so the maximum possible efficiencies for these power plants, given by Equation 19.3, are

$$e_{\text{fossil}} = 1 - \frac{310 \text{ K}}{650 \text{ K}} = 52\% \quad \text{and} \quad e_{\text{nuclear}} = 1 - \frac{310 \text{ K}}{570 \text{ K}} = 46\%$$

Temperature differences between steam and cooling water, mechanical friction, and energy needed for pumps and pollution-control devices all reduce efficiency further, to about 33% for both coal-fired and nuclear plants—which, together, provide over half the world's electricity. So roughly two-thirds of the fuel energy we use to make electricity ends up as waste heat.

A typical large power plant produces 1 GW of electric power, so another 2 GW of waste heat goes into the cooling water. The resulting temperature rise can cause serious ecological problems. The huge cooling towers you see at power plants reduce such “thermal pollution” by transferring much of the waste heat to the atmosphere (see this chapter's opening photo). Even so, a substantial fraction of all rainwater falling on the United States eventually finds its way through the condensers of power plants (see Problem 37).

EXAMPLE 19.2 Improving Efficiency: A Combined-Cycle Power Plant

The gas turbine in a combined-cycle power plant (see the Application on the next page) operates at 1450°C. Its waste heat at 500°C is the input for a conventional steam cycle, with its average condenser temperature at 40°C. Find the thermodynamic efficiency of the combined cycle, and compare with the efficiencies of the individual components if they were operated independently.

INTERPRET This problem is about the thermodynamic efficiency of a combined-cycle power plant. As described in the Application, that means a plant using a high-temperature gas turbine whose waste heat becomes the energy input to a conventional steam turbine.

DEVELOP Figure 19.11 is a conceptual diagram of the combined-cycle plant, based on the Application. Equation 19.3, $e = 1 - (T_c/T_h)$, gives the thermodynamic efficiencies of each cycle and of the combination. We identify the 1450°C = 1723 K temperature as T_h in Equation 19.3 for the gas turbine. The intermediate temperature 500°C = 773 K serves as T_c for the gas turbine but as T_h for the steam cycle. Finally, the 40°C or 313-K condenser temperature is T_c for the steam cycle.

EVALUATE To treat the entire plant as a single heat engine in Equation 19.3, we use the highest and lowest temperatures:

$$e_{\text{combined}} = 1 - \frac{T_c}{T_h} = 1 - \frac{313 \text{ K}}{1723 \text{ K}} = 0.82 = 82\%$$

Friction and other losses would reduce this figure substantially, but a combined-cycle plant operating at these temperatures could have a

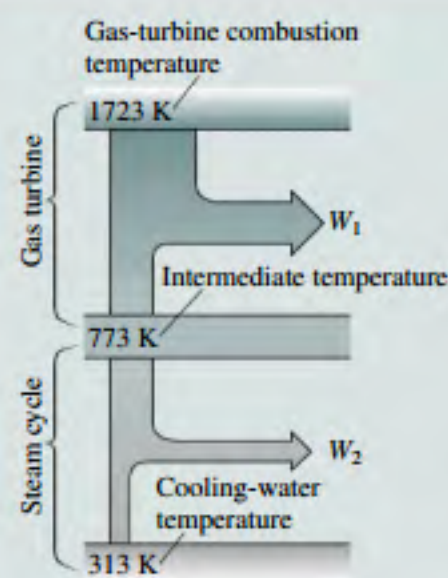


FIGURE 19.11 Conceptual diagram of a combined-cycle power plant.

practical efficiency near 60%. The efficiencies of the individual components also follow from Equation 19.3:

$$e_{\text{gas turbine}} = 1 - \frac{773 \text{ K}}{1723 \text{ K}} = 55\% \quad \text{and} \quad e_{\text{steam}} = 1 - \frac{313 \text{ K}}{773 \text{ K}} = 60\%$$

ASSESS Make sense? Because of its extreme temperatures, the combined cycle gives an efficiency that's better than either of its parts! You can learn more about combined-cycle power plants in the Application on the next page, and by working Problem 38.

Gasoline and diesel engines provide another pervasive example of heat engines, discussed in the Application on page 363. A typical automobile engine has a theoretical maximum efficiency of around 50%, but irreversible thermodynamic processes make the actual

APPLICATION Combined-Cycle Power Plants



Improving power-plant efficiency helps reduce air pollution and greenhouse-gas emissions, not to mention the cost of electricity. Modern *combined-cycle* power plants achieve efficiencies approaching 60% by combining a conventional steam system like that of Fig. 19.10 with a *gas turbine* similar to a jet aircraft engine. Gas turbines operate at high temperatures—between 1000 K and 2000 K—but they aren't very efficient because their exhaust temperature (T_c in Equation 19.3) is also high. In a combined-cycle plant, exhaust from a gas turbine drives a conventional steam cycle. The overall effect is the same as that of a single heat engine operating between the gas turbine's high combustion temperature and the low temperature of the environment (see Problem 38). The second law still limits the efficiency, but the high T_h and low T_c make for greater efficiency than in a conventional plant. The photo shows a gas-fired combined-cycle plant.

efficiency much lower. Mechanical friction dissipates additional energy, with the end result that less than 20% of the fuel energy reaches the driving wheels. Problems 60 and 61 explore the gasoline engine.

We wouldn't be so concerned with efficiency if we didn't have to pay for fuel or worry about the environment. Engines with "free" fuel include solar-thermal power plants that concentrate sunlight to boil a fluid that drives a turbine, and ocean thermal-energy conversion (OTEC) schemes that extract useful work from the modest temperature difference between tropical surface waters and the deep ocean. Neither provides significant energy today, but that could change as the world moves away from fossil fuels.

Refrigerators and Heat Pumps

A refrigerator works like an engine in reverse: It takes in mechanical work and transfers heat from its cooler interior to its warmer surroundings. An air conditioner is a refrigerator whose "interior" is the building being cooled. A close cousin is the **heat pump**, which transfers heat either way, cooling a building in the summer and warming it in the winter (Fig. 19.12). Most contemporary heat pumps exchange energy between a building and the outside air. However, in very cold climates it's more efficient (but more expensive) to use groundwater, typically at about 10°C year-round. Heat pumps require electricity, but they transfer more heat energy than they consume in electricity. That makes heat pumps potentially energy-saving devices for winter heating. However, some of that gain is offset by the inefficiency of the power plant producing the electricity.

An efficient refrigerator (or any other device, for that matter) should maximize what we want from the device compared with what we have to put in. The **coefficient of performance (COP)** quantifies this ratio:

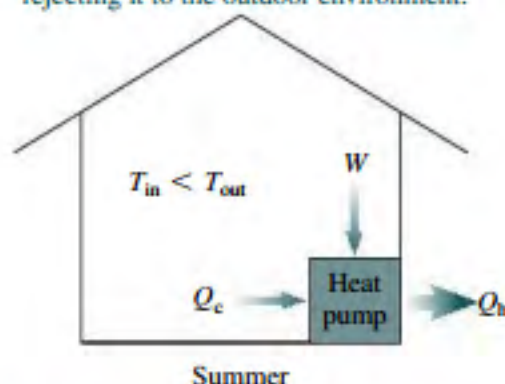
$$\text{COP} = \frac{\text{What we want}}{\text{What we put in}}$$

For a refrigerator or summertime heat pump, "what we want" is cooling, so the numerator is Q_c . For a wintertime heat pump, "what we want" is heating, so the numerator is Q_h . For either, "what we put in" is mechanical work, W , or its equivalent in electricity. Thus we have

$$\text{COP}_{\text{refrigerator}} = \frac{Q_c}{W} = \frac{Q_c}{Q_h - Q_c} \quad \text{COP}_{\text{heat pump}} = \frac{Q_h}{W} = \frac{Q_h}{Q_h - Q_c}$$

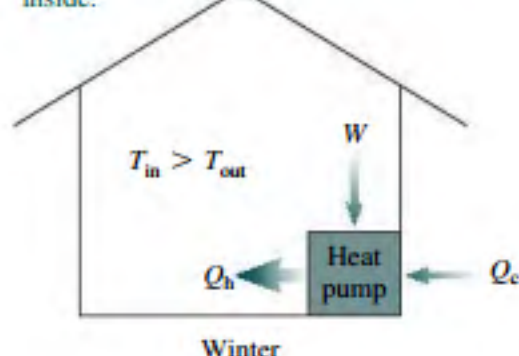
In both cases the second equality follows from the first law of thermodynamics. In deriving the maximum efficiency of a heat engine, we found that $Q_c/Q_h = T_c/T_h$. Therefore the maximum possible COPs are

In summer the heat pump cools the house by extracting energy and rejecting it to the outdoor environment.



Summer

In winter the pump extracts energy from outside and transfers it to the inside.



Winter

FIGURE 19.12 A heat pump.

COP is the coefficient of performance.

What we want from a heat pump is heat, so its COP depends most strongly on the high temperature T_h .

$$\text{COP}_{\text{refrigerator}} = \frac{T_c}{T_h - T_c} \quad (19.4a)$$

What we want from a refrigerator is cooling, so its COP depends most strongly on the low temperature T_c .

$$\text{COP}_{\text{heat pump}} = \frac{T_h}{T_h - T_c} \quad (19.4b)$$

When the temperatures T_h and T_c are close, Equations 19.4 give high COPs—meaning the refrigerator or heat pump takes relatively little work to do its job. But as the difference increases, the COP drops and we have to supply more work. Incidentally, our COP expression works for engines as well, if we take “what we want” to be mechanical work W and “what we put in” to be the heat Q_h .

EXAMPLE 19.3 The COP: A Home Freezer

A typical home freezer operates between a low temperature of 0°F (-18°C or 255 K) and a high of 86°F (30°C or 303 K). What’s its maximum possible COP? With this COP, how much electrical energy would it take to freeze 500 g of water initially at 0°C ?

INTERPRET This problem is about a refrigerator—in this case a freezer. We identify T_h and T_c with the values 303 K and 255 K , respectively.

DEVELOP Equation 19.4a, $\text{COP} = T_c/(T_h - T_c)$, will determine the COP. Then we’ll use Equation 17.5, $Q = Lm$, to find the heat Q_c that the freezer must extract to freeze the water. From there we’ll be able to use $\text{COP} = Q_c/W$ to find the work—equivalently, the electrical energy—required.

EVALUATE Equation 19.4a gives

$$\text{COP} = \frac{T_c}{T_h - T_c} = \frac{255\text{ K}}{303\text{ K} - 255\text{ K}} = 5.31$$

From Equation 17.5 and Table 17.1, we find the heat that needs to be removed in freezing 500 g of ice: $Q_c = Lm = (334\text{ kJ/kg})(0.50\text{ kg}) = 167\text{ kJ}$. The COP is the ratio of the heat removed to the work or electrical energy required, so we have $W = Q_c/\text{COP} = 167\text{ kJ}/5.31 = 31\text{ kJ}$.

ASSESS Make sense? A COP of 5.3 means that each unit of work transfers 5.3 units of heat from inside the freezer to its surroundings—so the electrical-energy requirement is modest. A practical freezer operating between these temperatures would have a lower COP and require more electrical energy.

GOT IT?

19.3 A clever engineer decides to increase the efficiency of a Carnot engine by cooling the low-temperature reservoir using a refrigerator with the maximum possible COP. Will the overall efficiency of this system (a) exceed, (b) be less than, or (c) equal that of the original engine alone?

19.4 Entropy and Energy Quality

LO 19.4 Describe entropy and its relation to energy quality.

LO 19.5 Determine quantitatively the entropy changes in simple thermodynamic processes.

LO 19.6 Articulate the second law of thermodynamics in terms of entropy.

If offered a joule of energy, would you rather have it in the form of mechanical work, heat at 1000 K , or heat at 300 K ? Your answer might depend on what you want to do. To lift or accelerate a mass, you’d be smart to take your energy as work. But if you want to keep warm, heat at 300 K would be perfectly acceptable.

But which should you choose if you want to keep all your options open, making the energy available for the most possible uses? The second law of thermodynamics answers clearly: You should take the work. Why? Because you could use it directly as mechanical energy, or you could, through friction or other irreversible processes, use it to raise the temperature of something.

If you chose 300 K heat for your joule of energy, then you could supply a full joule only to objects cooler than 300 K . You couldn’t do mechanical work unless you ran a

heat engine. With its T_h only a little above the ambient temperature, your engine would be inefficient, and you could extract only a small fraction of a joule of mechanical energy. You'd be better off with 1000-K heat since you could transfer it to anything cooler than 1000 K, or you could run a heat engine to produce up to 0.7 joule of mechanical energy (because $1 - T_c/T_h = 1 - 300/1000 = 0.7$).

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 19.1 Energy Quality and Cogeneration

You need a new water heater, and you're trying to decide between gas and electric. The gas heater is 85% efficient, meaning 85% of the fuel energy goes into heating water. The electric heater is essentially 100% efficient. Thermodynamically, which heater makes the most sense?

EVALUATE Your electricity is energy of the highest quality. It probably comes from a thermal power plant, which typically discards as waste heat twice as much energy as it produces in electricity. The electric heater may be 100% efficient in your home, but when you consider the big picture, only about one-third of the fuel energy consumed at the power plant ends up heating your water. With 85% efficiency, the gas heater is the wiser choice.

ASSESS It makes sense to match energy sources to their end uses. Electricity is high-quality energy, so it's best for running motors, light sources, electronics, and other devices requiring high-quality

energy. Turning it into low-grade heat is a thermodynamic folly! A really smart strategy is **cogeneration**, in which the waste heat from electric power generation is used to heat buildings. In Europe, whole communities are heated that way, and institutions in the United States are increasingly turning to cogeneration to reduce energy costs and carbon emissions.

MAKING THE CONNECTION If the electricity comes from a more efficient gas-fired power plant with $e = 48\%$, compare the gas consumption of your two heater choices.

EVALUATE The gas heater turns 1 unit of fuel energy into 0.85 unit of thermal energy in the water. The power plant turns 1 unit of fuel energy into 0.48 unit of electrical energy, which the electric heater converts to 0.48 unit of thermal energy. The electric heater is therefore responsible for $0.85/0.48 = 1.8$ times as much gas consumption.

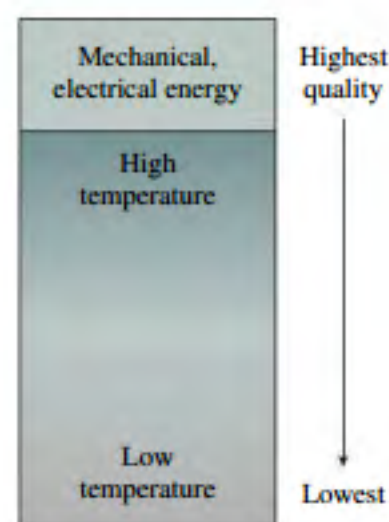


FIGURE 19.13 Energy quality measures the versatility of different energy forms.

$\frac{Q_c}{T_c} + \frac{Q_h}{T_h} = 0$ for the highlighted cycle or any other cycle, so $\sum Q/T$ must be zero around the path.

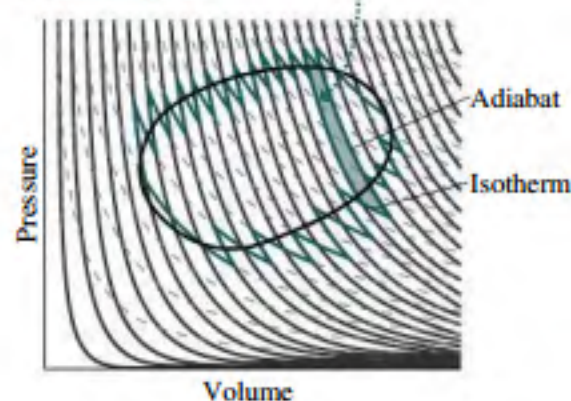


FIGURE 19.14 An arbitrary cycle approximated by isothermal (dashed curves) and adiabatic (solid curves) steps. Heat transfer occurs only during the isothermal steps.

Taking your energy in the form of work gives you the most options. Anything you can do with a joule of energy, you can do with the work. Heat is less versatile, with 300 K heat the least useful of the three. We're not talking here about the quantity of energy—we have exactly 1 joule in each case—but about **energy quality** (Fig. 19.13). We can readily convert an entire amount of energy from higher to lower quality, but the second law precludes going in the opposite direction with 100% efficiency.

Entropy

Mix hot and cold water, and you get lukewarm water. There's no energy loss, but you *have* lost something—namely, the ability to do useful work. In the initial state, you could have run a heat engine using the temperature difference ΔT between the hot and cold water. In the final state, there's no temperature difference, so you couldn't run a heat engine. The *quantity* of energy hasn't changed, but its *quality* has decreased. **Entropy**, symbol S , quantifies the loss of quality associated with energy transformations. In his Ninth Memoir, Clausius coined the term *entropy* for its similarity to the word *energy* and its Greek root “troph,” meaning *transformation*.

To motivate the definition of entropy, consider an ideal gas undergoing a Carnot cycle. Recall that a Carnot cycle consists of two isothermal and two adiabatic processes (Fig. 19.5). In deriving Equation 19.3 for the Carnot efficiency, we found that $Q_c/Q_h = T_c/T_h$, where Q_c was the heat *rejected* from the system to the low-temperature reservoir at T_c , and Q_h the heat *added* from the reservoir at T_h .

Let's focus on the ideal gas itself and define all heats as the heat *added* to the gas, so Q_c changes sign. The relationship $Q_c/Q_h = T_c/T_h$ between heats and temperatures can now be expressed as

$$\frac{Q_c}{T_c} + \frac{Q_h}{T_h} = 0 \quad (\text{Carnot cycle})$$

We can generalize this result to *any* reversible cycle by approximating the cycle as a sequence of Carnot cycles, as shown in Fig. 19.14. For each segment, we have $\sum Q/T = 0$. As we increase the number of cycles, the volume change associated with each isothermal segment shrinks and the edges get less jagged. We can approximate the closed cycle ever

closer by using more and more Carnot cycles. In the limit, the approximation becomes exact and the sum becomes an integral:

$$\oint \frac{dQ}{T} = 0 \quad (\text{any reversible cycle}) \quad (19.5)$$

where the circle indicates integration over a *closed* path.

Equation 19.5 holds for *any* closed path in the pV diagram—that is, for any *reversible cycle*. That means we can define the *entropy change*, ΔS , between an initial state 1 and a final state 2 as

$$\Delta S_{12} = \int_1^2 \frac{dQ}{T} \quad (\text{entropy change}) \quad (19.6)$$

ΔS_{12} is the change in a system's entropy as it goes from state 1 to state 2.

dQ is an infinitesimal amount of heat flowing to or from the system.

We need the integral whenever the temperature is changing.

T is the temperature.

Note that entropy has the units J/K, the same units as Boltzmann's constant k_B .

Take a system along a path from state 1 to state 2 in its pV diagram; Equation 19.6 gives the corresponding entropy change ΔS_{12} . Go back to state 1 by any other reversible path, and the resulting entropy change ΔS_{21} must be $-\Delta S_{12}$ so that there's no entropy change around the closed path (Fig. 19.15). Thus the entropy change of Equation 19.6 is independent of path; it depends only on the initial and final states. The only restriction is that we integrate over a reversible path. Like pressure and temperature, entropy is therefore a *thermodynamic state variable*—a quantity that characterizes a given state independently of how the system got into that state.

We restricted ourselves to reversible paths in Equation 19.6 since irreversible processes take a system out of thermodynamic equilibrium and therefore aren't described by paths in the pV diagram. But because entropy depends only on the initial and final states, we can calculate the entropy change in an *irreversible* process by using Equation 19.6 for a *reversible* process that goes between the same two states. Doing so for a couple of examples will help you understand the meaning of entropy.

Irreversible Heat Transfer

Figure 19.16 shows hot and cold water being mixed to form lukewarm water. This is an irreversible process, as we described in Section 19.1. We could achieve the same result reversibly, however, by slowly cooling or heating each water sample separately until they're both at the final temperature that would result from directly mixing them. At that point the two could be mixed, and there would be no further temperature change.

To quantify the corresponding entropy change, consider two equal masses m of water, initially at temperatures T_c and T_h . Since the masses are equal, the final temperature if they were mixed would be midway between their initial temperatures: $T_f = (T_c + T_h)/2$. To find the entropy change for each water sample, we first use Equation 16.3 to write $dQ = mc dT$, where c is the specific heat. Using this result in Equation 19.6, and assuming c doesn't change with temperature, we have

$$\Delta S_{h,c} = \int_{T_{h,c}}^{T_f} \frac{mc dT}{T} = mc \int_{T_{h,c}}^{T_f} \frac{dT}{T}$$

where the subscripts h and c indicate separate calculations of the entropy change for the hot and cold water, respectively. In Problem 69 you can continue this calculation to show that the overall entropy change for this system—the sum $\Delta S_h + \Delta S_c$ —is given by $\Delta S = mc \ln[(T_c + T_h)^2/4T_c T_h]$. You'll also show in Problem 69 that the argument of the logarithm in this expression is greater than 1, so the entropy change is positive—meaning that entropy increases. Although we did this calculation for the *reversible* process of

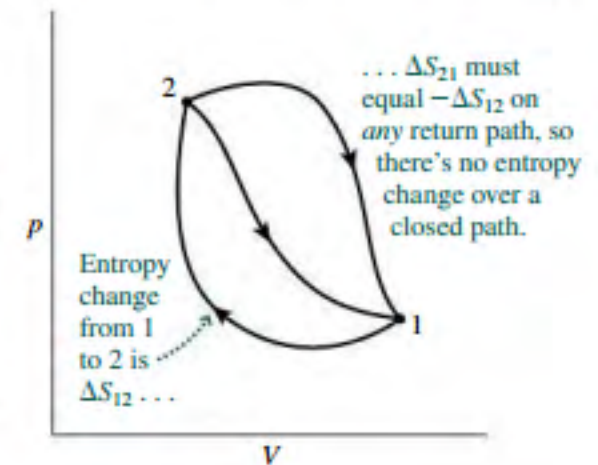


FIGURE 19.15 Entropy change is path-independent.

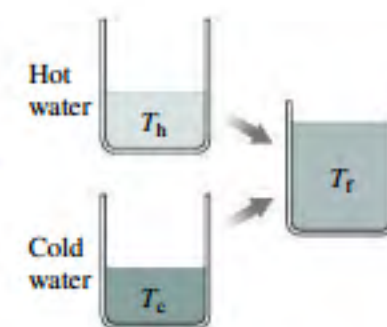


FIGURE 19.16 Hot and cold water are mixed to give lukewarm water at temperature T_f . The process is irreversible, but a reversible process resulting in the same final state would be to cool the hot water slowly to T_f , heat the cold water slowly to T_f , and then mix. The entropy change is the same for either process.

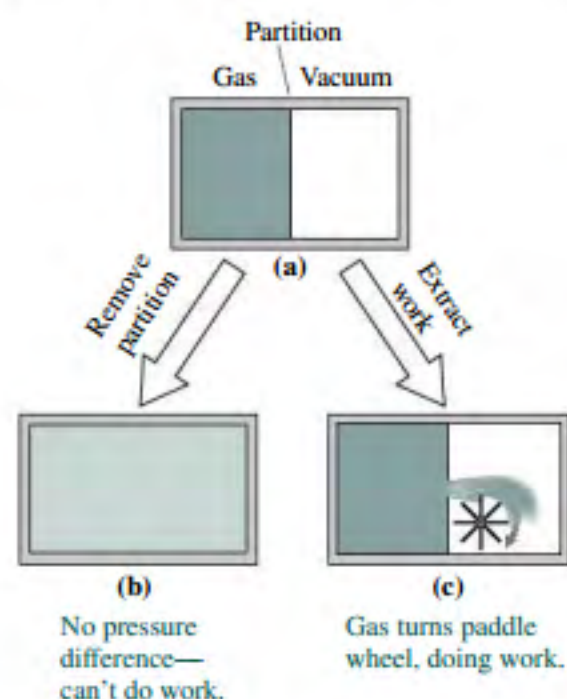


FIGURE 19.17 Two ways for a gas to expand into a vacuum.

slowly heating the cold water and cooling the hot water, the result holds, as we've argued, for the *irreversible* process of mixing hot and cold water directly. Thus, entropy increases during the irreversible mixing.

Although we used equal masses of water in this example, a similar calculation would give the same general result—an entropy increase—when different substances with different masses and different specific heats and initially different temperatures come to thermodynamic equilibrium. Problems 54 and 57 provide some examples.

Adiabatic Free Expansion

In Fig. 19.17a, a partition confines an ideal gas to one side of a box; the other side is vacuum. Remove the partition, and the gas undergoes a **free expansion**, filling the box. Consider the box to be insulated, so there's no heat flow and the expansion is therefore adiabatic. But this expansion is *irreversible*, so it's significantly different from the adiabatic expansions we considered in Chapter 18. In our free expansion, the vacuum doesn't exert pressure to oppose the gas, so the gas does no work and therefore its internal energy doesn't change. Figure 19.17c shows how we could have used the expanding gas to turn a paddle wheel, extracting useful work. We can't do that with the uniform-pressure gas of Fig. 19.17b, so the free expansion results in the system's losing its ability to do work.

Let's determine the entropy change for this irreversible process. We do that by finding a reversible process that takes the gas between the same two states. Since the gas's internal energy doesn't change, neither does its temperature. So the corresponding reversible process is an isothermal expansion, for which Equation 18.4 gives the heat added: $Q = nRT \ln(V_2/V_1)$. With the temperature constant, the entropy change of Equation 19.6 becomes

$$\Delta S = \int \frac{dQ}{T} = \frac{1}{T} \int dQ = \frac{Q}{T} = nR \ln\left(\frac{V_2}{V_1}\right)$$

The final volume V_2 is larger than V_1 , so entropy has *increased*. Although we computed this result for the reversible process, it holds for *any* process that takes the system between the same initial and final states—including our irreversible free expansion.

Entropy and the Availability of Work

Entropy increases during the two irreversible processes we just considered. Energy quality decreases, in that both systems lose the ability to do work. We can quantify that loss by considering what would happen if we had let the gas in Fig. 19.17 undergo a reversible isothermal expansion instead of free expansion. In that case, the gas would have done work equal to the heat gained:

$$W = Q = nRT \ln\left(\frac{V_2}{V_1}\right)$$

After the irreversible free expansion, the gas can no longer do this work, even though its energy is unchanged. Comparing W with the entropy change ΔS we calculated above, we see that the energy that becomes unavailable to do work is $E_{\text{unavailable}} = T \Delta S$. This illustrates a more general relation between entropy and energy quality:

During an irreversible process where the entropy of a system increases by ΔS , energy $E = T_{\text{min}} \Delta S$ becomes unavailable to do work, where T_{min} is the lowest temperature available to the system.

This statement shows that entropy provides our measure of energy quality. Given two systems with identical energy content, the one with the lower entropy contains the higher-quality energy. An entropy increase corresponds to a degradation in energy quality, as energy becomes unavailable to do work.

EXAMPLE 19.4**Increasing Entropy: The Loss of Energy Quality**
Worked Example with Variation Problems

A 2.0-L cylinder contains 5.0 mol of compressed gas at 290 K. If the cylinder is discharged into a 150-L vacuum chamber and its temperature remains 290 K, how much energy has become unavailable to do work?

INTERPRET This problem asks about the loss of energy quality during an irreversible and therefore entropy-increasing process—namely, an adiabatic free expansion.

DEVELOP Figure 19.18 is a sketch of the situation, similar to Fig. 19.17 except that here the gas is initially confined to a small cylinder, so its volume changes more dramatically as it expands into the large, empty chamber. In analyzing the free expansion of Fig. 19.17, we found $\Delta S = nR \ln(V_2/V_1)$. Our statement relating entropy and energy quality says that the energy made unavailable to do work is $T_{\min} \Delta S$. So our plan is to calculate ΔS and multiply by $T_{\min}$ to find that unavailable energy.

EVALUATE Because the temperature doesn't change, $T_{\min}$ is the 290-K temperature we're given, and we have

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{unavailable}} &= T \Delta S = nRT \ln\left(\frac{V_2}{V_1}\right) \\ &= (5.0 \text{ mol})(8.314 \text{ J/K} \cdot \text{mol})(290 \text{ K}) \ln\left(\frac{152 \text{ L}}{2.0 \text{ L}}\right) = 52 \text{ kJ} \end{aligned}$$

Here we set $V_2 = 152 \text{ L}$ because the final volume includes both the larger chamber and the original cylinder.

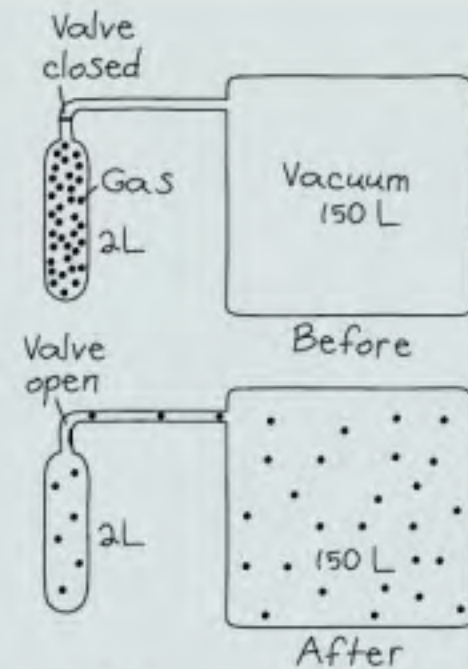


FIGURE 19.18 Our sketch for Example 19.4. Note that the final volume is 152 L.

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: This is the work we could have extracted from a reversible isothermal expansion. By letting the gas undergo an irreversible process, we gave up the possibility of extracting this work.

A Statistical Interpretation of Entropy

We began this chapter arguing that systems naturally evolve from ordered to disordered states. Entropy increase measures that loss of order, which is what makes energy unavailable to do work. Here we'll explore the meaning of entropy further, based on the partitioned box we used for adiabatic free expansion.

Suppose we have a gas with just two identical molecules. The left side of Fig. 19.19 shows that, with the partition removed, there are four possible **microstates**—specific arrangements of the individual molecules in the box. But say we only care about the number of molecules in each side of the box. Then two of these arrangements are indistinguishable, because they both have one molecule in each half of the box. Those two correspond to a single **macrostate**, specified by giving the number of molecules in each half of the box, without regard to which molecules they are. This is shown on the right in Fig. 19.19.

With four available microstates, the probability of being in any one microstate is $\frac{1}{4}$. There's only one microstate with both molecules on the left, so the chances of being in the macrostate with two molecules on the left is also $\frac{1}{4}$; the same is true for the macrostate with two molecules on the right. But two of the possible microstates have one molecule on each side, so the probability for this macrostate is $\frac{1}{2}$.

Now consider a gas of four molecules. Figure 19.20 shows 16 possible microstates, corresponding to five macrostates. Again, the probability of finding the system in a given macrostate depends on the associated number of microstates; Fig. 19.20 enumerates these probabilities. The figure shows that we're most likely to find the system in the macrostate with the molecules evenly divided; the states with all the molecules on one side are now quite improbable.

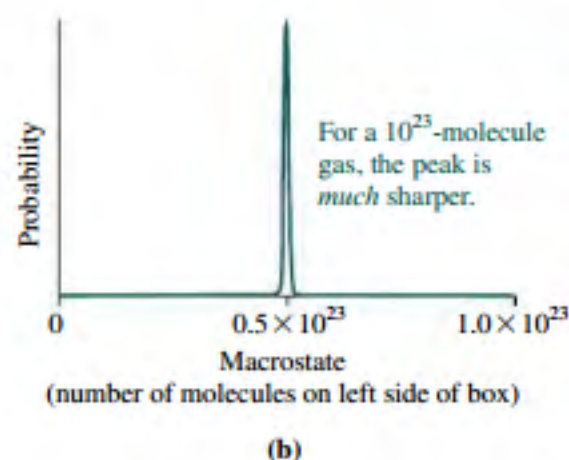
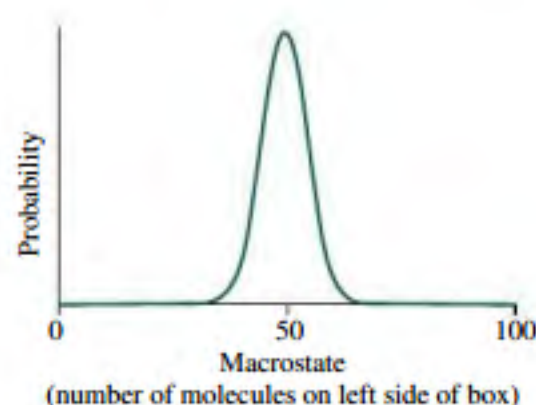
Raise the number of molecules to 100, and the number of microstates becomes huge— 2^{100} , or more than 10^{30} . That makes the macrostates with all or nearly all the molecules on one side extremely improbable. The macrostate with half the molecules on each side remains the most likely, although states with nearly equal divisions of molecules are also quite probable. Rather than enumerate these probabilities, we graph them (Fig. 19.21a).

Microstates (ways of distributing the two atoms in the two halves of the box)		Macrostates (number of atoms in each half)	
		2	0
		1	1
		1	1
		0	2

FIGURE 19.19 A gas of two molecules has four possible microstates and three macrostates.

Microstates (16 total)	Macrostates	Probability of macrostate
	4 0	$\frac{1}{16} = 0.06$
	3 1	$\frac{4}{16} = 0.25$
	2 2	$\frac{6}{16} = 0.38$
	1 3	$\frac{4}{16} = 0.25$
	0 4	$\frac{1}{16} = 0.06$

FIGURE 19.20 Microstates, macrostates, and probabilities for a gas of four molecules.

FIGURE 19.21 Probability distributions for a gas of (a) 100 molecules and (b) 10^{23} molecules.

Typical gas samples have roughly 10^{23} molecules, and that makes macrostates with anything other than a nearly equal distribution of molecules extremely unlikely—as suggested by the spike-like probability distribution in Fig. 19.21*b*. You could sit in your room for many times the age of the universe, and you’d never see all the air molecules spontaneously end up on one side of the room!

Entropy and the Second Law of Thermodynamics

The statistical improbability of more ordered states—in our example, those with significantly more molecules on one side of the box—is at the root of the second law of thermodynamics. Although we defined entropy in terms of heat flow and temperature (Equation 19.6), a more fundamental definition involves the probabilities of individual microstates. In that sense, entropy is indeed a measure of disorder.

Systems naturally evolve toward disordered or higher-entropy states simply because there are far more of these states available. So a general statement of the second law is:

Second law of thermodynamics The entropy of a closed system can never decrease.

At best, the entropy of a closed system remains constant—and that’s only in an ideal, reversible process. If anything irreversible occurs—friction, or any deviation from thermodynamic equilibrium—then entropy increases. As it does, energy becomes unavailable to do work, and nothing within the closed system can restore that energy to its original quality. This new statement of the second law subsumes our previous statements about the impossibility of perfect heat engines and refrigerators, for their operation would require an entropy decrease.

We *can* decrease the entropy of a system that isn’t closed—but only by supplying high-quality energy from outside. Running a refrigerator decreases the entropy of its contents, but this requires electrical energy to make heat flow from cold to hot. That high-quality electrical energy deteriorates into additional heat that’s rejected to the refrigerator’s environment. If we consider the entire system, not just the refrigerator’s contents, the overall entropy has increased.

Any system whose entropy seems to decrease—that gets more rather than less organized—can’t be closed. If we enlarge a system’s boundaries to encompass the entire universe, then we have the ultimate statement of the second law:

Second law of thermodynamics The entropy of the universe can never decrease.

Examples include the growth of a living thing from the random mix of molecules in its environment, the construction of a skyscraper from materials that were originally dispersed about Earth, and the appearance of ordered symbols on a printed page from a bottle of ink. All these are entropy-decreasing processes in which matter goes from near chaos

to a highly organized state—akin to separating yolk and white from a scrambled egg. But Earth isn't a closed system. It gets high-quality energy from the Sun, energy that's ultimately responsible for life. If we consider the Earth–Sun system, the entropy decrease associated with life and civilization is more than balanced by the entropy increase associated with the degradation of high-quality solar energy. We living things represent a remarkable phenomenon—the organization of matter in a universe governed by a tendency toward disorder. But we can't escape the second law of thermodynamics. Our highly organized selves and society, and the entropy decreases they represent, come into being only at the expense of greater entropy increases elsewhere.

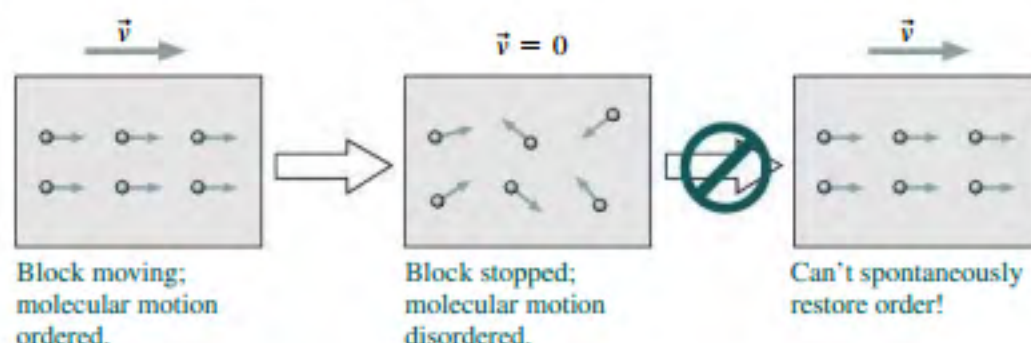
GOT IT?

19.4 In each of the following processes, does the entropy of the named system alone increase, decrease, or stay the same? (1) a balloon deflates; (2) cells differentiate in a growing embryo, forming different physiological structures; (3) an animal dies, and its remains gradually decay; (4) an earthquake demolishes a building; (5) a plant utilizes sunlight, carbon dioxide, and water to manufacture sugar; (6) a power plant burns coal and produces electrical energy; (7) a car's friction-based brakes stop the car

Chapter 19 Summary

Big Idea

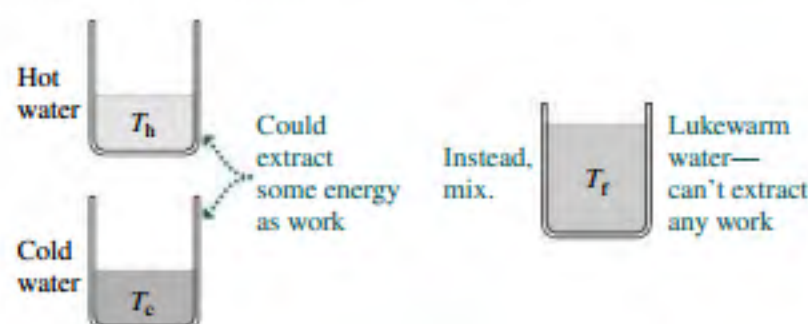
The big idea behind this chapter is the **second law of thermodynamics**—ultimately, the statement that systems tend naturally toward disorder, or states of higher **entropy**. The second law is manifest in the real world by forbidding the construction of perfect heat engines and perfect refrigerators—therefore preventing us from extracting as useful work all the energy that's contained in random thermal motions. Ultimately, the second law says that the entropy of any closed system, including the entire universe, cannot decrease.



Key Concepts and Equations

Entropy is a quantitative measure of energy quality and of disorder; the higher the entropy, the lower the energy quality and the greater the disorder. The highest-quality energy is mechanical or electrical energy, followed by the internal energy of systems at high temperature, and finally low-temperature internal energy. Whenever entropy increases, energy becomes unavailable to do work.

- $\Delta S = \int_1^2 \frac{dQ}{T}$ gives the entropy change as a system goes from state 1 to state 2.
- $E_{\text{unavailable}} = T_{\text{min}} \Delta S$ is the energy that becomes unavailable as a result of entropy increase ΔS .



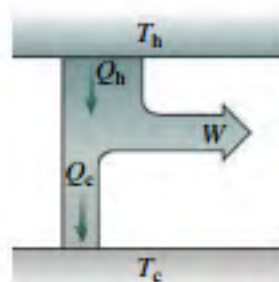
Applications

The second law sets the maximum possible efficiency of any heat engine as that of the **Carnot engine**, an engine that combines adiabatic and isothermal processes.

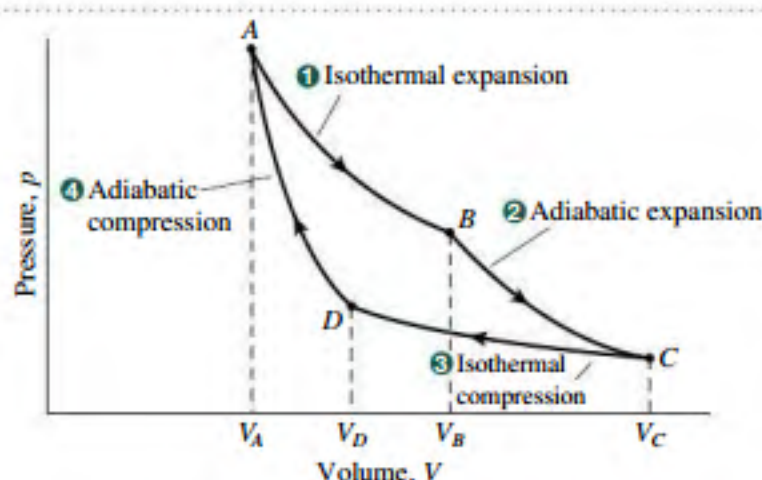
$$e = \frac{W}{Q_h} \leq e_{\text{max}} = 1 - \frac{T_c}{T_h}$$

This defines an engine's efficiency.

This is the maximum possible efficiency.



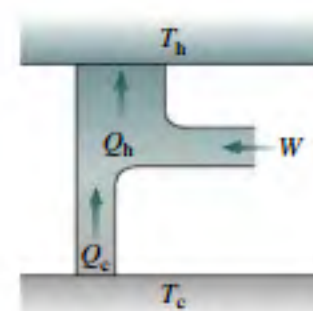
Energy-flow diagram for an engine



pV diagram for Carnot engine

Similarly, the second law limits the **coefficient of performance (COP)** of refrigerators and heat pumps:

$$\text{COP}_{\text{refrigerator}} = \frac{T_c}{T_h - T_c} \quad \text{COP}_{\text{heat pump}} = \frac{T_h}{T_h - T_c}$$



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>LO 19.1 Distinguish reversible and irreversible thermodynamic processes.</p> <p>LO 19.2 Articulate the second law of thermodynamics as it applies to engines and refrigerators, and calculate thermodynamic efficiencies.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 19.1, 19.2, 19.3, 19.4, 19.5, 19.6; Exercises 19.11, 19.12, 19.13, 19.14, 19.15; Problems 19.38, 19.40, 19.44, 19.46, 19.47, 19.48, 19.58, 19.66, 19.67</i></p> <p>LO 19.3 Describe practical implications of the second law, especially for engines, power plants, and heat pumps.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 19.7; Exercises 19.16, 19.17; Problems 19.32, 19.33, 19.34, 19.35, 19.36, 19.37, 19.38, 19.39, 19.41, 19.42, 19.43, 19.45, 19.46, 19.47, 19.60, 19.61, 19.62, 19.63, 19.68, 19.73</i></p> | <p>LO 19.4 Describe entropy and its relation to energy quality.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 19.9; Problems 19.54, 19.69</i></p> <p>LO 19.5 Determine quantitatively the entropy changes in simple thermodynamic processes.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 19.8; Exercises 19.18, 19.19, 19.20, 19.21, 19.22, 19.23; Problems 19.49, 19.50, 19.51, 19.52, 19.53, 19.55, 19.56, 19.57, 19.59, 19.64, 19.65, 19.70, 19.71, 19.72</i></p> <p>LO 19.6 Articulate the second law of thermodynamics in terms of entropy.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 19.10</i></p> |
|--|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- Could you cool the kitchen by leaving the refrigerator open? Explain.
- Could you heat the kitchen by leaving the oven open? Explain.
- Is there a limit to the maximum temperature that can be achieved by focusing sunlight with a lens? If so, what is it?
- How can you determine if a process is irreversible?
- Your power company claims that electric heat is 100% efficient. Discuss.
- A hydroelectric power plant, using the energy of falling water, can operate with efficiency arbitrarily close to 100%. Why?
- What is a heat engine? Can we have 100% efficiency for a heat engine? What are the parameters on which the efficiency depends?
- A box containing 10 coins lying heads up is found to have only 5 coins heads up after shaking. Is there any positive entropy change?
- When perfume is sprayed, some molecules return to the bottle after being released from it. Is this true? Explain.
- Why doesn't the evolution of human civilization violate the second law of thermodynamics?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Sections 19.2 and 19.3 The Second Law of Thermodynamics and Its Applications

- What are the efficiencies of reversible heat engines operating between (a) the normal freezing and boiling points of water, (b) the 25°C temperature at the surface of a tropical ocean and deep water at 4°C, and (c) a 1000°C flame and room temperature?
- A cosmic heat engine might operate between the Sun's 5800 K surface and the 2.7 K temperature of intergalactic space. What would be its maximum efficiency?
- A reversible Carnot engine operating between helium's melting point and its 4.25 K boiling point has an efficiency of 77.7%. What's the melting point?

- A Carnot engine absorbs 950 J of heat each cycle and provides 360 J of work. (a) What's its efficiency? (b) How much heat is rejected each cycle? (c) If the engine rejects heat at 10°C, what's its maximum temperature?
- Find the COP of a reversible refrigerator operating between 0°C and 35°C.
- How much work does a refrigerator with COP = 4.1 require to freeze 880 g of water already at its freezing point?
- The human body can be 25% efficient at converting chemical energy of fuel to mechanical work. Can the body be considered a heat engine, operating on the temperature difference between body temperature and the environment?

Section 19.4 Entropy and Energy Quality

- Calculate the entropy change associated with melting 1.9 kg of ice at 0°C.
- You metabolize a 450-kcal burger at your 37°C body temperature. **BIO** What's the associated entropy increase?
- You heat 350 g of water from 5°C to 90°C. By how much does the entropy of the water increase?
- Melting a block of lead already at its melting point results in an entropy increase of 950 J/K. What's the mass of the lead? (*Hint*: Consult Table 17.1.)
- How much energy becomes unavailable for work in an isothermal process at 425 K if the entropy increase is 40 J/K?
- For a gas of six molecules confined to a box, find the probability that (a) all the molecules will be found on one side of the box and (b) half the molecules will be found on each side.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two worked examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

24. **Example 19.1:** A Carnot engine extracts 2.84 kJ from its hot reservoir during each cycle and rejects 1.31 kJ to its environment at 22.5°C. (a) How much work does the engine do in one cycle? (b) What's its efficiency? (c) What's the temperature of the hot reservoir?
25. **Example 19.1:** A Carnot engine's mechanical power output is 48.4 kW, and it rejects heat to the ambient environment at the rate of 41.7 kW. If the engine's hot reservoir is at 625 K, what are (a) the rate of energy extraction from the hot reservoir, (b) the engine's efficiency, and (c) the temperature of the ambient environment?
26. **Example 19.1:** California's Ivanpah power station, which became operational in 2014, is the world's largest plant to use concentrating solar power (CSP) technology. Here, fields of Sun-tracking mirrors focus sunlight on high towers, bringing a heat-transfer fluid to a temperature that's considerably hotter than the water and steam in nuclear and coal plants. (If you've flown into or out of Los Angeles, you may have seen Ivanpah's three towers, each looking like a bright star on the desert floor.) Suppose that the total solar power Ivanpah's mirrors deliver to the towers is 610 MW, that all that power goes into heating the fluid, and that the plant rejects 233 MW of waste heat to the environment at 320 K. Find (a) the plant's electric power output, (b) its efficiency, and (c) the temperature of the fluid in the towers. Approximate the plant as a Carnot engine.
27. **Example 19.1:** Ocean thermal-energy conversion (OTEC) is an energy-producing scheme that uses the temperature difference between warm ocean surface waters in the tropics and cooler water several hundred meters down. Find the Carnot efficiency for an OTEC plant operating between 25°C surface water and 5°C deep water. Your answer may seem low, but remember that OTEC's "fuel" is free.
28. **Example 19.4:** A standard "C" cylinder for storing pressurized gasses has an internal volume of 6.88 L. Such a cylinder contains 52.8 mol of compressed nitrogen gas (N_2) at 282 K. If the cylinder is discharged into a 445-m³ vacuum chamber, how much energy becomes unavailable to do work?
29. **Example 19.4:** Toyota's Mirai fuel-cell car stores its hydrogen (H_2) fuel in tanks that hold 5.0 kg of hydrogen at 70 MPa pressure. During a test one of these tanks leaks its hydrogen into the surrounding test chamber, whose volume is 955 m³ and which is essentially at vacuum. The hydrogen stays at a constant 293-K temperature during this process. If the energy that becomes unavailable to do work is 54.6 MJ, what's the fuel tank's volume? *Note:* The unavailable energy here is *not* the energy that would have been released on reacting the hydrogen in the vehicle's fuel cell; rather, it's the much lower energy that could have been recovered by using the pressurized gas to turn a turbine.
30. **Example 19.4:** A cylinder holds n mol of compressed gas at temperature T . It's connected by a hose of negligible volume to an identical cylinder that's been pumped down to vacuum. When the valve on the full cylinder is opened, the gas expands to fill the entire system while maintaining the constant temperature T . Find an expression for the energy that becomes unavailable to do work as a result of this process.
31. **Example 19.4:** A gas cylinder with interior volume 11.5 L holds compressed air at 16.8 MPa. The cylinder is joined by a hose of negligible volume to a second cylinder that's been pumped down to vacuum. When the valve on the full cylinder is opened, the air expands to fill the entire system, all the while maintaining a constant temperature. If the energy that becomes unavailable to do work is 169 kJ, what's the volume of the second cylinder?

Problems

32. A Carnot engine extracts 745 J from a 592-K reservoir during each cycle and rejects 458 J to a cooler reservoir. It operates at 18.6 cycles per second. Find (a) the work done during each cycle, (b) its efficiency, (c) the temperature of the cool reservoir, and (d) its mechanical power output.
33. The maximum steam temperature in a nuclear power plant is 570 K. **EW** The plant rejects heat to a river whose temperature is 0°C in the winter and 25°C in the summer. What are the maximum possible efficiencies for the plant during these seasons?
34. You're engineering an energy-efficient house that will require an average of 6.45 kW to heat on cold winter days. You've designed a photovoltaic system for electric power, which will supply, on average, 2.24 kW. You propose to heat the house with an electrically operated heat pump. What should you specify as the minimum acceptable COP for the pump if the photovoltaic system supplies its energy?
35. A power plant's electrical output is 750 MW. Cooling water at 15°C flows through the plant at 2.8×10^4 kg/s, and its temperature rises by 8.5°C. Assuming that the plant's only energy loss is to the cooling water, which serves as its low-temperature reservoir, find (a) the rate of energy extraction from the fuel, (b) the plant's efficiency, and (c) its highest temperature.
36. A power plant extracts energy from steam at 280°C and delivers **EW** 880 MW of electric power. It discharges waste heat to a river at 30°C. The plant's overall efficiency is 29%. (a) How does this efficiency compare with the maximum possible at these temperatures? (b) Find the rate of waste-heat discharge to the river. (c) How many houses, each requiring 23 kW of heating power, could be heated with the waste heat from this plant?
37. The electric power output of all the thermal electric power plants **EW** in the United States is about 2×10^{11} W, and these plants operate at an average efficiency of around 33%. Find the rate at which all these plants use cooling water, assuming an average 5°C rise in cooling-water temperature. Compare with the 1.8×10^7 kg/s average flow at the mouth of the Mississippi River.
38. Consider a Carnot engine operating between temperatures T_h and T_i , where T_i is intermediate between T_h and the ambient temperature T_c (Fig. 19.22). It should be possible to operate a second engine between T_i and T_c . Show that the maximum overall efficiency of such a two-stage engine is the same as that of a single engine operating between T_h and T_c (which is why combined-cycle power plants achieve high efficiencies).
39. You operate an industrial freezer that maintains its interior at -18°C and discharges heat to the surrounding environment at 35°C. It consumes electrical energy at the rate of 26.4 kW. (a) Find the freezer's COP, assuming it's reversible. (b) How much water, initially at 0°C, can the unit turn to ice, at 0°C, in one hour?
40. Use appropriate energy-flow diagrams to analyze the situation in GOT IT? 19.3; that is, show that using a refrigerator to cool the low-temperature reservoir can't increase the overall efficiency of a Carnot engine when the work input to the refrigerator is included.
41. It costs \$230 to heat a house with electricity in a winter month. **EW** (Electric heat converts all the incoming electrical energy to heat.) What would the monthly heating bill be after converting to an electrically powered heat pump with $COP = 3.4$?

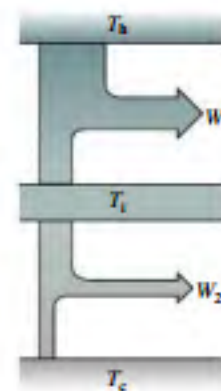


FIGURE 19.22 Problem 38

42. A refrigerator maintains an interior temperature of 3°C while its exhaust temperature is 30°C . The refrigerator's insulation is imperfect, and heat leaks in at the rate of 320 W. Assuming the refrigerator is reversible, at what rate must it consume electrical energy to maintain a constant 3°C interior?
43. You operate a store that's heated by a gas furnace that supplies **EW** 24.4 kWh of heat from every hundred cubic feet (CCF) of gas. The gas costs you \$1.28 per CCF. You're considering switching to a heat-pump system powered by electricity that costs 14.6¢ per kWh. Find the minimum heat-pump COP that will reduce your heating costs.
44. Use energy-flow diagrams to show that the existence of a perfect heat engine would permit the construction of a perfect refrigerator, thus violating the Clausius statement of the second law.
45. An air-source heat pump has an actual COP of 2.72 on a winter day when the outdoor temperature is -7.0°C . It supplies heat to a home at the rate of 18.8 kW and delivers heated air at 48.0°C . (a) Find the heat pump's electrical power consumption. (b) Compare the heat pump's daily operating cost with that of a gas furnace if electricity costs 11.4¢/kWh and gas costs \$1.28 per hundred cubic feet (CCF), with each CCF supplying 25.3 kWh of heat. (c) What percent is the actual COP of the theoretical maximum COP?
46. A reversible engine contains 0.350 mol of ideal monatomic gas, initially at 586 K and confined to a volume of 2.42 L. The gas undergoes the following cycle:
- Isothermal expansion to 4.84 L
 - Constant-volume cooling to 292 K
 - Isothermal compression to 2.42 L
 - Constant-volume heating back to 586 K

Determine the engine's efficiency, defined as the ratio of the work done to the heat *absorbed* during the cycle.

47. (a) Determine the efficiency for the cycle shown in Fig. 19.23, using the definition given in the preceding problem. (b) Compare with the efficiency of a Carnot engine operating between the same temperature extremes. Why are the two efficiencies different?

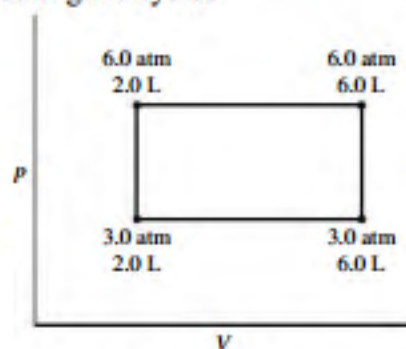


FIGURE 19.23 Problem 47

48. A 0.20-mol sample of an ideal gas goes through the Carnot cycle of Fig. 19.24. Calculate (a) the heat Q_h absorbed, (b) the heat Q_c rejected, and (c) the work done. (d) Use these quantities to determine the efficiency. (e) Find the maximum and minimum temperatures, and show explicitly that the efficiency as defined in Equation 19.1 is equal to the Carnot efficiency of Equation 19.3.
49. A shallow pond contains 85 Mg of water. In winter, it's entirely frozen. By how much does the entropy of the pond increase when the ice, already at 0°C , melts and then heats to its summer temperature of 20°C ?
50. Estimate the rate of entropy increase associated with your body's **BIO** normal metabolism.
51. The temperature of n moles of ideal gas is changed from T_1 to T_2 at constant volume. Show that the corresponding entropy change is $\Delta S = nC_V \ln(T_2/T_1)$.

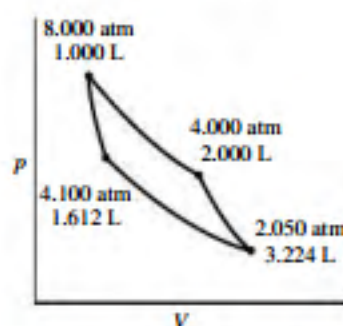


FIGURE 19.24 Problem 48

52. The temperature of n moles of ideal gas is changed from T_1 to T_2 with pressure held constant. Show that the corresponding entropy change is $\Delta S = nC_p \ln(T_2/T_1)$.
53. A 6.0-mol sample of ideal diatomic gas is at 1.00 atm pressure and 350 K. Find the entropy change as the gas is heated reversibly to 510 K (a) at constant volume, (b) at constant pressure, and (c) adiabatically.
54. A 250-g sample of water at 80°C is mixed with 250 g of water at 10°C . Find the entropy changes for (a) the hot water, (b) the cool water, and (c) the system.
55. An ideal gas undergoes a process that takes it from pressure p_1 and volume V_1 to p_2 and V_2 , such that $p_1 V_1^\gamma = p_2 V_2^\gamma$, where γ is the specific heat ratio. Find the entropy change if the process consists of constant-pressure and constant-volume segments. Why does your result make sense?
56. In an adiabatic free expansion, 6.36 mol of ideal gas at 305 K expands 15-fold in volume. How much energy becomes unavailable to do work?
57. Find the entropy change when a 2.4-kg aluminum pan at 155°C is plunged into 3.5 kg of water at 15°C .
58. An engine with mechanical power output 8.0 kW extracts heat from a source at 480 K and rejects it to a 1100-kg block of ice at its melting point. (a) What's its efficiency? (b) How long can it maintain this efficiency if the ice isn't replenished?
59. Find the change in entropy as 1.70 kg of H_2O at 100°C turns to vapor at the same temperature.

60. Gasoline engines operate approximately on the Otto cycle, consisting of two adiabatic and two constant-volume segments. Figure 19.25 shows the Otto cycle for a particular engine. (a) If the gas in the engine has specific-heat ratio γ , find the engine's efficiency, assuming all processes are reversible. (b) Find the maximum temperature in terms of the minimum temperature $T_{\min}$. (c) How does the efficiency compare with that of a Carnot engine operating between the same temperature extremes?

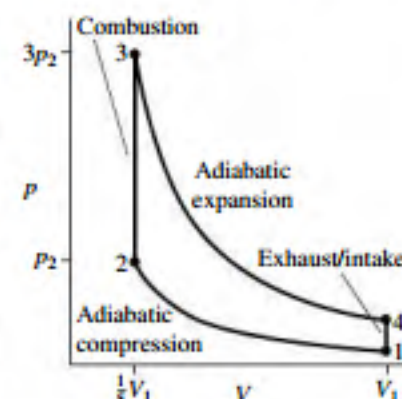


FIGURE 19.25 Problem 60

61. The compression ratio r of an engine is the ratio of maximum to minimum gas volume. (For the gasoline engine of the preceding problem, Fig. 19.25 shows that the compression ratio is 5.) Find a general expression for the engine efficiency of an Otto-cycle engine as a function of compression ratio.
62. Gasoline engines burning regular-grade fuel are limited to a maximum compression ratio of about 9 because higher compression causes fuel to pre-ignite before the spark plug fires, resulting in "knocking" and reduced engine performance. This is less of a problem with natural gas, for which the optimum compression ratio is 12.7. Suppose a gasoline engine with compression ratio 8.80 is modified to run solely on natural gas, including an increase in compression ratio to 12.7. Use the result of the preceding problem to find the change in the engine's efficiency, assuming that change is due entirely to the increased compression ratio. *Note:* Although the new fuel is a gas (CH_4 , with $\gamma = 1.33$), the air-to-fuel ratio of 17:1 for a natural-gas engine means the mixture in the cylinder still has essentially the specific heat ratio of air—namely, $\gamma = 1.4$.
63. The 54-MW wood-fired McNeil Generating Station in **EW** Burlington, Vermont, produces steam at 950°F to drive its

turbines, and condensed steam returns to the boiler as 90°F water. (Note the temperatures in °F, used in U.S. engineering situations.) Find McNeil's maximum thermodynamic efficiency, and compare with its actual efficiency of 25%.

64. A 500-g copper block at 80°C is dropped into 1.0 kg of water at 10°C. Find (a) the final temperature and (b) the entropy change of the system.
65. An object's heat capacity is inversely proportional to its absolute temperature: $C = C_0(T_0/T)$, where C_0 and T_0 are constants. Find the entropy change when the object is heated from T_0 to T_1 .
66. A Carnot engine extracts heat from a block of mass m and specific heat c initially at temperature T_{h0} but without a heat source to maintain that temperature. The engine rejects heat to a reservoir at constant temperature T_c . The engine is operated so its mechanical power output is proportional to the temperature difference $T_h - T_c$:

$$P = P_0 \frac{T_h - T_c}{T_{h0} - T_c}$$

where T_h is the instantaneous temperature of the hot block and P_0 is the initial power. (a) Find an expression for T_h as a function of time, and (b) determine how long it takes for the engine's power output to reach zero.

67. In an alternative universe, you've got the impossible: an infinite heat reservoir, containing infinite energy at temperature T_h . But you've only got a finite cool reservoir, with initial temperature T_{c0} and heat capacity C . Find an expression for the maximum work you can extract if you operate an engine between these two reservoirs.
68. You're the environmental protection officer for a 35% efficient nuclear power plant that produces 750 MW of electric power, situated on a river whose minimum flow rate is 110 m³/s. State environmental regulations limit the rise in river temperature from your plant's cooling system to 5°C. Can you achieve this standard if you use river water for all your cooling, or will you need to install cooling towers that transfer some of your waste heat to the atmosphere?
69. (a) Continue the calculation begun on page 372 in the subsection "Irreversible Heat Transfer" to derive the expression given in the text for the entropy change when equal masses m of hot and cold water, at temperatures T_h and T_c , respectively, are mixed: $\Delta S = mc \ln[(T_c + T_h)^2/4T_cT_h]$. (b) Show that the argument of the logarithm in this expression is greater than 1 for $T_h \neq T_c$, thus showing that ΔS is positive. *Hint:* This is equivalent to showing that $(T_c + T_h)^2 > 4T_cT_h$. Expand the left side of this inequality, subtract $4T_cT_h$ from both sides, factor the resulting left side, and you'll have your result.
70. Problem 76 of Chapter 16 provided an approximate expression for the specific heat of copper at low absolute temperatures: $c = 31(T/343 \text{ K})^3 \text{ J/kg} \cdot \text{K}$. Use this to find the entropy change when 40 g of copper are cooled from 25 K to 10 K. Why is the change negative?
71. The molar specific heat at constant pressure for a certain gas is given by $C_p = a + bT + cT^2$, where $a = 33.6 \text{ J/mol} \cdot \text{K}$, $b = 2.93 \times 10^{-3} \text{ J/mol} \cdot \text{K}^2$, and $c = 2.13 \times 10^{-5} \text{ J/mol} \cdot \text{K}^3$. Find the entropy change when 2.00 moles of this gas are heated from 20.0°C to 200°C.
72. Consider a gas containing an even number N of molecules, distributed among the two halves of a closed box. Find expressions for (a) the total number of microstates and (b) the number of microstates with half the molecules on each side of the box. (You can either work out a formula, or explore the term "combinations" in a math reference source.) (c) Use these results to find the ratio of the probability that all the molecules will be found on one side of the box to the probability that

there will be equal numbers on both sides. (d) Evaluate for $N = 4$ and $N = 100$.

73. Energy-efficiency specialists measure the heat Q_h delivered by a heat pump and the corresponding electrical energy W needed to run the pump, and they compute the pump's COP as the ratio Q_h/W . They also measure the outdoor temperature, and they know that the pump produces hot water at $T_h = 52^\circ\text{C}$. The table below shows their results for Q and T . (a) Determine a quantity that, when you plot the COP against it, should give a straight line. (b) Make your plot, fit a straight line, and from it determine how the heat pump's COP compares with the theoretical maximum COP.

T_c (°C)	-18	-10	-5	0	10
COP Q_h/W	2.7	3.2	3.6	3.7	4.7

Passage Problems

Refrigerators remain among the greatest consumers of electrical energy in most homes, although mandated efficiency standards have decreased their energy consumption by some 80% in the past four decades. In the course of a day, one kitchen refrigerator removes 30 MJ of energy from its contents, in the process consuming 10 MJ of electrical energy. The electricity comes from a 40% efficient coal-fired power plant.

74. The electrical energy
- is used to run the lightbulb inside the refrigerator.
 - wouldn't be necessary if the refrigerator had enough insulation.
 - retains its high-quality status after the refrigerator has used it.
 - ends up as waste heat rejected to the kitchen environment.
75. The refrigerator's COP is
- $\frac{1}{3}$.
 - 2.
 - 3.
 - 4.
76. The fuel energy consumed at the power plant to run this refrigerator for the day is
- 12 MJ.
 - 25 MJ.
 - 40 MJ.
 - 75 MJ.
77. The total energy rejected to the surrounding kitchen during the course of the day is
- 10 MJ.
 - 30 MJ.
 - 40 MJ.
 - 75 MJ.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

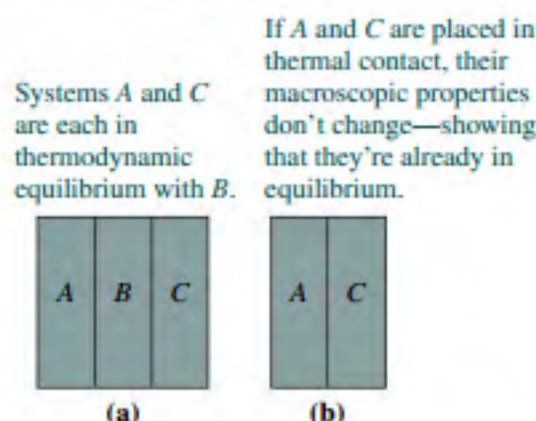
The second law of thermodynamics prevents us from converting thermal energy to mechanical energy with 100% efficiency, and practical limits on temperature make it hard to achieve more than about 50% efficiency in conventional power plants.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 19.1 (a), (c), and (f)
 19.2 (c)
 19.3 (c) see Problem 40 for a proof
 19.4 (1) increase; (2) decrease; (3) increase; (4) increase; (5) decrease; (6) increase; (7) increase

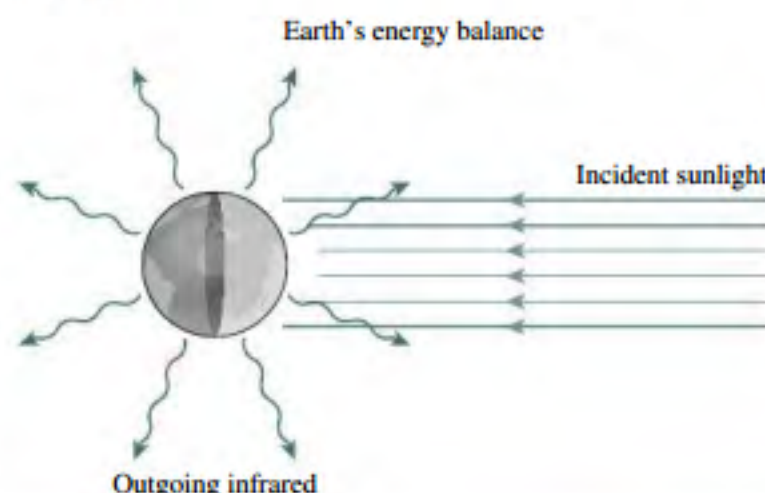
Thermodynamics is the study of heat, temperature, and related phenomena—and their relation to the all-important concept of energy. Thermodynamics provides a macroscopic description in terms of parameters like temperature and pressure.

Thermodynamic equilibrium occurs when two systems are brought into thermal contact and no further changes occur in any macroscopic properties. The **zeroth law of thermodynamics** says that two systems each in thermodynamic equilibrium with a third are also in thermodynamic equilibrium with each other. This law allows us to establish temperature scales and construct thermometers.



This contrasts with **statistical mechanics**, which provides a microscopic description in terms of the properties and behavior of molecules.

Heat is energy that's flowing because of a temperature difference. Important heat-transfer mechanisms include **conduction**, **convection**, and **radiation**. A system is in **thermal-energy balance** at a fixed temperature when its energy input balances heat transfer to its surroundings.

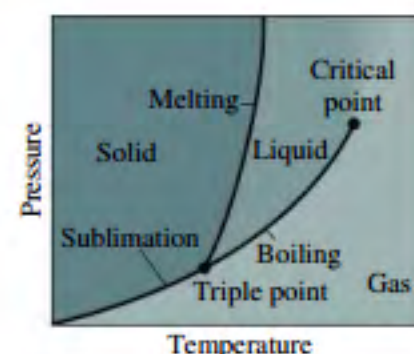


Ideal gases exhibit a simple relation among temperature, pressure, and volume:

$$pV = NkT = nRT$$

This is the **ideal-gas law**, with $k = 1.381 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K}$ and $R = 8.314 \text{ J/K} \cdot \text{mol}$.

Real substances undergo **phase changes** among liquid, solid, and gaseous phases. Substantial **heats of transformation** describe the energies involved in phase changes.



The **first law of thermodynamics** relates the change ΔE_{int} in a system's internal energy to the heat Q added to the system and the work W done by the system:

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q - W$$

For an ideal gas, **reversible thermodynamic processes** are described by curves in the pressure–volume diagram. Common processes include **isothermal** (constant temperature), **constant volume**, **constant pressure**, and **adiabatic** (no heat flow).

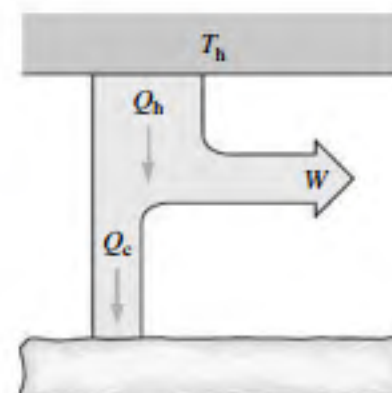
Entropy is a measure of disorder. The **second law of thermodynamics** states that the entropy of a closed system can never decrease. Applied to the heat engines that provide most of humankind's electrical and transportation energy, the second law shows that it's impossible to extract as useful work all the random internal energy of hot objects.

Maximum efficiency (Carnot):

$$e = \frac{W}{Q_h} = 1 - \frac{Q_c}{Q_h} = 1 - \frac{T_c}{T_h}$$

Part Three Challenge Problem

The ideal Carnot engine shown in the figure at right operates between a heat reservoir and a block of ice with mass M . An external energy source maintains the reservoir at a constant temperature T_h . At time $t = 0$, the ice is at its melting point T_0 , but it's insulated from everything except the engine, so it's free to change state and temperature. The engine is operated in such a way that it extracts heat from the reservoir at a constant rate P_h . (a) Find an expression for the time t_1 at which the ice is all melted, in terms of the quantities given and any other appropriate thermodynamic parameters. (b) Find an expression for the mechanical power output of the engine as a function of time for times $t > t_1$. (c) Your expression in part (b) holds up only to some maximum time t_2 . Why? Find an expression for t_2 .



This page is intentionally left blank

Electromagnetism



Electricity constitutes a significant portion of humankind's energy, as evidenced by this composite satellite image of Earth at night. Nearly all that electrical energy is produced by generators, devices that exploit an intimate relation between electricity and magnetism.

OVERVIEW

Electromagnetism is one of the fundamental forces, and it governs the behavior of matter from the atomic scale to the macroscopic world. Electromagnetic technology, from computer microchips to cell phones and on to large electric motors and generators, is essential to modern society. Even our bodies rely heavily on electromagnetism: Electric signals pace our heartbeat, electrochemical processes transmit nerve impulses, and the electric structure of cell membranes mediates the flow of materials into and out of the cell.

Four fundamental laws describe electricity and magnetism. Two deal separately with the two

phenomena, while the others reveal profound connections that make electricity and magnetism aspects of a single phenomenon that we call electromagnetism. In this part you'll come to understand those fundamental laws, learn how electromagnetism determines the structure and behavior of nearly all matter, and explore the electromagnetic technologies that play so important a role in your life. Finally, you'll see how the laws of electromagnetism lead to electromagnetic waves and thus help us understand the nature of light.

Electric Charge, Force, and Field

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 20.1 Describe electric charge as a fundamental property of matter.
- LO 20.2 Use Coulomb's law to calculate the forces between charges.
- LO 20.3 Use the superposition principle to calculate forces involving multiple charges.
- LO 20.4 Describe the concept of electric field.
- LO 20.5 Determine the fields of electric charge distributions using superposition.
- LO 20.6 Describe the electric dipole and the field it produces.
- LO 20.7 Determine the fields of continuous charge distributions by integration.
- LO 20.8 Determine the motion of charged particles in electric fields.
- LO 20.9 Determine forces and torques on electric dipoles in electric fields.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The concept of force and Newton's second law (Sections 4.2 and 4.3)
- The gravitational field (Section 8.5)
- Integration techniques for physics (Tactics 9.1)
- The concept of torque, expressed as a cross product (Section 11.2)

What holds your body together? What keeps a skyscraper standing? What holds your car on the road as you round a turn? What governs the electronic circuitry in your computer or smartphone, or provides the tension in your climbing rope? What enables a plant to make sugar from sunlight and simple chemicals? What underlies the awesome beauty of lightning? The answer, in all cases, is the **electric force**. With the exception of gravity, all the forces we've encountered in mechanics—including tension forces, normal forces, compression forces, and friction—are based on electric interactions; so are the forces responsible for all of chemistry and biology. The electric force, in turn, involves a fundamental property of matter—namely, electric charge.

20.1 Electric Charge

LO 20.1 Describe electric charge as a fundamental property of matter.

Electric charge is an intrinsic property of the electrons and protons that, along with uncharged neutrons, make up ordinary matter. What is electric charge? At the most fundamental level we don't know. We don't know what mass "really" is either, but we're familiar with it because we've spent our lives pushing objects around. Similarly, our knowledge of electric charge results from observing the behavior of charged objects.

Charge comes in two varieties, which Benjamin Franklin designated *positive* and *negative*. Those names are useful because the total charge on



What's the fundamental criterion for initiating a lightning strike?

an object—the object's **net charge**—is the algebraic sum of its constituent charges. Like charges repel, and opposites attract, a fact that constitutes a qualitative description of the electric force.

Quantities of Charge

All electrons carry the same charge, and all protons carry the same charge. The proton's charge has *exactly* the same magnitude as the electron's, but with opposite sign. Given that electrons and protons differ substantially in other properties—like mass—this electric relation is remarkable. Exercise 11 shows how dramatically different our world would be if there were even a slight difference between the magnitudes of the electron and proton charges.

The magnitude of the electron or proton charge is the **elementary charge** e . Electric charge is **quantized**; that is, it comes only in discrete amounts. In a famous experiment in 1909, the American physicist R. A. Millikan measured the charge on small oil drops and found it was always a multiple of a basic value we now know as the elementary charge.

Elementary particle theories show that the fundamental charge is actually $\frac{1}{3}e$. Such “fractional charges” reside on quarks, the building blocks of protons, neutrons, and many other particles. Quarks always join to produce particles with integer multiples of the full elementary charge, and it seems impossible to isolate individual quarks.

The SI unit of charge is the **coulomb** (C), named for the French physicist Charles Augustin de Coulomb (1736–1806). From the late 19th century to the early 21st century, the coulomb was defined in terms of electric current and time—a definition that was difficult to implement in practice. The 2019 revision of the SI gave the coulomb a much simpler definition. Now, the elementary charge is defined to be exactly $1.602176634 \times 10^{-19}$ C. The coulomb is therefore the number of elementary charges equal to the inverse of this number. For our purposes, that's about 6.24×10^{18} elementary charges.

Charge Conservation

Electric charge is a conserved quantity, meaning that the net charge in a closed region remains constant. Charged particles may be created or annihilated, but always in pairs of equal and opposite charge. The net charge always remains the same.

GOT IT?

20.1 The proton is a composite particle composed of three quarks, all of which are either *up quarks* (u ; charge $+\frac{2}{3}e$) or *down quarks* (d ; charge $-\frac{1}{3}e$). (More on quarks in Chapter 39.) Which of these quark combinations is the proton? (a) udd ; (b) uuu ; (c) uud ; (d) ddd

20.2 Coulomb's Law

LO 20.2 Use Coulomb's law to calculate the forces between charges.

LO 20.3 Use the superposition principle to calculate forces involving multiple charges.

Rub a balloon; it gets charged and sticks to your clothing. Charge another balloon, and the two repel (Fig. 20.1). Socks cling to your clothes as they come from the dryer, and bits of Styrofoam cling annoyingly to your hands. Walk across a carpet, and you'll feel a shock when you touch a doorknob. All these are common examples where you're directly aware of electric charge.

Electricity would be unimportant if the only significant electric interactions were these obvious ones. In fact, the electric force dominates all interactions of everyday matter, from the motion of a car to the movement of a muscle. It's just that matter on a large scale

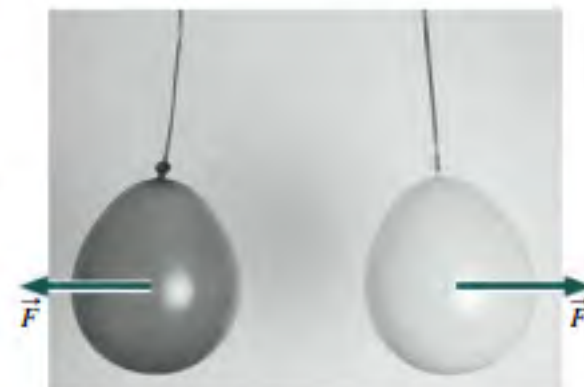


FIGURE 20.1 Two balloons carrying similar electric charges repel each other.

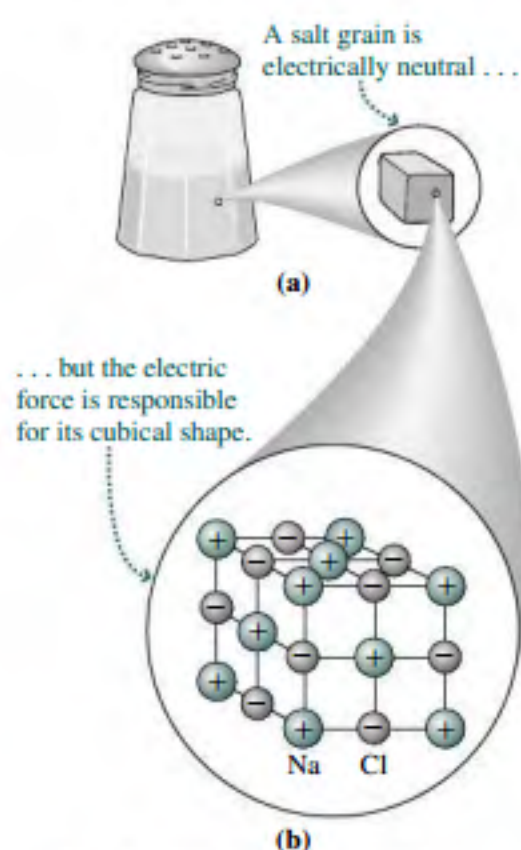


FIGURE 20.2 (a) A single salt grain is electrically neutral, so the electric force isn't obvious. (b) Actually, the electric force determines the structure of salt.

is almost perfectly neutral, meaning it carries zero net charge. Therefore, electric effects aren't obvious. But at the molecular level, the electric nature of matter is immediately evident (Fig. 20.2).

Attraction and repulsion of electric charges imply a force. Joseph Priestley and Charles Augustin de Coulomb investigated this force in the late 1700s. They found that the force between two charges acts along the line joining them, with the magnitude proportional to the product of the charges and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them. **Coulomb's law** summarizes these results:

$$\vec{F}_{12} = \frac{kq_1q_2}{r^2} \hat{r} \quad (\text{Coulomb's law}) \quad (20.1)$$

$\vec{F}_{12}$ is the force charge q_1 exerts on charge q_2 .

k is approximately $9.0 \times 10^9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$.

q_1 and q_2 are two charges.

r is the distance between the two charges.

$\hat{r}$ is a unit vector that points from q_1 toward q_2 regardless of the signs of the charges.

where $\vec{F}_{12}$ is the force charge q_1 exerts on q_2 and r is the distance between the charges. In SI the proportionality constant k has the approximate value $9.0 \times 10^9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$. Force is a vector, and $\hat{r}$ is a unit vector that helps determine its direction. Figure 20.3 shows that $\hat{r}$ lies on a line passing through the two charges and points in the direction *from q_1 toward q_2* . Reverse the roles of q_1 and q_2 , and you'll see that $\vec{F}_{21}$ has the same magnitude as $\vec{F}_{12}$ but the opposite direction; thus Coulomb's law obeys Newton's third law. Figure 20.3 also shows that the force is in the same direction as the unit vector when the charges have the same sign, but opposite the unit vector when the charges have different signs. Thus Coulomb's law accounts for the fact that like charges repel and opposites attract.

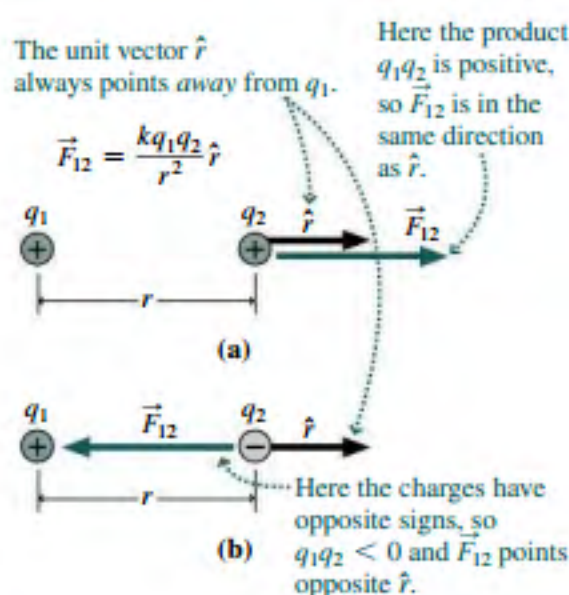


FIGURE 20.3 Quantities in Coulomb's law for calculating the force $\vec{F}_{12}$ that q_1 exerts on q_2 .

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 20.1

Coulomb's Law

The key to using Coulomb's law is to remember that force is a vector, and to realize that Coulomb's law in the form of Equation 20.1 gives both the magnitude and direction of the electric force. Dealing carefully with vector directions is especially important in situations with more than two charges.

INTERPRET First, make sure you're dealing with the electric force alone. Identify the charge or charges on which you want to calculate the force. Next, identify the charge or charges producing the force. These comprise the **source charge**.

DEVELOP Begin with a drawing that shows the charges, as in Fig. 20.4. If you're given charge coordinates, place the charges on the coordinate system; if not, choose a suitable coordinate system. For each source charge, determine the unit vector(s) in Equation 20.1. If the charges lie along or parallel to a coordinate axis, then the unit vector will be one of the unit vectors $\hat{i}$, $\hat{j}$, or $\hat{k}$, perhaps with a minus sign. In Fig. 20.4, the force on q_3 due to q_1 is such a case. When the two charges don't lie on a coordinate axis, like q_1 and q_2 in Fig. 20.4, you can find the unit vector by noting that the displacement vector $\vec{r}_{12}$ points in the desired direction, from the source charge to the charge experiencing the force. Dividing $\vec{r}_{12}$ by its own magnitude then gives the unit vector in the direction of $\vec{r}_{12}$; that is, $\hat{r} = \vec{r}_{12}/r_{12}$.

EVALUATE For each source charge, determine the electric force using Equation 20.1,

$$\vec{F}_{12} = (kq_1q_2/r^2) \hat{r}$$

with $\hat{r}$ the unit vector you've just found.

ASSESS As always, assess your answer to see that it makes sense. Is the direction of the force you found consistent with the signs and placements of the charges giving rise to the force?

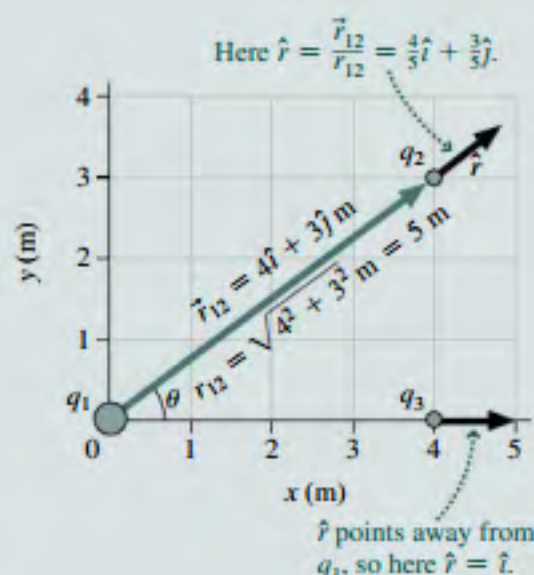


FIGURE 20.4 Finding unit vectors.

GOT IT?

20.2 Charge q_1 is located at $x = 1 \text{ m}$, $y = 0$. What should you use for the unit vector $\hat{r}$ in Coulomb's law if you're calculating the force that q_1 exerts on a charge q_2 located (1) at the origin and (2) at the point $x = 0$, $y = 1 \text{ m}$? Explain why you can answer without knowing the sign of either charge.

EXAMPLE 20.1 Finding the Force: Two Charges

A $1.0\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge is at $x = 1.0 \text{ cm}$, and a $-1.5\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge is at $x = 3.0 \text{ cm}$. What force does the positive charge exert on the negative one? How would the force change if the distance between the charges tripled?

INTERPRET Following our strategy, we identify the $-1.5\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge as the one on which we want to find the force and the $1\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge as the source charge.

DEVELOP We're given the coordinates $x_1 = 1.0 \text{ cm}$ and $x_2 = 3.0 \text{ cm}$. Our drawing, Fig. 20.5, shows both charges at their positions on the x -axis. With the source charge q_1 to the left, the unit vector in the direction from q_1 toward q_2 is $\hat{i}$.

EVALUATE Now we use Coulomb's law to evaluate the force:

$$\begin{aligned}\vec{F}_{12} &= \frac{kq_1q_2}{r^2} \hat{r} \\ &= \frac{(9.0 \times 10^9 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{C}^2)(1.0 \times 10^{-6} \text{ C})(-1.5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ C})}{(0.020 \text{ m})^2} \hat{i} \\ &= -34\hat{i} \text{ N}\end{aligned}$$

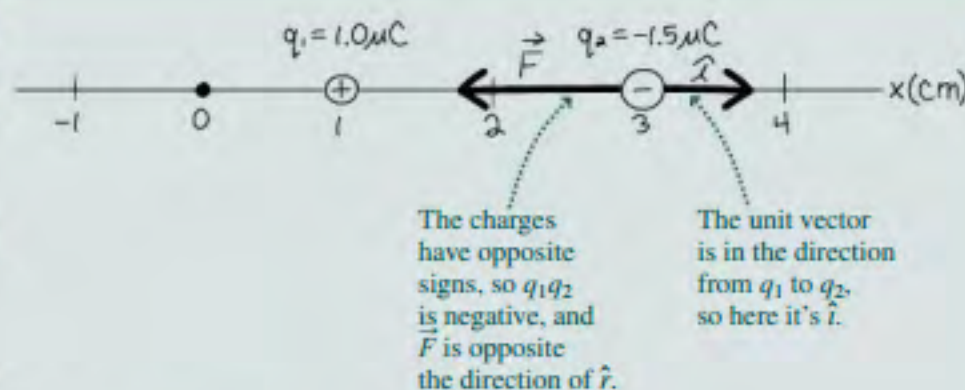


FIGURE 20.5 Sketch for Example 20.1.

This force is for a separation of 2 cm ; if that distance tripled, the force would drop by a factor of $1/3^2$, to $-3.8\hat{i} \text{ N}$.

ASSESS Make sense? Although the unit vector $\hat{i}$ points in the $+x$ -direction, the charges have opposite signs and that makes the force direction opposite the unit vector, as shown in Fig. 20.5. In simpler terms, we've got two opposite charges, so they attract. That means the force exerted on a charge at $x = 3 \text{ cm}$ by an opposite charge at $x = 1 \text{ cm}$ had better be in the $-x$ -direction.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 20.1

Gravity and the Electric Force

The electric force between elementary particles is far stronger than the gravitational force, yet gravity is much more obvious in everyday life. Why?

EVALUATE Gravity and the electric force obey similar inverse-square laws, and the magnitude of the force is proportional to the product of the masses or charges. There's a big difference, though: There's only one kind of mass, and gravity is always attractive, so large concentrations of mass—like a planet—result in strong gravitational forces. But charge comes in two varieties, and opposites attract, so large accumulations of matter tend to be electrically neutral, in which case large-scale electrical interactions aren't obvious.

ASSESS Ironically, it's the very strength of the electric force that makes it less obvious in everyday life. Opposite charges bind strongly, making bulk matter electrically neutral and its electrical interactions subtle.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Compare the magnitudes of the electric and gravitational forces between an electron and a proton.

EVALUATE Equation 8.1 gives the gravitational force: $F_g = Gm_em_p/r^2$. Equation 20.1 gives the electric force: $|F_E| = ke^2/r^2$, where we wrote e^2 because the electron and proton charges have the same magnitude. We aren't given the distance, but that doesn't matter because both forces have the same inverse-square dependence. The ratio of the force magnitudes is huge: $F_E/F_g = ke^2/Gm_em_p = 2.3 \times 10^{39}$!

Point Charges and the Superposition Principle

Coulomb's law is strictly true only for **point charges**—charged objects of negligible size. Electrons and protons can usually be treated as point charges; so, approximately, can any two charged objects if their separation is large compared with their size. But often we're interested in the electric effects of **charge distributions**—arrangements of charge spread over space. Charge distributions are present in molecules, memory cells in your computer, your heart, and thunderclouds. We need to combine the effects of two or more charges to find the electric effects of such charge distributions.

Figure 20.6 shows two charges q_1 and q_2 that constitute a simple charge distribution. We want to know the net force these exert on a third charge q_3 . To find that net force, you might calculate the forces $\vec{F}_{13}$ and $\vec{F}_{23}$ from Equation 20.1, and then vectorially add them. And you'd be right: The force that q_1 exerts on q_3 is unaffected by the presence of q_2 , and vice versa, so you can apply Coulomb's law separately to the pairs q_1q_3 and q_2q_3 and then combine the results. That may seem obvious, but nature needn't have been so simple.

The fact that electric forces add vectorially is called the **superposition principle**. Our confidence in this principle is ultimately based on experiments showing that electric and indeed electromagnetic phenomena behave according to the principle. With superposition we can solve relatively complicated problems by breaking them into simpler parts. If the superposition principle didn't hold, the mathematical description of electromagnetism would be far more complicated.

Although the force that one point charge exerts on another decreases with the inverse square of the distance between them, the same is not necessarily true of the force resulting from a charge distribution. The next example provides a case in point.

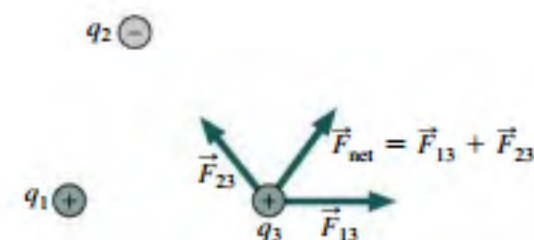


FIGURE 20.6 The superposition principle lets us add vectorially the forces from two or more charges.

EXAMPLE 20.2

Finding the Force: Raindrops

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Charged raindrops are ultimately responsible for lightning, producing substantial electric charge within specific regions of a thundercloud. Suppose two drops with equal charge q are on the x -axis at $x = \pm a$. Find the electric force on a third drop with charge Q at an arbitrary point on the y -axis.

INTERPRET Coulomb's law and the superposition principle apply, and we identify Q as the charge for which we want the force. The two charges q are the source charges.

DEVELOP Figure 20.7 is our drawing, showing the charges, the individual force vectors, and their sum. The drawing shows that the

distance r in Coulomb's law is the hypotenuse $\sqrt{a^2 + y^2}$. It's clear from symmetry that the net force is in the y -direction, so we need to find only the y -components of the unit vectors. The y -components are clearly the same for each, and the drawing shows that they're given by $\hat{r}_y = y/\sqrt{a^2 + y^2}$.

EVALUATE From Coulomb's law, the y -component of the force from each q is $F_y = (kqQ/r^2)\hat{r}_y$, and the net force on Q becomes

$$\vec{F} = 2\left(\frac{kqQ}{a^2 + y^2}\right)\left(\frac{y}{\sqrt{a^2 + y^2}}\right)\hat{j} = \frac{2kqQy}{(a^2 + y^2)^{3/2}}\hat{j}$$

The factor of 2 comes from the two charges q , which contribute equally to the net force.

ASSESS Make sense? Evaluating $\vec{F}$ at $y = 0$ gives zero force. Here, midway between the two charges, Q experiences equal but opposite forces and the net force is zero. At large distances $y \gg a$, on the other hand, we can neglect a^2 compared with y^2 , and the force becomes $\vec{F} = k(2q)Q\hat{y}/y^2$. This is just what we would expect from a single charge $2q$ a distance y from Q —showing that the system of two charges acts like a single charge $2q$ at distances that are large compared with the charge separation. In between our two extremes the behavior of force with distance is more complicated; in fact, its magnitude initially increases as Q moves away from the origin and then begins to decrease.

In drawing Fig. 20.7, we tacitly assumed that q and Q have the same signs. But our analysis holds even if they don't; then the product qQ is negative, and the forces actually point opposite the directions shown in Fig. 20.7.

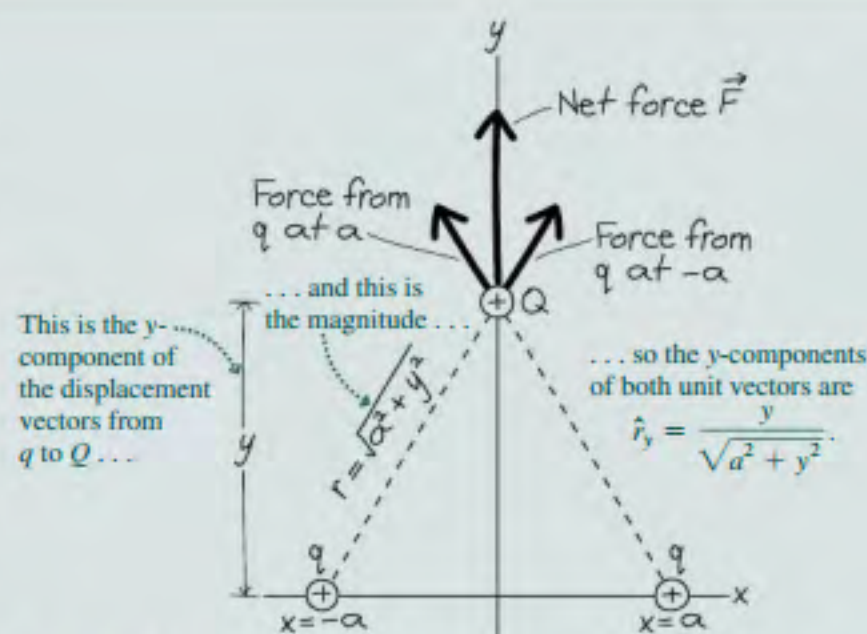


FIGURE 20.7 The force on Q is the vector sum of the forces from the individual charges.

20.3 The Electric Field

LO 20.4 Describe the concept of electric field.

In Chapter 8 we defined the gravitational field at a point as the gravitational force per unit mass that an object at that point would experience. In that context, we can think of $\vec{g}$ as the *force per unit mass* that any object would experience due to Earth's gravity. So we can picture the gravitational field as a set of vectors giving the magnitude and direction of the gravitational force per unit mass at each point, as shown in Fig. 20.8a below.

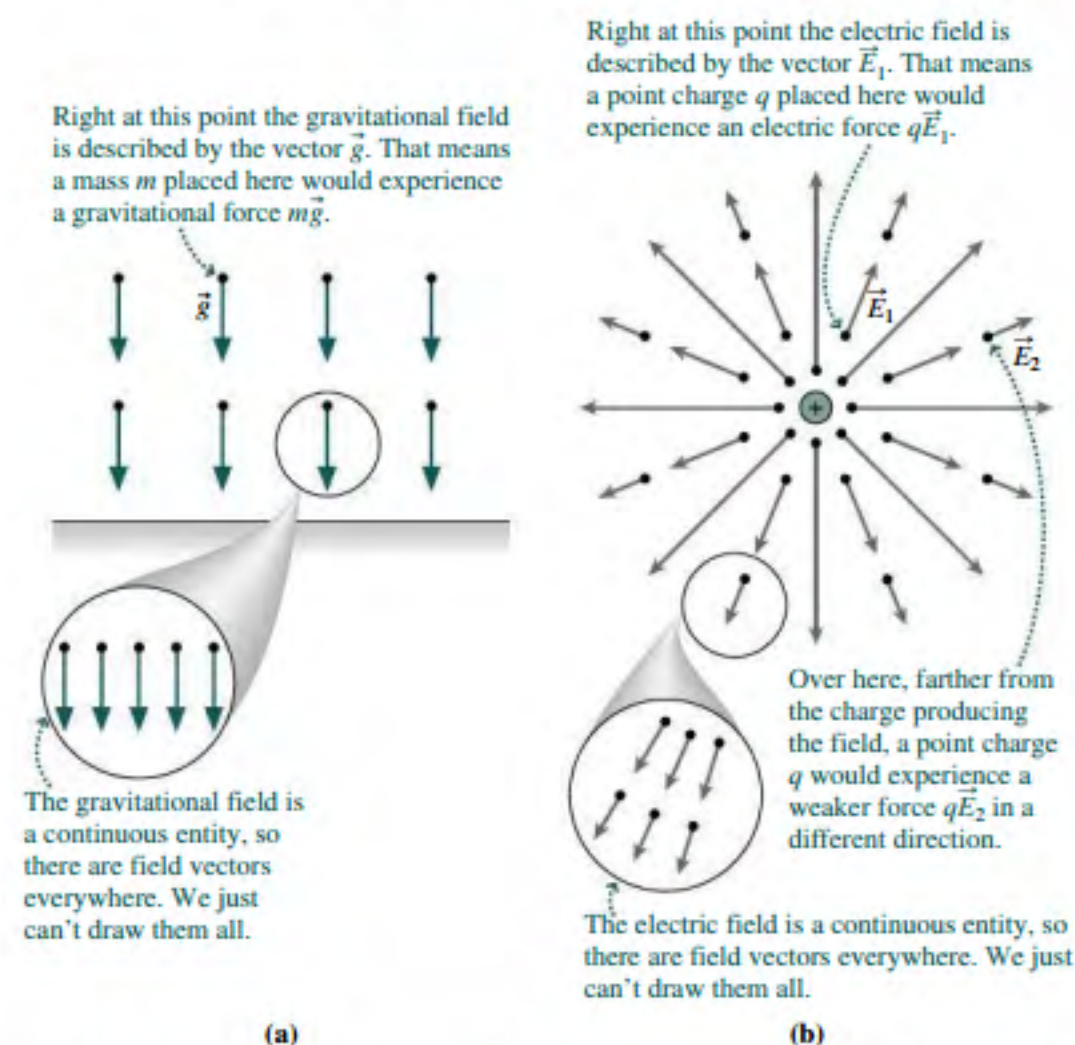
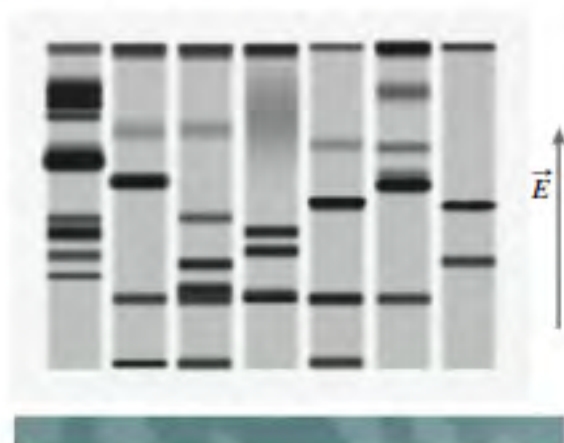


FIGURE 20.8 (a) Gravitational and (b) electric fields, here represented as sets of vectors.

APPLICATION Electrophoresis

Electrophoresis is a widely used application of electric fields for separating molecules by size and molecular weight. It's especially useful in biochemistry and molecular biology for distinguishing larger molecules like proteins and DNA fragments. In the commonly used *gel electrophoresis*, molecules carrying electric charge move through a semisolid but permeable gel under the influence of a uniform electric field; the greater the charge, the greater the electric force. The gel exerts a retarding force that increases with increasing molecular size, with the result that each molecular species moves at a velocity that depends on its size and charge. After a given time, the electric field is switched off. The locations of the molecules then serve as indicators of their size, with the molecules that traveled farthest being the smallest. The photo shows a typical gel electrophoresis result. Here DNA fragments were introduced into the seven channels at the top of the gel and then moved downward; their final locations indicate molecular size. The smaller molecules—those with fewer nucleotide base pairs—end up farther down on the gel. The electric field is shown by the arrow; it needs to point upward because DNA fragments carry a negative charge.



We can do the same thing with the electric force, defining the **electric field** as the force per unit charge:

The electric field at any point is the force per unit charge that a charge would experience at that point. Mathematically,

$$\vec{E} = \frac{\vec{F}}{q} \quad (\text{electric field}) \quad (20.2a)$$

$\vec{E}$ is the electric field at any point. You can determine $\vec{E}$ by measuring the electric force $\vec{F}$...
... on a small test charge q .

The electric field exists at every point in space. When we represent the field by vectors, we can't draw one everywhere, but that doesn't mean there isn't a field at all points. Furthermore, we draw vectors as extended arrows, but each vector represents the field at only one point—namely, the tail end of the vector. Figure 20.8b illustrates this for the electric field of a point charge.

The field concept leads to a shift in our thinking about forces. Instead of the action-at-a-distance idea that Earth reaches across empty space to pull on the Moon, the field concept says that Earth creates a gravitational field and the Moon responds to the field at its location. Similarly, a charge creates an electric field throughout the space surrounding it. A second charge then responds to the field at its immediate location. Although the field reveals itself only through its effect on a charge, the field nevertheless exists at all points, whether or not charges are present. Right now you probably find the field concept a bit abstract, but as you advance in your study of electromagnetism you'll come to appreciate that fields are an essential feature of our universe, every bit as real as matter itself.

We can use Equation 20.2a as a prescription for measuring electric fields. Place a point charge at some location, measure the electric force it experiences, and divide by the charge to get the field. In practice, we need to be careful because the field generally arises from some distribution of source charges. If the charge we're using to probe the field—the **test charge**—is large, the field it creates may disturb the source charges, altering their configuration and thus the field they create. For that reason, it's important to use a very small test charge.

If we know the electric field $\vec{E}$ at a point, we can rearrange Equation 20.2a to find the force on any point charge q placed at that point:

$$\vec{F} = q\vec{E} \quad (\text{electric force and field}) \quad (20.2b)$$

$\vec{F}$ is the electric force on a charge q ...
... at a point where the electric field is $\vec{E}$.

If the charge q is positive, then this force is in the same direction as the field, but if q is negative, then the force is opposite to the field direction.

Equations 20.2 show that the units of electric field are newtons per coulomb. Fields of hundreds to thousands of N/C are commonplace, while fields of 3 MN/C will tear electrons from air molecules. Sometimes we're interested in the magnitude of the field but not its direction. Then we can use Equations 20.2a and 20.2b without the vector signs. We'll often use the term *field strength* to be synonymous with the field's magnitude.

EXAMPLE 20.3 Force and Field: Inside a Lightning Storm

A charged raindrop carrying $10 \mu\text{C}$ experiences an electric force of 0.30 N in the $+x$ -direction. What's the electric field at its location? What would the force be on a $-5.0\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ drop at the same point?

INTERPRET In this problem we need to distinguish between electric force and electric field. The electric field exists with or without

the charged raindrop present, and the electric force arises when the charged raindrop is in the electric field.

DEVELOP Knowing the electric force and the charge on the raindrop, we can use Equation 20.2a, $\vec{E} = \vec{F}/q$, to get the electric field. Once we know the field, we can use Equation 20.2b,

$\vec{F} = q\vec{E}$, to calculate the force that would act if a different charge were at the same point.

EVALUATE Equation 20.2a gives the electric field:

$$\vec{E} = \frac{\vec{F}}{q} = \frac{0.30\hat{i} \text{ N}}{10 \mu\text{C}} = 30\hat{i} \text{ kN/C}$$

Acting on a $-5.0\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge, this field would result in a force

$$\vec{F} = q\vec{E} = (-5.0 \mu\text{C})(30\hat{i} \text{ kN/C}) = -0.15\hat{i} \text{ N}$$

ASSESS Make sense? The force on the second charge is opposite the direction of the field because now we've got a negative charge in the same field.



THE FIELD IS INDEPENDENT OF THE TEST CHARGE Does the electric field in this example point in the $-x$ -direction when the charge is negative? No. The field is independent of the particular charge experiencing that field. Here the electric field points in the $+x$ -direction *no matter what charge* you put in the field. For a positive charge, the force $q\vec{E}$ points in the same direction as the field; for a negative charge, $q < 0$, the force is *opposite* the field.

The Field of a Point Charge

Once we know the field of a charge distribution, we can calculate its effect on other charges. The simplest charge distribution is a single point charge. Coulomb's law gives the force on a test charge q_{test} located a distance r from a point charge q : $\vec{F} = (kqq_{\text{test}}/r^2)\hat{r}$, where $\hat{r}$ is a unit vector pointing *away* from q . The electric field arising from q is the force per unit charge, or

The electric field $\vec{E}$ is the force per unit charge. For a point charge, $\vec{E}$ depends on the charge q ...

$$\vec{E} = \frac{\vec{F}}{q_{\text{test}}} = \frac{kq}{r^2}\hat{r} \quad \text{(field of a point charge)} \quad (20.3)$$

... and on the distance r from the charge to the point where the field is being evaluated.

The unit vector $\hat{r}$ always points away from q , regardless of q 's sign.

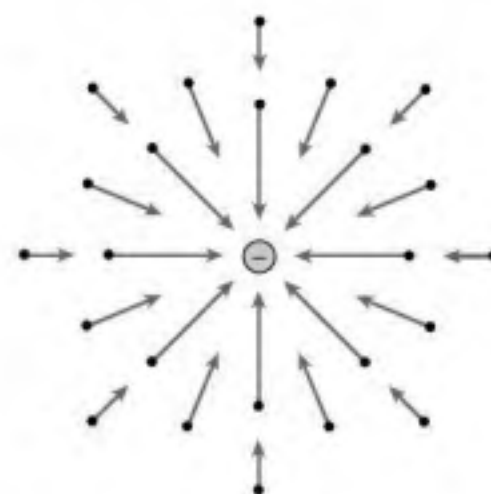


FIGURE 20.9 Field vectors for a negative point charge.

Since it's so closely related to Coulomb's law for the electric force, we also refer to Equation 20.3 as Coulomb's law. The equation contains no reference to the test charge q_{test} because the field of q exists independently of any other charge. Since $\hat{r}$ always points *away* from q , the direction of $\vec{E}$ is radially outward if q is positive and radially inward if q is negative. Figure 20.9 shows some field vectors for a negative point charge, analogous to those of the positive point charge in Fig. 20.8b.

GOT IT?

20.3 A positive point charge is located at the origin of an x - y coordinate system, and an electron is placed at a location where the electric field due to the point charge is given by $\vec{E} = E_0(\hat{i} + \hat{j})$, where E_0 is positive. Is the direction of the force on the electron (a) toward the origin, (b) away from the origin, (c) parallel to the x -axis, or (d) impossible to determine without knowing the coordinates of the electron's position?

20.4 Fields of Charge Distributions

LO 20.5 Determine the fields of electric charge distributions using superposition.

LO 20.6 Describe the electric dipole and the field it produces.

LO 20.7 Determine the fields of continuous charge distributions by integration.

Since the electric force obeys the superposition principle, so does the electric field. That means the field of a charge distribution is the vector sum of the fields of the individual point charges making up the distribution:

The electric field $\vec{E}$ of a distribution of point charges...

... is the sum of the fields of the individual point charges.

$$\vec{E} = \vec{E}_1 + \vec{E}_2 + \vec{E}_3 + \cdots = \sum_i \vec{E}_i = \sum_i \frac{kq_i}{r_i^2} \hat{r}_i \quad (20.4)$$

Here the $\vec{E}_i$'s are the fields of the point charges q_i located at distances r_i from the point where we're evaluating the field—called, appropriately, the **field point**. The $\hat{r}_i$'s are unit vectors pointing *from* each point charge *toward* the field point. In principle, Equation 20.4 gives the electric field of *any* charge distribution. In practice, the process of summing the individual field vectors is often complicated unless the charge distribution contains relatively few charges arranged in a symmetric way.

Finding electric fields using Equation 20.4 involves the same strategy we introduced for finding the electric force; the only difference is that there's no charge to experience the force. The first step then involves identifying the field point. We still need to find the appropriate unit vectors and form the vector sum in Equation 20.4. Example 20.4 shows how this is done.

Sometimes we're interested in finding not the electric field but a point or points where the field is zero. Conceptual Example 20.2 explores such a case.

EXAMPLE 20.4 Finding the Field: Two Protons

Two protons are 3.6 nm apart. Find the electric field at a point between them, 1.2 nm from one of the protons. Then find the force on an electron at this point.

INTERPRET We follow our electric-force strategy, except that instead of identifying the charge experiencing the force, we identify the field point as being 1.2 nm from one proton. The source charges are the two protons; they produce the field we're interested in.

DEVELOP Let's have the protons define the x -axis, as drawn in Fig. 20.10. Then the unit vector $\hat{r}_1$ from the left-hand proton toward the field point (which we've marked P) is $+\hat{i}$, while $\hat{r}_2$ from the right-hand proton toward P is $-\hat{i}$.

EVALUATE We now evaluate the field at P using Equation 20.4:

$$\vec{E} = \vec{E}_1 + \vec{E}_2 = \frac{ke}{r_1^2} \hat{i} + \frac{ke}{r_2^2} (-\hat{i}) = ke \left(\frac{1}{r_1^2} - \frac{1}{r_2^2} \right) \hat{i}$$

We wrote e for q here because the protons' charge is the elementary charge.

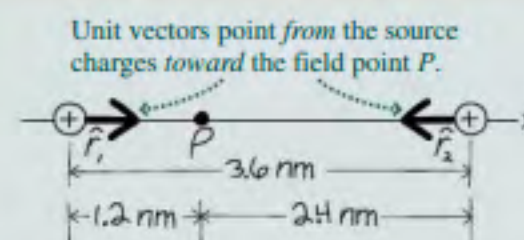


FIGURE 20.10 Finding the electric field at P .

Using $e = 1.6 \times 10^{-19}$ C, $r_1 = 1.2$ nm, and $r_2 = 2.4$ nm gives $\vec{E} = 750\hat{i}$ MN/C. An electron at P will therefore experience a force $\vec{F} = q\vec{E} = -e\vec{E} = -0.12\hat{i}$ nN.

ASSESS Make sense? The field points in the positive x -direction, reflecting the fact that P is closer to the left-hand proton with its stronger field at P . The force on the electron, on the other hand, is in the $-x$ -direction; that's because the electron is negative (we used $q = -e$ for its charge), so the force it experiences is opposite the field. That field of almost 1 GN/C sounds huge—but that's not unusual at the microscopic scale, where we're close to individual elementary particles.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 20.2 Zero Field, Zero Force

A positive charge $+2Q$ is located at the origin, and a negative charge $-Q$ is at $x = a$. In which region of the x -axis is there a point where the force on a test charge—and therefore the electric field—is zero?

INTERPRET We're asked to locate qualitatively a point where the field is zero. Our sketch of the situation, Fig. 20.11, shows that the two charges divide the x -axis into three regions: (1) to the left of $2Q$ ($x < 0$), (2) between the charges ($0 < x < a$), and (3) to the right of $-Q$ ($x > a$). We need to determine which region could include a point where the electric force on a test charge is zero.

EVALUATE Consider what would happen to a positive test charge placed in each of these three regions. Anywhere in region (1), the test charge is closer to the charge with greater magnitude ($2Q$). That charge dominates throughout region (1), where our test charge would experience a repulsive force (to the left). The electric field, then, can't be zero in region (1). Between the two charges, the repulsive force from $2Q$ on a positive test charge points to the right; so does the attractive force from $-Q$. The field, therefore, can't be zero in region (2). That leaves region (3). Could the field be zero here? Put a positive test charge very close to $-Q$, and it experiences an attractive force toward the left. But far away, the distance between $2Q$ and $-Q$ becomes negligible. The

fields of both charges drop off as the inverse square of the distance, so at large distances the field of the stronger charge will dominate. Therefore there *is* a point somewhere to the right of $-Q$ where the force on a test charge, and therefore the electric field, will be zero.

ASSESS This answer is consistent with our insight from Example 20.2 that when we get far from a charge distribution, it begins to resemble a point charge with the net charge of the distribution. Here that net charge is $2Q - Q = +Q$, so at large distances we should indeed have a field pointing away from the charge distribution—and that's to the right in region (3). Although we considered a positive test charge, you'll reach the same conclusion with a negative test charge.

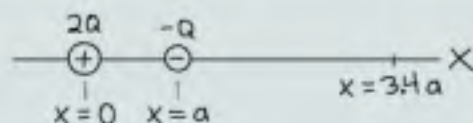


FIGURE 20.11 Where is the electric field zero? We've marked the answer, at $x = 3.4a$.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Find an expression for the position where the electric field in this example is zero.

EVALUATE In Fig. 20.11, we've taken the origin at $2Q$, so at any position x in region (3) we're a distance x from $2Q$ and a distance $x-a$ from $-Q$. Since we're to the right of both charges, the unit vector in Equation 20.3 for the point-charge field—a vector that always points away from the point charge—becomes $+\hat{i}$ for both charges. Applying Equation 20.3, $\vec{E} = (kq/r^2)\hat{r}$, for the fields of the two charges and summing gives

$$\vec{E} = \frac{k(2Q)}{x^2}\hat{i} + \frac{k(-Q)}{(x-a)^2}\hat{i}$$

If we set this expression to zero, we can cancel k , Q , and $\hat{i}$; inverting both sides of the remaining equation gives $x^2/2 = (x-a)^2$. Finally, taking the square root and solving for x gives the answer: $x = a\sqrt{2}/(\sqrt{2}-1) \approx 3.4a$. As a check, note that this point does indeed lie to the right of $x = a$. We've marked this point in Fig. 20.11.

The Electric Dipole

One of the most important charge distributions is the **electric dipole**, consisting of two point charges of equal magnitude but opposite sign. Many molecules are essentially dipoles, so understanding the dipole helps explain molecular behavior (Fig. 20.12). During contraction the heart muscle becomes essentially a dipole, and physicians performing electrocardiography are measuring, among other things, the strength and orientation of that dipole. Antennas used in wireless communications—including radio, TV, wifi, and cellphones—are often based on the dipole configuration.

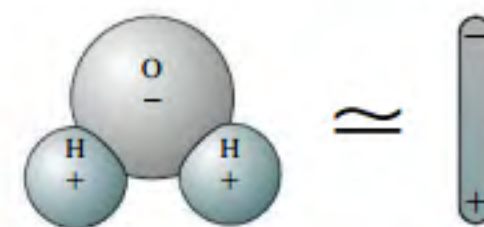


FIGURE 20.12 A water molecule behaves like an electric dipole. Its net charge is zero, but regions of positive and negative charge are separated.

EXAMPLE 20.5 The Electric Dipole: Modeling a Molecule

A molecule may be modeled approximately as a positive charge q at $x = a$ and a negative charge $-q$ at $x = -a$. Evaluate the electric field on the y -axis, and find an approximate expression valid at large distances ($|y| \gg a$).

INTERPRET Here's another example where we'll use our strategy in applying Equation 20.4 to calculate the field of a charge distribution. We identify the field point as being anywhere on the y -axis and the source charges as being $\pm q$.

DEVELOP Figure 20.13 is our drawing. The individual unit vectors point from the two charges toward the field point, but the *negative* charge contributes a field *opposite* its unit vector; we've indicated the individual fields in Fig. 20.13. Here symmetry makes the y -components cancel, giving a net field in the $-x$ -direction. So we need only the x -components of the unit vectors, which Fig. 20.13 shows are $\hat{r}_{x-} = a/r$ for the negative charge at $-a$ and $\hat{r}_{x+} = -a/r$ for the positive charge at a .

EVALUATE We then evaluate the field using Equation 20.4:

$$\vec{E} = \frac{k(-q)}{r^2}\left(\frac{a}{r}\right)\hat{i} + \frac{kq}{r^2}\left(-\frac{a}{r}\right)\hat{i} = -\frac{2kqa}{(a^2 + y^2)^{3/2}}\hat{i}$$

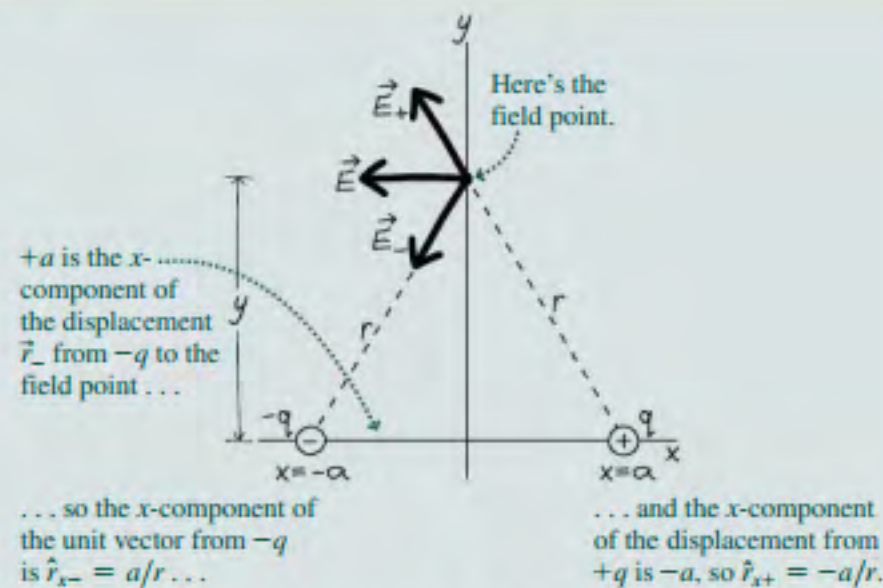


FIGURE 20.13 Finding the field of an electric dipole.

where in the last step we used $r = \sqrt{a^2 + y^2}$. For $|y| \gg a$ we can neglect a^2 compared with y^2 , giving

$$\vec{E} \approx -\frac{2kqa}{|y|^3}\hat{i} \quad (|y| \gg a)$$

(continued)

ASSESS Make sense? The dipole has no net charge, so at large distances its field can't have the inverse-square drop-off of a point-charge field. Instead the dipole field falls faster, here as $1/|y|^3$. Note that we were careful to put absolute value signs on y^3 ; that way, our result applies for both positive and negative values of y .



APPROXIMATIONS Making approximations requires care. Here we're basically asking for the field when y is so large that a is negligible compared with y . So we neglect a^2 compared with y^2 when the two are summed, but we *don't* neglect a when it appears in the numerator, where it isn't being directly compared with y .

Example 20.5 shows that the dipole field at large distances decreases as the inverse *cube* of distance. Physically, that's because the dipole has zero *net* charge. Its field arises entirely from the slight separation of two opposite charges. Because of this separation, the dipole field isn't exactly zero, but it's weaker and more localized than the field of a point charge. Many complicated charge distributions exhibit the essential characteristic of a dipole—that is, they're neutral but consist of separated regions of positive and negative charge—and at large distances, such distributions all have essentially the same field configuration.

At large distances the dipole's physical characteristics q and a enter the equation for the electric field only through the product qa . We could double q and halve a , and the dipole's electric field would remain unchanged. At large distances, therefore, a dipole's electric properties are characterized completely by its **electric dipole moment** p , defined as the product of the charge q and the separation d between the two charges making up the dipole:

$$p = qd \quad (\text{dipole moment}) \quad (20.5)$$

In Example 20.5 the charge separation was $d = 2a$, so there the dipole moment was $p = 2aq$. In terms of the dipole moment, the field in Example 20.5 can then be written

$$\vec{E} = -\frac{kp}{|y|^3}\hat{y} \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{dipole field for } |y| \gg a, \\ \text{on perpendicular bisector} \end{array} \right) \quad (20.6a)$$

You can show in Problem 54 that the field on the dipole axis is given by

$$\vec{E} = \frac{2kp}{|x|^3}\hat{x} \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{dipole field} \\ \text{for } |x| \gg a, \text{ on axis} \end{array} \right) \quad (20.6b)$$

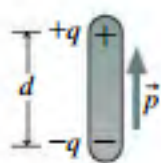


FIGURE 20.14 The dipole moment vector $\vec{p}$ has magnitude $p = qd$ and points from the negative toward the positive charge.

Because the dipole isn't spherically symmetric, its field depends not only on distance but also on orientation; for instance, Equations 20.6 show that the field along the dipole axis at a given distance is twice as strong as along the bisector. So it's important to know the orientation of a dipole in space, and therefore we generalize our definition of the dipole moment to make it a vector of magnitude $p = qd$ in the direction from the negative toward the positive charge (Fig. 20.14).

GOT IT?

20.4 Far from a charge distribution, you measure an electric field strength of 800 N/C. What will the field strength be if you double your distance from the charge distribution, if the distribution consists of (1) a point charge or (2) a dipole?

Continuous Charge Distributions

Although any charge distribution ultimately consists of pointlike electrons and protons, it would be impossible to sum all the field vectors from the 10^{23} or so particles in a typical piece of matter. Instead, it's convenient to make the approximation that charge is spread continuously over the distribution. If the charge distribution extends throughout a volume, we describe it in terms of the **volume charge density** ρ , with units of C/m^3 . For charge distributions spread over surfaces or lines, the corresponding quantities are the **surface charge density** σ (C/m^2) and the **line charge density** λ (C/m).

To calculate the field of a continuous charge distribution, we divide the charged region into very many small charge elements dq , each small enough that it's essentially a point charge. Each dq then produces an electric field $d\vec{E}$ given by Equation 20.3: $d\vec{E} = (k dq/r^2)\hat{r}$. We then form the vector sum of all the $d\vec{E}$'s (Fig. 20.15). In the limit of infinitely many infinitesimally small dq 's and their corresponding $d\vec{E}$'s, that sum becomes an integral and we have

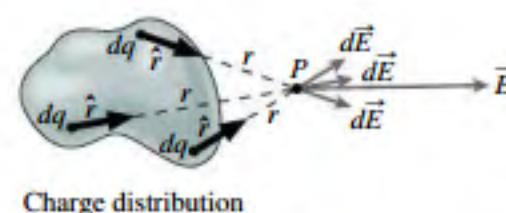


FIGURE 20.15 The electric field at P is the vector sum of the fields $d\vec{E}$ arising from the individual charge elements dq , each calculated using the appropriate distance r and unit vector $\hat{r}$.

The electric field $\vec{E}$ of a continuous distribution of charges ...

dq is an infinitesimal charge element.

$\hat{r}$ is a unit vector that points away from dq , regardless of its sign.

$$\vec{E} = \int d\vec{E} = \int \frac{k dq}{r^2} \hat{r} \quad \left(\text{field of a continuous charge distribution} \right) \quad (20.7)$$

... is determined by integrating the fields $d\vec{E}$ of infinitesimal charge elements dq .

r is the distance from dq to the point where the field is being evaluated.

The limits of this integral include the entire charge distribution.

Calculating the field of a continuous charge distribution involves the same strategy we've already used: We identify the field point and the source charges—although now the source is a continuous charge distribution. Summing the individual field contributions now presents us with an integral, and that means writing the unit vectors $\hat{r}$ and distances r in terms of coordinates over which we can integrate. Setting up the integral involves the same strategy we outlined in Chapter 9 to find the center of mass of a continuous distribution of matter, and used again in Chapter 10 to find rotational inertias.

EXAMPLE 20.6 Evaluating the Field: A Charged Ring

A ring of radius a carries a charge Q distributed evenly over the ring. Find an expression for the electric field at any point on the axis of the ring.

INTERPRET We identify the field point as lying anywhere on the ring's axis, and the source charge as the entire ring.

DEVELOP Let's take the x -axis to coincide with the ring axis, with the center of the ring at $x = 0$ (Fig. 20.16). The figure shows that the y -components of the field contributions from pairs of charge elements on opposite sides of the ring cancel; therefore, the net field points in the $+x$ -direction (for $x > 0$) and we need only the x -components of the unit vectors. Those are the same for all unit vectors—namely, $\hat{r}_x = x/r$.

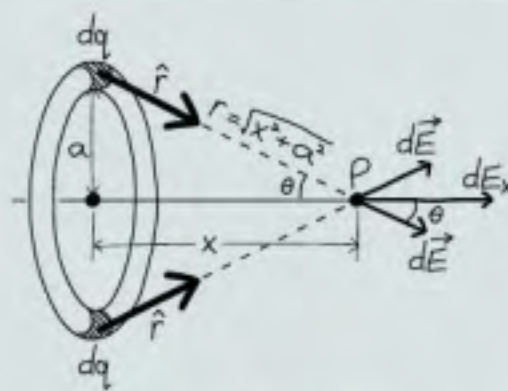


FIGURE 20.16 The electric field of a charged ring points along the ring axis, since field components perpendicular to the axis cancel in pairs.

EVALUATE We're now ready to set up the integral in Equation 20.7. Here each charge element contributes the same amount $dE_x = (k dq/r^2)\hat{r}_x = (k dq/r^2)(x/r)$ to the field. Figure 20.16 shows that $r = \sqrt{x^2 + a^2} = (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2}$, so the integral becomes

$$E = \int_{\text{ring}} dE_x = \int_{\text{ring}} \frac{kx dq}{(x^2 + a^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{kx}{(x^2 + a^2)^{3/2}} \int_{\text{ring}} dq$$

The last step follows because we have a fixed field point P , so its coordinate x is a constant for the integration. But the remaining integral is just the sum of all the charge elements on the ring—namely, the total charge Q . So our result becomes

$$E = \frac{kQx}{(x^2 + a^2)^{3/2}} \quad (\text{on-axis field, charged ring})$$

This is the magnitude; the direction is along the x -axis, away from the ring if Q is positive and toward it if Q is negative.

ASSESS Make sense? At $x = 0$ the field is zero. A charge placed at the ring center is pulled (or pushed) equally in all directions—no net force, so no electric field. But for $x \gg a$, we get $E = kQ/x^2$ —just what we expect for a point charge Q . As always, a finite-sized charge distribution looks like a point charge at large distances. Problem 73 shows how you can use the result of this example to find the electric field on the axis of a charged disc, and Problem 75 shows that, once again, the field at large distances becomes that of a point charge.

EXAMPLE 20.7**Line Charge: A Power Line's Field***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A long, straight electric power line coincides with the x -axis and carries a uniform line charge density λ (unit: C/m). Find the electric field on the y -axis using the approximation that the wire is infinitely long.

INTERPRET We identify the field point as being a distance y from the wire, and the source charge as the whole wire.

DEVELOP Figure 20.17 is our drawing, showing a coordinate system with the field point P along the y -axis. We divide the wire into small charge elements dq and note that field contributions from two such elements dq on opposite sides of the y -axis contribute fields $d\vec{E}$ whose x -components cancel. Then we need only the y -component of each unit vector, and Figure 20.17 shows that $\hat{r}_y = y/r$, where $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$.

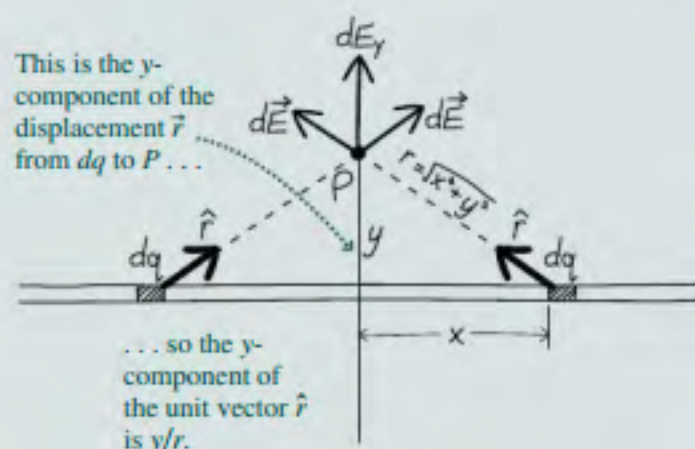


FIGURE 20.17 The field of a charged line is the vector sum of the fields $d\vec{E}$ from all the individual charge elements dq along the line.

EVALUATE We're now ready to set up the integral in Equation 20.7. As described in Chapter 9's integral strategy, we need to relate dq to a geometric variable so we can do the integral. Here our wire has charge density λ C/m, so if a charge element has length dx , then its charge is $dq = \lambda dx$. Putting all this together gives the y -component of the field from an arbitrary dq anywhere on the wire:

$$dE_y = \frac{k dq \hat{r}_y}{r^2} = \frac{k \lambda dx y}{r^2 r} = \frac{k \lambda y}{(x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}} dx$$

where we used $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$. Since the x -components cancel, we can sum—that is, integrate—the y -components to get the net field:

$$\begin{aligned} E = E_y &= \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{k \lambda y dx}{(x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}} = k \lambda y \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{dx}{(x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}} \\ &= k \lambda y \left[\frac{x}{y^2 \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}} \right]_{-\infty}^{+\infty} = k \lambda y \left[\frac{1}{y^2} - \left(-\frac{1}{y^2} \right) \right] = \frac{2k\lambda}{y} \end{aligned}$$

Here we used the integral table in Appendix A and applied the limits $x = \pm \infty$. Our result is the field's magnitude; the direction is away from the line for positive λ and toward the line for negative λ .

ASSESS Make sense? For an infinite line there's nothing to favor one direction along the line over another, so the only way the field can point is radially, away from or toward the line (Fig. 20.18). And because the line is infinite, it never resembles a point no matter how far away we are. As a result the field falls more slowly than the field of a point charge—in this case, as $1/y$. If we let r designate the radial distance from the line rather than the diagonal in Fig. 20.17, then the field decreases as $1/r$. An infinite line is impossible, but our result holds approximately for finite lines of charge as long as we're much closer to the line than its length, and not near an end. Far from a *finite* line, on the other hand, its field will resemble that of a point charge. You can explore the finite charged line in Problem 72.

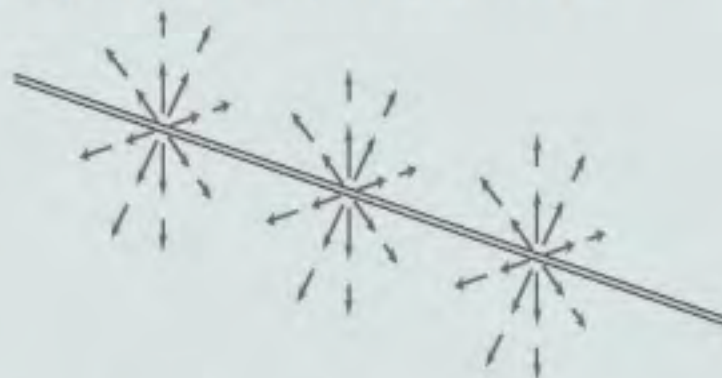


FIGURE 20.18 Field vectors for an infinite line of positive charge point radially outward, with magnitude decreasing inversely with distance.

20.5 Matter in Electric Fields

LO 20.8 Determine the motion of charged particles in electric fields.

LO 20.9 Determine forces and torques on electric dipoles in electric fields.

Electric fields give rise to forces on charged particles. Because matter consists of such particles, much of the behavior of matter is fundamentally determined by electric fields.

Point Charges in Electric Fields

The motion of a single charge in an electric field is governed by the definition of the electric field, $\vec{F} = q\vec{E}$, and Newton's law, $\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$. Combining these equations gives the acceleration of a particle with charge q and mass m in an electric field $\vec{E}$:

$$\vec{a} = \frac{q}{m} \vec{E} \quad (20.8)$$

This equation shows that it's the charge-to-mass ratio, q/m , that determines a particle's response to an electric field. Electrons, nearly 2000 times less massive than protons but carrying the same charge, are readily accelerated by electric fields. Many practical devices, from X-ray machines to fluorescent lights, use electrons accelerated in electric fields.

When the electric field is uniform, problems involving the motion of charged particles reduce to the constant-acceleration problems of Chapter 2. An ink-jet printer is one application; a pair of oppositely charged plates creates a uniform field that “steers” charged ink droplets to the right place on the page (Fig. 20.19).

When the field isn't uniform, it's generally more difficult to calculate particle trajectories. An important exception is a particle moving perpendicular to a field that points radially. Under appropriate conditions, the result is uniform circular motion (see Section 5.3), as shown in the next example.

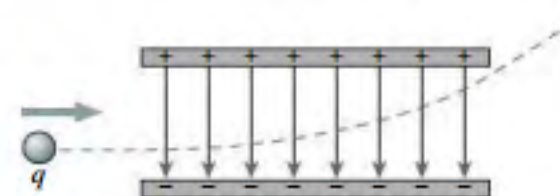


FIGURE 20.19 A pair of parallel charged plates creates a uniform electric field that deflects a charged particle. Can you tell the sign of the charge q ?

EXAMPLE 20.8 Particle Motion: An Electrostatic Analyzer

Two oppositely charged curved metal plates establish an electric field given by $E = E_0(b/r)$, where E_0 and b are constants with the units of electric field and length, respectively. The field points toward the center of curvature, and r is the distance from the center. Find an expression for the speed v with which a proton entering vertically from below in Fig. 20.20 will leave the device moving horizontally.

INTERPRET This problem is about charged-particle motion in an electric field that points radially. We're asked for the condition that will have a proton exiting the field region moving horizontally. Figure 20.20 shows that this requires its trajectory to be a circular arc.

DEVELOP Equation 20.8, $\vec{a} = (q/m)\vec{E}$, determines the acceleration of a charged particle in an electric field. Here we want uniform circular motion, so our plan is to write this equation with the given field and the acceleration v^2/r that we know applies in circular motion. Then we'll solve for v .

EVALUATE Under these conditions, Equation 20.8 becomes

$$a = \frac{v^2}{r} = \frac{eE}{m} = \frac{e}{m}E_0\frac{b}{r}$$

We then solve to get $v = \sqrt{eE_0bm}$.

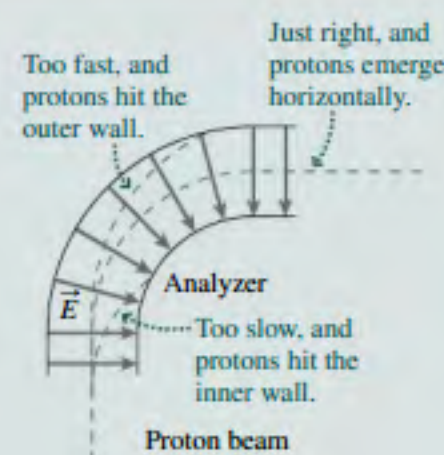


FIGURE 20.20 An electrostatic analyzer.

ASSESS Make sense? Strengthen the field by increasing E_0 or b , and the electric force becomes greater. For a given speed, that would result in more bending of the trajectory; to maintain the desired trajectory, we must therefore increase the speed. Note that the radius r canceled from our equations, showing that it doesn't matter where the protons enter the device. That's because the $1/r$ decrease in field strength matches the $1/r$ dependence of the acceleration. This device is called an electrostatic analyzer because it can sort charged particles by speed and charge-to-mass ratio. Spacecraft use such analyzers to characterize charged particles in interplanetary space.

GOT IT?

20.5 An electron, a proton, a deuteron (a neutron combined with a proton), a helium-3 nucleus (2 protons, 1 neutron), a helium-4 nucleus (2 protons, 2 neutrons), a carbon-13 nucleus (6 protons, 7 neutrons), and an oxygen-16 nucleus (8 protons, 8 neutrons) all find themselves in the same electric field. Rank in order their accelerations from lowest to highest under the assumption (only approximately correct) that the neutron and proton have the same mass and that the mass of a composite particle is the sum of the masses of its constituent neutrons and protons. Note any that have the same acceleration.

Dipoles in Electric Fields

Earlier in this chapter we calculated the field of an electric dipole, which consists of two opposite charges of equal magnitude. Here we study a dipole's response to electric fields. Since the dipole provides a model for many molecules, our results help explain molecular behavior.

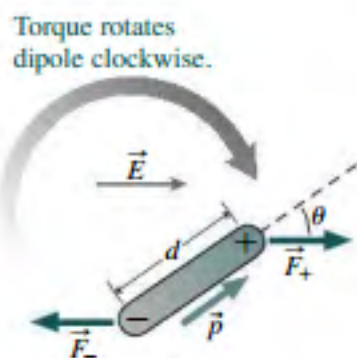


FIGURE 20.21 A dipole in a uniform electric field experiences a torque but no net force.

Figure 20.21 shows a dipole with charges $\pm q$ separated a distance d , located in a uniform electric field. The dipole moment vector $\vec{p}$ has magnitude qd and points from the negative to the positive charge (recall Fig. 20.14). Since the field is uniform, it's the same at both ends of the dipole. Since the dipole charges are equal in magnitude but opposite in sign, they experience equal but opposite forces $\pm q\vec{E}$ —and therefore there's no net force on the dipole.

However, Fig. 20.21 shows that the dipole does experience a torque that tends to align it with the field. In Chapter 11 we described torque as the cross product of the position vector with the force: $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$, where the magnitude of the torque vector is $rF \sin \theta$ and its direction is given by the right-hand rule. Figure 20.21 thus shows that the torque about the center of the dipole due to the force on the positive charge has magnitude $\tau_+ = rF \sin \theta = (\frac{1}{2}d)(qE) \sin \theta$. The torque associated with the negative charge has the same magnitude, and both torques are in the same direction since both tend to rotate the dipole clockwise. Thus the net torque has magnitude $\tau = qdE \sin \theta$. Applying the right-hand rule shows that this torque is into the page. But qd is the magnitude of the dipole moment $\vec{p}$, and Fig. 20.21 shows that θ is the angle between the dipole moment vector and the electric field $\vec{E}$; therefore, we can write the torque vectorially as

$$\vec{\tau} = \vec{p} \times \vec{E} \quad (\text{torque on a dipole}) \quad (20.9)$$

Because of this torque, the electric field does work on a dipole as it rotates. The electric force is conservative, so that work results in a change in potential energy. In Chapter 7 we defined potential-energy change as the negative of the work done by a conservative force: $\Delta U = -W$. Here we're dealing with rotational motion, and Equation 10.19 shows that the work done in a rotation from angular position θ_1 to θ_2 is given by $W = \int_{\theta_1}^{\theta_2} \tau d\theta$. Figure 20.21 shows that we're taking $\theta = 0$ when the dipole is aligned with the field. The figure also shows that the direction of increasing θ is counterclockwise or, in terms of rotational vectors, out of the page. The torque, in contrast, is clockwise or, vectorially, into the page. Thus the sign of the torque is opposite the angular change, so we need to write $\tau = -pE \sin \theta$ in the integral for the work. Let's now consider a dipole that's initially perpendicular to the field, so $\theta_1 = \pi/2$. Then the work done by the electric force as the dipole rotates to an arbitrary angle θ becomes

$$W = \int_{\pi/2}^{\theta} \tau d\theta = \int_{\pi/2}^{\theta} (-pE \sin \theta) d\theta = -pE[-\cos \theta]_{\pi/2}^{\theta} = pE \cos \theta$$

The potential-energy change is the negative of this work, and we note that $pE \cos \theta$ can be expressed as the dot product $\vec{p} \cdot \vec{E}$, so we can write the potential energy as

$$U = -\vec{p} \cdot \vec{E} \quad (20.10)$$

where $U = 0$ corresponds to the dipole at right angles to the field.

When the electric field isn't uniform, the charges at opposite ends of the dipole experience forces that differ in magnitude and/or aren't exactly opposite in direction. Then the dipole experiences a net force as well as a torque (Fig. 20.22). An important instance of this effect is the force on a dipole in the field of another dipole (Fig. 20.23). Because the dipole field falls off rapidly with distance and because the dipole responding to the field has closely spaced charges of equal magnitude but opposite sign, the dipole-dipole force is quite weak and falls extremely rapidly with distance. This weak force, which Fig. 20.23 shows to be attractive, is partly responsible for the van der Waals interaction between gas molecules that we mentioned in Chapter 17.

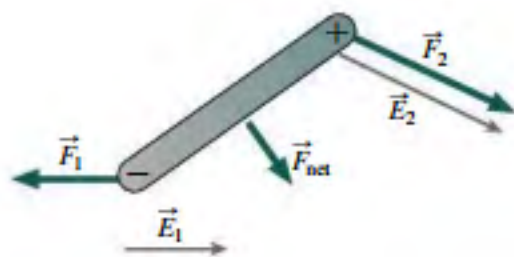


FIGURE 20.22 When the electric field differs in magnitude or direction at the two ends of the dipole, the dipole experiences a nonzero net force as well as a torque.

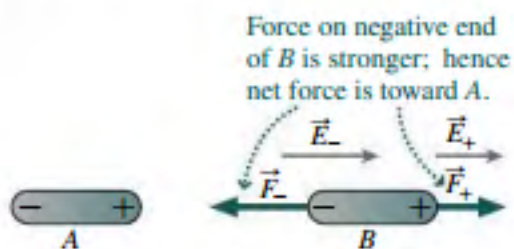


FIGURE 20.23 Dipole B aligns with the field of dipole A and then experiences a net force toward A.

Conductors, Insulators, and Dielectrics

Bulk matter contains vast numbers of point charges—namely, electrons and protons. In some matter—notably metals, ionic solutions, and ionized gases—individual charges are free to move throughout the material. In these **conductors**, the application of an electric field results in the ordered motion of electric charge that we call **electric current**. We'll consider conductors and current in later chapters.

Materials in which charge is not free to move are **insulators**, since they can't carry electric current. Insulators still contain charges—it's just that their charges are bound into neutral molecules. Some molecules, like water, have intrinsic dipole moments and therefore rotate in response to an applied electric field. Even if they don't have dipole moments, molecules may respond to an electric field by stretching and acquiring **induced dipole moments** (Fig. 20.24). In either case, the application of an electric field results in the alignment of molecular dipoles with the field (Fig. 20.25). The fields of the dipoles, pointing from their positive to their negative charges, then reduce the applied electric field within the material. We'll explore the consequences of this effect further in Chapter 23. Materials in which molecules either have intrinsic dipole moments or acquire induced moments are called **dielectrics**.

If the electric field applied to a dielectric becomes too great, individual charges are ripped free, and the material then acts like a conductor. Such **dielectric breakdown** can cause severe damage in materials and in electric equipment (Fig. 20.26). On a larger scale, lightning results from dielectric breakdown in air.

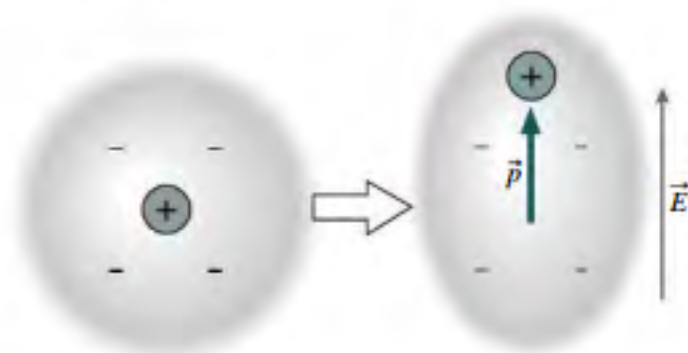


FIGURE 20.24 A molecule stretches in response to an electric field, acquiring a dipole moment.

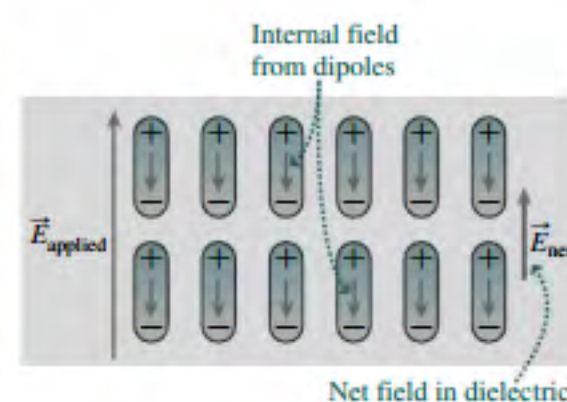


FIGURE 20.25 Alignment of molecular dipoles in a dielectric reduces the electric field within the dielectric.

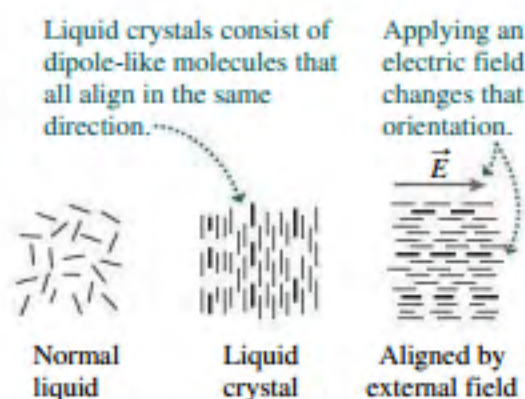


FIGURE 20.26 Dielectric breakdown in a solid piece of Plexiglas produced this striking fractal pattern that marks permanent changes in the material.

APPLICATION Microwave Cooking and Liquid Crystals

The torque on dipoles in electric fields forms the basis of two widespread contemporary technologies: the microwave oven and the liquid-crystal display (LCD).

A microwave oven works by generating an electric field whose direction changes several billion times per second. Water molecules, whose dipole moment is much greater than most others, attempt to align with the field. But the field is changing, so the molecules swing rapidly back and forth. As they jostle against each other, the energy they gain from the field is dissipated as heat that cooks the food.



Computer displays, TVs, cameras, cell phones, watches, and many other devices display visual images using liquid crystals. These unique materials combine the fluidity of a liquid with the order of a solid. The liquid crystal consists of long molecules whose chemical structure results in a dipole-like charge separation. In response to each others' electric fields, the molecules tend to align. As the figure shows, an external electric field can rotate the dipoles that comprise the liquid crystal, thus, altering the material's optical

properties. With optical components we'll study in Chapter 29, different sections of a liquid-crystal display can then be made to appear visible or invisible. Liquid-crystal displays consume very little power, but they generate no light of their own and therefore most have a built-in light source. This photo of an iPhone shows its high-resolution display; also shown is a microphoto of the liquid crystals.



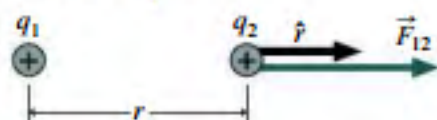
Chapter 20 Summary

Big Idea

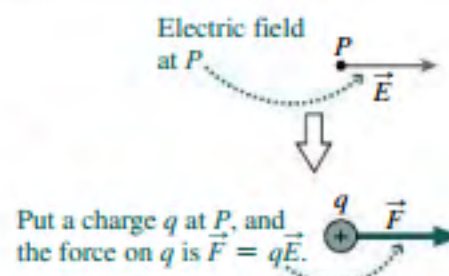
This chapter introduces several big ideas. First is **electric charge**, a fundamental property of matter that comes in positive and negative forms. Like charges repel and opposites attract; this is the **electric force**. It's convenient to define the **electric field** as the force per unit charge that a charge would experience if placed in the vicinity of other charges. Both force and field obey the **superposition principle**, meaning that the effects of several charges add vectorially.

Key Concepts and Equations

Coulomb's law describes the electric force between point charges:

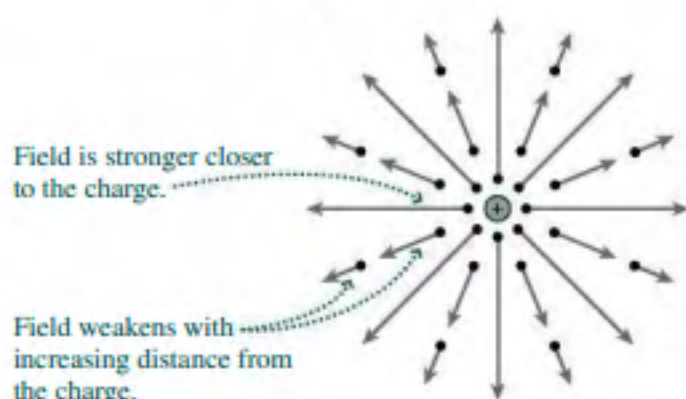
$$\vec{F}_{12} = \frac{kq_1q_2}{r^2} \hat{r}$$


The electric field is the force per unit charge, $\vec{E} = \vec{F}/q$, and therefore the force a given charge q experiences in a field is $\vec{F} = q\vec{E}$.

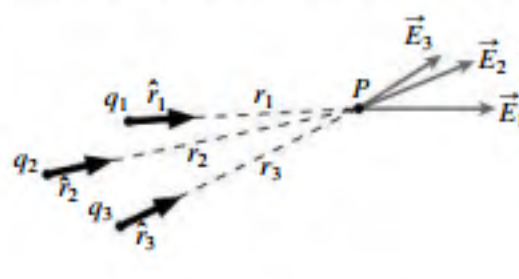


The field of a point charge follows from Coulomb's law:

$$\vec{E} = \frac{kq}{r^2} \hat{r}$$



Fields of charge distributions are found by summing fields of individual point charges, or by integrating in the case of continuously distributed charge:



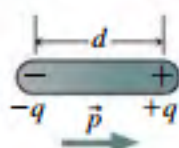
$$\vec{E}(P) = \vec{E}_1 + \vec{E}_2 + \vec{E}_3 = \sum_i \frac{kq_i}{r_i^2} \hat{r}_i$$



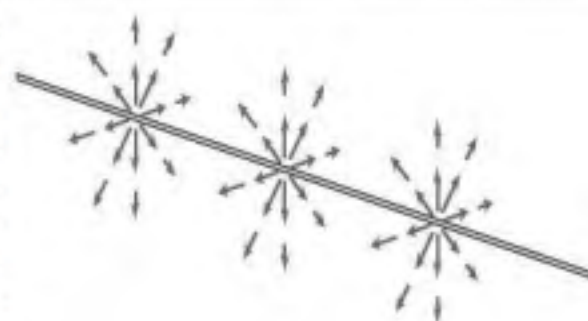
$$\vec{E}(P) = \int d\vec{E} = \int \frac{k dq}{r^2} \hat{r}$$

Applications

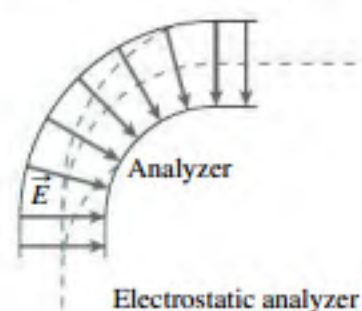
A **dipole** consists of equal but opposite charges $\pm q$ a distance d apart. For distances large compared with d , the dipole field drops as $1/r^3$, and the dipole is completely characterized by its **dipole moment** $p = qd$.



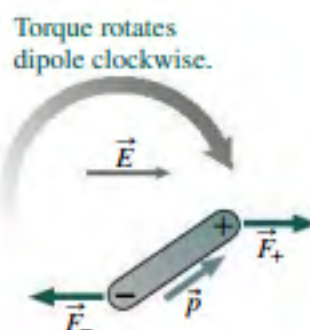
The field of an infinite line drops as $1/r$: $E = 2k\lambda/r$, with λ the charge per unit length. This is a good approximation to the field near an elongated structure like a wire.



Point charges respond to electric fields with acceleration proportional to the charge-to-mass ratio q/m .



A dipole in an electric field experiences a torque that tends to align it with the field: $\vec{\tau} = \vec{p} \times \vec{E}$.



If the field is nonuniform, there's also a net force on the dipole.

Dielectrics are insulating materials whose molecules act like electric dipoles.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>LO 20.1 Describe electric charge as a fundamental property of matter.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 20.1, 20.2, 20.8; Exercises 20.11, 20.12, 20.13, 20.14, 20.15</i></p> <p>LO 20.2 Use Coulomb's law to calculate the forces between charges.
<i>Exercises 20.16, 20.17, 20.18, 20.19, 20.20; Problems 20.44, 20.57, 20.58</i></p> <p>LO 20.3 Use the superposition principle to calculate forces involving multiple charges.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 20.3; Problems 20.46, 20.47, 20.48, 20.49, 20.52</i></p> <p>LO 20.4 Describe the concept of electric field.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 20.4, 20.5; Exercises 20.21, 20.22, 20.23, 20.24, 20.25, 20.26; Problem 20.50</i></p> <p>LO 20.5 Determine the fields of electric charge distributions using superposition.</p> | <p><i>For Thought and Discussion Question 20.7; Exercises 20.27, 20.28; Problems 20.51, 20.56, 20.59</i></p> <p>LO 20.6 Describe the electric dipole and the field it produces.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 20.6, 20.9; Problems 20.53, 20.54, 20.55, 20.67, 20.69, 20.70, 20.72</i></p> <p>LO 20.7 Determine the fields of continuous charge distributions by integration.
<i>Exercises 20.29, 20.30, 20.31; Problems 20.61, 20.64, 20.68, 20.71, 20.73, 20.74, 20.75, 20.76, 20.77, 20.78</i></p> <p>LO 20.8 Determine the motion of charged particles in electric fields.
<i>Exercises 20.32, 20.33, 20.34, 20.35; Problems 20.60, 20.63</i></p> <p>LO 20.9 Determine forces and torques on electric dipoles in electric fields.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 20.9, 20.10; Problems 20.62, 20.65, 20.66</i></p> |
|--|---|

For Thought and Discussion

- Conceptual Example 20.1 shows that the gravitational force between an electron and a proton is about 10^{-40} times weaker than the electric force between them. Since matter consists largely of electrons and protons, why is the gravitational force important at all?
- A free neutron is unstable and soon decays to other particles, one of them a proton. Must there be others? If so, what electric properties must it or they have?
- Where in Fig. 20.5 could you put a third charge so it would experience no net force? Would it be in stable or unstable equilibrium?
- Equation 20.3 gives the electric field of a point charge. Does the direction of (a) $\hat{r}$ or (b) $\vec{E}$ depend on whether the charge is positive or negative?
- Is the electric force on a charged particle always in the direction of the field? Explain.
- Why does a dipole, which has no net charge, produce an electric field?
- The ring in Example 20.6 carries total charge Q , and the point P is the same distance $r = \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}$ from all parts of the ring. So why isn't the electric field of the ring just kQ/r^2 ?
- A spherical balloon is initially uncharged. If you spread positive charge uniformly over the balloon's surface, would it expand or contract? What would happen if you spread negative charge instead?
- Why should there be a force between two dipoles, which each have zero net charge?
- Dipoles A and B are both located in the field of a point charge Q , as shown in Fig. 20.27. Does either experience a net torque? A net force? If each dipole is released from rest, qualitatively describe its subsequent motion.

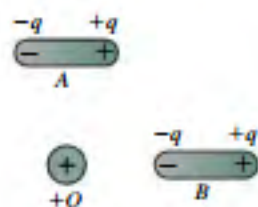


FIGURE 20.27 For Thought and Discussion 10

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 20.1 Electric Charge

- Suppose the electron and proton charges differed by one part in one billion. Estimate the net charge on your body, assuming it contains equal numbers of electrons and protons.
- A typical lightning flash delivers about 25 C of negative charge from cloud to ground. How many electrons are involved?
- Protons and neutrons are made from combinations of the two most common quarks, the u quark (charge $+\frac{2}{3}e$) and the d quark (charge $-\frac{1}{3}e$). How could three of these quarks combine to make (a) a proton and (b) a neutron?
- Earth carries a net charge of about -5×10^5 C. How many more electrons are there than protons on Earth?
- BIO** As they fly, honeybees may acquire electric charges of about 180 pC. Electric forces between charged honeybees and spider webs can make the bees more vulnerable to capture by spiders. How many electrons would a honeybee have to lose to acquire a charge of +180 pC?

Section 20.2 Coulomb's Law

- The electron and proton in a hydrogen atom are 52.9 pm apart. Find the magnitude of the electric force between them.
- An electron at Earth's surface experiences a gravitational force $m_e g$. How far away can a proton be and still produce the same force on the electron? (Your answer should show why gravity is unimportant on the molecular scale!)
- You break a piece of Styrofoam packing material, and it releases lots of little spheres whose electric charge makes them stick annoyingly to you. If two of the spheres carry equal charges and repel with a force of 20 mN when they're 17 mm apart, what's the magnitude of the charge on each?
- A charge q is at the point $x = 5$ m, $y = 0$ m. Write expressions for the unit vectors you would use in Coulomb's law if you were finding the force that q exerts on other charges located at (a) $x = 5$ m, $y = 2.5$ m; (b) the origin; and (c) $x = 7$ m, $y = 3.5$ m. You're not given the sign of q . Why doesn't this matter?

20. A proton is at the origin and an electron is at the point $x = 0.41 \text{ nm}$, $y = 0.36 \text{ nm}$. Find the electric force on the proton.

Section 20.3 The Electric Field

21. An electron experiences an electric force of 0.61 nN . What's the field strength at its location?
22. Find the magnitude of the electric force on a $6.0\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge in a 50-N/C electric field.
23. A 75-nC charge experiences a 144-mN force in a certain electric field. Find (a) the field strength and (b) the force that a $35\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge would experience in the same field.
24. The electric field inside a cell membrane is 8.0 MN/C . What's the force on a singly charged ion in this field?
25. A $-3.0\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge experiences a 9.0-N electric force in a certain electric field. What force would a proton experience in the same field?
26. The electron in a hydrogen atom is 52.9 pm from the proton. At this distance, what's the strength of the electric field due to the proton?

Section 20.4 Fields of Charge Distributions

27. In Fig. 20.28, point P is midway between the two charges. Find the electric field in the plane of the page (a) 5.0 cm to the left of P , (b) 5.0 cm directly above P , and (c) at P .
28. The water molecule's dipole moment is $6.17 \times 10^{-30} \text{ C}\cdot\text{m}$. What would be the separation distance if the molecule consisted of charges $\pm e$? (The effective charge is actually less because H and O atoms share the electrons.)
29. The electric field 22 cm from a long wire carrying a uniform line charge density is 1.9 kN/C . What's the field strength 38 cm from the wire?
30. Find the line charge density on a long wire if the electric field 39 cm from the wire has magnitude 210 kN/C and points toward the wire.
31. Find the magnitude of the electric field due to a charged ring of radius a and total charge Q on the ring axis at distance a from the ring's center.

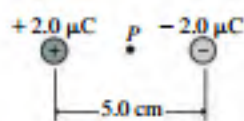


FIGURE 20.28 Exercise 27

Section 20.5 Matter in Electric Fields

32. In his famous 1909 experiment that demonstrated quantization of electric charge, R. A. Millikan suspended small oil drops in an electric field. With field strength 20 MN/C , what mass drop can be suspended when the drop carries 10 elementary charges?
33. How strong an electric field is needed to accelerate electrons in an X-ray tube from rest to one-tenth the speed of light in a distance of 4.7 cm ?
34. A proton moving to the right at $3.3 \times 10^5 \text{ m/s}$ enters a region where a 60-kN/C electric field points to the left. (a) How far will the proton get before it momentarily stops? (b) Describe its subsequent motion.
35. An electrostatic analyzer like that of Example 20.8 has $b = 7.5 \text{ cm}$. What value of E_0 will enable the device to select protons moving at 84 m/s ?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

36. **Example 20.2:** Charges on raindrops vary widely in both magnitude and sign. Consider a case where the two drops on the x -axis in Example 20.2 are 2.18 mm apart and have charge $q = 645 \text{ nC}$, while the third drop is 12.3 mm up the y -axis and has charge $Q = -1.87 \text{ }\mu\text{C}$. Find the electric force on the upper drop.

37. **Example 20.2:** Suppose that all three raindrops in Example 20.2 have equal charges and that their positions form an equilateral triangle with side 3.36 mm . If the electric force on the upper charge is $96.2 \text{ }\hat{j} \text{ N}$, (a) what's the magnitude of the charge? (b) Can you determine the sign of the charge from the information given?
38. **Example 20.2:** (a) Repeat Example 20.2 to find the force on Q , now taking the right-hand charge on the x -axis to be $-q$. (b) For $y \gg a$, how does the force you found in (a) depend on the distance y ?
39. **Example 20.2:** (a) Use calculus to show that the maximum force in the situation of Example 20.2 occurs when $y = a/\sqrt{2}$, and (b) find the magnitude of that maximum force.
40. **Example 20.7:** A 1.00-km length of power line carries a total charge of 264 mC distributed uniformly over its length. Find the magnitude of the electric field 54.3 cm from the axis of the power line, and not near either end (staying away from the ends means you can approximate the field as that of an infinitely long wire).
41. **Example 20.7:** A uniformly charged wire is 2.18 m long and 0.15 mm in diameter. You measure the electric field 1.20 cm from the wire's axis, not near either end, and you find it to be 455 kN/C , pointing toward the wire. Find the total charge on the wire.

42. **Example 20.7:** A thin rod of length L lies on the x -axis with its center at the origin, as shown in Fig. 20.29. The rod carries charge Q distributed uniformly over its length. (a) Modify the calculation of Example 20.7 to find an expression for the electric field at point A in Fig. 20.29, located on the positive y -axis an arbitrary distance y from the origin (but with y large enough to put point A outside the thin rod). (b) Show that your result reduces to the field of a point charge Q when $y \gg L$.
43. **Example 20.7:** A thin rod of length L lies on the x -axis with its center at the origin, as shown in Fig. 20.29. The rod carries charge Q distributed uniformly over its length. (a) Find an expression for the electric field at point B in Fig. 20.29, located on the positive x -axis a distance x from the origin, where $x > L/2$, so that point B is beyond the right end of the rod. (b) Show that your result reduces to the field of a point charge Q when $x \gg L$.

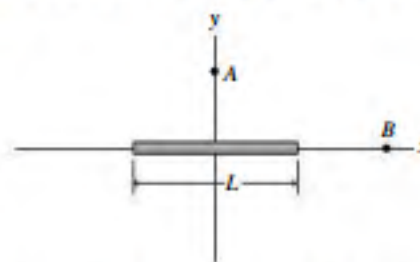


FIGURE 20.29 Problems 42 and 43

Problems

44. Two charges, of which one has a magnitude three times as large as the other's, are located 14.5 cm apart and experience an attractive force of 156 N . (a) What's the magnitude of the larger charge? (b) Can you determine the sign of the larger charge?
45. A proton is on the x -axis at $x = 1.3 \text{ nm}$. An electron is on the y -axis at $y = 0.86 \text{ nm}$. Find the net force the two exert on a helium nucleus (charge $+2e$) at the origin.
46. A charge $3q$ is at the origin, and a charge $-2q$ is on the positive x -axis at $x = a$. Where would you place a third charge so it would experience no net electric force?
47. A negative charge $-q$ lies midway between two positive charges $+Q$. What must Q be such that the electric force on all three charges is zero?
48. In Fig. 20.30, take $q_1 = 68 \text{ }\mu\text{C}$, $q_2 = -34 \text{ }\mu\text{C}$, and $q_3 = 15 \text{ }\mu\text{C}$. Find the electric force on q_3 .
49. In Fig. 20.30, take $q_1 = 21 \text{ }\mu\text{C}$ and $q_2 = 18 \text{ }\mu\text{C}$. If the force on q_1 points in the $-x$ -direction, find (a) q_3 and (b) the magnitude of the force on q_1 .

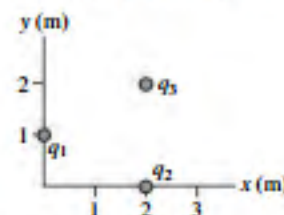


FIGURE 20.30 Problems 48 and 49

50. **BIO DATA** DNA fragments introduced into an electrophoresis apparatus (see Application, page 390) generally carry negative charges equivalent to two extra electrons per base pair of nucleotides in the fragment. The table below shows the forces on several DNA fragments in an electrophoresis apparatus, as a function of the number of base pairs. Plot these data, establish a best-fit line, and use the resulting slope to determine the strength of the electric field in the electrophoresis apparatus.

Base pairs	400	800	1200	2000	3000	5000
Force (pN)	0.235	0.472	0.724	1.15	1.65	2.87

51. A proton is at the origin and an ion at $x = 8.0$ nm. If the electric field is zero at $x = -4.0$ nm, what's the ion's charge?
52. Four equal charges Q are at the corners of a square of side a . Find an expression for the magnitude of the force on each charge.
53. A dipole lies on the y -axis and consists of an electron at $y = 0.60$ nm and a proton at $y = -0.60$ nm. Find the electric field (a) midway between the two charges; (b) at the point $x = 2.0$ nm, $y = 0$ nm; and (c) at the point $x = -20$ nm, $y = 0$ nm.
54. Show that the field on the x -axis for the dipole of Example 20.5 is given by Equation 20.6b, for $|x| \gg a$.
55. You're 1.44 m from a charge distribution that is well under 1 cm in size. You measure an electric field strength of 296 N/C due to this distribution. You then move to a distance of 2.16 m from the distribution, where you measure a field strength of 87.7 N/C. What's the net charge of the distribution? *Hint:* Don't try to calculate the charge. Determine instead how the field decreases with distance, and from that infer the charge.
56. Three identical charges q form an equilateral triangle of side a , with two charges on the x -axis and one on the positive y -axis. (a) Find an expression for the electric field at points on the y -axis above the uppermost charge. (b) Show that your result reduces to the field of a point charge $3q$ for $y \gg a$.
57. Two identical small metal spheres initially carry charges q_1 and q_2 . When they're 1.0 m apart, they experience a 2.5-N attractive force. Then they're brought together so charge moves from one to the other until they have the same net charge. They're again placed 1.0 m apart, and now they repel with a 2.5-N force. What were the original charges q_1 and q_2 ?
58. **COMP** Two 32.0- μC charges are attached to opposite ends of a spring with spring constant $k = 135$ N/m and equilibrium length 49.3 cm. By how much does the spring stretch? *Hint:* You'll need to use a computer or advanced calculator to solve the cubic equation that arises in this problem.
59. A positive charge Q is located at the origin, and another charge q is at $x = a$, where $a > 0$. Given that the electric field is zero at $x = 2a$, find an expression for q in terms of Q .
60. An electron is moving in a circular path around a long, uniformly charged wire carrying 1.4 nC/m. What's the electron's speed?
61. Find the line charge density on a long wire if a 6.5- μg particle carrying 2.2 nC describes a circular orbit about the wire with speed 270 m/s.
62. A dipole with dipole moment 1.6 nC $\cdot$ m is oriented at 30° to a 5.0-MN/C electric field. Find (a) the magnitude of the torque on the dipole and (b) the work required to rotate the dipole until it's antiparallel to the field.
63. You have a job examining patent applications. You're presented with the device in Fig. 20.31, which its inventor claims will separate isotopes of a particular element. Atoms are first stripped completely of their electrons, then accelerated from rest through an electric field chosen to give the desired isotope exactly the right speed to pass through the electrostatic analyzer (see Example 20.8). Will the device work?
64. **BIO** A 5.0- μm strand of DNA carries charge $+e$ per nm of length. Treating it as a charged line, what's the electric field strength 21 nm from the DNA, not near either end?
65. Heating in a microwave oven occurs as water molecules rotate back and forth to align their dipole moments with a rapidly changing electric field. Given water's dipole moment of 6.17×10^{-30} C $\cdot$ m, what's the energy change when a water molecule, with its dipole moment initially opposite a 2.95-kN/C electric field, swings to align with the field?
66. **CH** A dipole with charges $\pm q$ and separation $2a$ is located a distance x from a point charge $+Q$, oriented as shown in Fig. 20.32. Find expressions for the magnitude of (a) the net torque and (b) the net force on the dipole, both in the limit $x \gg a$. (c) What's the direction of the net force?

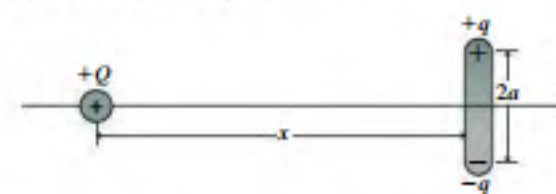


FIGURE 20.32 Problem 66

67. You're taking physical chemistry, and your professor is discussing molecular dipole moments. Water, he says, has a dipole moment of "1.85 debyes," while carbon monoxide's dipole moment is only "0.12 debye." Your physics professor wants these moments expressed in SI. She tells you that the atomic separation in these two covalent compounds is about the same, and asks what that indicates about the way shared charge is distributed. What do you tell her?
68. The electric field on the axis of a uniformly charged ring has magnitude 340 kN/C at a point 10 cm from the ring center. The magnitude 25 cm from the center is 110 kN/C; in both cases the field points away from the ring. Find (a) the ring's radius and (b) its charge.
69. **CH** An *electric quadrupole* consists of two oppositely directed dipoles in close proximity. (a) Calculate the field of the quadrupole shown in Fig. 20.33 for points to the right of $x = a$ and (b) show that for $x \gg a$ the quadrupole field falls off as $1/x^4$.

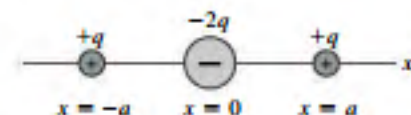


FIGURE 20.33 Problem 69

70. **CH** Four charges lie at the corners of a square of side a , with the center of the square at the origin. The two charges with $y = a/2$ have magnitude Q and are positive. The two charges with $y = -a/2$ also have magnitude Q but are negative. (a) Find an expression for the magnitude of the electric field for points on the y -axis with $y > a/2$. (b) Show that, for $y \gg a$, your result exhibits the $1/y^3$ falloff you would expect for an electric dipole. (c) Compare the result of (b) with Equation 20.6b and write an expression for the magnitude of the dipole moment of this four-charge distribution. *Hint:* Be careful with your approximation in (b)! If you get 0 for your answer, then you've gone too far. You can neglect a^2 when compared with y^2 , but you can't neglect a when compared with y or you'll be throwing out the charge separation that makes this distribution resemble a dipole at large distances.
71. A straight wire 12 m long carries 28 μC distributed uniformly over its length. (a) What's the line charge density on the wire? Find the electric field strength (b) 20 cm from the wire axis, not near either end, and (c) 450 m from the wire. Make suitable approximations in both cases.

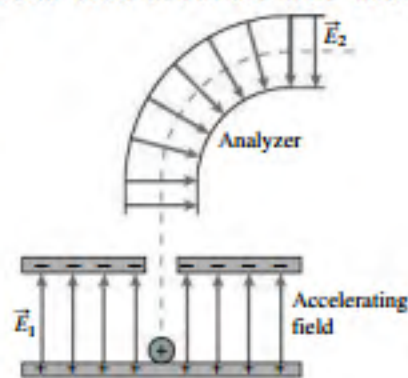


FIGURE 20.31 Problem 63

72. Two thin rods, each of length a , lie along the x -axis as shown in Fig. 20.34. The left-hand rod, which extends from $x = -a$ to the origin, carries negative charge $-Q$ distributed uniformly over its length. The right-hand rod extends from the origin to $x = a$ and carries positive charge Q distributed uniformly over its length.
- (a) Find an expression for the magnitude of the electric field on the x -axis for $x > a$ (that is, beyond the right end of the right-hand rod). (b) Show that, for $x \gg a$, the field exhibits the $1/x^3$ falloff of an electric dipole. (c) Compare the result of (b) with Equation 20.6b and write an expression for the magnitude of the dipole moment of this two-rod structure.



FIGURE 20.34 Problem 72

73. Figure 20.35 shows a thin, uniformly charged disk of radius R . Imagine the disk divided into rings of varying radii r , as suggested in the figure. (a) Show that the area of such a ring is very nearly $2\pi r dr$. (b) If the disk carries positive surface charge density σ , use the result of part (a) to write an expression for the charge dq on an infinitesimal ring. (c) Use the result of (b) along with the result of Example 20.6 to write the infinitesimal electric field dE of this ring at any point on the disk axis, taken to be the x -axis. (d) Integrate over all such rings to show that the net electric field on the axis has magnitude

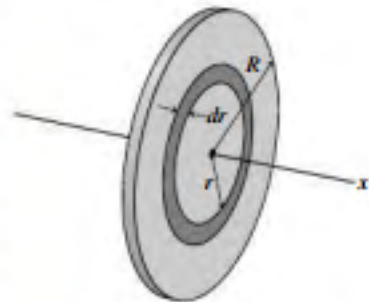


FIGURE 20.35 Problem 73

$$E = 2\pi k\sigma \left(1 - \frac{|x|}{\sqrt{x^2 + R^2}} \right)$$

74. Use the result of Problem 73 to show that the field of an infinite, uniformly charged flat sheet is $2\pi k\sigma$, where σ is the surface charge density. (This result is independent of distance from the sheet.)
75. Use the binomial theorem to show that, for $x \gg R$, the result of Problem 73 reduces to the field of a point charge whose total charge is the charge density times the disk area.
76. A semicircular loop of radius a carries positive charge Q distributed uniformly. Find the electric field at the loop's center (point P in Fig. 20.36). (Hint: Divide the loop into charge elements dq as shown, write dq in terms of the angle $d\theta$, then integrate over θ .)
77. A thin rod carries charge Q distributed uniformly over its length L and is situated on the x -axis between $x = \pm L/2$. (a) Find the electric field at an arbitrary point (x, y) . (You'll have to do separate integrals for the x - and y -components.) (b) Show that your result reduces to that of Example Variation 42 when $x = 0$ and to that of Example Variation 43 when $y = 0$ and $x > L/2$.
78. A thin rod extends along the x -axis from $x = 0$ to $x = L$ and carries line charge density $\lambda = \lambda_0(x/L)^2$, where λ_0 is a constant. Find the electric field at $x = -L$.

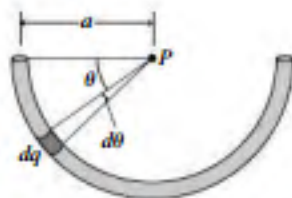


FIGURE 20.36 Problem 76

79. You're working on the design of an ink-jet printer. Ink drops of mass m , speed v , and charge q will enter a region of uniform electric field E between two charged plates (Fig. 20.37). The drops enter midway between the plates, and the electric field deflects them toward the correct place on the page. Find

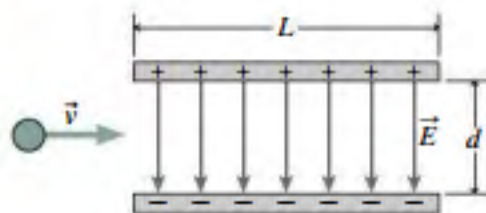


FIGURE 20.37 Problem 79

an expression for the maximum electric field for which drops can still get through without hitting either plate.

Passage Problems

- BIO The human heart consists largely of elongated muscle cells, some $100 \mu\text{m}$ long and $15 \mu\text{m}$ in diameter. In its resting state, a cell contains two concentric layers of charge, which confine the electric field to the cell membrane (Fig. 20.38a). When the heart contracts, a wave of depolarization sweeps through, depleting charge and giving each cell a dipole moment (Fig. 20.38b). As a result, the entire organ acts like an electric dipole, producing an external field, which is indirectly detected by electrocardiography. Although the direction of the heart's dipole moment varies, Fig. 20.38c is typical. In answering the questions that follow, consider the heart in isolation—don't concern yourself with the effect of surrounding tissues on its electric field.

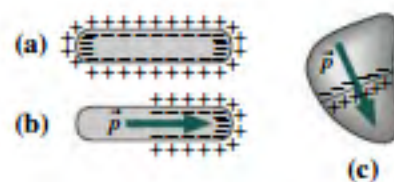


FIGURE 20.38 Heart cells (a) in the resting state and (b) partially depolarized, resulting in a dipole moment $\vec{p}$. (c) Typical orientation of the heart's dipole moment vector. Cells along the line are depolarizing.

80. At a distance r , far from the heart, the heart's electric field
- falls off as $1/r$.
 - falls off as $1/r^2$.
 - falls off as $1/r^3$.
 - falls off as $1/r^4$.
81. At a given distance, far from the heart compared with its size, the electric field
- is weaker along an extension of the line shown in Fig. 20.38c than on a perpendicular line.
 - is stronger along an extension of the line shown in Fig. 20.38c than on a perpendicular line.
 - has the same value at positions perpendicular and parallel to the line in Fig. 20.38c.
82. The difference between Figs. 20.38a and 20.38b that results in an external electric field in one case but not the other is that
- there's no net charge in Fig. 20.38a but there is a net charge in Fig. 20.38b.
 - the total charge is greater in Fig. 20.38a.
 - the charge is distributed in Fig. 20.38b so there's more negative charge to the left and more positive charge to the right.
83. At the instant shown in Fig. 20.38c, there's an electric field within the heart that points approximately
- in the direction of the dipole moment vector $\vec{p}$.
 - opposite the dipole moment vector $\vec{p}$.
 - perpendicular to the dipole moment vector $\vec{p}$.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The electric field in the atmosphere must be strong enough to rip electrons from air molecules, making the air an electrical conductor. This typically happens when E exceeds about 3 MV/m .

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 20.1 (c) udd because its net charge is $+e$ (udd is the neutron)
- 20.2 (1) $-\hat{i}$; (2) $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\hat{i} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\hat{j}$; The unit vector always points away from the source charge regardless of the sign.
- 20.3 (a)
- 20.4 (1) drops by $1/2^2$, to 200 N/C ; (2) drops by $1/2^3$, to 100 N/C
- 20.5 carbon-13, (oxygen-16, helium-4, deuteron—all the same), helium-3, proton, electron

Gauss's Law

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Coulomb's law (Section 20.2)
- The dot product of two vectors (Section 6.2)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 21.1 Describe electric fields using field lines.
- LO 21.2 Explain the concept of electric flux in relation to field lines.
- LO 21.3 Describe Gauss's law and explain how it relates to Coulomb's law.
- LO 21.4 Use Gauss's law to determine electric fields for charge distributions with sufficient symmetry.
- LO 21.5 Approximate electric fields of general charge distributions using what you know about simpler distributions.
- LO 21.6 Describe electrostatic equilibrium in conductors and use Gauss's law to determine electric fields associated with charged conductors.



Huge sparks jump to the operator's cage in the Hall of Electricity at the Boston Museum of Science, but the operator is unharmed. Why?

In this chapter we introduce an elegant way of describing electric fields that makes it much easier to calculate the fields of certain charge distributions. In the process we'll formulate one of the four fundamental laws of electromagnetism—a statement that embodies Coulomb's law but that gives deeper insights into the electric field.

21.1 Electric Field Lines

LO 21.1 *Describe electric fields using field lines.*

We can visualize electric fields by drawing **electric field lines**, continuous lines whose direction is everywhere the same as that of the electric field. To draw a field line, determine the field direction at some point. Move a small distance in the direction of the field, and evaluate the field direction at the new point. Extending the process in both directions from your starting point traces out an electric field line. You'll find that field lines begin on positive charges and either end on negative charges or extend to infinity. Drawing many field lines gives a picture of the overall field.

To explore the field of a positive point charge, as shown in Fig. 21.1a, start near the charge. The field points radially outward, so move a little way outward. The field is still radial. Repeat the process, and you'll trace a straight line that extends indefinitely. So the field lines of a positive point charge are straight lines that begin on the charge and extend radially to infinity (Fig. 21.1b).

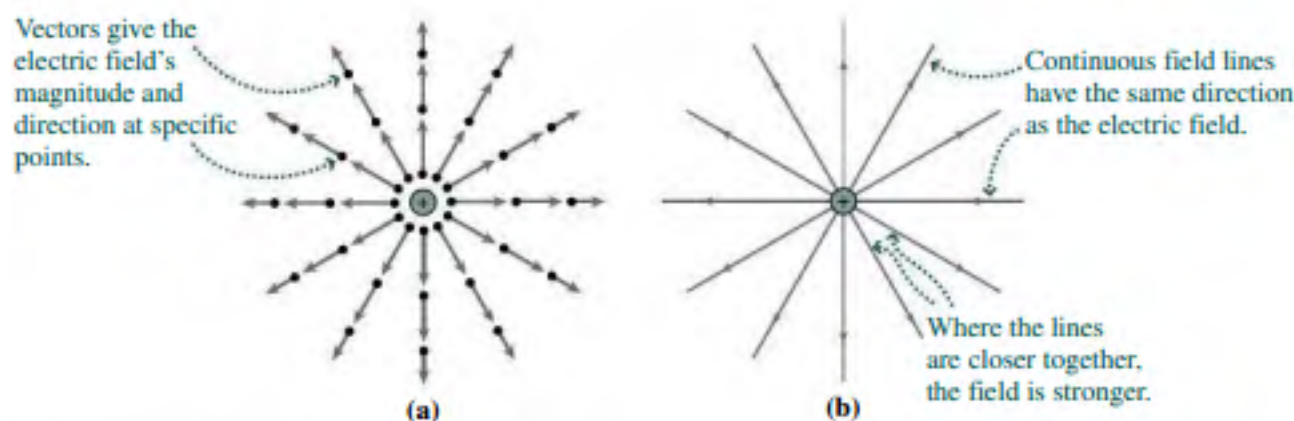


FIGURE 21.1 Vectors (a) and field lines (b) provide two ways to visualize the electric field.

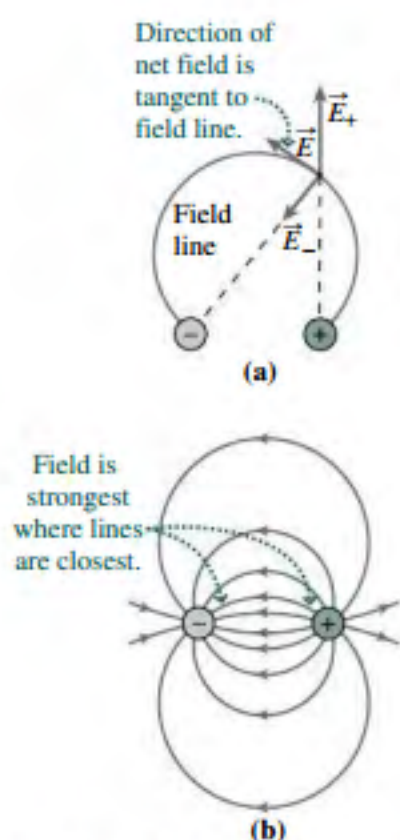


FIGURE 21.2 Field of an electric dipole. (a) At each point, the field-line direction is that of the net electric field, $\vec{E} = \vec{E}_+ + \vec{E}_-$. (b) Tracing many field lines shows the overall dipole field.

In Fig. 21.1b the field lines spread apart as they extend farther from the point charge. Coulomb's law shows that the field weakens farther from the charge, so in Fig. 21.1b the field is stronger where the lines are closer and weaker where they're farther apart. This is generally true, and lets us infer the field's relative magnitude as well as direction from field-line pictures.

To trace the field lines of a charge distribution, follow the net field—the vector sum of the field contributions from all charges in the distribution. Usually the field direction varies, so the line is curved. Figure 21.2a shows the details for one field line of a dipole. Figure 21.2b shows a number of dipole field lines; here you can see that the field is strongest near the individual charges and in the region between them. The electric field exists everywhere, so there are really infinitely many field lines. We can't draw them all, but in order to make field-line pictures somewhat precise, we associate a fixed number of field lines with a charge of a given magnitude. In Fig. 21.3, for example, eight field lines correspond to a charge of magnitude q . Study the figure, and you'll see how all the fields shown are consistent with this convention.

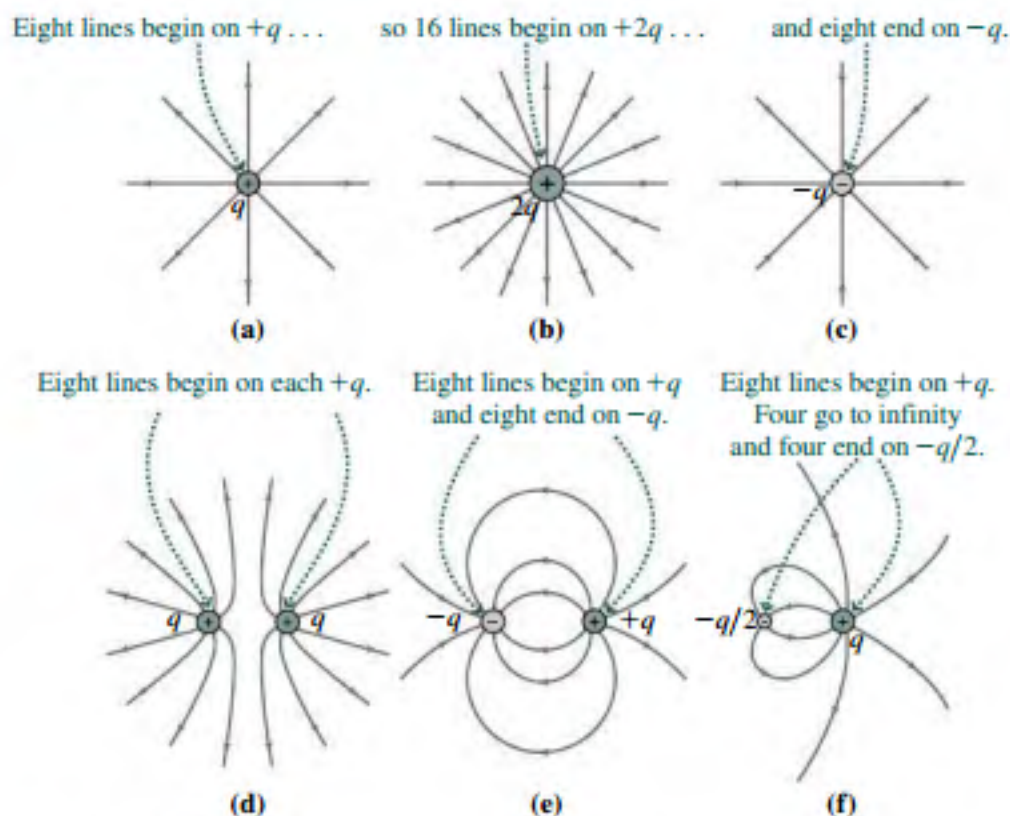
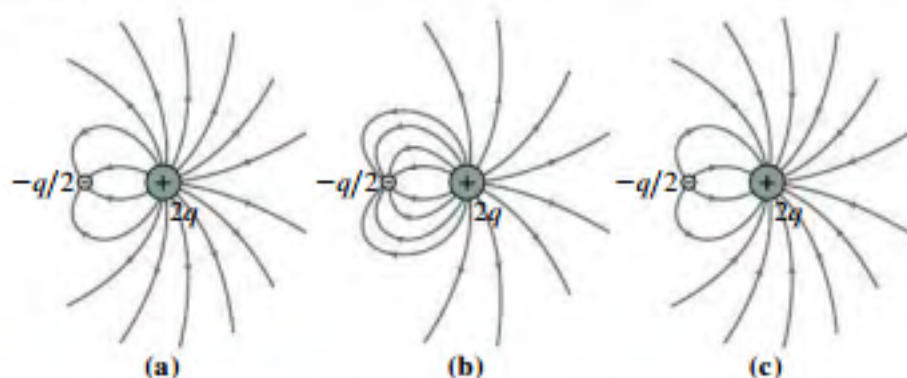


FIGURE 21.3 Field lines for six charge distributions, using the convention that eight lines correspond to a charge of magnitude q .

GOT IT?

21.1 Which figure represents the electric field of a charge distribution consisting of $+2q$ and $-q/2$, using the convention that eight lines correspond to a charge of magnitude q ?



21.2 Electric Field and Electric Flux

LO 21.2 Explain the concept of electric flux in relation to field lines.

In Fig. 21.4 we've surrounded each charge distribution from Fig. 21.3 with several surfaces. Each surface is closed, so it's impossible to get from inside to outside without crossing the surface. (Figure 21.4 shows only the two-dimensional cross section of each surface.) How many field lines emerge from within each surface?

In Fig. 21.4a the answer for surfaces 1 and 2 is eight. For surface 3 one field line crosses twice going out and once going in; if we count the inward-going line as negative, then there's still a net of eight lines going out. Any closed surface surrounding $+q$ will have eight lines emerging from it, for the simple reason that eight lines begin on the charge and extend to infinity; to get there they all have to cross the closed surface.

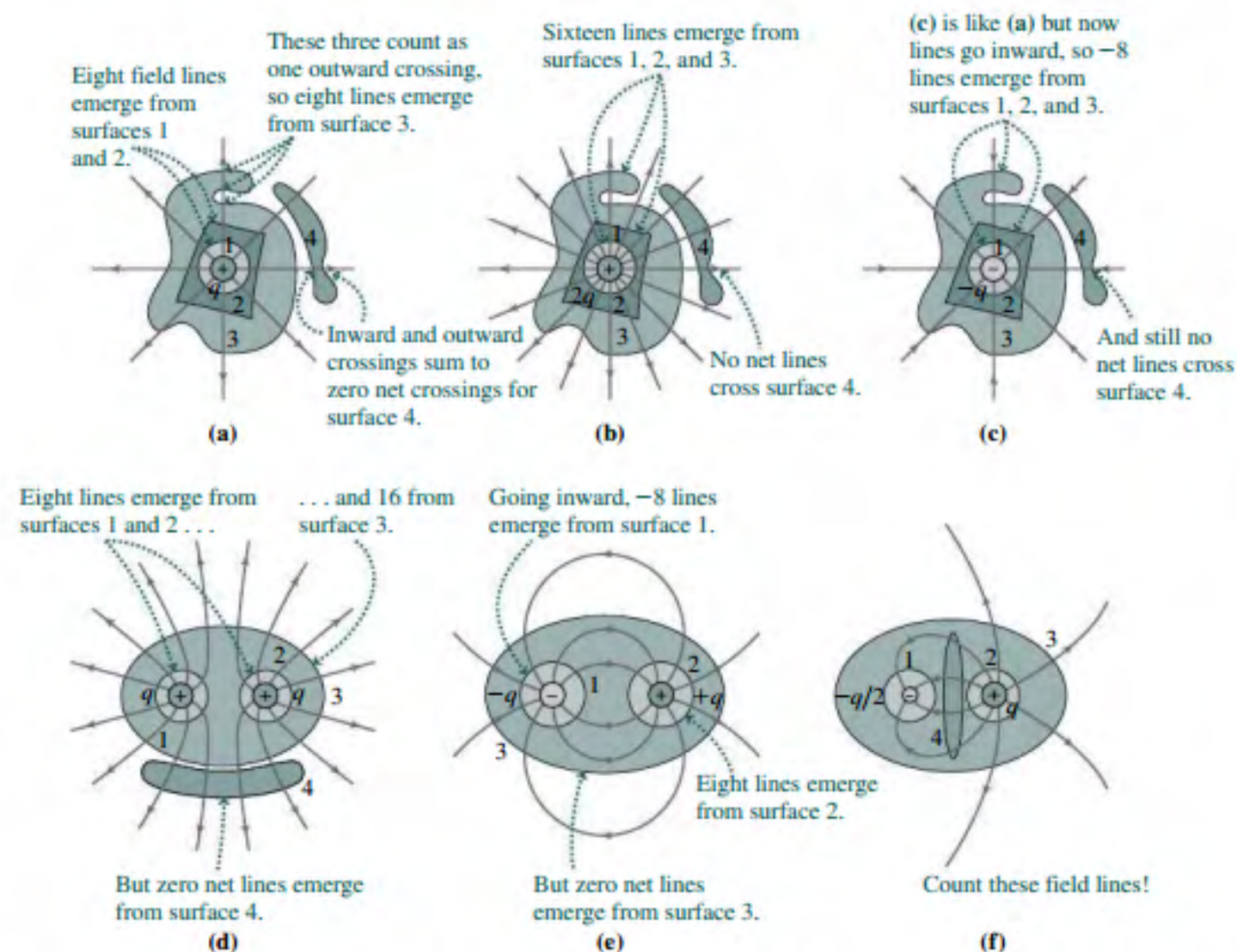


FIGURE 21.4 The number of field lines emerging from a closed surface depends only on the net charge enclosed.

What about surface 4? Two lines cross going outward and two inward, for a net of zero lines emerging. What's different is that surface 4 doesn't enclose the charge. You can convince yourself that *any* surface not enclosing the charge will have as many lines going in as out, for zero net field lines emerging.

Figure 21.4*b* is identical except that now 16 field lines emerge from any surface surrounding the charge: $+2q$ enclosed, so 16 field lines emerge. And Fig. 21.4*c* is similar, too, but with the negative charge, the field lines go inward and we count them as negative: $-q$ enclosed, so -8 field lines emerge. And, in all three cases, zero net lines emerge from surface 4, the one that doesn't enclose the charge: zero charge enclosed, so zero field lines emerging. The same is true even for surface 3 surrounding the dipole in Fig. 21.4*e*: Here there are two charges within the surface, but the *net charge enclosed* is zero, and sure enough, there are zero net field lines emerging. Study the rest of Fig. 21.4 and you can convince yourself that in all cases **the number of field lines emerging from any closed surface is proportional to the net charge enclosed**.

This statement is very general. It doesn't matter what shape the surface is or whether the enclosed charge is a single point charge or a lot of charges carrying the same net charge. Nor does it matter how the charges are arranged, as long as they're *enclosed* by the surface in question. The presence of charges *outside* the surface doesn't alter our conclusion about the number of field lines emerging—although it may alter the shapes of the field lines. We'll now rephrase our statement mathematically to obtain one of the four fundamental laws of electromagnetism. As we proceed, remember that the mathematics just reflects what's clear from Fig. 21.4: The number of field lines emerging from a closed surface depends only on the net charge enclosed.

The Flux Concept

There are many situations in physics and engineering where we deal with flows of matter or energy. Examples from Chapter 15 include the flows of blood through a vein, water in a pipe or river, or air over an airplane's wing. There, we measured flow in kg/s or m^3/s . Fluid flows such as these are also of interest to physiologists, hydrologists, oceanographers, meteorologists, and civil engineers. In Chapter 16 we considered heat flow, measured in watts, which is of interest to building engineers, biologists, climatologists, and many others. Coming soon, in Chapter 24, we'll consider electric current—the flow of electric charge. Each of these flows is a **flux**—a term that comes from the Latin *fluxus*, for “flow.” In each case we can represent the flow as we did in Chapter 15 for fluids—by drawing lines that give the local direction of the flow. As Fig. 15.11 showed, those lines are closer where the flow speed is higher and vice versa. Those last two sentences should remind you of Section 21.1's recipe for drawing electric field lines, and how the proximity of field lines describes the strength of the field.

We can describe flows in more detail by giving the flow rate per unit area—which we could equally well call the flux per unit area. For a fluid, that would be measured in kilograms per second per square meter ($\text{kg/s} \cdot \text{m}^2$). If that quantity were uniform across the flow, then we could find the total flux by multiplying the flux per unit area by the area. For example, a river with cross-sectional area 25 m^2 and a flux per unit area of $100 \text{ kg/s} \cdot \text{m}^2$ would carry a total flux of 2500 kg/s . If the flow per unit area weren't uniform, then we'd have to consider small patches of area, calculate the flux over each, and sum the results. We'll quantify that process shortly.

Electric Flux

In the case of electric fields, there's nothing “flowing.” But electric field lines are analogous to the streamlines we've used to describe fluid flow. Their direction gives the local direction of the electric field, and their proximity reflects the field strength. Furthermore, field lines begin or end only on electric charges; otherwise, they extend continuously to infinity. This property of electric fields—which you'll soon see is intimately related to Coulomb's law—is analogous to the conservation of matter in fluid flows. So we use the term **electric flux** to describe the electrical analog of the flux of a fluid. In the simplest

case of a uniform electric field of magnitude E perpendicular to an area A , the flux of the electric field is $\Phi = EA$, in analogy with our finding the flux in a river by multiplying the flux per unit area by the river's cross-sectional area. Here we use Φ , the capital Greek phi, as our symbol for electric flux.

What good is electric flux? Figure 21.5 gives the answer, showing that electric flux carries the same information as the “number of field lines crossing a surface” that was so important in our discussion of Fig. 21.4. Consider first the flux through a flat surface. Comparison of Figs. 21.5a and b shows that the number of field lines crossing a given surface is larger when the field is stronger—a fact that's precisely captured in our formula $\Phi = EA$. Comparison of Figs. 21.5b and c shows further that, for a given field strength, the number of field lines crossing a given surface is larger when the surface is larger. Again, $\Phi = EA$ captures this situation. Finally, Fig. 21.5d shows that the number of field lines is reduced when the surface is tilted relative to the field. You can also see this effect in Fig. 21.6, which shows a water-flow analogy. Specifically, the flux is reduced by a factor $\cos \theta$, where θ is the angle between the electric field $\vec{E}$ and a vector $\vec{A}$ that's normal to the surface. So our flux expression generalizes to $\Phi = EA \cos \theta$. If we define the normal vector $\vec{A}$ as having magnitude equal to the surface area A , then we can write the electric flux through a flat surface in a uniform electric field using the dot product:

$$\Phi = \vec{E} \cdot \vec{A} \quad (21.1)$$

where the dot product, defined in Chapter 6, is the product of the two vector magnitudes with the cosine of the angle between them. Since the units of $\vec{E}$ are N/C, flux is measured in $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}$.

The surfaces in Fig. 21.5 are *open* surfaces, meaning it's possible to get from one side to the other without passing through the surface. For open surfaces there's an ambiguity in the sign of Φ , since we could have taken $\vec{A}$ in either of the two directions along the perpendicular to the surface. But for *closed* surfaces, we unambiguously define the direction of $\vec{A}$ as the direction of the outward-pointing normal to the surface.



THE FLUX IS NOT THE FIELD The flux Φ and field $\vec{E}$ are related but distinct quantities. The field is a vector defined at each point in space. The flux is a scalar and a global property, depending on how the field behaves over an extended surface rather than at a single point; it's a quantification of the number of field lines crossing a surface.

What if a surface is curved and/or the field varies with position? Then we divide the surface into patches, each small enough that it's essentially flat and that the field is essentially uniform over each (Fig. 21.7). If a patch has area dA , then Equation 21.1 gives the flux through it: $d\Phi = \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A}$, where the vector $d\vec{A}$ is normal to the patch. The total flux through the surface is then the sum over all the patches. If we make the patches arbitrarily small, that sum becomes an integral, and the flux is

$$\Phi = \int_{\text{surface}} \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} \quad (21.2)$$

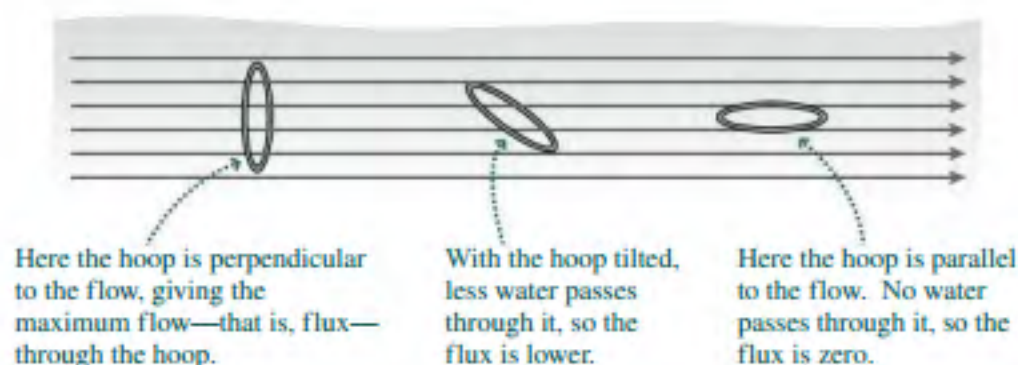


FIGURE 21.6 A water-flow analogy for electric flux, showing a circular hoop immersed in a flow of water.

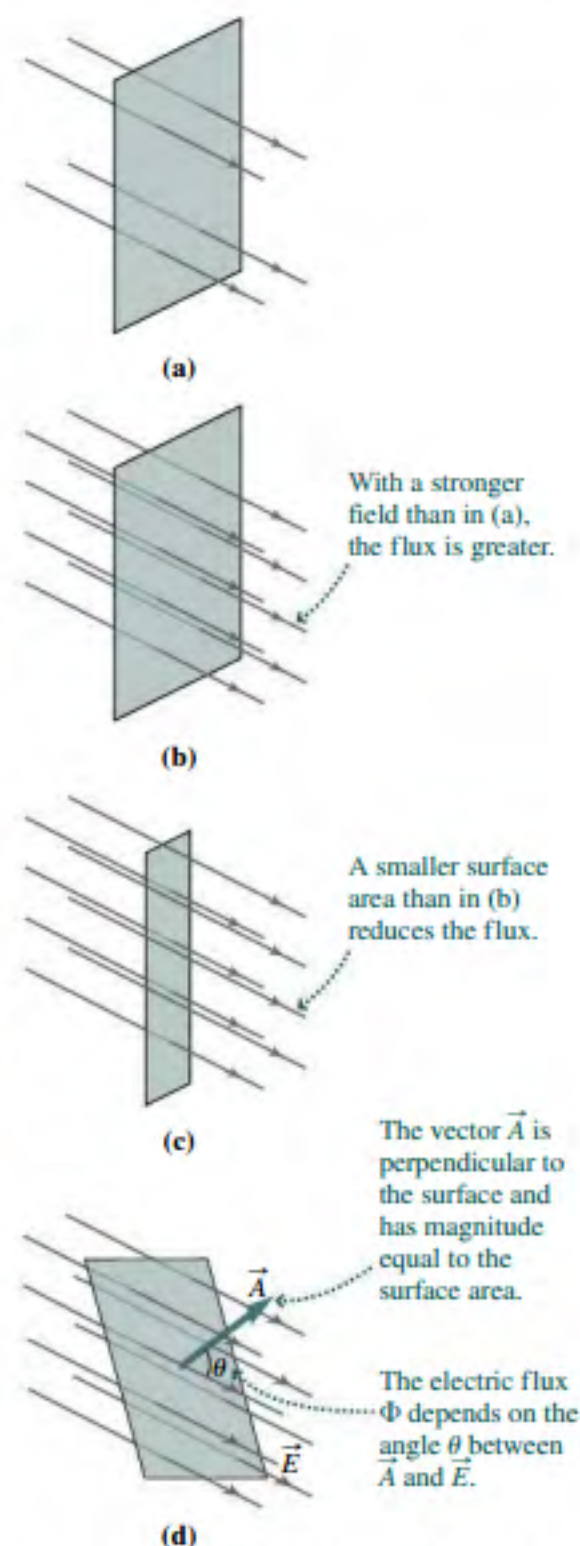


FIGURE 21.5 Electric flux through flat surfaces.

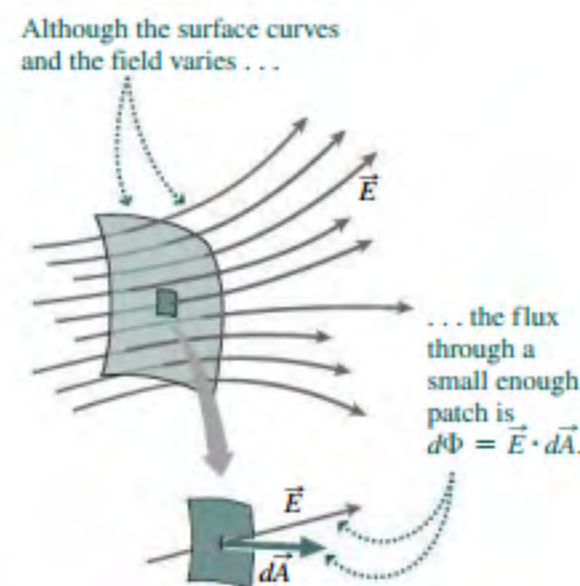


FIGURE 21.7 Finding the flux through a small area dA , so small it's essentially flat.

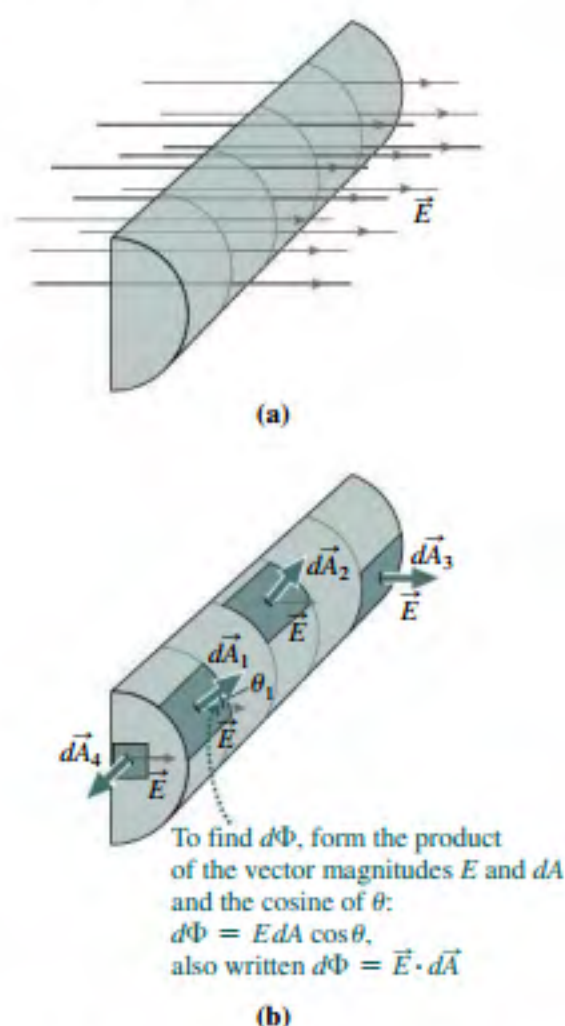


FIGURE 21.8 Meaning of the surface integral for electric flux, here for the case of a surface that isn't flat. (a) The surface is a half-cylinder in a uniform electric field $\vec{E}$. (b) The total flux through the surface is the sum of the fluxes $d\Phi = \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A}$ over all the little patches constituting the surface, four of which are shown. In the limit that the patches become infinitesimally small, that sum becomes the integral in Equation 21.2.

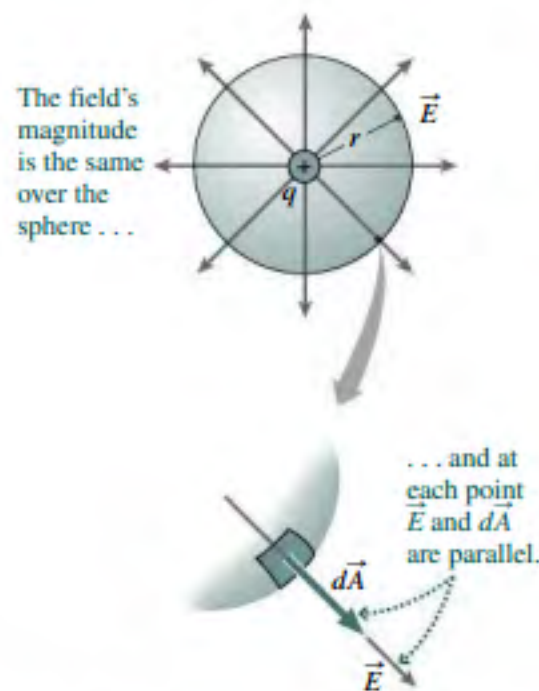


FIGURE 21.9 The electric field of a point charge, shown with a spherical surface centered on the charge.

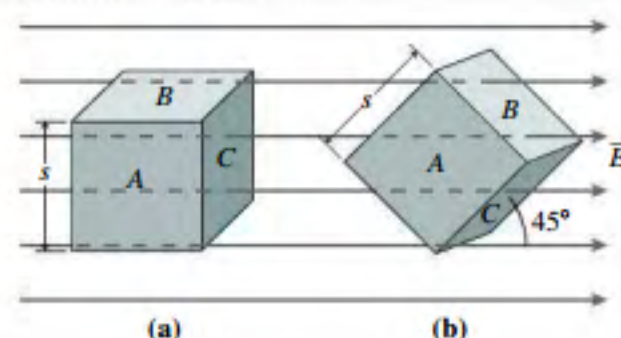
The limits of the integral range over the entire surface, picking up contributions from all the patches $d\vec{A}$. The result is a **surface integral**—in general, the integral of a vector field over a surface, with the orientation of field and surface taken into account. Tactics Box 21.1 shows the meaning of such a surface integral. Although a surface integral can be difficult to evaluate, we'll find it most useful in situations where its evaluation is almost trivial.

Tactics 21.1 SURFACE INTEGRALS

The math in Equation 21.2 looks complicated, with two vectors and a dot product inside the integral and limits that specify an entire surface. Figure 21.8 helps decipher this math. The figure shows a surface, which could be arbitrary but in this case is half a cylinder including its semicircular end caps. This surface is immersed in an electric field $\vec{E}$ (Fig. 21.8a), which in this case is uniform but need not be. Figure 21.8b shows several small patches of the surface area. Each patch is described by a vector $d\vec{A}$ with magnitude equal to the area of the corresponding small patch and direction given by the normal to that patch, similar to the patch we showed in Fig. 21.7. At each patch we consider the direction of the normal vector $d\vec{A}$ relative to the electric field $\vec{E}$ at that patch, and we form the quantity $E dA \cos \theta$ or, written more compactly, $\vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A}$. What is this quantity? It's the flux, $d\Phi$, through the small patch. Although it's formed from two vectors, $d\Phi$ itself is a scalar. So to find the total flux through our surface, all we have to do is add up all those little $d\Phi$ s. And that—in the limit that the $d\Phi$ s become infinitesimally small and infinitely many—is the meaning of the surface integral in Equation 21.2. As you work through this chapter, you'll see many instances where we evaluate such surface integrals. We'll be able to choose surfaces that make the actual evaluation straightforward—but to appreciate that evaluation you'll need to understand the meaning of the surface integral as we've outlined it here.

GOT IT?

21.2 The figure shows a cube of side s in a uniform electric field $\vec{E}$. (1) What's the flux through each of the three cube faces A , B , and C with the cube oriented as in (a)? (2) Repeat for the orientation in (b), with the cube rotated 45° .



21.3 Gauss's Law

LO 21.3 Describe Gauss's law and explain how it relates to Coulomb's law.

We've seen that the number of field lines emerging from a closed surface is proportional to the charge enclosed. Now that we've developed electric flux to express more rigorously the notion "number of field lines," we can state that **the electric flux through any closed surface is proportional to the net charge enclosed by that surface**. Writing the same thing mathematically gives $\Phi = \oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} \propto q_{\text{enclosed}}$, where the circle indicates that the integral is over a *closed* surface.

To evaluate the proportionality between flux and charge, consider a positive point charge q and a spherical surface of radius r centered on the charge (Fig. 21.9). The flux through this surface is given by Equation 21.2:

$$\Phi = \oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = \oint E dA \cos \theta$$

But Fig. 21.9 shows that the surface normal $d\vec{A}$ and the electric field $\vec{E}$ are parallel at any point on the sphere, so $\cos \theta = 1$. Since the electric field varies as $1/r^2$, its magnitude is the same everywhere at the fixed radius r of our sphere. Thus, we can take E outside the integral, giving

$$\Phi = \oint_{\text{sphere}} E dA = E \oint_{\text{sphere}} dA = E(4\pi r^2)$$

where the last step follows because $\oint dA$ is just the surface area of the sphere, namely $4\pi r^2$. (Here's the first of many cases where the evaluation of a surface integral is straightforward

because of the symmetry of the electric field and of the surface we're integrating over.) Now, the electric field of a point charge is given by Equation 20.3: $E = kq/r^2$. So we have $\Phi = E(4\pi r^2) = (kq/r^2)(4\pi r^2) = 4\pi kq$. Since the point charge q is the only charge inside our spherical surface, the proportionality constant between flux and enclosed charge is $4\pi k$.

Before proceeding, we introduce the so-called permittivity constant ϵ_0 , defined as $\epsilon_0 = 1/4\pi k$, where k is the Coulomb constant. The value of ϵ_0 is approximately $8.85 \times 10^{-12} \text{ C}^2/\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2$. There's no physics here, just a new constant that conveys the same information as k . That there are two redundant constants is a historical artifact, and we switch now from k to ϵ_0 because doing so makes subsequent formulas simpler. In terms of ϵ_0 , the proportionality $4\pi k$ between flux and enclosed charge becomes $1/\epsilon_0$. So our statement that the flux through any closed surface is proportional to the net charge enclosed becomes

$\vec{E}$ is the electric field at the surface.

The circle indicates integration over a closed surface.

$d\vec{A}$ is an infinitesimal element of surface area. It's a vector with direction perpendicular to the surface.

q_{enclosed} is the net charge enclosed by the surface.

ϵ_0 is a constant related to the Coulomb constant k .

$$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = \frac{q_{\text{enclosed}}}{\epsilon_0} \quad (\text{Gauss's law}) \quad (21.3)$$

As usual, the dot product is the scalar $E dA \cos \theta$.

Here the integral is taken over *any closed surface*, and q_{enclosed} is the charge enclosed by that surface.

Equation 21.3 is **Gauss's law**, one of four fundamental relations that govern the behavior of electromagnetic fields throughout the universe. Whether you journey into a star in some remote galaxy, down among the strands of a DNA molecule, or into the microprocessor chip at the heart of your computer, you'll find that the flux of the electric field through any closed surface depends only on the enclosed charge. In nearly 200 years of experiments, no electric field has ever been found to violate Gauss's law.

Gauss's law, though clothed in the mathematical finery of a surface integral, is just a more rigorous way of saying what's clear in Fig. 21.4: The number of field lines emerging from a closed surface is proportional to the net charge enclosed.

Gauss and Coulomb

Gauss's law and Coulomb's law look completely different, but they're closely related. Figure 21.10 shows that their relationship involves the inverse-square law. Gauss's law tells us that the flux through the two surfaces in the figure is the same and is equal to q/ϵ_0 . But why? Because, as our arguments leading to Gauss's law show, the flux through a spherical surface of radius r centered on a point charge is the product of the surface area $4\pi r^2$ and the electric field E at the surface. But Coulomb's law says that the electric field drops off as $1/r^2$. As r increases, the surface area grows as r^2 , but the $1/r^2$ decrease in field strength just compensates, giving a constant value for the flux. If the inverse-square law (e.g., Coulomb's law) didn't hold, then the flux wouldn't be constant and Gauss's law wouldn't hold either.

It's also the inverse-square law that makes electric field-line pictures useful for visualizing fields. Field lines begin or end only on charges; otherwise, they go off to infinity. As the field lines of a point charge spread in three dimensions, the number crossing any spherical surface (or any closed surface) remains the same. But larger spheres have larger surface areas, in proportion to r^2 —and that means the density of field lines drops as $1/r^2$, accurately reflecting the field strength. Once again, the inverse-square law (Coulomb) and the relation between flux and enclosed charge (Gauss) are intimately connected. Incidentally, field-line pictures printed in a book or drawn on a blackboard generally can't be quantitatively correct because they don't show the spreading of field lines in all three dimensions.

We've been talking here only about isolated point charges, but Gauss's law applies to *all* electric fields, no matter how complicated the charge distributions that produce them. That's because the superposition principle allows us to add vectorially the electric fields

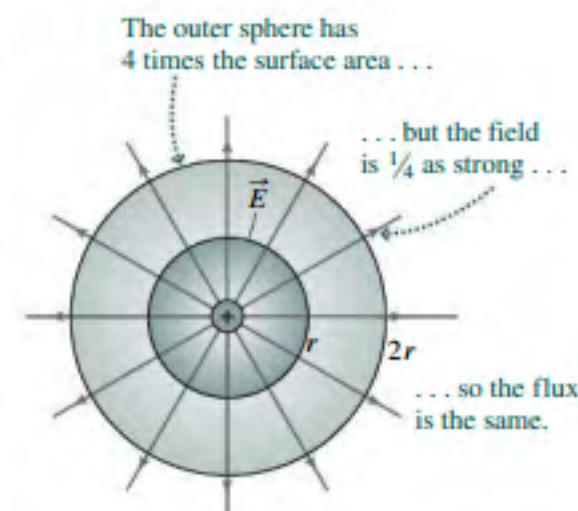


FIGURE 21.10 Gauss's law follows from the inverse-square aspect of Coulomb's law.

described individually by Coulomb's law for the point-charge field. So our argument leading to Gauss's law still applies when the field $\vec{E}$ is a superposition of point-charge fields.

For static charge distributions, Gauss's and Coulomb's laws are completely equivalent. But with moving charges only Gauss's law remains exact. So Gauss's law is more fundamental, and we count it among the four basic laws of electromagnetism.

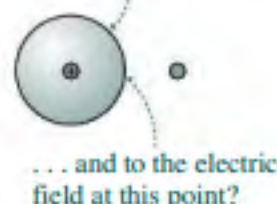
GOT IT?

21.3 A spherical surface surrounds an isolated positive charge, as shown. (1) If a second charge is placed outside the surface, which of the following will be true of the total flux through the surface? (a) It doesn't change; (b) it increases; (c) it decreases; (d) it increases or decreases depending on the sign of the second charge. (2) Repeat for the magnitude of the electric field on the surface at the point between the charges.

A spherical surface surrounds a point charge.



A second charge is placed outside the surface. What happens to the total flux through the surface . . .



21.4 Using Gauss's Law

LO 21.4 Use Gauss's law to determine electric fields for charge distributions with sufficient symmetry.

Gauss's law is a universal statement about electric fields; it's true for *any* surface enclosing *any* charge distribution. For charge distributions with sufficient symmetry—symmetric about a point, a line, or a plane—Gauss's law also provides a powerful alternative to Coulomb's law that makes electric-field calculations much easier. For such distributions it's possible to evaluate the flux integral on the left-hand side of Gauss's law (Equation 21.3) without actually knowing the field. We can then solve for E in terms of the enclosed charge. We begin with a general strategy for applying Gauss's law to symmetric charge distributions, followed by examples of the three symmetries.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 21.1 Gauss's Law

INTERPRET Check that your charge distribution has sufficient symmetry to use Gauss's law to find the electric field, and identify the symmetry. Is it spherical, line, or plane? If the charge distribution doesn't exhibit one of these symmetries, then Gauss's law—though always true—won't help you find the field.

DEVELOP Draw a diagram showing the charge distribution, and use the symmetry to infer the direction of the electric field. Then draw an appropriate **Gaussian surface**—an imaginary closed surface that will let you evaluate the flux integral in Gauss's law. The field should have constant magnitude over the surface and should be perpendicular to the surface. Sketch some field lines; the symmetry should indicate their direction. With line and plane symmetry, there may be parts of the surface where the field is perpendicular and parts where it's parallel; we'll show in examples how to handle these situations. If you can't find a suitable Gaussian surface, there probably isn't sufficient symmetry to use Gauss's law to calculate the field.

EVALUATE

- Evaluate the flux $\Phi = \oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A}$ over your Gaussian surface. Since you've found a surface to which the field is perpendicular, $\vec{E}$ and the surface normal vector $d\vec{A}$ are parallel, so $\cos \theta = 1$ and the dot product becomes $E dA$. With the field strength E constant over the surface, it can come out of the integral, leaving $\oint dA$. That's just the surface area A . So the flux will be EA . By carefully choosing your Gaussian surface, you've turned that messy integral in Equation 21.2 into a mere multiplication!

If $\vec{E}$ is parallel to some parts of the area—as happens in line and plane symmetry—then $\vec{E} \perp d\vec{A}$, so $\vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = 0$ and there's no contribution to the flux from those areas.

- Evaluate the *enclosed* charge. This may or may not be the same as the total charge, depending on whether the position at which you're evaluating the field lies outside or inside the charge distribution.
- Evaluate the field E by invoking Gauss's law, equating the flux to $q_{\text{enclosed}}/\epsilon_0$, and solving for E . This is the field magnitude; the direction should be evident from symmetry.

ASSESS Does your answer make sense? Does the field behave as you would expect given what you know of simpler charge distributions—point charges, line charges, or charged sheets, depending on the symmetry?

You'll quickly get the hang of this strategy because Gauss's law is useful for finding the field only in the three common symmetries. That means you need to evaluate the integral for the flux just once for a given symmetry.

Spherical Symmetry

A charge distribution has spherical symmetry when the charge density depends only on the radial distance r from the center of the distribution—also called the *point of symmetry*. A point charge is one example, as are the three charge distributions we'll now treat in Examples 21.1 through 21.3. In fact, *any* spherical charge distribution has spherical symmetry, provided the charge density varies solely with distance from the center. The only electric field consistent with spherical symmetry is a field that points in the radial direction, either away from or toward the point of symmetry. We'll start with the simplest case, a charged spherical shell.

EXAMPLE 21.1 Gauss's Law: A Hollow Spherical Shell

A thin, hollow spherical shell of radius R has total charge Q distributed uniformly over its surface. Find the electric field (a) outside and (b) inside the shell.

INTERPRET This is a spherically symmetric charge distribution, so we can use Gauss's law to find the field.

DEVELOP With spherical symmetry, the field lines have to point radially outward for a positive charge and inward for a negative one. We've sketched the charged shell and some field lines outside it in Fig. 21.11. With spherical symmetry, the appropriate Gaussian surfaces are also spheres centered on the center of the shell. Since we're asked for the field both outside and inside the shell, we've sketched one such surface outside the shell and one inside.

EVALUATE

- We first evaluate the flux integral $\Phi = \oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A}$ that appears on the left-hand side of Gauss's law. With our choice of a spherical Gaussian surface, the field is everywhere perpendicular to the surface, or parallel to the normal vector $d\vec{A}$ (recall Fig. 21.9). So $\cos\theta = 1$, and the dot product becomes just $E dA$. With our Gaussian surface being a sphere centered on the point of symmetry, the field magnitude E is the same all over the Gaussian surface. So E comes outside the integral, leaving $\Phi = E \oint dA$. The remaining integral is the sum of all the little areas dA over the spherical Gaussian surface—and that's the surface area of a sphere, $A = 4\pi r^2$. The flux then becomes $\Phi = 4\pi r^2 E$. Note that this result doesn't depend on whether the surface is outside or inside the shell or on the particular value of its radius r ; it follows from the symmetry and our choice

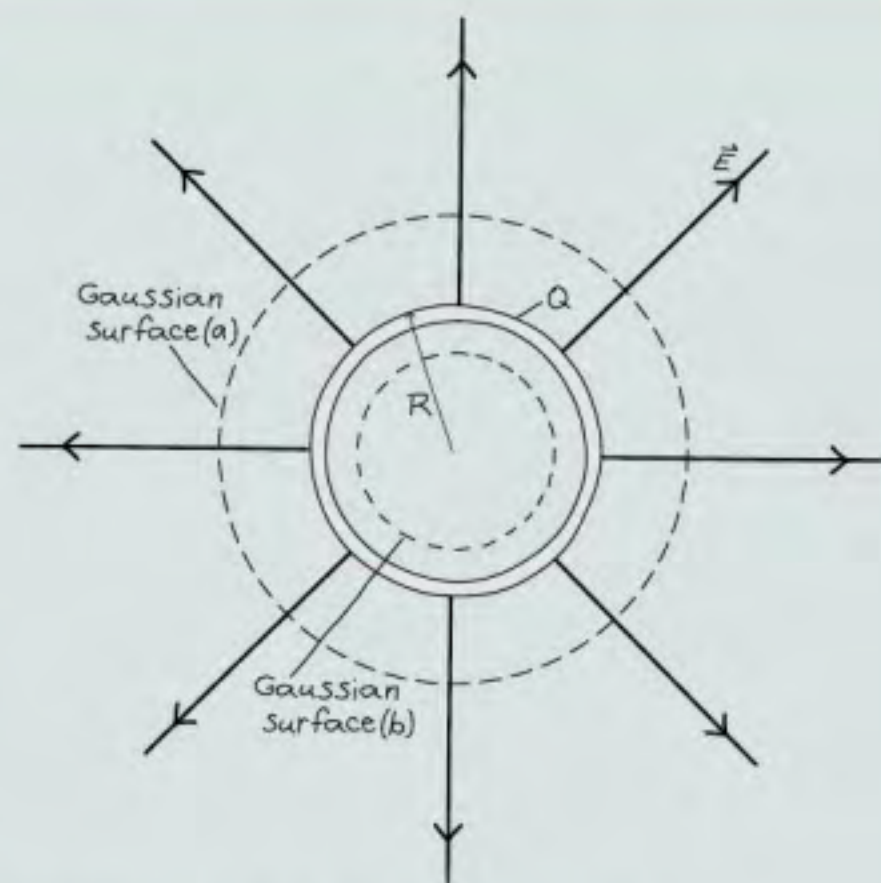


FIGURE 21.11 Finding the field of a charged shell.

of a spherical Gaussian surface alone. So it holds for both Gaussian surfaces shown in Fig. 21.11, outside and inside the shell.

(continued)

- Now we evaluate the *enclosed* charge. That is different for the two surfaces, so we'll deal first with (a), the field outside the shell. For this we consider the Gaussian surface marked (a); it's outside the shell, so it encloses the entire charge Q . Substituting our expression for the flux, $\Phi = 4\pi r^2 E$, into Gauss's law, $\Phi = \oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = q_{\text{enclosed}}/\epsilon_0$, gives $4\pi r^2 E = Q/\epsilon_0$. We can then solve for E to get

$$E = \frac{Q}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r^2} \quad (\text{field outside any spherical charge distribution}) \quad (21.4)$$

- Now let's consider the interior of the shell. With all the charge on the shell's surface, there's no charge inside. So Gaussian surface (b) doesn't enclose any charge. But, as we argued previously, the flux is still $4\pi r^2 E$, so Gauss's law becomes $4\pi r^2 E = 0$. Solving for E gives $E = 0$. We could have drawn Gaussian surface (b) anywhere inside the shell, including right up to its surface, so there's no electric field anywhere inside the shell.

ASSESS

- Consider first the field outside the shell (Equation 21.4). Since $1/4\pi\epsilon_0$ is the Coulomb constant k , this field can be written $E = kQ/r^2$ —precisely the field of a point charge! In fact, our

argument leading to this result didn't depend on the charge being on a spherical shell; as long as a charge distribution is spherically symmetric and we're evaluating the field *outside* the distribution, we would find the same result. That's why we've made the result a numbered equation and labeled it "field outside any spherical charge distribution." Outside *any* spherical charge distribution, then, its field is *exactly* the same as that of a point charge with the same total charge, located at the center of symmetry. Incidentally, this result also holds for gravity because it, too, obeys an inverse-square law. That's why we can treat planets as though they were point masses located at their centers.

- Now the interior field: How can it be exactly zero everywhere inside the shell? Figure 21.12 shows that this remarkable result is a consequence of the inverse-square law.

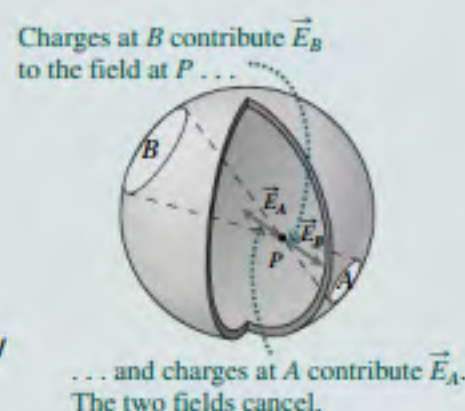
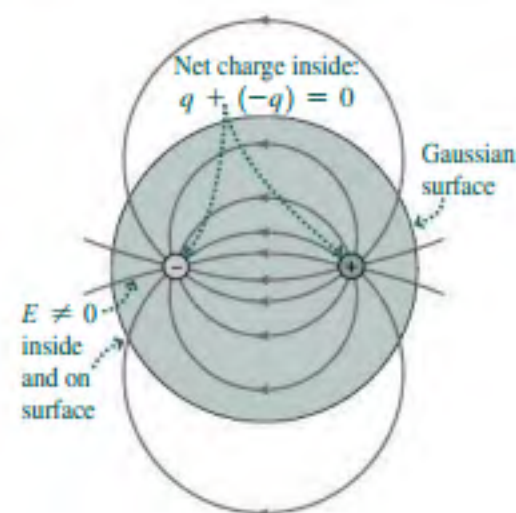


FIGURE 21.12 At any point P inside a charged shell, the field from the relatively few nearby charges at A is exactly canceled by the field from the more numerous but more distant charges at B . The result is zero field everywhere inside the shell.



SYMMETRY MATTERS! We used the fact that there's no charge inside an empty spherical shell to conclude that the field inside the shell is zero. But be careful: That conclusion follows only when there's enough symmetry, as Fig. 21.13 shows. Here, the Gaussian surface encloses zero net charge, so the flux through the surface is zero. But the electric field both on and inside the surface isn't zero.

FIGURE 21.13 A spherical Gaussian surface surrounds a dipole. We have $q_{\text{enclosed}} = 0$, but $E \neq 0$ inside the surface because the dipole isn't spherically symmetric.



GOT IT?

21.4 A spherical shell carries charge Q distributed uniformly over its surface. If the charge on the shell doubles, what happens to the electric field (1) inside and (2) outside the shell?

Now let's consider a slightly more complicated charge distribution: a spherical shell with a point charge at the center.

EXAMPLE 21.2**Gauss's Law: A Point Charge within a Shell***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A positive point charge $+q$ is at the center of a spherical shell of radius R carrying charge $-2q$, distributed uniformly over its surface. Find expressions for the field strength inside and outside the shell.

INTERPRET This problem is about a charge distribution with spherical symmetry.

DEVELOP We want to find the fields both inside and outside the distribution, so we show two spherical Gaussian surfaces in our sketch, Fig. 21.14. We've also drawn some field lines, which will help in assessing our answer.

EVALUATE

- We already know that the flux through a spherical Gaussian surface is $\Phi = 4\pi r^2 E$ when we have spherical symmetry, so that's the flux for both surfaces.
- The outer surface encloses the charge $+q$ at the center and $-2q$ on the shell, so the net charge enclosed is $q_{\text{enclosed}} = -q$ for $r > R$. The inner surface encloses only the point charge $+q$, so $q_{\text{enclosed}} = +q$ for $r < R$.
- Now we find the field by equating the flux $\Phi = 4\pi r^2 E$ to $q_{\text{enclosed}}/\epsilon_0$. The result for $r > R$ is $E = -q/4\pi\epsilon_0 r^2$, where the minus sign appears because the enclosed charge is $-q$. For $r < R$ with enclosed charge $+q$, the result is $E = q/4\pi\epsilon_0 r^2$.

ASSESS Make sense? We've seen that the field outside a spherically symmetric charge distribution is that of an equivalent point charge at

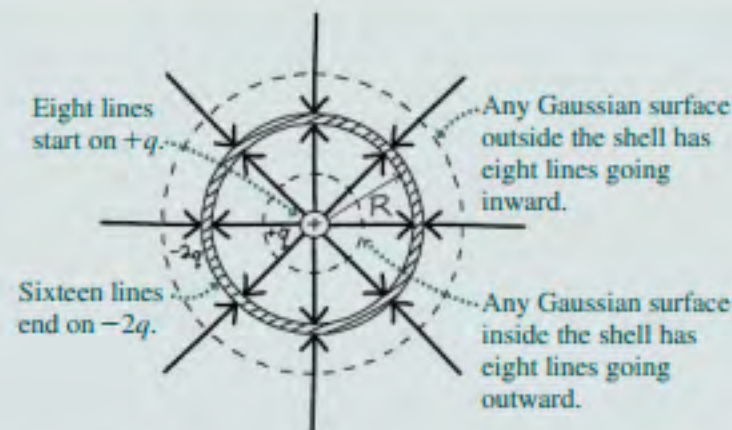


FIGURE 21.14 A shell carrying charge $-2q$ surrounds a point charge $+q$. Note that the number of field lines beginning on the point charge and the number ending on the shell correctly reflect their respective charges.

the center. Here the net charge is $-q$, and our result for $r > R$ is indeed the field of a point charge $-q$. Another way to see this is to apply superposition: The field outside due to the shell alone is that of a point charge $-2q$; that adds to the field of the central point charge $+q$ to give, again, the field of a point charge $-q$ in the region outside the shell. In Example 21.1 we found that the shell produces no field in its interior, so here superposition leaves us with the field of the central point charge alone, just as our result shows. Sketching the field lines, as we've done in Fig. 21.14, also shows how our results make sense.

What if we have charge distributed throughout a volume? As long as the distribution is spherically symmetric, we can find the electric field using Gauss's law just as we did in Examples 21.1 and 21.2. The only difference comes when we evaluate the enclosed charge. Example 21.3 considers this situation.

EXAMPLE 21.3**Gauss's Law: A Uniformly Charged Sphere**

A charge Q is distributed uniformly throughout a sphere of radius R . Find the electric field at all points, (a) outside and (b) inside the sphere.

INTERPRET The charge distribution has spherical symmetry, so we can use Gauss's law to find the field.

DEVELOP Figure 21.15 is a sketch of the spherical charge distribution. As you've already seen, the field in any case of spherical symmetry must be radial, so we've sketched some field lines on the figure. As in Examples 21.1 and 21.2, Gaussian surfaces appropriate to spherical symmetry are themselves spheres. Since we're asked for the field both outside and inside the charge distribution, we've drawn two such Gaussian surfaces, one outside and one inside the distribution.

EVALUATE

- We already know the answer to (a), the field outside the charge distribution. That's because, as we found in Example 21.1, the field outside *any* spherically symmetric charge distribution is exactly

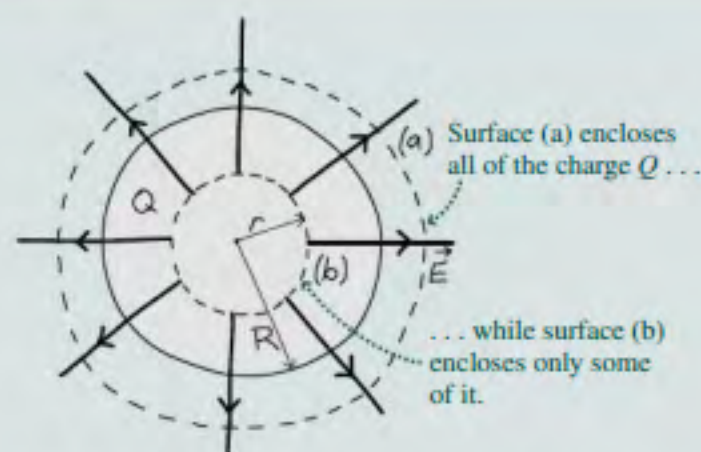


FIGURE 21.15 Finding the field of a uniformly charged sphere. The field also exists within the inner Gaussian surface, but we haven't shown it.

that of a point charge located at the center. So the field outside the charged sphere has magnitude $E_{\text{out}} = Q/4\pi\epsilon_0 r^2$ and points radially

(continued)

outward for positive Q . You could also recover this result by considering the flux through surface (a) in Fig. 21.15 and equating it to $q_{\text{enclosed}}/\epsilon_0$ —which would essentially repeat the calculation for the field outside the spherical shell in Example 21.1.

- For (b), the field inside the charged sphere, we need to apply Gauss's law to surface (b) in Fig. 21.15. In Example 21.1 we found that the left-hand side of Gauss's law—the flux—is given by $4\pi r^2 E$ whenever we have spherical symmetry and are using a spherical Gaussian surface. However, we still need to find the charge enclosed by surface (b). Since surface (b) lies *within* the sphere of charge, it doesn't enclose the entire charge Q . We can find just how much charge it encloses by comparing its volume with that of the entire sphere. Surface (b) has radius r , so its volume is $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$. The charged sphere has radius R , so its volume is $\frac{4}{3}\pi R^3$. So our Gaussian surface, (b), encloses a fraction r^3/R^3 of the total volume of the charged sphere. Because charge is distributed *uniformly* throughout the sphere, this is also the fraction of the total charge enclosed by our Gaussian surface. So q_{enclosed} in Gauss's law becomes Qr^3/R^3 for a Gaussian surface of radius r that's inside the charged sphere. We can now write Gauss's law for this situation, equating the flux, $4\pi r^2 E$, to $q_{\text{enclosed}}/\epsilon_0$: $4\pi r^2 E = Qr^3/\epsilon_0 R^3$. Solving for the field magnitude E gives

$$E = \frac{Qr}{4\pi\epsilon_0 R^3} \quad (\text{field inside uniformly charged sphere}) \quad (21.5)$$

ASSESS: Make sense? The field inside the sphere increases linearly with distance r from the center. This reflects two opposite effects:

First, as we move outward from the center, the enclosed charge grows in proportion to the volume enclosed—that is, as r^3 . But the distance from the center grows as well, and that causes a $1/r^2$ decrease in the field. The combined effect is a field that grows linearly from the center to the surface of the sphere, as shown in Equation 21.5. But once we're outside the sphere, the enclosed charge no longer grows, so we see only the $1/r^2$ decrease of the point-charge field. Figure 21.16 plots the resulting field magnitude E both inside and outside the sphere. As the figure shows, and as you can convince yourself by comparing Equations 21.4 and 21.5, our results for the exterior and interior fields agree at the sphere's surface, where $r = R$.

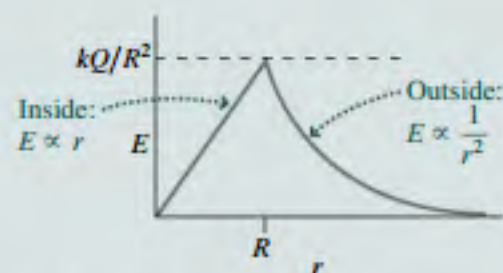


FIGURE 21.16 Field strength versus radial distance for a uniformly charged sphere of radius R .

Before moving on, consider the three examples of Gauss's law in spherical symmetry that you've just seen. In each example we equated the left-hand side of Gauss's law to the right-hand side and solved for the electric field magnitude E . We only had to find the left-hand side once: In every case of spherical symmetry with a spherical Gaussian surface, the left-hand side of Gauss's law is $\Phi = \oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = 4\pi r^2 E$. We discovered this in Example 21.1, and you never need to do that calculation again as long as you've got spherical symmetry. So we used $4\pi r^2 E$ for the left-hand side of Gauss's law in both Examples 21.2 and 21.3. Example 21.1 showed us that the field *outside* any spherically symmetric charge distribution is *exactly* that of a point charge located at the center. Again, that's an exact result—not just an approximation that holds at large distances. It's true right up to the surface of the charge distribution, as Figure 21.16 shows graphically.

Example 21.1 also showed us that the field everywhere *inside* a spherical shell of charge is zero. You could think of any spherically symmetric charge distribution as made up of concentric shells—and that means there's never a contribution to the electric field from charge that's further from the center than the position where you're evaluating the field. In that light, here's another take on the most difficult of our three examples, Example 21.3 for the field within a spherical volume of charge: At any position inside that volume, there's no contribution from the charge that's further out. And, as Example 21.1 also showed, the charge interior to that position acts like a point charge. Work out that charge—essentially the calculation leading to q_{enclosed} in Example 21.3—and you'll get Equation 21.5 for the field inside a uniformly charged sphere. So all spherically symmetric charge distributions are similar, in that we apply Gauss's law in exactly the same way. The only difference is in finding the enclosed charge. Problems 69 and 71 provide additional examples involving charge distributions that are spherically symmetric but not uniform.

We'll now consider the two other symmetries where Gauss's law provides a quick route to finding the electric field. As you work through the examples for these symmetries, consider how they're similar to the spherical examples you've just seen. The application of Gauss's law works just the same, but now there's a different expression for the flux on the left-hand side, and calculations of enclosed charge are different.

Line Symmetry

A charge distribution has line symmetry when its charge density depends only on the perpendicular distance r from a line, called the *symmetry axis*. Symmetry then requires that the field point radially and that the field magnitude depend only on distance from the axis. It also requires the charge distribution to be infinitely long, so there's no variation parallel to the line. That's impossible, but nevertheless the infinite line is a reasonable approximation to elongated structures like wires. The next two examples explore the application of Gauss's law to line symmetry.

EXAMPLE 21.4

Gauss's Law: An Infinite Line of Charge

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Use Gauss's law to find the electric field of an infinite line charge carrying charge density λ in coulombs per meter.

INTERPRET An infinite line has line symmetry, so we can apply Gauss's law to find the electric field.

DEVELOP Symmetry requires that the field point radially from the line of charge and that its magnitude be the same at a given distance r from the line. Our job is to find a Gaussian surface that exploits this symmetry—a surface on which the surface integral will turn into a simple product of the field magnitude E and the surface area A . We've sketched an appropriate surface in Fig. 21.17: It's a cylinder of radius r and length L , concentric with the line charge. All points on the cylinder's curved surface are the same distance r from the line charge, so the field magnitude E is the same over the curved part of the surface. And because the field must be radial, the angle between $\vec{E}$ and the normal vectors $d\vec{A}$ is zero, making $\cos\theta$ equal to 1 in the dot product $\vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A}$.

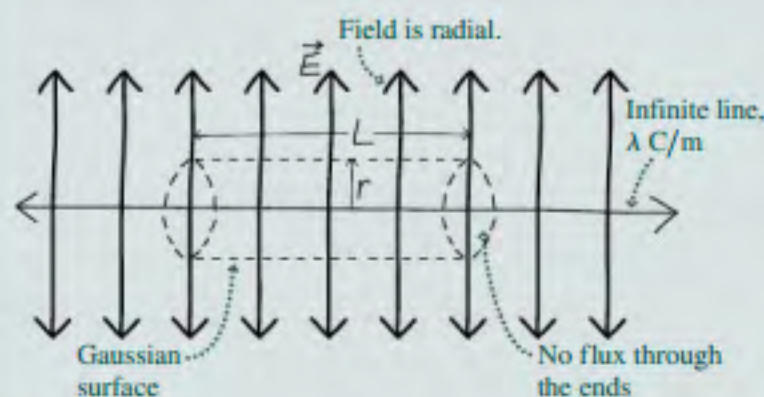


FIGURE 21.17 A cylindrical Gaussian surface surrounds a line charge. The sketch shows a slice in the plane of the page; the field extends radially outward from the line into and out of the page as well.

EVALUATE

- We begin with the left-hand side of Gauss's law, the flux through our Gaussian surface. Unlike the spherical case, this Gaussian surface has two different types of regions—the curved part of the cylinder and its circular ends. For the curved part, we've just seen that $\cos\theta = 1$ in the dot product, so the flux through the curved part becomes $\int \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = \int E dA = E \int dA$, where the last equality follows because the magnitude E doesn't change over the curved part of the cylinder. Note that we took the circle off the integral sign because we're just considering the curved part, which alone doesn't constitute a *closed* surface. The remaining integral is just the area of the curved part of the cylinder. Imagine unrolling this curved surface and flattening it out: You'd get a rectangle of length L and width equal to the circumference $2\pi r$, so the flux through the curved part becomes $\Phi = 2\pi rLE$. What about the ends? No field lines emerge from them, so here the flux is zero; mathematically, $\vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = 0$ on the ends because the field $\vec{E}$ and the vectors $d\vec{A}$ normal to the ends are perpendicular. The left-hand side of Gauss's law, then, is $2\pi rLE$. This result depends only on the symmetry, so it applies in all situations involving line symmetry.
- Next we need the enclosed charge. The line carries λ C/m and our Gaussian cylinder encloses L meters of the line, so $q_{\text{enclosed}} = \lambda L$.
- Finally, we invoke Gauss's law by equating the flux Φ to $q_{\text{enclosed}}/\epsilon_0$. The result, $2\pi rLE = \lambda L/\epsilon_0$, solves to give

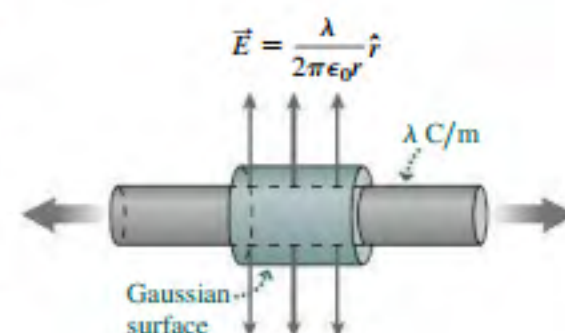
$$E = \frac{\lambda}{2\pi\epsilon_0 r} \quad (\text{field of a line charge}) \quad (21.6)$$

ASSESS Make sense? We worked this same problem in Example 20.7 in a much more difficult calculation involving a complicated integral. Since $1/2\pi\epsilon_0 = 2k$, our result here is the same. But Gauss's law makes the problem much easier!

Although Example 21.4 involved an infinitesimally thin line of charge, you can see from Fig. 21.18 that our result must hold *outside* any charge with line symmetry. And, as we argued in Example 20.7, it's a good approximation for the field of any long, cylindrical structure as long as we're not too near its ends.

Our two examples of line symmetry correspond, respectively, to the case of a point charge and a hollow spherical shell in spherical geometry. In Example Variation 42 you can explore the cylindrical analog of Example 21.3's solid sphere of charge.

FIGURE 21.18 The arguments of Example 21.4 apply outside any cylindrical charge distribution.



EXAMPLE 21.5 Gauss's Law: A Hollow Pipe

A thin-walled pipe 3.0 m long and 2.0 cm in radius carries a net charge $q = 5.7 \mu\text{C}$ distributed uniformly over its surface. Find the electric field both 1.0 cm and 3.0 cm from the pipe axis, far from either end.

INTERPRET Although the pipe has finite length, both distances are small compared with that length, so we can approximate the pipe as an infinitely long structure with line symmetry.

DEVELOP With line symmetry the appropriate Gaussian surface is a cylinder coaxial with the pipe. We've drawn two such cylinders in Fig. 21.19, one for each radius where we're asked to evaluate the field.

EVALUATE

- We showed in Example 21.4 that the flux integral in line symmetry gives $\Phi = 2\pi rLE$.

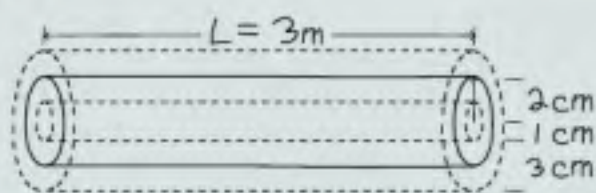


FIGURE 21.19 Gaussian surfaces for Example 21.5.

- Next we need the enclosed charge. At 3 cm we're outside the pipe, so the Gaussian surface with this radius encloses all the charge: $q_{\text{enclosed}} = 5.7 \mu\text{C}$. The pipe is hollow, so at 1 cm the enclosed charge is zero.
- Equating the flux to $q_{\text{enclosed}}/\epsilon_0$ and solving for E give

$$E = \frac{q_{\text{enclosed}}}{2\pi\epsilon_0 rL} = \frac{5.7 \mu\text{C}}{(2\pi\epsilon_0)(3.0 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m})(3.0 \text{ m})} = 1.1 \text{ MN/C}$$

for the field at 3 cm and $E = 0$ for the field inside the pipe.

ASSESS Make sense? *Inside* the pipe, there's no field, and for the same reason as inside a uniformly charged hollow sphere—namely, that fields from near and far parts of the pipe cancel due, ultimately, to the inverse-square law. Again, be careful: That result follows because of the symmetry, although we'll soon see that with *conducting* pipes and shells there's no interior field even without that symmetry. We argued earlier that the field *outside* any line-symmetric distribution should be given by Equation 21.6, $E = \lambda/2\pi\epsilon_0 r$. In our result, the quantity q_{enclosed}/L is the line charge density λ , so our result is indeed consistent with that equation.

Plane Symmetry

A charge distribution has plane symmetry when its charge density depends only on the perpendicular distance from a plane. The only electric-field direction consistent with this symmetry is perpendicular to the plane. As with line symmetry, true plane symmetry implies a charge distribution that's infinite in extent. That's impossible—but plane symmetry remains a good approximation when charge is spread uniformly over large, flat surfaces or slabs. The next example applies Gauss's law to plane symmetry.

EXAMPLE 21.6 Gauss's Law: A Sheet of Charge

An infinite sheet of charge carries uniform surface charge density σ in coulombs per square meter. Find the resulting electric field.

INTERPRET Since the sheet is infinite, we have plane symmetry with the sheet itself as the symmetry plane.

DEVELOP We need a Gaussian surface chosen so the flux integral $\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A}$ reduces to a simple multiplication, at least over some parts of the area; over any remaining parts it should be zero. Because the electric field must be perpendicular to our charged sheet, *any* surface with ends parallel to the sheet will have $\cos\theta$ equal to 1 in the dot product. Also, the symmetry dictates that E can't change as we move in a direction parallel to the sheet, since we'd remain the same distance from it. Furthermore, any surface whose sides are perpendicular to the charged sheet will have zero flux through the sides. So we're free to choose for our Gaussian surface any surface with ends parallel to the sheet and sides perpendicular. To ensure that E has the same value over both ends of our surface, we'll have it extend equal distances on either side of the charged sheet. A simple surface that meets these criteria is a cylinder that straddles the charged sheet, as shown in Fig. 21.20.

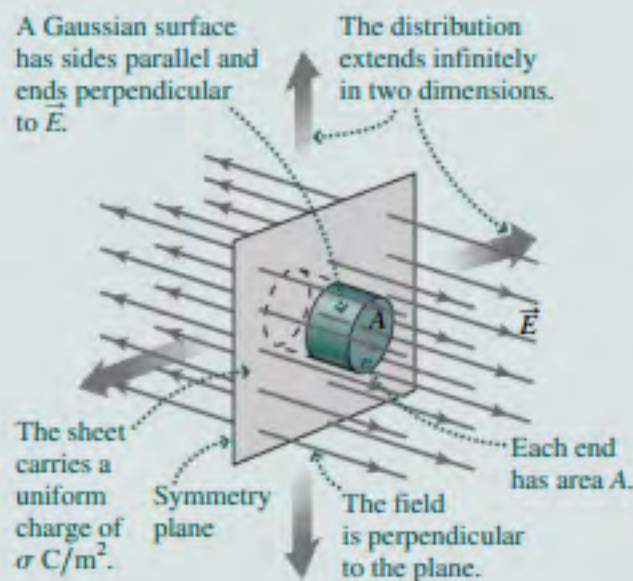


FIGURE 21.20 An infinite sheet of charge, with a Gaussian surface straddling the sheet.

EVALUATE

- First we evaluate the flux through our Gaussian cylinder. The field is parallel to the sides, so there's no flux contribution here. Then the total flux is through the ends, each of which has area A . Since the field is uniform over each end and perpendicular to the ends, the flux through each end is EA . So the total flux through both ends is $\Phi = 2EA$. This result is independent of the details of the charge distribution, so it holds in all cases of plane symmetry.
- Next we need the enclosed charge. The Gaussian surface encloses an area of the sheet equal to the area A of its ends. With surface charge density σ on the sheet, the enclosed charge is $q_{\text{enclosed}} = \sigma A$.
- Now we apply Gauss's law, equating the flux to $q_{\text{enclosed}}/\epsilon_0$. Thus $2EA = \sigma A/\epsilon_0$, so

$$E = \frac{\sigma}{2\epsilon_0} \quad (\text{field of a charged sheet}) \quad (21.7)$$

The direction of this field on either side of the sheet is outward from the sheet if it's positively charged and inward if negative.

ASSESS Make sense? With an infinite plane, symmetry requires that the field lines be perpendicular to the plane. So they don't spread out, and that means the field doesn't vary with distance—as Equation 21.7 shows because it doesn't involve the distance from the sheet. Although our result is exact only for a truly infinite sheet, it's a good approximation near any large, flat, uniformly charged surface as long as we're not close to an edge.

21.5 Fields of Arbitrary Charge Distributions

LO 21.5 Approximate electric fields of general charge distributions using what you know about simpler distributions.

Although Gauss's law is always true, most charge distributions lack the symmetry needed to apply Gauss's law to find the field. The alternative, Coulomb's law, is hard to use in all but the simplest cases. But we can often learn a lot by considering the distributions whose fields we calculated here and in Chapter 20. Figure 21.21 summarizes

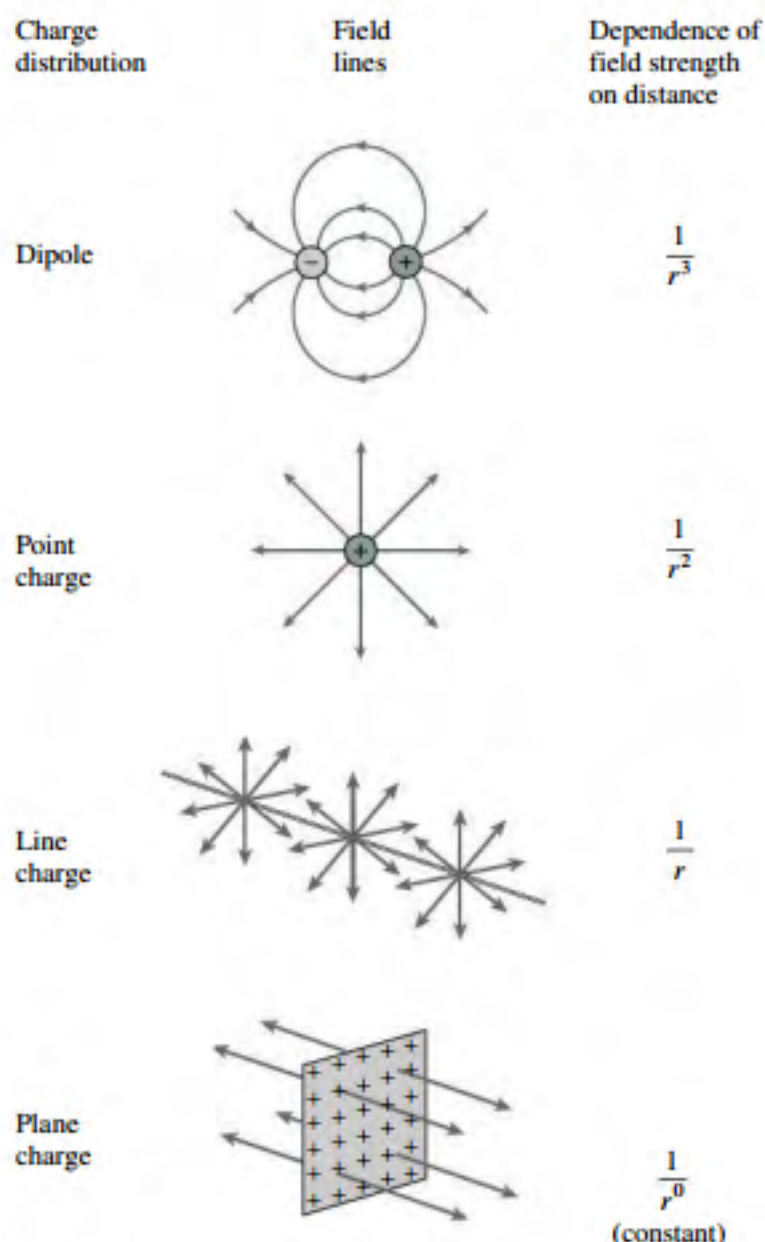


FIGURE 21.21 Electric fields of a dipole, a point charge, a charged line, and a charged plane.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 21.1 A Charged Disk

Sketch some electric field lines for a uniformly charged disk, starting at the disk and extending out to several disk diameters.

EVALUATE When we're near the disk and not close to its edge, the disk looks like a large, flat, charged plane. Its field is essentially the uniform field of an infinite plane charge, so we draw straight field lines emanating perpendicular to the disk. Far from *any* finite distribution carrying a nonzero net charge, the field approximates that of a point charge, so

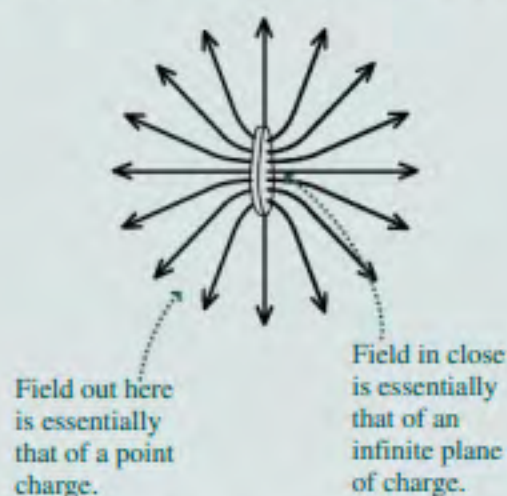


FIGURE 21.22 The electric field of a charged disk.

farther away we draw field lines going radially outward. Field lines begin only on charges—in this case on the charged disk—so we have to connect close-in and far-out lines. We don't know exactly how the field looks in the intermediate region either close to or far from the disk, so we connect them as best we can. Figure 21.22 is the result.

ASSESS Our sketch is a good approximation to the field of a charged disk. And it obeys Gauss's law because the same number of field lines—namely, all 16 lines we chose to draw—cross any closed surface surrounding the entire disk.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Suppose the disk is 1.0 cm in diameter and carries charge 20 nC spread uniformly over its surface. Find the electric field strength (a) 1.0 mm from the disk surface and (b) 1.0 m from the disk.

EVALUATE (a) Close to the disk, assuming we're not near the edge, Equation 21.7 applies: $E = \sigma/2\epsilon_0 = 14 \text{ MN/C}$, where we used the total charge and the disk area to get the surface charge density σ . (b) At 1 meter, the disk is so small it looks essentially like a point charge, so Equation 20.3 applies: $E = kq/r^2 = 180 \text{ N/C}$.

four of these fields. For the last three, note the simple relation between the number of dimensions and the behavior of the field. The plane has two dimensions, and its field doesn't decrease with distance. The line has one dimension, and its field decreases as $1/r$. The point has no dimensions, and its field falls as $1/r^2$. In a sense, the dipole continues this progression. It consists of opposite point charges whose effects nearly cancel; no wonder its field decreases faster still, as $1/r^3$. In fact, there's a hierarchy of charge distributions whose fields decrease ever faster, as dipoles nearly cancel dipoles, and so on. Scientists and engineers use this hierarchy in modeling charged structures ranging from molecules to radio antennas.

GOT IT?

21.5 (1) If you're close to a *finite* line of charge (and not near its ends), does its field vary as (a) $1/r^3$, (b) $1/r^2$, or (c) $1/r$? (2) Repeat for the case when you're far from the line (i.e., much farther than its length).

21.6 Gauss's Law and Conductors

LO 21.6 Describe electrostatic equilibrium in conductors and use Gauss's law to determine electric fields associated with charged conductors.

Electrostatic Equilibrium

We've defined conductors as materials that contain free charges, like the free electrons in metals. Figure 21.23 shows what happens when an electric field is applied to a conductor. Free charges respond to the electric force $q\vec{E}$ by moving—in the direction of the field if they're positive, opposite the field if negative. The resulting charge separation gives rise to an electric field within the material that's opposite to the applied field. As more charge

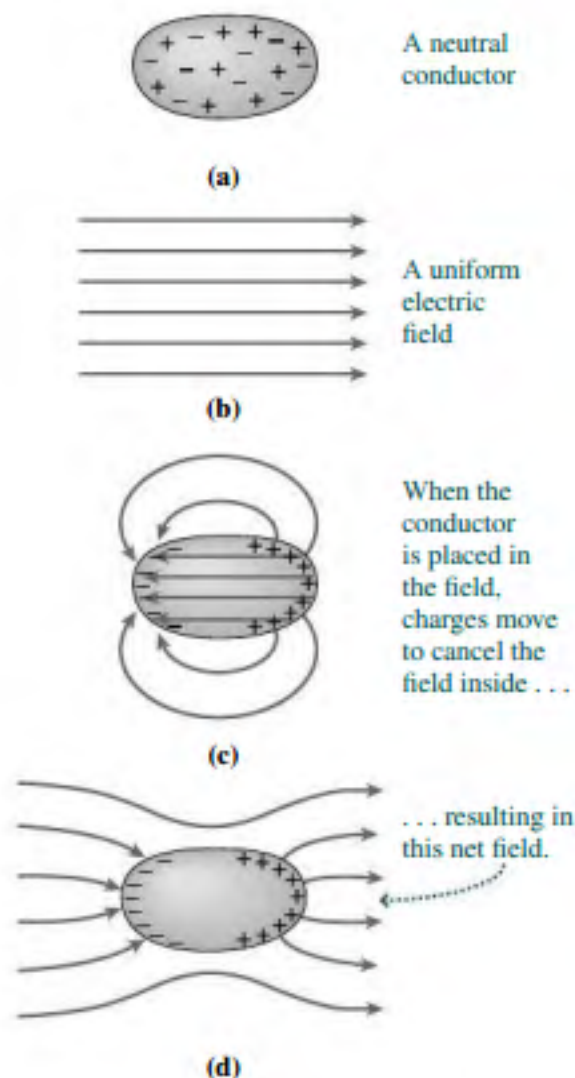


FIGURE 21.23 A conductor in a uniform electric field.

moves, this internal field becomes stronger until its magnitude eventually equals that of the applied field. Once that happens, the free charges within the conductor experience zero net force, and the conductor is in **electrostatic equilibrium**. Although individual charges continue to move about in random thermal motion, there's no longer any net charge motion. Once equilibrium is reached, the internal and applied fields are equal but opposite, and therefore:

The electric field is zero inside a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium.

It could not be otherwise: Since a conductor contains free charges, the presence of any internal electric field would result in bulk charge motion, and we wouldn't have equilibrium. This result doesn't depend on the size or shape of the conductor, the magnitude or direction of the applied field, or even the nature of the material as long as it's a conductor. This is a macroscopic view; it considers only average fields within the material. At the atomic and molecular level, there are still strong electric fields near individual electrons and positive ions. But the *average* field, taken over larger distances, is zero inside a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium.

Charged Conductors

Although they contain free charges, conductors are normally electrically neutral because they include equal numbers of electrons and protons. But suppose we give a conductor a nonzero net charge, for example, by injecting excess electrons into its interior. There's a mutual repulsion among the electrons and, because these are *excess* electrons, there's no compensating attraction from positive charges. We might expect, therefore, that the electrons will move as far apart as possible—namely, to the surface of the conductor.

We now use Gauss's law to prove that excess charge *must* be at the surface of a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium. Figure 21.24 shows a conducting material with a Gaussian surface drawn just below the material surface. In equilibrium there's no electric field inside the conductor, and thus the field is zero everywhere on the Gaussian surface. The flux, $\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A}$, through the Gaussian surface is therefore also zero. But Gauss's law says that the flux through a closed surface is proportional to the net charge enclosed, and therefore

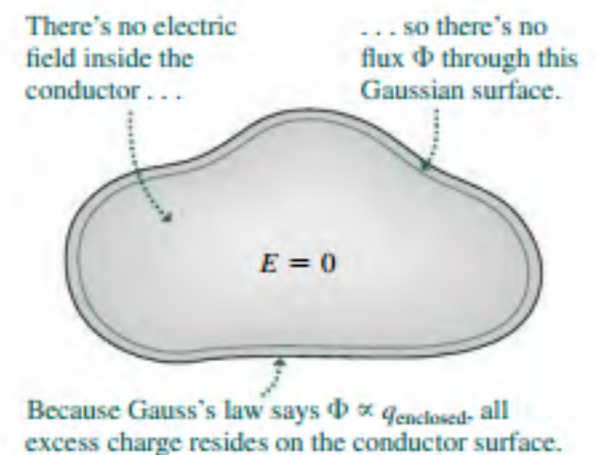


FIGURE 21.24 Gauss's law implies that any net charge resides on the surface of a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium.

EXAMPLE 21.7 Gauss's Law: A Hollow Conductor

An irregularly shaped conductor has a hollow cavity. The conductor itself carries a net charge of $1\ \mu\text{C}$, and there's a $2\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ point charge inside the cavity. Find the net charge on the cavity wall and on the outer surface of the conductor, assuming electrostatic equilibrium.

INTERPRET This problem involves a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium, which means (1) there's no electric field inside the conducting material and (2) the net charge resides on the conductor surface—which in this case includes both the inner and outer surfaces.

DEVELOP We sketch the situation in Fig. 21.25. Our plan is to apply Gauss's law to find the charges. We consider a Gaussian surface inside the conductor and enclosing the cavity, as shown.

EVALUATE Since there's no electric field inside the conductor, the flux through the Gaussian surface is zero, and therefore the net charge enclosed is also zero. But there's that $+2\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ point charge in the cavity. For the Gaussian surface to enclose zero net charge, there must be $-2\ \mu\text{C}$ somewhere else—and the only place it can be is on the cavity wall. However, the entire conductor carries $+1\ \mu\text{C}$. With $-2\ \mu\text{C}$ on the inside wall, that leaves $+3\ \mu\text{C}$ on the outer surface.

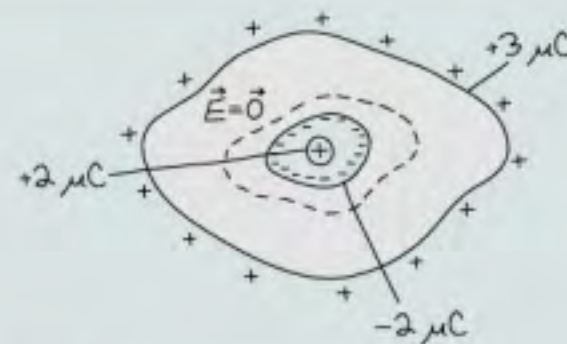


FIGURE 21.25 The Gaussian surface encloses zero net charge, so there must be $-2\ \mu\text{C}$ on the cavity wall.

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: This distribution of charge is the only one that's consistent with both Gauss's law and the requirement $E = 0$ inside a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium. As another check, think about what this charge distribution must look like from far away—namely, a point charge with net charge of $3\ \mu\text{C}$. Since the fields of the cavity wall and the inner point charge don't penetrate the conductor, the only field lines that reach out beyond the conductor are those from the charge on its outer surface. So that charge must be $3\ \mu\text{C}$, as we've found.

the net charge inside our Gaussian surface must be zero. This is true no matter where the Gaussian surface is as long as it's *inside* the conductor. We can move it arbitrarily close to the conductor surface and it still encloses no net charge. If there is a net charge on the conductor, it lies outside the Gaussian surface, and therefore we conclude: **If a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium carries a net charge, that charge must reside on the conductor surface.**

GOT IT?

21.6 A conductor carries a net charge $+Q$. There's a cavity inside the conductor that contains a point charge $-Q$. In electrostatic equilibrium, is the charge on the outer surface of the conductor (a) $-2Q$, (b) $-Q$, (c) 0, (d) Q , or (e) $2Q$?

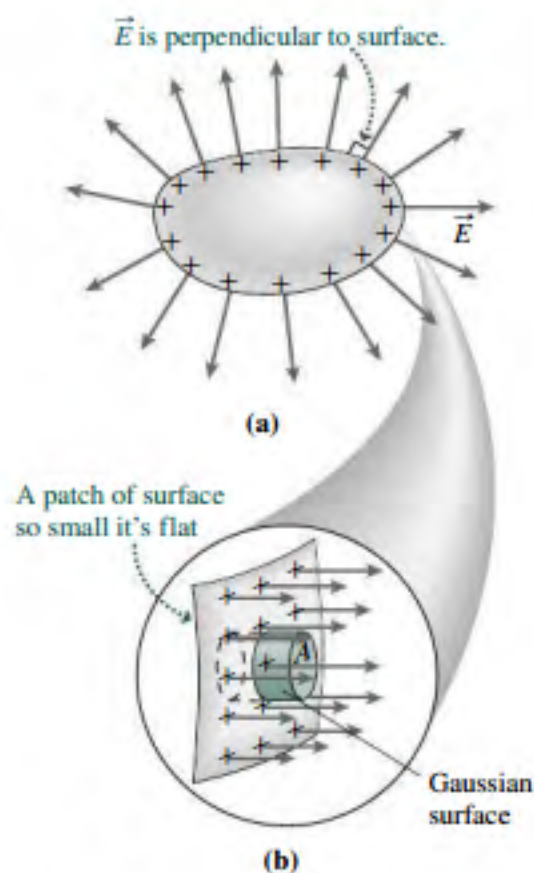
Experimental Tests of Gauss's Law

That net charge moves to a conductor surface provides a sensitive test of Gauss's law and thus—through the arguments of Section 21.3 relating Gauss's and Coulomb's laws—a test of the inverse-square law for the electric force. Figure 21.26 shows a charged conducting ball touched to the inside of a hollow, initially neutral conductor. As required by Gauss's law, charge flows to the outer surface of the hollow conductor, leaving the ball uncharged. Measuring zero charge on the ball confirms Gauss's law, and thus the inverse-square law; such experiments show that the exponent in $1/r^2$ is indeed 2 to some 16 decimal places!

The Field at a Conductor Surface

There can't be an electric field *within* a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium, but there *may* be a field right at the conductor surface (Fig. 21.27a). Such a field must be perpendicular to the surface; otherwise, charge would move along the surface in response to the field's parallel component, and we wouldn't have equilibrium.

We can compute the strength of this surface field by considering a small Gaussian surface that straddles the conductor surface, as shown in Fig. 21.27b. There's no flux through the sides, and because the field is zero inside the conductor, there's no flux through the inner end either. So the only flux is through the outer end, with area A . Since the end is perpendicular to the field, the flux is EA . The Gaussian surface encloses charge σA , where σ is the surface charge density (C/m^2). Gauss's law equates the flux with $q_{\text{enclosed}}/\epsilon_0$, so we have $EA = \sigma A/\epsilon_0$, or



E is the electric field strength right at the surface of a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium.

σ is the surface charge density on the conductor surface at the point where we're evaluating E .

$$E = \frac{\sigma}{\epsilon_0}$$

(field at conductor surface)

(21.8)

The direction of the field $\vec{E}$ is perpendicular to the surface.

Although E depends on the local surface charge density alone, the field arises from *all* charges—over the entire conductor as well as any other charges in the vicinity.

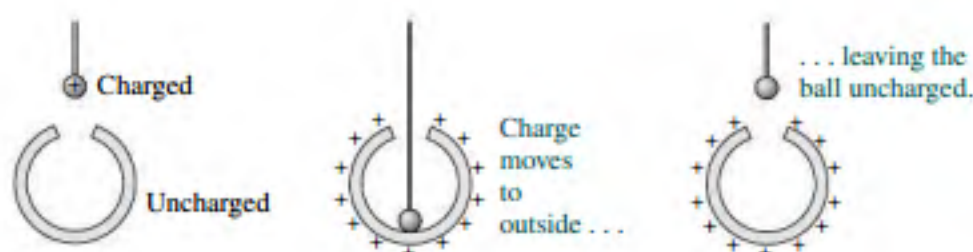


FIGURE 21.26 Experimental test of Gauss's law.

FIGURE 21.27 (a) The electric field at the surface of a charged conductor is perpendicular to the conductor surface. (b) A Gaussian surface straddles the conductor surface.

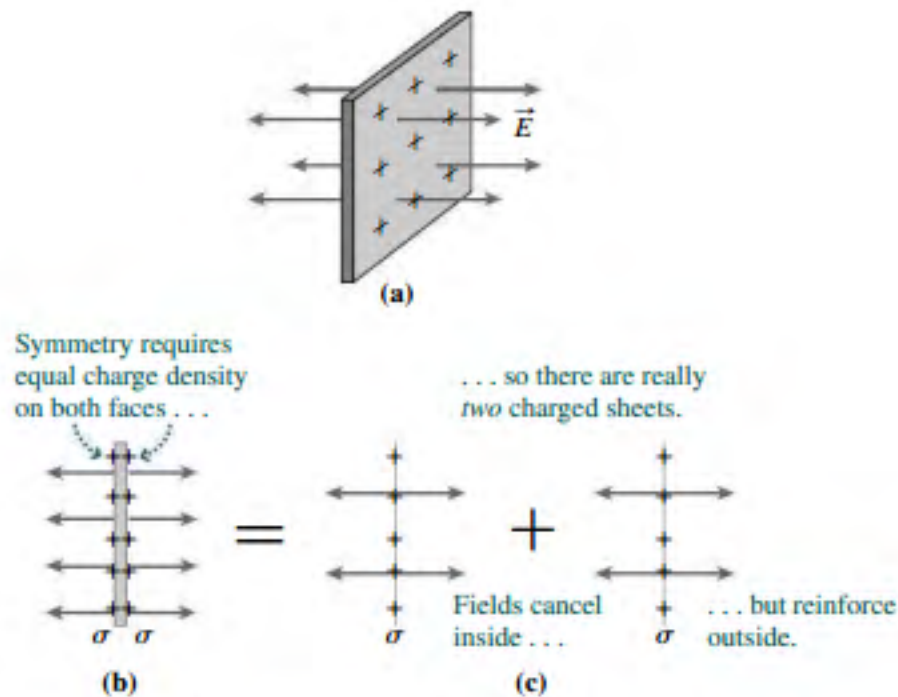


FIGURE 21.28 (a) An isolated, charged conducting plate. Its field points outward from both faces. (b) Edge-on view of the plate. (c) The field anywhere is the sum of the fields of the two faces, each treated as a single charged sheet.

This result shows that large fields develop where the charge density on a conductor is high. Engineers who design electrical devices must avoid high charge densities whose associated fields lead to sparks, arcing, and breakdown of electric insulation.

Equation 21.8 gives a field that depends only on the local charge density. Does that mean the field at a conductor surface arises only from the local charge? No! As always, the field is the vector sum of contributions from all charges. Remarkably, Gauss's law requires that charges on a conductor arrange themselves in such a way that the field at any point on the conductor surface depends only on the surface charge density right at that point—even though that field arises from *all* the charges on the surface (as well as from charges elsewhere if there are any)!

Consider a thin, flat, isolated, conducting sheet that has charge density σ on one of its two faces (Fig. 21.28a). Equation 21.8 shows that the field at the surface of this plate is σ/ϵ_0 . But if the plate is large and flat, we can approximate it as an infinite sheet of charge—for which we found earlier (Equation 21.7) that the field should be $\sigma/2\epsilon_0$. Is there a contradiction here? No! If the plate is isolated, then symmetry requires that the charge spread itself evenly over *both* faces. If one face has charge density σ , so must the other—so we really have *two* charged sheets, each with density σ (Fig 21.28b). Each gives a field of magnitude $\sigma/2\epsilon_0$, and *outside* the conductor those fields superpose to give the net field σ/ϵ_0 (Fig. 21.28c). *Inside* the conductor their directions are opposite, and the result is zero field inside the conductor. Applying Equation 21.8 skips these details. But because Equation 21.8 was derived on the assumption that the field inside the conductor is zero, it “knows” about charges everywhere on the conductor—and in this case that means on the second face.

Equation 21.8 also applies to a pair of oppositely charged conducting plates (Fig. 21.29); the result, for the field between the plates, is σ/ϵ_0 , where σ is the surface charge density on either plate. Why not $2\sigma/\epsilon_0$? Again, Equation 21.8 gives the field at a conductor surface—and it takes into account other charges that may be present. Here each plate's charge attracts the other's opposite charge, all to the *inner* face. Each plate is thus a single charge layer, giving a field $\sigma/2\epsilon_0$, and between the plates the fields sum to Equation 21.8's result, σ/ϵ_0 . Beyond the plates the fields sum to zero—a result that also follows from Equation 21.8 because now there's zero surface charge on the outer faces.

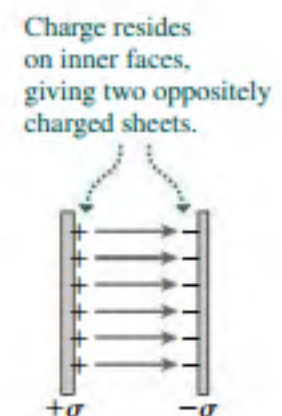


FIGURE 21.29 Edge-on view of two parallel conducting plates carrying opposite charges.

APPLICATION Shielding and Lightning Safety

We've seen that charge moves to the outside of a conductor surface, leaving the interior free of charge and electric field—even if the interior is hollow. This is the basis of electric shielding, in which a conducting enclosure keeps out external electric fields. A common example is the *coaxial cable* that delivers TV signals from your cable company; coaxial cables also connect electronic instruments in scientific and medical research. A coaxial cable consists of an inner wire surrounded by a cylindrical conducting shield in which charge moves to block external electric fields that could cause interference. In another application of shielding, researchers doing experiments with very weak electric signals often construct entire rooms with conducting walls to minimize interference.

Shielding is also the reason a metal-bodied car is a relatively safe place in a thunderstorm. A lightning strike dumps charge on the car's metal body, but the charge distributes itself on the outside so as to prevent any electric fields from developing inside the car (see photo). That, in turn, prevents harmful currents from flowing through the occupants. The operator's cage in this chapter's opening photo has the same effect, harmlessly deflecting charge from the artificial lightning and keeping the interior free of electric fields.

Strictly speaking, charge resides on the outside of a conductor only in equilibrium. But electrons in metals respond so quickly that equilibrium results almost instantaneously—meaning that metallic shielding is effective even against the rapidly varying electric fields of high-frequency radio, TV, and microwave signals.



Chapter 21 Summary

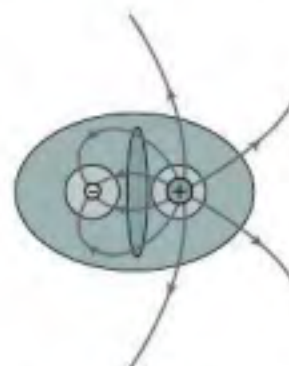
Big Idea

The big idea here is **Gauss's law**—a universal statement about electric fields that's closely related to Coulomb's inverse-square law but expressed in terms of the global behavior of the field over any closed surface. Using the **electric field-line** picture, Gauss's law says that the number of field lines emerging from a closed surface depends only on the net charge enclosed; more rigorously, it says that the **electric flux** through the surface is proportional to the enclosed charge.



Point charge q

Eight lines pass through any closed surface surrounding q .



Point charges $+q, -q/2$

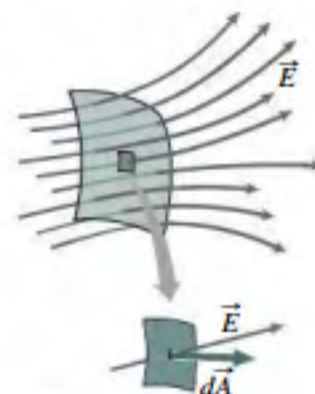
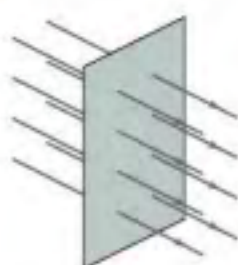
The number of lines through a surface depends on the net charge enclosed.

Key Concepts and Equations

Electric flux Φ describes the amount of electric field crossing an area.

$\Phi = EA$ for a flat area perpendicular to a uniform field

$$\Phi = \int \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A}, \text{ in general}$$



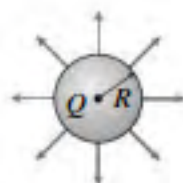
In terms of flux, Gauss's law reads $\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = q_{\text{enclosed}}/\epsilon_0$.

Here $\epsilon_0 = 1/4\pi k = 8.85 \times 10^{-12} \text{ C}^2/\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2$ is another way of expressing the Coulomb constant $k = 9.0 \times 10^9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$.

Applications

Gauss's law gives the fields of symmetric charge distributions:

Spherical symmetry:



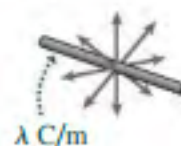
Outside: $E = \frac{Q}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r^2} = \frac{kQ}{r^2}$

Inside uniformly charged sphere:

$$E = \frac{kQr}{R^3}$$

Inside hollow sphere: $E = 0$

Line symmetry:

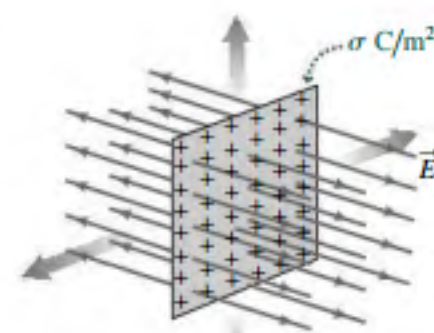


Outside: $E = \frac{\lambda}{2\pi\epsilon_0 r}$

Inside hollow pipe:

$$E = 0$$

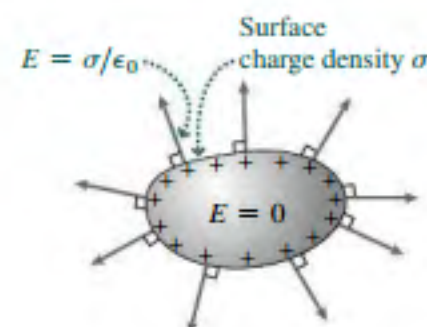
Plane symmetry:



Outside charged slab: $E = \frac{\sigma}{2\epsilon_0}$

Gauss's law and conductors:

- The field is zero inside a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium.
- Any net charge resides on a conductor's surface.
- The field at the surface is perpendicular to the surface and has magnitude σ/ϵ_0 .





Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>LO 21.1 Describe electric fields using field lines.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 21.1; Exercises 21.11, 21.12, 21.13; Problem 21.65</i></p> <p>LO 21.2 Explain the concept of electric flux in relation to field lines.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 21.2, 21.3; Exercises 21.14, 21.15, 21.16, 21.17; Problems 21.44, 21.45</i></p> <p>LO 21.3 Describe Gauss's law and explain how it relates to Coulomb's law.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 21.4, 21.5; Exercises 21.18, 21.19, 21.20, 21.21; Problem 21.46</i></p> <p>LO 21.4 Use Gauss's law to determine electric fields for charge distributions with sufficient symmetry.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 21.6, 21.7, 21.8, 21.9; Exercises 21.22, 21.23, 21.24, 21.25, 21.26, 21.27, 21.28; Problems 21.47, 21.48, 21.49, 21.50, 21.52, 21.53, 21.54, 21.55, 21.56, 21.57, 21.58, 21.59, 21.60, 21.61, 21.66, 21.67, 21.68, 21.69, 21.71, 21.72, 21.73, 21.74, 21.75</i></p> | <p>LO 21.5 Approximate electric fields of general charge distributions using what you know about simpler distributions.
<i>Exercises 21.29, 21.30, 21.31; Problems 21.51, 21.64</i></p> <p>LO 21.6 Describe electrostatic equilibrium in conductors and use Gauss's law to determine electric fields associated with charged conductors.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 21.10; Exercises 21.32, 21.33, 21.34, 21.35; Problems 21.62, 21.63</i></p> |
|--|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- Can electric field lines ever cross? Why or why not?
- The electric flux through a closed surface is zero. Must the electric field be zero on that surface? If not, give an example.
- Under what conditions can the electric flux through a surface be written as EA , where A is the surface area?
- A certain amount of charge is enclosed in a cavity, which is enclosed in a sphere. Does the net electric flux through the closed surface of the sphere depend on the volume of the cavity? What will change if the volume of the sphere changes?
- In Gauss's law, $\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = q/\epsilon_0$, does the field $\vec{E}$ necessarily arise only from charges within the closed surface?
- The field of an infinite charged line decreases as $1/r$. Why isn't this a violation of the inverse-square law?
- If there is no net electric flux through a surface, does that necessarily mean that the volume enclosed by that surface does not contain any charge?
- You're sitting inside an uncharged, hollow spherical shell. Suddenly someone dumps a billion coulombs of charge on the shell, distributed uniformly. What happens to the electric field at your location?
- Does Gauss's law apply to a spherical Gaussian surface not centered on a point charge, as shown in Fig. 21.30? Would this be a useful surface to use in calculating the electric field?
- The electric field of a flat sheet of charge is $\sigma/2\epsilon_0$. Yet the field of a flat conducting sheet—even a thin one, like a piece of aluminum foil—is σ/ϵ_0 . Explain this apparent discrepancy.

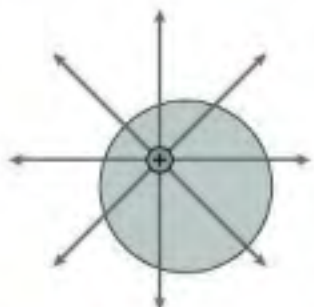


FIGURE 21.30 For Thought and Discussion 9

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 21.1 Electric Field Lines

11. In Fig. 21.31, the magnitude of the middle charge is $1 \mu\text{C}$. What's the net charge shown?

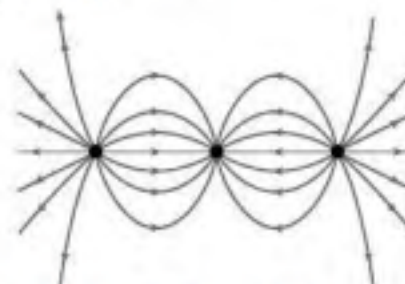


FIGURE 21.31 Exercise 11

12. Charges $+2q$ and $-q$ are near each other. Sketch some field lines for this charge distribution, using eight lines for a charge of magnitude q .
13. The net charge shown in Fig. 21.32 is $+Q$. Identify each of the charges A , B , and C shown.

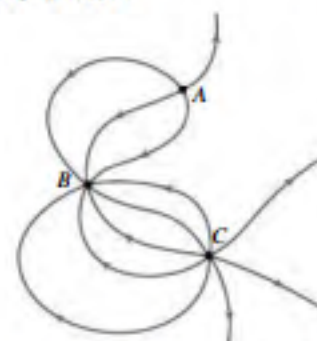


FIGURE 21.32 Exercise 13

Section 21.2 Electric Field and Electric Flux

14. A flat surface with area 1.5 m^2 is in a uniform 1600-N/C electric field. Find the electric flux through the surface when it's (a) at right angles to the field, (b) at 45° to the field, and (c) parallel to the field.

15. The electric field on the surface of an 11-cm-diameter sphere is perpendicular to the sphere and has magnitude 42 kN/C. What's the electric flux through the sphere?
16. In the figure with GOT IT? 21.2, take $E = 1.75$ kN/C and $s = 125$ cm. Find the flux through faces B and C of cubes (a) and (b).
17. In Fig. 21.8, take the half-cylinder's radius and length to be 3.6 cm and 17 cm, respectively. If the electric field has magnitude 6.3 kN/C, find the flux through the half-cylinder. *Hint:* You don't need to do an integral! Why not?

Section 21.3 Gauss's Law

18. A sock comes out of the dryer with a trillion (10^{12}) excess electrons. What's the electric flux through a surface surrounding the sock?
19. What's the electric flux through the closed surfaces marked (a), (b), (c), and (d) in Fig. 21.33?
20. A $7.6\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge and a $-5.3\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge are inside an uncharged sphere. What's the electric flux through the sphere?
21. A $3.6\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge is at the center of a cube 6.0 cm on each side. What's the electric flux through one face of the cube? (*Hint:* Think about symmetry, and don't do an integral.)

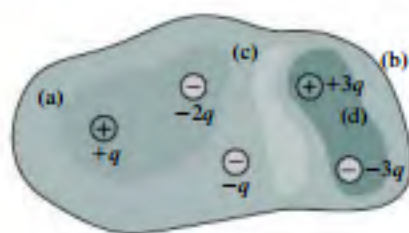


FIGURE 21.33 Exercise 19

Section 21.4 Using Gauss's Law

22. The electric field at the surface of a 5.0-cm-radius uniformly charged sphere is 90 kN/C. What's the field strength 10 cm from the surface?
23. A solid sphere 20 cm in radius carries 18 μC , distributed uniformly throughout its volume. Find the electric field strength (a) 10 cm, (b) 20 cm, and (c) 40 cm from its center.
24. A 15-nC point charge is at the center of a thin spherical shell of radius 10 cm, carrying -22 nC of charge distributed uniformly over its surface. Find the magnitude and direction of the electric field (a) 2.2 cm, (b) 5.6 cm, and (c) 14 cm from the point charge.
25. The electric field strength outside a charge distribution and 18 cm from its center is 55 kN/C. At 23 cm the field strength is 43 kN/C. Does the distribution have spherical or line symmetry?
26. An electron close to a large, flat sheet of charge is repelled from the sheet with a 2.7-pN force. Find the surface charge density on the sheet.
27. Find the field produced by a uniformly charged sheet carrying 89 pC/cm^2 .
28. What surface charge density on an infinite sheet will produce a 1.7-kN/C electric field?

Section 21.5 Fields of Arbitrary Charge Distributions

29. A rod 49 cm long and 1.0 cm in radius carries a $2.0\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge distributed uniformly over its length. Find the approximate magnitude of the electric field (a) 4.0 mm from the rod surface, not near either end, and (b) 32 m from the rod.
30. What's the approximate field strength 1 cm above a sheet of paper carrying uniform surface charge density $\sigma = 48\text{ nC/m}^2$?
31. The disk in Fig. 21.22 has area 0.14 m^2 and is uniformly charged to $5.0\text{ }\mu\text{C}$. Find the approximate field strength (a) 1 mm from the disk, not near the edge, and (b) 2.5 m from the disk.

Section 21.6 Gauss's Law and Conductors

32. What is the electric field strength just outside the surface of a conducting sphere carrying surface charge density $2.3\text{ }\mu\text{C/m}^2$?

33. A net charge of $4.0\text{ }\mu\text{C}$ is applied on one side of a solid metal sphere 3.8 cm in diameter. Once electrostatic equilibrium is reached, and assuming no other conductors or charges nearby, what are (a) the volume charge density inside the sphere and (b) the surface charge density on the sphere?
34. A positive point charge q lies at the center of a spherical conducting shell carrying net charge $\frac{3}{2}q$. Sketch the field lines both inside and outside the shell, using eight field lines to represent a charge of magnitude q .
35. A total charge of $20\text{ }\mu\text{C}$ is applied to a thin, square metal plate 74 cm on a side. Find the electric field strength near the plate's surface.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

36. **Example 21.2:** A positive point charge $+q$ is at the center of a spherical shell of radius R carrying charge $+2q$ distributed uniformly over its surface. Find expressions for the electric field as a function of position r (a) inside and (b) outside the shell. Use a minus sign if the field points inward.
37. **Example 21.2:** A point charge q is at the center of a spherical shell of radius 15.0 cm carrying charge Q distributed uniformly over its surface. The electric field 7.50 cm from the center has magnitude 1.17 MN/C and points inward. The electric field 23.8 cm from the center has magnitude 2.68 MN/C and points outward. Find (a) the point charge q , (b) the charge Q on the shell, and (c) the magnitude and direction of the electric field at the outer surface of the shell.
38. **Example 21.2:** A long, thin wire carrying uniform line charge density $+\lambda$ runs down the center of a long cylindrical tube of radius R carrying line charge density -2λ distributed uniformly over its surface. Find expressions for the electric field as a function of radial distance r from the axis of the wire for (a) $r < R$ and (b) $r > R$. Use a minus sign to indicate a field pointing inward.
39. **Example 21.2:** A long, thin wire carrying uniform line charge density λ_1 runs down the center of a long cylindrical tube of radius 15.0 cm carrying charge distributed uniformly over its surface; the charge per unit length of the tube is λ_2 . The electric field 7.50 cm from the center of the wire has magnitude 1.17 MN/C and points inward. The electric field 23.8 cm from the center of the wire has magnitude 2.68 MN/C and points outward. Find (a) the line charge density λ_1 on the wire, (b) the line charge density λ_2 on the tube, and (c) the magnitude and direction of the electric field at the outer surface of the tube.
40. **Example 21.4:** A long, straight wire carries a charge density of $292\text{ }\mu\text{C/m}$. Find the magnitude of the electric field 85.0 cm from the axis of the wire.
41. **Example 21.4:** A long, thin rod carries charge spread uniformly over its 3.26-m length. You measure the electric field at 5.12 cm from the rod's axis and find that its magnitude is 788 kN/C. What's the total charge on the rod?
42. **Example 21.4:** An infinitely long rod carries a uniform volume charge density ρ (in C/m^3). (a) Use Gauss's law to show that the magnitude of the electric field inside the rod, as a function of distance r from the rod's axis, is $E = \rho r / 2\epsilon_0$. (b) Similarly, show that the field outside the rod is $E = \rho R^2 / 2\epsilon_0 r$.

43. **Example 21.4:** A 75.0-cm-long rod of diameter 2.54 cm carries a uniform volume charge density. The electric field inside the rod at a point 6.84 mm from the rod's axis, but not near either end, has magnitude 286 kN/C. Find (a) the total charge on the rod and (b) the magnitude of the electric field 3.60 cm from the rod's axis. *Hint:* For (a), see the result of the preceding problem.

Problems

44. What's the flux through the hemispherical open surface of radius R in a uniform field of magnitude E shown in Fig. 21.34? (*Hint:* Don't do a messy integral!)

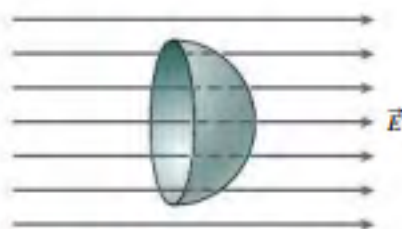


FIGURE 21.34 Problem 44

45. An electric field is given by $\vec{E} = E_0(y/a)\hat{k}$, where E_0 and a are constants. Find the flux through the square in the x - y plane bounded by the points $(0, 0)$, $(0, a)$, (a, a) , $(a, 0)$.
46. The electric field in a certain region is given by $\vec{E} = ax\hat{i}$, where $a = 32 \text{ N/C} \cdot \text{m}$ and x is in meters. Find the volume charge density in the region. (*Hint:* Apply Gauss's law to a cube 1 m on a side.)
47. A study shows that mammalian red blood cells (RBCs) carry electric charge resulting from 4.4 million (for rabbit cells) to 15 million (for human cells) excess electrons spread over their surfaces. Approximating rabbit and human RBCs as spheres with radii 30 μm and 36 μm , respectively, find the electric field strengths at the cells' surfaces.
48. Positive charge is spread uniformly over the surface of a spherical balloon 70 cm in radius, resulting in an electric field of 26 kN/C at the balloon's surface. Find the field strength (a) 50 cm from the balloon's center and (b) 190 cm from the center. (c) What's the net charge on the balloon?
49. A solid sphere 3.0 cm in radius carries a uniform volume charge density. The electric field 1.0 cm from the sphere's center has magnitude 16 kN/C. (a) At what other distance does the field have this magnitude? (b) What's the net charge on the sphere?
50. A point charge of $-2Q$ is at the center of a spherical shell of radius R carrying charge Q spread uniformly over its surface. Find the electric field at (a) $r = \frac{1}{2}R$ and (b) $r = 2R$. (c) How would your answers change if the charge on the shell were doubled?
51. A nonconducting square measures somewhat more than 1 meter on each side and carries a uniform surface charge density. At a distance of 71.0 m from the square, the electric field it produces has magnitude 314 N/C. Just above the square and not near an edge, the field measures 6.80 MN/C. Find (a) the total charge on the square surface and (b) its precise dimensions.
52. A spherical shell of radius R and negligible thickness carries charge Q distributed uniformly over its surface. At the center of the shell is a point charge q . Given that the electric field at the sphere's outer surface has magnitude E_{surf} , find expressions, in terms of Q , R , and E_{surf} , for (a) the point charge q and (b) the field at the inner surface of the sphere.
53. A spherical shell 35 cm in diameter carries 83 μC distributed uniformly over its surface. A 3.0- μC point charge is located at the shell's center. Find the electric field strength (a) 6.0 cm from the center and (b) 65 cm from the center. (c) How would your answers change if the charge on the shell were doubled?
54. A thick, spherical shell of inner radius a and outer radius b carries a uniform volume charge density ρ . Find an expression for the electric field strength in the region $a < r < b$, and show that your result is consistent with Equation 21.5 when $a = 0$.

55. A long, thin wire carrying 6.5 nC/m runs down the center of a long, thin-walled, pipe with radius 1.5 cm carrying -4.2 nC/m spread uniformly over its surface. Find the electric field (a) 0.50 cm from the wire and (b) 4.5 cm from the wire.
56. A long, solid rod of radius R carries a uniform volume charge density ρ . Use the result of Example Variation 42 to find an expression for the radial coordinate r of a point outside the rod where the electric field has the same magnitude that it does halfway between the rod's axis and its surface.
57. A solid rod 3.82 cm in diameter and 2.10 m long carries a uniform volume charge density. The electric field inside the rod, halfway between its axis and its surface but not near either end, has magnitude 585 kN/C and points radially outward. Find (a) the rod's total charge and (b) the electric field at its surface. *Hint:* See Example Variation 42.
58. If you "painted" positive charge on the floor, what surface charge density would be necessary to suspend a 28- μC , 10-g particle above the floor?



FIGURE 21.35 Problems 59 and 75

59. A charged slab extends infinitely in two dimensions and has thickness d in the third dimension, as shown in Fig. 21.35. The slab carries a uniform volume charge density ρ . Find expressions for the electric field (a) inside and (b) outside the slab, as functions of the distance x from the center plane. (Although the infinite slab is impossible, your answer is a good approximation to the field of a finite slab whose width is much greater than its thickness.)
60. A solid sphere 10 cm in radius carries a 40- μC charge distributed uniformly throughout its volume. It's surrounded by a concentric shell 20 cm in radius, also uniformly charged with 40 μC . Find the electric field (a) 5.0 cm, (b) 15 cm, and (c) 30 cm from the center.
61. A nonconducting square plate 68 cm on a side carries a uniform surface charge density. The electric field strength 1 cm from the plate, not near an edge, is 47 kN/C. What's the approximate field strength 19 m from the plate?
62. A 250-nC point charge is placed at the center of an uncharged spherical conducting shell 20 cm in radius. Find (a) the surface charge density on the outer surface of the shell and (b) the electric field strength at the shell's outer surface.
63. An irregular conductor containing an irregular, empty cavity carries a net charge Q . (a) Show that the electric field inside the cavity must be zero. (b) If you put a point charge inside the cavity, what value must it have in order to make the charge density on the outer surface of the conductor everywhere zero?
64. You measure the electric field strength at points directly above the center of a square plate carrying charge spread uniformly over its surface. The data are tabulated in the next column, with x the perpendicular distance from the center of the plate. Use the data to determine (a) the total charge on the plate and (b) the plate's size. *Hint:* You'll need to consider separately data taken close to the plate and also far away. For the latter, plot E versus a quantity that should yield a straight line.

x (cm)	0.01	0.02	1.2	6.0	12.0	24.0
E (N/C)	5870	5860	4840	1960	754	221

x (cm)	48.0	72.0	96.0	120	240
E (N/C)	57.6	26.7	16.1	8.45	2.34

65. A point charge $-q$ is at the center of a spherical shell carrying charge $+2q$. That shell, in turn, is concentric with a larger shell carrying $-\frac{3}{2}q$. Draw a cross section of this structure, and sketch the electric field lines using the convention that eight lines correspond to a charge of magnitude q .

66. A point charge q is at the center of a spherical shell of radius R carrying charge $2q$ spread uniformly over its surface. Write expressions for the electric field strength at (a) $\frac{1}{2}R$ and (b) $2R$.

67. The volume charge density inside a solid sphere of radius a is $\rho = \rho_0 r/a$, where ρ_0 is a constant. Find (a) the total charge and (b) the electric field strength within the sphere, as a function of distance r from the center.

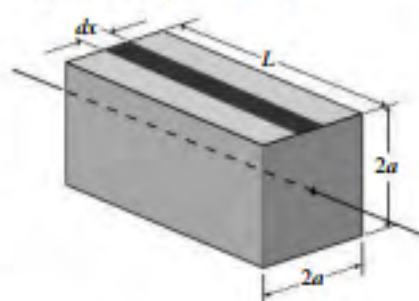


FIGURE 21.36 Problem 68

68. Figure 21.36 shows a rectangular box with sides $2a$ and length L surrounding a line carrying uniform line charge density λ . The line passes directly through the center of the box faces. Integrate the field of the line charge over strips of width dx as shown to find the electric flux through one face of the box. Multiply by 4 to get the total flux, and show that your result is consistent with Gauss's law.

69. The charge density within a charged sphere of radius R is given by $\rho = \rho_0 - ar^2$, where ρ_0 and a are constants and r is the distance from the center. Find an expression for a such that the electric field outside the sphere is zero.

70. Calculate the electric fields in Example 21.2 directly, using the superposition principle and integration. Consider the shell to be composed of charge elements that are coaxial rings, whose axes pass through the field point, which is a distance r from the center. (Hint: Consult Example 20.6. You'll have to evaluate the cases $r < R$ and $r > R$ separately.)

71. A solid sphere of radius R carries a nonuniform volume charge density given by $\rho(r) = \rho_0(r/R)^n$, where ρ_0 is a constant and n is an integer greater than -3 . (a) Find an expression for the total charge within the sphere. (b) Find the value of n such that the electric field inside the sphere, halfway from the sphere's center to its surface, is the same as the field outside the sphere at a distance $4R$ from the center.

72. Problem 76 of Chapter 13 explored what happened to a person falling into a hole extending all the way through Earth's center and out the other side, assuming that $g(r) = g_0(r/R_E)$ for points inside Earth ($r < R_E$). Prove this assumption, treating Earth as a uniform sphere and using the gravitational version of Gauss's law: $\oint \vec{g} \cdot d\vec{A} = -4\pi G M_{\text{enclosed}}$.

73. An infinitely long solid cylinder of radius R carries a nonuniform charge density given by $\rho = \rho_0(r/R)$, where ρ_0 is a constant and r is the distance from the cylinder's axis. Find an expression for the magnitude of the electric field as a function of position r within the cylinder.

74. A solid sphere of radius R carries a uniform volume charge density ρ . A hole of radius $R/2$ occupies a region from the center to the edge of the sphere, as shown in Fig. 21.37. Show that the electric field everywhere in the hole points horizontally and has magnitude $\rho R/6\epsilon_0$. Hint: Treat the hole as a superposition of two charged spheres with opposite charges.

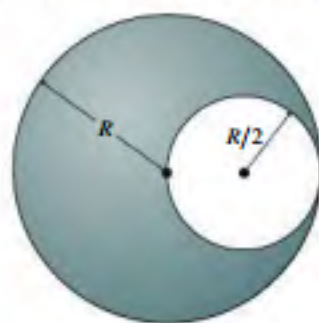


FIGURE 21.37 Problem 74

75. Repeat Problem 59 for the case where the charge density in the slab is given by $\rho = \rho_0|x/d|$, where ρ_0 is a constant.

Passage Problems

Coaxial cables are widely used with audiovisual technology, electronic instrumentation, and radio broadcasting, because they minimize interference with or from signals traveling on the cable. Coaxial cables consist of a wire inner conductor surrounded by a thin cylindrical conducting shield, usually of braided copper (Fig. 21.38). Flexible insulation separates the conductors. A straight length of coaxial cable can be approximated as an infinitely long wire surrounded by a cylindrical shell. Normally the two conductors carry charges of equal magnitude but opposite sign. (Charge actually varies with time and position as signals travel down the cable, but for these problems consider the charge to be fixed and spread uniformly.)

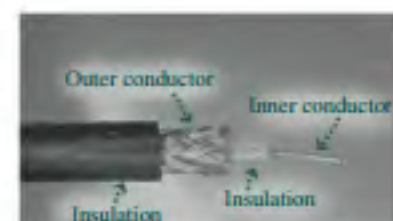


FIGURE 21.38 A coaxial cable (Passage Problems 76–79)

76. For a coaxial cable in electrostatic equilibrium carrying equal but opposite charges on its two conductors, there's a nonzero electric field
- only in the space between the wire and shield.
 - in the space between wire and shield, and outside the shield.
 - inside the metal conducting wire and shield, as well as between the wires and outside the shield.
 - only outside the shield.
77. A coaxial cable carries equal but opposite charges on its two conductors. In electrostatic equilibrium, charge on the shield
- lies entirely on its outer surface.
 - is divided evenly between inner and outer surfaces.
 - lies entirely on its inner surface.
 - distributes itself differently depending on the magnitude of the charge.
78. How does the electric field *between* the conductors in a coaxial cable in electrostatic equilibrium depend on the radial distance r from the cable's axis?
- it's constant
 - as $1/r$
 - as $1/r^2$
 - as $1/r^3$
79. A coaxial cable in electrostatic equilibrium carries charge $-Q$ on its inner conductor and $+Q$ on its shield. If the charge on the shield *only* is doubled,
- the magnitude of the electric field between the conductors will double.
 - the magnitude of the electric field outside the shield will double.
 - the magnitude of the electric field at the outer surface of the shield will become twice the magnitude of the field at the shield's inner surface.
 - the magnitude of the electric field at the outer surface of the shield will equal the magnitude of the field at the shield's inner surface.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Gauss's law requires that electric charge remain on the outside of the metal cage, arranging itself so there's no electric field within the cage.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 21.1. (a)
 21.2. (1) $\Phi_A = 0$, $\Phi_B = 0$, $\Phi_C = s^2E$;
 (2) $\Phi_A = 0$, $\Phi_B = \Phi_C = s^2E \cos 45^\circ = s^2E/\sqrt{2}$
 21.3. (1) (a) flux doesn't change; (2) (d) field increases if charges are opposite, decreases if same
 21.4. (1) field stays zero; (2) field (kQ/r^2) doubles
 21.5. (1) (c); (2) (b)
 21.6. (c)



Electric Potential

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 22.1 Explain the concept of potential difference and calculate work done as charges move through given potential differences.
- LO 22.2 Calculate potential differences by integrating the electric field.
- LO 22.3 Describe the potential differences associated with point charges and dipoles.
- LO 22.4 Calculate potential differences of discrete charge distributions using superposition.
- LO 22.5 Calculate potential differences of continuous charge distributions by integration.
- LO 22.6 Describe equipotentials and how they relate to electric fields.
- LO 22.7 Determine electric fields given potential as a function of position.
- LO 22.8 Describe equipotentials near charged conductors.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The electric field (Section 20.3)
- Electrostatic equilibrium and conductors (Section 21.6)
- Work, including with varying forces and curved paths (Sections 6.2 and 6.3)

Like gravity, the electric force is conservative. That means the work done in moving a charge against an electric force results in stored potential energy. It's convenient to consider the energy per unit charge, a measure that defines the concept of *electric potential*. Here we'll see how potential provides a simpler approach to calculating electric fields and also helps characterize everyday devices like batteries.

22.1 Electric Potential Difference

LO 22.1 Explain the concept of potential difference and calculate work done as charges move through given potential differences.

In Chapter 7 we defined the potential-energy difference ΔU_{AB} as the negative of the work W_{AB} done by a conservative force $\vec{F}$ on an object moved from point A to point B (Equation 7.2):

$$\Delta U_{AB} = U_B - U_A = -W_{AB} = -\int_A^B \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}$$

This parasailer landed on a 138,000-volt power line. Why wasn't he electrocuted?



where $d\vec{r}$ is an element of the path from A to B , and ΔU_{AB} is independent of the path taken from A to B . When the force doesn't vary, we can calculate the work more easily using Equation 6.5, $W = \vec{F} \cdot \Delta\vec{r}$.

Consider a positive charge q moved between points A and B a distance Δr apart in a uniform electric field $\vec{E}$, as shown in Fig. 22.1. Since the field is uniform, a constant electric force $\vec{F} = q\vec{E}$ acts on the charge, so we use Equation 6.5 to evaluate the work done by the field and the resulting potential-energy change:

$$\Delta U_{AB} = -W_{AB} = -q\vec{E} \cdot \Delta\vec{r} = -qE \Delta r \cos 180^\circ = qE \Delta r$$

where the factor $\cos 180^\circ = -1$ appears because $\vec{E}$ and $\Delta\vec{r}$ have opposite directions. Make sense? Pushing a positive charge from A to B against the electric field is like pushing a car up a hill: Potential energy increases in both cases. Let go of the charge, and the field accelerates it back, just as gravity would accelerate the car back down the hill.

Had we moved a charge $2q$ in Fig. 22.1, the potential-energy change ΔU would have been twice as great; a charge $\frac{1}{2}q$ would have cut ΔU in half. Since ΔU is proportional to charge, it's convenient to consider the *potential-energy change per unit charge* involved in moving a charge between two points. Mathematically, we write $\vec{F} = q\vec{E}$ in our general expression for ΔU_{AB} and divide by q . The result defines the **electric potential difference** ΔV :

The electric potential difference from point A to point B is the potential-energy change per unit charge in moving a charge from A to B :

$$\Delta V_{AB} = \frac{\Delta U_{AB}}{q} = - \int_A^B \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{r} \quad (\text{electric potential difference}) \quad (22.1a)$$

Annotations for Equation 22.1a:

- ΔV_{AB} is the potential difference going from point A to point B .
- Potential difference is the potential-energy change ΔU_{AB} per unit charge.
- We need to integrate if the electric field $\vec{E}$ varies or the path isn't straight.
- $d\vec{r}$ is an infinitesimal displacement vector along the path from A to B .
- As usual, the dot product is the scalar $E dr \cos\theta$.

Here Δ and the subscripts AB show explicitly that we're talking about a *change* or *difference* from one point to another. We'll sometimes use just the symbol V for potential difference, in cases where the starting point A is understood. Note that potential difference, although computed from vectors, is itself a scalar quantity.

The switch from potential energy to electric potential is analogous to Chapter 20's introduction of the electric field as the electric force *per unit charge*; similarly, the electric potential difference is the change in potential energy *per unit charge*. The reason is the same: We want to express electric properties in terms that don't involve specific charges. Table 22.1 summarizes the relations among force and field, potential energy and electric potential.

In the special case of a uniform field, Equation 22.1a reduces to

$$\Delta V_{AB} = -\vec{E} \cdot \Delta\vec{r} \quad (\text{uniform field}) \quad (22.1b)$$

where $\Delta\vec{r}$ is a vector from A to B . Figure 22.1 shows the special case when the field $\vec{E}$ and path $\Delta\vec{r}$ are in opposite directions; here, Equation 22.1b gives $\Delta V_{AB} = E \Delta r$.

Potential difference can be positive or negative, depending on whether the path goes against the field or with it. Moving a positive charge through a positive potential difference is like going uphill: Potential energy increases. Moving a positive charge through a negative potential difference is like going downhill: Potential energy decreases. The converse is true for a negative charge; even though the potential difference remains the same, the force is opposite and so the potential energy reverses sign.

We emphasize that potential difference is a property of *two points*; it doesn't depend on the path between those points. In Fig. 22.1, considering a straight path from A to B made the calculation of potential difference easy, but we would have found the same result—albeit with much more effort—using any path (Fig. 22.2).

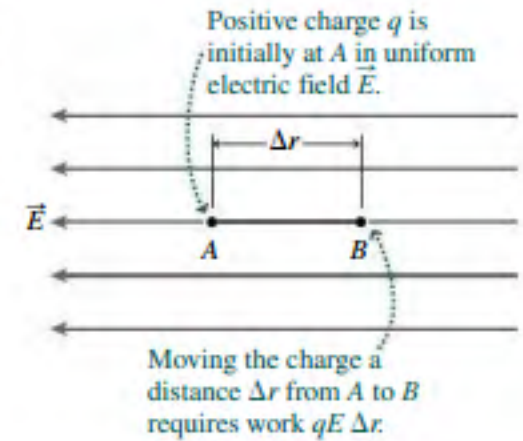


FIGURE 22.1 Work done in moving a charge q against an electric field $\vec{E}$.

Table 22.1 Force and Field, Potential, Energy, and Electric Potential

Quantity	Symbol/Equation	Units
Force	$\vec{F}$	N
Electric field	$\vec{E} = \frac{\vec{F}}{q}$	N/C or V/m
Potential-energy difference	$\Delta U = - \int_A^B \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{r}$	J
Electric potential difference	$\Delta V = \frac{\Delta U}{q}$	J/C or V
or		
	$\Delta V = - \int_A^B \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{r}$	

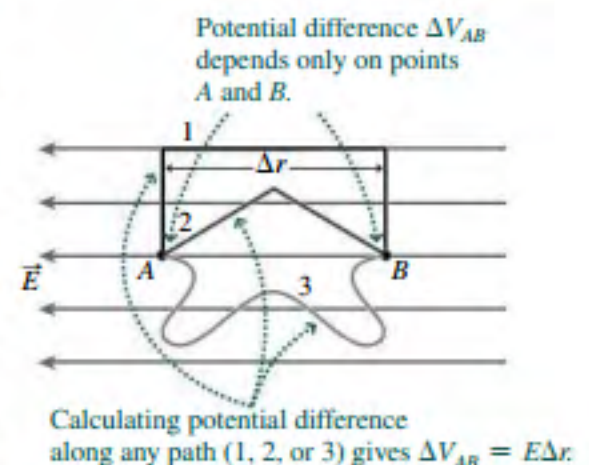


FIGURE 22.2 Potential difference is path independent.

GOT IT?

22.1 What would happen to the potential difference V_{AB} in Fig. 22.1 if (1) the electric field strength were doubled, (2) the distance Δr were doubled, (3) the points were moved so the path lay at right angles to the field, or (4) the positions of A and B were interchanged?

Table 22.2 Typical Potential Differences

Between human arm and leg due to heart's electrical activity	1 mV
Across biological cell membrane	80 mV
Between terminals of flashlight battery	1.5 V
Car battery	12 V
Electric outlet (depends on country)	100–240 V
Taser® (pulsed)	1200 V
Between long-distance electric transmission line and ground	365 kV
Between base of thunderstorm cloud and ground	100 MV

The Volt and the Electronvolt

Potential difference measures work or energy per unit charge, so its units are joules per coulomb, as shown in Table 22.1. Potential difference is important enough that this unit has a special name, the **volt** (V). To say that a car has a 12-V battery, for example, means the battery does 12 J of work on every coulomb of charge that moves between its terminals. Multiplying the first equality in Equation 22.1a by q shows that the change in potential energy of a charge q as it moves through a potential difference ΔV is $\Delta U = q \Delta V$. If a charge q “falls” freely through a potential difference ΔV , it therefore gains kinetic energy given by $|q \Delta V|$.

We often use the term **voltage** to mean potential difference, especially in electric circuits. The two are subtly different, however, when changing magnetic fields are present; more on this in Chapter 27. Table 22.2 lists some typical potential differences in technological and natural systems.



POTENTIAL DIFFERENCE INVOLVES TWO POINTS Potential difference is the energy per unit charge involved in moving *between two points*. This is ultimately a practical matter; if you forget it, you won't be able to hook up a voltmeter properly or connect jumper cables safely to your car battery! This chapter's opening photo provides a dramatic illustration of this point.

Sometimes we say “the potential (or voltage) at point P .” This is *always* a shorthand way of talking, and we *must* have in mind some other point. What we mean is the potential difference going from that other point to P . We'll consider choices for that “other point”—the so-called zero of potential—in the next section.

In molecular, atomic, and nuclear systems it's often convenient to measure energy in **electronvolts (eV)**, defined as **the energy gained by a particle carrying one elementary charge when it moves through a potential difference of 1 volt**. Since one elementary charge is 1.6×10^{-19} C, 1 eV is 1.6×10^{-19} J. Energy in eV is particularly easy to calculate when charge is given in units of the elementary charge e ; then, with ΔV in volts, $q \Delta V$ gives the energy in eV. However, the eV is *not* an SI unit and should be converted to joules before calculating other quantities, like velocity.

GOT IT?

22.2 (1) A proton (charge e), (2) an alpha particle (charge $2e$), and (3) a singly ionized oxygen atom each move through a 10-V potential difference. What's the work in eV done on each?

EXAMPLE 22.1 Potential Difference, Work, and Energy: X Rays

In an X-ray tube, a uniform electric field of 300 kN/C extends over a distance of 10 cm from an electron source to a target; the field points from the target to the source. Find the potential difference between source and target and the energy gained by an electron as it accelerates from source to target (where its abrupt deceleration produces X rays). Express the energy in both electronvolts and joules.

INTERPRET This problem requires first calculating the potential difference from the field and then the energy from the potential difference.

DEVELOP Figure 22.3 is our drawing with point A the source and point B the target. Equation 22.1b, $\Delta V_{AB} = -\vec{E} \cdot \Delta \vec{r}$, determines the

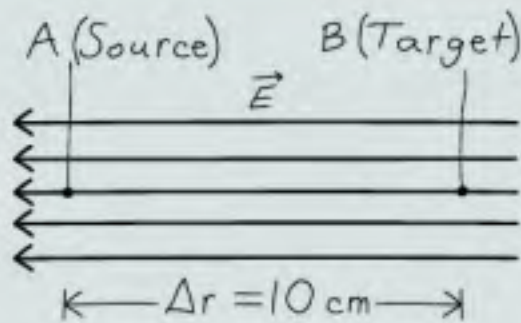


FIGURE 22.3 Sketch for Example 22.1.

potential difference in this uniform field. Given the potential difference, or energy per unit charge, we can find the energy gain from the magnitude of the product $q \Delta V$.

EVALUATE With the field and path in opposite directions, $\cos \theta = -1$ in the dot product, so Equation 22.1b gives

$$\Delta V_{AB} = E \Delta r = (300 \text{ kN/C})(0.10 \text{ m}) = 30 \text{ kV}$$

Although this difference is positive, a *negative* electron moves “downhill” from source to target, and thus gains kinetic energy as work gets done on it. With the charge measured in elementary charges, the product $|q \Delta V|$ gives this energy directly when it’s expressed in electronvolts: (1 elementary charge e)(30 kV) = 30 keV. With $1.6 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J/eV}$, this is 4.8 fJ.

ASSESS Make sense? An electronvolt is a lot smaller than a joule, so the SI answer (in fJ = 10^{-15} J) is numerically much smaller.

EXAMPLE 22.2 Potential of a Charged Sheet

An isolated, infinite charged sheet carries uniform surface charge density σ . Find an expression for the potential difference from the sheet to a point a perpendicular distance x from the sheet.

INTERPRET This is a question about calculating the potential difference from the field.

DEVELOP The result of Example 21.6 gives the field of a charged sheet: It’s uniform, with magnitude $E = \sigma/2\epsilon_0$ and direction perpendicular to the sheet. We’ve drawn the sheet and a few of its field lines in Fig. 22.4. Since the field is uniform, Equation 21.1b, $\Delta V_{AB} = -\vec{E} \cdot \Delta \vec{r}$, determines the potential difference.

EVALUATE Moving away from the sheet means going in the direction of the field (assuming positive σ), so $\cos \theta = 1$ in the dot product, and we evaluate to get

$$V_{0x} = -Ex = -\frac{\sigma x}{2\epsilon_0}$$

Here we’ve used x for the displacement Δr and V_{0x} for the potential difference because we’re measuring from the sheet ($x = 0$) to the point x .

ASSESS Make sense? Our result shows that the potential difference in a *uniform* field varies *linearly* with distance. Moving a positive

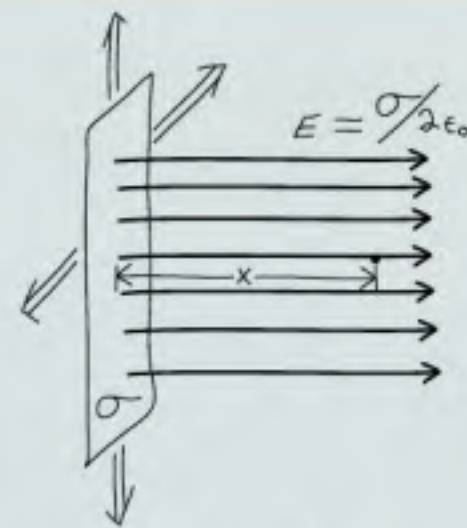


FIGURE 22.4 Sketch for Example 22.2. The field also extends to the left from the sheet, but we haven’t drawn that.

charge away from the sheet is like going “downhill,” in this case with a constant slope. Give the sheet a negative charge ($\sigma < 0$) and the potential difference changes sign; now moving a positive charge away from the sheet is going “uphill.” (And moving a negative charge away is “downhill”—since like charges repel.)

Curved Paths and Nonuniform Fields

If the electric field isn’t uniform or the path isn’t straight, then we need to use the integral in Equation 22.1a to find the potential difference. With that equation we’re dividing the path into segments $d\vec{r}$, each so short that it’s essentially straight with a uniform field over its length (see Fig. 22.5, which is analogous to Fig. 6.14). Then Equation 22.1b gives the potential difference $dV = -\vec{E} \cdot d\vec{r}$ across the segment, and in integrating we’re summing infinitely many infinitesimal dV values to get the potential difference between two points A and B . We’ll see some examples in the next section.

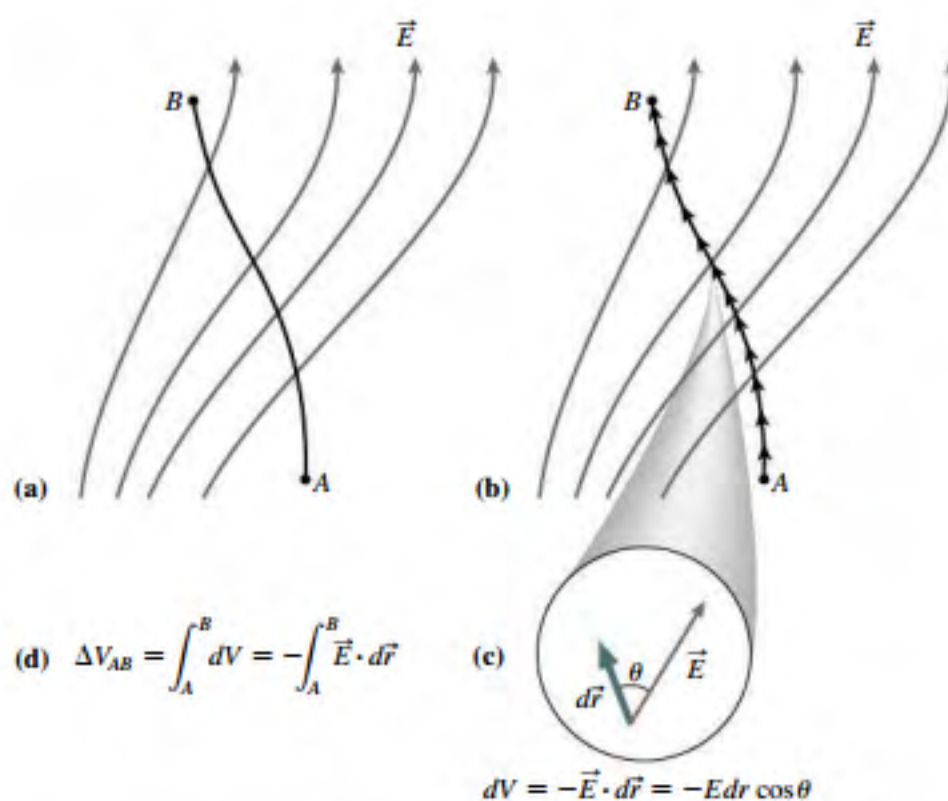
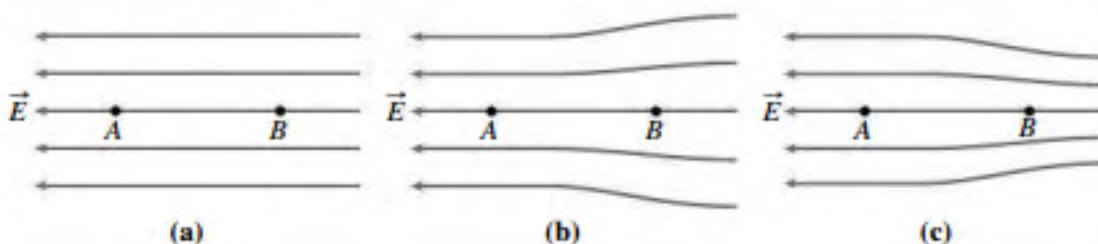


FIGURE 22.5 (a) A path from A to B traverses an electric field $\vec{E}$. (b) To find the potential difference ΔV_{AB} , we first divide the path into infinitesimal segments $d\vec{r}$. (c) The potential difference dV across one such segment is $dV = -\vec{E} \cdot d\vec{r}$. (d) Adding—that is, integrating—all the dV s along the path gives the expression for ΔV_{AB} .

GOT IT?

22.3 The figure shows three straight paths AB of the same length, each in a different electric field. The field at A is the same in each. Rank the potential differences ΔV_{AB} , from highest to lowest.



22.2 Calculating Potential Difference

LO 22.2 Calculate potential differences by integrating the electric field.

LO 22.3 Describe the potential differences associated with point charges and dipoles.

LO 22.4 Calculate potential differences of discrete charge distributions using superposition.

LO 22.5 Calculate potential differences of continuous charge distributions by integration.

Here we use Equation 22.1a to calculate potential differences in the fields of several charge distributions. Most important is the point charge, which then provides an easy way to find potential differences for more complicated charge distributions.

The Potential of a Point Charge

Equation 20.3 gives the electric field of a point charge: $\vec{E} = (kq/r^2)\hat{r}$. Let's find the potential difference between two points A and B at distances r_A and r_B from a positive point charge, as shown in Fig. 22.6. We can't just multiply the distance $r_B - r_A$ by E because the field varies with position. Instead we integrate, using Equation 22.1a:

$$\Delta V_{AB} = - \int_{r_A}^{r_B} \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{r} = - \int_{r_A}^{r_B} \frac{kq}{r^2} \hat{r} \cdot d\vec{r}$$

As we move from A to B , the path elements are increments dr in the radial direction, so we write $d\vec{r} = \hat{r} dr$. Then the potential difference is

$$\Delta V_{AB} = - \int_{r_A}^{r_B} \frac{kq}{r^2} \hat{r} \cdot \hat{r} dr = -kq \int_{r_A}^{r_B} r^{-2} dr$$

since the dot product of the unit vector $\hat{r}$ with itself is 1. Evaluating the integral gives

$$\Delta V_{AB} = -kq \left[-\frac{1}{r} \right]_{r_A}^{r_B} = kq \left(\frac{1}{r_B} - \frac{1}{r_A} \right) \quad (22.2)$$

Make sense? For $r_B > r_A$, the potential difference is negative, showing that a positive test charge at r_A would “fall” toward r_B . Going the other way would require an external force to do work on a positive charge, pushing it “uphill” against the repulsive force of the charge q . Our result holds as well for $q < 0$, in which case the sign of the potential difference changes.

Although we derived Equation 22.2 for two points on the same radial line, Fig. 22.7 shows that the result holds for *any* two points in the field of a charge q . It doesn't matter which point is at the greater distance either; if $r_B < r_A$, Equation 22.2 still gives the correct potential difference, which then becomes positive, showing that we would have to do work to move a positive test charge *toward* a positive q .

The Zero of Potential

Only potential differences have physical significance. But it's often convenient to define a point of zero potential; we can then speak of the potential V at some other point P , meaning the potential difference between our zero point and P . In this context the expression ΔV_{AB} can be written $V(B) - V(A)$. The choice for the zero of potential is usually based on mathematical or physical convenience. In electric power systems, Earth, called “ground,” is usually taken as the zero of potential; in automobile electric systems, the car's metal frame is a convenient zero point.

When we deal with isolated charges, it's convenient to take the zero of potential at infinity. Then $r_A \rightarrow \infty$ in Equation 22.2 and $1/r_A$ becomes zero. We'll omit the subscript on r_B because it can be any point; then Equation 22.2 becomes

When dealing with point charges, we usually take the zero of potential at infinity.

We then abbreviate $V_{\infty r}$ as $V(r)$.

q is the point charge.

$$V_{\infty r} = V(r) = \frac{kq}{r} \quad (\text{point-charge potential}) \quad (22.3)$$

r is the distance from the point charge to the place where we're evaluating the potential.

When we call this expression $V(r)$ “the potential of a point charge,” we really mean that $V(r)$ is the potential difference going from a point very far from a charge q to a point a

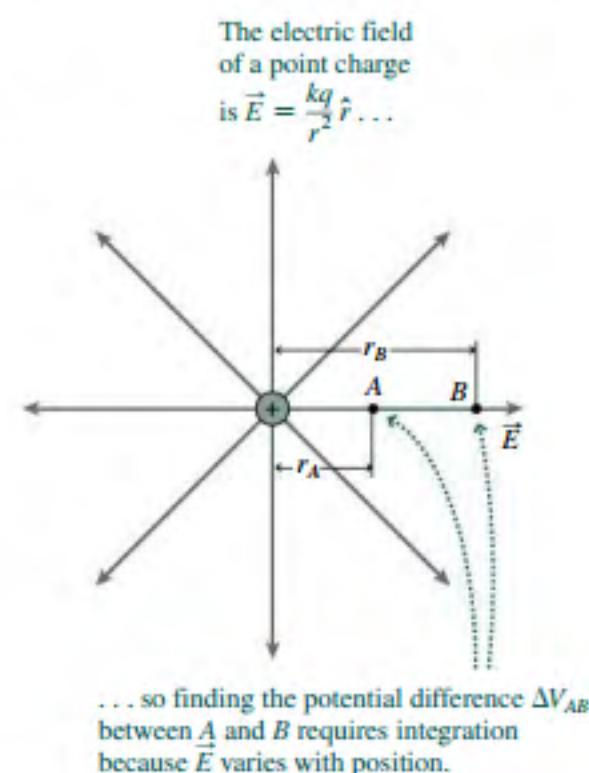


FIGURE 22.6 Potential difference in the field of a point charge.

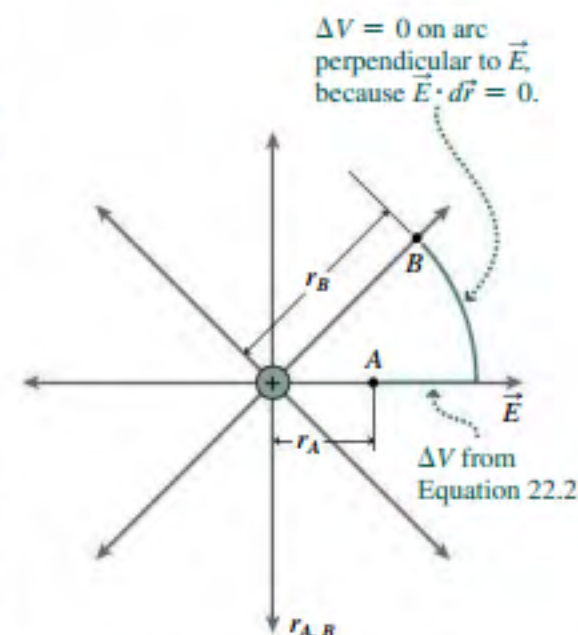


FIGURE 22.7 Potential difference is path independent, so ΔV_{AB} here still follows from Equation 22.2.

distance r from the charge—an interpretation that's consistent with our definition of potential difference as depending on *two* points. Because the field outside any spherically symmetric charge distribution is that of a point charge, Equation 22.3 also gives the potential outside a spherically symmetric charge distribution.

Does it bother you that potential difference can be finite over an infinite distance? The reason lies in the inverse-square dependence of the field, which drops so rapidly that the work done in moving a charge from infinity to the vicinity of a point charge remains finite. We found an analogous result in Chapter 8, where it took only a finite amount of energy to escape completely from a planet's gravitational attraction. As long as a charge distribution is finite in size—so its field at large distances falls at least as fast as $1/r^2$ —it makes sense to take the zero of potential at infinity.

GOT IT?

22.4 You measure a potential difference of 50 V between two points a distance 10 cm apart along a line extending radially outward from a point charge. If you move closer to the charge and measure the potential difference over another 10-cm interval on the same line, will it be (a) greater, (b) less, or (c) the same?

EXAMPLE 22.3 Potential and Work: At the Science Museum

The Hall of Electricity at the Boston Museum of Science contains a large Van de Graaff generator, a device that builds up charge on a metal sphere (see Chapter 21's opening photo). The sphere has radius $R = 2.30$ m and develops a charge $Q = 640$ μC . Treating this as a single isolated sphere, find (a) the potential at its surface, (b) the work needed to bring a proton from infinity to the sphere's surface, and (c) the potential difference between the sphere's surface and a point $2R$ from its center.

INTERPRET This problem is about potential differences in the field of a spherically symmetric charge distribution. In Chapter 21 we found that the field outside such a distribution is identical to that of a point charge. The term *potential* is meaningless unless we're talking about two points, so here, with a point-charge field, we interpret the question as asking us to take the zero of potential at infinity.

DEVELOP Because the field outside the spherical charge distribution is the same as that of a point charge, Equation 22.3, $V(r) = kQ/r$, determines the potential for $r \geq R$. We've sketched this $1/r$ potential curve in Fig. 22.8. Because the zero of potential is at infinity, we can multiply the potential at the surface by the proton's charge to get the work required to bring a proton from infinity. Finally, we can evaluate the potential difference ΔV_{R2R} from the potentials at R and $2R$.

EVALUATE (a) Equation 22.3 gives

$$V(R) = \frac{kQ}{R} = 2.50 \text{ MV}$$

using Q and R given for the museum's device. (b) This 2.5-MV result is the potential difference between infinity and the sphere's surface. Then the work needed to move a proton—one elementary charge

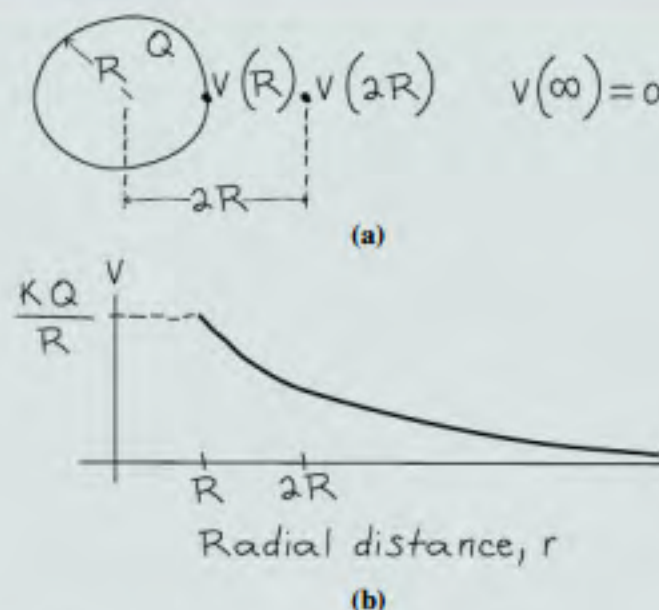


FIGURE 22.8 Sketch for Example 22.3.

e —from infinity is 2.5 MeV or 4.0×10^{-13} J. (c) We find the potential difference from the surface to $2R$ by subtracting the potentials at the two points:

$$\Delta V_{R2R} = V(2R) - V(R) = \frac{kQ}{2R} - \frac{kQ}{R} = -\frac{kQ}{2R} = -1.25 \text{ MV}$$

ASSESS Make sense? The potential difference ΔV_{R2R} is negative because we're moving away from the positively charged sphere. Our result also shows that fully half the potential difference between the sphere and infinity occurs within one radius of the sphere's surface—a consequence of the rapid $1/r^2$ decrease in the field.

EXAMPLE 22.4**Potential Difference: A High-Voltage Power Line***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A long, straight power-line wire has radius 1.0 cm and carries line charge density $\lambda = 2.6 \mu\text{C/m}$. Assuming no other charges are present, what's the potential difference between the wire and the ground, 22 m below?

INTERPRET We can interpret the long, straight wire as essentially an infinitely long charge distribution with line symmetry.

DEVELOP In Chapter 21 we found that the field outside any line-symmetric distribution is that of a line charge, $\vec{E} = (\lambda/2\pi\epsilon_0 r)\hat{r}$, so this equation determines the power line's field. We haven't been given any explicit expression for potential differences in this field, so because the field varies with position, our plan is to apply Equation 22.1a, $\Delta V = -\int \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{r}$. We've drawn the situation in Fig. 22.9.

EVALUATE We evaluate the integral in Equation 22.1a over a straight path perpendicular to the wire, from its surface at r_A to the ground at r_B :

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta V_{AB} &= -\int_{r_A}^{r_B} \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{r} = -\int_{r_A}^{r_B} \frac{\lambda}{2\pi\epsilon_0 r} \hat{r} \cdot \hat{r} dr \\ &= -\frac{\lambda}{2\pi\epsilon_0} \int_{r_A}^{r_B} \frac{dr}{r} = -\frac{\lambda}{2\pi\epsilon_0} \ln r \Big|_{r_A}^{r_B} \\ &= \frac{\lambda}{2\pi\epsilon_0} \ln\left(\frac{r_A}{r_B}\right)\end{aligned}\quad (22.4)$$

where the last step follows because $\ln x - \ln y = \ln(x/y)$ and $\ln(x/y) = -\ln(y/x)$. The numbers of this example give $\Delta V = -360 \text{ kV}$, a value typical of long-distance electric power transmission lines.

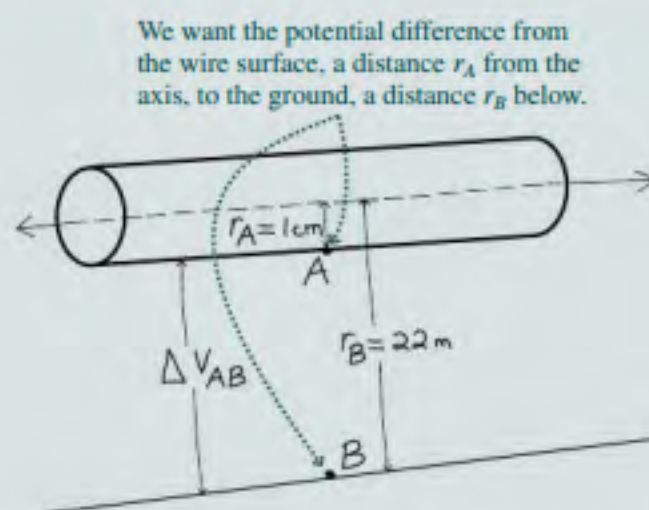


FIGURE 22.9 A long, straight power line approximated as an infinite charged rod whose field is that of a line charge.

ASSESS Make sense? Our result is negative because the path AB goes away from a positive charge. (Mathematically, $r_A < r_B$ so the logarithm is negative.) The symbolic form of our answer shows that we can't let r_B go to infinity. Physically, that's because we're assuming the charge distribution has infinite extent, so it never resembles a point charge no matter how far away we get; mathematically, it's because the field falls off more slowly than a point-charge field—namely, as $1/r$. In practice, our answer here should be modified to account for the presence of other wires and of charges drawn to the ground surface.

Finding Potential Differences Using Superposition

When we don't know the field of a charge distribution, or when the field is too complicated to integrate easily, we can find the potential using superposition. This often provides an easier approach to calculating the field, as we'll see in Section 22.3.

Consider a charge q brought from infinity to a point P in the vicinity of some other charges. The superposition principle states that the electric field of a charge distribution is the sum of the fields of the individual charges that make up the distribution. Therefore, the work per unit charge—that is, the potential difference—between infinity and P is the sum of the potential differences associated with the individual point charges. Mathematically, we find $V(P)$ by summing Equation 22.3 over the individual point charges q_i :

$$V(P) = \sum_i \frac{kq_i}{r_i} \quad (22.5)$$

where the r_i 's are the distances from each of the charges to the point P . Equation 22.5 has one enormous advantage over its counterpart for the electric field, Equation 20.4. Electric potential is a *scalar*, so the sum in Equation 22.5 is a scalar sum, with no angles, vector components, or unit vectors.

EXAMPLE 22.5**Discrete Charges: The Dipole Potential**

An electric dipole consists of point charges $\pm q$ a distance $2a$ apart. Find the potential at an arbitrary point P , and an approximation to the potential for the case where the distance to P is large compared with the charge separation.

INTERPRET We have two point charges, so this problem is based on the point-charge potential, and therefore we'll take the zero of potential at infinity.

(continued)

DEVELOP Figure 22.10 is our drawing, showing the distances from the two charges to a point P . Our plan is to apply superposition, summing the potentials of the individual point charges at P as determined in Equation 22.5, $V(P) = \sum(kq/r)$.

EVALUATE Applying Equation 22.5 gives

$$V(P) = \frac{kq}{r_1} + \frac{k(-q)}{r_2} = \frac{kq(r_2 - r_1)}{r_1 r_2}$$

This is an exact result valid for any P . We're also asked for an approximation for large distances. If r is the distance to the dipole center, as shown in Fig. 22.10, then for $r \gg a$, the quantities r_1 , r_2 , and r are nearly the same and the term $r_1 r_2$ is very nearly r^2 . We have to be a little more careful with the term $r_2 - r_1$ because here we're comparing nearly equal quantities. Figure 22.10 shows that this term—the

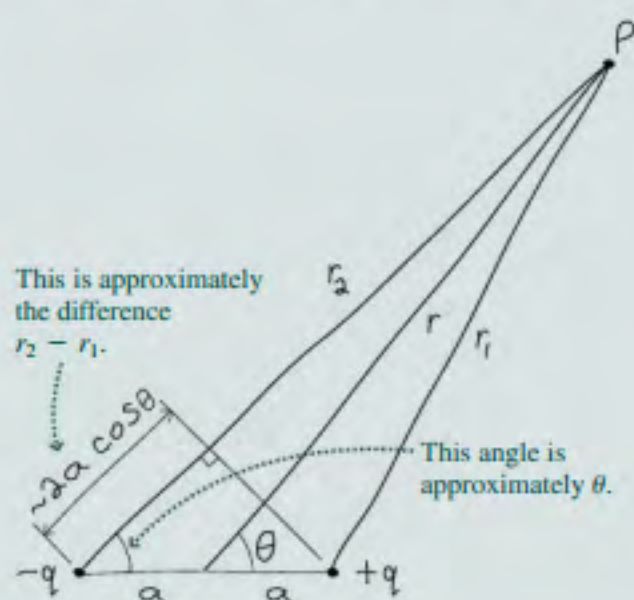


FIGURE 22.10 Finding the dipole potential.

difference between the distances from the two charges to P —is approximately $2a \cos \theta$. So the dipole potential for $r \gg a$ becomes

$$V(r, \theta) = \frac{k(2aq) \cos \theta}{r^2} = \frac{kp \cos \theta}{r^2} \quad (\text{dipole potential}) \quad (22.6)$$

with $p = 2aq$ being the dipole moment.

ASSESS Make sense? The dipole *potential* drops as $1/r^2$; earlier, we found the dipole *field* dropping as $1/r^3$. The difference of one power in r occurs because the potential results from integrating the field over distance. The same is true for the point charge, whose *field* drops as $1/r^2$ while its *potential* drops as $1/r$. Note also that Equation 22.6 gives $V = 0$ when $\theta = 90^\circ$. There, on the dipole's perpendicular bisector, a charge brought from infinity is always moving at right angles to the dipole field (recall Fig. 21.2), so no work is involved (Fig. 22.11).

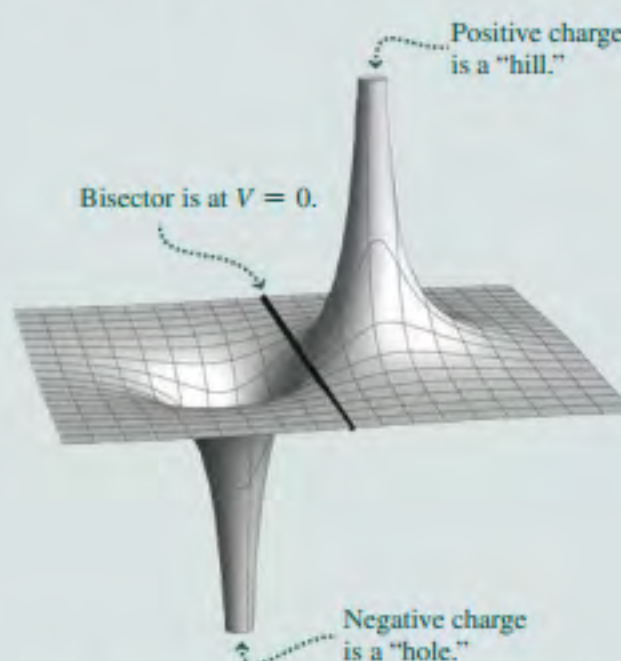
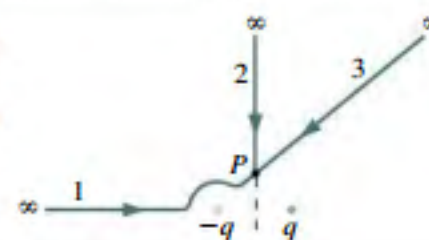


FIGURE 22.11 3-D plot of the dipole potential in the plane of Fig. 22.10.

GOT IT?

22.5 The figure shows three paths from infinity to a point P on a dipole's perpendicular bisector. Compare the work done in moving a charge to P on each of the paths.



Continuous Charge Distributions

We can calculate the potential of a continuous charge distribution by considering it to be made up of infinitely many infinitesimal charge elements dq . Each acts like a point charge and therefore contributes to the potential at some point P an amount dV given by $dV = k dq/r$, where we take the zero of potential at infinity. The potential at P is the sum—that is, the integral—of the contributions dV from all the charge elements:

V is the potential at any point, arising from a continuous distribution of charge.

V is the integral over infinitesimal potentials dV .

dV is given by the point-charge potential of Equation 22.3: $dV = k dq/r$.

$$V = \int dV = \int \frac{k dq}{r} \quad (\text{potential of a continuous charge distribution}) \quad (22.7)$$

r is the distance from an individual charge element dq to the place where we're evaluating the potential.

where the integration is over the entire charge distribution. Example 22.6 provides a simple application of Example 22.7 where the integration is straightforward, while Example 22.7 is more challenging.

EXAMPLE 22.6 Potential of a Continuous Distribution: A Charged Ring

A total charge Q is distributed uniformly around a thin ring of radius a . Find the potential on the ring's axis.

INTERPRET We interpret the ring as a continuous charge distribution.

DEVELOP Equation 22.7, $V = \int k dq/r$, gives the potential for continuous charge distributions. Figure 22.12 is our drawing, showing an x -axis coincident with the ring axis, with $x = 0$ at the ring center.

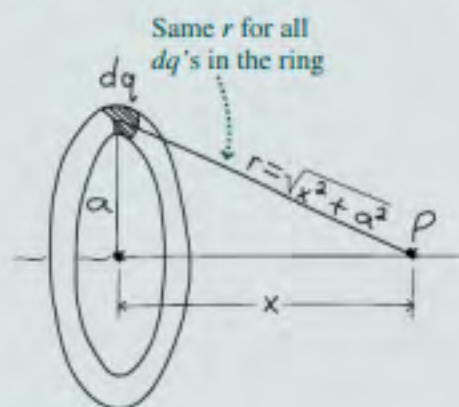


FIGURE 22.12 A charged ring.

Charge elements dq in this case are small segments of the ring, and Fig. 22.12 shows that the distance $r = \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}$ is the same for all charge elements.

EVALUATE Equation 22.7 becomes

$$V(x) = \int \frac{k dq}{r} = \frac{k}{r} \int dq = \frac{kQ}{r} = \frac{kQ}{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}} \quad (22.8)$$

The integration here is simplified because r is the same for all charge elements within the ring and so comes outside the integral; the remaining integral, $\int dq$, is the total charge Q .

ASSESS Make sense? At large distances ($x \gg a$), a^2 is negligible and our result becomes $V(x) = kQ/x$. This is the potential of a point charge Q —just as we'd expect when we're so far from the ring that its size isn't significant. At the ring's center, on the other hand, we have $V(0) = kQ/a$. Here we're a distance a from all parts of the ring, and since potential is a *scalar*, the different directions don't matter. The result is therefore the same as being a distance a from a point charge Q .

EXAMPLE 22.7 Potential of a Continuous Distribution: A Charged Disk

A charged disk of radius a carries a charge Q distributed uniformly over its surface. Find the potential at a point P on the disk axis, a distance x from the disk.

INTERPRET This problem, too, involves a continuous charge distribution.

DEVELOP Equation 22.7, $V = \int k dq/r$, determines the potential. But now all parts of the charge distribution aren't the same distance from P , so we have to set up the integral using the procedure outlined in Chapter 9's Tactics 9.1 and used most recently in Chapter 20 when we calculated the fields of continuous charge distributions. We've drawn the disk and its axis in Fig. 22.13. The preceding example suggests that we divide the disk into ring-shaped charge elements, as we've drawn in the figure. Each ring contributes a potential dV given by Equation 22.8: $dV = k dq/\sqrt{x^2 + r^2}$, where r is the ring radius. We get the potential of the entire disk by integrating over all the rings that make up the disk:

$$V(x) = \int_{\text{disk}} dV = \int_{r=0}^{r=a} \frac{k dq}{\sqrt{x^2 + r^2}}$$

Before we can evaluate this integral, we need to relate the charge element dq and the geometric variable r . Here the relation involves

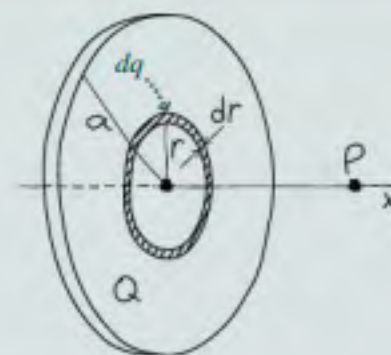


FIGURE 22.13 A charged disk, showing a ring-shaped charge element dq of radius r and width dr .

area: The ratio of ring area to disk area is the same as the ratio of dq to the total charge Q . "Unwinding" a ring gives a rectangle of length $2\pi r$ and width dr , so the ring area is $2\pi r dr$. The disk area is πa^2 , so $dq/Q = 2\pi r dr/\pi a^2$, giving $dq = (2Q/a^2)r dr$.

EVALUATE Using this result in our integral for the potential $V(x)$ gives

$$V(x) = \int_0^a \frac{2kQ}{a^2} \frac{r dr}{\sqrt{x^2 + r^2}} = \frac{kQ}{a^2} \int_0^a \frac{2r dr}{\sqrt{x^2 + r^2}}$$

(continued)

Now, $2r dr = d(r^2) = d(x^2 + r^2)$ since x is a constant with respect to the integration. The integral therefore has the form $\int u^{-1/2} du$, where $u = x^2 + r^2$, and the result is $2u^{1/2}$ or

$$V(x) = \frac{2kQ}{a^2} \sqrt{x^2 + r^2} \Big|_{r=0}^{r=a} = \frac{2kQ}{a^2} (\sqrt{x^2 + a^2} - |x|)$$

ASSESS Make sense? Figure 22.14 shows that it does. Close to the disk, the potential resembles that of an infinite sheet, changing linearly with distance (recall Example 22.2); far away, it has the $1/r$ behavior of a point-charge potential. It's only at intermediate distances—on the order of the disk radius a —that we really need our exact expression.

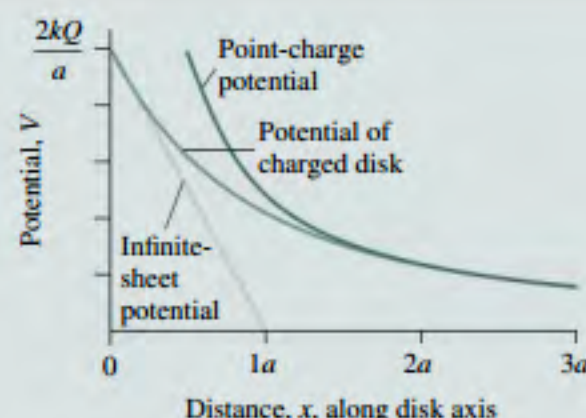


FIGURE 22.14 Charged-disk potential approaches that of an infinite sheet for points close to the disk, and that of a point charge far from the disk.

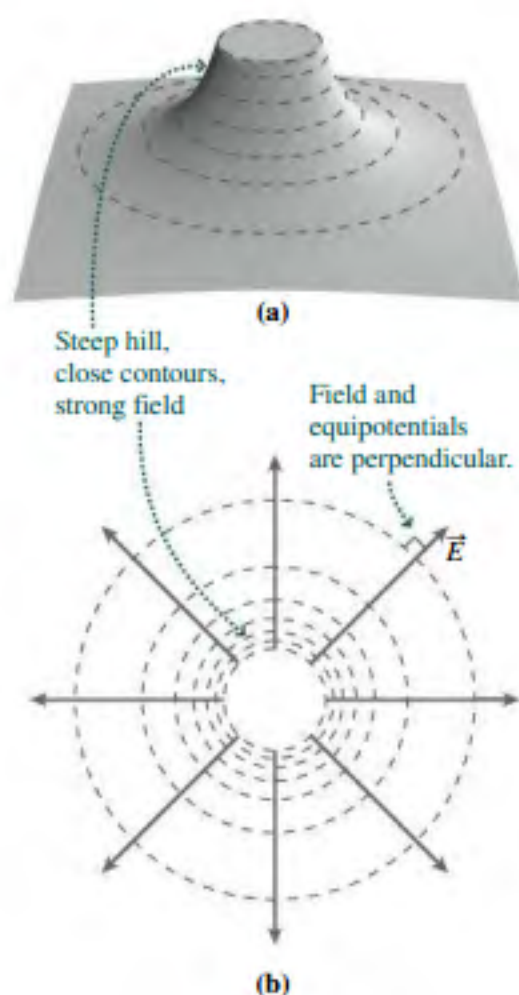


FIGURE 22.15 A flat-topped hill (a) and its contour map (b) represent equipotentials (dashed curves) for a charged spherical shell, in a plane through the shell's center.

22.3 Potential Difference and the Electric Field

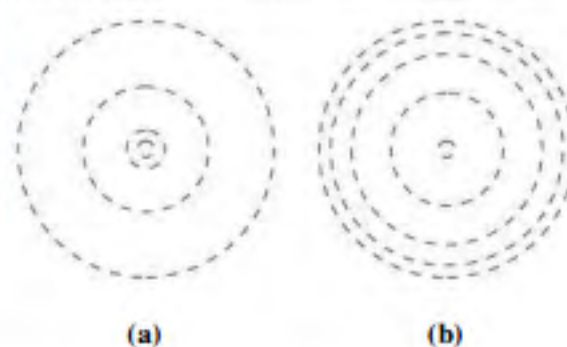
LO 22.6 Describe equipotentials and how they relate to electric fields.

LO 22.7 Determine electric fields given potential as a function of position.

It takes no work to move a charge at right angles to an electric field, so there's no potential difference between two points on a surface perpendicular to the field. Such surfaces are called **equipotentials**. Equipotentials are like contour lines on a topographic map (Fig. 22.15). A contour is a line of constant elevation, so you do no work against gravity as you move along it. Where contours are close, elevation changes rapidly. Similarly, closely spaced equipotentials indicate a large potential difference between nearby points. That means there must be a strong electric field present. Figure 22.15 might just as well represent electric potential, with closely spaced equipotentials—steep slopes on the “potential hill”—representing strong electric fields. Similarly, the equipotentials for a dipole (Fig. 22.16; see also Fig. 22.11) describe the steep “hill” of the positive charge and the “hole” of the negative charge that we showed in Fig. 22.11. There is one difference, though: Equipotentials are surfaces in three dimensions, and when we draw them as contour lines, we're showing only the surfaces' intersections with a plane.

GOT IT?

22.6 The figure shows cross sections through two equipotential surfaces. In both diagrams the potential difference between adjacent equipotentials is the same. Which could represent the field of a point charge? Explain.



Calculating Field from Potential

Given electric field lines, we can construct equipotentials. Conversely, given equipotentials, we can reconstruct the electric field by sketching field lines at right angles to the equipotentials. Specifying the potential at every point thus conveys all the information needed to determine the field.

We can quantify the relation between potential and field by considering the potential difference dV between two nearby points. Suppose they're separated by a small displacement dx in the x -direction. Then Equation 22.1b becomes $dV = -E_x dx$, where we

handled the dot product by considering only the component of $\vec{E}$ along the displacement. Dividing through by dx shows that we can write the electric-field component in the x -direction as $E_x = -dV/dx$. We can write similar expressions for the y - and z -components. When a function depends on more than one variable, as the potential generally does, we write derivatives with the partial derivative symbol ∂ instead of d to indicate the rate of change with respect to only one variable. Thus we have $E_x = -\partial V/\partial x$, $E_y = -\partial V/\partial y$, and $E_z = -\partial V/\partial z$. Putting together these three components lets us write the entire electric-field vector:

$$\vec{E} = -\left(\frac{\partial V}{\partial x}\hat{i} + \frac{\partial V}{\partial y}\hat{j} + \frac{\partial V}{\partial z}\hat{k}\right) \quad (22.9)$$

Equation 22.9 confirms that the electric field is strong where the potential changes rapidly. The minus sign here is the same as in both versions of Equation 22.1: It says that if we move in the direction of *increasing* potential, then we're moving *against* the electric field. Equation 22.9 also shows that the units of electric field, N/C, can be written equivalently as volts per meter—a unit widely used in both science and engineering.

Because potential is a scalar, it's often easier to calculate the potential and then use Equation 22.9 to get the field. The next example shows how.

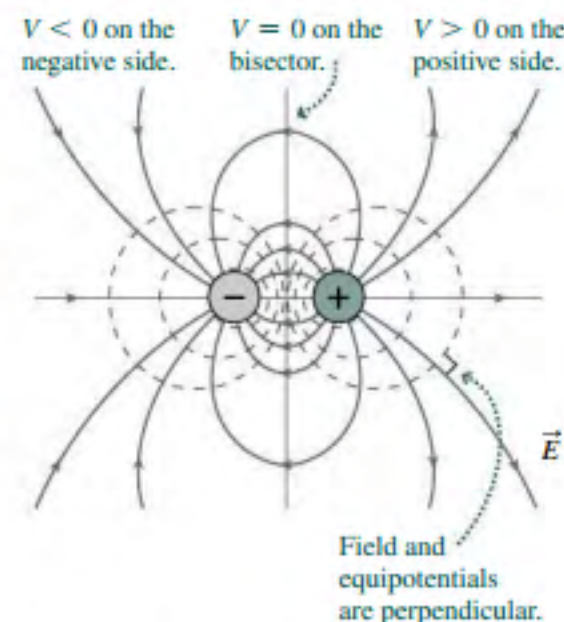


FIGURE 22.16 Equipotentials (dashed curves) and field lines for a dipole, in a plane containing the dipole. You should convince yourself that the equipotentials provide a contour map of Fig. 22.11.

EXAMPLE 22.8

Field from Potential: A Charged Disk

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Use the result of Example 22.7 to find the electric field on the axis of a charged disk.

INTERPRET Example 22.7 gives the potential of a charged disk, so this problem is about calculating electric field from potential.

DEVELOP Example 22.7 gives the potential on the axis of a charged disk: $V(x) = (2kQ/a^2)(\sqrt{x^2 + a^2} - |x|)$. Equation 22.9 shows that we can get the electric field by differentiating the potential with respect to all three coordinates. But here the potential depends only on x , so $\vec{E}$ has only an x -component—a fact that should also be evident from symmetry. Our plan is to apply Equation 22.9, differentiating $V(x)$ to get the field component E_x .

EVALUATE We apply Equation 22.9 to $V(x)$ to get

$$\begin{aligned} E_x &= -\frac{dV}{dx} = -\frac{d}{dx} \left[\frac{2kQ}{a^2} (\sqrt{x^2 + a^2} - |x|) \right] \\ &= \frac{2kQ}{a^2} \left(\pm 1 - \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}} \right) \end{aligned}$$

where the $\pm$ signs apply for $x > 0$ and $x < 0$, respectively. Because V depends only on x , we wrote the total derivative dV/dx rather than the partial derivative.

ASSESS Make sense? In Fig. 22.14 we showed that the field of a disk ought to look like that of a charged sheet close up and like a point charge far away. For $|x| \ll a$, our result gives $|E_x| = 2kQ/a^2$. With $k = 1/4\pi\epsilon_0$ and $Q/\pi a^2 = \sigma$, this is indeed the field $E = \sigma/2\epsilon_0$ of a charged sheet. You can show in Problems 72 that the case $|x| \gg a$ reduces to the field of a point charge Q , as expected.



FIELD AND POTENTIAL Note that the *values* of field and potential at a single point aren't related; rather, as Equation 22.9 shows, the field is determined by the *rate of change* of potential. Field and potential are related in the same way as acceleration and velocity; their *values* are independent, but one is the rate of change of the other—although with a negative sign in the case of field and potential. In particular, the field can be zero where the potential isn't, and vice versa. Conceptual Example 22.1 explores this situation.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 22.1 Potential and Field

A charge $+2Q$ lies at the origin, and a charge $-Q$ lies at $x = +a$. (a) In which of the three regions $x < 0$, $0 < x < a$, and $x > a$ could there be a point on the x -axis where the potential is zero? Take $V = 0$ at infinity. (b) Is the electric field at these points also zero?

INTERPRET We're asked about the general locations of points on the x -axis where the potential has the same value ($V = 0$) as it does at infinity, and about the electric field at those points.

DEVELOP The potential of a system of point charges is given by superposition—by summing the potentials for the individual point charges given by Equation 22.3, $V = \frac{kq}{r}$. So we want to locate points where the sum of the potentials from the positive charge $+2Q$ and the negative charge $-Q$ could sum to zero. In this respect this example is similar to Conceptual Example 20.2, except that there we were dealing with the electric field—a vector quantity—and here we're dealing with potential, which is a scalar.

EVALUATE As in Conceptual Example 20.2, all points with $x < 0$ are closer to the charge $2Q$, so its potential dominates and is always positive. So we can't have $V = 0$ in this region. Between the charges, where $0 < x < a$, we could be close to either charge depending on which end of the interval we're near. Near the positive charge, the potential must be positive; near the negative charge, it must be negative—and so there's a point somewhere in between where $V = 0$. (Because the charges have unequal magnitudes, that point won't be right in the middle. Can you tell whether it will be closer to $+2Q$ or to $-Q$?) Note that this middle situation is different from what we found for the electric field in Conceptual Example 20.2; there, the electric fields from the two charges point in the same direction in the region between the charges, so we couldn't have $E = 0$ in that region. Finally, for $x > a$ but still very close to $-Q$, the potential is dominated by the negative charge and so must be negative. But farther away, the charge distribution begins to look like a single charge with net charge

$2Q - Q = Q$, so the potential is positive at large distances. So there's a point in between where the potential is zero. Figure 22.17 is a plot of the potential on the x -axis, showing the two points we've identified. Now, Equation 22.9 shows that the electric field depends on the rate of change of potential, and that's zero where the curve in Fig. 22.17 is at a maximum or minimum. Since the maxima and minima don't occur where $V = 0$, we conclude that the electric field is *not* zero where the potential is zero.

ASSESS The two points we've located are actually the intersections of a $V = 0$ equipotential that surrounds the negative charge. Figure 22.18 shows a 3-D plot of the potential in the x - y plane, with that $V = 0$ equipotential marked. You can see that nearly all points in the diagram lie above the $V = 0$ equipotential, indicating positive potential. The exception are those points in the "hole" created by the negative charge.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Find the exact locations of the two points on the x -axis that this example identified as having $V = 0$.

EVALUATE Between the charges, the potential is given by

$$V = \frac{k(2Q)}{x} + \frac{k(-Q)}{a-x},$$
 where we chose the signs in the second denominator to ensure that it's *positive* since the r in $V = kq/r$ is always a positive *distance*. Setting $V = 0$ in this expression and solving for x gives $x = \frac{2}{3}a$. To the right of both charges, we have

$$V = \frac{k(2Q)}{x} + \frac{k(-Q)}{x-a},$$
 where again we chose the second denominator to be positive—now $x-a$ since we're in the region $x > a$. Setting $V = 0$ and solving now gives $x = 2a$.

ASSESS Our answers are both in the expected regions, and the fact that the $V = 0$ point between the charges is closer to the negative charge reflects the greater influence of the larger-magnitude positive charge.

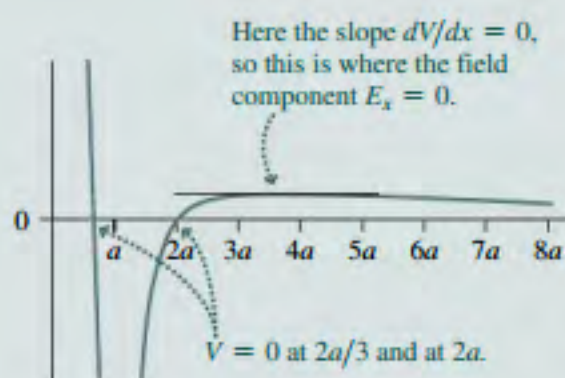


FIGURE 22.17 Potential V on the x -axis, showing points where $V = 0$. The potential goes to $\pm\infty$ at the locations of the positive charge ($x = 0$) and negative charge ($x = a$). Note that $E_x = 0$ not where the potential is zero but where $dV/dx = 0$. This point occurs at $x = 3.4a$, as found in Making the Connection for Conceptual Example 20.2.

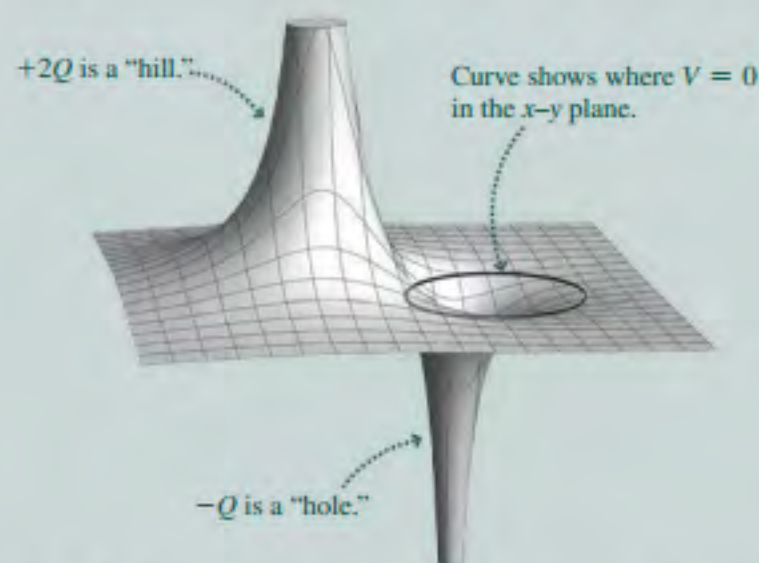


FIGURE 22.18 Three-dimensional plot of the potential V in the x - y plane, showing the $V = 0$ equipotential in the x - y plane. Where are the $V = 0$ points from Fig. 22.17 on this 3-D plot?

22.4 Charged Conductors

LO 22.6 Describe equipotentials near charged conductors.

There's no electric field inside a conducting material in electrostatic equilibrium, and at the conductor surface there's no field component parallel to the surface. Therefore, it takes no work to move a test charge on or inside a conductor—and that means **a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium is an equipotential**. We can exploit this fact to gain insight into the electric field at the surface of a conductor.

Consider an isolated, spherical conductor of radius R carrying charge Q . Charge is distributed uniformly over its surface, so the field outside the sphere is that of a point charge. Then the potential at its surface is $V(R) = kQ/R$, as we found in Example 22.3. Now consider two widely separated spheres of different sizes. If we connect them by a thin conducting wire (Fig. 22.19), charge will move through the wire until both spheres are at the same potential. But since the spheres are widely separated, each still has an essentially spherical charge distribution, so $V(R) = kQ/R$ gives each sphere's potential. Because the spheres have the same potential, $kQ_1/R_1 = kQ_2/R_2$. We can write each charge as the surface area multiplied by the surface charge density: $Q = 4\pi R^2\sigma$. Substituting for the Q 's in the above equation and solving for the ratio of surface charge densities then gives

$$\frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_2} = \frac{R_2}{R_1}$$

Thus the *smaller* sphere has the *higher* surface charge density. Since the electric field at a conductor surface has magnitude $E = \sigma/\epsilon_0$, the field must also be stronger at the smaller sphere. Conceptual Example 22.2 explores this situation further.

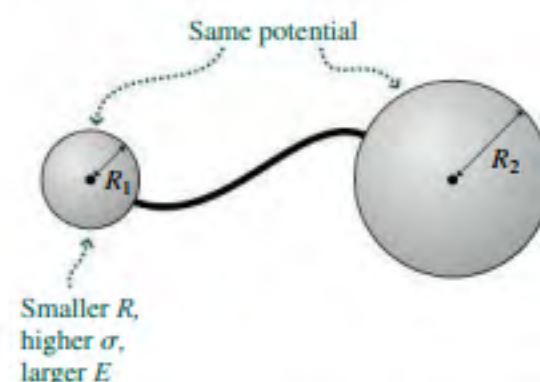


FIGURE 22.19 Two conducting spheres connected by a long conducting wire.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 22.2 An Irregular Conductor

Sketch some equipotentials and electric field lines for an isolated egg-shaped conductor.

EVALUATE Where the conductor surface curves sharply, it's like the small sphere of Fig. 22.19. It therefore has higher surface charge density and a stronger electric field, which means more field lines emerge where the surface curves sharply. Since the field is perpendicular at the

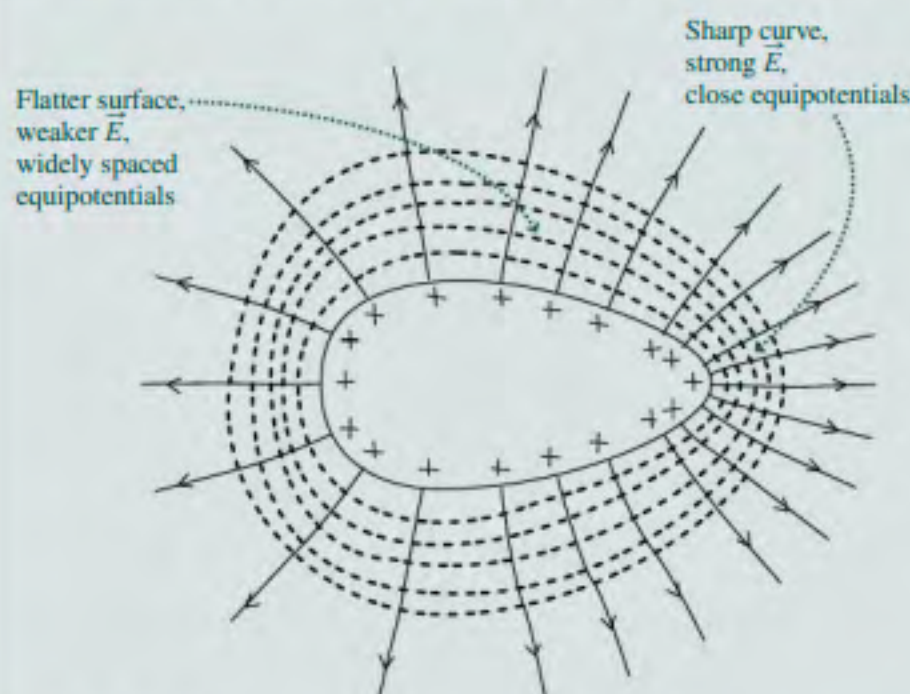


FIGURE 22.20 Equipotentials and field of a charged conductor.

conductor surface, equipotentials just above the surface have essentially the same shape as the surface. Far from the charged conductor, on the other hand, its field resembles that of a point charge, with radial field lines and circular equipotentials. Figure 22.20 gives an approximate picture of the field and equipotentials based on these considerations.

ASSESS Our analysis here applies only to an *isolated* conductor. Figure 22.21 shows how the presence of nearby charges alters the charge distribution on a conductor.

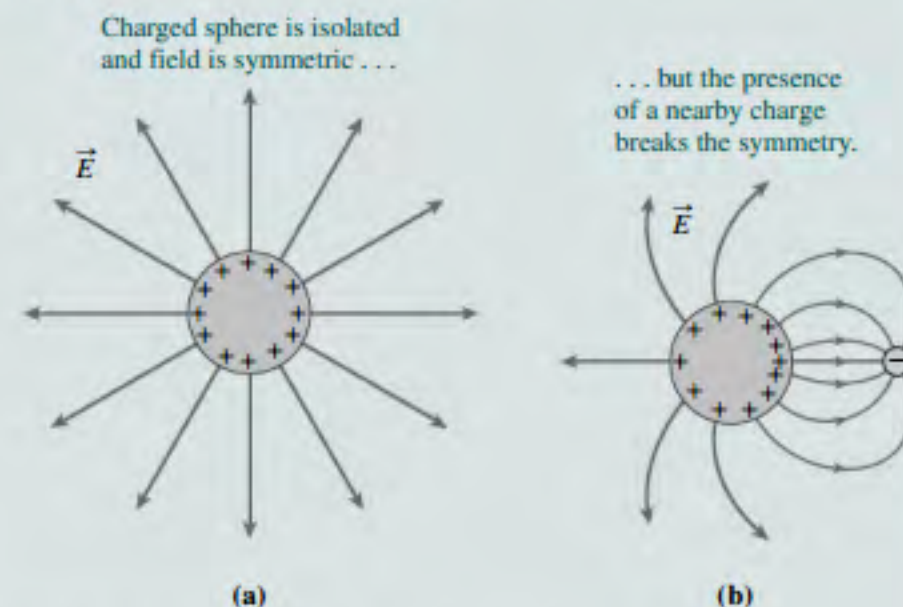


FIGURE 22.21 Distribution of charge on a conductor changes in the presence of another charge.

(continued)

MAKING THE CONNECTION The potential difference between the conductor in Fig. 22.20 and the outermost equipotential shown is 70 V. Determine approximate values for the strongest and weakest electric fields in the region shown in the figure, assuming it's drawn at actual size.

EVALUATE Electric field is the rate of change of potential. At the tip, where the field is strongest, the outermost equipotential is about 7 mm from the conductor. So the field here is approximately $(70 \text{ V})/(7 \text{ mm})$; that's 10 V/mm or 10 kV/m. At its most distant, the outer equipotential is about 12 mm from the conductor, giving a field of $(70 \text{ V})/(12 \text{ mm})$ or just under 6 kV/m.

APPLICATION Corona Discharge, Pollution Control, and Xerography

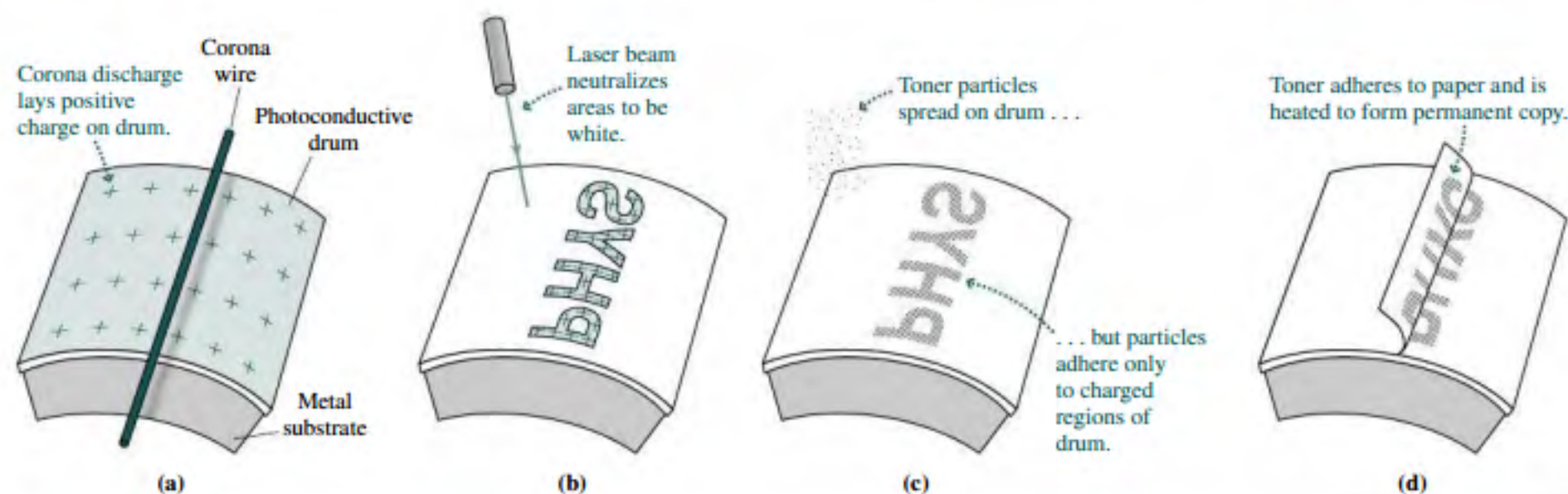


The large electric fields that develop at sharply curved conductors can cause serious problems in electric equipment. Fields stronger than 3 MN/C strip electrons from air molecules, making air a conductor. The result is a blue glow, called *corona discharge*, resulting from electrons recombining with atoms. Corona discharge causes energy loss from high-voltage transmission lines, so

engineers try to avoid sharp edges on conducting structures. The photo shows corona discharge leaking current across a power-line insulator.

Corona discharge can also be useful. Pollution-control devices called **electrostatic precipitators** use a thin wire at a high negative potential to produce a strong field that ionizes gas molecules. Ions adhere to pollutant particles, which are then attracted to positively charged collecting plates. Such devices remove up to 99% of particulate pollutants from power plants and factories, and their use under the Clean Air Act has substantially improved air quality in the United States.

You use corona discharge whenever you make a photocopy or print with a laser printer. The process here is *xerography*—literally, “dry writing”—and it starts with the uniform charging of a special photoconductive drum by corona discharge from a thin wire maintained at about 5 kV relative to the drum. The photoconductive material is a good insulator in the dark, but incident light dislodges electrons, which neutralize the charge on illuminated portions of the material. A laser beam scans the photoconductive drum, “writing” the image to be copied or printed by leaving darker areas charged and rendering lighter areas neutral. Next, a dusting of fine particles called *toner* is spread over the drum, adhering, via the electric force, only where the drum is charged. The toner is then transferred to a sheet of paper, which is heated to melt the particles into the paper, making a permanent copy. The diagram outlines this process.



Chapter 22 Summary

Big Idea

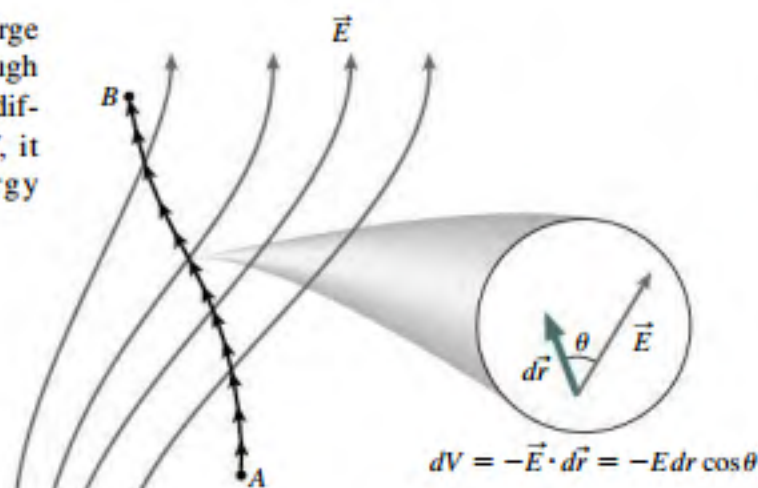
The big idea here is **electric potential difference**—a measure of the energy per unit charge involved in moving charge between two points in an electric field. Because the electric field is conservative, potential difference is path independent and thus depends only on the two points in question.

Key Concepts and Equations

Electric potential difference between points A and B is the negative of the line integral of the electric field over any path from A to B :

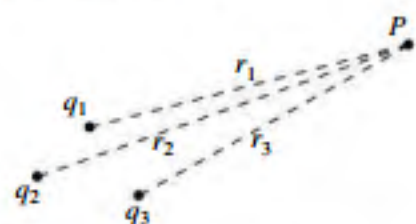
$$\Delta V_{AB} = \frac{\Delta U_{AB}}{q} = - \int_A^B \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{r}$$

When a charge “falls” through a potential difference ΔV , it gains energy $q \Delta V$.

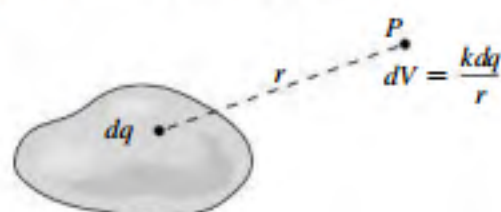


Potentials of charge distributions follow by summing or integrating the fields of pointlike charge elements:

$$V = \sum \frac{kq_i}{r_i} \quad (\text{discrete charges})$$



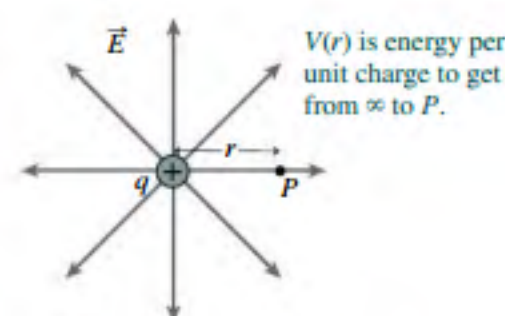
$$V = \int \frac{k dq}{r} \quad (\text{continuous charge distribution})$$



In a uniform field, the potential difference becomes

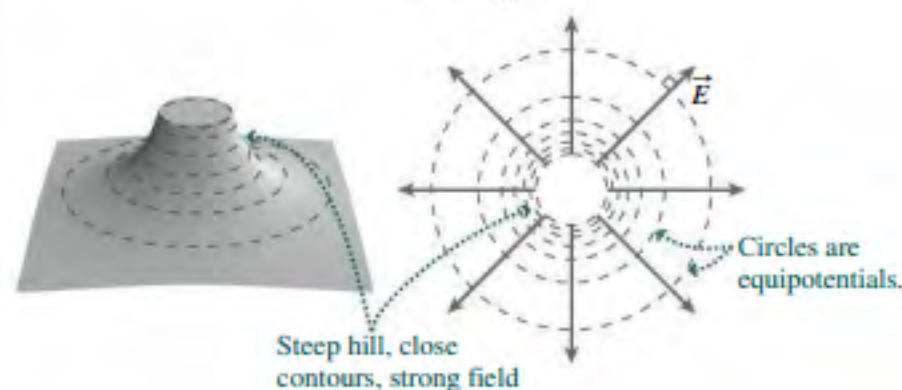
$$\Delta V_{AB} = -\vec{E} \cdot \Delta \vec{r}$$

The potential in the field of a point charge is $V(r) = kq/r$, where the zero of potential is taken at infinity and r is the distance from the point charge.



Equipotentials are surfaces of constant potential and are perpendicular to the electric field. Where equipotentials are close, the field is strong. The field component in a given direction depends on the rate at which potential changes with position; thus,

$$E_x = -\frac{dV}{dx}$$

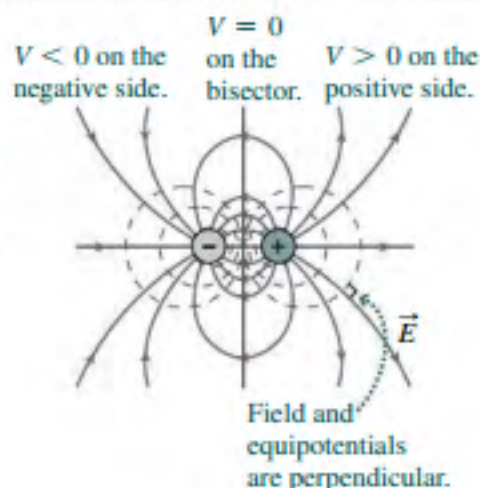


Applications

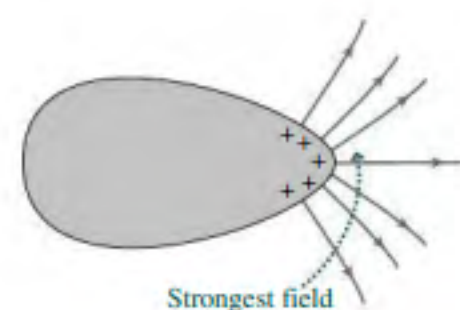
The dipole potential is

$$V = \frac{kp \cos \theta}{r^2}$$

where $p = qd$ is the dipole moment and the angle θ is measured from the dipole axis.



In charged conductors, the charge density is generally highest, and the field strongest, where a conductor curves sharply.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **Comp** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 22.1 Explain the concept of potential difference and calculate work done as charges move through given potential differences.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions</i> 22.1, 22.2, 22.3, 22.6, 22.7; <i>Exercises</i> 22.11, 22.12, 22.13, 22.14, 22.15, 22.16, 22.17, 22.18; <i>Problems</i> 22.41, 22.42, 22.44, 22.45, 22.47, 22.48, 22.74, 22.75</p> <p>LO 22.2 Calculate potential differences by integrating the electric field.
<i>Exercise</i> 22.19; <i>Problems</i> 22.39, 22.40, 22.43, 22.50, 22.51, 22.52, 22.53, 22.69, 22.83</p> <p>LO 22.3 Describe the potential differences associated with point charges and dipoles.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions</i> 22.8, 22.9; <i>Exercises</i> 22.20, 22.21, 22.22, 22.23; <i>Problems</i> 22.46, 22.47, 22.49, 22.57, 22.63, 22.71, 22.74, 22.76</p> <p>LO 22.4 Calculate potential differences of discrete charge distributions using superposition.
<i>Problems</i> 22.54, 22.55, 22.56, 22.78</p> | <p>LO 22.5 Calculate potential differences of continuous charge distributions by integration.
<i>Problems</i> 22.58, 22.59, 22.60, 22.61, 22.72, 22.73, 22.77, 22.79, 22.80, 22.81, 22.82</p> <p>LO 22.6 Describe equipotentials and how they relate to electric fields.
<i>Exercises</i> 22.24, 22.26</p> <p>LO 22.7 Determine electric fields given potential as a function of position.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions</i> 22.4, 22.5, 22.10; <i>Exercises</i> 22.25, 22.27; <i>Problems</i> 22.62, 22.64, 22.65, 22.70</p> <p>LO 22.8 Describe equipotentials near charged conductors.
<i>Exercises</i> 22.28, 22.29, 22.30; <i>Problems</i> 22.66, 22.67, 22.68, 22.71</p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- Why can a bird perch on a high-voltage power line without getting electrocuted?
- One proton is accelerated from rest by a uniform electric field, another proton by a nonuniform electric field. If they move through the same potential difference, how do their final speeds compare?
- Would a free electron move toward higher or lower potential?
- The electric field at the center of a uniformly charged ring is obviously zero, yet Example 22.6 shows that the potential at the center isn't zero. How is this possible?
- Must the electric field be zero at any point where the potential is zero? Explain.
- "Cherry picker" trucks for working on power lines often carry electrocution hazard signs. Explain how this hazard arises and why it might be more of a danger to someone on the ground than to a worker on the truck.
- Though birds can safely perch on high-tension wires, why do we often see dead birds hanging from the posts of these wires?
- A solid sphere contains positive charge uniformly distributed throughout its volume. Is the potential at its center higher than, lower than, or the same as at the surface?
- Two equal but opposite charges form a dipole. Describe the equipotential surface on which $V = 0$.
- The electric potential in a region increases linearly with distance. What can you conclude about the electric field in this region?
- The potential difference between the two sides of an ordinary electric outlet is 230 V. How much energy does an electron gain when it moves from one side to the other?
- It takes 60 J to move a 12-mC charge from point A to point B. What's the potential difference ΔV_{AB} ?
- Show that 1 V/m is the same as 1 N/C.
- Find the magnitude of the potential difference between two points located 1.3 m apart in a uniform 680-N/C electric field, if a line between the points is parallel to the field.
- A charge of 3.0 C moves from the positive to the negative terminal of a 9.0-V battery. How much energy does the battery impart to the charge?
- A proton, an alpha particle (a bare helium nucleus), and a singly ionized helium atom are accelerated through a 100-V potential difference. How much energy does each gain?
- BIO** The potential difference across a typical cell membrane is about 80 mV. How much work is done on a singly ionized potassium ion moving through the membrane?

Section 22.2 Calculating Potential Difference

- An electric field is given by $\vec{E} = E_0 \hat{j}$, where E_0 is a constant. Find the potential as a function of position, taking $V = 0$ at $y = 0$.
- The classical picture of the hydrogen atom has the electron orbiting 0.0529 nm from the proton. What's the electric potential associated with the proton's electric field at this distance?
- The potential at the surface of a 12-cm-radius sphere is 5.0 kV. What's the sphere's total charge, assuming charge is distributed in a spherically symmetric way?
- You're developing a switch for high-voltage power lines. The smallest part in your design is a 5.0-cm-diameter metal sphere. What do you specify for the maximum potential on your switch if the electric field at the sphere's surface isn't to exceed the 3-MV/m breakdown field of air?
- A 3.8-cm-diameter isolated metal sphere carries 0.89 μC . (a) Find the potential at the sphere's surface. (b) If a proton were released from rest at the surface, what would be its speed far from the sphere?

Exercises and Problems

Note: If you're asked for values of potential in these problems, and the zero of potential isn't specified, take $V = 0$ at infinity.

Exercises

Section 22.1 Electric Potential Difference

- How much work does it take to move a 35- μC charge against a 12-V potential difference?

Section 22.3 Potential Difference and the Electric Field

24. In a uniform electric field, equipotential plates that differ by 10.0 V are 4.63 cm apart. What's the field strength?
25. Figure 22.22 shows a plot of potential versus position along the x -axis. Make a plot of the x -component of the electric field for this situation.
26. Figure 22.23 shows some equipotentials in the x - y plane. (a) In what region is the electric field strongest? What are (b) the direction and (c) the magnitude of the field in this region?

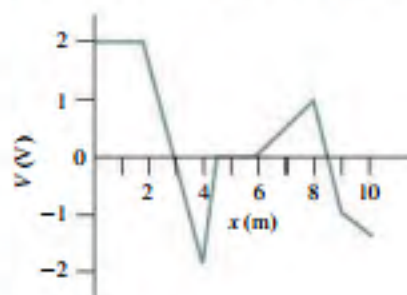


FIGURE 22.22 Exercise 25

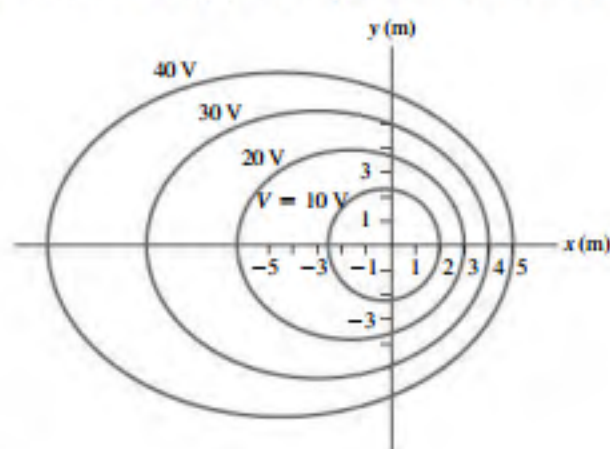


FIGURE 22.23 Exercise 26

27. The electric potential in a region is given by $V = 2xy - 3zx + 5y^2$, with V in volts and the coordinates in meters. Find (a) the potential and (b) the components of the electric field at the point $x = 3$ m, $y = 3$ m, $z = 1$ m.

Section 22.4 Charged Conductors

28. Dielectric breakdown of air occurs at fields of 3 MV/m. Find (a) the maximum potential (measured from infinity) for the sphere of Example 22.3 before dielectric breakdown occurs at the sphere's surface and (b) the charge on the sphere at this potential.
29. You're an automotive engineer working on the ignition system for a new engine. Its spark plugs have center electrodes made from 2.7-mm-diameter wire. The electrode ends gradually wear to a hemispherical shape, so they behave approximately like charged spheres. Your job is to specify the minimum potential that ensures these plugs will spark in air, neglecting the presence of the second electrode.
30. A large metal sphere has four times the diameter of a smaller sphere and carries four times the charge. Both spheres are isolated, so their surface charge densities are uniform. Compare (a) the potentials (relative to infinity) and (b) the electric field strengths at their surfaces.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

31. **Example 22.4:** A power distribution line in a city neighborhood is 1.27 cm in diameter and carries line charge density 52.6 nC/m.

Find the potential difference between the power line and the ground 12.8 m below.

32. **Example 22.4:** Consider a 2.54-cm-diameter power line for which the potential difference from the ground, 19.6 m below, to the power line is 115 kV. Find the line charge density on the power line. (That 115 kV is the lowest value typically used in long-distance power transmission.)
33. **Example 22.4:** Problem 43 of Chapter 20 considers a thin, uniformly charged rod of length L and total charge Q lying on the x -axis with its center at the origin, and shows that the electric field on the positive x -axis and beyond the rod end (i.e., for $x > L/2$) is given by $\vec{E}(x) = [4kQ/(4x^2 - L^2)]\hat{i}$. (a) Use this result to show that

the potential on the x -axis is given by $V(x) = \frac{kQ}{L} \ln\left(\frac{2x + L}{2x - L}\right)$,

where $x > L/2$ and where the zero of potential is taken at infinity. (b) Show that your result reduces to the point-charge potential for $x \gg L$. *Hint:* For (a), consult Appendix A's table of integrals; for (b) you'll need Appendix A's approximation for $\ln(1 + x)$, where x is a small quantity.

34. **Example 22.4:** You've got a thin charged rod as described in the preceding problem. You measure the potential and the electric field strength, both at $x = 3L$. The results are $V = 12.7$ kV and $E = 85.2$ kN/C. Find (a) the rod length L and (b) its charge Q .
35. **Example 22.8:** A disk of radius $a = 15.0$ cm carries charge $Q = 26.2$ μC distributed uniformly over its surface. Find the magnitude of the electric field on the disk axis, 85.0 cm from the disk center.
36. **Example 22.8:** The potential on the axis of a uniformly charged disk is 544 kV at a point 1.27 m from the disk center. The electric field at the same point is 417 kV/m. Find (a) the disk radius and (b) the charge on the disk. *Hint:* For (a), write E in terms of V , and you'll eliminate the term kQ/a .

37. **Example 22.8:** Use the result of Problem 61 to show that the magnitude of the electric field on the axis of the annulus shown in

$$\text{Fig. 22.25 is given by } E = 2k\pi\sigma\left(\frac{|x|}{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}} - \frac{|x|}{\sqrt{b^2 + x^2}}\right).$$

38. **Example 22.8:** An annulus like that shown in Fig. 22.25 has $a = 33.2$ cm and $b = 2a$. If the electric field at $x = a$ has magnitude 226 kV/m, what's the total charge on the annulus?

Problems

39. Two points A and B lie 11 cm apart in a uniform electric field, with the path AB parallel to the field. If the potential difference ΔV_{AB} is 870 V, what's the field strength?
40. **BIO** The electric field within a cell membrane is approximately 8.6 MV/m and is essentially uniform. If the membrane is 18 nm thick, what's the potential difference across the membrane?
41. What's the potential difference between the terminals of a battery that can impart 6.8×10^{-19} J to each electron that moves between the terminals?
42. An ion gains 1.70 fJ when it moves through a potential difference of 2.65 kV. Is it singly, doubly, triply, or quadruply ionized?
43. Two flat metal plates are a distance d apart, where d is small compared with the plate size. If the plates carry surface charge densities $\pm\sigma$, show that the magnitude of the potential difference between them is $V = \sigma d/\epsilon_0$.
44. An electron passes point A moving at 7.0 Mm/s. At point B it comes to a stop. Find the potential difference ΔV_{AB} .

45. A 4.8-g object carries $3.7 \mu\text{C}$. It acquires speed v when accelerated from rest through a potential difference V . If a 2.2-g object acquires twice the speed under the same circumstances, what's its charge?
46. Points A and B lie 32.0 cm apart on a line extending radially from a point charge Q , and the potentials at these points are $V_A = 362 \text{ V}$ and $V_B = 146 \text{ V}$. Find Q and the distance r between point A and the charge.
47. A sphere of radius R carries negative charge of magnitude Q , distributed in a spherically symmetric way. Find an expression for the escape speed for a proton at the sphere's surface—that is, the speed that would enable the proton to escape to arbitrarily large distances starting at the sphere's surface.
48. **BIO** Proton-beam therapy can be preferable to X rays for cancer treatment (although much more expensive) because protons deliver most of their energy to the tumor, with less damage to healthy tissue. A cyclotron used to accelerate protons for cancer treatment repeatedly passes the protons through a 15-kV potential difference. (a) How many passes are needed to bring the protons' kinetic energy to $1.5 \times 10^{-11} \text{ J}$? (b) What's that energy in eV?
49. A thin spherical shell of radius R carries positive charge Q spread uniformly over its surface. If the potential (relative to infinity) at a distance $2R$ from the shell's center is V_{2R} , what's the potential at the center?
50. A solid sphere of radius R carries charge Q distributed uniformly throughout its volume. Find the potential difference from the sphere's surface to its center. (*Hint:* Consult Example 21.1.)
51. Find the potential as a function of position in the electric field $\vec{E} = ax\hat{i}$, where a is a constant and where $V = 0$ at $x = 0$.

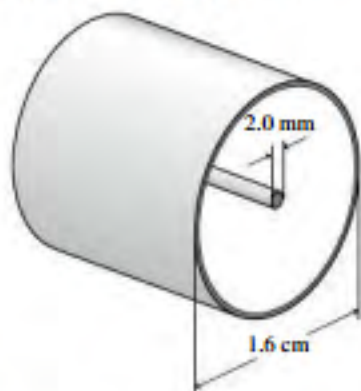


FIGURE 22.24 Problem 52

52. Your radio station needs a new coaxial cable to connect the transmitter and antenna. One possible cable consists of a 2.0-mm-diameter inner conductor and an outer conductor with diameter 1.6 cm and negligible thickness (Fig. 22.24); the maximum safe potential difference between the conductors is 2 kV. In your application, the conductors carry charge densities $\pm 62 \text{ nC/m}$. Will this cable work for you?
53. The potential difference between the surface of a 3.0-cm-diameter power line and a point 1.0 m distant is 3.9 kV. Find the line charge density on the power line.
54. Three equal charges q form an equilateral triangle of side a . Find the potential, relative to infinity, at the center of the triangle.
55. A charge $+Q$ lies at the origin and $-4Q$ at $x = a$. Find two points on the x -axis where $V = 0$.
56. Two identical charges q lie on the x -axis at $\pm a$. (a) Find an expression for the potential at all points in the x - y plane. (b) Show that your result reduces to the potential of a point charge for distances large compared with a .
57. A dipole of moment $p = 2.7 \text{ nC} \cdot \text{m}$ consists of two charges separated by far less than 20 cm. Find the potential 20 cm from the dipole (a) on its axis, (b) at 36° to its axis, and (c) on its perpendicular bisector.
58. A thin plastic rod 20 cm long carries 3.2 nC distributed uniformly over its length. (a) If the rod is bent into a ring, find the potential at its center. (b) If it's bent into a semicircle, find the potential at the center of the semicircle.
59. A thin ring of radius R carries charge $5Q$ distributed uniformly over two-thirds of its circumference and $-2Q$ over the rest. Find the potential at the ring's center.

60. The potential at the center of a uniformly charged ring is 50 kV, and 18 cm along the ring axis the potential is 26 kV. Find the ring's radius and total charge.

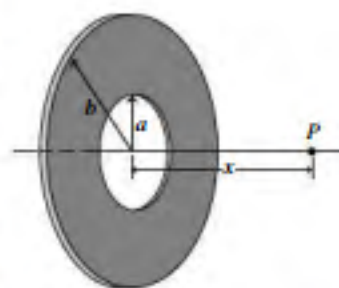


FIGURE 22.25 Problem 61

61. The annulus shown in Fig. 22.25 carries a uniform surface charge density σ . Its axis coincides with the x -axis. Show that the potential at an arbitrary point P on the axis is given by $V(x) = 2\pi k\sigma(\sqrt{x^2 + b^2} - \sqrt{x^2 + a^2})$, where the zero of potential is at infinity.
62. The potential in a region is given by $V = axy$, where a is a constant. (a) Determine the electric field in the region. (b) Sketch some equipotentials and field lines.
63. Use Equation 22.6 to calculate the electric field on the perpendicular bisector of a dipole, and show that your result is equivalent to Equation 20.6a.
64. Use the result of Example 22.6 to determine the on-axis electric field of a charged ring, and verify that your answer agrees with the result of Example 20.6.
65. The electric potential in a region is given by $V = -V_0(r/R)$, where V_0 and R are constants and r is the radial distance from the origin. Find expressions for the magnitude and direction of the electric field in this region.
66. Two metal spheres, each 1.1 cm in radius, are far apart. One sphere carries 30 nC, the other -20 nC . (a) What's the potential on each? (b) If the spheres are connected by a thin wire, what will be the potential on each once equilibrium is reached? (c) How much charge moves between the spheres in order to achieve equilibrium?
67. Two 5.1-cm-diameter conducting spheres are 8.0 m apart, and each carries $0.14 \mu\text{C}$. Determine (a) the potential on each sphere, (b) the field strength at the surface of each sphere, (c) the potential midway between the spheres, and (d) the potential difference between the spheres.
68. A 1.6-cm-radius metal sphere carries 75 nC and is surrounded by a concentric spherical conducting shell of radius 10 cm carrying -75 nC . (a) Find the potential difference between shell and sphere. (b) How would your answer change if the shell's charge were $+150 \text{ nC}$?
69. **CH** A sphere of radius R carries a nonuniform but spherically symmetric volume charge density that results in an electric field in the sphere given by $\vec{E} = E_0(r/R)^2\hat{r}$, where E_0 is a constant. Find the potential difference from the sphere's surface to its center.
70. The potential in a certain region is given by $V(x,y) = ax^2 + by^2$, where a and b are constants with the units V/m^2 and $b = 2a$. Describe the location of all points in the x - y plane where the electric field is oriented at 45° to both the x - and y -axes.
71. A conducting sphere 17.6 cm in diameter carries total charge 76.0 nC. It's surrounded by a concentric conducting shell 39.4 cm in diameter carrying -76.0 nC . (a) Find the potential at the sphere's surface, taking $V = 0$ at infinity. (b) What charge would be needed on the spherical shell in order to make the potential on the sphere equal to zero?
72. **CH** Show that the result of Example 22.8 approaches the field of a point charge for $x \gg a$. (*Hint:* You'll need to apply the binomial approximation from Appendix A to the expression $1/\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}$.)
73. The potential on the axis of a uniformly charged disk at 5.5 cm from the disk center is 140 V; the potential 15 cm from the disk center is 110 V. Find the disk radius and its total charge.

74. **CH** A uranium nucleus (mass 238 u, charge $92e$) decays, emitting an alpha particle (mass 4 u, charge $2e$) and leaving a thorium nucleus (mass 234 u, charge $90e$). At the instant the alpha particle leaves the nucleus, the centers of the two are 4.5 fm apart and essentially at rest. Treating each particle as a spherical charge distribution, find their speeds when they're a great distance apart.
75. **BIO** The Taser, an ostensibly nonlethal weapon used by police to subdue unruly suspects, shoots two conducting darts into the victim's body. Thin wires connect the darts back to the weapon, and once the darts are embedded, the weapon applies a 1200-V potential across them and delivers short pulses of electric charge to the darts. Each pulse carries 100 μC of charge. How much energy does the weapon need to supply to each charge pulse as it moves through the body from one dart to the other?
76. **CH** Using the dipole potential at points far from a dipole (given by Equation 22.6 in Example 22.5), show that the electric field at an arbitrary position can be written

$$\vec{E} = \frac{kp}{r^3} \left[(3\cos^2\theta - 1)\hat{i} + 3\sin\theta\cos\theta\hat{j} \right]$$

where the x -axis coincides with the dipole axis.

77. **DATA** Measurements of the potential at points on the axis of a charged disk are given in the two tables below. In both tables x is the coordinate measured along the disk axis with the origin at the disk center, and the zero of potential is taken at infinity. (a) For each set of data, determine a quantity that, when you plot potential against it, should yield a straight line. Make your plots, establish a best-fit line, and determine its slope. Use your slopes to find (b) the total charge on the disk and (c) the disk radius. (*Hint:* Consult Example 22.7.)

Table 1 (measurements taken close to disk)

x (mm)	2.0	4.0	6.0	8.0	10.0
V (V)	900	876	843	820	797

Table 2 (measurements taken far from disk)

x (mm)	20	30	40	60	100
V (V)	165	118	80	58	30

78. **CH** Find an equation describing the $V = 0$ equipotential in the x - y plane for the situation of Conceptual Example 22.1. That is, find a relation between x and y that holds on this equipotential.
79. **CH** A disk of radius a carries nonuniform surface charge density $\sigma = \sigma_0(r/a)$, where σ_0 is a constant. (a) Find the potential at an arbitrary point x on the disk axis, where $x = 0$ is the disk center. (b) Use the result of (a) to find the electric field on the disk axis, and (c) show that the field reduces to an expected form for $x \gg a$.
80. **CH** An open-ended cylinder of radius a and length $2a$ carries charge q spread uniformly over its surface. Find the potential at the center of the cylinder. (*Hint:* Treat the cylinder as a stack of charged rings, and integrate.)
81. **CH** A line charge extends along the x -axis from $-L/2$ to $L/2$. Its line charge density is $\lambda = \lambda_0(x/L)^2$, where λ_0 is a constant. (a) Find an expression for the potential on the x -axis for $x > L/2$. (b) Check that your expression reduces to an expected result for $x \gg L$.
82. **CH** Repeat the preceding problem for the charge distribution $\lambda = \lambda_0 x/L$. (*Hint* on part (b): What does this charge distribution resemble at large distances?)
83. **COMP** You're sizing a new electric transmission line, and you can save money with thinner wire. The potential difference between the

line and the ground, 60 m below, is 115 kV. The field at the wire surface cannot exceed 25% of the 3-MV/m breakdown field in air. Neglecting charges in the ground itself, what minimum wire diameter do you specify? (*Hint:* You'll have to do a numerical calculation.)

Passage Problems

BIO Standard electrocardiography measures time-dependent potential differences between multiple points on the body, giving cardiologists multiple perspectives on the heart's electrical activity. In contrast, Fig. 22.26 is a "snapshot" showing a more detailed picture at an instant of time. The lines are equipotentials on the surface of a human torso, associated with the heart's electrical activity. Relative to the line marked $V = 0$, the potential is negative to the upper left (black) and positive to the lower right (color).

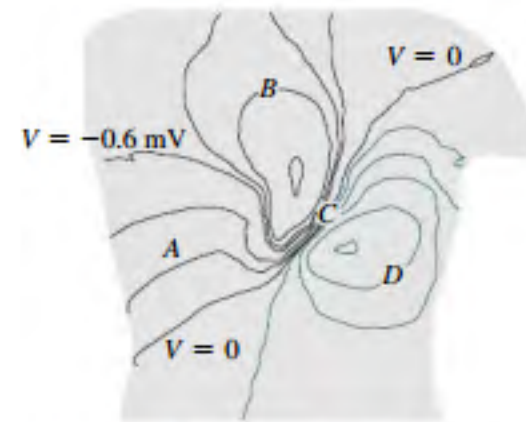


FIGURE 22.26 Equipotentials on a human torso (Passage Problems 84–87)

84. From the equipotentials, you can infer that the heart's electrical structure resembles that of a
- uniformly charged sheet.
 - dipole.
 - point charge.
 - uniformly charged sphere.
85. The electric field in the vicinity of the heart points approximately
- from upper left to lower right.
 - from lower left to upper right.
 - from upper right to lower left.
 - from lower right to upper left.
86. The electric field is strongest in the region marked
- A.
 - B.
 - C.
 - D.
87. The electric field in region A is approximately
- 20 $\mu\text{N/C}$.
 - 2 mN/C.
 - 20 mN/C.
 - 2 kN/C.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

138,000 volts is a measure of electric potential difference—the energy per unit charge involved in moving electric charge between two points. Luckily, the parasailer is in contact with only one wire, so he doesn't experience that lethal potential difference.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 22.1 (1) doubles; (2) doubles; (3) becomes zero; (4) reverses sign
- 22.2 (1) 10 eV; (2) 20 eV; (3) 10 eV
- 22.3 (c) $>$ (a) $>$ (b)
- 22.4 (a) because the field is stronger
- 22.5 Zero for all three: Potential difference is path independent, and is zero on a dipole's perpendicular bisector.
- 22.6 (a), because the equipotentials are closer nearer the center, indicating a stronger field.

Electrostatic Energy and Capacitors

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 23.1 Calculate electrostatic energy for simple charge distributions.
- LO 23.2 Describe capacitance and relate charge, potential difference, and energy in capacitors.
- LO 23.3 Determine the equivalent capacitance of series and parallel capacitors.
- LO 23.4 Explain the role of dielectrics and working voltage in capacitors.
- LO 23.5 Recognize that all electric fields store energy, and calculate the stored energy for simple field configurations.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The electric field (Section 20.3)
- Potential difference (Sections 21.1 and 21.2)

Figure 23.1 shows three positive charges arranged to form a triangle. Stored in this charge distribution is **electrostatic energy** representing the work done against the repulsive electric forces as the charges were brought into proximity. Although this example may seem trivial, its implications are not. Energy storage in configurations of electric charge is a vital aspect of natural and technological systems. The energy of chemical reactions—including metabolizing food and burning fuels—is ultimately electric energy released in the rearrangement of molecular charge distributions. Energy storage using charged conductors is essential in technologies ranging from computer memories to cameras to high-powered lasers.

23.1 Electrostatic Energy

LO 23.1 Calculate electrostatic energy for simple charge distributions.

Let's find the energy stored in the configuration of Fig. 23.1, assuming we start with widely separated charges and bring them in sequentially. It takes no work to bring in charge q_1 , since there's initially no electric field. But with q_1 in place, bringing in q_2 means doing work against q_1 's electric field. In Chapter 22 we found that the potential of a point charge q is $V = kq/r$. So the potential V_1 , which is due to q_1 and is evaluated at the eventual location of q_2 , is kq_1/a , where a is the side of the triangle. That potential is the energy per unit charge; given q_2 's charge, the work needed to bring in q_2 is $W_2 = q_2V_1 = kq_1q_2/a$. Then we bring in q_3 , which experiences the electric fields of both q_1 and q_2 . This requires work done against both fields; following our reasoning for q_2 , that work is $W_3 = kq_1q_3/a + kq_2q_3/a$. The denominator



The lifesaving jolt of a defibrillator requires a large amount of energy delivered in a short time. Where does that energy come from?

is the same in both terms because the charges form an equilateral triangle. So the total work done to assemble this charge distribution is

$$W_2 + W_3 = \frac{kq_1q_2}{a} + \frac{kq_1q_3}{a} + \frac{kq_2q_3}{a}.$$

Because the electric field is conservative, this work becomes the stored electrostatic energy, U .

Although we considered the three charges in Fig. 23.1 to be positive, our expression for work holds no matter what the signs. That means electrostatic energy can be positive or negative, depending on the sign of the work done in assembling a charge distribution. If it's negative, then it takes work to separate the charges. Although we considered assembling our charges in the order 1, 2, 3, the expression for work would have been the same no matter what the order—showing that electrostatic energy is a property of a charge distribution, independent of how it's assembled. Figure 23.1 is a simple metaphor for a molecule. Water, for example, consists of a negatively charged oxygen atom and two positively charged hydrogen atoms. The electrostatic energy is negative and represents the energy it would take to dissociate the molecule; equivalently, it's the energy released when the water molecule forms from individual atoms.

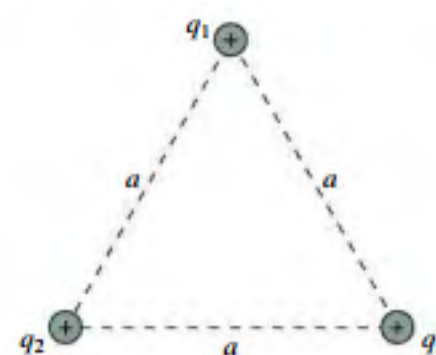


FIGURE 23.1 Electrostatic energy is stored in this configuration of three point charges.

GOT IT?

23.1 Three positive charges and one negative charge, all with the same charge magnitude Q , are assembled into a square, as shown. Is the stored electrostatic energy (a) positive, (b) negative, or (c) zero?



23.2 Capacitors

LO 23.2 Describe capacitance and relate charge, potential difference, and energy in capacitors.

In technological applications, we often store energy in **capacitors**—pairs of electrical conductors that carry equal but opposite charges. Capacitors come in many configurations, but it's easiest to analyze the **parallel-plate capacitor** consisting of two closely spaced conducting plates (Fig. 23.2a). Understanding this device not only is technologically valuable but will also give you deep insights into the electric field and electrostatic energy.

Initially both capacitor plates are electrically neutral. We charge the capacitor by transferring charge between the plates, building up positive charge on one plate and equal negative charge on the other. In practice, we accomplish this by connecting the capacitor to a battery, but here it's easier to imagine grabbing charge from one plate and physically moving it to the other. Charge on the plates produces an electric field between them, as shown in Fig. 23.2b. With closely spaced plates that field is essentially uniform in the region between the plates, except right near the edges. Outside, the field is so small as to be negligible. So we can approximate the parallel-plate capacitor as having a uniform field confined entirely to the region between its plates.

In Chapter 21 we showed that the electric field at the surface of a conductor is $E = \sigma/\epsilon_0$, with σ the charge per unit area. Here we've got charge spread uniformly over the capacitor plates, so if there's charge Q on a plate, then $\sigma = Q/A$, and the uniform field between the plates is $E = Q/\epsilon_0 A$. (If you think this should be doubled because there are two plates, reread the discussion around Figs. 21.28 and 21.29 to see why not.) In this uniform field, the potential difference between the plates is the product of the field and the plate separation: $V = Ed = Qd/\epsilon_0 A$.

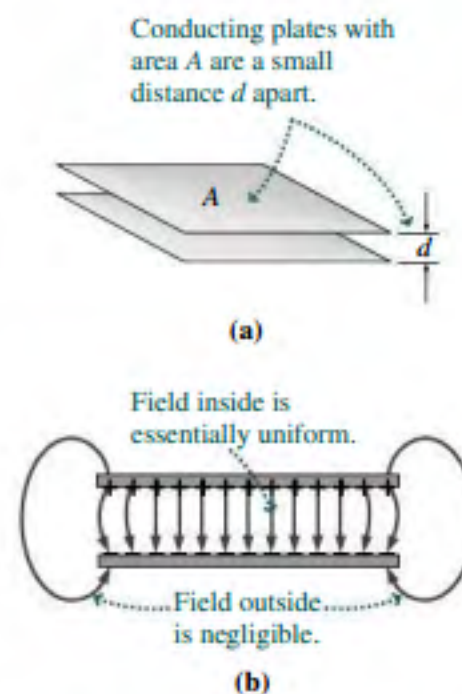


FIGURE 23.2 (a) A parallel-plate capacitor consists of closely spaced conducting plates with area A and spacing d . (b) Edge-on view, showing the electric field.

Capacitance

We can rewrite our expression for the potential difference between the plates of the capacitor in the form $Q = (\epsilon_0 A/d)V$. We added the parentheses to emphasize two things: First, charge is linearly proportional to potential difference; second, the proportionality factor depends only on the constant ϵ_0 and on the geometry—here the plate area and spacing—of the two charged conductors. This factor gives the ratio of charge to potential difference, which defines the **capacitance** of a configuration of two conductors:

A capacitor is a pair of insulated conductors. Its capacitance C . . .

. . . is the ratio of charge Q to voltage V .

$$C = \frac{Q}{V} \quad (\text{capacitance}) \quad (23.1)$$

Capacitance depends only on the physical properties of the capacitor.

Capacitance depends on the physical arrangement of the conductors, and it's a constant for a given capacitor. Our expression $Q = (\epsilon_0 A/d)V$ shows that the capacitance of a parallel-plate capacitor is

$$C = \frac{\epsilon_0 A}{d} \quad (\text{parallel-plate capacitor}) \quad (23.2)$$

Problems 60 and 61 explore capacitance for other configurations.

Equation 23.1 shows that the units of capacitance are coulombs/volt. This unit has its own name, the **farad** (F), in honor of the 19th-century scientist Michael Faraday. One farad is a large capacitance; practical capacitors are often measured in μF (10^{-6} F) or pF (10^{-12} F). Incidentally, Equation 23.2 shows that the units of ϵ_0 may be expressed as F/m.

GOT IT?

23.2 If I give you a 5-gallon bucket, you know how much water it can hold. If I give you a 5- μF capacitor, do you know how much charge it can hold? Explain.

APPLICATION Uninterruptable Power

Computers, web servers, data centers, medical electronics, telecommunications, and a host of other vital electronic technologies are subject to failure or severe disruption in the event of even the briefest power outages. Traditionally, backup batteries have been used to provide sensitive equipment with uninterrupted power during outages. But batteries are heavy, expensive, relatively short-lived, and difficult to maintain. They can't easily deliver large amounts of power, and it takes time to switch to backup batteries. Increasingly, responsibility for maintaining uninterrupted power during short outages falls to **ultracapacitors**—large-capacitance capacitors capable of storing substantial energy and releasing it quickly to maintain power to sensitive equipment. Capacitor-based uninterruptable power supplies (UPSs) are available with outputs ranging from a few watts to kilowatts and even megawatts. They ensure almost instantaneous continuity of energy supply during short outages, and for longer outages they provide a “bridge” to longer-running backup sources like fuel cells or generators.

Energy Storage in Capacitors

Imagine moving a small charge dQ from the negative to the positive plate of a capacitor when there's a potential difference V between the plates. Since potential difference is work per unit charge, this takes work $dW = V dQ$. The additional charge increases the electric field in the capacitor, resulting in an increase dV in the potential difference. Equation 23.1 shows that the increases dQ and dV are related by $dQ = C dV$. So the work involved in moving the charge dQ between the plates becomes $dW = V dQ = CV dV$.

If we start with the capacitor uncharged and then begin transferring charge between the plates, we'll need to do increasing amounts of work because the electric field and potential difference increase continuously with the charge we've already transferred. The total work involved will be the sum of all the dW values. Here the potential difference increases continuously, so that sum becomes an integral:

$$W = \int dW = \int_0^V CV dV = \frac{1}{2} CV^2$$

where the last step follows because the integral has the familiar form $\int x dx = \frac{1}{2} x^2$. The work we do in charging the capacitor is stored as potential energy U , so

$$U = \frac{1}{2} CV^2 \quad (\text{energy in a capacitor}) \quad (23.3)$$

We can measure potential difference V directly, with a voltmeter, so it's more useful to express the energy in terms of voltage rather than charge.



CHARGED BUT NEUTRAL A “charged capacitor” means a capacitor with one plate positive and the other negative; overall, the capacitor remains neutral (Fig. 23.3). The charge Q refers to the *magnitude* of the charge on either plate—not to the capacitor’s net charge, which is zero.

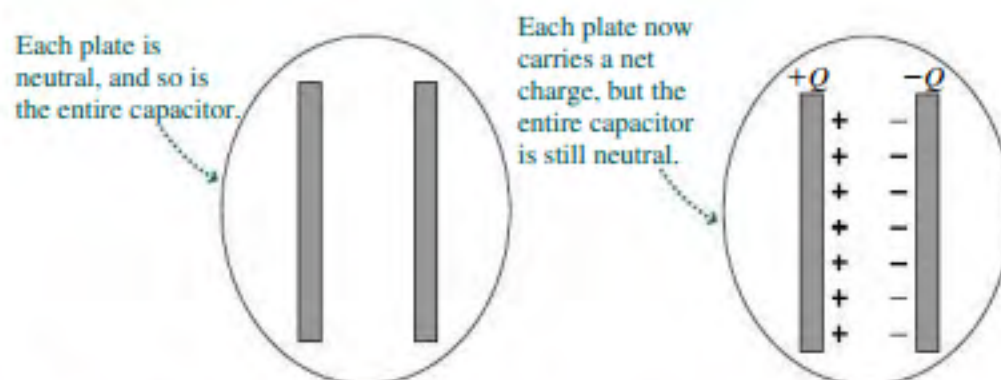


FIGURE 23.3 The net charge on the entire capacitor is zero, whether it’s uncharged (left) or charged (right).

EXAMPLE 23.1 Capacitance, Charge, and Energy: A Parallel-Plate Capacitor

A capacitor consists of two circular metal plates of radius $R = 12$ cm, separated by $d = 5.0$ mm. (a) Find its capacitance. Find (b) the charge on the plates and (c) the stored energy when the capacitor is connected to a 12-V battery.

INTERPRET Because the plates’ area is much larger than their separation, we can treat the field between them as uniform. So we identify the configuration as a parallel-plate capacitor.

DEVELOP We’ve sketched the capacitor in Fig. 23.4. Equation 23.2, $C = \epsilon_0 A/d$, determines the capacitance for part (a) from the separation distance and plate area ($A = \pi R^2$). For parts (b) and (c) the 12-V battery maintains a 12-V potential difference across the capacitor. Knowing that voltage and the capacitance, we can find the capacitor’s charge from Equation 23.1, $C = Q/V$, and the stored energy from Equation 23.3, $U = \frac{1}{2} CV^2$.

EVALUATE We first solve part (a) for the capacitance:

$$C = \frac{\epsilon_0 A}{d} = \frac{\epsilon_0 \pi R^2}{d} = 80 \text{ pF}$$

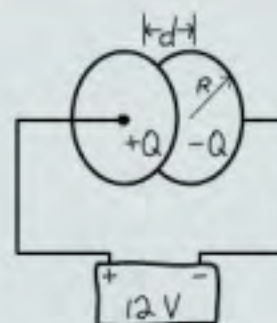


FIGURE 23.4 Sketch for Example 23.1.

For part (b) the definition of capacitance then gives

$$Q = CV = (80 \text{ pF})(12 \text{ V}) = 960 \text{ pC}$$

or just under 1 nC. Then (c) the stored energy is

$$U = \frac{1}{2} CV^2 = \frac{1}{2} (80 \text{ pF})(12 \text{ V})^2 = 5760 \text{ pJ}$$

or about 5.8 nJ.

ASSESS Make sense? At 80 pF, this is a pretty small capacitor, so no wonder the charge and energy are measured in nano-units (nC and nJ).

23.3 Using Capacitors

LO 23.3 Determine the equivalent capacitance of series and parallel capacitors.

LO 23.4 Explain the role of dielectrics and working voltage in capacitors.

Capacitors are essential in modern technology. They range from the billions of 25-fF (10^{-15} F) capacitors that store individual bits of information in your computer’s memory, to millifarad-range capacitors that smooth 60-Hz AC power to provide steady current to your stereo, to so-called *ultracapacitors* measuring hundreds of farads that store electric energy for short bursts of power in systems ranging from power tools to buses to hybrid cars and subway trains. Figure 23.5 shows some typical capacitors used in electronic equipment.

Practical Capacitors

Equation 23.2 shows that the way to achieve a large capacitance is with large plate area and small spacing. That’s true in general, whether or not a capacitor has parallel-plate



FIGURE 23.5 Typical capacitors. The large unit is an 18-mF electrolytic capacitor. At top right is an air-insulated variable capacitor in which one set of plates rotates to change the capacitance. The smaller capacitors range from 43 pF to 10 μ F.

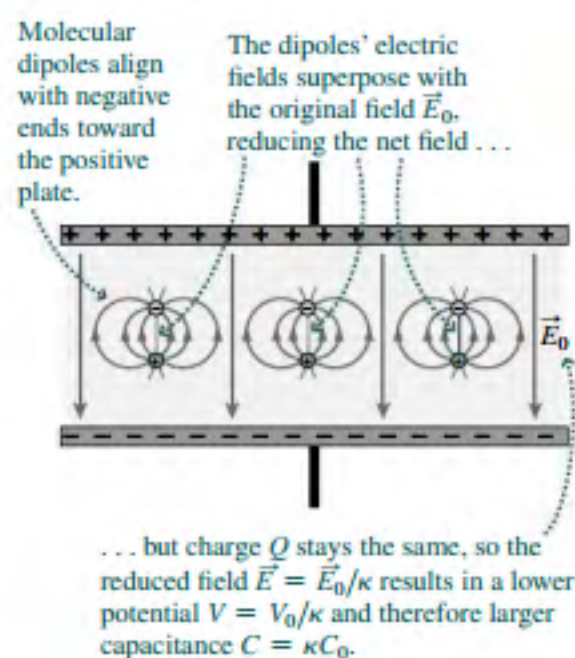


FIGURE 23.6 A capacitor with a dielectric.

geometry. Inexpensive capacitors are often made from two long strips of aluminum foil separated by thin plastic insulation. This foil “sandwich” is rolled into a compact cylinder, wires are attached, and the whole thing is dipped in a protective coating. Very large capacitances are achieved with *electrolytic capacitors*, in which a thin insulating layer develops chemically under the influence of the applied voltage. Capacitors are among the hardest components to fabricate on integrated-circuit chips, but small-capacitance units can be made by alternating conductive material with an insulating layer.

Our analysis of the parallel-plate capacitor assumed air between the plates. But most capacitors have solid insulating materials, or **dielectrics**, that contain molecular dipoles but no free charge. In Section 20.5 we showed how the alignment of molecular dipoles in a dielectric reduces the field in the material. In a capacitor, the effect is also to reduce the potential difference V between the plates (Fig. 23.6). The factor by which the field and potential difference decrease is the **dielectric constant**, κ (Greek kappa), of the insulating material. For a given charge Q , decreased potential difference means a larger capacitance $C = Q/V$. Thus a parallel-plate capacitor with a dielectric between its plates has capacitance

$$C = \kappa \frac{\epsilon_0 A}{d} \quad (\text{parallel-plate capacitor with dielectric}) \quad (23.4)$$

Most materials have dielectric constants between about 2 and 10; see Table 23.1. Some tantalum compounds have much higher values of κ , making this rare element a crucial material in today’s electronic age.

Another practical consideration is a capacitor’s **working voltage**, the maximum safe potential difference, beyond which there’s a risk of dielectric breakdown. For a given material, breakdown occurs at a fixed electric field; for air it’s 3 MV/m, while polyethylene breaks down at 50 MV/m. In a parallel-plate capacitor the field is $E = V/d$, so the smaller the spacing, the lower the allowed voltage before breakdown. Thus there’s a trade-off between large capacitance (small d) and high working voltage (large d). Large-capacitance, high-voltage capacitors are expensive!

Table 23.1 Properties of Some Common Dielectrics

Dielectric Material	Dielectric Constant	Breakdown Field (MV/m)
Air	1.0006	3
Aluminum oxide	8.4	670
Glass (Pyrex)	5.6	14
Paper	3.5	14
Plexiglas	3.4	40
Polyethylene	2.3	50
Polystyrene	2.6	25
Quartz	3.8	8
Tantalum oxide	26	500
Teflon	2.1	60
Water	80	depends on time and purity

EXAMPLE 23.2 Finding Charge and Energy: Which Capacitor?

A 100- μF capacitor has a working voltage of 20 V, while a 1.0- μF capacitor is rated at 300 V. Which can store more charge? More energy?

INTERPRET This problem involves the charge and energy stored in capacitors, now constrained by the working voltage.

DEVELOP Equation 23.1, in the form $Q = CV$, determines the charge, and Equation 23.3, $U = \frac{1}{2}CV^2$, determines the stored energy.

Setting V equal to the working voltage will give the maximum charge and energy.

EVALUATE For the charges on the two capacitors, we get from Equation 23.1,

$$Q_{100\mu\text{F}} = CV = (100 \mu\text{F})(20 \text{ V}) = 2.0 \text{ mC}$$

and, similarly, $Q_{1\mu\text{F}} = 0.30 \text{ mC}$. The energies follow from Equation 23.3:

$$U_{100\mu\text{F}} = \frac{1}{2} CV^2 = \frac{1}{2} (100 \mu\text{F}) (20 \text{ V})^2 = 20 \text{ mJ}$$

and, similarly, $U_{1\mu\text{F}} = \frac{1}{2} (1.0 \mu\text{F}) (300 \text{ V})^2 = 45 \text{ mJ}$. So the $100\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor stores more charge, but the $1\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor stores more energy.

ASSESS Make sense? The larger capacitor holds more *charge*, despite its lower working voltage. But the *energy* in depends on V^2 , so the smaller capacitor wins out because of its much higher working voltage.

GOT IT?

23.3 You need to replace a capacitor with one that can store more energy. Which will give you greater energy increase: (a) a capacitor with twice the capacitance and the same working voltage as the old one or (b) a capacitor with the same capacitance but twice the working voltage?

Connecting Capacitors: Parallel

Connecting capacitors together lets us achieve capacitance or working voltage that might not be available in a single capacitor. There are two simple ways to connect capacitors and other electronic components: in **parallel** and in **series** (Fig. 23.7).

With capacitors in parallel, a conducting wire connects the top plates of each capacitor and another connects the bottom plates. Therefore, both top plates are at the same potential, and so are both bottom plates. That means **two capacitors in parallel have the same potential difference between their plates**. We'll find that's always true for electric components in parallel. We want the equivalent capacitance of the parallel combination, meaning the ratio of the total charge on both capacitors to their common voltage V . Given the definition $C = Q/V$, we can write $Q_1 = C_1 V$ and $Q_2 = C_2 V$. So the total charge is $Q = Q_1 + Q_2 = C_1 V + C_2 V$. The equivalent capacitance is then $C = Q/V$ or $C = C_1 + C_2$. So two capacitors in parallel add, a result that generalizes to any number of capacitors:

$$C = C_1 + C_2 + C_3 + \cdots \quad (\text{parallel capacitors}) \quad (23.5)$$

Connecting Capacitors: Series

Figure 23.8 is a closer look at the series combination of Fig. 23.7b, showing what happens if we put charge $+Q$ on the top plate of C_1 and charge $-Q$ on the lower plate of C_2 . Each of these charged plates pulls the opposite charge to the other plate of the individual capacitors—and that means **two capacitors in series carry the same charge**. But now the voltages can be different; they're given by Equation 23.1 as $V_1 = Q/C_1$ and $V_2 = Q/C_2$, where Q is the common charge. Since the electric fields in the two capacitors point the same way, the voltage across the series combination is $V = V_1 + V_2 = Q/C_1 + Q/C_2$. Dividing through by Q gives V/Q , which is the inverse of the equivalent capacitance Q/V . Thus

$$\frac{1}{C} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2}$$

More generally, capacitors in series add reciprocally:

$$\frac{1}{C} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3} + \cdots \quad (\text{series capacitors}) \quad (23.6a)$$

With two capacitors it's straightforward to invert Equation 23.6a to get

$$C = \frac{C_1 C_2}{C_1 + C_2} \quad (23.6b)$$

Either way, the combined capacitance is less than any of the individual capacitances.

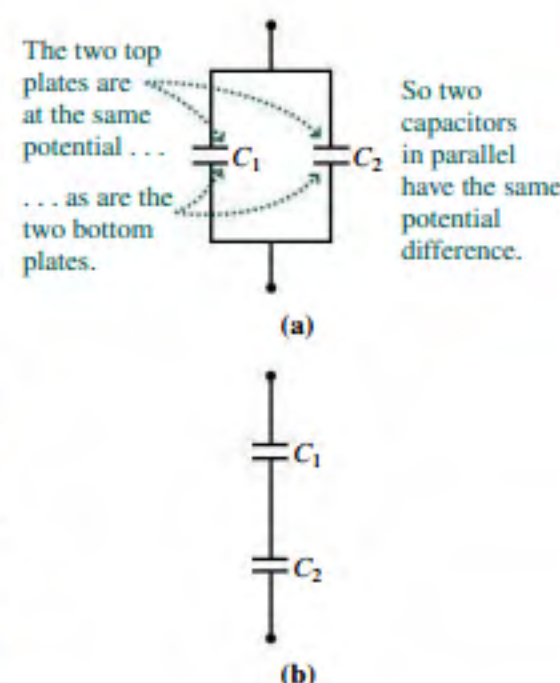


FIGURE 23.7 Connecting capacitors: (a) parallel and (b) series. $\frac{1}{\square}$ is the standard circuit symbol for a capacitor.

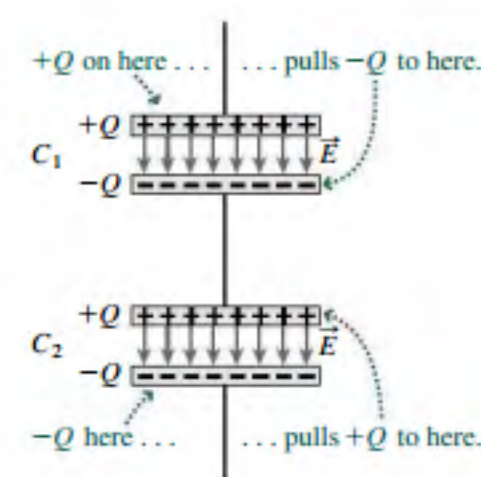


FIGURE 23.8 Capacitors in series carry the same charge.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 23.1 Parallel and Series Capacitors

Using parallel-plate capacitors, explain why capacitance should increase with capacitors in parallel and decrease with capacitors in series. What happens to the working voltage in each case?

EVALUATE Equation 23.2 shows that capacitance increases with increasing plate area and decreases with increasing plate separation. Figure 23.7a shows that two capacitors in parallel have greater plate area, with no change in spacing, so the combined capacitance increases. In contrast, the series combination in Figure 23.7b effectively increases the plate separation because it's the sum of the individual separations, so the capacitance goes down.

What about working voltage? In Fig. 23.7a, the parallel capacitors have the same voltage, so the working voltage of the combination is that of whichever capacitor has the lower working voltage. But in Fig. 23.7b, each series capacitor gets less than the total voltage, so the working voltage increases. How much it increases depends on the ratio of the capacitances.

ASSESS Series and parallel combinations let us build arbitrary capacitances and working voltages from standard capacitors

available commercially. You might wonder about the wire connecting the series capacitors in Fig. 23.7b: Does it also affect the separation? No, because charge is free to move along the conducting wire. Therefore, the wire, unlike the electrically separated plates, doesn't hold charges apart.

MAKING THE CONNECTION You've got two 10- μF capacitors rated at 15 V. What are the capacitances and working voltages of their parallel and series combinations?

EVALUATE Applying Equation 23.5 to equal capacitors shows that the capacitance doubles with two capacitors in parallel. So the parallel combination has $C = 20 \mu\text{F}$, and its working voltage is still 15 V because each capacitor gets the full voltage. Apply Equation 23.6b to equal capacitances and you'll see that the series capacitance is half that of either capacitor, in this case $5 \mu\text{F}$. Since the individual capacitances are equal, each must get half the applied voltage, giving the combination a working voltage of 30 V.

GOT IT?

23.4 You have two identical capacitors with capacitance C . How would you connect them to get equivalent capacitances (1) $2C$ and (2) $\frac{1}{2}C$? (3) Which combination would have the higher working voltage?

EXAMPLE 23.3**Equivalent Capacitance: Connecting Capacitors**

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Find the equivalent capacitance of the combination shown in Fig. 23.9a. If the maximum voltage to be applied between points A and B is 100 V, what should be the working voltage of C_1 ?

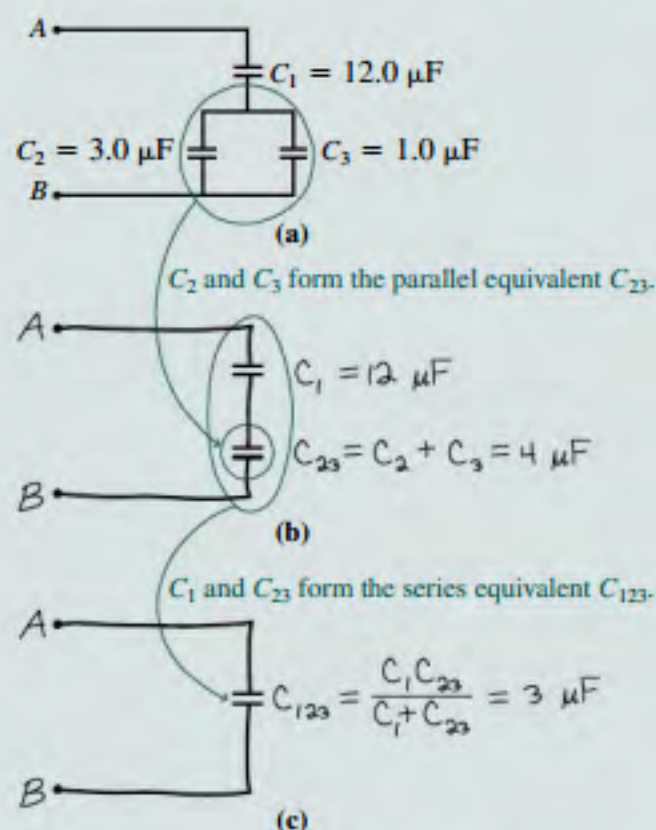


FIGURE 23.9 Finding the equivalent capacitance.

INTERPRET This problem is about an electric circuit—in this case, an assemblage of three capacitors.

DEVELOP To handle such circuit problems, we find combinations of series and parallel components, and then simplify the circuit by treating each combination as a single component. Here all components are capacitors, and each time we compute an equivalent capacitance for two capacitors, we'll redraw the circuit with the new equivalent capacitance. We begin by noting that C_2 and C_3 are in parallel, so the equivalent capacitance is given by Equation 23.5: $C_{23} = C_2 + C_3 = 4.0 \mu\text{F}$. In Fig. 23.9b we've redrawn the original circuit showing this combination of the two individual capacitors. Next we see that C_1 is in series with C_{23} , so their equivalent capacitance follows from Equation 23.6b:

$$C_{123} = \frac{C_1 C_{23}}{C_1 + C_{23}} = \frac{(12 \mu\text{F})(4.0 \mu\text{F})}{12 \mu\text{F} + 4.0 \mu\text{F}} = 3.0 \mu\text{F}$$

We've redrawn the circuit again with this equivalent capacitance (Fig. 23.9c).

Now we want the working voltage of C_1 . Our plan is to go backward from the simple circuit of Fig. 23.9c until we have enough information to find the voltage on C_1 . With the voltage V_{AB} across A and B known, we can calculate the charge on C_{123} using Equation 23.1: $Q_{123} = C_{123} V_{AB}$. But C_{123} is the series combination of C_1 and C_{23} , and we know that series capacitors carry the same charge—and that's the charge of their equivalent capacitance. So $Q_1 = Q_{123}$, and we can apply Equation 23.1 again, this time to C_1 alone, to get $V_1 = Q_1/C_1$.

EVALUATE With $V_{AB} = 100 \text{ V}$ across the combination C_{123} , the corresponding charge is $Q_{123} = C_{123}V_{AB} = (3.0 \mu\text{F})(100 \text{ V}) = 300 \mu\text{C}$. Because $Q_1 = Q_{123}$, the charge on C_1 is also $300 \mu\text{C}$. We then substitute this into $V_1 = Q_1/C_1$ to get $V_1 = (300 \mu\text{C})/(12.0 \mu\text{F}) = 25 \text{ V}$, the minimum working voltage for C_1 .

ASSESS Make sense? Since C_1 is in series with C_{23} , it doesn't "feel" the full 100 V applied across AB , so its working voltage can be lower. And because its capacitance is *larger*, its share of the voltage is *smaller*, thanks to the relation $V = Q/C$ and the fact that series capacitors carry the *same charge*.



SERIES AND PARALLEL Parallel components have their ends connected directly together; series components are connected in such a way that if you move through one component, the only place you can go is into the next. In Fig. 23.9a, C_2 and C_3 are definitely in parallel. But C_1 isn't in series with either of the other single capacitors because after C_1 , the circuit splits and you could go into either C_2 or C_3 . Equations 23.5 and 23.6 apply *only* to true parallel and series combinations. C_1 is in series with the combination C_{23} , so we could apply Equation 23.6b in analyzing Fig. 23.9b.

APPLICATION Bursts of Power



As San Francisco's BART trains decelerate, their kinetic energy is stored as electric energy in an ultracapacitor. The stored energy is then used to accelerate the train. This system saves BART some 320 megawatt-hours of energy each year.

Capacitors are excellent devices for short-term storage of electric energy because they can deliver their stored energy very quickly—much faster than a battery that might contain a lot more total energy.

When you use a flash camera, you have to wait a few seconds before the flash is ready to fire again. That's because the flash requires power—energy per time—far greater than the camera's battery could supply. So the battery gradually charges a capacitor, whose energy is then dumped abruptly to power the brief flash. It takes a while to recharge the capacitor before it's ready again. Much the same thing happens in a defibrillator, which delivers several hundred joules to restore a heart's normal beating. Again, the energy is stored in capacitors, which discharge in milliseconds. On a much larger scale, whole rooms full of capacitors store the energy that drives nanosecond laser pulses pouring millions of joules into tiny targets in experiments aimed at making nuclear fusion a viable energy source. And increasingly, ultracapacitors supply extra energy for bursts of power in machinery from amusement park rides to mass-transit trains to hybrid cars.

23.4 Energy in the Electric Field

LO 23.5 Recognize that all electric fields store energy, and calculate the stored energy for simple field configurations.

What's the difference between a charged and an uncharged capacitor? Not the total charge, which is zero for both, but the arrangement of charge. And with the charge arrangement comes stored energy. Where, exactly, is this energy? We can ask the same question for the triangular charge distribution we assembled in Fig. 23.1. The individual charges didn't change, but their arrangement did. With the new arrangement came energy, but where is that energy?

What's changed in both cases is the electric field. There's no electric field in the uncharged capacitor, but once charged, there's a field between the plates. The triangular distribution started with three isolated point-charge fields and ended with a more complex field. So where's the stored energy? It's in the electric field. In fact, *every* electric field represents stored energy. Rearrange the charges to their original state—by discharging the capacitor or letting the three point charges fly apart—and you get back that energy. Because electric forces govern much of the behavior of everyday matter, many seemingly different forms of energy are actually electric. Burn gasoline or metabolize food, and you're rearranging the charge distributions we call molecules into new configurations whose electric fields contain less energy.

Since electric fields can vary with position, we specify the **energy density**, or energy stored per unit volume. For a capacitor, we can use Equation 23.1 in the form $V = Q/C$ to write the stored energy $U = \frac{1}{2}CV^2$ as $U = Q^2/2C$. For a parallel-plate capacitor, Equation 23.2 gives $C = \epsilon_0 A/d$, so the stored energy becomes $U = Q^2 d/2\epsilon_0 A$. This energy is associated with the uniform electric field inside the capacitor, where it occupies a volume Ad . So the energy density is $U/Ad = Q^2/2\epsilon_0 A^2$. We can rewrite this in terms of the field, which we found to be $E = Q/\epsilon_0 A$. Then $Q = \epsilon_0 AE$, which we put in our expression $Q^2/2\epsilon_0 A^2$ for the energy density to get

$$u_E = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2 \quad \text{(electric energy density)} \quad (23.7)$$

u_E is the energy per unit volume stored in an electric field. Energy density depends on the *square* of the field.

E is the magnitude of the electric field where you're evaluating the energy density. All electric fields store energy, so energy density is a universal property of electric fields.

Although we derived Equation 23.7 for the uniform field of a parallel-plate capacitor, it is in fact universal. Anywhere there's an electric field, there's also stored energy with density, in J/m^3 , given by $\frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2$. That's the deep significance of Equation 23.7: *Every* electric field represents stored energy. The energy that drives much of the physical universe, from everyday events here on Earth to happenings in distant galaxies, results from the release of energy stored in electric fields.

EXAMPLE 23.4 Electric Energy: A Thunderstorm

Typical electric fields in thunderstorms average around 10^5 V/m . Consider a cylindrical thundercloud with height 10 km and diameter 20 km, and assume a uniform electric field of $1 \times 10^5 \text{ V/m}$. Find the electric energy contained in this cloud.

INTERPRET This problem is about stored electric energy.

DEVELOP Since the field and hence the energy density are uniform, our plan is to find the energy density and then multiply it by the cloud's cylindrical volume to calculate the total electric energy. We'll use Equation 23.7, $u_E = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2$, for the energy density.

EVALUATE The energy density is

$$u_E = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2 = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 (1 \times 10^5 \text{ V/m})^2 = 4.4 \times 10^{-2} \text{ J/m}^3$$

The cylindrical cloud has volume

$$V = \pi r^2 h = \pi (10 \text{ km})(10 \text{ km})^2 = 3.1 \times 10^{12} \text{ m}^3$$

Multiplying energy density by volume gives the total stored energy:

$$U = u_E V = (4.4 \times 10^{-2} \text{ J/m}^3)(3.1 \times 10^{12} \text{ m}^3) = 140 \text{ GJ}$$

ASSESS Make sense? A gallon of gasoline contains about 0.1 GJ (see Appendix C), so the thundercloud stores the energy equivalent of about 1400 gallons of gasoline. That's not a whole lot for such a vast volume, showing that the energy density of macroscopic electric fields can't compare with the electric energy density locked into the molecular structure of a fuel. You'll never see cars running on the energy stored in atmospheric electric fields!

When the electric field is uniform, as in our thundercloud, the total energy is the product of energy density and volume. But when the field changes with position, we need calculus. Consider a small volume dV , so small that the electric field is essentially uniform over this volume. The stored energy is then $dU = u_E dV = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2 dV$. The total energy in the field is the sum—here the integral—of all the dU values:

$$U = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 \int E^2 dV \quad (23.8)$$

Because Equation 23.8 gives the energy stored in an electric field, it also represents the work done in assembling the charge distribution resulting in that field. The next example illustrates this point.

EXAMPLE 23.5**Work and Energy: A Shrinking Sphere***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A sphere of radius R_1 carries charge Q distributed uniformly over its surface. How much work does it take to compress the sphere to a smaller radius R_2 ?

INTERPRET This problem asks for the work done in rearranging a charge distribution, which we know is equal to the change in stored electric energy. Here we start with a charged sphere already assembled, and rearrange the charge by shrinking the sphere to a smaller radius.

DEVELOP We have spherical symmetry, so the field and thus the stored energy outside the original radius R_1 don't change. Therefore, we need to find the energy stored in the new field created when the sphere shrinks. Figure 23.10 is our sketch of the situation before and after the sphere shrinks. Here the field varies with position, so Equation 23.8,

$$U = \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_0 \int E^2 dV$$

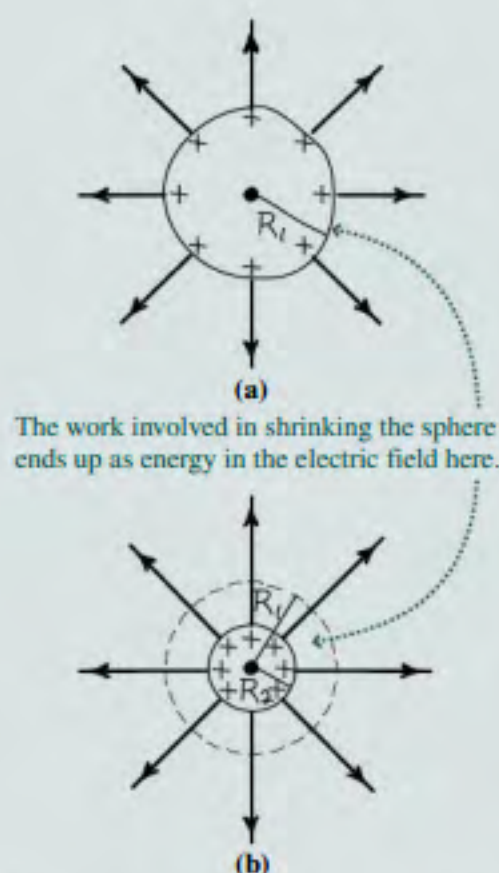


FIGURE 23.10 (a) A charged sphere and its electric field. (b) Shrinking the sphere creates field and energy in the region $R_2 < r < R_1$.

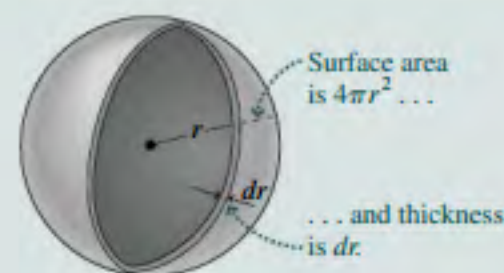


FIGURE 23.11 A thin spherical shell has volume $dV = 4\pi r^2 dr$.

gives the stored energy. Our plan is to evaluate the field in the region $R_2 < r < R_1$ and use the result in Equation 23.8. Given the spherical symmetry, the new field is a point-charge field: $E = kQ/r^2$. To use Equation 23.8 we need an appropriate volume element dV . With spherical symmetry, Fig. 23.11 shows that we can use a thin spherical shell of volume $dV = 4\pi r^2 dr$. Then Equation 23.8 becomes

$$U = \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_0 \int E^2 dV = \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_0 \int_{R_2}^{R_1} \left(\frac{kQ}{r^2} \right)^2 4\pi r^2 dr = \frac{kQ^2}{2} \int_{R_2}^{R_1} r^{-2} dr$$

where we substituted $1/4\pi k$ for ϵ_0 .

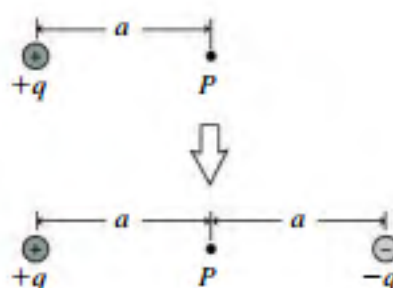
EVALUATE The integral is $\int r^{-2} dr = \frac{r^{-1}}{-1} = -\frac{1}{r}$, so

$$U = \frac{kQ^2}{2} \left(-\frac{1}{r} \right) \Big|_{R_2}^{R_1} = \frac{kQ^2}{2} \left(\frac{1}{R_2} - \frac{1}{R_1} \right)$$

ASSESS Make sense? Here $R_2 < R_1$, so the stored energy is positive and indicates that this much work had to be done to shrink the sphere. That makes sense, because the entire sphere carries charge of the same sign, and shrinking it moves that charge closer together, against the repulsive electric force. Letting R_1 go to infinity gives the work needed to assemble a spherical surface charge distribution. Putting $R_2 = 0$ makes the work and therefore the stored energy infinite—suggesting that the notion of a point charge may be an impossible idealization.

GOT IT?

23.5 You're at a point P a distance a from a point charge $+q$. You then place a point charge $-q$ a distance a on the opposite side of P as shown. What happens to (1) the electric field strength and (2) the electric energy density at P ? (3) Does the total electric energy $U = \int u_E dV$ of the entire field increase, decrease, or remain the same?



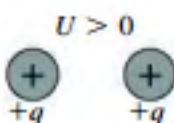
Chapter 23 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is that *all* electric fields represent stored energy. This energy is associated with the work needed to assemble a distribution of electric charge, and may be negative or positive.

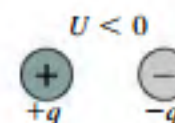
You do positive work to assemble this charge distribution . . .

. . . and therefore the stored electric energy U is positive.



You do negative work to assemble this charge distribution . . .

. . . and therefore the stored electric energy U is negative.



Key Concepts and Equations

The **energy density** in an electric field E is $u_E = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2$.

Integrating over volume gives the total electric energy U stored in the field:

$$U = \int u_E dV.$$

At this point the field strength is E , so there's electric energy whose density is $u_E = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2$.



The electric energy U stored in the shaded volume is

$$U = \int u_E dV = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 \int E^2 dV.$$

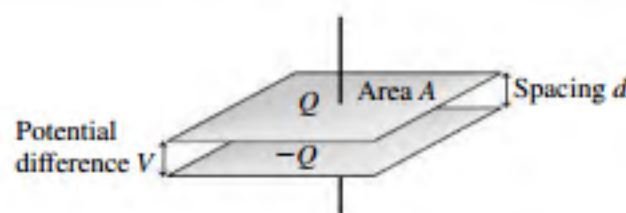
Applications

A **capacitor** is a pair of insulated conductors used to store electric energy. **Capacitance** is the ratio of charge to potential difference:

$$C = Q/V$$

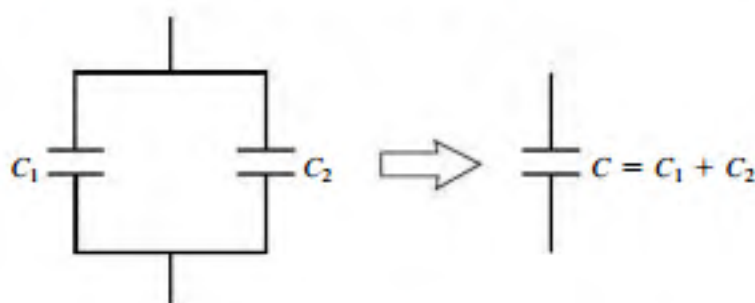
For a parallel-plate capacitor:

$$C = \epsilon_0 A/d$$



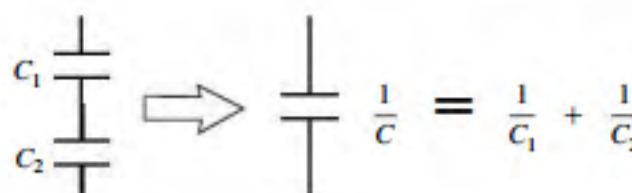
The energy stored in a capacitor with voltage V between its plates is $U = \frac{1}{2}CV^2$.

Capacitors in parallel add: $C = C_1 + C_2$.



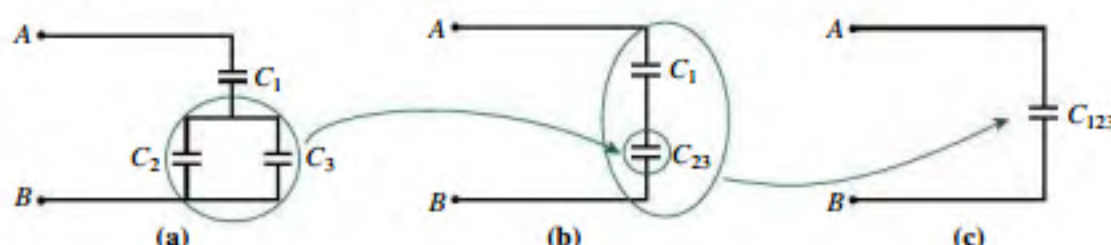
Capacitors in parallel have the same voltage.

Capacitors in series add reciprocally: $\frac{1}{C} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2}$.



Capacitors in series have the same charge.

Complicated circuits are analyzed by breaking them into parallel and series combinations:



A **dielectric** between capacitor plates increases the capacitance, as determined by the **dielectric constant** κ of the material: $C \rightarrow \kappa C_0$.

Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>LO 23.1 Calculate electrostatic energy for simple charge distributions.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 23.1, 23.3; Exercises 23.11, 23.12, 23.13; Problem 23.37</i></p> <p>LO 23.2 Describe capacitance and relate charge, potential difference, and energy in capacitors.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 23.6, 23.7, 23.8, 23.9; Exercises 23.14, 23.15, 23.16, 23.17, 23.18, 23.19; Problems 23.38, 23.39, 23.40, 23.41, 23.42, 23.43, 23.44, 23.45, 23.46, 23.56, 23.60, 23.61, 23.62, 23.66, 23.68</i></p> <p>LO 23.3 Determine the equivalent capacitance of series and parallel capacitors.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 23.10; Exercises 23.22, 23.23, 23.24; Problems 23.47, 23.48, 23.52, 23.69</i></p> | <p>LO 23.4 Explain the role of dielectrics and working voltage in capacitors.
<i>Problems 23.41, 23.42, 23.46, 23.49, 23.50, 23.51, 23.64, 23.65</i></p> <p>LO 23.5 Recognize that all electric fields store energy, and calculate the stored energy for simple field configurations.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 23.2, 23.4, 23.5; Exercises 23.25, 23.26, 23.27, 23.28; Problems 23.53, 23.54, 23.55, 23.57, 23.58, 23.59, 23.63, 23.67, 23.68</i></p> |
|--|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- Two positive point charges are infinitely far apart. Is it possible, using a finite amount of work, to move them until they're a small distance d apart?
- Suppose there is a system of charges comprising both the signs. Does the energy density of the system depend on the signs of the charges involved or on the configuration of the charges? Explain.
- A dipole consists of two equal but opposite charges. Is the total energy stored in the dipole's electric field zero? Why or why not?
- Charge is spread over the surface of a balloon, which is then allowed to expand. Does the energy stored in the balloon's electric field increase or decrease? Speculate on where the energy comes from if it increases, or where it goes if it decreases.
- Does the superposition principle hold for electric-field energy densities? That is, if you double the field strength at some point, do you double the energy density as well?
- In any kind of capacitor, what is the net charge? How can we find out the potential difference between the plates of the capacitor?
- If someone accidentally increases the distance between the plates of a parallel plate capacitor, what would be the easiest way to restore the original value of the capacitance without touching the plates?
- Is a force needed to hold the plates of a charged capacitor in place? Explain.
- Two capacitors contain equal amounts of energy, yet one has twice the capacitance. How do their voltages compare?
- A parallel-plate capacitor is connected to a battery that imposes a potential difference V between its plates. If a dielectric slab is inserted between the plates, what happens to (a) the potential difference, (b) the capacitance C , and (c) the capacitor charge Q ?
- Three point charges $+Q$, and a fourth, $-Q$, lie at the corners of a square. Find the electrostatic energy of this charge distribution.
- A crude model of the water molecule has a negatively charged oxygen atom and two protons, as shown in Fig. 23.12. Calculate the electrostatic energy of this configuration, which is therefore the magnitude of the energy released in forming this molecule. (Note: Your answer is an overestimate because electrons are actually "shared" among the three atoms, spending more time near the oxygen.)

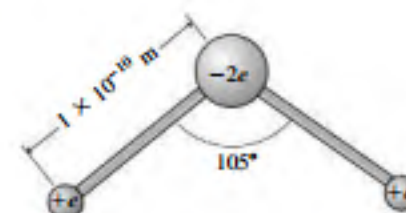


FIGURE 23.12 Exercise 13

Section 23.2 Capacitors

- A capacitor consists of square conducting plates 25 cm on a side and 5.0 mm apart, carrying charges $\pm 1.1 \mu\text{C}$. Find (a) the electric field, (b) the potential difference between the plates, and (c) the stored energy.
- An uncharged capacitor has parallel plates 5.0 cm on a side, spaced 1.2 mm apart. (a) How much work is required to transfer $7.2 \mu\text{C}$ from one plate to the other? (b) How much work is required to transfer an additional $7.2 \mu\text{C}$?
- (a) How much charge must be transferred between the initially uncharged plates of the capacitor in Exercise 15 in order to store 15 mJ of energy? (b) What will be the resulting potential difference between the plates?
- A capacitor's plates hold $1.0 \mu\text{C}$ when charged to 72 V. What's its capacitance?
- Show that the units of ϵ_0 may be written as F/m.
- Find the capacitance of a parallel-plate capacitor with circular plates 18 cm in radius separated by 2.5 mm.

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 23.1 Electrostatic Energy

- Four $75\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charges, initially far apart, are brought onto a line where they're spaced at 5.0-cm intervals. How much work does it take to assemble this charge distribution?

20. A parallel-plate capacitor with 1.2-mm plate spacing has $\pm 2.9 \mu\text{C}$ on its plates when charged to 230 V. What's the plate area?
21. FastCAP Systems is a cutting-edge ultracapacitor manufacturer spun off from MIT. Their 35-F model EE-125-35 capacitor is the size and voltage of a standard AA battery. How much energy does this model store when it's fully charged to 1.5 V?

Section 23.3 Using Capacitors

22. You have a $1.4\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ and a $2.6\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor. What capacitances can you get by connecting them in series or in parallel?
23. (a) Find the equivalent capacitance of the combination shown in Fig. 23.13. Find (b) the charge and (c) the voltage on each capacitor when a 12.0-V battery is connected across the combination.

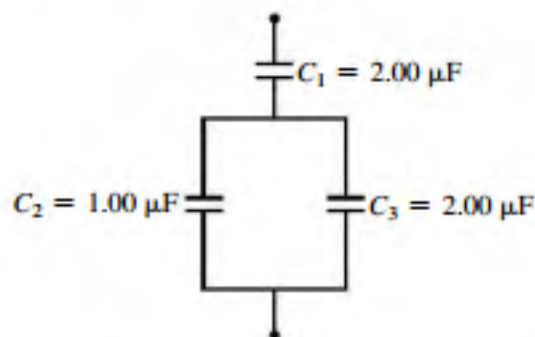


FIGURE 23.13 Exercise 23

24. You're given three capacitors: $1.3 \mu\text{F}$, $2.3 \mu\text{F}$, and $3.3 \mu\text{F}$. Find (a) the maximum, (b) the minimum, and (c) two intermediate capacitances you could achieve using combinations of all three capacitors.

Section 23.4 Energy in the Electric Field

25. The energy density in a uniform electric field is 4.0 J/m^3 . What's the field strength?
26. A car battery stores about 3.6 MJ of energy. If this energy were used to create a uniform 32-kV/m electric field, what volume would it occupy?
27. Air undergoes dielectric breakdown at a field strength of 3 MV/m. Could you store energy in an electric field in air with the same energy density as gasoline? (Hint: See Appendix C.)
28. Consider a proton to be a uniformly charged sphere 1 fm in radius. Find the electric energy density at the proton's surface.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

29. **Example 23.3:** Find the equivalent capacitance in the circuit of Fig. 23.9a, now taking $C_1 = 6.8 \mu\text{F}$, $C_2 = 4.7 \mu\text{F}$, and $C_3 = 2.2 \mu\text{F}$ (these are common commercially available capacitances).
30. **Example 23.3:** What voltage applied between points A and B in Fig. 23.9a will result in a potential difference of 48 V across C_2 ? (Use the capacitances given in the figure, not in the preceding problem.)
31. **Example 23.3:** Find the equivalent capacitance measured between points A and B in Fig. 23.14.

32. **Example 23.3:** In the circuit of Fig. 23.14, how much energy is stored in the $2.7\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor when a potential difference of 75 V is applied between points A and B?

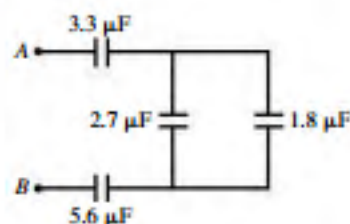


FIGURE 23.14 Problems Example Variations 31 and 32

33. **Example 23.5:** A spherical shell of radius R carries a charge Q spread uniformly over its surface. Find an expression for the work required to shrink the shell to half its original radius.
34. **Example 23.5:** The energy stored in the electric field of the proton is approximately 130 fJ ($130 \times 10^{-15} \text{ J}$). Assuming the proton to be a spherical shell with charge spread uniformly over its surface, estimate its radius to one significant figure. (This is an unrealistic model for the proton, but your answer is close to the accepted value for the proton radius.)
35. **Example 23.5:** A sphere of radius R contains charge Q spread uniformly throughout its volume. Use the result of Example 21.3 to show that the electrostatic energy contained within the sphere is $Q^2/40\pi\epsilon_0 R$ (equivalently, $kQ^2/10R$).
36. **Example 23.5:** Use the result of the preceding problem to repeat Problem 34, now assuming that the proton's charge is spread uniformly throughout its volume and that the energy given in that problem includes electrostatic energy both inside and outside the proton.

Problems

37. A charge Q_0 is at the origin. A second charge, $Q_x = 2Q_0$, is brought from infinity to the point $x = a, y = 0$. Then a third charge Q_y is brought from infinity to $x = 0, y = a$. If it takes twice as much work to bring in Q_y as it did Q_x , what's Q_y in terms of Q_0 ?
38. A conducting sphere of radius a is surrounded by a concentric spherical shell of radius b . Both are initially uncharged. How much work does it take to transfer charge from one to the other until they carry charges $\pm Q$?
39. Two closely spaced square conducting plates measure 12 cm on a side. The electric-field energy density between them is 2.8 kJ/m^3 . What's the charge on the plates?
40. The potential difference across a cell membrane is 65 mV. On the outside are 1.8×10^6 singly ionized potassium atoms. Assuming an equal negative charge on the inside, find the membrane's capacitance.
41. Which can store more energy: a $1.0\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor rated at 250 V or a 470-pF capacitor rated at 3 kV?
42. A $0.01\text{-}\mu\text{F}$, 300-V capacitor costs 25¢; a $0.1\text{-}\mu\text{F}$, 100-V capacitor costs 35¢; and a $30\text{-}\mu\text{F}$, 5-V capacitor costs 88¢. (a) Which can store the most charge? (b) Which can store the most energy? (c) Which is the most cost-effective energy-storage device, measured in J/¢?
43. A medical defibrillator stores 950 J in a $100\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor. (a) What is the voltage across the capacitor? (b) If the capacitor discharges 280 J of its stored energy in 3.1 ms, what's the power delivered during this time?
44. A camera requires 5.5 J of energy for a flash lasting 1.0 ms. (a) What power does the flashtube use while it's flashing? (b) If the flashtube operates at 210 V, what size capacitor is needed to

supply the flash energy? (c) If the flashtube is fired once every 10 s, what's its *average* power consumption?

45. Engineers testing an ultracapacitor (see Application on page 452) measure the capacitor's stored energy at different voltages. The table below gives the results. Determine a quantity that, when you plot stored energy against it, should give a straight line. Make your plot, establish a best-fit line, and use its slope to determine the capacitance.

Voltage (V)	12.2	20.1	31.8	37.9	45.7	50.2	56.0
Energy (kJ)	9.25	27.2	62.5	94	139	158	203

46. Your company's purchasing department bought lots of cheap 2.0- μF , 50-V capacitors. Your budget is maxed out and they won't let you buy additional capacitors for a circuit you're designing. You need 2.0- μF , 100-V capacitors and 0.5- μF , 200-V capacitors. How will you combine the available capacitors to make these?
47. Capacitors C_1 and C_2 are in series, with voltage V across the combination. Show that the voltages across the individual capacitors are $V_1 = C_2 V / (C_1 + C_2)$ and $V_2 = C_1 V / (C_1 + C_2)$.
48. You're evaluating a new hire in your company's engineering department. Together you're working on a circuit where a 0.1- μF , 50-V capacitor is in series with a 0.2- μF , 200-V capacitor. The new engineer claims you can safely put 250 V across the combination. What do you say?
49. A parallel-plate capacitor has plates with area 53 cm^2 separated by $30 \mu\text{m}$ of polyethylene. Find its (a) capacitance and (b) working voltage.
50. A 560-pF capacitor consists of two 15-cm-radius circular plates, insulated with polystyrene. Find (a) the thickness of the polystyrene and (b) the capacitor's working voltage.
51. **BIO** The first accurate estimate of cell membrane thickness used a capacitive technique, which determined the capacitance per unit area of cell membrane in a macroscopic suspension of cells; the result was about $1 \mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2$. Assuming a dielectric constant of about 3 for the membrane, find the membrane's thickness. (Note: Your answer is the thickness of the bipolar lipid layer alone, and is lower by a factor of about 3 than values based on X-ray techniques.)
52. Your company is still stuck with those 2- μF capacitors from Problem 46. They turn out to be so cheap that their capacitances are all too low, ranging from $1.7 \mu\text{F}$ to $1.9 \mu\text{F}$. A colleague suggests you put variable "trimmer" capacitors in parallel with the cheap capacitors and adjust the combination to precisely $2.00 \mu\text{F}$. The available trimmers have variable capacitance from 25 nF to 350 nF . Will they work?
53. A cubical region 1.0 m on a side is located between $x = 0$ and $x = 1 \text{ m}$. The region contains an electric field whose magnitude varies with x but is independent of y and z : $E = E_0(x/x_0)$, where $E_0 = 16 \text{ kV/m}$ and $x_0 = 7.0 \text{ m}$. Find the total energy in the region.
54. **CH** The electric field within a spherical region of radius R is inversely proportional to the distance r from the center of the region: $E = E_0 R/r$, where E_0 is a constant. Find an expression for the electrostatic energy stored within the region.
55. A sphere of radius R carries total charge Q distributed uniformly over its surface. Show that the energy stored in its electric field is $U = kQ^2/2R$.
56. We live inside a giant capacitor! Its plates are Earth's surface and the *ionosphere*, a conducting layer of the atmosphere beginning about 60 km up. (a) Find the capacitance of this system,

approximating it as a parallel-plate capacitor. (This is justified because the atmosphere is so thin compared with Earth's radius; however, your answer is an underestimate because the atmospheric electric field isn't uniform.) (b) The potential difference between Earth's surface and the ionosphere is about 400 kV (this is maintained by the action of thunderstorms). Estimate the total energy stored in the planetary capacitor.

57. Two widely separated 4.7-mm -diameter water drops each carry 22 nC . Assuming all charge resides on the drops' surfaces, find the change in electrostatic potential energy if they're brought together to form a single spherical drop.
58. A 3.9-mm -diameter wire carries a uniform line charge density $\lambda = 32 \mu\text{C/m}$. Find the energy in a region 1.0 m long within one wire diameter of the wire surface.
59. A typical lightning flash transfers 30 C across a potential difference of 30 MV . Assuming such flashes occur every 5 s in the thunderstorm of Example 23.4, roughly how long would the storm last if its electric energy were not replenished?
60. **CH** A capacitor consists of two long concentric metal cylinders (Fig. 23.15). Find an expression for its capacitance in terms of the dimensions shown.
61. **CH** A capacitor consists of a conducting sphere of radius a surrounded by a concentric conducting shell of radius b . Show that its capacitance is $C = 4\pi\epsilon_0 ab/(b - a)$.
62. **CH** Show that the result of Problem 61 reduces to that of a parallel-plate capacitor when the separation $b - a$ is much less than the radius a .
63. **CH** A solid sphere contains a uniform volume charge density. What fraction of the total electrostatic energy of this configuration is contained *within* the sphere?

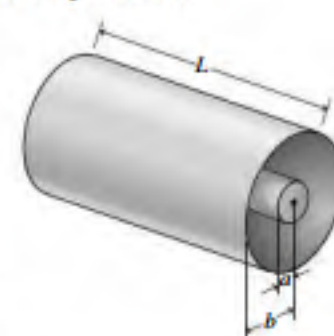


FIGURE 23.15 Problem 60

64. **CH** An air-insulated parallel-plate capacitor of capacitance C_0 is charged to voltage V_0 and then disconnected from the charging battery. A slab with dielectric constant κ and thickness equal to the capacitor spacing is then inserted halfway into the capacitor (Fig. 23.16). Determine (a) the new capacitance, (b) the stored energy, and (c) the force on the slab in terms of C_0 , V_0 , κ , and the plate length L .
65. Repeat parts (b) and (c) of Problem 64, now assuming the battery remains connected while the slab is inserted.
66. A transmission line consists of two parallel wires, of radius a and separation b , carrying uniform line charge densities $\pm\lambda$, respectively. With $a \ll b$, their electric field is the superposition of the fields from two long straight lines of charge. Find the capacitance per unit length for this transmission line.
67. **CH** An infinitely long rod of radius R carries uniform volume charge density ρ . Find an expression for the electrostatic energy per unit length contained *within* the rod. (Hint: See Chapter 20, Problem 42.)
68. **CH** (a) Write the electrostatic potential energy of a pair of oppositely charged, closely spaced parallel plates as a function of their separation x , their area A , and the charge magnitude Q . (b) Differentiate with respect to x to find the magnitude of the attractive force between the plates. Why isn't the force equal to the charge on one plate times the electric field between the plates?

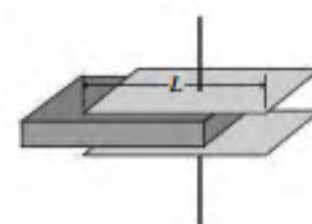


FIGURE 23.16 Problems 64 and 65

69. An unknown capacitor C is connected in series with a $3.0\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor; this pair is placed in parallel with a $1.0\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor, and the entire combination is put in series with a $2.0\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor. (a) Make a circuit diagram of this network. (b) When a potential difference of 100 V is applied across the open ends of the network, the total energy stored in all the capacitors is 5.8 mJ . Find C .

Passage Problems

Nuclear fusion could provide humankind with limitless energy, making a gallon of seawater the energy equivalent of 300 gallons of gasoline. The National Ignition Facility (NIF) at Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory was designed for the “ignition” of nuclear fusion by bombarding a tiny deuterium–tritium pellet with energy from 192 converging laser beams. The NIF lasers deliver 2 MJ of energy in about 20 ns ; Fig. 23.17 shows the target chamber where the laser beams converge. The energy is stored in capacitors that, because of conversion inefficiencies, have to store some 400 MJ . (Note: NIF is more complicated than described here, and the numbers and technical descriptions are only approximate.)



FIGURE 23.17 The NIF target chamber, shown during installation (Passage Problems 70–73)

70. What total capacitance is required if the capacitor system is charged to 20 kV ?
- $100\text{ }\mu\text{F}$
 - $200\text{ }\mu\text{F}$
 - 1 F
 - 2 F

71. If it were technically and economically feasible to double the voltage, how would the required capacitance change?
- drop to one-quarter its original value
 - drop to one-half its original value
 - would not change
 - would double
72. While they're firing, the average power delivered by the laser beams is
- 100 kW .
 - 100 MW .
 - 100 GW .
 - 100 TW .
73. Among the capacitors that store energy at NIF are 1200 $300\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ units charged to about 20 kV . The energy stored in each capacitor is about
- 3 J .
 - 20 kJ .
 - 60 kJ .
 - 400 MJ .

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The energy is stored in the electric field of a pair of charged conductors—a capacitor—and dumped quickly to the defibrillator when it's needed.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 23.1 (c)
- 23.2 No, because the charge the capacitor holds depends on the voltage across it (although there may be practical limits on the maximum voltage; see Section 23.3).
- 23.3 (b) because U depends on V^2
- 23.4 (1) parallel; (2) series; (3) The working voltage of the series combination is twice that of the parallel combination, which is the same as that of the individual capacitors.
- 23.5 (1) $E(P)$ doubles; (2) $u_E(P)$ quadruples; (3) U decreases, since the charges are attracted and therefore you do negative work to bring in the negative charge.

Electric Current

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The electric field (Section 20.3)
- Potential difference (Sections 21.1 and 21.2)
- Power (Section 6.5)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 24.1** Describe electric current in both microscopic and macroscopic terms.
- LO 24.2** Describe different mechanisms of electrical conduction, including the microscopic version of Ohm's law.
- LO 24.3** Relate voltage, current, and electrical resistance through Ohm's law.
- LO 24.4** Determine electric power given voltage and current.
- LO 24.5** Relate electrical safety to physics and to the biological effects of electric current.



How does electric current heat this lightbulb filament? Where does the energy come from?

We now move beyond electrostatic equilibrium and consider situations in which charges are moving. The flow of charge constitutes **electric current**, and it occurs in materials containing free charges—that is, in conductors.

Electric current is essential in many technological and natural processes. Currents in lightbulbs, toasters, and stoves produce light and heat. Currents in electric motors run refrigerators, electric cars, and subway trains. In computers, currents process and move data. In your body, they regulate heartbeat and control muscles. Currents in Earth's liquid outer core generate the planet's magnetism, protecting us from cosmic radiation. And currents in the Sun are responsible for giant eruptions that can spew high-energy particles toward Earth.

24.1 Electric Current

LO 24.1 *Describe electric current in both microscopic and macroscopic terms.*

Quantitatively, current is the net rate of charge crossing an area. Its unit is coulombs per second, which is given the name **ampere (A)** after the French physicist André Marie Ampère (1775–1836). In electronics and biomedical applications, currents are small enough that milliamperes (mA) and microamperes (μA) are widely used. When current I is steady or a time average will do, we write

Electric current I is the flow of electric charge.

ΔQ is the charge ...

$$I = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t} \quad (\text{steady current})$$

(24.1a)

... and Δt is the time it takes ΔQ to cross an area.

Equation 24.1a is exact only for steady current. Otherwise it gives the average current over Δt .

where ΔQ is the charge crossing the given area in time Δt . For time-varying currents we take the limit of small time intervals:

I is the current at each instant.

It's evaluated as the limit of infinitesimally small times dt and charge flows dQ .

$$I = \frac{dQ}{dt} \quad (\text{instantaneous current})$$

(24.1b)

The instantaneous current may vary continuously with time.

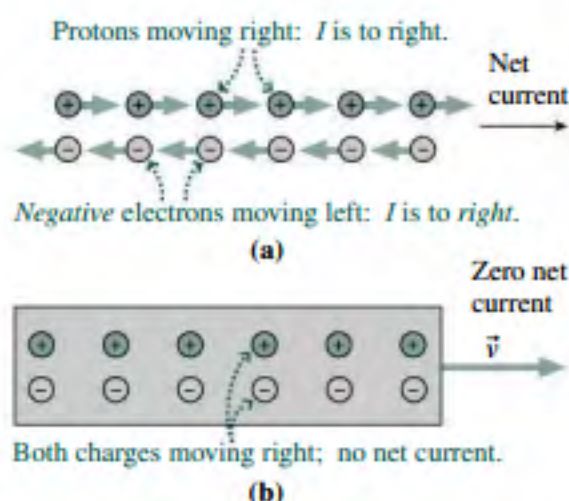


FIGURE 24.1 The net current is the sum of the currents carried by both positive and negative charges.

Current is in the direction in which *positive* charge flows. If the moving charge is negative, as with electrons in a metal, then the current is opposite the charge motion.

A current may consist of one kind of moving charge, or both. If it's both, then the net current is the sum of the currents carried by positive and negative charges (Fig. 24.1a). That's why the bulk motion of a neutral object—even though it contains lots of positive and negative charge—doesn't constitute a current (Fig. 24.1b).

GOT IT?

24.1 Which of the following represents a nonzero current? What's its direction? (a) a beam of electrons moves from left to right; (b) a beam of protons moves upward; (c) in a solution, positive ions move left and negative ions move right; (d) blood, carrying positive and negative ions at the same speed, moves up through a vein; (e) a metal car with no net charge speeds westward

Current: A Microscopic Look

Current depends on the speed of the charge carriers, their density, and their charge. In some cases, like a beam of electrons in vacuum, “speed” here means the actual speed of the charges. But in typical conductors, charges are moving about at high speed with random thermal velocities that don't result in a net flow of charge. When a current is present, there's an additional and usually very small **drift velocity** superposed on the charges' random motion, and it's this drift velocity that determines the current. We'll see this in more detail when we consider metallic conductors.

Figure 24.2 shows a conductor that contains n charges per unit volume, each with charge q and drift speed v_d . We want to express the current in terms of these microscopic properties and macroscopic properties like length and area. With A the conductor's cross-sectional area, a length L of conductor has volume AL and contains nAL individual charges for a total charge $\Delta Q = nALq$. Moving at v_d , this charge takes time $\Delta t = L/v_d$ to pass a given point. Then the current is

$$I = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t} = \frac{nALq}{L/v_d} = nAqv_d \quad (24.2)$$

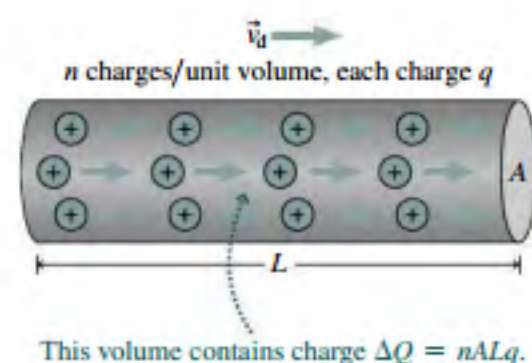


FIGURE 24.2 A conductor of cross-sectional area A containing n charges per unit volume.

EXAMPLE 24.1 Finding Current: A Copper Wire

A 5.0-A current flows in a copper wire with cross-sectional area 1.0 mm^2 , carried by electrons with number density $n = 1.1 \times 10^{29} \text{ m}^{-3}$. Find the electrons' drift speed.

INTERPRET We're given microscopic parameters, so this is a problem about the relation between current and the parameters n , q , and v_d .

DEVELOP Figure 24.3 is our sketch. Equation 24.2, $I = nAqv_d$, relates current to the macroscopic parameters, so our plan is to solve for v_d .

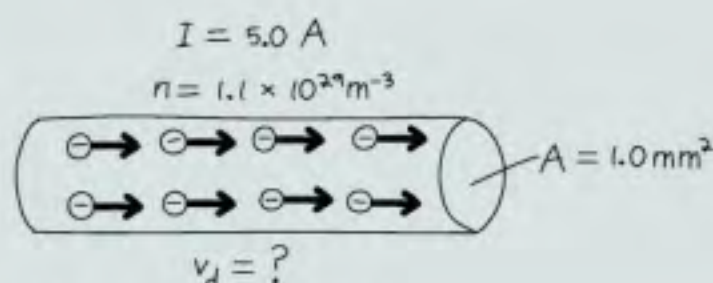


FIGURE 24.3 Sketch for Example 24.1.

EVALUATE Solving, we get

$$v_d = \frac{I}{nAq} = \frac{5.0 \text{ A}}{(1.1 \times 10^{29} \text{ m}^{-3})(10^{-6} \text{ m}^2)(1.6 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C})} = 0.28 \text{ mm/s}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Our answer seems awfully small. After all, when you flip a light switch, the light comes on immediately, not several thousand seconds later as our answer might imply. But the answer is right. Electrons in the wire all get their “marching orders” from the electric field, and that’s established almost instantaneously. As a result electrons throughout the wire start moving almost simultaneously. That’s why the light comes on immediately.



DRIFT SPEED AND SIGNAL SPEED Example 24.1 points to an important distinction between the drift speeds of electrons and the speed of electric signals. The former is typically about 1 mm/s, but the latter is close to the speed of light. When you connect a wire across a battery, for example, an electric field develops, starting at both battery terminals and moving along the wire at nearly the speed of light. As soon as electrons experience the field, they start to move. So there’s almost no time delay before the start of the current.

Current Density

Currents aren’t always confined to wires. Currents in Earth, in chemical solutions, in your body, and in ionized gases flow in ill-defined paths, and their magnitude and direction may vary with position. We characterize such diffuse currents in terms of **current density**, $\vec{J}$, a vector whose direction at each point is that of the local current and whose magnitude is the current per unit area. Dividing Equation 24.2 by area and using the drift velocity vector $\vec{v}_d$ instead of speed v_d gives the current density:

$$\vec{J} = nq\vec{v}_d \quad (\text{current density}) \quad (24.3)$$

When the current density is uniform, as in a wire, the total current is just the product of the current density and the wire’s cross-sectional area A : $I = JA$. But when the current density varies, it’s necessary to integrate. And because current may vary in magnitude or direction, and the area itself may not be flat, that integral becomes a surface integral similar to the one we introduced in Chapter 21 for electric flux. In fact, as Fig. 24.4 shows, the current is the flux of the current density: $I = \int \vec{J} \cdot d\vec{A}$. You can explore the case of a nonuniform current density in Problem 69.

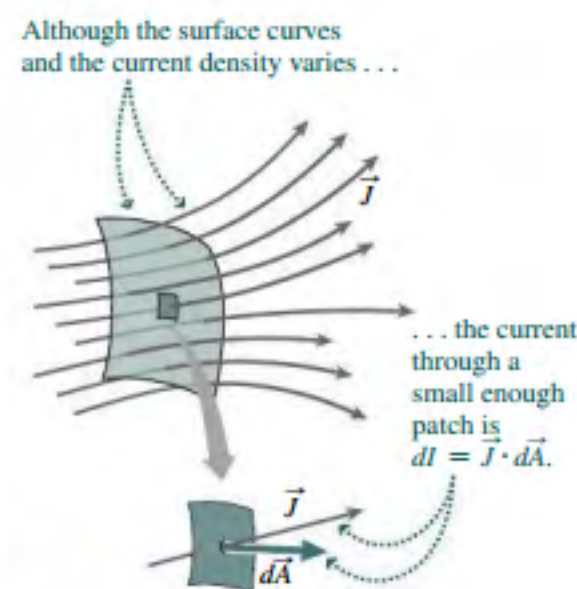


FIGURE 24.4 Current I is the flux of the current density $\vec{J}$, and finding the total current in the case of nonuniform $\vec{J}$ requires integration. Compare with Fig. 21.6.

EXAMPLE 24.2 Current and Current Density: Through the Cell Membrane

Ion channels are narrow pores that allow ions to pass through cell membranes (Fig. 24.5). A particular channel has a circular cross section 0.15 nm in radius; it opens for 1 ms and passes 1.1×10^4 singly ionized potassium ions. Find both the current and the current density in the channel.

INTERPRET This problem describes a flow of individual ions and asks for two distinct but related quantities: current and current density.

DEVELOP Current is the *rate* of charge passing through a given area, here the opening of an ion channel. Equation 24.1a, $I = \Delta Q / \Delta t$, determines the current. Current density, however, is *current per unit area*, which we can compute from $J = I/A$.

EVALUATE With each ion carrying charge e , a total charge $\Delta Q = 1.1 \times 10^4 e = 1.8 \times 10^{-15} \text{ C}$ flows through the channel in $\Delta t = 10^{-3} \text{ s}$,

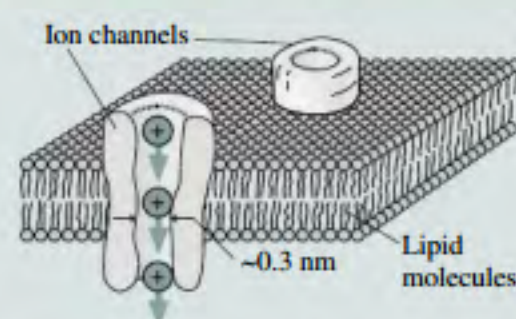


FIGURE 24.5 Diagram of a cell membrane, showing ions passing through an ion channel.

giving a current $I = \Delta Q / \Delta t = 1.8 \text{ pA}$. For current density we then find

$$J = \frac{I}{A} = \frac{1.8 \times 10^{-12} \text{ A}}{\pi(0.15 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m})^2} = 2.5 \times 10^7 \text{ A/m}^2 \quad (\text{continued})$$

ASSESS Make sense? How can something so tiny as a cell have a current density of 25 million amperes per square meter? No problem: Current density measures current *per unit area*. The ion channel is so small that the total current—1.8 picoamperes—is tiny. But that channel is impressive in its own right; its 25 MA/m² is about four times the maximum safe current density in typical household wiring.

24.2 Conduction Mechanisms

LO 24.2 Describe different mechanisms of electrical conduction, including the microscopic version of Ohm’s law.

Electric fields exert forces on charges, so it’s the presence of electric fields in conductors that results in electric current. Fields in conductors? Yes. With moving charge we no longer have electrostatic equilibrium, so the field inside a conductor need not be zero. Newton’s law suggests that an electric field should *accelerate* free charges in a conductor, resulting in an ever-increasing current. But in most conductors charges collide, usually with ions, and lose energy they’ve gained from the field. These collisions provide an effective force that counters the electric force, and the end result is that it takes an electric field to sustain a steady current. In most materials the field and current are in the same direction, and we can therefore express the relation between the two as

Current density $\vec{J}$ is the current per unit area at a point in a material. $\vec{E}$ is the electric field at the point where we’re evaluating $\vec{J}$.

$$\vec{J} = \sigma \vec{E} \quad \text{(Ohm’s law, microscopic version)} \quad (24.4a)$$

σ is the conductivity, a property of the material. The *microscopic* version relates electrical quantities at each individual point.

where the quantity σ is the material’s **conductivity**.

Ohm’s Law: A Microscopic View

For many common conductors, including metals, conductivity σ is independent of electric field. Such materials are called **ohmic**, and for them Equation 24.4a states that current density and electric field are linearly proportional. In **nonohmic** materials, conductivity does depend on field, and thus the relationship between $\vec{J}$ and $\vec{E}$ isn’t linear.

You may be familiar with the *macroscopic* version of **Ohm’s law**, which relates electric current and voltage in a piece of conducting material. Equation 24.4a is the *microscopic* version of Ohm’s law, describing the relation between electric field and current density *at each point* within a conductor. The macroscopic version is helpful in analyzing electric circuits, and we’ll derive it in the next section. But the microscopic version is important in biophysics, geophysics, astrophysics, semiconductor engineering, and other areas where electric fields vary with position and we want to know what’s going on at each point.

Conductivity σ tells how large a current density will result from a given electric field; it’s a measure of how easily charges in a material can move. A perfect conductor would have $\sigma = \infty$; a perfect insulator, $\sigma = 0$. A related quantity is **resistivity**, ρ , defined as the inverse of conductivity: $\rho = 1/\sigma$. Then Equation 24.4a can be written as

$$\vec{J} = \frac{\vec{E}}{\rho} \quad (24.4b)$$

Resistivity tells how hard it is for charge to move; the higher a material’s resistivity, the stronger the electric field needed to produce a given current density. You may be familiar with electrical *resistance*, and you’ll soon see how resistance and resistivity are related.

Equation 24.4b shows that the units of resistivity are V·m/A. One V/A is given the name **ohm** (symbol Ω , the capital Greek omega) after the German physicist Georg Ohm (1789–1854), who explored the relation between voltage and current. Thus the SI units of resistivity are $\Omega\cdot\text{m}$; reciprocally, those of conductivity are $(\Omega\cdot\text{m})^{-1}$. Conductivity and resistivity range widely, spanning some 24 orders of magnitude. Table 24.1 lists the

Table 24.1 Resistivities

Material	Resistivity ($\Omega \cdot \text{m}$)
Metallic conductors (20°C)	
Aluminum	2.65×10^{-8}
Copper	1.68×10^{-8}
Gold	2.24×10^{-8}
Iron	9.71×10^{-8}
Mercury	9.84×10^{-7}
Silver	1.59×10^{-8}
Ionic solutions (in water, 18°C)	
1-molar CuSO ₄	3.9×10^{-4}
1-molar HCl	1.7×10^{-2}
1-molar NaCl	1.4×10^{-4}
H ₂ O	2.6×10^5
Blood, human	0.70
Seawater (typical)	0.22
Semiconductors*	
Germanium	0.5
Silicon	3×10^3
Insulators	
Ceramics	$10^{11} - 10^{14}$
Glass	$10^{10} - 10^{14}$
Polystyrene	$10^{15} - 10^{17}$
Rubber	$10^{13} - 10^{16}$
Wood (dry)	$10^8 - 10^{14}$

* Semiconductor resistivities vary strongly with temperature and purity of the material; values given are for pure elements at 20°C.

resistivities of some typical materials. Measurement of electrical resistivity provides information on the composition of materials in fields from medicine to geophysics.

EXAMPLE 24.3

Finding the Electric Field: Household Wiring

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A 2.1-mm-diameter copper wire carries 11 A to a household appliance. Find the magnitude of the electric field in the wire.

INTERPRET This problem asks us to calculate the electric field within a conductor carrying an electric current.

DEVELOP Equation 24.4b, $\vec{J} = \vec{E}/\rho$, relates electric field and current density. Here we're given the total current I and the wire diameter, so we can write the current density as $J = I/A$, with A the wire's cross-sectional area. We also need the resistivity of copper from Table 24.1. Then we can solve Equation 24.4b for the electric field.

EVALUATE Solving for the field magnitude, we have

$$E = J\rho = \frac{I\rho}{A} = \frac{(11\text{ A})(1.68 \times 10^{-8}\ \Omega \cdot \text{m})}{\pi(1.05 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m})^2} = 53\text{ mV/m}$$

ASSESS Make sense? This number is a lot smaller than the electric fields we discussed in electrostatic situations. Because copper is such a good conductor, a weak field can drive a substantial current. In well-engineered circuits, the field inside conducting wires is often so small as to be negligible, even when the current is large.

GOT IT?

24.2 Two wires carry the same current I . Wire A has a larger diameter, a higher density of current-carrying electrons, and a lower resistivity than wire B. Rank in order, from smaller to larger, (1) the current densities, (2) the electric fields, and (3) the drift speeds in the two wires.

Conduction in Metals

Metals are good conductors because they contain abundant free electrons, which respond readily to electric fields. Each atom in a metal typically contributes one or more electrons to this “sea” of free electrons. The remaining ions form a regular crystal lattice (Fig. 24.6). Electrons move through the lattice at about 10^6 m/s. They collide frequently, not directly with the ions but with *phonons*—particle-like entities associated in quantum physics with vibrational motions of the lattice ions. After collisions, the electrons move off in random directions. In the absence of an electric field, there's no net flow of electrons in any particular direction, and so no current.

We'll now consider what happens when an electric field is applied to a metal, and we'll show why metals obey Ohm's law. However, our explanation is necessarily incomplete because a full description of metallic conduction involves quantum mechanics.

An electric field accelerates negative electrons in the direction opposite the field. But like a car in stop-and-go traffic, the electron soon gives up the energy and speed it gained from the field. For the car, that happens at the next stoplight; for the electron, it's at the next collision, where it rebounds in a random direction (Fig. 24.7). Like the car, the electron thus acquires an average velocity that's proportional to the acceleration it experiences between collisions—that is, proportional to the electric field. There's one difference, though, between the electron and the car: The electron has also a high random thermal velocity, so the average velocity is a tiny effect superposed on the electron's random thermal motion. That average velocity is the drift velocity, $\vec{v}_d$. All electrons share this common drift velocity, so their motion constitutes a current proportional to v_d .

The drift velocity depends on two things: the electrons' acceleration and the rate at which they undergo collisions. The electric field provides the acceleration, so v_d is proportional to E . The collision rate depends on how fast the electrons are moving, and here's the important point: Because thermal motions are so fast, the additional drift velocity makes essentially no difference in the collision rate, so the latter is constant. Therefore, the drift velocity and hence the current are proportional to the electric field—and that makes Equation 24.4a a linear relationship between current density and field. That's why metals are ohmic.

Although a metal's conductivity is independent of the applied field, it does depend on temperature T . That's because the thermal speed and hence the collision rate increase with temperature, decreasing conductivity and increasing resistivity. Classical physics gives thermal speed proportional to $\sqrt{T}$, as we saw in Section 17.1, so we might expect resistivity to

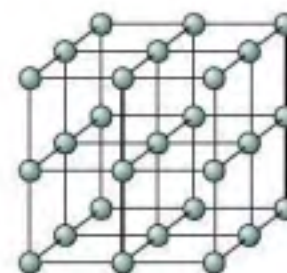


FIGURE 24.6 Atoms of a metal form a regular crystal lattice.

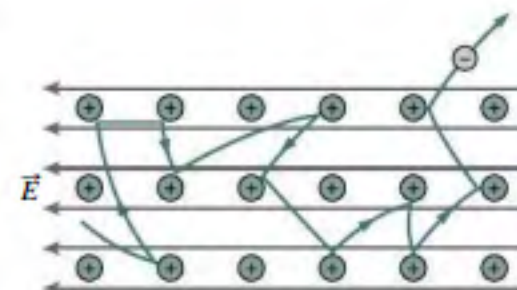


FIGURE 24.7 An electron's path in a metal is almost completely random, but in the presence of an electric field there's a slight drift antiparallel to the field. The electrons actually collide not with ions themselves but with *phonons* associated with vibrations of the ion lattice.

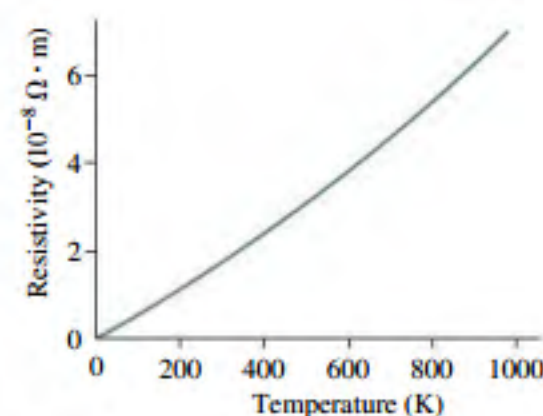


FIGURE 24.8 Resistivity of copper has a nearly linear dependence on temperature, in contrast to the classical prediction of a dependence on $\sqrt{T}$.

depend similarly on temperature. Experiment, however, shows that resistivity is nearly linear with temperature (Fig. 24.8)—a result that can be explained using quantum mechanics.

Although the current associated with random thermal motions averages to zero, at any given instant short-term fluctuations can result in more electrons moving in a particular direction. The result is a very small current whose direction and magnitude fluctuate randomly. This **thermal noise** can overwhelm currents of interest in sensitive electronic equipment. Circuits like the amplifiers in radio telescopes are often cooled to decrease thermal noise.

Ionic Solutions

Liquid solutions contain positive and negative ions that respond to an electric field by moving in opposite directions, resulting in a net current. Conductivity is limited by collisions between ions and neutral atoms and, as Table 24.1 suggests, ionic solutions are poorer conductors than metals. Ionic conduction is essential to life, as the transport of ions through cell membranes in Example 24.2 suggests. Electric eels use ionic conduction to sense and kill their prey. Batteries and fuel cells use ionic conduction, which also plays a role in the corrosion of metals. And an ionic solution—sweat—increases your vulnerability to electric shock.

Plasmas

Plasma is ionized gas that conducts because it contains free electrons and ions. It takes substantial energy to ionize atoms, so plasmas usually exist only at high temperatures. Plasmas are rare on Earth; they're in fluorescent lamps, plasma TVs, neon signs, the ionosphere, flames, and lightning flashes. Yet much of the universe's visible matter is in the plasma state; stars, in particular, are mostly plasma.

The electric properties of plasma make it so different from ordinary gas that plasma is often called “the fourth state of matter.” Some plasmas are so diffuse and collisions therefore so rare that they exhibit extremely high electrical conductivities—comparable to and sometimes better than the best metals. For example, the Sun's hot outer atmosphere, or *corona*, has a conductivity on the same order of magnitude as that of copper and silver.

Semiconductors

Even in insulators, random thermal motions dislodge a few electrons, giving these materials very modest conductivity. In a few materials—notably the element silicon—this effect is significant at room temperature. Such materials have conductivities between those of insulators and conductors, as reflected by their placement in Table 24.1, so they're called **semiconductors**. Semiconductors make possible the electronic technology so pervasive in modern civilization. Here we give a qualitative description of semiconductors based on classical physics; we'll revisit semiconductors from a quantum-mechanical viewpoint in Chapter 37.

A dislodged electron leaves behind a “hole,” into which an adjacent electron, nudged by the electric field, can “fall” (Fig. 24.9). The result is a movement of holes in the direction of the field. Thus holes act as positive charges, so a pure semiconductor contains equal numbers of negative charge carriers (electrons) and positive carriers (holes).

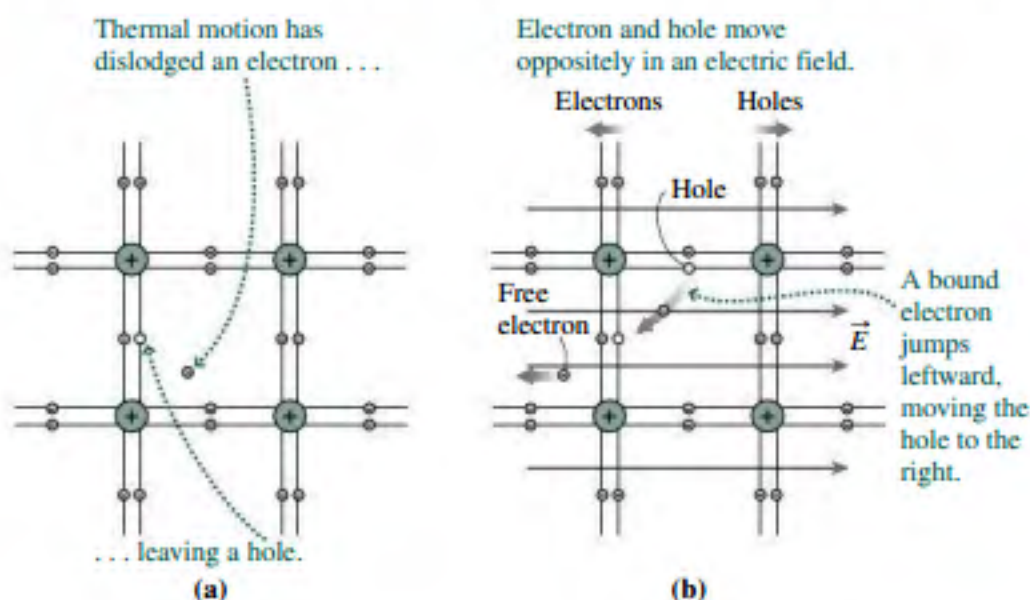


FIGURE 24.9 Structure of a silicon crystal, showing each atom bound to each of its neighbors by two shared electrons. (a) Thermal motion dislodges electrons, creating electron-hole pairs. (b) An electric field drives electrons and holes in opposite directions, creating an electric current.

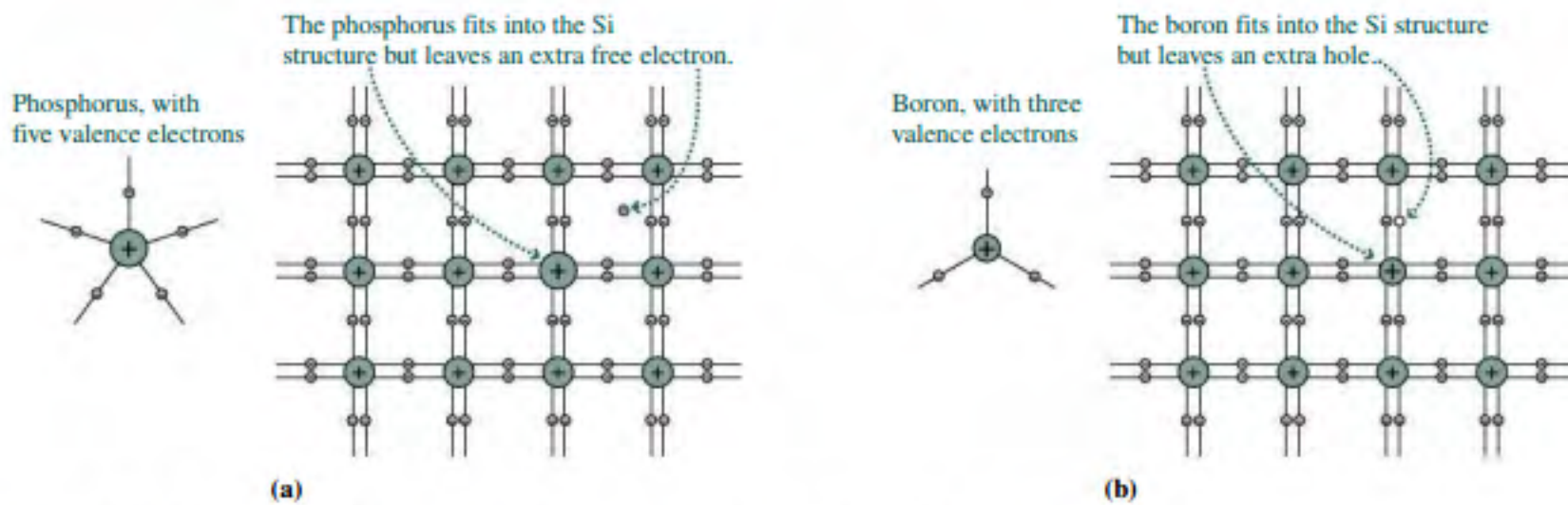


FIGURE 24.10 (a) Phosphorus-doped silicon has extra free electrons, making it an *N*-type semiconductor. (b) Boron has only three valence electrons, so boron-doped silicon is a *P*-type semiconductor.

The key to semiconductor technology lies in **doping** with impurities that greatly alter a semiconductor's intrinsic conductivity. Figure 24.10a shows how a single phosphorus atom, with five valence electrons, fits into silicon's crystal structure but leaves a free electron. It doesn't take much phosphorus for these extra electrons to constitute the vast majority of charge carriers. Since the charge carriers are negative, the material is called an ***N*-type semiconductor**. In contrast, Fig. 24.10b shows that doping with trivalent atoms like boron leaves extra holes and makes a ***P*-type semiconductor**.

The essential element of nearly every semiconductor device is the ***PN* junction**. Electrons and holes diffuse across such a junction and recombine, depleting the junction region of charge carriers and making it a poor conductor. Applying a voltage from the *P* to the *N* region—but not the other way—lets charge flow through the junction. So the *PN* junction conducts in one direction but not the other (Fig. 24.11). The wide range of semiconductor devices in use today results largely from carefully engineered combinations of *PN* junctions. Those devices include not only the microelectronics in our smartphones and computers, but also the acres of photovoltaic cells—themselves *PN* junctions—that convert sunlight to electricity to provide an increasing portion of our electrical energy. And they include the light-emitting diodes—also *PN* junctions—that are becoming our dominant sources of electric light.

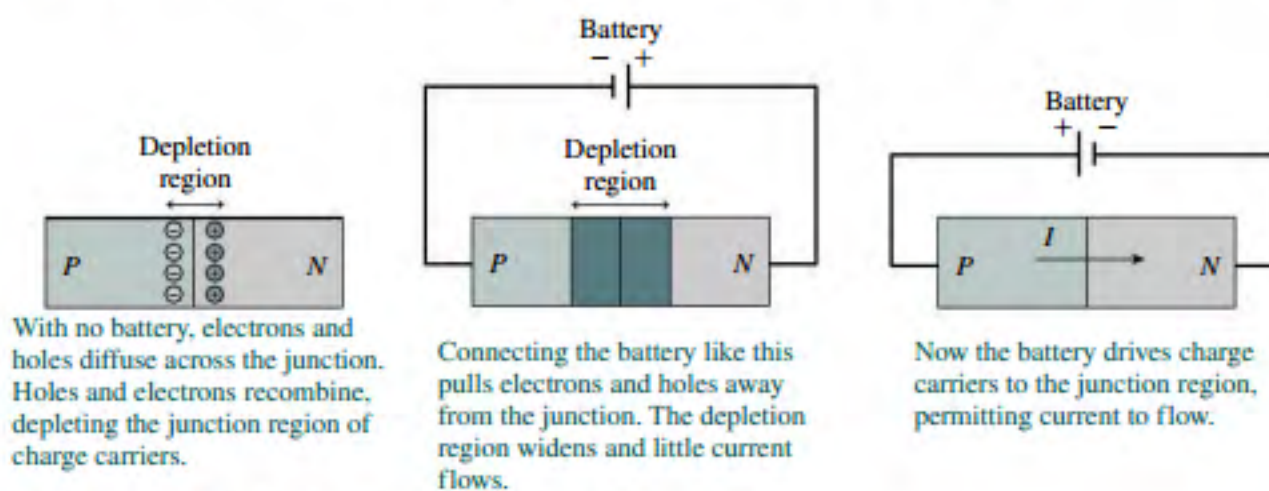


FIGURE 24.11 A *PN* junction conducts in only one direction.

APPLICATION The Transistor

Few inventions have revolutionized society as much as the transistor, the semiconductor device at the root of all modern electronics. The figure shows one type, the field-effect transistor, or FET. This particular FET is a slab of *P*-type semiconductor with two embedded *N*-type regions. Normally no current can flow through the transistor because one of its two *PN* junctions is backward, as shown in part (a) of the figure. But atop the so-called *channel* between the *N*-type regions is a thin insulating layer, and over it a metal layer called the *gate*. Make the gate positive, and it pulls electrons into the channel, making it

temporarily *N*-type, as in part (b). That eliminates the *PN* junctions, and now current flows through the transistor.

Varying the gate voltage continuously makes the transistor an *amplifier*, in which a weak gate signal controls a large current. Swinging between fully on and off makes the transistor a digital switch, providing the binary 1 and 0 from which all digital information is built. Today, transistors by the billions are fabricated on single chips of silicon, making the powerful microprocessors that are the “brains” of computers.

(continued)

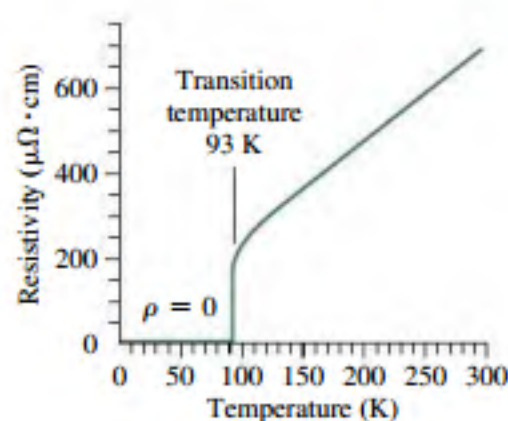
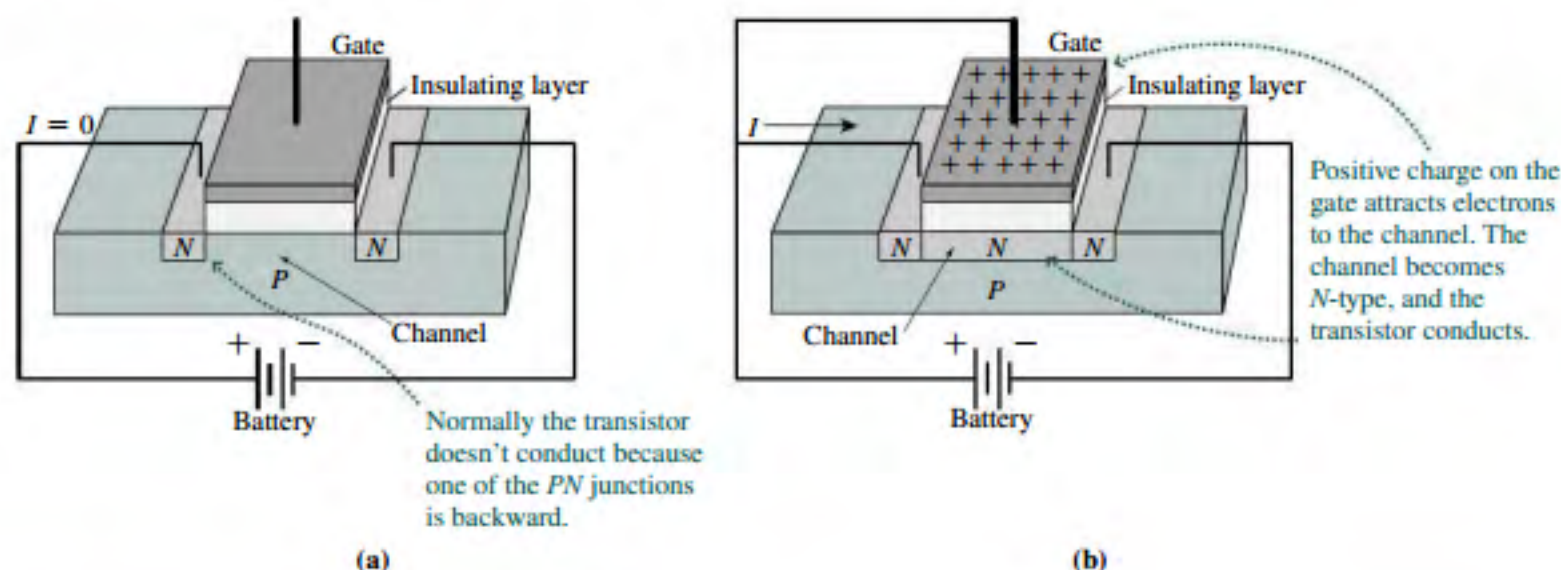


FIGURE 24.12 Resistivity versus temperature for a thin film of yttrium-barium-copper-oxide superconductor.

Superconductors

In 1911 the Dutch physicist H. Kamerlingh Onnes found that the resistivity of mercury dropped to zero at a temperature of 4.2 K. Today we know thousands of substances that become **superconductors** at sufficiently low temperatures. Currents in superconductors persist for years without measurable decrease, suggesting that the resistivity is truly zero (Fig. 24.12). For decades the known superconductors were metals and metal alloys that required cooling with liquid helium. Then, in 1986, physicists at IBM's Zurich laboratory stunned the scientific community with the discovery of ceramic materials that become superconducting at around 100 K—high enough to cool with inexpensive liquid nitrogen. The search for higher-temperature superconductors continues, with the highest temperature reported now over 200 K, and tantalizing hints of possible superconducting behavior at much higher temperatures. Development of a room-temperature superconductor could revolutionize much of electrical technology.

Superconductors offer loss-free flow of electric power. Today, superconductors are widely used in high-strength electromagnets, including those in MRI scanners; in filters that distinguish individual channels in cell-phone communications; in devices that measure weak magnetic fields in biomedical, geophysical, and other applications; for electric-power transmission in high-density urban applications; and in motors for ship propulsion. Expect more applications in the near future.

24.3 Resistance and Ohm's Law

LO 24.3 Relate voltage, current, and electrical resistance through Ohm's law.

How much current does it take to run this hair dryer? Do I risk a fatal shock if I touch this wire? How long an extension cord can I use with this electric saw? How long will it take to recharge my cell phone? Is the wiring in my house safe? All these questions are ultimately about the electric current flowing in wires, bodies, and batteries. The answer in each case depends on two things: the voltage V applied across the object and the **resistance** R that the object offers to the flow of electric current.

The macroscopic version of Ohm's law relates voltage, current, and resistance. Ohm's law states that the current through an object is proportional to the voltage across it and inversely proportional to the object's resistance:

I is the electric current through a resistance R .

V is the voltage across the resistance R .

$$I = \frac{V}{R} \quad (\text{Ohm's law, macroscopic version}) \quad (24.5)$$

R is the resistance.

The *macroscopic* version relates current and voltage in an entire electrical resistance.

Ohm's law shows that a given voltage can push more current through a lower resistance. It's worth noting two extreme cases: An **open circuit** is a nonconducting gap with infinite resistance. No matter what the voltage is across an open circuit, Equation 24.5 shows that no current can flow. A switch in its "off" position is an open circuit. A **short circuit**, in contrast, has zero resistance. In a short circuit, current of any magnitude is possible without any voltage or electric field. A switch in its "on" position approximates a short circuit. An unintentional short circuit is dangerous; short circuits in household wiring, for example, are a leading cause of fires because they allow large currents to flow, resulting in excessive heating. All real situations, with the exception of superconductors, lie between the extremes of short and open circuits.

We can understand how the macroscopic version of Ohm's law follows from the microscopic version by considering the conductor shown in Fig. 24.13. Suppose there's a uniform electric field $\vec{E}$ within the conductor. Then there must be a uniform current density given by Equation 24.4b: $\vec{J} = \vec{E}/\rho$, where ρ is the resistivity of the material. Then the total current is $I = JA = EA/\rho$, where A is the conductor's cross-sectional area. If the conductor has length L , then the potential difference between its ends is $V = EL$, since the electric field is uniform. Solving to get $E = V/L$ and using the result in our expression for I gives

$$I = \frac{VA}{L\rho} = \frac{V}{\rho L/A}$$

Comparison with the macroscopic Ohm's law, Equation 24.5, lets us identify the resistance with the term $\rho L/A$. Thus resistance depends on the resistivity ρ and the geometry—length and area—of the particular piece of material:

$$R = \frac{\rho L}{A} \tag{24.6}$$

We derived this expression for a conductor of uniform cross section; although Ohm's law still holds for a nonuniform conductor, integration is required to calculate the resistance in that case (see Problem 71). Equations 24.5 and 24.6 both show that the units of resistance are ohms (Ω).

We emphasize that Ohm's law is not fundamental; rather, it's an empirical law that describes electrical conduction in some materials. Table 24.2 summarizes the relation between microscopic and macroscopic quantities in Ohm's law.

A **resistor** is a piece of conductor made to have a specific resistance. Heating elements in electric stoves, hair dryers, irons, space heaters, and the like are all essentially resistors; so are the filaments of incandescent lightbulbs. In all these cases, the resistance—ultimately resulting from collisions between conduction electrons and lattice ions—provides a means of turning electric energy into heat. Resistors also set appropriate values of current and

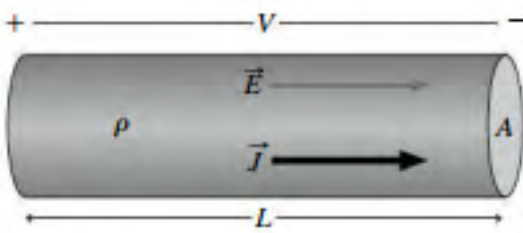


FIGURE 24.13 A cylinder of conducting material with resistivity ρ .

Table 24.2 Microscopic and Macroscopic Quantities and Ohm's Law

Microscopic	Macroscopic	Relation
Electric field, $\vec{E}$	Voltage, V	$\vec{E}$ is defined at each point in a material; V is the integral of $\vec{E}$ over a path. In a uniform field, $V = EL$.
Current density, $\vec{J}$	Current, I	$\vec{J}$ is defined at each point in a material; I is the flux—the surface integral—of $\vec{J}$ over an area. With uniform current density, $I = JA$.
Resistivity, ρ	Resistance, R	ρ is a property of a given material; R is a property of a particular piece of material. In a piece with uniform cross section, $R = \rho L/A$.
Ohm's law $\vec{J} = \frac{\vec{E}}{\rho}$	Ohm's law $I = \frac{V}{R}$	Microscopic version relates current density to electric field at a point in a material. Macroscopic version relates current through to voltage across a given piece of material.

EXAMPLE 24.4**Resistance and Ohm's Law: Starting Your Car***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A copper wire 0.50 cm in diameter and 70 cm long connects your car's battery to the starter motor. What's the wire's resistance? If the starter motor draws a current of 170 A, what's the potential difference across the wire?

INTERPRET This problem involves Ohm's law, and we identify the wire as the object in which we want to relate current, voltage, and resistance.

DEVELOP Figure 24.14 shows the wire. Equation 24.6, $R = \rho L/A$, determines the resistance, so our plan is first to use the resistivity of copper from Table 24.1 in Equation 24.6 and then to use the resulting resistance in Ohm's law (Equation 24.5), $I = V/R$, to find the potential difference.

EVALUATE Table 24.1 gives $\rho = 1.68 \times 10^{-8} \Omega \cdot \text{m}$ for copper, so for the resistance we get

$$R = \frac{\rho L}{A} = \frac{(1.68 \times 10^{-8} \Omega \cdot \text{m})(0.70 \text{ m})}{\pi(0.25 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m})^2} = 0.60 \text{ m}\Omega$$

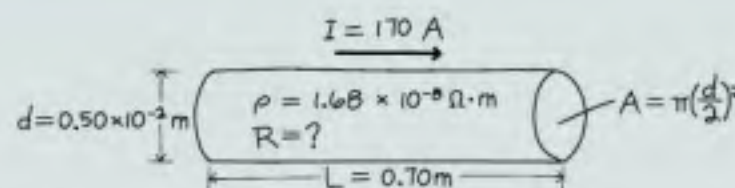


FIGURE 24.14 Sketch for Example 24.4.

Then Ohm's law gives the voltage: $V = IR = (170 \text{ A})(0.60 \text{ m}\Omega) = 0.10 \text{ V}$.

ASSESS Make sense? These numbers seem awfully small. They should be! A wire carrying a large amount of current needs to have a very low resistance so the voltage across the wire remains low. We want that 12-V potential difference from the battery to appear across the starter motor, not the connecting wires. A thinner, higher-resistance wire would mean lower voltage across the starter and a significant reduction in current.

voltage in electronic circuits; for this purpose, they're made in a wide range of resistances. Resistors are rated not only by their resistance but also by the maximum power they can dissipate without overheating.

GOT IT?

24.3 The figure shows three pieces of wire. (a) and (b) are made from the same material, while (c) is made from a material with twice the resistivity. (a) and (c) have twice the diameter of (b), while (b) is twice as long as the others. (1) Which has the highest resistance? (2) If the same voltage is applied across each, which will pass the largest current?



(a)



(b)



(c)

24.4 Electric Power

LO 24.4 Determine electric power given voltage and current.

Impose a potential difference V across a resistor, and a current I flows through it. The quantity V is the energy gained per unit charge as charge “falls” through the potential difference. In a resistor, that energy is dissipated through collisions, heating the material. So V is also the energy per unit charge going into heating. Meanwhile, the current I is the rate at which charge flows through the resistor. Then the energy per unit time—that is, the power dissipated in heating the resistor—is the product of the energy per unit charge and the rate at which charge moves through the conductor:

P is the power associated with current through and voltage across an electrical device.

$$P = IV \quad (\text{electric power})$$

(24.7)

... and V is the voltage.

I is the current ...

P could be power dissipated in a resistor, converted to mechanical energy in a motor, or produced in a battery or generator.

Although we developed Equation 24.7 for power dissipated as heat in a resistor, it holds any time electrical energy is being converted to some other form. If we measure 5 V across an electric motor and 2 A through the motor, we can conclude that the motor is converting electrical to mechanical energy at the rate of 10 W (actually less because some of the power goes into heating).

Solving Ohm's law for V and putting the result in Equation 24.7 give

$$P = I^2 R \quad (24.8a)$$

Solving instead for I gives

$$P = \frac{V^2}{R} \quad (24.8b)$$

These are useful forms when we know the resistance and either the voltage or the current.



WHAT'S CONSTANT? Equation 24.8a seems to imply that power increases with increasing resistance, while Equation 24.8b seems to suggest the opposite. Both implications are correct—if I in Equation 24.8a and V in Equation 24.8b are constants. But there's no contradiction because I and V can't both be constant while the resistance R —the ratio of V to I —changes. In most cases we work with sources of constant voltage, and then the power dissipated is inversely proportional to the resistance.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 24.1 Power Transmission

Long-distance power transmission lines operate at very high voltages—often hundreds of kilovolts. Why?

EVALUATE Equation 24.7, $P = IV$, shows that we can get the same electric power from low voltage V and high current I , or vice versa. But Equation 24.8a shows that power loss in a transmission line increases as the *square* of the current. So use of high voltage and low current minimizes transmission losses (Fig. 24.15).

ASSESS As a user, you don't encounter these high voltages. That's because transformers "step down" the voltage before it reaches the

end user (you'll learn about transformers in Chapter 28). The lower voltages are safer and easier to handle, although even standard 230-V household power is far from "safe."

Since power can also be written as V^2/R , you might wonder why high *voltages* don't also result in greater losses. The Tip above can help with this issue—especially given that the high voltages V_{pp} and V_L in Fig. 24.15 aren't voltages across the wires themselves. Given the wire's low resistance, the latter is actually a very small voltage. So V^2/R is small and, as the Tip implies, is equal to $I^2 R$.

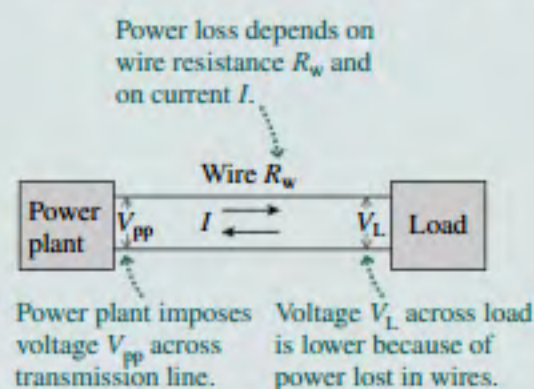


FIGURE 24.15 High voltage and low current minimize losses in power transmission.

MAKING THE CONNECTION What's the current in a 230-V, 100-W incandescent lightbulb? What's the bulb's resistance?

EVALUATE Solving Equation 24.7 for the current I gives $I = P/V = 100 \text{ W}/230 \text{ V} = 0.435 \text{ A}$. Knowing the current, you can get the resistance either from Ohm's law or from Equation 24.8a. Or you can get it directly from Equation 24.8b. All three approaches give $R = 529 \Omega$. The filament temperature is around 3000 K, so this resistance is much higher than what you'd measure with the bulb off.

Incidentally, the LED lamps that replace 100-W incandescent bulbs draw about 0.06 A of current; from $P = IV$ you can see that their power consumption is only 14 W.

GOT IT?

24.4 You put a variable resistance across a battery that maintains a fixed voltage across its terminals. If you lower the resistance, does the power supplied by the battery (a) increase or (b) decrease?

24.5 Electrical Safety

LO 24.5 Relate electrical safety to physics and to the biological effects of electric current.

Whether you're in a lab hooking up electronic equipment, or in a hospital connecting instrumentation to a patient, or on a job designing electric devices, or simply at home plugging in appliances and tools, you should be concerned with electrical safety.

Everyone knows enough to be wary of “high voltage.” People with a little more sophistication say, “It isn’t the voltage but the current that kills.” In fact, both points of view are partially correct. Current through the body is dangerous, but as with any resistor it takes voltage to drive that current.

Table 24.3 shows typical effects of electric currents entering the body through skin contact. A primary danger is disturbance of the electric signals that pace heartbeat; this is reflected in the lethal zone of 100–200 mA at which the heart goes into fibrillation—uncontrolled spasms of the cardiac muscle. With electric signals applied internally, much lower currents can be lethal. Doctors performing cardiac catheterization worry about currents at the microampere level.

Above 200 mA, complete cardiac arrest may occur, breathing may stop, and burns may occur. Sometimes high currents are useful: Emergency defibrillators briefly apply a high enough current to stop the heart, which often restarts normal beating. The figures in Table 24.3 are rough averages and vary from person to person as well as with duration of the shock and whether alternating or direct current is involved. Very young children and people with heart conditions are at higher risk.

Under dry conditions, the typical human has a resistance of about $10^5 \, \Omega$ between two points on unbroken skin. What voltages are dangerous to such a person? At $10^5 \, \Omega$ it takes

$$V = IR = (0.1 \, \text{A})(10^5 \, \Omega) = 10,000 \, \text{V}$$

to drive the fatal 100 mA. But a person who’s wet or sweaty has a much lower resistance and may be electrocuted by 230-V household electricity or even lower.

To be dangerous, an electric circuit must have high voltage *and* be capable of driving sufficient current. For example, a car battery can deliver 300 A, but it can’t electrocute you because its 12 V won’t drive much current through you. On the other hand, the 20,000 V that runs your car’s spark plugs won’t electrocute you either, since the high-voltage circuit can’t deliver more than a few mA.

Table 24.3 Effects of Externally Applied Current on Humans

Current Range	Effect
0.5–2 mA	Threshold of sensation
10–15 mA	Involuntary muscle contractions; can’t let go
15–100 mA	Severe shock; muscle control lost; breathing difficult
100–200 mA	Fibrillation of heart; death within minutes
>200 mA	Cardiac arrest; breathing stops; severe burns

APPLICATION

The Taser[®]

The Taser is a so-called electroshock weapon used by police to subdue unruly suspects. The Taser uses compressed nitrogen gas to fire two barbed darts into the victim with sufficient force and dart length to penetrate clothing and make contact with the victim’s body. Very fine wires connect the darts back to the weapon, as far as 9 m away, and thus form a complete circuit once the darts are lodged in the body. In the most common police model, a potential difference of 1200 V is applied across the darts in pulses that last 100 μs . The weapon delivers 19 such pulses each second. The voltage, pulse shape, and pulse duration are engineered to cause major skeletal muscles to contract involuntarily without affecting the heart muscle and without dangerously strong contractions that would occur at much higher pulse rates. Thus the Taser effectively immobilizes the victim, supposedly without danger of permanent damage.

Law-enforcement officials claim the Taser saves lives by substituting for lethal bullets or crude weapons like clubs. Others point to a number of cases of death following Taser use—although only a handful of those deaths have been attributed to the Taser’s electrical effects. Debates over Taser safety are muddled by the fact that many Taser victims are already impaired by drug abuse and that police restraint of suspects often involves violent means that sometimes result in death.

In Problem 56 you can explore the physiological effects of the Taser in the context of Table 24.3.



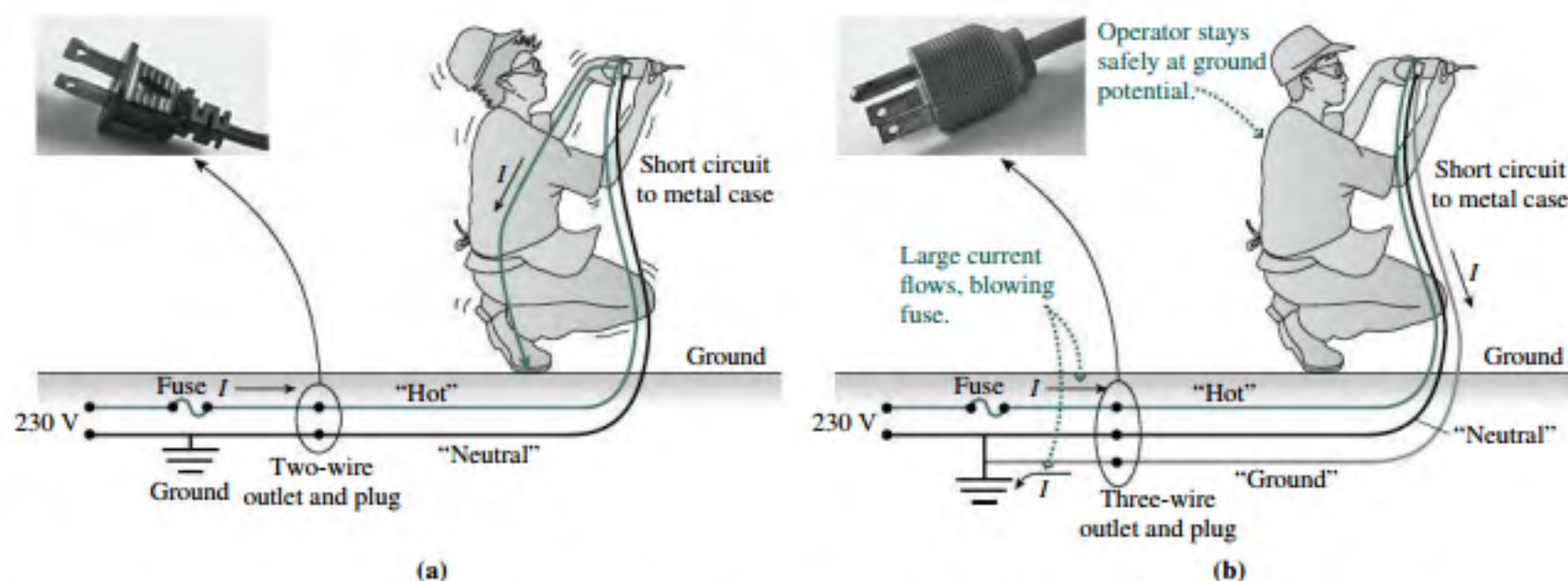


FIGURE 24.16 (a) A short circuit in an ungrounded tool could result in a lethal shock. (b) With a grounded tool, the fuse blows and the operator is safe.

Because potential difference is a property of two points, receiving an electric shock requires that two parts of the body contact conductors at different potentials; this chapter's opening photo provides a dramatic example. In typical 230-V wiring used throughout most of the world, one of the two wires is connected physically to the ground. This ground connection prevents the wiring from reaching arbitrarily high potentials, as might otherwise happen in a thunderstorm or if a short circuit occurred in a power line. At the same time it means that an individual contacting the "hot" side of the circuit and any grounded conductor such as the ground, a water pipe, or a bathtub will receive a shock.

Many devices use three-wire cords to reduce shock hazard. Exposed metal parts connect directly to a third ground wire that normally carries no current. If something goes wrong and a "hot" wire accidentally short-circuits to the metal case, this wire provides a low-resistance path to ground (Fig. 24.16). A large current flows and blows the fuse or circuit breaker, shutting off the current. Even better are *ground fault circuit interrupters* used in kitchens, bathrooms, and other high-risk locations. These devices sense a slight imbalance in current on the two wires, and shut off the circuit on the assumption that the "missing" current is leaking to ground, perhaps through a person.

GOT IT?

24.5 Today's power tools are often cordless, powered by internal batteries. Are you completely safe from electric shock when using such a tool? Discuss.

Chapter 24 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is **electric current**—the flow of electric charge—and its microscopic cousin, **current density**. With current we don't have electrostatic equilibrium, and there's usually an electric field in a current-carrying conductor. **Ohm's law** is an empirical statement—not a fundamental law of physics—that relates current and voltage, or current density and electric field.

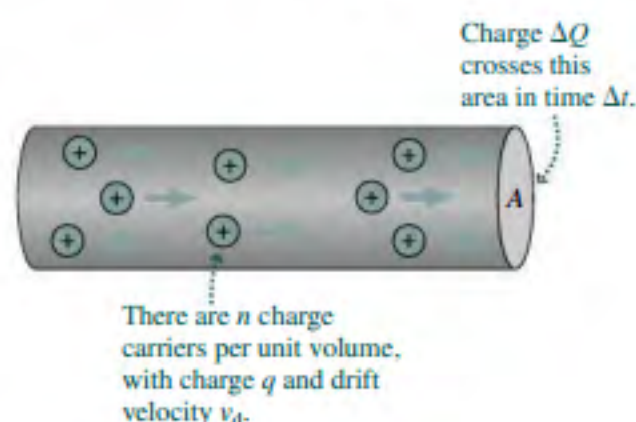
Key Concepts and Equations

Quantitatively, **current** is defined as the rate of charge flow:

$$I = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t}$$

Current density is the current per unit area. Its magnitude is

$$J = \frac{I}{A}$$



Microscopically, current depends on the density of charge carriers, their charge, and the **drift velocity**:

$$I = nqAv_d$$

and

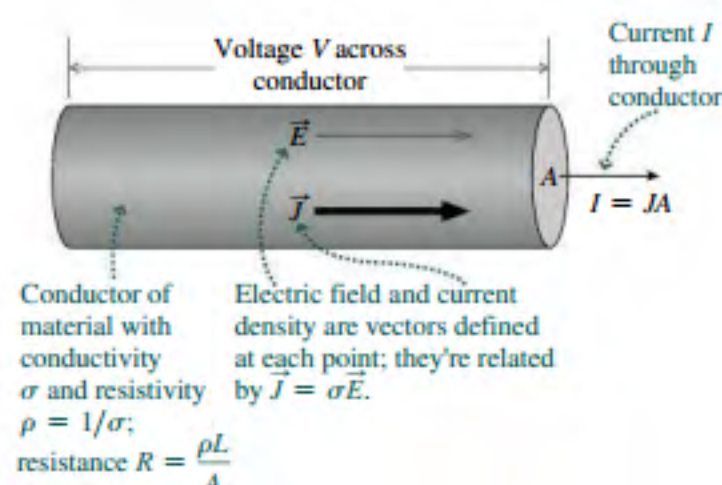
$$\vec{J} = nq\vec{v}_d$$

The microscopic version of **Ohm's law** relates electric field, current density, and **conductivity** σ (or its inverse, **resistivity** ρ):

$$\vec{J} = \sigma \vec{E}$$

The macroscopic version relates voltage, current, and resistance:

$$I = V/R$$



Electric power is the product of voltage and current:

$$P = IV$$

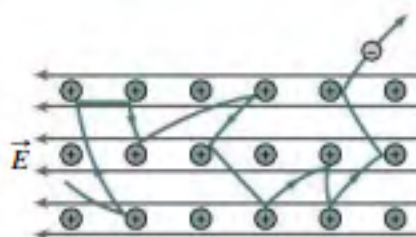
Using Ohm's law, this can also be written

$$P = I^2 R$$

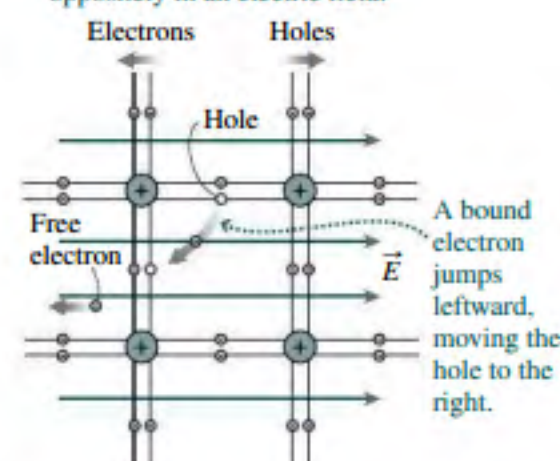
$$P = \frac{V^2}{R}$$

Applications

Different types of conductors have different conduction mechanisms. In **metals**, free electrons carry the current; in **ionic solutions**, both positive and negative ions are involved; in **plasmas**, the charge carriers are free electrons and ions; and in **semiconductors**, both electrons and positive holes carry current, with semiconductor conduction properties readily adjustable. **Superconductors** are materials that exhibit zero resistance at sufficiently low temperatures.



Electron and hole move oppositely in an electric field.



Electrical safety is a matter of avoiding currents high enough to cause biological harm, and that means avoiding voltages high enough to drive such currents.

Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **Comp** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>LO 24.1 Describe electric current in both microscopic and macroscopic terms.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 24.1; Exercises 24.11, 24.12, 24.13, 24.14; Problems 21.42, 21.43, 21.44, 21.45, 21.46, 21.47, 24.69, 24.72</i></p> <p>LO 24.2 Describe different mechanisms of electrical conduction, including the microscopic version of Ohm's law.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 24.2, 24.3, 24.4, 24.7; Exercises 24.15, 24.16, 24.17, 24.18, 24.19; Problems 24.48, 24.49, 24.67, 24.71</i></p> <p>LO 24.3 Relate voltage, current, and electrical resistance through Ohm's law.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 24.6; Exercises 24.20, 24.21, 24.22, 24.23, 24.24, 24.25; Problems 24.50, 24.51, 24.52, 24.53, 24.54, 24.55, 24.56, 24.62</i></p> | <p>LO 24.4 Determine electric power given voltage and current.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 24.8, 24.9; Exercises 24.26, 24.27, 24.28, 24.29, 24.30; Problems 24.57, 24.58, 24.59, 24.60, 24.61, 24.63, 24.64, 24.65, 24.66, 24.68, 24.70</i></p> <p>LO 24.5 Relate electrical safety to physics and to the biological effects of electric current.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 24.5, 24.10; Exercises 24.31, 24.32, 24.33</i></p> |
|---|---|

For Thought and Discussion

1. Explain the difference between current and current density.
2. A constant electric field generally produces a constant drift velocity. How is this consistent with Newton's assertion that force results in acceleration, not velocity?
3. Good conductors of electricity are often good conductors of heat. Why might this be?
4. Does an electric stove burner draw more current when it's first turned on or when it's fully hot?
5. A person and a cow are standing in a field when lightning strikes the ground nearby. Why is the cow more likely to be electrocuted?
6. You put a 1.5-V battery across a piece of material, and a 100-mA current flows. With a 9-V battery, the current increases to 400 mA. Is the material ohmic or not?
7. The resistance of a metal increases with increasing temperature, while the resistance of a semiconductor decreases. Why the difference?
8. A 40-W and a 60-W lightbulb are both designed to operate at 230 V. Which has the lower resistance?
9. Equation 24.8a suggests that no power can be dissipated in a superconductor because $R = 0$. But Equation 24.8b suggests the power should be infinite. Which is right, and why?
10. What's wrong with this news report: "A power-line worker was injured when 4000 volts passed through his body"?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 24.1 Electric Current

11. A wire carries 1.4 A. How many electrons pass through the wire in one second?
12. A 12-V car battery is rated at 80 ampere-hours, meaning it can supply 80 A of current for 1 hour before it becomes discharged. If you accidentally leave the headlights on until the battery discharges, how much charge moves through the lights?

13. **BIO** Biologists measure the total current due to potassium ions moving through the membrane of a rock crab neuron cell as 29 nA. How many ions pass through the membrane each second?
14. UK wiring regulations specify a maximum current of 13 A in 1.5-mm² cross-sectional area copper wire. What's the corresponding current density?

Section 24.2 Conduction Mechanisms

15. The electric field in an aluminum wire is 85 mV/m. Find the current density in the wire.
16. What electric field is necessary to drive a 7.5-A current through a 0.95-mm-diameter silver wire?
17. A cylindrical tube of seawater carries 350 mA of current. If the electric field in the water is 21 V/m, what's the tube's diameter?
18. A 1.0-cm-diameter rod carries a 50-A current when the electric field in the rod is 1.4 V/m. What's the resistivity of the rod material?
19. Use Table 24.1 to determine the conductivity of (a) copper and (b) seawater.

Section 24.3 Resistance and Ohm's Law

20. Find the resistance of a heating coil that draws 4.6 A when the voltage across it is 230 V.
21. What voltage does it take to drive 200 mA through a 2.3-k Ω resistance?
22. What's the current in an 85-k Ω resistor with 220 V across it?
23. The "third rail" that carries electric power to a subway train is an iron bar whose rectangular cross section measures 10 cm by 15 cm. Find the resistance of a 5.0-km length of this rail.
24. What current flows when a 45-V potential difference is imposed across a 1.8-k Ω resistor?
25. A uniform wire of resistance R is stretched until its length doubles. Assuming its density and resistivity remain constant, what's its new resistance?

Section 24.4 Electric Power

26. A car's starter motor draws 120 A with 11 V across its terminals. What's its power consumption?

27. A 4.5-W flashlight bulb draws 750 mA. (a) At what voltage does it operate? (b) What's its resistance?
28. A watch uses energy at the rate of $210 \mu\text{W}$. What current does it draw from its 1.5-V battery?
29. A $35\text{-}\Omega$ electric stove burner consumes 1.5 kW of power. At what voltage does it operate?
30. An incandescent lightbulb draws 261 mA, while an LED with the same light output draws 34.8 mA. Both operate on standard 230-V household power. (a) Determine their energy-consumption rates. (b) Suppose you've been operating the incandescent bulb for 3 hours a day and that your electrical energy costs 13.5 pence per kWh. How much money will you save on your electric bills over a year if you replace the incandescent with the LED? Note that an incandescent lightbulb costs about £0.7, while you might pay £7 for an LED—and the LED will last many years.

Section 24.5 Electrical Safety

31. Though rare, electrocution has been reported under wet conditions with voltages as low as 40 V. What resistance would be necessary for this voltage to drive a fatal current of 120 mA?
32. You touch a defective appliance while standing on the ground, and you feel the tingle of a 2.5-mA current. What's your resistance, assuming you're touching the "hot" side of the 230-V household wiring?
33. You have a typical resistance of $100 \text{ k}\Omega$. (a) How much current could a 12-V car battery pass through you? (b) Would you feel this?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

34. **Example 24.3:** Modern houses are often equipped with 200-amp service, meaning that 200 A is the maximum current that can be supplied to the house. Such service requires 9.3 mm diameter copper wires bringing power to the house. Find (a) the current density and (b) the electric field in such a wire when it's carrying the full 200 A.
35. **Example 24.3:** The maximum current rating for a certain solid copper wire is 24 A. If the maximum allowed current density in this wire is 12 MA/m^2 , what are (a) the wire diameter and (b) the electric field in the wire at the maximum current density?
36. **Example 24.3:** An electrolyzer passes electric current through water, dissociating some of the water molecules and thus producing hydrogen (H_2) and oxygen (O_2) gas. Electrolyzers powered by renewable wind and solar energy sources could produce hydrogen for fuel-cell vehicles. In an experimental electrolyzer, current flows through a cylindrical tube of diameter 6.85 cm. The tube contains an alkaline solution that decreases the resistivity to $0.0466 \text{ }\Omega\cdot\text{m}$. If the tube carries 18.7 A, what are (a) the current density and (b) the electric field in the solution?
37. **Example 24.3:** The solar corona is the Sun's hot ($\sim 1 \text{ MK}$) outer atmosphere. It's so hot that it's essentially fully ionized and is therefore an excellent electrical conductor. A cylindrical section of the corona has resistivity $1.62 \times 10^{-8} \text{ }\Omega\cdot\text{m}$ (slightly better than copper at room temperature) and carries a current of 464 kA along the long dimension of the cylindrical region. Given that the current density in the region is 1.18 MA/m^2 , find (a) the diameter of the region and (b) the electric field in the region.

38. **Example 24.4:** You've got a 1.5-m length of a wire that has diameter 0.51 mm and is rated for a maximum current of 3.5 A. Find (a) the resistance of the wire and (b) the voltage from one end to the other when it's carrying its maximum rated current.
39. **Example 24.4:** A potential difference of 235 mV is imposed across a 2.25-m length of a wire whose diameter is 0.640 mm. As a result, a 1.27-A current flows in the wire. (a) Is the wire made of aluminum or copper? (b) What would be the current if the wire were made of the other of those two materials? *Hint:* Consult Table 24.1.
40. **Example 24.4:** Find the length of the electrolyzer tube in Example Variation Problem 36, if the voltage driving current through the tube is 162 V.
41. **Example 24.4:** Magnetic effects involving Jupiter's moon Io results in an effective voltage of about 500 kV that drives a current of some 5 MA between Io and Jupiter. This current flows through a tube of plasma whose diameter is about 4 Mm and whose length, very roughly, is 600 Mm. (a) Treating the tube as a cylindrical resistor, give a one-significant-figure estimate for the resistivity of the plasma. (b) For which substance in Table 24.1 is your result closest? (The physics of the plasma tube is actually much more complicated than that of a resistor.)

Problems

42. **BIO** An ion channel in a cell membrane carries 2.4 pA when it's open, which is only 20% of the time. (a) What's the average current in the channel? (b) If the channel opens for 1.0 ms, how many singly ionized ions pass through in this time?
43. A lightbulb filament has diameter 0.046 mm and carries 0.326 A. Find the current density (a) in the filament and (b) in the 1.5-mm^2 cross-sectional area wire supplying current to the lightbulb.
44. A gold film in an integrated circuit measures $1.85 \mu\text{m}$ thick by 0.120 mm wide. It carries a current density of 0.482 MA/m^2 . What's the total current?
45. A copper wire joins an aluminum wire whose diameter is twice that of the copper. The same current flows in both wires. The density of conduction electrons in copper is $1.1 \times 10^{29} \text{ m}^{-3}$; in aluminum it's $2.1 \times 10^{29} \text{ m}^{-3}$. Compare (a) the drift speeds and (b) the current densities in each wire.
46. In Fig. 24.17, a 100-mA current flows through a copper wire 0.10 mm in diameter, a salt solution in a 1.0-cm-diameter glass tube, and a vacuum tube where the current is carried by an electron beam 1.0 mm in diameter. The density of conduction electrons in copper is $1.1 \times 10^{29} \text{ m}^{-3}$. The current in the solution is carried equally by positive and negative ions with charges $\pm 2e$; the density of each ion species is $6.5 \times 10^{23} \text{ m}^{-3}$. The electron density in the beam is $2.1 \times 10^{16} \text{ m}^{-3}$. Find the drift speed in each region.

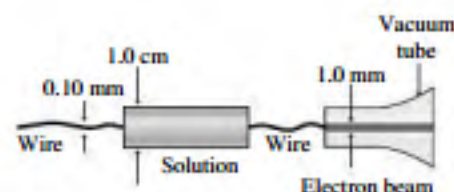


FIGURE 24.17 Problem 46

47. **BIO** In a study of proteins mediating cell membrane transport, biologists measure current versus time through the cell membranes of oocytes (nearly mature egg cells) taken from the African clawed frog, *Xenopus*. The measured current versus time is given approximately by $I = 60t + 200t^2 + 4.0t^3$ with t in seconds and I in nA. Find the total charge that flows through the cell membrane in the interval from $t = 0$ to $t = 5.0 \text{ s}$.

48. The single most important use of the element gold is for wires that join integrated circuits to the conducting pads that then connect microelectronic chips with external circuitry. A typical application uses gold wires 1.0 mil (0.001 inch) in diameter and 50 mil long. Although the current under normal conditions is much less, such a wire will *fuse* (that is, melt and interrupt the current) when the current exceeds some 600 mA. Find (a) the current density in the wire, (b) the electric field in the wire, and (c) the voltage between the ends of the wire, all when this maximum current is flowing.
49. The maximum safe current in a 2.5-mm² cross-sectional area copper wire is 20 A. Find (a) the current density and (b) the electric field under these conditions.
50. Silver and iron wires of the same length and diameter carry the same current. How do the voltages across the two compare?
51. You have a cylindrical piece of material 2.4 cm long and 2.0 mm in diameter. When you attach a 9-V battery to its ends, a 2.6-mA current flows. Which material from Table 24.1 do you have?
52. How must the diameters of copper and aluminum wire be related if they're to have the same resistance per unit length?
53. You're writing the instruction manual for a power saw, and you have to specify the maximum permissible length for an extension cord made from 1.5-mm² cross-sectional area copper wire. The saw draws 13.0 A and needs a minimum of 225 V across its motor when the outlet supplies 230 V. What do you specify for the maximum length extension cord, given that they come in 5-meter increments?
54. BIO An implanted pacemaker supplies the heart with 72 pulses per minute, each pulse providing 6.8 V for 0.68 ms. The resistance of the heart muscle between the pacemaker's electrodes is 550 Ω . Find (a) the current that flows during a pulse, (b) the energy delivered in one pulse, and (c) the average power supplied by the pacemaker.
55. A rectangular pad made of gold is used as a bonding site for wires connecting to an integrated circuit. The pad measures 0.254 mm by 0.186 mm by 2.00 μ m thick. Find the resistance between each of the three pairs of faces, assuming the faces are equipotentials. List in order from lowest to highest resistance.
56. BIO Each pulse produced by the Taser described in the Application on page 476 typically delivers 100 μ C of charge to the victim. Use this value, along with other quantities given in the Application, to find (a) the instantaneous current during a pulse, (b) the average current, and (c) the effective resistance of the victim between the points where the probes make contact.
57. The Nissan Leaf is an all-electric car powered by a 107-hp electric motor and a lithium-ion battery that stores 24 kWh and produces 394 V at its terminals when fully charged. The Leaf's battery can charge at the rate of 6.3 kW from a standard 230-V power outlet and at 44 kW using a special 480-V charger. The Leaf's fuel economy is 3.38 miles per kWh, the equivalent of 114 miles per gallon in a gasoline-powered car. Find (a) the range of the Leaf, assuming the battery can be fully depleted, (b) the charging time for each mode, and (c) the current delivered by the fully charged battery when the motor is operating at full power.
58. DATA An electric heater is tested by immersing it in 0.500 kg of water and measuring the time Δt it takes to raise the water temperature by 10.0°C. The experiment is repeated for different currents I through the heater, and the results are tabulated below. Determine two quantities, based on heating time and current, which, when plotted, will give a straight line. Make your plot, determine a best-fit line, and use it to find the heater's resistance. *Hint:* You may need to consult Chapter 16.
- | | | | | | |
|----------------|------|------|------|------|------|
| I (A) | 2.00 | 4.00 | 6.00 | 8.00 | 10.0 |
| Δt (s) | 422 | 112 | 44.3 | 28.2 | 16.9 |
59. (a) Determine the power associated with the Io-to-Jupiter current described in Example Variation Problem 41. (b) Compare your answer in (a) with humankind's electrical energy consumption rate, approximately 22,000 TWh per year.
60. At a particular point in a material with resistivity ρ the current density has magnitude J . Show that the power per unit volume dissipated at this point is $J^2\rho$.
61. A thermally insulated container of seawater carries a uniform current density of 75 mA/cm². How long does it take for its temperature to increase from 15°C to 20°C? Use the result of the preceding problem and any other information you might look up.
62. You're heading out for the weekend, but your car won't start. Your friend says you might have corrosion at the battery terminals—a frequent cause of hard starting because of increased resistance. Having read Example 24.4, you know that the resistance between battery and starter should be around 1 m Ω . While your friend cranks the starter, you measure 4.2 V between the battery terminal and the wire carrying current to the starter motor. If the motor draws 125 A, is the resistance in its normal range?
63. Two cylindrical resistors are made from the same material and have the same length. When connected across the same battery, one dissipates twice as much power as the other. How do their diameters compare?
64. You're working on a new high-speed rail system. It uses 6000-horsepower electric locomotives, getting power from a single overhead wire with resistance 15 m Ω /km, at 22 kV potential relative to the track. Current returns through the track, whose resistance is negligible. Energy-efficiency standards call for no more than 3% power loss in the wire. How far from the power plant can the train go and still meet this standard?
65. A 100%-efficient electric motor is lifting a 20-N weight at 30 cm/s. How much current does it draw from a 6.0-V battery?
66. A power plant produces 1000 MW to supply a city 40 km away. Current flows from the power plant on a single wire with resistance 50 m Ω /km, through the city, and returns via the ground, which has negligible resistance. At the power plant the voltage between wire and ground is 115 kV. Find (a) the current in the wire and (b) the fraction of the power lost in transmission.
67. You're estimating costs for a new power line with your company's financial group. Engineering specifies a resistance of 50 m Ω per kilometer for the line. The costs and densities of copper and aluminum are, respectively, \$6.86/kg and 8.9 g/cm³, and \$2.23/kg and 2.7 g/cm³. Determine the cost per meter of each type of wire. Which is more economical?
68. A 240-V electric motor is 90% efficient, meaning that 90% of the energy supplied to it ends up as mechanical work. If the motor lifts a 200-N weight at 3.4 m/s, how much current does it draw?
69. CH A metal bar has rectangular cross section 5.0 cm by 10 cm, as shown in Fig. 24.18. The bar has a nonuniform conductivity, and as a result the current density increases linearly from zero at the bottom to 0.10 A/cm² at the top. Find the total current in the bar.

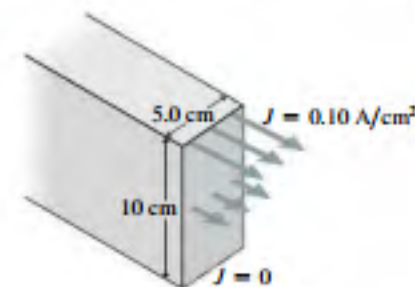


FIGURE 24.18 Problem 69

70. An immersion-type heating coil is connected to a 230-V outlet and immersed in a 250-mL cup of water initially at 10°C. The water comes to a boil in 89 s. Assuming no heat loss, and

neglecting the heater's mass, find (a) the power and (b) the heater's resistance.

71. **CH** A circular pan of radius b has a plastic bottom and metallic sidewall of height h . It's filled with a solution of resistivity ρ . A metal disk of radius a and height h is at the center, as shown in Fig. 24.19. The side and disk are essentially perfect conductors. Show that the resistance measured from side to disk is $R = \rho \ln(b/a)/2\pi h$.

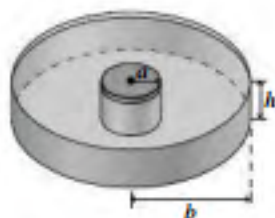


FIGURE 24.19 Problem 71

72. **CH** The current density in a particle beam with circular cross section of radius a points along the beam axis with a magnitude that decreases linearly from J_0 at the center ($r = 0$) to half that value at the edge ($r = a$). Find an expression for the total current in the beam.
73. **CH** You work for an automobile manufacturer developing a new plug-in hybrid car. The car's mass is 1200 kg, and it uses a 360-V battery driving an electric motor that can handle a maximum current of 190 A. You're to specify the greatest slope the car can climb, maintaining 68 km/h, without its gasoline engine coming on to assist.

Passage Problems

A brownout occurs when an electric utility can't supply enough power to meet demand. Rather than cut off some customers completely, the utility reduces the voltage across its system. Brownouts are most likely on hot summer days, when heavy air-conditioning loads drive up demand for electricity. In a particular brownout, the utility reduces the voltage by 10%.

74. During the brownout, the current in conductors whose resistance is nearly independent of temperature
- decreases by approximately 10%.
 - decreases by approximately 20%.
 - decreases by approximately 5%.
 - You can't tell without knowing the resistance.

75. Which of the following occurs in the conductors of the preceding problem during the brownout?
- Both the electric field and electron drift speed decrease.
 - The electric field decreases but the electron drift speed doesn't.
 - The current is carried by fewer electrons.
 - The electrons undergo more frequent collisions.
76. During the brownout, the power dissipated in conductors whose resistance is nearly independent of temperature
- decreases by approximately 10%.
 - decreases by approximately 20%.
 - decreases by approximately 5%.
 - You can't tell without knowing the resistance.
77. Metallic conductors like lightbulb filaments and electric stove burners have resistance that increases with increasing temperature. During the brownout, the current in such devices
- decreases by 10%.
 - decreases by more than 10%.
 - decreases by less than 10%.
 - You can't tell without knowing more about how the resistance varies.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Collisions between electrons and the metal ions in the filament dissipate electric energy as heat. The energy results from the electrons' being accelerated by an electric field.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 24.1 (a) current, right to left; (b) current, up; (c) current, left; (d), (e) no current
- 24.2 (1) $J_A < J_B$; (2) $E_A < E_B$; (3) $v_{dA} < v_{dB}$
- 24.3 (1) (b) it's twice as long as (c) but with one-fourth the area and half the resistivity; (2) (a) because it has the lowest resistance
- 24.4 (a)
- 24.5 No, you could still drill or cut into a live electric wire, putting metal parts of the tool at dangerous voltages.

Electric Circuits

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Potential difference (Sections 21.1 and 21.2)
- Electric current (Sections 24.1 and 24.2)
- Resistance and Ohm's Law (Section 24.3)
- Capacitors (Sections 23.2 and 23.3)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 25.1 Read and draw electronic circuit diagrams.
- LO 25.2 Analyze circuits containing series and parallel resistors.
- LO 25.3 Analyze general circuits using Kirchhoff's laws.
- LO 25.4 Use voltmeters and ammeters correctly.
- LO 25.5 Analyze circuits containing capacitors.



An electronic circuit board is a complex inter-connection of electronic components. What two fundamental principles allow us to analyze even the most complex circuits?

An electric circuit is a collection of electrical components connected by conductors. Human-made circuits range from simple flashlights to computers. Electric circuits also exist in nature, including your own nervous system and Earth's atmospheric circuit in which thunderstorms are the batteries and the atmosphere a resistor. Understanding circuits will help you effectively and safely use the myriad electrical devices in your life and can even help you design new devices or troubleshoot old ones.

25.1 Circuits, Symbols, and Electromotive Force

LO 25.1 Read and draw electronic circuit diagrams.

We diagram circuits using standard symbols for circuit components and lines to represent wires (Fig. 25.1). We usually approximate wires as perfect conductors; then all points connected by a wire are at the same potential and are electrically equivalent. Realizing this will help you understand circuit diagrams.

It takes an electric field to drive current through a conductor with nonzero resistance. But unless we actively maintain the field, charge will quickly move to establish electrostatic equilibrium, with no field inside the conductor and no current. So we need a device that can maintain a fixed potential difference

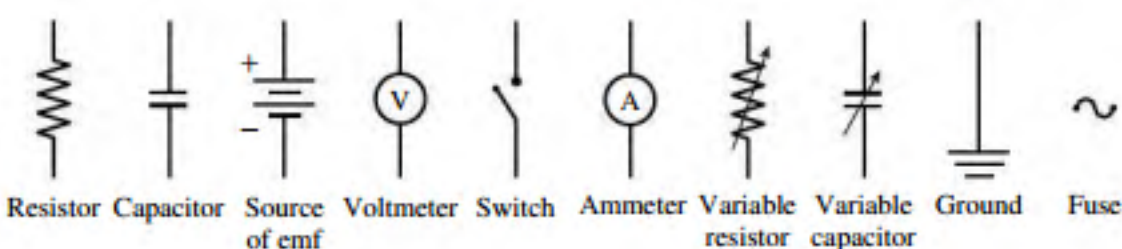


FIGURE 25.1 Common circuit symbols.

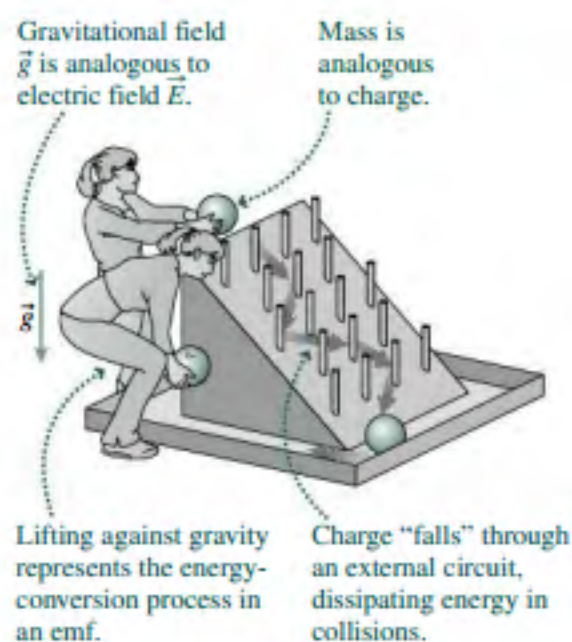


FIGURE 25.2 Gravitational analog for emf.

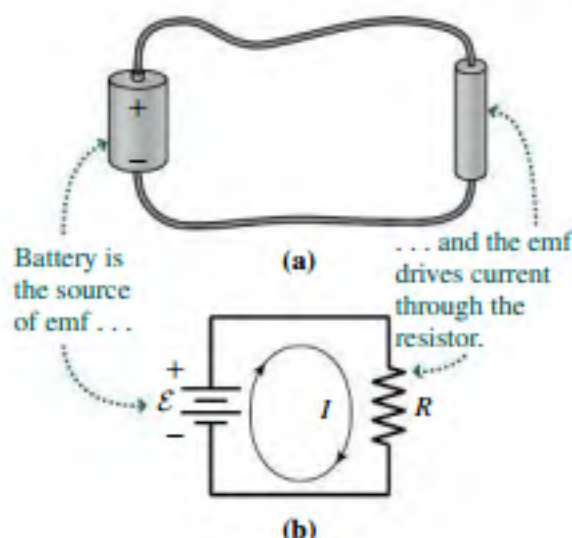


FIGURE 25.3 A circuit consisting of a battery and a resistor: (a) physical circuit; (b) schematic diagram.

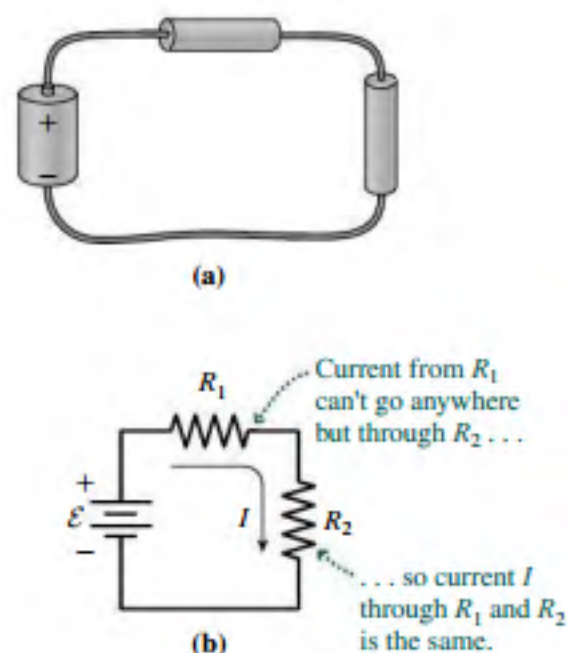


FIGURE 25.4 A battery and two resistors in series: (a) physical circuit; (b) schematic diagram.

and therefore an electric field in a current-carrying conductor. Such a device is called a source of **electromotive force**, or **emf**. (The name “force” here is inaccurate and is used only for historical reasons.) Most sources of emf have two **terminals** for connection to other circuit components. An emf converts some other form of energy to electrical energy by separating positive and negative charge to maintain a fixed potential difference between its terminals. The most familiar example is a battery, in which chemical reactions drive charge to the two terminals. Others include electric generators, which convert mechanical to electrical energy; photovoltaic cells, which use sunlight to separate charge; and cell membranes, which control ion flow into and out of the cell.

When a source of emf is connected to an external circuit, current flows through the circuit from the emf’s positive terminal to the negative terminal. Energy-conversion processes in the emf then “lift” charge against the emf’s internal electric field, maintaining a fixed potential difference across its terminals. The charge then “falls” through the external circuit, dissipating its energy in the circuit resistance. The result is a steady current, driven by the constant voltage across the emf. Figure 25.2 shows a gravitational analogy for an emf connected across an external circuit.

Quantitatively, emf is the work per unit charge involved in “lifting” charge against the electric field. Its units are therefore volts. An **ideal emf** maintains the same voltage across its terminals under all conditions. Real emfs have internal energy losses, and the terminal voltage may not equal the rated emf.

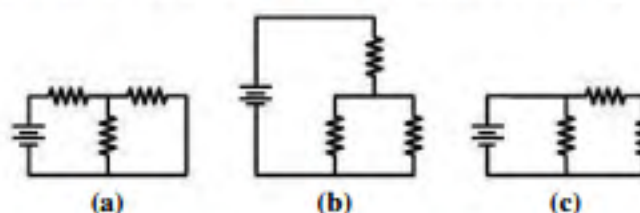
In Fig. 25.3 an ideal battery of emf $\mathcal{E}$ drives current through resistor R . We’re assuming the wires connecting the battery and the resistor are perfect conductors, so the voltage across the resistor is equal to the battery’s emf. Ohm’s law then gives the resistor current: $I = \mathcal{E}/R$. Energetically, this circuit is analogous to Fig. 25.2: Charge gains $\mathcal{E}$ joules per coulomb as it’s “lifted” against the electric field inside the battery, then dissipates that energy in heating the resistor.



DON'T GET HUNG UP ON WIRES We approximate wires as perfect conductors, so it takes no potential difference to drive current through a wire. Thus all points on the wire are at the same potential and are electrically equivalent. That means there are many ways to draw the same circuit; as long as two points are connected by a wire, that's all that matters. Real wires have some resistance, but if it's negligible compared with other resistances in the circuit, then we can approximate the wires as being ideal.

GOT IT?

25.1 The figure shows three circuits. Which are electrically equivalent?



25.2 Series and Parallel Resistors

LO 25.2 Analyze circuits containing series and parallel resistors.

We considered series and parallel capacitors in Section 23.3. Series and parallel are the two simplest ways to connect *any* electric components. Two components are in series if the current flowing through one component has nowhere to go but through the other component. Two components are in parallel if they’re connected together at each end. Here we’ll consider series and parallel resistors.

Series Resistors

Figure 25.4 shows a circuit with two resistors in series. We’d like to know the current through and the voltage across each resistor. Neither is connected directly across the battery, so we can’t argue that either resistor “sees” the battery emf. But the resistors are in

series, and that means the only place for current to go after R_1 is through R_2 . In a steady state, with no charge buildup in the circuit, that means the current through both resistors—and through the battery as well—must be the same. This is true whenever circuit components are in series:

The current through circuit components in series is the same.

If I is the current in Fig. 25.4, then by Ohm's law there must be a voltage $V_1 = IR_1$ across R_1 to drive the current through this resistor. Similarly, the voltage across R_2 is $V_2 = IR_2$. Thus, the voltage across the two resistors together is $V_1 + V_2 = IR_1 + IR_2$. But the battery is connected directly across this series combination, so the voltage across the two resistors together is the same as the battery emf $\mathcal{E}$. Therefore $IR_1 + IR_2 = \mathcal{E}$, or

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R_1 + R_2}$$

Comparison with Ohm's law in the form $I = V/R$ shows that the two resistors in series behave like an equivalent resistance equal to the sum of their resistances. In an obvious generalization to more resistors in series, we have

R_{series} is the equivalent resistance of two or more resistors in series.

It's the sum of the individual resistances.

$$R_{\text{series}} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + \cdots \quad (\text{series resistors}) \quad (25.1)$$

In other words, resistors in series add.

Given the current, we can use Ohm's law in the form $V = IR$ to solve for the voltage across each resistor:

$$V_1 = \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_2} \mathcal{E} \quad \text{and} \quad V_2 = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \mathcal{E} \quad (25.2a,b)$$

These expressions show that the battery voltage divides between the two resistors in proportion to their resistance. For this reason a series combination of resistors is called a **voltage divider**.



HOW DOES THE BATTERY KNOW? How does the battery in Fig. 25.4 “know” how much current to supply? For a brief instant when the circuit is first connected, it doesn't. But in a very short time an electric field is established throughout the wires and resistors, and the circuit settles into a steady state, with the same current everywhere. Later, with circuits including capacitors, we'll analyze the approach to the steady state; for now, assume that the circuit reaches that state essentially instantaneously.

EXAMPLE 25.1 Series Resistors: Designing a Voltage Divider

A lightbulb with resistance $5.0 \, \Omega$ is designed to operate at a current of 600 mA. To operate this lamp from a 12-V battery, what resistance should you put in series with it?

INTERPRET This problem is about a series circuit like Fig. 25.4, with the two resistors being the lightbulb and the unknown R_1 .

DEVELOP We've sketched the circuit in Fig. 25.5, taking R_1 as the unknown and R_2 as the $5\text{-}\Omega$ lightbulb. The same current flows through series resistors, so our plan is to find an expression for that current and then solve for the value of R_1 that will make the current 600 mA.

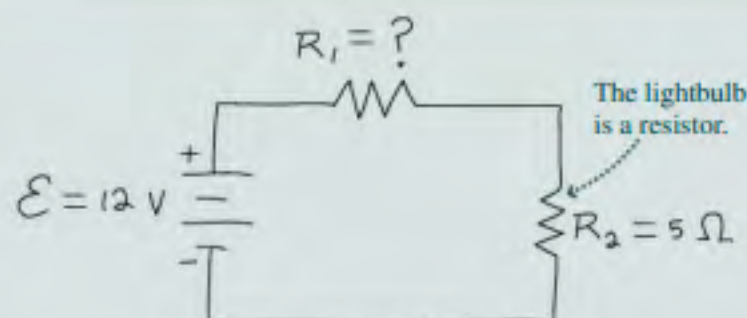


FIGURE 25.5 Sketch for Example 25.1.

(continued)

Since resistors in series add, the current through both resistors follows from Ohm's law: $I = \mathcal{E}/(R_1 + R_2)$.

EVALUATE We solve for R_1 to get

$$R_1 = \frac{\mathcal{E} - IR_2}{I} = \frac{12 \text{ V} - (0.60 \text{ A})(5.0 \Omega)}{0.60 \text{ A}} = 15 \Omega$$

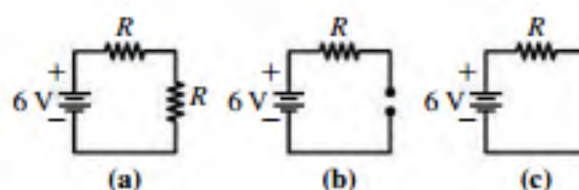
ASSESS Make sense? The lightbulb's operating voltage is

$$V = IR_2 = (0.60 \text{ A})(5.0 \Omega) = 3.0 \text{ V}$$

This is one-fourth of the battery voltage, so Equation 25.2b shows that the bulb's $5\text{-}\Omega$ resistance should be one-fourth of the total. That makes the total 20Ω , leaving 15Ω for R_1 . This isn't a very efficient way to run the bulb, since a lot more energy gets dissipated in R_1 than goes into lighting the bulb. Better to use a 3-V battery and no resistor.

GOT IT?

25.2 Rank from highest to lowest the voltages across the identical resistors R at the top of each circuit shown, and give the actual voltage for each. In (a) the second resistor has the same resistance R , and in (b) the gap is an open circuit (infinite resistance).



Real Batteries

What's the difference between the two 1.5-V batteries in Fig. 25.6? If they were ideal, both would maintain 1.5 V across their terminals no matter how much current was flowing. But these are real batteries. Chemical reaction rates limit the current, so it's not surprising that the larger battery can deliver more current.

We model a real battery as an ideal emf in series with an **internal resistance** (Fig. 25.7). Now, there's no such thing as an ideal emf; if there were, that's what battery companies would sell! And just one ideal emf could supply infinite power, thus solving all the world's energy problems. So a real battery isn't made by connecting an internal resistance to an ideal emf. Rather, the internal resistance is intrinsic to the battery, and there's no way to circumvent it. Some of it is actual resistance, but most represents the limited rate at which chemical reactions can separate charge. For a given battery voltage, lower internal resistance implies a more powerful battery—one that can deliver more current.

Figure 25.8 shows that the internal resistance R_{int} is in series with the external **load**, meaning the portion of the circuit that's designed to consume energy, in this case energy supplied by the battery. Here the load is a single resistor, designated R_L . Because R_L is in series with R_{int} , the resulting circuit is a voltage divider. If R_{int} is small compared with R_L , Equation 25.2b shows that the voltage across the load will be very nearly the battery voltage. Then the battery is behaving nearly ideally because it has essentially $\mathcal{E}$ volts across its terminals. But if we lower R_L , more current flows and more voltage drops across R_{int} —and that leaves less voltage at the battery terminals and across the load. Even if we short-circuit the battery (not a good idea!), we won't get an infinite current; in fact, we'll get $I = \mathcal{E}/R_{\text{int}}$, which is the most current this battery can deliver.



FIGURE 25.6 Both batteries are rated at 1.5 V , but they have different internal resistances. Which do you think has the higher R_{int} ?

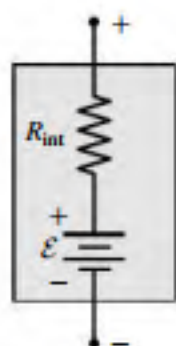


FIGURE 25.7 A real battery modeled as an ideal emf in series with an internal resistance.

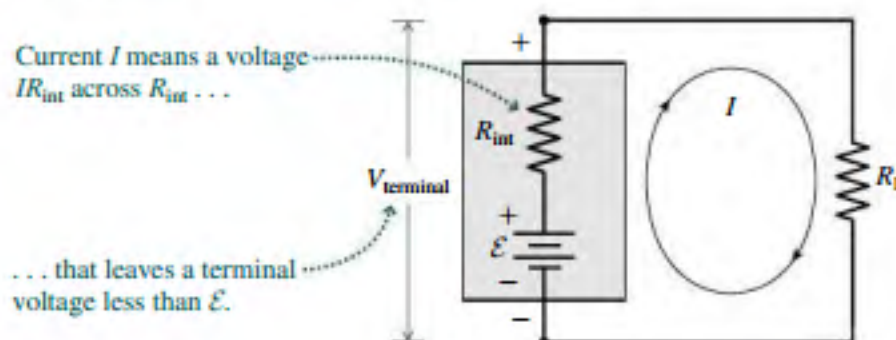


FIGURE 25.8 A real battery connected to an external load. Some voltage drops across the internal resistance, making the terminal voltage less than the battery's rated voltage.

EXAMPLE 25.2 Internal Resistance: Starting a Car

Your car has a 12-V battery with internal resistance $0.020\ \Omega$. When the starter motor is cranking, it draws 125 A. What's the voltage across the battery terminals while starting?

INTERPRET This problem is about a real battery connected to a load, as in Fig. 25.8. We identify one resistor as the internal resistance and the load resistance as the starter motor.

DEVELOP Figure 25.9 is our sketch, showing the internal resistance in series with the load. The current is the same everywhere in a series circuit, so we can use Ohm's law to find the voltage across R_{int} . Subtracting that voltage from the battery's emf will then tell what's left across the load.

EVALUATE For the internal resistance, Ohm's law gives

$$V_{\text{int}} = IR_{\text{int}} = (125\ \text{A})(0.020\ \Omega) = 2.5\ \text{V}$$

That leaves $12\ \text{V} - 2.5\ \text{V}$ or $9.5\ \text{V}$ across the battery terminals.

ASSESS Make sense? That 9.5 V is substantially less than the battery's 12-V rating, so the battery is hardly behaving ideally. But the starter

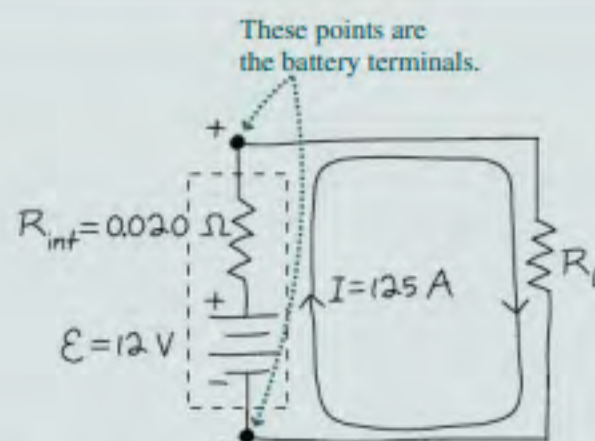


FIGURE 25.9 Sketch for Example 25.2.

motor runs only briefly; most of the time the load on the battery—headlights, ignition system, electronics, and so on—draws far less current and so the battery behaves essentially like an ideal 12-V emf. A battery voltage of 9–11 V is typical during starting; much less than 9 V indicates a weak battery, a defective starter, or very cold weather.

Parallel Resistors

Figure 25.10 shows two resistors in parallel, connected across an ideal battery. Since the two resistors are connected at top and bottom by ideal wires, the voltage across each must be the same. We made this point in Chapter 23 when we discussed parallel capacitors, and it's worth repeating here:

The voltage across circuit elements in parallel is the same.

The parallel resistors are connected directly across the battery, so their common voltage is the battery emf $\mathcal{E}$. Applying Ohm's law then gives the current through each resistor:

$$I_1 = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R_1} \quad \text{and} \quad I_2 = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R_2}$$

At point A in Fig. 25.10, a current I brings in charge from the battery, while the currents I_1 and I_2 carry charge away. Charge can't accumulate at this point (see Problem 69), so the incoming and outgoing currents must be equal: $I = I_1 + I_2$. Using our expressions for the two resistor currents gives

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R_1} + \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R_2} = \mathcal{E} \left(\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} \right)$$

Comparison with Ohm's law in the form $I = V/R$ shows that the equivalent resistance of the parallel combination is given by

$$\frac{1}{R_{\text{parallel}}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2}$$

This result readily generalizes to more parallel resistors:

... is the sum of the reciprocals of the individual resistances.

The reciprocal of R_{parallel} ...

R_{parallel} is the equivalent resistance of two or more resistors in parallel.

$$\frac{1}{R_{\text{parallel}}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + \cdots \quad (\text{parallel resistors}) \quad (25.3a)$$

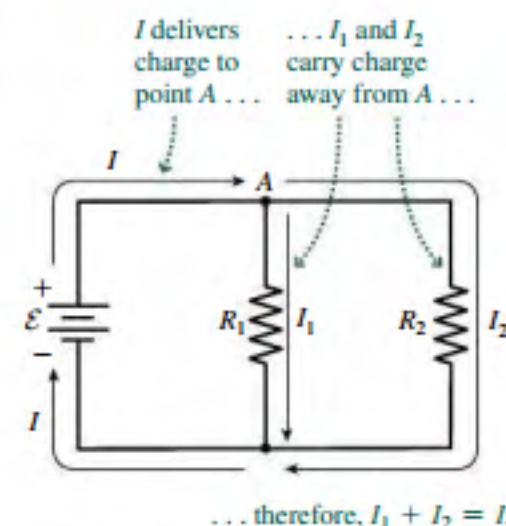


FIGURE 25.10 Parallel resistors connected across a battery.

In other words, resistors in parallel add reciprocally. Equation 25.3a shows that the resistance of a parallel combination is always lower than that of the lowest resistance in the combination. You should confirm this for yourself.

An analogy with highway traffic shows why this makes sense: Adding a lane to a crowded highway eases congestion (i.e., lowers the overall resistance), allowing a greater traffic flow (i.e., greater current). Putting one resistor in parallel with another is like adding an extra traffic lane.

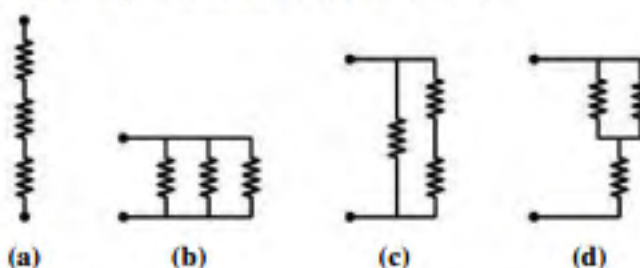
When there are only two parallel resistors, we can rewrite Equation 25.3a using a common denominator to obtain

$$R_{\text{parallel}} = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \quad (25.3b)$$

Note that *parallel* resistors combine in the same way as *series* capacitors, and vice versa.

GOT IT?

25.3 The figure shows all four possible combinations of three identical resistors. Rank them in order of highest to lowest resistance.



Analyzing Circuits

Many circuits contain series and parallel combinations. We analyze these circuits using the tactics outlined next, following the approach we used with series and parallel capacitors in Example 23.3.

Tactics 25.1 ANALYZING CIRCUITS WITH SERIES AND PARALLEL COMPONENTS

1. Identify series and parallel combinations. Remember that components are in parallel *only* if they're connected directly together at each end. Components are in series *only* if current through one component has no place to go but through the next component. If you can't find at least one series or parallel combination, then you'll have to use the methods of Section 25.3.
2. Solve for the series and parallel equivalents using Equations 25.1 and 25.3 for resistors:

$$R_{\text{series}} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + \cdots \quad (25.1)$$

$$\frac{1}{R_{\text{parallel}}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + \cdots \quad (25.3a)$$

$$R_{\text{parallel}} = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \quad (25.3b)$$

If you're dealing with capacitors, use Equations 23.6 and 23.5, respectively.

3. Redraw the circuit, replacing series and parallel combinations with their one-component equivalents.
4. Repeat Steps 1–3, each time identifying series and parallel combinations and then reducing each to a single equivalent. Continue until either you've found the quantity you're asked for or the circuit consists of just an emf and one other component. You can then solve for the current in this component.
5. Work backward, replacing series and parallel equivalents with combinations of individual components. At each point apply Ohm's law, $I = V/R$, to find the currents through and/or the voltages across the individual components. As you work backward, remember that series components carry the same current as their series equivalent, and parallel components have the same voltage as their parallel equivalent. Continue until you're able to evaluate the quantity you're asked for.

EXAMPLE 25.3**Analyzing a Circuit: Series and Parallel Components**
Worked Example with Variation Problems

Find the current through the 2- Ω resistor in the circuit of Fig. 25.11a.

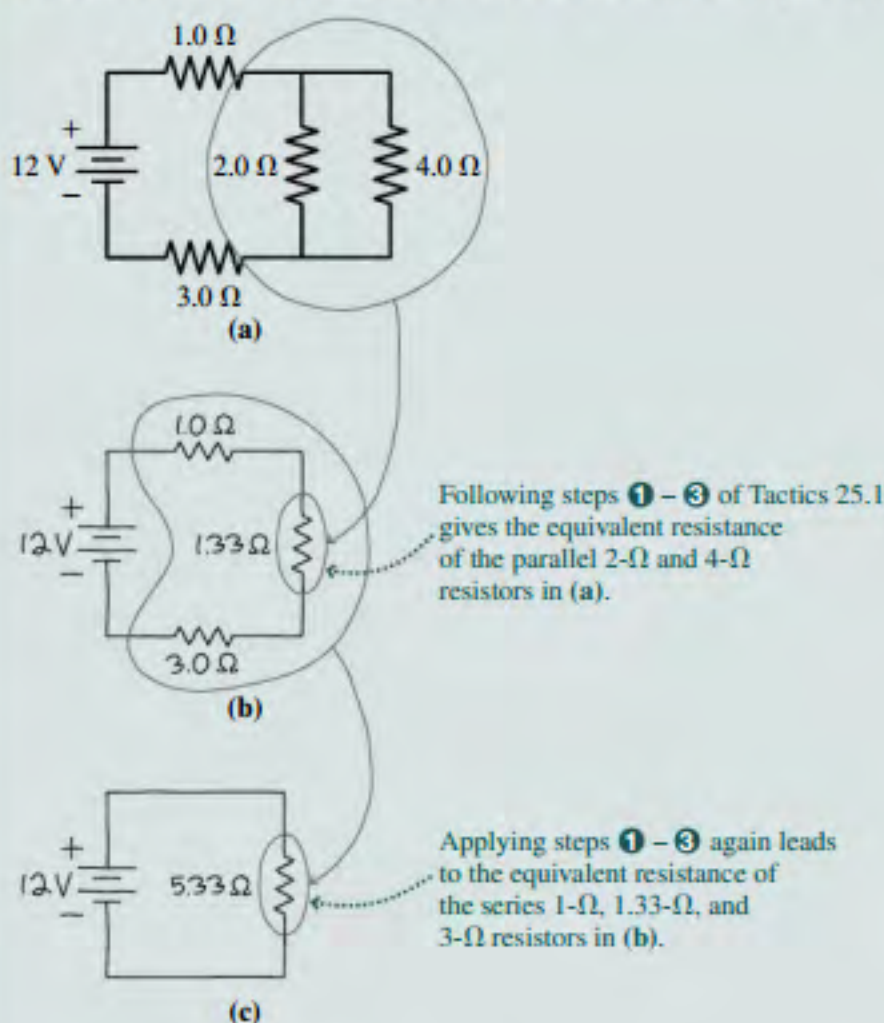


FIGURE 25.11 Analyzing a circuit.

INTERPRET This problem asks for the current in one resistor that's part of a more complex circuit. So it's about analyzing a circuit with series and parallel components.

DEVELOP We follow the steps in Tactics 25.1:

1. We identify the 2- Ω and 4- Ω resistors as being in parallel, and we find no other series or parallel resistor combinations. The 1- Ω resistor, for example, is *not* in series with either the 2- Ω or 4- Ω resistor because current leaving the 1- Ω resistor can take either of two paths.
2. We apply Equation 25.3b, $R_{\text{parallel}} = R_1 R_2 / (R_1 + R_2)$, to find the parallel combination: $(2\ \Omega)(4\ \Omega) / (2\ \Omega + 4\ \Omega) = 1.33\ \Omega$.
3. We redraw the circuit as Fig. 25.11b, replacing the two parallel resistors with their 1.33- Ω equivalent.
4. We repeat Steps 1–3 for the circuit in Fig. 25.11b, this time finding a series combination of three resistors. Applying Equation 25.1, $R_{\text{series}} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3$, gives 5.33 Ω for the equivalent resistance, and we redraw the circuit to get the simple circuit of Fig. 25.11c. Ohm's law, $I = V/R$, gives the current in the 5.33- Ω equivalent resistance: $I_{5.33\ \Omega} = (12\ \text{V}) / (5.33\ \Omega) = 2.25\ \text{A}$.
5. Now we work backward, "unsimplifying" the circuit. That 5.33- Ω resistor is really the series combination in Fig. 25.11b; since the current through series components is the same, 2.25 A flows through each resistor—including the 1.33- Ω resistor that's really the parallel combination shown in Fig. 25.11a. We want the current in the 2- Ω member of that combination, and we could get that if we knew the voltage across it. But the voltage across parallel components is the same, and the same as the voltage across their parallel equivalent—in this case the 1.33- Ω resistance. We've found the current through that resistance, so Ohm's law gives the voltage: $V_{1.33\ \Omega} = I_{1.33\ \Omega} R_{1.33\ \Omega} = (2.25\ \text{A})(1.33\ \Omega) = 3.0\ \text{V}$.

EVALUATE Our last result is the voltage across each of the original parallel resistors, including the 2- Ω resistor whose current we want. So we're finally ready to compute our answer: $I_{2\ \Omega} = V_{2\ \Omega} / R_{2\ \Omega} = (3.0\ \text{V}) / (2.0\ \Omega) = 1.5\ \text{A}$. Done!

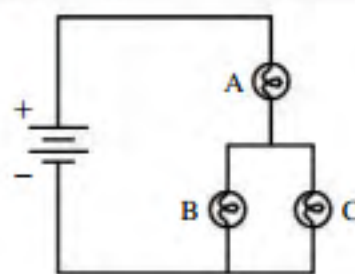
ASSESS Make sense? A total of 2.25 A is flowing around the circuit; when it encounters the parallel combination, more should flow through the lower resistance, which is just what we found. Quantitatively, the current divides in inverse proportion to the parallel resistances, with 1.5 A through 2 Ω , and half as much, 0.75 A, through 4 Ω . Note how, in solving this problem, we used Ohm's law to find, alternately, voltage and then current in different resistances.



USING OHM'S LAW Ohm's law relates the *voltage across a resistor* to the *current through that resistor*. It does *not* relate arbitrary voltages and currents anywhere in a circuit. Just because there's a 12-V battery in Fig. 25.11 doesn't mean there's 12 V across the 2- Ω resistor. And just because we found a total current of 2.25 A in Fig. 25.11c doesn't mean that's the current through the 2- Ω resistor.

GOT IT?

25.4 The figure shows a circuit with three identical lightbulbs and a battery. (1) Which, if any, of the bulbs is brightest? (2) What happens to each of the other two bulbs if you remove bulb C?



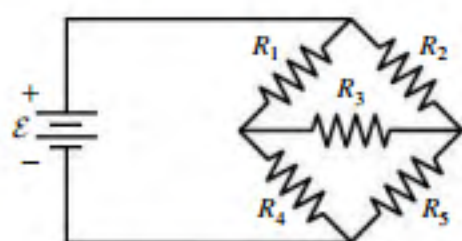


FIGURE 25.12 This circuit can't be analyzed using series and parallel combinations.

25.3 Kirchhoff's Laws and Multiloop Circuits

LO 25.3 Analyze general circuits using Kirchhoff's laws.

Some circuits can't be simplified using series and parallel combinations. This happens when there's more than one emf, or when components are connected in complex ways. In Fig. 25.12, are R_1 and R_2 in parallel? No, because R_3 separates their lower ends. Are R_1 and R_4 in series? No, because current leaving R_1 has *two* places to go: through R_4 and through R_3 . If R_1 and R_4 were in series, then current through R_1 would have no place to go except through R_4 . There are, in fact, *no* series or parallel combinations in Figure 25.12. Analyzing circuits like this requires a more general technique.

Kirchhoff's Laws

Charges moving through a circuit gain energy at emfs and lose energy in resistors. If we go completely around a circuit, the *changes* in energy per unit charge—that is, increases and decreases in voltage—sum to zero. This is **Kirchhoff's loop law**, and it holds for any closed loop even if it's part of a more complex circuit: **The sum of voltage changes around a closed loop is zero.** The loop law is essentially a statement of energy conservation for circuits.

In analyzing parallel resistors, we saw that the current flowing into point A in Fig. 25.10 had to equal the current flowing out. That's because charge is conserved, and in a steady state charge can't be accumulating anywhere in a circuit. A junction between two or more circuit components is called a **node**. In this section, we'll find it especially useful to consider nodes where three or more components join, like point A in Fig. 25.10. If we count the currents flowing into a node as positive and those flowing out as negative, then we can state **Kirchhoff's node law**: **The sum of currents at any node is zero.**

Multiloop Circuits

Kirchhoff's laws allow us to analyze even the most complex circuits; the following strategy details the approach.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 25.1

Multiloop Circuits

INTERPRET

- Identify circuit loops and nodes. A loop is any complete closed path; a node is any point where three or more wires meet.
- Label the currents at each node, assigning a direction to each. The directions are arbitrary, and the actual direction may not be obvious.

DEVELOP

- For all but one node, write equations expressing Kirchhoff's node law: The sum of the currents at each node is zero. Take a current flowing into the node as positive, a current flowing out as negative.
- For as many independent loops as necessary, write equations expressing Kirchhoff's loop law: The sum of the voltage changes around a closed loop is zero. You can go either clockwise or counterclockwise, following these rules:
 - The voltage change going through a battery from the negative to the positive terminal is $+\mathcal{E}$; the voltage change from $+$ to $-$ is $-\mathcal{E}$.
 - For resistors traversed in the direction you've assigned to the current, the voltage change is $-IR$; for the opposite direction, it's $+IR$.
 - For other circuit components, use each component's characteristics to determine the voltage change.
- You don't need equations for all the nodes and loops because some are redundant, as you'll see in the next example.

EVALUATE Solve the equations to determine the unknown currents or other quantities.

ASSESS Assess your answer to see that it makes sense, paying particular attention to signs. A negative answer for a current means that the current actually flows opposite the direction you arbitrarily assigned.

EXAMPLE 25.4 Using Kirchhoff's Laws: A Multiloop Circuit

Find the current in resistor R_3 of Fig. 25.13a, following Problem-Solving Strategy 25.1.

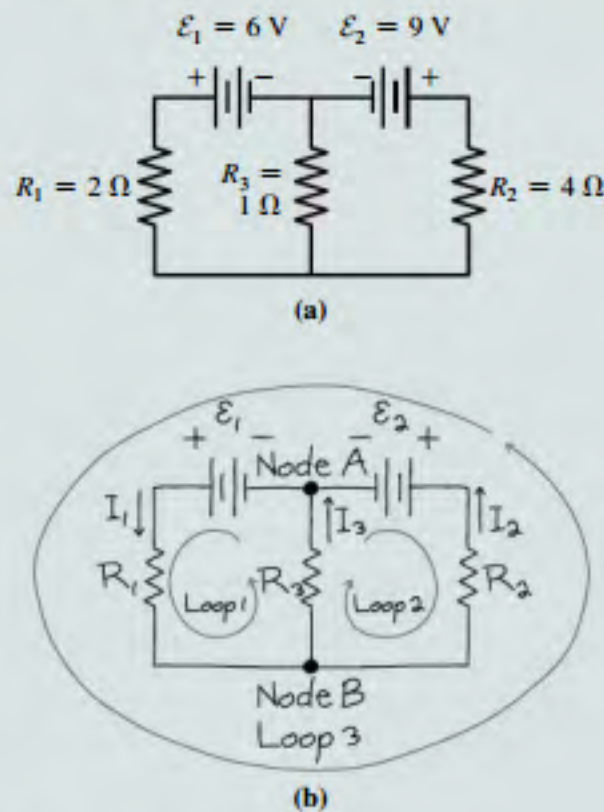


FIGURE 25.13 Example 25.4

INTERPRET In Fig. 25.13b we've redrawn the circuit with three loops and two nodes identified. We also labeled three currents at node A. The directions shown are completely arbitrary and may or may not be the actual directions of current flow. Because currents in series elements are the same, we can put the current labels anywhere on the series paths leading to the node. Our drawing shows that the same currents flow at node B; that's why one of the node equations is redundant. Note also that loop 3 comprises parts of loops 1 and 2, so equations for any two of these loops contain all the information we need. So one of the loop equations is redundant.

DEVELOP We need a current equation for one of the two nodes. Given the arbitrary directions we've assigned to the currents, the equation at node A is

$$-I_1 + I_2 + I_3 = 0 \quad (\text{node A})$$

To get the equation for loop 1, let's go counterclockwise around the loop, as shown. Starting at node A, we first encounter a positive voltage change $+\mathcal{E}_1$, then $-I_1R_1$, then $-I_3R_3$. So the loop 1 equation is $\mathcal{E}_1 - I_1R_1 - I_3R_3 = 0$. Here it's simplest if we substitute the numerical values shown in Fig. 25.13a and temporarily drop the units to avoid clutter. Then we have

$$6 - 2I_1 - I_3 = 0 \quad (\text{loop 1})$$

Loop 2 is similar except here we're going "backward" through R_2 , so its term is positive:

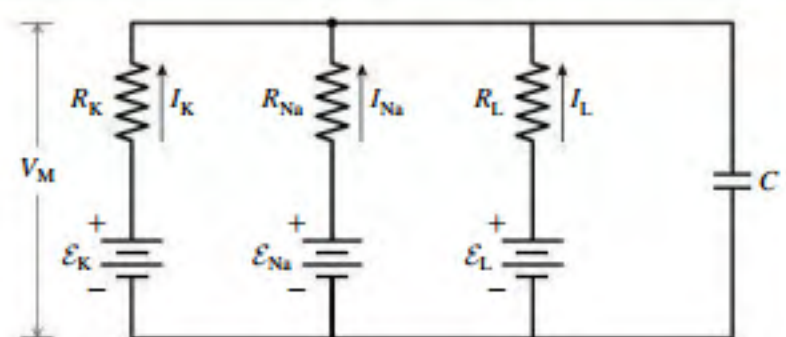
$$9 + 4I_2 - I_3 = 0 \quad (\text{loop 2})$$

EVALUATE We want I_3 , so we eliminate the other two currents. The node equation gives $I_1 = I_2 + I_3$; substituting in the loop 1 equation gives $6 - 2I_2 - 3I_3 = 0$ or $I_2 = \frac{1}{2}(6 - 3I_3)$. We use this result in the loop 2 equation to get $9 + 2(6 - 3I_3) - I_3 = 0$, or $21 - 7I_3 = 0$. Solving gives our answer: $I_3 = 3\text{ A}$.

ASSESS We assigned I_3 an upward direction through R_3 , so our positive answer means that this is indeed the direction of the current in R_3 . This makes sense because both batteries have their negative terminals at node A. If either battery had been reversed, however, the situation wouldn't have been so clear and we would have had to rely on the algebraic sign to determine the current direction. Even with the circuit as shown in Fig. 25.13, the directions of I_1 and I_2 depend on the relative strengths of the two batteries. With the values we're given, I_2 comes out -1.5 A , showing that the current actually flows downward in R_2 . But if we reduce $\mathcal{E}_2$ to 2 V , I_2 becomes zero; lower still, and it flows upward and "backward" through $\mathcal{E}_2$.

APPLICATION The Cell Membrane

Many natural systems can be modeled as electric circuits. In 1952, Alan L. Hodgkin and Andrew F. Huxley developed a circuit model for the cell membrane; their work won them a share of the 1963 Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine. The figure shows a simplified version of the Hodgkin-Huxley model. The batteries $\mathcal{E}_K$, $\mathcal{E}_{Na}$, and $\mathcal{E}_L$ represent the electrochemical effects of potassium, sodium, and other ions, respectively; their emfs have values in the tens of millivolts. R_K , R_{Na} , and R_L are the resistances the cell membrane offers to each ionic species. The currents I_K , I_{Na} , and I_L represent ion flows across the membrane, and their values and signs follow from solving a multiloop-circuit problem similar to Example 25.4. The voltage V_M is the membrane potential between the inside and outside of the cell. The Hodgkin-Huxley model also contains a capacitor, which causes time-dependent behavior of the sort you'll see in Section 25.5.



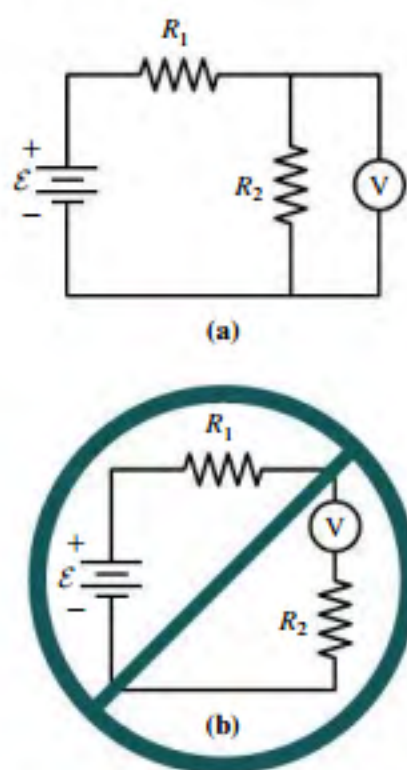
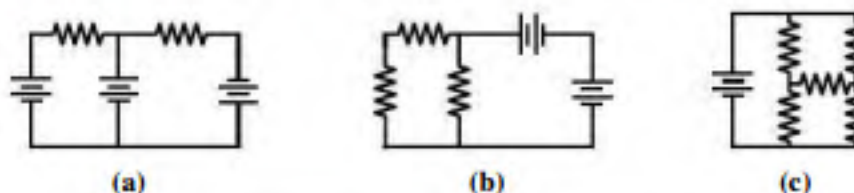


FIGURE 25.14 Correct (a) and incorrect (b) ways to connect a voltmeter for measuring the voltage across R_2 .

GOT IT?

25.5 Which circuit(s) cannot be analyzed using series and parallel combinations?



25.4 Electrical Measurements

LO 25.4 Use voltmeters and ammeters correctly.

Voltmeters

A **voltmeter** is a device that indicates the potential difference across its two terminals. The indicator is usually a digital readout, although older meters use a moving needle. Potential difference—voltage—is a property of two points, and therefore to measure the voltage between two points, we connect the two terminals of the voltmeter to those points. So to measure the voltage across resistor R_2 in Fig. 25.14a, we connect the voltmeter *across* R_2 , as shown. We do *not* break the circuit and insert the meter as in Fig. 25.14b, for then we wouldn't be measuring the voltage *across* the resistor; in fact, as Conceptual Example 25.1 makes clear, we would radically alter the circuit.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 25.1 Measuring Voltage

What should be the electrical resistance of an ideal voltmeter?

EVALUATE Before we attach the voltmeter in Fig. 25.14a, the battery “sees” the resistors R_1 and R_2 in series. When we connect a meter with resistance R_m , then we've got a parallel combination of R_1 and R_m where before we had just R_1 . Since two parallel resistors have a lower resistance than either of the individual resistors, the overall circuit current increases—and so, therefore, does the voltage across R_1 , which carries the total current. That in turn leaves the voltage across R_2 *lower* than before. Even if the meter is perfectly accurate, the voltage it reads will be lower than it was before we connected the meter.

How can we avoid this effect? By giving the meter a high resistance—ideally, infinite resistance, so the meter won't draw any current and therefore won't affect the circuit. The meter will therefore read the voltage that was there before we connected it.

ASSESS Truly infinite resistance is impossible—but as long as the meter's resistance is much larger than resistances in the circuit, the effect of finite meter resistance will be negligible. Modern digital meters come close to the ideal, with resistances of 10 M Ω and higher.

MAKING THE CONNECTION What do you get if you measure the voltage across the 40- Ω resistor in Fig. 25.15 with (a) an ideal voltmeter and (b) a voltmeter whose resistance is 1000 Ω ?

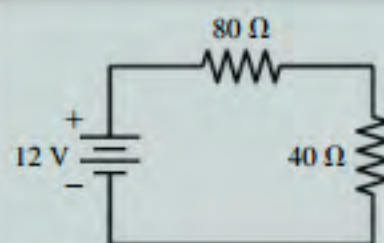


FIGURE 25.15 What's the voltage across the 40- Ω resistor?

EVALUATE (a) The circuit is a simple voltage divider, and Equation 25.2b shows that the voltage across the 40- Ω resistor is one-third of the battery voltage, or 4.00 V. With its infinite resistance, the ideal voltmeter doesn't alter the circuit, so it reads 4.00 V. (b) Connecting the voltmeter gives the circuit of Fig. 25.16; now Equation 25.3b gives 38.5 Ω for the parallel combination of the 1000- Ω meter and 40- Ω resistor. Applying Equation 25.2b to the resulting voltage divider gives 3.90 V, 2.5% lower than the ideal voltmeter.

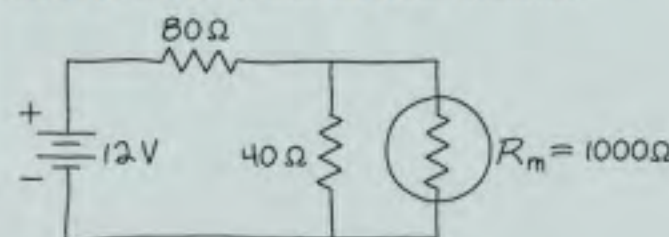
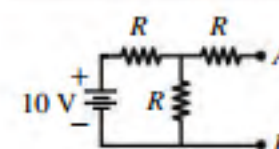


FIGURE 25.16 A nonideal voltmeter (R_m) alters the circuit.

GOT IT?

25.6 All resistors in the figure have the same value, and the battery is ideal. If an ideal voltmeter is connected between points A and B, will it read (a) 10 V, (b) between 5 and 10 V, (c) 5 V, (d) between 0 and 5 V, or (e) 0 V?



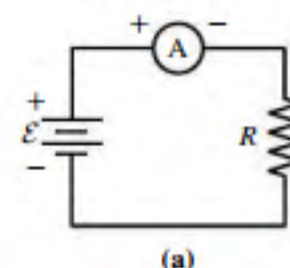
Ammeters

An **ammeter** measures the current flowing *through* itself. To measure the current through a circuit component, it's necessary to break the circuit and insert the ammeter in *series* with that component (Fig. 25.17a); only then will all the current also go through the meter. Connecting the ammeter across the resistor as in Fig. 25.17b is wrong because then the current through the resistor isn't going through the meter.

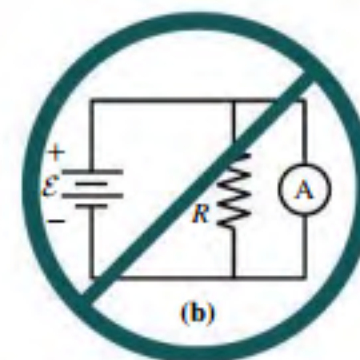
If the ammeter has any resistance, the total resistance of the circuit will increase with the meter connected in series. This in turn will decrease the current, giving an incorrect reading. So an ideal ammeter should have zero resistance. In practice, an ammeter's resistance should be much lower than typical resistances in the circuit being measured.



WATCH YOUR LANGUAGE A voltmeter measures potential difference *between* two points; hence, we connect it *across*—that is, in parallel with—the circuit element whose voltage we wish to measure. An ammeter measures the current *through* itself; hence, we connect it in *series* with the circuit element whose current we wish to measure. If you get used to voltages appearing *across* things and currents flowing *through* them, you'll have no trouble connecting meters. The ways to connect meters, and the words *across* for voltage and *through* for current, go back to the definitions of potential difference as a property of two points and of current as a flow.



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 25.17 Correct (a) and incorrect (b) ways to connect an ammeter.

Ohmmeters and Multimeters

Often we want the resistance of a particular component. Connecting a known voltage in series with an ammeter and the unknown resistance gives both current and voltage, letting us calculate the unknown resistance. A meter used for this purpose can be calibrated directly in ohms even though it's really measuring current; it's then an **ohmmeter**. The functions of voltmeter, ammeter, and ohmmeter are often combined in a single instrument called a **multimeter**.

25.5 Capacitors in Circuits

LO 25.5 Analyze circuits containing capacitors.

So far we've considered only circuits with steady current. A flashlight is a good example: Turn it on and current starts almost instantaneously, then flows steadily until you turn the flashlight off.

Capacitors alter this picture, causing circuit quantities to change more slowly. Recall that a capacitor is a pair of insulated conductors with charge and voltage related by $Q = CV$, where Q is the magnitude of the charge on either conductor, V is the potential difference between them, and C is the capacitance. Because charge and voltage are proportional in a capacitor, a change in voltage requires a change in charge. Charge changes when current flows through the wires connecting the capacitor to the rest of a circuit, and the magnitude of the current gives the rate at which capacitor charge increases or decreases. Since the current in any real circuit is finite, the charge on the capacitor cannot change instantaneously. But capacitor voltage is proportional to charge, so:

The voltage across a capacitor cannot change instantaneously.

This statement is the key to understanding circuits with capacitors. It says that the voltage on a capacitor can't jump abruptly from one value to another; mathematically, capacitor voltage V_C must be a continuous function of time, its derivative always finite. Just how rapidly the voltage can change depends on the capacitance and other circuit quantities, as you'll now see.

We consider an **RC circuit**, one that includes a resistor and capacitor. **RC** circuits are ubiquitous, appearing everywhere from microbiological structures to stereo amplifiers to giant energy-storage systems. We examine separately the two cases in which the capacitor is (1) charging and (2) discharging.

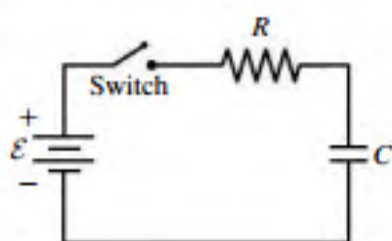


FIGURE 25.18 An RC circuit. The switch is closed at time $t = 0$.

The RC Circuit: Charging

In Fig. 25.18 the capacitor is initially uncharged, so the voltage across it is zero. Closing the switch connects the left side of the resistor to the battery, bringing its potential immediately to $\mathcal{E}$ volts (we're taking $V = 0$ at the negative battery terminal). The right end of the resistor remains at the same voltage as the upper capacitor plate—and that's still zero because the voltage across the capacitor can't change instantaneously.

So there are $\mathcal{E}$ volts across the resistor, and therefore a current $I = \mathcal{E}/R$ through it. This current delivers positive charge to the upper capacitor plate. At the same time, positive charge leaves the lower plate and flows back to the battery, making the lower plate negative. (As always with metallic conductors, it's actually negative electrons that are moving. But the effect is the same: a current flowing clockwise around the circuit in Fig. 25.18, resulting in the upper plate of the capacitor becoming more positive and the lower plate more negative.)

As charge accumulates on the plates, the capacitor voltage increases proportionately. But the capacitor and resistor voltages sum to the battery voltage $\mathcal{E}$, so as the capacitor voltage increases, the resistor voltage drops. By Ohm's law, the resistor current $I = V/R$ drops as well. This in turn decreases the *rate* at which charge accumulates in the capacitor. The capacitor voltage continues to increase as charge accumulates, but at an ever-slower rate.

Eventually the capacitor voltage approaches the battery voltage, and the resistor voltage and current tend to zero; so, therefore, does the rate at which charge accumulates on the capacitor. The whole system approaches a final state in which the capacitor is charged to the full battery voltage and the current in the circuit is zero. Figure 25.19 summarizes the interplay among current, charge, and voltage.

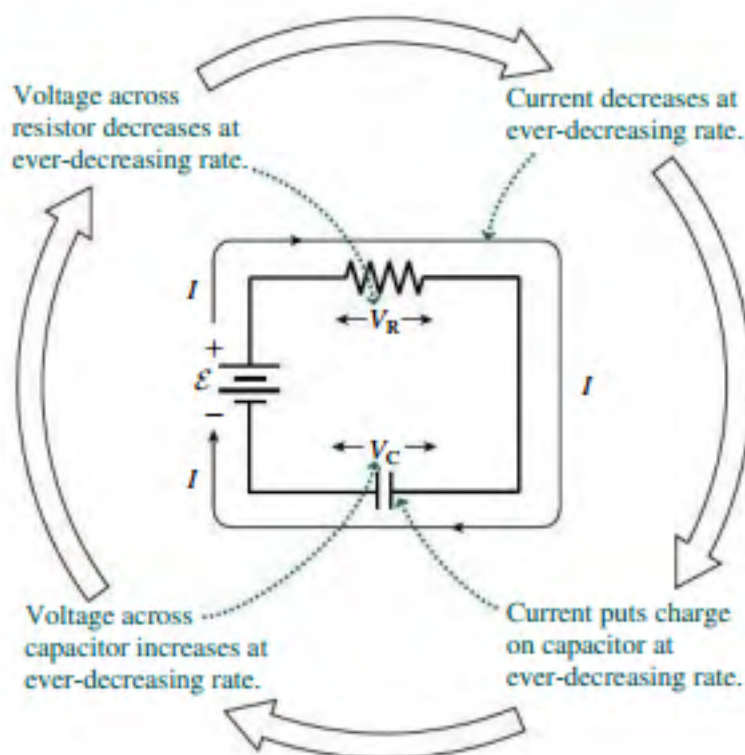


FIGURE 25.19 Interrelationships among quantities in a charging RC circuit.

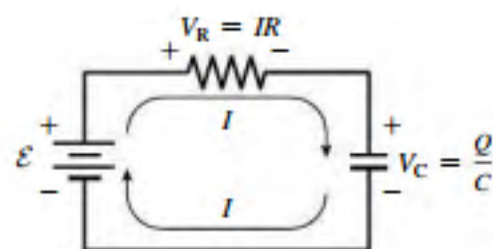


FIGURE 25.20 Voltage changes in a charging RC circuit.

We can analyze the circuit of Fig. 25.18 quantitatively using the loop law. Going clockwise around the loop, we first encounter a voltage increase $\mathcal{E}$ across the battery, then a drop IR across the resistor, then a drop V_C from the upper to lower capacitor plate (Fig. 25.20). But $V_C = Q/C$, so the loop equation becomes

$$\mathcal{E} - IR - \frac{Q}{C} = 0$$

This equation contains two unknowns, I and Q , but they're related because the current is the rate at which charge is accumulating on the capacitor: $I = dQ/dt$. To use this relation, we take the time derivative of the loop equation:

$$-R \frac{dI}{dt} - \frac{1}{C} \frac{dQ}{dt} = 0$$

The battery voltage $\mathcal{E}$ doesn't appear here because it's constant, so its derivative is zero. Using $I = dQ/dt$ and rearranging the equation gives

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = -\frac{I}{RC} \quad (25.4)$$

This equation shows that the rate of change of current is proportional to the current itself. Equations like this arise whenever a quantity changes at a rate proportional to the quantity itself. Population growth, the increase of money in a bank account, and the decay of a radioactive element are all described by similar equations.

Like the equation for simple harmonic motion in Chapter 13, Equation 25.4 is a *differential equation* because the unknown quantity I occurs in a derivative. The solution to a differential equation isn't a single number but a function expressing the relation between the unknown quantity—in this case current—and the independent variable—in this case time. We can solve this particular differential equation by multiplying both sides by dt/I in order to collect all terms involving I on one side of the equation. This gives

$$\frac{dI}{I} = -\frac{dt}{RC}$$

We can then integrate both sides, noting that RC is constant:

$$\int_{I_0}^I \frac{dI}{I} = -\frac{1}{RC} \int_0^t dt$$

where $I_0 = \mathcal{E}/R$ is the initial current at the time $t = 0$ just after the switch is closed and where the integration runs to an arbitrary time t , when the current has the value I . The integral on the left is the natural logarithm of I , and on the right it's just t . Then we have

$$\ln\left(\frac{I}{I_0}\right) = -\frac{t}{RC}$$

where we used $\ln I - \ln I_0 = \ln(I/I_0)$. To get an equation for I , we exponentiate both sides, recalling that $e^{\ln x} = x$. This gives $I/I_0 = e^{-t/RC}$, or, since $I_0 = \mathcal{E}/R$,

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R} e^{-t/RC} \quad (25.5)$$

Thus the current in the circuit decreases exponentially with time, in agreement with our qualitative analysis. The capacitor voltage is $V_C = \mathcal{E} - V_R$, or, since $V_R = IR = \mathcal{E}e^{-t/RC}$,

$$V_C = \mathcal{E}(1 - e^{-t/RC}) \quad (RC \text{ circuit, charging}) \quad (25.6)$$

V_C is the voltage across a capacitor that's in series with a battery and resistor.
 $\mathcal{E}$ is the battery's emf.
 t is time.
The exponential approaches zero for $t \gg RC$, showing that V_C approaches $\mathcal{E}$.
The product RC is the *time constant*.

Equation 25.6 shows that the capacitor voltage starts at zero and rises, with its rate of rise ever slowing as it gradually approaches the battery voltage $\mathcal{E}$ —just as we reasoned in our qualitative analysis. Figure 25.21 plots capacitor voltage and current using the equations we've just derived.

When is the capacitor fully charged? Never, according to our equations! But the rate at which it approaches full charge is determined by the so-called **time constant**, RC —a characteristic time for changes to occur in a circuit containing a capacitor. Equation 25.6 shows that in one time constant, the voltage rises to $\mathcal{E}(1 - 1/e)$, or to about two-thirds of the battery voltage. A practical rule of thumb says that in five time constants ($t = 5RC$) a capacitor is 99% charged (see Exercise 31). The RC time constant clarifies our statement that the voltage across a capacitor can't change instantaneously. We can now say that the voltage can't change appreciably in times small compared with the time constant. On the other hand, after many time constants, we'll find essentially no current flowing to the capacitor. We've shown quantitatively the role of the time constant RC by marking the time in units of RC on Fig. 25.21.

Resistors and capacitors are available in a wide range of values, so practical values for RC span many orders of magnitude. RC circuits with time constants from microseconds to hours are widely used in electronic devices to control the rates at which electrical

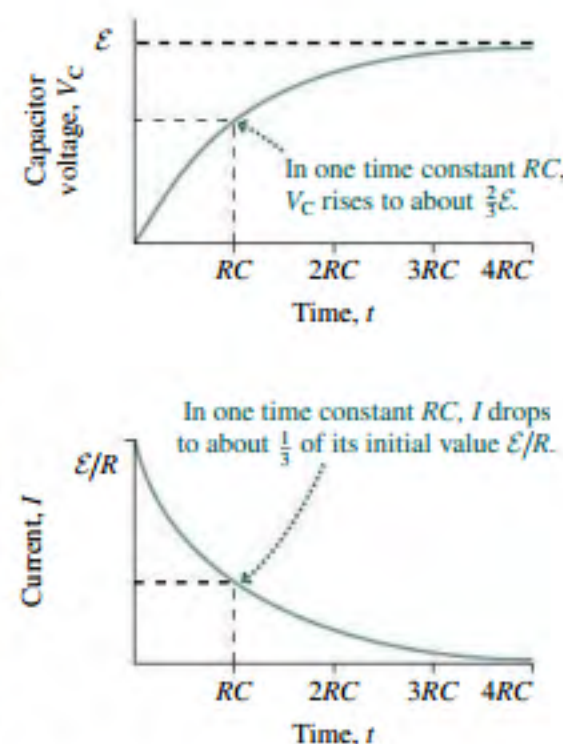


FIGURE 25.21 Time dependence of capacitor voltage and circuit current in a charging RC circuit. The approximate values $\frac{2}{3}$ and $\frac{1}{3}$ are actually $1 - 1/e$ and $1/e$, respectively.

quantities vary. For example, circuits with RC many times the sixtieth-of-a-second period of standard AC power produce steady, direct-current power for audio and video equipment. Equalizers in audio systems are variable resistances in RC circuits; changing the resistance changes the time constant and therefore the way the circuit handles rapidly changing audio signals. Sometimes, though, the time constant can be a nuisance. Capacitance in audio systems can limit high-frequency response, decreasing the quality of music reproduction. With computer speeds in the GHz range—meaning basic operations occur billions of times a second—even tiny RC time constants associated with the resistance of wires and the capacitance of adjacent conductors can cause trouble.

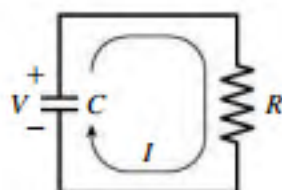


FIGURE 25.22 A discharging RC circuit.

The RC Circuit: Discharging

Suppose we connect a charged capacitor across a resistor, as shown in Fig. 25.22. If the capacitor voltage is initially V_0 , then when the circuit is connected, this voltage will drive a current $I_0 = V_0/R$ through the resistor. This current transfers charge from the positive to the negative capacitor plate, lowering the charge on the capacitor. Since capacitor charge and voltage are proportional, the capacitor voltage drops, too. So, therefore, does the current and therefore the rate at which the capacitor discharges. We expect both the voltage and current in this circuit to decay toward zero. In terms of energy, that happens because the energy stored in the capacitor's electric field is gradually dissipated as heat in the resistor.

The loop equation for Fig. 25.22 is particularly simple; going clockwise, we have $Q/C - IR = 0$, where the two terms are the voltage changes across the capacitor and resistor, respectively. Since we've indicated positive current in Fig. 25.22 in the direction that would *reduce* the capacitor charge Q , the rate of change dQ/dt and the current have opposite signs: $I = -dQ/dt$. Differentiating our loop equation and substituting this expression for I gives $dI/dt = -I/RC$. This is identical to Equation 25.4; the solution is therefore Equation 25.5, but with $I_0 = V_0/R$ instead of $\mathcal{E}/R$:

$$I = \frac{V_0}{R} e^{-t/RC} \quad (25.7)$$

In this circuit the capacitor and resistor voltages are the same, since the two are in parallel (in this simplest of circuits, they're also in series). Because the resistor voltage and the current are proportional, the voltage across the capacitor and resistor is

$$V = V_0 e^{-t/RC} \quad (RC \text{ circuit, discharging}) \quad (25.8)$$

Equations 25.7 and 25.8 show that the capacitor discharges with the same characteristic time constant RC that governs its charging.

EXAMPLE 25.5

Charging Capacitors: A Camera Flash

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A camera flash gets its energy from a $150\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor and requires 170 V to fire. If the capacitor is charged by a 200-V source through an $18\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor, how long must the photographer wait between flashes? Assume the capacitor is fully discharged with each flash.

INTERPRET This is a problem about a charging capacitor, and we want to find the time to reach a given voltage.

DEVELOP Equation 25.6, $V_C = \mathcal{E}(1 - e^{-t/RC})$, gives the voltage across a charging capacitor, so our plan is to solve this equation for the time t .

EVALUATE First we solve for the exponential term that contains the time:

$$e^{-t/RC} = 1 - \frac{V_C}{\mathcal{E}}$$

Then we take the natural logarithm of both sides, recalling that $\ln e^x = x$, so

$$-\frac{t}{RC} = \ln\left(1 - \frac{V_C}{\mathcal{E}}\right)$$

Solving for t and setting $V_C = 170\text{ V}$, $\mathcal{E} = 200\text{ V}$, $R = 18\text{ k}\Omega$, and $C = 150\text{ }\mu\text{F}$ gives

$$t = -RC \ln\left(1 - \frac{V_C}{\mathcal{E}}\right) = 5.1\text{ s}$$

ASSESS The time constant here is $RC = 2.7\text{ s}$, and 170 V is well over two-thirds of the 200-V source. Therefore, we expect a charging time longer than one time constant. Our 5.1-s answer is nearly $2RC$. Problem 72 explores energy and power in this circuit.

RC Circuits: Long- and Short-Term Behavior

It's not always necessary to solve exponential equations in analyzing RC circuits. If we're interested only in times much shorter than the time constant, then it's enough to remember that the voltage across a capacitor can't change instantaneously. And after many time constants, a capacitor has essentially reached its final voltage, and no current is flowing to it. These conditions are sufficient to analyze circuits on short and long time scales.

Tactics 25.2 ANALYZING LONG- AND SHORT-TERM BEHAVIOR OF RC CIRCUITS

Short-Term Behavior

For times much shorter than the time constant RC , capacitor voltage remains essentially unchanged. Therefore, you can replace the capacitor with a short circuit if it's uncharged or, if it's charged, with a battery whose emf is the capacitor's initial voltage. Then solve the circuit using the techniques of Section 25.2 or 25.3.

Long-Term Behavior

For times much longer than RC , no current is flowing to a capacitor. Therefore, you can replace the capacitor with an open circuit, and again solve using earlier techniques.

EXAMPLE 25.6 An RC Circuit: Long and Short Times

The capacitor in Fig. 25.23a is initially uncharged. Find the current through R_1 (a) the instant the switch is closed and (b) a long time after the switch is closed.

INTERPRET We interpret “the instant the switch is closed” to mean a time much shorter than the time constant RC , and “a long time” to mean a time much longer than RC . Then this is a problem involving the long- and short-term behavior of a circuit containing a capacitor.

DEVELOP We follow Tactics 25.2 and first redraw the circuit with the capacitor replaced by a short circuit (Fig. 25.23b). Solving this circuit will give the current in R_1 right after the switch is closed. For the long-term behavior we redraw the circuit with the capacitor an open circuit (Fig. 25.23c).

EVALUATE There can't be any voltage across a short circuit—a perfect conductor—so there's no voltage across R_2 in Fig. 25.23b. Thus for part (a) the entire battery voltage appears across R_1 , giving a current $I = \mathcal{E}/R_1$. In Fig. 25.23c we have two resistors in series, and the current in both is $I = \mathcal{E}/(R_1 + R_2)$, our answer to part (b).

ASSESS The current through R_1 starts out at $\mathcal{E}/R_1$ and gradually drops to $\mathcal{E}/(R_1 + R_2)$. That makes sense because the uncharged capacitor initially “shorts out” R_2 , making it irrelevant. But as the capacitor charges, current starts flowing through R_2 and its presence is “felt.” Without solving more complicated equations, we can't describe the intermediate behavior of the circuit, but getting the short- and long-term behavior is straightforward.

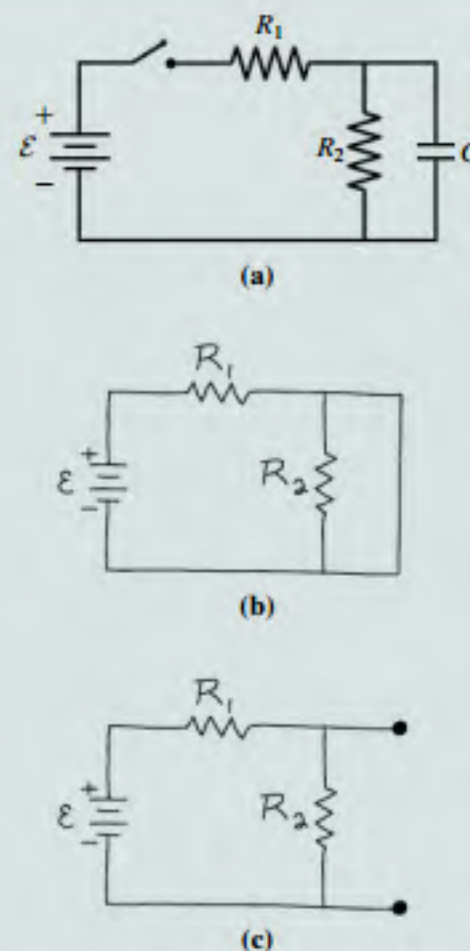
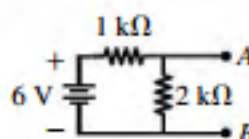


FIGURE 25.23 Original (a) and equivalent short-term (b) and long-term (c) circuits for Example 25.6.

GOT IT?

25.7 A capacitor is charged to 12 V and then connected between points A and B in the figure, with its positive plate at A. What's the current through the 2-k Ω resistor (1) immediately after the capacitor is connected and (2) a long time after it's connected?



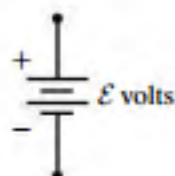
Chapter 25 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is the **electric circuit**—an interconnection of electric components that usually includes one or more sources of electric energy, such as batteries.

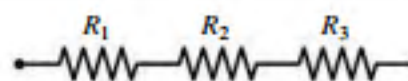
Key Concepts and Equations

A source of **emf** or, simply, an *emf*, is a battery or other device that imparts energy to electric charge flowing through it. The value of the emf, $\mathcal{E}$, is the energy imparted per unit charge, measured in volts. An ideal emf maintains a fixed potential difference (voltage) across its terminals.



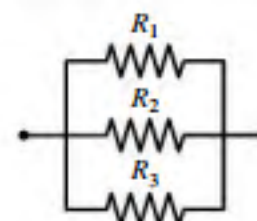
Resistors in series add:

$$R_{\text{series}} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + \dots$$

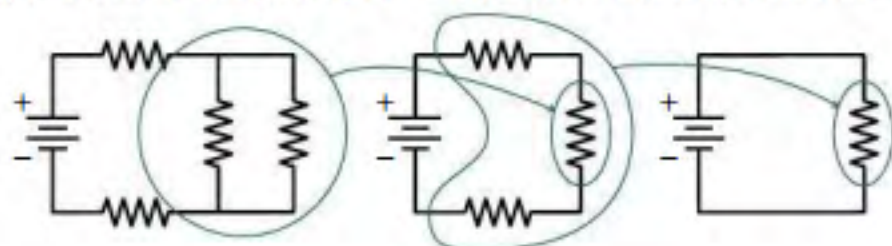


Resistors in parallel add reciprocally:

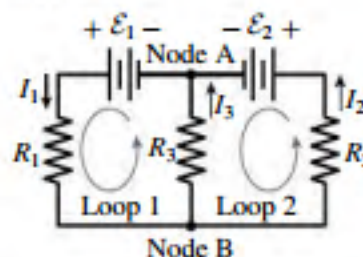
$$\frac{1}{R_{\text{parallel}}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + \dots$$



Simple circuits are analyzed by evaluating series and parallel combinations.



To analyze more complicated circuits, use Kirchhoff's node and loop laws.



Current into node A is 0:

$$-I_1 + I_2 + I_3 = 0$$

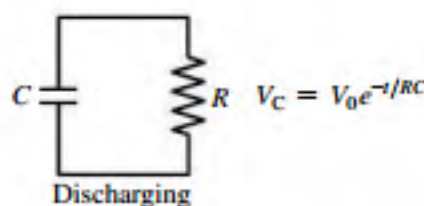
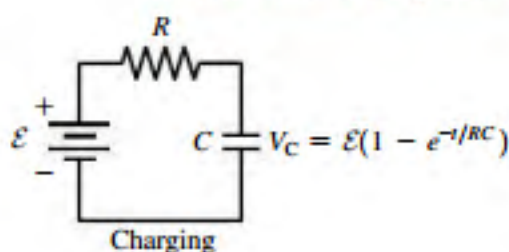
Voltage changes around loops sum to 0:

$$\text{loop 1: } \mathcal{E}_1 - I_1 R_1 - I_3 R_3 = 0$$

$$\text{loop 2: } -\mathcal{E}_2 - I_2 R_2 + I_3 R_3 = 0$$

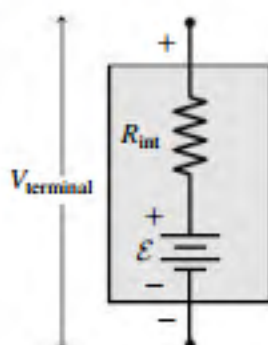
Capacitors result in time-changing behavior of circuit quantities.

The **time constant** RC governs the time scales.

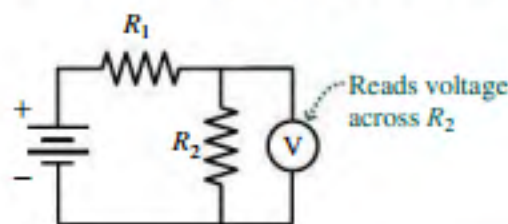


Applications

Batteries and other electric-energy sources have **internal resistance**. When they supply current, their terminal voltage is therefore less than their rated voltage $\mathcal{E}$.

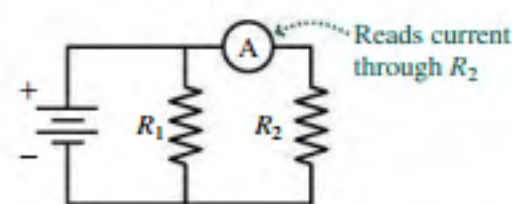


A **voltmeter** measures the voltage *across* its two terminals. It goes in parallel with the component whose voltage you want to measure.



An ideal voltmeter has infinite resistance.

An **ammeter** measures the current *through* itself. It goes in series with the component whose current you want to measure.



An ideal ammeter has zero resistance.

Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>LO 25.1 Read and draw electronic circuit diagrams.
For Thought and Discussion Question 25.5; Exercises 25.11, 25.12, 25.13, 25.14, 25.15, 25.16, 25.82</p> <p>LO 25.2 Analyze circuits containing series and parallel resistors.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 25.1, 25.2, 25.4, 25.6, 25.7; Exercises 25.17, 25.18, 25.19, 25.20, 25.21, 25.22; Problems 25.42, 25.43, 25.44, 25.45, 25.46, 25.47, 25.48, 25.49, 25.69, 25.70, 25.71, 25.73, 25.74, 25.76, 25.80</p> <p>LO 25.3 Analyze general circuits using Kirchhoff's laws.
For Thought and Discussion Question 25.3;</p> | <p>Exercises 25.23, 25.24, 25.25; Problems 25.50, 25.51, 25.52, 25.65, 25.66, 25.69, 25.73, 25.78, 25.79, 25.81</p> <p>LO 25.4 Use voltmeters and ammeters correctly.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 25.8, 25.9, 25.10; Exercises 25.26, 25.27, 25.28; Problems 25.53, 25.54, 25.55, 25.63, 25.64</p> <p>LO 25.5 Analyze circuits containing capacitors.
Exercises 25.29, 25.30, 25.31, 25.32, 25.33; Problems 25.56, 25.57, 25.58, 25.59, 25.60, 25.61, 25.62, 25.67, 25.68, 25.72, 25.75, 25.77, 25.83</p> |
|--|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- Are household electrical outlets connected in series or parallel? How do you know?
- How can you get the greatest power dissipation for a given set of resistors and a battery?
- Can the voltage across a battery's terminals be higher than the battery's rated voltage? Explain.
- When the switch in Fig. 25.24 is open, what's the voltage across the resistor? Across the switch?

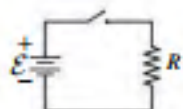


FIGURE 25.24 For Thought and Discussion 4

- Two identical resistors in series dissipate equal power. How can this be, when electric charge loses energy in flowing through the first resistor?
- When a large electric load such as a washing machine or oven comes on, lights throughout a house often dim. Why?
- The surfaces of metals are equipotential surfaces. How, then, can there be a flow of electrons in a metal wire in a circuit?
- You have a battery whose voltage and internal resistance are unknown. Using an ideal voltmeter and an ideal ammeter, how would you determine each of these characteristics?
- A student who's confused about voltage and current hooks a nearly ideal ammeter across a car battery. What happens?
- Which draws more current: a 100-W lightbulb or a 75-W lightbulb? Which of the two has a higher resistance?

Exercises and Problems

Note: Work all circuit problems to two significant figures even if component values are given with one significant figure.

Exercises

Section 25.1 Circuits, Symbols, and Electromotive Force

- Sketch a circuit diagram for a circuit that includes a resistor R_1 connected to the positive terminal of a battery, a pair of parallel resistors R_2 and R_3 connected to the lower-voltage end of R_1 and then returned to the battery's negative terminal, and a capacitor across R_2 .

- Sketch a diagram for a circuit consisting of two batteries, a resistor, and a capacitor, all in series. Does the circuit description allow you any flexibility?
- Resistors R_1 and R_2 are in series, and the series combination is in parallel with R_3 . This parallel combination is connected across a battery. Draw a diagram of this circuit.
- What's the emf of a battery that delivers 27 J of energy as it moves 3.0 C between its terminals?
- A 1.5-V battery stores 5.0 kJ of energy. How long can it light a flashlight bulb that draws 0.60 A?
- If you accidentally leave your car headlights (current 5 A) on for an hour, how much energy drains from the car's 12-V battery?

Section 25.2 Series and Parallel Circuits

- A 49-k Ω resistor and a 39-k Ω resistor are in parallel, and the pair is in series with a 22-k Ω resistor. What's the resistance of the combination?
- What resistance should you place in parallel with a 65-k Ω resistor to make an equivalent resistance of 54 k Ω ?
- A defective starter motor draws 285 A from a car's 12.6-V battery, dropping the voltage at the battery terminals to 7.33 V. A good starter motor should draw only 112 A. Find the battery terminal voltage with a good starter.
- Find the internal resistance of the battery in Exercise 19.
- When a 9-V battery is temporarily short-circuited, a 380-mA current flows. What's the battery's internal resistance?
- You have a 1.0- Ω , a 2.0- Ω , and a 3.0- Ω resistor. What equivalent resistances can you form using all three?

Section 25.3 Kirchhoff's Laws and Multiloop Circuits

- Find all three currents in the circuit of Fig. 25.13, but now with $\mathcal{E}_2 = 1.1$ V.
- What's the current through the 3- Ω resistor in Fig. 25.25? (Hint: This is trivial. Can you see why?)

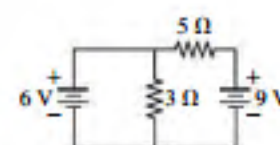


FIGURE 25.25 Exercise 24

- Find I_2 in Example 25.4 for the case $\mathcal{E}_2 = 2.0$ V.

Section 25.4 Electrical Measurements

26. A voltmeter with $280\text{-k}\Omega$ resistance is used to measure the voltage across the $10\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor in Fig. 25.26. By what percentage is the measurement in error because of the finite meter resistance?

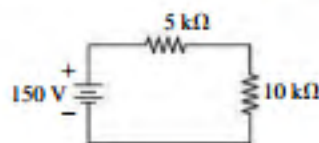


FIGURE 25.26 Exercises 26 and 27

27. An ammeter with $100\text{-}\Omega$ resistance is inserted in the circuit of Fig. 25.26. By what percentage is the measured current in error because of the nonzero meter resistance?
28. A new mechanic foolishly connects an ammeter with $0.3\text{-}\Omega$ resistance directly across a 12-V car battery with internal resistance $0.01\text{ }\Omega$. What's the power dissipation in the meter? (No wonder it gets destroyed!)

Section 25.5 Capacitors in Circuits

29. Show that the quantity RC has the units of time (seconds).
30. If capacitance is in μF , what will be the units of the time constant RC when resistance is in (a) Ω , (b) $\text{k}\Omega$, and (c) $\text{M}\Omega$? (Your answers eliminate the need for tedious power-of-10 conversions.)
31. Show that a capacitor is charged to approximately 99% of the applied voltage in five time constants ($5RC$).
32. An uncharged $10\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor and a $470\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor are in series, and 250 V is applied across the combination. How long does it take the capacitor voltage to reach 140 V ?
33. Find an expression for the voltage across the capacitor in Example 25.6 when it's fully charged.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

34. **Example 25.3:** Rework Example 25.3, changing the $4.0\text{-}\Omega$ resistor to a $2.0\text{-}\Omega$ resistor.
35. **Example 25.3:** In the circuit of Example 25.3, take the battery voltage to be an unknown. If the power dissipated in the $4\text{-}\Omega$ resistor is 0.16 W , what's the battery voltage?
36. **Example 25.3:** In Fig. 25.27, take $R_1 = R_2 = 33.0\text{ }\Omega$ and $R_3 = 47.0\text{ }\Omega$. Find the voltage across R_3 when a 6.00-V battery with internal resistance $12.5\text{ }\Omega$ is connected between points A and B .

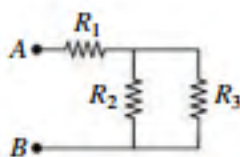


FIGURE 25.27 Problems 36, 37, and 80

37. **Example 25.3:** In Fig. 25.27, take $R_1 = 220\text{ }\Omega$, $R_2 = 180\text{ }\Omega$, and $R_3 = 68\text{ }\Omega$. If an ideal 9.0-V battery is connected across points A and B , what's the power dissipation in R_3 ?

38. **Example 25.5:** A professional-grade camera flash gets its energy from a $1500\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor and requires 210 V to fire. If the capacitor is charged by a 240-V source through a $2.7\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor, how long must the photographer wait between flashes? Assume the capacitor is fully discharged after each flash.
39. **Example 25.5:** You're reengineering the camera flash of the preceding problem to shorten the time between flashes. You choose a readily available off-the-shelf power source that provides 360 V , while your flash still needs 210 V to fire. You're stuck with that $1500\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor. What charging resistance should you use in order to reduce the wait time to 2.0 s ?
40. **Example 25.5:** Defibrillators restore normal heart rhythm by giving the heart a sudden jolt of electrical energy. Typically, several hundred joules of energy are stored in a capacitor, which is then discharged in a matter of milliseconds. (a) If a defibrillator capacitor of $150\text{ }\mu\text{F}$ is charged to 2.5 kV , and if the resistance of the discharge path through the wires, pads, skin contact, and patient's body is $41\text{ }\Omega$, how long will it take the capacitor to discharge until its voltage is 10% of its initial value? [Your answer will be a rough estimate of the actual discharge time because another electronic component—an inductor (to be covered in Chapter 27)—is also used to determine the duration and shape of the electrical pulse applied to the patient.] (b) How much energy is delivered during the discharge time?
41. **Example 25.5:** You're designing a defibrillator as described in the preceding problem. You're working with a power supply of fixed voltage V_0 and a fixed discharge resistance R . You want the discharge of a fraction f of the capacitor's initial stored energy to take a time Δt . Find an expression for the appropriate capacitance in terms of the given quantities.

Problems

42. In Fig. 25.28, all resistors have the same value, R . What will be the resistance measured (a) between A and B or (b) between A and C ?

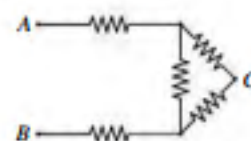


FIGURE 25.28 Problems 42 and 43

43. In Fig. 25.28, take all resistors to be $2\text{ k}\Omega$. Find the current in the vertical resistor when a 6.0-V battery is connected between A and B .
44. Three 1.5-V batteries, with internal resistances $0.01\text{ }\Omega$, $0.1\text{ }\Omega$, and $1\text{ }\Omega$, each have $2\text{-}\Omega$ resistors connected across their terminals. What's the voltage between each battery's terminals to three significant figures?
45. A partially discharged car battery can be modeled as a 9-V emf in series with a $0.17\text{-m}\Omega$ internal resistance. Jumper cables connect this battery to a fully charged battery, modeled as a 12-V emf in series with a $0.02\text{-m}\Omega$ internal resistance. The cables connect $+$ to $+$ and $-$ to $-$. What current flows through the discharged battery?
46. Your company is designing a battery-based backup power source, and your job is to assess its safety. You know that under damp or sweaty conditions, the resistance between two points of unbroken skin on the human body can be as low as $500\text{ }\Omega$. Your product uses a 72-V battery whose internal resistance is $100\text{ }\Omega$. Is it capable of passing a fatal 100 mA (Table 24.3) through a damp human body?

47. In the circuit of Fig. 25.29, find (a) the current supplied by the battery and (b) the current through the $6\text{-}\Omega$ resistor.

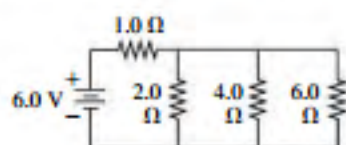


FIGURE 25.29 Problems 47 and 49

48. You have an essentially unlimited assortment of $\frac{1}{2}\text{-W}$ resistors (meaning that's the maximum power they can safely dissipate) in the standard resistor values of $1.5\text{ }\Omega$, $3.0\text{ }\Omega$, and $12\text{ }\Omega$. You want to make a $6.0\text{-}\Omega$ resistor that can be safely connected across a 3.0-V battery. Describe two ways to do this.
49. In Fig. 25.29, how much power is dissipated in the $2\text{-}\Omega$ resistor?
50. What's the ammeter reading in Fig. 25.30?

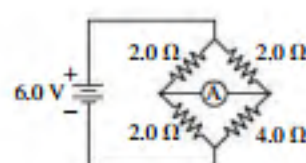


FIGURE 25.30 Problem 50

51. Find all three currents in the circuit of Fig. 25.13 with the values given, but with battery $\mathcal{E}_2$ reversed. Give your answers with two significant figures.
52. In Example 25.4, $\mathcal{E}_2$ is taken to be $+9\text{ V}$ in the configuration shown in Fig. 25.13a. In the preceding problem, it's reversed to be -9 V . (a) Find an expression for the current in R_3 taking upward as positive (as in Fig. 25.13b) for any value and sign of $\mathcal{E}_2$. (b) What value of $\mathcal{E}_2$ would result in zero current through R_3 ?
53. The voltage across the $30\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor in Fig. 25.31 is measured with (a) a $150\text{-k}\Omega$ voltmeter, (b) a $350\text{-k}\Omega$ voltmeter, and (c) a $50\text{-M}\Omega$ digital meter. What does each read, to two significant figures?

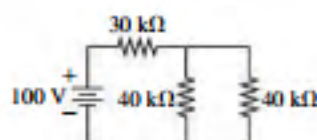


FIGURE 25.31 Problem 53

54. In Fig. 25.32, what are the meter readings when an ideal (a) voltmeter or (b) ammeter is connected between A and B?

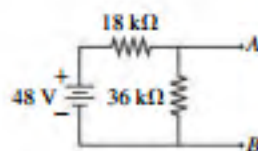


FIGURE 25.32 Problem 54

55. You're trying to determine the resistance of an unknown resistor, so you connect it in series with an ammeter and put the combination across a 1.500-V battery. The ammeter reads 82.21 mA . (a) What value do you calculate for the unknown resistance? Actually, neither the battery nor the ammeter is ideal: The battery's internal resistance is $59.0\text{ m}\Omega$, and the ammeter's resistance is $116.0\text{ m}\Omega$. Find (b) the actual resistance of the unknown resistor and (c) the percent error in your calculated value of resistance because of the nonideal nature of the battery and the ammeter.

56. The voltage across a charging capacitor in an RC circuit rises to $1 - 1/e$ of the battery voltage in 13 ms . (a) How long will it take to reach $1 - 1/e^3$ of the battery voltage? (b) If the capacitor is charging through a $22\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor, what's the capacitance?
57. BIO You're designing an external defibrillator that discharges a capacitor through the patient's body, providing a pulse that stops ventricular fibrillation. Specifications call for a capacitor storing 250 J of energy; when discharged through a body with $33\text{-}\Omega$ transthoracic resistance, the capacitor voltage is to drop to half its initial value in 10 ms . Determine the capacitance (to the nearest $10\text{ }\mu\text{F}$) and initial capacitor voltage (to the nearest 100 V) that meet these specs.
58. A capacitor used to provide steady voltages in the power supply of a stereo amplifier charges rapidly to 35 V every $1/60$ second. It must then hold that voltage to within 1.0 V for the next $1/60\text{ s}$ while it discharges through the amplifier. If the amplifier draws 1.2 A from the 35-V supply, (a) what's its effective resistance, and (b) what capacitance is needed?
59. A capacitor is charged until it holds 5.0 J of energy, then connected across a $10\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor. In 9.6 ms , the resistor dissipates 2.0 J . Find the capacitance.
60. In Fig. 25.33 the $2.0\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor is charged to 290 V , while the $1.0\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor is initially uncharged. Switch S is then closed. Find the total energy dissipated in the resistor as the circuit comes to equilibrium. (Hint: Think about charge conservation.)

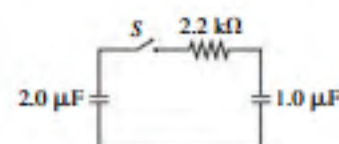


FIGURE 25.33 Problem 60

61. For the circuit of Example 25.6, take $\mathcal{E} = 150\text{ V}$, $R_1 = 4.0\text{ k}\Omega$, and $R_2 = 6.0\text{ k}\Omega$, and assume the capacitor is initially uncharged. Find the capacitor voltage and the currents in both resistors (a) just after the switch is closed, and (b) a long time after the switch is closed. Long after the switch is closed, it's reopened. What are V_C , I_1 , and I_2 (c) just after this switch opening, and (d) a long time later?
62. In Fig. 25.34, the switch is initially open and both capacitors are initially uncharged. All resistors have the same value R . Find expressions for the current in R_2 (a) just after the switch is closed, and (b) a long time after the switch is closed.

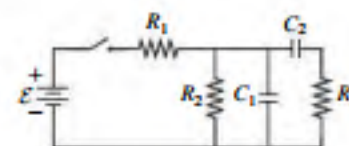


FIGURE 25.34 Problem 62

63. A battery's voltage is measured using a voltmeter with resistance $10.00\text{ k}\Omega$; the result is 4.36 V . A $14.00\text{-k}\Omega$ meter gives 4.41 V . Find (a) the battery's voltage and (b) its internal resistance.
64. An ammeter with resistance $1.42\text{ }\Omega$ is connected momentarily across a battery, and the meter reads 9.78 A . When the measurement is repeated with a $2.11\text{-}\Omega$ meter, the reading is 7.46 A . Find (a) the battery voltage and (b) its internal resistance.

65. In Fig. 25.35, take $\mathcal{E}_1 = 12.0\text{ V}$, $\mathcal{E}_2 = 6.00\text{ V}$, $\mathcal{E}_3 = 3.00\text{ V}$, $R_1 = 1.00\ \Omega$, $R_2 = 2.00\ \Omega$, and $R_3 = 4.00\ \Omega$. Find the current in R_2 and give its direction.

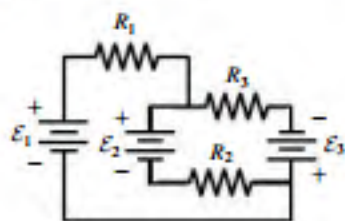


FIGURE 25.35 Problems 65 and 66

66. With all values except $\mathcal{E}_2$ as given in the preceding problem, (a) find $\mathcal{E}_2$ such that there is no current in this battery. (b) What are the currents in R_1 and R_3 under these conditions?
67. The voltage on a charged capacitor is monitored with a voltmeter whose resistance is $1.00\text{ M}\Omega$. The table below gives the meter reading as a function of time. Determine a function of the voltage which, when you plot it against time, should give a straight line. Make your plot, establish a best-fit line, and use it to determine the capacitance.

Time (s)	0	1	2	3	4
Voltage (V)	15.0	10.3	6.36	3.78	2.43

68. Find the resistance needed in an RC circuit to bring a $20\text{-}\mu\text{f}$ capacitor from zero charge to 41% charge in 140 ms.
69. Suppose the currents into and out of a circuit node differ by $1\ \mu\text{A}$. If the node consists of a small metal sphere with diameter 2 mm, how long would it take for the electric field around the node to reach the 3-MV/m breakdown field in air?
70. Show that a battery delivers the most power when the load resistance across its terminals is equal to its internal resistance. (This is not the way to treat a battery, but it's the basis for load matching in amplifiers; see Problem 71.)
71. You're writing the instruction manual for a stereo amplifier with a maximum output of 110 W. The amplifier can be modeled as an emf in series with a $7\text{-}\Omega$ resistance. What should you specify for the loudspeaker resistance to be used with the amplifier? How much power can the amplifier deliver to a speaker with half the optimum resistance?
72. Show that only half the total energy drawn from a battery in charging an RC circuit ends up stored in the capacitor. (Hint: What happens to the rest? You'll need to integrate.)
73. Find the equivalent resistance between A and B for the circuits in Fig. 25.36.

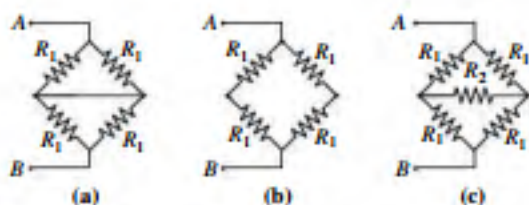


FIGURE 25.36 Problem 73

74. A $50\text{-}\Omega$ resistor is connected across a battery and a 26-mA current flows. When the resistor is replaced with a $21\text{-}\Omega$ resistor, the current increases to 43-mA . Find (a) the battery's voltage and (b) its internal resistance.
75. Obtain an expression for the rate of increase (dV/dt) of the voltage across a charging capacitor in an RC circuit. Evaluate your result at time $t = 0$, and show that if the capacitor continued charging steadily at this rate, it would reach full charge in exactly one time constant.

76. The circuit in Fig. 25.37 extends forever to the right, and all the resistors have the same value R . Show that the equivalent resistance measured across the two terminals at left is $R(1 + \sqrt{5})/2$. (Hint: You don't need to sum an infinite series.)

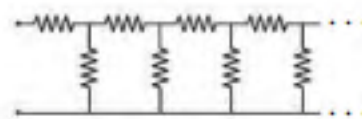


FIGURE 25.37 Problem 76

77. Figure 25.38 shows the voltage across a capacitor that's charging through a $4700\text{-}\Omega$ resistor in the circuit of Fig. 25.18. Use the graph to determine (a) the battery voltage, (b) the time constant, and (c) the capacitance.

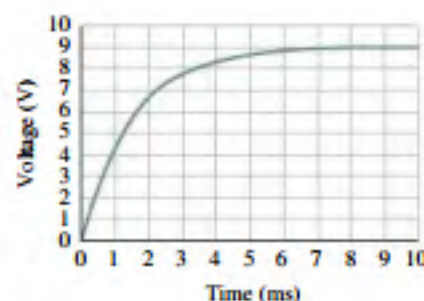


FIGURE 25.38 Problem 77

78. Figure 25.39 shows a portion of a circuit used to model muscle cells and neurons. All resistors have the same value $R = 1.5\text{ M}\Omega$, and the emfs are $\mathcal{E}_1 = 75\text{ mV}$, $\mathcal{E}_2 = 45\text{ mV}$, and $\mathcal{E}_3 = 20\text{ mV}$. Find the current through $\mathcal{E}_3$, including its direction.



FIGURE 25.39 Problems 78 and 79

79. An electrochemical impulse traveling along the cell modeled in Fig. 25.39 changes the value of $\mathcal{E}_3$ so now it supplies a 40-nA upward current. Assuming the rest of the circuit remains as described in Problem 78, what's the new value of $\mathcal{E}_3$?
80. In Fig. 25.27, take $R_1 = 47\ \Omega$ and $R_2 = 150\ \Omega$. Suppose an ideal 24-V battery is connected across points A and B , and as a result the power dissipation in R_3 is 824 mW . Find all possible positive values for the resistance R_3 .
81. Write the node and loop equations for the circuit in Fig. 25.23a (Example 25.6), and find the time constant.
82. You're about to purchase a battery. Normally, batteries are rated in ampere-hours—the total charge they can deliver. Your application calls for a $5\text{-A}\cdot\text{h}$ battery. But the 6-V battery you see while shopping online is rated at 50 watt-hours . Will it work?
83. In the circuit of Fig. 25.40, the switch is initially open and the capacitor is uncharged. Find expressions for the current I supplied by the battery (a) just after the switch is closed and (b) a long time after the switch is closed.

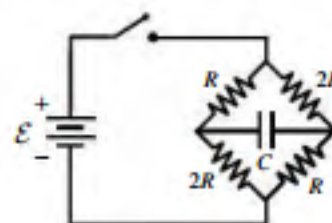


FIGURE 25.40 Problem 83

Passage Problems

BIO *Stray voltage* is a serious problem on dairy farms, often resulting from corroded wiring or poor wiring practices. These conditions can produce several volts between the ground and metal watering bowls, feed troughs, or milking equipment. Cows feel shocks that make them nervous, reducing milk output and sometimes leading to mammary gland infections. As a result, farmers can face serious financial losses. Figure 25.41 shows a typical stray-voltage situation, with the source of stray voltage modeled as a 6-V emf in series with a 1-k Ω resistance.

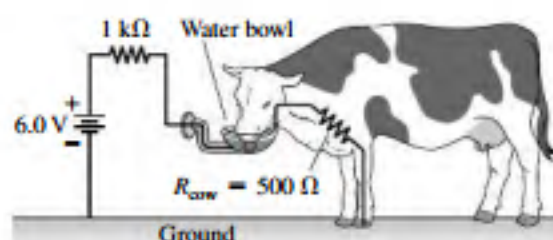


FIGURE 25.41 Stray voltage can bankrupt a dairy farm (Passage Problems 84–87)

84. The current through the 500- Ω cow will be
- 3 mA.
 - 4 mA.
 - 6 mA.
 - 12 mA.
85. The voltage across the cow shown is
- 2 V.
 - 4 V.
 - 6 V.
 - nearly 0 V.
86. In an effort to diagnose the problem, a farmer connects an ideal voltmeter between the water bowl and ground, with the cow absent. The voltmeter reading is
- 2 V.
 - 4 V.
 - 6 V.
 - none of the above.
87. To explore the problem further, a farmer connects an ideal ammeter between the water bowl and ground, with the cow absent. The ammeter reading is
- 4 mA.
 - 6 mA.
 - 12 mA.
 - infinite.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Conservation of charge and conservation of energy, as expressed by the node and loop laws, respectively.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 25.1 (a) and (b)
- 25.2 (c) $6\text{ V} > \text{(a) } 3\text{ V} > \text{(b) } 0\text{ V}$
- 25.3 $R_a > R_d > R_c > R_b$
- 25.4 (1) A is brightest because it carries more current; after A the current splits between B and C. (2) A and B become equally bright, with A dimming and B brightening relative to when C was in the circuit.
- 25.5 (a) and (c)
- 25.6 (c)
- 25.7 (1) 6 mA; (2) 2 mA

Magnetism: Force and Field

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 26.1 Recognize magnetism as a phenomenon that fundamentally involves moving electric charge.
- LO 26.2 Calculate magnetic force given magnetic field, charge, and charge velocity.
- LO 26.3 Describe the paths of charged particles in magnetic fields.
- LO 26.4 Evaluate magnetic forces on electric currents.
- LO 26.5 Describe the origin of magnetic fields using the Biot–Savart law.
- LO 26.6 Describe magnetic dipoles and their interactions with magnetic fields.
- LO 26.7 Qualitatively describe ferromagnetism, paramagnetism, and diamagnetism.
- LO 26.8 Describe Ampère’s law and use it to evaluate magnetic fields with sufficient symmetry.

Skills & Knowledge You’ll Need

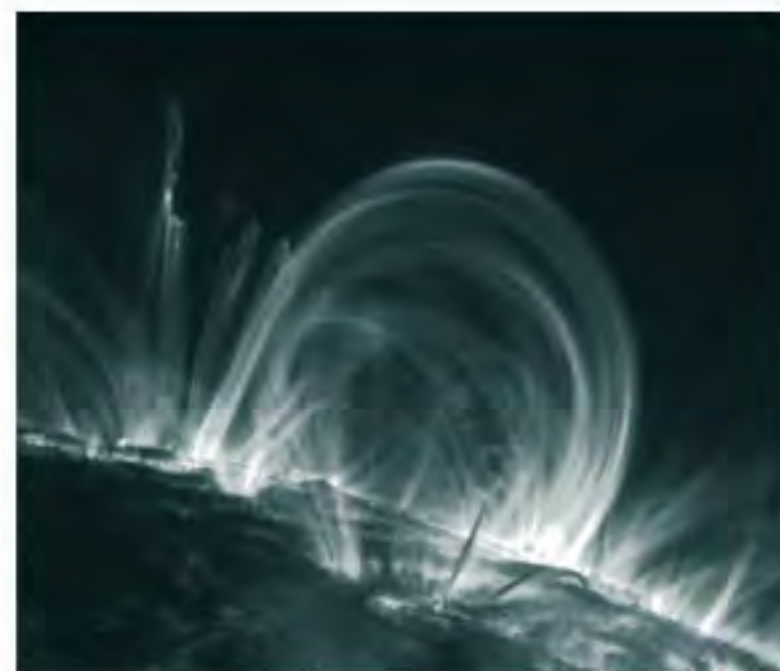
- The field concept (Sections 8.5 and 20.3)
- Electric current (Sections 24.1 and 24.2)
- Torque (Sections 10.2 and 11.2)
- The vector cross product (Section 11.2)
- Circular motion (Section 3.6)

People are fascinated with magnets and the mysterious, invisible force they produce. Magnetism plays essential roles in technology and the natural universe. We use magnetism for everything from holding notes on refrigerators to storing computer data to propelling high-speed trains. Earth’s magnetism protects us from dangerous solar radiation, which itself originates in violent magnetic storms on the Sun. Without magnetism we wouldn’t even see, for light itself results from an interaction between magnetism and electricity. In fact, magnetism and electricity are intimately related, and you’ll soon see them as inseparable aspects of the same underlying phenomenon.

26.1 What Is Magnetism?

LO 26.1 *Recognize magnetism as a phenomenon that fundamentally involves moving electric charge.*

You know from experience that magnets exert forces on each other and on certain materials, like iron. As we did with the gravitational and electric forces, it’s convenient to describe this interaction in terms of a **magnetic field** (symbol $\vec{B}$). One magnet produces a magnetic field, and another responds to the field in its vicinity. We use field lines to picture the field, and we can trace those lines using small iron filings that align with the field (Fig. 26.1). In our illustrations, we’ll use color for magnetic field lines to distinguish them from electric fields.



This ultraviolet image shows delicate loops of million-kelvin ionized gas—plasma—in the Sun’s atmosphere. What force shapes the gas into such intricate structures, and why don’t we see similar things in Earth’s atmosphere?

But the magnetism you're most familiar with is only one manifestation of a much more fundamental and universal phenomenon that's intimately linked with electricity. Here we'll go straight to the essence of magnetism; later, we'll see how familiar magnets fit into the big picture.

In Chapter 20 we introduced electric charge, a fundamental property of matter, and described its interactions using the concept of electric field. Magnetism, too, is based in *electric* charge. One crucial point both distinguishes and relates electricity and magnetism:

The phenomena of magnetism involve *moving* electric charge.

In particular, *moving* electric charge is the source of magnetic fields, and *moving* electric charge is what responds to magnetic fields.

26.2 Magnetic Force and Field

LO 26.2 Calculate magnetic force given magnetic field, charge, and charge velocity.

In Chapter 20 we defined the electric field $\vec{E}$ with the equation $\vec{F}_E = q\vec{E}$, where $\vec{F}_E$ is the electric force on a charge q . Now consider a region where there's no electric field, but where there is a magnetic field. You could confirm the presence of the field and determine its direction with a compass, which is just a small magnet free to pivot into alignment with the field. Or, more fundamentally, you could explore the behavior of an electric point charge q in this field. If the charge is at rest, nothing happens. But if it's moving, it experiences a **magnetic force** as shown in Fig. 26.2. Quantitative experiments show that:

1. The magnetic force is always at right angles to both the velocity $\vec{v}$ of the charge and the magnetic field $\vec{B}$.
2. The magnitude of the force is proportional to the product of the charge q , its speed v , and the magnetic field strength B .
3. The force is greatest when the charge moves at right angles to the field and is zero for motion parallel to the field. In general, the force is proportional to $\sin\theta$, where θ is the angle between the velocity $\vec{v}$ and the field $\vec{B}$.

Putting these facts together lets us write the magnetic force compactly using the vector cross product introduced in Chapter 11:

$$\vec{F}_B = q\vec{v} \times \vec{B} \quad (\text{magnetic force}) \quad (26.1)$$

$\vec{F}_B$ is the magnetic force ...
... on a charge q ...
... moving with velocity $\vec{v}$...
... in a magnetic field $\vec{B}$.
The cross product shows that $\vec{F}_B$ is perpendicular to both $\vec{v}$ and $\vec{B}$.

Recall that the cross product $\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$ is a vector of magnitude $vB \sin\theta$, so the magnitude of the magnetic force is

$$|\vec{F}_B| = |q|vB \sin\theta$$

The direction of $\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$ is given by the right-hand rule (Fig. 26.3), and Equation 26.1 shows that the magnetic force has that same direction as $\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$ for positive q and the opposite direction for negative q .

Equation 26.1 shows that the units of magnetic field are $\text{N}\cdot\text{s}/(\text{C}\cdot\text{m})$, a unit given the name **tesla** (T) after the Serbian-American inventor Nikola Tesla (1856–1943). One tesla is a strong field, and a smaller unit called the gauss (G), equal to 10^{-4} T , is sometimes used. Earth's magnetic field is about 0.6 G or 60 μT at the poles, while the field of a refrigerator magnet is about 100 G or 10 mT. The fields used in magnetic resonance imaging

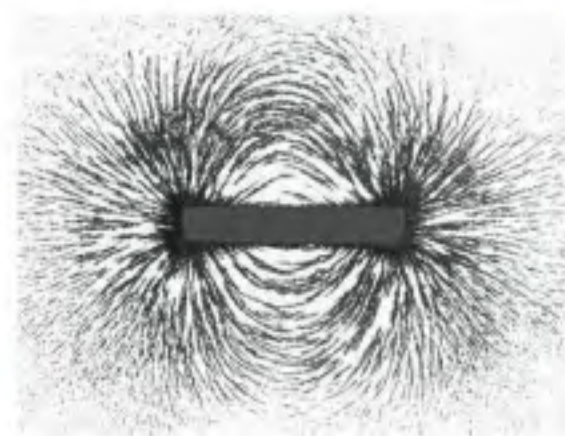


FIGURE 26.1 Iron filings align with the magnetic field, tracing out the field of a bar magnet.

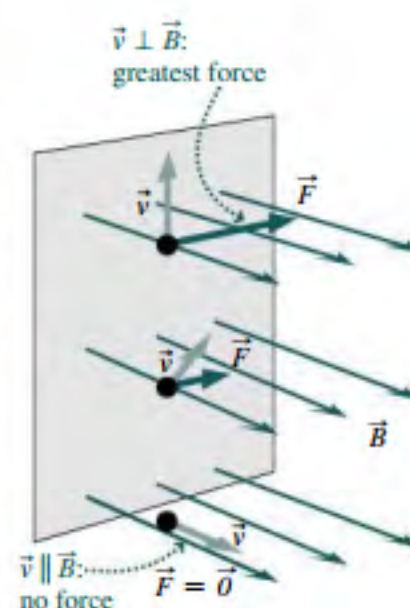


FIGURE 26.2 The magnetic force on a charged particle is perpendicular to both the particle's velocity $\vec{v}$ and the magnetic field $\vec{B}$. The force shown here has the direction appropriate to a positively charged particle.

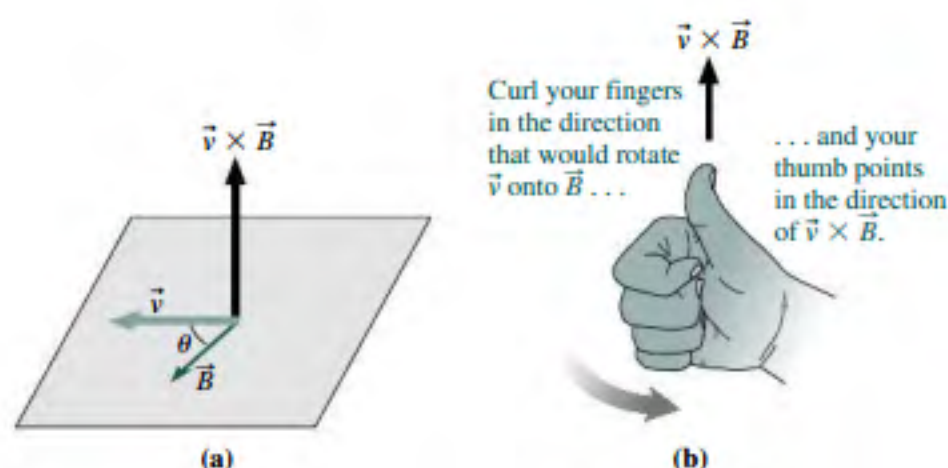
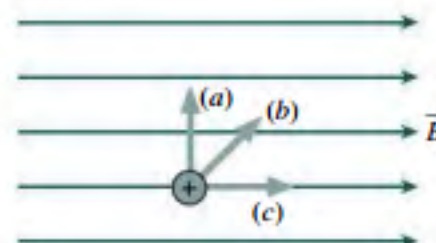


FIGURE 26.3 Finding the direction of the cross product $\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$ with the right-hand rule.

(MRI) may be as strong as several teslas, while the incredibly dense, rapidly rotating collapsed stars called *magnetars* have fields up to 10^{11} T.

GOT IT?

26.1 The figure shows a proton in a magnetic field. (1) For which of the three proton velocities shown will the magnetic force be greatest? (2) What will be the direction of the force in all three cases?



EXAMPLE 26.1 Finding the Magnetic Force: Steering Protons

Figure 26.4 shows three protons entering a 0.10-T magnetic field. All three are moving at 2.0 Mm/s. Find the magnetic force on each.

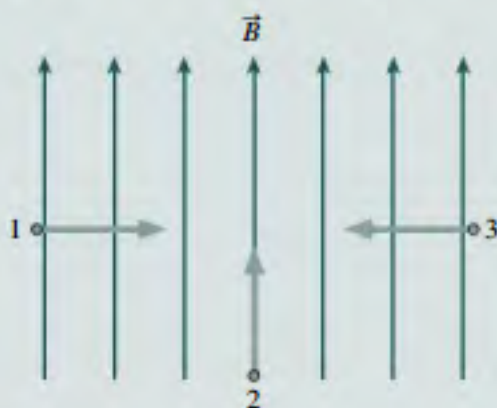


FIGURE 26.4 What's the magnetic force on each proton?

INTERPRET This problem is about the magnetic force on moving charged particles with the same speed but different directions of motion.

DEVELOP Equation 26.1, $\vec{F}_B = q\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$, gives the magnetic force, so we'll apply it to each of the particles.

EVALUATE Proton 2 is moving parallel to the field, so $\vec{v}_2 \times \vec{B} = 0$ and it experiences no magnetic force. Protons 1 and 3 are moving at right angles to the field, so $\sin \theta = 1$, and the magnitude of the force on each is $F_B = qvB \sin \theta = qvB$. Using the proton charge $q = e = 1.6 \times 10^{-19}$ C and the given values for B and v yields $F = 32$ fN. Since protons are positive, the direction of $\vec{F}_B$ is the same as that of $\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$; applying the right-hand rule shows that the direction is out of the page for proton 1 and into the page for proton 3.

ASSESS Our answer 32 fN (32×10^{-15} N) is a tiny force, but that's not surprising given the proton's tiny charge. Note that the magnetic field alone doesn't determine the force; in this example identical particles experience different forces because they're moving in different directions relative to the field.

Although electricity and magnetism are related, the electric and magnetic forces are distinct. Both may be present simultaneously, in which case a charged particle experiences both an electric force $\vec{F}_E = q\vec{E}$ and a magnetic force $\vec{F}_B$ given by Equation 26.1. The result is an **electromagnetic force**:

$$\vec{F} = q\vec{E} + q\vec{v} \times \vec{B} \quad (\text{electromagnetic force}) \quad (26.2)$$

$\vec{F}$ is the electromagnetic force ...
 $q\vec{E}$ is the electric force from Equation 20.2b.
 $q\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$ is the magnetic force from Equation 26.1.
 ... on a charge q ...
 ... in an electric field $\vec{E}$...
 ... and a magnetic field $\vec{B}$.

Because the magnetic force depends on velocity but the electric force doesn't, it's possible to use perpendicular electric and magnetic fields to select particles with a particular velocity (Fig. 26.5). Such *velocity selectors* serve to prepare particle beams with uniform velocity as well as to analyze charged-particle populations in interplanetary space.

26.3 Charged Particles in Magnetic Fields

LO 26.3 Describe the paths of charged particles in magnetic fields.

Following Newton's law, the magnetic force deflects charged particles from their otherwise straight-line paths. Magnetic forces “steer” charged particles in a host of practical devices ranging from microwave ovens to giant particle accelerators, and they shape particle trajectories throughout the astrophysical universe.

The magnetic force always acts at right angles to a particle's velocity. **Therefore, it changes the direction of motion but not the speed, and it does no work.** In the special case of a particle moving at right angles to a uniform field, the magnetic force has a constant magnitude and the result, as Fig. 26.6 shows, is uniform circular motion. With $\vec{v}$ perpendicular to $\vec{B}$, the magnetic force of Equation 26.1 has magnitude $F = qvB$. (Here we're taking q to be the magnitude of the charge, ignoring its sign.) This force provides the acceleration v^2/r that characterizes circular motion with radius r . Then Newton's law, $F = ma$, reads $qvB = mv^2/r$. We can solve for the radius of the particle's circular path to get

$$r = \frac{mv}{qB} \quad (26.3)$$

This result makes sense: The greater the particle's momentum mv , the harder it is for the magnetic force to bend its path and the larger the radius. On the other hand, a larger charge or field increases the force and makes a tighter orbit.

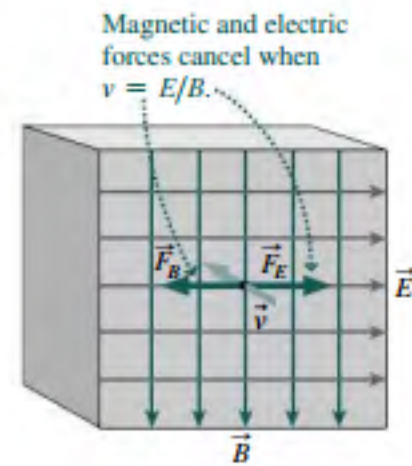


FIGURE 26.5 A velocity selector. The electric and magnetic forces cancel when $qE = qvB$, so only particles with speed $v = E/B$ pass through undeflected. The velocity $\vec{v}$ points into the page.

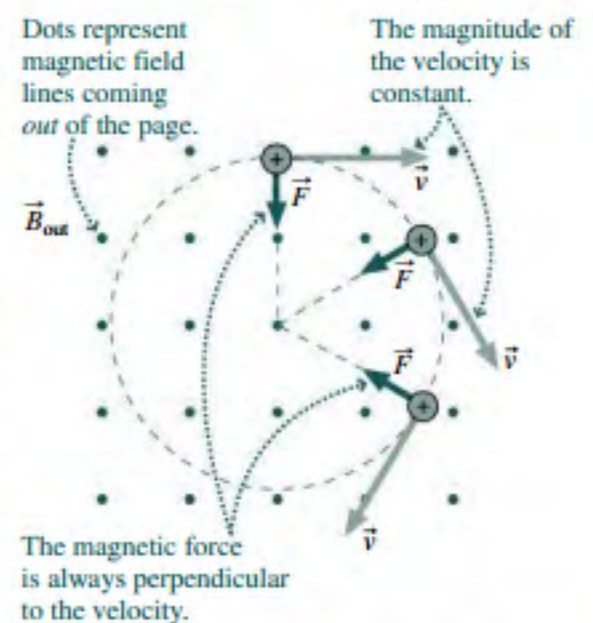


FIGURE 26.6 A charged particle moving at right angles to a uniform magnetic field describes circular motion.

GOT IT?

26.2 A uniform magnetic field points out of this page. Will an electron that's moving in the plane of the page circle (a) clockwise or (b) counterclockwise as viewed from above the page?

EXAMPLE 26.2

Magnetic Deflection: A Mass Spectrometer

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A mass spectrometer separates ions according to their ratio of charge to mass. Such devices are widely used in science and engineering to analyze unknown mixtures and to separate isotopes of chemical elements. Figure 26.7 shows ions of charge q and mass m first being accelerated from rest through a potential difference V and then entering a region of uniform magnetic field B pointing out of the page. Only the magnetic force acts on the ions in this region, so they undergo circular motion and, after half an orbit, land on a detector. Find an expression for the horizontal distance x from the entrance slit to the point where an ion lands on the detector.

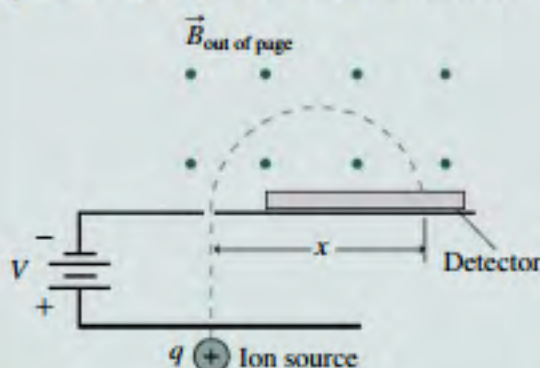


FIGURE 26.7 A mass spectrometer.

INTERPRET This problem is about charged particles undergoing circular motion in a uniform magnetic field. The distance we're asked for is the diameter of the particles' circular path.

DEVELOP Equation 26.3, $r = mv/qB$, shows that the path radius depends on the field and on the particle's mass, charge, and speed. We know everything but the speed, so this becomes a two-step problem in which we'll first find the speed. We're given the potential difference—energy per unit charge—so we can use energy conservation to find the kinetic energy and hence the ions' speed in the magnetic-field region. Then we'll use Equation 26.3 to find the radius of the ions' circular path.

EVALUATE A charge q gains kinetic energy qV in “falling” through a potential difference V , so an ion's kinetic energy once it enters the magnetic field is $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = qV$. Solving for v gives $v = \sqrt{2qV/m}$. Our answer, the path diameter x , is then twice the radius given in Equation 26.3:

$$x = 2r = \frac{2mv}{qB} = \frac{2m\sqrt{2qV/m}}{qB} = \frac{2}{B}\sqrt{\frac{2mV}{q}}$$

(continued)

ASSESS Make sense? The greater the mass or speed—which increases with the accelerating voltage V —the harder it is to deflect the ion and the larger the diameter of its semicircular path. The larger the

field or charge, the larger the force and the smaller the semicircle. Note that for a fixed voltage and magnetic field, this device sorts ions by their charge-to-mass ratio q/m .

The Cyclotron Frequency

What's the period of a particle's circular orbit in a uniform magnetic field? The orbit circumference is $2\pi r$, so the period is $T = 2\pi r/v$. Using Equation 26.3 for the radius gives

$$T = \frac{2\pi r}{v} = \frac{2\pi}{v} \frac{mv}{qB} = \frac{2\pi m}{qB}$$

Remarkably, the period is independent of the particle's speed and orbital radius. Equation 26.3 shows why: The higher the speed v , the larger the radius r and hence the circumference. So a faster particle describes a larger circle and ends up taking the same amount of time to go around.

Equivalently, we can describe the particle's circular motion in terms of its frequency f , in revolutions per second, which is just the inverse of the period:

f is the frequency with which a particle of charge q and mass m circles a magnetic field B .

$$f = \frac{qB}{2\pi m} \quad \text{(cyclotron frequency)} \quad (26.4)$$

f depends only on the charge-to-mass ratio q/m and field strength B .

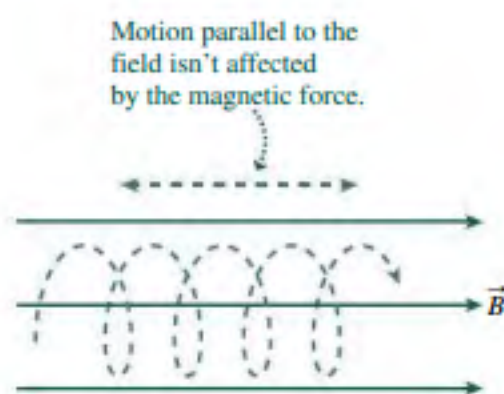


FIGURE 26.8 A charged particle in a uniform magnetic field describes a spiral path.

This quantity is the **cyclotron frequency**. Because it depends only on the field and the charge-to-mass ratio, cyclotron motion provides astrophysicists with a direct measure of magnetic fields in distant objects. Conversely, a fixed magnetic field guarantees a specific cyclotron frequency regardless of the particles' speeds. Microwave ovens exploit this fact, with their microwaves generated by electrons circling 2.4 billion times per second in a special tube called a *magnetron*.

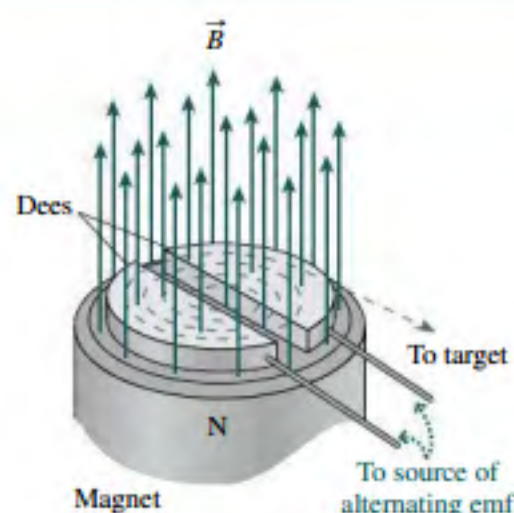
Particle Trajectories in Three Dimensions

When a charged particle moves in an arbitrary direction, we consider velocity components both perpendicular and parallel to the magnetic field. Our previous analysis applies to the perpendicular component, giving circular motion in a plane perpendicular to the field. And because there's no magnetic force with velocity parallel to the field, the parallel component is unaffected. The result, in a uniform field, is a spiral path along the field direction (Fig. 26.8).

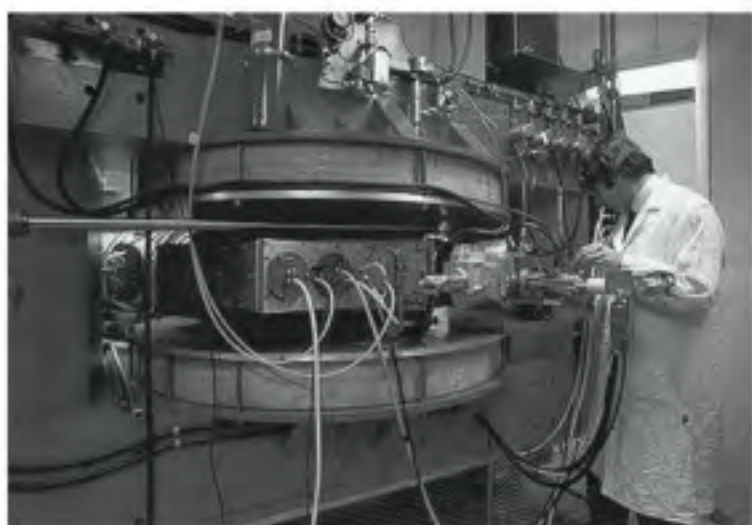
APPLICATION The Cyclotron

Physicists use high-energy particles to probe the structure of matter; engineers and physicians need high-energy particle beams in manufacturing, diagnostic, and therapeutic procedures. The easiest way to produce such beams is to accelerate ions through a potential difference, but the difficulties of handling high voltages make that impractical for all but the lowest energies. One of the earliest and most successful devices to circumvent this problem is the **cyclotron**, whose essential parts are shown in the figure. The device consists of an evacuated chamber between the poles of a magnet. Ions are produced at the center and undergo circular motion in the magnetic field.

Also in the chamber are two hollow conducting structures shaped like the letter D. A modest potential difference is applied across these "dees," and it alternates polarity at the cyclotron frequency. As ions circle around inside the cyclotron, they gain energy from the strong electric field associated with the potential difference at the gap. Inside the hollow conducting dee there's no electric field, so here the particles follow circular paths in the magnetic field. Halfway



(continued)



around they again encounter the dee gap. Because the potential is changing polarity in step with the particles' cyclotron motion, they again gain energy as they cross the gap. They move faster and in ever-larger circles, but always with the same orbital period. When they approach the edge of the machine, an electric field deflects the ions and they emerge as a high-energy beam.

Cyclotrons produce ions with energies of millions of electronvolts. This is high enough to cause nuclear reactions, and many medically useful radioactive isotopes are made using cyclotrons. In particular, the diagnostic procedure called PET (positron emission tomography) relies on cyclotron-produced radioisotopes. Because these isotopes are short-lived, hospitals doing PET scans generally have cyclotrons on site. The photo shows a hospital-based cyclotron used in the development of PET technology. At higher energies the theory of relativity alters our conclusion that the cyclotron frequency is independent of energy, and the cyclotron becomes useless. An alternative design is the **synchrotron**, in which both the magnetic field and the frequency vary to account for increasing particle energy.

The absence of magnetic force in the field direction means it's easy to move charged particles along the field. But try to push a charged particle at right angles to the field, and it goes into circular motion; push harder and the circle only gets bigger. As a result, charged particles are effectively "frozen" to the field lines and move along the field like beads strung on a wire (Fig. 26.9). Nonuniform fields and particle collisions make this "freezing" less than perfect, but in many cases particle density is low enough that the "freezing" assumption is an excellent approximation. The coronal loops in this chapter's opening photo are a beautiful example of charged particles "frozen" to the solar magnetic field. Similarly, high-energy particles from the Sun get trapped on Earth's magnetic field lines; where the field intersects the atmosphere, particles collide with atmospheric nitrogen and oxygen to produce the spectacular displays we call the aurora (Fig. 26.10). Here on Earth, trapping of charged particles on magnetic field lines enables researchers to confine plasmas at temperatures of 100 MK in attempts to harness the energy of nuclear fusion.

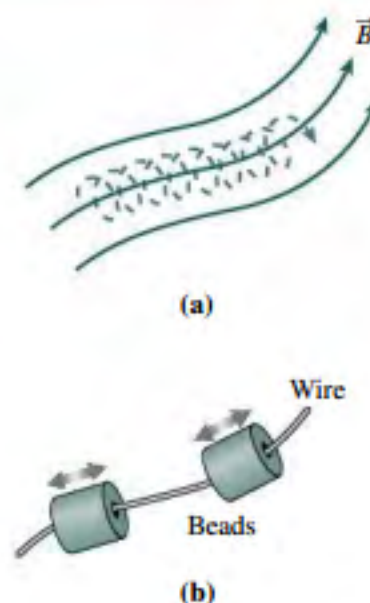


FIGURE 26.9 (a) Charged particles undergoing spiral motion about the magnetic field are "frozen" to the field like (b) beads sliding along a wire.

GOT IT?

26.3 A proton and an electron with the same energy both spiral in the same magnetic field. Compared with the electron, the proton (a) has a larger spiral and spirals in the same direction; (b) has a smaller spiral and spirals in the same direction; (c) has a smaller spiral and spirals in the opposite direction; (d) has a larger spiral and spirals in the opposite direction.

26.4 The Magnetic Force on a Current

LO 26.4 Evaluate magnetic forces on electric currents.

An electric current consists of charges in motion, so a current in a magnetic field should experience a magnetic force. Figure 26.11 shows a straight wire in a magnetic field $\vec{B}$. Charges in the wire are moving about with thermal motions, but because these are random, the magnetic force on all the charges averages to zero. But if there's a current I in the wire, then the charges share a common drift velocity $\vec{v}_d$, and thus each experiences a magnetic force given by Equation 26.1: $\vec{F}_q = q\vec{v}_d \times \vec{B}$. If the wire has cross-sectional area A and contains n charges per unit volume, then the force on all the charge carriers in a length l of wire is $\vec{F} = nAlq\vec{v}_d \times \vec{B}$. But $nAq\vec{v}_d$ is the current, I , as we found in Chapter 24. If we define a vector $\vec{l}$ whose magnitude is the wire length l and whose direction is along the current, then we can write

$$\vec{F} = I\vec{l} \times \vec{B} \quad (\text{magnetic force on a current}) \quad (26.5)$$

$\vec{F}$ is the magnetic force on a current flowing in a straight path.

I is the current.

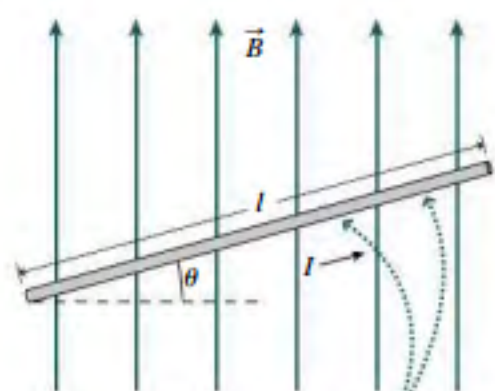
$\vec{l}$ gives the length and direction of the current path.

$\vec{B}$ is the magnetic field.

The cross product shows that $\vec{F}$ is perpendicular to both the field and the current.



FIGURE 26.10 Auroras are caused by charged particles spiraling on Earth's magnetic field lines and entering the upper atmosphere at high latitudes.



The magnetic force acts on all moving charges and points out of the page.

FIGURE 26.11 A straight wire carrying current I through a uniform magnetic field.

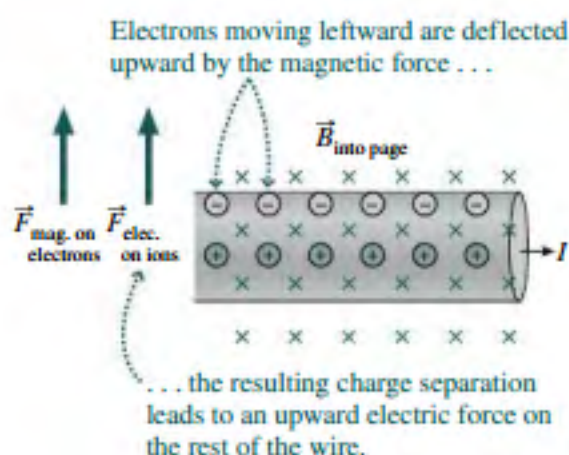


FIGURE 26.12 Origin of the magnetic force on a current-carrying wire.

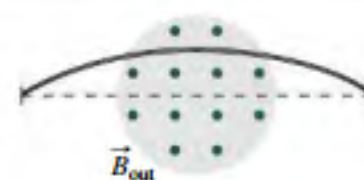
This force is perpendicular to both the current and the magnetic field, or out of the page in Fig. 26.11. The direction of the magnetic force doesn't depend on the sign of the charge carriers; they could be negative electrons moving leftward, opposite the current direction in Fig. 26.11, or positive charges moving rightward. For a given current, changing the sign of the charge carriers reverses both the sign of q and the direction of $\vec{v}_d$, leaving the force unchanged.

Equation 26.5 gives the net force on the charge carriers in the wire. In a physical wire, the magnetic force deflects charge carriers to one side of the wire, producing a charge separation and an electric field that results in a force on the rest of the wire (Fig. 26.12); this electric force is also what confines electrons within the wire. Although its origin is not entirely magnetic, we loosely call the force in Equation 26.5 “the magnetic force on a wire.” The magnetic force on a current-carrying wire is the basis for many practical devices, including loudspeakers and the electric motors that start cars and run refrigerators, disk drives, subway trains, pumps, food processors, power tools, and myriad other instruments of modern society.

Equation 26.5 holds for straight wires in uniform magnetic fields. In other cases we apply Equation 26.5 to very short segments of a wire that's curved or in a nonuniform field, and we integrate to find the net force. Problem 59 explores this situation.

GOT IT?

26.4 The figure shows a flexible wire passing through a magnetic field that points out of the page. The wire is deflected upward, as shown. Is the current flowing (a) to the left or (b) to the right?



CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 26.1 Magnetic Force: A Power Line

A power line runs along Earth's equator, where the magnetic field points horizontally from south to north. The line carries current flowing from west to east. What's the direction of the magnetic force on the power line?

EVALUATE We've sketched the situation in Fig. 26.13. Using the right-hand rule with the current eastward and magnetic field northward shows that the force is vertically upward.

ASSESS As always, the force is at right angles to both the current and the magnetic field. As you'll see in “Making the Connection,” below, this force is pretty feeble compared with the power line's weight.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Earth's equatorial field strength is $30 \mu\text{T}$, and the power line carries 500 A . What's the magnetic force on a kilometer of the line?

EVALUATE Equation 26.5 gives

$$F = |\vec{I} \times \vec{B}| = IB \sin 90^\circ = (500 \text{ A})(1.0 \text{ km})(30 \mu\text{T})(1) = 15 \text{ N}$$

That's far less than the line's weight, which is on the order of 10 kN per kilometer.

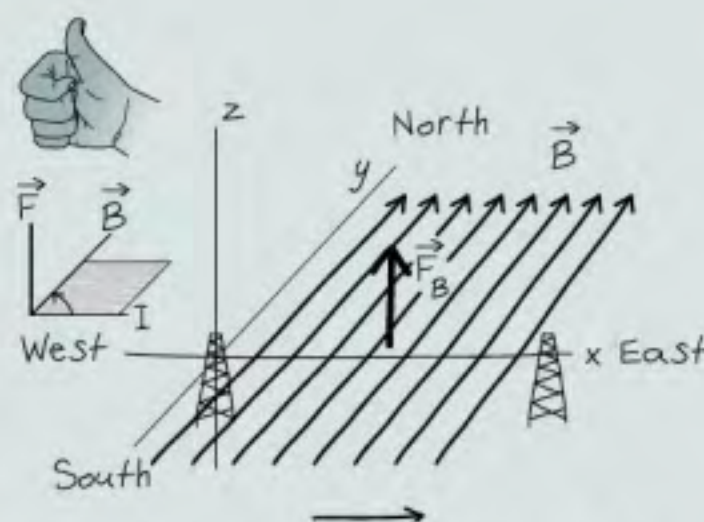


FIGURE 26.13 Sketch for Conceptual Example 26.1.

The Hall Effect

We noted earlier that the direction of the magnetic force depends on the direction of the current, not on the sign of the charge carriers. However, there's a subtle difference between two conductors with the same current yet different charge carriers. In Fig. 26.14, moving charge carriers of either sign are deflected to the upper surface of the conductor. Again, that's because the signs of both charge and velocity are opposite in the two cases. In both cases the result is a small electric field and its associated potential difference *across* the wire. The *direction* of the electric field and the *sign* of the potential difference depend on the sign of the charge carriers.

The separation of charges across a current-carrying wire is the **Hall effect**, and the potential difference is the **Hall potential**. In a steady state, the magnetic force on the charge carriers is just balanced by the electric force associated with charge separation, giving $qE = qv_d B$, or simply $E = v_d B$. In the rectangular conductor of Fig. 26.14, the electric field is uniform and the Hall potential is then $V_H = Eh = v_d Bh$. Using $I = nqAv_d$ and solving for v_d , we can then write $V_H = IBh/nAq$. Since $A = ht$, with t the conductor thickness in the field direction (see Fig. 26.14), this becomes

$$V_H = \frac{IB}{nqt} \quad (\text{Hall potential}) \quad (26.6)$$

The quantity $1/nq$ is the **Hall coefficient**. Measuring the Hall coefficient gives information on the nature and density of the charge carriers. Alternatively, measuring V_H in a material of known Hall coefficient carrying a known current gives a direct measure of the magnetic field strength.

Today, Hall-effect sensors are used not only to measure magnetic fields but also in a variety of practical applications including motion sensors using magnets mounted on rotating machinery such as car and bicycle wheels, as contact-free switches that change state when a magnet approaches, and as compasses in smartphones.

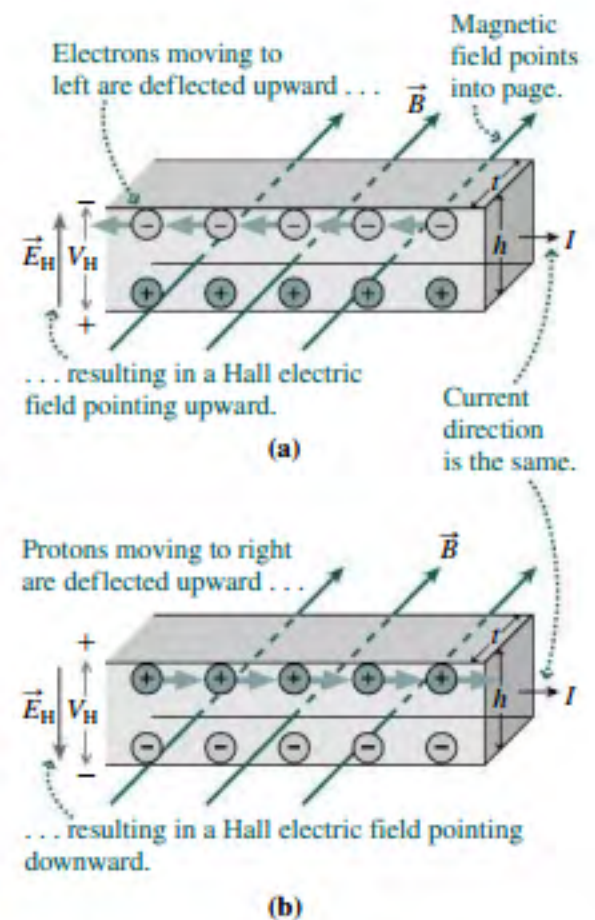


FIGURE 26.14 The Hall electric field $\vec{E}_H$ and Hall potential V_H arise from the magnetic deflection of charge carriers. In both (a) and (b) the current is to the right, carried in (a) by negative charge moving to the left and in (b) by positive charge moving to the right.

26.5 Origin of the Magnetic Field

LO 26.5 Describe the origin of magnetic fields using the Biot–Savart law.

Electric charges respond to electric fields, and electric charges produce electric fields. So it is with magnetism. We've just explored how *moving* electric charges respond to magnetic fields; we'll now see how *moving* electric charges produce magnetic fields. The first inkling of a relation between electricity and magnetism came in 1820 when the Danish scientist Hans Christian Oersted discovered that a compass needle is deflected by an electric current. A month after Oersted's discovery became known in Paris, the French scientists Jean Baptiste Biot (rhymes with "Leo") and Félix Savart (rhymes with "bazaar") had experimentally determined the form of the force arising from a steady current.

The Biot–Savart Law

The **Biot–Savart law** gives the contribution $d\vec{B}$ to the magnetic field at a point P due to a small element of current, in much the way that Coulomb's law gives the electric field $d\vec{E}$ due to a charge element dq . Figure 26.15 shows a wire carrying a steady current I and the contribution $d\vec{B}$ to the field at P from a small length $d\vec{l}$ of the wire. The current element $I d\vec{l}$ is the source of the field; it plays the same role as the charge dq in Coulomb's law. The magnetic field decreases with the inverse square of the distance, just as in Coulomb's law for the electric field.

There are important differences between the Coulomb and Biot–Savart laws. Charge—the source of electric field—is a scalar quantity. But *moving* charge—the source of magnetic field—has direction. The Biot–Savart law accounts for that direction by defining a vector $d\vec{l}$ along the current; then the field contribution $d\vec{B}$ from the source element $I d\vec{l}$ depends on the sine of the angle between $d\vec{l}$ and the unit vector $\hat{r}$ from the source toward the point where we're evaluating the field. Mathematically, all this is summarized in a compact vector equation:

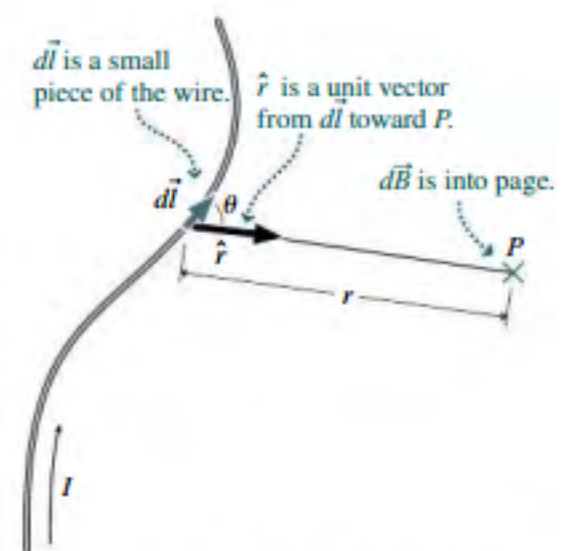


FIGURE 26.15 The Biot–Savart law gives the magnetic field $d\vec{B}$ at the point P arising from the current I flowing along the infinitesimal vector $d\vec{l}$.

I is the current. $d\vec{l}$ gives the length and direction of the current element. $\hat{r}$ is a unit vector pointing from the current element toward the point where we're evaluating the field.

$d\vec{B}$ is the infinitesimal magnetic field produced by a current element.

$$d\vec{B} = \frac{\mu_0 I d\vec{l} \times \hat{r}}{4\pi r^2} \quad (\text{Biot-Savart law}) \quad (26.7)$$

r is the distance between the current element and where we're evaluating the field.

where μ_0 is the **permeability constant**, whose value is approximately $1.26 \times 10^{-6} \text{ N/A}^2$ (Before the 2019 SI revision, μ_0 had the exact value $4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{ N/A}^2$, but in the revised SI it's a measured quantity with a small uncertainty.)

Besides the more complicated directionality evidenced by the cross product in the Biot-Savart law, there's another distinction between the Coulomb and Biot-Savart laws. Both describe fields of localized structures—namely, point charges and current elements. It makes sense to talk about an isolated point charge. But an isolated current element is impossible in the steady state; any steady current must flow in a complete circuit. So a Biot-Savart calculation necessarily involves the fields produced by current elements around an entire circuit. The magnetic field obeys the superposition principle, so the net field at any point is the vector sum, or integral, of the field contributions of all the individual current elements:

$\vec{B}$ is the magnetic field produced by a current system.

The integrand is $d\vec{B}$ from Equation 26.7.

$$\vec{B} = \int d\vec{B} = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \int \frac{d\vec{l} \times \hat{r}}{r^2} \quad (\text{Biot-Savart law, integrated}) \quad (26.8)$$

We find $\vec{B}$ by integrating the infinitesimal fields $d\vec{B}$ of Equation 26.7.

The field given in Equation 26.8 depends on the details of the current distribution, but the directionality associated with the cross product means that, quite generally, magnetic field lines encircle the current that is their source (Fig. 26.16). The next two examples use the Biot-Savart law; later we'll find a simpler way to calculate magnetic fields for some current distributions.

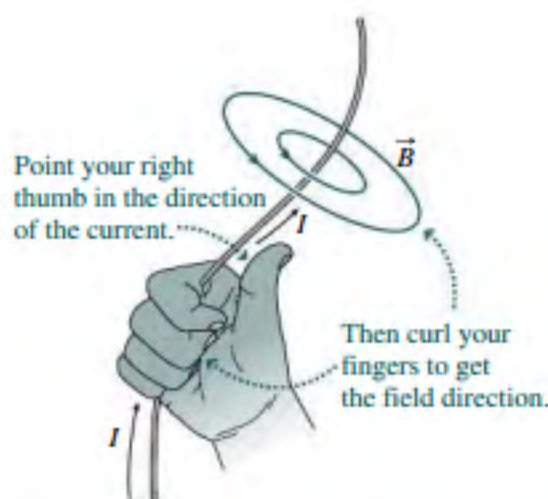


FIGURE 26.16 Magnetic field lines generally encircle a current, with direction given by the right-hand rule.

EXAMPLE 26.3 Using the Biot-Savart Law: The Field of a Current Loop

Find the magnetic field at an arbitrary point P on the axis of a circular loop of radius a carrying current I .

INTERPRET This is a problem involving the magnetic field produced by a specified current distribution.

DEVELOP Figure 26.17a shows the current loop with the point P a distance x along the axis. The Biot-Savart law determines the field at P , and we've identified the vectors $d\vec{l}$ and $\hat{r}$ that appear in the law. As Fig. 26.17b shows, the individual field components perpendicular to the axis cancel, giving a net field that's along the axis. So our plan is to find an expression for the x -components of the field contributions $d\vec{B}$, and then integrate to get the net field.

EVALUATE Figure 26.17a shows that the x -component of any $d\vec{B}$ is $dB_x = dB \cos \theta$, where $\cos \theta = a/r = a/\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}$. The figure also shows that $d\vec{l}$ and $\hat{r}$ are perpendicular; since $\hat{r}$ is a unit vector, the product $d\vec{l} \times \hat{r}$ has magnitude dl . Then the term $d\vec{l} \times \hat{r}/r^2$ in the Biot-Savart law has magnitude $dl/(x^2 + a^2)$, and we have

$$B = \int dB_x = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \int_{\text{loop}} \frac{dl}{x^2 + a^2} \frac{a}{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}$$

$$= \frac{\mu_0 I a}{4\pi (x^2 + a^2)^{3/2}} \int_{\text{loop}} dl$$

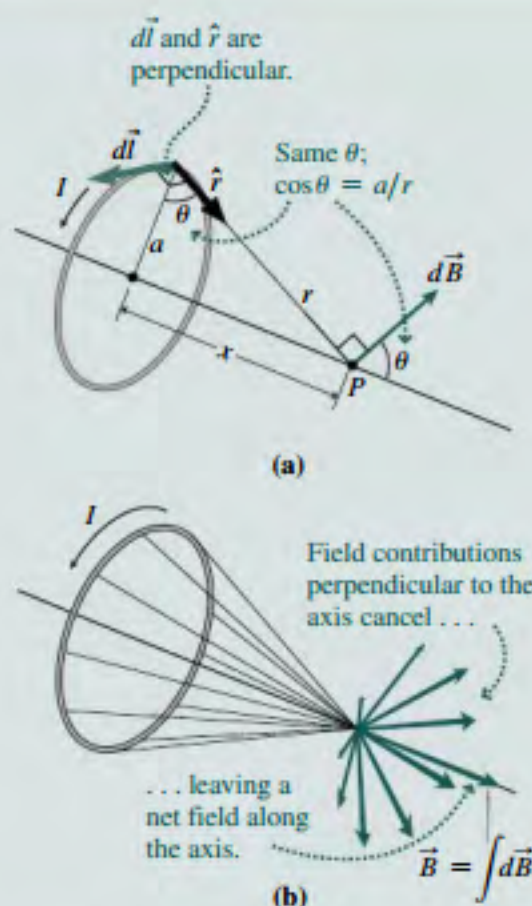


FIGURE 26.17 Finding the magnetic field on the axis of a current loop.

Here the integral reduces to a simple form because the distance x is the same for all points on the loop. The remaining integral is the sum of infinitesimal lengths around the loop, or the loop circumference $2\pi a$. So we have

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I a^2}{2(x^2 + a^2)^{3/2}} \quad (26.9)$$

The direction of the field, as suggested in Fig. 26.17b, is along the axis.

ASSESS The field is strongest right at the loop center ($x = 0$) because here we're closest to the loop and so the contributions from all segments of the loop are greatest. The field decreases as we move away from the loop. In general the field is a complicated function of distance, but for large distances ($x \gg a$) it falls off as $1/x^3$. That should remind you of the field we found for an electric dipole in Chapter 20. We'll have more to say about this dipole-like behavior in Section 26.6.

EXAMPLE 26.4 Using the Biot-Savart Law: The Field of a Straight Wire

Find the magnetic field produced by an infinitely long straight wire carrying steady current I .

INTERPRET This example, too, is about the field produced by a specified current distribution.

DEVELOP Figure 26.18 is our drawing of the wire on a coordinate system with the x -axis along the wire. Since the wire is infinite, the field magnitude must be the same at all points equidistant from the wire. We show one such point P , a distance y from the wire. We also show an infinitesimal segment $d\vec{l}$ of the wire and the unit vector $\hat{r}$ toward the field point. Our plan is to calculate the field contributions $d\vec{B}$ from all such current elements, and then integrate to find the field $\vec{B}$.

EVALUATE Both $d\vec{l}$ and $\hat{r}$ lie in the plane of the page, so at P the vector $d\vec{l} \times \hat{r}$ in the Biot-Savart law is out of the page. This is true for any segment of the wire. Therefore, we can sum the magnitudes of the contributions $d\vec{B}$ to find the magnitude of the net field, and we know its direction at P will be out of the page. With $\hat{r}$ a unit vector, $|d\vec{l} \times \hat{r}| = dl \sin \theta$, where the triangle in Fig. 26.18 shows that $\sin \theta = y/r = y/\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$. Then the Biot-Savart law gives a field contribution of magnitude

$$dB = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \frac{|d\vec{l} \times \hat{r}|}{r^2} = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \frac{dl \sin \theta}{r^2} = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \frac{y dl}{(x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}}$$

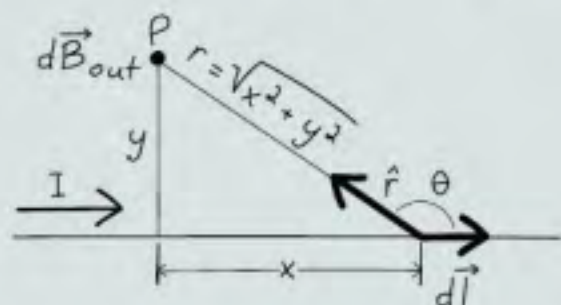


FIGURE 26.18 Calculating the magnetic field at P due to an infinite straight wire carrying current I along the x -axis.

Since the segment $d\vec{l}$ lies along the x -axis, $dl = dx$. Also, y is a constant here, so the net field becomes

$$B = \int dB = \frac{\mu_0 I y}{4\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{(x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}}$$

where we chose the limits to include the entire infinite wire. The integral is a standard one, given in the integral tables of Appendix A; the result is

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi y} \quad (26.10)$$

ASSESS This result for the *magnetic* field of a long current-carrying wire should remind you of our earlier finding for the *electric* field of a line charge; both decrease as the inverse of the distance from the line. But where the electric field of a line charge points radially outward, the magnetic field of a line current encircles the current, as shown in Fig. 26.19. Of course, an infinite line current is impossible, but our result is a good approximation to the fields of finite wires if we're close compared with the wire's length.

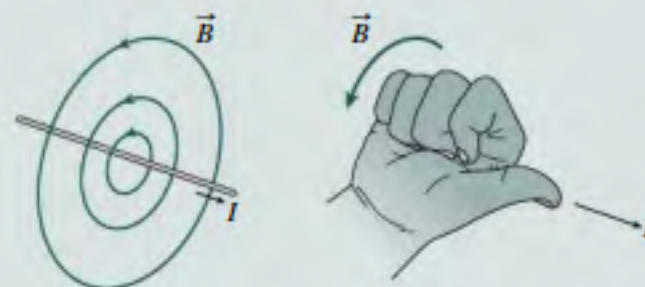


FIGURE 26.19 Magnetic field lines encircle a straight wire, with their direction given by the right-hand rule.

The Magnetic Force between Conductors

In Section 26.4 we found the force on a current-carrying wire in a magnetic field: $\vec{F} = I\vec{L} \times \vec{B}$. Now you've seen that a straight wire produces a magnetic field. That means current-carrying wires exert magnetic forces on each other. Figure 26.20 shows the situation for two parallel wires carrying currents in the same direction. The wires are a distance

d apart, so the field of wire 1 at the location of wire 2 follows from Equation 26.10: $B_1 = \mu_0 I_1 / 2\pi d$. The field is perpendicular to wire 2, so the force on a length l of wire 2 is

$$F_2 = I_2 l B_1 = \frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2 l}{2\pi d} \quad (\text{magnetic force between two wires}) \quad (26.11)$$

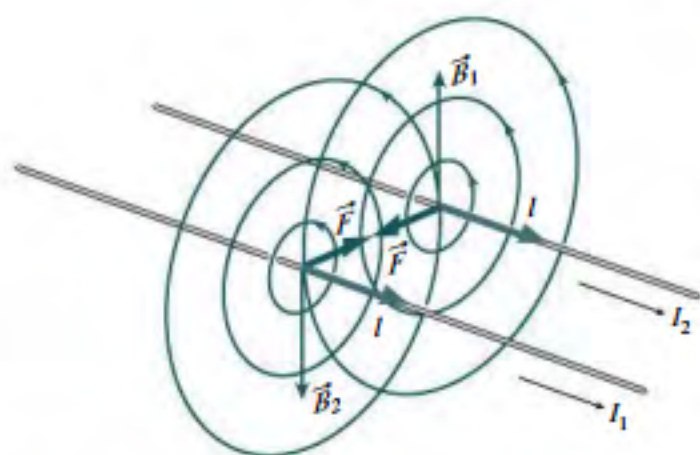


FIGURE 26.20 The magnetic force between parallel currents in the same direction is attractive.

Figure 26.20 shows that the direction of this force is toward wire 1, so the parallel currents *attract*. Analyzing the force on wire 1 from wire 2 amounts to interchanging the subscripts 1 and 2, giving an attractive force of the same magnitude. Reversing one of the currents would change the signs of both forces, showing that antiparallel currents *repel*.

The force between nearby conductors can be quite large, so engineers who design high-strength electromagnets must provide enough physical support to withstand the magnetic force (Problem 85 considers this situation). The hum you often hear around electrical equipment comes from the mechanical vibration of nearby conductors in transformers and other devices as they respond to the changing force associated with 50-Hz alternating current.

GOT IT?

26.5 A flexible wire is wound into a flat spiral as shown in the figure. (1) If a current flows in the direction shown, will the coil (a) tighten or (b) become looser? (2) Does your answer depend on the current direction? *Note:* The current enters and leaves the coil through wires (not shown) at each end, perpendicular to the page.



26.6 Magnetic Dipoles

LO 26.6 Describe magnetic dipoles and their interactions with magnetic fields.

The current loop of Example 26.4 shows the essential characteristic of all steady-state currents—namely, a closed loop with current everywhere the same. Equation 26.9 gives the field on the loop axis: $B = \mu_0 I a^2 / 2(x^2 + a^2)^{3/2}$. For $x \gg a$ we can ignore a^2 compared with x^2 in the denominator, giving $B \approx \mu_0 I a^2 / 2x^3$. Multiply both sides by 2π to get $B \approx 2\mu_0 I A / 4\pi x^3$, where A is the loop area. Compare this result with the field on the axis of an *electric* dipole, Equation 20.6b: Both show the inverse-cube dependence of the dipole field, and both involve fundamental constants from the Coulomb and Biot–Savart laws that relate fields and their sources. Where the electric-field expression contains the electric dipole moment p , the product of charge and separation, the magnetic-field expression contains IA , the product of the loop current and loop area. We identify IA as the magnitude, μ , of the current loop's **magnetic dipole moment**. Then the on-axis magnetic dipole field becomes

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 \mu}{2\pi x^3} \quad (\text{on-axis field, magnetic dipole}) \quad (26.12)$$

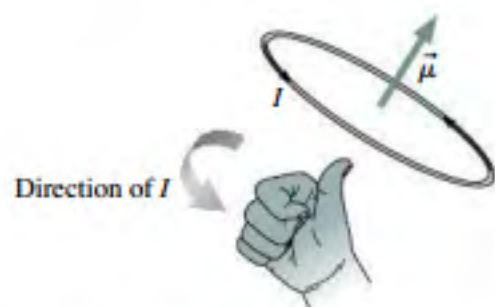


FIGURE 26.21 Finding the direction of a current loop's magnetic dipole moment.

The magnetic dipole moment is a vector whose direction follows from the right-hand rule shown in Fig. 26.21. If we describe the loop by a vector of magnitude A whose direction is perpendicular to the loop as shown in Fig. 26.21, then we can write the magnetic dipole moment as $\vec{\mu} = I\vec{A}$. Practical current loops often have multiple turns; since each carries the same current, an N -turn loop has effective current NI , so its dipole moment becomes

$$\vec{\mu} = NI\vec{A} \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{magnetic dipole moment,} \\ N\text{-turn current loop} \end{array} \right) \quad (26.13)$$

$\vec{\mu}$ is the magnetic dipole moment of any current loop. I is the current in the loop. $\vec{A}$ is a vector perpendicular to the loop, whose magnitude is the loop area. For loop made from a coil of wire, N is the number of turns.

Although we've found the magnetic field for a current loop only on the loop axis, a more elaborate calculation shows that the magnetic field anywhere far from the loop has exactly the same configuration as the electric field far from an electric dipole. And although we developed the magnetic dipole moment for a circular loop, Equation 26.13 in fact gives the dipole moment of *any* closed loop of current. We conclude that **any current loop constitutes a magnetic dipole**, and that far from the loop, its field will be that of a dipole. Electric and magnetic dipoles are analogous: Both have the same field configuration and mathematical form far from their sources (Fig. 26.22), and both are characterized by their respective dipole moments. But their fields aren't the same. One is an electric field, its origin in static electric charge; the other is a magnetic field, its origin in *moving* electric charge—specifically, charge moving in a closed loop. And the similarity in field configurations holds only at large distances; as Fig. 26.22 shows, the fields near electric and magnetic dipoles are very different, reflecting the different structures that give rise to each.

Current loops are ubiquitous, and so are dipole magnetic fields. Multiple turns of current-carrying wire produce the strong magnetic fields of electromagnets, and superconducting loops provide the fields in MRI scanners. At the atomic level, orbiting and spinning electrons constitute miniature magnetic dipoles. Even planets and stars have magnetic dipole fields.

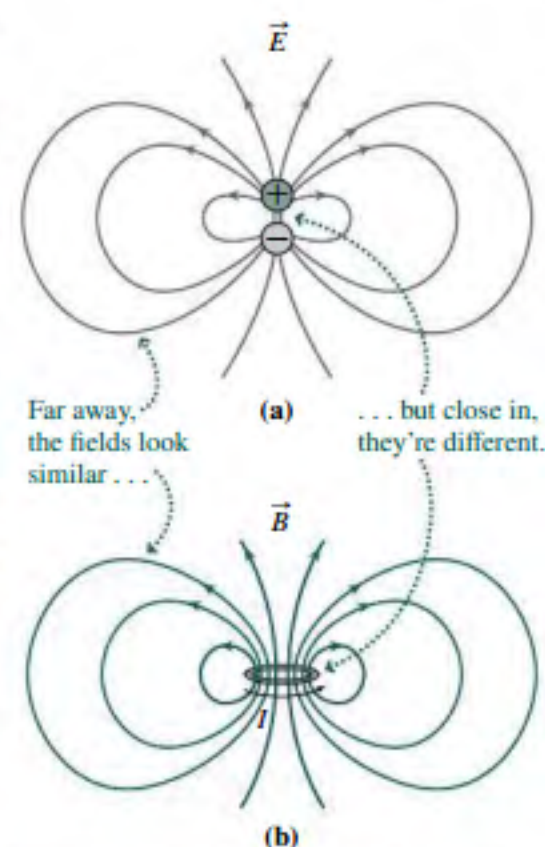
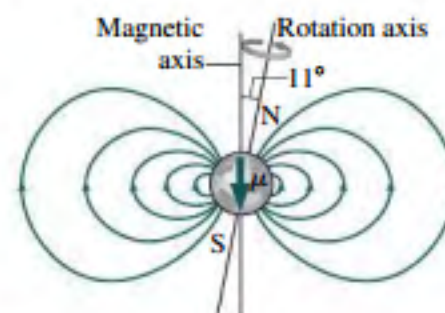


FIGURE 26.22 (a) The electric field of an electric dipole and (b) the magnetic field of a current loop. Far from their sources, both have the shape and the $1/r^3$ dependence of the dipole field.

APPLICATION Magnetic Fields of Earth and Sun

Many astrophysical objects have magnetic fields resulting from the interaction of conducting fluids with the objects' rotation. Earth's field arises in its liquid-iron outer core, where convective flows work with Earth's rotation to produce electric currents. The figure shows that Earth's field approximates that of a dipole; the magnitude of the dipole moment is approximately $\mu = 8.0 \times 10^{22} \text{ A} \cdot \text{m}^2$. The direction of the dipole moment vector differs from that of Earth's rotation axis, which accounts for the difference between magnetic and true north. Earth's field reverses roughly every million years, and geologists track seafloor spreading from the resulting magnetization in rocks. Farther out, Earth's magnetic field traps high-energy particles and thus protects us from dangerous radiation. You can see from the figure that magnetic field lines concentrate toward the polar regions, which is why energetic particles tend to enter Earth's atmosphere near the poles, making the aurora a high-latitude phenomenon (recall Fig. 26.10).

The Sun's gaseous nature makes its magnetic field much more dynamic, and magnetism is the dominant force in its hot, electrically conducting atmosphere. The Sun's field reverses approximately every 11 years, coinciding with the rise and fall of sunspots—regions of intense magnetic field that are often sources of violent outbursts.



Dipoles and Monopoles

Atoms, molecules, and radio antennas are among many structures that behave as *electric* dipoles. In all these, separation of positive and negative electric charge gives rise to the dipole. Magnetism is different. No one has ever found an isolated magnetic north or south pole analogous to an electric charge. Electromagnetic theory doesn't rule out such **magnetic monopoles**, and indeed some theories suggest that monopoles might have formed in the Big Bang. But they've never been found. All magnetic fields we've ever seen come from moving *electric* charge. As you'll see in Section 26.7, that includes the fields of permanent magnets. Because steady currents form closed loops, the simplest magnetic entity is the dipole.

Electric field lines generally begin or end on electric charges. But there aren't any "magnetic charges"—magnetic monopoles. Magnetic field lines don't begin or end, but form closed loops encircling the moving electric charges that are their sources. In Chapter 21 we developed Gauss's law to quantify the statement that the number of electric field lines emerging from any closed surface depends only on the charge enclosed. Because there's no magnetic charge, the net number of magnetic field lines emerging from any closed

surface is always zero. Therefore the **magnetic flux** $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{A}$ through any closed surface must also be zero. Thus **Gauss's law for magnetism** is

$$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{A} = 0 \quad (\text{Gauss's law for magnetism}) \quad (26.14)$$

This is the magnetic flux through a closed surface. No isolated magnetic poles have ever been found, so the right-hand side is zero.
 The circle designates a closed surface. $\vec{B}$ is the magnetic field on the surface.
 $d\vec{A}$ is a vector perpendicular to the surface, whose magnitude dA is the area of an infinitesimal patch of the surface.

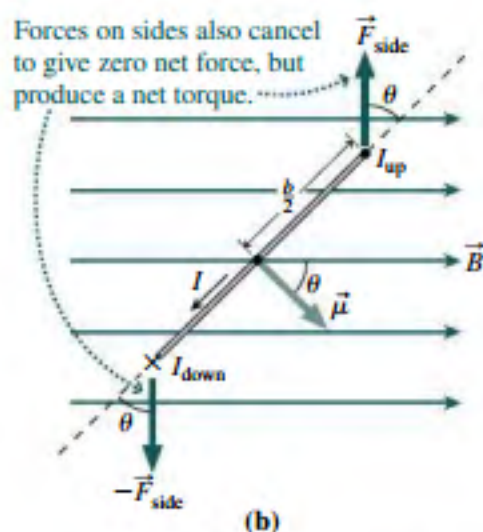
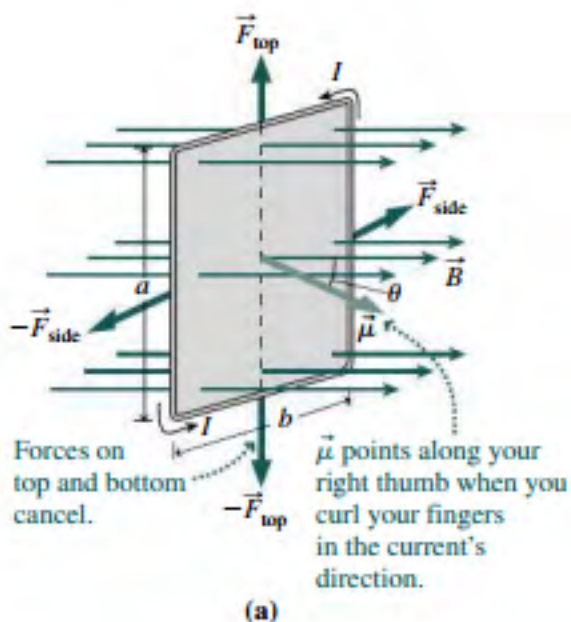
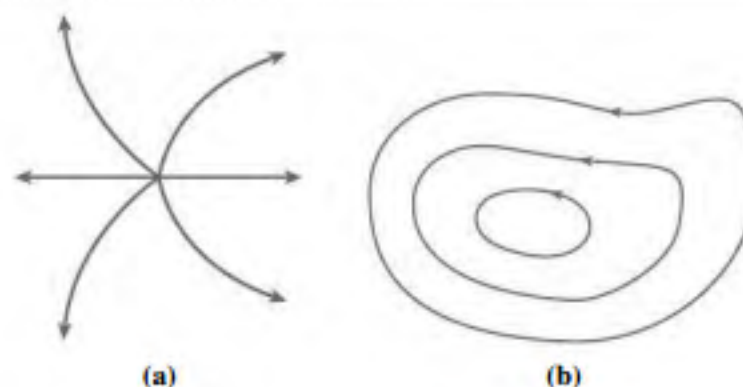


FIGURE 26.23 (a) A rectangular current loop in a uniform magnetic field. (b) Top view of the loop, showing that magnetic forces on the vertical sides result in a net torque.

Like Gauss's law for electricity, Equation 26.14 is one of the four fundamental laws that govern all electromagnetic phenomena in the universe. We'll meet the remaining two laws shortly. Although Gauss's law for magnetism has zero on its right side, it's not devoid of content; rather, it says that all magnetic fields are configured so that their field lines have no beginnings or endings.

GOT IT?

26.6 The figure shows two fields. Which could be a magnetic field?



The Torque on a Magnetic Dipole

In Section 20.5 we found that an electric dipole $\vec{p}$ in a uniform electric field $\vec{E}$ experiences a torque $\vec{\tau} = \vec{p} \times \vec{E}$; in a nonuniform field there's a net force as well. The same is true for a magnetic dipole in a magnetic field, as you can see by considering the rectangular current loop in a uniform field shown in Fig. 26.23a. Current flowing along the top and bottom of the loop results in upward and downward forces of equal magnitude, and neither a net force nor a net torque is associated with these forces. Currents flowing along the vertical sides also result in equal but opposite forces. However, as Fig. 26.23b shows, these forces result in a net torque about a vertical axis through the center of the loop. The vertical sides have length a and the currents are perpendicular to the horizontal magnetic field, so the force on each has magnitude $F_{\text{side}} = IaB$. The vertical sides are half the loop width b from the axis, so the torque due to each is $\tau_{\text{side}} = \frac{1}{2}bF_{\text{side}} \sin \theta = \frac{1}{2}bIaB \sin \theta$. Torques on the two sides are in the same direction (out of the page in Fig. 26.23b), so the net torque is $\tau = IabB \sin \theta = IAB \sin \theta$, with A the loop area. We've already identified IA as the magnitude of the loop's magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}$ and, given the direction of $\vec{\mu}$ as shown in Figs. 26.21 and 26.23b, we can incorporate the directionality and the factor $\sin \theta$ into a cross product:

$$\vec{\tau} = \vec{\mu} \times \vec{B} \quad (\text{torque on a magnetic dipole}) \quad (26.15)$$

analogous to the torque on an electric dipole.

The magnetic torque of Equation 26.15 causes magnetic dipoles—current loops—to align with their dipole moment vectors along the magnetic field. It takes work to rotate a dipole out of alignment with the field, and in analogy with Equation 20.11 the associated potential energy is

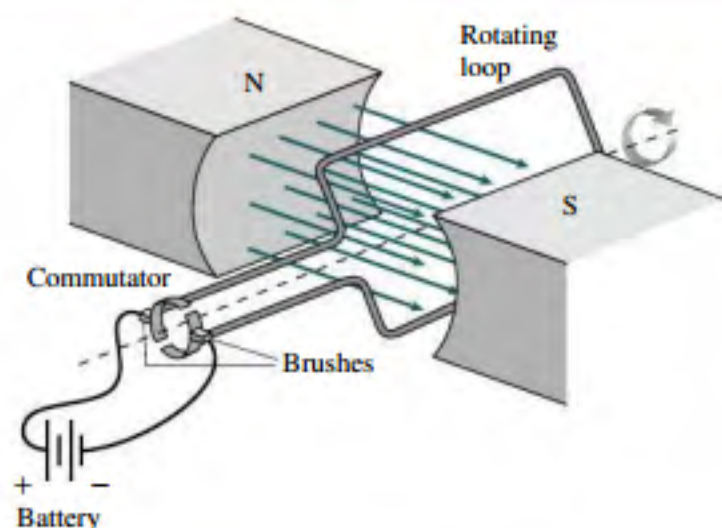
$$U = -\vec{\mu} \cdot \vec{B} \quad (26.16)$$

In a nonuniform field, a dipole also experiences a net force. That's why the nonuniform field near the poles of a bar magnet attracts magnetic materials that, as we'll see in the next section, contain magnetic dipoles.

The torque on a magnetic dipole is important in many technologies, including electric motors and MRI imaging. Some satellites use the torque produced by Earth's magnetic

field to orient themselves in space; with electricity generated from solar panels powering current loops, there's no fuel to run out.

APPLICATION Electric Motors



Electric motors are so much a part of our lives that we hardly think of them. Yet refrigerators, disk drives, subway trains, vacuum cleaners, power tools, food processors, fans, washing machines, water pumps, hybrid cars, and most industrial machinery would be impossible without electric motors.

At the heart of every electric motor is a current loop in a magnetic field. But instead of a steady current, the loop carries a current that reverses to keep the loop always spinning. In direct-current (DC) motors, this is achieved through the electrical contacts that provide current to the loop. The figure shows how current flows to the loop through a pair of stationary brushes that contact rotating conductors called the commutator. The current loop rotates to align with the field, but just as it does so, the brushes cross the gaps in the commutator and reverse the loop's current and therefore its dipole moment vector. Now the loop swings another 180° to its new "desired" position, but again the commutator reverses the current and so the loop rotates continuously. A rigid shaft spinning with the coils delivers mechanical energy. Thus the motor is a device that converts electrical energy to mechanical energy. The magnetic field is an intermediary in this energy conversion.

EXAMPLE 26.5 Torque on a Current Loop: Designing an Electric Car Motor

Nissan's Leaf electric car uses a 110-kW electric motor that develops a maximum torque of $320 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$. Suppose you want to produce this torque in a motor like the one in the preceding Application, consisting of a 700-turn rectangular coil measuring 30 cm by 20 cm in a uniform field of 25 mT. How much current does the motor need?

INTERPRET This problem is about an electric motor, which according to the Application is essentially a current loop in a magnetic field. We're given the torque and asked for the current.

DEVELOP Equation 26.15, $\vec{\tau} = \vec{\mu} \times \vec{B}$, determines the torque on a current loop. Figure 26.24 is a sketch of the loop at the point of maximum torque, $\tau_{\text{max}} = \mu B$, which occurs when $\sin\theta = 1$. To solve for the current, we need the magnetic dipole moment from Equation 26.13, $\mu = NIA$. Then $\tau_{\text{max}} = NIAB$.

EVALUATE Solving for I using the maximum torque and the loop dimensions gives

$$I = \frac{\tau_{\text{max}}}{NAB} = \frac{320 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}}{(700)(0.30 \text{ m})(0.20 \text{ m})(0.025 \text{ T})} = 300 \text{ A}$$

ASSESS That's a large current, but propelling a car is a big job. The actual Leaf motor operates at about 400 V, so its 110-kW power

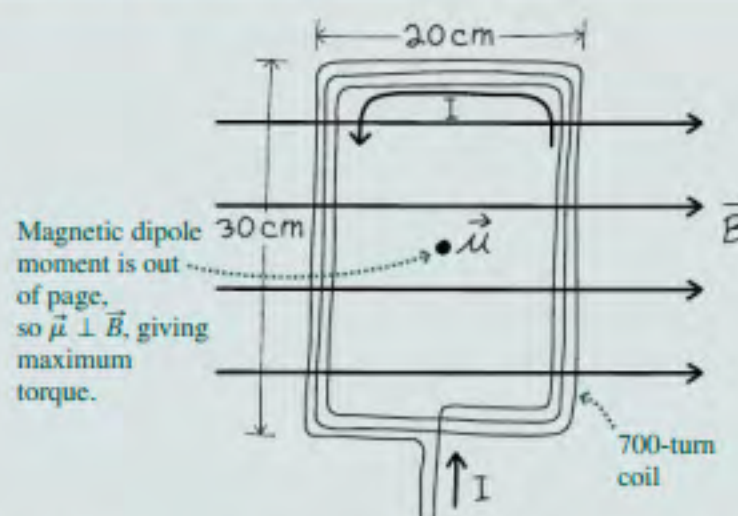


FIGURE 26.24 Loop for the motor of Example 26.5, shown in the position of maximum torque.

requires current $I = P/V = 280 \text{ A}$, close to our answer. However, the Leaf's motor uses a much more complex design than the motor in this example or in the preceding Application.

26.7 Magnetic Matter

LO 26.7 Qualitatively describe ferromagnetism, paramagnetism, and diamagnetism.

So far, we've said remarkably little about magnets. That's because magnetism is fundamentally about moving electric charge. Magnets and magnetic matter are just a minor manifestation of this universal phenomenon.

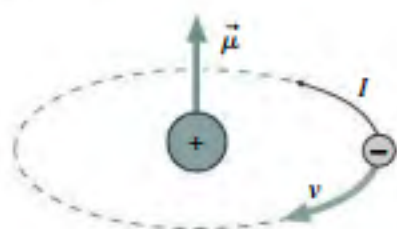


FIGURE 26.25 In the classical model of the atom, the circling electron constitutes a miniature current loop. The current is opposite the motion because the electron is negative. Drawing is only suggestive; the electron's intrinsic magnetic dipole moment is usually more important than that resulting from its orbital motion.

The magnetism of everyday magnets and of magnetic materials like iron results from atomic-scale current loops. An electron orbiting a nucleus constitutes a simple current loop and therefore has a magnetic dipole moment (Fig. 26.25). More importantly, an electron possesses an intrinsic magnetic dipole moment associated with a quantum-mechanical angular momentum called spin. Interactions among these magnetic moments determine the magnetic properties of atoms and of bulk matter. The details necessarily involve quantum mechanics; here we give a qualitative overview of magnetism in matter, which manifests itself in three distinct forms.

Ferromagnetism

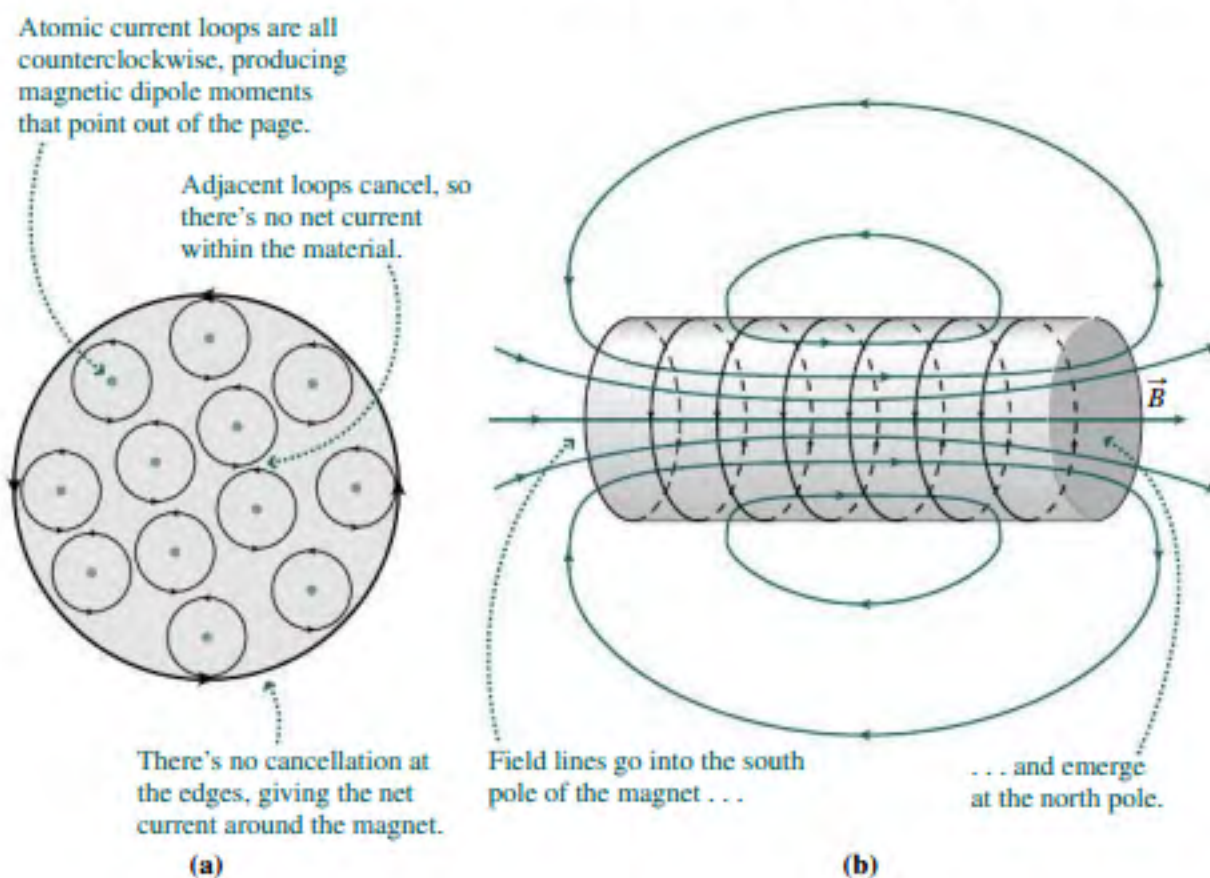
The magnetism you're familiar with is **ferromagnetism**, which is limited to a few substances, including iron, nickel, cobalt, and some alloys and compounds. Strong interactions among atomic magnetic moments result in **magnetic domains**, regions that contain 10^{17} – 10^{21} atoms whose magnetic moments are all aligned in the same direction. Normally the magnetic moments of different domains point in random directions, so there's no net magnetic moment. But when an external magnetic field is applied, the domains all align and the material acquires a net magnetic moment. If the field is nonuniform, the material then experiences a net force, which is why ferromagnetic materials are attracted to magnets.

So-called **hard** ferromagnetic materials retain their magnetism even after the applied field is removed; the result is a permanent magnet. A bar magnet, for example, has its internal magnetic moments aligned along its long dimension. You can think of its field as arising from currents circulating around the surface of the magnet (Fig. 26.26)—currents that ultimately result from the superposition of individual atomic current loops. Computer disks and credit card strips use hard ferromagnetic materials that retain information as patterns of permanent magnetization. **Soft** ferromagnetic materials, in contrast, don't hold magnetization. They're used where magnetization must be turned on and off rapidly, as in the "heads" that write information to computer disks. Ferromagnetism disappears at the so-called **Curie temperature**, as random thermal motions disrupt the organized alignment of magnetic dipoles; for iron this phase transition occurs at 1043 K.

Paramagnetism

Many substances that aren't ferromagnetic nevertheless consist of atoms or molecules that have permanent magnetic dipole moments. There's no strong interaction among the individual dipoles, so these **paramagnetic** materials respond only weakly to external magnetic fields. Paramagnetic effects are generally significant only at very low temperatures.

FIGURE 26.26 (a) Cross section of a bar magnet, showing atomic current loops all aligned the same way and making a net current around the magnet. (b) Side view showing the field that results from this magnetization current.



Diamagnetism

Materials without intrinsic magnetic moments can have moments induced by changes in an applied magnetic field. Whereas ferromagnetic and paramagnetic materials are attracted to magnets, these **diamagnetic** materials are repelled. We'll explore the origins of diamagnetism in Chapter 27.

Magnetic Permeability and Susceptibility

We found in Chapter 20 that the alignment of molecular electric dipoles reduces the electric field in a material. In paramagnetic and ferromagnetic materials, alignment of magnetic dipoles causes an *increase* in the field. Figure 26.27 shows that this difference occurs because the magnetic field within a current loop points in the *same* direction as the loop's magnetic dipole moment, whereas the internal field of an electric dipole is *opposite* the dipole moment. Ferromagnetic behavior is further complicated because it depends on the material's past history, which is what makes permanent magnets possible. Coils for electromagnets and computer disk "heads" are wound on ferromagnetic cores to provide a much stronger magnetic field than the coil current alone could produce.

GOT IT?

26.7 Which of the following best describes the phenomenon responsible for ordinary magnets? (a) high concentrations of magnetic monopoles; (b) collective alignment of atomic magnetic dipoles; (c) electric currents due to free charges circulating in magnetic materials; (d) separation of positive and negative electric charges to the magnetic poles

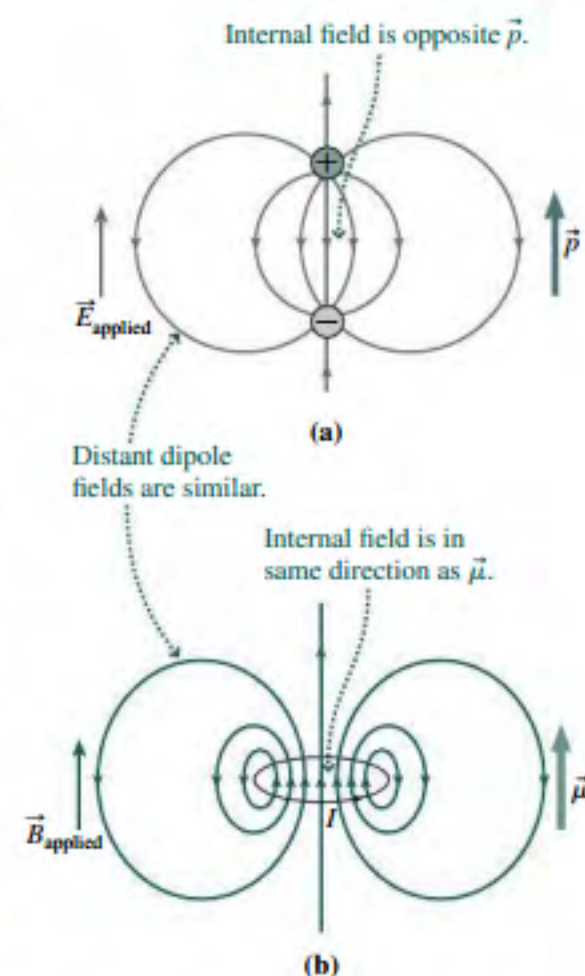


FIGURE 26.27 Internal fields of electric and magnetic dipoles have opposite directions. (a) Electric dipoles reduce an applied electric field; (b) magnetic dipoles increase an applied magnetic field.

26.8 Ampère's Law

LO 26.8 Describe Ampère's law and use it to evaluate magnetic fields with sufficient symmetry.

Computing electric fields with Coulomb's law in Chapter 20 was cumbersome for all but the simplest charge distributions. In Chapter 21 we saw how Gauss's law greatly simplified electric-field calculations for symmetric charge distributions. Is there an analogous approach for magnetic fields? Gauss's law for magnetism, Equation 26.14, won't do because it doesn't relate a magnetic field to its source—namely, moving charge.

Figure 26.28 shows two of the circular magnetic field lines surrounding a long wire carrying a current I out of the page. Imagine moving around the inner circle, and as you go a little way, take the product of a small length dl of the circular path with the magnetic field in the direction you're going. Here you're moving in the direction of the field, so that product is $B dl$; more generally, it's the dot product $\vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$. Now add up all these products around the circle. Formally, the result is the line integral $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$, where the circle indicates that we're integrating around a closed path. In this case the integral becomes just $\oint B dl$ because $\vec{B}$ and $d\vec{l}$ are in the same direction. But here the field magnitude is given by Equation 26.10: $B = \mu_0 I / 2\pi r$, where we've replaced y with the radius r . Since r has the constant value r_1 on the inner circle in Fig. 26.28, the integral becomes $(\mu_0 I / 2\pi r_1) \oint dl$. Now $\oint dl$ is the total length of the circular path, or its circumference $2\pi r_1$. So the value of $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ is $\mu_0 I$. If you try the same thing for the outer circle in Fig. 26.28, r_2 replaces r_1 , but the result is the same: $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = \mu_0 I$, independent of the radius.

We get the same result even if the path doesn't coincide with a field line, as Fig. 26.29 suggests. On the radial segments of the path shown, $\vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = 0$ and there's no contribution to the integral. On segment AB , the field is stronger than if we had stayed on CD , but the segment is proportionately shorter and the integral remains unchanged. We could approximate any arbitrary path as a sequence of radial segments and circular arcs, showing that the value of $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ is independent of path as long as the path surrounds the current I . The value of that integral is simply $\mu_0 I$. Magnetic fields obey the superposition principle, so this result

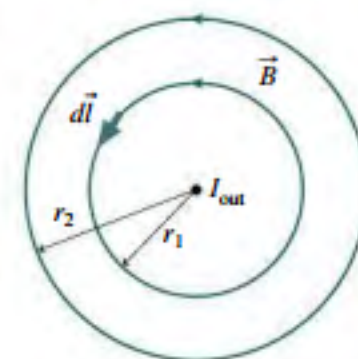


FIGURE 26.28 Two magnetic field lines surrounding a wire carrying current out of the page.

$\vec{B}$ and $d\vec{l}$ are perpendicular along radial segments, so $\vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = 0$ here.

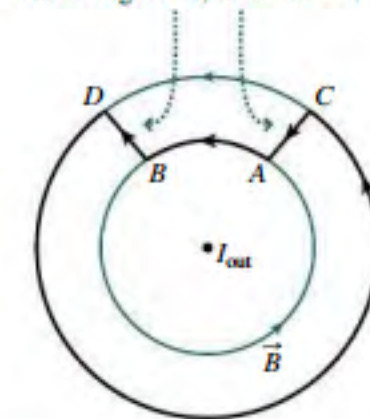
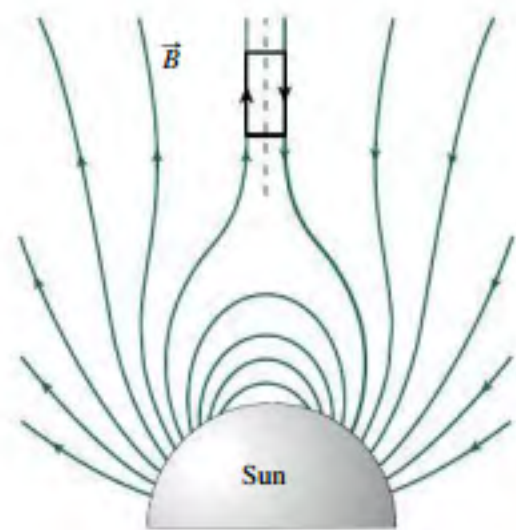


FIGURE 26.29 A closed loop that does not coincide with a field line. The line integral $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ around this loop has the same value $\mu_0 I$ that it has around a circular loop.



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 26.30 (a) Coronal streamers in the Sun's atmosphere contain oppositely directed magnetic fields. (b) A model calculation of the magnetic field in a single streamer. Since $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ is clearly nonzero around the loop shown, there must be an encircled current.

must be true for any current distribution, not just a single line current. That is, the line integral $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ around *any* closed path is directly proportional to the current encircled by that path. This result is **Ampère's law**, a universal statement about current and magnetic field:

The circle designates integration along a *closed* path.

$I_{\text{encircled}}$ is the current encircled by the closed path.

$$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = \mu_0 I_{\text{encircled}} \quad (\text{Ampère's law, steady currents}) \quad (26.17)$$

$\vec{B}$ is the magnetic field on the path.

$d\vec{l}$ is an infinitesimal displacement vector along the path.

Ampère's law is another of the four fundamental laws of electromagnetism, although in the form of Equation 26.17 it's limited to steady currents; it also provides a decent approximation for slowly varying currents. In Chapter 29 we'll generalize Ampère's law to remove the restriction to steady currents.

Ampère's law relates the magnetic field to its source—namely, moving charge in the form of electric current—as does the Biot–Savart law. In fact, the laws of Ampère and Biot–Savart are related in the same way as Gauss's and Coulomb's laws. Coulomb and Biot–Savart show how fields arise from pointlike sources—charge elements dq and current elements $I d\vec{l}$. Gauss and Ampère are global descriptions, telling how the field must behave over a geometric structure (a closed surface for Gauss, a closed loop for Ampère) in relation to the source (charge or current) enclosed or encircled by that structure. In both cases the field $\vec{E}$ or $\vec{B}$ that appears in the integral is the *net* field arising from *all* sources, not just the enclosed charge or encircled currents.

Ampère's law, like Gauss's, is a truly universal statement. It holds in the electromagnetic devices we build, in atomic and molecular systems, and in distant astrophysical objects. Find a path around which $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ isn't zero, and you've found a region where electric current must be flowing (Fig. 26.30). Although it's difficult to show mathematically, the Biot–Savart law follows from Ampère's law just as Coulomb's law follows from Gauss's.

EXAMPLE 26.6

Ampère's Law: Solar Currents

The long dimension of the rectangular loop in Fig. 26.30b is 400 Mm, and the magnetic field strength near the loop has a constant magnitude of 2 mT. Estimate the total current encircled by the rectangle.

INTERPRET This is a problem about currents encircled by a loop, so it must involve Ampère's law.

DEVELOP Figure 26.30b provides our drawing. Ampère's law (Equation 26.17) equates $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ to $\mu_0 I_{\text{encircled}}$, so we want to evaluate the integral around the loop shown and then solve for $I_{\text{encircled}}$.

EVALUATE On the short segments of the path, $\vec{B} \perp d\vec{l}$, so there's no contribution to the integral. On both long segments, $\vec{B}$ is constant and lies in the direction we're traversing the path, so here $\int \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ becomes simply Bl , where l is the length of the path segments. Each side contributes this much, so $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = 2Bl$. Ampère's law equates this quantity to $\mu_0 I_{\text{encircled}}$, so we can solve to get

$$I_{\text{encircled}} = \frac{2Bl}{\mu_0} = \frac{(2)(2 \text{ mT})(400 \text{ Mm})}{1.26 \times 10^{-6} \text{ N/A}^2} = 10^{12} \text{ A}$$

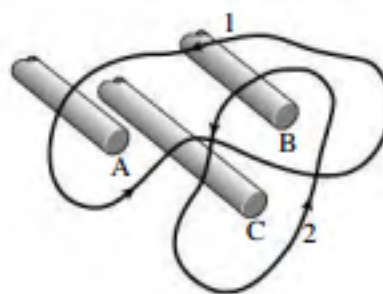
ASSESS This is a large current, but we're dealing with a region much larger than Earth, so that shouldn't be too surprising. You can get the direction of the current from the right-hand rule: Curl your fingers around the loop in the direction that gives positive $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$, and your thumb points in the direction of the current. Here that's into the page. In three dimensions this current actually flows around the Sun in approximately the equatorial plane. Note that our result depends crucially on the field reversing across the equatorial plane. In a truly uniform field, one side of the loop would have contributed Bl to the line integral, the other $-Bl$. That would make the integral zero and imply no encircled current. This shows that we can have a uniform field in a current-free region, but not a field that reverses sign—at least not abruptly as in this solar example.



AMPÉRIAN LOOPS The loop used with Ampère's law is truly arbitrary. It needn't coincide with a field line. In this example, the rectangular loop coincided with the field over its long sides but not along its ends. The loop used with Ampère's law is called an **Ampèrian loop**. Don't confuse Ampèrian loops with field lines; they might coincide, but they don't have to.

GOT IT?

26.8 The figure shows three parallel wires carrying current of the same magnitude I , but in one of them the current direction is opposite that of the other two. If $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} \neq 0$ around loop 2, (1) what's $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ around loop 1, and (2) which current is the opposite one?



Using Ampère's Law

For charge distributions with sufficient symmetry, we used Gauss's law to solve for the electric field in a simple and elegant way. We can do the same with Ampère's law for sufficiently symmetric current distributions. Here's the approach:

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 26.1

Ampère's Law

INTERPRET Interpret the problem to be sure it's about magnetic field and current. Identify the symmetry.

DEVELOP Based on the symmetry, sketch some field lines. Then find an Ampèrian loop over which you'll be able to evaluate $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$. That means the field should be constant and parallel to the loop over all or part of the loop; where they're not parallel they should be perpendicular. Like a Gaussian surface, the Ampèrian loop is a purely mathematical construct; it need not correspond to anything physical. Draw your loop.

EVALUATE

- Evaluate $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ for your loop. This should be straightforward because you'll be able to take B outside the integral over those segments where it's constant, and segments where $\vec{B}$ is perpendicular to the loop won't contribute to the integral.
- Evaluate the *encircled* current.
- Equate your result for $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ to $\mu_0 I_{\text{encircled}}$ and solve for B . Symmetry should give you the direction of $\vec{B}$.

ASSESS Does your answer make sense in terms of what you know about the fields of simple charge and current distributions?

EXAMPLE 26.7

Using Ampère's Law: Outside and Inside a Wire

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A long, straight wire of radius R carries a current I distributed uniformly over its cross section. Find the magnetic field (a) outside and (b) inside the wire.

INTERPRET We follow our strategy and identify this as a situation with line symmetry. Therefore, the field depends only on the radial distance from the wire's central axis.

DEVELOP Magnetic field lines encircle their source, so the only field lines consistent with the symmetry are concentric circles. We've sketched some of these circular field lines in Fig. 26.31. The field is tangent to the field lines and, by symmetry, has the same magnitude B everywhere on a field line. So the field lines themselves make good Ampèrian loops.

EVALUATE

- The field is everywhere parallel to a circular Ampèrian loop, and its magnitude is constant on the loop, so for a loop of radius r , $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ becomes $B \oint dl$, or just $2\pi rB$, because $\oint dl$ is the circumference $2\pi r$. This is true both outside and inside the wire.

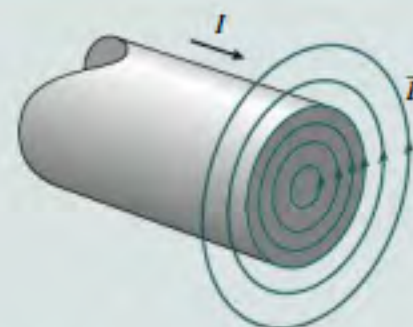


FIGURE 26.31 Cross section of a long cylindrical wire. Any field line can serve as an Ampèrian loop. Inside the wire, the loop's radius r is less than the wire's radius R ; outside, $r > R$.

We'll first answer (a):

- For any loop *outside* the wire, the encircled current is the total current I .
- Equating our expression for $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ to μ_0 times the encircled current gives $2\pi rB = \mu_0 I$, so

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r} \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{field outside any current} \\ \text{distribution with line symmetry} \end{array} \right) \quad (26.18)$$

(continued)

Now on to (b):

- Inside the wire, a circular Ampèrian loop encloses only some of the current. How much? With the current uniformly distributed over the wire's cross section, there's a uniform current density $J = I/A = I/\pi R^2$. The encircled current is the current density times the area πr^2 within our loop, so $I_{\text{encircled}} = I(r^2/R^2)$.
- Then we have $2\pi rB = \mu_0 I(r^2/R^2)$, which gives

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I r}{2\pi R^2} \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{field inside a uniform current} \\ \text{distribution with line symmetry} \end{array} \right) \quad (26.19)$$

In both cases, application of the right-hand rule shows that the field circles counterclockwise, as shown in Fig. 26.31.

ASSESS Equation 26.18 is identical to our result for the line current of Example 26.4, and shows that the field outside *any* current distribution with line symmetry is the same as that of a line current at the

symmetry axis. We found the same thing for the electric fields outside cylindrical charge distributions, including the $1/r$ decrease with distance from the axis. Inside the wire, meanwhile, the field increases linearly with distance r from the cylinder axis. This makes sense because, as r increases, we encircle more current in proportion to r^2 —while at the same time the field decreases as $1/r$. You found a similar result for a uniformly charged cylinder if you worked Problem 56 in Chapter 21. Now, the electric and magnetic fields of cylindrical distributions look very different— $\vec{E}$ is radial, while $\vec{B}$ forms circles—but the dependence on distance is the same in both cases.



SYMMETRY IS CRUCIAL Our use of Ampère's law to derive the field of a long wire depends crucially on symmetry. You can't arbitrarily pull B outside the integral unless you know—as we do here from symmetry—that it's constant in magnitude and in direction relative to our Ampèrian loop.

EXAMPLE 26.8 Ampère's Law: A Current Sheet

An infinite flat sheet carries current out of this page. The current is distributed uniformly along the sheet, with current per unit width given by J_s . Find the magnetic field of this sheet.

INTERPRET We follow our strategy, identifying the current distribution as having plane symmetry. Then the only thing the field might depend on is the distance from the current-carrying sheet.

DEVELOP The only field lines consistent with the symmetry are straight lines parallel to the plane; we've drawn the current and some field lines in Fig. 26.32. The situation is similar to Example 26.6, and a suitable Ampèrian loop is a rectangle with sides along the field lines and perpendicular edges; we've sketched one such rectangle of width l . We drew the field in opposite directions on either side of the sheet; it had better be that way if, as we discussed for the oppositely directed solar magnetic fields in Example 26.6, $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ is to be nonzero. And it has to be nonzero because we know that our Ampèrian loop encircles current.



FIGURE 26.32 A current sheet extends infinitely to the left and right, as well as in and out of the page. Field lines and a rectangular Ampèrian loop are shown.

EVALUATE

- We evaluate $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ just as in Example 26.6, getting $2Bl$.
- The sheet carries current J_s per unit width, so our rectangle of width l encircles a current $I_{\text{encircled}} = J_s l$.
- Equating our expression for $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ to $\mu_0 I_{\text{encircled}}$ gives $2Bl = \mu_0 J_s l$, or

$$B = \frac{1}{2} \mu_0 J_s \quad (\text{field of an infinite current sheet}) \quad (26.20)$$

ASSESS Make sense? Like the electric field of an infinite plane charge, the magnetic field of an infinite current sheet doesn't depend on distance from the sheet. Now, there's no such thing as a truly infinite sheet, so our result is an approximation valid near a finite sheet but not close to its edges. As Fig. 26.33 shows, the lines of a finite sheet wrap around the ends to form closed loops, and far from the loop the field begins to resemble that of a wire. But close in, Equation 26.20 holds.

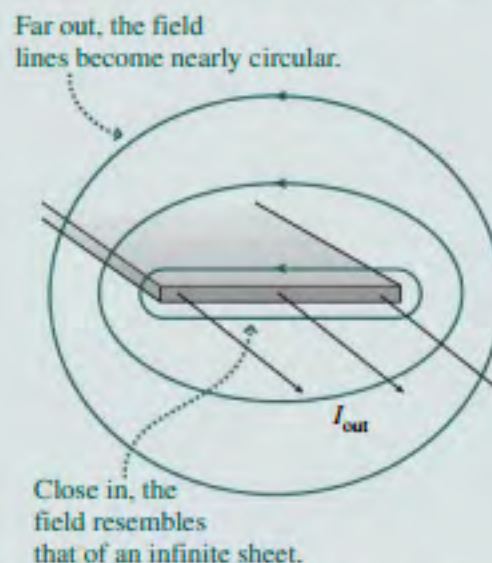


FIGURE 26.33 Field of a finite-width current sheet.

Fields of Simple Current Distributions

We've just used Ampère's law to calculate the fields of two symmetric current distributions, and we compared them with analogous results for electric fields. Table 26.1 summarizes these and other analogies. Although the magnetic and electric fields may look different, they exhibit the same general relationships between geometry and the way the

Table 26.1 Fields of Some Simple Charge and Current Distributions

Field Dependence on Distance ^a	Charge Distribution	Electric Field	Current Distribution	Magnetic Field
$\frac{1}{r^3}$	Electric dipole		Magnetic dipole	
$\frac{1}{r^2}$	Point charge or spherically symmetric		Impossible for steady current	
$\frac{1}{r}$	Charge distribution with line symmetry		Current distribution with line symmetry	
Uniform field; no variation	Infinite flat sheet of charge		Current sheet	

^aFor field outside distribution

fields decrease with distance. Real distributions are more complicated but may often be approximated by these simple cases. Far from *any* current loop, for example, its field approximates that of a dipole. Very near *any* wire, its field is essentially that of a long, straight wire. Very near *any* flat sheet of current, the field is essentially that of Example 26.8.

Solenoids

We found in Chapter 23 that there's an essentially uniform electric field inside a parallel-plate capacitor. Here we explore a current configuration that produces an analogously uniform magnetic field.

Figure 26.34a shows a single current loop and its magnetic field. Add a few turns to form an extended coil, and the field isn't much different (Fig. 26.34b); more turns (Fig. 26.34c), and the region of strongest field is increasingly confined within the coil. With a very long coil (Fig. 26.34d), the field is strong and uniform deep within the coil and very weak outside. The limit of an infinitely long, tightly wound coil would produce a uniform field within and no field outside.

A tightly wound coil is a **solenoid**. For a long solenoid—much longer than its diameter—we can use Ampère's law to find the magnetic field inside the solenoid. Figure 26.35 shows a cross section through a solenoid, with a rectangular Ampèrian loop of width l . Since the field is zero outside, the only contribution to $\oint \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{l}$ is from the interior segment parallel to the field, and with a uniform field that gives Bl . If the solenoid carries current I and consists of n turns of wire per unit length, then Fig. 26.35 shows that our Ampèrian loop encircles a total current nIl . So Ampère's law reads $Bl = \mu_0 nIl$, or

$$B = \mu_0 nI \quad (\text{solenoid field}) \quad (26.21)$$

Since the rectangle's vertical dimension never entered the calculation, the field has this same magnitude everywhere inside the solenoid. Although Fig. 26.34 depicts circular coils, Equation 26.21 holds for a solenoid of any cross section.

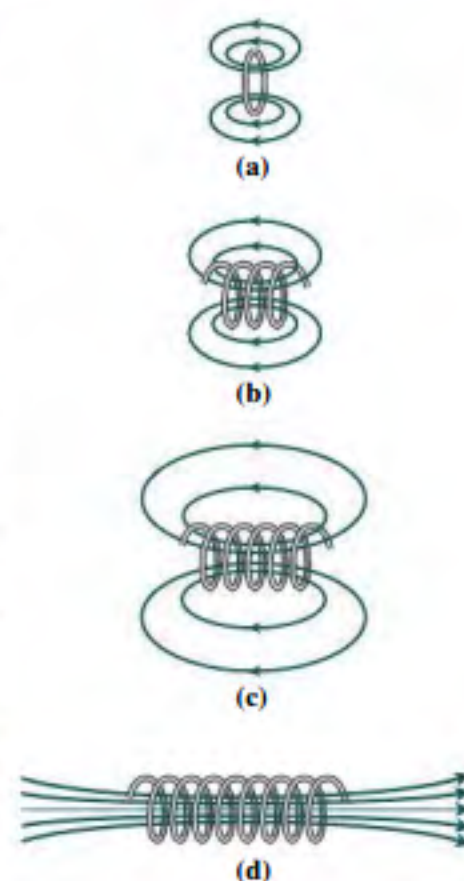
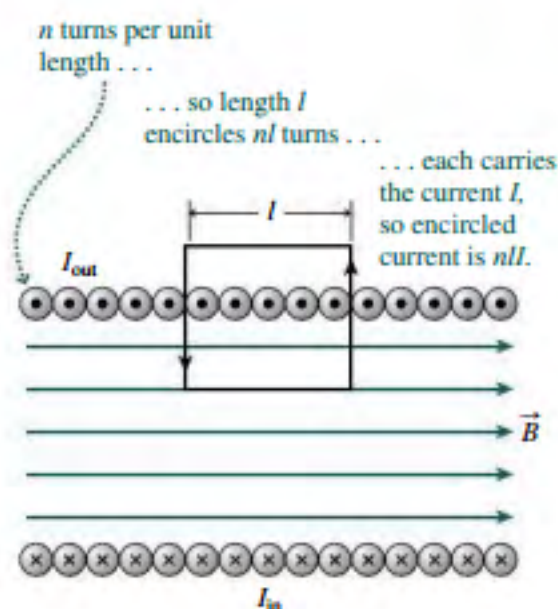


FIGURE 26.34 As the coil gets longer, the interior field stays nearly constant but the exterior field weakens as the field lines spread ever farther apart.

FIGURE 26.35 Cross section of a long solenoid, showing a rectangular Ampèrian loop straddling the region where solenoid coils emerge from the plane of the page.



Solenoids produce uniform magnetic fields in a variety of applications, including the long cylindrical “tunnel” of an MRI scanner. Because the field becomes nonuniform at the ends of a solenoid, ferromagnetic materials are attracted into the coil. Small solenoids can thus produce straight-line motion of an iron plunger. One application is the solenoid on a car starter, which engages the starter motor’s gear with the gasoline engine. Solenoid-operated valves are widely used in controlling fluid flows; the valves that admit water to your washing machine and dishwasher are solenoid valves.

EXAMPLE 26.9 A Solenoid: The Current in an MRI Scanner

The solenoid used in an MRI scanner is 2.4 m long and 95 cm in diameter. It’s wound from superconducting wire 2.0 mm in diameter, with adjacent turns separated by an insulating layer of negligible thickness. Find the current that will produce a 1.5-T magnetic field inside the solenoid.

INTERPRET This is a problem about a solenoid, which involves relating current and field.

DEVELOP Equation 26.21, $B = \mu_0 nI$, provides the relation we need. To use it we need n , the number of turns per unit length. Figure 26.36 shows how we find n from the wire diameter. Knowing n , we can use Equation 26.21 to find the current.

EVALUATE Figure 26.36 shows that $n = 500$ turns per meter. So now we can solve Equation 26.21 to get

$$I = \frac{B}{\mu_0 n} = \frac{1.5 \text{ T}}{(1.26 \times 10^{-6} \text{ N/A}^2)(500 \text{ m}^{-1})} = 2.4 \text{ kA}$$

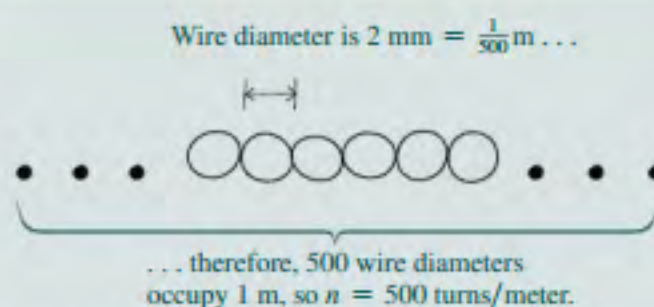


FIGURE 26.36 Finding n .

ASSESS That’s a large current, but it’s readily handled by the niobium–titanium superconductor in the MRI scanner. Notice that more turns per unit length would reduce the current demand; that’s because each turn carries the same current I , so more turns increase the encircled current and thus the field for a given total current. Our answer here is only approximate; with its 2.4-m length and a diameter of nearly 1 m, our solenoid barely approaches the limit of a “long” solenoid.

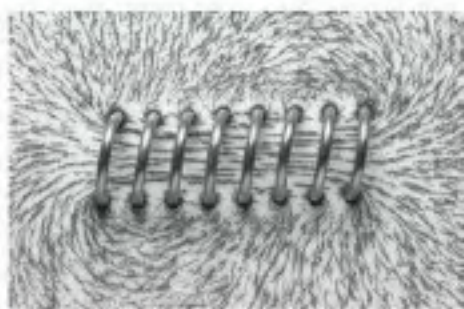


FIGURE 26.37 Iron filings trace the magnetic field of a loosely wound solenoid. Compare with the field of a bar magnet shown in Fig. 26.1.

With its current flowing around an essentially cylindrical surface, the solenoid might remind you of the bar magnet in Fig. 26.26. There, atomic current loops produce a magnetization current flowing around the cylindrical magnet. Indeed, a solenoid and a bar magnet are very similar, and they produce similar magnetic fields (Fig. 26.37). Wrap a solenoid around on itself and you’ve got a **toroid**—a donut-shaped coil whose circular field lines close back on themselves. Passage Problems 88–91 explore toroids.

Chapter 26 Summary

Big Idea

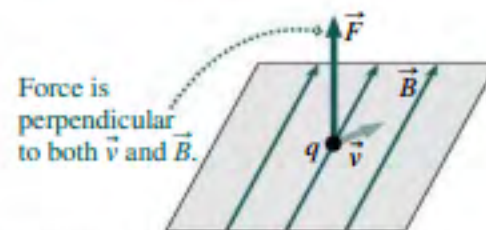
The big new idea here is magnetism—an interaction that fundamentally involves *moving electric charge*. Moving charge produces magnetic fields, and moving charges respond to magnetic fields by experiencing a magnetic force.

Key Concepts and Equations

The **magnetic force** on a charge q moving with velocity $\vec{v}$ in a magnetic field $\vec{B}$ is

$$\vec{F} = q\vec{v} \times \vec{B} \quad (\text{magnetic force})$$

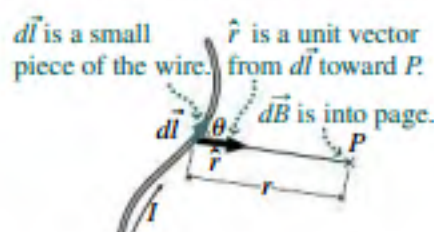
The force acts at right angles to both $\vec{v}$ and $\vec{B}$, and therefore it does no work.



The **Biot-Savart law** describes the magnetic field $d\vec{B}$ arising from a small element of steady current:

$$d\vec{B} = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \frac{I d\vec{l} \times \hat{r}}{r^2}$$

Here μ_0 is the **permeability constant**, with value approximately $1.26 \times 10^{-6} \text{ N/A}^2$.



Ampère's law provides a more global description of how magnetic fields arise from currents, relating the line integral around any closed loop to the encircled current:

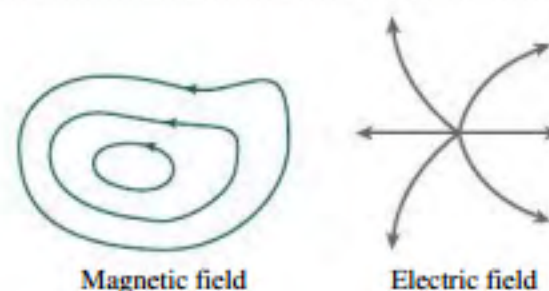
$$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = \mu_0 I_{\text{encircled}}$$

Ampère's law in this form applies only to steady currents.

Gauss's law for magnetism expresses the fact that there are no magnetic monopoles—magnetic analogs of electric charge—and that magnetic field lines therefore do not begin or end:

$$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{A} = 0$$

Static electric fields, in contrast, always begin or end on electric charges.

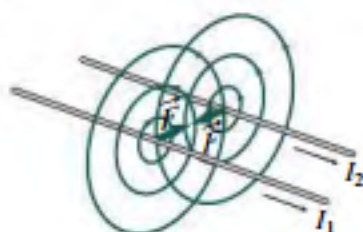


Applications

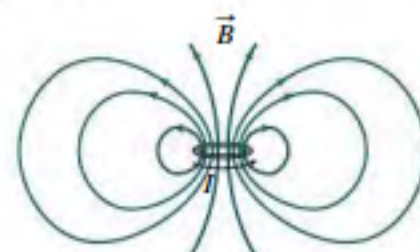
A charged particle moving perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field undergoes circular motion with the **cyclotron frequency** $f = qB/2\pi m$. More generally, charged particles in magnetic fields follow spiral paths, “trapped” on the field lines.



The magnetic force on a straight wire of length l carrying current I in a uniform magnetic field is $\vec{F} = I\vec{l} \times \vec{B}$. Parallel wires a distance d apart experience forces from each other's magnetic field: $F = \frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2 l}{2\pi d}$. The force is attractive for currents in the same direction, repulsive for currents in opposite directions.



A current loop gives rise to a magnetic field that, at distances large compared with the loop's size, is a dipole field. The loop's magnetic dipole moment has magnitude $\mu = IA$, with A the loop area, and the loop responds to an external magnetic field by experiencing the torque typical of a dipole: $\vec{\tau} = \vec{\mu} \times \vec{B}$.

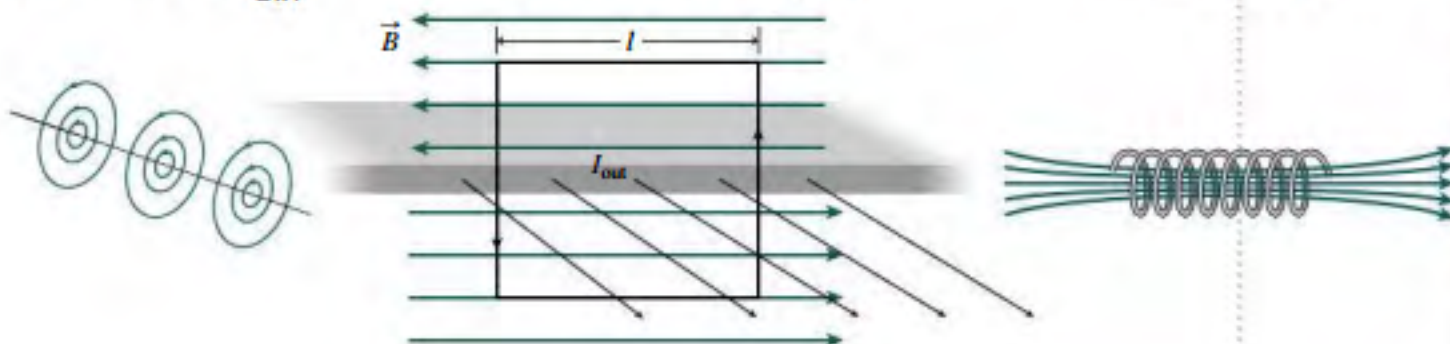


Fields of simple current distributions:

Line current: $B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}$

Current sheet: $B = \frac{1}{2} \mu_0 J_s$

Solenoid: $B = \mu_0 nI$



Magnetism in matter arises from the interactions of atomic-scale current loops. **Ferromagnetic** materials have strong interactions and exhibit the bulk magnetism associated with permanent magnets and with magnetic materials like iron. **Paramagnetism** and **diamagnetism** are weaker manifestations of magnetism in matter.

Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 26.1 Recognize magnetism as a phenomenon that fundamentally involves moving electric charge.</p> <p>LO 26.2 Calculate magnetic force given magnetic field, charge, and charge velocity.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 26.1, 26.2; Exercises 26.11, 26.12, 26.13, 26.14, 26.15; Problems 26.46, 26.48</i></p> <p>LO 26.3 Describe the paths of charged particles in magnetic fields.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 26.3, 26.4; Exercises 26.16, 26.17, 26.18, 26.19, 26.20; Problems 26.50, 26.51, 26.52, 26.53</i></p> <p>LO 26.4 Evaluate magnetic forces on electric currents.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 26.6, 26.7; Exercises 26.21, 26.22, 26.23, 26.24; Problems 26.54, 26.56, 26.57, 26.59, 26.60, 26.72, 26.80, 26.81, 26.85, 26.87</i></p> <p>LO 26.5 Describe the origin of magnetic fields using the Biot–Savart law.</p> | <p><i>For Thought and Discussion Question 26.5; Exercises 26.25, 26.26, 26.27, 26.28, 26.29; Problems 26.49, 26.61, 26.62, 26.63, 26.68, 26.70, 26.74, 26.78, 26.82, 26.83, 26.84, 26.86</i></p> <p>LO 26.6 Describe magnetic dipoles and their interactions with magnetic fields.
<i>Exercises 26.30, 26.31, 26.32; Problems 26.47, 26.58, 26.71, 26.74, 26.79</i></p> <p>LO 26.7 Qualitatively describe ferromagnetism, paramagnetism, and diamagnetism.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 26.9, 26.10</i></p> <p>LO 26.8 Describe Ampère’s law and use it to evaluate magnetic fields with sufficient symmetry.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 26.8, 26.9; Exercises 26.34, 26.35, 26.36; Problems 26.64, 26.68, 26.69, 26.73, 26.75, 26.76, 26.77</i></p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

1. An electron moving with velocity $\vec{v}$ through a magnetic field $\vec{B}$ experiences a magnetic force $\vec{F}$. Which of the vectors $\vec{F}$, $\vec{v}$, and $\vec{B}$ must be at right angles?
2. Can you increase the magnetic field value of a solenoid if you double it lengthwise and at its cross sections, keeping the number of loops constant?
3. Do particles in a cyclotron gain energy from the electric field, the magnetic field, or both? Explain.
4. Two identical particles carrying equal charge are moving in opposite directions, perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field, when they collide elastically head-on. Describe their subsequent motion.
5. The Biot–Savart law shows that the magnetic field of a current element decreases as $1/r^2$. Could you put together a complete circuit whose field exhibits this decrease? Why or why not?
6. Do currents in the same direction attract or repel? Explain.
7. If a current is passed through an unstretched spring, will the spring contract or expand? Explain.
8. Figure 26.38 shows some magnetic field lines associated with two parallel wires carrying equal currents perpendicular to the page. Are the currents in the same or opposite directions? How can you tell? *Note:* The only currents in Fig. 26.38 are those in the two wires.



FIGURE 26.38 For Thought and Discussion 8

9. Why is a piece of iron attracted into a solenoid?
10. An unmagnetized piece of iron has no net magnetic dipole moment, yet it’s attracted to either pole of a bar magnet. Why?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 26.2 Magnetic Force and Field

11. Find (a) the minimum magnetic field needed to exert a 5.7-fN force on an electron moving at 18 Mm/s and (b) the field strength required if the field were at 45° to the electron’s velocity.
12. An electron moving at right angles to a 0.20-T magnetic field experiences an acceleration of $6.5 \times 10^{15} \text{ m/s}^2$. (a) What’s its speed? (b) By how much does its speed change in 1 ns?
13. Find the magnitude of the magnetic force on a proton moving at $2.5 \times 10^5 \text{ m/s}$ (a) perpendicular; (b) at 30° ; (c) parallel to a 0.50-T magnetic field.
14. The magnitude of Earth’s magnetic field is about 0.5 gauss near Earth’s surface. What’s the maximum possible magnetic force on an electron with kinetic energy of 1 keV? Compare with the gravitational force on the electron.
15. A velocity selector uses a 58-mT magnetic field perpendicular to a 20-kN/C electric field. At what speed will charged particles pass through the selector undeflected?

Section 26.3 Charged Particles in Magnetic Fields

16. Find the radius of the path described by a proton moving at 175 km/s in a plane perpendicular to a 64.6-mT magnetic field.
17. How long does it take an electron to complete a circular orbit perpendicular to a 115- μT magnetic field?
18. Radio astronomers detect electromagnetic radiation at a frequency of 42 MHz from an interstellar gas cloud. If the radiation results from electrons spiraling in a magnetic field, what’s the field strength?
19. In a microwave oven, electrons describe circular motion in a magnetic field within a special tube called a *magnetron*; as you’ll learn in Chapter 29, the electrons’ motion results in the production of microwaves. (a) If the electrons circle at a frequency of 2.45 GHz, what’s the magnetic field strength? (b) If the magnetron can accommodate electron orbits with maximum diameter 2.72 mm, what’s the electrons’ energy in eV?

20. Two protons, moving in a plane perpendicular to a uniform 50.0-mT magnetic field, undergo an elastic head-on collision. How much time elapses before they collide again?

Section 26.4 The Magnetic Force on a Current

21. Find the magnitude of the force on a 69.5-cm-long wire carrying 12.0 A at right angles to a 38.5-mT magnetic field.
22. A wire carrying 15 A makes a 25° angle with a uniform magnetic field. The magnetic force per unit length of wire is 0.31 N/m. Find (a) the magnetic field strength and (b) the maximum force per unit length that could be achieved by reorienting the wire.
23. In an experimental nuclear fusion reactor, plans call for a wire of mass 2.44 kg to cross a 3.15-m-long region where a 1.52-T magnetic field points horizontally in such a way that the magnetic force on the wire will be upward. What's the maximum current the wire can carry without the magnitude of the magnetic force exceeding its weight?
24. A wire with mass per unit length 75 g/m runs horizontally at right angles to a horizontal magnetic field. A 6.2-A current in the wire results in its being suspended against gravity. What's the magnetic field strength?

Section 26.5 Origin of the Magnetic Field

25. A wire carries 6.71 A. You form it into a single-turn circular loop and measure a magnetic field of 42.8 μT at the loop center. (a) What's the loop's radius? (b) What's the field strength on the loop axis at 10.0 cm from the loop center?
26. A single-turn wire loop is 3.0 cm in diameter and carries a 670-mA current. Find the magnetic field strength (a) at the loop center and (b) on the loop axis, 25 cm from the center.
27. A 2.2-m-long wire carrying 3.7 A is wound into a tight coil 6.5 cm in diameter. Find the magnetic field at its center.
28. What's the current in a long wire if the magnetic field strength 2.2 cm from the wire's axis is 67 μT ?
29. In standard household wiring, parallel wires about 1 cm apart carry currents of about 15 A. What's the force per unit length between these wires?

Section 26.6 Magnetic Dipoles

30. Earth's magnetic dipole moment is $8.0 \times 10^{22} \text{ A} \cdot \text{m}^2$. Find the magnetic field strength at Earth's magnetic poles.
31. A single-turn square wire loop 18.0 cm on a side carries a 1.25-A current. (a) What's the loop's magnetic dipole moment? (b) What's the magnitude of the torque the loop experiences when it's in a 2.12-T magnetic field with the loop's dipole moment vector at 65.0° to the field?
32. An electric motor contains a 250-turn circular coil 5.4 cm in diameter. If it develops a maximum torque of 2.0 N $\cdot$ m at a current of 3.1 A, what's the magnetic field strength?

Section 26.8 Ampère's Law

33. The line integral of the magnetic field on a closed path surrounding a wire has the value 9.2 $\mu\text{T} \cdot \text{m}$. Find the current in the wire.
34. The magnetic field shown in Fig. 26.39 has uniform magnitude 75 μT , but its direction reverses abruptly. Find the current encircled by the rectangular loop shown.

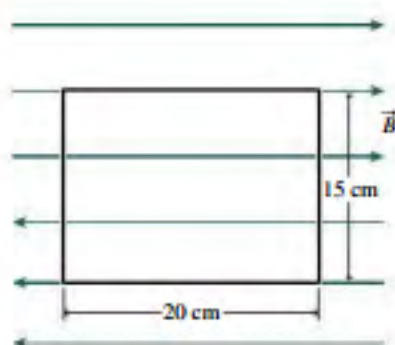


FIGURE 26.39 Exercise 34

35. A 2.5-mm² cross-sectional area wire, commonly used in household wiring, can safely carry currents of up to 20.0 A. For a wire carrying this maximum current, find the magnetic field strength (a) 0.180 mm from the wire's axis, (b) at the wire's surface, and (c) 0.250 mm beyond the wire's surface.
36. Show that Equations 26.18 and 26.19 give the same results when evaluated at the wire's surface.
37. A superconducting solenoid has 3300 turns per meter and carries 4.1 kA. Find the magnetic field strength in the solenoid.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

38. **Example 26.2:** Chlorine is an unusual element in that it has two abundant stable isotopes, Cl-35 and Cl-37, constituting, respectively, about 76% and 24% of natural chlorine. The masses of these isotopes in unified atomic mass units are, to three significant figures, equal to their mass numbers 35 and 37. A mass spectrometer like that described in Example 26.1 and Fig. 26.7 is used with singly ionized chlorine atoms. The spectrometer has a 3.50-kV accelerating potential and a 163-mT magnetic field. How far apart will Cl-35 and Cl-37 ions be when they reach the detector?
39. **Example 26.2:** You're trying to measure arsenic (As) contamination in drinking water using a mass spectrometer like that described in Example 26.1. The analysis starts by boiling the water out of a sample, then heating the remaining material to dissociate molecules into individual atoms, then stripping electrons to give singly ionized atoms. The ions are then accelerated through a 5.75-kV potential difference, after which they enter a 0.460-T magnetic field. The detector shows significant ion impacts at distances of 27.7 cm, 34.3 cm, and 41.1 cm from the entrance to the magnetic-field region. Is arsenic present? If so, where on the detector is the arsenic? *Hint:* Consult Appendix D and note that arsenic has only one stable isotope.
40. **Example 26.2:** A beam of electrons is initially moving along the negative x -axis at 7.18 Mm/s in the positive x -direction. At $x = 0$ it enters a region where a uniform 2.86-mT magnetic field points in the positive y -direction. The region begins on the y - z plane and extends indefinitely in the x -direction. Find (a) the maximum distance the beam penetrates into the region and (b) the coordinates of the point where the beam exits the region.
41. **Example 26.2:** The mass spectrometer described in Example 26.2 is a simple but largely obsolete design. Modern mass spectrometers generally use a single detector at a fixed location, and they scan the magnetic field strength B by varying the current in an electromagnet. The known value of B at the time a detection is made then allows the charge-to-mass ratio of the detected species to be determined. Furthermore, modern designs don't use the full semicircle shown in Fig. 26.7 but generally take the particles through a smaller circular arc. Fig. 26.40 shows the magnetic portion of such a mass spectrometer. Ions enter the magnetic field after being accelerated through a potential difference of 2.75 kV. They enter moving perpendicular to the field region, a distance of 22.0 cm from the apex shown, and,

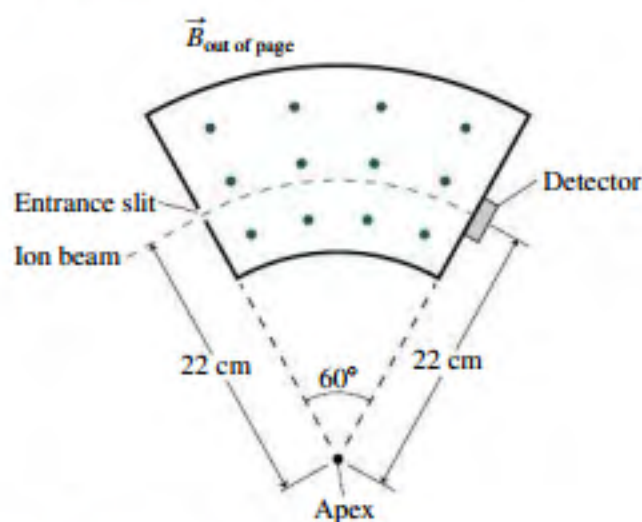


FIGURE 26.40 Problem 41

if they have the appropriate charge-to-mass ratio, they strike the detector, which is located the same distance from the apex as the entrance slit. What range of magnetic field strengths is needed in this design to detect singly ionized atoms ranging from carbon-12 to iron-56?

42. **Example 26.7:** A long, straight wire 9.27 mm in diameter carries 147 A distributed uniformly over its cross section. Find the magnetic field strength (a) 2.50 mm from the wire's axis and (b) 7.50 mm from the axis.
43. **Example 26.7:** Niobium-tin, a commonly used low-temperature superconductor, begins to lose its superconductivity when the magnetic field within the conductor exceeds 0.19 T (the exact value of this field also depends on temperature). Consider a niobium-tin superconducting wire 3.0 mm in diameter. What's the maximum current it can carry if the magnetic field everywhere inside the wire is to remain below 0.19 T? Assume the current is spread uniformly over the wire's cross section.
44. **Example 26.7:** Figure 26.41 shows a *coaxial cable*, widely used in electronics to minimize interference either with or from signals carried on the cable. The cable consists of an inner solid conductor of radius a and a hollow outer conductor of inner radius b and thickness c . The two conductors carry equal but opposite currents I , distributed uniformly over their cross-sectional areas. Find expressions for the magnetic field strength as a function of radial position r (a) within the inner conductor, (b) between the inner and outer conductors, (c) within the outer conductor, and (d) beyond the outer conductor.
45. **Example 26.7:** A coaxial cable like the one described in the preceding problem and shown in Fig. 26.41 has $a = 0.525$ mm, $b = 0.400$ cm, and $c = 0.210$ mm. The magnetic field strength at $r = 0.125$ cm from the central axis is $384 \mu\text{T}$. Find (a) the current I , (b) the magnetic field inside the inner conductor at $r = 0.300$ mm, and (c) the current density in the outer conductor.

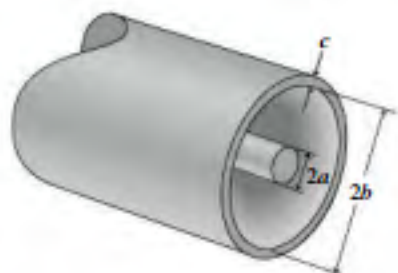


FIGURE 26.41 Problem 44

Problems

46. A particle carrying a $50\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge moves with velocity $\vec{v} = 5.0\hat{i} + 3.2\hat{j}$ m/s through a magnetic field given by $\vec{B} = 9.4\hat{i} + 6.7\hat{j}$ T. (a) Find the magnetic force on the particle. (b) Form the dot products $\vec{F} \cdot \vec{v}$ and $\vec{F} \cdot \vec{B}$ to show explicitly that the force is perpendicular to both $\vec{v}$ and $\vec{B}$.
47. Jupiter has the strongest magnetic field in our solar system, about 1.4 mT at its poles. Approximating the field as that of a dipole, find Jupiter's magnetic dipole moment. (*Hint:* Consult Appendix E.)
48. A proton moving with velocity $\vec{v}_1 = 3.6 \times 10^4 \hat{j}$ m/s experiences a magnetic force of $7.4 \times 10^{-16} \hat{i}$ N. A second proton moving on the x -axis experiences a magnetic force of $2.8 \times 10^{-16} \hat{j}$ N. Find the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field (assumed uniform), and the velocity of the second proton.
49. A simplified model of Earth's magnetic field has it originating in a single current loop at the outer edge of the planet's liquid core (radius 3000 km). What current would give the $62\text{-}\mu\text{T}$ field measured at the north magnetic pole?
50. Before the advent of today's flat-screen televisions, the TV picture was "painted" on the screen of a *cathode ray tube* (also called a *picture tube*) by an electron beam that was steered by the magnetic force from a magnetic field produced by coils carrying a varying current. If the electron beam is first accelerated through a 25.0-kV potential difference, and then passed through a magnetic field oriented at right angles to the beam, what field strength would be needed for the electrons to follow a circular arc with curvature radius 7.12 cm?
51. Show that the orbital radius of a charged particle moving at right angles to a magnetic field B can be written $r = \sqrt{2Km/qB}$, where K is the kinetic energy in joules, m the particle's mass, and q its charge.
52. A 90-cm-diameter cyclotron with a 2.0-T magnetic field is used to accelerate deuterium nuclei (one proton plus one neutron). (a) At what frequency should the dee voltage be alternated? (b) What's the maximum kinetic energy of the deuterons? (c) If the magnitude of the potential difference between the dees is 1500 V, how many orbits do the deuterons complete before reaching maximum energy?
53. An electron is moving in a uniform 0.20-T magnetic field; its velocity components parallel and perpendicular to the field are both 3.1 Mm/s. (a) What's the radius of the electron's spiral path? (b) How far does it move along the field direction in the time it takes to complete a full orbit about the field?
54. A wire of negligible resistance is bent into a rectangle as in Fig. 26.42, and a battery and resistor are connected as shown. The right-hand side of the circuit extends into a region containing a uniform 38-mT magnetic field pointing into the page. Find the magnitude and direction of the net force on the circuit.

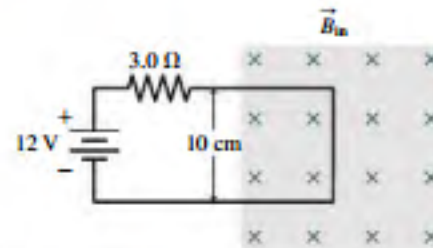


FIGURE 26.42 Problem 54

55. You're designing a prosthetic ankle that includes a miniature electric motor containing a 150-turn circular coil 15 mm in diameter. The motor needs to develop a maximum torque of $2.9 \text{ mN} \cdot \text{m}$. The strongest magnets available that will fit in the prosthesis produce a 200-mT field. What current do you need in your motor's coil?

56. A 20-cm-long conducting rod with mass 15 g is suspended by wires of negligible mass (Fig. 26.43). A uniform magnetic field of 0.19 T points horizontally into the page, as shown. An external circuit supplies current between the supports *A* and *B*. (a) What's the minimum current necessary to move the bar to the upper position, so it's supported against gravity? (b) What direction should the current flow?

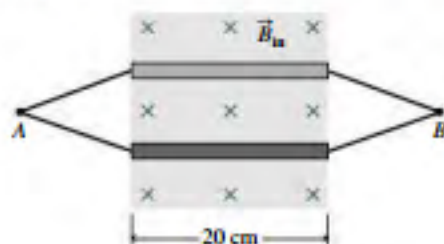


FIGURE 26.43 Problem 56

57. A rectangular copper strip measures 1.0 mm in the direction of a uniform 2.9-T magnetic field. When the strip carries a 7.1-A current perpendicular to the field, a 1.2- μ V Hall potential develops across the strip. Find the number density of free electrons in the copper.
58. Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) is a technique for analyzing chemical structures and also the basis of magnetic resonance imaging used for medical diagnosis. NMR relies on sensitive measurements of the energy needed to flip atomic nuclei by 180° in a given magnetic field. In an apparatus with a 9.4-T magnetic field, what energy is needed to flip a proton ($\mu = 1.41 \times 10^{-26}$ A $\cdot$ m 2) from parallel to antiparallel to the field?
59. A wire carrying 1.5 A passes through a 48-mT magnetic field. The wire is perpendicular to the field and makes a quarter-circle turn of radius 21 cm in the field region, as shown in Fig. 26.44. Find the magnitude and direction of the magnetic force on the curved section of wire.

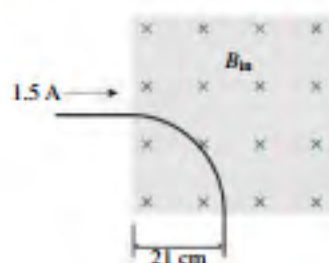


FIGURE 26.44 Problem 59

60. Your smartphone contains a *magnetometer* that uses the Hall effect to measure all three components of the local magnetic field. It's used for the phone's compass and navigation applications, including for orienting the map shown when the phone gives you directions. A typical smartphone uses silicon for its Hall-effect sensors because that element is easily incorporated into a chip with other electronics. Consider a Hall-effect sensor using 50.0- μ m-thick silicon, doped to make it an *N*-type semiconductor with free electron density 2.86×10^{15} electrons/cm 3 . If the sensor carries a 625- μ A current, find the maximum value for the Hall potential that develops across this sensor at a point where Earth's magnetic field strength is 27.5 μ T.
61. A single piece of wire carrying current *I* is bent so it includes a circular loop of radius *a*, as shown in Fig. 26.45. Find an expression for the magnetic field at the loop center.



FIGURE 26.45 Problem 61

62. You and a friend get lost while hiking, so your friend pulls out a magnetic compass to get reoriented. However, you're standing right under a power line carrying 1.5 kA toward magnetic north; it's 10 m above the compass. The horizontal component of Earth's magnetic field at your latitude points northward and has magnitude 24 μ T. Will the compass help you find your way?
63. Part of a long wire carrying current *I* is bent into a semicircle of radius *a*, as in Fig. 26.46. Use the Biot-Savart law to find the magnetic field at *P*, the center of the semicircle.



FIGURE 26.46 Problem 63

64. As you look at this page, imagine that a magnetic field runs parallel to the plane of the page, with magnitude everywhere equal to 34 μ T. In the left-hand column the field points toward the top of the page and in the right-hand column it points toward the bottom; the field reverses abruptly in the space between the columns. (a) Find the total current flowing through the page. (b) Does the current flow into the page or out of the page? (c) Is the current localized, or does it flow through the entire page? *Hint:* For (a) you'll have to make an experimental measurement.
65. A long, straight wire carries a 25-A current. A 10-cm by 15-cm rectangular wire loop carrying 850 mA is 3.0 cm from the wire, as shown in Fig. 26.47. Find the magnitude and direction of the net magnetic force on the loop.

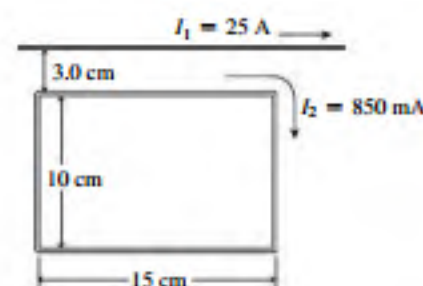


FIGURE 26.47 Problem 65

66. A long conducting rod of radius *R* carries a nonuniform current density $J = J_0 r/R$, where J_0 is a constant and *r* is the radial distance from the rod's axis. Find expressions for the magnetic field strength (a) inside and (b) outside the rod.
67. A long, hollow conducting pipe of radius *R* carries a uniform current *I* along the pipe, as shown in Fig. 26.48. Use Ampère's law to find the magnetic field strength (a) inside and (b) outside the pipe.



FIGURE 26.48 Problem 67

68. You have 10 m of 0.46-mm-diameter copper wire and a battery capable of passing 13 A through the wire. What magnetic field strengths could you obtain (a) inside a 3.0-cm-diameter solenoid wound with the wire as closely spaced as possible and (b) at the center of a single circular loop made from the wire?
69. Derive Equation 26.21 for the solenoid field by considering the solenoid to be made of infinitesimal current loops. Use Equation 26.9 for the loop fields, and integrate over all loops.

70. The largest lightning strikes have peak currents of around 250 kA, flowing in essentially cylindrical channels of ionized air. How far from such a flash would the resulting magnetic field be equal to Earth's magnetic field strength, about 50 μT ?
71. The operation of an MRI scanner involves the magnetic torque on the protons that are abundant in the hydrogen of water and fat molecules. The proton's magnetic dipole moment is $1.41 \times 10^{-26} \text{ A}\cdot\text{m}^2$. Find the magnitude of the maximum possible torque on a proton when it's in an MRI scanner's 2.6-T magnetic field. (Your answer doesn't take into account quantum effects.)
72. Indium antimonide (InSb) is a semiconductor commonly used in **DATA** Hall-effect devices because of its relatively large Hall coefficient. A magnetic-field sensor is made from a 50- μm -thick strip of InSb, with Hall coefficient $228 \text{ cm}^3/\text{C}$. The table below shows the Hall potential as a function of current when the sensor is oriented with its current perpendicular to the unknown magnetic field. Plot the Hall potential against a quantity that should give a straight line, determine a best-fit line, and from it find the magnetic field strength.

I (mA)	10.0	20.0	30.0	40.0	50.0
V_H (mV)	0.393	0.750	1.24	1.56	1.97

73. Suppose the current sheet in Example 26.8 is actually a slab with non-negligible thickness d and that the current is distributed uniformly throughout its volume. Find an expression for the magnetic field inside the slab as a function of the perpendicular distance x from the center plane of the slab. Show that your result agrees with that of Example 26.8 at the surface of the slab.
74. A circular wire loop of radius 15 cm and negligible thickness carries a 2.0-A current. Use suitable approximations to find the magnetic field of this loop (a) in the loop plane, 1.0 mm outside the loop, and (b) on the loop axis, 3.0 m from the loop center.
75. A long, flat conducting bar of width w carries a total current I distributed uniformly, as shown in Fig. 26.49. Use approximations to write expressions for the magnetic field strength (a) near the conductor surface ($r \ll w$) but not near its edges and (b) far from the conductor ($r \gg w$).

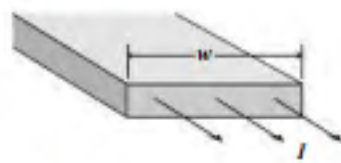


FIGURE 26.49 Problem 75

76. A long, hollow conducting pipe of radius R and length l carries a uniform current I flowing around the pipe (Fig. 26.50). Find expressions for the magnetic field (a) inside and (b) outside the pipe. (Hint: What configuration does this resemble?)

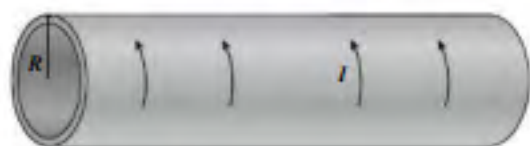


FIGURE 26.50 Problem 76

77. A solid conducting wire of radius R runs parallel to the z -axis and carries a current density given by $\vec{J} = J_0(1 - r/R)\hat{k}$, where J_0 is a constant and r is the distance from the wire axis. Find expressions for (a) the total current in the wire and (b) the magnetic field for $r > R$ and (c) $r < R$.

78. A disk of radius a carries uniform surface charge density σ and rotates with angular speed ω about the disk axis. Show that the magnetic field at the disk's center is $\frac{1}{2}\mu_0\sigma\omega a$.
79. You're developing a system to orient an orbiting telescope. The system uses three perpendicular coils, with torques developed in Earth's magnetic field when current passes through them. Weight limitations restrict you to a length l of wire for each coil. A colleague argues you'll get the greatest dipole moment and therefore the most torque with a multi-turn coil. You say a one-turn coil is best. Who's right?
80. The structure shown in Fig. 26.51 is made from conducting rods. The upper horizontal rod (mass 27 g, length 95 cm) is free to slide vertically on the uprights while maintaining electrical contact. A battery connected across the insulating gap at the bottom of the left-hand upright drives 67 A through the structure. At what height h will the upper wire be in equilibrium?

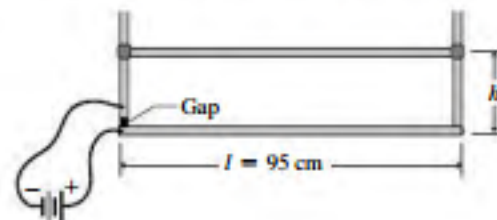


FIGURE 26.51 Problem 80

81. A long, flat conducting ribbon of width w is parallel to a long, straight wire; its near edge is a distance a from the wire (Fig. 26.52). Wire and ribbon carry the same current I ; it's distributed uniformly over the ribbon. Use integration to show that the force per unit length between the two has magnitude $\frac{\mu_0 I^2}{2\pi w} \ln\left(\frac{a+w}{a}\right)$.



FIGURE 26.52 Problem 81

82. Find an expression for the magnetic field at the center of a square loop of side a carrying current I .
83. Repeat the calculation in Problem 69 for a solenoid of finite **CH** length l and cross-sectional radius a to find the magnetic field strength at the center of the solenoid's axis.
84. A *Helmholtz coil* is a pair of identical circular coils that share a common axis and are spaced, usually, a distance apart equal to their radius. The coils are narrow and tightly wound, so they resemble the current loop of Example 26.3. In this configuration the coils produce an approximately uniform magnetic field in the central part of the region between them. In particular, both the first and second derivative of the field are zero on the coils' axis at the point midway between them. To explore the Helmholtz coil, consider two coils like those of Example 26.3, both with radius R and with their axes coinciding with the x -axis. One coil is located at $x = -R/2$ and the other at $x = +R/2$. Both coils carry current I in the same direction. (a) Adapt Equation 26.9 for coils of radius R not at the origin, and write an expression for $B(x)$, the net magnetic field on the x -axis in the region between the two coils. (b) Show that both the first and second derivatives of the field are zero at the origin. (c) To see the region of uniform field, take $R = 1$ and plot the quantity $2B/\mu_0 I$ for $-\frac{1}{2} < x < \frac{1}{2}$.

85. You're an engineer at a nuclear power plant, and one of your colleagues has drawn up plans to reroute the conductors carrying current from the plant's electric generator. Your colleague wants to carry this current on two parallel conducting rods 30 cm apart; each rod carries 15 kA with the currents flowing in opposite directions. The proposal calls for clamping the conductors in place every meter, with clamps capable of withstanding a maximum force of 100 N. Is the clamp design adequate?
86. Derive Equation 26.20 by considering the current sheet to be made of infinitely many infinitesimal line currents.
87. Your roommate is sold on "magnet therapy," a sham treatment using small bar magnets attached to the body. You skeptically ask your roommate how this is supposed to work. He mumbles something about the Hall effect speeding blood flow. In reply, you estimate the Hall potential associated with typical blood parameters in the 10-mT field of a bar magnet: red blood cells carrying 2-pC charge in a 12-cm/s flow through a 3.0-mm-diameter blood vessel containing 5 billion red blood cells per mL. To show that the Hall potential is negligible, you compare your estimate with the tens of mV typical of bioelectric activity. How do the two values compare?

Passage Problems

A *toroid* is a solenoid-like coil bent into a circle (Fig. 26.53a). Toroids are the configuration of choice in magnetic-confinement nuclear fusion experiments, which, if successful, could provide us with an almost unlimited energy source using deuterium fuel extracted from seawater. The ITER consortium, an international collaboration, is building a large toroidal fusion experiment in France; it's expected to be the first fusion

device to produce energy on a large scale. Figure 26.53b shows a cross section of a toroid, with current emerging from the page at the inner edge and descending at the outer edge. The black circle is an Ampèrian loop.

88. The magnetic field associated with the toroid is nonzero
- only within the "hole" in the donut-shaped coil.
 - only within the region bounded by the coils.
 - only outside the coils.
 - everywhere.
89. In Fig. 26.52b, the magnetic field lines must be
- straight, and pointing into the page.
 - straight, and pointing out of the page.
 - straight, and pointing radially.
 - circular.
90. Doubling the total number of turns N in the toroid, without changing its size or the current, will
- double the magnetic field.
 - quadruple the magnetic field.
 - halve the magnetic field.
 - not change the magnetic field.
91. The toroid has inner radius R_{in} and outer radius R_{out} , while r is the radial coordinate measured from the center. The toroid is made from wire wound into a total of N turns, and carries current I . Which of the following is the correct formula for the magnetic field within the coils?
- $B = \mu_0 NI$
 - $B = \mu_0 NI / 2\pi R_{\text{in}}$
 - $B = \mu_0 NI / 2\pi R_{\text{out}}$
 - $B = \mu_0 NI / 2\pi r$

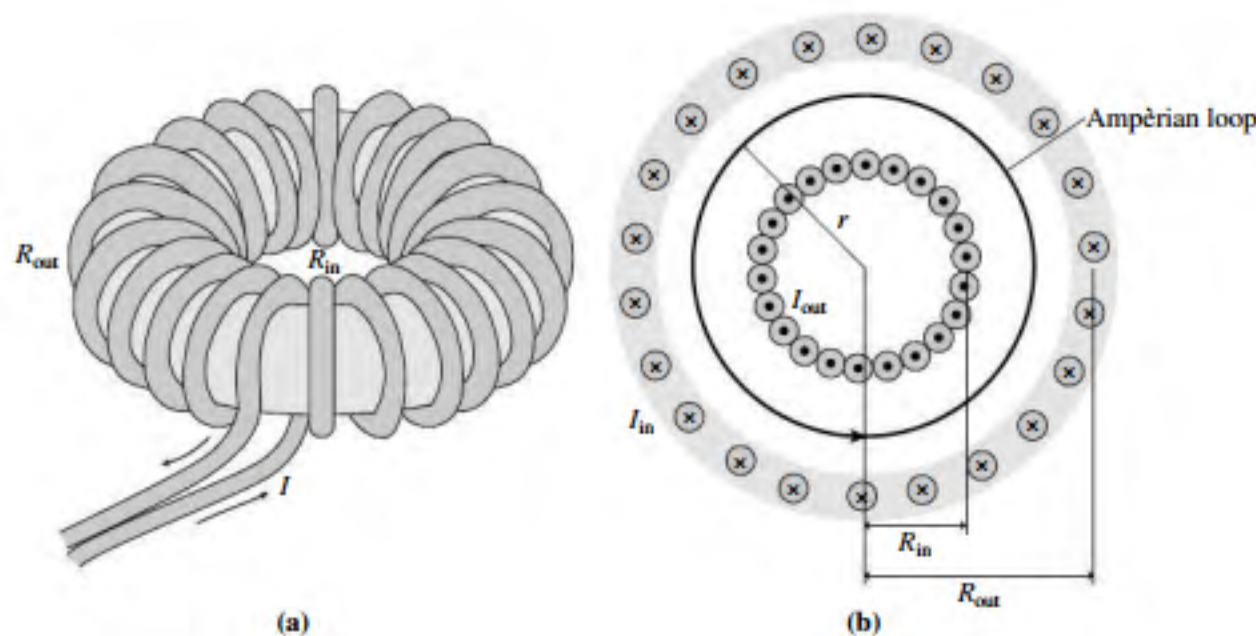


FIGURE 26.53 Diagram of (a) a toroidal coil and (b) a cross section of the coil (Passage Problems 88–91)

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Magnetic force shapes the structure of the solar atmosphere. Magnetism is fundamentally an interaction involving moving electric charge, and the hot, ionized gas of the solar atmosphere contains free charge that responds to magnetism. Earth's cooler atmosphere consists of neutral molecules that don't experience a magnetic force.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 26.1. (1) greatest for (a), 0 for (c); (2) direction for (a) and (b) is into the page

- 26.2. (b); it's a *negative* charge

- 26.3. (d)

- 26.4. (a)

- 26.5. (1) (a), because adjacent currents are in the same direction (2) Changing the current direction doesn't matter because the currents are still parallel.

- 26.6. (b), because the field lines form closed loops

- 26.7. (b)

- 26.8. (1) 0; (2) current A

Electromagnetic Induction

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 27.1 Describe electromagnetic induction as a phenomenon that fundamentally involves *changing magnetic fields*.
- LO 27.2 State Faraday's law and use it to find induced emfs.
- LO 27.3 Use energy conservation (Lenz's law) to find the direction of induced currents.
- LO 27.4 Describe inductance and analyze simple circuits containing inductors.
- LO 27.5 Evaluate magnetic energy.
- LO 27.6 Use the integral form of Faraday's law to find induced electric fields.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The concept of emf (Section 25.1)
- Magnetic field and the magnetic force (Sections 26.2 and 26.4)
- The concept of flux (Sections 21.2 and 26.6)
- The magnetic field of a solenoid (Section 26.8)

The electric and magnetic fields we've encountered so far originated in electric charge, either stationary or moving. We recognized a link between electricity and magnetism that lies in their common involvement with electric charge. In the remainder of our study, we'll explore a more intimate relation between electricity and magnetism, in which the fields themselves interact directly. This relation is the basis for new electromagnetic technologies, reveals the nature of light, and points toward the theory of relativity.

27.1 Induced Currents

LO 27.1 Describe electromagnetic induction as a phenomenon that fundamentally involves changing magnetic fields.

In 1831, the English scientist Michael Faraday and the American Joseph Henry independently found that electric currents arose in circuits subjected to changing magnetic fields. Here are four experiments that illustrate this phenomenon:

1. Move a bar magnet in the presence of a circuit consisting of a wire coil and an ammeter (Fig. 27.1). There's no battery or other obvious source of emf. As long as you hold the magnet stationary, there's no current. But move the magnet, and the ammeter registers a current—which we call an **induced current**. Move the magnet faster, and the induced current increases. Reverse the direction of motion, and the induced current reverses.



In 1989, a high-energy outburst from the Sun disrupted power grids in northeastern North America and blacked out the entire Canadian province of Quebec. How was the energy stored at the Sun, and how did it result in power failures on Earth? How was the electricity generated when the power grid behaved normally?

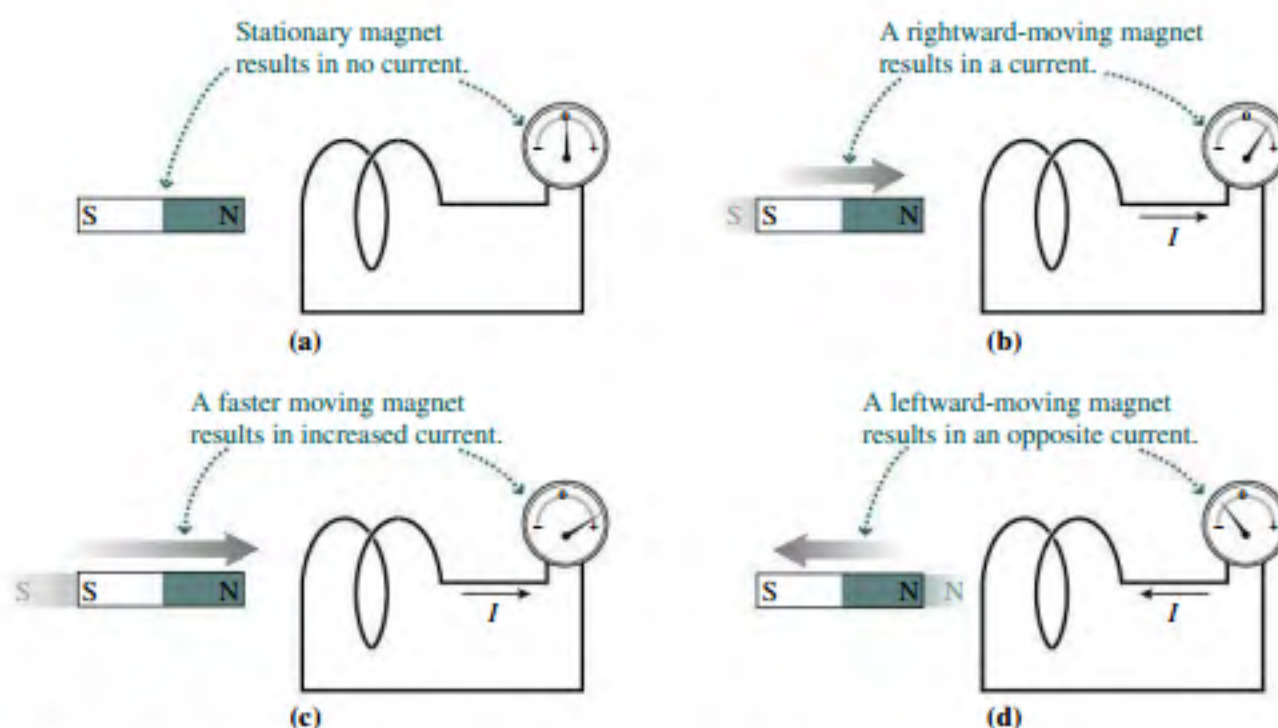


FIGURE 27.1 When a magnet moves near a closed circuit, current flows in the circuit.

2. Move a coil near a stationary magnet, and a similar induced current results (Fig. 27.2). So the effect is the same whether it's the magnet that moves, or the coil. All that matters is the relative motion between magnet and coil.
3. Replace the bar magnet with a second coil, this one carrying a steady current from a battery (Fig. 27.3). The new coil creates a magnetic field like that of a bar magnet and, not surprisingly given the results of experiments 1 and 2, an induced current arises in the original coil when the two coils move relative to one another.

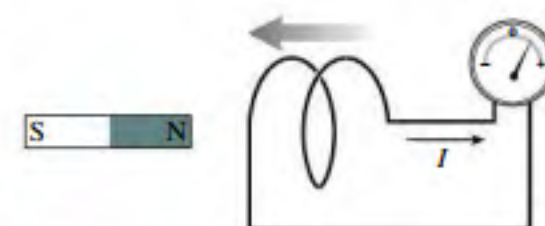


FIGURE 27.2 Moving the coil instead of the magnet gives the same result, as in Fig. 27.1b.

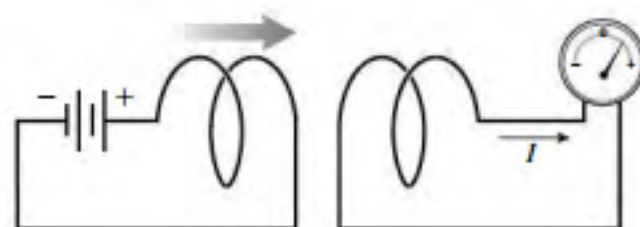


FIGURE 27.3 An induced current also results when a current-carrying circuit replaces the magnet.

4. Hold both coils stationary, and there's no induced current (Fig. 27.4). But now open the switch connecting the battery to the left-hand coil. The current in the left-hand coil drops quickly to zero, and during that brief interval the ammeter registers a current in the right-hand coil. Then the induced current ceases as the current in the left-hand coil remains at zero. Now close the switch again; as current briefly rises in the left-hand coil, the ammeter registers an induced current in the right-hand coil—and its direction is opposite what it was when you opened the switch. Once the current in the left coil reaches a steady value, the induced current in the right coil again ceases.

The common feature in these experiments is a *changing magnetic field*. It doesn't matter whether the field changes because a magnet moves, or a circuit moves, or because the current giving rise to the field changes. In each case, an induced

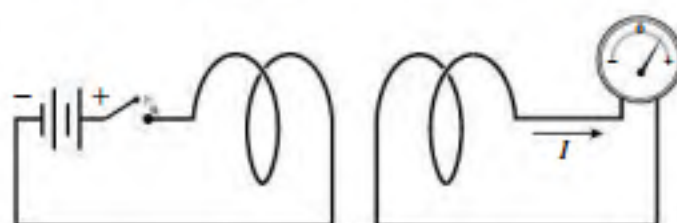


FIGURE 27.4 A current is also induced when the current in an adjacent circuit changes, here as the switch is opened or closed.

current appears in a circuit subjected to a changing magnetic field. Here's a new phenomenon—**electromagnetic induction**—whereby electrical effects arise from *changing* magnetic fields.

27.2 Faraday's Law

LO 27.2 *State Faraday's law and use it to find induced emfs.*

It takes a force acting on charged particles to drive electric current. In the circuits we've studied so far, that force was provided by devices like batteries, and we described a battery's effect by its emf—the energy per unit charge that it provides. With induced currents, there's no battery, but there still must be an emf. This **induced emf** isn't necessarily localized, as with a battery, but may be spread throughout the conductors making up the circuit. We'll now explore further just how emfs arise in the experiments of Section 27.1.

Motional EMF and Changing Fields

In experiment (1), described in Fig. 27.1, we moved a bar magnet toward a stationary coil and got an induced current. As you've just seen, that implies the presence of an induced emf in the coil. In experiment (2), described in Fig. 27.2, we held the magnet stationary and moved the coil. Again, we got an induced emf that drove an induced current. All that mattered was the *relative motion* of the magnet and the coil.

Although they produce the same effect—an induced current—the physical interpretation of the two experiments is very different. You can actually explain experiment (2) using what you already know of the magnetic force. Here the conducting coil is moving through the magnetic field of the stationary magnet, so free charges in the coil share this motion and therefore experience magnetic forces. We'll analyze a simpler version of this situation in Section 27.3, where you'll see that those forces do, in fact, lead to the induced current that's observed. We use the term **motional emf** to describe an induced emf that arises as a result of a conductor moving through a magnetic field.

Although it gives the same result, experiment (1) is very different. Here the coil is stationary, so its free charges don't experience magnetic forces. Yet there's an induced current, which must be caused by an induced emf. Here the emf arises not from any motion of the coil but from a *changing magnetic field*. This is a truly new phenomenon. In experiment (1) the change is a strengthening of the field at the coil as the magnet approaches, but it could equally well be a change in magnetic field that's not associated with any motion whatsoever; experiment (4) is a case in point, where the magnetic field changes because the current in an adjacent coil increases or decreases. You'll gain deeper insights into the remarkable phenomenon of electromagnetic induction as you study the remaining chapters of Part 4.

So there are two ways to produce induced emfs: through the motion of a conductor or by changing a magnetic field. We'll next explore how to describe induction quantitatively, but first it's worth a closer look at our observation that, in comparing moving-magnet and moving-coil experiments, *only the relative motion matters*. That fact was known since the first induction experiments of the early 19th century, but it took Albert Einstein to recognize its deep significance. Indeed, the second and third sentences of Einstein's 1905 paper introducing the special theory of relativity read, "Take, for example, the reciprocal electrodynamic action of a magnet and a conductor. The observable phenomenon here depends only on the relative motion of the conductor and the magnet, whereas the customary view draws a sharp distinction between the two cases in which either the one or the other of these bodies is in motion." The former of these two sentences recognizes what we've been saying: all that matters is the relative motion of the coil and magnet. Einstein's "sharp distinction" in the latter sentence is the distinction between the very different physical descriptions of the two experiments, depending on whether it's the magnet or the coil that moves. Einstein went on to develop his relativity theory, which downplays that "sharp distinction" by saying that descriptions of the magnet-coil experiment—and indeed any descriptions of physical reality—are equally valid as long as they're made from the viewpoint of inertial reference frames. (You learned

about inertial reference frames way back in Chapter 4, and you'll explore relativity theory in Chapter 33, where Section 33.8 will provide additional insights into the relation between magnetism and electricity.)

Magnetic Flux

To describe electromagnetic induction quantitatively we need the concept of *magnetic flux*. We introduced magnetic flux in Chapter 26 when we formulated Gauss's law for magnetism, the statement that the magnetic flux through any *closed* surface is zero.

Here we're interested in the flux through *open* surfaces, which need not be zero (Fig. 27.5). Like the electric flux defined in Chapter 21, magnetic flux is the integral of the magnetic field over a surface:

$$\Phi_B = \int \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{A} \quad (\text{magnetic flux}) \quad (27.1a)$$

With electromagnetic induction, we're interested in the flux through a surface bounded by a circuit. For a loop like the one in Fig. 27.5, that surface can be the circular disk whose circumference is the loop. More generally, it can be *any* surface bounded by the loop.

Since we're dealing here with an *open* surface, there's an ambiguity in the direction of the area vector $d\vec{A}$ as we discussed when we introduced electric flux in Chapter 21. We won't resolve the ambiguity at this point, but will wait until Section 27.3, which introduces the all-important connection between electromagnetic induction and conservation of energy.

For a flat surface in a uniform magnetic field, Equation 27.1a reduces to

$$\Phi_B = \vec{B} \cdot \vec{A} = BA \cos \theta \quad (\text{magnetic flux, uniform field and flat area}) \quad (27.1b)$$

where θ is the angle between the field and the normal to the area. When the field and area are perpendicular, as in the next example, Equation 27.1b reduces further to $\Phi_B = BA$. Magnetic flux has the units of field times area, or $\text{T} \cdot \text{m}^2$. Unlike electric flux, magnetic flux is also given its own named unit, with $1 \text{ T} \cdot \text{m}^2$ being a **weber** (Wb).

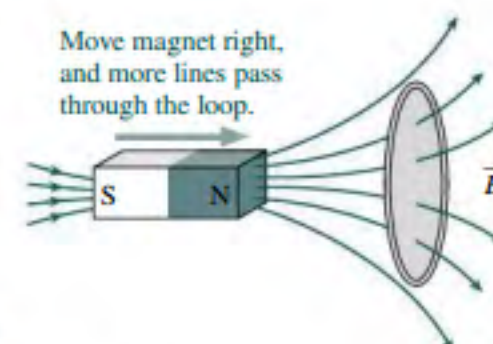


FIGURE 27.5 A circular wire loop in the magnetic field of a bar magnet. As the magnet moves closer, the flux through the loop increases.

EXAMPLE 27.1 Magnetic Flux: A Solenoid

A solenoid of circular cross section has radius R , consists of n turns per unit length, and carries current I . Find the magnetic flux through each turn of the solenoid.

INTERPRET The solenoid creates a uniform magnetic field, and we're asked for the flux of this field through an area bounded by one turn of the solenoid.

DEVELOP The solenoid field is perpendicular to the turns of wire that make up the solenoid, as we've drawn in Fig. 27.6. So we have a uniform field at right angles to a flat area, and the flux becomes $\Phi_B = BA$. Equation 26.20 gives the solenoid field, $B = \mu_0 nI$, and the area is that of a circle, πR^2 .

EVALUATE $\Phi_B = BA = \mu_0 nI \pi R^2$

ASSESS The flux increases with any factor that increases either the field or the area, so this result makes sense. We're being a little loose in thinking of a single turn of the solenoid as a closed loop, but if the solenoid is tightly wound, then this is an excellent approximation. What we've found is the flux through one turn; if the solenoid has N turns, then the flux through the entire solenoid is N times our result.

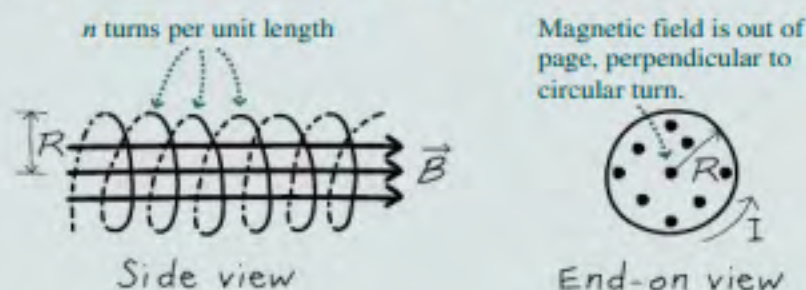


FIGURE 27.6 Sketch for Example 27.1.

EXAMPLE 27.2 Magnetic Flux: A Nonuniform Field

A long, straight wire carries current I . A rectangular wire loop of dimensions l by w lies in a plane containing the wire, with its closest edge a distance a from the wire and its dimension l parallel to the wire. Find the magnetic flux through the loop.

INTERPRET The long, straight wire gives rise to a magnetic field, and we're asked for the flux of this field through an adjacent rectangular area.

(continued)

DEVELOP Figure 27.7 shows the situation. Field lines encircle the long wire, and at the rectangular loop they're pointing into the page, perpendicular to the loop area. Thus $\vec{B} \cdot d\vec{A}$ in Equation 27.1a becomes just $B dA$. Equation 26.17 gives the field strength: $B = \mu_0 I / 2\pi r$. Since this field varies with distance from the wire, we have to integrate. We divide the rectangle into thin strips of width dr and area $dA = l dr$. Knowing B and dA , we can integrate over all such strips.

EVALUATE We have

$$\Phi_B = \int B dA = \int_a^{a+w} \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r} l dr = \frac{\mu_0 I l}{2\pi} \int_a^{a+w} \frac{dr}{r}$$

The integral is the natural logarithm, so

$$\Phi_B = \frac{\mu_0 I l}{2\pi} \ln r \Big|_a^{a+w} = \frac{\mu_0 I l}{2\pi} \ln \left(\frac{a+w}{a} \right)$$

ASSESS This result is directly proportional to the current, which determines the field strength, and to the loop length l . But it isn't

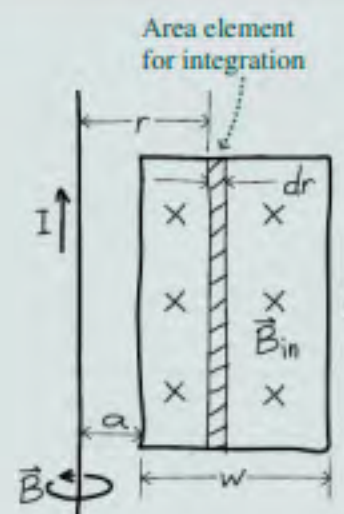


FIGURE 27.7 A rectangular loop in the magnetic field of a long wire.

directly proportional to the width w because the field strength falls off, and increasing w would expand the loop into regions of weaker field, contributing less to the overall flux.

Flux and Induced emf

Although motional emfs and emfs induced by changing fields seem to be different phenomena, Faraday showed that both can be described in terms of *changing magnetic flux*. The result is a preliminary statement of **Faraday's law of electromagnetic induction**, another of the four basic laws of electromagnetism:

The induced emf in a circuit is proportional to the rate of change of magnetic flux through any surface bounded by that circuit.

This statement is a special case of Faraday's law that describes electromagnetic induction specifically in circuits; later we'll present a more general form that applies even when no circuit is present. The induced emf tends to oppose the change in flux—a crucial point to which we'll devote all of Section 27.3—and so in SI the proportionality between emf and rate of change of flux is -1 . Thus Faraday's law is

$$\mathcal{E} = - \frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \quad (\text{Faraday's law}) \quad (27.2)$$

$\mathcal{E}$ is the emf induced in a circuit . . .

. . . by a changing magnetic flux Φ_B through the circuit.

The minus sign shows that the induced emf *opposes* the flux change—ensuring that energy is conserved.

In this form, Faraday's law is about induced emfs in circuits. Later you'll see a more general form.

where $\mathcal{E}$ is the induced emf in a circuit and Φ_B is the magnetic flux through any surface bounded by that circuit.

Faraday's law relates the induced emf to the *change* in flux. It isn't magnetic field or flux that causes an induced emf—it's the *change* in flux. The flux in a uniform field is given by Equation 27.1b, $\Phi_B = \vec{B} \cdot \vec{A} = BA \cos \theta$, which shows that we can change flux by changing the field strength B , the area A , or the angle θ describing the orientation between area and field.

A changing field strength can result from relative motion of a conductor and a magnet or other system that produces a field, or from a change in the current that produces a magnetic field. A changing orientation can result from a change in the orientation of a conducting system or of a nearby magnet. For an induced emf to occur as a result of

a change in area, however, that change *must* involve the physical motion of conductors; the induced emf in such cases is always, therefore, motional emf. You'll see such a case in Example 27.4, and we'll analyze a similar situation in detail in Section 27.3. There are some unusual situations where it appears that a circuit area is changing but where the conductors either aren't moving or where their motion doesn't correspond to the area change. In general, analysis of true motional emf leads to an expression for the emf that involves the product of the magnetic field, the velocity of the moving conductors, and an appropriate length—as you'll find in Example 27.4.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 27.1

Faraday's Law and Induced emf

INTERPRET Make sure the problem involves a circuit in which current flows because of a changing magnetic flux. Identify the circuit and the cause of the changing flux. Possibilities include:

- A changing magnetic field, caused either by relative motion between the circuit and a magnet or by a changing current in an adjacent circuit. Alternatively, the problem may simply state that a magnetic field is changing at some specified rate, without giving the cause.
- A changing area, caused by the circuit expanding or contracting in the presence of a magnetic field.
- A changing orientation of the circuit relative to the field, causing a change in $\cos \theta$.

DEVELOP Find an appropriate expression for the magnetic flux through your circuit. If the field varies with position, you'll have to set up the integral in Equation 27.1a: $\Phi_B = \int \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{A}$; if not, you can use the simpler expression of Equation 27.1b: $\Phi_B = \vec{B} \cdot \vec{A} = BA \cos \theta$. Since the flux is changing, your expression for flux should either have an explicit time dependence or contain a quantity whose rate of change you're given.

EVALUATE Differentiate the flux with respect to time. Faraday's law, $\mathcal{E} = -d\Phi_B/dt$, then gives the induced emf. If you're asked about the circuit current, you can find it using Ohm's law: $I = \mathcal{E}/R$, with R the circuit resistance.

ASSESS Does your answer make sense? Does the induced emf or current increase with an increased rate of whatever quantity is changing? Do the induced effects vanish if you set the rate of change to zero?

EXAMPLE 27.3 Induced Current: A Changing Magnetic Field

A wire loop of radius 10 cm has resistance 2.0Ω . The plane of the loop is perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field $\vec{B}$ that's increasing at 0.10 T/s . Find the magnitude of the induced current in the loop.

INTERPRET We apply our problem-solving strategy, noting that this is a problem about induction in a circular loop, with the flux change caused by a changing magnetic field.

DEVELOP Figure 27.8 shows the loop with a field pointing into the page. With the field uniform and perpendicular to the loop area, we have $\Phi_B = BA = B\pi r^2$. We're given the rate of change dB/dt , so we can evaluate the derivative $d\Phi_B/dt$.

EVALUATE The rate of change of flux is

$$\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(B\pi r^2)$$

Since the radius isn't changing, this becomes

$$\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = \pi r^2 \frac{dB}{dt}$$

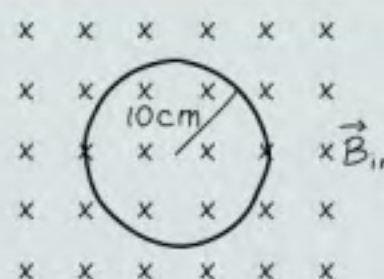


FIGURE 27.8 A circular conducting loop in a plane perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field.

We're given that $dB/dt = 0.10 \text{ T/s}$ and that $r = 10 \text{ cm}$. So with $\mathcal{E} = -d\Phi_B/dt$, the magnitude of the induced emf therefore has the value $\pi r^2 dB/dt = 3.14 \text{ mV}$. Ohm's law then gives the current: $I = \mathcal{E}/R = 3.14 \text{ mV}/2.0 \Omega = 1.6 \text{ mA}$.

ASSESS Make sense? The induced emf and hence the current scale directly with the value of dB/dt , confirming that the changing magnetic field is indeed the cause of the induced effects. Does it bother you that we took $\vec{B}$ as uniform even though it's changing, thus avoiding the integral of Equation 27.1a? The field is indeed changing, but that change is in *time*, not *space*, and the integral for the flux is over space. So at each instant the field is uniform, and we can dispense with the integral.

EXAMPLE 27.4**Induced Current: A Changing Area**
Worked Example with Variation Problems

Two parallel conducting rails a distance l apart are connected at one end by a resistance R . A conducting bar completes the circuit, joining the two rails electrically but free to slide along them. The whole circuit is perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field $\vec{B}$, as shown in Fig. 27.9. Find the current when the bar is pulled to the right with constant speed v .

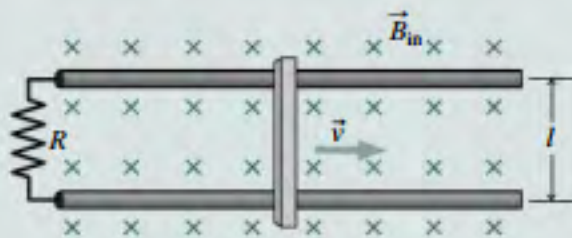


FIGURE 27.9 Pulling the bar to the right increases the circuit area, increasing the magnetic flux and inducing an emf that drives a current.

INTERPRET Here the circuit is formed by the rails, the resistance, and the conducting bar. The circuit area increases as the bar slides along the rails, so we've got a case of induction caused by a changing magnetic flux resulting from a changing area.

DEVELOP In this case of a uniform field perpendicular to the circuit, the flux is the product $\Phi_B = BA$. We can express this flux in terms of the changing position x of the sliding bar; since we're given the bar's speed, we'll be able to evaluate the rate of change of flux. If we take $x = 0$ at the left end of the rails, then the circuit area is $A = lx$, so the flux is $\Phi_B = BA = Blx$.

EVALUATE Differentiating the flux with respect to time gives

$$\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = Bl \frac{dx}{dt} = Blv$$

since dx/dt is the bar's velocity v . Faraday's law says that Blv is the magnitude of the induced emf $\mathcal{E}$, so the current in the circuit becomes

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R} = \frac{Blv}{R}$$

ASSESS Make sense? Yes: The faster the bar moves, the greater the rate of change of flux, and so the greater the induced emf and current.

Example 27.4 provides a clear case of motional emf. Note that the induced emf $\mathcal{E} = Blv$ is, as we suggested earlier, expressed as a product of magnetic field strength, velocity, and a length—in this case the length of the bar. Although we worked this example using Faraday's law and changing magnetic flux, the physical mechanism behind motional emf always begins with the magnetic force on free charges in a conductor. This results in charge separation and therefore in an electric field that is the ultimate driver of the current in the case of motional emf. In Section 27.3 we'll explore a similar case in more detail, and we'll show how consideration of the forces on a moving conductor confirms conservation of energy in electromagnetic induction.



IT'S THE CHANGE THAT MATTERS You may wonder why, in problems like the preceding two examples, you're not given values for the magnetic field itself or for the location of the sliding bar—quantities that determine the magnetic flux. But the flux itself doesn't matter, only its *rate of change*. And in both cases the rate followed from the given information: in one case the rate of change of the field and in the other the speed of the bar.

Examples 27.3 and 27.4 take care of two ways to change magnetic flux. The third—changing orientation—is at the heart of an important electromagnetic technology, and we'll do an example in the next section.

27.3 Induction and Energy

LO 27.3 Use energy conservation (Lenz's law) to find the direction of induced currents.

Move a bar magnet toward a wire loop, as in Fig. 27.10. An induced current flows, dissipating energy as it heats the loop. Where did that energy come from? It came from work you did in moving the magnet.

Normally it doesn't take work to move with constant speed. But the induced current makes the loop a magnetic dipole whose field, as Fig. 27.10 shows, *opposes* the field of the approaching magnet. You have to do positive work to overcome the resulting repulsive force. It had better be this way! Otherwise, you'd get something for nothing, heating the loop without any source of energy.

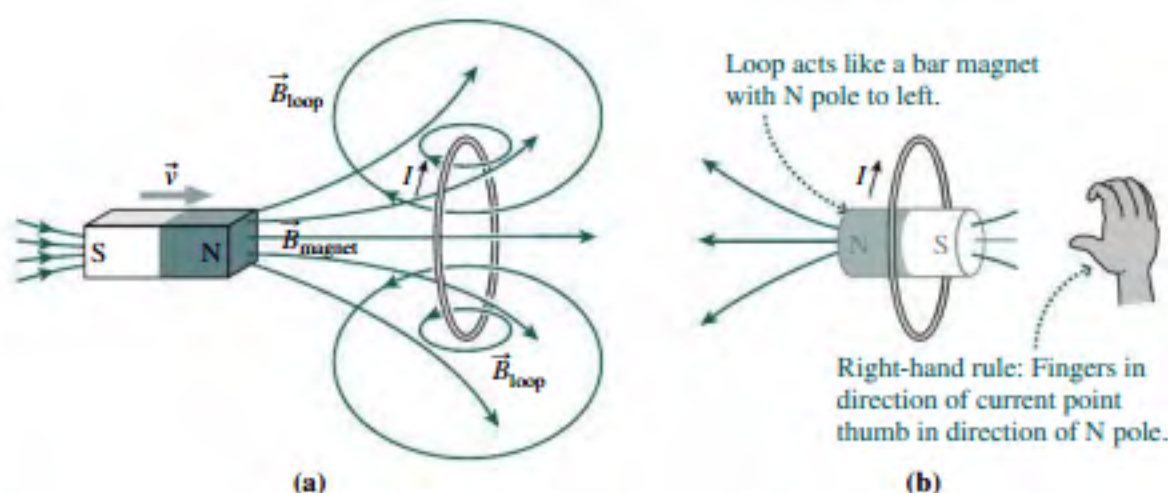


FIGURE 27.10 Conservation of energy determines the direction of the induced current. (a) Fields of a bar magnet and a conducting loop, shown when the magnet is moving toward the loop. (b) The loop acts like a magnet with north pole to the left, making it hard to move the bar magnet.

You can always find the direction of induced emfs and currents by asking: What direction of induced current will make it hard to move the magnet? The answer for Fig. 27.10 is a current that makes the loop a magnet with its north pole on the left, to repel the approaching bar magnet. By the right-hand rule, that gives the current direction shown: into the page at the top of the loop and out at the bottom. If, on the other hand, you move the magnet away from the loop, then the current flows in the opposite direction, putting the loop's south pole on the left and attracting the magnet, making it hard to pull the magnet away (Fig. 27.11).

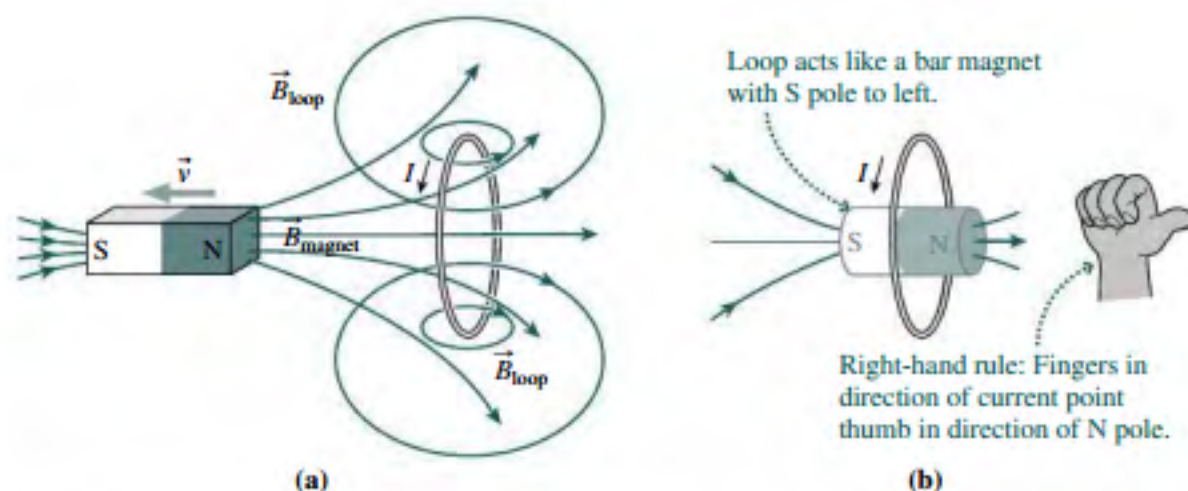


FIGURE 27.11 When the bar magnet is moving away from the loop, the direction of the induced current puts the loop's south pole to the left, making it hard to pull the magnet away.

This discussion is ultimately about energy conservation in the context of electromagnetic induction. **Lenz's law** summarizes what we've found:

The direction of an induced emf or current is such that the magnetic field created by the induced current opposes the change in magnetic flux that created the current.

Mathematically, Lenz's law is contained in the minus sign that appears in Faraday's law, provided careful attention is paid to the direction of the area vector $d\vec{A}$ that appears in Equation 27.1a for magnetic flux. So it's possible to determine the direction of the induced effects from algebra alone. But we'll stick with the easier and more physically meaningful approach of using Faraday's law to find the magnitude of the induced emf and then reason out the direction using energy conservation.

27.1 You push a bar magnet toward a loop, with the north pole toward the loop as in Fig. 27.10. If you keep pushing the magnet straight through the loop, (1) what will be the direction of the current as you pull it out the other side? (2) Will you need to do work, or will work be done on you?

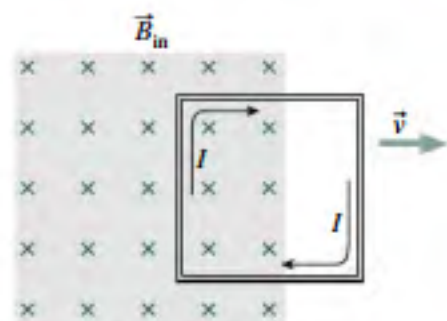


FIGURE 27.12 A conducting loop being pulled out of a magnetic field.

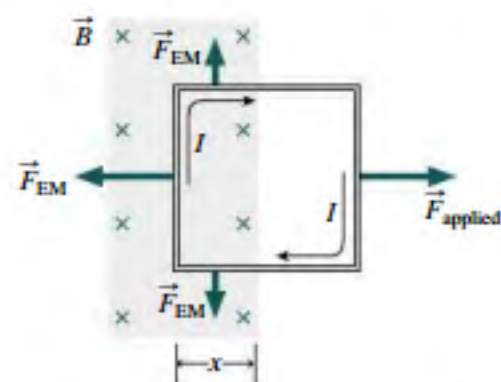


FIGURE 27.13 Forces on the loop. The subscript EM indicates that the forces on the conducting loop result from both electric and magnetic fields.

Motional emf and Lenz's Law

We've noted that motional emf is a special case of induction that we can explain in terms of the magnetic forces on charge carriers. Here we'll explore a case of motional emf to show explicitly that Lenz's law requires energy conservation.

Consider a square conducting loop of side l and resistance R pulled with constant speed v out of a uniform magnetic field $\vec{B}$ (Fig. 27.12). The magnetic flux through the loop is changing, so there's an induced emf that drives a current. Energy is dissipated as heat and so, as we've just argued, the agent pulling the loop must do work. We'll now demonstrate quantitatively that energy is conserved by showing that the rate of heating in the loop is exactly equal to the rate at which the agent pulling the loop does work.

Pulling the conducting loop to the right moves its free electrons through the magnetic field; initially, that motion is also to the right. Then the magnetic force $q\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$ on the electrons is downward in Fig. 27.12 (opposite $\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$ because the electrons are negative). The result is an accumulation of negative charge near the bottom of the left-hand side of the square and therefore of positive charge near the top. As with a battery, the separated charge drives a current around the circuit, here in the clockwise direction. Although we say, loosely, that the magnetic force on the moving conductor is what produces the current, it's actually more complicated than that: The magnetic force results in separated charge, which gives rise to electric forces that drive the current. Furthermore, electric forces are what keep the electrons confined to the wire; otherwise they would exhibit circular motion as we showed in Section 26.3. Once the current is flowing, the magnetic force on the upward current causes a Hall-effect separation of charge, and the resulting electric field provides the force that opposes the applied force that's pulling the loop. These observations are consistent with our statement in Chapter 26 that magnetic forces themselves can do no work because they're always perpendicular to charge velocities, implying that electric forces must be involved as well.

You saw in Chapter 26 that the magnetic force on a current-carrying conductor of length l is $\vec{F} = I\vec{l} \times \vec{B}$ —although, again, “magnetic force” here is shorthand for a combination of magnetic and electric effects as we described in Section 26.4. Applying this expression to our conducting loop shows that there's no force on the right-hand side, where $\vec{B} = 0$, and that oppositely directed forces on the top and bottom of the loop cancel (Fig. 27.13). So the electromagnetic force on the loop is that on the left side alone. The magnitude of this force is IlB , and the right-hand rule shows that it points to the left. This leftward force cancels the rightward-applied force, giving the zero net force that Newton's law requires for the loop to move with constant velocity.

We could equally well determine the current direction from magnetic-flux considerations. As the loop leaves the field, the flux decreases. The direction of the resulting induced current is such as to oppose this decrease. Therefore, the magnetic field of the induced current points *into* the page, as the induced current tries to maintain the flux. By the right-hand rule, a field within the loop and into the page requires that the induced current flow clockwise.

To calculate the current, we first find the induced emf. With the field perpendicular to the loop, and uniform in the region where it's nonzero, the magnetic flux is the product of the magnetic field strength and the loop area that lies within the field: $\Phi_B = Blx$. Here x is the distance between the left edge of the loop and the right edge of the magnetic-field region. The magnetic field remains constant, but as the loop moves, the distance x decreases at the rate $dx/dt = -v$, where the minus indicates a decrease. Then the rate of change of flux is

$$\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = \frac{d(Blx)}{dt} = Bl \frac{dx}{dt} = -Blv$$

so Faraday's law gives

$$\mathcal{E} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = Blv$$

This induced emf drives a current I around the loop, where $I = \mathcal{E}/R = Blv/R$. The rate of energy dissipation in the loop is the product of the emf and the current (Equation 24.7):

$$P = I\mathcal{E} = \frac{Blv}{R}Blv = \frac{B^2l^2v^2}{R} \quad (\text{electric power dissipated in loop})$$

We've found that the force on the loop resulting from its motion through the magnetic field has magnitude $F = IIB$; since the loop is moving with constant velocity, this is also the magnitude of the applied force. Equation 6.19 gives $P = \vec{F} \cdot \vec{v}$ for the power supplied. Here, with $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{v}$ in the same direction, we have

$$P = Fv = IIBv = \frac{Blv}{R}IBv = \frac{B^2l^2v^2}{R} \quad (\text{mechanical power supplied to pull loop})$$

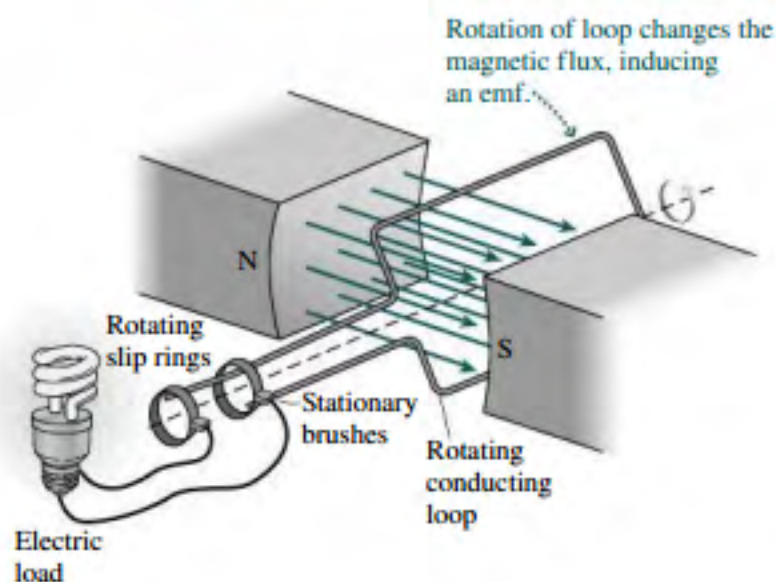
the same as our expression for the power dissipated in the loop. Thus, all the work done by the agent pulling the loop ends up heating the resistor, showing explicitly that energy is indeed conserved.

GOT IT?

27.2 When the loop in Fig. 27.12 first enters the field, coming in from the left, will the loop current be (a) clockwise or (b) counterclockwise?

Electromagnetic induction is the principle behind many important technologies, from credit cards to electric-power generation. Induction also gives us the flexibility to transform voltage levels in electric-power systems, and to provide wireless charging systems for devices ranging from electric cars to cellphones to toothbrushes.

APPLICATION Electric Generators



Probably the most important technological application of induction is the electric generator. Humanity uses electrical energy at the phenomenal rate of about 2.5 TW, which is 2.5×10^{12} W and roughly equal to the power output of 25 billion human bodies. Virtually all this power comes from generators. A **generator** is just a system of conducting loops in a magnetic field, as shown in the figure. Mechanical energy rotates the conductors, resulting in a changing magnetic flux and therefore an induced emf. Current flows through the generator and on to whatever electrical loads are connected to it. Because the changing

flux results from a change in the orientation of the loop relative to the field—that is, a change in θ in the expression $\Phi_B = BA \cos \theta$ —a generator such as the one shown here produces an alternating emf that varies sinusoidally with time.

Any source of mechanical energy can power the generator, but the most common is steam from burning fossil fuels or from nuclear fission. Electrical energy is also generated from kinetic energy of water or wind. A small electric generator, driven by the car's engine, is used to recharge your car's battery.

Lenz's law, the conservation of energy in electromagnetic induction, is very much applicable to electric generators. Were it not for Lenz's law, generators would turn on their own and happily supply electricity without coal, natural gas, or uranium! The voluminous quantities of fuel consumed by power plants are dramatic testimony to the minus sign on the right-hand side of Equation 27.2.

Turn a hand-cranked or pedal-driven generator, and you can literally feel Lenz's law. Without any electrical load, turning the generator is easy. Switch on increasingly heavy loads, and the generator gets harder to turn. Most people find they can just sustain a 100-W lightbulb with a hand generator. Think about this next time you leave a light on!

If the diagram here reminds you of the motor in the Application in Chapter 26, that's no coincidence. Motors and generators are similar devices, just run in opposite ways. A motor converts electrical energy to mechanical energy; a generator converts mechanical energy to electrical energy. Often the same physical device serves both purposes. In a hybrid car, for example, an electric motor takes energy from a battery to provide propulsion. When the car brakes, the wheels turn the motor, which then acts as a generator and puts the car's energy back into the battery instead of dissipating it as heat. Such *regenerative braking* is one of the hybrid's several means of achieving greater energy efficiency.

GOT IT?

27.3 If you lower the electrical resistance connected across a generator while turning the generator at a constant speed, will the generator get (a) easier or (b) harder to turn?

EXAMPLE 27.5 Induction: Designing a Generator

An electric generator consists of a 250-turn circular coil 50 cm in diameter. It's rotated at $f = 50$ rev/s to produce standard 50-Hz alternating current like that used throughout most of the world. Find the magnetic field strength needed for a peak output voltage of 325 V (which is the actual peak in standard 230-V household wiring).

INTERPRET Here we have a conducting coil rotating in a fixed magnetic field, so this is an induction problem where changing flux results from a changing orientation.

DEVELOP We sketched the coil and magnetic field in Fig. 27.14. With a uniform field and flat, circular area, the flux through one turn of the coil is given by Equation 27.1b, $\Phi_{1 \text{ turn}} = \vec{B} \cdot \vec{A} = BA \cos \theta = B\pi r^2 \cos \theta$. The angle θ changes as the loop rotates, and with it the flux. We need to express the total flux as a function of time so we can evaluate its derivative and thus the emf. Because the loop rotates with constant angular speed $\omega = 2\pi f$, its angular position is $\theta = 2\pi ft$. Then the flux through each turn is $B\pi r^2 \cos(2\pi ft)$, and the total flux through all $N = 100$ turns is $NB\pi r^2 \cos(2\pi ft)$.

EVALUATE Faraday's law equates the induced emf with the rate of change of this flux:

$$\mathcal{E} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = -NB\pi r^2 \frac{d}{dt}[\cos(2\pi ft)] = -NB\pi r^2[-2\pi f \sin(2\pi ft)]$$

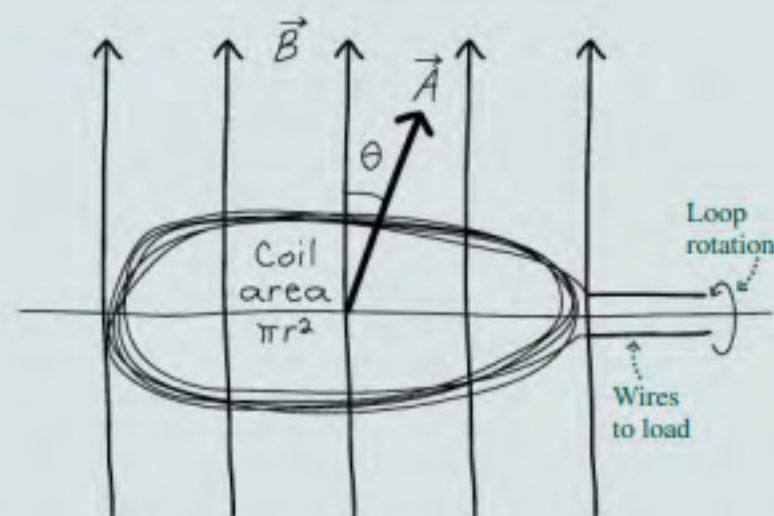


FIGURE 27.14 Coil in the generator of Example 27.5; at this instant the normal to the coil makes an angle θ with the magnetic field.

The emf has its peak value when the sine is 1, so $\mathcal{E}_{\text{peak}} = 2\pi^2 r^2 N B f$. We want this value to be 325 V; using $r = 25$ cm, $N = 250$ turns, and $f = 50$ rev/s then gives $B = 21$ mT.

ASSESS This value is typical of the field strength near the poles of a permanent magnet. Note that you don't need a value for time t to find the peak emf; when a quantity varies sinusoidally, its peak occurs when the sine or cosine function is 1, so the peak value is the magnitude of whatever quantity multiplies the sine or cosine.

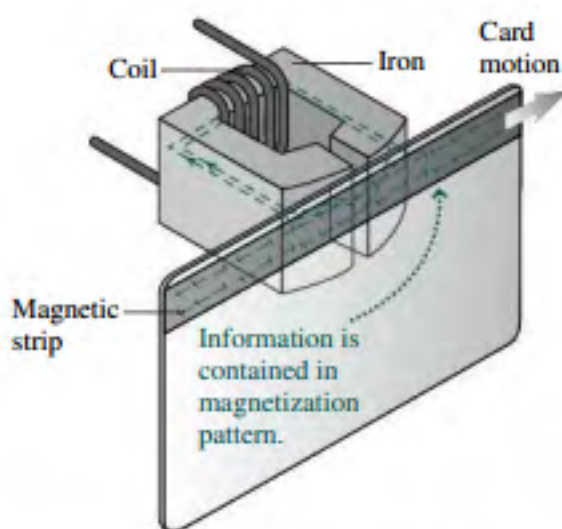


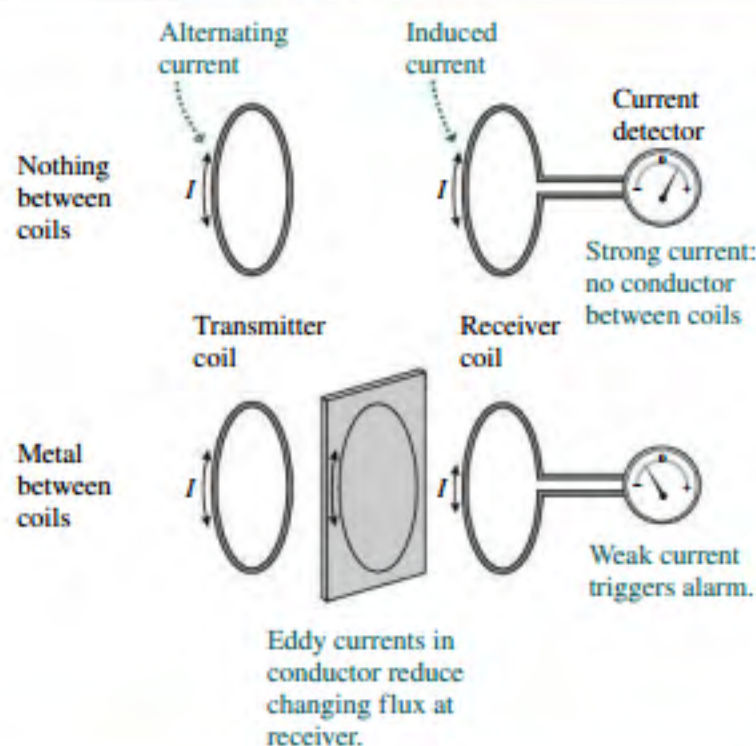
FIGURE 27.15 Swiping a credit card. Patterns of magnetization on the strip induce currents in the coil.

Electromagnetic induction is also the basis of magnetic recording, once the dominant means of storing audio, video, and computer information and still used in credit cards and similar applications. The magnetic strip on your credit card is a ferromagnetic material that stores information in regions of differing magnetization. Swiping your card induces current in a wire coil, which extracts the stored information as an electrical signal (Fig. 27.15). Early computer disks worked on the same principle, although in today's disks the magnetic field of the spinning disk causes changes in electrical resistance in the "head" that reads the disk information.

Eddy Currents

Induced currents aren't limited to conducting loops and circuits. They also occur in solid conductors subject to changing magnetic flux. The resistance of a solid conductor is low, which can result in large induced currents and significant power dissipation. That can make it hard to move a conducting material into or out of a magnetic field, as it's subject to a changing flux. The result is a kind of magnetic friction that saps energy. On the other hand, the effect can be useful in providing an alternative to friction brakes. Rapidly rotating saw blades or train wheels, for example, can be stopped quickly by turning on a nearby electromagnet; the resulting eddy currents quickly dissipate the rotational kinetic energy. The mechanical resistance you feel in exercise machines like elliptical trainers or stationary cycles results from a magnet positioned near the machine's rotating parts. And eddy currents are guardians of our security, as the next Application shows.

APPLICATION Metal Detectors



Metal detectors used in airports and other security checkpoints rely on eddy currents. In one type of detector, shown in the figure, an alternating current in one coil—the transmitter—produces a changing magnetic field that induces a current in a second coil, the receiver. A detector, basically an electronic ammeter, monitors the receiver current. Eddy currents are induced in any conducting material that comes between the two coils, and the direction of the induced currents is, as always, such as to reduce the changing flux. The superposition of the transmitter's changing flux with the changing flux from the eddy currents therefore reduces the changing flux at the receiver, dropping the receiver current and triggering an alarm. Other detectors have a single coil, using a short pulse of current to induce eddy currents and then “listening” for the currents induced back in the coil. Either way, you can thank Faraday's law if you've ever been stopped while going through a metal detector!

GOT IT?

27.4 A copper penny falls on a path that takes it between the poles of a horseshoe magnet. Does it hit the ground going (a) faster than, (b) slower than, or (c) at the same speed as if the magnet weren't present?

Closed and Open Circuits

Figure 27.16 shows a closed, conducting loop in a magnetic field that points into the page. Suppose the field is increasing in strength; then in order to oppose this change, the induced current must be in such a direction as to oppose the increase. Here that means the field in the interior of the loop needs to come out of the page, and by the right-hand rule that means the induced current is counterclockwise. It's not that the induced field always opposes the inducing field—rather, it opposes the *change*. If the field in Fig. 27.16 had been decreasing, then the induced current would have “tried” to reinforce it by flowing clockwise to make additional field into the page.

What if we have an open circuit, like the conducting loop with a small gap shown in Fig. 27.17? Then there's no induced current whose effects can oppose a change in the field. But we can imagine what *would* happen if the circuit were completed; as in Fig. 27.16, current would flow counterclockwise. Open the gap, and that means positive charge accumulates at the upper end of the gap and negative charge at the bottom. Charge buildup continues until the potential difference at the gap opposes the induced emf's tendency to move charge. The result is a steady state in which the gap voltage equals the induced emf.

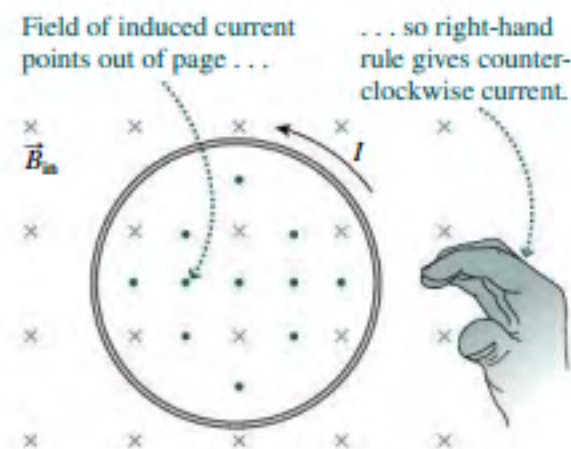


FIGURE 27.16 The field $\vec{B}$ is into the page and increasing; the induced current is counterclockwise, so its field opposes the increase.

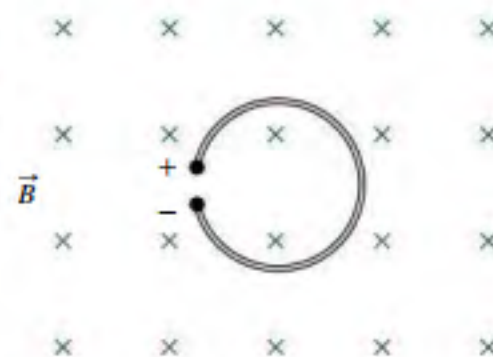


FIGURE 27.17 In a changing magnetic field, the induced emf results in charge buildup at the gap of an open circuit. The polarity shown results when the field is increasing.

GOT IT?

27.5 A long wire carries a current I as shown. What's the direction of the current in the circular conducting loop when I is (1) increasing and (2) decreasing?



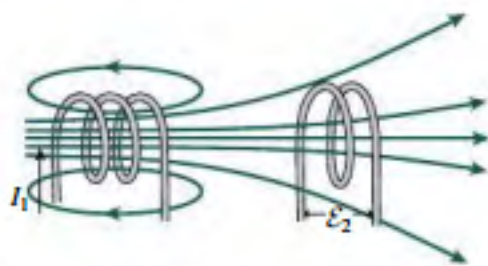


FIGURE 27.18 Mutual inductance. A changing current in either coil induces an emf in the other coil.

27.4 Inductance

LO 27.4 Describe inductance and analyze simple circuits containing inductors.

There are many ways to change magnetic flux and thus induce emfs and currents. We can move a magnet, or move or rotate the circuit. Or, as in Fig. 27.4 or Fig. 27.18, we can change the magnetic flux by changing the current in a circuit and therefore the magnetic field it produces. In that case we speak of the **inductance** of a circuit or circuits.

Mutual Inductance

Figure 27.18 shows two coils in proximity. If we send a changing current through the left-hand coil, there results a changing magnetic field, which gives rise to a changing magnetic flux in the right-hand coil. There's then an induced emf in the right-hand coil and, if it's connected in a complete circuit, an induced current as well.

The two coils in Fig. 27.18 have **mutual inductance**, meaning a changing current in one coil produces a changing flux at the other coil, thereby inducing an emf. Just how strong this effect is depends on the construction and orientation of the coils; for maximum inductance they should be arranged so that most of the flux from each coil goes through the other. Often coils are wound on iron cores to concentrate the flux and increase the mutual inductance.

Mutual inductance is the basis of transformers, which change voltage levels in alternating-current circuits; more on that in Chapter 28. Your car's ignition coil uses mutual inductance to produce the tens of kilovolts needed to fire the spark plugs and ignite the gasoline–air mixture in the engine. Current to the coil is interrupted at just the right instant, producing a rapid change in magnetic flux and inducing the emf that drives the spark. More mundane is an electric toothbrush, whose batteries charge without electrical connection to a power source. Instead, a small coil in the device is placed in proximity with a coil in the charging base, and alternating current in the base coil transfers energy via mutual inductance to provide the charging current. A similar scheme enables wireless charging of cellphones and similar devices.

Self-Inductance

Inductance isn't limited to two-coil systems. Magnetic flux from current in a single coil or circuit passes through that circuit itself (Fig. 27.19). If the current changes, so does the flux—and that induces an emf. As always, the induced emf opposes the *change* that produces it. Suppose, for example, that the current in Fig. 27.19 is increasing. Then the induced emf will be in the direction that opposes the current increase—clockwise, or opposite the current in Fig. 27.19. The induced emf therefore makes it harder to increase the current. On the other hand, if the current in Fig. 27.19 is decreasing, then the induced emf will try to drive additional current to counter the decrease; the induced emf is therefore in the same direction as the current. Either way, the induced emf makes it hard to change the current in a circuit.

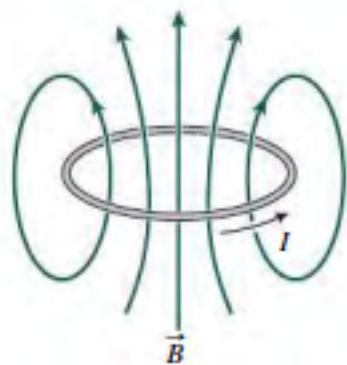


FIGURE 27.19 Magnetic flux from a current loop passes through the loop itself; a change in the current induces an emf that opposes the change.

This property whereby a circuit's own magnetic field opposes changes in the circuit current is called **self-inductance**. All circuits have self-inductance, but it's most important in circuits that encircle a great deal of their own magnetic flux, or when currents change rapidly. A simple piece of wire has little impact on the 50-Hz alternating current used for electric power. But in high-frequency circuits like TVs and computers, where currents change billions of times per second, even the slightest self-inductance can have deleterious effects.

An **inductor** is designed specifically to exhibit self-inductance. Inductors have many uses in electric circuits, including establishing the frequencies of radio transmitters and helping “steer” high- and low-frequency signals to the tweeters and woofers of loudspeaker systems. We'll explore some of these uses in the next chapter. A typical inductor consists of a wire coil, sometimes wound on an iron core to promote flux concentration. Ideally, the only electrical property of an inductor is its inductance, but real inductors have resistance as well.

As long as the current in an inductor is steady, the magnetic flux is constant, so there's no induced emf and the inductor behaves, electrically, just like a wire. But when the current changes, the changing magnetic flux induces an emf that opposes the change in current. The more rapidly the current changes, the greater the rate of change of flux and so the

greater the emf. The induced emf depends also on how much of its own magnetic flux the inductor encircles; consequently, we define self-inductance, L , as the ratio of magnetic flux through the inductor to current in the inductor:

$$L = \frac{\Phi_B}{I} \quad (\text{self-inductance}) \quad (27.3)$$

Equation 27.3 shows that the units of self-inductance are $\text{T} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{A}$. This unit is given the name **henry (H)** in honor of the American scientist Joseph Henry (1797–1878). Inductances in common electronic circuits usually range from microhenrys (μH) up to several henrys.

Inductance is a constant determined by the physical design of an inductor. In principle we can calculate the inductance of any inductor, but in practice that's difficult unless the geometry is particularly simple.

EXAMPLE 27.6 Calculating Inductance: A Solenoid

A long solenoid of cross-sectional area A and length l has n turns per unit length. Find its self-inductance.

INTERPRET We're asked for self-inductance, which Equation 27.3 shows is the ratio of magnetic flux through the solenoid to current in the solenoid.

DEVELOP We'll assume a current in the solenoid and find the resulting magnetic flux. Then we can take their ratio to get the self-inductance. We need the magnetic field of a solenoid, which follows from Equation 26.20: $B = \mu_0 nI$. The field is uniform and perpendicular to the solenoid coils, as we showed in our drawing for Example 27.1, so the flux through each turn follows from Equation 27.1b: $\Phi_{1 \text{ turn}} = BA$.

EVALUATE With n turns per unit length, the solenoid contains a total of nl turns, so the flux through all the turns is

$$\Phi_B = nlBA = (nl)(\mu_0 nI)A = \mu_0 n^2 Al$$

Equation 27.3 gives the self-inductance as the ratio of flux to current, so

$$L = \frac{\Phi_B}{I} = \mu_0 n^2 Al \quad (\text{inductance of solenoid}) \quad (27.4)$$

ASSESS Make sense? As the area increases, so does the flux and therefore the inductance. As the length increases, so does the number of turns, so again the total flux increases. And as the number of turns per unit length increases, two things happen. First, the magnetic field of Equation 26.20 increases, increasing the flux BA through each turn. Second, the total number of turns increases, again increasing the total flux. That's why the inductance, L , depends on n squared.

The induced emf in an inductor always acts to oppose the *change* in current through the inductor. That change generally results from events happening in the rest of the circuit in which the inductor is connected, such as closing a switch, changing a resistance, or connecting a battery or other source of emf. If the inductor current is increasing, that means the inductor develops an emf that “pushes back” against current flowing in from the external circuit. In that case the inductor emf is called a **back emf**, and here you can think of the inductor as acting like a battery that's connected backward to oppose incoming current (Fig. 27.20a). If the inductor current is decreasing, on the other hand, the inductor emf acts to help keep the current flowing, as in Fig. 27.20b.

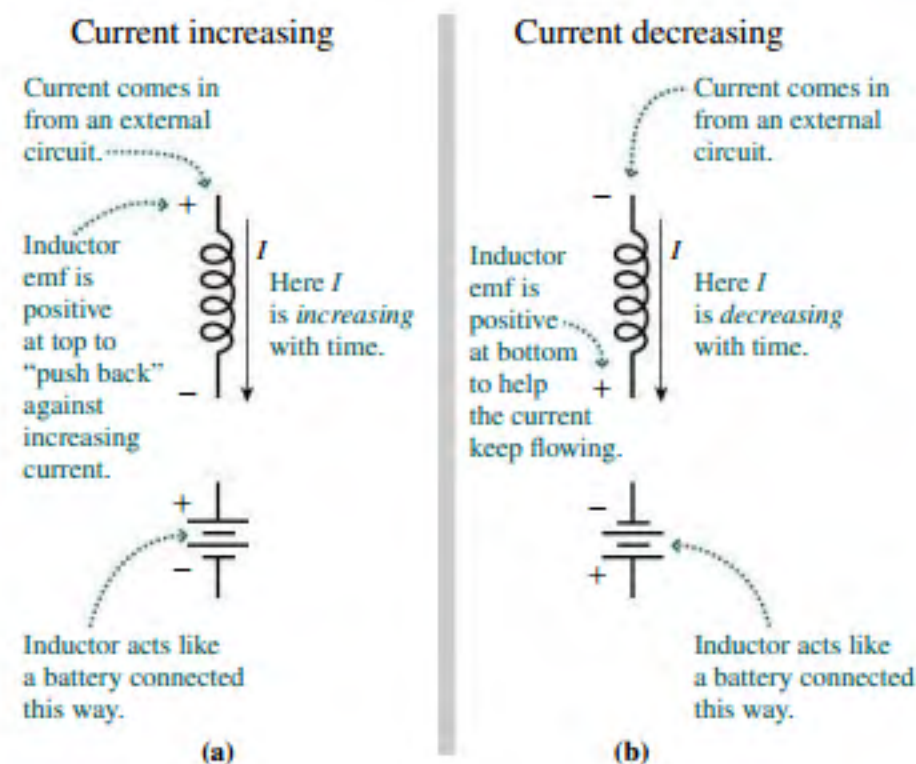


FIGURE 27.20 The direction of the induced emf in an inductor depends on whether the current is (a) increasing or (b) decreasing.

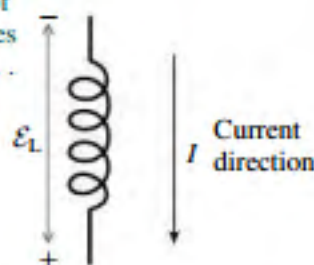
Quantitatively, the inductor emf follows from Faraday's law, which relates emf to the rate of change of magnetic flux: $\mathcal{E} = -d\Phi_B/dt$. If we differentiate Equation 27.3, the definition of self-inductance, we get

$$\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = L \frac{dI}{dt}$$

Substituting this expression for $d\Phi_B/dt$ in Faraday's law then gives

$$\mathcal{E}_L = -L \frac{dI}{dt} \quad (\text{inductor emf}) \quad (27.5)$$

Voltage increasing across inductor in direction of current defines positive $\mathcal{E}_L$...



... so $\mathcal{E}_L$ is positive when current is decreasing ($dI/dt < 0$).

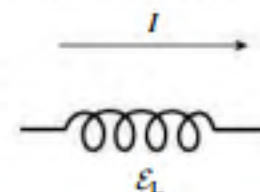
FIGURE 27.21 Sign conventions for the inductor emf of Equation 27.5. The coil is the circuit symbol for an inductor.

This equation gives the emf $\mathcal{E}_L$ induced in an inductor L when the inductor current is changing at the rate dI/dt . The minus sign again tells us that the emf opposes the *change* in current. When the current isn't changing, $dI/dt = 0$ and there's no induced emf. In this case, the inductor acts like a piece of wire. But when the current changes, the inductor produces an emf whose magnitude depends on the rate of change of current, dI/dt . You can get the direction of that emf by thinking about which way the emf has to go to oppose the change in current, as described in Fig. 27.20. You can also get it formally from Equation 27.5, as described in Fig. 27.21. We'll use this approach in the next section, when we consider circuits containing inductors.

The dependence of the induced emf on dI/dt in Equation 27.5 isn't just mathematics! Rapid switching of inductive devices such as solenoid valves or electric motors results in induced emfs that can destroy delicate electronic components. And people have been electrocuted opening switches in circuits containing large inductors.

GOT IT?

27.6 Current flows from left to right through the inductor shown. A voltmeter connected across the inductor gives a constant reading, and shows that the left end of the inductor is positive. Is the current in the inductor (a) increasing, (b) decreasing, or (c) steady? Why?



EXAMPLE 27.7 Back EMF: A Dangerous Inductor

A 5.0-A current is flowing in a 2.0-H inductor. The current is then reduced steadily to zero over 1.0 ms. Find the magnitude and direction of the inductor emf during this time.

INTERPRET There's an emf in the inductor because the current is changing; we want the magnitude and direction of that emf.

DEVELOP Figure 27.22 shows the situation, complete with an external circuit that's the source of the decreasing current. Equation 27.5, $\mathcal{E}_L = -L(dI/dt)$, gives the inductor emf in terms of the rate of change of current. Since the current changes steadily, the latter is just the change in current (-5.0 A) divided by the time involved.

EVALUATE

$$\mathcal{E}_L = -L \frac{dI}{dt} = -(2.0 \text{ H}) \left(\frac{-5.0 \text{ A}}{1.0 \text{ ms}} \right) = 10,000 \text{ V}$$

That this answer is positive tells us that the emf increase across the inductor is in the same direction as the current, as we've indicated in Fig. 27.22.

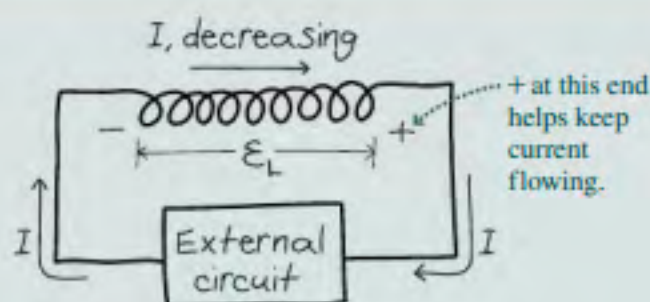


FIGURE 27.22 Sketch for Example 27.7.

ASSESS That's a potentially lethal voltage! Our answer is unrelated to the battery or whatever is supplying the inductor current. One could have a 6-V battery and still be electrocuted opening a circuit with a large inductance. Note that the direction we deduced is consistent with Lenz's law; here the inductor emf opposes the decrease in current, and that means it provides an emf in the direction that would keep current flowing in the external circuit—just the opposite of the situation in GOT IT? 27.6.

Inductors in Circuits

In Chapter 25 you saw that the voltage across a capacitor can't change instantaneously. We can make an analogous statement for inductors. Because the inductor emf depends on the rate of change of current and because an infinite emf is impossible, **the current through an inductor can't change instantaneously**. Much of your understanding of capacitors applies to inductors if you interchange the words "voltage" and "current."

Figure 27.23 shows a circuit with a battery, switch, resistor, and inductor. With the switch open there's no current (Fig. 27.23a). Close the switch, and the current at that instant is still zero because the inductor current can't change instantaneously. With no current, there's no voltage across the resistor, so the inductor must be producing a back emf equal in magnitude to the battery emf (Fig. 27.23b). Although at this instant there's zero current in the inductor, the nonzero emf $\mathcal{E}_L = -L(dI/dt)$ shows that the *rate of change* of current, dI/dt , isn't zero.

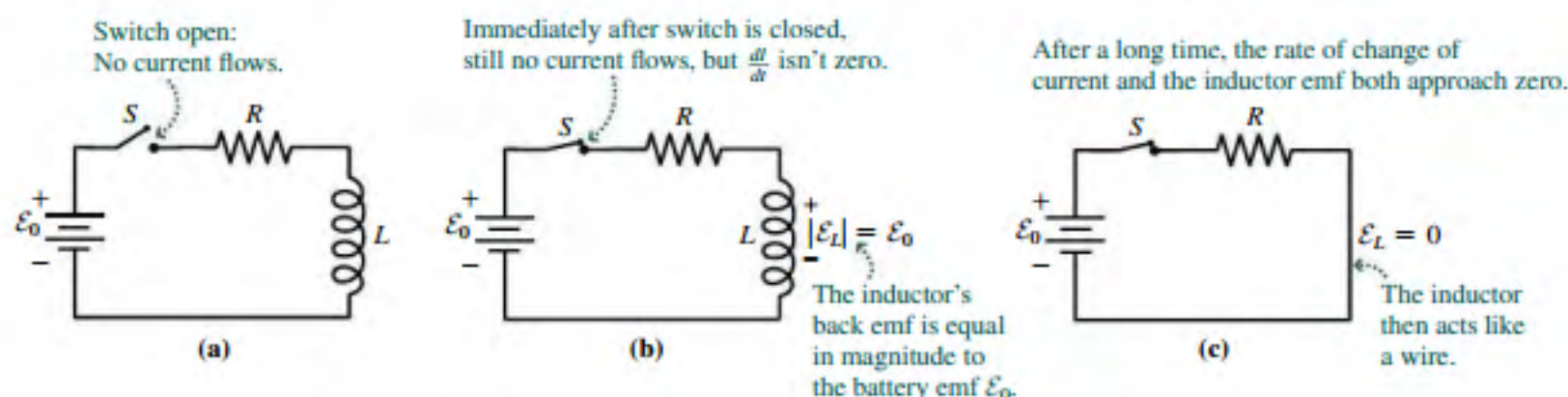


FIGURE 27.23 An RL circuit at three times.

So the inductor current rises from zero, and with it the resistor current and therefore the resistor voltage IR . The battery emf $\mathcal{E}_0$ is constant, so as IR increases, the magnitude of the inductor emf drops. Equation 27.5 shows that the rate of change of current drops as well. Eventually the whole circuit reaches a steady state in which dI/dt and therefore the inductor emf are both zero (Fig. 27.23c). At this point the inductor acts like a wire, and the resistor determines the current: $I = \mathcal{E}_0/R$. Figure 27.24 summarizes this analysis of the RL circuit.

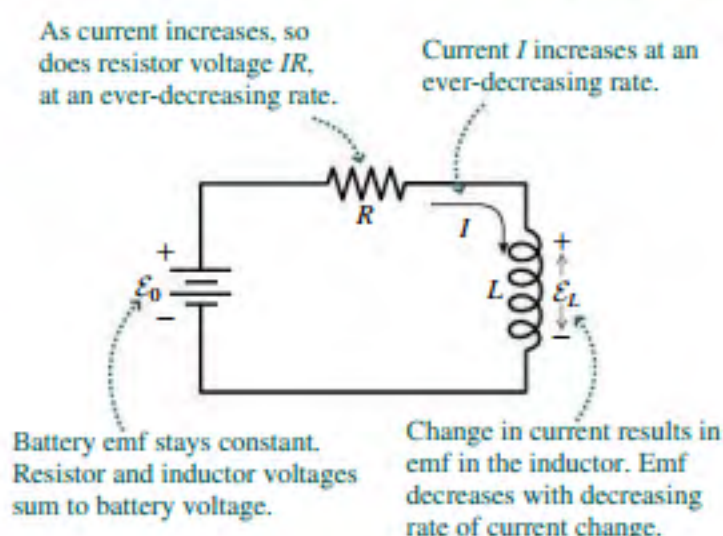


FIGURE 27.24 Interrelationships among circuit quantities as current builds up in an RL circuit. Compare with Fig. 25.19 for a charging capacitor.

We can analyze the circuit quantitatively using the loop law, going around the circuit and summing the changes in energy per unit charge. Going clockwise, we encounter an increase $\mathcal{E}_0$ at the battery, a decrease $-IR$ at the resistor, and a change $\mathcal{E}_L$ at the inductor. This change is actually a decrease, but we'll let Equation 27.5 take care of the signs. Then the loop law reads $\mathcal{E}_0 - IR + \mathcal{E}_L = 0$. The battery emf is constant, so if we differentiate this equation, we get

$$\frac{d\mathcal{E}_L}{dt} = R \frac{dI}{dt}$$

But Equation 27.5 gives $dI/dt = -\mathcal{E}_L/L$, so

$$\frac{d\mathcal{E}_L}{dt} = -R \frac{\mathcal{E}_L}{L}$$

This looks like Equation 25.4 for the RC circuit, but with $\mathcal{E}_L$ in place of current I , L in place of C , and $1/R$ in place of R . So the solution is that of Equation 25.4 with the appropriate substitutions:

$$\mathcal{E}_L = -\mathcal{E}_0 e^{-Rt/L} \quad (27.6)$$

This shows that the inductor emf decays exponentially from its initial value $-\mathcal{E}_0$ (negative because the inductor emf opposes the battery emf) to zero. Using the undifferentiated loop equation, we can now solve for the current:

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0 + \mathcal{E}_L}{R} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{R} (1 - e^{-Rt/L}) \quad (27.7)$$

With a capacitor, we characterized time-changing quantities with the capacitive time constant RC . Here the **inductive time constant** is L/R . In contrast to the capacitor case, the inductive time constant depends *inversely* on resistance. That's because a lower resistance means a higher steady-state current, which therefore requires a longer time to build up. Significant changes in current can't occur on time scales much shorter than L/R . Wait many time constants, and the circuit approaches a steady state with $\mathcal{E}_L = 0$. Figure 27.25 summarizes the time-dependent behavior of circuit quantities in an RL circuit.

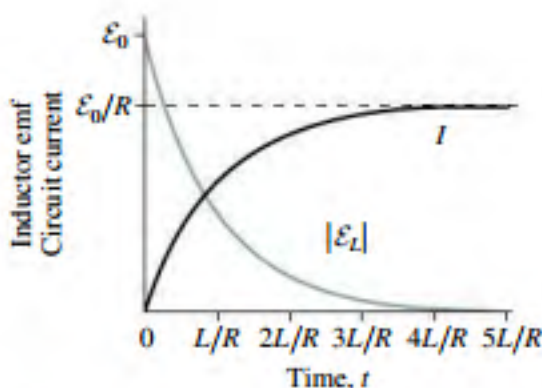


FIGURE 27.25 Inductor current and emf as functions of time.

EXAMPLE 27.8

The Inductive Time Constant: Firing Up an Electromagnet

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A large electromagnet used for lifting scrap iron has self-inductance $L = 56$ H. It's connected to a constant 440-V power source; the total resistance of the circuit is 2.8Ω . Find the time it takes for the current to reach 75% of its final value.

INTERPRET This is a problem about the buildup of current in an RL circuit.

DEVELOP Equation 27.7, $I = (\mathcal{E}_0/R)(1 - e^{-Rt/L})$, determines the current; here $\mathcal{E}_0/R$ is the final current, and we want to solve for the time t when I is 75% of this final value. That is, we want $0.75 = 1 - e^{-Rt/L}$.

EVALUATE Rearranging, we have $e^{-Rt/L} = 0.25$; then taking natural logs of both sides and using $\ln e^x = x$ gives $-Rt/L = \ln(0.25)$, or

$$t = -\frac{L}{R} \ln(0.25) = -\frac{56 \text{ H}}{2.8 \Omega} \ln(0.25) = 28 \text{ s}$$

ASSESS This is a little more than one time constant ($L/R = 20$ s)—not surprising because we found with capacitors that we reach approximately two-thirds of the full charge in one time constant. Analogously, with inductors, we reach about two-thirds of the final current in one time constant.

Figure 27.26 shows a circuit with a two-way switch. Throw the switch to A, and current builds up as we just described. Throw it to B, and current continues to flow through the inductor and resistor because the inductor current can't change instantaneously. We won't go through the math, but it's straightforward to show that the current decays exponentially with the same time constant L/R :

$$I = I_0 e^{-Rt/L} \quad (27.8)$$

This is analogous to our result for the discharging capacitor.

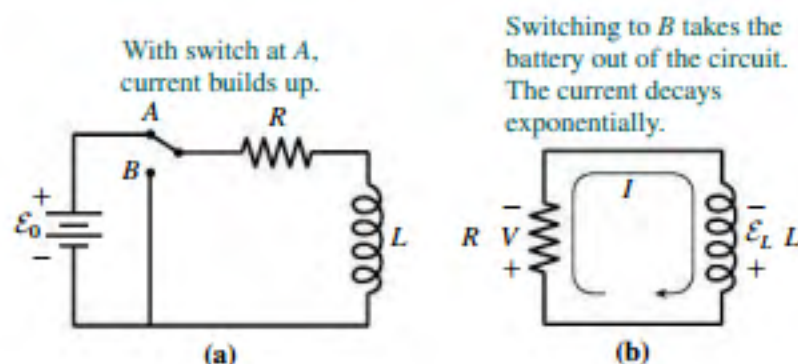


FIGURE 27.26 Buildup and decay of current in an RL circuit.

As with capacitors, it's not necessary to use exponential equations to analyze the short- and long-term behavior of circuits with inductors. All you need to remember is that for short times inductor current can't change instantaneously, and for long times inductors produce no emfs and therefore act like wires. The next example explores this situation.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 27.1 Inductors: Short Times, Long Times

The switch in Fig. 27.27a is initially open. It's then closed and, a long time later, reopened. What's the direction of the current in R_2 after the switch is reopened?

EVALUATE To see what's happening here, we sketch the circuit in three situations, beginning with the switch closing and ending with it reopening (Fig. 27.27b–d). There's no inductor current with the switch initially open, so there's no current right after it closes. Then the inductor might as well be an open circuit, so we drew Fig. 27.27b with only the two resistors. After a long time the current stops changing, and the inductor behaves like a wire (Fig. 27.27c). Finally, whatever current was flowing in the inductor continues to flow after the switch is reopened. That current was flowing downward in the inductor, so, as Fig. 27.27d shows, it's flowing *upward* through R_2 .

ASSESS Does this surprising result make sense? Yes: Current in an inductor can't change instantaneously, and once the switch opens the

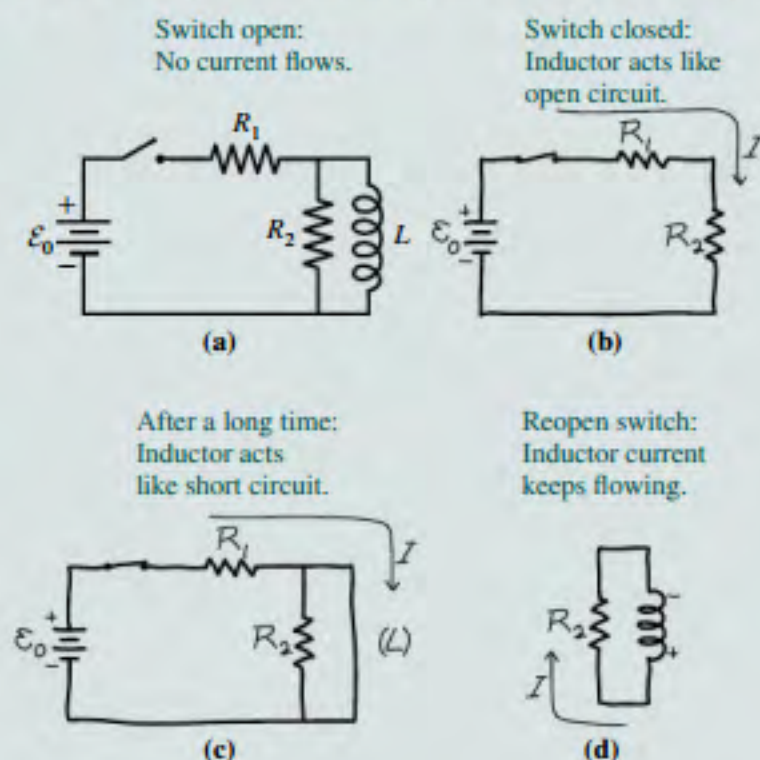


FIGURE 27.27 Conceptual Example 27.1

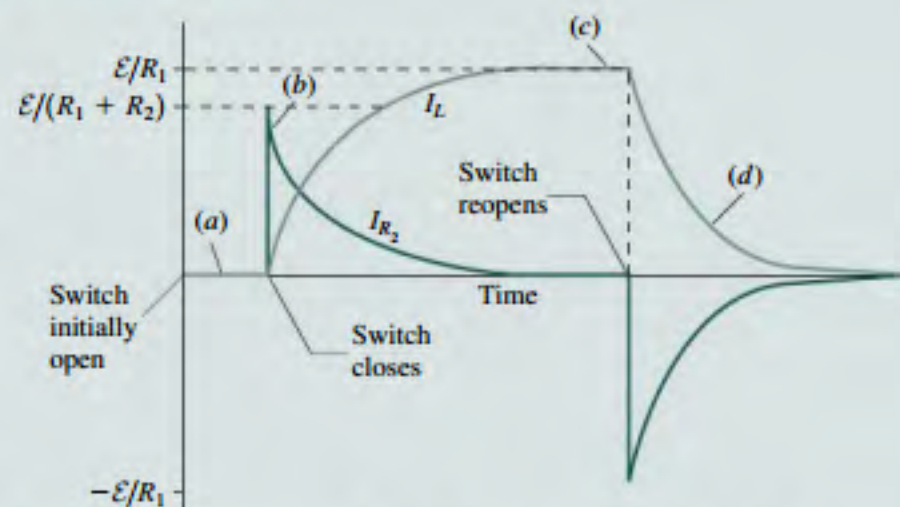


FIGURE 27.28 Currents in R_2 and L for Conceptual Example 27.1.

current has nowhere to go but upward through R_2 . The resistor R_2 has no say in the matter; as Making the Connection shows, its current is determined entirely by the battery voltage and R_1 . If the switch stays open, the current in Fig. 27.27d decays exponentially as the resistor dissipates the energy that was stored in the inductor.

Figure 27.28 shows currents in the inductor and R_2 as functions of time. If R_2 weren't in the circuit, the voltage would rise dangerously high as the inductor tries to keep the current flowing. Resistors are often wired in parallel with large inductors to alleviate this danger.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Verify that the current in R_2 just after the switch is reopened has the value indicated in Fig. 27.28.

EVALUATE Just *before* the switch is reopened, Fig. 27.27c shows that the current through the inductor is $I_L = \mathcal{E}_0/R_1$; R_2 is irrelevant here because it's short-circuited by the inductor. Just *after* the switch opens, the current continues flowing, now going upward through R_2 as we reasoned above. So the current in R_2 is $-\mathcal{E}_0/R_1$, with the minus sign designating the upward direction according to the sign conventions in Fig. 27.28.

27.5 Magnetic Energy

LO 27.5 Evaluate magnetic energy.

In Figs. 27.26b and 27.27d, current flows in circuits containing only a resistor and an inductor. Energy is dissipated, heating the resistor. Where does this energy come from?

Because there's a current in the inductor, there's also a magnetic field. The change in that magnetic field is what produces the emf that drives the current. As the current decreases, so does the magnetic field. Eventually the circuit reaches a state where there's no current, no magnetic field—and a hot resistor. So where did the resistor's thermal energy come from? It came from the magnetic field.

Like the electric field, the magnetic field contains stored energy. Our decaying RL circuit is analogous to a discharging RC circuit, in which the electric field between the capacitor plates

disappears as thermal energy appears in the resistor. As in the electric case, magnetic energy isn't limited to circuits: *Any* magnetic field contains energy. Release of magnetic energy drives a number of practical devices and also powers violent events throughout the universe; an important example that directly impacts us here on Earth is described in the Application on page 551.

Magnetic Energy in an Inductor

We can find the stored energy by reconsidering the buildup of current in the inductor. Earlier we wrote the loop law for the circuit of Fig. 27.23; if we multiply that equation by the current I , we get $I\mathcal{E}_0 - I^2R + I\mathcal{E}_L = 0$ or, using Equation 27.5 for $\mathcal{E}_L$,

$$I\mathcal{E}_0 - I^2R - LI \frac{dI}{dt} = 0$$

The three terms here have the units of voltage times current, or power. The first shows that the battery supplies energy *to* the circuit at the rate $I\mathcal{E}_0$. The second, $-I^2R$, is the rate of energy dissipation in the resistor; the negative sign means the resistor takes energy *from* the circuit. The current is increasing ($dI/dt > 0$), so the third term is also negative; it describes energy the inductor takes from the circuit. But the inductor doesn't dissipate this energy; rather, it stores the energy in its magnetic field. The rate at which the inductor stores energy is thus

$$P = LI \frac{dI}{dt}$$

Suppose we increase the current in an inductor by some small amount dI over a small time interval dt . Since the power in this case is the rate of energy storage, the energy dU stored during this time is

$$dU = P dt = LI \frac{dI}{dt} dt = LI dI.$$

We find the total energy stored in bringing the inductor current from zero to some final value I by summing—that is, integrating—all the dU values:

$$U = \int dU = \int P dt = \int_0^I LI dI = \frac{1}{2}LI^2 \Big|_0^I$$

Evaluating at the two limits then gives the stored energy:

$$U = \frac{1}{2}LI^2 \quad (\text{energy stored in inductor}) \quad (27.9)$$

This much energy is therefore released when the magnetic field decays.

EXAMPLE 27.9 Magnetic Energy: An MRI Disaster

Superconducting electromagnets like the solenoids in MRI scanners store a lot of magnetic energy. Loss of coolant can be dangerous because the current is suddenly left without its zero-resistance path and quickly decays. The result is an explosive release of magnetic energy. A particular MRI solenoid carries 2.4 kA and has a 0.53-H inductance. When it loses superconductivity, its resistance goes abruptly to 31 mΩ. Find (a) the stored magnetic energy and (b) the rate of energy release at the instant superconductivity is lost.

INTERPRET We're asked first for the total stored energy and then for the power dissipated in the resistance of the coils at the instant they cease to be superconducting.

DEVELOP Equation 27.9, $U = \frac{1}{2}LI^2$, determines the stored energy, while $P = I^2R$ determines the resistor power. Just before the coolant loss, the MRI solenoid carries 2.4 kA; since current can't change instantaneously in an inductor, this current remains momentarily

unchanged. Therefore, we have everything we need to find the power dissipation.

EVALUATE (a) Equation 27.8 gives

$$U = \frac{1}{2}LI^2 = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(0.53 \text{ H})(2.4 \text{ kA})^2 = 1.5 \text{ MJ}$$

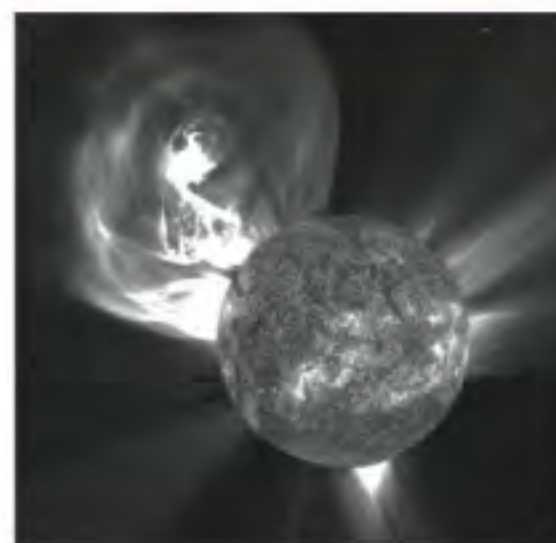
while for (b) we have

$$P = I^2R = (2.4 \text{ kA})^2(31 \text{ m}\Omega) = 0.18 \text{ MW}$$

ASSESS This is substantial power, equivalent to 1800 100-W light-bulbs burning in the space of this roughly human-size device! You can show in Problem 57 that it takes some 20 s before 90% of the energy has dissipated. To prevent explosive energy release, superconducting wires generally incorporate copper or silver to carry the current in the event of coolant loss that quenches the superconductivity.

APPLICATION Solar Outbursts and Geomagnetic Storms

This chapter's opening image depicts a power failure that blacked out the entire Canadian province of Quebec. That blackout was no accident but resulted from electrical failures caused, ultimately, by a massive outburst of particles from the Sun. Solar physicists—including your author—are still exploring the mechanisms of such outbursts, but it's clear that they involve the sudden release of energy stored in the magnetic field that permeates the Sun's atmosphere, or *corona*. Thus the energy described by Equation 27.10 becomes the kinetic energy of solar particles, mostly electrons and protons. The resulting *coronal mass ejections* (CMEs) propagate outward through the solar system at hundreds of kilometers per second and, if they happened to be aimed toward Earth, reach our planet in several days; the image shows a large CME erupting from the Sun. The particle burst and associated shock wave pummels Earth's magnetic field, and some particles become trapped on the field lines; there they cause auroras, as described in Section 26.3. The impact also compresses Earth's magnetic field, resulting in a rapidly changing field that extends down to Earth's surface. And time-changing magnetic fields, as Faraday's law shows, give rise to induced currents in any conductors that might be present. On Earth, such conductors include power lines and related electrical equipment, as well as Earth itself. Current surges in these conductors can damage critical components of the electric power grid, resulting in a cascade of failures that, in extreme cases, causes massive blackouts like the Quebec event. Even buried cables aren't immune, as induced currents surge through the solid Earth—although in Quebec, poorly conductive rock underlying the province reduced ground currents and actually exacerbated current surges in the above-ground power grid. Solar-induced magnetic disturbances at Earth are called



geomagnetic storms, and in addition to power systems they can damage or interfere with satellites and communications. As humankind depends more on electrical, electronic, and space systems, we worry about massive geomagnetic storms that could plunge far greater areas than Quebec into power, communications, and information blackouts. Indeed, a record-strength geomagnetic storm in 1859 caused auroras that were seen as far south as Hawaii and Cuba and resulted in worldwide failures of newly developed electric telegraph systems. A similar event today could cost the world some \$3 trillion in damages.

Magnetic-Energy Density

In Example 27.6 we found the inductance of a solenoid with length l and cross-sectional area A : $L = \mu_0 n^2 Al$. Equation 27.9 then gives the magnetic energy stored in the solenoid:

$$U = \frac{1}{2} LI^2 = \frac{1}{2} \mu_0 n^2 Al I^2 = \frac{1}{2\mu_0} (\mu_0 nI)^2 Al = \frac{B^2}{2\mu_0} Al$$

where we recognized the quantity $\mu_0 nI$ as B , the magnetic field in the solenoid (Equation 26.20). The quantity Al is the volume containing this field, so the energy per unit volume—the **magnetic-energy density**—is

u_B is the magnetic energy per unit volume ... associated with a magnetic field B .

$$u_B = \frac{B^2}{2\mu_0} \quad (\text{magnetic-energy density}) \quad (27.10)$$

Magnetic energy is universal; it occurs wherever there's a magnetic field.

Although we derived this expression for the field of a solenoid, it is, in fact, a universal expression for the local magnetic-energy density. Wherever there's a magnetic field, there's stored energy.

Equation 27.10 is similar to Equation 23.7 for the energy density in an electric field: $u_E = \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_0 E^2$. Each energy density is proportional to the *square* of the field strength, and each contains the appropriate constant, μ_0 or ϵ_0 . That the constant appears in the numerator in one case and in the denominator in the other is merely a consequence of the way SI units are defined.

GOT IT?

27.7 If you keep the current in a solenoid constant while doubling both its overall length and the number of turns per unit length, will the magnetic energy in the solenoid (a) double, (b) quadruple, (c) increase by a factor of 8, (d) increase by a factor of 16, or (e) decrease by a factor of $1/\sqrt{2}$?

27.6 Induced Electric Fields

LO 27.6 Use the integral form of Faraday's law to find induced electric fields.

So far we've been talking about induction in terms of emfs and circuits. But what, really, is emf? In the case of a battery, it results from chemical reactions that separate charge. With motional emf (Section 27.3), magnetic forces on a moving conductor act to separate charge. But what causes the emf in a conducting loop subject to a changing magnetic field? There's no motion, yet there must be a force on the free charges in the conductor. The only force we know that acts on stationary charges is the electric force, which results from electric fields. Therefore, there must be an electric field—an **induced electric field**—in the conducting loop. This field has the same effect on charges, exerting a force $q\vec{E}$, as did the electric fields we considered earlier. But the induced field originates not in electric charge but in *changing magnetic field*.

An induced electric field results whenever a magnetic field changes with time—whether or not an electric circuit is present. If there is a circuit, then the field drives induced currents. But the induced field, not the current, is fundamental. A single, stationary electron in a changing magnetic field experiences an *electric force*—clear evidence for the existence of the induced electric field.

We wrote Faraday's law as Equation 27.2, giving the relation between induced emf and changing magnetic flux. But the induced electric field is more fundamental, and emf simply means the work per unit charge gained as charge goes around a circuit—or for that matter any closed loop. Thus we can write $\mathcal{E} = \oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l}$, and Faraday's law becomes

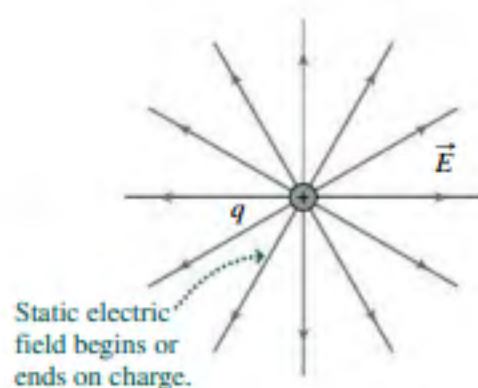
$$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \quad (\text{Faraday's law}) \quad (27.11)$$

$\vec{E}$ is the induced electric field ... that arises from changing magnetic flux.

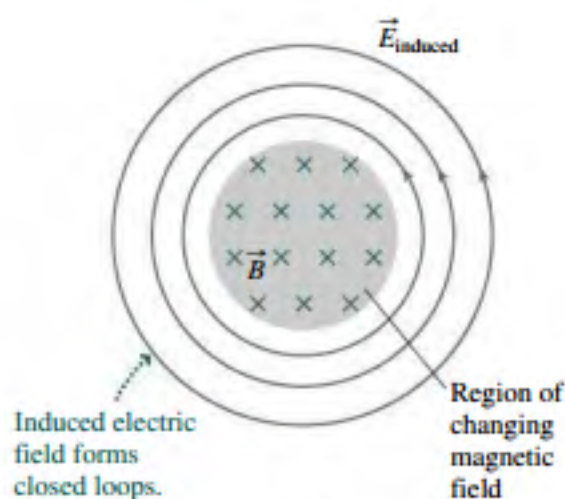
The circle designates integration over *any* closed loop.

$d\vec{l}$ is an infinitesimal vector along the closed loop.

The minus sign shows that the induced electric field *opposes* the flux change—ensuring that energy is conserved.



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 27.29 (a) Static electric fields originate in charges and look very different from (b) induced fields that result from changing magnetic fields.

Here we're using $d\vec{l}$ for the infinitesimal vector along the integration loop, to be consistent with the notation introduced in Chapter 26 for Ampère's law. Faraday's law in the form of Equation 27.11 is a universal statement about electric fields and changing magnetic flux. The line integral on the left-hand side is over *any* closed loop, which need not coincide with a circuit or conductor. The flux on the right-hand side is the surface integral of the magnetic field over any open surface bounded by the loop on the left-hand side.

Faraday's law tells us that there's another source of electric fields besides electric charge—namely, changing magnetic field:

A changing magnetic field creates an electric field.

This direct interaction between fields is the basis for many practical devices and, as you'll see in Chapter 29, is essential to the existence of light.

Faraday's law is similar to Ampère's law (Equation 26.16). On the left side, both involve the line integral of a field, $\vec{E}$ for Faraday and $\vec{B}$ for Ampère. On the right is a source of that field, changing magnetic field for $\vec{E}$ and moving electric charge—current—for $\vec{B}$. Both fields *encircle* their sources. That means the configuration of an induced electric field is very different from that of an electric field originating in charge. Field lines of an induced electric field have no beginnings or ends; they generally form closed loops encircling regions of changing magnetic field (Fig. 27.29).

When a changing magnetic field has sufficient symmetry, we can evaluate the induced electric field in the same way we did the magnetic field of a symmetric current distribution. Example 27.10 shows how.

EXAMPLE 27.10 Finding the Induced Electric Field: A Solenoid

A long solenoid has circular cross section of radius R . The solenoid current is increasing, and as a result so is the magnetic field in the solenoid. The field strength as a function of time t is given by $B = bt$, where b is a constant. Find the induced electric field outside the solenoid, a distance r from the axis.

INTERPRET Here's a problem about a changing magnetic field producing an electric field—that is, about Faraday's law. We'll follow the steps in Chapter 26's strategy for Ampère's law, modifying as appropriate to Faraday's law. We begin by identifying the symmetry, which here is line symmetry.

DEVELOP Symmetry requires that encircling electric field lines be circular. We've drawn some field lines in Fig. 27.30 and marked one of them as a loop for the integration in Faraday's law. We chose a loop coinciding with a field line because symmetry requires that the field strength E be constant over a circle concentric with the symmetry axis.

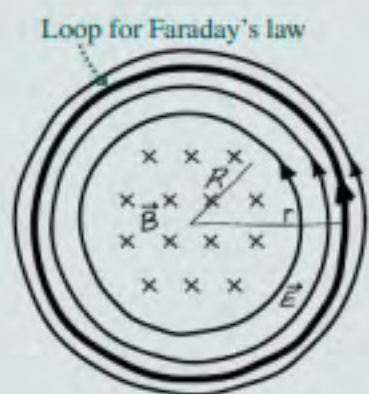


FIGURE 27.30 Cross section of a solenoid whose magnetic field points into the page and is increasing in strength. Field lines of the induced electric field are circles concentric with the solenoid axis.

EVALUATE The situation on the left-hand side of Faraday's law is just as in Example 26.8, except with $\vec{E}$ instead of $\vec{B}$. So $\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l}$ evaluates to $2\pi rE$. Instead of current on the right-hand side, we have changing magnetic flux $-d\Phi_B/dt$. Here the loop is outside the solenoid, so it encircles the entire flux, which is $\Phi_B = BA = bt\pi R^2$. Then the rate of change of flux is $d\Phi_B/dt = \pi R^2b$. As usual, we'll use Faraday's law for the magnitude of the induced effect, and then invoke energy conservation for the direction. Equating $2\pi rE$ to the rate of change of flux πR^2b then gives the magnitude of the induced electric field:

$$E = \frac{R^2b}{2r}$$

What about the direction? If a current were flowing as a result of the induced electric field, its direction would be such as to *oppose* the increase in the solenoid's magnetic field. Since the solenoid's field points *into* the page, any induced current would have to produce a field pointing *out of* the page. Applying the right-hand rule by curling your fingers in the counterclockwise direction indicated by the field arrows in Fig. 27.30 shows that a counterclockwise current would produce such an outward field. Since an induced current would be driven by the electric field, the counterclockwise direction we chose for the electric field lines in Fig. 27.30 is correct.

ASSESS The $1/r$ dependence here shouldn't surprise you; we found the same dependence for other fields, both electric and magnetic, resulting from sources with line symmetry. Note how we used a hypothetical induced current here to reason out the direction of the induced electric field. Even though there isn't any induced current in this case, you can still think about what *would* happen if there *were* such a current, and Lenz's law will then lead you to the direction of the induced electric field. Calculating the electric field *inside* the solenoid would be similar to this example, but a given field line would encircle only part of the magnetic flux; Exercise 28 covers that situation.

Conservative and Nonconservative Electric Fields

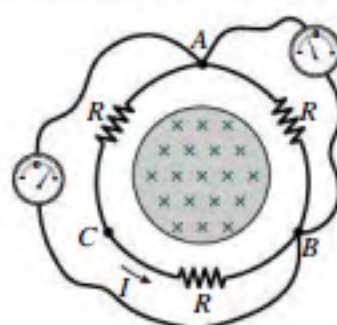
Static electric fields—those beginning and ending on stationary charge distributions—are *conservative*, meaning that the work required to move a charge between two points is path independent. A consequence is that it takes no work to move around a closed path in an electrostatic field; mathematically, we express this by writing

$$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l} = 0 \quad (\text{electrostatic field})$$

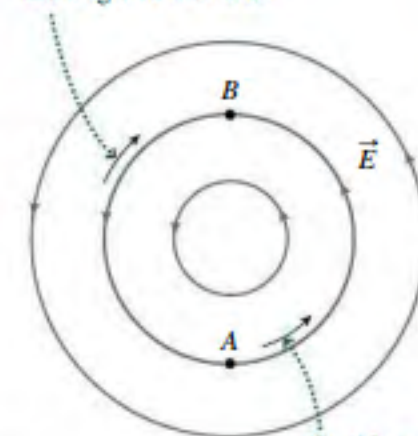
In contrast, induced electric fields generally form closed loops, and here Faraday's law shows that the line integral of the electric field around a closed path is decidedly not zero. That means the induced electric field does work on a charge moved around a *closed* path and that the work done in moving between two points cannot be independent of the path taken (Fig. 27.31). The induced electric field, therefore, is not conservative.

GOT IT?

27.8 The figure shows three resistors in series surrounding an infinitely long solenoid with a changing magnetic field; the resulting induced electric field drives a current counterclockwise, as shown. Two identical voltmeters are shown connected to the *same* points A and B. What does each read? Explain any apparent contradiction. *Hint:* This is a challenging question!



Move charge this way from A to B, and you do work against the field.



Go this way from A to B and $\vec{E}$ does work on the charge.

FIGURE 27.31 The work done to move charge in an induced electric field isn't path independent, so the induced field isn't conservative.

Diamagnetism

We introduced diamagnetism in Chapter 26 but couldn't explain it there because it involves induced electric fields. Figure 27.32 shows a highly simplified model representing two atomic electrons with equal but opposite magnetic dipole moments. Although a proper treatment of diamagnetism requires quantum mechanics, this model shows qualitatively how diamagnetism arises.

The dipole moments in Fig. 27.32a cancel, so the associated atom has no net magnetic dipole moment. But what happens when a magnetic field is applied, pointing into the page (Fig. 27.32b), perhaps by moving the north pole of a bar magnet toward the page? The changing magnetic field results in an electric field that alters the electrons' speeds. In order to oppose the imposition of the magnetic field, the electron on the right speeds up. Its dipole moment, which points out of the page, increases and opposes the bar magnet's field. Meanwhile the left-hand electron's dipole moment decreases. Now the atom has a net dipole moment pointing out of the page, opposing the incoming magnet and resulting in the repulsive force that characterizes diamagnetism.

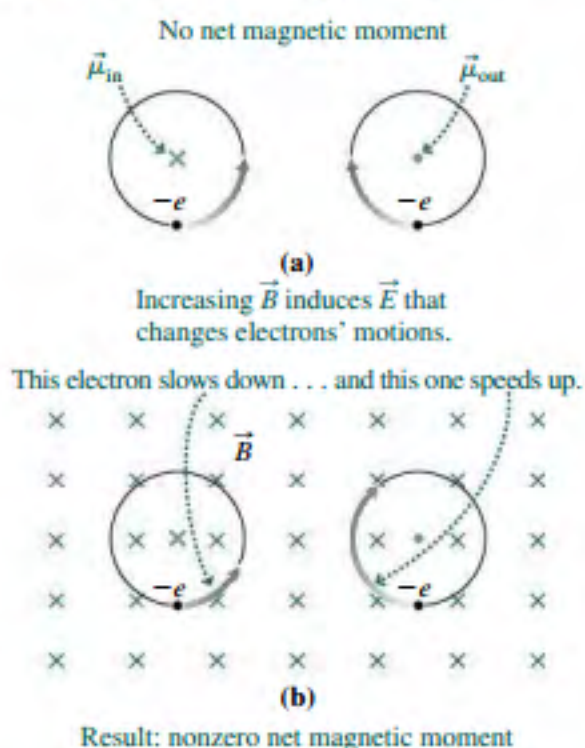


FIGURE 27.32 A simple model for diamagnetism.

A superconductor is perfectly diamagnetic, meaning that the magnetic field resulting from induced currents completely cancels any applied field. Since these induced currents persist in the zero-resistance superconductor, the material completely excludes magnetic fields from its interior, a phenomenon known as the Meissner effect (Fig. 27.33). The repulsive force associated with the magnetic moments of a permanent magnet and a nearby superconductor results in the widely publicized phenomenon of magnetic levitation (Fig. 27.34).

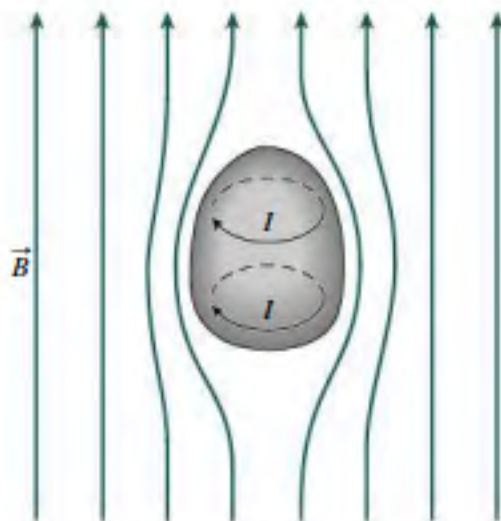


FIGURE 27.33 Induced currents in a superconductor completely cancel an applied magnetic field.



FIGURE 27.34 A small magnet levitates above a wafer of high-temperature superconductor in a bath of liquid nitrogen.

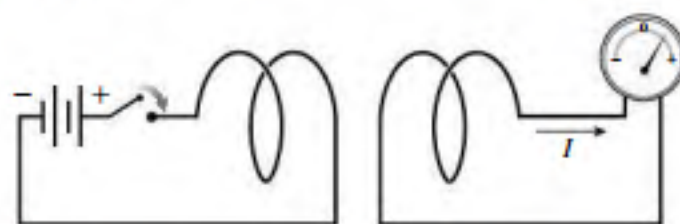
Chapter 27 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is **electromagnetic induction**, a phenomenon in which a **changing magnetic field produces an electric field**. Applied to circuits, induction results in induced emfs that drive induced currents.



Here a moving magnet produces the changing magnetic field.

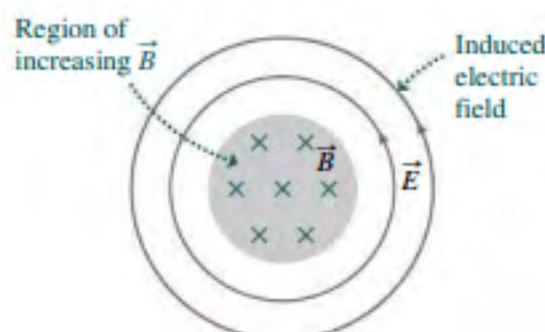


Here a change in current produces the changing magnetic field.

Key Concepts and Equations

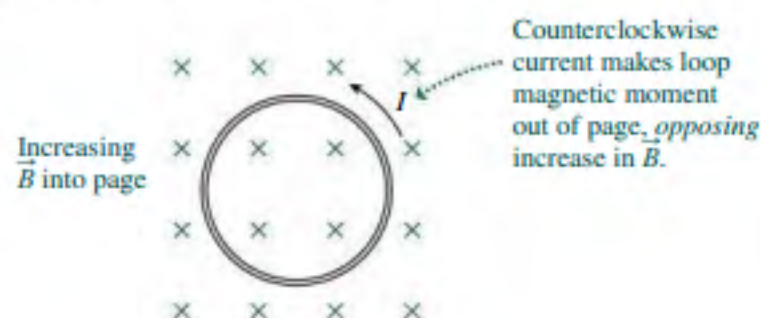
Faraday's law describes induction quantitatively, relating the line integral of the induced electric field to changing magnetic flux:

$$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l} = -d\Phi_B/dt$$



In conductors, Faraday's law gives the induced emf: $\mathcal{E} = -d\Phi_B/dt$.

Lenz's law shows that electromagnetic induction is consistent with conservation of energy, which requires that induced effects act to oppose the changes that give rise to them.

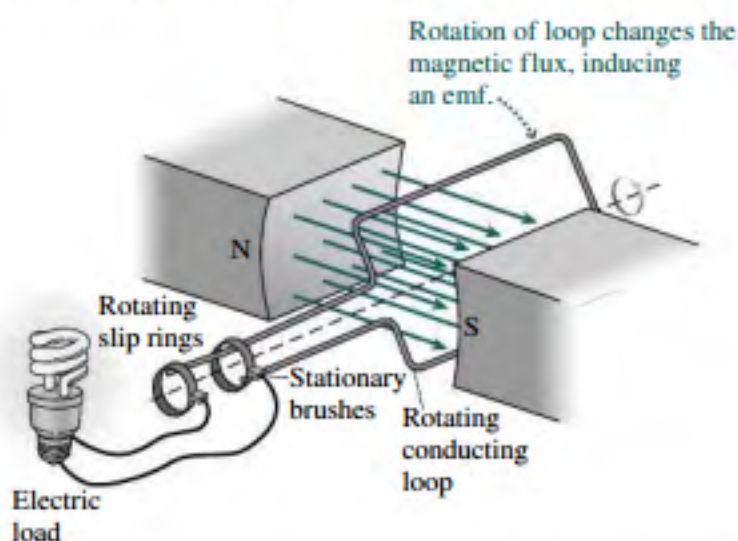


Magnetic fields contain stored energy, as do electric fields. The **magnetic-energy density** is

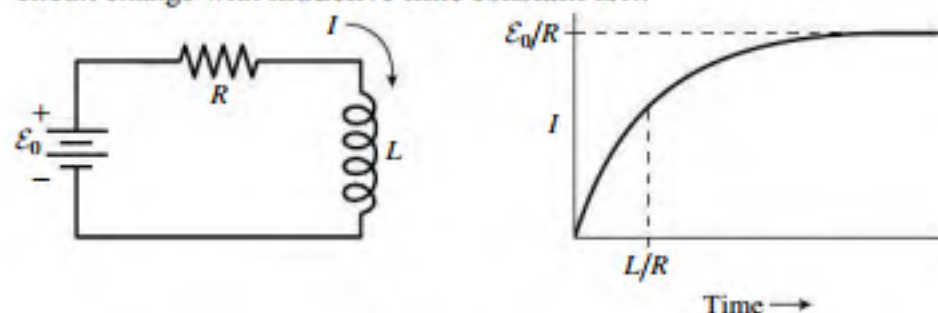
$$u_B = \frac{B^2}{2\mu_0}$$

Applications

Electric generators convert mechanical energy to electrical energy by moving conductors in magnetic fields to induce emfs that drive currents.



Inductors are wire coils that encircle their own magnetic flux, giving **self-inductance** $L = \Phi_B/I$. An inductor opposes changes in current, producing an emf given by $\mathcal{E} = -L(dI/dt)$. Circuit quantities in a simple RL circuit change with **inductive time constant** L/R .



$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{R} (1 - e^{-Rt/L})$$

Diamagnetism occurs when electromagnetic induction results in atoms acquiring net magnetic moments; the result is a repulsive interaction.

Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>LO 27.1 Describe electromagnetic induction as a phenomenon that fundamentally involves <i>changing magnetic fields</i>.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 27.5</i></p> <p>LO 27.2 State Faraday's law and use it to find induced emfs.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 27.4, 27.10; Exercises 27.11, 27.12, 27.13, 27.14; Problems 27.37, 27.38, 27.39, 27.40, 27.41, 27.42, 27.43, 27.44, 27.45, 27.46, 27.47, 27.48, 27.49, 27.52, 27.53, 27.70, 27.74, 27.75, 27.78, 27.79</i></p> <p>LO 27.3 Use energy conservation (Lenz's law) to find the direction of induced currents.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 27.1, 27.2, 27.10; Exercise 27.12; Problems 27.40, 27.45</i></p> | <p>LO 27.4 Describe inductance and analyze simple circuits containing inductors.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 27.6, 27.7; Exercises 27.15, 27.16, 27.17, 27.18, 27.19, 27.20; Problems 27.54, 27.55, 27.56, 27.58, 27.59, 27.60, 27.61, 27.62, 27.63, 27.64, 27.72, 27.73, 27.76</i></p> <p>LO 27.5 Evaluate magnetic energy.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 27.8, 27.9; Exercises 27.21, 27.22, 27.23, 27.24, 27.25, 27.26; Problems 27.57, 27.62, 27.63, 27.64, 27.65, 27.66, 27.67, 27.68, 27.69, 27.71, 27.77</i></p> <p>LO 27.6 Use the integral form of Faraday's law to find induced electric fields.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 27.3; Exercises 27.27, 27.28; Problems 27.50, 27.51</i></p> |
|--|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- In Fig. 27.35, a bar magnet moves toward a conducting ring. What's the direction of the induced current in the ring?

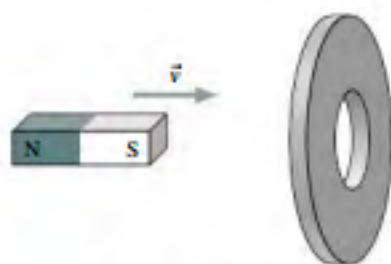


FIGURE 27.35 For Thought and Discussion 1

- Figure 27.36 shows two concentric conducting loops, the outer connected to a battery and a switch. The switch is initially open. It's then closed, left closed for a while, and then reopened. Describe the currents in the inner loop during the entire procedure.

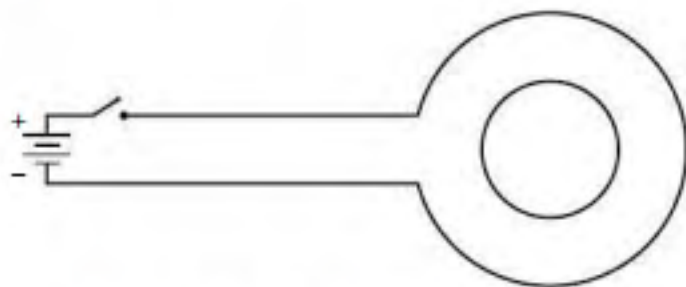


FIGURE 27.36 For Thought and Discussion 2

- Do you think a sensitive device that can measure even a minute amount of current, like the galvanometer, would be affected by the Earth's magnetic field? Explain.
- Can an induced electric field exist in the absence of a conductor?
- A car battery has a 12-V emf, yet energy from the battery provides the 30,000-V spark that ignites the gasoline. How is this possible?

- You have a fixed length of wire to wind into an inductor. Will you get more inductance if you wind a short coil with large diameter, or a long coil with small diameter?
- In a popular demonstration of induced emf, a lightbulb is connected across a large inductor in an RL circuit, as shown in Fig. 27.37. When the switch is opened, the bulb flashes brightly and may even burn out. Why?

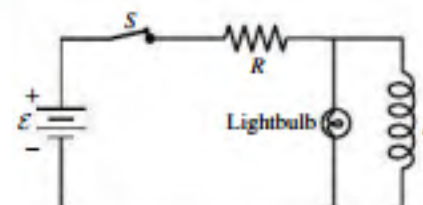


FIGURE 27.37 For Thought and Discussion 7

- A 1-H inductor carries 10 A, and a 10-H inductor carries 1 A. Which contains more stored energy?
- Can you think of a magnetic configuration in which an electron can get "trapped"?
- A small magnet is dropped into each of two hollow vertical tubes of equal length, one made of copper and one of aluminum. Does it take longer for the magnet to fall through the aluminum tube or the copper tube, or does it take the same amount of time for each? (*Hint:* Consult Table 24.1.)

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Sections 27.2 Faraday's Law and 27.3 Induction and Energy

- Find the magnetic flux through a 6.0-cm-diameter circular loop oriented with the loop normal at 60° to a uniform 65-mT magnetic field.

12. A circular wire loop 45 cm in diameter has resistance $120\ \Omega$ and lies in a horizontal plane. A uniform magnetic field points vertically downward, and in 25 ms it increases linearly from 5.0 mT to 55 mT. Find the magnetic flux through the loop at (a) the beginning and (b) the end of the 25-ms period. (c) What's the loop current during this time? (d) Which way does this current flow?
13. A conducting loop of area 230 cm^2 and resistance $14\ \Omega$ is perpendicular to a spatially uniform magnetic field and carries a 350-mA induced current. At what rate is the magnetic field changing?
14. The magnetic field inside a 23-cm-diameter solenoid is increasing at 2.4 T/s . How many turns should a coil wrapped around the outside of the solenoid have so that the emf induced in the coil is 15 V?

Section 27.4 Inductance

15. Find the self-inductance of a 1500-turn solenoid 55 cm long and 4.0 cm in diameter.
16. The current in an inductor is changing at 110 A/s and the inductor emf is 45 V. What's the self-inductance?
17. A 2.4-A current is flowing in a 20-H inductor. A switch opens, interrupting the current in 1.7 ms. Find the induced emf in the inductor.
18. Your little sister is building a radio from scratch. Plans call for a 450- μH inductor wound on a cardboard tube. She brings you the tube from a toilet-paper roll (12 cm long, 4.0 cm diameter), and asks how many turns she should wind on the full length of the tube. What is your answer?
19. What inductance should you put in series with a $150\text{-}\Omega$ resistor to give a time constant of 2.2 ms?
20. The current in a series RL circuit increases to 23% of its final value in $3.0\ \mu\text{s}$. If $L = 2.1\text{ mH}$, what's the resistance?

Section 27.5 Magnetic Energy

21. How much energy is stored in a 5.0-H inductor carrying 35 A?
22. What's the current in a 24-mH inductor storing 75 μJ of energy?
23. A 1250-turn solenoid 23.2 cm long and 1.58 cm in diameter carries 165 mA. How much magnetic energy does it contain?
24. Show that the quantity $B^2/2\mu_0$ has the units of energy density.
25. The world's strongest magnet that can produce a sustained field is a 45-T device at the National High Magnetic Field Laboratory in Florida. What's the corresponding magnetic-energy density?
26. Find the magnetic field strength in a region where the magnetic-energy density is 7.8 J/cm^3 .

Section 27.6 Induced Electric Fields

27. The induced electric field 12 cm from the axis of a 10-cm-radius solenoid is 45 V/m. Find the rate of change of the solenoid's magnetic field.
28. Find an expression for the electric-field strength *inside* the solenoid of Example 27.10, a distance r from the axis.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

29. **Example 27.4:** Two parallel conducting rails with negligible resistance are 45.0 cm apart and are connected together at one end

by an $18.8\text{-}\Omega$ resistor. A conducting bar, also with negligible resistance, is free to slide along the rails. The system is in a region where a 375-mT magnetic field points perpendicular to the plane of the rails, as shown in Fig. 27.9 in Example 27.4. If the bar is pulled along the rails at 4.87 m/s, what's the current in the circuit comprising the rails, the resistor, and the moving bar?

30. **Example 27.4:** (a) How fast should the bar in the preceding problem be pulled in order to produce a current of 0.150 A? (b) At what rate does the agent pulling the bar do work in this situation?
31. **Example 27.4:** A battery of emf $\mathcal{E}$ is connected in series with the resistor in Example 27.4. The bar is initially at rest, and now there's nothing pulling it. (a) Find an expression for the initial value of the current in the circuit. (b) The bar eventually reaches a constant speed. Find an expression for this speed. (c) What's the current in the circuit once the bar is moving at constant speed?
32. **Example 27.4:** Proposals to mine resources from the Moon have included suggestions that the goods could be launched toward Earth using an *electromagnetic railgun*, also called a *mass driver*, which is essentially an apparatus like that described in the preceding problem, with a cargo capsule incorporated into the conducting bar. With rails spaced 1.00 m apart and a magnetic field of 0.877 T, what emf would be needed to achieve a speed that's 50% greater than lunar escape speed? *Hint:* See Appendix F, as well as the result of the preceding problem.
33. **Example 27.8:** An electric doorbell uses an electromagnet to pull on a steel hammer that rings the bell. The electromagnet has inductance 72.0 mH and resistance $6.86\ \Omega$ (meaning you can treat it as an LR circuit with the inductance in series with the resistance). It operates from a 6.00-V source. How long does it take for the current in the electromagnet to reach 0.700 A?
34. **Example 27.8:** You're designing a high-speed computer circuit and you're worried that a mere piece of wire could have enough self-inductance to slow the rise of the current in the wire. You can treat the wire as an inductor in series with a $184\text{-}\mu\Omega$ resistor. When a steady emf is imposed across the wire, you need the current in the wire to reach 70.0% of its maximum value in less than 10.0 ns. What's the maximum tolerable inductance for the wire?
35. **Example 27.8:** The superconducting solenoid in an MRI scanner has inductance 342 mH and normally carries 1.85 kA. Copper conductors with resistance $21.6\text{ m}\Omega$ are embedded in the superconducting coils. If superconductivity is suddenly lost and the copper takes over the conduction, how long will it take for the current to drop below 250 A?
36. **Example 27.8:** You're designing a superconducting cable intended to carry 12.5 kA. The cable's self-inductance is 22.0 mH. Embedded copper wire is included to handle the current in the event that superconductivity is lost, and your job is to specify the minimum resistance for the copper under the requirement that the current will drop to 6.25 kA in less than 10 s after loss of superconductivity. (a) What resistance do you specify? (b) What will be the power dissipation in the copper immediately after loss of superconductivity?

Problems

37. A conducting loop with area 0.14 m^2 and resistance $9.0\ \Omega$ lies in the x - y plane. A spatially uniform magnetic field points in the z -direction. The field varies with time according to $B_z = at^2 - b$, where $a = 2.1\text{ T/s}^2$ and $b = 8.2\text{ T}$. Find the loop current (a) at $t = 1.5\text{ s}$ and (b) when $B_z = 0$.

38. A square wire loop of side l and resistance R is pulled with constant speed v from a region of no magnetic field until it's fully inside a region of constant, uniform magnetic field $\vec{B}$ perpendicular to the loop plane. The boundary of the field region is parallel to one side of the loop. Find an expression for the total work done by whatever is pulling the loop.
39. A 5-turn coil 1.0 cm in diameter is rotated at 10 rev/s about an axis perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field. A voltmeter connected to the coil through rotating contacts reads a peak value 360 μV . What's the magnetic field strength?
40. A spatially uniform magnetic field points in the $+z$ -direction and is increasing in strength at the rate of 1.65 T/ms. Find the (a) the induced emf and (b) the current in a square conducting loop 16.4 cm on a side lying in the x - y plane, with resistance 19.3 Ω . (c) Is the current clockwise or counterclockwise when the loop is viewed looking down on the x - y plane?
41. A square wire loop 2.6 m on a side is perpendicular to a uniform 2.5-T magnetic field. A 7-V lightbulb is in series with the loop, as shown in Fig. 27.38. The magnetic field is reduced steadily to zero over time Δt . (a) Find Δt such that the bulb will shine at full brightness. (b) Which way will the loop current flow?

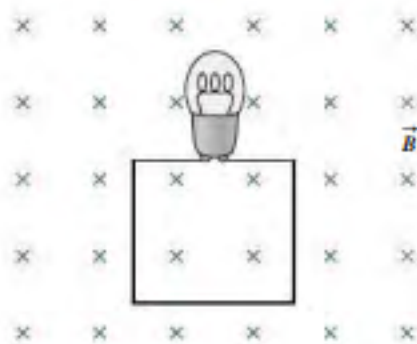


FIGURE 27.38 Problem 41

42. In Example 27.2 take $a = 1.0$ cm, $w = 3.5$ cm, and $l = 6.0$ cm. Suppose the rectangular loop is a conductor with resistance 50 m Ω , and the current I in the long wire is increasing at 25 A/s. Find the induced current in the loop. What's its direction?
43. A 2000-turn solenoid is 2.0 m long and 15 cm in diameter. The solenoid current is increasing at 1.0 kA/s. (a) Find the current in a 10-cm-diameter wire loop with resistance 5.0 Ω lying inside the solenoid and perpendicular to the solenoid axis. (b) Repeat for a loop whose diameter is 25 cm, so it now encircles the solenoid rather than lying inside it.
44. A *stent* is a cylindrical tube, often made of metal mesh, that's inserted into a blood vessel to overcome a constriction. It's sometimes necessary to heat the stent after insertion to prevent cell growth that could cause the constriction to recur. One method is to place the patient in a changing magnetic field so that induced currents heat the stent. Consider a stainless-steel stent 12 mm long by 5.0 mm in diameter, with total resistance 49 m Ω . Treating the stent as a wire loop in the optimum orientation, find the rate of change of magnetic field needed for a heating power of 240 mW.
45. A uniform magnetic field is given by $\vec{B} = bt\hat{k}$, where $b = 0.36$ T/s. Find the induced current in a conducting loop with area 200 cm² and resistance 0.30 Ω that lies in the x - y plane. In what direction is the current, as viewed from the positive z -axis?
46. You're an electrical engineer designing an alternator (the generator that charges a car's battery). Mechanical engineers specify a 10-cm-diameter rotating coil, and you determine that you can fit 250 turns in this coil. To charge a 12-V battery, you need a peak output of 14 V when the alternator is rotating at 1800 rpm. What do you specify for the alternator's magnetic field?
47. A generator consists of a rectangular coil 75 cm by 1.2 m spinning in a 0.17-T magnetic field. If it's to produce a 50-Hz alternating emf with peak value 6.7 kV, how many turns must it have?
48. A flexible conducting loop of diameter d_0 and resistance R lies perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field $\vec{B}$. At time $t = 0$ the loop begins to expand, with its diameter given by $d(t) = d_0 + bt$, where b is a constant. The loop's resistance doesn't change as it expands. Find an expression for the current in the loop as a function of time.
49. In Fig. 27.9 (with Example 27.4), take $l = 10$ cm, $B = 0.50$ T, $R = 4.0$ Ω , and $v = 2.0$ m/s. Find (a) the current in the resistor, (b) the magnetic force on the bar, (c) the power dissipation in the resistor, and (d) the mechanical power supplied by the agent pulling the bar. Compare your answers to parts (c) and (d).
50. The magnetic field inside a solenoid of circular cross section is given by $\vec{B} = bt\hat{k}$, where $b = 3.0$ T/ms. At time $t = 0.30$ μs , a proton is inside the solenoid at $x = 5.2$ cm, $y = z = 0$, and is moving with velocity $\vec{v} = 4.7\hat{j}$ Mm/s. Find the electromagnetic force on the proton.
51. An electron is inside a solenoid, 28 cm from the axis. It experiences a 1.3-fN electric force. At what rate is the solenoid's magnetic field changing?
52. During lab, you're given a circular wire loop of resistance R and radius a with its plane perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field. You're supposed to increase the field strength from B_1 to B_2 and measure the total charge that moves around the loop. Your lab partner claims that the details of how you vary the field will make a difference in the total charge; your hunch is that it won't. By integrating the loop current over time, determine who's right.
53. A *flip coil* is used to measure magnetic fields. It's a small coil placed with its plane perpendicular to a magnetic field, and then flipped through 180°. The coil is connected to an instrument that measures the total charge Q that flows during this process. If the coil has N turns, area A , and resistance R , show that the field strength is $B = QR/2NA$.
54. The current in a series RL circuit rises to 75% of its final value in 1.87 s. If the resistance is 2.70 Ω , what's the inductance?
55. In a series RL circuit like Fig. 27.23a, $\mathcal{E}_0 = 45$ V, $R = 3.3$ Ω , and $L = 2.1$ H. If the current is 9.5 A, how long has the switch been closed?
56. In Fig. 27.23a, take $R = 2.5$ k Ω and $\mathcal{E}_0 = 50$ V. When the switch is closed, the current through the inductor rises to 10 mA in 30 μs . Find (a) the inductance and (b) the current in the circuit after many time constants.
57. How long does it take to dissipate 90% of the magnetic energy in Example 27.9?
58. A series RL circuit like Fig. 27.23a has $\mathcal{E}_0 = 60$ V, $R = 22$ Ω , and $L = 1.5$ H. Find the rate of change of the current (a) immediately after the switch is closed and (b) 100 ms later.
59. You're a safety engineer reviewing plans for a university's new high-rise dorm. The elevator motors draw 20 A and behave electrically like 2.5-H inductors. You're concerned about dangerous voltages developing across the switch when a motor is turned off, and you recommend that a resistor be wired in parallel with each motor. (a) What should be the resistance in order to limit the induced emf to 100 V? (b) How much energy will the resistor dissipate?
60. In Fig. 27.26, take $\mathcal{E}_0 = 11$ V, $R = 3.0$ Ω , and $L = 18$ H. Initially the switch is in position B and there's no current anywhere. At $t = 0$ the switch is thrown to position A , and, at $t = 15$ s, it's returned to B . Find the inductor current at (a) $t = 7.50$ s and (b) $t = 22.5$ s.

61. In Fig. 27.39, take $\mathcal{E}_0 = 12\text{ V}$, $R_1 = 4.0\ \Omega$, $R_2 = 8.0\ \Omega$, and $R_3 = 2.0\ \Omega$. Find current I_2 (a) immediately after the switch is first closed and (b) a long time later. (c) After a long time, the switch is reopened. Now what's I_2 ?

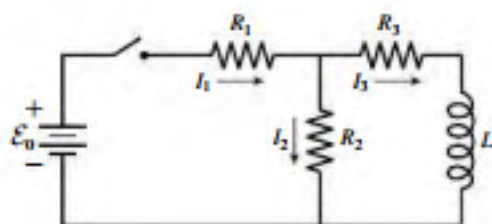


FIGURE 27.39 Problem 61

62. A battery, switch, resistor, and inductor are connected in series. When the switch is closed, the current rises to half its steady-state value in 1.0 ms . How long does it take for the magnetic energy in the inductor to rise to half its steady-state value?
63. When a nonideal, 1.5-H inductor is short-circuited, its magnetic energy drops to one-fourth of its original value in 3.3 s . What is its resistance?
64. Your hospital is installing a new MRI scanner using a 4.0-H superconducting solenoid carrying 1.6 kA . Copper is embedded in the coils to carry the current in the event of a quench (see Example 27.9). As safety officer, you're to specify (a) the maximum resistance that will limit power dissipation to 100 kW immediately after a loss of superconductivity and (b) the time it will take the power to drop to 50 kW . What specs do you give?
65. A neutron star's magnetic field is about 10^8 T . Consult Appendix C to compare the energy density in this field with that of (a) gasoline and (b) pure uranium-235 (mass density $19 \times 10^3\text{ kg/m}^3$).
66. A single-turn loop of radius R carries current I . How does the magnetic-energy density at the loop center compare with that of a long solenoid of the same radius, carrying the same current, and consisting of n turns per unit length?
67. A wire of radius R carries current I distributed uniformly over its cross section. Find an expression for the total magnetic energy per unit length *within* the wire.
68. (a) Use Equation 27.8 to write an expression for the resistor's power dissipation as a function of time, and (b) integrate from $t = 0$ to $t = \infty$ to show that the total energy dissipated is equal to the energy initially stored in the inductor.
69. An electric field and a magnetic field have the same energy density. Find an expression for the ratio E/B and evaluate this ratio numerically. What are its units? Is your answer close to any of the fundamental constants listed inside the front cover?
70. A rectangular conducting loop of resistance R , mass m , and width w falls into a uniform magnetic field as shown in Fig. 27.40. (a) Explain why the loop eventually reaches a terminal speed. (b) Find an expression for the terminal speed.



FIGURE 27.40 Problem 70

71. A conducting disk with radius a , thickness h , and resistivity ρ is inside a solenoid of circular cross section, its axis coinciding with the solenoid axis. The magnetic field in the solenoid is given by $B = bt$, where b is a constant. Find expressions for (a) the current density in the disk as a function of the distance r from the disk center and (b) the power dissipation in the entire disk. (Hint: Consider the disk as consisting of infinitesimal conducting loops.)
72. A long, straight coaxial cable consists of two thin, tubular conductors, the inner of radius a and the outer of radius b . Current I flows out along one conductor and back along the other. Show that the self-inductance per unit length of the cable is $\frac{\mu_0}{2\pi} \ln(b/a)$.
73. The table below shows the current in a circuit like that of Fig. 27.26, where a current has been established with the switch in position A, and then it's thrown to position B at time $t = 0$. The resistance is $180\ \Omega$. Determine an appropriate function of current that, when plotted against time, should produce a straight line. Make your plot, determine a best-fit line, and use its slope to find the inductance in the circuit.

Time (ms)	0	20.0	40.0	60.0	80.0	100.0
Current (mA)	66.5	23.0	9.15	3.56	1.50	0.450

74. A circular wire loop of radius a and resistance R is pulled with constant speed v into a uniform magnetic field B . The loop is perpendicular to the field, and it begins entering the field at time $t = 0$. Find an expression for the current in the loop from $t = 0$ until the loop is fully immersed in the field.
75. Suppose the bar in Problem 31 has mass m and starts at rest at time $t = 0$. As it begins moving under the influence of the magnetic force, an emf arises, as in Example 27.4, that opposes the battery's emf. (a) Write an expression for the current in the circuit as a function of the time-dependent speed $v(t)$ and other quantities given in Problem 31. (b) Apply Equation 26.5 to your result from (a) to find an expression for the magnetic force on the bar. (c) Use your result from (b) in Newton's second law to get an equation of motion for the bar. Your equation will involve both $v(t)$ and its time derivative. (d) Show by direct substitution that the expression $v(t) = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{Bl}(1 - e^{-B^2 R t / m R})$ satisfies your equation, and (e) show that this solution gives the result of Problem 31 as $t \rightarrow \infty$.
76. Use the node and loop laws to determine the current in R_2 as a function of time after the switch is closed in Conceptual Example 27.1.
77. (a) Find the magnetic-energy density as a function of radial distance for the coaxial cable of Problem 72, and integrate over the volume between the conductors to show that the total energy per unit length of the cable is given by $(\mu_0 I^2 / 4\pi) \ln(b/a)$. (b) Use the expression $U = \frac{1}{2} L I^2$ to find the inductance per unit length, and show that your result agrees with that of Problem 72.
78. You're flying during a long weekend in the semester when you're studying electromagnetism. You realize that a motional emf should be induced in the plane's wings as it flies through Earth's magnetic field, and you wonder if this would be enough to supply the 5 V needed to charge your cellphone. You're flying at 850 km/h in an A330 jetliner whose wingspan is 60 m . The component of Earth's magnetic field perpendicular to the plane's velocity is $30\ \mu\text{T}$. If you could connect your phone to the wingtips, could you charge your phone?

79. **BIO** One way to measure blood flow when blood vessels are exposed during surgery is to use an *electromagnetic flowmeter*. This device surrounds the blood vessel with an electromagnet, creating a magnetic field perpendicular to the blood flow. Since blood is a modest conductor, a motional emf develops across the blood vessel. Given vessel diameter d , magnetic field B , and voltage V measured across the vessel, show that the volume blood flow is given by $\pi d^2 V / 4 B d$.

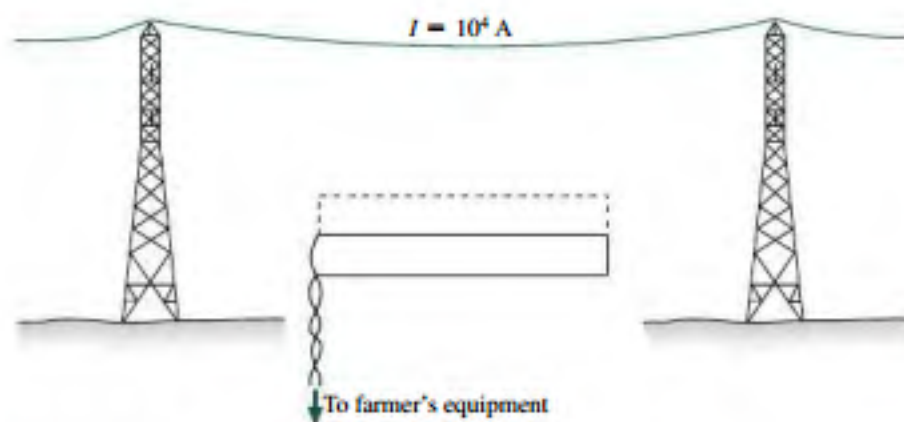


FIGURE 27.41 Crime scene for Passage Problems 80–83

Passage Problems

Farmers with power lines crossing their land have been known to steal power by stringing wire near the power line and making use of the induced current. At least one such crime went to court and resulted in a conviction—despite the defense's claim that the defendant didn't touch the lines. Figure 27.41 shows a possible crime scene, with a rectangular wire loop mounted in a vertical plane beneath a power line. The power line carries a current of 10^4 A, alternating sinusoidally at 50 Hz.

80. If the loop were mounted in a horizontal rather than vertical plane at the same distance from the power line, the induced emf would
- increase slightly.
 - decrease slightly.
 - remain the same.
 - become essentially zero.
81. If the loop's vertical dimension were doubled by extending it toward the power line (dashed line in Fig. 27.41), the induced emf would
- double.
 - quadruple.
 - more than double but not quadruple.
 - increase but not quite double.

82. Suppose the same crime were committed in North America, where the standard frequency is 60 Hz. Assuming everything else about the situation were the same, the induced emf would
- be greater.
 - be less.
 - be unchanged.
 - depend on the nature of the energy source.
83. When this crime occurs,
- more fuel must be consumed at the power plant supplying the line.
 - the power company does not suffer any economic damage.
 - the power company can't determine that it's being robbed without an on-site inspection.
 - there's no power left for customers further down the line.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The energy was stored in the Sun's magnetic field. The power grid was disrupted by surges of current induced by changes in Earth's magnetic field in response to the solar outburst. Normally, electricity is generated by moving electrical conductors in magnetic fields. All three of these answers involve electromagnetic induction.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 27.1 (1) Opposite the direction shown in Fig. 27.10, but (2) you'll still have to do work.
- 27.2 (b) counterclockwise
- 27.3 (b) It gets harder to turn. Constant rate implies a fixed peak emf, so lowering the resistance increases the current and therefore the power.
- 27.4 (b) The penny hits with a slower speed because eddy currents dissipate some of its kinetic energy.
- 27.5 Changing current in the long wire produces an increasing magnetic field that points into the page at the loop. (1) The loop current opposes the increase in this field by producing a field in its interior that's out of the page. Therefore, the loop current is counterclockwise. (2) The loop current opposes the decrease in the into-the-page field, so it's clockwise.
- 27.6 (a) The current increases because the inductor emf is in such a direction as to oppose the current supplied by the external circuit.
- 27.7 (c)
- 27.8 Left-hand meter reads $2IR$, right-hand meter reads IR —even though they're electrically connected to the same points. There's no contradiction because the field isn't conservative, and electric potential therefore can't be defined unambiguously.

Alternating-Current Circuits

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Capacitors (Section 23.2)
- Resistors and Ohm's law (Section 24.3)
- Inductors (Section 27.4)
- Oscillations and resonance in mechanical systems (Sections 13.2, 13.6, and 13.7)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 28.1 Describe AC voltages and currents in terms of peak and rms amplitudes, frequency, and phase.
- LO 28.2 Describe the behavior of resistors, capacitors, and inductors in AC circuits.
- LO 28.3 Determine resonant frequencies of LC circuits and describe the damping effect of resistance.
- LO 28.4 Evaluate the resonant response of driven RLC circuits.
- LO 28.5 Calculate power in AC circuits and describe the power factor.
- LO 28.6 Describe the operation of transformers and DC power supplies.



Why do most power lines carry alternating current?

So far we've considered electric circuits energized by steady sources like batteries. But many circuits—from household power to audio and video signals to the “clock” that orchestrates events inside your computer—involve time-varying electrical quantities. Here we consider such **alternating-current (AC)** circuits.

28.1 Alternating Current

LO 28.1 *Describe AC voltages and currents in terms of peak and rms amplitudes, frequency, and phase.*

We saw in Chapter 27 how rotational motion in electric generators naturally leads to voltage and current that vary sinusoidally with time. Audio, video, and computer signals have more complicated time dependence, but, as we showed in Fig. 14.17, those signals can be analyzed as sums of sinusoidal terms. Studying circuits with sinusoidally varying electrical quantities therefore provides insights into all AC circuits.

A sinusoidal AC voltage or current is characterized by its amplitude, frequency, and phase constant—the same quantities we developed in Chapter 13 to describe simple harmonic motion. Amplitude is specified by the peak value (V_p or I_p) or the **root-mean-square (rms)** value (V_{rms} or I_{rms}). The rms is an average obtained by squaring the signal, taking the time average, and then taking the square root. For a sine wave, rms and peak values are related by

$$V_{rms} = \frac{V_p}{\sqrt{2}} \quad \text{and} \quad I_{rms} = \frac{I_p}{\sqrt{2}} \quad (28.1)$$

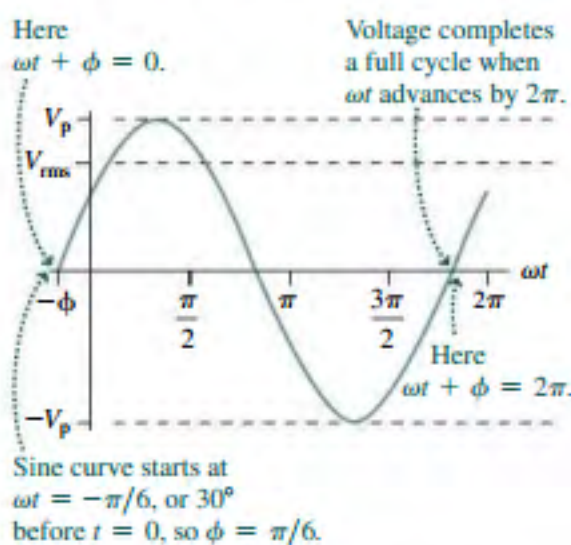


FIGURE 28.1 A sinusoidally varying AC voltage, showing peak and rms amplitudes and phase ϕ .

The 230 V of household wiring in used in most of the world, for example, is the rms value (see Fig. 28.1).

In practical situations we usually describe frequency f in cycles per second, or hertz (Hz). In mathematical analysis it's more convenient to use the angular frequency ω in radians per second or, equivalently, inverse seconds (s^{-1}). The relation between the two,

$$\omega = 2\pi f \quad (28.2)$$

is the same as for rotational and simple harmonic motion, and for the same reason: A full cycle contains 2π radians.

The phase constant ϕ of an AC signal tells when the sine curve crosses zero with positive slope (Fig. 28.1). A full mathematical description of an AC voltage or current then includes its amplitude (V_p or I_p), frequency (ω), and phase constant (ϕ):

$$V = V_p \sin(\omega t + \phi_V) \quad \text{and} \quad I = I_p \sin(\omega t + \phi_I) \quad (28.3)$$

Here we've labeled the phase constants with subscripts V and I to indicate that voltage and current—even in the same circuit element—need not have the same phase.

EXAMPLE 28.1 AC: Characterizing Household Voltage

Standard household wiring in Europe supplies 230 V rms at 50 Hz. Express this mathematically in the form of Equation 28.3, assuming the voltage is rising through zero at time $t = 0$.

INTERPRET We're given an AC voltage in "practical" units, and we're asked to express it in the more mathematical form of Equation 28.3. We identify 230 V as the amplitude V_{rms} , 50 Hz as the frequency f , and the information about timing as describing the phase.

DEVELOP Equation 28.3, $V = V_p \sin(\omega t + \phi_V)$, contains the peak amplitude V_p and angular frequency ω . Equations 28.1, $V_{\text{rms}} = V_p/\sqrt{2}$, and 28.2, $\omega = 2\pi f$, determine these quantities from the values we're given.

EVALUATE Equation 28.1 gives $V_p = \sqrt{2}V_{\text{rms}} = (\sqrt{2})(230 \text{ V}) = 325 \text{ V}$, and Equation 28.2 gives $\omega = 2\pi f = (2\pi)(50 \text{ Hz}) = 314 \text{ s}^{-1}$.

We don't have an equation for phase, but the fact that the sine curve rises through zero at $t = 0$ tells us that $\phi = 0$. So Equation 28.3's description of this AC voltage becomes $V = 325 \sin(314t) \text{ V}$.

ASSESS Make sense? Both the peak voltage and the angular frequency are numerically greater than their more familiar counterparts. That's because the rms voltage is an average, lower than the peak, and because the angular frequency measures radians per second rather than full cycles. In North America, standard household voltage is 120 V rms at 60 Hz, the current values for South Korea are 110 V and 60 Hz and for North Korea, 220 V and 60 Hz, while Japan uses 110-V, 60-Hz power, and much of the rest of the world uses 220–240 V rms at 60 Hz.

GOT IT?

28.1 What are the peak voltage and angular frequency of the 220-V, 50-Hz AC power used in China? (a) 170 V, 20 ms; (b) 350 V, 377 s^{-1} ; (c) 311 V, 314 s^{-1} ; (d) 120 V, 50 ms

28.2 Circuit Elements in AC Circuits

LO 28.2 Describe the behavior of resistors, capacitors, and inductors in AC circuits.

Here we examine separately the AC behavior of resistors, capacitors, and inductors so we can subsequently understand what happens when we combine these elements in AC circuits.

Resistors

An ideal resistor is a device whose current and voltage are proportional: $I = V/R$. Figure 28.2 shows a resistor R connected across an AC generator, making the voltage across the resistor equal to the generator voltage. The generator voltage is described by Equation 28.3, where we take $\phi_V = 0$. Then the current is

$$I = \frac{V}{R} = \frac{V_p \sin \omega t}{R} = \frac{V_p}{R} \sin \omega t$$

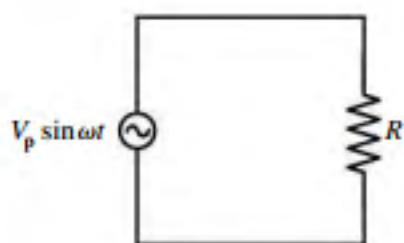


FIGURE 28.2 A resistor connected across an AC generator (symbol $\odot$).

The current has the same frequency as the voltage, and, since its phase constant is also zero, voltage and current are *in phase*—they peak at the same time. The peak current is the peak voltage divided by the resistance: $I_p = V_p/R$. Both voltage and current are sinusoidal, so their rms values are in the same ratio as their peak values; thus $I_{\text{rms}} = V_{\text{rms}}/R$.

Capacitors

Figure 28.3 shows a capacitor connected across an AC generator. In Chapter 23, we saw that voltage and charge are directly proportional in a capacitor: $q = CV$. Differentiating this relation gives

$$\frac{dq}{dt} = C \frac{dV}{dt}$$

But dq/dt is the current flowing to the capacitor plates (which we'll call the "capacitor current" even though charge doesn't actually flow through the space between the plates). So we have $I = C(dV/dt)$. The generator voltage $V_p \sin \omega t$ appears directly across the capacitor, so

$$\begin{aligned} I &= C \frac{d}{dt} (V_p \sin \omega t) \\ &= \omega C V_p \cos \omega t = \omega C V_p \sin \left(\omega t + \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (28.4)$$

Because the cosine curve is a sine curve shifted to the left by $\pi/2$ or 90° , Equation 28.4 tells us that **in a capacitor, current leads voltage by 90°** (Fig. 28.4).

The term $\omega C V_p$ multiplying the cosine in Equation 28.4 is the peak current, so $I_p = \omega C V_p$ or, in a form resembling Ohm's law,

$$I_p = \frac{V_p}{1/\omega C} = \frac{V_p}{X_C} \quad (28.5)$$

where we've defined $X_C = 1/\omega C$.

Equation 28.5 shows that the capacitor acts somewhat like a resistance $X_C = 1/\omega C$. But not quite! This "resistance" gives the relation between peak voltage and peak current, but it doesn't tell the whole story. The capacitor also introduces a phase difference between voltage and current. This phase difference reflects a fundamental physical difference between resistors and capacitors. A resistor dissipates electric energy as heat. A capacitor stores and releases electric energy. Over a complete cycle, the agent turning the generator in Fig. 28.3 does no net work, while the agent turning the generator with the resistive load of Fig. 28.2 continuously does work that gets dissipated as heat in the resistor. We give the quantity X_C in Equation 28.5 the name **capacitive reactance**. Like resistance, reactance is measured in ohms (Ω).

Does it make sense that X_C depends on frequency? Yes. As frequency goes to zero, X_C goes to infinity. At zero frequency nothing is changing; there's no charge moving on or off the plates, and the capacitor might as well be an open circuit. As frequency increases, larger currents flow to move charge on and off the plates in ever-shorter times, so the capacitor looks increasingly like a short circuit. To summarize, a capacitor at low frequencies acts like an open circuit, while at high frequencies it acts like a short circuit.

Why does the capacitor current *lead* the voltage? Because the capacitor voltage is proportional to its charge, and it takes current to move charge onto the capacitor plates. Therefore, current flows *before* the voltage changes significantly. We found this same relation in the RC circuit of Section 25.5, where closing the switch in the circuit of Fig. 25.18 resulted in an immediate current followed by a slow rise in the capacitor voltage.

Inductors

Figure 28.5 shows an inductor connected across an AC generator. The loop law for this circuit is $V_p \sin \omega t + \mathcal{E}_L = 0$. From Chapter 27 we know that the inductor emf is $\mathcal{E}_L = -L(dI/dt)$, so the loop law becomes

$$V_p \sin \omega t = L \frac{dI}{dt}$$

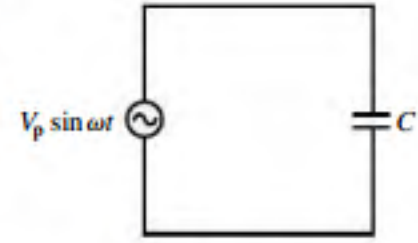


FIGURE 28.3 A capacitor connected across an AC generator.

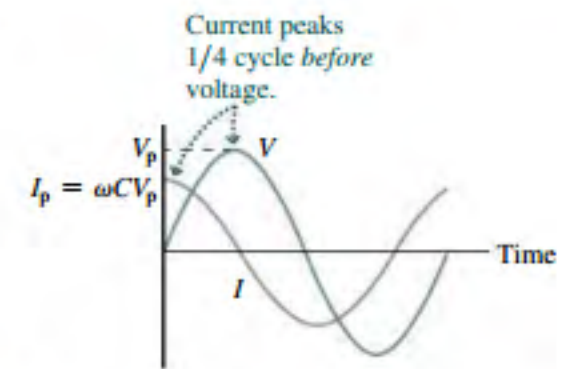


FIGURE 28.4 The current in a capacitor leads the voltage by one-fourth of a cycle, $\pi/2$ radians or 90° .

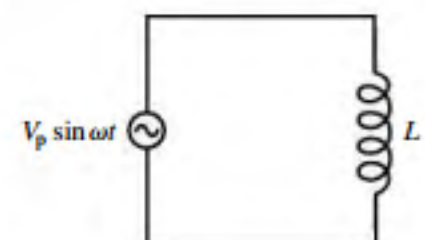


FIGURE 28.5 An inductor connected across an AC generator.

To obtain a relation involving the current I rather than its derivative, we integrate:

$$\int V_p \sin \omega t \, dt = \int L \frac{dI}{dt} \, dt = \int L \, dI = L \int dI = LI$$

The integral of sine is the negative cosine, so

$$-\frac{V_p}{\omega} \cos \omega t = LI$$

Here we've set the integration constants to zero because nonzero values would represent a DC emf and current that aren't in this circuit. Solving for I gives

$$I = -\frac{V_p}{\omega L} \cos \omega t = \frac{V_p}{\omega L} \sin\left(\omega t - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) \tag{28.6}$$

where the last step follows because $\sin(\alpha - \pi/2) = -\cos \alpha$ for any α .

Equation 28.6 shows that current in the inductor lags the voltage by $\pi/2$ or 90° . Equivalently, **the voltage across an inductor leads the inductor current by 90°** (Fig. 28.6). Equation 28.6 also shows that the peak current is

$$I_p = \frac{V_p}{\omega L} = \frac{V_p}{X_L} \tag{28.7}$$

Again, this equation resembles Ohm's law, with **inductive reactance** $X_L = \omega L$. As with the capacitor, no power is dissipated; instead, energy is alternately stored and released as the inductor's magnetic field builds and decays.

Does it make sense that inductive reactance increases with ω and L ? Through its induced back emf, an inductor opposes changes in current. The greater the inductance, the greater the opposition. And the more rapidly the current is changing, the more vigorously the inductor opposes the change, so inductive reactance increases at high frequencies. At very high frequencies, an inductor looks like an open circuit. But at very low frequencies, it looks more and more like a short circuit, until with direct current (zero frequency), an inductor exhibits zero reactance because current isn't changing.

Why does the inductor voltage *lead* the current? Because a changing current in an inductor induces an emf. *Before* the current can build up significantly, there must first, therefore, be a voltage across the inductor.

Table 28.1 summarizes amplitude and phase relations in resistors, capacitors, and inductors.

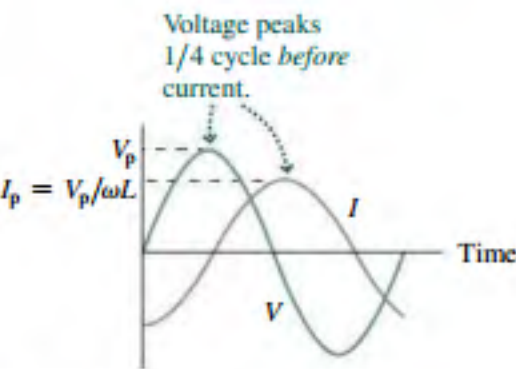


FIGURE 28.6 The voltage across an inductor leads the current by $\pi/2$ or 90° .

Table 28.1 Amplitude and Phase Relations in Circuit Elements

Circuit Element	Peak Current versus Voltage	Phase Relation
Resistor	$I_p = \frac{V_p}{R}$	V and I in phase
Capacitor	$I_p = \frac{V_p}{X_C} = \frac{V_p}{1/\omega C}$	I leads V by 90°
Inductor	$I_p = \frac{V_p}{X_L} = \frac{V_p}{\omega L}$	V leads I by 90°

GOT IT?

28.2 A capacitor and inductor are connected across separate but identical electric generators, and the same current flows in each. If the frequency of the generators is doubled, how will the currents in the two components compare? (a) they will continue to carry equal currents; (b) the capacitor will carry twice as much current as the inductor; (c) the inductor will carry twice as much current as the capacitor; (d) the capacitor will carry four times as much current as the inductor; (e) the inductor will carry four times as much current as the capacitor

EXAMPLE 28.2**Inductors and Capacitors: Equal Currents?***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

A capacitor is connected across a 50-Hz, 230-V rms power line, and an rms current of 600 mA flows. (a) Find the capacitance. (b) What inductance, connected across the same power line, would result in the same current? (c) How would the phases of the inductor and capacitor currents compare?

INTERPRET We're being asked about the relation between AC voltage and current in capacitors and inductors. The idea here is that the voltage–current relation depends not only on the component values but also on frequency, and it involves phase as well as amplitude.

DEVELOP Equations 28.5, $I_{Cp} = V_{Cp}\omega C$, and 28.7, $I_{Lp} = V_{Lp}/\omega L$, relate the peak current and peak voltage in the two devices. Since rms and peak values are proportional, similar equations also relate rms current and voltage. The equations and associated phase relations also appear in Table 28.1.

EVALUATE (a) For the capacitor, we know the voltage and current. Equation 28.5 then gives $C = I_{C\text{rms}}/\omega V_{C\text{rms}} = 8.30 \mu\text{F}$, where we used

$I_{C\text{rms}} = 0.60 \text{ A}$ and $\omega = 2\pi f = 314 \text{ s}^{-1}$ as we found in Example 28.1 for 50-Hz AC power. (b) For an inductor to pass the same current, it must have the same reactance; comparing Equations 28.5 and 28.7 shows that $\omega L = 1/\omega C$, or

$$L = \frac{1}{\omega^2 C} = \frac{1}{(314 \text{ s}^{-1})^2 (8.30 \mu\text{F})} = 1.22 \text{ H}$$

(c) Table 28.1 shows that the capacitor current *leads* the voltage by 90° , while the inductor current *lags* by 90° ; therefore, the capacitor and inductor currents must be out of phase by 180° or π radians.

ASSESS Our expression for L shows that a larger capacitor would require a smaller inductor for the same current. That's because a larger capacitor has *lower* reactance and so passes more current at a given frequency. But an inductor is the opposite: A larger inductor has *higher* reactance. So at a fixed frequency, the inductance required for a given current scales inversely with the capacitance required for the same current.

Phasor Diagrams

Phasor diagrams summarize phase and amplitude relations in AC circuits. A **phasor** is an arrow whose length represents the amplitude of an AC voltage or current, rotating counterclockwise with the angular frequency ω of the AC quantity. The phasor's component on either axis represents the sinusoidally varying AC quantity. We'll use the vertical axis; others, especially electrical engineers, may use the horizontal.

Figure 28.7a shows phasors for current and voltage in a resistor. Since current and voltage are in phase in a resistor, the two phasors point in the same direction. For capacitors and inductors, current and voltage phasors are at right angles, indicating 90° phase differences (Fig. 28.7b, c). The phasor magnitudes are related by $V_p = I_p X$, with X being the appropriate reactance. As they rotate, the phasors' vertical components trace out current and voltage graphs like those of Figs. 28.4 and 28.6. You should convince yourself that the relations of Table 28.1 are correctly described by the phasor diagrams of Fig. 28.7.

Capacitors and Inductors: A Comparison

Capacitors and inductors are complementary. A capacitor opposes instantaneous changes in voltage; an inductor opposes instantaneous changes in current. In an RC circuit, voltage builds up across the capacitor. In an RL circuit, current builds up in the inductor. Similar

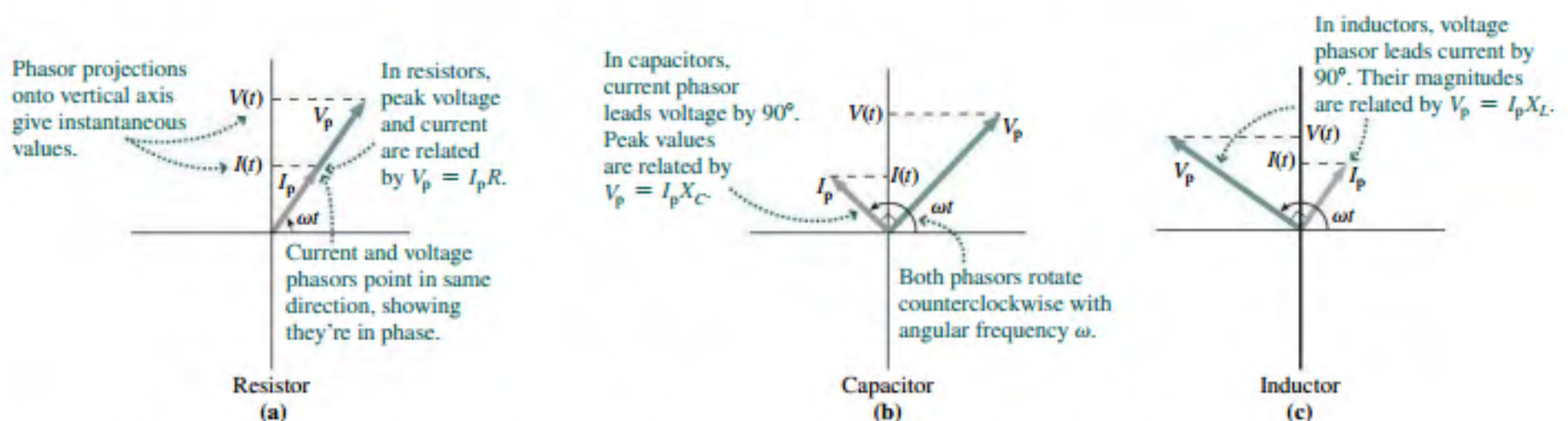


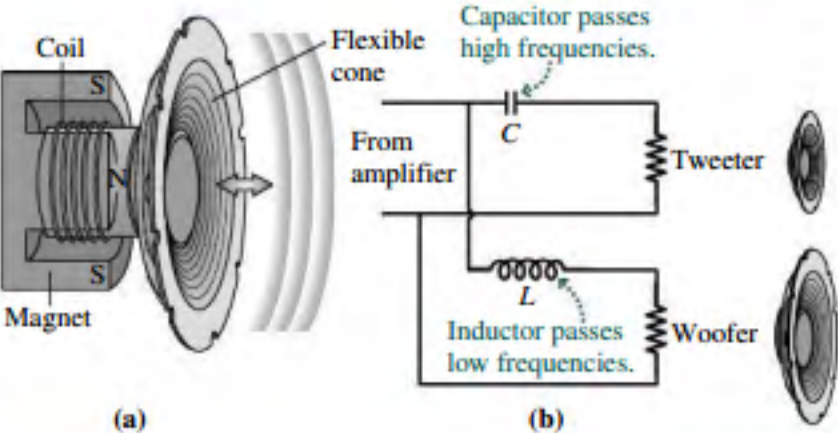
FIGURE 28.7 Phasor diagrams showing voltage and current in (a) a resistor, (b) a capacitor, and (c) an inductor. In all three diagrams both phasors rotate counterclockwise with angular frequency ω .

curves describe capacitor voltage and inductor current over time. A capacitor stores electric energy $\frac{1}{2} CV^2$. An inductor stores magnetic energy $\frac{1}{2} LI^2$. A capacitor acts like an open circuit at low frequencies, and an inductor acts like a short circuit at low frequencies. Each exhibits the opposite behavior at high frequencies. These comparisons reflect a deeper complementarity between electric and magnetic fields. Any verbal description of a capacitor applies to an inductor if we replace the words “capacitor” with “inductor,” “electric” with “magnetic,” and “voltage” with “current.” Table 28.2 summarizes the complementary aspects of capacitors and inductors.

Table 28.2 Capacitors and Inductors

	Capacitor	Inductor
Defining relation	$C = \frac{q}{V}$	$L = \frac{\Phi_B}{I}$
Defining relation; differential form	$I = C \frac{dV}{dt}$	$\mathcal{E} = -L \frac{dI}{dt}$
Opposes changes in	Voltage	Current
Energy storage	In electric field $U = \frac{1}{2} CV^2$	In magnetic field $U = \frac{1}{2} LI^2$
Behavior in low-frequency limit	Open circuit	Short circuit
Behavior in high-frequency limit	Short circuit	Open circuit
Reactance	$X_C = 1/\omega C$	$X_L = \omega L$
Phase	Current leads voltage by 90°	Voltage leads current by 90°

APPLICATION Loudspeaker Systems



Loudspeakers convert electric energy to sound, using the magnetic force on a coil that fits loosely around a permanent magnet. Part (a) of the figure shows that the coil is attached to a flexible cone. Cone and coil move back and forth as AC current corresponding to the audio signal flows in the coil, resulting in a time-varying magnetic force. The moving cone disturbs the air, producing sound waves.

Most loudspeaker systems include at least two separate units. A small *tweeter* produces high-frequency sound, while a larger, more massive *woofer* handles the low frequencies. A *crossover network* uses inductors and capacitors to “steer” the high- and low-frequency signals to the appropriate speakers. As the circuit diagram in part (b) shows, an inductor in series with the woofer blocks high frequencies but lets low frequencies pass unimpeded; a capacitor in series with the tweeter does the opposite. This circuit is an example of a *filter*, used in electronic systems to pass preferentially a range of frequencies.

28.3 LC Circuits

LO 28.3 Determine resonant frequencies of LC circuits and describe the damping effect of resistance.

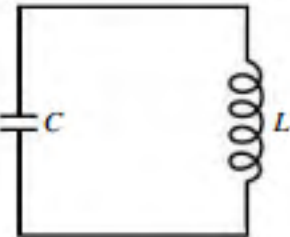


FIGURE 28.8 An LC circuit.

Suppose we charge a capacitor to some voltage V_p and corresponding charge q_p , and then connect it across an inductor, as shown in Fig. 28.8. The capacitor contains stored electric energy, but initially there’s no current in the inductor and so no stored magnetic energy (Fig. 28.9a). The capacitor begins to discharge through the inductor, but slowly at first because the inductor opposes changes in current. Gradually the current rises, and with it the magnetic energy in the inductor. The capacitor voltage, charge, and stored energy decrease. At some time the initial energy is divided equally between capacitor and inductor (Fig. 28.9b). But the capacitor keeps discharging, eventually reaching zero charge (Fig. 28.9c). Now all the energy that was originally in the electric field of the capacitor is in the magnetic field of the inductor.

Does everything stop at this point? No, because there’s current in the inductor, and inductor current can’t change instantaneously. So the current keeps flowing and begins

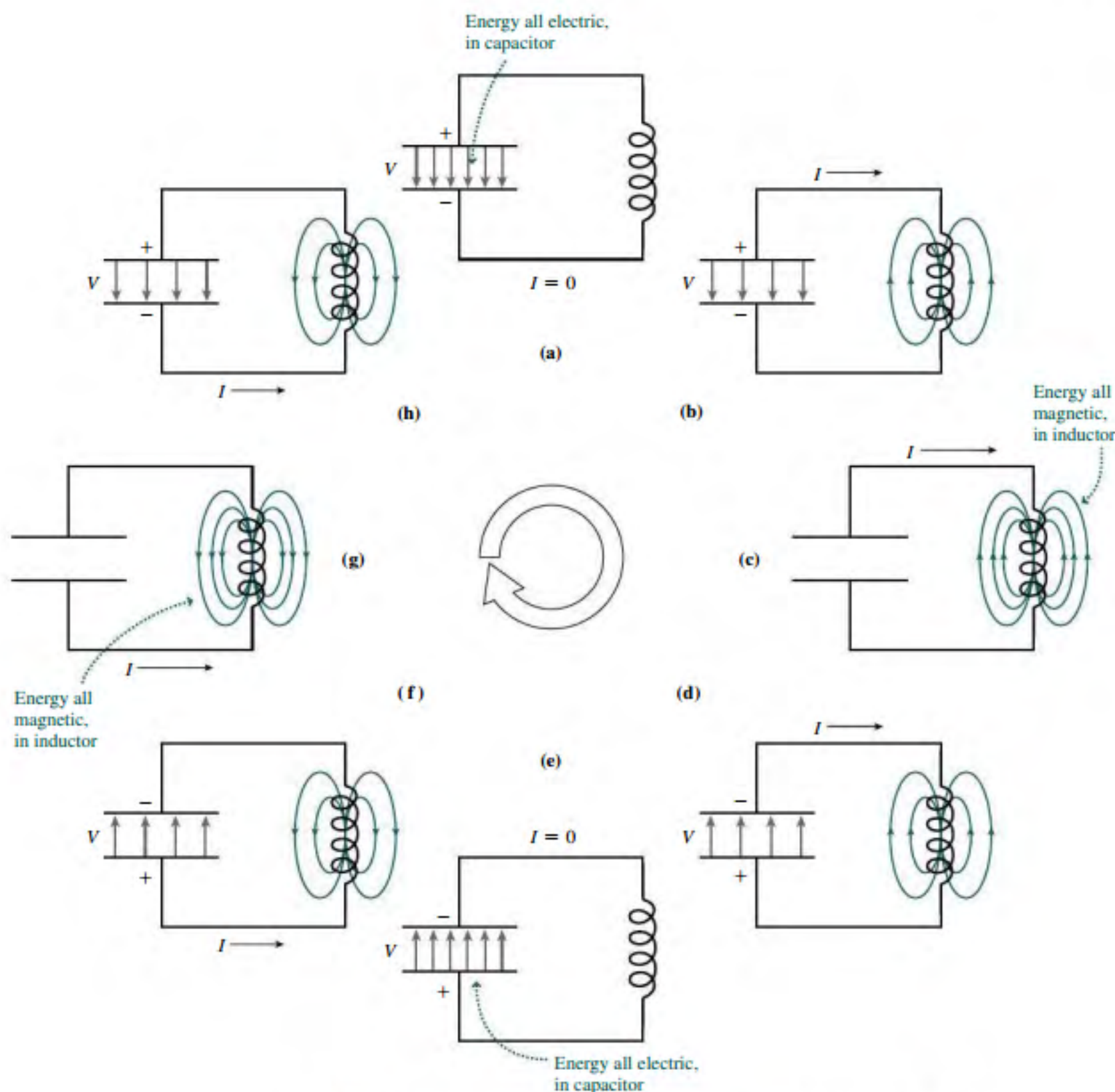


FIGURE 28.9 LC oscillations transfer energy between electric and magnetic fields.

piling positive charge on the bottom plate of the capacitor (Fig. 28.9d). Stored electric energy increases, and current and magnetic energy both decrease. Eventually the capacitor is fully charged but opposite its initial state (Fig. 28.9e). Again all the energy is in the capacitor. Now the capacitor begins to discharge, and the process repeats, with a counter-clockwise current (Fig. 28.9f). All the energy is transferred to the inductor (Fig. 28.9g), and then back to the capacitor (Fig. 28.9a again). The circuit is now back to its initial state. Provided there's no energy loss, the oscillation repeats indefinitely.

This LC oscillation should remind you of the mass-spring system of Chapter 13. There, energy went back and forth between kinetic energy of the mass and potential energy of the spring. Here, energy goes between magnetic energy of the inductor and electric energy of the capacitor. The mass-spring system oscillates with frequency determined by the mass m and spring constant k . The LC circuit oscillates with frequency determined by the inductance L and capacitance C , as we'll show next. Figure 28.10 illustrates this analogy between the mass-spring system and the LC circuit.

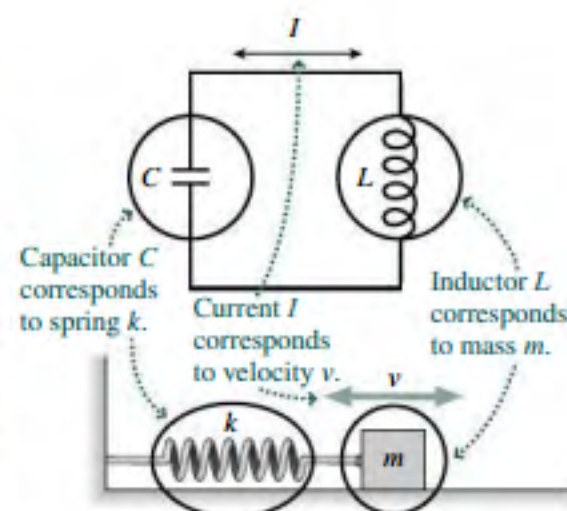


FIGURE 28.10 An LC circuit is the electrical analog of a mass-spring system.

Analyzing the LC Circuit

The total energy in the LC circuit is the sum of magnetic and electric energy:

$$U = U_B + U_E = \frac{1}{2}LI^2 + \frac{1}{2}CV^2$$

In an ideal LC circuit this quantity doesn't change, so its derivative is zero:

$$\frac{dU}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{1}{2}LI^2 + \frac{1}{2}CV^2 \right) = 0$$

Carrying out the differentiation, we have

$$LI \frac{dI}{dt} + CV \frac{dV}{dt} = 0$$

We substitute $V = q/C$, $dV/dt = (1/C)dq/dt$, $I = dq/dt$, and $dI/dt = d^2q/dt^2$ and then divide by I to get

$$L \frac{d^2q}{dt^2} + \frac{1}{C}q = 0 \quad (28.8)$$

This is a differential equation describing capacitor charge q as a function of time. We encountered a similar equation in Chapter 13 for the mass-spring system: $m(d^2x/dt^2) + kx = 0$. The solution there was a sinusoidal oscillation with angular frequency $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$. In Equation 28.8, L replaces m and $1/C$ replaces k ; therefore, the solution to Equation 28.8 is a sinusoidal oscillation:

$$q = q_p \cos \omega t \quad (28.9)$$

with angular frequency

$$\omega = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} \quad (LC \text{ oscillation frequency}) \quad (28.10)$$

is $f = \omega/2\pi$.

L is the inductance and C is the capacitance.

ω is the angular frequency at which an LC circuit oscillates. The frequency

Equation 28.9

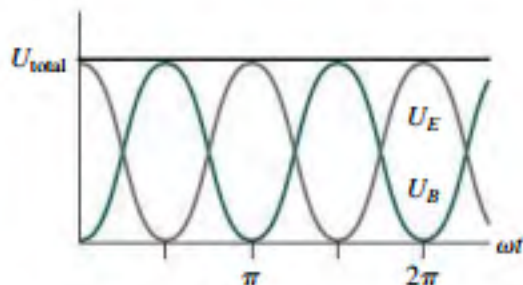


FIGURE 28.11 Electric and magnetic energies in an LC circuit sum to a constant total energy.

readily provides other electrical quantities in the LC circuit. Using $q = CV$ gives the voltage, and differentiating gives $I = dq/dt$. From there you can get the electric and magnetic energies, $U_E = \frac{1}{2}CV^2$ and $U_B = \frac{1}{2}LI^2$. Sum them to verify that the total energy remains constant (Fig. 28.11; see Problem 64 for details).

GOT IT?

28.3 You have an LC circuit that oscillates at a typical AM radio frequency of 1 MHz. You want to change the capacitor so it oscillates at a typical FM frequency, 100 MHz. (1) Should you make the capacitor (a) larger or (b) smaller? (2) By what factor?

EXAMPLE 28.3

An LC Circuit: Tuning a Piano

You wish to make an LC circuit oscillate at 440 Hz (A above middle C) to use in tuning pianos. You have a 25-mH inductor. (a) What value of capacitance should you use? (b) If you charge the capacitor to 5.0 V, what will be the peak current in the circuit?

INTERPRET This problem is about designing an LC circuit for a given frequency; in (b) we want the peak current—that is, the current when all the energy is in the inductor.

DEVELOP Equation 28.10, $\omega = 1/\sqrt{LC}$, relates frequency, capacitance, and inductance; we're given L and f . With $\omega = 2\pi f$, we can solve for C . We've recognized that the peak current comes when all the energy is the magnetic energy $\frac{1}{2}LI^2$ of the inductor. Given the initial capacitor voltage, we can equate this to the initial electric energy $\frac{1}{2}CV^2$ and solve for I .

EVALUATE (a) Equation 28.10 gives $C = 1/\omega^2 L = 1/4\pi^2 f^2 L = 5.23 \mu\text{F}$, where $f = 440 \text{ Hz}$ and $L = 25 \text{ mH}$. (b) Now that we know

C , we equate the peak magnetic energy with the peak electric energy to get $\frac{1}{2}LI^2 = \frac{1}{2}CV^2$. Solving gives

$$I = \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} V = \sqrt{\frac{5.23 \mu\text{F}}{25 \text{ mH}}} (5.0 \text{ V}) = 72 \text{ mA}$$

ASSESS Our expression shows that the higher the initial voltage, the greater the current. That makes sense because a higher initial voltage means greater energy; therefore, a greater current is needed when this energy becomes all magnetic. A larger capacitance also raises the electric energy $\frac{1}{2}CV^2$, while a larger inductance lowers the current needed to achieve the same magnetic energy $\frac{1}{2}LI^2$.

Resistance in LC Circuits—Damping

Real inductors, capacitors, and wires have resistance (Fig. 28.12). If the resistance is low enough that only a small fraction of the energy is lost in each cycle, then the analysis in the preceding discussion applies. The circuit oscillates at a frequency given very nearly by Equation 28.10, but the oscillation amplitude slowly declines as energy is dissipated in the resistance.

We can analyze an RLC circuit by evaluating dU/dt as before, this time setting the result not to zero but to the rate of energy dissipation, $-I^2R$, where the minus sign indicates energy loss from the circuit:

$$\frac{dU}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{1}{2}LI^2 + \frac{1}{2}CV^2 \right) = -I^2R$$

Making the same substitutions as before leads to

$$L \frac{d^2q}{dt^2} + R \frac{dq}{dt} + \frac{q}{C} = 0$$

This is mathematically identical to Equation 13.16 for damped harmonic motion, with L again replacing m , $1/C$ replacing k , and now R replacing the damping constant b . The solution follows by analogy with Equation 13.17, which is the solution to Equation 13.16:

$$q(t) = q_p e^{-Rt/2L} \cos \omega t \quad (28.11)$$

Voltage and current behave similarly, with oscillation amplitude decaying exponentially with time constant $2L/R$ (Fig. 28.13).

As the resistance increases, oscillations decay more rapidly and the frequency of oscillation decreases. Eventually, when the time constant $2L/R$ equals the inverse of the frequency given in Equation 28.10, we have **critical damping**. Then all circuit quantities decay to zero without oscillation, just as we found for mechanical systems. In circuits designed to oscillate, like radio transmitters or TV tuners, engineers want to minimize damping. But in situations where oscillations would be a nuisance, it's important that circuits have enough resistance to suppress oscillation.

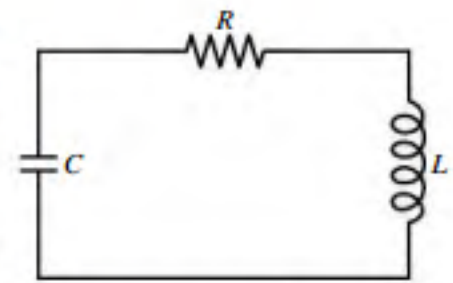


FIGURE 28.12 An RLC circuit.

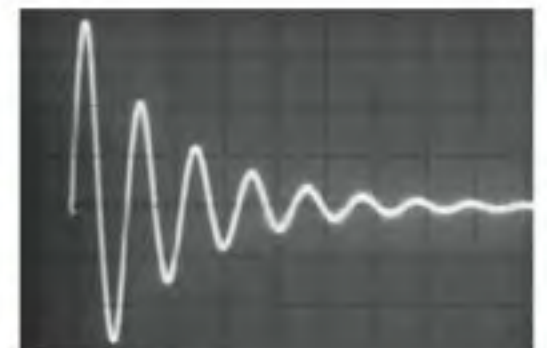


FIGURE 28.13 An oscilloscope displays the capacitor voltage in an RLC circuit.

28.4 Driven RLC Circuits and Resonance

LO 28.4 Evaluate the resonant response of driven RLC circuits.

Figure 28.14 shows an RLC circuit connected across an AC generator. Adding the generator is like adding the external driving force on the mechanical oscillator that we considered in Section 13.7. We'll call the generator frequency ω_d the driving frequency, just as we did in Chapter 13. Pursuing the mechanical analogy, we expect the driven RLC circuit to exhibit resonant behavior as we discussed in Section 13.7. Such electrical resonance is crucial to the operation of radio, TV, and other frequency-specific devices.

Resonance in the RLC Circuit

Suppose we vary the generator frequency ω_d in Fig. 28.14 while keeping the generator's peak voltage constant. At low frequencies the capacitor acts almost like an open circuit (its reactance $X_C = 1/\omega C$ is large), so little current flows. At high frequencies the inductor

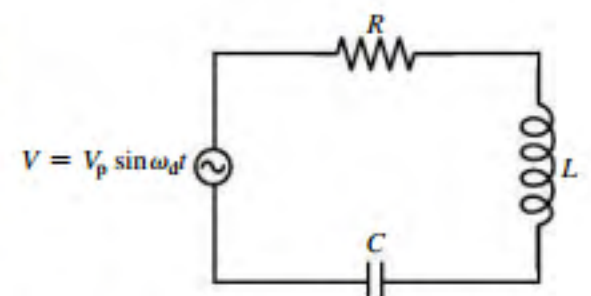


FIGURE 28.14 A series RLC circuit driven by an AC generator.

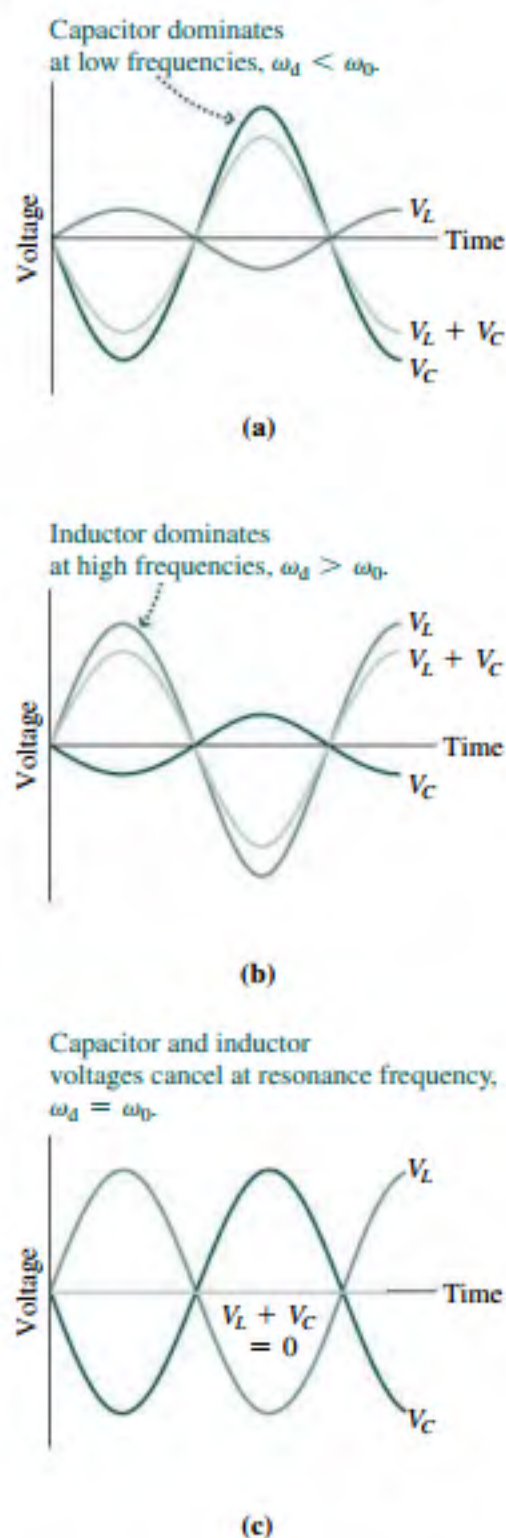


FIGURE 28.15 Capacitor and inductor voltages are always 180° out of phase, but their relative magnitudes vary with frequency.

acts almost like an open circuit (its reactance $X_L = \omega L$ is large), so little current flows. At some intermediate frequency, the current must be a maximum. We now show that this **resonant frequency** is the undamped natural frequency $\omega_0 = 1/\sqrt{LC}$.

Figure 28.14 is a series circuit, so the *same* current flows through all components. The voltage in a capacitor lags the current by 90° , while the voltage in an inductor leads by 90° . Since the same current flows in both series components, the inductor and capacitor voltages are therefore 180° out of phase and thus they tend to cancel (Fig. 28.15). But that cancellation is complete only when the two voltages have the same peak value. Since the current is the same in both components, comparison of Equations 28.5 for the capacitor, $I_p = V_p/X_C$, and 28.7 for the inductor, $I_p = V_p/X_L$, shows that the peak voltages are the same when the capacitive reactance $X_C = 1/\omega C$ equals the inductive reactance $X_L = \omega L$. Equating the reactances gives

$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} \quad (\text{resonant frequency})$$

This is precisely the undamped natural frequency of Equation 28.10.

At resonance the capacitor and inductor voltages completely cancel. The voltage across the pair together is zero and—at the resonant frequency only—the pair might just as well be a wire. At resonance the resistance alone determines the circuit current. At any other frequency the capacitor and inductor voltages don't cancel, and the current is lower.

GOT IT?

28.4 You measure the capacitor and inductor voltages in a driven *RLC* circuit, and find 10 V for the rms capacitor voltage and 15 V for the rms inductor voltage. Is the driving frequency (a) above or (b) below resonance?

Frequency Response of the *RLC* Circuit

Here we'll use a phasor diagram (recall Section 28.2) to find the current in an *RLC* circuit as a function of the driving frequency (Fig. 28.16). Since the same current flows through all elements of this series circuit, a single phasor of length I_p represents the current. The resistor voltage is in phase with the current, so its phasor, V_{Rp} , is in the same direction as I_p . But the inductor voltage leads the current and the capacitor voltage lags, each by 90° , so their phasors, V_{Lp} and V_{Cp} , are perpendicular to the current phasor. At each instant the three voltages sum to give the generator voltage; Fig. 28.16 shows that this sum has magnitude $V_p = \sqrt{V_{Rp}^2 + (V_{Lp} - V_{Cp})^2}$. Expressing this in terms of the common current I_p and the resistance and reactances gives $V_p = \sqrt{I_p^2 R^2 + (I_p X_L - I_p X_C)^2}$. Solving for I_p gives

$$I_p = \frac{V_p}{\sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}} = \frac{V_p}{Z} \quad (28.12)$$

where we've defined the **impedance**, Z , as $Z = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$. Impedance is a generalization of resistance to include frequency-dependent effects of capacitance and inductance. Equation 28.12 is the corresponding generalization of Ohm's law. Impedance is lowest when $X_L = X_C$ or $\omega = 1/\sqrt{LC}$; then it's equal to the resistance alone. But Z becomes large at high frequencies, where $X_L = \omega L$ becomes large, and at low frequencies, where $X_C = 1/\omega C$ is large.

Figure 28.17 plots resonance curves from Equation 28.12, showing peak current versus frequency for three resistance values. With low resistance, the curve peaks sharply. Such a **high-*Q*** (for high-quality) circuit does a good job distinguishing its resonance frequency from nearby frequencies. High-*Q* circuits are important in applications such as radio, TV, and cellphones, where many signals occupy nearby frequencies. With higher resistance, the resonance curve broadens and the circuit responds to a range of frequencies; such a circuit has low *Q*. Problem 68 gives a rigorous definition of *Q*.

Equation 28.12 relates peak current and voltage in the *RLC* circuit, but it doesn't tell the whole story. As Fig. 28.16 shows, current and voltage are out of phase by the angle ϕ .

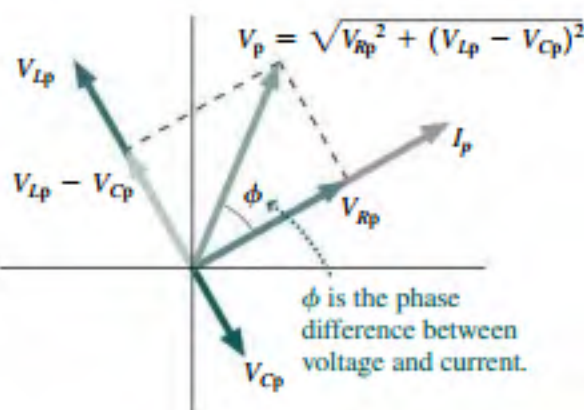


FIGURE 28.16 Phasor diagram for the driven *RLC* circuit, for the case $\omega > \omega_0$.

Trigonometry gives $\tan \phi = (V_{Lp} - V_{Cp})/V_{Rp}$ or, since voltages are proportional to reactances and resistance,

$$\tan \phi = \frac{X_L - X_C}{R} = \frac{\omega L - 1/\omega C}{R} \quad (28.13)$$

where $\phi = \phi_V - \phi_I$ is the phase difference between voltage and current. Positive ϕ means voltage leads current; negative ϕ means current leads voltage.

At resonance, $X_L = X_C$ and $\phi = 0$. Here capacitor and inductor voltages cancel, and the circuit behaves like a pure resistance. At low frequencies, capacitive reactance dominates; here ϕ is negative and the current leads the voltage. This is just what we expect in a capacitive circuit. The opposite is true at high frequencies, where the inductive reactance dominates. Figure 28.18 shows the phase difference as a function of frequency for three resistance values.



PHASE MATTERS You can't analyze AC circuits by treating resistors, capacitors, and inductors all as "resistors" with resistances R , X_C , and X_L . That's because each component has a different phase relation between current and voltage. Phasor diagrams correctly account for these relations, which show up in the minus sign joining capacitive and inductive reactance, and in the Pythagorean addition of resistance and reactance in Fig. 28.16 and Equation 28.12.

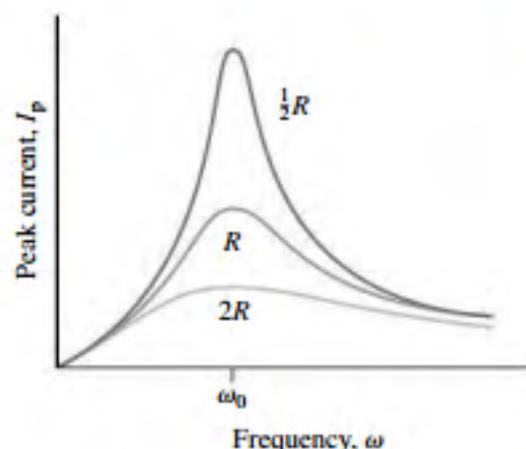


FIGURE 28.17 Resonance curves for an RLC circuit with three different resistances.

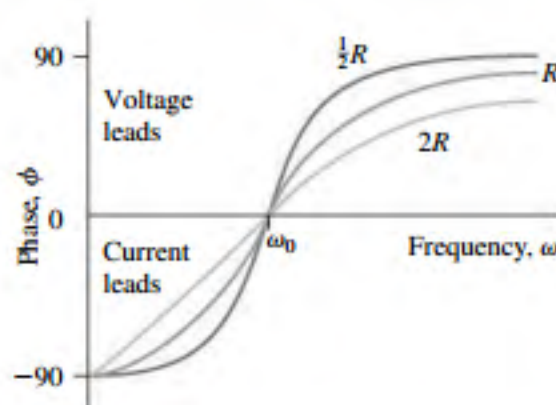


FIGURE 28.18 Phase relations for the RLC circuits whose resonance curves are shown in Fig. 28.17.

EXAMPLE 28.4

An RLC Circuit: Designing a Loudspeaker System

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Current flows to the midrange speaker in a loudspeaker system through a 2.2-mH inductor in series with a capacitor. (a) What should the capacitance be so that a given voltage produces the greatest current at 1.0 kHz? (b) If the same voltage produces half this current at 618 Hz, what is the speaker's resistance? (c) If the peak output voltage of the amplifier is 24 V, what will the peak capacitor voltage be at 1 kHz?

INTERPRET This is a problem about the peak current and voltage in a series RLC circuit, where we identify the speaker as R and the amplifier as the generator in Fig. 28.14.

DEVELOP The peak current is at the resonant frequency of Equation 28.10, $\omega = 1/\sqrt{LC}$, so in (a) we can solve this equation for C . Equation 28.12 relates peak voltage and current to the component values and the frequency, so in (b) we can solve for R . In (c) we'll need to find the current at 1 kHz, and then use Equation 28.5, $I_p = V_p/X_C$, which relates peak voltage and current in a capacitor, to find V_{Cp} .

EVALUATE (a) We solve Equation 28.10 for C , using $\omega = 2\pi f$: $C = 1/[(2\pi f)^2 L]$; with $f = 1.0$ kHz and $L = 2.2$ mH, this gives

$C = 11.5 \mu\text{F}$. (b) Equation 28.12 shows that we'll have half the peak current when Z is twice the value $Z = R$ that it has at resonance. So we want $Z = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2} = 2R$ at the frequency $\omega_2 = (2\pi)(618 \text{ Hz})$. Squaring and solving for R gives

$$R = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \left| \omega_2 L - \frac{1}{\omega_2 C} \right| = 8.0 \Omega$$

where we used $X_L = \omega_2 L$ and $X_C = 1/\omega_2 C$ for the reactances. For (c), note that the impedance at the 1-kHz resonant frequency is just R , so the peak current is $I_p = V_p/R$. Then Equation 28.5 gives the peak capacitor voltage:

$$V_{Cp} = I_p X_C = \left(\frac{V_p}{R} \right) \left(\frac{1}{\omega C} \right) = 42 \text{ V}$$

where V_p is the 24-V peak voltage applied to the circuit and $\omega = 2\pi f$ with $f = 1$ kHz. (This answer is for the 1-kHz resonant frequency; Problem 71 shows that V_{Cp} is actually somewhat higher than 42 V at frequencies just below resonance.)

(continued)

ASSESS Our 43-V answer for (c) is greater than the 24-V peak output of the amplifier, so how can it be right? Remember that there's another source of emf in the circuit—the inductor, whose emf depends on the rate of change of current. Although the capacitor and inductor voltages cancel at resonance, individually both can be higher than

the applied voltage. In this low- Q circuit, the peak capacitor voltage isn't too much higher than the applied voltage, but in high- Q circuits like radio transmitters, capacitors may have to withstand voltages hundreds of times the applied voltage. Incidentally, that 8- Ω answer in (b) is typical of loudspeakers.

28.5 Power in AC Circuits

LO 28.5 Calculate power in AC circuits and describe the power factor.

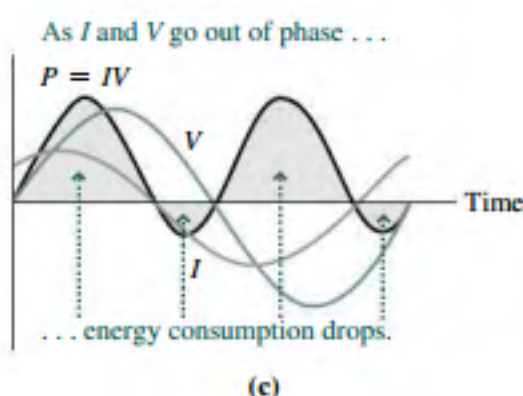
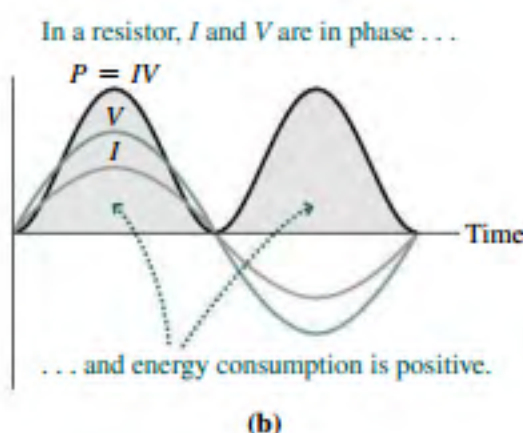
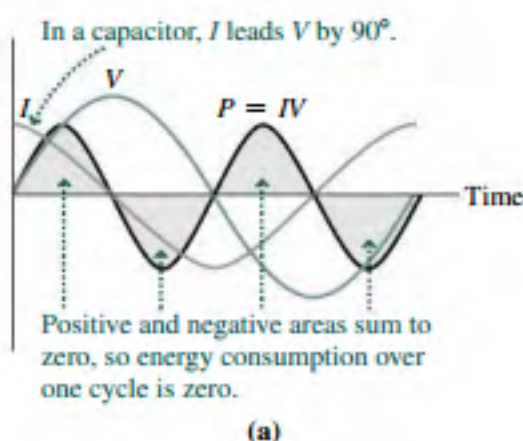


FIGURE 28.19 Energy consumption over one cycle is the area under the curve $P = IV$, with areas below the axis counted as negative.

Capacitors and inductors don't dissipate energy; rather, in an AC circuit they alternately store and release it. Therefore, the average power consumption over one cycle is zero in a purely reactive circuit—one containing only capacitance and/or inductance. You can see this mathematically in Fig. 28.19a, which shows current, voltage, and power—the product IV —over one cycle for a capacitor. Although the capacitor absorbs energy during part of the cycle—when the power is positive—it returns the same amount later (negative power), giving zero net power consumption over the cycle. That's because current and voltage are out of phase, so their product can be negative or positive at different times. In contrast, a resistor's V and I are in phase (Fig. 28.19b), so power is always positive and the resistor takes energy from the circuit. In a circuit containing resistance, capacitance, and inductance, the phase relation between current and voltage depends on the circuit details. Figure 28.19c shows a case where I and V are only slightly out of phase; the result is a net power consumption, but less than with a pure resistance.

We can develop a general expression for power in AC circuits by considering the time-average product of voltage and current with arbitrary phase difference ϕ :

$$\langle P \rangle = \langle [I_p \sin(\omega t - \phi)] [V_p \sin \omega t] \rangle$$

where $\langle \rangle$ indicates a time average over one cycle. Expanding the current term using a trig identity (see Appendix A) gives

$$\langle P \rangle = I_p V_p \langle (\sin^2 \omega t)(\cos \phi) - (\sin \omega t)(\cos \omega t)(\sin \phi) \rangle$$

The average of $(\sin \omega t)(\cos \omega t)$ is zero, as we've just shown for two signals 90° out of phase. The quantity $\sin^2 \omega t$ swings symmetrically from 0 to 1, so its average is $\frac{1}{2}$. Then we have $\langle P \rangle = \frac{1}{2} I_p V_p \cos \phi$. Writing the peak values as $\sqrt{2}$ times the rms values gives

$$\langle P \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{2} I_{\text{rms}} \sqrt{2} V_{\text{rms}} \cos \phi = I_{\text{rms}} V_{\text{rms}} \cos \phi \quad (28.14)$$

This confirms our earlier graphical arguments. When the voltage and current are in phase, the average power is the product $I_{\text{rms}} V_{\text{rms}}$. But with current and voltage out of phase, the average power is lower; at 90° phase difference it's zero.

The factor $\cos \phi$ is the **power factor**. A purely resistive circuit has power factor 1, while a circuit with only inductance and capacitance has power factor 0. In general, the power factor depends on frequency; in the series RLC circuit, for example, it's 1 at resonance but lower at other frequencies.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 28.1 Managing the Power Factor

You're chief engineer for a power company. Should you strive for a high or a low power factor on your lines?

EVALUATE For a given power, Equation 28.14 shows that the product $I_{\text{rms}} V_{\text{rms}}$ will need to be higher as the power factor drops below 1. Your equipment operates at fixed voltage, so that means more current when $\cos \phi < 1$. Power lost in the lines is $I^2 R$, and therefore you'll

have greater transmission loss with a low power factor. Furthermore, you'll risk overloading your lines. So you're best served by keeping the power factor close to 1.

ASSESS Our answer helps explain some real-life power failures: The August 2003 blackout that affected 50 million people in the United States and Canada resulted in part from too low a power factor, resulting in an

overloaded line that drooped from excessive heating, short-circuited to a tree, and triggered chain-reaction failures throughout the power grid.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Transmission losses on a well-managed electric grid average about 8% of the total power delivered. How does this figure change if the power factor drops from 1 to 0.71?

EVALUATE To get the same power down the line, Equation 28.14 shows that the current must increase by $1/\cos\phi = 1/0.71 = 1.4$. The transmission loss is I^2R , so the loss increases by a factor $1.4^2 = 2$. That will more than double the original 8% loss rate, because the line will need to carry still more power to overcome the loss, and the line will heat more, increasing its resistance.

GOT IT?

28.5 A resistor and capacitor are connected in series across an AC generator. If the capacitor is replaced with a second resistor whose resistance is equal to the capacitor's reactance, will the power supplied by the generator (a) increase, (b) decrease, or (c) stay the same?

28.6 Transformers and Power Supplies

LO 28.6 Describe the operation of transformers and DC power supplies.

A **transformer** is a pair of wire coils, often wound on an iron core to concentrate magnetic flux (Fig. 28.20). A changing current in the **primary** coil results in a changing magnetic flux through the **secondary**, and this induces an emf in the secondary. The induced emf, in turn, drives current in any circuit connected across the secondary. Thus the device transfers electric power between two circuits without direct electrical contact.

The transformer in Fig. 28.20 is a **step-up transformer** because it has more turns in its secondary. Since each turn encircles the same changing magnetic flux, each gets the same induced emf, and therefore the emf across the secondary is greater than across the primary. Interchanging primary and secondary in Fig. 28.20 would give a **step-down transformer**. In general, the ratio of the peak (or rms) secondary voltage V_2 to the peak (or rms) primary voltage V_1 is the same as the ratio of turns in the two coils:

$$V_2 = \frac{N_2}{N_1} V_1 \quad (28.15)$$

Aren't we getting something for nothing with a step-up transformer? No. A step-up transformer increases voltage, but not power. An ideal transformer passes all the power supplied to its primary on to the secondary, so $I_1V_1 = I_2V_2$. If voltage goes up, current goes down, and vice versa. Real transformers have losses, but good engineering holds these to a few percent of the total power.

Transformers work only with AC because they use electromagnetic induction and therefore require *changing* current. One reason for the near-universal use of AC power is the ease of changing voltage levels (Fig. 28.21). Relatively low voltages are safer for the end user. But since power $P = IV$, using a higher voltage in long-distance transmission means lower current. Power dissipated in the conductors themselves is I^2R , so that in turn means less power lost in transmission. Transformers readily handle the voltage conversions in AC power systems. Changing the voltage from a DC source, in contrast, requires first interrupting the DC to produce a changing current; a car's ignition system is one example. On a larger scale, improvements in high-power electronics have made high-voltage DC power transmission increasingly competitive over very long distances. DC is more efficient than AC for the longest transmission lines, but it requires electronic circuits that convert AC to DC and back to AC at the other end of the transmission line.

Direct-Current Power Supplies

Lightbulbs and heaters work equally well on AC or DC, but electronic equipment requires DC. In Chapter 24 we found that a junction between *P*- and *N*-type semiconductors passes

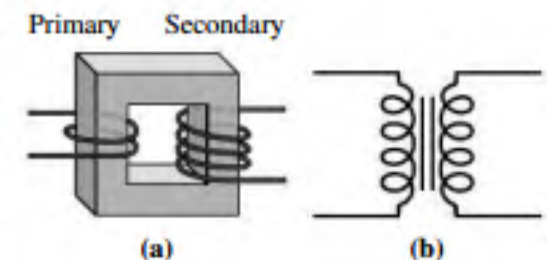


FIGURE 28.20 (a) A transformer consisting of two coils wound on an iron core. (b) Transformer circuit symbol.

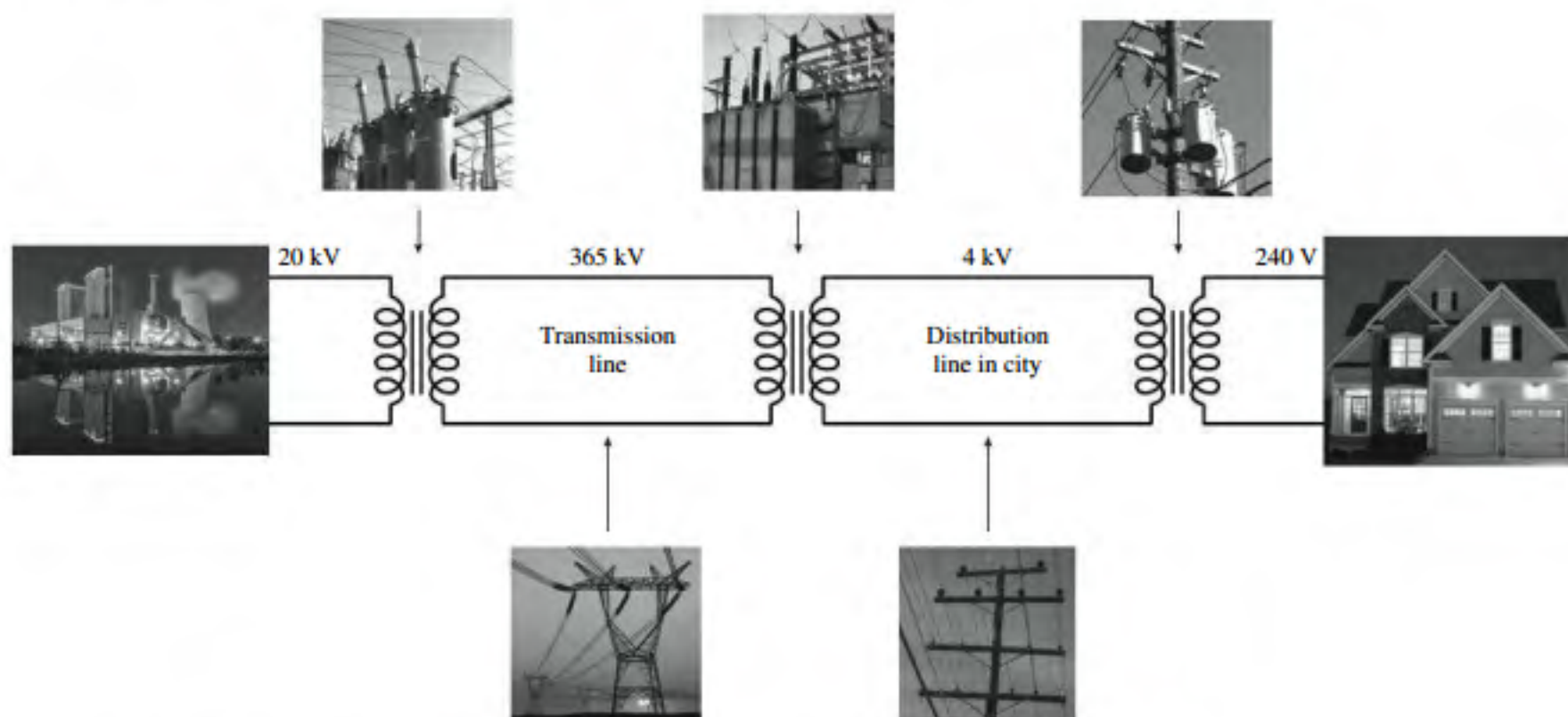


FIGURE 28.21 Transformers change voltage levels throughout the power distribution network.

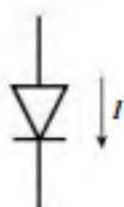


FIGURE 28.22 Circuit symbol for a diode, with preferred current direction indicated.

current in one direction but not the other. A **diode** is a *PN* junction that serves as a “one-way valve” for electric current. An ideal diode acts like a short circuit in the preferred direction, and like an open circuit in the opposite direction (Fig. 28.22).

Figure 28.23a shows a DC power supply using a transformer, diode, and capacitor, delivering power to a load symbolized by the resistor R . The transformer steps the voltage to the desired level, while the diode passes current only in its preferred direction, “chopping off” the negative half of the AC cycle. The capacitor smoothes, or **filters**, the remaining half to produce nearly steady DC. Figure 28.23b shows how this works: As the AC voltage rises, the capacitor charges rapidly through the low resistance of the diode in its “on” state. But the diode “turns off” when the AC voltage drops, leaving only the resistor as a discharge path for the capacitor. If the RC time constant is long enough—much longer than the $1/50$ -s period of the typical 50-Hz AC cycle—then the capacitor voltage hardly drops before the next cycle again sends in a surge of charge. Large capacitors are expensive, so practical power supplies often use additional filtering and voltage regulation involving semiconductor devices.

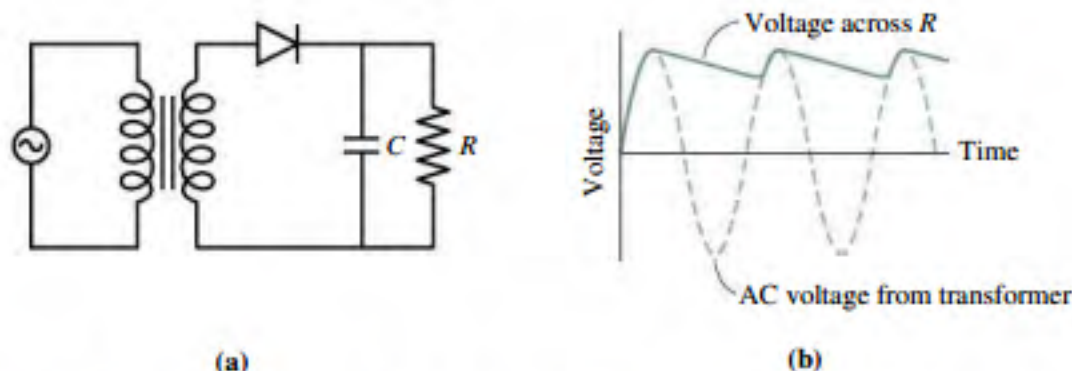


FIGURE 28.23 (a) A simple DC power supply using a diode and capacitive filter. (b) Voltage across R exhibits a variation called *ripple* as the capacitor discharges slightly between cycles. A practical power supply would use a larger capacitor, resulting in less ripple.

GOT IT?

28.6 A distribution line in a city supplies AC power at 7.2 kV to a transformer that steps it down to 240 V for an individual home. If the current in the transformer’s primary is 1.5 A, the current flowing to the home is approximately (a) 3.0 A, (b) 1.5 A, (c) 240 A, or (d) 45 A.

Chapter 28 Summary

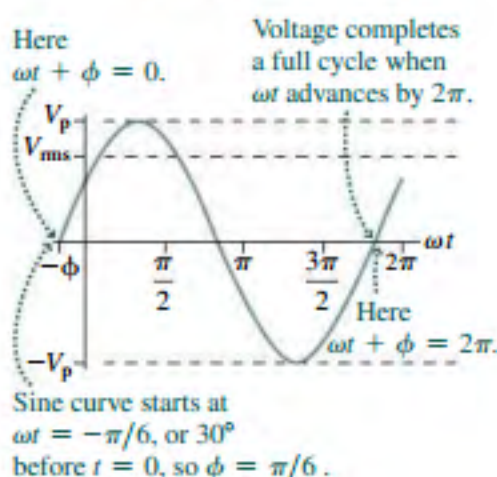
Big Idea

The big idea here is **alternating current (AC)**, which in its simplest form exhibits sinusoidal variation in current and voltage. Resistors respond to AC as to DC, with current directly proportional to voltage. In capacitors and inductors, the current–voltage relation depends on frequency, and the current and voltage are out of phase.

Key Concepts and Equations

An AC voltage or current is characterized by its amplitude (rms or peak value), its frequency, and its phase:

$$V = V_p \sin(\omega t + \phi)$$



Reactance, X , characterizes the relation between peak (or rms) current and voltage in capacitors and inductors:

$$I_p = \frac{V_p}{X}$$

Capacitor:

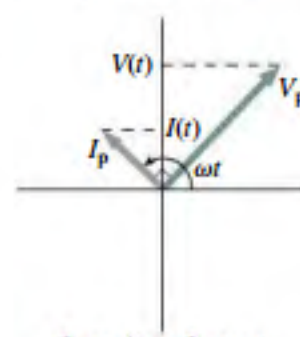
$$X_C = 1/\omega C$$

Inductor:

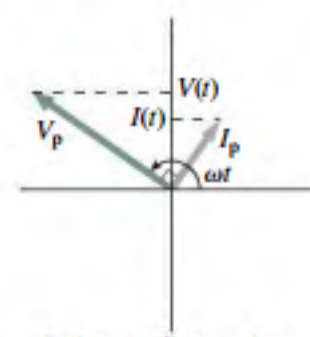
$$X_L = \omega L$$

where $\omega = 2\pi f$ is the angular frequency of the AC voltage and current.

Phasors are arrows used to describe time-varying AC quantities. They rotate with angular velocity equal to the angular frequency ω , and the projection of the phasor on the vertical axis gives the instantaneous value of voltage or current.



Capacitor: Current leads voltage by 90° .

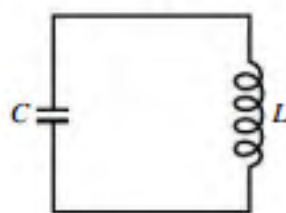


Inductor: Current lags voltage by 90° .

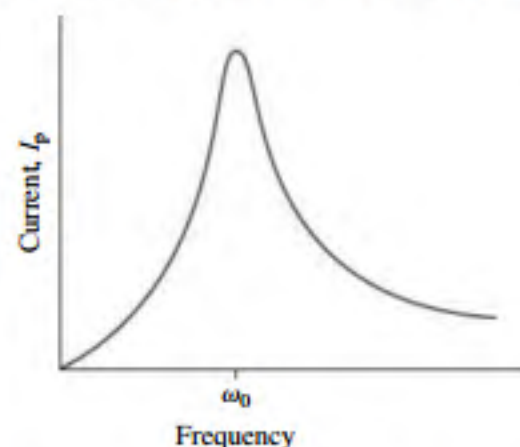
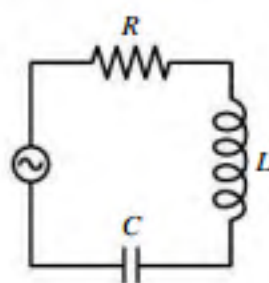
Applications

In an **LC circuit**, energy oscillates between electric and magnetic forms with frequency

$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$



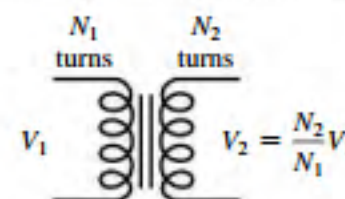
In a series **RLC circuit**, capacitor and inductor voltages cancel at the **resonant frequency**, ω_0 . Here the circuit exhibits the minimum **impedance**, $Z = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$, and passes the maximum current. The phase difference between voltage and current is $\tan \phi = (X_L - X_C)/R$.



The average power in an AC circuit depends on the cosine of the phase difference, also called the **power factor**:

$$\langle P \rangle = I_{\text{rms}} V_{\text{rms}} \cos \phi$$

Transformers use electromagnetic induction to change voltage levels, transferring electric power between two circuits. **Diodes** and capacitive filters change AC to DC.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>LO 28.1 Describe AC voltages and currents in terms of peak and rms amplitudes, frequency, and phase.
<i>Exercises 28.11, 28.12, 28.13; Problems 28.44, 28.69</i></p> <p>LO 28.2 Describe the behavior of resistors, capacitors, and inductors in AC circuits.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 28.1, 28.2, 28.3, 28.4, 28.6; Exercises 28.14, 28.15, 28.16, 28.17, 28.18; Problems 28.41, 28.42, 28.43, 28.45, 28.46, 28.55, 28.66</i></p> <p>LO 28.3 Determine resonant frequencies of LC circuits and describe the damping effect of resistance.
<i>Exercises 28.19, 28.20, 28.21, 28.22; Problems 28.47, 28.48, 28.49, 28.50, 28.51, 28.52, 28.62, 28.64, 28.70</i></p> | <p>LO 28.4 Evaluate the resonant response of driven RLC circuits.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 28.5, 28.7, 28.8, 28.9; Exercises 28.23, 28.24, 28.25, 28.26, 28.27; Problems 28.53, 28.54, 28.55, 28.56, 28.58, 28.63, 28.65, 28.67, 28.68, 28.71</i></p> <p>LO 28.5 Calculate power in AC circuits and describe the power factor.
<i>Exercises 28.28, 28.29, 28.30; Problems 28.57, 28.58, 28.59, 28.60</i></p> <p>LO 28.6 Describe the operation of transformers and DC power supplies.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 28.10; Exercises 28.31, 28.32; Problem 28.61</i></p> |
|---|---|

For Thought and Discussion

- What's meant by the statement, "A capacitor acts like a DC open circuit"?
- Why is an LC circuit dominated by inductors at high frequencies?
- In an AC circuit, why is the resistor always in phase, while the capacitor and inductor are out of phase relative to the phase of the alternating current?
- When a particular inductor and capacitor are connected across the same AC voltage, the current in the inductor is higher than in the capacitor. Is this true at all frequencies?
- An inductor and capacitor are connected in series across an AC generator, and the voltage across the inductor is higher than across the capacitor. Is the generator frequency above or below resonance?
- Why is Equation 28.5 not a full description of the relation between voltage and current in a capacitor?
- The applied voltage in a series RLC circuit lags the current. Is the frequency above or below resonance?
- The voltage across two components in series is zero. Is it possible that the voltages across the individual components *aren't* zero? Give an example.
- If you measure the rms voltages across the resistor, capacitor, and inductor in a series RLC circuit, will they add to the rms generator voltage?
- A step-up transformer increases voltage, or energy per unit charge. Why doesn't this violate energy conservation?

- An AC current is given by $I = 693 \sin(7.54t)$, with I in mA and t in ms. Find (a) the rms current and (b) the frequency in Hz.
- What are the phase constants for the signals in Fig. 28.24?

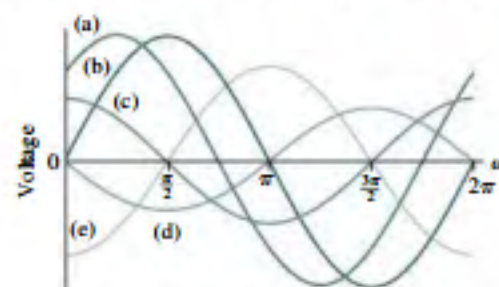


FIGURE 28.24 Exercise 13

Section 28.2 Circuit Elements in AC Circuits

- Find the rms current in a $1.0\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor connected across 230-V rms, 50-Hz AC power.
- A $140\text{-}\Omega$ resistor, $47\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor, and 220-mH inductor are each connected across 6.3-V rms, 50-Hz AC power. Find the rms current in each.
- Find the reactance of a $6.8\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor at (a) 50 Hz, (b) 1.0 kHz, and (c) 20 kHz.
- A $33\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor carries 2.2 A rms. What's its minimum safe voltage rating if the frequency is (a) 50 Hz and (b) 1.0 kHz?
- A capacitor and a $2.9\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor pass the same current when connected across 50-Hz power. Find the capacitance.
- A 50-mH inductor is connected across a 10-V rms AC generator, and a 2.0-mA rms current flows. What's the generator frequency?

Section 28.3 LC Circuits

- Find the resonant frequency of an LC circuit consisting of a $0.22\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor and a 1.7-mH inductor.
- You have a $68.0\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor and you'd like to make an LC circuit that oscillates at 256 Hz. What inductance should you use?
- Your sister who's building the radio (Chapter 27 Exercise 18) wants to use a variable capacitor with her toilet-paper-tube inductor to span the AM radio band (550–1600 kHz). What capacitance range do you suggest?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 28.1 Alternating Current

- North America uses AC power at 120 V rms and 60 Hz. Express this AC voltage in the form of Equation 28.3, taking $\phi_V = 0$.

23. An LC circuit with a $20\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor oscillates with period 5.0 ms . The peak current is 25 mA . Find (a) the inductance and (b) the peak voltage.

Section 28.4 Driven RLC Circuits and Resonance

24. A series RLC circuit has $R = 75\text{ k}\Omega$, $L = 18\text{ mH}$, and resonates at 5.0 kHz . (a) What's the capacitance? (b) Find the circuit's impedance at resonance and (c) at 4.0 kHz .
25. Find the impedance at 10 kHz of a circuit consisting of a $1.5\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor, $6.0\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor, and 55-mH inductor in series.
26. A series RLC circuit has $R = 18\text{ k}\Omega$, $C = 14\text{ }\mu\text{F}$, and $L = 0.20\text{ H}$. (a) At what frequency is its impedance lowest? (b) What's the impedance at this frequency?
27. If the peak voltage applied to produce the curves in Fig. 28.17 is 120 V , and if $R = 10\text{ k}\Omega$, what are the peak currents at resonance for the three curves shown?

Section 28.5 Power in AC Circuits

Section 28.6 Transformers and Power Supplies

28. An electric saw draws 4.1 A rms at 230 V rms . If the current lags the voltage by 32° , what's the saw's power consumption?
29. A 60-W fluorescent lamp has power factor 0.79 and operates from the 230-V rms AC power line. How much current does it draw?
30. An electric water heater draws 20 A rms at 240 V rms and is purely resistive. An AC motor has the same current and voltage, but its inductance causes the voltage to lead the current by 20° . Find the power consumption in each device.
31. For safety, medical equipment connected to patients is often powered by an *isolation transformer*, whose primary is connected to 230-V AC power and whose secondary delivers 230-V power. What's the turns ratio of such a transformer?
32. An exchange student from Canada will spend one semester in Germany, so she wants to purchase a transformer to step the 230-V German power down to 120 V to power her hairdryer. (a) If the transformer's primary has 460 turns, how many should the secondary have? (b) She can save money with a transformer whose maximum primary current is 6.0 A . If her hairdryer draws 12.5 A , will this transformer work?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

33. **Example 28.2:** In a North American application, a capacitor is connected across the 60-Hz , 120-V rms power line, and an rms current of 295 mA flows. (a) Find the capacitance. (b) What inductance, connected across the same power line, would result in the same current?
34. **Example 28.2:** A $0.470\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor and a $144\text{-}\mu\text{H}$ inductor are connected across identical AC voltage sources. (a) If the rms current in the capacitor is the same as in the inductor, what's the frequency of the sources?
35. **Example 28.2:** A radio transmitter applies 480 V rms across a 6800-pF capacitor and an inductor, connected in parallel to make a resonant circuit that determines the transmitter's frequency. The resulting current in each component is 22.0 A rms . Find (a) the transmitter frequency and (b) the inductance.

36. **Example 28.2:** You're building a radio transmitter whose frequency is to be determined by an LC circuit. The voltage across the LC circuit will be 480 V rms , and the maximum allowable current in the LC circuit is 500 mA rms . You have available capacitors in the standard values of 1.3 pF and 2.2 pF , and inductors of $1.3\text{ }\mu\text{H}$ and $2.4\text{ }\mu\text{H}$. (a) Find a pair of values for C and L that will keep the current under the 500-mA maximum and will give a frequency in the FM broadcast band, which covers 88 MHz to 108 MHz . (b) What are the values for the corresponding frequency and rms current?
37. **Example 28.4:** A crossover network in a loudspeaker "steers" current to the midrange speaker through a 1.80-mH inductor in series with a capacitor. (a) What should the capacitance be so that a given voltage produces the greatest current at 1.25 kHz ? (b) If the same voltage produces half this current at 525 Hz , what's the speaker's resistance?
38. **Example 28.4:** The midrange speaker in a loudspeaker system has resistance $8.00\text{ }\Omega$. It's in series with a 2.70-mH inductor in series with a $6.80\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor that steer midrange frequencies to the speaker. (a) What's the frequency that results in maximum current to the speaker? (b) If the speaker can dissipate a maximum of 45.0 W rms without overheating, what's the maximum rms voltage that can be applied to the system at the frequency you found in (a)?
39. **Example 28.4:** In Fig. 28.25, take $R = 1.50\text{ k}\Omega$ and $C = 1.50\text{ }\mu\text{F}$. A variable-frequency AC voltage source producing 18 V rms is connected across the circuit, and an AC ammeter in series with the voltage source shows a minimum reading when the frequency of the applied voltage is 855 Hz . Find (a) the inductance and (b) that minimum value of the ammeter reading.
40. **Example 28.4:** (a) For the circuit of Fig. 28.25, use a phasor diagram to find an expression for the circuit's impedance Z in terms of the resistance R and the capacitive and inductive reactances X_C and X_L . Your result should be analogous to the expression for Z of the series RLC circuit given after Equation 28.12 on page 570. (b) Explain how your result implies the minimum current of the preceding problem at the appropriate frequency.

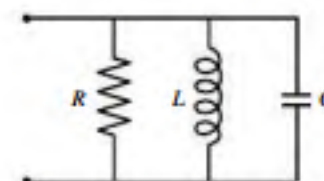


FIGURE 28.25 Problems 39 and 40

Problems

41. (a) A 1.7-H inductor is connected across 230-V rms , 50-Hz power. Find the rms inductor current. (b) Repeat if the same inductor is connected across the 120-V rms , 60-Hz power commonly used in North America.
42. A $3.0\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor has $1.0\text{-k}\Omega$ reactance. (a) What's the frequency of the applied voltage? (b) What inductance would give the same reactance at this frequency? (c) How would the reactances compare if the frequency were doubled?
43. Show that the unit of both capacitive and inductive reactance is the ohm.
44. **Electroencephalography (EEG)** elucidates brain function by analyzing *brain waves*, AC voltages resulting from electrical activity in the brain. *Alpha waves* are brain waves with frequencies from 7.5 Hz to 12.5 Hz . A particular alpha wave has frequency 9.84 Hz and rms amplitude $31.8\text{ }\mu\text{V}$. Express this voltage in the form of Equation 28.3, assuming zero phase constant.

45. A 2.2-nF capacitor and one of unknown capacitance are in parallel across a 10-V rms sine-wave generator. At 1.0 kHz, the generator supplies a total current of 3.4 mA rms. The generator frequency is then decreased until the rms current drops to 1.2 mA. Find (a) the unknown capacitance and (b) the lower frequency.
46. Connections to the body for electrocardiography (ECG) and **BIO** electroencephalography (EEG) are normally made with metal electrodes and conductive gels to ensure good electrical contact. An alternative is the *capacitively coupled noncontact electrode*, which uses a conductor near but not contacting the skin, to form a capacitor. Clothing can serve as the capacitor's insulation, eliminating skin contact. A particular EEG instrument calls for capacitive electrodes with maximum reactance $10\text{ M}\Omega$ at a typical EEG beta-wave frequency of 25 Hz. What's the minimum electrode capacitance?
47. The FM radio band covers the frequency range 88–108 MHz. If the variable capacitor in an FM receiver ranges from 10.9 pF to 16.4 pF, what inductor should be used to make an LC circuit whose resonant frequency spans the FM band?
48. An LC circuit includes a $0.025\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor and a $340\text{-}\mu\text{H}$ inductor. (a) If the peak capacitor voltage is 190 V, what's the peak inductor current? (b) How long after the voltage peak does the current peak occur?
49. At time $t = 0$, the capacitor in an LC circuit is fully charged, and there's no current in the circuit. Find expressions, in terms of L and C , for the time at which (a) the capacitor voltage has half its initial value, (b) the energy stored in the capacitor has half its initial value, and (c) the current has its maximum value.
50. The $2420\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor in Fig. 28.26 is initially charged to 250 V. (a) Describe how you would manipulate switches A and B to transfer all the energy from the $2420\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor to the $605\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor. Include the times you would throw the switches. (b) What will be the voltage across the $605\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor once you've finished?

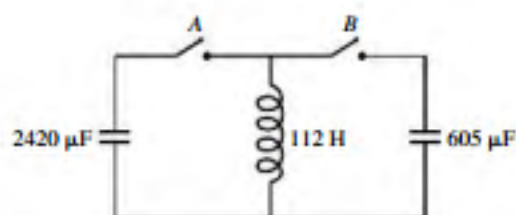


FIGURE 28.26 Problem 50

51. A damped LC circuit consists of a $0.14\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor and a 20-mH inductor with resistance $1.7\ \Omega$. How many oscillation cycles will occur before the peak capacitor voltage drops to half its initial value?
52. A damped RLC circuit includes a $5.0\text{-}\Omega$ resistor and a 100-mH inductor. If half the initial energy is lost after 15 cycles, what's the capacitance?
53. An RLC circuit includes a 1.7-H inductor and a $270\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor rated at 350 V. The circuit is connected across a sine-wave generator with $V_p = 29\text{ V}$. What minimum resistance will ensure that the capacitor voltage does not exceed its rated value when the circuit is at resonance?
54. The table below shows the ratio of peak voltage to peak current—that is, the impedance Z —as a function of frequency for a series RLC circuit. Plot the data and use your graph to estimate (a) the resonant frequency and (b) the resistance R .

Frequency (Hz)	150	200	230	280	350	400
Impedance (Ω)	320	140	74	77	190	280

55. Figure 28.27 shows the phasor diagram for an RLC circuit. (a) Is the driving frequency above or below resonance? (b) Complete the diagram by adding the applied voltage phasor, and from your diagram determine the phase difference between applied voltage and current.

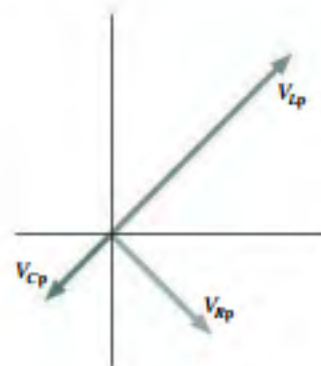


FIGURE 28.27 Problem 55

56. An AC voltage of fixed amplitude is applied across a series RLC circuit. The components are such that the current at half the resonant frequency is half the current at resonance. Show that the current at twice the resonant frequency is also half the current at resonance.
57. A series RLC circuit has resistance $150\ \Omega$ and impedance $250\ \Omega$. (a) What's the power factor? (b) If the rms current is 250 mA, what's the power dissipation?
58. A series RLC circuit has power factor 0.764 and impedance $182\ \Omega$ at 442 Hz. (a) What's the resistance? (b) If the inductance is 25.0 mH, what's the resonant frequency?
59. You're the Chief Financial Officer for a power company, and you consult your engineering department in an effort to minimize power-line losses. Your power plant produces 50-Hz power at 365 kV rms and 200 A rms and delivers it via transmission lines with total resistance $95\ \Omega$. You ask the engineers for the percentage of power that's lost. They reply that it depends on the power factor. What's the percentage loss for power factors of (a) 1.0 and (b) 0.80?
60. A sawmill uses a 10-hp electric motor operating at 480 V rms. Its power factor is 0.82. When a power-factor-correcting capacitor is added to the system, the power factor increases to 0.95. Find the rms current in the wires supplying the motor (a) before and (b) after the power factor increase.
61. A power supply like that of Fig. 28.23 is supposed to deliver 22-V DC at a maximum current of 180 mA. The transformer's peak output voltage can charge the capacitor to a full 22 V, and the primary is supplied with 50-Hz AC. What capacitance will ensure that the output voltage stays within 4% of the rated 22 V?
62. An RLC circuit includes a $3.3\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor and a 27-mH inductor. The capacitor is charged to 35 V, and the circuit begins oscillating. Ten full cycles later the capacitor voltage peaks at 28 V. Find the resistance.
63. A series RLC circuit with $R = 1.1\ \Omega$, $L = 29\text{ mH}$, and $C = 0.43\ \mu\text{F}$ is connected across a sine-wave generator. If the capacitor's peak voltage rating is 600 V, what's the maximum safe value for the generator's peak output voltage when it's tuned to resonance?
64. Differentiate Equation 28.9 to find the current in the LC circuit, and use $q = CV$ to find the voltage. From these, obtain the electric energy in the capacitor and the magnetic energy in the inductor, and sum to show that the total energy remains constant. (Hint: You'll need Equation 28.10 and a familiar trig identity.)

65. Find a second frequency where the current in the speaker of Example 28.4 has half its maximum value.
66. Two capacitors are connected in parallel across a 24-V rms, 7.5-kHz sine-wave generator, and the generator supplies a total rms current of 56 mA. With capacitors rewired in series, the rms current drops to 2.8 mA. What are the two capacitances?
67. A sine-wave generator with 15.0-V peak output is applied across a series RLC circuit. At the circuit's resonant frequency of 775 Hz the peak current is 112 mA; at 1.22 kHz it's 44.8 mA. Find R , L , and C .
68. For RLC circuits in which the resistance isn't too high, the Q factor may be defined as the ratio of the resonant frequency to the difference between the two frequencies where the power dissipated in the circuit is half the power dissipated at resonance. Using suitable approximations, show that this definition leads to $Q = \omega_0 L/R$, with ω_0 the resonant frequency.
69. A triangle wave swings linearly between voltages $-V_p$ and $+V_p$. Show that the rms voltage of a triangle wave is $V_p/\sqrt{3}$.
70. Substitute the expression for $q(t)$ in Equation 28.11 into the differential equation for an LC circuit with resistance, and find an expression for the angular frequency of the damped oscillations in terms of R , L , and C .
71. Although the maximum current flows in the speaker circuit of Example 28.4 at the 1-kHz resonant frequency, the peak voltage across the capacitor is a maximum at a somewhat lower frequency. Find that frequency and the corresponding peak voltage.
72. The circuit shown in Fig. 28.28 is
- a low-pass filter.
 - a high-pass filter.
 - a band-pass filter.
 - impossible to tell without knowing the component values.
73. When the angular frequency ω of the input voltage V_{in} is such that the capacitor's reactance is equal to the resistance, the output voltage is
- $V_{in}/4$.
 - $V_{in}/2$.
 - $V_{in}/\sqrt{2}$.
 - $2V_{in}$.
74. The circuit of Fig. 28.28
- exhibits resonance at frequency $\omega = 1/RC$.
 - exhibits resonance at frequency $\omega = 1/\sqrt{RC}$.
 - produces an output voltage whose frequency differs from that of the input.
 - produces an output voltage whose phase differs from that of the input.
75. If you replace the capacitor in Fig. 28.28 with an inductor, the circuit
- continues to function as before.
 - becomes the opposite kind of filter.
 - produces zero output voltage because the inductor is a short circuit.
 - produces an output voltage that exceeds the input voltage.

Passage Problems

A *filter* is a circuit designed to pass AC signals in some frequency range and to attenuate others. Common filters include *low-pass filters*, which allow low-frequency signals to pass but attenuate high frequencies; *high-pass filters*, which do the opposite; and *band-pass filters*, which pass a range of frequencies while attenuating signals with frequencies outside the band. Filters are widely used in electronics. Applications include tone and equalizer controls in audio equipment, filters to separate nearby frequencies at cellphone towers, and filters to eliminate unwanted electrical noise in biomedical instruments such as electrocardiographs. A simple design for an RC filter is shown in Fig. 28.28.

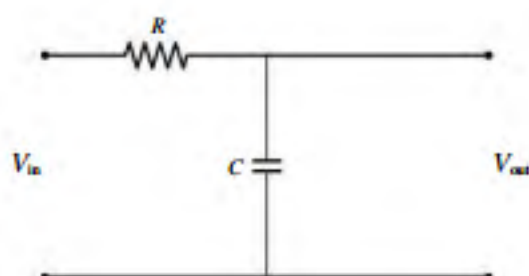


FIGURE 28.28 Problems 72–75

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Alternating current is used because transformers, based on electromagnetic induction, can alter voltage levels to ensure both efficient long-distance power transmission and safety for end users.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 28.1 (c)
 28.2 (d)
 28.3 (1) (b); (2) by a factor of 10^{-4}
 28.4 (a) because the inductor's reactance must be greater
 28.5 (b)
 28.6 (d)



Maxwell's Equations and Electromagnetic Waves

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 29.1** Articulate the four laws of electromagnetism as you've learned them so far.
- LO 29.2** Describe Maxwell's modification of Ampère's law and determine magnetic fields induced by changing electric fields.
- LO 29.3** State the four Maxwell equations.
- LO 29.4** Explain how electromagnetic waves arise from Maxwell's equations.
- LO 29.5** Describe the properties of electromagnetic waves in vacuum.
- LO 29.6** Describe the electromagnetic spectrum.
- LO 29.7** Explain how electromagnetic waves are produced.
- LO 29.8** Evaluate energy, momentum, and radiation pressure associated with electromagnetic waves.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Gauss's law for electricity (Section 21.3)
- Gauss's law for magnetism (Section 26.6)
- Ampère's law (Section 26.8)
- Faraday's law (Section 27.6)

At this point we've introduced the four fundamental laws of electromagnetism—Gauss's law for electricity, Gauss's law for magnetism, Ampère's law, and Faraday's law—that govern the behavior of electric and magnetic fields throughout the universe. We've seen how these laws describe the electric and magnetic interactions that make matter act as it does, and we've explored practical electromagnetic devices. Here we extend the fundamental laws to their most general form and show how they predict the existence of electromagnetic waves. These include the visible light, radio, microwaves, X rays, ultraviolet, and infrared with which we see, communicate, cook our food, diagnose diseases, learn about the universe, and perform myriad other tasks from mundane to profound.

29.1 The Four Laws of Electromagnetism

LO 29.1 *Articulate the four laws of electromagnetism as you've learned them so far.*

Table 29.1 summarizes the four laws as we introduced them in earlier chapters. Look at these laws and you'll notice some similarities. On the left-hand sides of the equations, the two laws of Gauss are identical except for the interchanging of $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$; the same is true for Ampère's and Faraday's laws.

The right-hand sides are more different. Gauss's law for electricity involves charge, while Gauss's law for magnetism has zero on the right-hand side. Actually, though, these laws are similar. Since we have no experimental evidence for the existence of isolated magnetic charge, the magnetic charge



How does a conversation travel between cellphones?

on the right-hand side of Gauss's law for magnetism is zero. If and when magnetic monopoles are discovered, then the right-hand side of Gauss's law for magnetism would be nonzero for any surface enclosing net magnetic charge.

The right-hand sides of Ampère's and Faraday's laws are distinctly different. Ampère's law has current—the flow of electric charge—as a source of magnetic field. We can understand the absence of a similar term in Faraday's law because we've never observed a flow of magnetic monopoles. If we had such a flow, then we would expect this magnetic current to produce an electric field.

Two of the differences among the laws of electromagnetism would be resolved if we knew for sure that magnetic monopoles exist. That current theories of elementary particles suggest the existence of monopoles is a tantalizing hint that there may be a fuller symmetry between electric and magnetic phenomena.

Table 29.1 Four Laws of Electromagnetism (still incomplete)

Law	Mathematical Statement	What It Says
Gauss for $\vec{E}$	$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = \frac{q}{\epsilon_0}$	How charges produce electric field; field lines begin and end on charges.
Gauss for $\vec{B}$	$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{A} = 0$	No magnetic charge; magnetic field lines don't begin or end.
Faraday	$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt}$	Changing magnetic flux produces electric field.
Ampère (steady currents only)	$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = \mu_0 I$	Electric current produces magnetic field.

29.2 Ambiguity in Ampère's Law

LO 29.2 Describe Maxwell's modification of Ampère's law and determine magnetic fields induced by changing electric fields.

There's one difference that magnetic monopoles won't resolve. On the right-hand side of Faraday's law is the term $d\Phi_B/dt$ that describes changing magnetic flux as a source of electric field. There's no comparable term in Ampère's law. Are we missing something? Is it possible that a changing electric flux produces a magnetic field? So far, you haven't seen any experimental evidence for such a conjecture. It's suggested only by the sense that the near-symmetry between electricity and magnetism is not a coincidence. If a changing electric flux did produce a magnetic field, just as a changing magnetic flux produces an electric field, then we would expect a term $d\Phi_E/dt$ on the right-hand side of Ampère's law.

When we first stated Ampère's law in Chapter 26, we emphasized that it applied only to *steady* currents. Why that restriction? Figure 29.1 shows a situation in which current is *not* steady—namely, an RC circuit. Current in this circuit carries charge onto the capacitor plates. The current gradually decreases to zero as the capacitor charges. While it's flowing, the current should produce a magnetic field. Let's try to use Ampère's law to calculate that field.

Ampère's law says that the line integral of the magnetic field around any closed loop is proportional to the encircled current:

$$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = \mu_0 I$$

The encircled current is the current through *any open surface* bounded by the loop. Figure 29.2 shows four such surfaces. The same current flows through surfaces 1, 2, and 4 because a current-carrying wire pierces each surface. But no current flows through

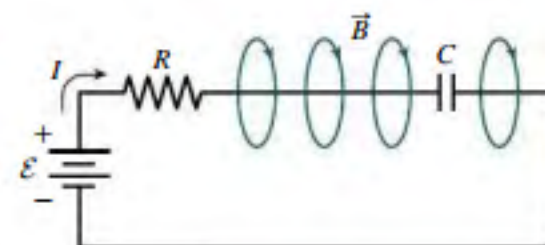


FIGURE 29.1 A charging RC circuit, showing some magnetic field lines surrounding the current-carrying wire.

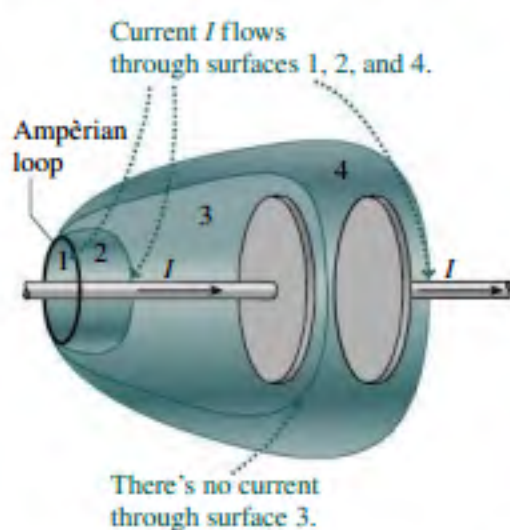


FIGURE 29.2 Four surfaces bounded by the same circular Ampèrian loop. Surface 1 is a flat, circular disk. The others are like soap bubbles in the process of being blown; they're open at the left end, so if current does pass through a surface, it does so at the right end only.

surface 3 because it's in the gap between the capacitor plates. Charge flows onto and off the plates of the capacitor, but it doesn't flow *through* that gap. So for surfaces 1, 2, and 4 the right-hand side of Ampère's law is $\mu_0 I$, but for surface 3 it's zero. Thus Ampère's law is ambiguous in this case of a changing current.

This ambiguity doesn't arise with steady currents. In an RC circuit the steady-state current is zero, and thus the right-hand side of Ampère's law is zero for *any* surface. It's only when currents are changing with time that Ampère's law becomes ambiguous. That's why the form of Ampère's law we've used until now is strictly valid only for steady currents.

Can we extend Ampère's law to cover unsteady currents without affecting its validity in the steady case? Symmetry between Ampère's and Faraday's laws suggests that a changing electric flux might produce a magnetic field. Between the plates of a charging capacitor is an electric field whose magnitude is increasing. That means there's a changing electric flux through surface 3 of Fig. 29.2.

It was the Scottish physicist James Clerk Maxwell who, in about 1860, suggested that a changing electric flux should give rise to a magnetic field. Since that time many experiments, including direct measurement of the magnetic field inside a charging capacitor, have confirmed Maxwell's remarkable insight. Maxwell quantified his idea by introducing a new term into Ampère's law, a term that describes changing electric flux:

This much is Ampère's law for steady current I , introduced in Chapter 26.

$$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = \mu_0 I + \underbrace{\mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt}}_{\text{Maxwell's modification}} \quad \text{(Ampère's law with Maxwell's modification)} \quad (29.1)$$

Maxwell added this term. It shows that changing electric flux $d\Phi_E/dt$ is a source of magnetic fields.

Now there's no ambiguity. The integral is taken around any loop, I is the current through *any* surface bounded by the loop, and Φ_E is the electric flux through that surface. With our charging capacitor, Equation 29.1 gives the same magnetic field no matter which surface we choose. For surfaces 1, 2, and 4 of Fig. 29.2, the current I makes all the contribution to the right-hand side of the equation. For surface 3, the right-hand side of Equation 29.1 comes entirely from the changing electric flux.

Although changing electric flux isn't the same thing as electric current, it has the same effect in producing a magnetic field. For this reason Maxwell called the term $\epsilon_0(d\Phi_E/dt)$ the **displacement current**. The word *displacement* has historical roots that don't provide much physical insight. But *current* is meaningful because displacement current is indistinguishable from real current in producing magnetic fields. Although we developed the idea of displacement current using the specific example of a charging capacitor, we emphasize that Ampère's law in its now complete form (Equation 29.1) is truly universal: *Any* changing electric flux results in a magnetic field. That fact will prove crucial in establishing the existence of electromagnetic waves.

GOT IT?

29.1 Would you expect to find a magnetic field between the capacitor plates in Fig. 29.2? Explain.

EXAMPLE 29.1 Displacement Current: A Capacitor

A parallel-plate capacitor with plate area A and spacing d is charging at the rate dV/dt . Show that the displacement current is equal to the current in the wires feeding the capacitor.

INTERPRET This is about a comparison between a familiar quantity—current—and a new quantity, namely, displacement current.

DEVELOP We're given the rate at which the capacitor voltage increases. Given that $q = CV$ for a capacitor, we can find the rate of charge buildup—and that's equal to the current I delivering charge to the capacitor. Equation 29.1 shows that the displacement current is $\epsilon_0(d\Phi_E/dt)$, so we'll need the rate of change of electric flux. A parallel-plate capacitor produces an essentially uniform field $E = V/d$.

Since the field is uniform, the electric flux through a surface within the capacitor is simply the field strength times the plate area.

EVALUATE For the current, we differentiate the capacitor relation $q = CV$ to get $dq/dt = I = C dV/dt$. For the flux, we multiply the electric field by the plate area: $\Phi_E = EA = VA/d$. The rate of change of flux is then $d\Phi_E/dt = (A/d)(dV/dt)$, so the displacement current becomes

$$I_d = \epsilon_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt} = \frac{\epsilon_0 A}{d} \frac{dV}{dt}$$

But $\epsilon_0 A/d$ is the capacitance of a parallel-plate capacitor (given by Equation 23.2), so the displacement current is $I_d = C dV/dt$, the same as the actual current I .

ASSESS Make sense? It had better be this way, or Ampère's law would still be ambiguous. For any surface pierced by the wire in Fig. 29.2, the only contribution to the right-hand side of Ampère's law is from the current I . For any surface between the capacitor plates, the only contribution is from the displacement current $I_d = \epsilon_0(d\Phi_E/dt)$. For Ampère's law to give the same magnetic field whichever surface we choose, I and I_d had better be the same.

What's the direction of the magnetic field induced by a changing electric flux? In Chapter 26 you found the direction of the magnetic field arising from conduction current by pointing your right thumb in the direction of the current and curling the fingers of your right hand to give the magnetic-field direction. The same approach works for induced magnetic fields, provided you know the direction of the displacement current. In Example 29.1 it's clear that the displacement current is in the same direction as the conduction current. But what if there's no conduction current and you have only a changing electric flux? Then, because it's the *change* in flux that matters, the displacement current is in the direction of that change—which may or may not be the direction of the electric field. If, for example, an electric field points out of this page and is *increasing* in strength, then the displacement current is out of the page. But if the same electric field is *decreasing* in strength, then I_d is into the page. If $\vec{E}$ is into the page and *increasing* in strength, then I_d is into the page, but if that same into-the-page field is *decreasing* in strength, then I_d is out of the page. It's the direction of the *change* that matters. You can explore induced magnetic fields and their directions in Problems 40 and 48.

29.3 Maxwell's Equations

LO 29.3 State the four Maxwell equations.

It was Maxwell's genius to recognize that Ampère's law needed modifying to reflect the symmetry suggested by Faraday's law. To honor Maxwell, the four complete laws of electromagnetism are called **Maxwell's equations**. The complete set of equations, first published in 1864, governs the behavior of electric and magnetic fields everywhere. Table 29.2 summarizes Maxwell's equations.

Table 29.2 Maxwell's Equations

Law	Mathematical Statement	What It Says	Equation Number
Gauss for $\vec{E}$	$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = \frac{q}{\epsilon_0}$	How charges produce electric field; field lines begin and end on charges.	(29.2)
Gauss for $\vec{B}$	$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{A} = 0$	No magnetic charge; magnetic field lines don't begin or end.	(29.3)
Faraday	$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt}$	Changing magnetic flux produces electric field.	(29.4)
Ampère	$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = \mu_0 I + \mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt}$	Electric current and changing electric flux produce magnetic field.	(29.5)

These four compact statements are all it takes to describe classical electromagnetic phenomena. Everything electric or magnetic that we've considered and will consider—from

polar molecules to electric current; resistors, capacitors, inductors, and transistors; solar flares and cell membranes; electric generators and thunderstorms; computers, smartphones, and the northern lights—can be described using Maxwell's equations. And despite this wealth of phenomena, we have yet to discuss a most important manifestation of electromagnetism—namely, electromagnetic waves. We've put off waves until now because they depend crucially on Maxwell's extension of Ampère's law. It's easiest to understand electromagnetic waves when they propagate through empty space, so we'll first simplify Maxwell's equations for the case of a vacuum.

Maxwell's Equations in Vacuum

To express Maxwell's equations in vacuum, we simply remove all reference to matter—that is, to electric charge and current:

$$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = 0 \quad (\text{Gauss, } \vec{E}) \quad (29.6) \quad \oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{A} = 0 \quad (\text{Gauss, } \vec{B}) \quad (29.7)$$

$$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \quad (\text{Faraday}) \quad (29.8) \quad \oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = \mu_0\epsilon_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt} \quad (\text{Ampère}) \quad (29.9)$$

In vacuum the symmetry is complete, with electric and magnetic fields appearing on an equal footing. With charge and current absent, the only source of either field is a change in the other field—as shown by the time derivatives on the right-hand sides of Faraday's and Ampère's laws.

29.4 Electromagnetic Waves

LO 29.4 Explain how electromagnetic waves arise from Maxwell's equations.

Faraday's law shows that a changing magnetic field induces an electric field. Ampère's law shows that a changing electric field induces a magnetic field. Together, the two suggest the possibility of **electromagnetic waves**, in which each type of field continuously induces the other, resulting in an electromagnetic disturbance that propagates through space as a wave. We'll now confirm this suggestion with a rigorous demonstration, directly from Maxwell's equations, that electromagnetic waves are indeed possible. In the process we'll discover the properties of electromagnetic waves and come to a deep understanding of the nature of light.

A Plane Electromagnetic Wave

Here we describe the simplest type of electromagnetic wave—a plane wave in vacuum. A plane wave's properties don't vary in directions perpendicular to the wave propagation, so its wavefronts are infinite planes. A plane wave is an approximation to the more realistic case of a spherical wave expanding from a localized source, and it's a good approximation at distances from the wave source that are large compared with the wavelength. Light waves from the Sun, for example, or radio waves miles from the transmitter are essentially plane waves.

In vacuum, it turns out that the electric and magnetic fields of an electromagnetic wave are perpendicular. They're both also perpendicular to the direction of wave propagation—making the electromagnetic wave a transverse wave, as defined in Chapter 14. To be concrete, we'll take the x -direction to be the direction of propagation, the y -direction that of the electric field, and the z -direction that of the magnetic field (Fig. 29.3). We won't prove that a configuration like this is the only one possible for an electromagnetic wave (although in vacuum it is; see Problem 48). What we will do is prove that this configuration satisfies Maxwell's equations—thus showing that such electromagnetic waves are indeed possible. But first we need a mathematical description of our plane electromagnetic wave.

In Chapter 14 we described a sinusoidal wave propagating in the x -direction by a function of the form $A \sin(kx - \omega t)$, where A is the wave amplitude, k the wave number, and ω the angular frequency. For mechanical waves, $A \sin(kx - \omega t)$ described some physical quantity such as the height of a water wave or the pressure variation in a sound wave. In an electromagnetic

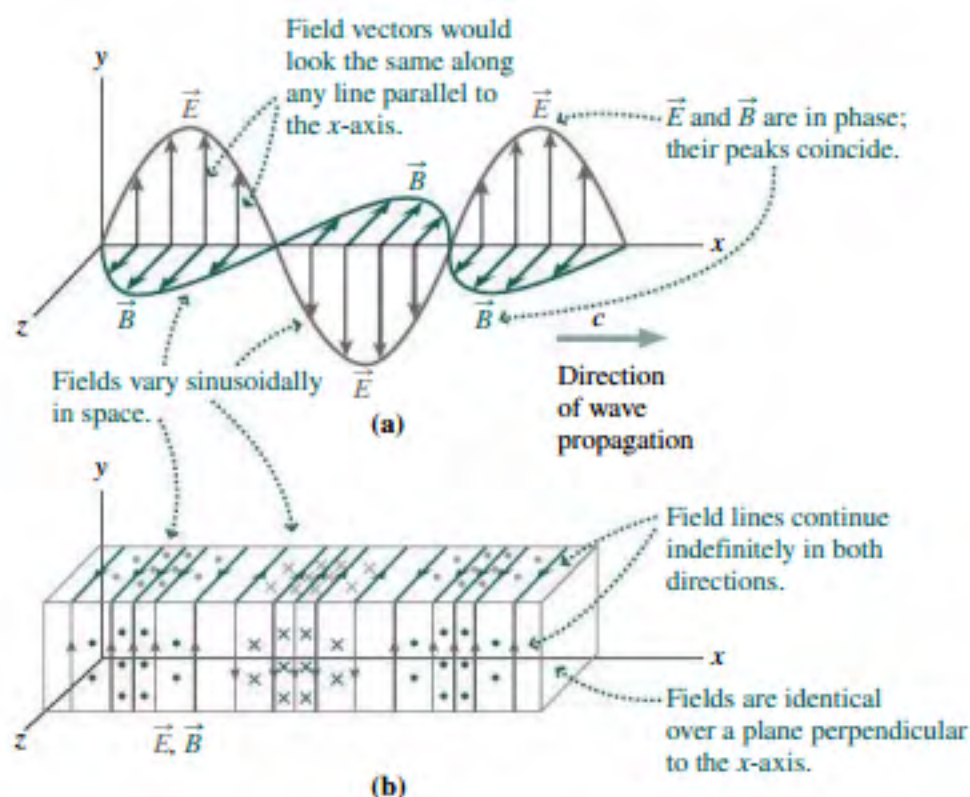


FIGURE 29.3 Fields of a plane electromagnetic wave, shown at a fixed instant of time. (a) Field vectors for points on the x -axis show sinusoidal variation in the fields. (b) A partial representation of the field lines in a rectangular slab. Lines on the facing surfaces of the slab are shown as arrows; lines going through the slab appear as dots or crosses. Spacing of the field lines reflects the sinusoidal variation shown in part (a).

wave, the corresponding physical quantities are the electric and magnetic fields. It turns out that these two wave fields, though perpendicular, are in phase—meaning that their peaks and troughs coincide, as shown in Fig. 29.3a. Having chosen the y -direction for the electric field and z for the magnetic field, we can write the fields of our plane electromagnetic wave as

$$\vec{E}(x, t) = E_p \sin(kx - \omega t) \hat{j} \quad (29.10)$$

and

$$\vec{B}(x, t) = B_p \sin(kx - \omega t) \hat{k} \quad (29.11)$$

where the amplitudes E_p and B_p are constants and where $\hat{j}$ and $\hat{k}$ are unit vectors in the y - and z -directions. Figure 29.3a is a “snapshot” of some field vectors of this wave at points on the x -axis, shown at a fixed instant of time. That $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ are perpendicular is obvious from the figure, as is the fact that they’re perpendicular to the propagation direction x . You can also see the sinusoidal variation, as the field vectors get alternately longer, then shorter, then reverse direction, and so on. And you can see that $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ are in phase because their peaks coincide. We emphasize that Fig. 29.3a shows field *vectors* for points on the x -axis only; the fields extend forever throughout space, and because this is a plane wave, a picture of field vectors along any line parallel to the x -axis would look the same.

We can also draw field *lines* for our wave, in contrast to the field vectors of Fig. 29.3a. We can’t draw complete field lines because they extend forever in both directions. So in Fig. 29.3b we’ve shown the field lines only in a rectangular slab; that’s enough to give a picture of what the fields look like everywhere. You should convince yourself that Figs. 29.3a and b show exactly the same thing—namely, a plane electromagnetic wave described by Equations 29.10 and 29.11. In one case we use field *vectors*, whose lengths are proportional to the field magnitudes, and in the other we use field *lines*, which extend forever and whose spacing indicates the field magnitudes.

We’ll now show that the electric and magnetic fields pictured in Fig. 29.3 and described by Equations 29.10 and 29.11 satisfy Maxwell’s equations. We’ve chosen a sinusoidal waveform for our wave fields because of its mathematical simplicity. But the superposition principle holds for electric and magnetic fields, and we know from Section 14.5 that we can represent *any* waveform by superposing sinusoids. So our proof that electromagnetic waves can exist holds for any wave shape. That means we can use electromagnetic waves to communicate the complex waveforms representing music, images, and data.

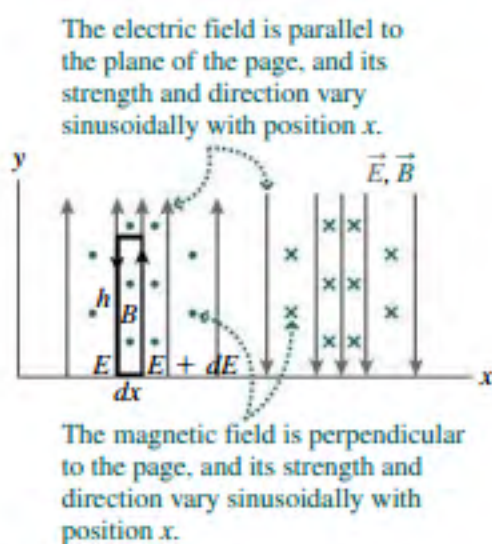


FIGURE 29.4 View of Fig. 29.3b in the x - y plane, with a rectangular loop for evaluating the line integral in Faraday's law.

Gauss's Laws

In vacuum, Gauss's laws for electric and magnetic fields both have zero on the right-hand side, reflecting the absence of charge. That means the electric and magnetic flux through *any* closed surface must be zero, and therefore the field lines can't begin or end. With our plane wave, the field lines shown partially in Fig. 29.3b extend straight forever in both directions. So they don't begin or end, and therefore the fields satisfy Gauss's laws.

Faraday's Law

To see that Faraday's law is satisfied, look directly toward the x - y plane in Fig. 29.3b. You see electric field lines going up and down and magnetic field lines coming straight in and out, as shown in Fig. 29.4. Consider the small rectangular loop of height h and infinitesimal width dx shown in the figure. Evaluating the line integral of the electric field $\vec{E}$ around this loop, we get no contribution from the short ends at right angles to the field. Going around counterclockwise, we get a contribution $-Eh$ as we go down the left side against the field direction. Then we get a positive contribution going up the right side. Because the field varies with position, the field on the right side of the loop is different from that on the left. Let the change be dE , so the field on the right side is $E + dE$, giving a contribution $(E + dE)h$ to the line integral. Then the line integral of $\vec{E}$ around the loop is

$$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l} = -Eh + (E + dE)h = h dE$$

This nonzero line integral implies an induced electric field. Induced by what? By a changing magnetic flux through the loop. The electric field of the wave arises because of the changing magnetic field of the wave. The area of the loop is $h dx$, and the magnetic field $\vec{B}$ is at right angles to this area, so the magnetic flux through the loop is $\Phi_B = B h dx$. The rate of change of magnetic flux through the loop is then

$$\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = h dx \frac{dB}{dt}$$

Faraday's law relates the line integral of the electric field to the rate of change of magnetic flux:

$$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt}$$

or, using our expressions for the line integral and the rate of change of magnetic flux, $h dE = -h dx (dB/dt)$. Dividing through by $h dx$ gives $dE/dx = -dB/dt$. In deriving this equation, we considered changes in E with position at a fixed instant of time. Similarly, the change in B with respect to time is taken at a fixed position. That is, the derivatives are *partial derivatives*—rates of change with respect to one variable while another is held fixed. If you've studied partial derivatives in calculus, you know that the symbol ∂ designates a partial derivative. So our equation $dE/dx = -dB/dt$ should be written with partial derivatives:

$$\frac{\partial E}{\partial x} = -\frac{\partial B}{\partial t} \quad (29.12)$$

This equation—which is Faraday's law applied to our electromagnetic wave—says that the rate at which the electric field changes with *position* depends on the rate at which the magnetic field changes with *time*.

Ampère's Law

Now look at Fig. 29.3b from above. You see the magnetic field lines in the x - z plane and electric field lines emerging perpendicular to the x - z plane (Fig. 29.5). Apply Ampère's law (Equation 29.9) to the rectangle shown. In the line integral there's no contribution from the short sides because they're perpendicular to the field. Going down the left side

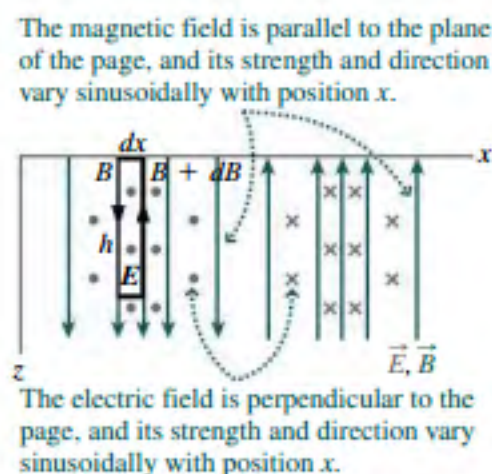


FIGURE 29.5 View of Fig. 29.3b in the x - z plane, with a rectangular loop for evaluating the line integral in Ampère's law.

gives Bh . Going up the right, against the field, gives $-(B + dB)h$, where dB is the change in B across the rectangle. So the line integral in Ampère's law is

$$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = Bh - (B + dB)h = -h dB$$

Again, the area of the rectangular loop is $h dx$, so the electric flux through the rectangle becomes $Eh dx$. Therefore the rate of change of electric flux is

$$\frac{d\Phi_E}{dt} = h dx \left(\frac{dE}{dt} \right)$$

Ampère's law relates the line integral of the magnetic field to this time derivative of the electric flux, giving $-h dB = \epsilon_0 \mu_0 h dx (dE/dt)$. Dividing by $h dx$ and again using partial derivatives, we have

$$\frac{\partial B}{\partial x} = -\epsilon_0 \mu_0 \frac{\partial E}{\partial t} \quad (29.13)$$

This equation—which is Ampère's law applied to our electromagnetic wave—says that the rate at which the magnetic field changes with *position* depends on the rate at which the electric field changes with *time*. Note that this is the converse of what you saw with Equation 29.12—reflecting that omnipresent complementarity between electricity and magnetism.

Equations 29.12 and 29.13—derived from Faraday's and Ampère's laws—express fully the requirements that Maxwell's universal laws of electromagnetism pose on the field structure of Fig. 29.3. Each describes an induced field that arises from the changing of the other field. That other field, in turn, arises from the changing of the first field. Thus we have a self-perpetuating electromagnetic structure, whose fields exist and change without the need for charged matter. If Equations 29.10 and 29.11, which describe the fields in Fig. 29.3, can be made consistent with Equations 29.12 and 29.13, then we'll have shown that our electromagnetic wave satisfies Maxwell's equations and is thus a possible configuration of electric and magnetic fields. An alternative approach, which doesn't require the sinusoidal fields of Equations 29.10 and 29.11, is to show that Equations 29.12 and 29.13 lead to the wave equation that we introduced in Chapter 14. You can explore this approach in Problem 65.

Conditions on the Wave Fields

To see that Equation 29.12 is satisfied, we differentiate the electric field of Equation 29.10 with respect to x and the magnetic field of Equation 29.11 with respect to t :

$$\frac{\partial E}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} [E_p \sin(kx - \omega t)] = k E_p \cos(kx - \omega t)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial B}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} [B_p \sin(kx - \omega t)] = -\omega B_p \cos(kx - \omega t)$$

Putting these expressions in for the derivatives in Equation 29.12 gives

$$k E_p \cos(kx - \omega t) = -[-\omega B_p \cos(kx - \omega t)]$$

The cosine cancels, showing that the equation holds if

$$k E_p = \omega B_p \quad (29.14)$$

To see that Equation 29.13 is also satisfied, we differentiate the magnetic field given by Equation 29.11 with respect to x and the electric field of Equation 29.10 with respect to t :

$$\frac{\partial B}{\partial x} = k B_p \cos(kx - \omega t) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial E}{\partial t} = -\omega E_p \cos(kx - \omega t)$$

Using these expressions in Equation 29.13 then gives

$$k B_p \cos(kx - \omega t) = -\epsilon_0 \mu_0 [-\omega E_p \cos(kx - \omega t)]$$

Again, the cosine cancels, so this equation is satisfied if

$$kB_p = \epsilon_0\mu_0\omega E_p \quad (29.15)$$

Our analysis has shown that electromagnetic waves whose form is given by Fig. 29.3 and Equations 29.10 and 29.11 can exist, provided that the amplitudes E_p and B_p , and the frequency ω and wave number k , are related by Equations 29.14 and 29.15. Physically, the existence of these waves is possible because a change in either field—electric or magnetic—induces the other field, giving rise to a self-perpetuating electromagnetic-field structure. Maxwell's theory thus leads to the prediction of an entirely new phenomenon—electromagnetic waves. We'll now explore some properties of these waves.

GOT IT?

29.2 Equations 29.12 and 29.13 will form the basis for our understanding of electromagnetic waves. From which two of the four Maxwell equations do they derive? (a) Gauss for electricity and Gauss for magnetism; (b) Gauss for electricity and Ampère; (c) Faraday and Ampère; (d) Gauss for magnetism and Faraday

29.5 Properties of Electromagnetic Waves

LO 29.5 Describe the properties of electromagnetic waves in vacuum.

Wave Speed

Chapter 14 showed that the speed of a sinusoidal wave is the ratio of the angular frequency to the wave number: wave speed = ω/k . To determine the speed of our electromagnetic wave, we use Equation 29.14 to get $E_p = \omega B_p/k$, and then use this expression in Equation 29.15:

$$kB_p = \epsilon_0\mu_0\omega E_p = \frac{\epsilon_0\mu_0\omega^2 B_p}{k}$$

The amplitude B_p cancels, and we solve for the wave speed ω/k to get

Chapter 14 showed that the speed of any wave is the ratio of its angular frequency ω to its wave number k .

$$\text{wave speed} = \frac{\omega}{k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon_0\mu_0}} \quad (\text{EM wave speed in vacuum}) \quad (29.16a)$$

For electromagnetic waves in vacuum, that speed depends only on the electric and magnetic constants ϵ_0 and μ_0 .

This result shows that the speed of an electromagnetic wave in vacuum depends only on the electric and magnetic constants ϵ_0 and μ_0 . All electromagnetic waves in vacuum, regardless of frequency or amplitude, share this speed. Although we derived this result for sinusoidal waves, the superposition principle ensures that it holds for any wave shape.

Using the known values of ϵ_0 and μ_0 from the table inside the front cover, let's evaluate the speed given in Equation 29.16a:

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon_0\mu_0}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(8.854 \times 10^{-12} \text{ C}^2/\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2)(1.257 \times 10^{-6} \text{ N/A}^2)}} = 3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$$

But this is the speed of light! During the two centuries before Maxwell, scientists had measured light's speed with increasing accuracy. They had also recognized, thanks to Thomas Young's 1801 interference experiment, that light consists of waves. Then, in the 1860s, came Maxwell. Using a theory developed from laboratory experiments on electricity and magnetism, with no reference to optics or light, Maxwell showed how the interplay of electric and magnetic fields results in electromagnetic waves. The wave speed—calculated

from the constants ϵ_0 and μ_0 —was the known speed of light. Maxwell's conclusion was inescapable: *Light is an electromagnetic wave.*

Maxwell's identification of light as an electromagnetic phenomenon is a classic example of the unification of knowledge in science. With one simple calculation, Maxwell brought the entire science of optics under the umbrella of electromagnetism. Maxwell's work stands as a crowning intellectual triumph, one whose implications are still expanding our view of the universe.

Maxwell's discovery lets us recast Equation 29.16a in the form

For electromagnetic waves in vacuum,
the wave speed ω/k is equal to . . .

$$\frac{\omega}{k} = c \quad (\text{EM wave speed in vacuum: the speed of light, } c!) \quad (29.16b)$$

. . . the speed of light c !

where $c = 1/\sqrt{\epsilon_0\mu_0}$ is the speed of light. Because $\omega = 2\pi f$ and $k = 2\pi/\lambda$, we can rewrite Equation 29.16b in terms of the more familiar frequency f and wavelength λ as

Chapter 14 also shows that the wave speed is the
product of the frequency f and wavelength λ .

$$f\lambda = c \quad (\text{frequency, wavelength, and the speed of light}) \quad (29.16c)$$

Again, for EM waves that's the speed of light c .

As we saw in Chapter 1, SI assigns c the exact value 299,792,458 m/s. Some non-SI values for c are approximately 186,000 miles per second, approximately 1 foot per nanosecond (see Exercise 18), and exactly 1 light-year per year.

Wave Amplitude

The amplitudes E_p and B_p dropped out of our analysis, showing that an electromagnetic wave's speed is independent of amplitude. But the field strengths E and B aren't independent. Using $\omega/k = c$, we can recast Equation 29.14 to show that

The electric-field amplitude E of an EM wave . . .

$$E = \frac{\omega}{k} B = cB \quad (E, B \text{ relation in vacuum EM wave}) \quad (29.17)$$

. . . and the magnetic-field amplitude B are related.

Here we dropped the “peak” subscript because E_p and B_p multiply identical cosine terms in our wave description, so Equation 29.14 applies whether or not we're at the peak field.

Phase, Orientation, and Waves in Matter

The wave of Fig. 29.3 and Equations 29.10 and 29.11 has $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ in phase in *time*—peaking at the same time—while they're perpendicular in *space* and also perpendicular to the propagation direction. Our derivation of the wave speed used these properties, so we've confirmed that electromagnetic waves in vacuum are transverse waves with $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ perpendicular and in phase. Specifically, the direction of propagation is that of the cross product $\vec{E} \times \vec{B}$. These geometrical properties also apply to electromagnetic waves in common materials like air and glass. The wave speed in these materials is lower than in vacuum, although for air the difference is minuscule. Electromagnetic waves in more complex materials can have very different properties and propagation speeds.

GOT IT?

29.3 At a particular point the electric field of an electromagnetic wave points in the +y-direction, while the magnetic field points in the -z-direction. Is the propagation direction (a) +x; (b) -x; (c) either +x or -x but you can't tell which; (d) -y; (e) +z; or (f) not along any of the coordinate axes?

EXAMPLE 29.2 Electromagnetic-Wave Properties: Laser Light

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A laser beam with wavelength 633 nm is propagating through air in the $+z$ -direction. Its electric field is parallel to the x -axis and has amplitude 6.0 kV/m. Find (a) the wave frequency, (b) the amplitude of the wave's magnetic field, and (c) the direction of the magnetic field.

INTERPRET Light is an electromagnetic wave, so the laser beam shares the wave properties we've just discussed. As we noted, its speed in air is nearly the same as in vacuum. Here we're given the wavelength and peak electric field, E_p .

DEVELOP Equation 29.16c, $f\lambda = c$, relates wavelength and frequency, so we'll use that for (a). Equation 29.17, $E = cB$, relates E and B , so we can get (b) from the given value of E_p . For (c), we'll draw a reoriented version of Fig. 29.3a to help infer the direction of $\vec{B}$.

EVALUATE (a) Solving for the frequency gives

$$f = c/\lambda = (3.0 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})/(633 \text{ nm}) = 4.7 \times 10^{14} \text{ Hz}$$

(b) Solving for the magnetic-field amplitude gives $B_p = E_p/c = 20 \mu\text{T}$. (c) Figure 29.6 shows that with propagation in the z -direction and $\vec{E}$ along the x -axis, $\vec{B}$ must be parallel to the y -axis. That's as much as we can say about the magnetic-field direction; as Fig. 29.6 shows, $\vec{B}$ is in the $+y$ -direction for some portions of the wave and in the $-y$ -direction for others.

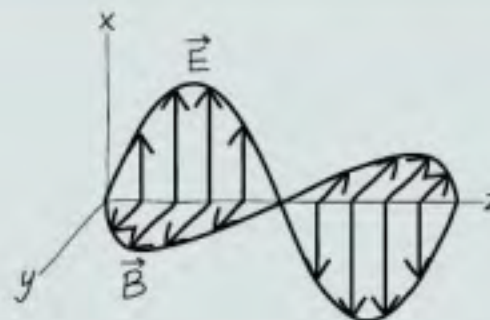


FIGURE 29.6 Reoriented version of Fig. 29.3a for Example 29.2. It's important that we still have a right-handed coordinate system, with the x -, y -, and z -axes in the same relation as in Fig. 29.3. Equivalently, the direction of $\vec{E} \times \vec{B}$ is the wave's propagation direction.

ASSESS That 10^{14} -Hz frequency sounds huge, but light has such a short wavelength that its frequency is indeed high; more on this shortly. Notice both in Fig. 29.3 and in our reoriented wave of Fig. 29.6 that the vectors $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ and the propagation direction form a right-handed coordinate system, so any two of those vectors determine the direction of the third.

Polarization

Although $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ are necessarily perpendicular, their orientation is still arbitrary within a plane perpendicular to the propagation direction. **Polarization** specifies the direction of the electric field and thus determines the perpendicular magnetic-field direction as well (Fig. 29.7).

Electromagnetic waves used in radio and TV originate from antennas that give the waves a definite polarization. Most laser light is also polarized. In contrast, light from hot sources like the Sun or a lightbulb is unpolarized, consisting of a mix of waves with random field orientations. Unpolarized light becomes polarized when it reflects off surfaces or passes through substances whose structure has a preferred direction. Many crystals and synthetic materials such as Polaroid exhibit such a *transmission axis*. Light reflecting off roads and a car's hood becomes partially polarized in the horizontal direction, and Polaroid sunglasses, with their transmission axis vertical, block the resulting glare. The same thing happens with reflection off water, making Polaroid sunglasses especially useful for boaters.

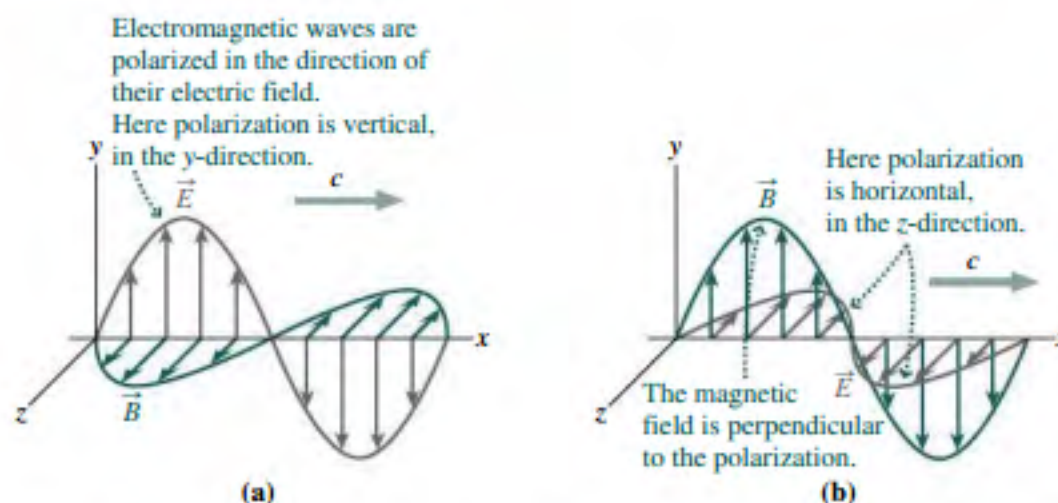


FIGURE 29.7 The polarization direction is the direction of the wave's electric field.

A polarizing material passes unattenuated only the component of the wave field $\vec{E}$ along the transmission axis—namely, $E \cos \theta$, where θ is the angle between the field and the transmission axis. We'll show shortly that the intensity of an electromagnetic wave is proportional to the square of the field strength. As a result, a wave of intensity S_0 emerges from a polarizer with intensity given by the **law of Malus**:

$$S = S_0 \cos^2 \theta \quad (29.18)$$

Thus electromagnetic waves are blocked completely by a polarizer with its transmission axis oriented perpendicular to the waves' polarization (Fig. 29.8).

Measuring polarization tells us about sources of electromagnetic waves and about materials through which they propagate. Many astrophysical processes produce polarized waves; their polarization gives clues to mechanisms operating in the cosmos. Geologists pass polarized light through thin sections of rock to reveal the rocks' composition, and engineers use polarization to locate stresses in mechanical structures. Polarization is essential in many technologies, including the ubiquitous liquid crystal displays (LCDs) in our cellphones, cameras, computers, and TVs (Fig. 29.9).

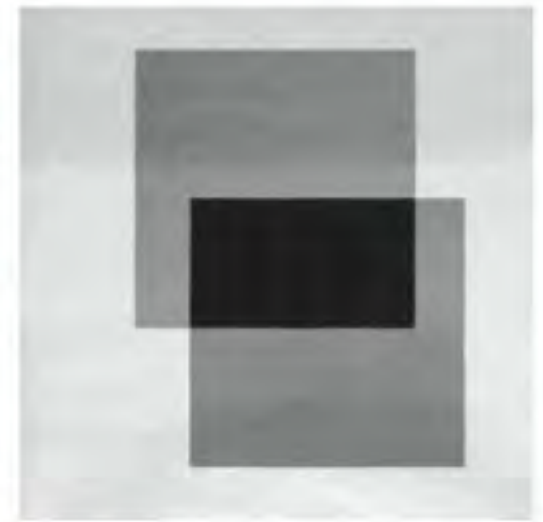


FIGURE 29.8 Two pieces of polarizing material with their transmission axes at right angles. Where they overlap, no light gets through.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 29.1 Crossed Polarizers

Unpolarized light shines on a pair of polarizers with their transmission axes perpendicular, so no light gets through the combination. What happens when a third polarizer is sandwiched in between, with its transmission axis at 45° to the others?

EVALUATE The middle polarizer's transmission axis isn't perpendicular to the first one's, so some of the light coming through the first polarizer gets through the middle one. That light's polarization isn't perpendicular to the last polarizer's transmission axis, so some light gets all the way through the combination.

ASSESS This result may seem surprising: If the two outer polarizers are perpendicular, how can a third polarizer change the situation? But it does. No pair of adjacent polarizers is perpendicular, so each pair transmits some light. Inserting the third polarizer lets light through where none came through before.

MAKING THE CONNECTION How does the intensity of light emerging from this polarizer "sandwich" compare with the intensity of the incident unpolarized light?

EVALUATE Unpolarized light is a random mix of polarization directions, so $\cos^2 \theta$ in Equation 29.18 ranges from 0 to 1 for the first polarizer. Its average is $\frac{1}{2}$, so the intensity emerging from the first polarizer is half the incident intensity. This light is now polarized in the direction of the first polarizer; it then passes through the middle polarizer, oriented at 45° . Since $\cos 45^\circ = 1/\sqrt{2}$, Equation 29.18 shows that its intensity is cut in half again. Light emerging from the middle polarizer then passes through the last one, oriented at 45° to the light's new polarization, so its intensity is halved yet again. The effect of three reductions by one-half each is that light emerges from the "sandwich" with one-eighth its incident intensity.

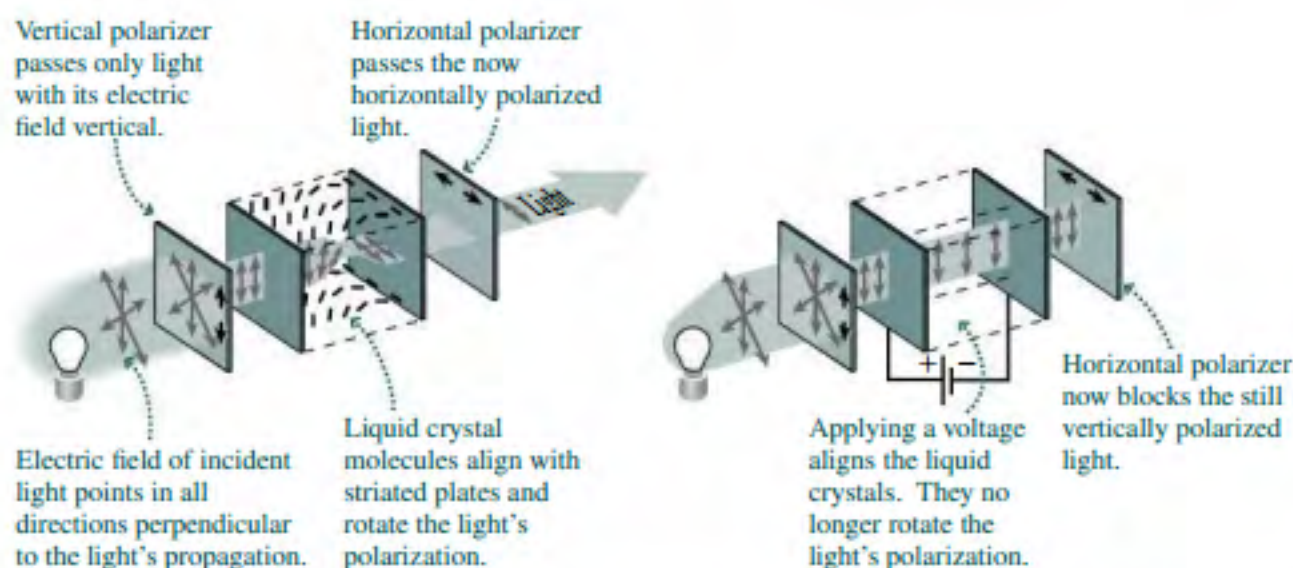


FIGURE 29.9 Polarization plays a central role in the operation of a liquid crystal display. Multiple units like the one shown—millions in a TV or computer screen—produce the individual pixels on an LCD.

29.6 The Electromagnetic Spectrum

LO 29.6 Describe the electromagnetic spectrum.

Although Equations 29.16 relate an electromagnetic wave's frequency and wavelength, one of these quantities remains arbitrary. That means electromagnetic waves can have any frequency or, equivalently, any wavelength. Visible light occupies a wavelength range from about 400 nm to 700 nm, corresponding to frequencies of 7.5×10^{14} Hz to 4.3×10^{14} Hz. The different wavelengths or frequencies correspond to different colors, with red at the long-wavelength, low-frequency end of the visible region and violet at the short-wavelength, high-frequency end (see the enlargement in Fig. 29.10).

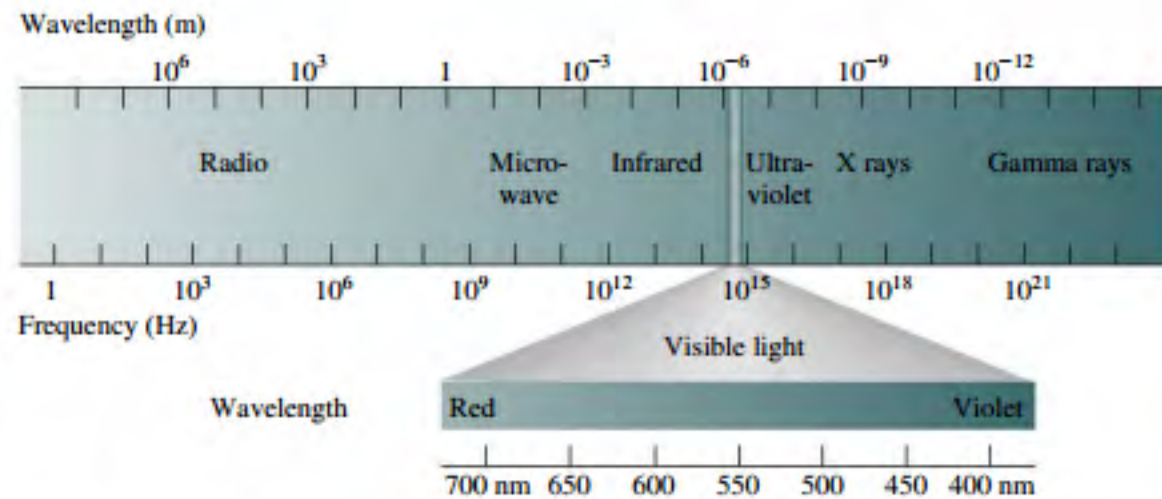


FIGURE 29.10 The electromagnetic spectrum ranges from radio waves to gamma rays, with visible light occupying only a narrow range of wavelengths and frequencies on a logarithmic scale.

Figure 29.10 shows the **electromagnetic spectrum**, including frequencies and wavelengths that differ by many orders of magnitude from those of visible light. The invisible electromagnetic waves beyond the narrow visible range were unknown in Maxwell's time. A brilliant confirmation of Maxwell's theory came in 1888, when the German physicist Heinrich Hertz succeeded in generating and detecting electromagnetic waves of much lower frequency than visible light. Hertz intended his work only to verify Maxwell's modification of Ampère's law, but the practical consequences have proven enormous. In 1901, the Italian scientist Guglielmo Marconi transmitted electromagnetic waves across the Atlantic Ocean, creating a public sensation. From the pioneering work of Hertz and Marconi, spurred by the theoretical efforts of Maxwell, came the entire technology of radio, television, and microwaves—enabling the wireless communications that so dominate modern society. We now consider all electromagnetic waves in the frequency range from a few Hz to about 3×10^{11} Hz as radio waves, with AM radio at about 1 MHz, FM at 100 MHz, television in patches of the spectrum from about 50 MHz to 1 GHz, and microwaves for WiFi, radar, cooking, cellphones, and satellite communications at 1 GHz and above.

Between radio waves and visible light lies the infrared frequency range. Electromagnetic waves in this region are emitted by warm objects, even when they're not hot enough to glow visibly. For this reason, infrared cameras are used to determine subtle body-temperature differences in medical diagnosis, to examine buildings for heat loss, and to study the birth of stars in clouds of interstellar gas and dust.

Beyond visible light are the ultraviolet rays responsible for sunburn, then the highly penetrating X rays, and finally the gamma rays whose primary terrestrial source is radioactive decay. All these phenomena, from radio to gamma rays, are fundamentally the same: All are electromagnetic waves, differing only in frequency and wavelength. All travel with speed c in vacuum, and all consist of electric and magnetic fields produced from each other through the induction processes described by Faraday's and Ampère's laws. Naming the different types of electromagnetic waves is just a convenience; there are no gaps in

the continuous range of frequencies and wavelengths. Practical differences arise because waves of different wavelengths interact differently with matter; in particular, shorter wavelengths tend to be generated and absorbed most efficiently by smaller systems.

Earth's atmosphere is transparent to visible light and to most radio frequencies. But it's opaque to most infrared, the higher-frequency ultraviolet, X-rays, and all but the highest-frequency gamma rays. Earth's surface would be hazardous to life if ultraviolet weren't absorbed by ozone gas high in the atmosphere, and our planet would be a lot cooler if water vapor, carbon dioxide, and other gases didn't absorb outgoing infrared. But that same infrared absorption is at the heart of our worries about global climate change, because we humans are increasing the levels of infrared-trapping gases. And, as the Application shows, our knowledge of the universe beyond Earth would be severely limited if we could only observe electromagnetic waves that make it through Earth's atmosphere.

GOT IT?

29.4 Figure 29.10 shows that the frequency of gamma rays is (a) about 50% greater than that of visible light, (b) about one one-millionth that of visible light, or (c) more than a million times that of visible light.

29.7 Producing Electromagnetic Waves

LO 29.7 Explain how electromagnetic waves are produced.

All it takes to produce an electromagnetic wave is a changing electric or magnetic field. Once there's a change in one field, induction provides the other field, and together the changing fields continuously regenerate one another. The wave is on its way! Ultimately, changing fields of both types result when we alter the motion of electric charge. Therefore, **accelerated charge is the source of electromagnetic waves.**

In a radio transmitter, the accelerated charges are electrons moving back and forth in an antenna, driven by alternating voltage from an LC circuit (Fig. 29.11). In an X-ray tube, high-energy electrons decelerate rapidly as they slam into a target; their deceleration is the source of the electromagnetic waves, now in the X-ray region of the spectrum. In the magnetron tube of a microwave oven, electrons circle in a magnetic field; their centripetal acceleration is the source of the microwaves that cook your food. And the altered movement of electrons in atoms—although described accurately only by quantum mechanics—is the source of most visible light. If the motion of the accelerated charges is periodic, then the wave frequency is that of the motion; more generally, systems are most efficient at producing (and receiving) electromagnetic waves whose wavelength is comparable to the size of the system. That's why TV antennas are on the order of 1 m in size, while atomic nuclei—some 10^{-15} m in diameter—produce gamma rays.

Calculation of electromagnetic waves from accelerated charges presents challenging but important problems for physicists and engineers. Figure 29.12 shows the field of an oscillating dipole—a configuration approximated by many systems from antennas to atoms and molecules. Note that the waves are strongest in the direction at right angles to the acceleration of the charge distribution and that there's no radiation in the direction of the acceleration. This accounts for, among other phenomena, the directionality of radio and TV antennas, which transmit and receive most effectively perpendicular to the long direction of the antenna.

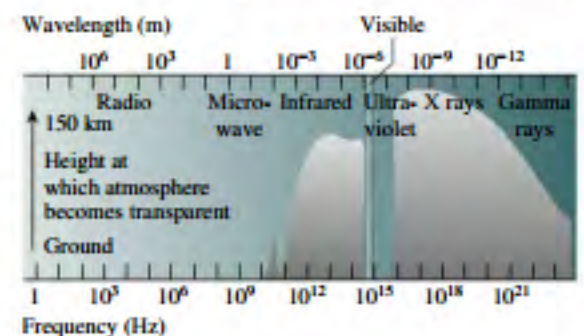
The field shown in Fig. 29.12 seems to bear little resemblance to the plane-wave fields of Fig. 29.3 that we used to demonstrate the possibility of electromagnetic waves. We could produce true plane waves only with an infinite sheet of accelerated charge—an impossibility. But far from the source, the curved field lines in Fig. 29.12 would appear straight, and the wave would approximate a plane wave. So our plane-wave analysis is a valid approximation at great distances—typically many wavelengths—from a localized wave source. Closer to the source more complicated expressions for the wave fields apply, but these, too, satisfy Maxwell's equations.

APPLICATION

Windows on the Universe

For centuries humankind's only information about the universe beyond Earth—except for the occasional meteorite—came from visible light. Optical astronomy gave us a good picture of objects like the Sun and other stars, but visible light alone can't reveal the richness of our vast universe. The discovery of radio waves from outer space led to the development of radio astronomy in the 1930s, complementing optical telescopes by receiving electromagnetic waves of much lower frequency than visible light. But, as the figure shows, much of the rest of the electromagnetic spectrum is blocked by Earth's atmosphere. So a truly comprehensive picture of the universe had to await the development of space flight in the late 20th century. Today we have space-based observatories that gather electromagnetic waves in the infrared, ultraviolet, X-ray, and even gamma-ray regions of the spectrum. We also observe from space in visible light, eliminating atmospheric distortion. Together, astronomical observations across the full electromagnetic spectrum let us observe phenomena from low-energy processes like the birth of stars to high-energy events such as matter plunging into black holes. The photos show two extremes: a ground-based radio telescope array and a spacecraft that detects mysterious gamma-ray bursts from the distant universe.

Very recently, neutrinos and gravitational waves have augmented astronomers' sources of information about the distant universe. We'll explore these nonelectromagnetic signals in later chapters.



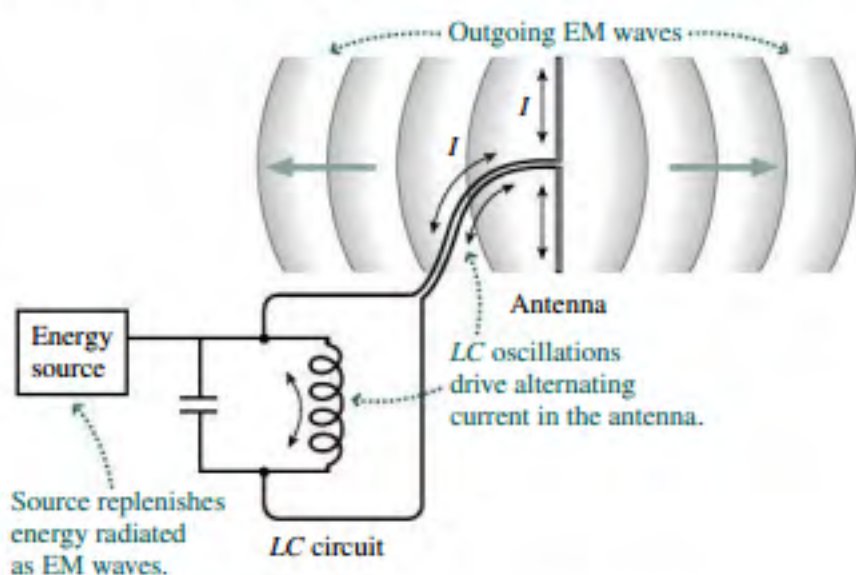


FIGURE 29.11 Simplified diagram of a radio transmitter.

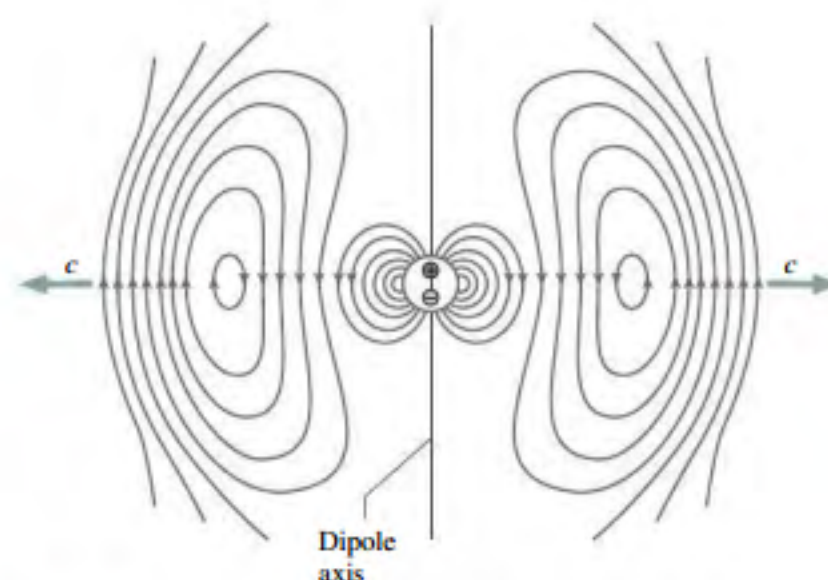


FIGURE 29.12 "Snapshot" showing the electric field of an oscillating electric dipole at an instant in time.

GOT IT?

29.5 Molecular biologists and pharmaceutical companies are increasingly turning to *synchrotron radiation* for the study of biomolecules and the development of new drugs. This intense electromagnetic radiation comes from electrons circling at high speed in so-called storage rings that use magnetic fields to keep the electrons in circular paths. Which of the following is most essential for the generation of these electromagnetic waves? (a) the fact that the electrons move in circular paths and are thus accelerated; (b) the presence of a strong magnetic field; (c) the electrons' high speed

29.8 Energy and Momentum in Electromagnetic Waves

LO 29.8 Evaluate energy, momentum, and radiation pressure associated with electromagnetic waves.

We showed in earlier chapters that electric and magnetic fields contain energy. Electromagnetic waves are combinations of electric and magnetic fields. As they propagate, the waves therefore transport the energy contained in those fields.

Wave Intensity

In Chapter 14 we defined wave intensity as the rate at which a wave transports energy across a unit area; its units are W/m^2 . We can calculate the intensity S of a plane electromagnetic wave by considering a rectangular box of thickness dx and cross-sectional area A with its face perpendicular to the wave propagation (Fig. 29.13). Within this box are wave fields $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ whose energy densities are given by Equations 23.7 and 26.9: $u_E = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2$ and $u_B = B^2/2\mu_0$. If dx is small enough that E and B don't vary significantly, the total energy in the box is the sum of the electric and magnetic energy densities multiplied by the box volume $A dx$:

$$dU = (u_E + u_B)A dx = \frac{1}{2}\left(\epsilon_0 E^2 + \frac{B^2}{\mu_0}\right)A dx$$

This energy moves with speed c , so all the energy moves out of the box in a time $dt = dx/c$. The rate at which energy moves through the cross-sectional area A is then

$$\frac{dU}{dt} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\epsilon_0 E^2 + \frac{B^2}{\mu_0}\right)A \frac{dx}{dx/c} = \frac{c}{2}\left(\epsilon_0 E^2 + \frac{B^2}{\mu_0}\right)A$$

So the intensity S , or rate of energy flow per unit area, is

$$S = \frac{c}{2} \left(\epsilon_0 E^2 + \frac{B^2}{\mu_0} \right)$$

We can recast this equation in simpler form using $E = cB$ and $B = E/c$ for an electromagnetic wave. Replacing one of the E 's in E^2 with cB and one of the B 's in B^2 with E/c , we have

$$S = \frac{c}{2} \left(\epsilon_0 cEB + \frac{EB}{\mu_0 c} \right) = \frac{1}{2\mu_0} (\epsilon_0 \mu_0 c^2 + 1) EB$$

But $c = 1/\sqrt{\epsilon_0 \mu_0}$, so $\epsilon_0 \mu_0 c^2 = 1$, giving

$$S = \frac{EB}{\mu_0} \quad (29.19a)$$

Although we derived Equation 29.19a for an electromagnetic wave, it is in fact a special case of the more general result that nonparallel electric and magnetic fields entail a flow of electromagnetic energy. In general, the rate of energy flow per unit area is given by

$\vec{S}$ is the Poynting vector, which describes the flow of electromagnetic energy.

The cross product shows that the energy flow $\vec{S}$ is perpendicular to both the electric field and the magnetic field.

$$\vec{S} = \frac{\vec{E} \times \vec{B}}{\mu_0} \quad (\text{Poynting vector}) \quad (29.19b)$$

$\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ are electric and magnetic fields at any point in space. They need not be wave fields.

Here the vector $\vec{S}$ gives the direction of the energy flow as well as its magnitude. For an electromagnetic wave in vacuum, with $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ at right angles, Equation 29.19b reduces to Equation 29.19a, with the direction of energy flow the same as the direction of wave travel. The vector intensity $\vec{S}$ is called the **Poynting vector** after the English physicist J. H. Poynting, who suggested it in 1884. Problem 62 explores an important application of the Poynting vector to fields that don't constitute an electromagnetic wave.

In an electromagnetic wave the fields oscillate, and so, therefore, does the intensity. We're usually not interested in this rapid oscillation. For example, an engineer designing a solar energy system doesn't care that sunlight intensity oscillates at about 10^{14} Hz. What she really wants is the *average* intensity, $\bar{S}$. Because the instantaneous intensity given by Equation 29.19a contains a product of sinusoidally varying terms, which are in phase, the average intensity is just half the peak intensity:

$$\bar{S} = \frac{\overline{EB}}{\mu_0} = \frac{E_p B_p}{2\mu_0} \quad (\text{average intensity}) \quad (29.20a)$$

Typical values for $\bar{S}$ in visible light range from a few W/m^2 in the faint light of a candle to many MW/m^2 in the most intense laser beams.

We wrote Equation 29.20a in terms of both the electric and magnetic fields, but we can use the wave condition $E = cB$ to eliminate either field in terms of the other:

$$\bar{S} = \frac{E_p^2}{2\mu_0 c} \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{S} = \frac{c B_p^2}{2\mu_0} \quad (29.20b, c)$$

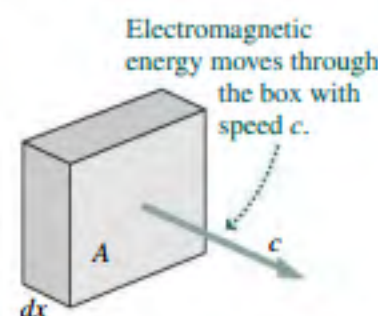


FIGURE 29.13 A box of length dx and cross-sectional area A at right angles to the propagation of an electromagnetic wave.

29.6 Lasers 1 and 2 emit light of the same color, and the electric field in the beam from laser 1 is twice as strong as the field in laser 2's beam. How do their (1) magnetic fields, (2) intensities, and (3) wavelengths compare?

EXAMPLE 29.3 Fields and Power: Solar Energy

The average intensity of noontime sunlight on a clear day is about 1 kW/m^2 . (a) What are the peak electric and magnetic fields in sunlight? (b) At this intensity, what area of 20% efficient solar photovoltaic panels would be needed to provide electricity for the average North American home, which consumes electrical energy at the rate of about 1 kW?

INTERPRET In (a) we're asked for the peak electric and magnetic fields, and we identify 1 kW/m^2 as the average intensity, $\bar{S}$. In (b) we want solar panels to power a home whose power consumption we're given.

DEVELOP For (a), Equations 29.20b, $\bar{S} = E_p^2/2\mu_0 c$, and 29.20c, $\bar{S} = cB_p^2/2\mu_0$, relate peak fields and average intensity. We could solve both of these or, more easily, solve one of them and then use Equation 29.17, $E = cB$, to get the other field. In (b) we'll need to use the 20% efficiency to get the effective power per square meter of solar panels, and then find the area needed to supply the home's 1-kW average electrical energy consumption rate.

EVALUATE (a) We solve Equation 29.20c for B_p :

$$B_p = \sqrt{2\mu_0 \bar{S}/c} = 2.9 \mu\text{T}.$$

Then Equation 29.17 gives $E = cB = 0.87 \text{ kV/m}$. (b) At 20% efficiency, each square meter of solar panels in 1-kW/m^2 sunlight produces 0.20 kW. So we'd need 5 m^2 of solar panels to supply energy at the rate of 1 kW.

ASSESS The fields we've calculated are relatively modest, showing that even bright sunlight doesn't entail large electric and magnetic fields. That 5-m^2 of solar panels is also modest—much smaller than the 100 m^2 of a typical house roof. However, the Sun doesn't shine all the time, and certainly not at noontime intensity, so we'd need a lot more than 5 m^2 of solar panels. But that's still realistic: Your author's house, in cloudy Vermont, generates more electrical energy than it uses from solar panels that cover less than half the roof.

Waves from Localized Sources

When electromagnetic waves originate in a localized source such as an atom, a radio transmitting antenna, a lightbulb, or a star, the wavefronts aren't planes but expanding spheres (recall Fig. 14.13). As the waves expand, their energy is spread over ever-larger spheres—whose area increases as the square of the distance from the source. Therefore, as we found for mechanical waves in Chapter 14, the power per unit area—also called the *intensity* and designated S for electromagnetic waves—decreases as the inverse square of the distance:

$$S = \frac{P}{4\pi r^2} \quad (29.21)$$

Here S and P can be either peak or average intensity and power, and r is the distance from the source. The intensity decreases not because electromagnetic waves “weaken” and lose energy but because their energy gets spread ever more thinly.

Because the intensity of an electromagnetic wave is proportional to the *square* of the field strengths (Equations 29.20), Equation 29.21 shows that the *fields* of a spherical wave decrease as $1/r$. Contrast that with the $1/r^2$ decrease in the electric field of a stationary point charge, and you can see why the wave fields associated with an accelerated charge dominate in all but the immediate vicinity of the charge.

EXAMPLE 29.4**Electromagnetic-Wave Intensity: Cellphone Reception**

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A cellphone's typical average radiated power is about 0.6 W. If the receiver at a cell tower can handle signals with peak electric fields as weak as 1.2 mV/m , what's the maximum distance from phone to tower?

INTERPRET We're asked to find the distance from the 0.6-W cellphone to a cell tower on the condition that the electric field of the cellphone's electromagnetic wave is no weaker than 1.2 mV/m when measured at the tower.

DEVELOP Assuming the 0.6-W signal spreads in all directions, Equation 29.21, $\bar{S} = P/4\pi r^2$, gives the average intensity at a distance

r from the phone. (Here the bars indicate we're dealing with average quantities.) Using this expression for $\bar{S}$ in Equation 29.20b gives $\bar{P}/4\pi r^2 = E_p^2/2\mu_0 c$. Our plan is to solve for the distance r that gives $E_p = 1.2 \text{ mV/m}$.

EVALUATE Solving for r gives $r = \sqrt{2\mu_0 c P/4\pi E_p^2} = 5 \text{ km}$, using $P = 0.6 \text{ W}$ and $E_p = 1.2 \text{ mV/m}$.

ASSESS This answer is about 3 miles, a bit more than the cell radius discussed in the Application on page 597. That's enough to provide a margin of safety, ensuring reliable communications for all phones within the cell.

APPLICATION Cellphones and the Cellular Network



Your cellphone contains a tiny, low-power radio transmitter whose signal intensity decreases as the inverse square of the distance from the phone. The cellular network consists of antennas and associated circuits that receive and transmit signals from and to individual phones. Because of the phones' low power, antennas need to be closely spaced so a phone is rarely out of range. The figure shows a typical urban network consisting of multiple cells—hence the term *cellphone*—each with an antenna mounted on a tower or building. Cells are typically hexagonal regions about 25 km^2 in area; approximating them as circles gives a radius of about 2.8 km —roughly the maximum distance between a phone and an antenna. As you move through an urban area, the network automatically “hands off” your phone to the nearest cell tower. Cellphones transmit on one frequency and receive on another, allowing two-way communications with both parties able to talk at once. The system uses thousands of frequency channels, and thus a single cell tower can handle many simultaneous calls. Cell towers are more widely spaced in rural regions, and phones automatically boost their power to compensate.

Momentum and Radiation Pressure

Moving objects carry not only energy but also momentum. So do electromagnetic waves. Maxwell showed that wave energy U and momentum p are related by $p = U/c$. The wave intensity $\bar{S}$ is the average rate at which the wave carries energy per unit area, and therefore the wave carries momentum per unit area at the rate $\bar{S}/c$. An object that absorbs the wave energy (like a black object exposed to sunlight) absorbs this momentum as well. Newton's law in its general form $F = dp/dt$ shows that the object then experiences a force. Since $\bar{S}/c$ is the rate of momentum absorption per unit area, the result is a **radiation pressure**:

$$P_{\text{rad}} = \frac{\bar{S}}{c} \quad (\text{radiation pressure}) \quad (29.22)$$

Radiation pressure doubles if an object reflects electromagnetic waves, just as bouncing a basketball off the backboard changes the ball's momentum by $2mv$ and therefore delivers momentum $2mv$ to the backboard.

The pressure of ordinary light is tiny and difficult to measure, but high-power lasers can actually levitate small particles. Light pressure has been suggested for spacecraft propulsion (see Passage Problems 73–76 and the Application: Starshot!). The idea that electromagnetic waves carry momentum played a crucial role in Einstein's development of his equation $E = mc^2$. Today, biologists exploit the transfer of momentum from electromagnetic waves to matter, trapping and manipulating viruses, DNA strands, and other microbiological structures with laser-based systems called *optical tweezers*.

APPLICATION Starshot!

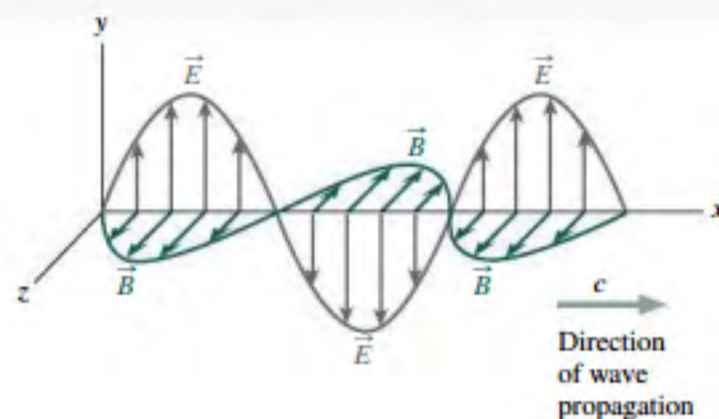
The Starshot initiative is an audacious, privately funded venture whose aim is to send some 1000 credit-card-sized spacecraft called *StarChips* toward Proxima Centauri, the nearest extrasolar star, which was discovered in 2016 to have a planet within its habitable zone. Each *StarChip*, with a mass of just a few grams, would have a camera that would radio back photos of the planet—the photos taking 4.2 years to cover the 4.2-light-year distance from Proxima Centauri.

Each *StarChip* would be equipped with a thin sail of some 4 m^2 area, and after launch into Earth orbit by a conventional rocket, each sail would be hit by light from a ground-based laser producing some 100 GW—a power equivalent to 100 large electric power plants. The associated momentum transfer (doubled because of reflection off the sails) would give the *StarChip* an acceleration around $10^4 g$, rapidly accelerating the craft to some 20% of the speed of light. After that the *StarChips* would coast toward Proxima Centauri, reaching the star in about 20 years. Launch of the *StarChips* could take place as early as the 2030s. You might be around to see the results!

Chapter 29 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here—and one of the biggest ideas in physics—is that electric and magnetic fields together form self-regenerating structures that propagate through space as **electromagnetic waves**. What makes these waves possible is that changing magnetic fields induce electric fields (Faraday's law), and changing electric fields induce magnetic fields (Ampère's law, with Maxwell's modification). Electromagnetic (EM) waves in vacuum consist of electric and magnetic fields perpendicular to each other and to the direction of wave propagation, and in phase.



Key Concepts and Equations

Maxwell's equations completely describe the behavior of electric and magnetic fields in classical physics:

Law	Mathematical Statement	What It Says
Gauss for $\vec{E}$	$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = \frac{q}{\epsilon_0}$	How charges produce electric fields; field lines begin and end on charges.
Gauss for $\vec{B}$	$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{A} = 0$	No magnetic charge; magnetic field lines don't begin or end.
Faraday	$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt}$	Changing magnetic flux produces electric fields.
Ampère	$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = \mu_0 I + \mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt}$	Electric current and changing electric flux produce magnetic fields.

Maxwell's equations show that electromagnetic waves are possible and that their speed in vacuum, the speed of light c , is related to the electric and magnetic constants ϵ_0 and μ_0 :

$$c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon_0 \mu_0}}$$

The value of c is very nearly 3.00×10^8 m/s. Its exact value, used in defining the meter, is 299,792,458 m/s.

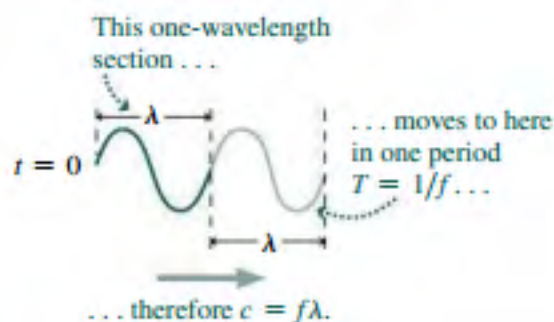


In vacuum, the electric and magnetic fields of a wave are related by

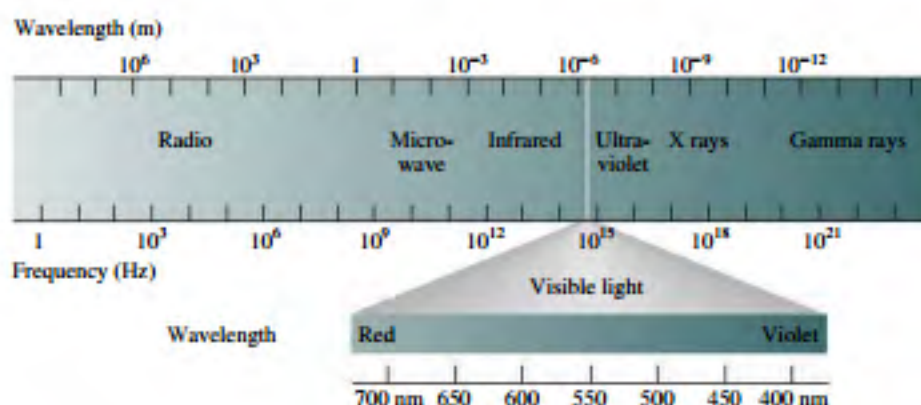
$$E = cB$$

The wave's frequency and wavelength are related by

$$f\lambda = c$$



EM waves can have any wavelength; the whole range constitutes the **electromagnetic spectrum**.



Applications

Polarization describes the direction of an EM wave's electric field and is a property widely used in scientific research and in technological devices including the ubiquitous liquid crystal displays. When polarized light of intensity S_0 is incident on a polarizer with its transmission axis at angle θ to the polarization, the light emerges with intensity

$$S = S_0 \cos^2 \theta$$

EM waves carry both energy and momentum. The **Poynting vector**

$$\vec{S} = \frac{\vec{E} \times \vec{B}}{\mu_0}$$

describes the rate of energy flow per unit area, while the momentum flow results in a **radiation pressure**:

$$P_{\text{rad}} = \frac{\vec{S}}{c}$$

Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>LO 29.1 Articulate the four laws of electromagnetism as you've learned them so far.</p> <p>LO 29.2 Describe Maxwell's modification of Ampère's law and determine magnetic fields induced by changing electric fields. <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 29.1, 29.2; Exercises 29.11, 29.12; Problems 29.40, 29.41, 29.48, 29.55</i></p> <p>LO 29.3 State the four Maxwell equations. <i>For Thought and Discussion Question 29.10</i></p> <p>LO 29.4 Explain how electromagnetic waves arise from Maxwell's equations. <i>For Thought and Discussion Question 29.7; Problem 29.65</i></p> <p>LO 29.5 Describe the properties of electromagnetic waves in vacuum. <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 29.3, 29.4, 29.5; Exercises 29.15, 29.16, 29.17, 29.18, 29.19, 29.20, 29.21,</i></p> | <p><i>29.22, 29.23, 29.24, 29.25; Problems 29.42, 29.43, 29.44, 29.45, 29.46, 29.47, 29.63, 29.66, 29.67</i></p> <p>LO 29.6 Describe the electromagnetic spectrum. <i>For Thought and Discussion Question 29.6; Exercise 29.20; Problem 29.42</i></p> <p>LO 29.7 Explain how electromagnetic waves are produced. <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 29.7, 29.10</i></p> <p>LO 29.8 Evaluate energy, momentum, and radiation pressure associated with electromagnetic waves. <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 29.8, 29.9; Exercises 29.26, 29.27, 29.28, 29.29, 29.30, 29.31, 29.49, 29.50, 29.51, 29.52, 29.53, 29.54, 29.56, 29.57, 29.58, 29.59, 29.60, 29.61, 29.62, 29.64, 29.68, 29.69, 29.70, 29.71, 29.72</i></p> |
|--|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- Why is Maxwell's modification of Ampère's law essential to the existence of electromagnetic waves?
- The presence of magnetic monopoles would require a modification of Gauss's law for magnetism. Which other Maxwell equation would need modification?
- What is the nature of the magnetic field vector in an electromagnetic wave?
- The speed of an electromagnetic wave is given by $c = \lambda f$. How does the speed depend on frequency? On wavelength?
- When astronomers observe a supernova explosion in a distant galaxy, they see a sudden, simultaneous rise in visible light and other forms of electromagnetic radiation. How is this evidence that the speed of light is independent of frequency?
- The Sun emits about half of its electromagnetic-wave energy in the visible region of the spectrum. Where do you think it emits most of the remainder?
- An LC circuit is made entirely from superconducting materials, yet its oscillations eventually damp out. Why?
- If you double the field strength in an electromagnetic wave, what happens to the intensity?
- The intensity of light drops as the inverse square of the distance from the source. Does this mean that electromagnetic energy is lost? Explain.
- Electromagnetic waves don't readily penetrate metals. Why not?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 29.2 Ambiguity in Ampère's Law

- A uniform electric field is increasing at $1.0 \text{ (V/m)/}\mu\text{s}$. Find the displacement current through a 1.6-cm^2 area perpendicular to the field.
- A parallel-plate capacitor has square plates 13 cm on a side and 0.50 cm apart. The voltage across the plates is increasing at 220 V/ms . What's the displacement current in the capacitor?

Section 29.4 Electromagnetic Waves

- The fields of an electromagnetic wave are $\vec{E} = E_p \sin(kz + \omega t)\hat{j}$ and $\vec{B} = B_p \sin(kz + \omega t)\hat{i}$. Give a unit vector in the wave's propagation direction.
- A radio wave's electric field is given by the expression $\vec{E} = E \sin(kz - \omega t) \times (\hat{i} + \hat{j})$. (a) Find the peak electric field. (b) Give a unit vector in the direction of the magnetic field at a place and time where $\sin(kz - \omega t)$ is positive.

Section 29.5 Properties of Electromagnetic Waves

- A light-minute is the distance light travels in 1 minute. Show that the Sun is about 8 light-minutes from Earth.
- Your intercontinental telephone call is carried by electromagnetic waves routed via a satellite in geostationary orbit at $36,000 \text{ km}$ altitude. Approximately how long does it take before your voice is heard at the other end?
- An airplane's radar altimeter works by bouncing radio waves off the ground and measuring the round-trip travel time. If that time is $74.7 \mu\text{s}$, what should the pilot report to the passengers as the current altitude?
- Roughly how long does it take light to travel 1 foot?
- If you speak via radio from Earth to an astronaut on the Moon, how long is it before you can receive a reply?
- What are the wavelengths of (a) a 108-MHz FM radio wave, (b) a 2.4-GHz WiFi signal, (c) a 620-THz light wave, and (d) a 2.0-EHz X ray?
- A 50-Hz power line emits electromagnetic radiation. What's the wavelength?
- Microwave ovens for consumers' use operate at 2.45 GHz . What's the distance between wave crests in such a microwave?
- An electromagnetic wave is propagating in the z -direction. What's its polarization direction if its magnetic field is in the y -direction?
- Polarized light is incident on a sheet of polarizing material, and only 20% of the light gets through. Find the angle between the electric field and the material's transmission axis.
- Vertically polarized light passes through a polarizer with its axis at 69° to the vertical. What fraction of the incident intensity emerges from the polarizer?

Section 29.8 Energy and Momentum in Electromagnetic Waves

26. A typical laboratory electric field is 1500 V/m. Find the average intensity of an electromagnetic wave with this value for its peak field.
27. What would be the average intensity of a laser beam so strong that its electric field produced dielectric breakdown of air (which requires $E_p = 3 \text{ MV/m}$)?
28. Estimate the peak electric field inside a 1.1-kW microwave oven under the simplifying approximation that the microwaves propagate as a plane wave through the oven's 750-cm² cross-sectional area.
29. Your new radio says it can pick up signals with peak electric fields as weak as 450 $\mu\text{V/m}$. Will it work if you take it to your remote cabin, where the intensity of your favorite radio station is 0.35 nW/m²?
30. A laser pointer delivers 0.10-mW average power in a beam 0.90 mm in diameter. Find (a) the average intensity, (b) the peak electric field, and (c) the peak magnetic field.
31. Your university radio station has a 4.6-kW radio transmitter that broadcasts uniformly in all directions; listeners within 15 km have reliable reception. You want to increase the power to double that range. What should be the new power?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

32. **Example 29.2:** A green laser pointer produces 532-nm light that's propagating in the +y-direction. Its electric field is parallel to the z-axis and has amplitude 2.19 kV/m. Find (a) the wave frequency, (b) the amplitude of the wave's magnetic field, and (c) the direction of the magnetic field.
33. **Example 29.2:** An infrared laser that sends signals along optical fibers that comprise the Internet operates at a frequency of 194 THz and produces electromagnetic waves with magnetic-field amplitude of 328 μT . The magnetic field is parallel to the y-axis. Find (a) the wavelength of the laser light if it's propagating in air, (b) the wave's electric-field amplitude, and (c) the electric-field direction when the wave is propagating in the +x-direction.
34. **Example 29.2:** An AM radio station broadcasts with a wavelength of 484 m. Its transmitting antenna is vertical, resulting in vertically polarized radio waves (i.e., the electric field of the waves is vertical). You observe the station's signal at a point where it's propagating due east, and where the amplitude of the wave's electric field is 347 mV/m. Find (a) the wave frequency, (b) the amplitude of the wave's magnetic field, and (c) the direction of the magnetic field.
35. **Example 29.2:** A public FM radio station broadcasts at 88.7 MHz. Its transmitting antenna produces waves whose magnetic field is horizontal. You observe the station's signal at a point where it's propagating due south, and where the amplitude of the magnetic field is 28.5 nT. Find (a) the wavelength, (b) the amplitude of the wave's electric field, and (c) the direction of the electric field.
36. **Example 29.4:** When the cellphone of Example 29.4 finds itself in a rural area, it automatically raises its transmitter power to 3.0 W. At this power, how far can it be from the cell tower described in the example?

37. **Example 29.4:** What transmitter power would be needed for a cellphone to communicate reliably with the cell tower described in Example 29.4, if the phone is 8.7 km from the tower?
38. **Example 29.4:** The *Voyager 1* spacecraft, now in interstellar space, radios data back to Earth using a 22.4-W transmitter. A high-gain antenna focuses a narrow beam of radio waves toward Earth, making the transmitter equivalent to one that, if it were broadcasting in all directions, would have 50,000 times the power of the actual transmitter. In the current epoch, the Deep Space Network antennas that receive *Voyager's* broadcasts detect *Voyager* signals with electric-field amplitudes of 3.9 pV/m. How far away is *Voyager*?
39. **Example 29.4:** Rovers on the surface of Mars communicate data to the *Mars Reconnaissance Orbiter (MRO)*, which orbits Mars and relays the data to Earth. *MRO* uses a 100-W radio transmitter, and its high-gain antenna (HGA) has a 3-m parabolic dish that focuses the radio signal into a narrow band, effectively increasing the transmitter power by a factor of 50,000. What sensitivity must Earth-based receivers have to receive signals from *MRO*? Express it as a minimum value for the electric-field amplitude in the radio waves at the receiver, and base your answer on the greatest possible Earth–Mars distance, about 400 million km.

Problems

40. A parallel-plate capacitor has circular plates with radius 50.0 cm and spacing 1.0 mm. A uniform electric field between the plates is changing at the rate of 1.0 MV/m $\cdot$ s. Find the magnetic field strength between the plates (a) on the symmetry axis, (b) 15 cm from the axis, and (c) 150 cm from the axis.
41. An electric field points into the page and occupies a circular region of radius 1.0 m, as shown in Fig. 29.14. There are no electric charges in the region, but there is a magnetic field forming closed loops pointing clockwise, as shown. The magnetic-field strength 80 cm from the center of the region is 1.9 μT . (a) What's the rate of change of the electric field? (b) Is the electric field increasing or decreasing?
42. The medical profession divides the ultraviolet region of the electromagnetic spectrum into three bands: UVA (320 nm–420 nm), UVB (290 nm–320 nm), and UVC (100 nm–290 nm). UVA and UVB promote skin cancer and premature skin aging; UVB also causes sunburn, but helpfully fosters production of vitamin D. Ozone in Earth's atmosphere blocks most of the more dangerous UVC. Find the frequency range associated with UVB radiation.
43. Dielectric breakdown in air occurs when the electric field is approximately 3 MV/m. What would be the peak magnetic field in an electromagnetic wave with this peak electric field?
44. A polarizer blocks 75% of a polarized light beam. What's the angle between the beam's polarization and the polarizer's axis?
45. An electro-optic modulator is a device that switches a laser beam rapidly from off to on by switching the polarization direction through 90° when a voltage is applied. But a brownout results in only enough voltage for a 78° rotation. What fraction of the light is transmitted during the brownout when the beam is supposed to be fully on?
46. Unpolarized light of intensity S_0 passes first through a polarizer with its axis vertical and then through one with its axis at 35° to the vertical. Find the intensity after the second polarizer.

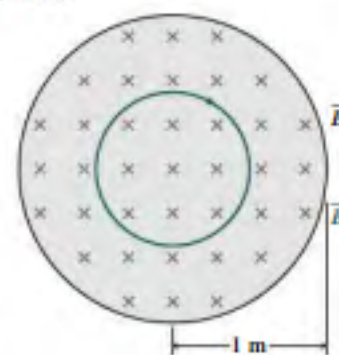


FIGURE 29.14 Problems 41 and 55.

47. Vertically polarized light passes through two polarizers, the first at 60° to the vertical and the second at 90° to the vertical. What fraction of the light gets through?
48. A magnetic field (not necessarily uniform) lies in the plane of this page, and a uniform electric field is perpendicular to the page and points out of the page. You evaluate $\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ going clockwise around the edge of the page, and the result is $5.12 \times 10^{-8} \text{ T} \cdot \text{m}$. (a) At what rate is the electric field changing? (b) Is the electric field increasing or decreasing? *Hint:* You'll need to do an experimental measurement.
49. High microwave intensities can cause biological damage through heating of tissue; a particular concern is cataract formation. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration limits microwave radiation near the door of a microwave oven to 5.0 mW/m^2 . The window in a particular oven door measures 40 cm by 17 cm and is covered with a metal screen to block microwaves. Assuming power leaks uniformly through the window area, what percent of the oven's 900-W microwave power can leak without exceeding the FDA standards?
50. Use the fact that sunlight intensity at Earth's orbit is 1360 W/m^2 to determine the Sun's total power output.
51. A quasar 10 billion light-years from Earth appears the same brightness as a star 57,000 light-years away. How do the power outputs of the quasar and the star compare?
52. Lasers are classified according to the eye-damage danger they pose. Class-2 lasers, including many laser pointers, produce visible light with no greater than 1 mW total power. They're relatively safe because the eye's blink reflex limits exposure time to 250 ms. Find (a) the intensity of a 1-mW class-2 laser with beam diameter 1.8 mm, (b) the total energy delivered before the blink reflex shuts the eye, and (c) the peak electric field in the laser beam.
53. At 2.0 km from a radio transmitter, the peak electric field is 350 mV/m. Assuming the transmitter broadcasts equally in all directions, find (a) the transmitted power and (b) the peak electric field 10 km from the transmitter.
54. Find the peak electric and magnetic fields 1.7 m from a 60-W lightbulb that radiates equally in all directions.
55. Note the situation shown in Fig. 29.14, but now consider that the electric field strength is increasing at the rate of $4.88 \times 10^{10} \text{ V/m} \cdot \text{s}$, and that you don't know the magnetic field at the 50.0-cm distance from the center where the figure shows a field line. Find (a) the magnetic field strength at the 50 cm distance shown and (b) also at 1.50 m from the center of the circular region (e.g., outside the electric-field region).
56. A camera flash delivers 4.5 kW of light power for 1.0 ms. Find (a) the total energy and (b) the total momentum carried by the flash.
57. A laser produces an average power of 6.0 W in a 1.0-mm-diameter beam. Find (a) the average intensity and (b) the peak electric field of the laser light.
58. A 180-W/cm^2 laser beam shines on a light-absorbing surface. What's the radiation pressure on the surface?
59. A 79-kg astronaut is floating in empty space. If she shines a 1.0-W flashlight in a fixed direction, how long will it take her to accelerate to 10 m/s?
60. Read the Application: Starshot on page 597 and assume that the mass of each *StarChip* spacecraft is 2.4 grams. Consider that 100 GW of laser power is directed toward a *StarChip*'s sail for 10 minutes. The sail is so thin that some of the light goes right through it, and the laser beam is also wider than the sail. Assume, therefore, that only 34 GW of laser power actually reflects from the sail. Find (a) the total energy associated with the 10-min burst of this 34-GW pulse, (b) the associated momentum, and (c) the spacecraft's final speed, expressed as a decimal fraction of the speed of light, assuming it's accelerated from rest. For (c), don't forget that the sail reflects the incident light rather than absorbing it.
61. A white dwarf star is approximately the size of Earth but radiates about as much power as the Sun. Estimate the radiation pressure on a light-absorbing object at the white dwarf's surface.
62. A cylindrical resistor of length L , radius a , and resistance R carries current I . Calculate the electric and magnetic fields at the surface of the resistor, assuming the electric field is uniform over the surface. Calculate the Poynting vector and show that it points into the resistor. Calculate the flux of the Poynting vector (that is, $\int \vec{S} \cdot d\vec{A}$) over the resistor's surface to get the rate of electromagnetic energy flow into the resistor, and show that the result is $I^2 R$. Your result shows that the energy heating the resistor comes from the fields surrounding it. These fields are sustained by the source of electric energy that drives the current.
63. In a stack of polarizing sheets, each sheet has its transmission axis rotated 14° with respect to the preceding sheet. If the stack passes 37% of the incident unpolarized light, how many sheets does it contain?
64. You're an astronomer studying the origin of the solar system, and you're evaluating a hypothesis that sufficiently small particles were blown out of the solar system by the force of sunlight. To see how small such particles must be, compare the force of sunlight with the force of solar gravity, and solve for the particle radius at which the two are equal. Assume spherical particles with density 2 g/cm^3 . (*Note:* Distance from the Sun doesn't matter. Why not?)
65. Differentiate Equation 29.12 with respect to x and Equation 29.13 with respect to t . Then, using the fact that mixed derivatives are equal (e.g., $\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left(\frac{\partial B}{\partial x} \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\partial B}{\partial t} \right)$), combine the resulting equations and show that the result is the wave equation (Equation 14.5) for waves with speed $c = 1/\sqrt{\epsilon_0 \mu_0}$.
66. Maxwell's equations in a dielectric resemble those in vacuum (Equations 29.6–29.9) but with ϵ_0 replaced by $\kappa \epsilon_0$, where κ is the dielectric constant introduced in Chapter 23. Show that the speed of electromagnetic waves in a dielectric is $c/\sqrt{\kappa}$.
67. You're designing a WiFi router that operates at both 2.40 GHz and 5.00 GHz. The design calls for antennas that are half a wavelength high. How high should you make the two antennas?
68. Your roommate's father is CEO of a coal company, so your roommate is understandably skeptical of alternative energy proposals. He claims that there's no future for solar energy, because the power in sunlight is insufficient to meet humankind's energy demand. Is he right? To find out, compare the solar power incident on Earth with our human energy consumption rate of about 18 TW.
69. Earth emits infrared radiation at very nearly the rate at which it absorbs sunlight energy—namely, 239 W for every m^2 of Earth's surface area. Estimate the intensity of that infrared radiation at the Sun's distance from Earth. Your answer shows why the energy flow between Sun and Earth is essentially one way, all from Sun to Earth.
70. Your friend who works for the college radio station must make electric-field measurements for a report to be filed with the station's application for license renewal. The measurement is made 4.6 km from the antenna, where your friend measures the electric field at 380 V/m. The station is allowed to broadcast at no more than 55-kW power. Assuming power spreads equally in all directions, is the station in compliance with its license?

71. The National Ignition Facility at Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory initiates nuclear fusion by converging 192 laser beams on a deuterium–tritium target. Each beam has a square cross section 38 cm on a side, and each beam delivers 10.0 kJ of energy in 20.0 ns. Find (a) the peak electric field and (b) the peak magnetic field in each laser beam. (c) Find the combined power of all 192 laser beams while they're firing, and compare with humankind's energy consumption rate of about 18 TW.
72. The table below shows the intensity of the radio signal received at Earth from a spacecraft on its way to the outer solar system, as a function of its distance from Earth. Distances are in astronomical units (AU, with 1 AU being the mean Earth–Sun distance; see Appendix E). Determine a quantity that, when you plot $\bar{S}$ versus that quantity, should give a straight line. Make your plot, establish a best-fit line, and use it to determine the spacecraft's transmitter power.

Distance (AU)	1.56	1.81	2.14	2.78	3.17	4.25
Intensity, $\bar{S}$ (10^{-23} W/m ²)	22.5	17.8	11.6	7.10	5.63	3.01

Passage Problems

Proposals have been made to “sail” spacecraft to the outer solar system using the pressure of sunlight, or even to propel interstellar spacecraft with high-powered, Earth-based lasers. Sailing spacecraft would need no fuel—a great advantage because fuel constitutes much of the initial weight of any space mission. The Japanese *Ikaros* spacecraft, launched in 2010, demonstrated the feasibility of solar sailing in interplanetary space. Figure 29.15 shows what a solar sail would look like in space.

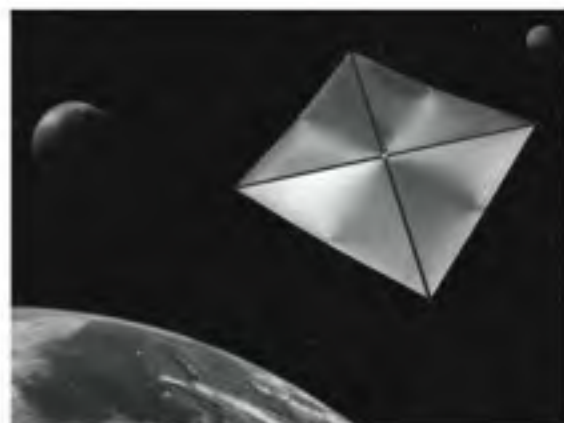


FIGURE 29.15 Artist's conception of a solar sailing spacecraft. The sail is hundreds of square meters in area, but is less than 10 μm thick (Passage Problems 73–76).

73. If a sunlight-powered sailing spacecraft accelerated at 1 m/s^2 in the vicinity of Earth's orbit, what would be its acceleration at Mars, about 1.5 times as far from the Sun as Earth?
- about 0.25 m/s^2
 - a little less than 0.5 m/s^2
 - a little more than 0.5 m/s^2
 - about 0.66 m/s^2

74. One spacecraft has a sail that absorbs all light incident on it; the other has a perfectly reflective sail. How do their accelerations compare in light with the same intensity?
- The absorptive sail gives twice the acceleration.
 - The reflective sail gives twice the acceleration.
 - The absorptive sail gives greater acceleration, but not twice as much.
 - The reflective sail gives greater acceleration, but not twice as much.
75. A sail capable of propelling a spacecraft to the outer solar system must be able to overcome the Sun's gravity. Suppose a spacecraft is designed so the force of sunlight on its sail is 20 times that of solar gravity in the vicinity of Earth's orbit. If the spacecraft reaches Jupiter, some 5 times as far from the Sun as Earth,
- the sail force will still exceed solar gravity, now by a factor of 4.
 - the sail force will be slightly less than solar gravity.
 - the sail force will now be 25 times solar gravity.
 - the sail force will still be 20 times solar gravity.
76. The intensity of sunlight at Earth's orbit is about 1.4 kW/m^2 . A 100-kg sailing spacecraft with 1-km^2 sail area would experience an acceleration of about
- 5 mm/s^2 .
 - 5 cm/s^2 .
 - 5 m/s^2 .
 - 5 km/s^2 .

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Electromagnetic waves, comprising changing electric and magnetic fields, carry not only cellphone conversations but also TV shows, the energy of sunlight, and signals from physical processes in the farthest reaches of the universe.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 29.1 Yes; the displacement current $\epsilon_0 d\Phi_E/dt$ has the same effect as the real current I in producing magnetic fields.
- 29.2 (c)
- 29.3 (b)
- 29.4 (c)
- 29.5 (a)
- 29.6 (1) $B_1 = 2B_2$; (2) $S_1 = 4S_2$; (3) $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2$

Electromagnetism is a fundamental force of nature. The strong attraction between positive and negative charge makes most bulk matter electrically neutral, and hides from us the essential role electricity and magnetism play in the structure of matter.

Electromagnetic interactions are best described in terms of **electric fields** and **magnetic fields**. Electric charges create electric fields, and electric charges respond to the fields of other charges.

Maxwell's equations are the four fundamental laws of electromagnetism:

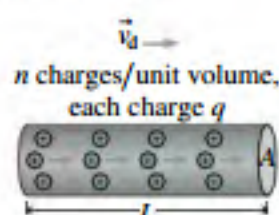
Law	Mathematical Statement	What It Says
Gauss for $\vec{E}$	$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{A} = \frac{q}{\epsilon_0}$	How charges produce electric field; field lines begin and end on charges.
Gauss for $\vec{B}$	$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{A} = 0$	No magnetic charge; magnetic field lines don't begin or end.
Faraday	$\oint \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt}$	Changing magnetic flux produces electric field.
Ampère	$\oint \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = \mu_0 I + \mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt}$	Electric current and changing electric flux produce magnetic field.

The **electromagnetic force** on a charged particle consists of the **electric force** and the **magnetic force**. Both are proportional to the charge and to the appropriate field; the magnetic force depends also on the particle's velocity $\vec{v}$:

$$\vec{F}_{EM} = \vec{F}_E + \vec{F}_B = q\vec{E} + q\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$$

Electric current is a flow of electric charge:

$$I = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t} = nAqv_d$$



In ohmic materials, **Ohm's law** relates voltage, current, and resistance: $I = V/R$.

Electromagnetic induction, described by Faraday's law, is the basis of electric generators and a host of other electromagnetic technologies and natural phenomena.

A rightward-moving magnet results in a positive current.



Moving electric charges create magnetic fields, and moving electric charges respond to magnetic fields. Both electric and magnetic fields store energy.

A changing magnetic field creates an electric field, and vice versa. Together, changing fields combine to make **electromagnetic waves**—self-replicating structures that propagate through empty space at the speed of light, c . Light itself is an electromagnetic wave.

Coulomb's law and the **Biot-Savart law** provide alternatives to Gauss's and Ampère's laws for determining electric and magnetic fields of pointlike elements of charge and moving charge, respectively:

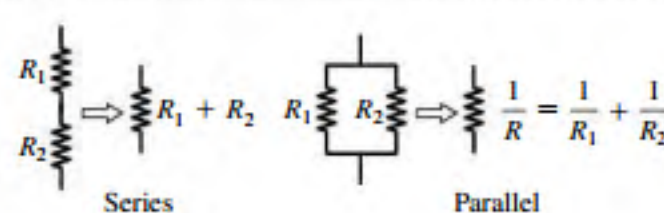
$$\vec{E} = \frac{kq}{r^2} \hat{r}$$

$$d\vec{B} = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \frac{I d\vec{l} \times \hat{r}}{r^2}$$

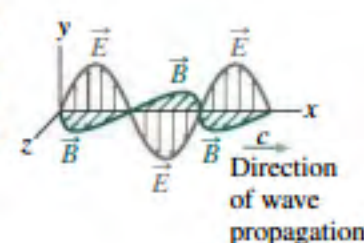
The **electric potential difference** describes the work per unit charge needed to move charge between two points in an electric field; its units are N/C or **volts (V)**:

$$V_{AB} = -\int_A^B \vec{E} \cdot d\vec{l}$$

Electric circuits are interconnections of electric components, including batteries, resistors, and others. They can often be analyzed by considering **series** and **parallel** combinations.

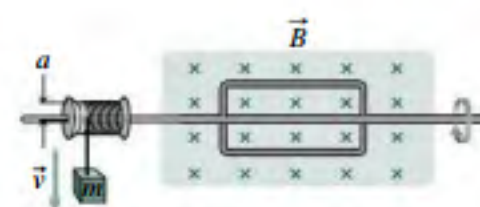


Electromagnetic waves result from changing electric and magnetic fields. EM waves include light, and all EM waves propagate in vacuum at the speed of light, $c = 1/\sqrt{\mu_0 \epsilon_0}$.



Part Four Challenge Problem

A wire of length L and resistance R forms a rectangular loop twice as long as it is wide. It's mounted on a nonconducting horizontal axle parallel to its longer dimension, as shown in the figure. A uniform magnetic field $\vec{B}$ points into the page. A long string of negligible mass is wrapped many times around a drum of radius a attached to the axle, and a mass m is attached to the string. When the mass is released, it falls and eventually reaches a speed that, averaged over one cycle of the loop's rotation, is constant. Find an expression for that average speed.



Optics



Drops of dew act as miniature optical systems, with light refracting through the drops to form images of background leaves.

OVERVIEW

Imagine a world without light. We see because light reflects off objects, and our eyes form images because light refracts in our corneas and lenses. When our built-in optical systems aren't perfect, we correct them with additional lenses or we use lasers to reshape the cornea. Microscopes and telescopes extend the range of our vision. The phenomenon of interference makes possible some of the most precise measurements and is behind the operation of everyday technologies like CDs and DVDs. Light

signals carry e-mail, web pages, telephone conversations, and computer data through the optical fibers that form the world's communications networks. Although the behavior of light is ultimately grounded in Maxwell's equations of electromagnetism, we can learn much about light from the simpler perspective of optics. The next three chapters explore the behavior of light, images and optical instruments, and phenomena associated with the wave nature of light.

Reflection and Refraction

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- The realization that light is an electromagnetic wave (Sections 29.4 and 29.5)
- The relation between wave speed, frequency, and wavelength (Sections 14.1 and 29.5)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 30.1 Describe the reflection of light using geometrical optics.
- LO 30.2 Describe the refraction of light using Snell's law.
- LO 30.3 Explain total internal reflection and calculate the critical angle.
- LO 30.4 Explain why dispersion occurs and calculate angular spreading associated with dispersion.



What process causes the upside-down image above the shark, and what's this got to do with the Internet?

Maxwell's brilliant work shows that the phenomena of **optics**—the behavior of light—are manifestations of electromagnetism. Except in the atomic realm, where quantum physics reigns, all optical phenomena are understandable in terms of electromagnetic-wave fields described by Maxwell's equations. But when objects with which light or any other wave interacts are much larger than the wavelength, light generally travels in straight lines called **rays**. **Geometrical optics** describes the behavior of light in this approximation. Here we'll use geometrical optics to explore the behavior of light at interfaces between different materials. In Chapter 31 we'll see how geometrical optics explains lenses, the human eye, and many optical instruments. Then, in Chapter 32, we'll move beyond geometrical optics to explore phenomena whose explanation requires the wave nature of light.

30.1 Reflection

LO 30.1 *Describe the reflection of light using geometrical optics.*

Some materials, notably metals, **reflect** nearly all the light incident on them. It's no coincidence that these materials are also good electrical conductors. The oscillating electric field of a light wave drives a metal's free electrons into oscillatory motion, which, in turn, produces electromagnetic waves. The net effect is to reradiate the wave back into the original medium. Other materials reflect only part of the incident light. Either way, reflection satisfies the same geometrical conditions: The incident ray, the reflected ray, and the normal to the interface between two materials all lie in the same plane. The **angle of reflection** θ_1' that the reflected ray makes with the normal is the same as the **angle of incidence** θ_1 made by the incident ray (Fig. 30.1a):

$$\theta_1' = \theta_1 \quad (30.1)$$

where the subscript 1 denotes the first medium.

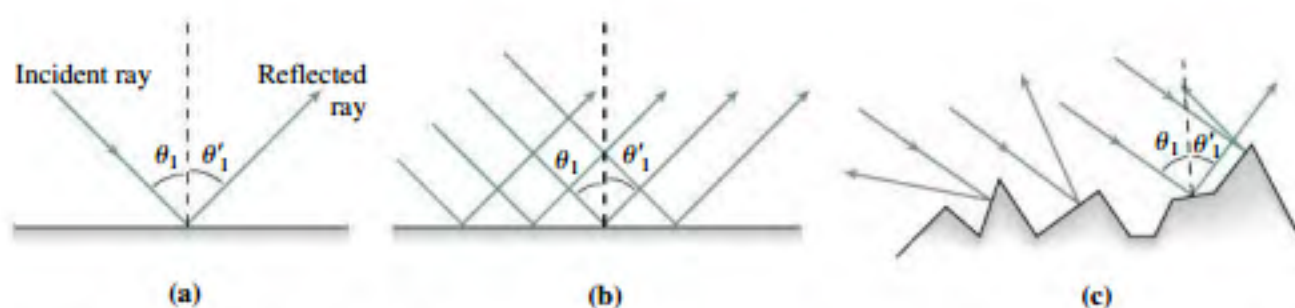
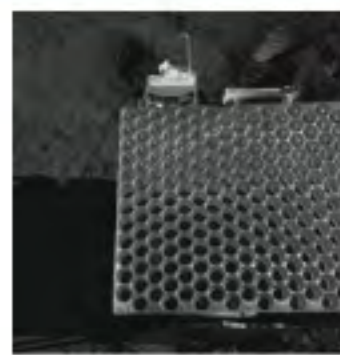


FIGURE 30.1 (a) Angles of reflection and incidence are equal. (b) In specular reflection, a smooth surface reflects a light beam undistorted. (c) A rough surface results in diffuse reflection.

In **specular reflection**, parallel rays reflect off a smooth surface and the entire beam is reflected without distortion (Fig. 30.1b). In contrast, a rough surface reflects individual rays in different directions (Fig. 30.1c)—even though each ray still obeys Equation 30.1. This is **diffuse reflection**. White paper is a diffuse reflector, while the aluminum coating of a mirror is an excellent specular reflector.

APPLICATION Moon's Distance

Knowing the precise distance to the Moon and how it varies with time helps scientists confirm Einstein's general theory of relativity, a fundamental theory of physics that describes, among other things, black holes and the overall structure of the universe. In the late 1960s and early 1970s, *Apollo* astronauts left arrays of corner reflectors on the Moon, and they've been used ever since to reflect laser beams originating from Earth. Timing the beams' round-trip travel provides precise measures of the Moon's distance. Since 2016 a lunar-ranging experiment at New Mexico's Apache Point Observatory has been measuring the lunar distance to within about 2 millimeters! The photo shows the largest of the *Apollo* reflector arrays, placed by *Apollo 15* astronauts in 1971.



EXAMPLE 30.1 Reflection: The Corner Reflector

Two mirrors join at right angles. Show that any light ray incident in a plane perpendicular to both mirrors will return antiparallel to its incident direction.

INTERPRET We've sketched the situation in Fig. 30.2. We're asked to show that the lines representing incident and outgoing rays in the figure are parallel.

DEVELOP The outgoing ray will be antiparallel to the incident ray if the light turns through a total of 180° . Applying Equation 30.1 to each of the two reflections shows that the angles θ are the same, and so are the angles ϕ . Figure 30.2 shows that the first reflection turns the incident ray through an angle $180^\circ - 2\theta$. Similarly, the second turns it through $180^\circ - 2\phi$.

EVALUATE The pair of mirrors thus turns the ray through a total angle of

$$(180^\circ - 2\theta) + (180^\circ - 2\phi) = 360^\circ - 2(\theta + \phi)$$

But Fig. 30.2 shows that θ and ϕ sum to 90° , so the total angle is $360^\circ - 180^\circ = 180^\circ$ —which is what we set out to prove.

ASSESS Here we've explored a remarkable device, a pair of perpendicular mirrors that returns a light ray in exactly the direction from which it came—provided the light is in the plane perpendicular to both mirrors. Add a third mirror at right angles to the other two, and you have a **corner reflector**—a device that returns a light ray in the

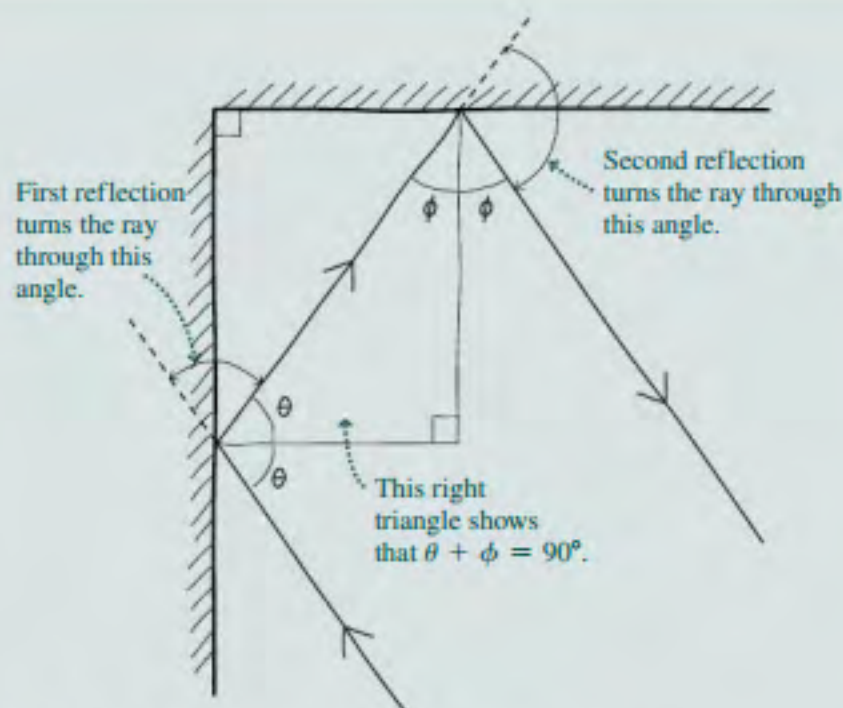


FIGURE 30.2 A two-dimensional corner reflector.

direction from which it came, period. Corner reflectors, often made with prisms rather than mirrors, are widely used in optics. You can explore the corner reflector in Problem 62, while the Application on the preceding page shows how corner reflectors help verify one of the most fundamental theories of physics.

GOT IT?

30.1 A London steeple appears as reflected by a wet pavement. Would you consider this to be (a) specular reflection, (b) diffuse reflection, or (c) somewhere in between?

Partial Reflection

Some light is reflected even at the interface with a transparent material. The detailed description of such partial reflection follows from Maxwell's equations and is akin to the partial reflection of waves on strings described in Chapter 14. The least reflection occurs with normal incidence; for glass, about 4% of normally incident light is reflected. Reflection increases with larger incidence angles. Camera lenses, binoculars, solar photovoltaic cells, and other devices often have special antireflection coatings to reduce light loss. You'll see how these coatings work in Chapter 32.

30.2 Refraction

LO 30.2 Describe the refraction of light using Snell's law.

We saw in Chapter 14 that wave speeds differ in different media. With light, the speed in transparent media is lower than in vacuum. We characterize a transparent medium by its **index of refraction**, defined as the ratio of the speed of light c in vacuum to the speed of light v in the medium:

A medium's index of refraction n ... is the ratio of the speed of light c in vacuum ...

$$n = \frac{c}{v} \quad (\text{index of refraction}) \quad (30.2)$$

... to its speed v in the medium.

Although the wave speed changes when light enters a new medium, Fig. 30.3 shows that its frequency f can't change and therefore, since the wave speed is $v = f\lambda$, the wavelength must change. Equation 30.2 shows that the wavelength in a medium with refractive index n is $\lambda = v/f = c/nf$. Because c and f don't change, the wavelength is inversely proportional to n . Table 30.1 lists some refractive indices.

If you worked Problem 66 in Chapter 29, you found that the speed of light in a dielectric medium is given by $v = c/\sqrt{\kappa}$, where κ is the dielectric constant introduced in Chapter 23. Comparison with Equation 30.2 shows that the index of refraction is the square root of the dielectric constant—one of many manifestations of the intimate connection between optics and electromagnetism. But don't try to calculate refractive indices from the dielectric constants given in Table 23.1. The dielectric constant is frequency dependent, and at optical frequencies it's significantly different from the DC values in Table 23.1.

When light is incident at an angle on a transparent material, the light transmitted into the material undergoes **refraction**—a change in its propagation direction (Fig. 30.4).

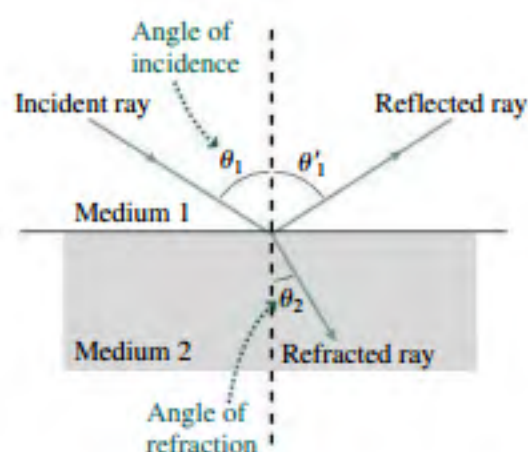


FIGURE 30.4 Refraction and reflection at an interface, here when medium 2 has the higher refractive index.

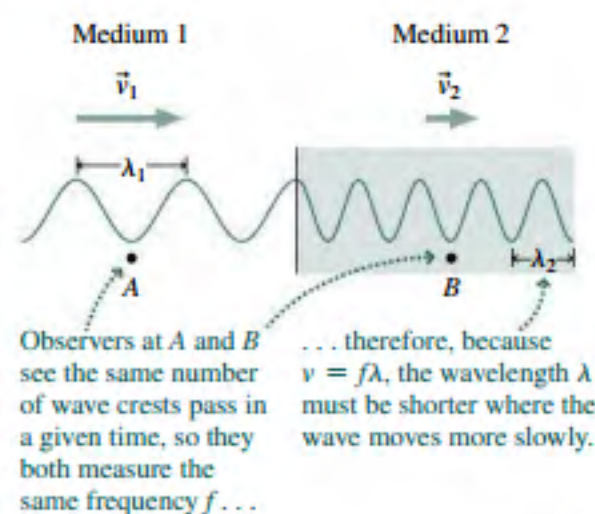


FIGURE 30.3 Wave frequency doesn't change as a wave goes from one medium to another, but wavelength does change.

Table 30.1 Indices of Refraction*

Substance	Index of Refraction, n
Gases	
Air	1.000293
Carbon dioxide	1.00045
Liquids	
Water	1.333
Ethyl alcohol	1.361
Glycerine	1.473
Benzene	1.501
Diiodomethane	1.738
Solids	
Ice (H_2O)	1.309
Polystyrene	1.49
Glass	1.5–1.9
Sodium chloride (NaCl)	1.544
Diamond (C)	2.419
Rutile (TiO_2)	2.62

*At 1 atm pressure and temperatures ranging from 0°C to 20°C , measured at a wavelength of 589 nm (the yellow line of sodium).

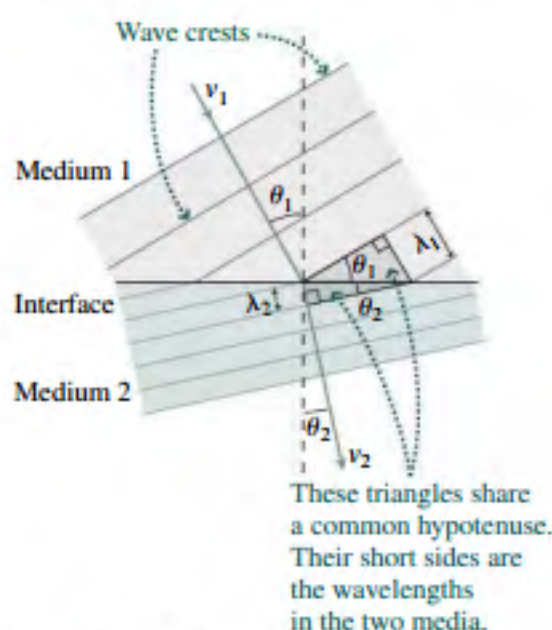


FIGURE 30.5 Refraction occurs because wave speed and wavelength differ in the two media.

Figure 30.5 shows how refraction results from the change in wave speed and therefore wavelength. Here we assume the refractive index is higher in medium 2; our result $\lambda = c/nf$ then shows that the wavelength is shorter in medium 2. We've shaded two right triangles with a common hypotenuse and one side equal to the appropriate wavelength. The angles opposite these sides are the angles of incidence and refraction. In each case the hypotenuse is given by $\lambda/\sin\theta$. Equating expressions for this common hypotenuse gives $\lambda_1/\sin\theta_1 = \lambda_2/\sin\theta_2$. Since $\lambda = c/nf$ with f the same in both media, we get **Snell's law**:

$$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2 \quad (\text{Snell's law}) \quad (30.3)$$

n_1 is the refractive index of medium 1. n_2 is the refractive index of medium 2.

θ_1 is the angle of incidence at the interface from medium 1 to medium 2. θ_2 is the angle of the refracted ray in medium 2.

First developed geometrically in 1621 by van Roijen Snell of the Netherlands, and described analytically in the 1630s by René Descartes in France, Snell's law lets us predict what will happen at an interface given the refractive indices of the two media.

Snell's law applies whether light goes from a medium of lower to higher refractive index or vice versa. When going from lower to higher index, the beam bends *toward* the normal; when going from higher to lower index, it bends *away* from the normal.

In some situations, including the human eye and Earth's atmosphere, the refractive index varies continuously with position, so light refracts continuously, following a curved path. You can explore two examples in Passage Problems 67–70.

EXAMPLE 30.2

Refraction: A Plane Slab

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A light ray propagating in air strikes a glass slab of thickness d and refractive index n at incidence angle θ_1 . Show that it emerges from the slab propagating parallel to its original direction.

INTERPRET This is a problem about refraction, which in this case occurs twice. We identify the two interfaces as first the air–glass interface where the light enters the glass and then the glass–air interface where the light exits the glass.

DEVELOP Figure 30.6 is a sketch showing the path of the light through the glass. There are two pairs of incidence and refractive angles, which we labeled θ_1, θ_2 and θ_3, θ_4 . Our plan is to apply Snell's law at each interface and thus prove that $\theta_4 = \theta_1$. At the air–glass interface, we have $n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$, and at the glass–air interface, $n_3 \sin\theta_3 = n_4 \sin\theta_4$. Note that θ_1 and θ_4 are in the same medium (air), so we set $n_4 = n_1$. Similarly, $n_3 = n_2$ for θ_2 and θ_3 in glass. Then our equations become $n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$ and $n_2 \sin\theta_3 = n_1 \sin\theta_4$.

EVALUATE Taking $n_1 = 1$ for air and $n_2 = n$ for glass at the air–glass interface, we have $\sin\theta_2 = \sin\theta_1/n$. But at the glass–air interface, $n_1 = n$ and $n_2 = 1$, so here $\sin\theta_4 = n \sin\theta_3$. But the slab faces are parallel, so $\theta_3 = \theta_2$. Thus $\sin\theta_4 = n \sin\theta_2$. Using our expression for θ_2 from the first interface then gives

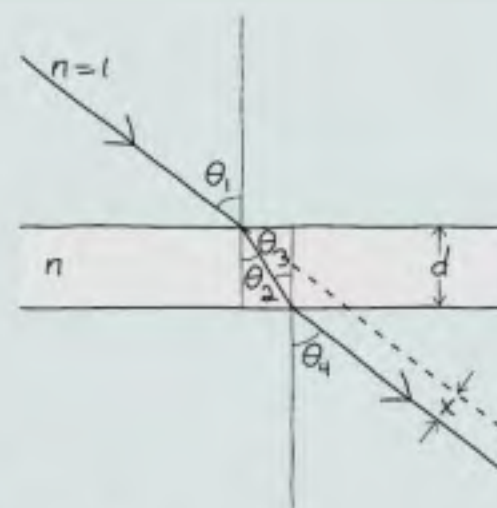


FIGURE 30.6 Light passing through a transparent slab.

$$\sin\theta_4 = n \left(\frac{\sin\theta_1}{n} \right) = \sin\theta_1$$

showing that the incident and outgoing rays are indeed parallel.

ASSESS This result shows that light isn't deflected when it passes through a parallel-faced slab of transparent material. It is, however, displaced by the distance x shown in Fig. 30.6. You can find that displacement in Example Variation 31.

EXAMPLE 30.3

Refraction: CD Music

The laser beam that "reads" information from a compact disc is 0.737 mm wide when it strikes the disc, and it forms a cone with half-angle $\theta_1 = 27.0^\circ$ as shown in Fig. 30.7. It then passes through a 1.20-mm-thick layer of plastic with refractive index 1.55 before reaching the reflective information layer near the disc's top surface. What's the beam diameter d at the information layer?

INTERPRET Rays defining the beam refract toward the normal, making a smaller convergence angle within the disc. We're asked how much this converging beam narrows when it reaches the information layer.

DEVELOP Snell's law will give us the angles θ_2 in the figure: $n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$. Given θ_2 , we can use trigonometry to find the

distance x marked in the drawing: $x = t \tan \theta_2$, with t the 1.2-mm thickness. The beam diameter d then follows from $d = D - 2x$, where D is the 0.737-mm beam diameter at the disc surface.

EVALUATE With $n_1 = 1$ and $n_2 = 1.55$, Snell's law gives

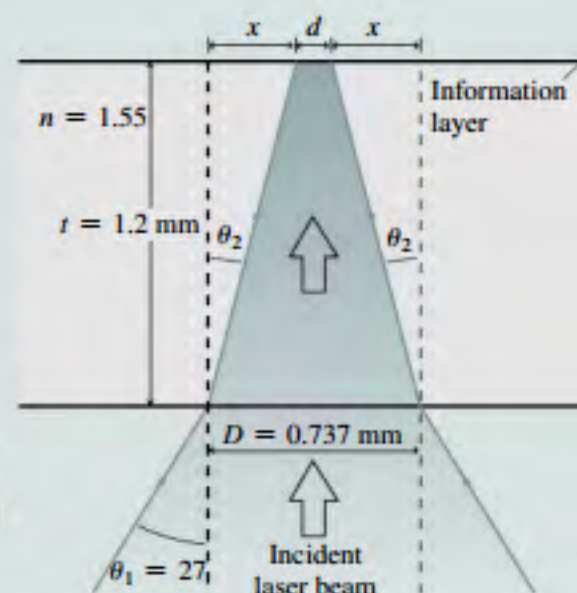
$$\theta_2 = \sin^{-1}(\sin \theta_1 / n_2) = 17.03^\circ$$

Therefore

$$d = D - 2x = D - 2t \tan \theta_2 = 1.80 \mu\text{m}.$$

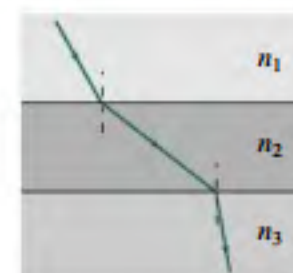
ASSESS This answer makes sense because d is just a bit larger than the “pits” cut into the CD to store information. Narrowing of the laser beam plays a crucial role in keeping CDs noise free. The tiniest dust speck would blot out information at the μm -scale information layer, but at the point where the beam enters the disc, it would take mm-sized dust to cause problems. We'll explore CD and DVD technology further in Chapter 32.

FIGURE 30.7 Section through a compact disc, showing convergence of the laser beam to a narrow spot at the information layer.



GOT IT?

30.2 The figure shows the path of a light ray through three different media. Rank the media according to their refractive indices, in decreasing order.



Refraction, Reflection, and Polarization

Both reflection and refraction ultimately involve interactions between the incident light wave's electric field and charges in a material. The oscillation of molecular dipoles in response to the field gives rise to both refracted and reflected light. It's not surprising, therefore, that details depend on the direction of the electric field—that is, on polarization. When the field lies in the plane defined by the incident and reflected rays, there's a special angle of incidence at which no reflection occurs. This is the **Brewster angle**, or **polarizing angle**, and it occurs when the reflected ray would be perpendicular to the transmitted ray (Fig. 30.8). Then the molecular dipoles are oscillating along the direction a reflected ray would take, and, as we saw in Section 29.7, there's no electromagnetic radiation from an oscillating dipole along the oscillation direction.

Figure 30.8 shows that the polarizing incidence angle θ_p occurs when θ_p and the angle θ_2 of the refracted ray sum to 90° ; equivalently, $\theta_2 = 90^\circ - \theta_p$. Since $\sin \theta = \cos(90^\circ - \theta)$, that means $\sin \theta_2 = \cos \theta_p$. Now, Snell's law gives $\sin \theta_2 = (n_1/n_2) \sin \theta_p$; substituting $\cos \theta_p$ for $\sin \theta_2$, this becomes $\cos \theta_p = (n_1/n_2) \sin \theta_p$. Multiplying both sides by (n_2/n_1) and dividing by $\cos \theta_p$ then gives

$$\tan \theta_p = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \quad (\text{polarizing angle}) \quad (30.4)$$

For the air–glass interface shown in Fig. 30.8, θ_p is about 56° .

When unpolarized light is incident at the polarizing angle, only the component of the light's electric field that's perpendicular to the plane of Fig. 30.8 gets reflected, and the result is polarized light. Polarization using this effect is important in a number of technologies, including lasers. The window through which light emerges from a laser is usually cut at the polarizing angle, and as a result most laser light is intrinsically polarized. A similar polarizing phenomenon occurs for reflection from metals and other opaque surfaces, as well as from water. Figure 30.9 shows that polarizing sunglasses can reduce glare caused by such reflections.

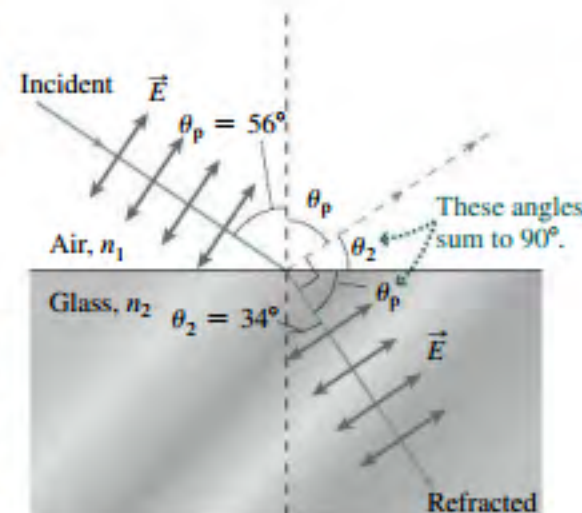


FIGURE 30.8 The polarizing incidence angle θ_p occurs when the angles of incidence and refraction sum to 90° .

30.3 Total Internal Reflection

LO 30.3 Explain total internal reflection and calculate the critical angle.

Light propagating from a medium with a higher refractive index into one with a lower index is bent *away* from the normal, as shown for a glass–air interface in Fig. 30.10. In other words, the angle of refraction in this case is larger than the angle of incidence. So at some incidence angle, the angle of refraction becomes 90° . Then what?



FIGURE 30.9 Light reflecting off horizontal surfaces is partially polarized for reasons similar to those suggested in Fig. 30.8. Polarizing sunglasses dramatically reduce the glare from such reflections.

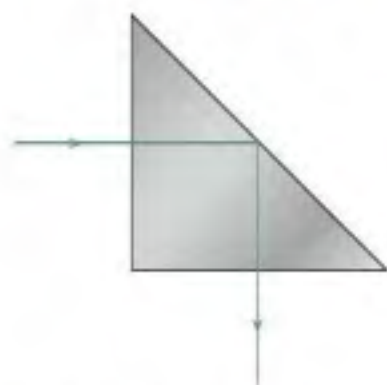


FIGURE 30.11 Light undergoes total internal reflection in a glass prism.

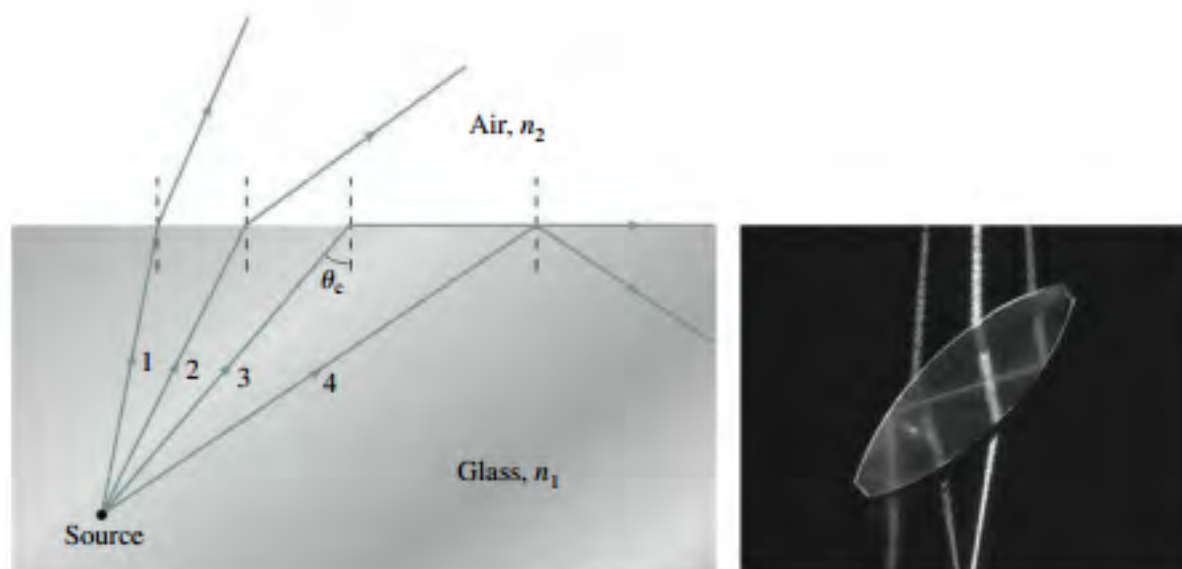


FIGURE 30.10 Light propagating in glass is refracted away from the normal at the glass–air interface. Ray 3, incident at the critical angle θ_c , just skims along the interface. At larger incidence angles (ray 4), the light undergoes total internal reflection. The right-most beam in the photo (incident from above) undergoes two total internal reflections.

As Fig. 30.10 shows, light incident at this **critical angle** or larger cannot escape from the glass. Instead, **total internal reflection** occurs, returning all the light to the medium with the larger refractive index. We can find the critical angle by setting $\theta_2 = 90^\circ$ in Snell's law (Equation 30.3). The critical angle θ_c is then θ_1 , and we have

$$\sin \theta_c = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \quad (\text{critical angle}) \quad (30.5)$$

Total internal reflection makes uncoated glass an excellent reflector when it's oriented appropriately (Fig. 30.11). Binoculars owe their compact size to glass prisms that reflect light internally to provide a longer light path. For an underwater observer, the existence of the critical angle affects the view of the outside world, as the next example shows. Finally, total internal reflection is the basis of the optical fibers that carry signals over the global Internet, as the Application below describes.

GOT IT?

30.3 The glass prism in Fig. 30.11 has $n = 1.5$ and is surrounded by air ($n = 1$). What would happen to the incident light ray shown if the prism were immersed in water ($n = 1.333$)?

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 30.1

Total Internal Reflection: A Watching Whale

Planeloads of whale watchers fly over the ocean. What does a submerged whale see when it looks up at them?

EVALUATE The whale is underwater, so it's in a medium with a higher refractive index than air. Some of the light reaching the whale is from objects above the water surface, like the planes in Fig. 30.12. But the whale also sees objects below the surface, like the squid in Fig. 30.12, light from which is totally reflected at the water–air interface.

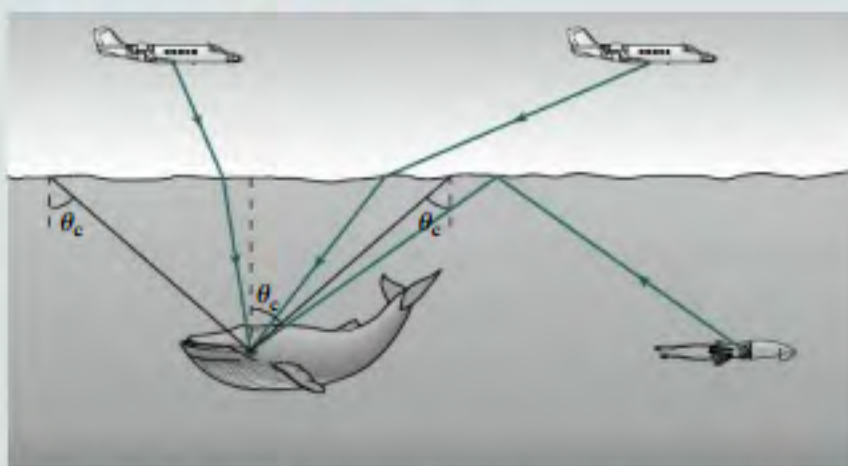


FIGURE 30.12 The whale sees the entire world above the surface in a cone of half-angle θ_c ; beyond that, it sees reflections of objects below the surface.

ASSESS The whale sees the entire above-surface world within a cone, as Fig. 30.12 shows. If you've ever looked upward from underwater, you've experienced the same phenomenon.

MAKING THE CONNECTION What's the half-angle of the cone in which the whale sees objects above the water surface?

ANSWER The cone's half-angle is the critical angle θ_c , as shown in Fig. 30.12. For water, Table 30.1 gives $n = 1.333$, so, by Equation 30.5, $\theta_c = \sin^{-1}(1/1.333) = 48.6^\circ$.

APPLICATION Optical Fibers



Refraction and total internal reflection are the basis for **optical fibers**, which carry much of the world's communications. Optical fibers provide the physical connectivity of the global Internet and handle information ranging from telephone and television to light signals within medical, astronomical, and industrial instruments.

A typical fiber consists of a glass core only $8\ \mu\text{m}$ in diameter, surrounded by a so-called *cladding* consisting of glass with a lower refractive index. Total internal reflection at the core-cladding interface guides light along the fiber, as shown in the figure. The glass used in optical fibers is so clear that a 1-km-thick slab would be as transparent as an ordinary window pane. Today's fibers carry light produced by semiconductor lasers at infrared wavelengths of 850 nm, 1350 nm, or 1550 nm.

An optical fiber's main advantage over copper wire is its huge rate of information flow, called **bandwidth**. Communicating information—audio, video,

or digital data—requires a range of frequencies, and the greater the rate of information transfer, the wider that range. With its frequency of around 10^{14} Hz, light can accommodate a much wider frequency range within a channel than can radio communication systems operating at frequencies on the order of 10^{10} Hz. A single optical fiber, for example, can carry tens of thousands of simultaneous telephone conversations. Fibers are also lighter and more rugged than copper cables, and they're less vulnerable than copper or open-air transmission to illicit tapping. And because they're made from insulators, optical fibers are less susceptible to electrical noise. The photo shows two cables that can carry information at the same rate. One consists of a few optical fibers while the other is a thick bundle of copper wires.



30.4 Dispersion

LO 30.4 Explain why dispersion occurs and calculate angular spreading associated with dispersion.

Refraction ultimately involves the interaction of electromagnetic-wave fields with atomic electrons. It's not surprising, therefore, that the electrons' behavior and consequently also the refractive index depend on frequency (or, equivalently, on wavelength or color). The result is **dispersion**—refraction of different colors through different angles. Figure 30.13 shows the wavelength dependence of the refractive index for a type of glass engineered to exhibit high dispersion. The classic example of dispersion is Newton's demonstration that white light is a mixture of all colors in the visible spectrum (Fig. 30.14). The rainbow is a beautiful natural manifestation of dispersion combined with internal reflection, as the Application on the next page describes.

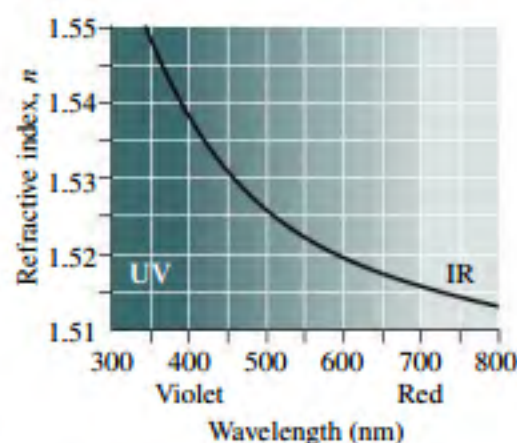


FIGURE 30.13 Index of refraction as a function of wavelength for high-dispersion crown glass.

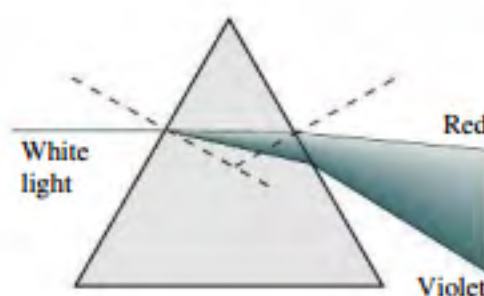


FIGURE 30.14 Dispersion separates the colors in white light, with shorter-wavelength violet experiencing the greatest refraction.

EXAMPLE 30.4**Dispersion: A Prism***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

White light strikes the prism in Fig. 30.15 normal to one surface. The prism is made of glass whose refractive index is plotted in Fig. 30.13. Find the angle between outgoing red and violet light, with wavelengths of 700 nm and 400 nm, respectively.

INTERPRET This is a refraction problem, like those of Section 30.2, except that here we've got two different refractive indices for two different wavelengths. Since the incident beam is normal to the vertical face of the prism, there's no refraction at the first interface.

DEVELOP To assess the refraction at the second interface, from glass to air, we can use Snell's law, Equation 30.3, just as we did in Section 30.2. A look at Fig. 30.13 shows that $n_{400} = 1.538$ and $n_{700} = 1.516$. We'll have to apply Snell's law twice, once for each of these refractive indices. We'll also need the angle of incidence at the glass-air interface, which the geometry of Fig. 30.15 shows is equal to the 40° angle at the top of the prism. We've labeled both angles α .

EVALUATE We can get the angles of refraction—the angles that the outgoing beams make with the normal to the slanting face of the prism—by solving Snell's law for θ_2 and using the appropriate refractive index for n_1 . We'll take $n_2 = 1$ for air. So we have

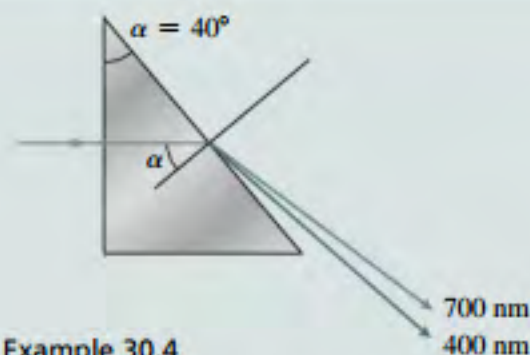


FIGURE 30.15 Example 30.4

$$\theta_{400} = \sin^{-1}(n_{400} \sin \alpha) = \sin^{-1}[(1.538)(\sin 40^\circ)] = 81.34^\circ$$

$$\theta_{700} = \sin^{-1}(n_{700} \sin \alpha) = \sin^{-1}[(1.516)(\sin 40^\circ)] = 77.02^\circ$$

The angle between the two outgoing beams is, therefore, $\Delta\theta = \theta_{400} - \theta_{700} = 4.32^\circ$.

ASSESS This is a pretty small angle, despite the fact that both beams undergo substantial refraction. Dispersion is generally a small effect, which is why it isn't always obvious. For more insight into geometrical optics, try reworking this example for the case of an isosceles prism, with $\alpha = 45^\circ$ (see For Thought and Discussion 8).

APPLICATION The Rainbow

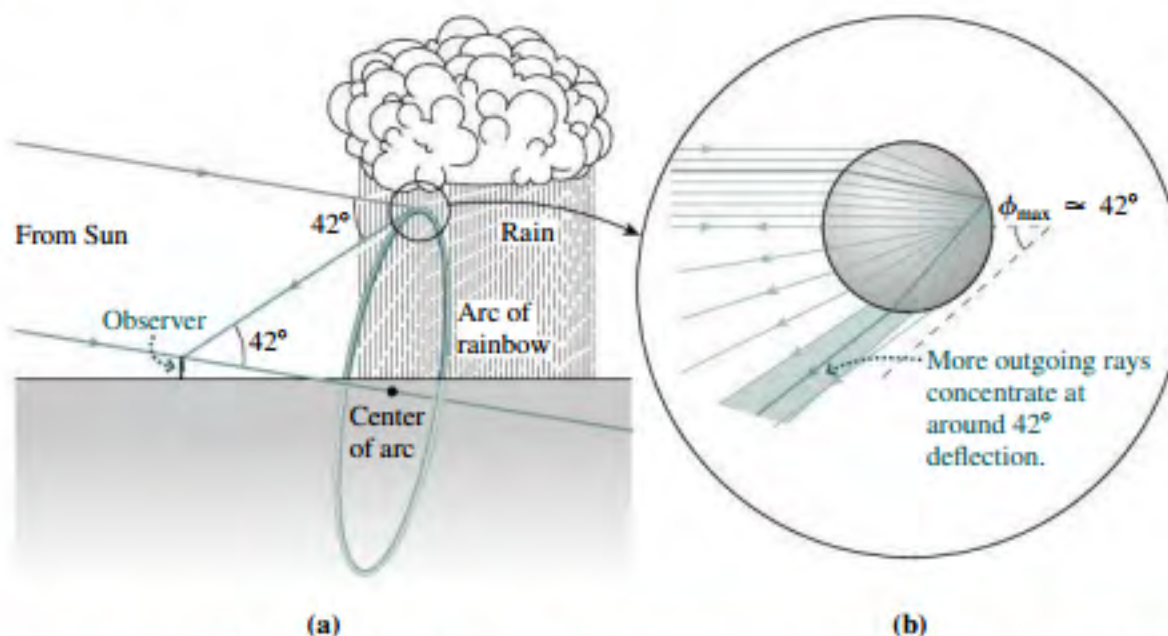
Rainbows occur when sunlight strikes rain or other airborne water droplets. An observer standing between the Sun and the rain then sees a circular arc of colored bands. Part (a) of the figure shows that the center of that arc lies on the line joining the Sun to the observer's head. That means each observer sees a different rainbow! Furthermore, the rainbow's arc always subtends an angle of about 42° .

Isaac Newton provided the first full explanation of the rainbow, invoking both internal reflection and dispersion. Part (b) of the figure shows light passing through a spherical raindrop. Parallel rays striking the curved drop experience a range of incidence angles, giving a range of angles ϕ between incident and outgoing rays. As the figure shows, however, there's a maximum angle $\phi_{\max}$ of about 42° , and more light returns at angles close to $\phi_{\max}$ than at other

angles. That's why the rainbow appears as a bright arc at an angle of about 42° to the direction of the Sun's rays. Problems 59 and 60 detail how to find $\phi_{\max}$.

The "bunching" of light rays near $\phi_{\max}$ shows why a bright band appears, but why the different colors? The refractive index varies with wavelength, and so, therefore, does $\phi_{\max}$. Thus each color appears at a slightly different angle. For water, the refractive index ranges from $n_{\text{red}} = 1.330$ to $n_{\text{violet}} = 1.342$. Using these values with the results of Problems 59 and 60 yields $\phi_{\text{red}} = 42.53^\circ$ and $\phi_{\text{violet}} = 40.78^\circ$. Thus the rainbow appears as a band of colors subtending an angle of about 1.75° , with red at the top.

You'll occasionally see a fainter *secondary rainbow* above the primary arc. This results from two internal reflections, which causes the order of colors to be reversed. Problem 61 explores the secondary rainbow.



(a) The rainbow is a circular arc at 42° from the line connecting the Sun, the observer, and the center of the arc. (b) The rainbow results from total internal reflection in raindrops, concentrating light at about 42° deflection. Dispersion separates wavelengths slightly, resulting in the rainbow's colors.

GOT IT?

30.4 The painting shown is *Niagara*, by the English-born American artist Harry Fenn. From an optical standpoint, what's wrong with the painting?



Dispersion is the basis of **spectroscopy**, the analysis of light and other electromagnetic radiation in terms of its constituent wavelengths. Hot, dense objects emit a continuous range of wavelengths, while diffuse gases emit and absorb radiation at only a few specific wavelengths (Fig. 30.16). Such discrete spectra provide some of the strongest evidence for the nature of atoms, and today spectroscopy is a powerful tool throughout the sciences. Spectroscopy helps astronomers to determine the composition and motions of distant astrophysical objects, geologists to identify minerals, and chemists to study molecules. Although early spectroscopy used prisms, most modern instruments use instead diffraction gratings, which we'll describe in Chapter 32.

Dispersion can be a nuisance in optical systems. Glass lenses, for example, focus different colors at different points, resulting in distortion known as *chromatic aberration*. Dispersion in optical fibers—based not on wavelength but on different paths taken by rays reflecting at different angles—can degrade digital information. So-called single-mode fibers reduce this effect by passing only those rays that have a single specific reflection angle. On the other hand, dispersion of radio waves provides a crucial correction to the global positioning system (GPS). Ionization in the upper atmosphere introduces an uncertain but frequency-dependent variation in the travel time for radio waves from GPS satellites. It's this travel time that provides GPS location information. Sending waves at two different frequencies and comparing their travel times reveals the atmospheric conditions, and makes dual-frequency GPS receivers accurate to within a few centimeters.

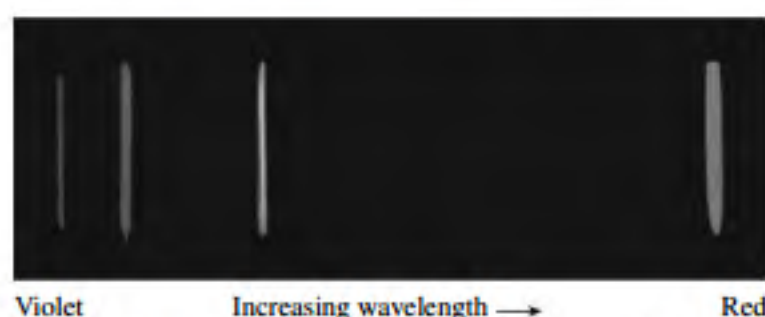


FIGURE 30.16 The emission spectrum of a hot, diffuse gas—here hydrogen—consists of light at discrete wavelengths.

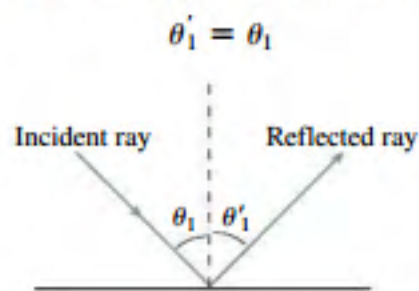
Chapter 30 Summary

Big Idea

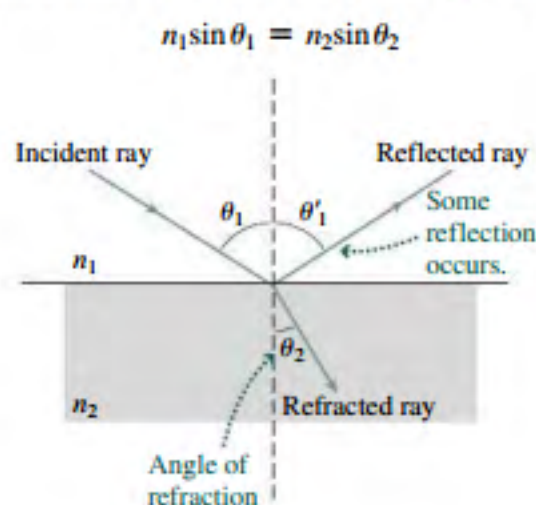
The big idea here is that light can be considered to travel in straight **rays** when the objects with which it interacts are much larger than the wavelength. Under these conditions, light rays **reflect** and **refract** at interfaces between different materials.

Key Concepts and Equations

The **angle of incidence** and **angle of reflection** are equal:



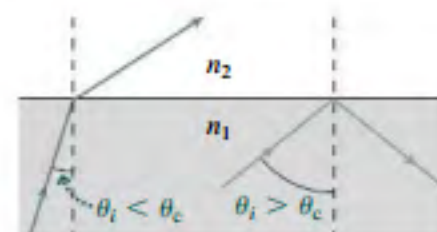
Snell's law relates the angle of incidence and angle of refraction:



Applications

Total internal reflection results when light is incident at greater than the **critical angle**, θ_c , on an interface with a medium with lower refractive index n_2 :

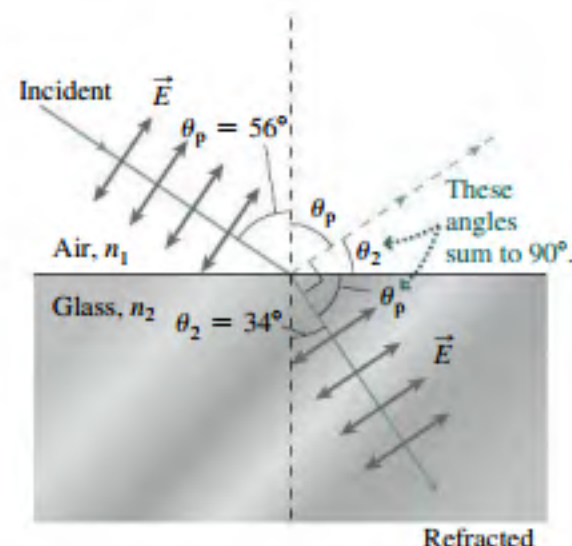
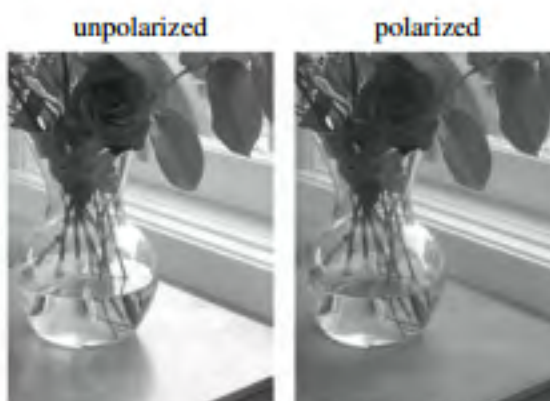
$$\sin \theta_c = \frac{n_2}{n_1}$$



Light polarized in the plane of the incident and refracted rays undergoes no reflection at an interface; this special **polarizing angle**, θ_p , is given by

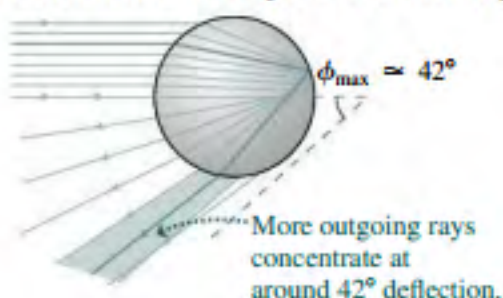
$$\tan \theta_p = \frac{n_2}{n_1}$$

For an air–glass interface, $\theta_p \approx 56^\circ$.



Dispersion results from the wavelength dependence of the refractive index and causes different colors to refract at different angles.

A combination of total internal reflection and dispersion in raindrops accounts for the rainbow.



Total internal reflection guides signals in optical fibers.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!

BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems



Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 30.1 Describe the reflection of light using geometrical optics.
<i>Exercises 30.11, 30.12, 30.13, 30.14; Problems 30.36, 30.38, 30.58, 30.62</i></p> <p>LO 30.2 Describe the refraction of light using Snell's law.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 30.2, 30.3, 30.9, 30.10; Exercises 30.17, 30.18, 30.19, 30.20, 30.21; Problems 30.37, 30.39, 30.40, 30.42, 30.43, 30.44, 30.45, 30.46, 30.47, 30.48, 30.50, 30.51, 30.53, 30.54, 30.57, 30.59, 30.60, 30.61, 30.63, 30.65</i></p> | <p>LO 30.3 Explain total internal reflection and calculate the critical angle.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 30.6; Exercises 30.22, 30.23, 30.24, 30.25; Problems 30.41, 30.47, 30.50, 30.51, 30.55</i></p> <p>LO 30.4 Tell why dispersion occurs and calculate angular spreading associated with dispersion.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 30.4, 30.5, 30.7, 30.8; Exercises 30.26, 30.27; Problems 30.52, 30.59, 30.60, 30.61, 30.64, 30.66</i></p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- Why is it usually inappropriate to consider low-frequency sound waves as traveling in rays? Why is the ray approximation more appropriate for high-frequency sound and for light?
- Why might someone misjudge the depth of a pool of water?
- Why do a diamond and an identically shaped piece of glass sparkle differently?
- If the surface of the Moon were very smooth, what difference would it make to the night sky?
- You send white light through two identical glass prisms, oriented as shown in Fig. 30.17. Describe the beam that emerges from the right-hand prism.
- In glass, which end of the visible spectrum has the smallest critical angle for total internal reflection?
- Why can't you walk to the end of the rainbow?
- An attempt to rework Example 30.4 with an isosceles prism results in imaginary numbers for the two angles of refraction. What could this mean?
- Why are polarizing sunglasses better than glasses that simply reduce the total amount of light?
- Under what conditions will the polarizing angle be smaller than 45° ?



FIGURE 30.17 For Thought and Discussion 5

- To what angular accuracy must two ostensibly perpendicular mirrors be aligned so that an incident ray returns within 1° of its incident direction?
- If a light ray enters the mirror system of Fig. 30.18 propagating in the plane of the page and parallel to one mirror, through what angle will it be turned?

Section 30.2 Refraction

- In which substance in Table 30.1 does the speed of light have the value 2.292×10^8 m/s?
- Information in a compact disc is stored in "pits" whose depth is essentially one-fourth the wavelength of the laser light used to "read" the information. That wavelength is 780 nm in air, but the wavelength on which the pit depth is based is measured in the $n = 1.55$ plastic that makes up most of the disc. Find the pit depth.
- Light is incident on an air-glass interface, and the refracted light in the glass makes a 31° angle with the normal to the interface. The glass has refractive index 1.51. Find the incidence angle.
- A light ray propagates in a transparent material at 15° to the normal to the surface. It emerges into the surrounding air at 25° to the normal. Find the material's refractive index.
- Light propagating in the glass ($n = 1.65$) wall of an aquarium tank strikes the wall's interior surface with incidence angle 19.0° . What's the angle of refraction in the water?
- Find the polarizing angle for diamond when light is incident from air.
- Find the refractive index of a material for which the polarizing angle in air is 62° .

Section 30.3 Total Internal Reflection

- Find the critical angle for total internal reflection in (a) ice, (b) polystyrene, and (c) rutile, when the surrounding medium is air.
- A drop of water is trapped in a block of ice. What's the critical angle for total internal reflection at the water-ice interface?
- What is the critical angle for light propagating in glass with $n = 1.55$ when the glass is immersed in (a) water, (b) benzene, and (c) diiodomethane?
- Total internal reflection occurs at an interface between plastic and air at incidence angles greater than 45° . Find the plastic's refractive index.

Section 30.4 Dispersion

- Blue and red laser beams strike an air-glass interface with incidence angle 50° . If the glass has refractive indices of 1.680 for the blue light and 1.621 for the red, what will be the angle between the two beams in the glass?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 30.1 Reflection

- Through what angle should you rotate a mirror so that a reflected ray rotates through 30° ?
- The mirrors in Fig. 30.18 make a 60° angle. A light ray enters parallel to the symmetry axis, as shown. (a) How many reflections does it make? (b) Where and in what direction does it exit the mirror system?



FIGURE 30.18 Exercises 12 and 14 and Problem 36

27. White light propagating in air is incident at 45° on the equilateral prism of Fig. 30.19. Find the angular dispersion γ of the outgoing beam if the prism has refractive indices $n_{\text{red}} = 1.582$ and $n_{\text{violet}} = 1.633$.

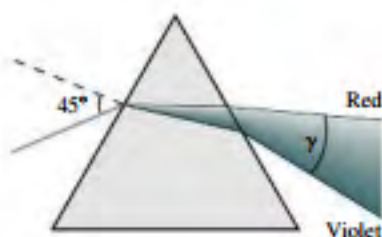


FIGURE 30.19 Exercise 27 (angles of dispersed rays aren't accurate)

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

28. **Example 30.2:** Take the slab in Fig. 30.6 to be glass with refractive index $n = 1.62$. If $\theta_1 = 42.6^\circ$, what are (a) θ_2 , (b) θ_3 , and (c) θ_4 ?
29. **Example 30.2:** Take $\theta_1 = 32.5^\circ$ in Fig. 30.6. (a) If $\theta_2 = 17.1^\circ$, what's the refractive index n of the transparent slab? (b) If you were given θ_4 instead of θ_2 , could you have answered this question? Why or why not?
30. **Example 30.2:** Two ice cubes, liberated from the ice-cube tray, sit next to each other in a freezer. Their sides are parallel, and there's a small gap between them, so the situation resembles Fig. 30.6 except that the slab is air and the surroundings are ice. Light propagating in one of the ice cubes strikes the ice-air interface at angle $\theta_1 = 25.8^\circ$. Find (a) θ_2 , (b) θ_3 , and (c) θ_4 .
31. **Example 30.2:** Find an expression for the displacement x in Fig. 30.6, in terms of θ_1 , n , and d .
32. **Example 30.4:** Find the angle between the outgoing beams in the prism of Example 30.4 if the glass is of a different type whose refractive indices are $n_{400} = 1.525$ and $n_{700} = 1.486$.
33. **Example 30.4:** In the situation described in Example 30.4, you're given only that $n_{700} = 1.500$ and $\theta_{700} = 64.32^\circ$. Find (a) the angle α and (b) the refractive index n_{400} if the spread between beams is 8.0° .
34. **Example 30.4:** Consider the situation of Example 30.4 in the case where the prism is a hollow (e.g., air-filled) space carved out of glass with the refractive indices given in the example. (a) Find the angular separation of the outgoing beams in this case. (b) Are there any other differences beyond the numerical value of the beam separation angle?
35. **Example 30.4:** Describe what happens in the situation of Example 30.4 if the prism angle α increases to 40.75° while the refractive indices still have the values given in the example.

Problems

36. Suppose the 60° angle in Fig. 30.18 is changed to 75° . A ray enters the mirror system parallel to the axis. (a) How many reflections does it make? (b) Through what angle is it turned when it exits the system?
37. **BIO** The refractive index of a human cornea is 1.40. If 550-nm light strikes a cornea at incidence angle 31° , find (a) the angle of refraction and (b) the wavelength in the cornea.

38. Two plane mirrors make an angle ϕ . A light ray enters the system and is reflected once off each mirror. Show that the ray is turned through an angle $360^\circ - 2\phi$.
39. An unlabeled bottle of liquid has spilled, and you're trying to find out whether it's relatively harmless ethyl alcohol or toxic benzene. You submerge a glass block with $n = 1.52$ in the liquid, and shine a laser beam so it strikes the submerged glass with incidence angle 31.5° . You measure the angle of refraction in the glass at 27.9° . Which liquid is it? (See Table 30.1.)

40. A meter stick lies on the bottom of the rectangular tank in Fig. 30.20, with its zero mark at the tank's left edge. You look into the long dimension of the tank at a 45° angle, with your line of sight just grazing the top edge, as shown.

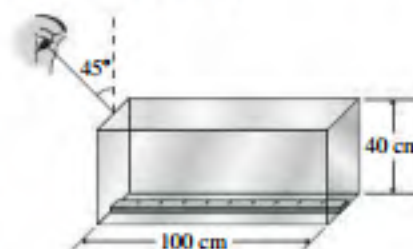


FIGURE 30.20 Problem 40

- What mark on the meter stick do you see when the tank is (a) empty, (b) half full of water, and (c) full of water?
41. You're scuba diving on the seafloor, 6.21 m below the surface. Your diving partner is 32.5 m away, at the same depth, but you can't see her directly because a rock is in the way. But you can see her by looking upward, just as the whale sees the squid in Fig. 30.12. (a) At what angle, relative to the vertical, should you look? (b) Would this approach work if your partner were 12.0 m away? Why or why not? (The refractive index of seawater is essentially the same as that of freshwater—see Table 30.1.)
42. At the aquarium where you work, a fish has gone missing in a 9.50-m-deep, 7.60-m-diameter cylindrical tank. You shine a flashlight in from the top edge of the tank, hoping to see if the missing fish is at the bottom. What's the smallest angle your flashlight beam can make with the horizontal if it's to illuminate the bottom?
43. You're standing 1.5 m horizontally from the edge of a 4.5-m-deep lake, with your eyes 1.6 m above the water's surface. A diver holding a flashlight at the lake bottom shines the light so you can see it. If the light in the water makes a 44° angle with the vertical, at what horizontal distance is the diver from the edge of the lake?

44. You've dropped your car keys at night off the end of a dock into water 1.6 m deep. A flashlight held directly above the dock edge and 0.50 m above the water illuminates the keys when it's aimed at 40° to the vertical, as shown in Fig. 30.21. What's the horizontal distance x from the edge of the dock to the keys?

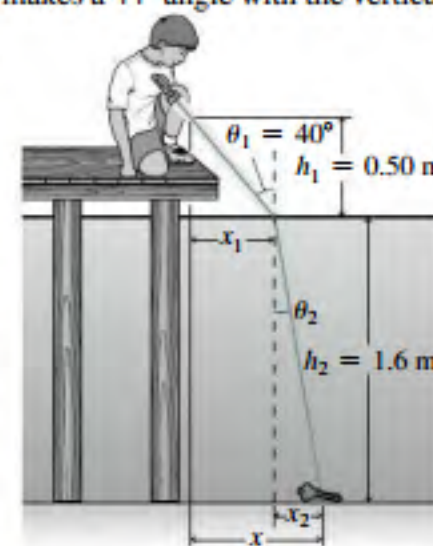


FIGURE 30.21 Problem 44

45. **BIO** Laser eye surgery uses ultraviolet light with wavelength 193 nm. What's the UV light's wavelength within the eye's lens, where $n = 1.39$?

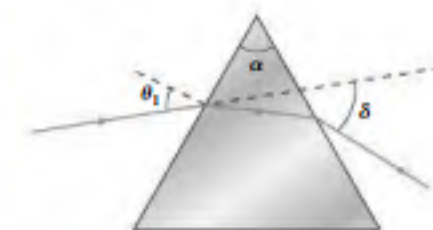


FIGURE 30.22 Problem 46

46. The prism in Fig. 30.22 has $n = 1.52$ and $\alpha = 60^\circ$ and is surrounded by air. A light beam is incident at $\theta_1 = 37^\circ$. Find the angle δ through which the beam is deflected.
47. Where and in what direction would the main beam emerge if the prism in Fig. 30.11 were made of ice, surrounded by air?
48. Find the speed of light in a material for which the critical angle at an interface with air is 61° .
49. The prism of Fig. 30.11 has $n = 1.52$. When it's immersed in a liquid, a beam incident as shown in the figure ceases to undergo total reflection. What's the minimum value for the liquid's refractive index?
50. For the interface between air (refractive index 1) and a material with refractive index n , show that the critical angle and the polarizing angle are related by $\sin \theta_c = \cot \theta_p$.
51. A scuba diver sets off a camera flash at depth h in water with refractive index n . Show that light emerges from the water's surface through a circle of diameter $2h/\sqrt{n^2 - 1}$.
52. Suppose the red and blue beams of Exercise 26 are now propagating in the same direction *inside* the glass. For what range of incidence angles on the glass-air interface will one beam be totally reflected and the other not?
53. In cataract surgery, ophthalmologists replace the eye's natural lens with a synthetic *intraocular lens*, or IOL. A particular IOL has refractive index 1.452. Find the angle of refraction for a light ray striking this lens with incidence angle 77.0° . The medium before the IOL is the eye's *aqueous humor*, a liquid with $n = 1.337$.
54. In a ruby laser, light is produced in a solid rod of ruby, with refractive index 1.77. The light emerges from the end of the rod into the surrounding air. At what angle should the rod end be cut so the emerging light is fully polarized?
55. An optical fiber with circular cross section has refractive index 1.45. It's surrounded by a cladding with refractive index 1.43. (a) Find the maximum angle relative to the fiber axis at which light can propagate down the fiber by undergoing successive total internal reflections. (b) Find the speed of light in the fiber. (c) For the angle you found in part (a), find the speed at which light actually makes its way along the fiber—that is, the length of fiber that the light traverses per unit time. Note that this isn't the same as your answer to (b) because the light bounces back and forth rather than following a straight path along the fiber.
56. A cylindrical tank 2.4 m deep is full to the brim with water. Sunlight first hits part of the tank bottom when the rising Sun makes a 29° angle with the horizon. Find the tank's diameter.
57. For what diameter tank in Problem 56 will sunlight strike some part of the tank bottom whenever the Sun is above the horizon?
58. You're an optometrist, mounting a projector at the back of your 4.8-m-long exam room, 2.6 m above the floor. It shines an eye-test pattern on a white wall opposite the projector. Patients will sit with their eyes 3.3 m from the wall and 1.5 m above the floor to view the pattern. At what height should you center the pattern on the wall?
59. Figure 30.23 shows light passing through a spherical raindrop, undergoing two refractions and total internal reflection, resulting in an angle ϕ between the incident and outgoing rays. Show that $\phi = 4 \sin^{-1}(\sin \theta/n) - 2\theta$, where θ is the incidence angle.

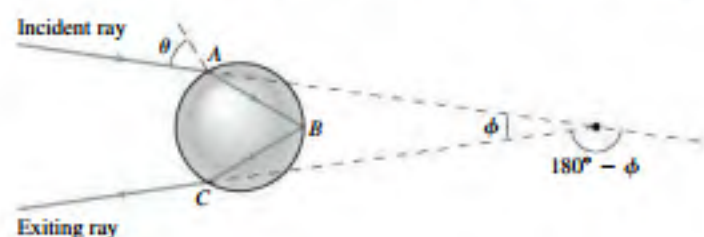


FIGURE 30.23 Problem 59

60. (a) Differentiate the result of Problem 59 to show that the maximum value of ϕ occurs when the incidence angle θ is given by $\cos^2 \theta = \frac{1}{3}(n^2 - 1)$. (b) Use this result and that of Problem 59 to find the maximum ϕ in a raindrop with $n = 1.333$. This is the angle at which the rainbow appears, as shown in the Application on page 612.
61. Figure 30.24 shows the approximate path of a light ray that undergoes internal reflection twice in a spherical water drop. Repeat Problems 59 and 60 for this case to find the angle at which the secondary rainbow occurs.
62. Show that a three-dimensional corner reflector (three mutually perpendicular mirrors, or a solid cube in which total internal reflection occurs) turns an incident light ray through 180° . (Hint: Let $\vec{q} = q_x \hat{i} + q_y \hat{j} + q_z \hat{k}$ be a vector in the propagation direction. How does this vector get changed on reflection by a mirror in a plane defined by two of the coordinate axes?)
63. Fermat's principle states that a light ray's path is such that the time to traverse that path is an extremum (a minimum or a maximum) when compared with times for nearby paths. Show that Fermat's principle implies Snell's law by proving that a light ray going from point A in one medium to point B in a second medium will take the least time if it obeys Snell's law.
64. You're an automotive engineer charged with evaluating safety glass, which is made by bonding a layer of flexible plastic between two layers of glass, thus eliminating dangerous glass fragments during accidents. A new product uses glass with refractive index $n = 1.55$ and plastic with $n = 1.48$. You're asked to determine whether total internal reflection at the glass-plastic interface could cause problems with visibility. What do you conclude, and why?
65. A slab of transparent material has thickness d and refractive index n that varies across the material: $n(x) = n_1 + (n_2 - n_1)(x/d)^2$, where x is measured from one face of the slab. A light ray is incident normally on the slab. Find an expression for the time it takes to traverse the slab.
66. For common materials like glass, the wavelength dependence of the refractive index at visual wavelengths is given approximately by $n(\lambda) = b + c/\lambda^2$, where b and c are constants. The table below gives values of λ and n for the crown glass of Example 30.4. Determine a quantity that, when you plot n against it, should give a straight line. Make your plot, establish a best-fit line, and use the line to determine the constants b and c .

λ (nm)	425	475	525	575	625	675
n	1.534	1.528	1.523	1.521	1.518	1.517

Passage Problems

Mirages occur when air's refractive index varies with position as a result of uneven heating. Under such conditions, light undergoes refraction continually and thus follows a curved path. Other examples where a varying refractive index is important include the eye's lens and Earth's *ionosphere*, an electrically conductive layer in the upper atmosphere, where the refractive index for radio waves varies with altitude.

67. Figure 30.25a depicts light's path over a hot road, producing a mirage. From the path shown, you can conclude that the air's refractive index
- increases from left to right.
 - increases from right to left.
 - increases upward.
 - increases downward.

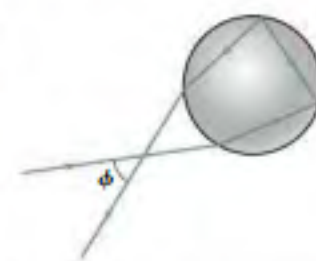
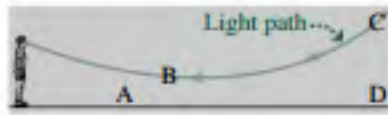
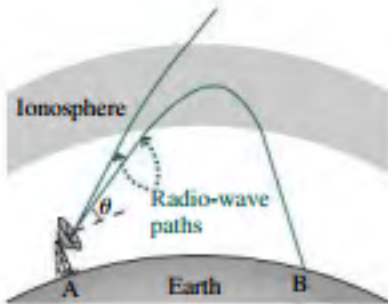


FIGURE 30.24 Problem 61

68. The observer in Fig. 30.25a sees a shimmering mirage that looks like water but actually results from sky light following the curved path. To the observer, the mirage appears to be at



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 30.25 Passage Problems 67–70. (a) Light path in a mirage. (b) Long-distance radio communication via ionospheric refraction (not to scale).

- a. point A. b. point B. c. point C. d. point D.
69. Figure 30.25b shows how continuous refraction in the ionosphere enables long-distance radio communication. Waves launched at angles steeper than θ don't refract enough to return to Earth, so they propagate through the ionosphere and on to space. You can therefore conclude that
- all points between A and B receive stronger signals from A than point B receives.
 - points between A and B can't receive signals from A via the ionosphere.
 - the refractive index must become infinite at the maximum altitude of the radio signal.

70. The refractive index in the ionosphere is strongly dependent on the frequency of radio waves, approaching 1 for high frequencies. Therefore,
- long-distance communication via the ionosphere is more likely at higher frequencies.
 - higher frequencies won't penetrate as far into the ionosphere.
 - higher frequencies are more appropriate for satellite-based communication.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The image results from total internal reflection of light striking the water surface from below. This is the same process that guides signals along the optical fibers that carry data over the Internet.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 30.1 The water surface is uneven, causing different reflection angles, but the unevenness isn't so fine as to result in fully diffuse reflection.
- 30.2 $n_3 > n_1 > n_2$
- 30.3 It would emerge into the water from the diagonal interface, because the critical angle now becomes 63° .
- 30.4 Rainbows always subtend a half-angle of 42° . The diameter of the rainbow, therefore, subtends 84° . Fenn's entire painting covers about three times the diameter of the rainbows shown, or some 250° . That's too much to capture in a single scene, which can't exceed 180° .

Images and Optical Instruments

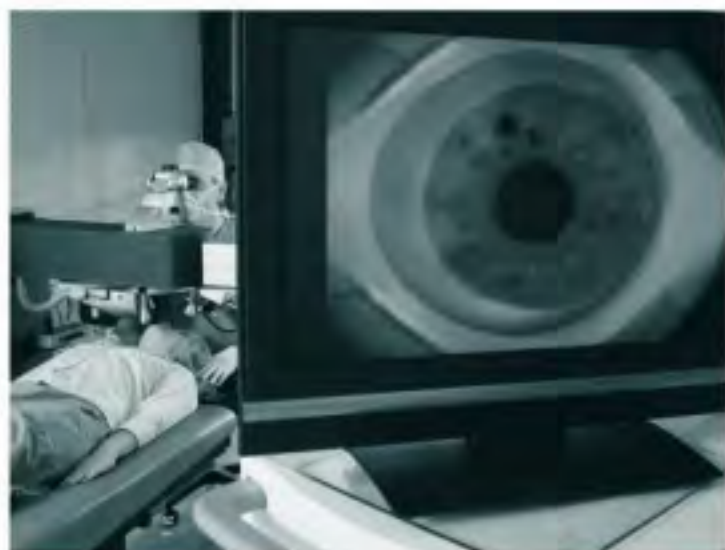
Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Specular reflection (Section 30.1)
- Snell's law for refraction (Section 30.2)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 31.1** Use ray tracing to describe image formation by plane and curved mirrors and use the mirror equation to get quantitative results for curved mirrors.
- LO 31.2** Use ray tracing to describe image formation by lenses and use the lens equation to get quantitative results.
- LO 31.3** Describe refraction and image formation in thick lenses.
- LO 31.4** Describe the workings of optical instruments, including eyes and cameras, magnifiers and microscopes, and telescopes.



How does laser surgery provide permanent vision correction?

Reflection and refraction alter the direction of light propagation, according to the laws developed in Chapter 30. Microscopes, telescopes, cameras, contact lenses, medical endoscopes, scanners, and your own eyes use reflection or refraction to form **images** that provide visual representations of reality. Here we study image formation using geometrical optics—a valid approximation provided the objects we're imaging are much larger than the wavelength of light.

When you view an object through an optical system, light reflects or refracts, so it doesn't propagate in straight paths from the object. As a result you see an image that may differ in size, orientation, or apparent position from the actual object. In some cases light actually comes from the image to your eyes; the image is then a **real image**. In other cases light only *appears* to come from the image location; then the image is a **virtual image**.

31.1 Images with Mirrors

- LO 31.1** *Use ray tracing to describe image formation by plane and curved mirrors and use the mirror equation to get quantitative results for curved mirrors.*

Plane Mirrors

In Fig. 31.1a we show three light rays that leave the tip of an arrowhead and reflect off a plane mirror to reach the observer's eye. The light looks to the observer like it's coming from a point behind the mirror, so that's the location of the arrowhead's image. The image is virtual because no light actually comes from behind the mirror—even though that's where the image is.

Since two lines define a point, we need only two rays to locate the arrowhead in Fig. 31.1a. We've repeated the image-location procedure in Fig. 31.1b, now using as one of the rays the ray that reflects normally. The same procedure

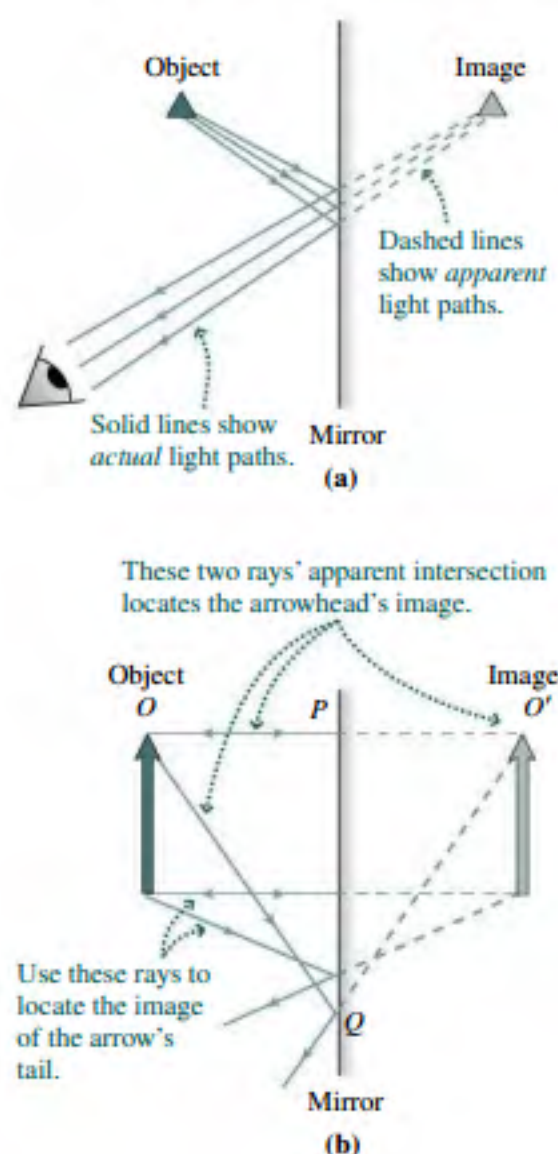


FIGURE 31.1 Image formation in a plane mirror.

locates the bottom of the arrow, and we could easily fill in to get the entire arrow; the resulting image is shown in Fig. 31.1b.

Because the angles of incidence and reflection are equal, angles OQP and $O'QP$ in Fig. 31.1b are equal. The right triangles OPQ and $O'PQ$ share a common side as well, so they're congruent. Thus the distances OP and $O'P$ are equal, so the image is located behind the mirror as far as the object is in front of it. Furthermore, rays from the top and bottom of the arrow and normal to the mirror are parallel, so the image is the same height as the actual arrow.

Images in plane mirrors preserve an object's length and upright orientation, but they reverse the object. When you look in the mirror, you face the mirror. So does your image—meaning the reversal is front to back, not left to right as you might think. This front-to-back reversal makes the image of your right hand look like a left hand (Fig. 31.2). Mathematically, the mirror reverses the coordinate axis perpendicular to the mirror plane. This alters handedness, rotation, and all other phenomena connected with the right-handed coordinate systems we've been using.



FIGURE 31.2 The palm of a right hand faces the mirror. So does the image's palm. That makes the image look like a left hand, but it's still the image of a *right* hand.

GOT IT?

31.1 You stand in front of a plane mirror whose top is at the same height as the top of your head. Approximately how far down must the mirror extend for you to see your full image? (a) to your chest; (b) to your waist; (c) to your knees; (d) to the floor

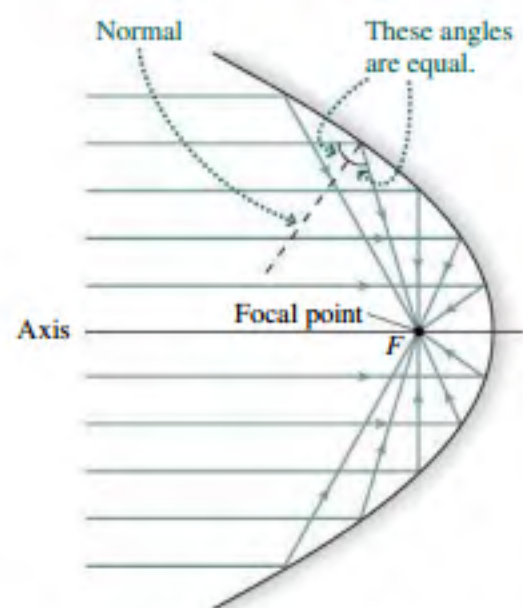


FIGURE 31.3 A parabolic mirror reflects rays parallel to its axis to a common focus.

Curved Mirrors

In contrast to plane mirrors, curved mirrors form images that may be upright or inverted, virtual or real, large or small. The best curved mirrors are parabolic. That's because any line parallel to the parabola's axis makes the same angle to the normal of the parabola as does a second line drawn to a special point called the **focus** or **focal point** (Fig. 31.3). Because the angles of incidence and reflection are equal, this means a parabolic mirror reflects rays parallel to the mirror axis so they converge at the focus. This effect is used to concentrate light to high intensities or, conversely, to create a parallel beam from a point source of light at the focus.

Near the apex of the parabolic mirror in Fig. 31.3, you can't tell whether the shape is parabolic or spherical; a sphere closely approximates the parabola. Because a spherical surface is easier to form, many focusing mirrors are, in fact, spherical. The slight distortion this causes is called **spherical aberration**; a notable case is the Hubble Space Telescope mirror, which was ground to the wrong curve and had substantial aberration (Fig. 31.4). Normally spherical aberration is minimized by making the mirror only a tiny fraction of the entire sphere. In that case the **focal length**—the distance from the mirror's apex to its focal point—is much larger than the mirror, so most rays striking the mirror are nearly parallel to the mirror axis. It's only for such **paraxial rays** that the approximation of a parabola by a sphere results in accurate focusing. But for clarity our diagrams

Tactics 31.1 RAY TRACING WITH MIRRORS

Figure 31.5 shows four special rays, any two of which suffice to locate an image:

1. Any ray parallel to the mirror axis reflects through the focal point F .
2. Conversely, any ray that passes through F reflects parallel to the axis.
3. Any ray that strikes the center of the mirror reflects symmetrically about the mirror axis.
4. Any ray through the center of curvature, C , strikes the mirror normal to the mirror surface and thus returns on itself.

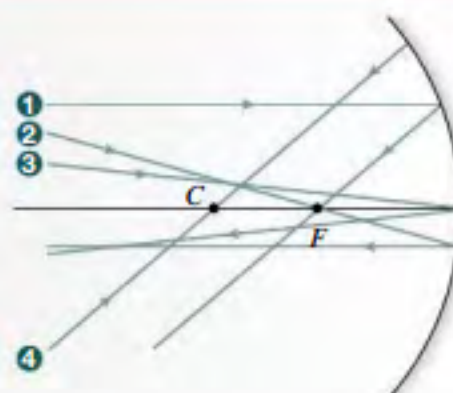


FIGURE 31.5 Four special rays for locating images in curved mirrors. Any two suffice to locate the image.

will often show mirrors with exaggerated curvature, and consequently not all rays will seem paraxial.

We can see how spherical mirrors form images by tracing two rays from each of several points on the object, as we did for plane mirrors. Some special rays simplify this process; their properties all follow from the law of reflection and the properties of a spherical mirror in the paraxial approximation.

Figure 31.6 shows ray tracings, using our special rays 1 and 2 that go through the focal point, to find the image location in three cases. In each case symmetry ensures that the bottom of the image arrow is on the axis, so we haven't bothered to trace it. In Fig. 31.6a we see that an object beyond the mirror's center of curvature, C , forms a smaller, inverted image. Light actually emerges from this image, so it's a *real* image. If you looked from the left toward the mirror in Fig. 31.6a you would actually see the image in space in front of the mirror (Fig. 31.7).

As the object moves closer to the mirror, the real image grows; with the object between the center of curvature and the focus, the image is larger than the object and farther from the mirror (Fig. 31.6b). As the object moves toward the focus, the image grows larger and moves rapidly away from the mirror. With the object right at the focus, the rays emerge in a parallel beam and there's no image. Finally, rays from an object closer to the mirror than the focus diverge after reflection. To an observer they appear to come from a point behind the mirror. Thus there is a virtual image, in this case upright and enlarged (Fig. 31.6c).

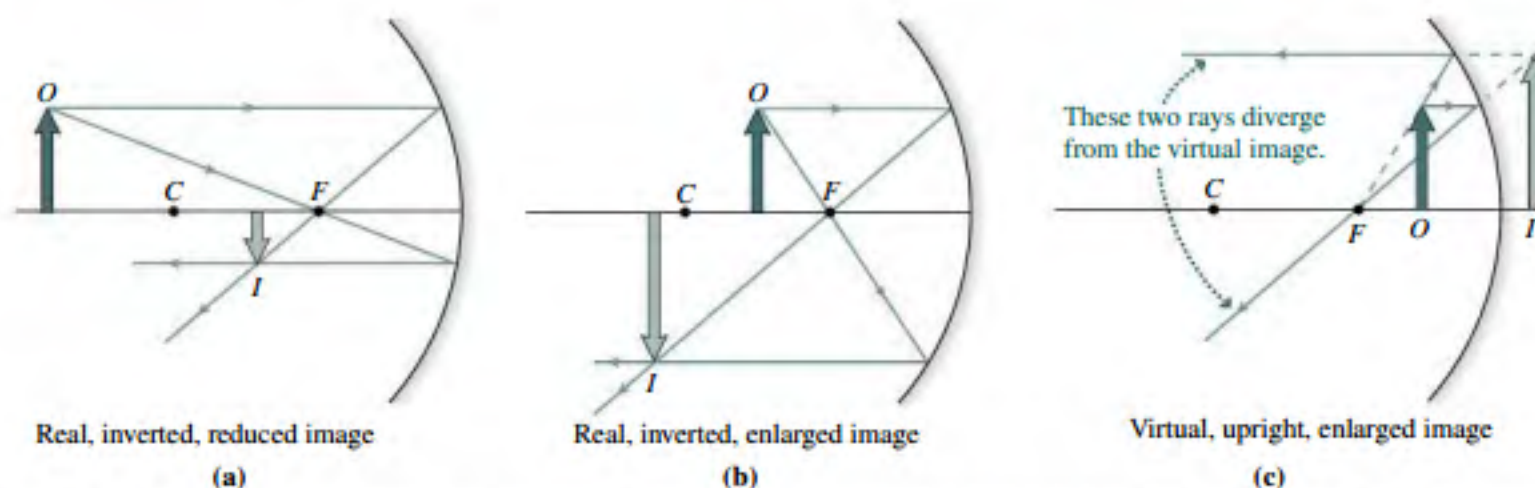


FIGURE 31.6 Image formation with a concave spherical mirror, using rays 1 and 2 described in Tactics 31.1. O denotes the object and I its image.

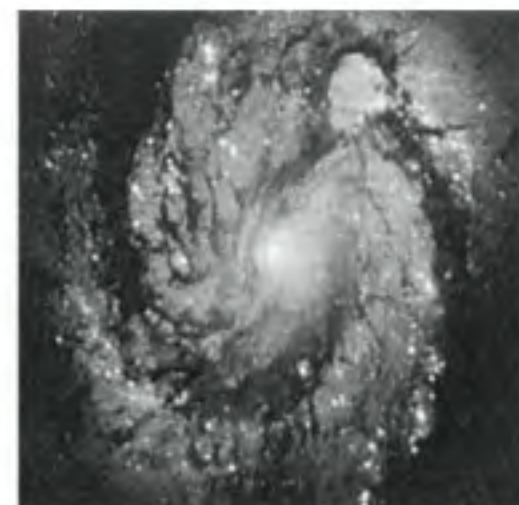
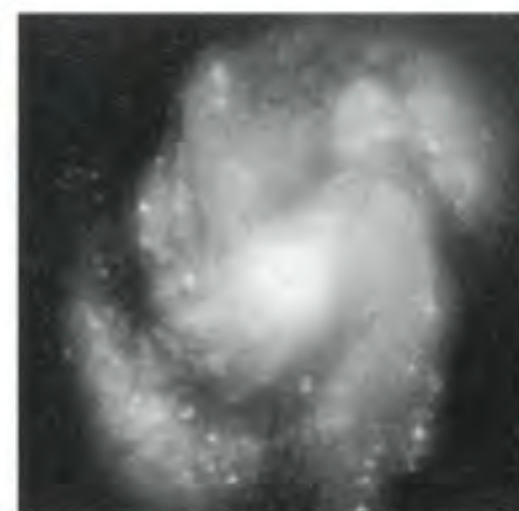


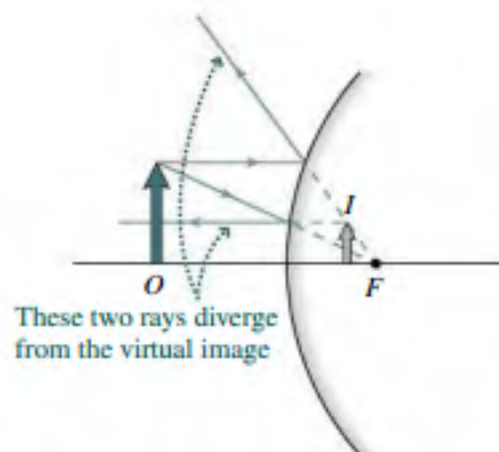
FIGURE 31.4 Incorrect curvature gave the Hubble Space Telescope mirror substantial spherical aberration. Astronauts later installed corrective optics. Images are of the same galaxy before and after the repair.



FIGURE 31.7 A bear meets its real image, formed by the concave mirror at the rear. Bear and image are both in *front* of the mirror.

GOT IT?

31.2 Where would you place an object so that its real image is the same size as the object, as in Fig. 31.7? (a) at the center of curvature C ; (b) at the focal point F ; (c) between F and the mirror; (d) between F and C ; (e) beyond C



These two rays diverge from the virtual image

FIGURE 31.8 Image formation with a convex mirror. The image is always virtual, upright, and reduced in size.



FIGURE 31.9 A convex mirror gives a wide-angle view.

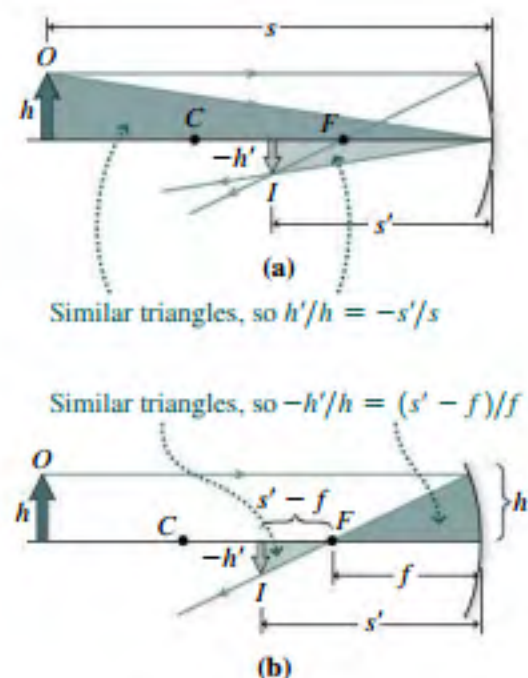


FIGURE 31.10 Finding the image I using rays 1 and 3 of Tactics 31.1. For an inverted image the height h' is negative, so we've marked the image arrow's length—a positive quantity—as $-h'$.

Convex Mirrors

A convex mirror reflects on the outside of its spherical curvature, causing light to diverge and therefore to form only virtual images (Fig. 31.8). Although the focus has less obvious physical significance in this case, its location still controls the geometry of reflected rays. As Fig. 31.8 shows, we can still draw a ray parallel to the axis and another ray that would go through the focus if the mirror weren't in its way. The reflected rays appear to diverge from a common point behind the mirror, showing a virtual image that's upright and reduced in size. By considering different object positions, you can convince yourself that the image in a convex mirror always has these characteristics. Convex mirrors are widely used where an image of a broad region needs to be captured in a small space (Fig. 31.9).

The Mirror Equation

Drawing ray diagrams gives an intuitive feel for image formation. More precise image locations and sizes follow from the **mirror equation**, which we now derive. This time we'll find the image using special rays (1) and (3) listed in Tactics 31.1. Figure 31.10a shows these two rays, with ray (1) parallel to the mirror axis and ray (3) striking the mirror's center. The ray that strikes the center of the mirror reflects symmetrically about the axis; therefore, the two shaded triangles are similar. Then the **magnification** M —the ratio of image height h' to object height h —is the same as the ratio of image and object distances from the mirror. We'll consider the image height negative if the image is inverted; then from Fig. 31.10a we have

$$M = \frac{h'}{h} = -\frac{s'}{s} \quad (\text{magnification}) \quad (31.1)$$

Here object and image are both in front of the mirror, so we take object and image distances s and s' as positive quantities; the negative sign in Equation 31.1 then shows that in this case the image is inverted. Also, for the object location of Fig. 31.10a, it's clear that $|M| < 1$, meaning the image is reduced rather than enlarged.

Figure 31.10b is the same as Fig. 31.10a except that now we show only the ray that reflects through the focus. We've also labeled the focal length f and shaded another pair of similar triangles. From these you can see that $-h'/h = (s' - f)/f$. Here we put the minus sign on h' because we've defined h' as negative for the inverted image, but comparing similar triangles requires a ratio of positive quantities. Equation 31.1 shows that the ratio h'/h is the magnification $M = -s'/s$. So we have $s'/s = (s' - f)/f$ or, dividing both sides by s' and doing a little algebra,

$$\frac{1}{s} + \frac{1}{s'} = \frac{1}{f} \quad (\text{mirror equation}) \quad (31.2)$$

f is the mirror's focal length. It's positive for a concave mirror and negative for a convex mirror.

s is the distance from the object to the mirror.

s' is the distance from the image to the mirror. It's positive if the image is in front of the mirror and negative if it's behind.

Although we derived the mirror equation using a real image, the equation applies to virtual images with the convention that a *negative* image distance s' means the image is *behind* the mirror. And we can handle *convex* mirrors as well by taking the focal length to be a *negative* quantity. Table 31.1 summarizes image formation with mirrors, including these sign conventions.

Table 31.1 Image Formation with Mirrors: Sign Conventions

Focal Length, f	Object Distance, s	Image Distance, s'	Type of Image	Ray Diagram
$+$ (concave)	$+$ (in front of mirror) $s > 2f$	$+$ (in front of mirror) $s' < 2f$	Real, inverted, reduced	
$+$ (concave)	$+$ (in front of mirror) $2f > s > f$	$+$ (in front of mirror) $s' > 2f$	Real, inverted, enlarged	
$+$ (concave)	$+$ (in front of mirror) $s < f$	$-$ (behind mirror)	Virtual, upright, enlarged	
$-$ (convex)	$+$ (in front of mirror)	$-$ (behind mirror)	Virtual, upright, reduced	

A diagram similar to Fig. 31.10 but using the ray through the center of curvature gives another useful fact about curved mirrors: The magnitude of the focal length is half the mirror's curvature radius:

$$|f| = \frac{R}{2} \quad (31.3)$$

You can prove this in Problem 75.

EXAMPLE 31.1

A Concave Mirror: The Hubble Space Telescope

Worked Example with Variation Problems

During assembly of the Hubble Space Telescope, one technician stood 3.85 m in front of the telescope's concave mirror (Fig. 31.11). Given the telescope's 5.52-m focal length, find (a) the location and (b) the magnification of this technician's image.

INTERPRET This problem is about image formation in a concave mirror. We identify the technician as the object, the 5.52-m focal length as f , and the 3.85-m distance as the object distance s .

DEVELOP We've sketched the situation in Fig. 31.12. With the object closer than the focal length, our sketch resembles Fig. 31.6c, so we anticipate an enlarged, virtual image, as shown. For (a), we'll solve the mirror Equation 31.2 for the image distance s' to get the image location. Then for (b), we can find the magnification from Equation 31.1, $M = -s'/s$.



FIGURE 31.11 Technicians in front of the Hubble Space Telescope mirror.
(continued)

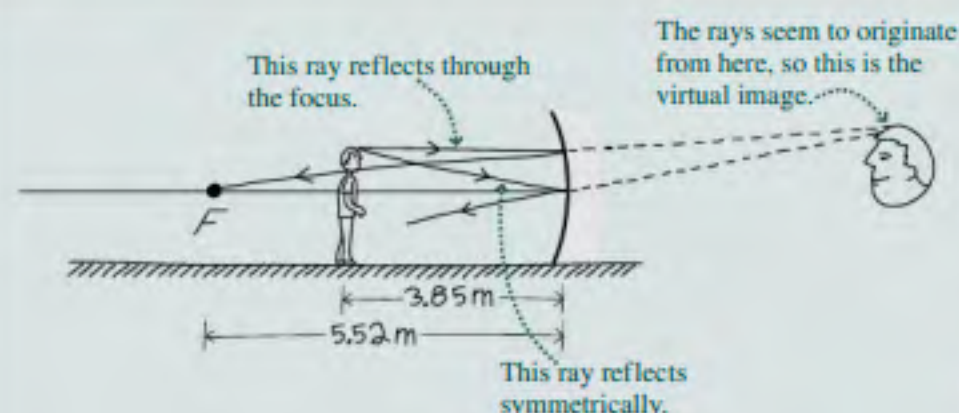


FIGURE 31.12 Sketch for Example 31.1, showing two rays that locate the virtual image of the technician's head.

EVALUATE (a) Solving Equation 31.2 for s' gives

$$s' = \frac{fs}{s - f} = \frac{(5.52 \text{ m})(3.85 \text{ m})}{3.85 \text{ m} - 5.52 \text{ m}} = -12.7 \text{ m}$$

(b) Using this result in Equation 31.1 gives the magnification:

$$M = -\frac{s'}{s} = -\frac{-12.7 \text{ m}}{3.85 \text{ m}} = 3.30$$

ASSESS The *negative* image distance confirms what our sketch anticipated: This is a virtual image, located behind the mirror. The negative distance cancels the minus sign in Equation 31.1, giving a positive threefold magnification. Thus the image is upright and enlarged, just as Fig. 31.11 shows.

EXAMPLE 31.2 A Convex Mirror: *Jurassic Park*

In the film *Jurassic Park*, horrified passengers watch in a car's convex side-view mirror as a *Tyrannosaurus rex* pursues them. Printed on the mirror is the warning "OBJECTS IN MIRROR ARE CLOSER THAN THEY APPEAR." If the mirror's curvature radius is 12 m and *T. rex* is actually 9.0 m from the mirror, by what factor does the dinosaur appear reduced in size?

INTERPRET This is about a convex mirror, governed by the same basic equations as the concave mirror in Example 31.1. We identify the 12-m length as the curvature radius R and the 9.0-m distance as the object distance s .

DEVELOP We've sketched the situation in Fig. 31.13. Since this resembles Fig. 31.8, we see that the image will indeed be reduced in size. Equation 31.1, $M = -s'/s$, gives the magnification we want, but to use it we need the image distance s' . In Example 31.1 we solved Equation 31.2 to get $s' = fs/(s - f)$. Although that mirror was concave and this one is convex, Equation 31.2 applies to both mirrors. So we can use $s' = fs/(s - f)$ in Equation 31.1 to get the magnification:

$$M = -\frac{s'}{s} = -\frac{fs/(s - f)}{s} = -\frac{f}{s - f}$$

We aren't given the focal length, but Equation 31.3, $|f| = R/2$, shows that its magnitude is half the 12-m radius. Since this is a *convex* mirror, Table 31.1 shows that the focal length is *negative*, so $f = -6.0 \text{ m}$.

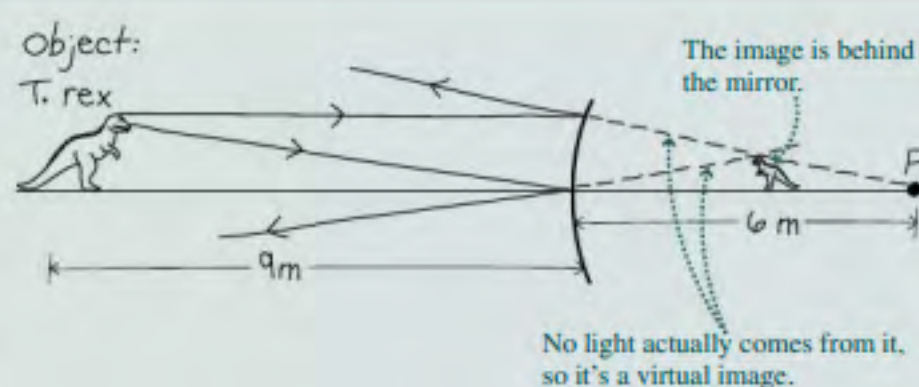


FIGURE 31.13 Sketch for Example 31.2, showing two rays that locate the image of *T. rex*. Mirror is not to scale.

EVALUATE Using our expression for M gives

$$M = -\frac{f}{s - f} = -\frac{(-6.0 \text{ m})}{9.0 \text{ m} - (-6.0 \text{ m})} = 0.40$$

where the answer comes out positive because f is negative.

ASSESS Our result shows that *T. rex* appears in the mirror at only 40% of its actual size; in other words, it looks farther away than it really is.

31.2 Images with Lenses

LO 31.2 Use ray tracing to describe image formation by lenses and use the lens equation to get quantitative results.

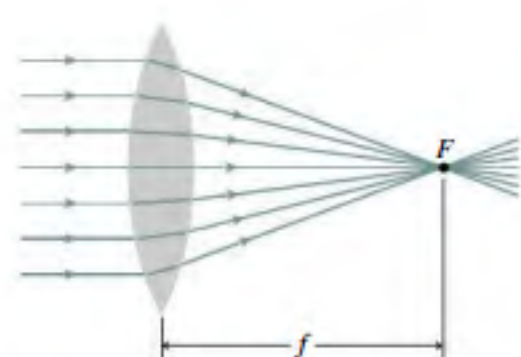


FIGURE 31.14 A convex lens brings parallel light rays to a focus at F .

A **lens** is a piece of transparent material that uses refraction to form images. Like mirrors, lenses can be either concave or convex. But light goes *through* a lens, while it reflects off a mirror, so the roles of concave and convex are reversed. A convex lens focuses parallel rays to a **focal point** and is therefore a **converging lens** (Fig. 31.14). As we'll see, a convex lens can form real and virtual images, depending on the object location. A concave lens, in contrast, is a **diverging lens**; it refracts parallel rays so they appear to diverge from a common focus. Like a *convex* mirror, a *concave* lens forms only virtual images (Fig. 31.15).

We first explore a **thin lens**—one whose thickness is small compared with the curvature radii of its two surfaces. Although light refracts as it enters a lens and again as it exits, in the thin-lens approximation the two surfaces are so close that it suffices to consider that the light bends just once, as it crosses the center plane of the lens. Unlike a mirror, light can go either way through a lens; that means the lens has two focal points, one on either

side. For a thin lens, the focal length proves to be the same in either direction, so it doesn't matter which way we orient the lens. We'll consider all lenses to be thin unless otherwise stated, and later we'll justify the thin-lens approximation mathematically.

Lens Images by Ray Tracing

As with mirrors, any two rays serve to locate the image formed by a lens. For lenses, two special rays simplify ray tracing.

Tactics 31.2 RAY TRACING WITH LENSES

Figure 31.16 shows two special rays:

1. Any ray parallel to the lens axis refracts through the focal point.
2. Any ray through the center of the lens passes undeflected.

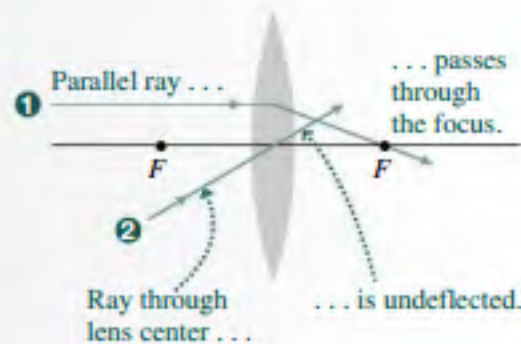


FIGURE 31.16 Two special rays for locating images formed with lenses.

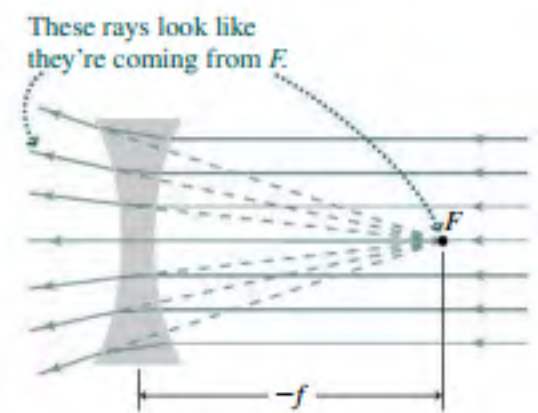


FIGURE 31.15 Parallel light passing through a concave lens diverges so it looks as though it's coming from a common focus.

Figure 31.17 shows ray tracings for different object placements in relation to a converging lens. In Fig. 31.17a we see that an object farther out than two focal lengths produces a smaller, inverted, real image on the other side of the lens. Since light really emanates from this image, you could see it without looking through the lens. As the object moves toward the lens, the image moves away and grows. When the object is between one and two focal lengths from the lens, the image has moved beyond $2f$ and is enlarged (Fig. 31.17b). The image on a movie screen is formed in this way. Moving the object closer than the focal point produces an enlarged, virtual image that can be seen only by an observer looking *through* the lens (Fig. 31.17c).

Figure 31.18 shows ray tracings for a diverging lens. Like a convex mirror, this lens produces only virtual images that are upright and reduced in size; they're visible only through the lens. The basic geometry of Fig. 31.18 doesn't change even if the object moves within the focal length.

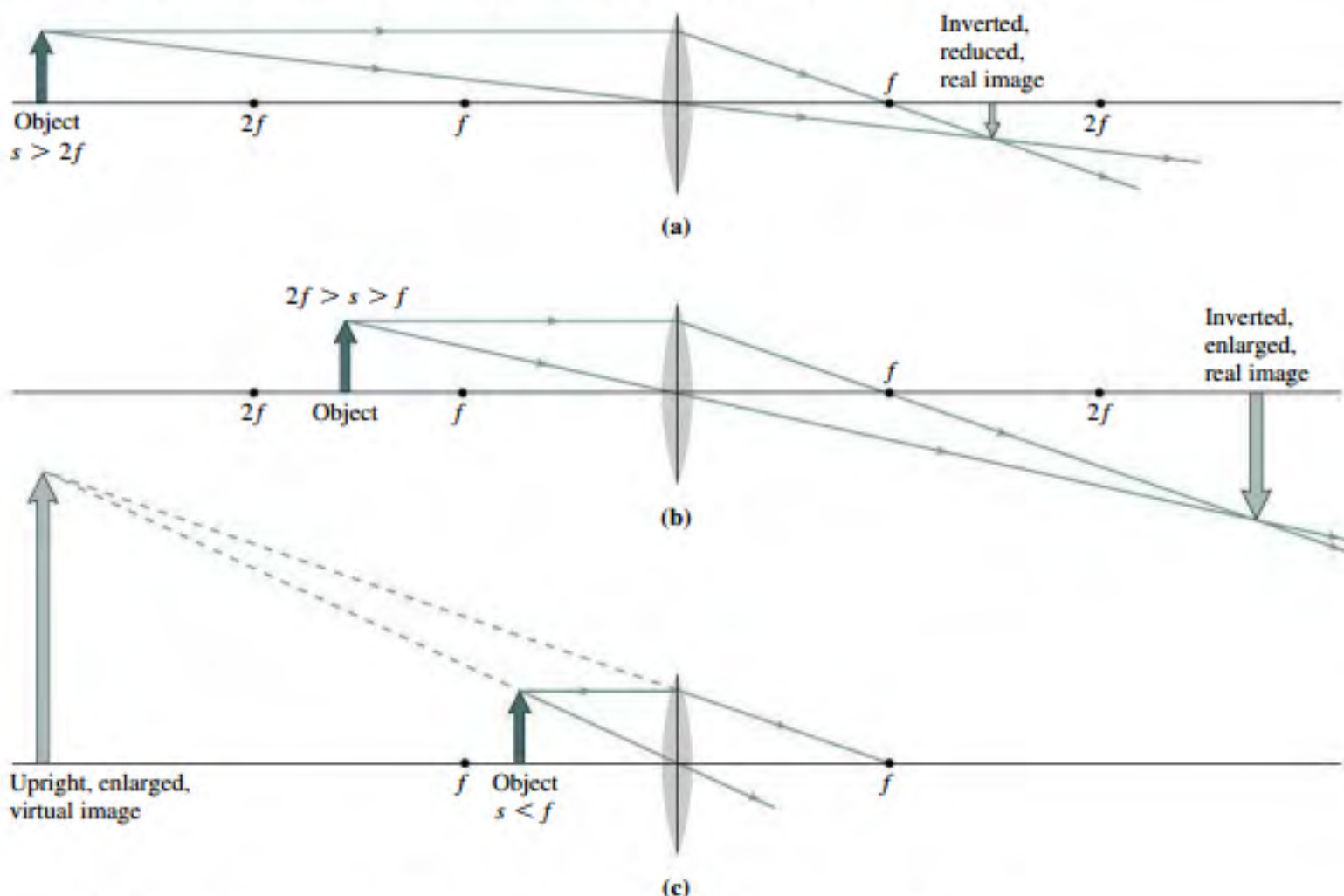


FIGURE 31.17 Image formation with a converging lens, shown for three object locations.

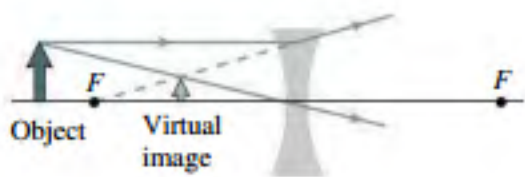


FIGURE 31.18 A diverging lens always forms a reduced, upright, virtual image, visible only through the lens.

Getting Quantitative: The Lens Equation

Study Fig. 31.19 and you'll see that the unshaded triangles *OAB* and *IDB* are similar. Therefore, as for mirrors, the image magnification is

$$M = \frac{h'}{h} = -\frac{s'}{s} \tag{31.4}$$

where again a negative height means an inverted image. The shaded triangles in Fig. 31.19 are also similar, so $-h'/(s' - f) = h/f$. Combining this result with Equation 31.4 and doing some algebra then gives

$\frac{1}{s} + \frac{1}{s'} = \frac{1}{f}$ (lens equation) (31.5)

f is the lens's focal length. It's positive for a convex lens and negative for a concave lens.

s is the distance from the object to the lens.

s' is the distance from the image to the lens. It's positive if the image is on the opposite side of the lens from the object and negative if it's on the same side.

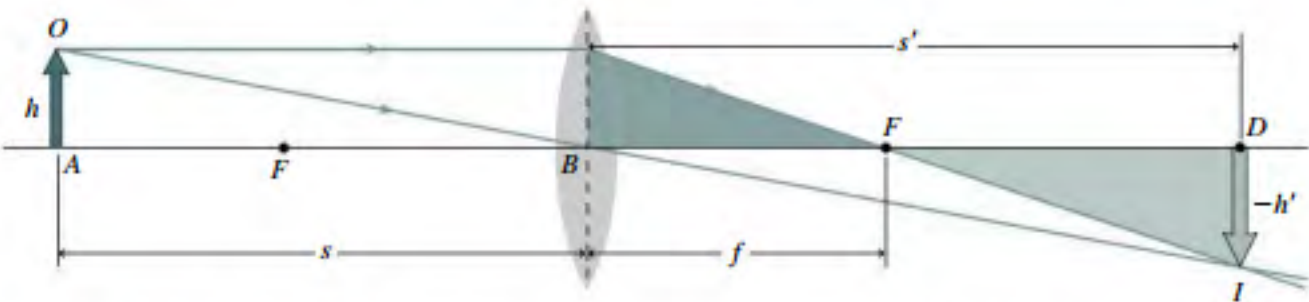


FIGURE 31.19 Ray diagram for deriving the lens equation. Triangles *OAB* and *IDB* are similar, as are the shaded triangles.

which is identical to Equation 31.2, the mirror equation. Although we derived Equation 31.5 for the case of a real image, it holds for virtual images if we consider the image distance negative; in that case the image is on the same side of the lens as is the object. And it holds for diverging lenses if we consider the focal length negative. Table 31.2 summarizes image formation with lenses, including these sign conventions. Figure 31.20 describes graphically the sizes and types of images formed at different object distances.

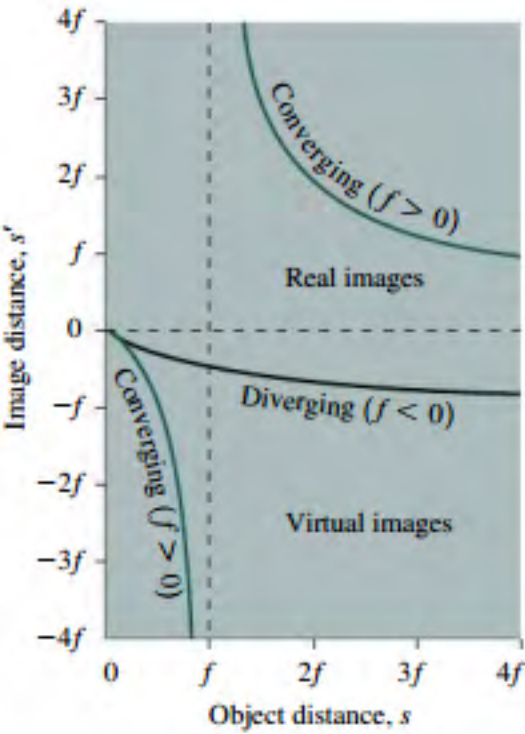


FIGURE 31.20 Image distance versus object distance for lenses.

Table 31.2 Image Formation with Lenses: Sign Conventions

Focal Length, <i>f</i>	Object Distance, <i>s</i>	Image Distance, <i>s'</i>	Type of Image	Ray Diagram
+(convex)	+ <i>s</i> > 2 <i>f</i>	+(opposite side of lens) 2 <i>f</i> > <i>s'</i> > <i>f</i>	Real, inverted, reduced	
+(convex)	+ 2 <i>f</i> > <i>s</i> > <i>f</i>	+(opposite side of lens) <i>s'</i> > 2 <i>f</i>	Real, inverted, enlarged	
+(convex)	+ <i>s</i> < <i>f</i>	-(same side of lens)	Virtual, upright, enlarged	
-(concave)	+ (same side of lens)	-(same side of lens)	Virtual, upright, reduced	

EXAMPLE 31.3 Using the Lens Equation: Fine Print

You're using a magnifying glass (a converging lens) with 21-cm focal length to read a telephone book (Fig. 31.21). How far from the page should you hold the lens in order to see the print enlarged three times?

INTERPRET This is a problem involving image formation with a converging lens. The object is the phone book, so we identify the book-to-lens distance we're asked for as the object distance s . Since this is a converging (i.e., convex) lens, the focal length is positive: $f = +21$ cm. The factor-of-3 magnification we want is the quantity M .

DEVELOP The situation is like Fig. 31.17c, with an enlarged, upright, virtual image. We're given the focal length and magnification, but we don't know either the object distance s , which we're looking for, or the image distance s' . Equation 31.4, $M = -s'/s$, relates the two, so we can first use that equation to eliminate s' in terms of s and then solve the lens equation, Equation 31.5, $1/s + 1/s' = 1/f$, for s .

EVALUATE With $M = 3$, Equation 31.4 gives $s' = -3s$. Then Equation 31.5 becomes

$$\frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{3s} = \frac{2}{3s} = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{21 \text{ cm}}$$



FIGURE 31.21 Using a converging lens as a magnifying glass (Example 31.3).

so $s = (2)(21 \text{ cm})/3 = 14 \text{ cm}$.

ASSESS Our answer is less than the focal length, as Fig. 31.17c shows is required for a virtual image. Figure 31.21 confirms that the image is enlarged, upright, and virtual, and it appears farther away than the object. It's also on the same side of the lens as the object, which explains the negative image distance $s' = -42 \text{ cm}$.

GOT IT?

31.3 You look through a lens at this page and see the words enlarged and right-side up. Is the image you observe real or virtual? Is the lens concave or convex?

31.3 Refraction in Lenses: The Details

LO 31.3 Describe refraction and image formation in thick lenses.

So far we've treated lenses as being arbitrarily thin and neglected details of the refraction process. Here we develop a more general description of refraction in lenses, of which our thin-lens approximation is a special case.

Refraction at a Curved Surface

Figure 31.22 shows a transparent material with refractive index n_2 and a curved surface of radius R . Outside the material is a medium with refractive index n_1 . We'll now prove what Fig. 31.22a shows: that rays from a point object O are refracted to a common image point I . Our proof is valid only in the paraxial approximation that all rays make small angles with the optic axis. However, as with mirrors, our drawings won't always show these angles as being small.

Figure 31.22b shows a single ray. With all the labeled angles small, we can approximate $\sin x \approx \tan x \approx x$, with x in radians. Then Snell's law, $n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2$, becomes $n_1 \theta_1 = n_2 \theta_2$. Triangles BCI and OBC give $\theta_2 = \beta - \gamma$ and $\theta_1 = \alpha + \beta$, so Snell's law becomes $n_1(\alpha + \beta) = n_2(\beta - \gamma)$. Furthermore, in the small-angle approximation the arc BA is so close to a straight line that we can write $\alpha \approx \tan \alpha \approx BA/s$, with $s = OA$ the object's distance from the refracting surface. Similarly, $\beta \approx BA/R$ and $\gamma \approx BA/s'$. Thus our expression of Snell's law becomes

$$n_1 \left(\frac{BA}{s} + \frac{BA}{R} \right) = n_2 \left(\frac{BA}{R} - \frac{BA}{s'} \right)$$

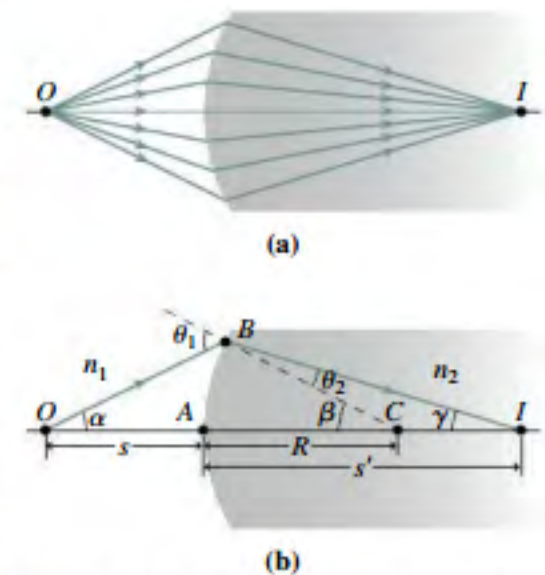


FIGURE 31.22 Refraction at an interface with a curved surface. All labeled angles are considered small, even though the drawing doesn't show them as such.

or, on canceling BA and rearranging,

$$\frac{n_1}{s} + \frac{n_2}{s'} = \frac{n_2 - n_1}{R} \quad (31.6)$$

The angle α doesn't appear here, showing that this relation between object and image distances holds for *all* rays that satisfy the small-angle approximation. So Fig. 31.22a is correct: All such rays do indeed come to a common focus at I .

We derived Equation 31.6 for the case of a real image, but as usual it applies to virtual images if we take the image distance as negative. And it applies to concave surfaces if we take R to be negative. It even works for flat surfaces, with $R = \infty$.

EXAMPLE 31.4

Refraction at a Curved Surface: A Cylindrical Aquarium

Worked Example with Variation Problems

An aquarium consists of a thin-walled plastic tube 70.0 cm in diameter. For a cat looking directly into the aquarium, what's the apparent distance to a fish 15.0 cm from the aquarium wall?

INTERPRET We interpret the cylindrical aquarium as a two-dimensional version of the spherical surface we analyzed with Fig. 31.22 and Equation 31.6. The plastic tube is thin, so we can neglect refraction within the plastic and consider that we have just a cylinder of water. The object is the fish, and since it's *inside* the water, the cylindrical edge of the aquarium is concave *toward* the object. Then the curvature radius is *negative*; we're given the diameter as 70.0 cm, so $R = -35.0$ cm. With the object in the water, $n_1 = 1.333$ from Table 30.1 and $n_2 = 1$ for air. The 15-cm distance from the edge to the fish is the object distance s .

DEVELOP Figure 31.23 shows the physical situation and a ray diagram viewed from above. Our plan is to solve Equation 31.6, $n_1/s + n_2/s' = (n_2 - n_1)/R$, for s' and evaluate using $R = -35.0$ cm, $n_1 = 1.333$, $n_2 = 1$, and $s = 15.0$ cm.

EVALUATE Solving, we have

$$s' = n_2 \left(\frac{n_2 - n_1}{R} - \frac{n_1}{s} \right)^{-1} = -12.6 \text{ cm}$$

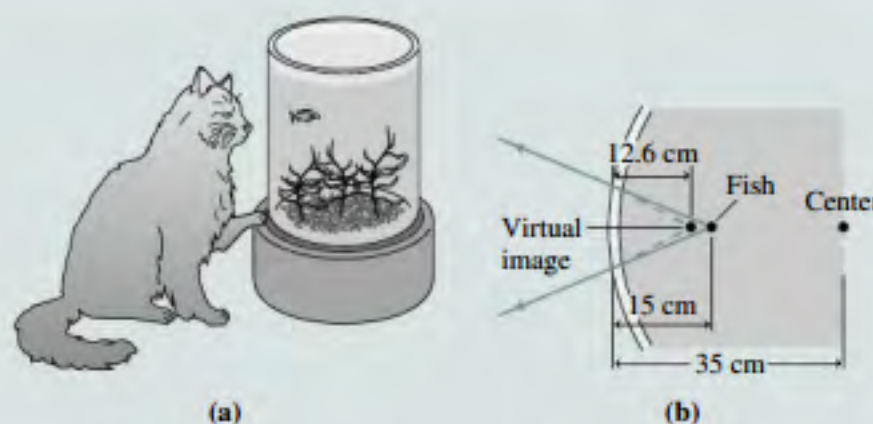


FIGURE 31.23 (a) A cylindrical aquarium. (b) Top view, showing the formation of a virtual image of a fish that's actually 15 cm from the edge.

ASSESS Make sense? The fish is actually 15 cm from the edge, but refraction makes the image distance s' shorter. The same effect occurs when you look down into a swimming pool or lake: Objects on the bottom look closer, and you can find out how much by applying Equation 31.6 with $R = \infty$ (see Exercise 22).

Lenses, Thick and Thin

Figure 31.24 shows a lens of thickness t with refractive index n , surrounded by air with $n = 1$. Object O_1 lies a distance s_1 from the left-hand surface. This surface forms an image I_1 , which we'll also call O_2 because it acts as an object for the right-hand surface. Refraction at that surface forms a second image I_2 . We want to relate the original object O_1 and the final image I_2 .

At the left-hand surface, the quantities in Equation 31.6 become

$$\frac{1}{s_1} + \frac{n}{s'_1} = \frac{n - 1}{R_1} \quad (\text{left-hand surface})$$

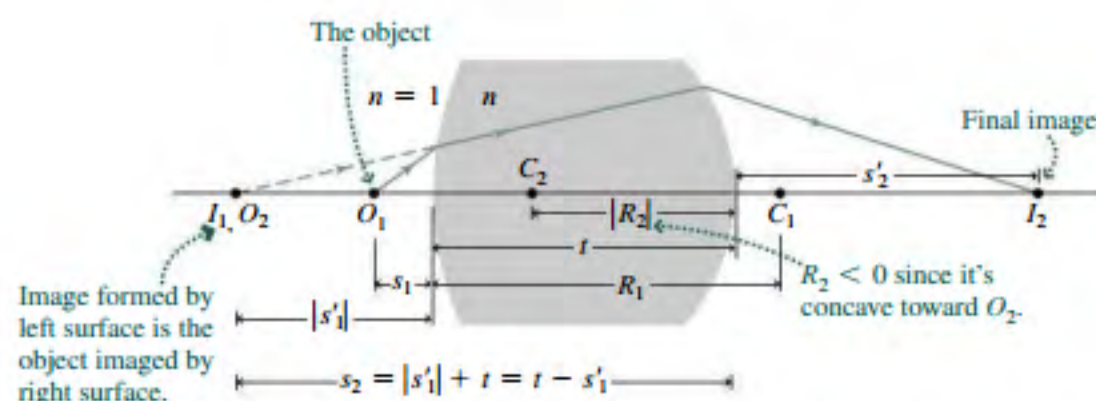


FIGURE 31.24 Analysis of a thick lens with different curvature radii. C_1 and C_2 are the centers of curvature of the left and right sides, respectively; t is the lens thickness.

We've placed O_1 so close that I_1 is a *virtual* image, so s'_1 is *negative*. Now we set up another instance of Equation 31.6, this time for the right-hand surface. Here I_1 is the object, whose distance s_2 is $t - s'_1$ because s'_1 is negative. Also at the right-hand surface, $s' = s'_2$, $n_1 = n$, and $R = R_2$, where, for the case shown, R_2 is negative because the right-hand surface is concave toward the object (I_1, O_2) that's being imaged. So at the right-hand surface, Equation 31.6 reads

$$\frac{n}{t - s'_1} + \frac{1}{s'_2} = \frac{1 - n}{R_2} \quad (\text{right-hand surface})$$

Now we'll let the lens become arbitrarily thin, so $t \rightarrow 0$. Then we add the two equations; the intermediate-image term n/s'_1 cancels, leaving only the first object distance and final image distance. So we drop the subscripts 1 and 2, and the result is

$$\frac{1}{s} + \frac{1}{s'} = (n - 1) \left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2} \right)$$

The left-hand side here is identical to the left-hand side of Equation 31.5, and Equation 31.5's right-hand side is $1/f$. Equating the two right-hand sides results in the **lensmaker's formula**, which gives the focal length:

$$\frac{1}{f} = (n - 1) \left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2} \right) \quad (\text{lensmaker's formula}) \quad (31.7)$$

n is the refractive index of the lens material.

f is the focal length of a thin lens. It can be positive or negative.

R_1 and R_2 are the curvature radii of the two lens surfaces. Either is positive if the surface is concave toward the object and negative if it's convex.

Again, the radii here can be positive or negative; in Fig. 31.24 R_1 is positive because the left-hand surface is convex toward the object, while R_2 is negative because the right-hand surface is concave toward its object, the intermediate image I_1 . Although we derived Equation 31.7 for the case of a virtual intermediate image, the lensmaker's formula is a general result for the focal length of a thin lens.

Lenses come in a variety of shapes (Fig. 31.25). Those that are thicker in the center are converging lenses, for which Equation 31.7 gives a positive focal length. Those that are thinner in the center are diverging lenses, with negative f . These behaviors reverse if the medium surrounding the lens has a higher refractive index (see Problem 74).

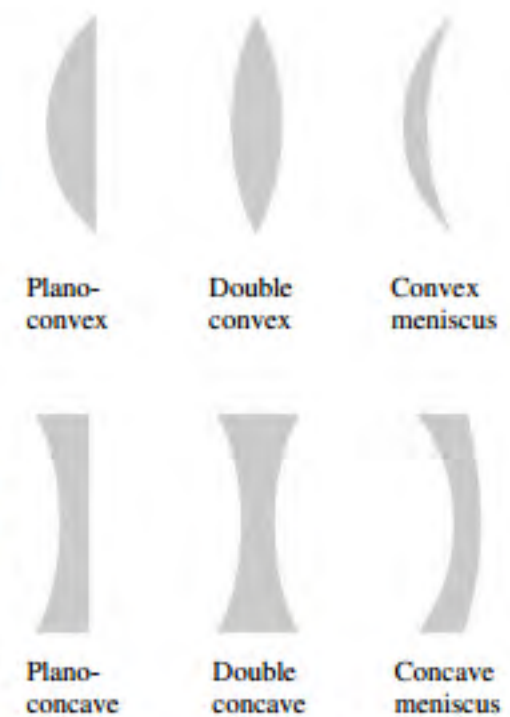


FIGURE 31.25 Common lens types.

EXAMPLE 31.5 The Lensmaker's Formula: A Plano-Convex Lens

Find an expression for the focal length of the plano-convex lens in Fig. 31.25, given refractive index n and radius R for the one curved surface.

INTERPRET This is a thin lens, such as we just analyzed in deriving the lensmaker's formula. With an object at the left of the lens, we identify $R_1 = R$ and $R_2 = \infty$ for the flat surface.

DEVELOP The lensmaker's formula, Equation 31.7, relates the focal length, the lens surface radii, and the refractive index. Our plan is to solve for f .

EVALUATE With $R_1 = R$ and $R_2 = \infty$, Equation 31.7 gives

$$f = \left[(n - 1) \left(\frac{1}{R} - \frac{1}{\infty} \right) \right]^{-1} = \frac{R}{n - 1}$$

ASSESS Make sense? The smaller R , the more curved the lens and the more it bends light; the result is a shorter focal length. The higher n , the greater the refraction, and with n in the denominator, the result is again a shorter focal length. We asserted earlier that a thin lens works the same either way. You can see that explicitly here by putting the object beyond the flat side; then $R_1 = \infty$ and $R_2 = -R$, but the result for f is unchanged.

GOT IT?

31.4 A thin lens has focal length $+50$ cm. Which of the following *must* be true of this lens? (a) it's either double convex or plano-convex; (b) it's a convex meniscus lens; (c) it's a concave lens; (d) it's thicker in the center than at the edges; (e) it's thinner in the center than at the edges

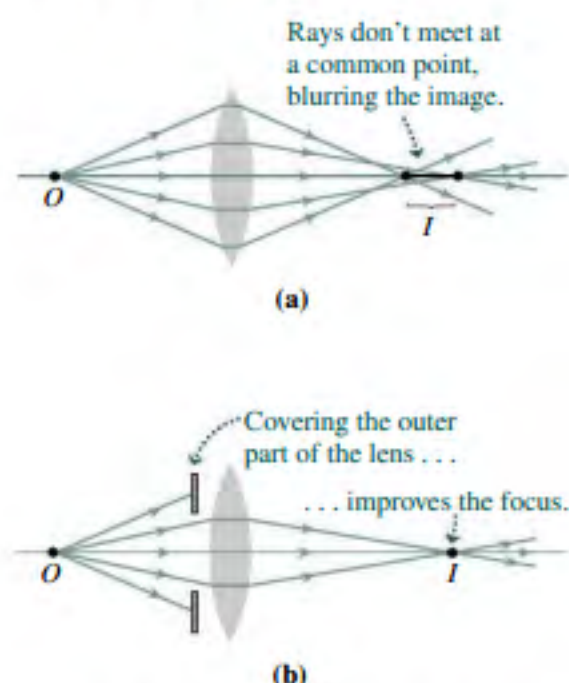


FIGURE 31.26 (a) Spherical aberration. (b) Using only the central portion of the lens minimizes aberration, but at the expense of a dimmer image.

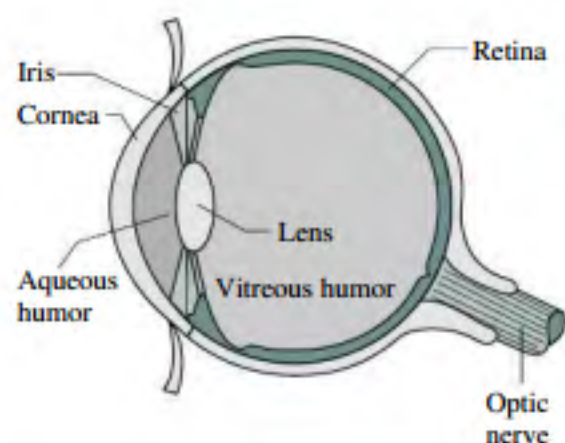


FIGURE 31.27 The human eye.

Lens Aberrations

Lenses exhibit several optical defects. We described **spherical aberration** in mirrors; this same defect occurs with spherical lenses (Fig. 31.26a). Our lens analysis required that all rays make small angles with the lens axis; if not, then they don't share a common focus, causing spherical aberration. Small angles occur naturally with distant objects, but not with objects close to the lens. Using only the central portion of the lens can eliminate those rays with larger angles (Fig. 31.26b), leading to sharper focus. That's why a camera focuses over a wider range when it's "stopped down," with an opaque iris covering the outer part of the lens. The trade-off is that less light is available. Evolution has given deepwater squids a clever solution to spherical aberration: Their eyes have spherical lenses whose refractive index varies quadratically with distance from the lens center—a property that Maxwell himself had showed could lead to aberration-free focusing.

We mentioned **chromatic aberration** in Chapter 30; it occurs because the refractive index varies with wavelength, causing different colors to focus at different points. High-quality optical systems minimize this effect by using composite lenses of materials with different refractive indices. **Astigmatism** occurs when a lens has different curvature radii in different directions. This is a common defect in the human eye, corrected with glasses or contact lenses that have compensating asymmetric curvature.

31.4 Optical Instruments

LO 31.4 Describe the workings of optical instruments, including eyes and cameras, magnifiers and microscopes, and telescopes.

Numerous optical instruments use lenses, mirrors, or both to form images. All but the simplest have more than one optical element, but the principles we've developed here still apply. We analyze such instruments by tracing light through the sequence of optical elements, using the image formed by one element as the object for the next.

The Eye

Our eyes are complex optical systems with several refracting surfaces and mechanisms to vary the focal length and amount of light admitted (Fig. 31.27). Light enters through the *cornea* and traverses a liquid called the *aqueous humor* before passing through the lens. It then traverses the *vitreous humor*, a liquid in the main body of the roughly 2.3-cm-diameter eyeball. Finally the light strikes the *retina*, where special cells called *rods* and *cones* produce electrochemical signals that carry visual information to the brain.

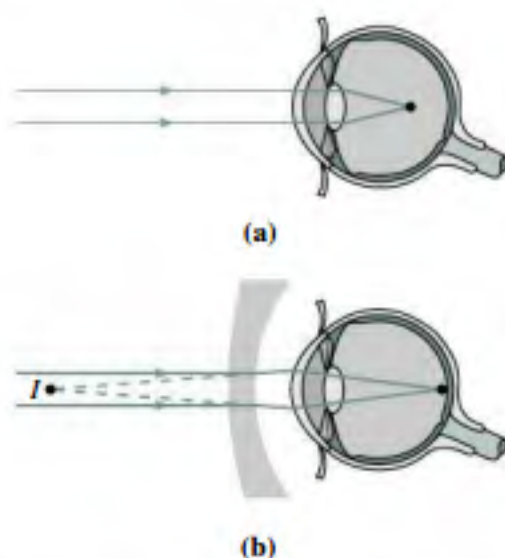


FIGURE 31.28 (a) A nearsighted eye focuses light from distant objects in front of the retina. (b) A diverging lens corrects the problem, creating a closer virtual image that the eye can focus.

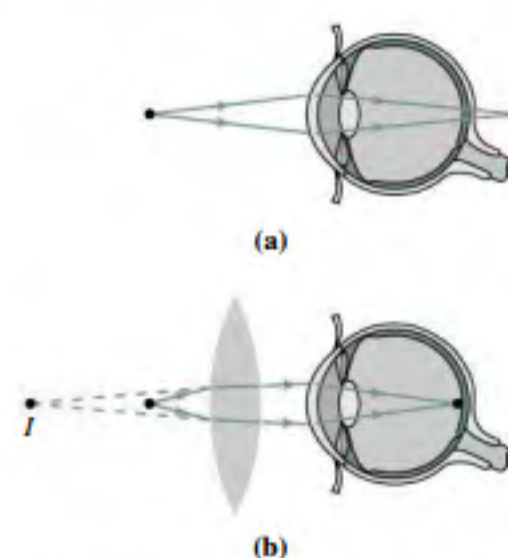


FIGURE 31.29 (a) A farsighted eye can't focus light from nearby objects. (b) A converging lens produces a more distant image that the eye can focus.

A properly functioning eye produces well-focused real images on the retina, with the cornea providing most of the refractive focusing. Muscles adjust the lens, changing its focal length to compensate for different object distances. Other muscles adjust the iris, resizing the pupil opening to adjust for different light levels.

In nearsighted (myopic) people, the image forms in front of the retina, causing distant objects to appear blurred (Fig. 31.28a). Diverging corrective lenses produce closer intermediate images that the myopic eye can then focus (Fig. 31.28b). In farsighted (hyperopic) people, the image of nearby objects would form behind the retina, and converging corrective lenses are used (Fig. 31.29). Even normal eyes can't focus much closer than the so-called **near point** at about 25 cm. This distance greatly increases with age, a condition called *presbyopia*.

Prescriptions for corrective lenses specify the corrective power, P , in **diopters**, which are the inverse of the focal length in meters. Thus a 1-diopter lens has $f = 1$ m, while a 2-diopter lens has $f = 0.5$ m and is more powerful in that it refracts light more sharply. Like f itself, the sign of a lens's corrective power is positive or negative depending on whether the lens is converging or diverging.

It doesn't matter whether a corrective lens is several centimeters from the eye, as with glasses, or right on the cornea, as with contact lenses. Contact lenses can be thin because, as Equation 31.7 shows, it's the curvature radii and not the thickness that determine the focal length. A more radical approach to vision correction is laser surgery, described in the Application below.

APPLICATION Laser Vision Correction

The cornea provides most of the eye's refractive power, with the adjustable lens compensating for different object distances. The popular LASIK procedure corrects vision by reshaping the cornea. In LASIK, the surgeon begins by mechanically cutting a flap of the outermost corneal layer. Then a precision laser beam breaks molecular bonds in the corneal tissue, vaporizing the material and reshaping the cornea according to a prescription customized for the individual eye. With a nearsighted eye, the laser thins the central cornea, making it less sharply curved and thus reducing its refractive power. This has the same effect as the corrective lens in Fig. 31.28b. It's harder, but still possible, to correct farsightedness with LASIK. This involves thinning a ring-shaped region around the central cornea, making the cornea more steeply curved and thus increasing its refractive power. The corrective lens in Fig. 31.29b accomplishes the same thing. The corneal reshaping doesn't have to be symmetric, so LASIK can also correct an asymmetric cornea that causes astigmatism. What it can't do is restore the ability to focus both near and far, since that's handled by the lens, which stiffens with age. So older LASIK patients still need reading glasses. It's possible to correct one eye for near vision and another for distance, but then the patient loses some of the depth perception that comes with binocular vision.

The laser used in vision correction is a precisely controllable *excimer laser*, which produces intense bursts of ultraviolet light. Each pulse removes only $0.25\text{ }\mu\text{m}$ of tissue—one four-thousandth of a millimeter. The laser is so precise



that it can cut notches in a human hair! The surgeon determines the necessary corneal adjustments and feeds the information to a computer that controls the laser. Thanks to the laser's precision, most patients achieve nearly complete vision correction.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 31.1 Contact Lens Mix-Up

You and your roommate have gotten your boxes of disposable contact lenses mixed up. One box is marked “−1.75 diopter,” the other “+2.5 diopter.” You're farsighted and your roommate is nearsighted. Which lenses are yours?

EVALUATE Figure 31.29 shows that you need a converging lens to correct your farsightedness. From Table 31.2's sign conventions, that means a positive focal length and therefore a positive corrective power $P = 1/f$. So yours are the +2.5-diopter lenses.

ASSESS Your lenses don't actually look like the lens in Fig. 31.29b. Since your cornea is curved, they're more like the convex meniscus

lens of Fig. 31.25. The important point is that they're thicker in the middle, which makes them converging lenses.

MAKING THE CONNECTION What's the focal length of your contact lenses?

EVALUATE The diopter measure is the inverse of the focal length in meters, so, conversely, $f = 1/P = (1/2.5)\text{ m} = 40\text{ cm}$.

EXAMPLE 31.6 The Power of Lenses: Lost Your Glasses!

You're on vacation and have lost your reading glasses; without them, your eyes can't focus closer than 70 cm. Fortunately, you can buy nonprescription reading glasses at the pharmacy, where they come in 0.25-diopter increments. Which glasses should you buy so you can focus at the standard 25-cm near point?

INTERPRET Your eyes can't focus closer than 70 cm, so this problem is asking for the power of a lens that will make an object at 25 cm appear as if it's at 70 cm. In other words, when the object distance s is 25 cm, the image distance s' should be -70 cm. We put the minus sign here because, as Fig. 31.29b shows, the image is on the same side of the lens as the object, so this is a *virtual* image.

DEVELOP Equation 31.5, $1/s + 1/s' = 1/f$, relates the inverse of the focal length to the object and image distances. But with the focal length in meters, $1/f$ is just the power, P , in diopters. So we can get the required power directly from Equation 31.5.

EVALUATE Applying Equation 31.5 gives

$$P = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{s} + \frac{1}{s'} = \frac{1}{0.25 \text{ m}} + \frac{1}{-0.70 \text{ m}} = 2.57 \text{ diopters}$$

ASSESS The closest available power is 2.5 diopters, so that's what you should buy.

Cameras

A camera is much like the eye, except that an electronic detector or film replaces the light-sensitive retina. Where the eye changes the lens shape to accommodate different object distances, a camera moves its rigid lens to change the image distance. Simple "point and shoot" cameras use infrared beams to determine the object distance, and then automatically adjust the lens position for optimum focus. The camera also adjusts the lens aperture and exposure time for ambient light conditions. Zoom lenses have moveable elements that alter the focal length for wide-angle to telephoto views.

Magnifiers and Microscopes

Examining very small objects requires bringing them closer than the 25-cm near point below which the human eye can't focus. We therefore use lenses to put enlarged images at greater distances, where we can focus. What matters is not the actual image size, but how much bigger an object looks to us—and that depends on how much of our field of view it occupies. **Angular magnification**, m , is the ratio of the angle an object subtends when seen through a lens to the angle subtended when it's at the 25-cm near point and viewed with the naked eye. Figure 31.30a shows that the latter angle, measured in radians, is approximately $\alpha = h/25 \text{ cm}$, where h is the object height. We get the most comfortable viewing with the eye close to the lens and the object just inside the focal length, forming a large and distant virtual image. With this geometry, Fig. 31.30b shows that the image angle is very nearly h/f . Then the angular magnification is

$$m = \frac{\beta}{\alpha} = \frac{h/f}{h/25 \text{ cm}} = \frac{25 \text{ cm}}{f} \quad (\text{simple magnifier}) \quad (31.8)$$

Single lenses produce angular magnifications up to about four before aberrations compromise image quality. Greater magnification requires more than one lens. In a **compound microscope**, an **objective lens** of short focal length forms a magnified real image. This image is viewed through a second lens, the **eyepiece**, used as a simple magnifier (Fig. 31.31). The object being viewed is positioned just beyond the focus of the objective lens, and its

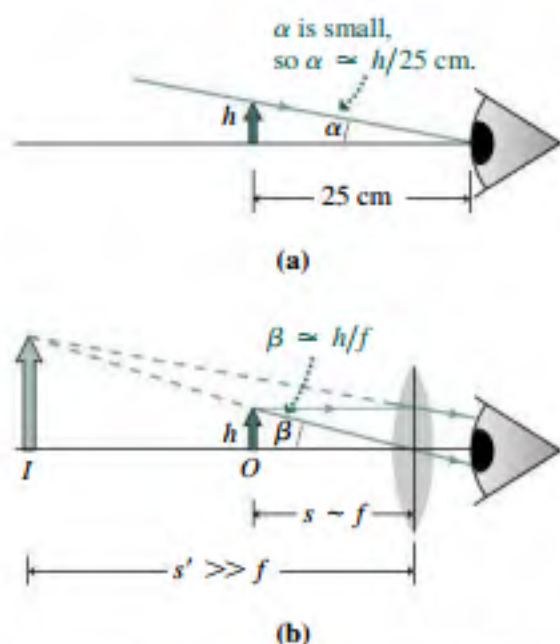


FIGURE 31.30 Calculating the angular magnification $m = \beta/\alpha$.

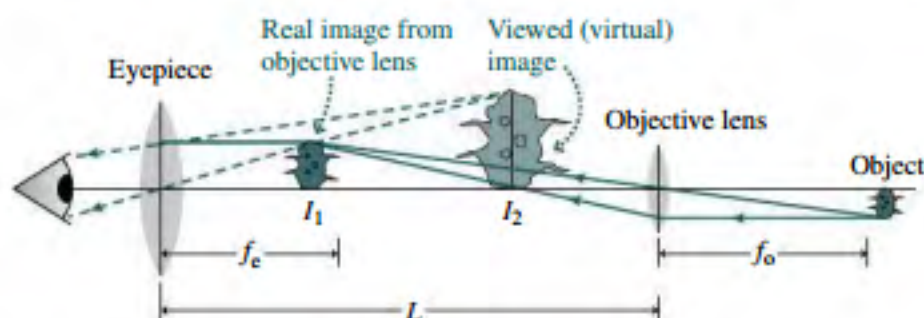


FIGURE 31.31 Image formation in a compound microscope. Figure is not to scale: L should be much greater than either focal length.

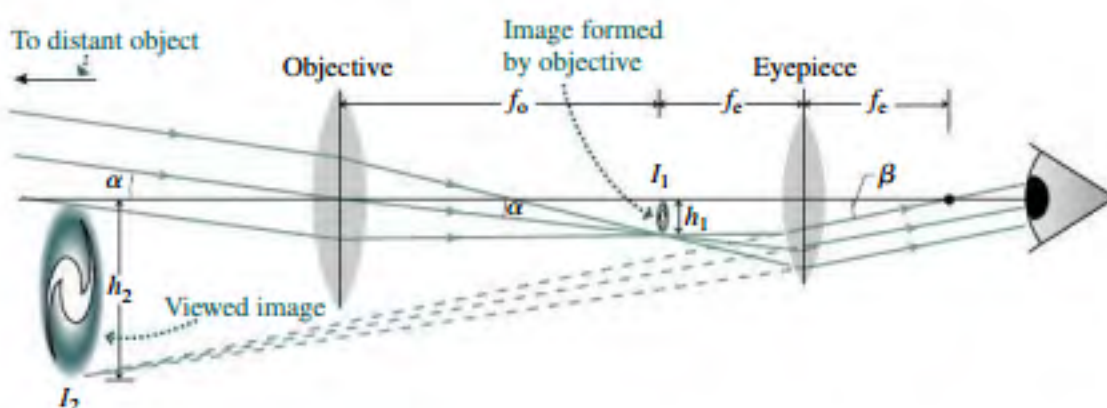


FIGURE 31.32 Image formation in a refracting telescope. A distant object is imaged first at the focus of the objective lens (image I_1). An eyepiece with its focus at nearly the same point then gives an enlarged virtual image (I_2). The angles α and β are given by $\alpha \approx h_1/f_o$ and $\beta \approx h_1/f_e$, leading to Equation 31.10.

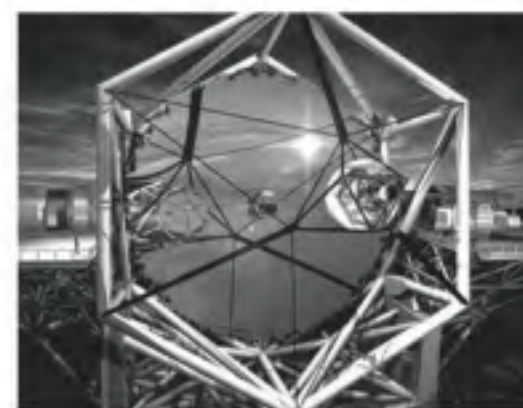


FIGURE 31.33 Artist's conception of the Thirty Meter Telescope, whose mirror consists of 492 individual segments. The TMT should be operational in the mid-2020s.

image falls just inside the focal length of the eyepiece. If both focal lengths are small compared with the distance between the lenses, then the object distance for the objective lens is approximately the objective focal length f_o , and the resulting image distance is approximately the lens spacing L . The real image formed by the objective lens is larger than the object by the ratio of the image and object distances, or $M_o = -L/f_o$. The eyepiece makes the real image look larger still, by a factor of its angular magnification $m = 25\text{ cm}/f_e$. So the overall magnification of the microscope is

$$M = M_o m_e = -\frac{L}{f_o} \left(\frac{25\text{ cm}}{f_e} \right) \quad (\text{compound microscope}) \quad (31.9)$$

where, as usual, the minus sign signifies an inverted image.

Optical microscopes work well as long as the approximation of geometrical optics holds—that is, when the object is much larger than the wavelength of light. Viewing smaller objects requires shorter wavelengths than those of visible light. In the electron microscope, those “waves” are electrons, whose wavelike nature we’ll examine in Chapter 34.

Telescopes

A telescope collects light from distant objects, either forming an image or supplying light to instruments for analysis. Modern astronomical instruments are invariably **reflectors**, whose main light-gathering element is a mirror. Small handheld telescopes, binoculars, and telephoto lenses are **refractors**, which use lenses to gather light.

A simple refractor consists of an objective lens that images distant objects at essentially its focal point, followed by an eyepiece to view this image (Fig. 31.32). The focal points of objective and eyepiece are nearly coincident, so the real image at the objective’s focus is then seen through the eyepiece as a greatly enlarged, virtual image. The angular magnification is the ratio of the angle β subtended by the final image to the angle α subtended by the actual object; Fig. 31.32 shows that this ratio is

$$m = \frac{\beta}{\alpha} = \frac{f_o}{f_e} \quad (\text{refracting telescope}) \quad (31.10)$$

Since a real image is inverted and a virtual image is upright, a two-lens refracting telescope gives an inverted image. This is fine for astronomical work, but telescopes designed for terrestrial use have an extra lens, a diverging eyepiece, or a set of reflecting prisms to produce an upright image.

Reflecting telescopes offer many advantages over refractors. Telescope mirrors have reflective coatings on their front surfaces, eliminating chromatic aberration because light doesn’t pass through glass. Reflectors can be much larger since mirrors are supported across their entire back surfaces—unlike lenses, which must be supported at the edges. Whereas the largest refracting telescope ever built has a 1-m-diameter lens, today’s largest reflectors boast diameters on the order of 10 m. Still larger telescopes are in the works, including the 24-m Giant Magellan Telescope, to be built in Chile; the Thirty Meter Telescope (TMT), slated for construction atop Hawaii’s Mauna Kea (Fig. 31.33); and the

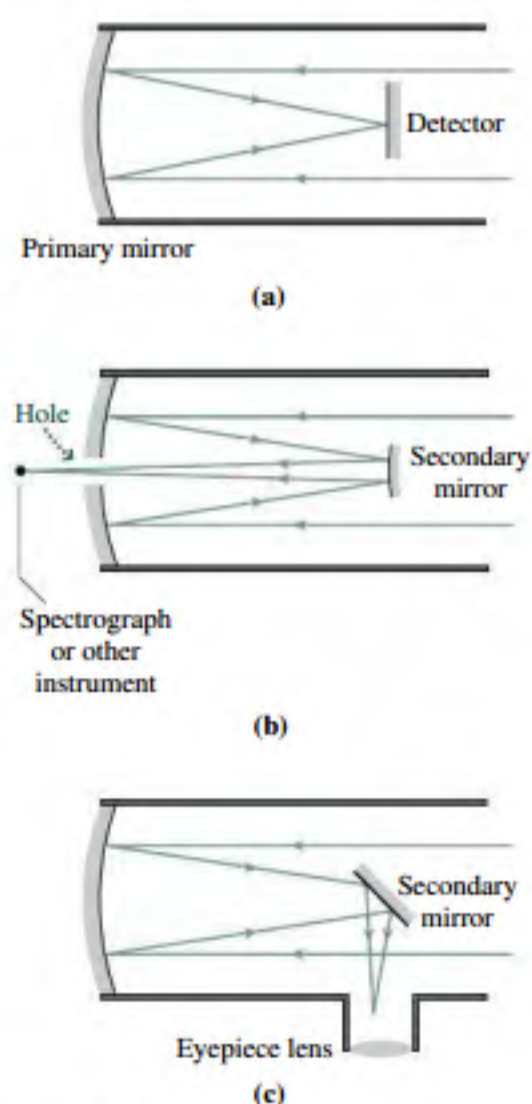


FIGURE 31.34 Reflecting telescopes.

(a) A detector at the prime focus gives the best image quality. (b) The Cassegrain design is widely used in large telescopes. (c) The Newtonian design is used primarily in small telescopes.

largest of all, the 39-m European Extremely Large Telescope, also in Chile. Ten-meter and larger class telescopes incorporate segmented mirrors whose shape can be adjusted under computer control for optimum focusing. With so-called *adaptive optics*, such systems may adjust rapidly enough to compensate for the atmospheric turbulence that has traditionally limited the resolution of ground-based telescopes.

The simplest reflecting telescope is a curved mirror with a detector at its focus. Superb image quality results, in principle limited only by wave effects we'll discuss in the next chapter. More often the telescope is used as a "light bucket," collecting light from distant sources too small to image even with today's large optical telescopes. Then a secondary mirror sends light to a focus at a point that's convenient for telescope-mounted instrumentation. Optical fibers may also be used to bring light collected by the primary mirror to fixed instruments. Figure 31.34 shows three common designs for reflecting telescopes.

Magnification is not a particularly important quantity in astronomical telescopes, which are used more for spectral and other analysis than for direct imaging. More important is the light-gathering power of the instrument, which is determined simply by the area of its objective lens or primary mirror. Each of the two 10-m Keck Telescopes, for instance, has 100 times the light-gathering power of the 1-m Yerkes refractor and more than 17 times the power of the 2.4-m Hubble Space Telescope. The Thirty Meter Telescope will further expand that light-gathering by nearly tenfold.

GOT IT?

31.5 If you look backward through a refracting telescope like that shown in Fig. 31.32, looking into the objective and with a tiny object very near the eyepiece, will the instrument function as a microscope? Explain.

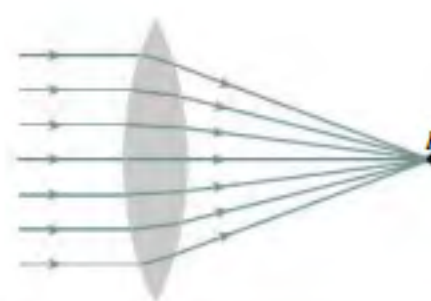
Chapter 31 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is how reflection and refraction form **images**. Images are **real** or **virtual** depending on whether or not light actually comes from the image location.

Key Concepts and Equations

A curved mirror or lens has a **focal point**, F , at which parallel light rays converge:



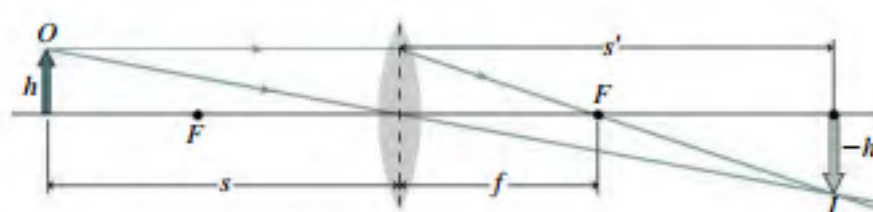
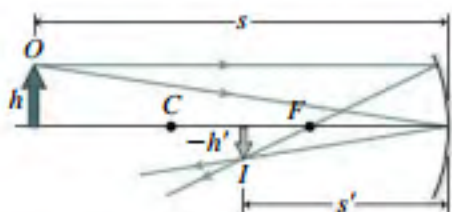
The same equation describes image formation with mirrors and lenses:

$$\frac{1}{s} + \frac{1}{s'} = \frac{1}{f}$$

The table summarizes the sign conventions for each term.

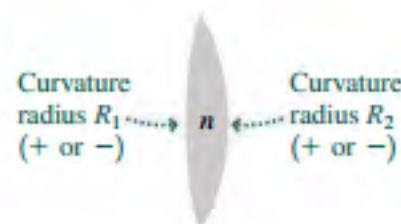
Value	Symbol	Condition	Sign
Object distance	s	Object on same side as <i>incoming</i> light rays	+
		Object on opposite side from <i>incoming</i> light rays	-
Image distance	s'	Image on same side as <i>outgoing</i> light rays	+
		Image on opposite side from <i>outgoing</i> light rays	-
Focal length	f	Focus on same side as <i>outgoing</i> light rays	+
		Focus on opposite side from <i>outgoing</i> light rays	-

Image formation with mirrors and lenses, shown by ray tracing:



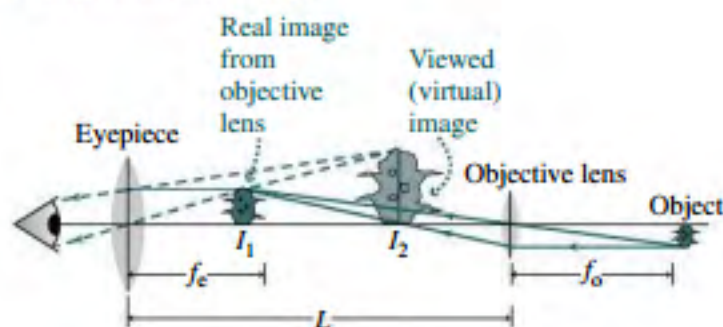
The **lensmaker's formula** gives the focal length f of a thin lens:

$$\frac{1}{f} = (n - 1) \left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2} \right)$$



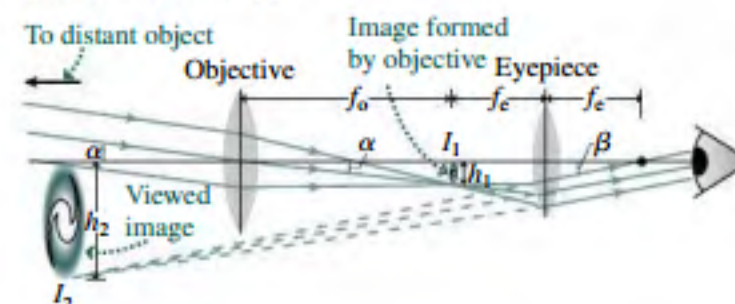
Applications

Compound microscope



$$\text{Magnification: } M = -\frac{L}{f_o} \left(\frac{25 \text{ cm}}{f_e} \right)$$

Refracting telescope



$$\text{Angular magnification: } m = \frac{f_o}{f_e}$$

Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>LO 31.1 Use ray tracing to describe image formation by plane and curved mirrors and use the mirror equation to get quantitative results for curved mirrors.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 31.1, 31.2, 31.3, 31.4, 31.5; Exercises 31.11, 31.12, 31.13, 31.14, 31.15; Problems 31.38, 31.39, 31.40, 31.41, 31.42, 31.43, 31.44, 31.69, 31.75</i></p> <p>LO 31.2 Use ray tracing to describe image formation by lenses and use the lens equation to get quantitative results.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 31.1, 31.3, 31.4, 31.5, 31.7, 31.9; Exercises 31.16, 31.17, 31.18, 31.19; Problems 31.45, 31.46, 31.47, 31.48, 31.49, 31.50, 31.51, 31.52, 31.63, 31.73, 31.76, 31.77, 31.80</i></p> | <p>LO 31.3 Describe refraction and image formation in thick lenses.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 31.8; Exercises 31.20, 31.21, 31.22, 31.23, 31.24; Problems 31.55, 31.56, 31.57, 31.58, 31.59, 31.60, 31.61, 31.62, 31.63, 31.73, 31.74, 31.78, 31.79</i></p> <p>LO 31.4 Describe the workings of optical instruments, including eyes and cameras, magnifiers and microscopes, and telescopes.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 31.10; Exercises 31.25, 31.26, 31.27, 31.28, 31.29; Problems 31.43, 31.50, 31.53, 31.54, 31.64, 31.65, 31.66, 31.67, 31.68, 31.70, 31.71, 31.76, 31.77</i></p> |
|---|---|

For Thought and Discussion

- Is it possible to capture both real and virtual images with a camera?
- Are there any similarities between a magnifier and a pair of reading glasses? Are there any differences?
- If you're handed a converging lens, what can you do to estimate its focal length quickly?
- Is there any limit to the temperature you can achieve by focusing sunlight? (*Hint: Think about the second law of thermodynamics.*)
- If you placed a screen at the location of a virtual image, would the image appear on the screen? Why or why not?
- If you look into the bowl of a metal spoon, you see yourself upside down. Flip the spoon so you're looking at the back side, and now you're right-side up. Explain.
- Is the image on a movie screen real or virtual? How do you know?
- Why do the faces of some people look narrower through the glasses they wear? Explain.
- When viewed through a refracting telescope, stars appear to be surrounded by blurry, rainbow-colored fringes. What could be the explanation?
- The refractive index of the human cornea is about 1.4. If you can see clearly in air, why can't you see clearly underwater? Why do goggles help?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 31.1 Images with Mirrors

- A shoe store uses small floor-level mirrors to let customers view prospective purchases. At what angle should such a mirror be inclined so that a person standing 50 cm from the mirror with eyes 140 cm off the floor can see her feet?
- A candle is on the axis of a 15-cm-focal-length concave mirror, 36 cm from the mirror. (a) Where is its image? (b) How do the image and object sizes compare? (c) Is the image real or virtual?

- An object is five focal lengths from a concave mirror. (a) How do the object and image heights compare? (b) Is the image upright or inverted?
- A virtual image is located 40 cm behind a concave mirror with focal length 18 cm. (a) Where is the object? (b) By how much is the image magnified?
- (a) Where on the axis of a concave mirror would you place an object to get a half-sized image? (b) Where will the image be located? (c) Will the image be real or virtual?

Section 31.2 Images with Lenses

- A lightbulb is 56 cm from a convex lens. Its image appears on a screen 31 cm from the lens, on the other side. Find (a) the lens's focal length and (b) how much the image is enlarged or reduced.
- By what factor is the image magnified for an object 1.3 focal lengths from a converging lens? Is the image upright or inverted?
- A lens with 50-cm focal length produces a real image the same size as the object. How far from the lens are image and object?
- By holding a magnifying glass 24 cm from your desk lamp, you can focus an image of the lamp's bulb on a wall 1.6 m from the lamp. What's the focal length of your magnifying glass?

Section 31.3 Refraction in Lenses: The Details

- You're writing specifications for a new line of magnifying glasses that have double-convex lenses with equal 25-cm curvature radii, made from glass with $n = 1.54$. What do you list for the focal length?
- You're standing in a wading pool and your feet appear to be 33 cm below the surface. How deep is the pool?
- Looking straight down from air into a clear liquid, the bottom of the liquid appears at an apparent depth h' that's smaller than the actual depth h . Find an expression for h' in terms of h and the liquid's refractive index n .
- A tiny insect is trapped 1.0 mm from the center of a spherical dewdrop 4.0 mm in diameter. As you look straight into the drop, what's the insect's apparent distance from the drop's surface?
- You're underwater, looking through a spherical air bubble (Fig. 31.35). What's its actual diameter if it appears, along your line of sight, to be 1.5 cm in diameter?



FIGURE 31.35 Exercise 24

Section 31.4 Optical Instruments

25. You have to hold a book 40 cm from your eyes for the print to be in focus. What power lens would correct your farsightedness?
26. What focal length should you specify if you want a magnifying glass with angular magnification 3.2?
27. You're an optometrist helping a nearsighted patient who claims he can't see clearly beyond 84 cm. Prescribe a lens that will put the images of distant objects at 84 cm, giving your patient clear vision at all distances beyond the normal near point.
28. A particular eye has a focal length of 2.0 cm instead of the 2.2 cm that would put a sharply focused image on the retina. (a) Is this eye nearsighted or farsighted? (b) Specify the diopter measure of the corrective lens that's needed.
29. A compound microscope has objective and eyepiece focal lengths of 5.9 mm and 1.9 cm, respectively. If the lenses are 9.7 cm apart, what is the instrument's magnification?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

30. **Example 31.1:** Another of the technicians in Fig. 31.11 is standing 2.46 m in front of the mirror. (a) Find the location of the technician's image, (b) determine its magnification, and (c) tell whether it's real or virtual, upright or inverted.
31. **Example 31.1:** Another technician in Fig. 31.11 looks in the mirror and sees an upright image of herself that's 4.83 times her actual height. (a) How far in front of the mirror is the technician located? (b) How far from the mirror is her image and (c) is it in front of or behind the mirror?
32. **Example 31.1:** You're helping with a regular resurfacing of the primary mirror on one of the two Keck telescopes. The 10-m-diameter mirror has focal length 17.5 m. You're looking at the mirror from 38.6 m in front of it. (a) Find the location of your image, (b) determine its magnification, and (c) tell whether it's real or virtual, upright or inverted.
33. **Example 31.1:** Standing 64.3 m in front of the primary mirror of the Thirty Meter Telescope (TMT), you see a real, inverted image of yourself that's 8.00 m closer to the mirror than you are. Find (a) the TMT primary mirror's focal length and (b) the size of the image relative to your actual size.
34. **Example 31.4:** (a) Rework Example 31.4 to find the apparent distance to a fish that's located 12.0 cm from the far wall of the aquarium. Assume the cat is looking in on a line that includes the fish and

the center of the cylindrical aquarium. (b) In Example 31.4, the fish appeared closer than its actual distance. Is that the case here?

35. **Example 31.4:** You're looking into a glass cylinder with refractive index 1.55. A spot of dust on the far side appears to be 18.2 cm from the front edge. What's the cylinder's actual diameter?
36. **Example 31.4:** You're a glaciologist researching the impact of climate change. On the surface of a glacier you're studying the wind has eroded a groove that forms a half cylinder 86.2 cm in diameter. Looking into this groove you see an air bubble that appears to be at a depth of 75.0 cm inside the ice. How far inside the ice is the bubble actually located? *Hint:* Consult Table 30.1 for the refractive index of ice.
37. **Example 31.4:** You're visiting an aquarium that's the inverse of the situation in Example 31.4: Aquarium visitors occupy an air-filled cylindrical viewing room 6.00 m in diameter surrounded by the water of the aquarium, separated by a layer of strong glass that's thin enough for the refractive effect on light passing through the glass to be negligible. You're standing 1.25 m from the glass. A fish swims up to the glass and looks straight out at you. To the fish, how far away do you appear to be?

Problems

38. (a) Find the focal length of a concave mirror if an object placed 38.4 cm in front of the mirror has a real image 55.7 cm from the mirror. (b) Where and what type will the image be if the object is moved to a point 16.0 cm from the mirror?
39. A 14-mm-high object is 11 cm from a concave mirror with focal length 16 cm. (a) Where is the image, (b) how high is it, and (c) what type is it?
40. Repeat Problem 31 for a convex mirror, assuming all numbers stay the same.
41. An object's image in a 25-cm-focal-length concave mirror is upright and magnified by a factor of 2.2. Where is the object?
42. You're asked to design a concave mirror that will produce a virtual image, enlarged 1.9 times, of an object 19 cm from the mirror. What do you specify for the mirror's curvature radius?
43. Viewed from Earth, the Moon subtends an angle of 0.52° in the sky. What will be the physical size of the Moon's image formed by the primary mirror of the European Extremely Large Telescope, whose focal length is 34.5 m? *Hint:* For objects at astronomical distances, $1/s$ is essentially zero.
44. At what two distances from a 40-cm-focal-length concave mirror could you place an object to get an image 1.5 times the object's size?
45. How far from a page should you hold a lens with 29-cm focal length in order to see the print magnified 2.2 times?
46. A converging lens has focal length 4.8 cm. A 1.5-cm-high arrow is located 11 cm from the lens with its lowest point 4.0 mm above the lens axis. Make a full-scale ray-tracing diagram to locate both ends of the image. Confirm using the lens equation.
47. A lens has focal length $f = 40$ cm. Find the type and height of the image produced when a 2.6-cm-high object is placed at distances (a) $f + 10$ cm and (b) $f - 10$ cm.
48. How far apart are the object and image produced by a converging lens with 35.5-cm focal length when the object is (a) 44 cm and (b) 25 cm from the lens?
49. A candle and a screen are 73 cm apart. Find two points between candle and screen where you could put a convex lens with 17-cm focal length to give a sharp image of the candle on the screen.
50. The cornea of the human eye has refractive index 1.38, while the eye's lens has a graduated index in the range 1.38 to 1.40; use

- 1.39 for this problem. For the aqueous humor between cornea and lens, $n = 1.34$. Find the angle through which light is deflected at the first surface of (a) the cornea and (b) the lens, if it's incident at 20° to the normal at each surface. Your result shows that the cornea is the dominant refractive element in the eye.
51. How far from a 23-cm-focal-length lens should you place an object to get an upright image magnified 2.5 times?
52. An object and its lens-produced real image are 2.4 m apart. If the lens has 55-cm focal length, what are the possible values for the object distance and magnification?
53. An object is 70 cm from a plano-convex lens whose curved side has curvature radius 29.5 cm. The refractive index of the lens is 1.63. Where is the image, and what type is it?
54. Use Equation 31.6 to show that an object at the center of a glass sphere will appear to be its actual distance—one radius—from the edge. Draw a ray diagram showing why this makes sense.
55. Consider a generalization of Example 31.4: There's a cylinder of diameter D made from a transparent material with refractive index n . A small object is embedded in the cylinder, a distance bD from the front edge, where b is a number between 0 and 1 with $b = 0$ being just inside the front edge, $b = \frac{1}{2}$ being at the center, and $b = 1$ being just inside the back edge. The cylinder is surrounded by air with refractive index 1. (a) Find an expression for the apparent distance to the object from the front edge, as seen by an observer looking in the front edge. (b) What does your result say about an object located at the center of the cylinder?
56. A magnifier for reading is in the form of a glass half cylinder of radius R and refractive index n . To use it, you place the flat side on the page you're trying to read, and several lines of text appear magnified. Find an expression for the magnification this device provides. *Hint:* With the object (the text) right at the surface of the magnifier, you can't treat the half cylinder as a thin lens. Instead, consult Fig. 31.36, which shows an arrow as a small object being magnified. Assume the arrow's length h is small enough that the horizontal distance from the arrowhead to the curved surface in Fig. 31.36 is approximately the radius R , and that the angles α and γ are therefore small enough that you can use the small-angle approximation for their sines and tangents.
57. Two specks of dirt are trapped in a crystal ball, one at the center and the other halfway to the surface. If you peer into the ball on a line joining the two specks, the outer one appears to be only one-third of the way to the other. Find the refractive index of the ball.
58. A contact lens is in the shape of a convex meniscus (see BIO Fig. 31.25). The inner surface is curved to fit the eye, with curvature radius 7.80 mm. The lens is made from plastic with refractive index $n = 1.56$. If it has a 44.4-cm focal length, what's the curvature radius of its outer surface?
59. For what refractive index would the focal length of a plano-convex lens be equal to the curvature radius of its one curved surface?
60. An object is 28 cm from a double-convex lens with $n = 1.5$ and curvature radii 35 cm and 55 cm. Where is the image, and what type is it?

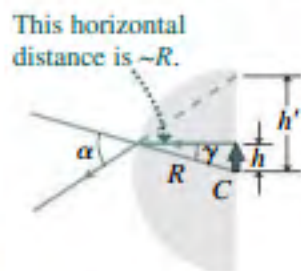


FIGURE 31.36 The figure shows one ray emerging horizontally from the arrowhead and refracting at the surface of the magnifier. Also shown is the normal to the glass-air interface, drawn from the center (C) and extending radially outward.

61. You're an optician who's been asked to design a new replacement lens for cataract patients. The lens must be 5.5 mm in diameter, with focal length 17 mm, and it can't be thicker than 0.8 mm. For the lens material, you have a choice of plastic with refractive index 1.49 or more expensive silicone with $n = 1.58$. Which material do you choose, and why?
62. A double-convex lens with equal 28.5-cm curvature radii is made from glass with refractive indices $n_{\text{red}} = 1.512$ and $n_{\text{violet}} = 1.547$. If a point source of white light is located on the lens axis at 75.0 cm from the lens, over what distance will its visible image be smeared?
63. An object placed 17.5 cm from a convex lens of glass with $n = 1.524$ forms a virtual image twice the object's size. If the lens is replaced with an identically shaped one made of diamond, (a) what type of image will appear and (b) what will be its magnification?
64. You're taking a photography class, working with a camera whose zoom lens covers the focal-length range 40 mm–113 mm. Your instructor asks you to compare the sizes of the images of a distant object when photographed at the two zoom extremes. Your answer?
65. A camera can normally focus as close as 65 cm, but it has provisions for mounting additional lenses just in front of the main lens to provide close-up capability. What type and power of auxiliary lens will allow the camera to focus as close as 22 cm?
66. A 261-power compound microscope has a 3.8-mm-focal-length objective lens. If the distance from objective to eyepiece is 9.3 cm, what should be the focal length of the eyepiece?
67. To the unaided eye, Jupiter has an angular diameter of 50 arcseconds. What will its angular size be when viewed through a 1.25-m-focal-length refracting telescope with a 44-mm-focal-length eyepiece?
68. A Cassegrain telescope like that shown in Fig. 31.34b has a primary mirror with 1.0-m focal length, and its convex secondary mirror is located 0.85 m from the primary. What should be the focal length of the secondary in order to put the final image 0.12 m behind the front surface of the primary mirror?
69. You stand with your nose 8.0 cm from the surface of a reflecting ball, and your nose's image appears three-quarters full size. What's the ball's diameter?
70. A contact lens prescription calls for +2.25-diopter lenses with inner curvature radius 8.6 mm to fit the patient's cornea. (a) If the lenses are plastic with $n = 1.56$, what should be the outer curvature radius? (b) With these lenses, the patient comfortably reads a newspaper 30 cm from her eyes. Where's the image as viewed through the lenses?
71. Show that placing a 1-diopter lens in front of a 2-diopter lens gives the equivalent of a single 3-diopter lens (i.e., the powers of closely spaced lenses add).
72. Derive an expression for the thickness t of a plano-convex lens with diameter d , focal length f , and refractive index n .
73. Show that identical objects placed equal distances on either side of the focal point of a concave mirror or converging lens produce images of equal size. Are the images of the same type?
74. Generalize the derivation of the lensmaker's formula (Equation 31.7) to show that a lens of refractive index n_{lens} in an external medium with index n_{ext} has focal length given by

$$\frac{1}{f} = \left(\frac{n_{\text{lens}}}{n_{\text{ext}}} - 1 \right) \left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2} \right)$$

75. Draw a diagram like Fig. 31.10, but showing a ray from the arrowhead through the center of curvature. Using the fact that this

ray reflects back on itself, draw similar triangles with object and image as their vertical sides, and show that the center of curvature is twice as far from the mirror as the focal point—that is, $R = 2f$, with R the curvature radius.

76. Galileo's first telescope used the arrangement shown in Fig. 31.37, with a double-concave eyepiece slightly before the focus of the objective lens. Use ray tracing to show that this design gives an upright image, which makes the Galilean telescope useful in terrestrial observing.

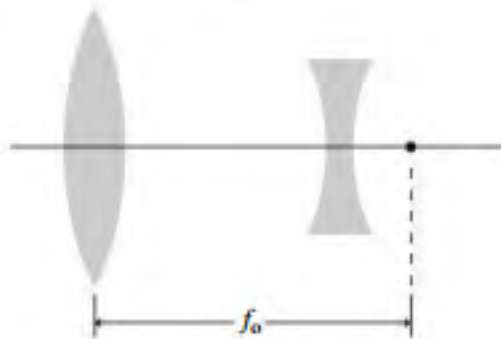


FIGURE 31.37 A Galilean telescope (Problem 76)

77. The maximum magnification of a simple magnifier occurs with the image at the 25-cm near point. Show that the angular magnification is $m = 1 + (25 \text{ cm}/f)$, where f is the focal length.
78. CH Chromatic aberration results from variation of the refractive index with wavelength. Starting with the lensmaker's formula, find an expression for the fractional change df/f in the focal length of a thin lens in terms of the change dn in refractive index.
79. CH For visible wavelengths, the refractive index of the polycarbonate plastic widely used in eyeglasses is given approximately by $n(\lambda) = b + c/\lambda^2$, where $b = 1.55$ and $c = 11,500 \text{ nm}^2$. (a) Find an expression for the change in refractive index dn corresponding to a small wavelength change $d\lambda$. (b) Use the results of part (a) and of Problem 78 to determine the variation df in focal length for a +2.25-diopter polycarbonate lens over a wavelength range of 10.0 nm centered on 589 nm.
80. DATA The table below shows measurements of magnification versus object distance for a lens. Determine a quantity that, when you plot object distance against it, should give a straight line. Make your plot, establish a best-fit line, and use your line to find the focal length of the lens.

Object distance, s (cm)	10.1	29.2	51.6	78.3	98.9
Magnification, M	1.31	4.77	-4.38	-1.27	-0.724

Passage Problems

The *speed* of a camera lens measures its ability to photograph in dim light. Speed is characterized by *f-ratio*, also called the *f-number*, defined as the ratio of focal length f to lens diameter d . Thus an $f/2.8$ lens, for example, has diameter $d = f/2.8$. The actual amount of light a lens admits depends on its area A , but the inverse-square law shows that the light intensity at the camera's imaging sensor is proportional to A/f^2 . Most cameras have an adjustable iris that obscures part of

the lens to change the *f-ratio* in response to available light. Point-and-shoot cameras adjust the *f-ratio* automatically, but serious photographers use their camera's manual *f-ratio* adjustment (Fig. 31.38). Stopping down is the photographer's term for reducing the lens area using the adjustable iris.



FIGURE 31.38 A 35-mm camera lens (Passage Problems 81–84). The numbers from 22 to 2.8 at the bottom are values for the *f-ratio*, f/d . Turning the ring with these numbers adjusts the iris that covers the outer part of the lens, thus changing the *f-ratio*.

81. Zooming your camera's lens for telephoto shots increases the focal length. With no change in the lens area, this will
- increase the *f-ratio* and increase the lens speed.
 - decrease the *f-ratio* and decrease the lens speed.
 - increase the *f-ratio* and decrease the lens speed.
 - not change the *f-ratio* or the lens speed.
82. Increasing the *f-ratio* from 2.8 to 5.6
- decreases the light admitted by a factor of 2.
 - decreases the light admitted by a factor of 4.
 - increases the light admitted by a factor of 2.
 - increases the light admitted by a factor of 4.
83. You're given two lenses with different diameters. Knowing nothing else, you can conclude that
- the larger lens is faster.
 - the smaller lens has the shorter focal length.
 - the smaller lens suffers less spherical aberration.
 - none of the above
84. If a lens suffers from spherical aberration, stopping down will
- worsen the focus.
 - improve the focus.
 - not affect the focus.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

High-intensity laser light reshapes the cornea, so that refracted light converges to produce sharp images.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 31.1 (b)
 31.2 (a)
 31.3 Virtual image; convex lens
 31.4 (d)
 31.5 No; the positions of the lenses in relation to their focal points aren't correct for a microscope. You won't be able to image a small object placed very near the eyepiece. If you look at a more distant object, though, you'll see it reduced in size.

Interference and Diffraction

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 32.1 Distinguish constructive and destructive interference.
- LO 32.2 Describe double-slit interference quantitatively, including locating interference maxima and evaluating intensity in the interference pattern.
- LO 32.3 Describe interference in multiple-slit systems, including diffraction gratings.
- LO 32.4 Explain how interferometry can be used to make precision measurements.
- LO 32.5 Use Huygens' principal to describe the diffraction of light.
- LO 32.6 Explain quantitatively how diffraction imposes a fundamental limit on our ability to image very small or very distant objects.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Wave interference (Section 14.6)
- Intensity and fields in electromagnetic waves (Section 29.8)

The preceding chapters described the behavior of light using geometrical optics—an approximation that's valid when we're dealing with length scales much larger than the wavelength of light, so we can ignore light's wave nature. We now turn to **physical optics**, which treats optical phenomena for which the wave nature of light plays an essential role. Two related phenomena, interference and diffraction, are central in physical optics.

32.1 Coherence and Interference

LO 32.1 *Distinguish constructive and destructive interference.*

In Chapter 14 we showed how wave displacements add to produce **constructive interference** or **destructive interference**. Electromagnetic waves, including light, are no exception: Since electric and magnetic fields obey the superposition principle, the net fields at any point are the vector sums of individual wave fields. That summation may increase (constructive interference) or decrease (destructive interference) the net field.

Coherence

Any two or more waves will interfere at points where they overlap, but a steady interference pattern results only when the waves maintain the same frequency and phase relationship—in which case the light is said to be **coherent**. Light emerging from different sources, different parts of the same source, or at different times is unlikely to be coherent. Sending such light through two



Photo of the Khalifa Sports City in Qatar, taken by the GeoEye-1 satellite from 423 miles up. What's the fundamental limitation on our ability to image fine details in satellite photos?

or more holes or slits, however, produces two versions of each individual wave, and those two can then interfere as they meet beyond the slits. That's how Thomas Young produced coherent light in his 1801 experiment that demonstrated the wave nature of light.

Today most interference experiments are done with lasers, and the intrinsic coherence of laser light is often cited as a reason. As Fig. 32.1 suggests, laser light does indeed maintain coherence longer than light from common sources such as lightbulbs or the Sun. But even with lasers, a steady interference pattern generally requires splitting the laser beam with a system of slits or other devices that produce two versions of the same light wave. You can see why by considering the **coherence length**—the distance over which light maintains its phase and frequency. For ordinary light sources, as Fig. 32.1a suggests, the coherence length is very short—it's on the order of $1\text{ }\mu\text{m}$ for sunlight, or just a few wavelengths of visible light. Laser light, in contrast, exhibits substantial coherence lengths—tens of centimeters for everyday lasers, and many kilometers with special designs. Thus, a wavetrain of laser light comprises a great many wavelengths. But given that the speed of light is 300 Mm/s , those lengths imply that even laser light retains its coherence for only a tiny fraction of a second. So laser-based interference experiments, like those using ordinary light sources, require that the light beam be split into two or more parts that are later recombined. What makes lasers particularly useful in interference experiments—and indeed throughout optics—is that their light is very nearly **monochromatic**, meaning it consists of a very narrow band of wavelengths.

Destructive and Constructive Interference

Consider light waves that originate together at a single source, travel two different paths, and then rejoin. Suppose one wave's path is exactly half a wavelength longer than the other's. Then, when the waves recombine, they'll be out of phase by half a wavelength (Fig. 32.2a), and thus their superposition has smaller amplitude (zero, if the two interfering waves have exactly the same amplitude). If, on the other hand, the path lengths don't differ, or they differ by a full wavelength, then the two waves recombine in phase (Fig. 32.2b) and their superposition has larger amplitude. These two cases correspond, respectively, to destructive interference and constructive interference. It doesn't matter whether path lengths for the waves in Fig. 32.2a differ by half a wavelength, or $1\frac{1}{2}$ wavelengths, or $2\frac{1}{2}$ wavelengths; as long as the difference is an odd multiple of a half-wavelength, the waves recombine out of phase and destructive interference results. Thus:

Destructive interference results when light paths differ by an odd-integer multiple of a half-wavelength.

Similarly, it doesn't matter whether the path lengths in Fig. 32.2b are the same, or differ by 1, 2, 3, or any other integer number of wavelengths. Thus:

Constructive interference results when light paths differ by an integer multiple of the wavelength.

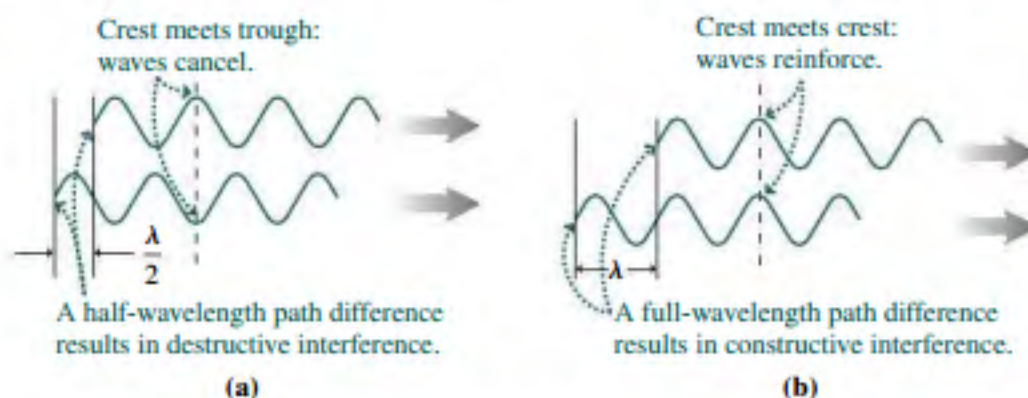


FIGURE 32.2 Two waves that start out in phase but travel different paths before rejoining.

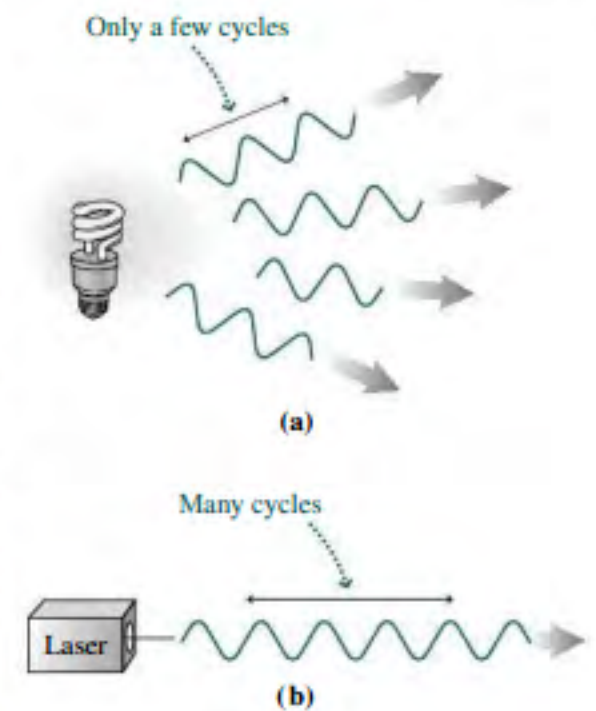
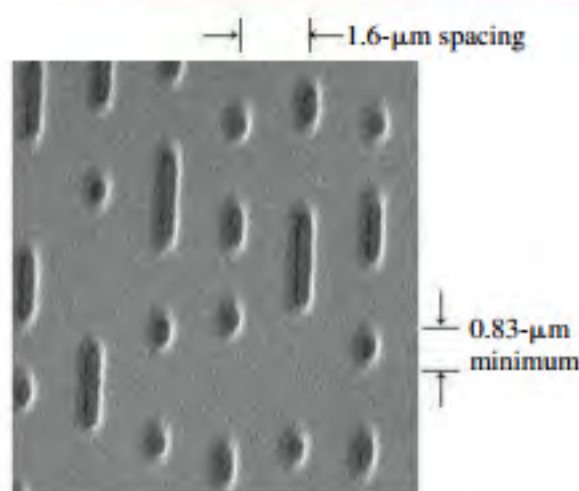


FIGURE 32.1 (a) Lightbulbs emit incoherent light consisting of short wavetrains with random phases. (b) Laser light consists of much longer wavetrains, making it more coherent.

There's one caveat to our statements: The path difference can't be greater than the coherence length; otherwise, the waves won't be coherent when they recombine. Laser light has the advantage here because of its greater coherence length.

Light paths don't have to differ by half or full multiples of the wavelength. In intermediate cases, interfering waves superpose to make a composite wave whose amplitude may be enhanced or diminished, depending on the relative phase.

APPLICATION More CD Music

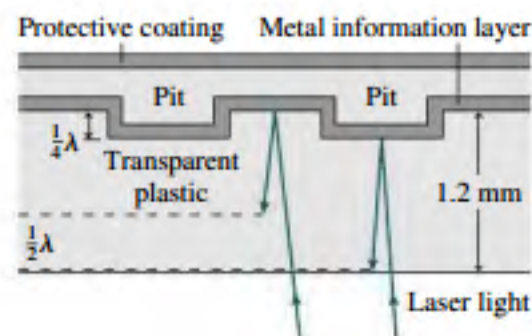


Example 30.3, “Refraction: CD Music,” showed how refraction helps focus the laser beam that reads information from a compact disc. Interference, too, plays a crucial role in reading CDs and other **optical discs**, including DVD and Blu-ray.

Information on an optical disc is stored digitally in a sequence of pits stamped into a reflective metallic information layer, as shown in the photo. The pits' depth is very nearly one-quarter wavelength of the laser light used to read the disc. From the transparent underside of the disc, each pit appears as an

elevated bump. Since the bumps stick down one-quarter wavelength, light reflecting off a bump follows a round-trip path that's shorter by half a wavelength than that of light reflecting off the undisturbed information layer (see the figure below). The laser beam is wider than the pit, so the reflected beam includes light both from the undisturbed disc and from the bump. The two interfere destructively, making the reflected beam less intense when a bump is present. As the disc spins, the result is a pattern of fluctuating light intensity conveying the information associated with the pattern of pits. A photodetector then converts that pattern to electrical signals that ultimately drive loudspeakers, headphones, or a video display.

You'll see later in the chapter how principles of physical optics determine how much information can be stored on an optical disc.



GOT IT?

32.1 Laser light is split into two beams, one of which is sent on a path that takes it through a slab of glass, where light's speed is about two-thirds of what it is in air. The other beam travels an identical-length path, entirely in air. Which of the following describes the interference that occurs when the beams are recombined? (a) It's constructive; (b) it's destructive; (c) it could be constructive, destructive, or in between, depending on the thickness of the glass slab; (d) there is no interference.

32.2 Double-Slit Interference

LO 32.2 Describe double-slit interference quantitatively, including locating interference maxima and evaluating intensity in the interference pattern.

In Chapter 14 we looked briefly at interference patterns produced by a pair of coherent sources. Such a pair can be made by passing light through two narrow slits. In 1801, Thomas Young used this approach in a historic experiment that confirmed the wave nature of light. Young first admitted sunlight to his laboratory through a hole small enough to ensure coherence of the incoming light. The light then passed through a pair of narrow, closely spaced slits, after which it illuminated a screen. Each slit acts as a source of cylindrical wavefronts that interfere in the region between slits and screen (Fig. 32.3a). Constructive and destructive interference produce **interference fringes**—alternating bright and dark bands (Fig. 32.3b).

Bright fringes represent constructive interference, and therefore they occur where the difference in the path length for light traveling from the two slits is a multiple of the

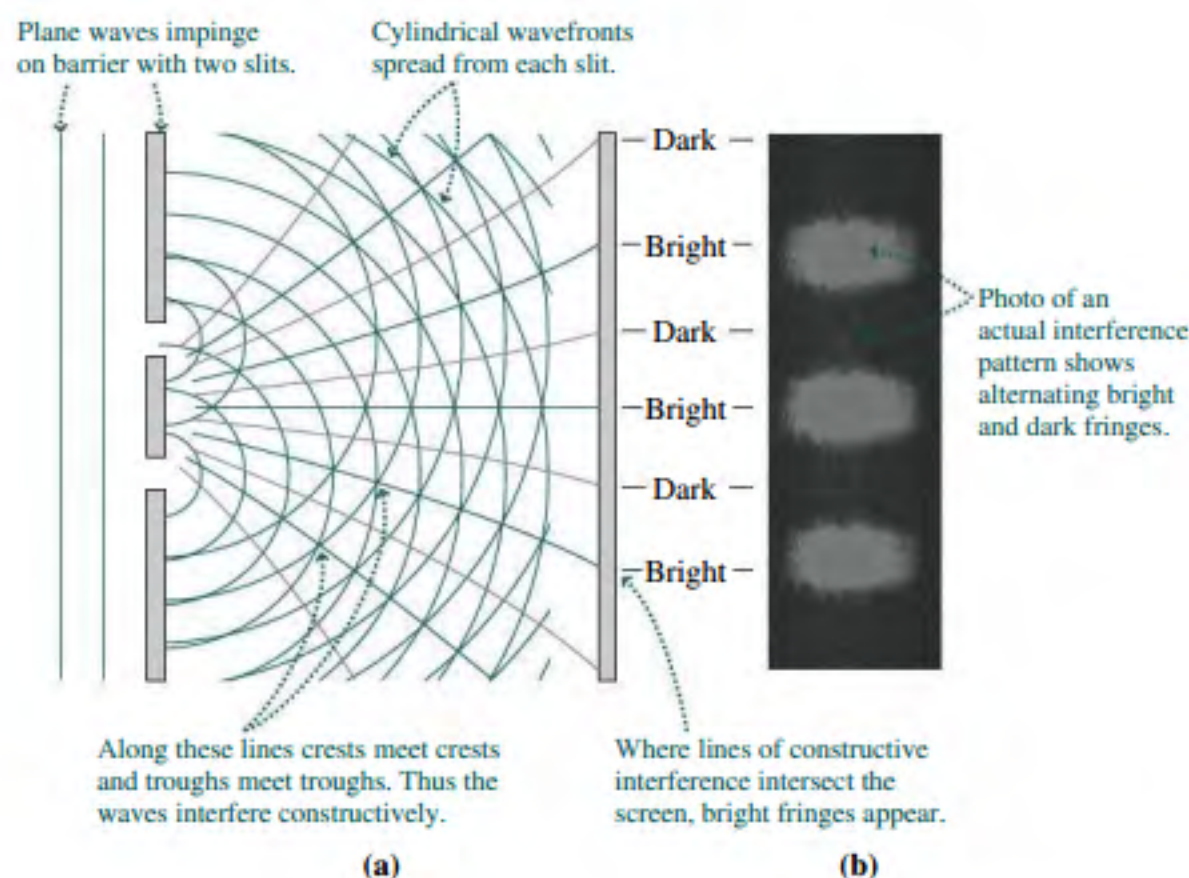


FIGURE 32.3 Double-slit interference results when light from a single source passes through closely spaced slits.

wavelength. When the distance L from slits to screen is much greater than the slit spacing d , Fig. 32.4 shows that the path difference to a point on the screen is $d \sin \theta$, where θ is the angular position of a point on the screen measured from an axis perpendicular to slits and screen. So our criterion for constructive interference—that this difference be an integer number of wavelengths—becomes

d is the spacing between slits.

m , an integer, is the order of the bright fringe.

$$d \sin \theta = m\lambda \quad (\text{bright fringes, } m = 0, 1, 2, \dots) \quad (32.1a)$$

θ is the angular position of a bright fringe.

λ is the light's wavelength.

The integer m is the **order** of the fringe, with the central bright fringe being the zeroth-order fringe and with higher-order fringes on either side.

Waves interfere destructively when their path lengths differ by an odd-integer multiple of a half-wavelength:

d is the spacing between two slits.

m , an integer, is the order of the dark fringe.

$$d \sin \theta = \left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)\lambda \quad (\text{dark fringes, } m = 0, 1, 2, \dots) \quad (32.1b)$$

θ is the angular position of a dark fringe.

λ is the light's wavelength.

where m is any integer.

In a typical double-slit experiment, L may be on the order of 1 m, d a fraction of 1 mm, and λ the sub- μm wavelength of visible light. Then we have the additional condition that $\lambda \ll d$. This makes the fringes very closely spaced on the screen, so the angle θ in Fig. 32.4

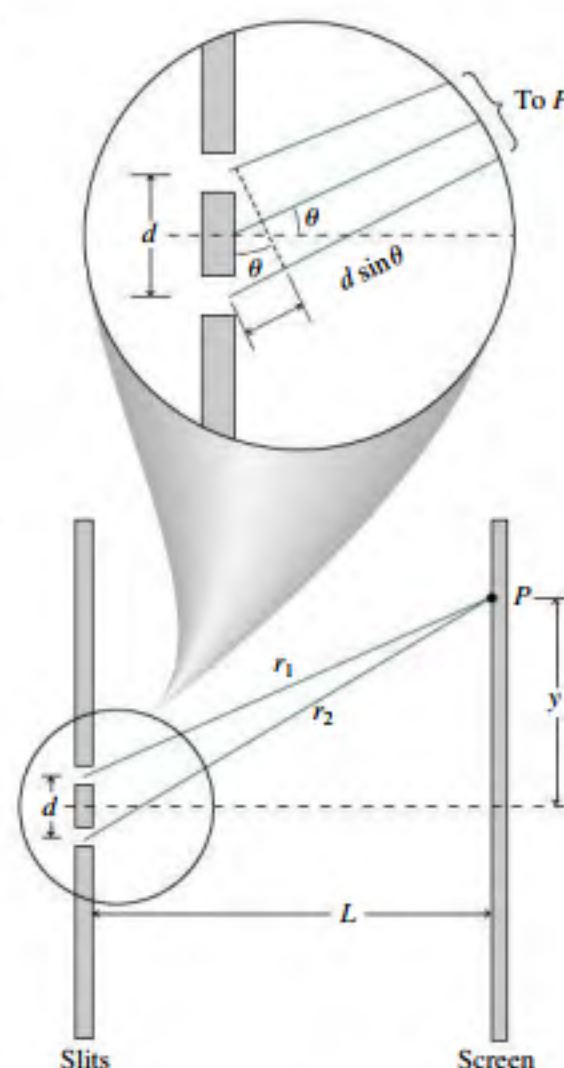


FIGURE 32.4 Geometry for finding locations of the interference fringes. In the blowup you can see that for $L \gg d$, the paths to P are nearly parallel and differ by $d \sin \theta$.

is small even for large orders m . Then $\sin \theta \approx \tan \theta = y/L$, and a fringe's position y on the screen, measured from the central maximum, becomes

$$y_{\text{bright}} = m \frac{\lambda L}{d} \quad \text{and} \quad y_{\text{dark}} = \left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right) \frac{\lambda L}{d} \quad \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{fringe position,} \\ \lambda \ll d \end{array} \right) \quad (32.2a, b)$$

GOT IT?

32.2 If you increase the slit separation in a two-slit system, do the interference fringes become (a) closer together or (b) farther apart?

EXAMPLE 32.1 Measuring Wavelength: Laser Light

Two slits $75.0 \mu\text{m}$ apart are located 1.50 m from a screen. Laser light shining through the slits produces an interference pattern whose third-order bright fringe is 3.80 cm from the screen center. Find the light's wavelength.

INTERPRET The concept behind this problem is two-slit interference. The phrase “third order” tells us we’re dealing with the $m = 3$ bright fringe located at $y_{\text{bright}} = 3.80 \text{ cm}$.

DEVELOP Our plan is to use Equation 32.2a, $y_{\text{bright}} = m(\lambda L/d)$, and solve for λ . Since that equation requires $\lambda \ll d$, we’ll then check to see whether our answer is consistent with this condition.

EVALUATE Solving, we have

$$\lambda = \frac{y_{\text{bright}} d}{m L} = \frac{(0.0380 \text{ m})(75.0 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m})}{(3)(1.50 \text{ m})} = 633 \text{ nm}$$

ASSESS This is indeed much less than the slit spacing of $75.0 \mu\text{m}$ or $75,000 \text{ nm}$. Our 633-nm result is in fact the wavelength of the red light from widely used helium–neon lasers.

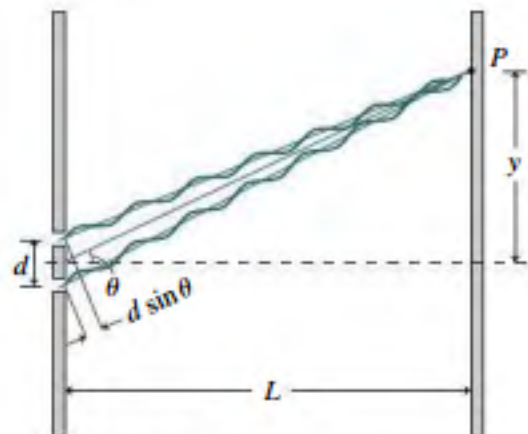


FIGURE 32.5 Waves from the slits arrive at P displaced by the path-length difference $d \sin \theta$. For $L \gg d$, $\sin \theta \approx \tan \theta = y/L$.

Intensity in the Interference Pattern

We located the maxima and minima in two-slit interference using geometrical arguments alone. To find the actual intensity we need to superpose the interfering waves. You might think we could do that by adding the intensities of the two waves. But no! It’s the electric and magnetic fields of the wave that obey the superposition principle, not the wave intensity. Intensity is proportional to the *square* of either field (recall Equation 29.20); if we added intensities we could never get the cancellation that occurs in destructive interference.

Consider again a point P in the interference pattern (Fig. 32.5). In the approximation $d \ll L$, the difference in path lengths is so small that we can neglect any difference in the amplitudes of the two waves resulting from the falloff in intensity with distance. However, the difference in phase is crucial; it’s what causes the interference. So we consider waves whose electric fields at P vary sinusoidally in time, with equal amplitude E_p but an explicit phase difference ϕ :

$$E_1 = E_p \sin \omega t \quad \text{and} \quad E_2 = E_p \sin(\omega t + \phi)$$

We aren’t bothering with vectors because the two waves are polarized in the same direction and therefore their fields add algebraically. Then the net electric field at P is

$$E = E_1 + E_2 = E_p [\sin \omega t + \sin(\omega t + \phi)]$$

Appendix A gives the trig identity $\sin \alpha + \sin \beta = 2 \sin[(\alpha + \beta)/2] \cos[(\alpha - \beta)/2]$, which, with $\alpha = \omega t$ and $\beta = \omega t + \phi$, gives

$$E = 2E_p \sin\left(\omega t + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)$$

where we also used $\cos(-x) = \cos x$. Thus, the electric field at P oscillates with the wave frequency ω , and its amplitude is $2E_p \cos(\phi/2)$. Since the phase difference ϕ depends on the difference in path lengths from the two slits, this amplitude varies across the screen, giving the interference pattern.

We’ve seen that the path-length difference is $d \sin \theta$, with d the slit spacing and θ the angle to P ; under our approximation $d \ll L$, θ is small and $\sin \theta \approx \tan \theta = y/L$, where y is

the position of P as shown in Fig. 32.5. Then the path difference becomes yd/L . Now, that all-important phase difference ϕ is whatever fraction of a full cycle (2π radians) this path difference yd/L is of the wavelength λ ; that is,

$$\phi = 2\pi \left(\frac{yd}{\lambda L} \right)$$

Then the amplitude $2E_p \cos(\phi/2)$ becomes $2E_p \cos(\pi yd/\lambda L)$. The average intensity follows from Equation 29.20b:

$$\bar{S} = \frac{[2E_p \cos(\pi yd/\lambda L)]^2}{2\mu_0 c} = 4\bar{S}_0 \cos^2 \left(\frac{\pi d}{\lambda L} y \right) \quad (32.3)$$

where $\bar{S}_0 = E_p^2/2\mu_0 c$ is the average intensity of either wave alone. Now, $\cos^2$ has its maximum value, 1, when its argument is a multiple of π . Thus Equation 32.3 gives maximum intensity when $yd/\lambda L$ is an integer m , or when $y = m\lambda L/d$. This is just the condition 32.2a, showing that our intensity calculation is fully consistent with the simpler geometrical analysis. But the intensity calculation tells more: It gives not only the fringe positions but also the intensity variation in between.

32.3 Multiple-Slit Interference and Diffraction Gratings

LO 32.3 Describe interference in multiple-slit systems, including diffraction gratings.

Systems with multiple slits play a crucial role in optical instrumentation and in the analysis of materials. As we'll see, gratings with several thousand slits per centimeter make possible high-resolution spectroscopic analysis. At a much smaller scale the regularly spaced rows of atoms in a crystal act much like a multiple-slit system for X-rays, and the resulting X-ray patterns reveal the crystal structure.

Figure 32.6 shows waves from three evenly spaced slits interfering at a screen. Maximum intensity requires that all three waves be in phase or, equivalently, travel paths differing by an integer number of wavelengths. Our criterion for the maximum in a two-slit pattern, $d \sin \theta = m\lambda$, ensures that waves from two adjacent slits will add constructively. Since the slits are evenly spaced with distance d between each pair, waves coming through a third slit will be in phase with the other two if this same criterion is met. So the criterion for a maximum in an N -slit system is still Equation 32.1a:

$$d \sin \theta = m\lambda \quad (\text{maxima in multiple-slit interference, } m = 0, 1, 2, \dots) \quad (32.1a)$$

d is the spacing between slits. m , an integer, is the order of the bright fringe. θ is the angular position of a bright fringe. λ is the light's wavelength.

We're repeating Equation 32.1a because it also applies to multiple slits. But Equation 32.1b doesn't.

With more than two waves, however, the criterion for destructive interference is more complicated. Somehow all the waves need to sum to zero. Figure 32.7 shows that this happens for three waves when each is out of phase with the others by one-third of a cycle. Thus, the path-length difference $d \sin \theta$ must be either $(m + \frac{1}{3})\lambda$ or $(m + \frac{2}{3})\lambda$, where m is an integer. The case $(m + \frac{3}{3})\lambda$ is excluded because then the path lengths differ by a full wavelength, giving constructive interference and thus a maximum in the interference pattern. More generally we can write

$$d \sin \theta = \frac{m}{N}\lambda \quad (32.4)$$

for destructive interference in an N -slit system, where m is an integer *but not an integer multiple of N* .

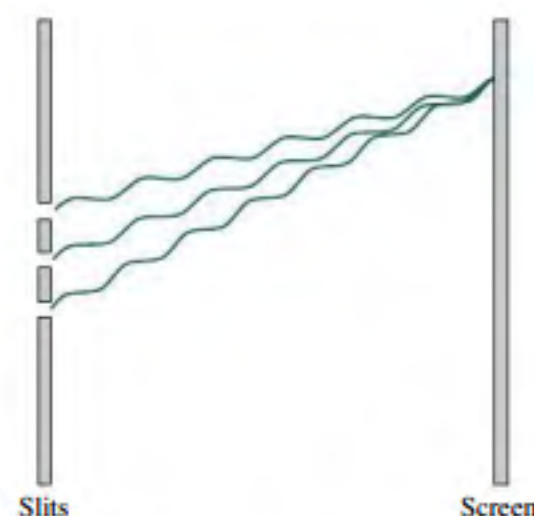


FIGURE 32.6 Waves from three evenly spaced slits interfere constructively when they reach the screen in phase.

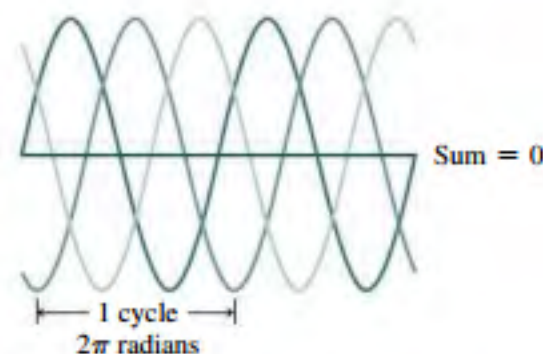


FIGURE 32.7 Waves from three slits must be out of phase by one-third of a cycle in order to interfere destructively.

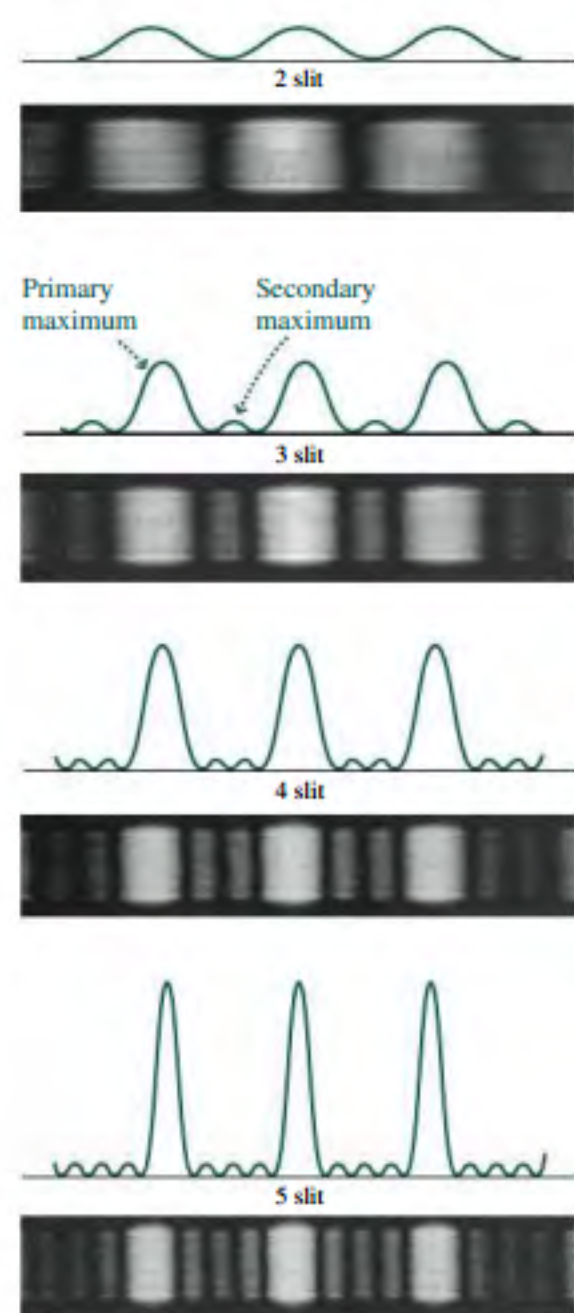


FIGURE 32.8 Interference patterns for multiple-slit systems with the same slit spacing. The bright fringes stay in the same place but become narrower and brighter as the number of slits increases. As the graphs show, the peak intensity scales as the square of the number of slits.

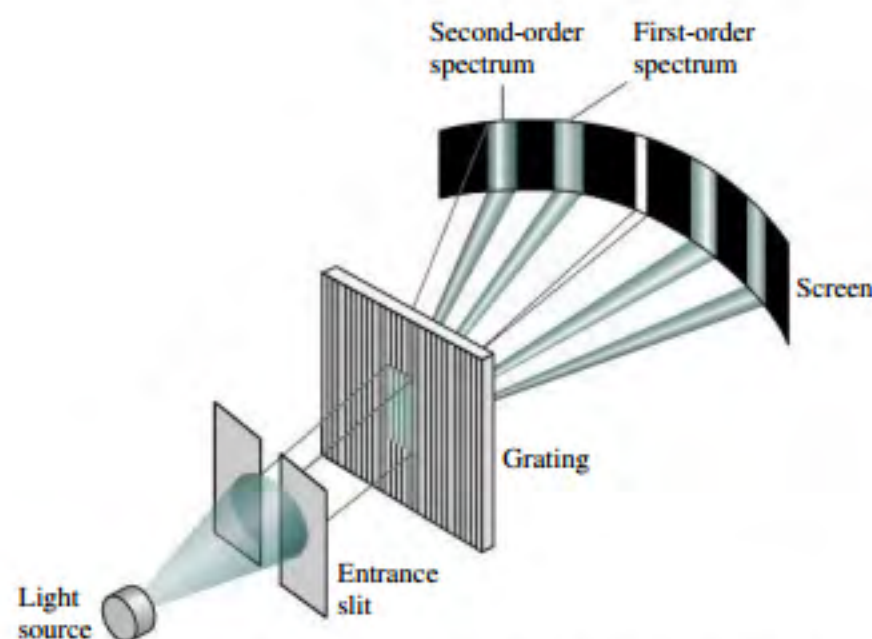


FIGURE 32.9 Essential elements of a grating spectrometer. An electronic detector normally replaces the screen.

Figure 32.8 shows interference patterns and intensity plots from some multiple-slit systems. Note that the bright, or *primary*, maxima are separated by several minima and fainter, or *secondary*, maxima. Why this complex pattern? Our analysis of the three-slit system shows two minima between every pair of primary maxima; for example, we considered the minima at $d \sin \theta = (m + \frac{1}{3})\lambda$ and $d \sin \theta = (m + \frac{2}{3})\lambda$, which lie between the maxima at $d \sin \theta = m\lambda$ and $d \sin \theta = (m + 1)\lambda$. More generally, Equation 32.4 shows that there are $N - 1$ minima between each pair of primary maxima given by Equation 32.1a. The secondary maxima that lie between these minima result from interference that is neither fully destructive nor fully constructive. The figure shows that the primary maxima become brighter and narrower as the number of slits increases, while the secondary maxima become relatively less bright. With a large number N of slits, then, we should expect a pattern of bright but narrow primary maxima, with broad, essentially dark regions in between.

Diffraction Gratings

A set of many closely spaced slits is called a **diffraction grating** and proves very useful in the spectroscopic analysis of light. Diffraction gratings are commonly several centimeters across and have several thousand slits—usually called **lines**—per cm. Gratings like the slit systems we’ve been discussing are **transmission gratings**, since light passes through the slits. **Reflection gratings** produce similar interference effects by reflecting incident light.

We’ve seen that the maxima of the multiple-slit interference pattern are given by the same criterion, $d \sin \theta = m\lambda$, that applies to a two-slit system. For $m = 0$ this equation implies that all wavelengths peak together at the central maximum, but for larger values of m the angular position of the maximum depends on wavelength. Thus, a diffraction grating can be used in place of a prism to disperse light into its component wavelengths, and the integer m is therefore called the **order** of the dispersion. Figure 32.9 shows a spectrometer that works on this principle. Because the maxima in N -slit interference are very sharp for large N (recall Fig. 32.8), a grating with many slits diffracts individual wavelengths to very precise locations.

EXAMPLE 32.2

Finding the Separation: A Grating Spectrometer

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Light from glowing hydrogen contains many discrete spectral lines, of which two are $H\alpha$ (hydrogen-alpha) and $H\beta$ (hydrogen-beta), with wavelengths of 656.3 nm and 486.1 nm, respectively. Find the first-order angular separation between these wavelengths in a spectrometer that uses a grating with 6000 slits per cm.

INTERPRET The concept behind the grating spectrometer is multiple-slit interference, so our job is to find the angles to which the

grating sends the given wavelengths. “First-order” means we have $m = 1$.

DEVELOP Equation 32.1a, $d \sin \theta = m\lambda$, gives the location of the interference maxima as a function of wavelength λ , order m , and slit spacing d . We’re given m and two values for λ , but we don’t know d . However, we’re told that there are 6000 slits per cm, so we can find d . Our plan is first to calculate d , then use Equation 32.1a to find the

angular positions for the two wavelengths, and finally take their difference to get the angular separation.

EVALUATE With 6000 slits/cm, the spacing is $d = 1/6000 \text{ cm} = 1.667 \mu\text{m}$. Applying Equation 32.1a with $m = 1$ gives

$$\theta_\alpha = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{\lambda}{d}\right) = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{0.6563 \mu\text{m}}{1.667 \mu\text{m}}\right) = 23.2^\circ$$

A similar calculation gives $\theta_\beta = 17.0^\circ$. Thus the angular separation is 6.2° .

ASSESS Our 6.2° result is certainly adequate to clearly distinguish these two wavelengths. For greater angular separation, or to separate closer wavelengths, we could look at the higher-order dispersion.

Resolving Power

The detailed shapes and wavelengths of spectral lines contain a wealth of information about the systems in which light originates. Studying these details requires a high dispersion in order to separate nearby spectral lines or to analyze the intensity-versus-wavelength profile of a single line. Suppose we pass light containing two spectral lines of nearly equal wavelengths λ and λ' through a grating. Figure 32.10 shows that we'll just be able to distinguish them if the peak of one line corresponds to the first minimum of the other; any closer and the lines blur together and form a single peak. Suppose wavelength λ has its m th-order maximum at angular position θ , so $d \sin \theta_{\max} = m\lambda$. We can write this as $d \sin \theta_{\max} = (mN/N)\lambda$, with N the number of slits in the grating. Equation 32.4 then shows that we get an adjacent minimum if we add 1 to the numerator mN . Thus the adjacent minimum satisfies

$$d \sin \theta_{\min} = \frac{mN + 1}{N} \lambda$$

Our criterion that the two wavelengths λ and λ' be distinguishable is that the maximum for λ' fall at the location of this minimum for λ . But the maximum for λ' satisfies $d \sin \theta'_{\max} = m\lambda' = (mN/N)\lambda'$, so for $\theta'_{\max} = \theta_{\min}$ we must have $(mN + 1)\lambda = mN\lambda'$. Expressing this in terms of the wavelength difference $\Delta\lambda = \lambda' - \lambda$ leads to

$$\frac{\lambda}{\Delta\lambda} = mN \quad (\text{resolving power}) \quad (32.5)$$

The quantity $\lambda/\Delta\lambda$ is the grating's **resolving power**, a measure of its ability to distinguish closely spaced wavelengths. The higher the resolving power, the smaller the wavelength difference $\Delta\lambda$ that we can distinguish. Equation 32.5 shows that the resolving power increases with the number of lines, N , on the grating and also with the order, m , of the spectrum we observe.

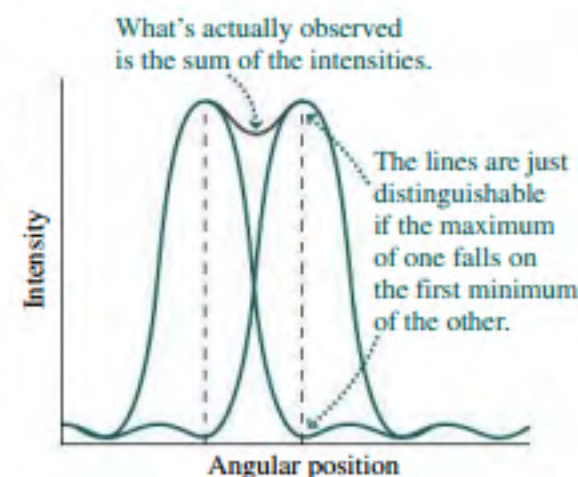


FIGURE 32.10 Intensity versus angular position for spectral lines with slightly different wavelengths, as dispersed with a grating.

EXAMPLE 32.3 Resolving Power: "Seeing" a Double Star

A double-star system consists of a massive star essentially at rest, with a smaller companion in circular orbit. It's far too distant for the pair to appear as anything but a single point even to the largest telescopes. Yet astronomers can "see" the companion star through the Doppler shift in wavelengths of its spectral lines. The $H\alpha$ spectral line from the stationary massive star is at $\lambda = 656.272 \text{ nm}$; for the companion when it's moving away from Earth, the $H\alpha$ line Doppler-shifts to 656.329 nm (corresponding to a speed of about 26 km/s). If a spectrometer has 5000 lines, what order spectrum will resolve the $H\alpha$ lines from the two stars?

INTERPRET The concept here is resolution of distinct spectral lines using a grating spectrometer.

DEVELOP Equation 32.5, $\lambda/\Delta\lambda = mN$, determines the resolving power. We can solve for m to get the order: $m = \lambda/(N\Delta\lambda)$. We're given the two wavelengths, so we can readily find $\Delta\lambda$.

EVALUATE We have $\Delta\lambda = 656.329 \text{ nm} - 656.272 \text{ nm} = 0.057 \text{ nm}$. Then

$$m = \frac{\lambda}{N\Delta\lambda} = \frac{656.272 \text{ nm}}{(5000)(0.057 \text{ nm})} = 2.3$$

ASSESS Since the order m must be an integer, we'll have to use the third-order spectrum.

X-Ray Diffraction

The wavelengths of X-rays, on the order of 0.1 nm , are far too short for diffraction with gratings produced mechanically or photographically. Instead, **X-ray diffraction** occurs when X-rays interact with the regularly spaced atoms in a crystal. At the microscopic

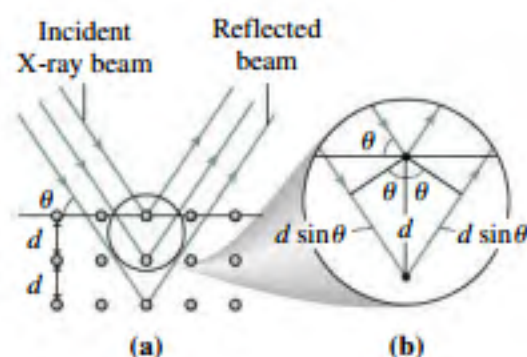


FIGURE 32.11 (a) X-rays reflecting off the planes of atoms in a crystal. (b) Constructive interference enhances the outgoing beam when the extra distance $2d \sin \theta$ is an integer multiple of the X-ray wavelength.

level, reflection of an electromagnetic wave occurs when the wave's electric field sets electrons oscillating. The electrons re-radiate, producing the reflected beam. With X-rays reflecting from a crystal, the regular atomic spacing results in interference that enhances the reflected radiation at certain angles. Figure 32.11a shows an X-ray beam interacting with the atoms in a crystal. In Fig. 32.11b we see that waves reflecting at one layer of atoms travel a distance $2d \sin \theta$ farther than those reflecting at the layer above, where θ is the angle between the incident beam and the atomic planes. Constructive interference occurs when this difference is an integer number of wavelengths:

$$2d \sin \theta = m\lambda \quad (\text{Bragg condition, } m = 1, 2, 3, \dots) \quad (32.6)$$

This **Bragg condition** lets us use a crystal with known spacing as a diffraction grating for X-rays. More important is the converse: Much of what we know about crystal structure comes from probing crystals with X-rays and using the resulting patterns to deduce positions of their atoms. X-ray diffraction measurements by British scientist Rosalind Franklin in 1952 were crucial in establishing the structure of DNA. Today, geologists and materials scientists use X-ray diffraction routinely in studying the structure of rocks, metals, and other substances. Molecular biologists and pharmaceutical manufacturers use X-ray diffraction to analyze biomolecules and as an aid in designing new drugs. There's even an X-ray diffraction instrument on Mars, used by the *Curiosity* rover to analyze Martian soils and determine mineral abundances.

Other Gratings

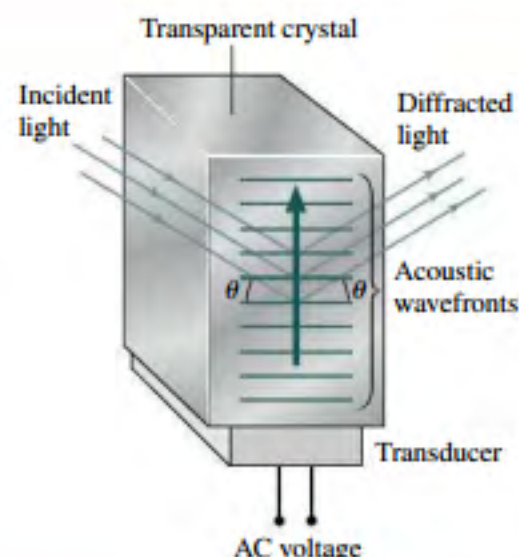
Anything with regularly spaced structures can act as a diffraction grating for waves of suitable wavelength. The rainbow of colors you see on the underside of a CD or DVD results because adjacent pits of CD tracks (shown in the Application earlier in this chapter) act as a diffraction grating. Ocean waves can act as a diffraction grating for radio waves; oceanographers exploit such diffraction in radar surveys that yield the wavelength and amplitude of the ocean waves. Finally, sound waves in a solid set up refractive index variations that act as diffraction gratings for light; the Application describes some everyday uses of this phenomenon.

GOT IT?

32.3 If you increase the number of slits in a grating while keeping the spacing the same, does each of the following (a) increase, (b) decrease, or (c) remain unchanged? (1) The spacing between intensity maxima in the interference pattern, (2) the intensity of the maxima, and (3) the width of the maxima.

APPLICATION Laser Printers, DVDs, and AOMs

Last time you used a laser printer, made a PowerPoint presentation, or burned a DVD, chances are that an acousto-optic modulator (AOM) played a role. As the figure shows, these devices use a loudspeaker-like *transducer* to beam sound waves into a transparent crystal. The regular spacing of the acoustic wavefronts constitutes a diffraction grating, and laser light entering the crystal is diffracted at an angle determined by the wavefront spacing—that is, by the acoustic wavelength. Varying the acoustic frequency alters the acoustic wavelength, which, in turn, changes the diffraction angle of the light. Thus the AOM may be used to “steer” a laser beam to different locations. Varying the acoustic amplitude alters the amplitude of the diffracted beam; this allows the AOM to modulate the light beam's intensity or to switch it on and off altogether. AOMs are commonly used in laser printers, laser-based projection systems, and DVD burners for either steering or modulating a laser beam, or both. AOMs also find applications in optical communications systems, in switching high-power lasers, in trapping and manipulating biomolecules and other small particles, and in a host of other technologies.



32.4 Interferometry

LO 32.4 Explain how interferometry can be used to make precision measurements.

Passing light through multiple slits isn't the only way to produce interference. So will any process that separates light into several beams, sends them on different paths, and then re-joins them. Such processes are the basis of **interferometry**, an exquisitely sensitive technique for measuring small displacements, time intervals, and other quantities.

Thin Films

Light passing through thin, transparent films is partially reflected at both the front and back surfaces, and the resulting beams recombine to produce interference. In Section 14.6 we saw how waves on a string reflect where one string joins another with different properties; in particular, the reflected wave is inverted if the second string has greater mass per unit length. Light behaves analogously: It's reflected with a 180° phase change at the interface between a material with lower refractive index and one with higher refractive index. But it reflects without a phase change at an interface from higher to lower refractive index. For a thin film with refractive index n higher than its surroundings, Fig. 32.12 shows that there's a 180° phase change at the first interface and no change at the second.

If the film in Fig. 32.12 has thickness d , there's also a phase change due to the additional path length for beam 2. We'll consider the case of normal incidence, although for clarity the figure shows slightly oblique incidence. With normal incidence, the extra length is twice the film thickness, or $2d$. Because reflected beam 1 forms with a 180° phase change but beam 2 has no phase change, it takes another 180° phase shift—half a wavelength path difference—to put beams 1 and 2 back in phase to give constructive interference. That occurs if beam 2's extra path length $2d$ is half a wavelength, or $1\frac{1}{2}$ wavelengths, or any odd-integer multiple of one-half wavelength: $2d = (m + \frac{1}{2})\lambda_n$, where $m = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$, and where the subscript n indicates that this is the wavelength as measured in the material. In Chapter 30 we found that the wavelength in a material with refractive index n is reduced by a factor $1/n$ from its value in air or vacuum; thus $\lambda_n = \lambda/n$, and our condition for constructive interference becomes

$$2nd = (m + \frac{1}{2})\lambda \quad (\text{constructive interference, thin film}) \quad (32.7)$$

Interference in thin layers is the basis of some very sensitive optical techniques. The shape of a lens, for example, can be measured to within a fraction of a wavelength of light using interference in a thin “film” consisting of the air between the lens and a flat glass plate (Fig. 32.13).

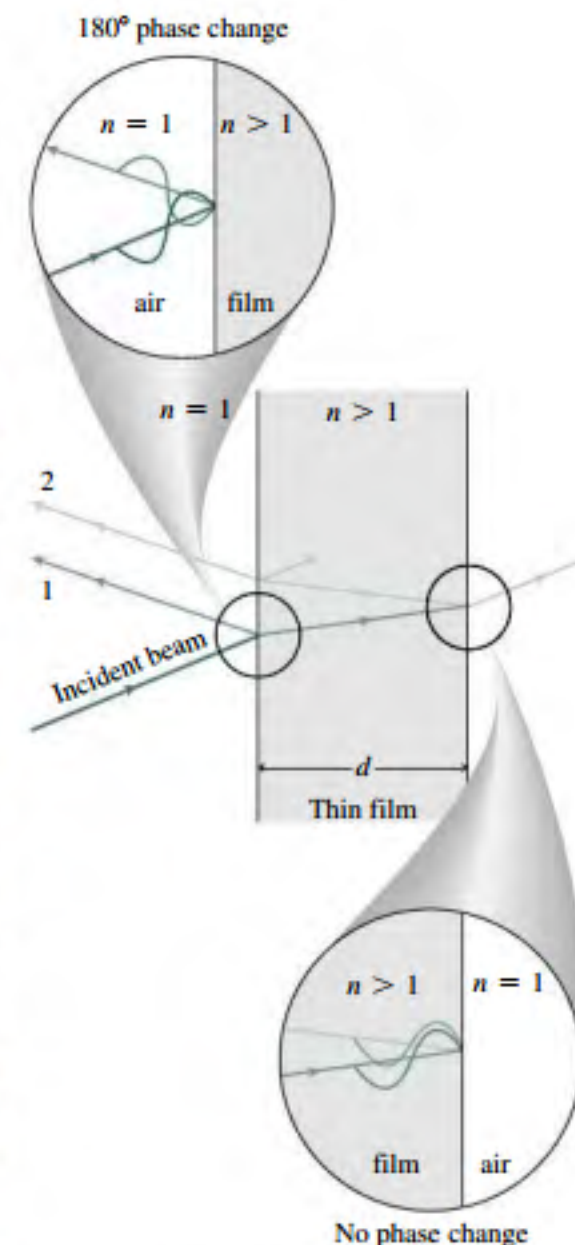


FIGURE 32.12 Reflection and refraction at a thin film of transparent material, showing a 180° phase change at the first interface and none at the second.

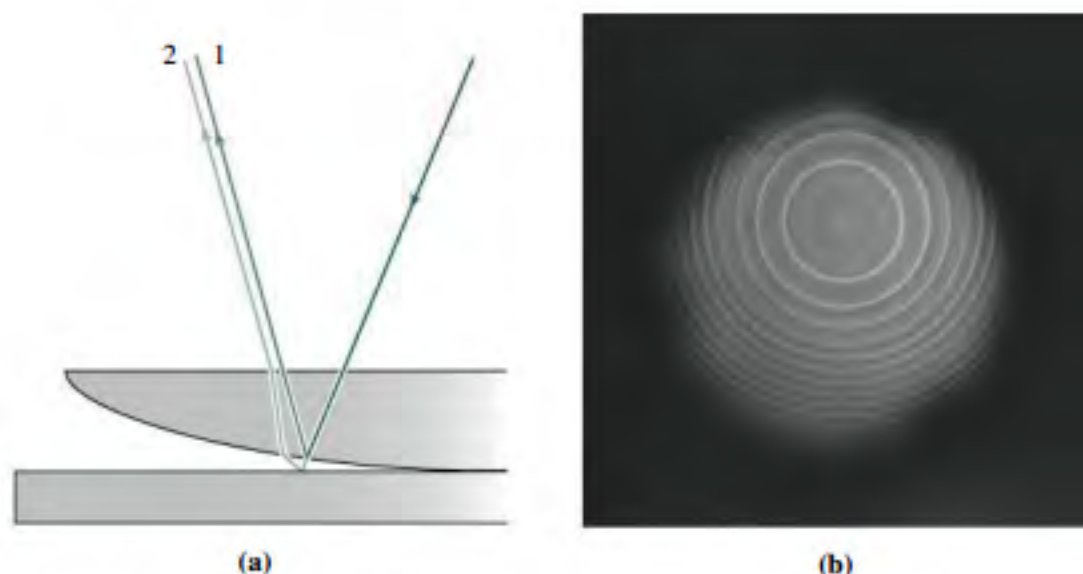


FIGURE 32.13 (a) A portion of a lens sitting on a flat glass plate. (b) Newton's rings arise from the difference in path lengths between rays like 1 and 2 and provide precise information about the lens shape.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 32.1 Interference: A Soap Film

Figure 32.14 shows a soap film in a circular ring with different colored bands that run horizontally across the film. Why do these bands occur?

EVALUATE The bands must be the result of interference, as described in Fig. 32.12. But why are they different colors? The soap film is vertical and consists mostly of water, so gravity makes it thicker at the bottom. Therefore, the wavelengths that undergo constructive interference vary with vertical position on the film. There are many bands, with colors repeating, because there are multiple orders of interference, with different values of m .

ASSESS The dark region at the top confirms our explanation: Here the film is so thin that no visible wavelength undergoes constructive interference, so it appears dark. The film is probably about to break!

MAKING THE CONNECTION A 20-cm-high soap film is $1\text{ }\mu\text{m}$ thick at the bottom, tapering to near zero thickness at the top. If it's illuminated with 650-nm laser light, how many bright bands appear?

EVALUATE Equation 32.7 gives the condition for constructive interference; the number of bands will be the number of interference

orders m possible in this film. Solving for m at the bottom of the film gives $m = 2nd/\lambda - 1/2 = 3.6$, with $n = 1.333$ for water. Since m must be an integer, there's no bright band right at the bottom. The $m = 3$ band is higher up, and above it are the $m = 2$, $m = 1$, and $m = 0$ bands, for a total of four bright bands.



FIGURE 32.14 Interference in a soap film illuminated with white light.

In analyzing thin films, we've considered only the first reflection at each interface. Actually, multiple reflections occur within the film, producing ever-weaker rays. A fuller treatment involving Maxwell's equations shows that when a film of refractive index n_2 is sandwiched between materials with indices n_1 and n_3 , complete cancellation of reflected rays in the incident medium occurs if the thickness is right and if $n_2 = \sqrt{n_1 n_3}$. This is the basis of the antireflection coatings, mentioned in Chapter 30, which ensure maximum light transfer in camera lenses, solar photovoltaic cells, and other applications.

GOT IT?

32.4 If you photographed the soap film in Fig. 32.14 with a camera that's sensitive to both visible and infrared light, would the dark region at the top appear (a) smaller or (b) larger?

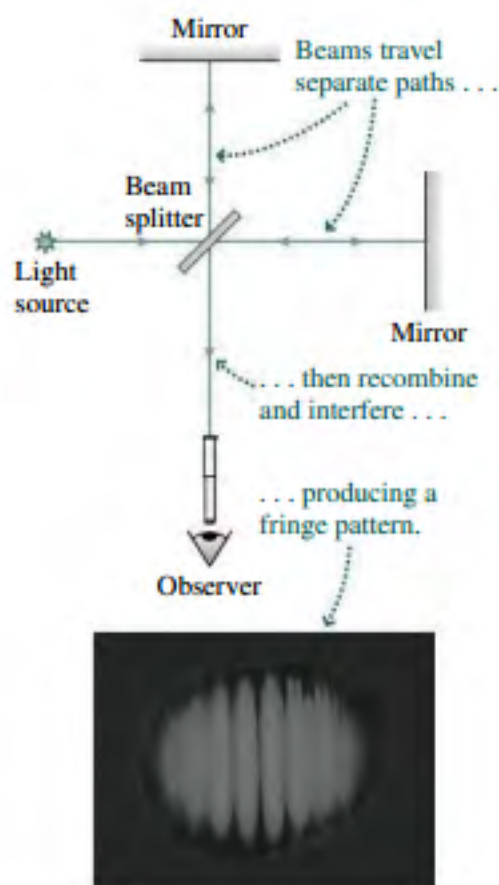


FIGURE 32.15 Schematic diagram of a Michelson interferometer, with a photo of the interference fringes.

The Michelson Interferometer

Several optical instruments use interference for precise measurement. Among the simplest and most important is the **Michelson interferometer**, invented by the American physicist Albert Michelson and used in the 1880s in a groundbreaking experiment that paved the way for the theory of relativity. We discuss this experiment in the next chapter; here we describe the interferometer, which is still widely used for precision measurements.

Figure 32.15 shows the basic Michelson interferometer. The key idea is that light from a monochromatic source is split into two beams by a half-silvered mirror called a **beam splitter**. The beam splitter is set at a 45° angle, so the reflected and transmitted beams travel perpendicular paths. Each then reflects off a flat mirror and returns to the beam splitter. The beam splitter again transmits and reflects half the light incident on it, with the result that some light from the originally separated beams is recombined. The recombined beams interfere, and the interference pattern is observed with a viewing lens; an example of the resulting pattern is shown at the bottom of Fig. 32.15.

If the path lengths for the two beams were exactly the same, they would recombine in phase and interfere constructively. In reality, the path lengths are never exactly the same, the mirrors are never exactly perpendicular, and the beams aren't perfectly parallel. But that's no problem: What happens is that different parts of the beams recombine with different phase differences, and the result is a pattern of light and dark interference fringes, as

shown in Fig. 32.15. The distance between successive fringes corresponds to a path-length difference of one full wavelength.

Now suppose one mirror moves slightly. The path-length differences change and therefore the interference pattern shifts. A mere quarter-wavelength mirror movement adds an extra half-wavelength to the round-trip path. That results in a 180° phase shift, moving dark fringes to where light ones were. Shifts a fraction of this amount are readily detected, allowing the measurement of mirror displacements to within a small fraction of a wavelength. A similar shift occurs if a transparent material is placed in one path, retarding the beam because of its refractive index. This provides accurate measures of the refractive indices of gases, which are so close to 1 that less-sensitive techniques don't work.

The largest Michelson interferometers ever built are the twin instruments of the Laser Interferometer Gravitational-Wave Observatory (LIGO; Fig. 32.16), with arms 4 km long. LIGO made history in 2015 with the first-ever detection of gravitational waves. That detection—whose waves resulted from a merger of black holes more than a billion light-years distant—ushered in a whole new era of gravitational-wave astronomy, with subsequent detections including additional black hole mergers and collision between neutron stars. LIGO detects disturbances in the structure of spacetime by measuring displacements on the order of 10^{-19} m, as you can explore in Problem 69. LIGO will eventually be dwarfed by a space-based interferometer with arms 2.5 million km long! We'll explore gravitational waves further in the next chapter.



FIGURE 32.16 The LIGO instrument at Hanford, Washington, is an interferometer with 4-km arms. The light undergoes multiple reflections, giving an effective arm length of 300 km.

EXAMPLE 32.4 An Interferometric Measurement: Sandstorm!

A sandstorm has pitted the aluminum mirrors of a desert solar-energy installation, and engineers want to know the depths of the pits. They construct a Michelson interferometer with a sample from one of the pitted mirrors in place of one flat mirror. With 633-nm laser light, the interference pattern in Fig. 32.17 results. What is the approximate depth of the pit?

INTERPRET The concept here is interferometry—inferring distance from observations of light interference, in this case with the Michelson configuration of Fig. 32.15. The distortions of the interference fringes shown in Fig. 32.17 result because some of the light travels a little farther—namely, into the bottom of a pit and back out.

DEVELOP The full fringe spacing corresponds to a path difference of one wavelength, and Fig. 32.17 shows that the fringe distortion due to the pit gives a shift about one-fifth of the distance between fringes. We need to use this information to find the extra distance traveled by light reflecting from the bottom of the pit, and from that the pit depth. We're given the wavelength, so we can estimate the round trip, into and out of the pit, as approximately 0.2λ . The pit depth will be half this quantity.

EVALUATE The extra path length for the light reflecting off the pit is 0.2λ , so the pit depth is about 0.1λ . With $\lambda = 633$ nm, the pit depth is about 63 nm.

ASSESS Try measuring that with a meter stick! Interferometry provides an exquisitely sensitive measurement of small distances.



FIGURE 32.17 Fringe pattern resulting from a pitted mirror.

32.5 Huygens' Principle and Diffraction

LO 32.5 Use Huygens' principal to describe the diffraction of light.

The interference we've been studying in this chapter isn't the only optical phenomenon where the wave nature of light is important. There's also **diffraction**—the bending of light or other waves as they pass by objects. Interference and diffraction are closely related, and the double- and multiple-slit interference we've studied actually involves diffraction as well—hence the term *diffraction grating*.

Diffraction, like other optical phenomena, is ultimately governed by Maxwell's equations. But we can understand diffraction more readily using **Huygens' principle**,

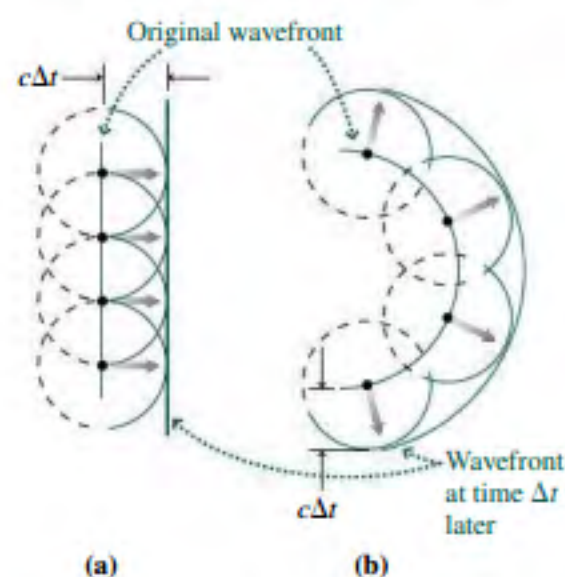


FIGURE 32.18 Application of Huygens' principle to (a) plane and (b) spherical waves. In each case, the wavefront acts like a set of point sources emitting circular waves that expand to produce a new wavefront.

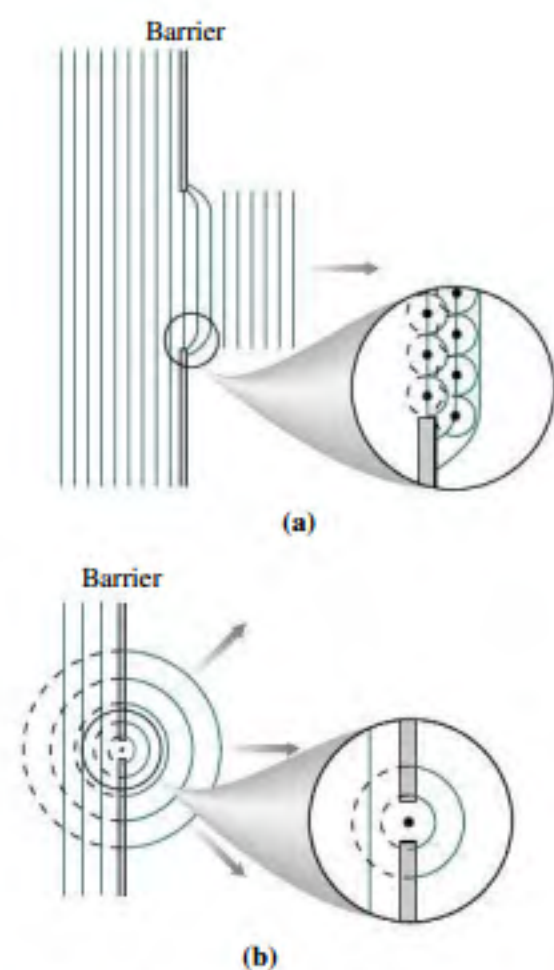


FIGURE 32.19 Plane waves incident on an opaque barrier with a hole. Diffraction is negligible for a hole large compared with the wavelength (a), but pronounced for a small hole (b).

articulated in 1678 by the Dutch scientist Christian Huygens, who was the first to suggest that light might be a wave. Huygens' principle states:

All points on a wavefront act as point sources of spherically propagating wavelets that travel at the speed of light appropriate to the medium. At a short time Δt later, the new wavefront is the unique surface tangent to all the forward-propagating wavelets.

Figure 32.18 shows how Huygens' principle accounts for the propagation of plane and spherical waves.

Diffraction

Figure 32.19 shows plane waves incident on an opaque barrier containing a hole. Since the waves are blocked by the barrier, Huygens' wavelets produced near each barrier edge cause the wavefronts to bend at the barrier. When the width of the hole is much greater than the wavelength, as in Fig. 32.19a, this diffraction is of little consequence, and the waves effectively propagate straight through the hole in a beam defined by the hole size. But when the hole size and wavelength are comparable, wavefronts emerging from the hole spread in a broad pattern (Fig. 32.19b). Thus diffraction, although it always occurs, is significant only on length scales comparable to or smaller than the wavelength. That's why we could ignore diffraction and assume that light always travels in straight lines when, in Chapters 30 and 31, we considered optical systems with dimensions much larger than the wavelength of light.

Diffraction ultimately limits our ability to image small objects and to focus light precisely. The chapter opening photo and its associated question are one example. Next, we'll show the reason for this fundamental limitation on optical systems by examining the behavior of light as it passes through a single slit. The result will help you understand optical challenges ranging from telescopic imaging of distant astrophysical objects to the development of Blu-ray discs.

Single-Slit Diffraction

In treating double-slit and multiple-slit interference, we assumed that plane waves passing through a slit emerged with circular wavefronts. According to Fig. 32.19b, that's true only if the slit width is small compared with the wavelength, so the slit can be treated as a single, localized source of new waves. When the slit width isn't small, Huygens' principle implies that we have to consider each point in the slit as a separate source—and then we can expect interference from waves originating at different points in the same slit. Thus a single wide slit is really like a multiple-slit system with infinitely many slits!

Figure 32.20a shows light incident on a slit of width a . Each point in the slit acts as a source of spherical wavelets propagating in all directions to the right of the slit. We focus on a particular direction described by the angle θ , and we'll look at interference of light from the five points shown. Figure 32.20b concentrates on the points from which rays 1, 2, and 3 originate and shows that the path lengths for rays 1 and 3 differ by $\frac{1}{2}a \sin \theta$. These two beams will interfere destructively if this distance is half the wavelength—that is, if $\frac{1}{2}a \sin \theta = \frac{1}{2}\lambda$ or $a \sin \theta = \lambda$. But if rays 1 and 3 interfere destructively, so do rays 3 and 5, which have the same geometry, and so do rays 2 and 4, for the same reason. In fact, a ray leaving *any* point in the lower half of the slit will interfere destructively with the point located a distance $a/2$ above it. Therefore, an observer viewing the slit system at the angle θ satisfying $a \sin \theta = \lambda$ will see no light.

Similarly, the sources for rays 1 and 2 are $a/4$ apart and will therefore interfere destructively if $\frac{1}{4}a \sin \theta = \frac{1}{2}\lambda$, or $a \sin \theta = 2\lambda$. But then so will rays 2 and 3, and rays 3 and 4; in fact, any ray from a point in the lower three-quarters of the slit will interfere destructively with a ray from the point $a/4$ above it, and therefore, an observer looking at an angle θ satisfying $a \sin \theta = 2\lambda$ will see no light.

We could equally well have divided the slit into six sections with seven evenly spaced points; we would then have found destructive interference if $\frac{1}{6}a \sin \theta = \frac{1}{2}\lambda$, or $a \sin \theta = 3\lambda$. We could continue this process for any number of points in the slit, and therefore, we conclude that destructive interference occurs for all angles θ satisfying

a is the width of a single slit. m , an integer, is the order of the dark fringe.

$$a \sin \theta = m\lambda \quad (\text{destructive interference, single-slit diffraction}) \quad (32.8)$$

θ is the angular position of a dark fringe. λ is the light's wavelength.

with m any nonzero integer and a the slit width. Note that the case $m = 0$ is excluded; it produces not destructive interference but a central maximum in which all waves are in phase.



INTERFERENCE AND DIFFRACTION Equation 32.8 for the *minima* of a single-slit diffraction pattern looks just like Equation 32.1a for the *maxima* of a multiple-slit interference pattern, except that the slit width a replaces the slit spacing d . Why does the same equation give the minima in one case and the maxima in another? Because we're dealing with two distinct but related phenomena. In the multiple-slit case, each slit was so narrow that it could be considered a single source, neglecting the interference of waves originating within the same slit. In the single-slit case, the diffraction pattern occurs precisely because of the interference of waves from different points within the same slit.

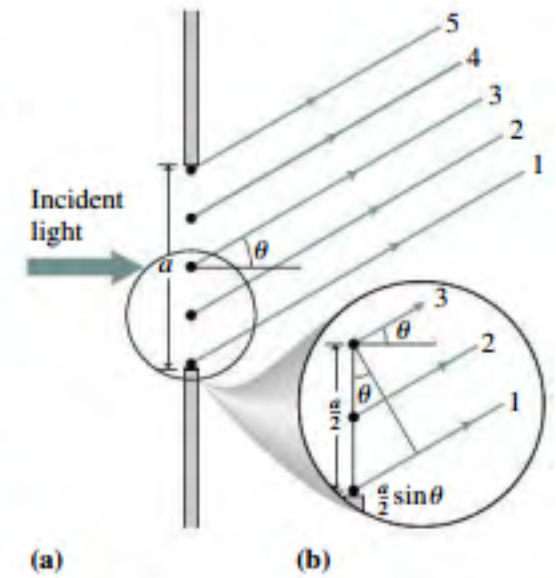


FIGURE 32.20 Each point in a slit acts as a source of Huygens' wavelets, which interfere in the region to the right of the slit.

Intensity in Single-Slit Diffraction

Geometry gave us the *positions* of the maxima in single-slit diffraction, just as it did for multiple-slit interference. But to get the *intensity* across the diffraction pattern, we'd have to superpose electric fields of the interfering waves, as we did in deriving Equation 32.3 for two-slit interference. But now we've got infinitely many fields to sum, corresponding to waves from every part of the slit. It's possible to do this using a calculus-like graphical technique involving the phasor concept introduced in Chapter 28. We won't go through the derivation; however, we'll motivate the result by noting that the diffraction pattern at any point occurs because of phase differences among waves originating at different parts of the slit. It's not surprising, therefore, that a key factor is the phase difference between waves from opposite ends of the slit. Applying the analysis of Fig. 32.20 to the entire slit width a gives a path-length difference $a \sin \theta$ for these waves. As usual, this path difference is to the wavelength as the phase difference ϕ is to a full cycle, 2π radians. Thus

$$\phi = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} a \sin \theta \quad (32.9)$$

is the phase difference between rays from the ends of the slit to a point at angular position θ . The phasor-summing process relates the amplitude of the net electric field to this phase difference ϕ and shows that the field is proportional to $\sin(\phi/2)/(\phi/2)$. Used in Equation 29.20 to get the intensity from the electric field, this result gives the intensity as a function of angle in single-slit diffraction:

$$\bar{S} = \bar{S}_0 \left[\frac{\sin(\phi/2)}{\phi/2} \right]^2 \quad (32.10)$$

Here $\bar{S}_0$ is the average intensity at the central maximum of the pattern ($\theta = \phi = 0$), and ϕ is given by Equation 32.9. At $\theta = \phi = 0$, Equation 32.10 appears to be indeterminate, but using the limit $\sin x/x \rightarrow 1$ as $x \rightarrow 0$ shows that the result is indeed $\bar{S}_0$. Problem 70 explores another approach to Equation 32.10.

Figure 32.21 plots Equation 32.10 for three values of the slit width a in relation to the wavelength λ . For wide slits— a large compared with λ —the central peak is narrow and the secondary peaks are much lower and also half as wide as the central peak. Here diffraction is negligible, and the beam essentially propagates through the slit in the ray approximation of geometrical optics. But as the slit narrows, the diffracted beam spreads until, with $a = \lambda$, it covers an angular width of some 120° .

The intensity given by Equation 32.10 will be zero when the numerator on the right-hand side is zero—that is, when the argument of the sine function is an integer multiple of π . That occurs when $\phi/2 = (\pi a/\lambda) \sin \theta = m\pi$, or when $a \sin \theta = m\lambda$. Thus, we recover our result of Equation 32.8 for the angular positions where destructive interference gives zero intensity.

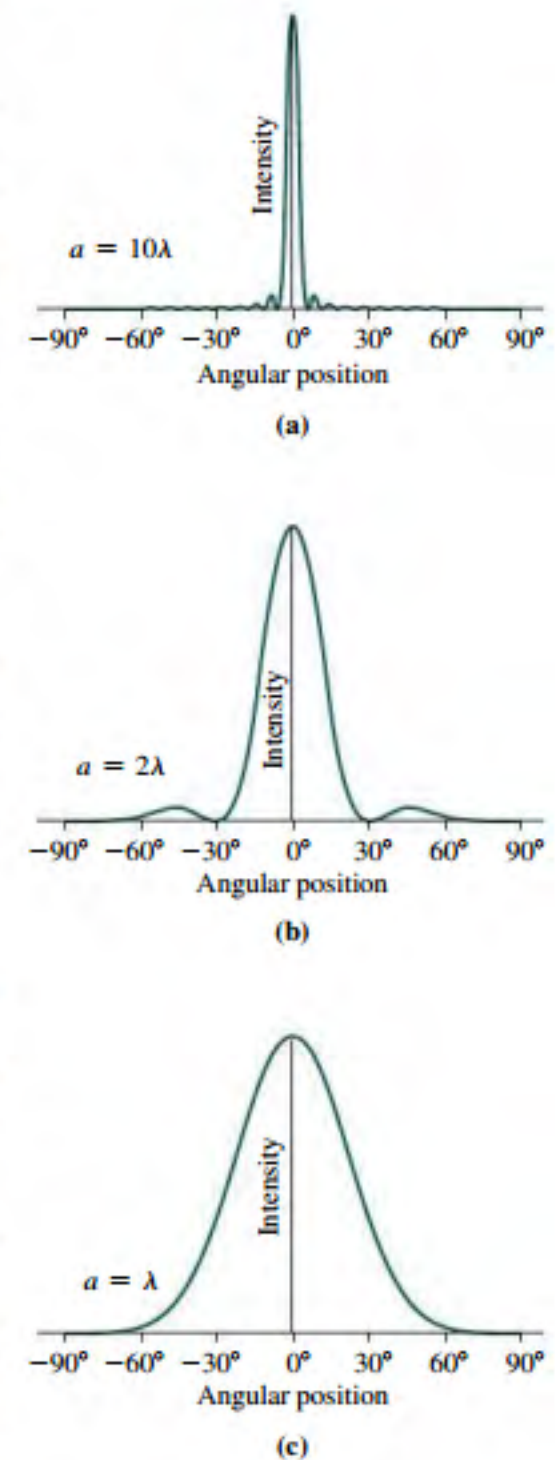


FIGURE 32.21 Intensity in single-slit diffraction, as a function of the angle θ from the centerline, for three values of slit width a .

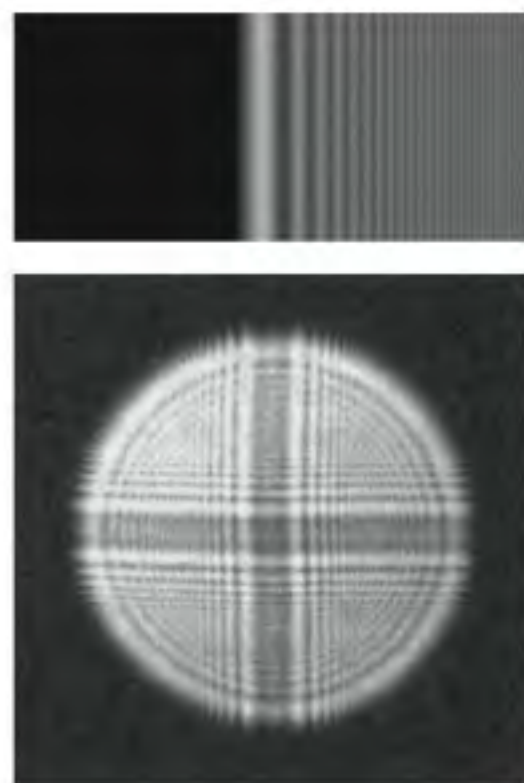


FIGURE 32.23 Diffraction patterns from light passing sharp edges. (a) Straight edge of an opaque barrier. (b) Circular aperture with crosshairs.

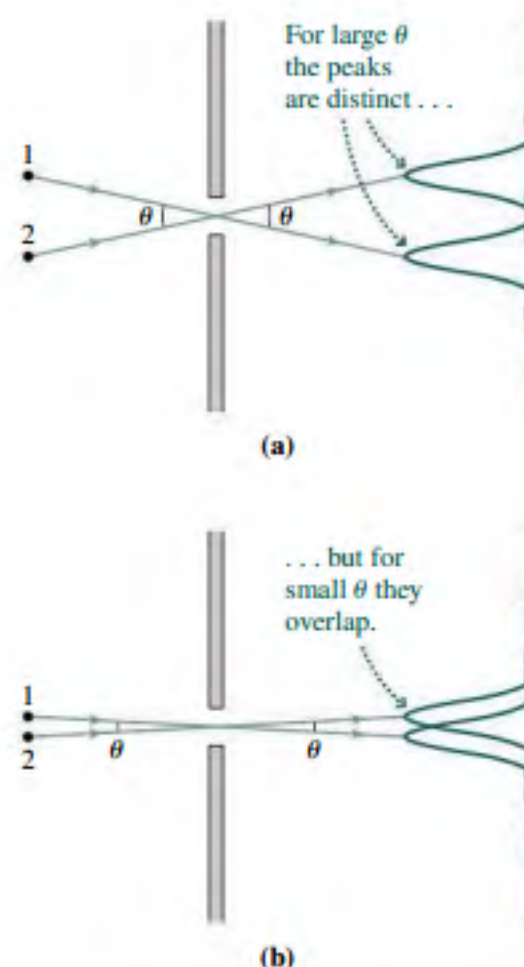


FIGURE 32.24 Two distant light sources at different angular positions produce diffraction patterns whose central peaks have the same angular separation θ as the sources.

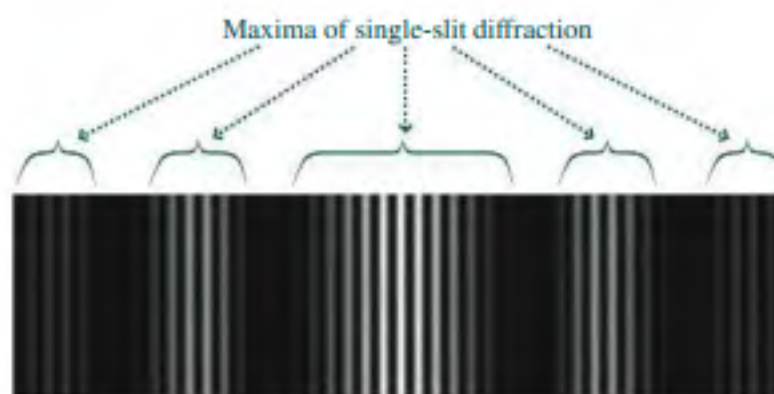


FIGURE 32.22 When the slit width is not negligible, a double-slit system produces the regular variations of double-slit interference within a single-slit diffraction pattern.

Multiple Slits and Other Diffracting Systems

In treating multiple-slit systems in Section 32.2, we assumed the slits were so narrow compared with the wavelength that the central diffraction peak spread into the entire space beyond the slit system. When the slit width isn't negligible, each slit produces a single-slit diffraction pattern. The result is a pattern that combines single-slit diffraction with multiple-slit interference (Fig. 32.22).

Diffraction occurs any time light passes a sharp, opaque edge like the edges of the slits we've been considering. Close examination of the shadow produced by a sharp edge shows parallel fringes resulting from interference of the diffracting wavefronts (Fig. 32.23a). More complex diffraction patterns result from objects of different shape (Fig. 32.23b). Such diffraction limits our ability to form sharp optical images, as we show in the next section.

GOT IT?

32.5 A classmate down the hall is playing obnoxiously loud music, and you both have your doors open. Why are you most annoyed by the music's thumping bass?

32.6 The Diffraction Limit

LO 32.6 Explain quantitatively how diffraction imposes a fundamental limit on our ability to image very small or very distant objects.

Diffraction imposes a fundamental limit on the ability of optical systems—telescopes, microscopes, cameras, and even eyes—to distinguish closely spaced objects. Consider two point sources of light illuminating a slit. The sources are so far from the slit that waves reaching the slit are essentially plane waves, but the different source positions mean the waves reach the slit at different angles. We assume the sources are incoherent, so they don't produce a regular interference pattern. Then light diffracting at the slit produces two single-slit diffraction patterns, one for each source. Because the sources are at different angular positions, the central maxima of these patterns don't coincide, as shown in Fig. 32.24.

If the angular separation between the sources is great enough, then the central maxima of the two diffraction patterns will be entirely distinct. In that case we can clearly distinguish the two sources (Fig. 32.24a). But as the sources get closer, the central maxima begin to overlap (Fig. 32.24b). They remain distinguishable as long as the total intensity pattern shows two peaks. Since the sources are incoherent, the total intensity is just the sum of the individual intensities. Figure 32.25 shows how that sum loses its two-peak structure as the diffraction patterns merge. In general, two peaks are barely distinguishable if the central maximum of one coincides with the first minimum of the other. This condition is called the **Rayleigh criterion**, and when it's met the two sources are just barely **resolved**.

Optical systems are analogous to the single slit we've just considered. Every system has an aperture of finite size through which light enters. That aperture may be an actual slit or hole, like the diaphragm that stops down a camera lens, or it may be the full size of a microscope lens or a telescope mirror. So all optical systems ultimately suffer loss of resolution if two

sources—or two parts of the same object—have too small an angular separation. Thus, diffraction fundamentally limits our ability to probe the structure of objects that are either very small or very distant. Figure 32.26 shows the loss of resolution as diffraction patterns overlap.

Figure 32.24 shows that the angular separation between the diffraction peaks is equal to the angular separation between the sources themselves. Then the Rayleigh criterion is just met if the angular separation between the two sources is equal to the angular separation between a central peak and the first minimum. We found earlier that the first minimum in single-slit diffraction occurs at the angular position given by $\sin \theta = \lambda/a$, with a the slit width and with θ measured from the central peak. In most optical systems the wavelength is much less than the size of any apertures, so we can use the small-angle approximation $\sin \theta \approx \theta$. Then the Rayleigh criterion—the condition that two sources be just resolvable—for single-slit diffraction becomes

$$\theta_{\min} = \frac{\lambda}{a} \quad (\text{Rayleigh criterion, slit}) \quad (32.11a)$$

Most optical systems have circular apertures rather than slits. The diffraction pattern from such an aperture is a series of concentric rings (Fig. 32.27). Mathematical analysis shows that the angular position of the first ring and therefore the minimum resolvable source separation for a circular aperture is

$\theta_{\min}$ is the minimum angular displacement resolvable with a circular aperture.

$$\theta_{\min} = \frac{1.22\lambda}{D} \quad (\text{Rayleigh criterion, circular aperture}) \quad (32.11b)$$

λ is the light's wavelength.
 D is the aperture diameter.

with D the aperture diameter.

Equations 32.11 show that increasing the aperture size allows smaller angular differences to be resolved. In optical instrument design, that means larger mirrors or lenses. An alternative is to decrease the wavelength, which may or may not be an option depending on the source. In high-quality optical systems, diffraction is often the limiting factor preventing perfectly sharp image formation; such systems are said to be **diffraction limited**. For example, the diffraction limit sets a minimum size for objects resolvable with optical microscopes; that's why electron microscopes—with shorter effective wavelength—are used to image smaller biological structures. Large ground-based telescopes are an exception to the diffraction limit; their image quality is limited by atmospheric turbulence, although this can be reduced with adaptive optics. From their vantage points above Earth's atmosphere, space telescopes such as Hubble are truly diffraction limited. And although they look down through the atmosphere, Earth-imaging satellites are generally diffraction limited as well because the turbulent lower atmosphere is far from the satellites' optical systems and close to what they're imaging, namely, the ground. This greatly reduces atmospheric distortion.

Astronomers circumvent the diffraction limit by combining data from several telescopes to produce, in effect, a single instrument with aperture equal to the telescope separation.

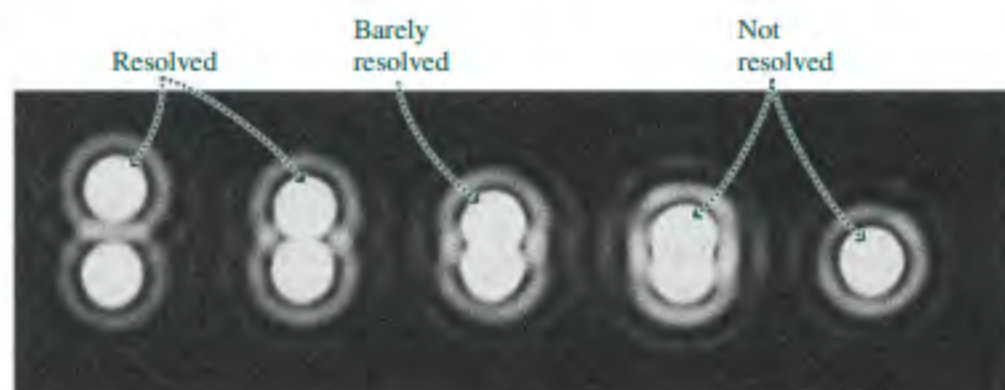


FIGURE 32.26 Diffraction patterns produced by a pair of point sources. The angular separation of the sources decreases until they can't be resolved.

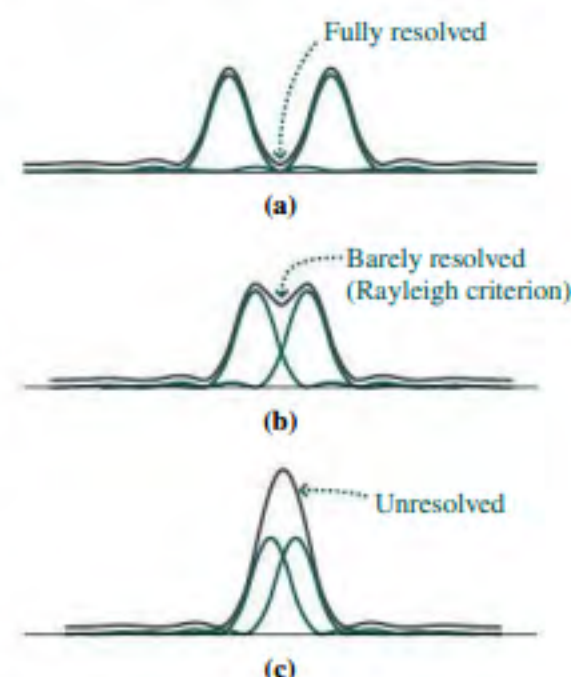


FIGURE 32.25 Since the two sources are incoherent, the total intensity is just the sum (gray curve) of the intensities of the two diffraction patterns.



FIGURE 32.27 3-D plot of intensity versus position in circular diffraction. The right-most image in Fig. 32.26 shows the corresponding diffraction pattern.

For optical wavelengths, instruments with effective apertures of several hundred meters are now possible and, among other feats, these *interferometers* resolve surface features on individual stars. Radio astronomers combine telescopes on different continents, providing exquisite resolution at radio wavelengths. Among several Earth-sized radio interferometers is the Event Horizon Telescope, which is intended to image the immediate vicinity of the massive black hole at the center of our Milky Way galaxy. You can explore astronomical interferometry further in the Passage Problems.

GOT IT?

32.6 You're a biologist trying to resolve details of structures within a cell, but they look fuzzy even at the highest power of your microscope. Which of the following might help: (a) substituting an eyepiece with shorter focal length, as suggested by Equation 31.10; (b) putting a red filter over the white light source used to illuminate the microscope slide; or (c) putting a blue filter over the white light source?

EXAMPLE 32.5**The Diffraction Limit: Asteroid Alert***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

An asteroid 20×10^6 km away appears on a collision course with Earth. What's the minimum size for the asteroid that could be resolved with the 2.4-m-diameter diffraction-limited Hubble Space Telescope, using 550-nm reflected sunlight?

INTERPRET This is a problem about the diffraction limit with a circular aperture. We're after the minimum physical size for the asteroid at a given distance. We identify $D = 2.4$ m as the aperture size and $\lambda = 550$ nm as the wavelength of the light.

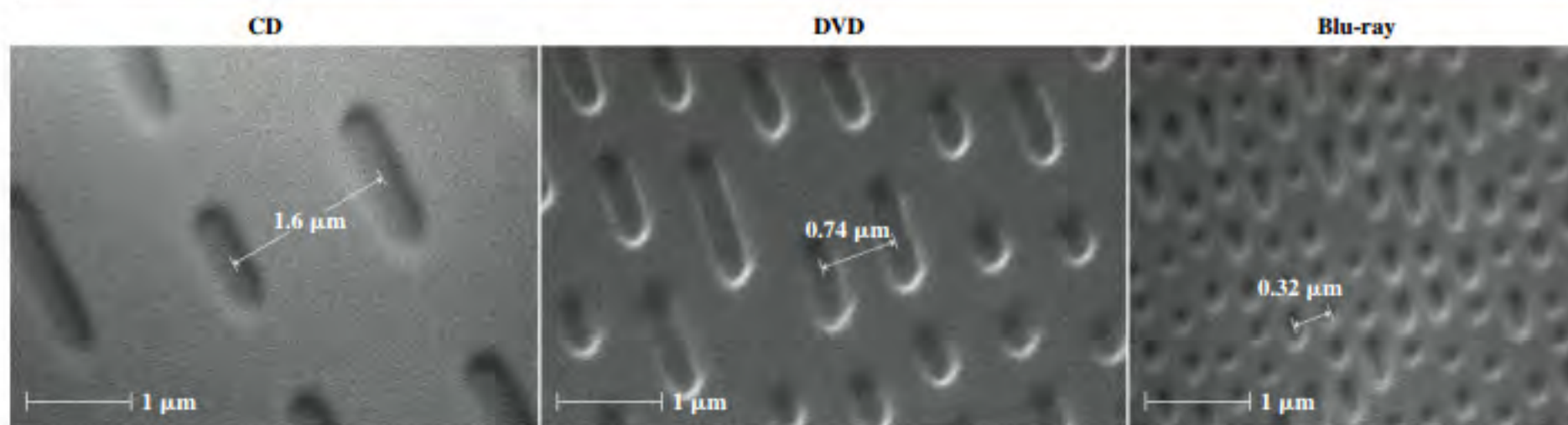
DEVELOP Equation 32.11b, $\theta_{\min} = 1.22\lambda/D$, determines the diffraction limit, expressed as the minimum angular size that can be resolved. So our plan is to express the unknown physical size l in terms of angular size θ and then apply Equation 32.11b.

EVALUATE If we consider the opposite ends of the asteroid to be like the two peaks in Fig. 32.24, then the angular size for small θ is just l/L , where L is the distance to the asteroid. Then Equation 32.11b becomes

$$\frac{l}{L} = \frac{1.22\lambda}{D}$$

or $l = 1.22\lambda L/D = 5.6$ km using the numbers given.

ASSESS An object this size poses a grave danger, being comparable to the asteroid whose impact caused the extinction of the dinosaurs. If astronomers see only a fuzzy blur, then they'll have to wait until the asteroid is closer to resolve its physical size and assess the danger.

APPLICATION**Movies on Disc: CD to DVD to Blu-ray**

The Application earlier in this chapter described how a CD encodes information in pits $1.6 \mu\text{m}$ apart and as short as $0.83 \mu\text{m}$. CDs are read with 780-nm infrared laser light. The pit size and spacing have to be large enough that diffraction effects at the laser's wavelength don't cause the CD player's optical system to confuse adjacent pits. The result is a maximum capacity of about 650 MB (megabytes; 1 byte is 8 binary bits, with a bit the fundamental piece of binary information represented by a digital 1 or 0). This translates into 74 minutes of audio.

CDs were developed in the 1980s, when inexpensive semiconductor lasers were available only in the infrared. By the 1990s inexpensive visible-light lasers became available, and that enabled the development of DVDs (for "digital video disc" or "digital versatile disc"). Read with 635-nm or 650-nm red light, DVDs

can use smaller pit size and spacing because of the lower diffraction limit. That, coupled with a two-layer structure and more sophisticated data-compression schemes, gives standard DVDs a capacity of about 4.7 GB—enough for 2 or more hours of video, depending on quality.

Despite their large capacity, DVDs aren't adequate for today's high-definition TV (HDTV). But improvements in laser technology give us a 405-nm violet laser that enables high-definition video discs. Again, the shorter wavelength and hence lower diffraction limit, along with other improvements, allow much more information to fit on a disc. The resulting Blu-ray technology stores 25 GB on a single-layer disc. That corresponds to 4.5 hours of high-definition video, or 12 hours of standard video. The figure shows scanning-electron-microscope images comparing CDs, DVDs, and Blu-ray discs.

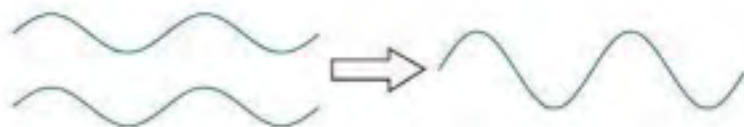
Chapter 32 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is that—despite our use of the geometrical-optics approximation in the preceding chapters—light is indeed a wave and therefore exhibits the two related phenomena of **interference** and **diffraction**. These wave effects are important whenever light or any other wave interacts with objects whose size is comparable to or smaller than the wavelength.

Key Concepts and Equations

Constructive interference occurs when two waves combine in phase:



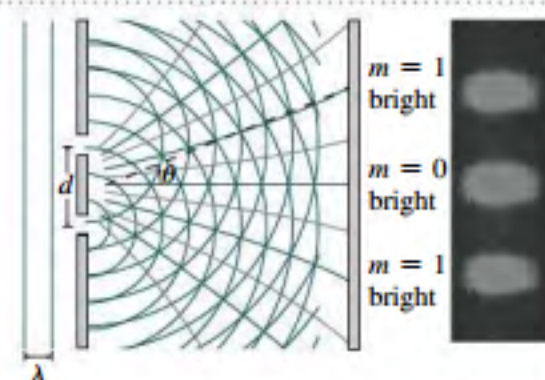
Destructive interference occurs when two waves combine 180° out of phase:



When light of wavelength λ passes through two or more narrow slits, the resulting interference shows maxima when

$$d \sin \theta = m\lambda$$

where m is an integer called the order. With multiple slits the maxima become stronger and narrower, but their position doesn't change.

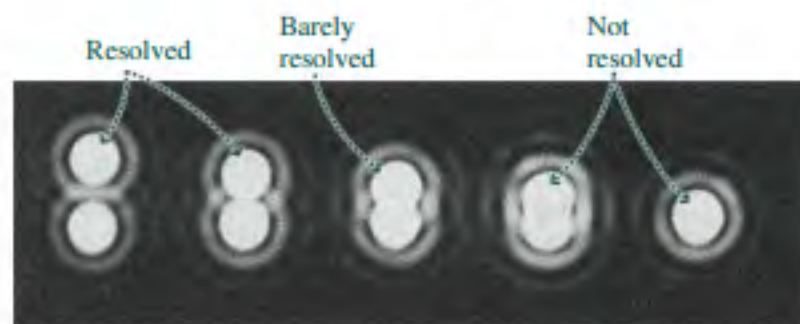


Diffraction occurs because, according to **Huygens' principle**, each point on a wavefront acts as a source of spherical waves, causing light to bend as it encounters sharp edges. Waves from different parts of a wavefront interfere to produce diffraction patterns.



The **diffraction limit** is a fundamental restriction on our ability to image small or distant objects. For a circular aperture of diameter D , the **Rayleigh criterion** gives the minimum angular separation that can be resolved with light of wavelength λ :

$$\theta_{\min} = \frac{1.22\lambda}{D}$$



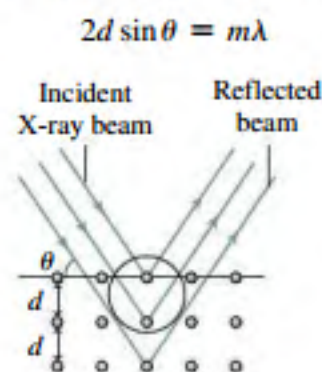
Applications

A **diffraction grating** consists of multiple slits or lines that result in constructive interference at different positions for different wavelengths. Diffraction gratings are used in spectrometers to disperse individual wavelengths. A grating's **resolving power**, the ratio of wavelength to the minimum resolvable difference in wavelengths, is given by

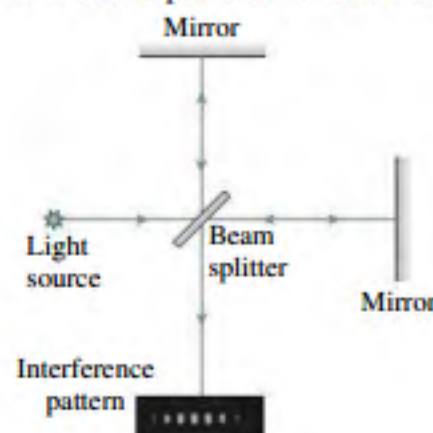
$$\frac{\lambda}{\Delta\lambda} = mN$$

where N is the number of lines in the grating and m is the order of the dispersion.

X-ray diffraction uses regularly positioned atoms as a grating, and is a powerful technique for analyzing crystal and molecular structure. Maximum intensity occurs when



The **Michelson interferometer** splits light into two beams that travel on perpendicular paths. They recombine, and the resulting interference allows precision measurements.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>LO 32.1 Distinguish constructive and destructive interference.
<i>Problem 32.58</i></p> <p>LO 32.2 Describe double-slit interference quantitatively, including locating interference maxima and evaluating intensity in the interference pattern.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 32.6; Exercises 32.10, 32.11, 32.12, 32.13, 32.14; Problems 32.40, 32.41, 32.42</i></p> <p>LO 32.3 Describe interference in multiple-slit systems, including diffraction gratings.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 32.1, 32.7; Exercises 32.15, 32.16, 32.17, 32.18; Problems 32.43, 32.44, 32.45, 32.48, 32.49, 32.52, 32.68</i></p> | <p>LO 32.4 Explain how interferometry can be used to make precision measurements.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 32.2, 32.3, 32.4; Exercises 32.19, 32.20, 32.21, 32.22, 32.23; Problems 32.46, 32.50, 32.51, 32.53, 32.54, 32.55, 32.56, 32.57, 32.66, 32.67, 32.69, 32.72</i></p> <p>LO 32.5 Use Huygens' principal to describe the diffraction of light.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 32.5, 32.8, 32.9; Exercises 32.24, 32.25, 32.26, 32.27, 32.70</i></p> <p>LO 32.6 Explain quantitatively how diffraction imposes a fundamental limit on our ability to image very small or very distant objects.
<i>Exercises 32.28, 32.29, 32.30, 32.31; Problems 32.47, 32.59, 32.60, 32.61, 32.62, 32.63, 32.64, 32.65, 32.71</i></p> |
|--|---|

For Thought and Discussion

1. A prism bends blue light more than red. Is the same true of a diffraction grating?
2. Why does an oil slick show colored bands?
3. Why does a soap bubble turn colorless just before it dries up and pops?
4. Can optical interference be a viable technique to measure the refractive index of a liquid?
5. You can hear around corners, but you can't see around corners. Why?
6. If you have a dual-color, coherent source that emits red and blue light, what sort of double-slit pattern would you see using it?
7. The primary maxima in multiple-slit interference are in the same angular positions as those in double-slit interference. Why, then, do diffraction gratings have thousands of slits instead of just two?
8. What changes do you expect to observe if you use white light instead of a monochromatic source in a double-slit experiment?
9. Sketch roughly the diffraction pattern you would expect for light passing through a square hole a few wavelengths wide.

13. The interference pattern from two slits separated by 0.37 mm has bright fringes with angular spacing 0.065° . Find the light's wavelength.
14. The 546-nm green line of gaseous mercury falls on a double-slit apparatus. If the fifth dark fringe is at 0.113° from the centerline, what's the slit separation?

Section 32.3 Multiple-Slit Interference and Diffraction Gratings

15. In a five-slit system, how many minima lie between the zeroth-order and first-order maxima?
16. In a three-slit system, the first minimum occurs at angular position 5.40° . Where is the next maximum?
17. A five-slit system with 7.5- μm slit spacing is illuminated with 633-nm light. Find the angular positions of (a) the first two maxima and (b) the third and sixth minima.
18. Green light at 522 nm is diffracted by a grating with 3000 lines/cm. Through what angle is the light diffracted in (a) first and (b) fifth order?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 32.2 Double-Slit Interference

10. A double-slit system is used to measure the wavelength of light. The system has slit spacing $d = 15 \mu\text{m}$ and slit-to-screen distance $L = 2.2 \text{ m}$. If the $m = 1$ maximum in the interference pattern occurs 7.1 cm from screen center, what's the wavelength?
11. A double-slit experiment with $d = 0.025 \text{ mm}$ and $L = 74 \text{ cm}$ uses 550-nm light. Find the spacing between adjacent bright fringes.
12. A double-slit experiment has slit spacing 0.12 mm. (a) What should be the slit-to-screen distance L if the bright fringes are to be 5.0 mm apart when the slits are illuminated with 633-nm laser light? (b) What will be the fringe spacing with 480-nm light?

Section 32.4 Interferometry

19. Find the minimum thickness of a soap film ($n = 1.333$) in which 705-nm light will undergo constructive interference.
20. Light of unknown wavelength shines on a precisely machined glass wedge with refractive index 1.52. The closest point to the apex of the wedge where reflection is enhanced occurs where the wedge is 98 nm thick. Find the wavelength.
21. Monochromatic light shines on a glass wedge with refractive index 1.65, and enhanced reflection occurs where the wedge is 450 nm thick. Find all possible values for the wavelength in the visible range.
22. White light shines on a 98.0-nm-thick sliver of fluorite ($n = 1.43$). What wavelength is most strongly reflected?
23. For the soap film described in Conceptual Example 32.1's "Making the Connection," what portion of the film will appear dark when it's illuminated with white light?

Section 32.5 Huygens' Principle and Diffraction

24. For what ratio of slit width to wavelength will the first minima of a single-slit diffraction pattern occur at $\pm 90^\circ$?
25. Light with wavelength 615 nm is incident on a 2.40- μm -wide slit. Find the angular width of the central peak in the diffraction pattern, taken as the angular separation between the first minima.
26. You're inside a metal building that blocks radio waves, but you're trying to make a call with your cellphone, which broadcasts at a frequency of 950 MHz. Down the hall from you is a narrow window measuring 35 cm wide. What's the horizontal angular width of the beam (i.e., the angle between the first minima) from your phone as it emerges from the window?
27. Find the intensity as a fraction of the central peak intensity for the second secondary maximum in single-slit diffraction, assuming the peak lies midway between the second and third minima.

Section 32.6 The Diffraction Limit

28. Find the minimum angular separation resolvable with 627-nm laser light passing through a circular aperture of diameter 2.8 cm.
29. Find the minimum telescope aperture that could resolve an object with angular diameter 0.41 arcsecond, observed at 515-nm wavelength. (Note: 1 arcsec = $1/3600^\circ$.)
30. What's the longest wavelength of light you could use to resolve a structure with angular diameter 0.43 mrad, using a microscope with a 1.8-mm-diameter objective lens?
31. In bright light, the human eye's pupil diameter is about 2 mm. If diffraction were the limiting factor, what's the eye's minimum angular resolution under these conditions, assuming 550-nm light?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

32. **Example 32.2:** Atomic hydrogen emits a total of four spectral lines in the visible part of the spectrum. In addition to the two used in Example 32.2, H γ and H δ are at 434.0 nm and 410.2 nm, respectively. Find the angular separation of these two lines when observed with the spectrometer of Example 32.2.
33. **Example 32.2:** Two of the four visible spectral lines of atomic hydrogen (whose wavelengths are given either in Example 32.2 or in the preceding problem) exhibit an angular separation of 8.1° when observed with the spectrometer of Example 32.2. Which two lines are they?
34. **Example 32.2:** Atomic sodium produces two prominent spectral lines at 588.995 nm and 589.592 nm. Find the angular separation between these lines when observed in third order using a spectrometer with 2300 lines per cm.
35. **Example 32.2:** Consider a grating spectrometer where the spacing d between lines is large enough compared with the wavelength of light that you can apply the small-angle approximation $\sin \theta \approx \theta$ in Equation 32.1a. Find an expression for the line spacing d required for a given (small) angular separation $\Delta\theta$ between spectral lines with wavelengths λ_1 and λ_2 , when observed in first order.

36. **Example 32.5:** Find the minimum asteroid size in Example 32.5 if it were imaged with the 6.5-m James Webb Space Telescope observing at an infrared wavelength of 850 nm.
37. **Example 32.5:** An asteroid as small as 35 m in diameter could pose a threat to a city. What size telescope mirror would be needed to image such an asteroid when it's 1.20 Gm from Earth (roughly three times the Moon's distance)? Assume it's imaged at an optical wavelength of 535 nm.
38. **Example 32.5:** You've got binoculars with 28-mm-diameter lenses. You're observing two bees on a flower 840 m distant. What's the minimum separation between the bees for you to be able to resolve them as two distinct insects? Assume visible light with 550-nm wavelength.
39. **Example 32.5:** *WorldView-4* is a satellite that images Earth's surface for commercial purposes. It orbits Earth at 610 km altitude and achieves its highest resolution of 31 cm at a wavelength of 460 nm. Find the diameter of the mirror that *WorldView-4* uses for its imaging.

Problems

40. Find the angular position of the second-order bright fringe in a double-slit system whose slit spacing is $1.5 \mu\text{m}$ for (a) red light at 640 nm, (b) yellow light at 580 nm, and (c) violet light at 410 nm.
41. A double-slit experiment has slit spacing 0.035 mm, slit-to-screen distance 1.5 m, and wavelength 490 nm. What's the phase difference between two waves arriving at a point 0.56 cm from the center line of the screen?
42. A tube of glowing gas emits light at 550 nm and 400 nm. In a double-slit apparatus, what's the lowest-order 550-nm bright fringe that will fall on a 400-nm dark fringe, and what are the fringes' corresponding orders?
43. On the screen of a multiple-slit system, the interference pattern shows bright maxima separated by 0.80° and seven minima between each bright maximum. (a) How many slits are there? (b) What's the slit separation if the incident light has wavelength 656.3 nm?
44. You're designing a spectrometer whose specifications call for a minimum of 5° separation between the red hydrogen- α line at 656 nm and the yellow sodium line at 589 nm when the two are observed in third order with a grating spectrometer. Available gratings have 2500 lines/cm, 3500 lines/cm, or 4500 lines/cm. What's the coarsest grating you can use?
45. What order is necessary to resolve 647.98-nm and 648.07-nm spectral lines using a 4500-line grating?
46. A thin film of toluene ($n = 1.49$) floats on water. Find the minimum film thickness if the most strongly reflected light has wavelength 460 nm.
47. NASA asks you to assess the feasibility of a single-mirror space-based optical telescope that could resolve an Earth-sized planet 5 light-years away. What do you conclude?
48. In the second-order spectrum from a diffraction grating, yellow light at 588 nm overlaps violet light (wavelength range 390 nm–450 nm) diffracted in a different order. What's the exact wavelength of the violet light, and what's the order of its diffraction?
49. X-ray diffraction in potassium chloride (KCl) results in a first-order maximum when 97-pm-wavelength X-rays graze the crystal plane at 8.5° . Find the spacing between crystal planes.
50. As a soap bubble with $n = 1.333$ evaporates and thins, reflected colors gradually disappear. What are (a) the bubble thickness just as the last vestige of color vanishes and (b) the last color seen?
51. An oil film with refractive index 1.25 floats on water. The film thickness varies from $0.80 \mu\text{m}$ to $2.1 \mu\text{m}$. If 630-nm light is incident normally on the film, at how many locations will it undergo enhanced reflection?

52. **DATA** The table below lists the angular positions of the bright fringes that result when monochromatic laser light shines through a diffraction grating, as a function of order m . The spacing between lines of the grating is $d = 3.2 \mu\text{m}$. Determine a quantity that, when plotted against m , should give a straight line. Plot the data, determine a best-fit line, and use the result to find the wavelength of the light.

Order, m	0	1	2	3	4	5
Angular position	0.0°	9.2°	22°	30°	48°	64°

53. Two perfectly flat glass plates are separated at one end by a sheet of paper 0.065 mm thick. 535-nm light illuminates the plates from above, as shown in Fig. 32.28. How many bright bands appear to an observer looking down on the plates?

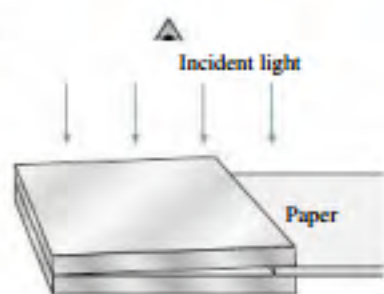


FIGURE 32.28 Problems 53, 54, and 66

54. An air wedge like that of Fig. 32.28 shows N bright bands when illuminated from above. Find an expression for the number of bands if the air is replaced by a liquid of refractive index n different from that of the glass.
55. A Michelson interferometer uses light from glowing hydrogen at 486.1 nm. As you move one mirror, 527 bright fringes pass a fixed point in the viewer. How far did the mirror move?
56. Find the wavelength of light used in a Michelson interferometer if 570 bright fringes go by a fixed point when the mirror moves 0.155 mm.
57. One arm of a Michelson interferometer is 42.5 cm long and is enclosed in a box that can be evacuated. The box initially contains air, which is gradually pumped out. In the process, 388 bright fringes pass a point in the viewer. If the interferometer uses light with wavelength 641.6 nm, what's the air's refractive index?
58. You're driving over a bridge at 65.0 km/h, listening to an AM radio station broadcasting at 535 kHz. The station's transmitting antenna is directly behind you, and its signals are reaching your car both directly and after reflecting off a metal bridge structure ahead of you. The resulting interference means that you experience a varying signal strength. What's the time you perceive between the maximum signal strength and the following minimum signal?
59. A laser-based spacecraft accelerator (see Application Starshot! on page 597) requires that a laser spot 6.0 m in diameter be focused from Earth on a spacecraft that's 66 Mm distant. Given a laser wavelength of $1.06 \mu\text{m}$, what's the effective aperture diameter required for the optical system that shapes the laser beam?
60. Suppose one of the 10-m-diameter Keck Telescopes in Hawaii is trained on San Francisco, 3400 km away. Assuming 550-nm light, and ignoring atmospheric distortion, would it be possible to read (a) newspaper headlines or (b) a billboard sign at this distance? (c) Repeat for the case of the Keck optical interferometer, formed from the two 10-m Keck Telescopes and several smaller ones, with a 50-m effective aperture.
61. A camera has an $f/1.4$ lens, meaning the ratio of focal length to lens diameter is 1.4. Find the smallest spot diameter (i.e., the diameter of the first diffraction minimum) to which this lens can focus parallel light with 610-nm wavelength.
62. The CIA wants your help identifying individual terrorists in a photo of a training camp taken from a spy satellite at

100-km altitude. You ask for details of the optical system used, but they're classified. However, they do tell you that the optics are diffraction limited and can resolve facial features as small as 5 cm. Assuming a typical optical wavelength of 550 nm, what do you conclude about the size of the mirror or lens in the satellite camera?

63. **BIO** While driving at night, your eyes' irises dilate to 3.1-mm diameter. If your vision were diffraction limited, what would be the greatest distance at which you could see the two headlights of an oncoming car, spaced 1.6 m apart, distinctly? Take $\lambda = 550 \text{ nm}$.
64. Under the best conditions, atmospheric turbulence limits ground-based telescopes' resolution to about 1 arcsecond ($1/3600$ of a degree). For what apertures is this limitation more severe than that of diffraction at 550 nm? (Your answer shows why large ground-based telescopes don't generally produce better images than small ones, although they do gather more light.)
65. **BIO** You're a biologist studying rhinoviruses, which cause the common cold. These are among the smallest viruses, some 50 nm in diameter, and you can't image them with your optical microscope using visible light (average wavelength about 560 nm). A sales rep tries to sell you an expensive microscope using 280-nm ultraviolet light, saying it will resolve structures half the size that's resolvable with your current microscope. Is the rep correct? Will the new microscope resolve your rhinoviruses?
66. An air wedge like that of Fig. 32.28 displays 10,003 bright bands when illuminated from above. If the region between the plates is then evacuated, the number of bands drops to 10,000. Find the refractive index of the air.
67. A thin-walled glass tube of length L containing a gas of unknown refractive index is placed in one arm of a Michelson interferometer using light of wavelength λ . The tube is then evacuated. During the process, m bright fringes pass a fixed point in the viewer. Find an expression for the refractive index of the gas.
68. Light is incident on a diffraction grating at angle α to the normal. Show that the condition for maximum light intensity becomes $d(\sin \theta \pm \sin \alpha) = m\lambda$.
69. The Laser Interferometer Gravitational-Wave Observatory (LIGO) shown in Fig. 32.16 is essentially a Michelson interferometer as diagrammed in Fig. 32.15. Laser light with wavelength 1064 nm reflects 280 times as it traverses the 4-km arms of the interferometer, making the effective one-way path length 1120 km. Suppose that a gravitational wave causes the actual length of one 4-km arm to change by a mere 1.2 attometers (am; $1.2 \times 10^{-18} \text{ m}$). (a) Find the corresponding change in the longer effective path length that accounts for the multiple reflections. (b) By what fraction of a fringe spacing will the interference pattern shift, assuming the perpendicular arm is unaffected? It's this tiny effect that LIGO successfully measures.
70. **CH** The intensity of the single-slit diffraction pattern can be calculated by summing the amplitudes of infinitely many field amplitudes corresponding to waves from every infinitesimal part of the slit. (a) Referring to Fig. 32.20, show that the field from an element of slit width dy , a distance y from the bottom edge of the slit, is $dE = (E_p dy/a) \sin(\omega t + \phi(y))$, where $\phi(y) = (2\pi y/\lambda) \sin \theta$. (b) Integrate dE over the entire slit from $y = 0$ to $y = a$, and use trig identities from Appendix A to find the total amplitude and from there show that the average intensity is given by Equation 32.10.
71. You're on an international panel charged with allocating "real estate" for communications satellites in geostationary orbit. You're to estimate how many satellites could fit in geostationary orbit without receivers on the ground picking up multiple signals. Satellites broadcast at 12 GHz and receiver dishes are 47 cm in

diameter. Use the Raleigh criterion to estimate the number of satellites allowed in geostationary orbit if each receiver dish is to “see” just one satellite. Make the simplifying assumption that all dishes are located on the equator and that each is pointed at the nearest satellite. (*Hint:* Consult Example 8.3).

72. You’re investigating an oil spill for your state environmental protection agency. There’s a thin film of oil on water, and you know its refractive index is $n_{\text{oil}} = 1.39$. You shine white light vertically on the oil and use a spectrometer to determine that the most strongly reflected wavelength is 555 nm. Assuming first order thin-film interference, what do you report for the thickness of the oil slick?

Passage Problems

Even the nearest stars are so distant that a single diffraction-limited telescope capable of imaging Earth-sized planets orbiting them would be hopelessly large (see Problem 47). Astronomers get around this limitation using *interferometry* to combine data from several telescopes, producing an instrument that acts like a single telescope with aperture equal to the distance between the individual telescopes (Fig. 32.29). The technological challenge is to combine the signals with their relative phase intact; for this reason, interferometry has been used successfully for decades in radio astronomy but only recently with optical telescopes.

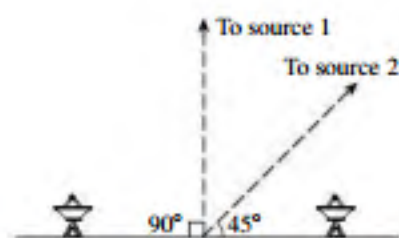


FIGURE 32.29 A two-dish interferometer used for radio astronomy (Passage Problems 73–76). Dashed lines show directions to sources in Problems 75 and 76.

73. If the separation of two telescopes comprising an interferometer is doubled, the angular separation between two sources just barely resolvable by the interferometer will
- not change.
 - decrease by a factor of $1/\sqrt{2}$.
 - halve.
 - double.
74. If the separation of two telescopes comprising an interferometer is doubled, the instrument’s light-collecting power will
- not change.
 - increase by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$.
 - double.
 - quadruple.

75. If a point source is located directly above a two-telescope interferometer, on the perpendicular bisector of the line joining the telescopes (source 1 in Fig. 32.29), electromagnetic waves reaching the two will be
- in phase.
 - out of phase by 45° .
 - out of phase by 90° .
 - you can’t tell without further information
76. If a point source is located on a line at 45° to the line joining the two telescopes (source 2 in Fig. 32.29), electromagnetic waves reaching the two will be
- in phase.
 - out of phase by 45° .
 - out of phase by 90° .
 - you can’t tell without further information

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The phenomenon of diffraction ultimately limits our ability to form images with any optical systems, including spy satellites and other telescopes, as well as microscopes.

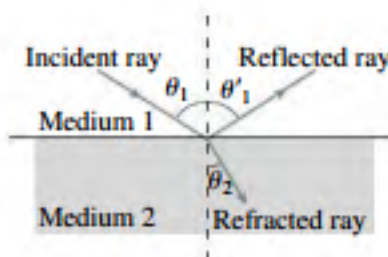
Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 32.1 (a)
 32.2 (a)
 32.3 (1) (c); (2) (a); (3) (b)
 32.4 (b)
 32.5 The lower frequency sound waves have longer wavelengths, and therefore they diffract more at both doors. So the bass gets into your room, but the higher frequencies don’t.
 32.6 (c)

Optics is the study of light and its behavior. **Geometrical optics** is an approximation that holds when the objects with which light interacts are much larger than its wavelength. In this case, light generally

travels in straight lines called **rays**. **Physical optics**, in contrast, treats light explicitly as a wave. Physical optics explains a host of phenomena that ultimately involve the interference of light waves.

When light rays are incident on an interface between two materials, they generally undergo **reflection** and, for transparent materials, **refraction**. The angles of incidence and reflection are equal. **Snell's law** relates the angles of incidence and refraction:



Reflection: $\theta'_1 = \theta_1$

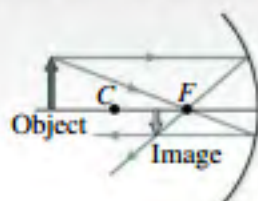
Refraction (Snell's law):

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2$$

The **index of refraction** n relates light's speed in a medium to its speed c in vacuum:

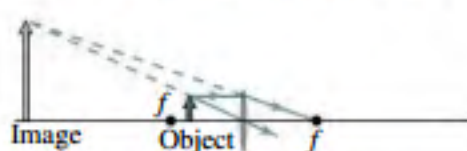
$$n = \frac{c}{v}$$

Lenses and curved mirrors use refraction and reflection, respectively, to form images.



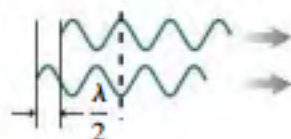
In both cases the object distance s , image distance s' , and **focal length** f are related by $\frac{1}{s} + \frac{1}{s'} = \frac{1}{f}$.

With **real images**, shown in both figures above, light actually comes from the image. With **virtual images**, shown in both figures below, light only *appears* to come from the image:

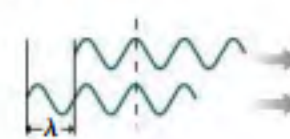


The wave nature of light becomes important when light interacts with objects comparable in size to its wavelength, or when light travels different paths and recombines to produce interference.

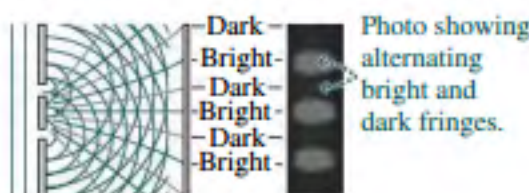
Destructive interference occurs when waves are out of step by an odd-integer multiple of a half-wavelength.



Constructive interference occurs when waves are out of step by an integer multiple of the wavelength.



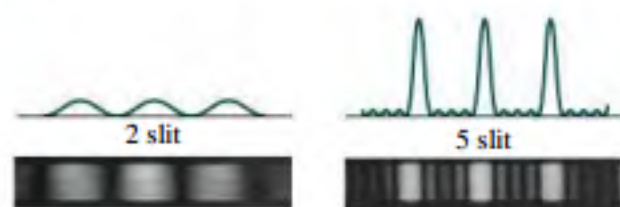
A system consisting of two narrow slits produces a pattern of **interference fringes** resulting from alternating regions of constructive and destructive interference:



$$d \sin \theta = m\lambda \quad (\text{bright fringes})$$

$$d \sin \theta = (m + \frac{1}{2})\lambda \quad (\text{dark fringes})$$

With multiple slits the bright fringes become narrower and brighter:

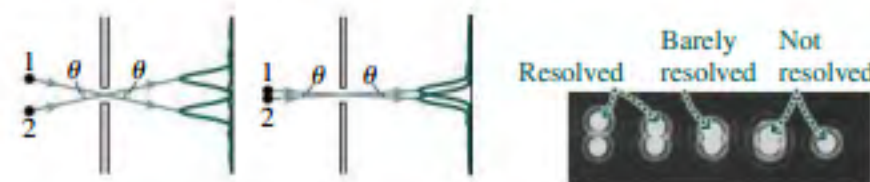


A multiple-slit system constitutes a **diffraction grating** and is used to separate different wavelengths in **spectroscopy**.

Huygens' principle explains the propagation of waves by stating that each part of a wavefront acts as a source of circular waves that spread out and interfere to propagate the wave. When light passes through small apertures or by sharp edges, Huygens' principle shows that the light **diffracts**, bending and producing interference fringes as waves from different points interfere.



Diffraction fundamentally limits our ability to resolve small objects or to see closely spaced but distant objects as separate.



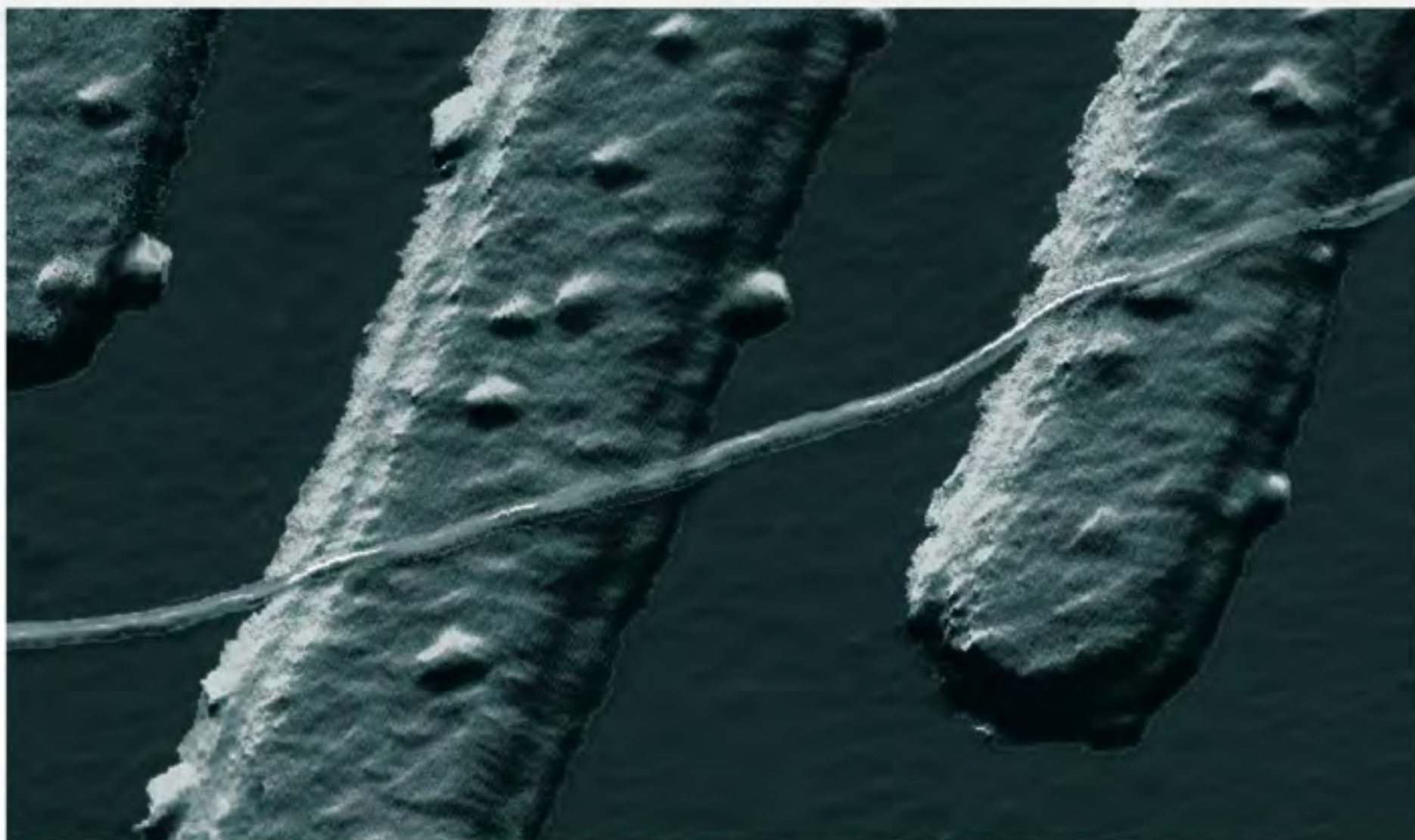
For a circular aperture of diameter d (such as a telescope with d being its mirror diameter), the **diffraction limit** gives the smallest angular separation that can be resolved at a given wavelength λ :

$$\theta_{\min} = \frac{1.22\lambda}{d}$$

Part Five Challenge Problem

A double-slit system consists of two slits each of width a , with separation d between the slit centers ($d > a$). Light of intensity S_0 and wavelength λ is incident on the system, perpendicular to the plane containing the slits. Find an expression for the outgoing intensity as a function of angular position θ , taking into account both the slit width and the separation. Plot your result for the case $d = 4a$, and compare with Fig. 32.22.

Modern Physics



The world's smallest electrical wire, a carbon nanotube, is only ten atoms across. In this image made with an atomic force microscope, the nanotube wire runs across a backdrop of platinum electrodes. Our understanding of physics at the atomic and molecular level lets us construct an increasing variety of practical nanoscale devices.

OVERVIEW

What are the fundamental particles of matter? What holds them together to make protons, neutrons, nuclei, atoms, molecules, and solids? Is nature fundamentally predictable, or does uncertainty rule in the microscopic world? At the other extreme, how big is the universe? How did it begin, and how will it end? All these are questions for relativity and quantum physics—collectively called

“modern physics” because they were developed after the turn of the 20th century. In Part 6, we give a brief account of Einstein’s theory of relativity, followed by a glimpse at quantum physics and its applications. We end with an overview of the latest developments in fundamental physics, from the nature of elementary particles to surprising new findings about the origin and composition of the universe.



Relativity

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 33.1 Describe the 19th-century concept of ether as the medium for electromagnetic waves.
- LO 33.2 Explain the Michelson–Morley experiment and how it led to what seemed like a contradiction in physics.
- LO 33.3 Articulate the principle of relativity.
- LO 33.4 Calculate time dilation and length contraction associated with the relative motion of different reference frames.
- LO 33.5 Explain what's meant by the statement that simultaneity is relative.
- LO 33.6 Use the Lorentz transformations to find space and time coordinates of events in different reference frames.
- LO 33.7 Evaluate energy and momentum in different reference frames, and tell the meaning of the equation $E = mc^2$.
- LO 33.8 Describe qualitatively how relativity reveals an intimate connection between electricity and magnetism.
- LO 33.9 Tell how the general theory of relativity provides a geometrical description of gravity and list some of the theory's predictions.

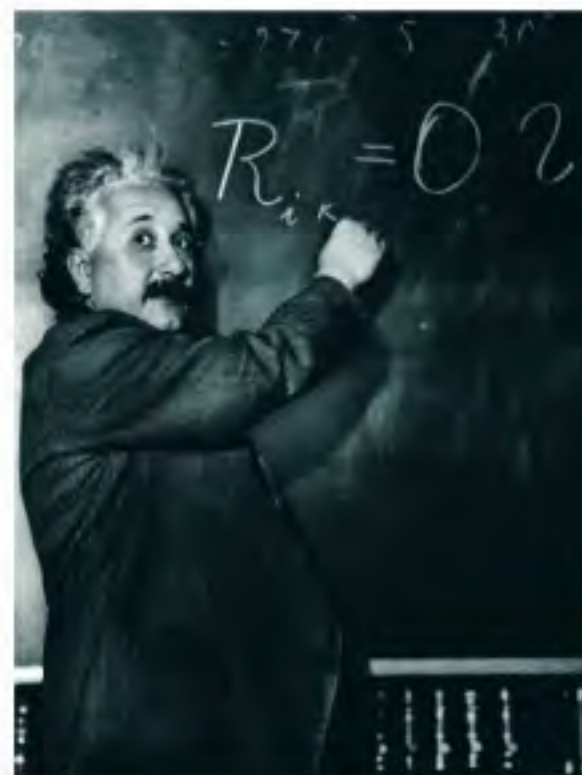
Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Momentum (Sections 4.2 and 9.2)
- Work and kinetic energy (Section 6.4)
- Escape speed (Section 8.4)
- The electromagnetic force (Section 26.2)
- The Michelson interferometer (Section 32.4)

Maxwell's electromagnetic theory was a crowning achievement of 19th-century physics, providing an understanding of the nature of light and enabling a host of practical technologies. At the same time, Maxwell's electromagnetism led to baffling questions and contradictions that shook the roots of physical understanding and even of common sense.

The theory of relativity resolved these contradictions. It radically altered our fundamental understanding of the physical world, and its influence spilled over into all areas of human thought. Relativity stands as a monument to human intellect and imagination, and it reveals a universe far richer than earlier physicists could conceive of. We'll approach relativity historically, building on your understanding of electromagnetism. That way you'll get a sense of the questions that electromagnetism posed to 19th-century physicists and of how Einstein's answer to these questions was at once profoundly bold and sweepingly simple.

Behind Einstein's theories is a profoundly simple principle that can be stated in a single sentence. What is it?



33.1 Speed c Relative to What?

LO 33.1 *Describe the 19th-century concept of ether as the medium for electromagnetic waves.*

Maxwell's equations show that electromagnetic waves in vacuum propagate with speed c . Speed c relative to what? In Chapter 14 we found the speed of waves on a string; the speed in that case was relative to the string. Similarly, the 340-m/s speed of sound in air is relative to the air. If you move through the air, the speed of sound *relative to you* won't be the same. In these and other cases of mechanical waves, the wave speed is the speed relative to the medium in which the wave is a disturbance.

The Ether Concept

What about light? Nineteenth-century physicists, their worldview built on the highly successful mechanical paradigm of Newtonian physics, supposed that light waves were like mechanical waves and required a medium. They postulated a tenuous substance called the **ether** that permeated the entire universe, allowing light from distant stars to reach us. Electric and magnetic fields were stresses in the ether, and electromagnetic waves were propagating disturbances moving through the ether at speed c .

The ether had to have some unusual properties. It must offer no resistance to material bodies, or the planets would lose energy and spiral into the Sun. It must be very stiff, to account for the high speed of light. And it had to be more jelly-like than fluid, because fluids can't support *transverse* waves, and, as you saw in Chapter 29, electromagnetic waves are transverse. These properties make ether a rather improbable substance, but to 19th-century physicists the ether was essential in understanding electromagnetic waves.

The speed of light c follows from Maxwell's equations. But in the 19th-century view, light has speed c only for an observer at rest with respect to the ether. Therefore, Maxwell's equations could be correct only in the ether frame of reference. This put electromagnetism in a rather different position from mechanics. In mechanics, the concept of absolute motion is meaningless. You can eat your dinner, toss a ball, or do any mechanical experiment as well on an airplane moving steadily at 1000 km/h as you can when the plane is at rest on the ground. This is the principle of **Galilean relativity**, which states that the laws of mechanics are valid in all inertial reference frames—that is, frames of reference in uniform motion (Section 4.2). But the laws of electromagnetism seemed valid only in the ether's reference frame because only in this frame was the prediction of electromagnetic waves moving at speed c correct.

So for 19th-century physicists, the laws for one branch of physics (mechanics) seemed to work in all inertial frames, while those of another branch (electromagnetism) could not. Despite this dichotomy, physicists had great faith in mechanical models and in the ether concept, for without the ether the question “speed c relative to what?” seemed impossible to answer. Thus the late 19th century saw a flurry of experiments to detect the ether. Ultimately they failed, paving the way for the new worldview of relativity that, in Einstein's own words, “arose from necessity, from serious and deep contradictions in the old theory from which there seemed no escape.”

33.2 Matter, Motion, and the Ether

LO 33.2 *Explain the Michelson–Morley experiment and how it led to what seemed like a contradiction in physics.*

It was natural for 19th-century physicists to ask about Earth's motion relative to the ether. If Earth is moving through the ether, then the speed of light should be different in different directions. On the other hand, Earth might be at rest relative to the ether. Because other planets, stars, and galaxies move with respect to Earth, it's hard to imagine that the ether is everywhere fixed with respect to Earth alone. This violates the Copernican view that Earth doesn't occupy a privileged spot in the universe. But maybe Earth drags with it the ether in its immediate vicinity. If this “ether drag” occurs, then the speed of light must be independent of direction, but if there's no ether drag, then the speed of light measured on Earth must depend on direction. Through observation and experiment, 19th-century physicists sought to resolve the question of Earth's motion through the ether.

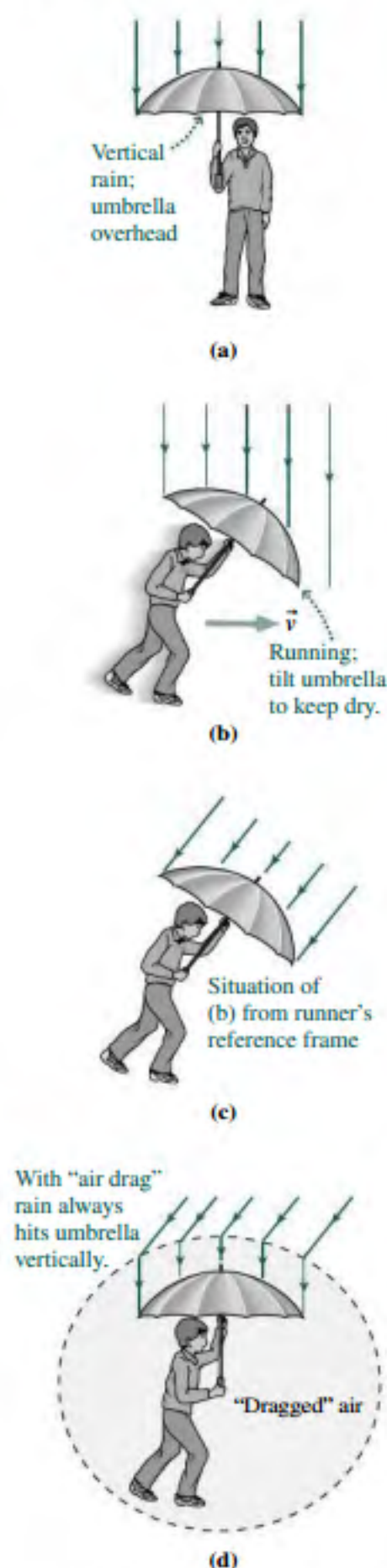


FIGURE 33.1 A rain/umbrella analogy for aberration of starlight.

Aberration of Starlight

Imagine standing in a rainstorm with rain falling vertically. To keep dry, you hold your umbrella with its shaft straight up, as shown in Fig. 33.1a. But if you run, as in Fig. 33.1b, you'll keep driest if you tilt your umbrella forward. Why? Because the direction of rainfall *relative to you* is at an angle, as shown in Fig. 33.1c. This assumes you don't drag with you a large volume of air. If such an "air drag" occurred, raindrops entering the region around you would be accelerated quickly in the horizontal direction by the air moving with you, so they would now fall vertically relative to you, as in Fig. 33.1d. No matter which way you ran, as long as you dragged air with you, you would point your umbrella vertically upward to stay dry.

This umbrella example is analogous to the observation of light from stars, with the rain being starlight and the umbrella a telescope. If Earth doesn't drag ether, then the direction from which starlight comes will depend on Earth's motion relative to the ether. But if "ether drag" occurs in analogy with Fig. 33.1d, then light from a particular star will always come from the same direction.

In fact we do observe a tiny change in the direction of starlight. As Earth swings around in its orbit, we must first point a telescope one way to see a particular star. Then, six months later, Earth's orbital motion is in exactly the opposite direction, and we must point the telescope in a slightly different direction. This phenomenon is called **aberration of starlight** and shows that *Earth does not drag the ether*.

The Michelson–Morley Experiment

If we reject the pre-Copernican notion that Earth alone is at rest relative to the ether, then aberration of starlight forces us to conclude that Earth moves through the ether. Furthermore, the relative velocity of the motion must change throughout the year as Earth orbits the Sun.

In 1881–1887, American scientists Albert A. Michelson and Edward W. Morley attempted to determine Earth's velocity relative to the ether. They used Michelson's interferometer (Fig. 33.2), whose operation we described in Chapter 32. Recall that the interferometer produces a pattern of interference fringes that shifts if the round-trip travel time for light on one of its two perpendicular arms changes. The interference pattern reflects, among other things, possible differences in travel times that arise from differences in the speed of light in different directions—differences that should result from Earth's motion through the ether. Rotating the apparatus through 90° would interchange the directions of the arms and should therefore shift the interference pattern.

Now suppose Earth moves at speed v relative to the ether. Then to an observer on Earth, there's an "ether wind" blowing past Earth. Suppose the Michelson–Morley apparatus is oriented with one light path parallel to the wind and the other perpendicular. Consider a light beam moving the distance L at right angles to the wind. The beam must be aimed slightly upwind so that it will actually move perpendicular to the wind. The light moves in this direction at speed c relative to the ether, but the ether wind sweeps it back so its path in the Michelson–Morley apparatus is at right angles to the wind. From Fig. 33.3, we see that its speed relative to the apparatus is $u = \sqrt{c^2 - v^2}$, so the round-trip travel time is

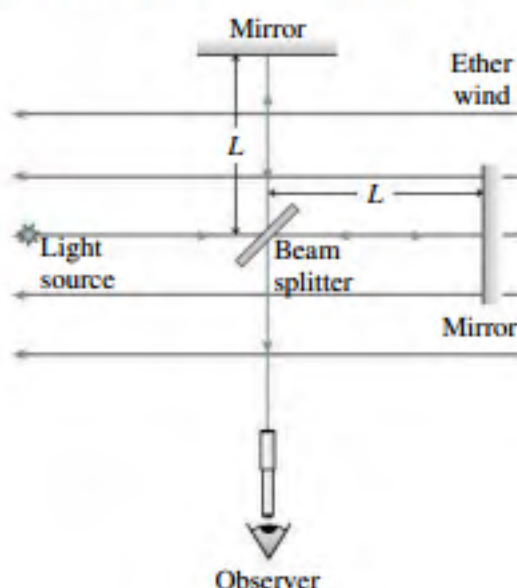


FIGURE 33.2 Simplified diagram of the Michelson–Morley experiment. Ether wind should result in a longer travel time for light on the horizontal arm.

$$t_{\text{perpendicular}} = \frac{2L}{u} = \frac{2L}{\sqrt{c^2 - v^2}} \quad (33.1)$$

Light sent a distance L “upstream”—against the ether wind—travels at speed c relative to the ether but at speed $c - v$ relative to Earth. It therefore takes time $t_{\text{upstream}} = L/(c - v)$. Returning, the light moves at $c + v$ relative to Earth, so $t_{\text{downstream}} = L/(c + v)$. The round-trip time parallel to the ether wind is then

$$t_{\text{parallel}} = \frac{L}{c - v} + \frac{L}{c + v} = \frac{2cL}{c^2 - v^2} \quad (33.2)$$

The two round-trip travel times differ, with the trip parallel to the ether wind always taking longer (see Exercises 11 and 12 and Problem 33). Light on the parallel trip slows when it moves against the ether wind, then speeds up when it moves with the wind. But slowing always dominates because the light spends more time moving against the wind than with it.

The Michelson–Morley experiment of 1887 was sensitive enough to detect differences in the speed of light an order of magnitude smaller than Earth’s orbital speed. The experiment was repeated with the apparatus oriented in different directions, and at different times throughout the year, and the same simple but striking result always emerged: There was never any difference in the travel times for the two light beams. In terms of the ether concept, the Michelson–Morley experiment showed that *Earth does not move relative to the ether*.

GOT IT?

33.1 Which sentence best describes the Michelson–Morley experiment? (a) The M–M experiment attempted to detect differences in the speed of light propagating in different directions relative to the ether wind. (b) The M–M experiment measured values for the speed of light in two mutually perpendicular directions. (c) The M–M experiment confirmed the aberration of starlight.

A Contradiction in Physics

Aberration of starlight shows that Earth doesn’t drag ether with it. Earth must therefore move relative to the ether. But the Michelson–Morley experiment shows that it doesn’t. This contradiction is a deep one, rooted in the fundamental laws of electromagnetism and in the analogy between mechanical waves and electromagnetic waves. The contradiction arises directly in trying to answer the simple question: With respect to what does light move at speed c ?

Physicists at the end of the 19th century made ingenious attempts to resolve the dilemma of light and the ether, but their explanations either were inconsistent with experiment or lacked sound conceptual bases.

33.3 Special Relativity

LO 33.3 Articulate the principle of relativity.

In 1905, at the age of 26, Albert Einstein (Fig. 33.4) presented his **special theory of relativity**, which resolved the dilemma but altered the very foundation of physical thought. Einstein declared simply that the ether is a fiction. But then with respect to what does light move at speed c ? With respect, Einstein declared, to anyone who cares to observe it. This statement is at once simple, radical, and conservative. Simple, because its meaning is clear and obvious. Anyone who measures the speed of light in vacuum will get the value $c = 3.0 \times 10^8$ m/s. Radical, because it alters our commonsense notions of space and time. Conservative, because it asserts for electromagnetism what had long been true in mechanics: that the laws of physics don’t depend on the motion of the observer. Einstein summarized his new ideas in the **principle of relativity**, which is expressed in this simple sentence:

The laws of physics are the same in all inertial reference frames.

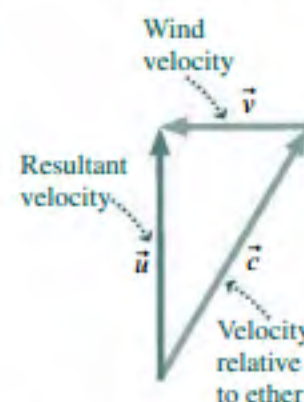


FIGURE 33.3 Vector diagram for light moving at right angles to an ether wind.



FIGURE 33.4 In 1905, when he formulated special relativity, Einstein was a 26-year-old father.

Recall that inertial frames are unaccelerated—that is, frames in which the laws of *mechanics* were already valid. Einstein’s statement encompasses *all* laws of physics, including mechanics and electromagnetism. The prediction that electromagnetic waves move at speed c must, then, be a universal prediction that holds in *all* inertial reference frames. The *special* theory of relativity is special because it’s valid only for the special case of inertial frames. Later we’ll discuss the *general* theory of relativity, which removes this restriction.

Einstein’s relativity explains the result of the Michelson–Morley experiment: No matter what Earth’s speed is relative to anything, an observer on Earth should measure the same speed for light in all directions. But at the same time, relativity flagrantly violates our commonsense notions of space and time. We’ll see just how in Sections 33.4–33.6.

33.4 Space and Time in Relativity

LO 33.4 Calculate time dilation and length contraction associated with the relative motion of different reference frames.

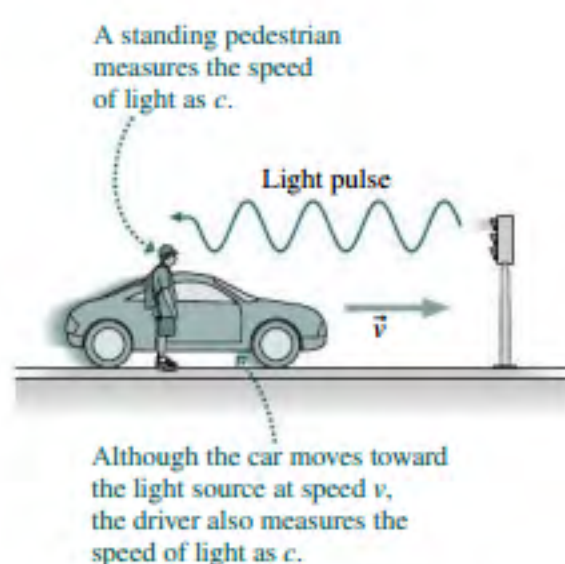


FIGURE 33.5 Both driver and pedestrian measure the same speed c for light, even though they’re in relative motion.

A pedestrian stands by the roadside as a car drives by (Fig. 33.5). Driver and pedestrian each measure the speed of light from a blinking traffic signal. The principle of relativity says they’ll both get the same value, $c = 3.0 \times 10^8$ m/s, even though the car is moving toward the light source. How is that possible? Consider how each observer might make the measurement. Each has a meter stick and an accurate stopwatch. Suppose a light flash passes the front end of each meter stick just as they coincide. Each observer measures the time for the flash to traverse the 1-m stick and calculates *speed* = *distance*/*time*. They get the same answer—even though common sense suggests that the light should pass the far end of the “moving” meter stick sooner.

How can this be? Maybe the car’s motion affects the driver’s stopwatch, making it inaccurate. But no; this suggestion violates relativity’s assertion that *all* uniformly moving reference frames are equally good vantage points for doing physics. There can’t be anything special about the “moving” reference frame; in fact, it’s meaningless to talk about the car as “moving” and the pedestrian “at rest.” This is the point of relativity: The concept of absolute motion is meaningless.

The only way out, consistent with relativity, is to let go of absolute space and time. Our two observers’ instruments are measuring different quantities that depend on their reference frame—namely, the distance and travel time for the light flash. Those quantities differ in just the right way to make the speed of light come out the same for both observers. This is certainly not what common sense tells us about space and time. But in relativity it’s the laws of physics, not measures of space and time, that must be the same for all. Keep in mind the principle of relativity, and you’ll see how the rest of special relativity’s remarkable consequences follow.

Time Dilation

Figure 33.6a shows a “light box,” consisting of a box of length L with a light source at one end and a mirror at the other. A light flash leaves the source, reflects off the mirror, and returns to the source. We want the time between two events: the emission of the flash and its return to the source. An **event** is an occurrence specified by giving its position and its time.

For concreteness, we’ll imagine that the light box is in a spaceship moving past Earth at a uniform velocity. But don’t think there’s something special about space or spaceships. The whole point of relativity is that all inertial frames are equivalent places for doing physics, and our spaceship is just one inertial reference frame. We’ll call that frame S' . There’s also an accurate clock, C , in the spaceship, and C reads zero just as the light flash is emitted.

In Fig. 33.6a we consider the light-box experiment viewed in the spaceship’s reference frame. Since the light box is at rest in this frame, the light travels a round-trip distance $2L$ from source to mirror and back, giving a round-trip travel time of $\Delta t' = 2L/c$. This is the time read on the spaceship’s clock C .

Now consider the situation as viewed in Earth’s reference frame, which we’ll call S . In this frame, spaceship and light box are moving to the right with speed v , as shown in Fig. 33.6b. Suppose there are two clocks in Earth’s frame, positioned so the light box passes clock C_1 just as the flash is emitted, and passes C_2 just as the flash returns to the source. The clocks

are synchronized, and C_1 reads zero just as the light flash is emitted. We want to know C_2 's reading at the instant the light box passes it and the flash returns to its source; that will be the time, Δt , between the flash emission and return as measured in Earth's frame S .

Figure 33.6b shows that the box moves to the right a distance $v \Delta t$ in the time between emission and return of the light flash. Meanwhile the light takes a diagonal path up to the mirror of the moving box and then back down. The path length is twice the diagonal from source to mirror or, by the Pythagorean theorem, $2\sqrt{L^2 + (v \Delta t/2)^2}$. The time for light to go this distance is the distance divided by the speed of light, or $\Delta t = 2\sqrt{L^2 + (v \Delta t/2)^2}/c$. We explicitly used relativity here, assuming the speed of light remained c in Earth's frame. If we didn't believe relativity, we would have vectorially added light's velocity $\vec{c}$ and the box's velocity $\vec{v}$. But that would make the spaceship's frame the only one in which the speed of light was c —in violation of the relativity principle.

The unknown Δt appears on both sides of our expression; multiplying through by c and squaring gives

$$c^2(\Delta t)^2 = 4L^2 + v^2(\Delta t)^2$$

We then solve for $(\Delta t)^2$ to get

$$(\Delta t)^2 = \frac{4L^2}{c^2 - v^2} = \frac{4L^2}{c^2} \left(\frac{1}{1 - v^2/c^2} \right)$$

Taking the square root of both sides, and noting that $2L/c$ is just the time $\Delta t'$ measured in the frame S' at rest with respect to the box, we have $\Delta t = \Delta t' / \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$ or

$$\Delta t' = \Delta t \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2} \quad (\text{time dilation}) \quad (33.3)$$

$\Delta t'$ is the time between two events in a reference frame where they occur at the same place. It's measured by a single clock.

Δt is the time between two events in a reference frame where they occur at different places. It's measured by two clocks.

v is the relative speed of the two reference frames.

c is the speed of light.

Equation 33.3 describes the phenomenon of **time dilation**, in which the time between two events is shortest in a frame of reference in which the two events occur at the same place. In our example, the events are the emission and return of the light flash, and they occur at the same place in the spaceship frame S' —namely, at the bottom of the box. They don't occur at the same place in the Earth frame S because the box moves relative to Earth, so the bottom of the box isn't at the same place when the light flash returns as it was when the flash was emitted. Thus $\Delta t'$ —the time interval measured in the spaceship frame S' , where the events occur at the same place—is shorter than Δt , as you can see from Equation 33.3 and as illustrated in Fig. 33.7.

The shorter time $\Delta t'$ that's measured by a single clock present at two events is called a **proper time**. Here “proper” doesn't mean “correct” or “right”—that would violate relativity, since a time measurement in any inertial frame has equal claim to being valid. Rather, “proper” is used in the sense of “proprietary” in that proper time is the time that *belongs* to this one particular clock. In Earth frame S there's no single clock present at both the emission and return of the light flash, so the time measurement in this frame doesn't “belong” to any one clock.

Time dilation is sometimes characterized by saying “moving clocks run slow,” but this statement violates the spirit of relativity because it suggests that some frames are “really” moving and others aren't. The whole point of relativity is that all inertial frames are equally good for describing physical reality, so none can claim to be “at rest” while others are “moving.” What the statement “moving clocks run slow” is trying to convey is what we've just seen: The time interval between two events is shortest in a reference frame where the two occur at the same place. There's no significance whatever to our putting the light box in a “moving” spaceship and comparing ship time with Earth time. We could equally well have put the light box and its clock on Earth, and two separate clocks in the ship. Then Earth with its light box would be moving past the ship at speed v —so the Earth clock would measure the time $\Delta t'$ in Equation 33.3, and the two clocks in the ship frame would measure the

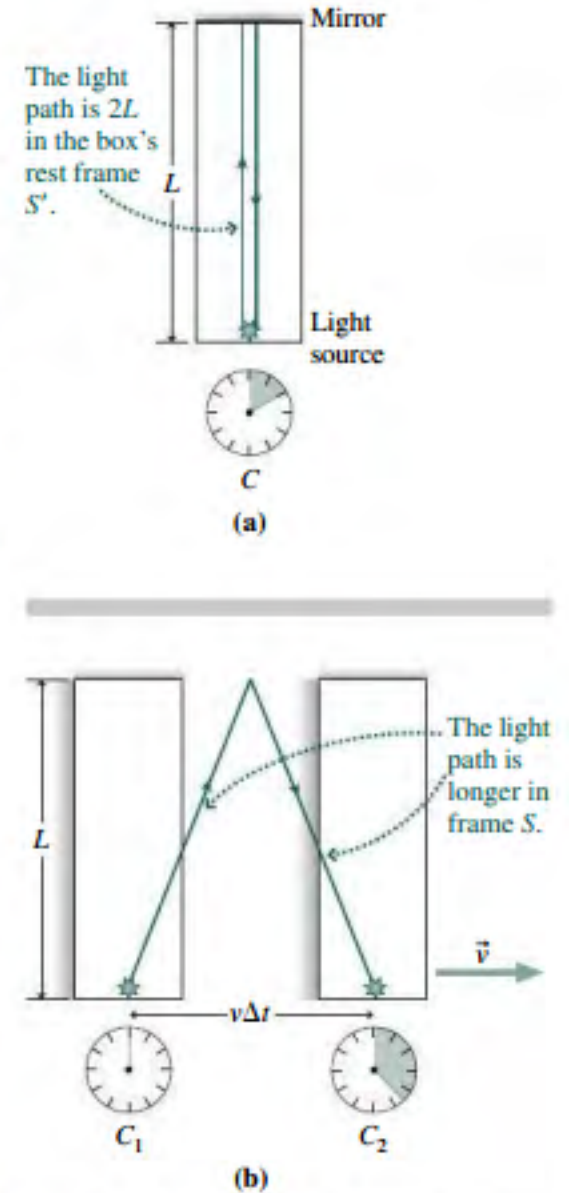


FIGURE 33.6 A “light box” to explore time dilation shown (a) in a reference frame S' at rest with respect to the box and (b) in a frame S where the box is moving to the right.



FIGURE 33.7 Clock C moves between clocks C_1 and C_2 , which are at rest relative to each other and synchronized in their rest frame. C measures a shorter elapsed time.

longer time Δt . (That may sound like a contradiction, but it can't be because *there's nothing special about any inertial frame, including Earth's*. We'll return to this point shortly.)

We used a light box to illustrate time dilation. But time dilation isn't something that happens only when we use light to determine time intervals. It's something that happens to *time itself*. Take away the light box in Fig. 33.6, and the clocks will show the same discrepancy. Don't look for a physical mechanism that slows things down. All manifestations of time—the oscillations of the quartz crystal in a digital watch, the swing of a pendulum clock, the period of vibration of atoms in an atomic clock, biological rhythms, and human lifetimes—are affected in the same way.

EXAMPLE 33.1

Calculating Time Dilation: Star Trek

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A spaceship leaves Earth on a one-way star trip that earthbound observers judge will take 25 years. If the ship travels at $0.95c$ relative to Earth, how long will the trip take as judged by observers in the ship?

INTERPRET This is a problem about time dilation. Since the events of departure from Earth and arrival at the star occur at the same place in the ship's reference frame, we identify the ship time as the proper time $\Delta t'$ and the Earth time as Δt in our discussion of time dilation.

DEVELOP Equation 33.3, $\Delta t' = \Delta t \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$, relates the two times. We're given the Earth time Δt , so we can use this equation to find $\Delta t'$.

EVALUATE With $v = 0.95c$, $v/c = 0.95$ and the quantity v^2/c^2 in Equation 33.3 becomes 0.95^2 . Then

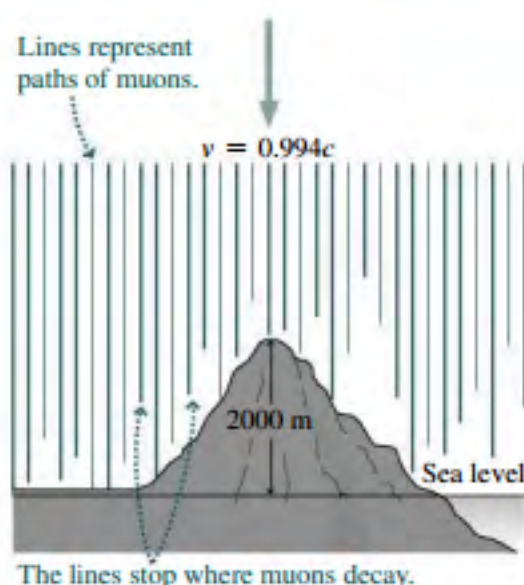
$$\Delta t' = \Delta t \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2} = (25 \text{ y}) \sqrt{1 - 0.95^2} = 7.8 \text{ y}$$

ASSESS This time is considerably shorter than 25 years, confirming our statement that the time between events is shortest as measured in a reference frame where the events occur at the same place. We'll soon explore what happens if the ship turns around and returns to Earth.

You don't notice time dilation in everyday life because the factor v^2/c^2 is so small for even your fastest motion relative to Earth. Even in a jet airplane, the time difference amounts to a few milliseconds per century. This illustrates the important point that any results from relativity should agree with commonsense Newtonian physics when relative velocities are small compared with the speed of light. Since your intuition and common sense are built on experience at low relative velocities, it's not surprising that effects at high relative velocities seem counter to your common sense.

APPLICATION

Mountains and Muons



Time dilation is obvious in experiments with subatomic particles moving, relative to us, at speeds near c . In a classic experiment, the "clocks" are the lifetimes of particles called muons, which are created by the interaction of cosmic rays with Earth's upper atmosphere and subsequently decay. The experiment consists in counting the number of muons incident each hour on the top of Mt. Washington

in New Hampshire, about 2000 m above sea level. The measurement is then repeated at sea level. The figure shows the situation in Earth's reference frame.

Using a detector that records only those muons moving at about $0.994c$ at the mountaintop altitude, the experiment shows that an average of about 560 muons with this speed are incident on the mountaintop each hour. If the mountain weren't there, the muons would travel from the mountaintop altitude to sea level in a time given by

$$\Delta t = \frac{2000 \text{ m}}{(0.994)(3.0 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})} = 6.7 \mu\text{s}$$

The muon's decay rate is such that one should expect only about 25 of the original 560 muons to remain after a $6.7\text{-}\mu\text{s}$ interval, so that's approximately the number we might expect to detect each hour at sea level. However, that $6.7\text{-}\mu\text{s}$ interval is measured in Earth's reference frame—not the muons'. In the muons' frame, time dilation should reduce that interval to

$$\Delta t' = (6.7 \mu\text{s}) \sqrt{1 - 0.994^2} = 0.73 \mu\text{s}$$

The muons' decay is determined by *their* measure of time, and their decay rate is such that we should expect 414 muons to survive for $0.73 \mu\text{s}$.

So what happens? Observers count just over 400 muons per hour at sea level. This is no subtle effect. The difference between 25 and 414 is dramatic. At $0.994c$, the nonrelativistic description is hopelessly inadequate, and time dilation is obvious.

The Twin Paradox

Time dilation lets us travel into the future! The so-called twin paradox shows how. One twin boards a spaceship for a journey to a distant star; the other stays on Earth. There are clocks at both Earth and star, like clocks C_1 and C_2 in Fig. 33.7. There's a clock on the spaceship, like C in Fig. 33.7. Ship clock and Earth clock read the same time as the ship departs (Fig. 33.8a), but when it arrives at the star, time dilation means the ship clock reads less time than the star clock (Fig. 33.8b). Now the ship turns around and returns home. Again, the situation is just like Fig. 33.7 or our light box of Fig. 33.6, so less time elapses on the ship (Fig. 33.8c). The traveling twin arrives home younger than her earthbound brother! Depending on how far and how fast she goes, that age difference can be arbitrarily large. But this is a one-way trip to the future. If the traveling twin doesn't like what she finds in the future, there's no going back.

Here's the seeming paradox: From the ship's viewpoint, it looks like Earth recedes, turns around, and returns. So why isn't the Earth twin younger? The answer lies in what's *special* about special relativity—namely, it applies only to reference frames in uniform motion. The traveling twin accelerates when turning around, so briefly she's in a noninertial reference frame. Although relativity precludes us from saying that one twin is moving and the other is not, we can say that one twin's motion *changes* and the other's doesn't. This is obvious to the traveling twin, who experiences forces associated with the turn-around. The Earthbound twin, in contrast, doesn't feel anything unusual when the ship turns around. During the journey the ship occupies two different inertial frames, separated by the turnaround acceleration, while Earth remains in a single inertial frame. It's that asymmetry that resolves the paradox. The traveling twin really is younger!

EXAMPLE 33.2 Time Dilation: The Twin Paradox

Earth and a star are 20 light-years (ly) apart, measured in a frame at rest with respect to Earth and star. Twin A boards a spaceship, travels at $0.80c$ to the star, and then returns immediately to Earth at $0.80c$. Determine the round-trip travel times in Earth and ship reference frames.

INTERPRET This problem involves time dilation, here applied to the two separate legs of the round-trip journey. We identify the ship clock as C in Fig. 33.7, and the ship time as $\Delta t'$.

DEVELOP Earth–star time for the one-way journey follows from $\text{distance} = \text{speed} \times \text{time}$, so that's how we'll find Δt . Then we can apply Equation 33.3, $\Delta t' = \Delta t \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$, to get the ship time $\Delta t'$. We'll double both to get the round-trip times.

EVALUATE At $0.80c$, the time to go 20 ly is $\Delta t = (20 \text{ ly})/(0.80 \text{ ly/y}) = 25 \text{ y}$. Equation 33.3 then gives

$$\Delta t' = (25 \text{ y}) \sqrt{1 - 0.80^2} = 15 \text{ y}$$

Doubling these values gives round-trip times of 50 years and 30 years for Earth and ship, respectively.

ASSESS The traveling twin returns younger, by 20 years! We've marked the various times on the clocks in Fig. 33.8.



YEARS, LIGHT-YEARS, AND THE SPEED OF LIGHT

A light-year (ly) is the distance light travels in one year. By definition, therefore, the speed of light is 1 ly/y . It's often easiest in relativity to work in units where the speed of light is 1, whether those units be light-years and years, light-seconds and seconds, or whatever.

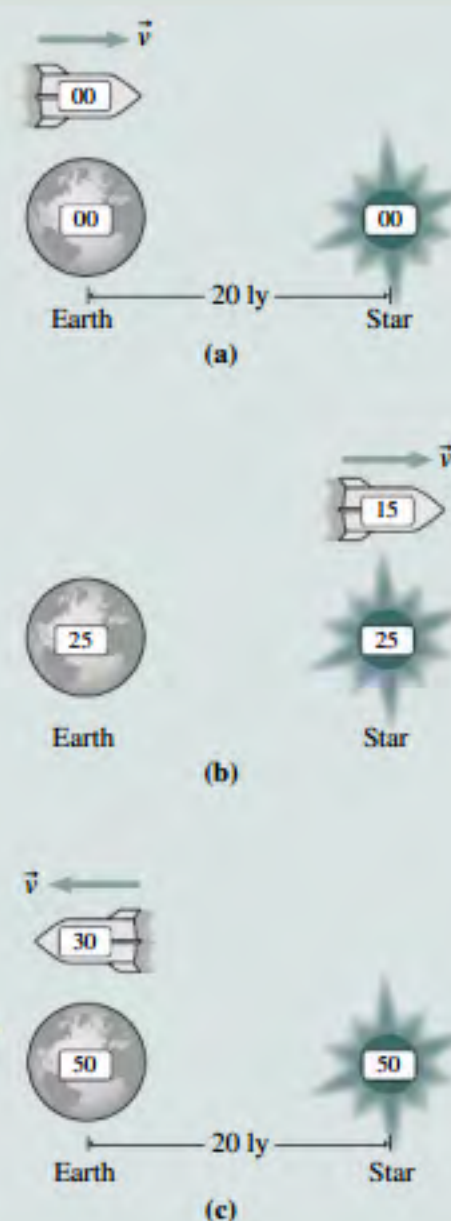


FIGURE 33.8 The twin's journey, drawn from the viewpoint of the Earth–star reference frame. Clock readings are in years, corresponding to Example 33.2.

What if the traveling twin didn't turn around? Then the situation would be symmetric, and each could argue that the other's clocks "run slow." But unless they get together again at the same place, there's no unambiguous way to compare their clock readings or ages. And they can't get together without at least one of them accelerating. As we'll soon see, clocks that are synchronized in one reference frame aren't synchronized in another—and that takes the seeming contradiction out of two observers each finding that the other's clocks "run slow."

GOT IT?

33.2 Triplets A and B board spaceships and head away from Earth in opposite directions, each traveling the same distance at the same speed before returning to Earth. Triplet C remains on Earth. Which expression describes the triplets' relative ages once they're reunited on Earth? (a) $A < B < C$; (b) $A = B > C$; (c) $A = B < C$; (d) $A = B = C$

Length Contraction

In Example 33.2 the 20-ly distance, 25-y time, and $0.8c$ speed are related through the expression $\Delta x = v \Delta t$, where Δx and Δt are measured in the Earth frame. But relativity tells us that this relation must hold in *all* inertial reference frames, so it's also valid in the spaceship frame except during the turnaround. From the ship's viewpoint, Earth and star are moving at $v = 0.80c$, and it takes $\Delta t' = 15$ y for the Earth-star system to pass the ship. Then $\Delta x' = v \Delta t' = (0.80 \text{ ly/y})(15 \text{ y}) = 12 \text{ ly}$ is the Earth-star distance as measured in the ship frame. Thus, measures of space as well as time depend on one's reference frame. Equation 33.3 gives $\Delta t' = \Delta t \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$, so we can write generally that

$$\Delta x' = v \Delta t' = v \Delta t \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$$

or

$$\Delta x' = \Delta x \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2} \quad (\text{length contraction}) \quad (33.4)$$

$\Delta x'$ is the length of an object or a distance between points in a reference frame moving with respect to the object or points.

Δx is the length or distance in a reference frame in which the object or points are at rest.

v is the relative velocity of the two reference frames.



FIGURE 33.9 The Stanford Linear Accelerator is 3.2 km (2 miles) long. But to electrons moving through it at $0.9999995c$, it's only 3.2 m long. Photo shows the accelerator passing under Interstate Highway 280 west of Palo Alto, California.

for the distance between two objects measured in a reference frame in which they move with speed v . Here Δx is the distance in a reference frame at rest with respect to the two objects. Since $\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$ is less than 1 for $v > 0$, Equation 33.4 shows that $\Delta x > \Delta x'$. Therefore, the distance is greatest in this so-called rest frame. The two points in question could be the ends of a single object, in which case Δx is the object's length. This phenomenon of **length contraction** is also called **Lorentz-Fitzgerald contraction**, after Dutch physicist H. A. Lorentz and Irish physicist George F. Fitzgerald, who independently proposed it as an ad hoc way of explaining the Michelson-Morley experiment. Only with Einstein's work did the contraction acquire a solid conceptual basis.

Length contraction shows that an object is longest in its own rest frame and is shorter to observers for whom it's moving. As with time dilation, don't go looking for a physical mechanism that squashes "moving" objects. That presupposes an absolute space with respect to which contraction occurs. Rather, it's space itself that's different for different observers. Accepting relativity means giving up notions of absolute space and time; length contraction and time dilation are necessary consequences.

EXAMPLE 33.3 Length Contraction and Time Dilation: SLAC

At the Stanford Linear Accelerator Center (SLAC; see Fig. 33.9), subatomic particles are accelerated to high energies over a straight path whose length, in Earth's reference frame, is 3.2 km. For an electron traveling at $0.9999995c$, how long does the trip take as measured (a) in Earth's frame and (b) in the electrons' frame? (c) What's the length of the linear accelerator in the electrons' frame?

INTERPRET We're being asked about time dilation and length contraction. The Earth frame here is like the Earth frame of Example 33.2, with the ends of the accelerator replacing Earth and star, and $\Delta x = 3.2$ km in place of the 20-ly Earth–star separation. In (a) we're therefore being asked for Δt , in (b) for $\Delta t'$, and in (c) for $\Delta x'$.

DEVELOP As always $\Delta x = v \Delta t$ relates distance, time, and speed in a single reference frame. We're given Δx and v , so we'll first solve for Δt . Then we can use Equation 33.3, $\Delta t' = \Delta t \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$, for $\Delta t'$, and Equation 33.4, $\Delta x' = \Delta x \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$, for $\Delta x'$.

EVALUATE The electrons' speed is so close to c that it suffices to calculate the travel time with $v = c$. (a) We have $\Delta t = \Delta x/c = (3.2 \text{ km})/(3.0 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}) = 11 \mu\text{s}$. (b) Equation 33.3 gives $\Delta t' = \Delta t \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$; with $v/c = 0.9999995$, the square root works out to be 10^{-3} , so $\Delta t' = 11 \text{ ns}$. (c) Equation 33.4 shows that the length shrinks by the same factor, to 3.2 m.

ASSESS In this case of extremely relativistic speed, the relativistic factor $\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$ is tiny, and the effects of time dilation and length contraction are dramatic. Note that we could approximate v as c in finding Δt , but not in working with the relativistic factor, where even the slightest difference from c is crucial. As a check on our answer, note that $\Delta x' = v \Delta t'$, as required by the principle of relativity.

Equations 33.3 and 33.4 show that relativistic effects are significant only at high relative speeds, with v^2/c^2 comparable to 1. You've no experience of such speeds in your everyday life, so relativity seems counterintuitive. Had you grown up moving relative to your surroundings at speeds approaching c , the relativity of space and time would be as obvious as your commonsense notions seem now. For physicists working with high-energy particles or studying distant, rapidly moving galaxies, relativistic effects *are* obvious features of physical reality.

33.5 Simultaneity Is Relative

LO 33.5 Explain what's meant by the statement that simultaneity is relative.

One remarkable consequence of relativity is that simultaneity of events and sometimes even their time order depend on one's reference frame. Here we explore how this comes about.

Figure 33.10a shows two identical rods approaching each other in a reference frame S where they have the same speed v . Figure 33.10b shows that the right end of rod A passes the right end of rod B at the same instant that the left ends pass. Call the passing of the two right ends event E_1 and the passing of the left ends E_2 . Events E_1 and E_2 are **simultaneous**, meaning they occur at the same time in S .

Now consider a reference frame S' in which rod A is at rest and is therefore longer than it was in frame S . Rod B, meanwhile, is moving toward rod A with a greater speed relative to S' than it had relative to S . Therefore, it's shorter than it was in S . Figure 33.11 shows that, as a result of their different lengths, the right ends of the two rods coincide before the left ends; in other words, event E_1 precedes E_2 . Now look at the situation from a reference frame in which rod B is at rest, and you'll see that E_2 precedes E_1 (Fig. 33.12). So events that are simultaneous in one reference frame aren't simultaneous in another frame.

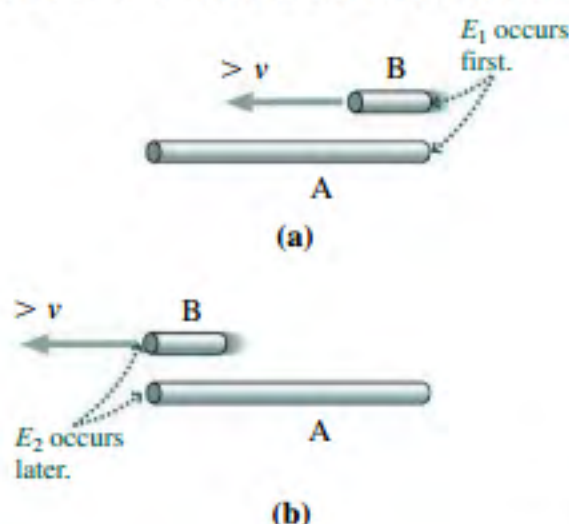


FIGURE 33.11 The passing rods viewed in a reference frame S' at rest with respect to rod A.

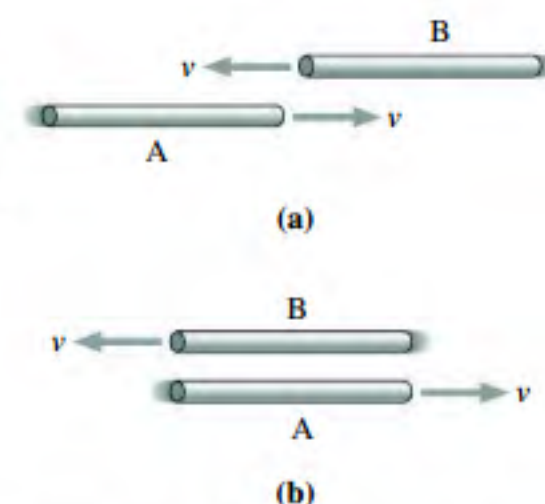


FIGURE 33.10 (a) In frame S , rods A and B have the same speed v and both are contracted by the same amount. (b) Their ends coincide at the same time.

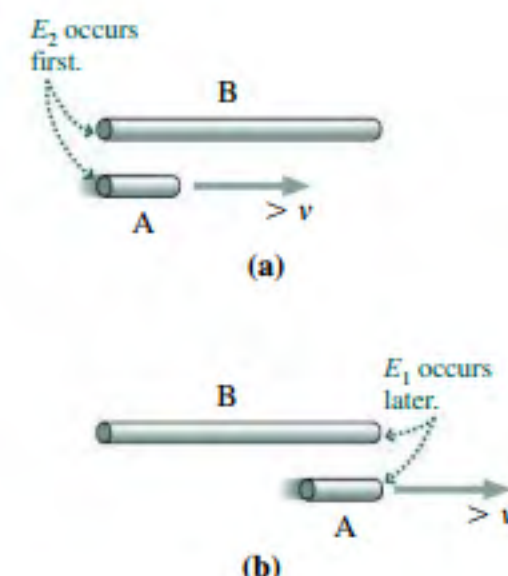


FIGURE 33.12 The passing rods viewed in a reference frame at rest with respect to rod B.

Isn't this just an illusion resulting from apparent length differences due to the rods' motion? Isn't the picture in frame S (Fig. 33.10) the "real" one? No! Relativity assures us that all inertial reference frames are equally valid for describing physical reality. The length differences and changes in the ordering of events aren't "apparent" and they aren't "illusions." They result from valid descriptions in different reference frames, and each has equal claim to reality. If you insist that one frame—say S —has more validity, then you're clinging to the 19th-century notion that there's one favored reference frame in which alone the laws of physics are valid.

But how can observers disagree about the *order* of events? After all, if one event causes another, we expect cause always to precede effect. But, as you'll soon see, the only events whose time order is different for different observers are those that are so far apart in space, and so close in time, that not even a light signal from one event could reach the location of the other event before it happened. There's no way for such events to influence each other, so they can't be causally related.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 33.1 "Running Slow": A Contradiction?

In Example 33.2, the outbound trip from Earth to star took 25 years in the Earth–star reference frame but only 15 years in the spaceship's frame. Thus, observers in the Earth–star frame can say that clocks on the ship "run slow." What do passengers on the ship say about clocks in the Earth–star frame?

EVALUATE During the outbound trip, the spaceship is in a perfectly good inertial reference frame. So the laws of physics are the same for the ship's passengers as they are for earthbound observers, and they can make exactly the same argument: They see Earth and star moving, and they conclude that clocks in the Earth–star frame must "run slow."

Were you inclined to give the seemingly more logical answer that, since the ship clocks "run slow," the Earth–star clocks "run fast"? If so, you haven't applied the principle of relativity: The laws of physics are the same in all inertial reference frames. There's nothing special about the spaceship's frame that would make it see Earth's clocks "running fast" when observers on Earth, in an exactly analogous situation, see the ship's clocks "running slow."

ASSESS How is this not a contradiction? The answer lies in the relativity of simultaneity. Earth and star clocks are synchronized in the Earth–star frame, but not in the ship's frame. From the ship's viewpoint, Earth–star clocks are "running slow" by the factor $\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2} = 0.6$ that we found in Example 33.2. So the 15-year trip time in the ship frame takes, from the ship's perspective, only $(0.6)(15 \text{ years}) = 9$ years on the Earth–star clocks. The Earth clock read zero when the ship left Earth, so in the ship frame it reads 9 years when the ship reaches the star. Yet the star clock reads 25 years at that event. So, from the ship's viewpoint, Earth and star clocks are

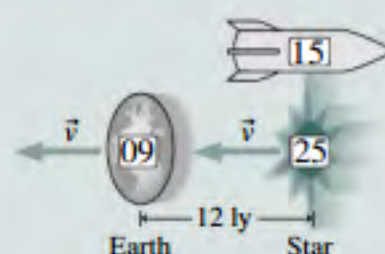


FIGURE 33.13 The situation in the ship's frame. Note that Earth, star, and the distance between them are contracted, while the ship appears longer than in Fig. 33.8.

out of sync by 16 years. Figure 33.13 shows the situation from the ship's frame. Compare with Figs. 33.8a and b: Each observer thinks the other's clocks "run slow," yet there's no contradiction!

This example shows a situation in which the space and time coordinates of an event (here the ship's arrival at the star) are different in the two reference frames considered. In Section 33.6, you'll see how the *Lorentz transformations* describe quantitatively the relationship between event coordinates in different reference frames.

MAKING THE CONNECTION For the star trek of Example 33.1, how do Earth and the star clock readings differ as judged in the spaceship's reference frame?

EVALUATE The ship sees Earth–star clocks "running slow" by the factor $\sqrt{1 - 0.95^2} = 0.312$. Given the 7.8-year time for the trip on the ship clock, observers on the ship judge that the elapsed time in the Earth–star frame is only $(7.8 \text{ years})(0.312) = 2.4$ years. But we know the star clock reads 25 years when the ship arrives, so the Earth clock is behind by $25 \text{ years} - 2.4 \text{ years} = 22.6$ years as judged in the ship's reference frame.

GOT IT?

33.3 A comet plunges into the planet Jupiter. At the instant this happens, your physics class on Earth begins; in other words, the comet collision is simultaneous with your class beginning. A friend traveling from Earth toward Jupiter in a high-speed spaceship would say that (a) the comet collision occurs before your class begins; (b) the comet collision occurs after your class begins; (c) the comet collision and the beginning of your class are simultaneous.

33.6 The Lorentz Transformations

LO 33.6 Use the Lorentz transformations to find space and time coordinates of events in different reference frames.

Events are determined by where (three spatial coordinates) and when (time) they occur. Our work with time dilation, length contraction, and the ordering of events suggests that these coordinates depend on one's frame of reference. Here we develop general expressions, called the **Lorentz transformations**, that relate the time and space coordinates of events in different reference frames.

Consider coordinate axes in a reference frame S and in another frame S' moving in the x -direction with speed v relative to S . The origins of the two systems coincide at time $t = t' = 0$. Given an event with coordinates x, y, z, t in S , what are its coordinates x', y', z', t' in S' ? Were it not for relativity, we'd expect y, z , and t to remain unchanged, while the relative motion along x means a given x in S would correspond to $x' = x - vt$ in S' (Fig. 33.14).

Relativity should alter the transformations for both time and the spatial coordinate, x , along the direction of relative motion. However, our results must reduce to the nonrelativistic results $x' = x - vt$ and $t' = t$ in the limit $v \ll c$. A simple form with this property is $x' = \gamma(x - vt)$, where γ is a factor, still to be determined, that reduces to 1 as $v \rightarrow 0$. We could also transform the other way; the only difference is that the x -axis is moving in the negative direction relative to x' . Therefore, we should have a similar form, with the sign of v reversed: $x = \gamma(x' + vt')$. Now suppose a light flash goes off just as the origins of the two coordinate systems coincide. The coordinates of this event, E_1 , are $x = 0, t = 0$ in S , and $x' = 0, t' = 0$ in S' . At some later time t , an observer at position x in S observes the light flash; call this event E_2 . Since light travels with speed c , $x = ct$. In frame S' , E_2 has coordinates x', t' . But relativity requires that light travel with speed c in *all* inertial reference frames, so we must have $x' = ct'$. Putting these expressions for x and x' in our proposed transformation equations gives $ct' = \gamma t(c - v)$ and $ct = \gamma t'(c + v)$. Multiplying these two equations yields $c^2 = \gamma^2(c - v)(c + v) = \gamma^2(c^2 - v^2)$. Therefore, $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$. Taking $v \rightarrow 0$ in this expression shows that $\gamma \rightarrow 1$ in the nonrelativistic limit, as required. So we have our transformation equations for x .

What about y, z , and t ? The y - and z -axes are perpendicular to the direction of motion, so there's no length contraction and therefore $y' = y$ and $z' = z$. The fact of time dilation makes clear that measures of time differ in different reference frames, so it's not surprising that $t' \neq t$. You can derive the transformation equations for t from those for x (see Problem 46). The results, along with the equations we found for x, y , and z , are summarized in Table 33.1.

Table 33.1 The Lorentz Transformations

S to S'	S' to S	where $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}}$
$y' = y$	$y = y'$	
$z' = z$	$z = z'$	
$x' = \gamma(x - vt)$	$x = \gamma(x' + vt')$	
$t' = \gamma(t - vx/c^2)$	$t = \gamma(t' + vx'/c^2)$	

The relativistic factor $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$ appears throughout special relativity; in fact, you've already encountered it (or, rather, its inverse) in Equations 33.3 and 33.4, the expressions for time dilation and length contraction. Figure 33.15 shows that γ increases very slowly as the relative speed v increases; even at $v = \frac{1}{2}c$, γ is only 1.15. That slow increase occurs because γ depends not on v in comparison with c but on the *square* of v relative to c^2 . If v is much less than c , then v^2/c^2 is truly tiny. But at high relative speeds, γ shoots up rapidly, asymptotically approaching infinity as $v \rightarrow c$. That's why we don't notice relativistic effects except at high relative speeds. But they're there, and sensitive measurements can distinguish relativistic from Newtonian predictions even at modest speeds. The Michelson-Morley experiment is an example; it used Earth's orbital speed, only about $0.0001c$, and therefore needed the exquisite sensitivity of an interference-based technique.

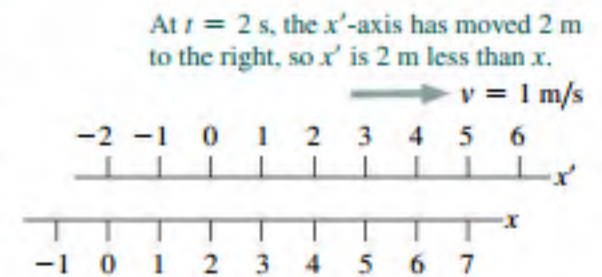


FIGURE 33.14 Nonrelativistic picture of two coordinate axes in relative motion, shown at time $t = 2$ s. In general, $x' = x - vt$.

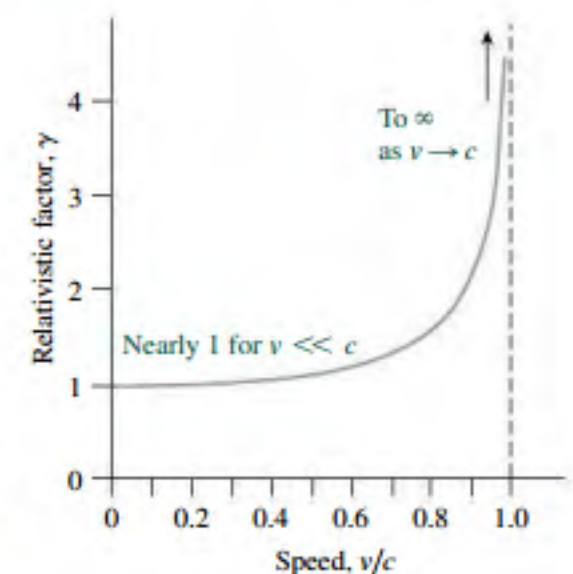


FIGURE 33.15 The relativistic factor γ differs significantly from 1 only as relative speeds approach c .

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 33.1

Lorentz Transformations

INTERPRET Make sure the problem involves space and time coordinates of events as measured in two different frames of reference. Identify the frames, which generally are those of specific objects introduced in the problem statement. Also identify the events and the particular coordinates you're interested in.

DEVELOP Establish coordinate systems in the two reference frames, arbitrarily designated S and S' . Choosing the direction of relative motion along the x -axis will let you use the Lorentz transformations as they appear in Table 33.1. Remember that time is also a coordinate, and take the two coordinate systems to coincide at time $t = t' = 0$. You'll make the math simpler by choosing the origin in space and time to occur at one of the events in the problem. Then determine any other event coordinates that are implicit in the problem statement.

EVALUATE Apply the appropriate Lorentz transformations from Table 33.1 to calculate the unknown coordinates.

ASSESS Ask whether your results make sense. If your calculated order of events differs in different frames, be sure you're dealing with events that are far enough apart in space and close enough in time that they can't be causally related.

EXAMPLE 33.4

Galactic Fireworks: Using the Lorentz Transformations

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Our Milky Way and the Andromeda Galaxy are approximately at rest with respect to each other and are 2 million light-years (Mly) apart. Supernova explosions occur simultaneously in both galaxies, as judged in the galaxies' reference frame. A spacecraft is traveling at $0.8c$ from the Milky Way toward Andromeda. Find the time between the supernova events as measured in the spacecraft's reference frame.

INTERPRET We're given two distant events—both supernova explosions—that are simultaneous in a particular reference frame. We're asked to find the time between them in a different reference frame. So this problem is about using the Lorentz transformations for time coordinates.

DEVELOP Following our strategy, we establish coordinate system S , the galaxy reference frame. We take the origin at the Milky Way, with the x -axis extending through Andromeda (here we're treating the galaxies as points). We take $t = 0$ to be the time of the supernova explosions, which are simultaneous in S . Then the coordinates of the two supernovas in S are $x_{\text{MW}} = 0, t_{\text{MW}} = 0$ and $x_{\text{A}} = 2 \text{ Mly}, t_{\text{A}} = 0$. Here the subscripts designate not just the galaxies but the specific events of the supernova explosions. We show the situation at time $t = 0$ in Fig. 33.16. The other reference frame is that of the spaceship, which we designate S' ; it's moving at speed $v = 0.8c$ along the x -axis relative to frame S . Taking the two coordinate systems to coincide at time $t = 0$ gives $t'_{\text{MW}} = 0$, and puts us in the situation we used to derive the Lorentz transformations of Table 33.1. So our plan is to apply the transformation equation that gives t' , namely, $t' = \gamma(t - vx/c^2)$.

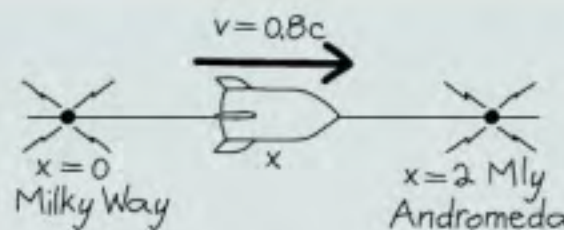


FIGURE 33.16 Our sketch for Example 33.4, drawn in frame S at time $t = 0$, when observers in S judge both supernova explosions to occur. This picture does not apply in frame S' !

EVALUATE We first evaluate the factor γ , finding that $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - 0.8^2} = 5/3$. Then we apply the transformation equation for t' to get the time of the Andromeda supernova in the spacecraft's reference frame:

$$t'_A = \gamma \left(t_A - \frac{vx_A}{c^2} \right) = \left(\frac{5}{3} \right) \left(0 - \frac{(0.8 \text{ ly/y})(2 \text{ Mly})}{(1 \text{ ly/y})^2} \right) = -2.7 \text{ My}$$

ASSESS Since the Milky Way supernova goes off at $t'_{\text{MW}} = 0$, our negative answer means the Andromeda event occurs 2.7 million years earlier in the spacecraft's reference frame. Again, there's no problem with causality; since the distant events are simultaneous in *some* frame (the galaxy frame), they can't possibly be cause and effect. You can easily show that a spacecraft observer going the other way would judge the Andromeda supernova to occur 2.7 My later.

Relativistic Velocity Addition

If you're in an airplane going 1000 km/h relative to the ground and you walk toward the front of the plane at 5 km/h, common sense suggests that you move at 1005 km/h relative to the ground. But measures of time and distance vary among frames of reference in relative motion. For this reason the velocity of an object with respect to one frame doesn't simply add to the relative velocity between frames to give the object's velocity with respect to another frame. In the airplane your speed with respect to the ground is actually a little less than 1005 km/h as you stroll down the aisle, although the difference is insignificant at such a low speed.

The correct expression for **relativistic velocity addition** follows from the Lorentz transformations. Consider a reference frame S and another frame S' moving in the positive x -direction with speed v relative to S . Let their origins coincide at time $t = t' = 0$, so the Lorentz transformations of Table 33.1 apply.

Suppose an object moves with velocity u' along the x' -axis in S' . We seek the velocity u of the object relative to the frame S . (We're using u and u' for the object because we've already used v for the relative velocity of the reference frames.)

In either frame, velocity is the ratio of change in position to change in time, or $u = \Delta x / \Delta t$. Designating the beginning of the interval Δt by the subscript 1 and the end by 2, we can use the Lorentz transformations to write

$$\Delta x = x_2 - x_1 = \gamma[(x'_2 - x'_1) + v(t'_2 - t'_1)] = \gamma(\Delta x' + v \Delta t')$$

and

$$\Delta t = t_2 - t_1 = \gamma[(t'_2 - t'_1) + v(x'_2 - x'_1)/c^2] = \gamma(\Delta t' + v \Delta x'/c^2)$$

Forming the ratio of these quantities, we have

$$\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta x' + v \Delta t'}{\Delta t' + v \Delta x'/c^2} = \frac{(\Delta x'/\Delta t') + v}{1 + v(\Delta x'/\Delta t')/c^2}$$

But $\Delta x'/\Delta t'$ is the velocity u' of the object in frame S' , and $\Delta x/\Delta t$ is the velocity u , so

$$u = \frac{u' + v}{1 + u'v/c^2} \quad (\text{relativistic velocity addition}) \quad (33.5a)$$

u' is an object's velocity relative to a reference frame S' .
 v is the velocity of reference frame S' relative to reference frame S .
 u is the object's velocity relative to reference frame S .
 This denominator reduces the velocity from the simple sum you would expect.

The numerator of this expression is just what we would expect from common sense. But this simple sum of two velocities is altered by the second term in the denominator, which is significant only when both the object's velocity u' and the relative velocity v are comparable with c . Solving Equation 33.5a for u' in terms of u , v , and c gives the inverse transformation:

$$u' = \frac{u - v}{1 - uv/c^2} \quad (\text{relativistic velocity addition}) \quad (33.5b)$$

EXAMPLE 33.5 Relativistic Velocity Addition: Collision Course

Two spacecraft approach Earth from opposite directions, each moving at $0.80c$ relative to Earth, as shown in Fig. 33.17a. How fast do the spacecraft move relative to each other?

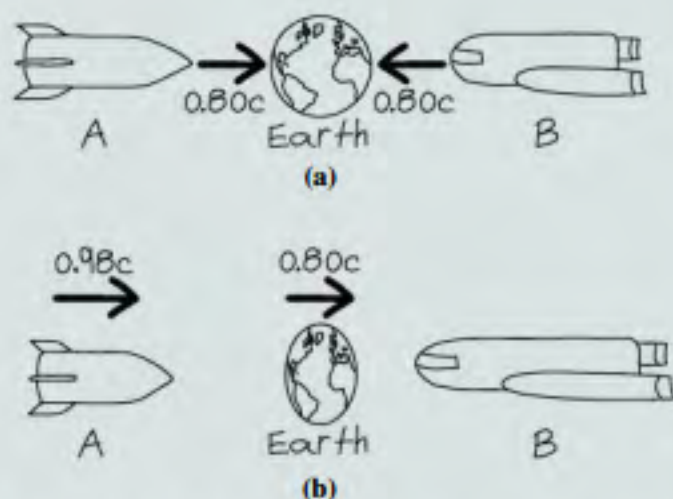


FIGURE 33.17 Sketch for Example 33.5 (a) in Earth's frame S' and (b) in spacecraft B's frame S .

INTERPRET The naïve answer, $1.6c$, isn't consistent with relativity. Instead, this is a problem involving relativistic velocity addition. We identify the Earth frame of reference as S' and ship B's frame as S . Ship A is moving at $u' = 0.8c$ relative to the Earth frame S' , and we want to know its speed u relative to ship B's frame S . Ship B is also moving toward Earth at $0.8c$, or, equivalently, Earth is moving toward ship B at this speed, so we identify $v = 0.8c$ as the relative velocity between frames.

DEVELOP With all terms identified, our plan is to apply Equation 33.5a to find the velocity u of ship A relative to ship B.

EVALUATE
$$u = \frac{u' + v}{1 + u'v/c^2} = \frac{0.80c + 0.80c}{1 + (0.80c)(0.80c)/c^2} = \frac{1.6c}{1.64} = 0.98c$$

ASSESS The relative speed is less than the $1.6c$ we get from a naïve addition and also less than the speed of light. This result is quite general: Equations 33.5 imply that as long as an object moves with speed $u < c$ relative to some frame, then its speed relative to any other frame is less than c . And if you set $u = c$ to describe a light beam, you'll find that Equations 33.5 give $u' = c$ as well—reaffirming the relativistic point that the speed of light is the same in all inertial reference frames.

GOT IT?

33.4 You're driving down the highway, and your speedometer reads exactly 30 km/h. A car passes you, going in the same direction at exactly 20 km/h relative to you. Does its speedometer—which measures the car's speed relative to the road—read (a) more or (b) less than 50 km/h?

Is Everything Relative?

You already know the answer: The laws of physics aren't relative—that's the fundamental principle of relativity. Neither is the speed of light, whose existence and value follow from laws of physics—specifically, Maxwell's equations. And there are a host of other **relativistic invariants**, independent of reference frame. One such invariant is the **spacetime interval**, a kind of four-dimensional “distance” between two events in space and time. The spacetime interval is given by an expression that looks like a modified Pythagorean theorem:

$$(\Delta s)^2 = c^2(\Delta t)^2 - [(\Delta x)^2 + (\Delta y)^2 + (\Delta z)^2] \quad (33.6)$$

where the Δ quantities are the differences between the time and space coordinates of the events. The invariance of Δs follows directly from the Lorentz transformations.

The spacetime interval describes a relation between two events that's independent of reference frame. The invariance of the spacetime interval suggests that something absolute underlies the shifting sands of relativistic space and time. That something is **spacetime**—a four-dimensional framework linking space and time into a single continuum. The spacetime interval is the magnitude of a four-dimensional vector—a **4-vector**—whose components involve the three spatial distances Δx , Δy , Δz and the time Δt between two events. The individual space and time components differ in different reference frames, but they always conspire to give the same invariant interval. This is analogous to the vectors of ordinary two- and three-dimensional space, where the vector components depend on your choice of coordinate system. But the actual vector quantity—for example, a force—has a reality independent of your coordinate choices, and its magnitude doesn't depend on the coordinate system (Fig. 33.18). This analogy isn't perfect because of the negative sign in Equation 33.6's expression for the spacetime interval. That sign reflects the fact that the underlying geometry of spacetime isn't the Euclidean geometry you learned in high school.

Other 4-vectors play a role in more advanced treatments of relativity. These include a four-dimensional electric-current density, whose components involve charge density and the three components of ordinary current density; a four-dimensional *wave vector* that links frequency and wavelength and whose invariant magnitude yields the Doppler effect in its correct relativistic form; and a *4-potential* that yields both the electric and magnetic fields. A particularly important example is the *energy-momentum 4-vector*. Its invariant magnitude is famously related to mass, as you'll see in the next section.

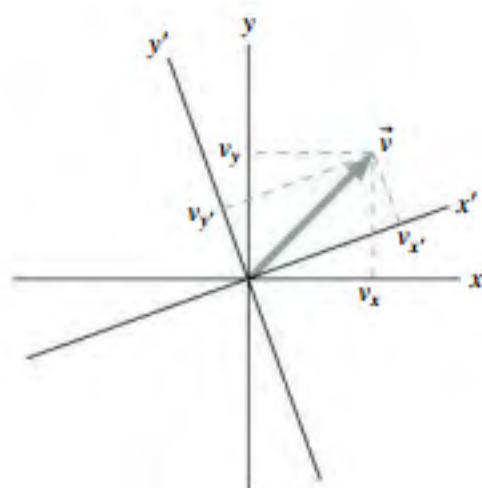


FIGURE 33.18 Although the x - and y -components of an ordinary vector depend on the choice of coordinate system, the magnitude of the vector does not.

33.7 Energy and Momentum in Relativity

LO 33.7 Evaluate energy and momentum in different reference frames, and tell the meaning of the equation $E = mc^2$.

Conservation of momentum and conservation of energy are cornerstones of Newtonian mechanics, where they hold in any inertial reference frame. But momentum and energy are functions of velocity, and we've just seen that relativity alters the Newtonian picture of how velocities transform from one reference frame to another. How, then, can momentum and energy be conserved in all reference frames?

Momentum

In Newtonian mechanics the momentum of a particle with mass m and velocity $\vec{u}$ is $m\vec{u}$. (Here we use $\vec{u}$ for particle velocities, reserving $\vec{v}$ for the relative velocity between reference frames.) But if a system's momentum—the sum of its individual particles' momenta $m\vec{u}$ —is conserved in one frame of reference, then relativistic velocity addition suggests

that it won't be conserved in another. However, conservation of momentum *is* a fundamental law, one that transcends Newtonian physics. So momentum is conserved in relativity (and, indeed, in quantum physics as well). The problem here lies not with momentum conservation but with the Newtonian expression for momentum. The expression $m\vec{u}$ is actually an approximation valid only for speeds u much less than c . The measure of momentum valid at any speed is

$\vec{p}$ is an object's momentum. m is the object's mass and $\vec{u}$ is its velocity, so $m\vec{u}$ is the Newtonian expression for its momentum.

$$\vec{p} = \frac{m\vec{u}}{\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}} = \gamma m\vec{u} \quad (\text{relativistic momentum}) \quad (33.7)$$

The relativistic factor $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}$ modifies the Newtonian expression $m\vec{u}$.

where γ is the relativistic factor that we introduced with the Lorentz transformations. The momentum in Equation 33.7 is conserved in all reference frames, and at low velocities it reduces to the Newtonian expression $\vec{p} = m\vec{u}$.

As $u \rightarrow c$, the factor γ grows arbitrarily large, and so does the relativistic momentum (Fig. 33.19). Since force is the rate of change of momentum, that means a very large force is required to produce even the slightest change in the velocity of a rapidly moving particle. This helps answer a common question about relativity: Why is it impossible to accelerate an object to the speed of light? One answer is that the object's momentum would approach infinity, and no matter how close to c it was moving, it would still require infinite force to give it the last bit of speed.

Energy and Mass

The most widely known result of relativity is the equation $E = mc^2$. Here we develop a general expression for relativistic energy and show just what $E = mc^2$ means. In the process you'll gain new insights into energy, momentum, and mass.

In Chapter 6 we derived the work–energy theorem, and thus developed the concept of kinetic energy, by calculating the work needed to accelerate a mass m from rest to some final speed. We did that by integrating force over distance, using Newton's law $F = dp/dt$ to write force in terms of momentum. We'll do the same thing here, now using our relativistic expression for momentum. So we have

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} \left[\frac{mu}{\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}} \right] = \frac{m(du/dt)}{(1 - u^2/c^2)^{3/2}}$$

Then the kinetic energy gained as a particle accelerates from rest in our reference frame to a final speed u is

$$K = \int \frac{dp}{dt} dx = \int \frac{dp}{dt} u dt = \int \frac{m(du/dt)}{(1 - u^2/c^2)^{3/2}} u dt = \int_0^u \frac{mu}{(1 - u^2/c^2)^{3/2}} du$$

where we used $u = dx/dt$ to replace dx with $u dt$. The integral is readily evaluated using the fact that $u du = \frac{1}{2} d(u^2)$, giving

$$K = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}} - mc^2 = \gamma mc^2 - mc^2 \quad (33.8)$$

for a particle's kinetic energy in a reference frame where the particle has speed u . Once again, γ here is the relativistic factor $1/\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}$.

For speeds low compared with c , Equation 33.8 reduces to the Newtonian $K = \frac{1}{2}mu^2$, as you can show in Problem 61. But Equation 33.8 suggests, more generally, that kinetic energy is the difference of two energies—the velocity-dependent quantity γmc^2 and the term mc^2 that depends only on mass, not velocity. Pursuing this interpretation, we identify γmc^2 as the particle's **total energy** and mc^2 as its **rest energy**. Rearranging Equation

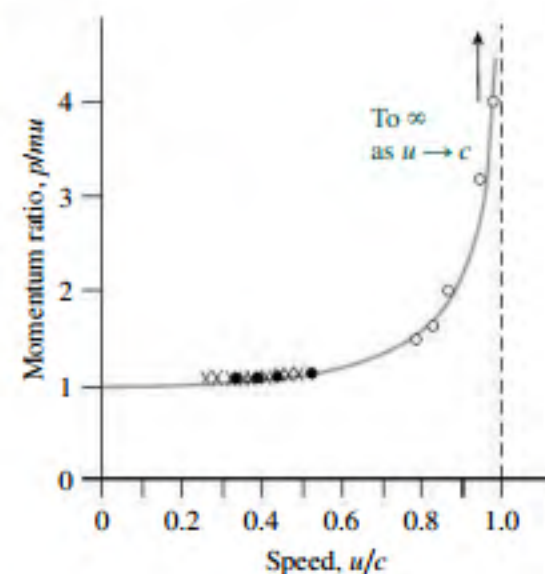
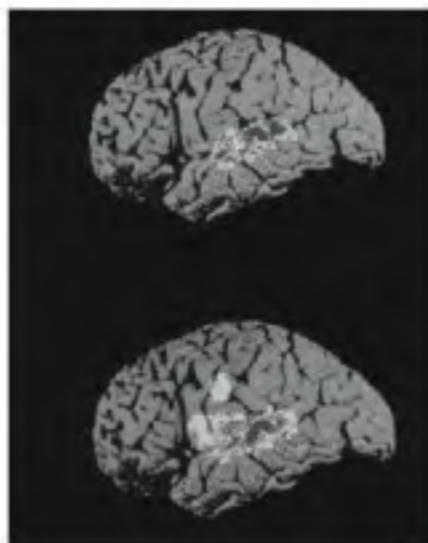


FIGURE 33.19 The ratio of relativistic momentum to Newtonian momentum mu . The curve follows Equation 33.7; crosses and circles mark experimental data. Compare with Figure 33.15.

APPLICATION
PET SCANSRelativity in
the Hospital

Positron emission tomography (PET) is a medical imaging technology based on electron-positron annihilation (see Example 33.6 for more on positrons and electron-positron annihilation). To produce a PET scan, a patient is administered a positron-emitting radioisotope. The isotopes used are short-lived, so there's no lingering radioactivity; common isotopes include oxygen-15 (2 minutes), carbon-11 (20 minutes), and nitrogen-13 (10 minutes). (You'll learn more about radioisotopes and their half-lives in Chapter 38.) These substances are combined chemically to replace ordinary oxygen, carbon, or nitrogen in such materials as water (H_2O), carbon dioxide (CO_2), ammonia (NH_3), or more complex biomolecules such as glucose. Given their short lives, the radioisotopes must be produced on site, using a cyclotron (see Chapter 26's Application on page 508).

Each radioactive nucleus decays by emitting a positron. In body tissue, the positron very soon meets an ordinary electron and the pair annihilate. The positron and electron have the same mass m , and the rest mass of both particles is converted completely to energy according to $E = mc^2$. In order to conserve momentum, this energy emerges in the form of two 511-keV gamma rays moving in opposite directions. The PET scanning technology uses multiple gamma-ray detectors arrayed around the patient. Electronic circuitry identifies pairs of gamma rays emitted simultaneously. Each pair determines a line, connecting two detectors, on which the emission took place; examining multiple pairs determines the point where the emission occurred. Since each positron travels a negligible distance before encountering an electron, the gamma-ray emission region is where the radioisotopes are located. By choosing radioactively "tagged" substances that concentrate in specific tissues, clinicians can image particular physiological processes. The image shows two pet scans of a human brain, with the different patterns corresponding to active word recognition.



33.8 lets us write the total energy as the sum of the kinetic energy and the rest energy: $E = K + mc^2$ or, more simply

$$E = \gamma mc^2 = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}} \quad (\text{total energy}) \quad (33.9)$$

E is an object's total energy.

mc^2 is the object's rest energy—energy it has even when it's at rest relative to some reference frame.

Again we have the relativistic factor $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}$.

What does all this mean? Put $u = 0$ in Equation 33.9 and you get $E = mc^2$ —showing that the total energy of a stationary particle isn't zero but is directly proportional to its mass. Thus, a stationary particle has energy simply by virtue of having mass or, as Einstein first recognized, *mass and energy are equivalent*. The proportionality between mass and energy is a whopping big c^2 —about 9×10^{16} J/kg in SI units.

Although we developed Equation 33.9 by considering kinetic energy, the mass-energy equivalence $E = mc^2$ is universal. Energy, like mass, exhibits inertia. A hot object is slightly harder to accelerate than an otherwise identical cold one because of the inertia of its thermal energy. A stretched spring is more massive than an otherwise identical unstretched one because of its extra potential energy. When a system loses energy, it loses mass as well.

To the public, $E = mc^2$ is synonymous with nuclear energy. The equation does describe mass changes in nuclear reactions, but it applies equally well to chemical reactions and all other energy conversions. Weigh a nuclear power plant and weigh it again a month later, and you'll find it weighs slightly less. Weigh a coal-burning power plant and all the coal and oxygen that go into it for a month, then weigh all the carbon dioxide and other combustion products, and you'll find a difference. If both plants produce the same amount of energy, the mass difference is the same for both. The distinction lies in the amount of mass released as energy in individual reactions. Fission of a single uranium nucleus involves about 50 million times as much energy, and therefore mass, as the reaction of a carbon atom with oxygen to make carbon dioxide. That's why a coal-burning power plant consumes many hundred-car trainloads of coal each week, while a nuclear plant needs only a few truckloads of uranium every year or so. Incidentally, neither process converts very much of the fuel mass to energy; if we could convert *all* the mass in a given object to energy, ordinary matter would be an almost limitless source of energy. Such conversion is in fact possible, but only in the annihilation of matter and antimatter.

EXAMPLE 33.6

Mass-Energy Equivalence: Annihilation

A positron is an antimatter particle with the same mass as the electron but the opposite electric charge. When an electron and positron meet, they annihilate and produce a pair of identical gamma rays (bundles of electromagnetic energy). Find the energy of each gamma ray.

INTERPRET This is a problem about mass-energy equivalence—in this case all the mass of the electron-positron pair changing to gamma-ray energy. We'll assume the pair has negligible kinetic energy K , so the total energy available is just their rest energy.

DEVELOP With $K = 0$, Equation 33.9 reduces to $E = mc^2$. Since there are two particles, each of mass m , and two identical gamma rays, each gets energy mc^2 . So our plan is to evaluate this quantity. We'll need the electron mass m_e , which is given inside the front cover of this book.

EVALUATE Evaluating the rest energy gives $E = m_e c^2 = (9.11 \times 10^{-31} \text{ kg})(3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})^2 = 82.0 \text{ fJ}$.

ASSESS High-energy physicists usually work in electronvolts, and our 82-fJ answer is equivalent to 511 keV. Detection of 511-keV gamma rays from laboratory or astrophysical sources is a sure sign of electron-positron annihilation. The Application on this page shows how the medical technique PET (positron emission tomography) uses these annihilation gamma rays to image processes occurring inside the body.

Given the fame of $E = mc^2$, it's easy to overlook the fact that the rest energy mc^2 is generally only part of a particle's total energy. For a particle moving at velocity u that's small compared with c , the total energy is only slightly greater than mc^2 ; the extra is very nearly the Newtonian kinetic energy, $\frac{1}{2}mu^2$. (Here “at rest” and “moving” are, as always, relative to some inertial reference frame.) But when a particle moves with nearly the speed of light, the relativistic factor $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}$ becomes much greater than 1, and the total energy γmc^2 is many times the rest energy. Such a particle is termed **relativistic**.

EXAMPLE 33.7 Total Energy: A Relativistic Electron

An electron has total energy 2.50 MeV. Find (a) its kinetic energy and (b) its speed.

INTERPRET Here we're given the electron's total energy and asked how much of that is the kinetic energy associated with its speed, which we're also asked for.

DEVELOP Equation 33.9 gives total energy, which is the sum of kinetic energy K and rest energy mc^2 . So our plan is to subtract the rest energy to find the kinetic energy. Equation 33.9 also expresses the total energy as γmc^2 , so we can find $\gamma = E/mc^2$ and then solve for the speed u . We don't need to calculate mc^2 because we found it in Example 33.6: For the electron, $mc^2 = 511 \text{ keV}$ or 0.511 MeV .

EVALUATE (a) We have

$$K = E - mc^2 = 2.50 \text{ MeV} - 0.511 \text{ MeV} = 1.99 \text{ MeV}$$

(b) Since $E = \gamma mc^2$, $\gamma = E/mc^2 = 2.50 \text{ MeV}/0.511 \text{ MeV} = 4.89$. But $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}$, which we solve to get

$$u = c\sqrt{1 - 1/\gamma^2} = 2.94 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$$

ASSESS Our answer for kinetic energy is considerably greater than the electron's rest energy, and our speed u is close to c , both confirming that this is a relativistic electron.

GOT IT?

33.5 The rest energy of a proton is 938 MeV. Without doing any calculations, quickly estimate the speed of a proton with total energy 1 TeV (10^{12} eV).

The Energy–Momentum Relation

In Newtonian physics the equations $p = mu$ and $K = \frac{1}{2}mu^2$ yield $p^2 = 2K/m$. Similarly, Problem 62 shows that in relativity we can combine the equations $p = \gamma mu$ and $E = \gamma mc^2$ to get

E is an object's total energy ... which is related to its momentum p ... and its rest energy mc^2 .

$$E^2 = p^2c^2 + (mc^2)^2 \quad (\text{energy–momentum relation}) \quad (33.10)$$

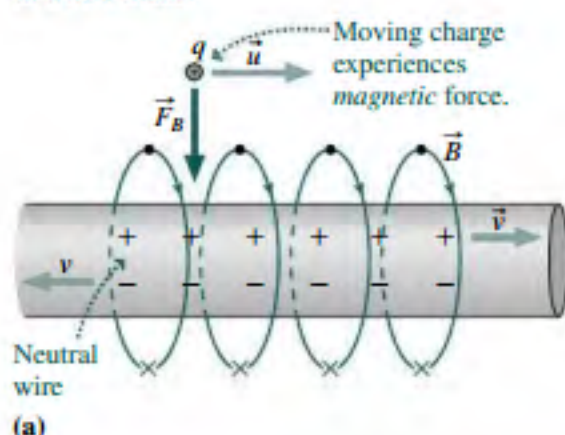
which involves E rather than K because in relativity the energy includes both kinetic and rest energies. For a particle at rest, $p = 0$ and Equation 33.10 shows that the total energy is just the rest energy. For highly relativistic particles, the rest energy is negligible and the total energy becomes very nearly $E = pc$. Some “particles”—like the photons that, in quantum physics, are “bundles” of electromagnetic energy—have no mass. These particles exist only in motion at the speed of light, and for them Equation 33.10 gives the exact relation $E = pc$.

Rearranging Equation 33.10 gives $(mc^2)^2 = E^2 - p^2c^2$. This should remind you of Equation 33.6 for the spacetime interval, whose square is the difference between the squares of the time component $c \Delta t$ and the spatial separation $\sqrt{(\Delta x)^2 + (\Delta y)^2 + (\Delta z)^2}$. Similarly, our rearranged Equation 33.10 gives the square of the rest energy mc^2 as the difference between the squares of the total energy and the magnitude of the momentum multiplied by c . You can therefore think of energy and momentum as the time and space components of a 4-vector. Your frame of reference determines how this energy–momentum 4-vector breaks out into time and space components—that is, into energy and momentum. In a particle's rest frame, for example, $p = 0$ and the vector has only a time component equal to the rest energy. But no matter what frame you're in, the magnitude of the 4-vector is the same, and it's equal to the rest energy mc^2 . Therefore, mass—the rest energy divided by the constant c^2 —is a relativistic invariant.

33.8 Electromagnetism and Relativity

LO 33.8 Describe qualitatively how relativity reveals an intimate connection between electricity and magnetism.

In wire's frame:



In charged particle's frame:

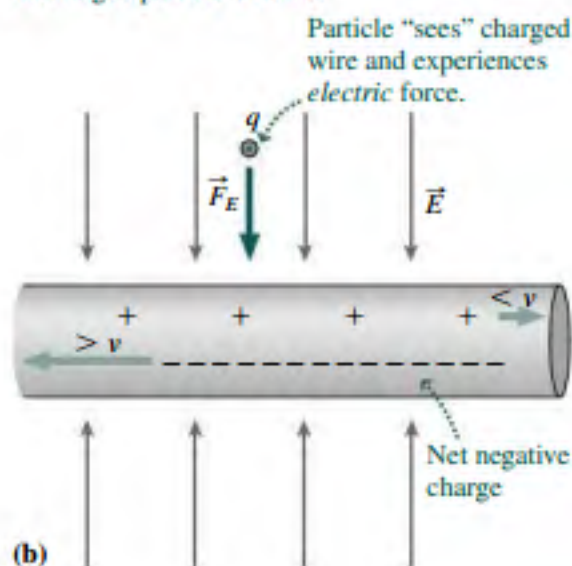


FIGURE 33.20 The force on a charged particle is magnetic or electric, depending on the reference frame.

Historically, relativity arose from deep questions about the propagation of electromagnetic waves. We've seen that relativity alters concepts, such as space, time, energy, and momentum, that are fundamental to Newtonian physics. For that reason, Newtonian physics becomes an approximation valid at low speeds. But relativity is built on the premise that Maxwell's equations of electromagnetism are correct in all reference frames—including the prediction of electromagnetic waves propagating at speed c . Indeed, Einstein's 1905 paper wasn't titled "The Theory of Relativity," but "On the Electrodynamics of Moving Bodies"—showing how intimately related are electromagnetism and relativity. Maxwell's equations are relativistically correct and require no modification.

Although electric and magnetic fields in any frame of reference obey the same Maxwell equations, the fields themselves aren't invariant. Sit in the rest frame of a point charge, and you see a spherically symmetric point-charge field. Move relative to the charge, and you see a magnetic field as well, associated with the moving charge. The electric field you see is altered; it's no longer spherically symmetric. So electric and magnetic fields aren't absolutes; what one observer sees as a purely electric field another may see as a mix of electric and magnetic fields, and vice versa. You can think of the electric and magnetic fields as components of a more fundamental electromagnetic field; how that field breaks out into electric and magnetic fields depends on your frame of reference. Although the fields are different in different reference frames, there's an important electromagnetic quantity that's invariant—namely, electric charge.

We'll illustrate the deep relationship that relativity imposes on electricity and magnetism by considering the force on a positively charged particle moving relative to a current-carrying wire. For simplicity, assume the wire contains equal line-charge densities of positive and negative charge, moving in opposite directions with the same speed v relative to the wire (Fig. 33.20a). The resulting current produces a magnetic field that encircles the wire, and the charged particle moving to the right with velocity $\vec{u}$ as shown in Fig. 33.20a experiences a magnetic force $\vec{F}_B = q\vec{u} \times \vec{B}$ toward the wire. Because the positive and negative line-charge densities are equal, the wire is neutral, so there's no electric force.

Now look at the situation in the particle's reference frame. The positive charges in the wire have a lower speed relative to the particle than the negative charges, so in the particle's frame the distances between negative charges are contracted *more* than the distances between positive charges, as shown in Fig. 33.20b. But charge is invariant, so that means the charge per unit length is *greater* for the negative charges. In the frame of the charged particle, *the wire carries a net negative charge!* That results in an electric field pointing toward the wire, and therefore the charged particle experiences an electric force $\vec{F}_E = q\vec{E}$ toward the wire. There's still a magnetic field as well, but since the particle is at rest in its own frame, the magnetic force $q\vec{u} \times \vec{B}$ is zero.

We've given two quite different descriptions of the force on the charged particle. In the wire's reference frame, there's a purely magnetic force that we could determine knowing the magnetic force $q\vec{u} \times \vec{B}$ and how magnetic fields arise from currents. In contrast, describing the force in the particle's reference frame requires no knowledge of magnetism whatever. We need to know only the electric force $q\vec{E}$ and how electric fields arise from charges. This illustrates a profound point: Electricity and magnetism aren't independent phenomena that happen to be related. Rather, they're two aspects of a single phenomenon—electromagnetism. Given the relativity principle, it's impossible to have electricity without magnetism, or vice versa. Relativity provides the complete unification of electromagnetism that we've hinted at throughout our study of these phenomena. You can explore this unification further in Problem 70.

33.9 General Relativity

LO 33.9 Tell how the general theory of relativity provides a geometrical description of gravity and list some of the theory's predictions.

The *special* theory of relativity is restricted to reference frames in uniform motion. Following special relativity, Einstein attempted to formulate a theory that would encompass observers in accelerated motion. But he recognized that it's impossible to distinguish the effects of uniform acceleration from those of a uniform gravitational field (Fig. 33.21). Consequently, Einstein's 1916 **general theory of relativity** became a theory of gravity. General relativity describes gravity as the geometrical curvature of four-dimensional spacetime. In this description, matter and energy curve spacetime in their vicinity, and objects moving through the curved spacetime follow the straightest possible paths—which aren't the straight lines of Euclidean geometry. Figure 33.22 shows a two-dimensional analogy for particles in curved spacetime.

General relativity's geometrical description of gravity is very different from Newton's action-at-a-distance force. In regions where gravity is weak, however—and that includes everywhere in our solar system—the predictions of the two theories are nearly the same. Distinguishing them under conditions of weak gravity requires extremely sensitive measurements. Such measurements have been made, both on Earth and within the solar system, and they confirm general relativity. A modern-day practical example where even the tiny difference between Newton and Einstein is important is the global positioning system (GPS), whose position information would be off by several kilometers if the effects of general relativity on the GPS satellites' clocks weren't taken into account.

Where gravity is truly strong, however, general relativity differs dramatically from Newtonian gravitation—even revealing entirely new phenomena that today's astrophysicists routinely observe. Here we describe a few of general relativity's remarkable predictions.

Black Holes and Neutron Stars

In Chapter 8 we developed the concept of *escape speed*—the speed an object needs to escape forever from the surface of a gravitating body like a star or planet. The escape speeds we found for Earth and Sun ranged from a few to a few hundred km/s—far less than the speed of light. That's what it means that gravity in our solar system is weak. With really strong gravity, escape speeds approach c . *Neutron stars* are collapsed stars with an entire stellar mass compressed into a region just a few kilometers across. Gravity is so strong that electrons and protons are crushed into neutrons; hence the name *neutron star*. Escape speed at the surface of a neutron star is close to, but less than, the speed of light. More bizarre are *black holes*, objects that have collapsed under gravity to the point where escape speed exceeds that of light. No light can escape such an object; hence *black hole*. The warping of spacetime around a black hole is so great that time, as measured by an external observer, comes to a halt at the point where the escape speed reaches c . Today astrophysicists observe black holes formed from stars that underwent supernova explosions; they're evident because they're in binary systems and gas flowing from a companion star heats up and radiates energy as it spirals around the hole before plunging in. Astrophysicists have also determined that supermassive black holes lurk at the centers of most galaxies—including one with four million times the Sun's mass in our own Milky Way.

Gravitational Lenses

General relativity predicts that light, like matter, should follow the curved geometry of spacetime. In fact, an early confirmation of the theory came in 1919 when careful measurements of star positions during a total solar eclipse revealed the bending of starlight as it passed near the Sun. Today astrophysicists routinely measure the bending of light from very distant objects as the light passes massive galaxy clusters. Light can take multiple paths around a large mass, resulting in multiple and/or distorted images of the same object; Fig. 33.23 shows an example. This process of *gravitational lensing* can even concentrate light from objects so distant that

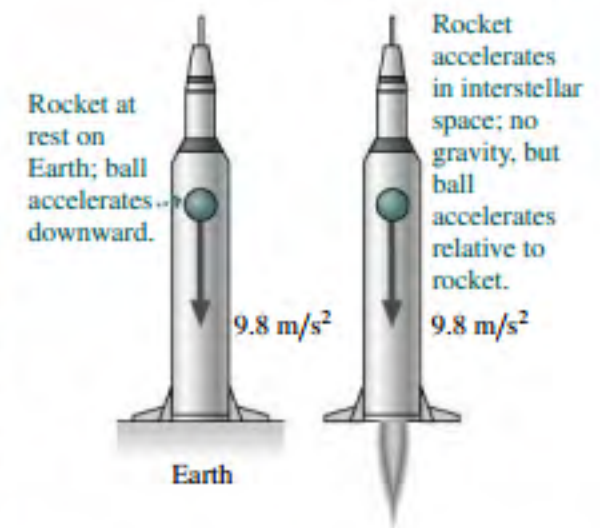


FIGURE 33.21 It's impossible to distinguish the effects of uniform gravitation from acceleration, which is why general relativity is about gravity.

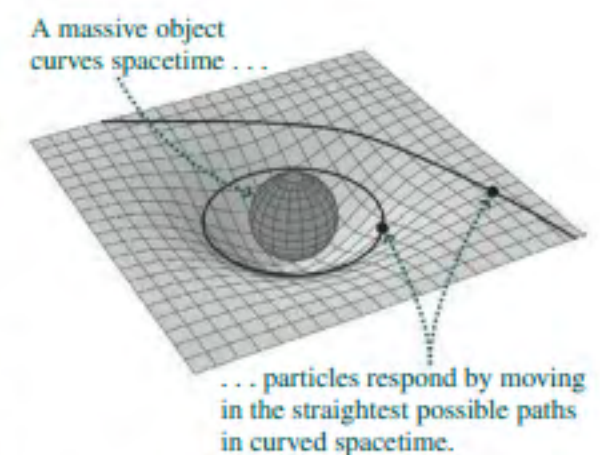


FIGURE 33.22 A two-dimensional analog of curved spacetime in general relativity.



FIGURE 33.23 The “Einstein Cross” comprises four images of the same quasar, formed as light follows different paths in the curved spacetime surrounding a massive galaxy (visible at center).

we couldn’t otherwise see them. In that way the universe itself provides us with giant telescopic lenses that help image the distant cosmos. Lensing also lets cosmologists map the distribution of matter in the universe and provides evidence for the dark matter that we’ll discuss further in Chapter 39. Closer to home, gravitational *microlensing* can temporarily brighten the light from a star as a gravitating object passes in front of it. Among other astronomical applications, microlensing has been used to detect exoplanets orbiting distant stars.

Gravitational Waves

In Chapter 29 you saw that accelerated electric charges are the source of electromagnetic waves. General relativity predicts a similar phenomenon: gravitational waves resulting from accelerated masses. Gravity in general relativity is synonymous with the geometry of spacetime, so these gravitational waves are literally ripples in spacetime. Like electromagnetic waves, they propagate at c . But because gravity is so much weaker than electromagnetism (by a factor of $\sim 10^{-40}$, as shown in Conceptual Example 20.1), gravitational waves are extremely weak and hard to detect. It takes really massive objects, undergoing huge accelerations, to produce gravitational waves detectable at Earth. The existence of gravitational waves was inferred indirectly decades ago from observations of orbital changes in binary neutron stars due to energy loss by gravitational waves. However, it wasn’t until 2015 that an actual detection of gravitational waves occurred. That happened just days after a significant upgrade to LIGO, the Laser Interferometer Gravitational-Wave Observatory (recall Fig. 32.16). LIGO uses interferometry to sense tiny changes—on the order of 10^{-19} m—in the positions of its mirrors as a gravitational wave passes and stretches or compresses space itself. LIGO has twin detectors in Louisiana and Washington state, and only near-simultaneous signals at both detectors qualify as candidates for gravitational waves. The 2015 discovery was of the merger of two black holes 1.3 billion light-years distant, and it ushered in a whole new era of gravitational-wave astronomy. Figure 33.24 shows the signal from the first gravitational-wave detection.

By 2018 LIGO had detected a total of five black-hole mergers, some of them found in conjunction with the Virgo detector in Italy. LIGO had also detected a signal from the collision of two neutron stars. This event was seen with electromagnetic waves as well, making it a true example of *multimessenger astronomy*. Analysis of the neutron-star event immediately answered a number of important outstanding questions in physics, including the origin of heavy elements—now understood to come predominantly from neutron-star collisions.

Gravitational-wave astronomy will play an important role in our future understanding of the universe. Because gravitational waves propagate essentially unimpeded by matter, they can provide more direct and accurate measures of cosmic distances than electromagnetic signals. Indeed, cosmologists are already talking of using gravitational-wave events as *cosmic sirens*—beacons in the distant universe that could provide standards for determining the cosmic distance scale. We’re just at the beginning of the era of gravitational-wave astronomy. Watch for more discoveries as LIGO undergoes upgrades for greater sensitivity, as more gravitational-wave interferometers come online around the world, and when LISA—the Laser Interferometer Space Antenna—is deployed in an interferometer configuration of three spacecraft separated by 2.5 million km—some 10 times the diameter of the Moon’s orbit.

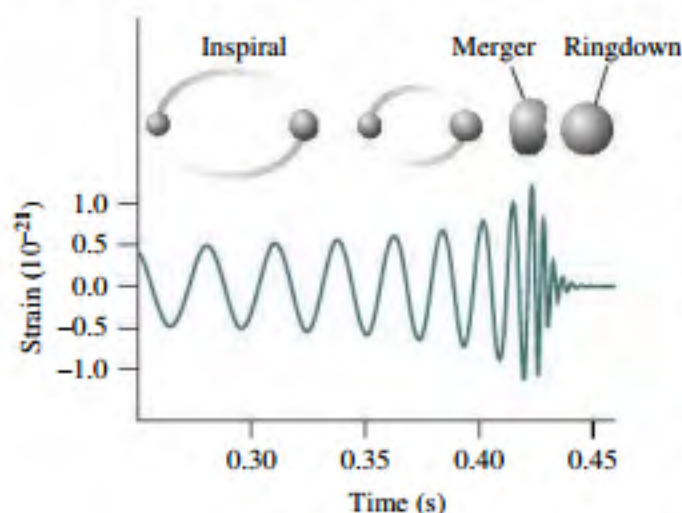


FIGURE 33.24 Signal from the first gravitational-wave detection, arising from the merger of two black holes the vertical axis measures strain—the fractional change in length of the detector arm as the gravitational wave passes. As indicated, the actual strain is 10^{-21} times the numbers shown on the vertical axis. The raw data have been smoothed for comparison with calculations based on general relativity. Drawings above the graph show the two black holes spiraling into an ever-closer orbit and finally merging.

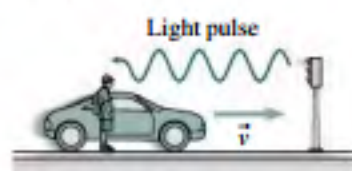
Chapter 33 Summary

Big Idea

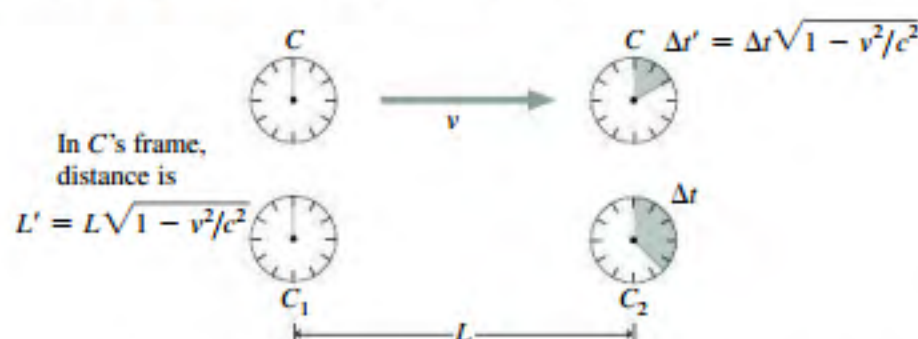
The big idea here is a simple one: The laws of physics are the same for all observers and don't depend on one's state of motion. That's the **principle of relativity**. **Special relativity** is restricted to inertial reference frames; **general relativity** removes that restriction and in so doing becomes a theory of gravity. Both relativity theories radically alter our commonsense notions of space and time. In relativity, measures of space and time—but not the laws of physics—depend on one's reference frame.

Key Concepts and Equations

Among the laws of physics are Maxwell's equations, with their prediction of electromagnetic waves (e.g., light) propagating at the speed of light c . Therefore, the speed of light is the same in all inertial reference frames.



Invariance of c leads to **time dilation** and **length contraction**:



Additionally, events simultaneous in one reference frame may not be simultaneous in another frame.

Time dilation and length contraction are specific instances of the **Lorentz transformations** of space and time coordinates of events observed in different reference frames. The transformations here apply to relative motion in the x -direction.

S to S'	S' to S
$y' = y$	$y = y'$
$z' = z$	$z = z'$
$x' = \gamma(x - vt)$	$x = \gamma(x' + vt')$
$t' = \gamma(t - vx/c^2)$	$t = \gamma(t' + vx'/c^2)$

where $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}}$

Underlying the changing measures of space and time is four-dimensional **spacetime**, in which exist **4-vectors** whose magnitude is independent of reference frame.

Invariant spacetime interval:

$$(\Delta s)^2 = c^2(\Delta t)^2 - [(\Delta x)^2 + (\Delta y)^2 + (\Delta z)^2]$$

Invariant particle mass:

$$(mc^2)^2 = E^2 - p^2c^2$$

Energy, momentum, and mass are closely related in relativity:

$$\text{Momentum: } \vec{p} = \frac{m\vec{u}}{\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}} = \gamma m\vec{u}$$

$$\text{Energy: } E = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}} = \gamma mc^2 = K + mc^2 = \sqrt{(pc)^2 + (mc^2)^2}$$

Kinetic energy Rest energy

Applications

The **Michelson–Morley experiment** of 1887 failed to detect any motion of Earth relative to the **ether**, the medium in which 19th-century physicists believed light propagated with speed c . This result helped pave the way for relativity, with no ether and with c the same in all inertial reference frames.

Relativity shows that velocities don't simply add; rather,

$$u = \frac{u' + v}{1 + u'v/c^2}$$

where u' is an object's velocity relative to a reference frame S' , u its velocity relative to frame S , and v the relative velocity between S and S' .

Einstein's equation $E = mc^2$ describes a universal interchangeability between matter and energy; contrary to common opinion, it isn't just about nuclear energy.

Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>LO 33.1 Describe the 19th-century concept of ether as the medium for electromagnetic waves.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 33.2</i></p> <p>LO 33.2 Explain the Michelson–Morley experiment and how it led to what seemed like a contradiction in physics.
<i>Exercises 33.11, 33.12; Problems 33.33, 33.34</i></p> <p>LO 33.3 Articulate the principle of relativity.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 33.1, 33.4, 33.7</i></p> <p>LO 33.4 Calculate time dilation and length contraction associated with the relative motion of different reference frames.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 33.3, 33.4, 33.5; Exercises 33.13, 33.14, 33.15, 33.16, 33.17, 33.18; Problems 33.35, 33.36, 33.37, 33.38, 33.39, 33.40, 33.49, 33.50, 33.51, 33.65, 33.66, 33.69</i></p> <p>LO 33.5 Explain what's meant by the statement that simultaneity is relative.
<i>Problem 33.44</i></p> | <p>LO 33.6 Use the Lorentz transformations to find space and time coordinates of events in different reference frames.
<i>Problems 33.41, 33.42, 33.43, 33.44, 33.45, 33.46, 33.47, 33.48, 33.51, 33.52, 33.53, 33.55, 33.64, 33.67</i></p> <p>LO 33.7 Evaluate energy and momentum in different reference frames, and tell the meaning of the equation $E = mc^2$.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 33.6, 33.8, 33.9; Exercises 33.19, 33.20, 33.21, 33.22, 33.23, 33.24; Problems 33.54, 33.56, 33.57, 33.58, 33.59, 33.60, 33.61, 33.62, 33.63, 22.68, 33.69, 33.71</i></p> <p>LO 33.8 Describe qualitatively how relativity reveals an intimate connection between electricity and magnetism.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 33.10; Problem 33.70</i></p> <p>LO 33.9 Tell how the general theory of relativity provides a geometrical description of gravity and list some of the theory's predictions.
<i>Problem 33.68</i></p> |
|--|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- What's *special* about the *special* theory of relativity?
- Is it ever possible for a ball, or even an electron, to attain the speed of light?
- Time dilation is sometimes described by saying that "moving clocks run slow." In what sense is this true? In what sense does the statement violate the spirit of relativity?
- If you're in a spaceship moving at $0.95c$ relative to Earth, do you perceive time to be passing more slowly than it would on Earth? Think! Is your answer consistent with the relativity principle?
- The Andromeda Galaxy is 2 million light-years from the Milky Way. Although nothing can go faster than light, it would still be possible to travel to Andromeda in much less than 2 million years. How?
- Is matter converted to energy in a nuclear reactor? In a burning candle? In your body?
- Since mass and energy are interchangeable, should a compressed spring weigh more than an uncompressed one? Explain.
- The rest energy of an electron is 511 keV. What's the approximate speed of an electron whose total energy is 1 GeV? No calculations needed!
- An atom in an excited state emits a burst of light. What happens to the atom's mass?
- The quantity $\vec{E} \cdot \vec{B}$ is invariant. What does this say about how different observers will measure the angle between $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ in a light wave?

- Consider a Michelson–Morley experiment with 11-m light paths perpendicular and parallel to the ether wind. What would be the difference in light travel times on the two paths if Earth moved relative to the ether at (a) its orbital speed (Appendix E); (b) $0.01c$; (c) $0.5c$; and (d) $0.99c$?

Section 33.4: Space and Time in Relativity

- Two stars are 35 ly apart, measured in their common rest frame. How far apart are they to a spaceship moving between them at $0.50c$?
- How long would it take a spacecraft traveling at $0.66c$ to get from Earth to Pluto according to clocks (a) on Earth and (b) on the spacecraft? Assume Earth and Pluto are on the same side of the Sun.
- A spaceship passes by you at half the speed of light, and you determine that it's 40 m long. Find its length as measured in its rest frame.
- An extraterrestrial spacecraft whizzes through the solar system at $0.80c$. How long does it take to go the 8.3 light-minute-distance from Earth to Sun (a) according to an observer on Earth and (b) according to an alien aboard the ship?
- How fast would you have to move relative to a meter stick for it to be 97 cm long in your reference frame?
- A hospital's linear accelerator produces electron beams for cancer treatment. The accelerator is 1.6 m long and the electrons reach a speed of $0.98c$. How long is the accelerator in the electrons' reference frame?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 33.2: Matter, Motion, and the Ether

- An airplane makes a round trip between two points 1800 km apart, flying with airspeed 760 km/h. What's the round-trip flying time (a) if there's no wind, (b) with wind at 130 km/h perpendicular to a line joining the two points, and (c) with wind at 130 km/h along a line joining the two points?

Section 33.7 Energy and Momentum in Relativity

- By what factor does an object's momentum change if you double its speed when its original speed is (a) 28 m/s and (b) 110 Mm/s?
- At what speed will the momentum of a proton (mass 1 u) equal that of an alpha particle (mass 4 u) moving at $0.5c$?
- At what speed will the Newtonian expression for momentum be in error by 4%?

22. A particle is moving at $0.90c$. If its speed increases by 10%, by what factor does its momentum increase?
23. Find (a) the total energy and (b) the kinetic energy of an electron moving at $0.92c$.
24. At what speed will the relativistic and Newtonian expressions for kinetic energy differ by 10%?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

25. **Example 33.1:** A spaceship departs on a trip to explore the Orion nebula, 1344 ly from Earth. The ship travels at $0.9995c$ relative to Earth. (a) How long will the trip take, as judged by the scientists on the ship? (b) How much time will elapse on Earth during their trip?
26. **Example 33.1:** How fast would a robotic probe have to travel to make the trip of the preceding problem in 675 years of the probe's time?
27. **Example 33.1:** The isotope oxygen-15 is used in medical PET scans (PET stands for positron emission tomography; see the Application on page 680). The half-life of O-15 is only 2.04 minutes, so it has to be transported quickly to where it's going to be administered. If a sample of O-15 were transported at $0.842c$ to astronauts on an asteroid 6.38 light-minutes from Earth, how many half-lives would have passed by the time they received it? *Hint:* Should you answer this question in Earth's reference frame or in the frame of the O-15 as it's in transit?
28. **Example 33.1:** See the previous problem, and determine whether it would be possible to get O-15 to a base on Mars within two half-lives, at a point when Mars is 22.8 light-minutes from Earth. If so, how fast would it have to go?
29. **Example 33.4:** Two civilizations, A and B, are evolving on opposite sides of a galaxy with diameter 95.0×10^3 light-years. At time $t = 0$ in the galactic reference frame they simultaneously launch the first satellites to orbit their planets. A craft from a more advanced civilization C is heading toward the galaxy at $0.774c$ on a line that passes from civilization A to civilization B. Which civilization do observers in the spacecraft judge to have launched its satellite first and by how much?
30. **Example 33.4:** Consider a fourth civilization D whose spacecraft is approaching the galaxy of the preceding problem on the same path taken by civilization C's craft. Observers on civilization D's craft judge the time difference between the launches of the two satellites to be 52,300 years. Find the speed of their spacecraft relative to the galaxy.
31. **Example 33.4:** Consider the situation of Example Variation 29, but now assume that civilization A launches its satellite 24,700 years earlier than civilization B, as measured in the galaxy's reference frame. (a) What will observers on civilization C's spacecraft judge for the time interval between the two launches, and which will it judge to have been first with its launch? (b) Could there be an observer who sees the two launches as simultaneous? If so, describe that observer's motion. If not, explain why not.
32. **Example 33.4:** Consider the situation of Example Variation 29, but now assume that civilization A launches its satellite 114,000 years earlier than civilization B, as measured in the galaxy's reference frame. (a) What will observers on civilization C's spacecraft judge for the time interval between the two launches, and which will it judge to have been first with its launch? (b) Could there be an observer who sees the two launches as simultaneous? If so, describe that observer's motion. If not, explain why not.

Problems

33. Show that the time of Equation 33.2 is longer than that of Equation 33.1 when $0 < v < c$.
34. You're designing a Michelson interferometer in which a speed-of-light difference of 100 m/s in two perpendicular directions is supposed to shift the interference pattern so a bright fringe of 560-nm light ends up where the adjacent dark fringe would be in the absence of a speed difference. How long should you make the interferometer's arms?
35. Earth and Sun are 8.4 light minutes apart, as measured in their rest frame. (a) What's the speed of a spacecraft that makes the trip in 4.6 min according to its on-board clocks? (b) What's the trip time as measured by clocks in the Earth-Sun reference frame?
36. You're the communications officer on a fast spaceship that takes 50 years of ship time to reach the Andromeda Galaxy, 2 million light-years from Earth in the common rest frame of Earth and Andromeda. As soon as you reach Andromeda, your captain orders you to send a radio message to Earth announcing your arrival; he claims the message will reach Earth about a century after you left. You claim it will be much later when the message arrives. Who's right?
37. You wish to travel to a star N light years from Earth. How fast must you go if the one-way journey is to occupy N years of your life?
38. The Starshot project, described in the Application at the end of Chapter 29, envisions a fleet of *StarChip* spacecraft heading toward the 4.24-light-year-distant star Proxima Centauri at 20.0% of the speed of light. Determine the time for this trip as measured in the reference frame of (a) Earth and (b) a *StarChip* spacecraft. (c) For the *StarChip*, what's the distance to Proxima Centauri?
39. Twins A and B live on Earth. On their 20th birthday, twin B climbs into a spaceship and makes a round-trip journey at $0.95c$ to a star 30 light-years distant, as measured in the Earth-star reference frame. What are their ages when twin B returns to Earth?
40. Radioactive oxygen-15 decays at such a rate that half the atoms in a given sample decay every 2 min. If a tube containing 1000 O-15 atoms is moved at $0.80c$ relative to Earth for 6.67 min according to clocks on Earth, how many atoms will be left at the end of that time?
41. Two distant galaxies are receding from Earth at $0.75c$ in opposite directions. How fast does an observer in one galaxy measure the other to be moving?
42. Two spaceships are racing. The "slower" one passes Earth at $0.70c$, and the "faster" one moves at $0.40c$ relative to the slower one. What's the faster ship's speed relative to Earth?
43. Use relativistic velocity addition to show that if an object moves at speed $v < c$ relative to some inertial reference frame, then its speed relative to any other inertial frame must also be less than c .
44. Earth and Sun are 8.33 light-minutes apart. Event A occurs on Earth at time $t = 0$ and event B on the Sun at $t = 2.45$ min, as measured in the Earth-Sun frame. Find the time order and time difference between A and B for observers (a) moving on a line from Earth to Sun at $0.750c$, (b) moving on a line from Sun to Earth at $0.750c$, and (c) moving on a line from Earth to Sun at $0.294c$.
45. The *Curiosity* rover touched down on Mars when Earth and Mars were 14 light-minutes apart. At the instant of touchdown, clocks at Mission Control in Pasadena, California, read 10:31 PM. As judged by observers on a spacecraft heading along the Earth-Mars line at $0.35c$, did touchdown occur before or after the time the clocks in Pasadena read 10:31 PM, and by how much?

46. Derive the Lorentz transformations for time from the transformations for space.
47. In the light box of Fig. 33.6, let event A be the emission of the light flash and event B its return to the source. Assign suitable space and time coordinates to these events in the frame in which the box moves with speed v . Apply the Lorentz transformations to show that the time between the two events in the box frame is given by Equation 33.3.
48. You're a consultant for the director of a sci-fi movie. The film starts with two spaceships, each measuring 25 m long in its rest frame, approaching Earth in opposite directions with speeds shown in Fig. 33.25. The director wants to know how long to make ship B for scenes shot (a) in Earth's reference frame and (b) in ship A's frame. Your answers?



FIGURE 33.25 Problem 48; the drawing is in Earth's reference frame

49. How fast would you have to go to reach a star 170 light years away in a 65-year human lifetime?
50. An advanced civilization has developed a spaceship that goes, with respect to the galaxy, only 80 km/s slower than light. (a) According to the ship's crew, how long does it take to cross the galaxy's 6.5×10^4 -ly diameter? (b) What's the galactic diameter measured in the ship's reference frame?
51. A spaceship travels at $0.80c$ from Earth to a star 10 light-years distant, as measured in the Earth-star reference frame. Let event A be the ship's departure from Earth and event B its arrival at the star. (a) Find the distance and time between the two events in the Earth-star frame. (b) Repeat for the ship's frame. (*Hint:* The distance in the ship frame is the distance an observer has to move *with respect to that frame* to be at both events—not the same as the Lorentz-contracted distance between Earth and star.) (c) Compute the square of the spacetime interval in both frames to show explicitly that it's invariant.
52. Use Equation 33.6 to calculate the square of the spacetime interval between the events (a) of Example Variation 29 and (b) of Example Variation 32. Comment on the signs of your answers in relation to the possibility of a causal relationship between the events.
53. A light beam is emitted at event A and arrives at event B. Show that the spacetime interval between the two events is zero.
54. Compare the momentum changes needed to boost a spacecraft (a) from $0.10c$ to $0.20c$ and (b) from $0.80c$ to $0.90c$.
55. Event A occurs at $x = 0$ and $t = 0$ in reference frame S . Event B occurs at $x = 4.1$ light-years and $t = 1.6$ years in S . Find (a) the distance and (b) the time between A and B in a frame moving at $0.66c$ along the x -axis of S .
56. When a particle's speed doubles, its momentum increases by a factor of 3. What was its original speed?
57. Find (a) the speed and (b) the momentum of a proton with kinetic energy 500 MeV.
58. The Large Hadron Collider accelerates protons to energies of 14 TeV. (a) Compare that proton energy with the kinetic energy of a 25-mg bug crawling at 2.0 mm/s. (b) Compare the proton momentum with that of the same bug.
59. A large city consumes electrical energy at the rate of 2 GW. If you converted all the rest mass in a 9-g raisin to electrical energy, for how long could it power the city?

60. In a nuclear-fusion reaction, two deuterium nuclei combine to make a helium nucleus plus a neutron, releasing 3.3 MeV of energy in the process. By how much do the combined masses of the helium nucleus and the neutron differ from the combined masses of the original deuterium nuclei?
61. Use the binomial approximation (Appendix A) to show that Equation 33.8 reduces to the Newtonian expression for kinetic energy in the limit $u \ll c$.
62. Show that Equation 33.10 follows from the expressions for relativistic momentum and total energy.
63. At what speed are a particle's kinetic and rest energies equal?
64. Use the Lorentz transformations to show that if two events are separated in space and time so that a light signal leaving one event cannot reach the other, then there is an observer for whom the two events are simultaneous. Show that the converse is also true: If a light signal can get from one event to the other, then no observer will find them simultaneous.
65. A source emitting light with frequency f moves toward you at speed u . By considering both time dilation and the effect of wavefronts "piling up" as shown in Fig. 14.33, show that you measure a Doppler-shifted frequency given by

$$f' = f \sqrt{\frac{c+u}{c-u}}$$

Use the binomial approximation (Appendix A) to show that this result can be written in the form of Equation 14.15 when $u \ll c$.

66. You'd like to travel to a star a distance d from Earth, as measured in the Earth-star reference frame, and you'd like have the trip take time $\Delta t'$ as experienced by you in your spaceship. Find an expression for the required speed v in terms of d , $\Delta t'$, and c .
67. A large spaceship is passing Earth at $0.750c$. Inside it is a medium-sized spaceship going at $0.750c$ relative to the large spaceship. And inside the medium ship is a small one going at $0.750c$ relative to the medium one. What's the speed of the small ship relative to Earth?
68. Section 33.9 describes the first-ever detection of gravitational waves, associated with the merging of two black holes 1.3 billion light-years distant. The masses of the two holes were 36 and 29 times the Sun's mass, respectively. Once they merged, however, the resulting hole's mass was only 62 solar masses. Find the total energy released in gravitational waves.
69. The highest energy cosmic rays observed are protons with energy 300 EeV. Give a one-significant-figure estimate for the time it would take such a particle to cross the 100,000-ly-diameter Milky Way galaxy as measured in (a) the galaxy's reference frame and (b) the particle's frame.
70. Consider a line of positive charge with line charge density λ as measured in a frame S at rest with respect to the charges. (a) Show that the electric field a distance r from this charged line has magnitude $E = \lambda/2\pi\epsilon_0 r$, and that there's no magnetic field (no relativity needed here). Now consider the situation in a frame S' moving at speed v parallel to the line of charge. (b) Show that the charge density measured in S' is given by $\lambda' = \gamma\lambda$, where $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1-v^2/c^2}$. (c) Use the result of (b) to find the electric field in S' . Since the charge is moving with respect to S' , there's a current in S' . (d) Find an expression for this current and (e) for the magnetic field it produces. Determine the values of the quantities (f) $\vec{E} \cdot \vec{B}$ and (g) $E^2 - c^2 B^2$ in both reference frames, and show that these quantities are invariant. Your result gives a hint at how electric and magnetic fields transform, and demonstrates one instance of the fact that $\vec{E} \cdot \vec{B}$ and $E^2 - c^2 B^2$ are always invariant.

71. The table below lists the total energy and corresponding momentum for a particle. They're measured in MeV and MeV/ c , respectively—commonly used units in particle physics. Determine suitable functions of these quantities to plot such that the resulting plot should be a straight line. Plot your data, determine a best-fit line, and use it to find (a) the value of c and (b) the particle's mass. You may need to convert to SI before plotting. Can you identify the particle?

Total energy, E (MeV)	0.511	1.01	1.51	2.51	3.51	4.51	5.51
Momentum, p (MeV/ c)	0	0.872	1.41	2.46	3.45	4.61	5.49

Passage Problems

You've been named captain of NASA's first interstellar mission since the *Voyager* robotic spacecraft. You board your spaceship, accelerate quickly to $0.8c$, and cruise at constant speed toward Proxima Centauri, the closest star to our Sun. Proxima Centauri is 4 light-years distant as measured in the two stars' common rest frame. On the way, you conduct various medical experiments to determine the effects of a long space voyage on the human body.

72. Taking your pulse, you find
- it's significantly slower than when you're on Earth.
 - it's the same as when you're on Earth.
 - it's significantly faster than when you're on Earth.
73. How much do you age during your interstellar journey?
- 3 years
 - just under 4 years
 - just over 4 years
 - 5 years
74. Back on Earth, Mission Control judges that your shipboard clocks run slow. What do you judge about clocks at Mission Control?
- They run fast.
 - They keep time at the same rate as your clocks.
 - They run slow.
 - You can't tell anything about their clocks.
75. In your spaceship's reference frame, the distance from the Sun to Proxima Centauri is
- 2.4 light-years.
 - just under 4 light-years.
 - 4 light-years.
 - 5 light-years.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The laws of physics are the same for all observers, regardless of their state of motion.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 33.1 (a)
 33.2 (c)
 33.3 (a)
 33.4 (b) but only by an insignificant amount given the low relative speed
 33.5 less than but very nearly c

Particles and Waves

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 34.1 Explain the meaning of quantization.
- LO 34.2 Describe blackbody radiation and tell why classical physics cannot accurately account for it.
- LO 34.3 Explain the photoelectric effect and how it gave rise to the concept of photons.
- LO 34.4 Describe atomic spectra using the Bohr model.
- LO 34.5 Apply wave–particle duality to matter and compute the de Broglie wavelength of matter waves.
- LO 34.6 Describe the uncertainty principle and apply it to atomic-scale systems.
- LO 34.7 Explain Bohr’s principle of complementarity.

Skills & Knowledge You’ll Need

- An overview of classical physics (Chapters 1–32)
- A mind that’s open to the counterintuitive nature of quantum physics

Newtonian mechanics and Maxwell’s electromagnetism constitute the core of **classical physics**, providing a deep understanding of physical reality. Although these theories were firmly established by the middle of the 19th century, they remain central to the work of many contemporary scientists and engineers.

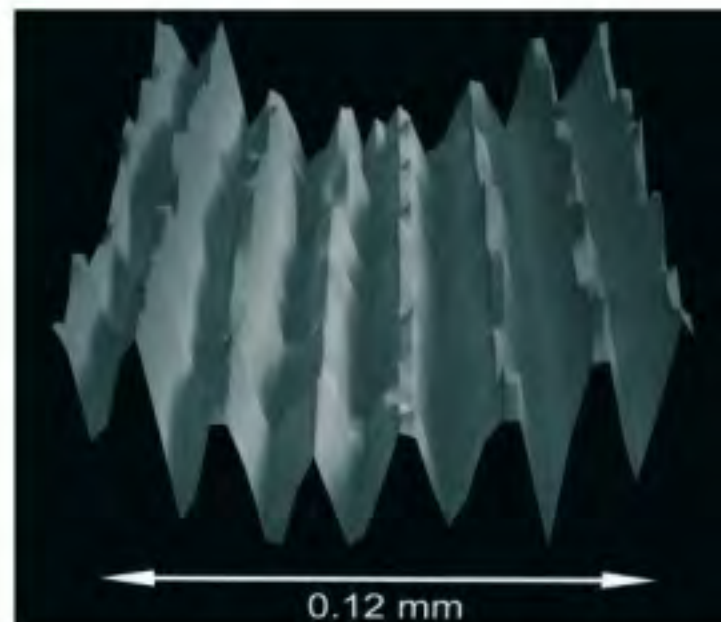
Nevertheless, at the end of the 19th century a few seemingly minor phenomena defied classical explanation. Most physicists felt that it was only a matter of time before these, too, came under the classical umbrella. But that was not to be. We’ve seen how questions about light led to a radical restructuring of our concepts of space and time. Other questions, especially those concerning matter at the atomic scale, brought about an even more radical transformation of physical thought.

This chapter explores some phenomena that led to quantum physics and recounts early attempts to explain them. The next chapter gives a fuller account of quantum theory, and subsequent chapters explore its application to atoms, molecules, nuclei, and quantum-based technologies.

34.1 Toward Quantum Theory

LO 34.1 Explain the meaning of quantization.

Are matter and energy continuously divisible? The essential difference between classical and quantum physics is that the former answers this question “in general, yes,” while the latter says definitively “no.” Most physical quantities are **quantized**, coming in only certain discrete values.



Ridges and valleys represent bright and dark fringes in the interference pattern produced by two beams of ultracold sodium atoms. What does this picture tell us about the nature of matter?

The idea that physical quantities might come in discrete “chunks” is not new. Some 2400 years ago, the Greek philosopher Democritus proposed that all matter consists of indivisible atoms. By the start of the 20th century, a more scientifically grounded atomic theory was widely accepted. J. J. Thomson’s discovery of the electron in 1897 showed that atoms might be divisible after all, but at the same time it revealed a finer division of matter into discrete “chunks.” Robert A. Millikan’s 1909 oil-drop experiment showed that electric charge is similarly quantized. Discovery of the proton and later the neutron further solidified the notion that matter comprises fundamental building blocks with definite values for their physical properties.

Quantization of matter into particles with discrete properties is not incompatible with classical physics as long as those particles behave according to classical laws—in particular, that they move continuously through space and can have *any* amount of energy. Add electromagnetism to the picture and the classical viewpoint requires that the electric and magnetic fields be continuous, exerting forces on charged particles and changing, in a gradual and continuous way, the particles’ energies.

The startling fact of quantum physics is that this classical behavior does not occur at the atomic scale; instead, energy itself is often quantized. Reconciling the implications of that fact with our commonsense notions of matter and motion has proved impossible; instead, the quantum world speaks a different language, one in which deeply ingrained ideas about causality and the solid reality of matter no longer apply. Here we look at three distinct phenomena that force us to accept the idea that energy can be quantized.

34.2 Blackbody Radiation

LO 34.2 *Describe blackbody radiation and tell why classical physics cannot accurately account for it.*

Heat an object hot enough and it glows, emitting electromagnetic radiation in the form of light. As we saw in Section 16.3, the total power radiated is proportional to the fourth power of the temperature. There’s also a change in wavelength with increasing temperature: The first visible glow is a dull red, changing with higher temperatures to orange and then yellow colors corresponding to ever-shorter wavelengths.

A perfect absorber of electromagnetic radiation is called a **blackbody** because it absorbs all light and thus appears black. A perfect absorber is also a perfect emitter, and when a blackbody is heated it emits electromagnetic radiation in a broad range of wavelengths; this is **blackbody radiation**. Many objects—such as the Sun or an electric-stove burner—behave approximately like blackbodies. An excellent approximation to a blackbody is a hollow piece of *any* material with a small hole. As Fig. 34.1 shows, any radiation entering the hole undergoes multiple reflections and is eventually absorbed. The hole, therefore, is a nearly perfect absorber, so when the material is heated, the radiation emerging is blackbody radiation.

Experimental study of blackbody radiation shows three characteristic features:

1. The radiation covers a continuous range of wavelengths, with the total power radiated at all wavelengths combined given by the Stefan–Boltzmann law that we introduced in Chapter 16:

$$R_{\text{blackbody}} = \sigma AT^4 \quad (34.1)$$

where A is the area of the radiating surface, T is its absolute (kelvin) temperature, and $\sigma = 5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W}/(\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}^4)$ is the Stefan–Boltzmann constant.

2. The radiation peaks at a wavelength that’s inversely proportional to the temperature; this is known as **Wien’s law**.
3. The distribution of wavelengths depends only on temperature, not on the material of which the blackbody is made.

A blackbody’s **radiance** measures the radiated power as a function of wavelength. Because the blackbody emits a continuous spectrum, we have to express radiance as power

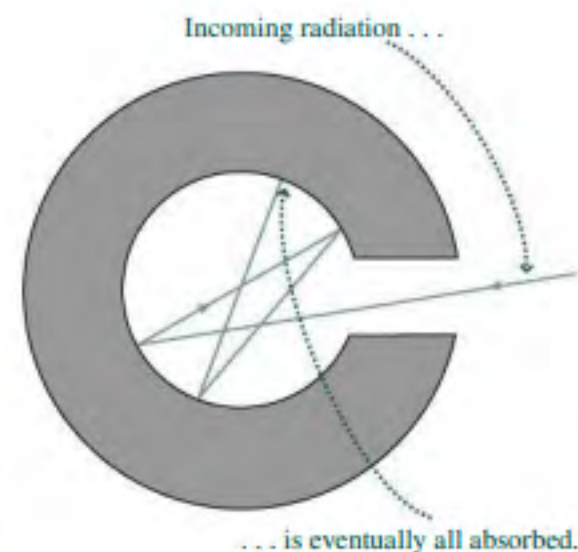


FIGURE 34.1 A cavity with a small hole absorbs nearly all incident radiation and hence is a near-perfect blackbody.

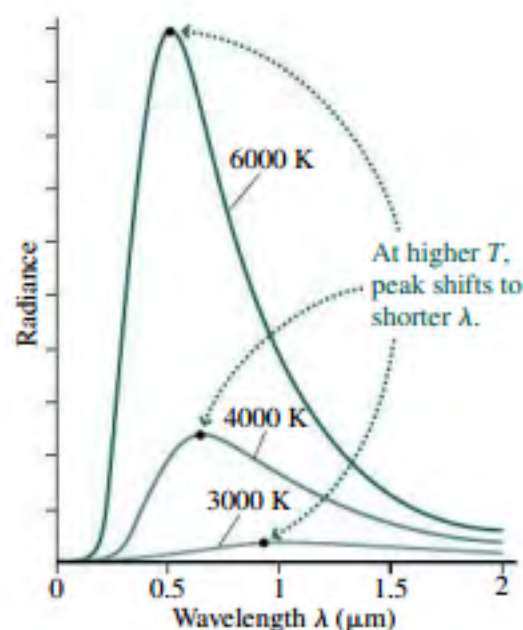


FIGURE 34.2 Blackbody radiance—power per unit area per unit wavelength interval—as a function of wavelength.

per unit spectral interval. If we choose intervals in wavelength, then the relation implied in feature 2 above gives a peak radiance at wavelength λ_{peak} such that

$$\lambda_{\text{peak}} T = 2.898 \text{ mm} \cdot \text{K} \quad (\text{Wien's law}) \quad (34.2a)$$

We emphasize, however, that the choice of fixed wavelength intervals is arbitrary. If we had chosen fixed frequency intervals, then the constant in Equation 34.2a would be different, and a plot of radiance versus wavelength would peak at a different wavelength. So λ_{peak} in Equation 34.2a is not some absolute measure of the wavelength at which the blackbody emits the “most” radiation, but rather the wavelength of the maximum radiation if you choose to keep track of power in intervals of fixed wavelength. A more physically based quantity is the median wavelength, below and above which half the power is radiated; it's given by

$$\lambda_{\text{median}} T = 4.11 \text{ mm} \cdot \text{K} \quad (34.2b)$$

Whatever measure one chooses, though, the important point is that the peak wavelength is inversely proportional to temperature. In our subsequent discussion, we'll adopt a definition of radiance as the power emitted per unit area per unit wavelength interval; then Equation 34.2a describes the peak wavelength. Figure 34.2 plots this measure of blackbody radiance at three temperatures.

Microscopically, blackbody radiation is associated with the thermal motions of atoms and molecules, so it's not surprising that the radiation increases with temperature. In the late 1800s, physicists tried to apply the laws of electromagnetism and statistical mechanics to explain the experimental observations of blackbody radiation. They met with some success in describing such aspects as the T^4 dependence of the total energy radiated, and the shifting of the radiation distribution toward shorter wavelengths with increasing temperature, but they could not reproduce the actual observed distribution at all wavelengths.

In 1900, the German physicist Max Planck formulated an equation that fit the observed radiance curves for blackbody radiation at all wavelengths:

$$R(\lambda, T) = \frac{2\pi hc^2}{\lambda^5 (e^{hc/\lambda kT} - 1)} \quad (34.3)$$

Two familiar quantities here are Boltzmann's constant $k = 1.38 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K}$, introduced in Chapter 17, and the speed of light c . A new quantity is the constant h , whose value Planck chose in order to make the equation fit experimental data.

Planck first presented his law as a purely empirical equation describing blackbody experiments. Later he showed that his equation had a remarkable physical interpretation:

The energy of a vibrating molecule is quantized, meaning it can have only certain discrete values. Specifically, if f is the vibration frequency, then the energy must be an integer multiple of the quantity hf :

$$E = nhf, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (34.4)$$

where h is the constant Planck introduced in Equation 34.3. Today we know h as one of the fundamental constants of nature and call it **Planck's constant**. Its value is approximately $6.63 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J} \cdot \text{s}$, and it's because h is so small that quantum phenomena are usually obvious only in the atomic and molecular realm. Planck's quantization of the energy of vibrating molecules implies further that a molecule can absorb or emit energy only in discrete “bundles” of size hf , and that in doing so it jumps abruptly from one of its allowed energy levels to another (Fig. 34.3). (Later developments showed that Planck was correct about the size of the energy jumps but that the factor n in Equation 34.4 should actually be $n + \frac{1}{2}$.)

Planck himself was very conservative and reluctant to accept or elaborate on his theory's evident disagreement with classical physics; nevertheless, his revolutionary work won Planck the 1918 Nobel Prize. Other physicists subsequently emphasized the contrast between Planck's work and the classical treatment of blackbody radiation. That earlier

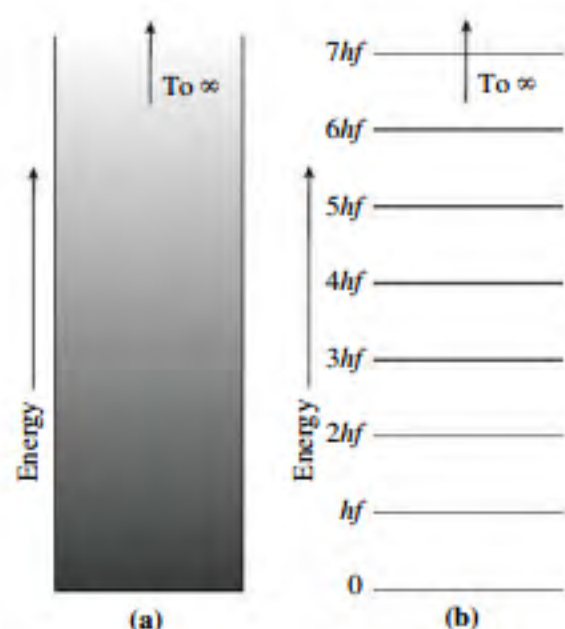


FIGURE 34.3 (a) In classical physics, a vibrating molecule can have any energy. (b) Allowed energies in Planck's theory are integer multiples of hf . Energy-level diagrams like this are used frequently in quantum physics, and usually the horizontal axis has no physical significance.

treatment, based on the assumption that energy is shared equally among all possible vibrational modes, had led to the **Rayleigh–Jeans law** for the radiance of a blackbody:

$$R(\lambda, T) = \frac{2\pi ckT}{\lambda^4} \quad (34.5)$$

Not only did the Rayleigh–Jeans law contradict experimental measurements, but it also led to the absurd conclusion that every object, at every nonzero temperature, should emit electromagnetic energy at an infinite rate, with that energy concentrated at the shortest wavelengths (Fig. 34.4). Since the shortest wavelength electromagnetic radiation known at the time was ultraviolet light, this phenomenon was called the **ultraviolet catastrophe**. In Planck's equation, the exponential term in the denominator grows rapidly with decreasing wavelength, diminishing the radiance and averting the ultraviolet catastrophe. Problems 72, 76, and 78 show that Planck's law reduces to the Rayleigh–Jeans law for longer wavelengths, and that it also leads to Wien's law and the Stefan–Boltzmann law.

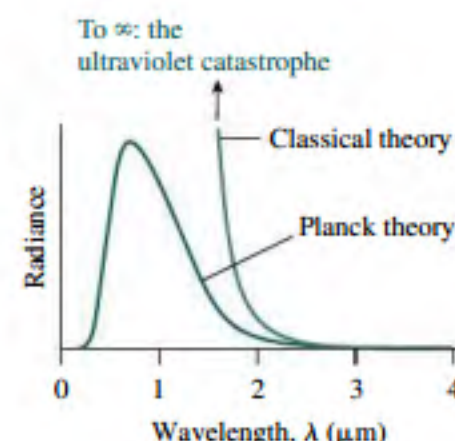


FIGURE 34.4 Radiance versus wavelength for blackbody radiation at 6000 K, showing also the incorrect classical prediction.

EXAMPLE 34.1 Blackbody Radiation: Lightbulb Efficiency

A typical incandescent lightbulb's filament temperature is about 2900 K. (a) Find the wavelength of peak radiance, and (b) compare the radiance at 550 nm—the approximate center of the visible spectrum—with the peak radiance.

INTERPRET This problem involves radiation from an object at a known temperature, and we identify the filament as a blackbody. We're asked for both the peak wavelength and a comparison of radiances at two different wavelengths. We're implicitly adopting our definition of radiance as power emitted per unit area per unit wavelength, and our answers will reflect this choice.

DEVELOP Equation 34.2a gives the peak wavelength, and Equation 34.3 gives the radiance as a function of wavelength. So our plan for (a) is to solve Equation 34.2a, $\lambda_{\text{peak}}T = 2.898 \text{ mm} \cdot \text{K}$, for $T = 2900 \text{ K}$. For (b) we'll form a ratio of radiances from Equation 34.3, using the result of (a) and the given 550-nm visible wavelength.

EVALUATE (a) Equation 34.2a gives $\lambda = 2.898 \text{ mm} \cdot \text{K} / 2900 \text{ K} = 1.0 \mu\text{m}$. (b) To compare radiances, we form a ratio of the right-hand sides of Equation 34.3 evaluated at the wavelengths $\lambda_2 = 550 \text{ nm}$ and $\lambda_1 = 1.0 \mu\text{m}$ or 1000 nm. The numerators cancel, giving

$$\frac{R(\lambda_2, T)}{R(\lambda_1, T)} = \frac{\lambda_1^5 (e^{hc/\lambda_1 kT} - 1)}{\lambda_2^5 (e^{hc/\lambda_2 kT} - 1)} = 0.34$$

ASSESS Our 1.0- μm answer for (a) lies in the infrared, suggesting that incandescent lightbulbs aren't very efficient at producing visible light; that's the reason they're being phased out. Our answer to (b) confirms this point, showing there's much less radiance in the visible than at the infrared peak. And remember that we've defined radiance as power per unit area per unit wavelength interval. If we adopt the more physical median wavelength given by $\lambda_{\text{median}}T = 4.11 \text{ mm} \cdot \text{K}$, we find $\lambda_{\text{median}} = 1.4 \mu\text{m}$, well into the infrared. Since half the radiation occurs at wavelengths longer than this median, the bulb emits far more than half its energy as invisible infrared.

GOT IT?

34.1 Two identical blackbodies, A and B, are heated until A's temperature is twice B's. Compare (1) their total radiated power and (2) their wavelengths of peak radiance.

34.3 Photons

LO 34.3 Explain the photoelectric effect and how it gave rise to the concept of photons.

Planck showed that vibrating molecules could exchange energy with electromagnetic radiation only in quantized bundles of size hf . Is the radiation's energy similarly quantized?

The Photoelectric Effect

In 1887 Heinrich Hertz observed that metals emit electrons when struck by light. Observations of this **photoelectric effect** continued with experiments involving metal electrodes in evacuated glass containers (Fig. 34.5). Illuminating one electrode causes it to emit electrons. Making the second electrode positive attracts the electrons, and the resulting current measures the rate at which electrons are ejected. Make the second electrode

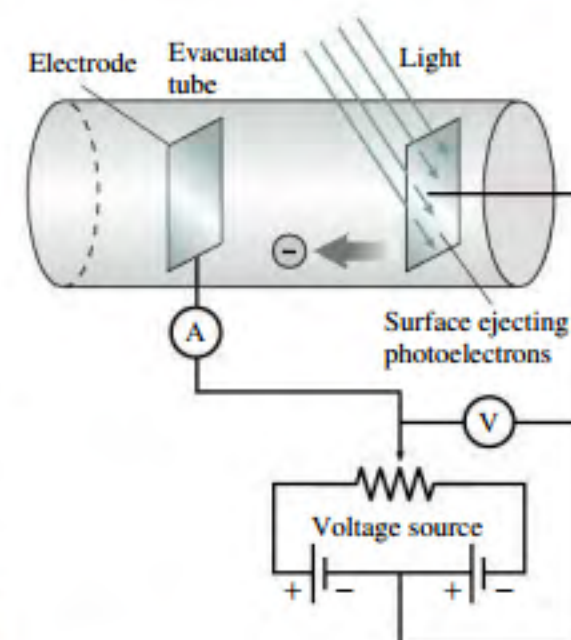


FIGURE 34.5 Apparatus for studying the photoelectric effect.

The stopping potential V_s indicates the maximum electron energy, which is independent of intensity.

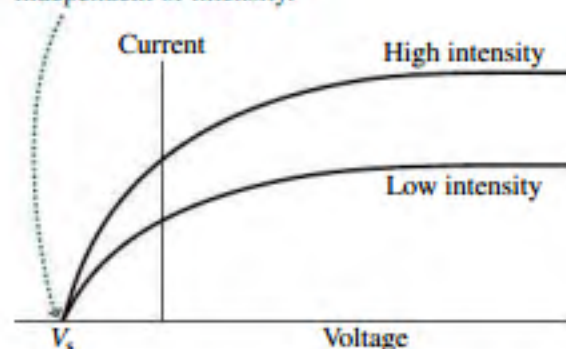


FIGURE 34.6 Current versus voltage for the photoelectric experiment of Fig. 34.5, shown for two light intensities at the same frequency.

Table 34.1 Work Functions

Element (Symbol)	ϕ (eV)
Silver (Ag)	4.26
Aluminum (Al)	4.28
Cesium (Cs)	2.14
Copper (Cu)	4.65
Potassium (K)	2.30
Sodium (Na)	2.75
Nickel (Ni)	5.15
Silicon (Si)	4.85

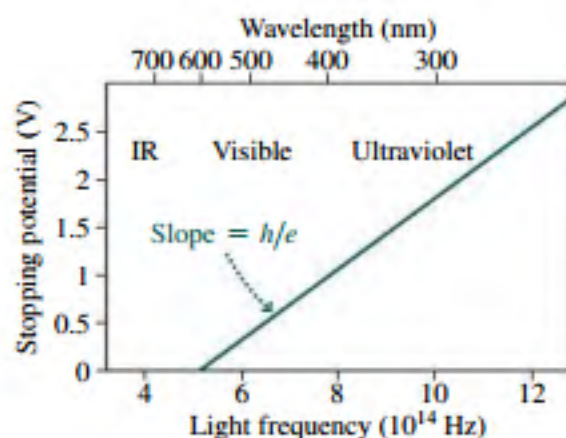


FIGURE 34.7 Results of a photoelectric experiment, showing stopping potential as a function of light frequency and wavelength. The stopping potential in volts is a direct measure of the electron energy in electronvolts.

sufficiently negative, on the other hand, and the electron energy isn't great enough to overcome the repulsive potential; then the current ceases. This so-called *stopping potential* provides a measure of the ejected electrons' maximum kinetic energy $K_{\max} = eV_s$.

Classical physics suggests that the photoelectric effect should occur because an electron experiences a force in the oscillating electric field of a light wave. As the electron absorbs energy from the wave, the amplitude of its motion should grow until eventually it has enough energy to escape from the metal. Because the energy in a wave is spread throughout the entire wave, it might take a while for a single tiny electron to absorb enough energy. Increasing the light intensity should increase the electric field, resulting in the electron being ejected sooner and with more energy. Changing the wave frequency should have little effect.

The photoelectric effect does occur, but not in the way classical physics suggests. Figure 34.6 shows results from a photoelectric experiment, in the form of current versus voltage as read by the meters in Fig. 34.5. These results, along with observations made by varying the frequency of the incident light, show three major disagreements with the classical prediction:

1. Current begins immediately, showing that electrons are ejected immediately, even in dim light.
2. The maximum electron energy, as measured by the stopping potential V_s , is independent of the light intensity.
3. Below a certain cutoff frequency *no* electrons are emitted, no matter how intense the light. Above the cutoff frequency electrons are emitted with a maximum energy that increases in proportion to the light-wave frequency.

In 1905, the same year he formulated the special theory of relativity, Albert Einstein proposed an explanation for the photoelectric effect. Einstein suggested that an electromagnetic wave's energy is concentrated in "bundles" called **quanta** or **photons**. Einstein applied to these photons the same energy-quantization condition that Planck had already proposed for molecular vibrations: that photons in light with frequency f have energy hf , where again h is Planck's constant:

$$E = hf \quad (\text{photon energy}) \quad (34.6)$$

E is the energy of a photon . . . associated with light of frequency f .
 h is Planck's constant.

The more intense the light, the more photons—but the energy of each photon is unrelated to the light intensity.

Einstein's idea explains all three nonclassical aspects of the photoelectric effect. Each material has a minimum energy—called the *work function*, ϕ —required to eject an electron. (Table 34.1 lists work functions for selected elements.) Since the energy in a photon of light with frequency f is hf , the photons in low-frequency light have less energy than the work function and are therefore unable to eject electrons—no matter how many photons there are. At the cutoff frequency, the photon energy equals the work function, and the photons have just enough energy to eject electrons. As the frequency increases still further, the electrons emerge with maximum kinetic energy K equal to the difference between the photon energy and the work function:

$$K_{\max} = hf - \phi \quad (34.7)$$

Thus, the electrons' maximum kinetic energy depends only on the photon energy—that is, on the light frequency but not on its intensity (Fig. 34.7). Finally, the immediate ejection of electrons follows because an individual photon delivers its entire bundle of energy to an electron all at once. Einstein received the 1921 Nobel Prize primarily for his explanation of the photoelectric effect rather than for his more controversial relativity theories. In 1914 Millikan, who had earlier demonstrated the quantization of electric charge, carried out meticulous photoelectric experiments that confirmed Einstein's hypothesis and helped earn Millikan the 1923 Nobel Prize.

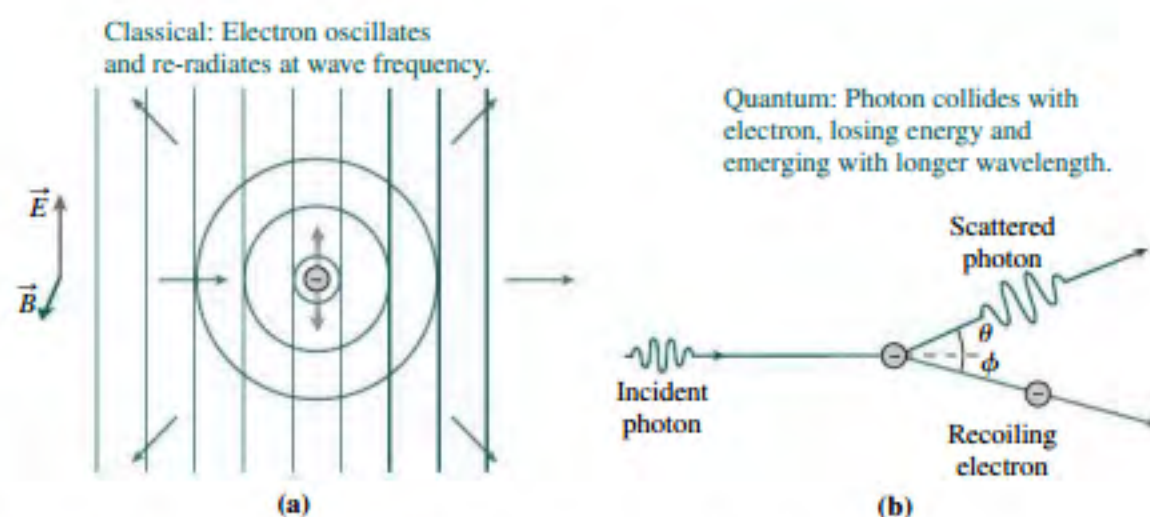


FIGURE 34.8 Classical and quantum descriptions of the interaction between electromagnetic waves and free electrons.

GOT IT?

34.2 If you replot Fig. 34.7 for a material with a different work function, (1) will the slope of the line change? (2) Will the point at which it intersects the horizontal axis change?

Waves or Particles?

In positing photons, Einstein gave the first inklings of the **wave-particle duality**—the seemingly dual nature of light, which acts in some situations like a wave and in others, as in the photoelectric effect, more like a localized particle. We now turn to another phenomenon that demonstrates light's particle-like aspect. Later we'll see how the wave-particle duality encompasses not only light but matter as well.

The Compton Effect

In 1923 the American physicist Arthur Holly Compton, at Washington University in St. Louis, did an experiment that dramatically confirmed the particle-like aspect of electromagnetic radiation. Although Compton's work came much later in the history of quantum theory than Einstein's, we include it here because it so strongly corroborates Einstein's photon hypothesis.

Compton was studying the interaction of X-rays with electrons. Classically, an electron subject to an electromagnetic wave should undergo oscillatory motion, driven by the wave's oscillating electric field. Since accelerated charge is the source of electromagnetic waves, the electron should itself produce electromagnetic waves *of the same frequency as the incident waves* (Fig. 34.8a). As we saw in Section 29.7, the electron should radiate in all directions, with maximum radiation perpendicular to its oscillatory motion.

Compton and his coworkers measured the intensity of scattered X-rays as a function of wavelength for different scattering angles. Remarkably, they found the greatest concentration of scattered X-rays at a wavelength *longer* than that of the incident radiation (Fig. 34.9). They interpreted their results as implying that particle-like photons had collided with electrons, losing energy to the electrons and therefore, since $E = hf$, emerging with lower frequency and correspondingly longer wavelength (Fig. 34.8b).

We can understand this **Compton effect** by treating the interaction as an elastic collision between the incident photon and a stationary electron. The photon moves at c , so it's necessary to use relativistic expressions for energy and momentum. You can work out the details in Problem 77; the result gives the **Compton shift**: $\Delta\lambda = \lambda - \lambda_0$ —that is, the change from the photon's original wavelength λ_0 :

$$\Delta\lambda = \frac{h}{mc} (1 - \cos\theta) \quad (\text{Compton shift}) \quad (34.8)$$

Figure 34.9 shows that this equation is in excellent agreement with experimental data.

The term h/mc in Equation 34.8 is the **Compton wavelength** of the electron and gives the wavelength shift for a photon scattering at $\theta = 90^\circ$. Its value is $\lambda_C = h/mc = 0.00243 \text{ nm}$,

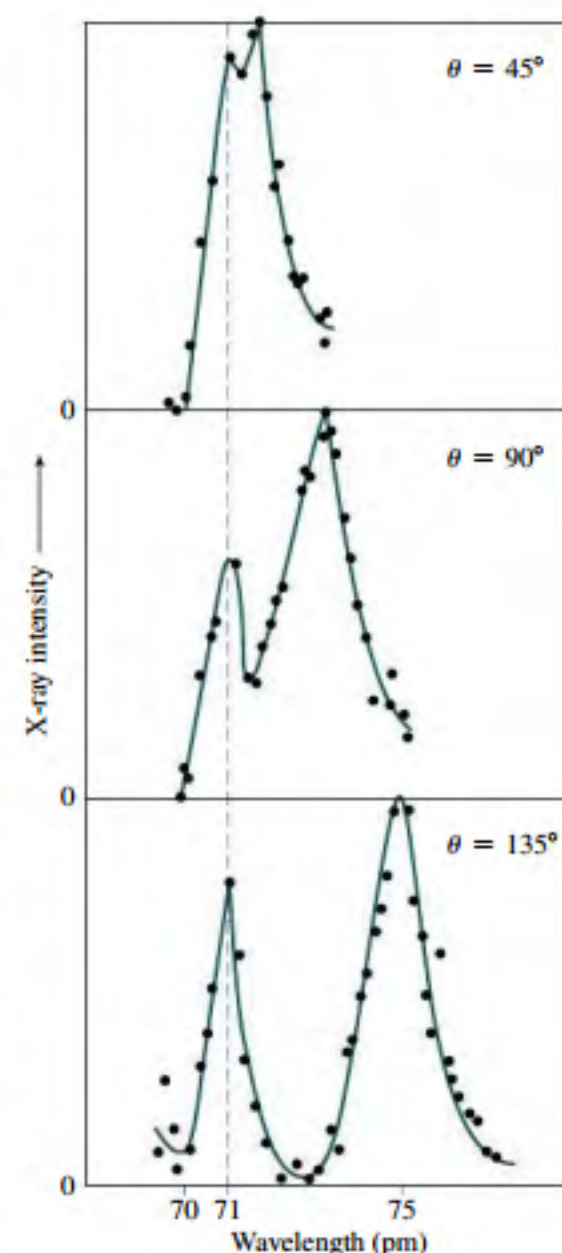


FIGURE 34.9 Compton's results for scattering of X-rays with $\lambda = 71 \text{ pm}$ (indicated by the vertical dashed line). Right-hand peak shows the wavelength shift of the Compton effect. The unshifted left-hand peak is from photons scattering off tightly bound atomic electrons, which don't absorb significant energy. Solid curves are theoretical predictions.

or 2.43 pm. Equation 34.8 shows that the largest wavelength shift will be $2\lambda_C$, occurring at $\theta = 180^\circ$. For the shift to be noticeable it should be a significant fraction of the incident wavelength, which therefore can't be too many times the Compton wavelength. For X-rays, λ is in the range from approximately 10 pm to 10 nm, and therefore, detection of the Compton shift in X-rays is already difficult. It would be totally impossible with visible light.

Today, Compton scattering with gamma rays is a widely used technique for studying the structure of matter. For example, abnormalities in human bone can be detected through Compton scattering of gamma rays emitted by a radioactive source embedded in bone. And the inverse Compton effect—the scattering of a rapidly moving electron off a photon—is a common process in high-energy astrophysical systems and is used in the laboratory to produce beams of gamma radiation.

The wavelength shift in Compton scattering admits no classical explanation. Coming after a decade of experimental and theoretical work that pointed increasingly to quantization as the essence of the atomic world, Compton's experimental results were for many physicists the convincing evidence for the reality of quanta.

GOT IT?

34.3 Will the Compton wavelength shift be (a) greater or (b) less for photons of a given wavelength scattering off protons rather than electrons?

34.4 Atomic Spectra and the Bohr Atom

LO 34.4 Describe atomic spectra using the Bohr model.

In Chapter 29 we found that accelerated charges are the source of electromagnetic radiation. By 1900 it was known that atoms contain negative electrons as well as regions of positive charge; by 1911 experiments by Ernest Rutherford and his colleague Hans Geiger and student Ernest Marsden had localized the positive charge in the tiny but relatively massive nucleus. According to classical physics, electrons should orbit the nucleus under the influence of the electric force, radiating electromagnetic wave energy as they accelerate in their orbits. In fact, a classical calculation shows that atomic electrons will quickly radiate away all their energy and spiral into the nucleus. Thus, the very existence of atoms is at odds with classical physics.

The Hydrogen Spectrum

A more subtle problem involving atoms dates to 1804, when William Wollaston noticed lines between some of the colors dispersed by a prism. Ten years later, the German optician Josef von Fraunhofer dispersed the solar spectrum sufficiently that he could see hundreds of narrow, dark lines against the otherwise continuous spectrum. Studies of light emitted by diffuse gases excited by electric discharges show similar **spectral lines**, these bright against an otherwise dark background (recall Fig. 30.16). Such **emission spectra** result when atoms emit light of discrete frequencies. **Absorption spectra**, in contrast, arise when atoms in a diffuse gas absorb discrete frequencies of light from a continuous source. We emphasize the word “diffuse”: Discrete spectra generally arise only when a gas is sufficiently diffuse that light from one atom stands a strong chance of escaping the gas before it interacts with other atoms. In dense gases, multiple interactions result in the continuous spectrum of blackbody radiation.

Every element produces its own unique spectral lines, so analysis of spectra, even from the remote reaches of the cosmos, allows us to identify and characterize the material emitting the light. Spectral analysis led to the discovery of helium in the Sun's atmosphere before that element had been identified on Earth—hence the name, from the Greek word *helios* for Sun. Measuring the Doppler shift of spectral lines lets us “see” stars orbiting black holes in distant galaxies, and also gives direct evidence for the expansion of the

universe. Back on Earth, the technique of atomic absorption spectroscopy uses spectral lines to determine the elemental composition of substances, helping identify pollutants or trace the flow of elements in biological samples.

In 1884, a Swiss schoolteacher named Johann Balmer realized that the wavelengths of the first four lines in the visible spectrum of hydrogen (see Fig. 30.16) were related by the equation

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H \left(\frac{1}{2^2} - \frac{1}{n^2} \right)$$

where $n = 3, 4, 5, 6, \dots$ and R_H is the **Rydberg constant for hydrogen**, with the approximate value $1.0968 \times 10^7 \text{ m}^{-1}$. Other series of lines in the hydrogen spectrum were soon found, and Balmer's equation was generalized to

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H \left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2} \right) \quad (34.9)$$

where $n_1 = n_2 + 1, n_2 + 2, \dots$. The Balmer series of lines has $n_2 = 2$; the Lyman series, in the ultraviolet, has $n_2 = 1$; and the infrared Paschen series has $n_2 = 3$. There are in fact infinitely many such series, corresponding to $n_2 = 1, 2, 3, \dots$

But why should atoms emit discrete spectral lines? And why should the hydrogen lines form patterns with the simple regularity of Equation 34.9?

The Bohr Atom

In 1913, the great Danish physicist Niels Bohr proposed an atomic theory that accounted for the spectral lines of hydrogen. In the **Bohr atom** the electron moves in a circular orbit about the nucleus, held by the electric force. Classically, any orbital radius and correspondingly any energy and angular momentum should be possible. But Bohr quantized the atom, stating that the only possible orbits were those with angular momentum an integer multiple of Planck's constant divided by 2π . Angular momentum quantization implies energy quantization, which, as we'll show, leads to Equation 34.9 for the hydrogen spectral lines.

Bohr asserted that an electron in an allowed orbit does not radiate energy, in contradiction to the predictions of classical electromagnetism. But an electron can jump from one orbit to another, emitting or absorbing a photon whose energy is equal to the energy difference between the two orbital levels. We can therefore find the expected photon energies—and the corresponding wavelengths—if we know the allowed energy levels.

To find the quantized atomic energy levels in Bohr's model, consider a hydrogen atom consisting of a fixed proton and an electron in circular orbit. Treating the proton as fixed is a good approximation because its mass is nearly 2000 times the electron's. We consider only electron speeds much less than c —an excellent approximation in hydrogen.

In Example 11.1 we found that the angular momentum of a particle with mass m and speed v , moving in a circular path of radius r , is mvr . Thus, Bohr's quantization condition reads

$$mvr = n\hbar \quad (\text{quantization, Bohr atom}) \quad (34.10)$$

where $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ and where we define $\hbar \equiv h/2\pi$ (read “h bar”). We need to relate the electron's angular momentum to its energy so we can find out what Equation 34.10 implies about energy quantization.

You studied circular orbits for the inverse-square force of gravity in Chapter 8, where you saw that kinetic and potential energies in a circular orbit are related by $K = -\frac{1}{2}U$, with the zero of potential energy taken at infinity. The total energy $K + U$ is therefore $\frac{1}{2}U$. These results hold for any $1/r^2$ force, including the electric force. In the electric case the potential energy U is the point-charge potential of the proton, ke/r , multiplied by the electron charge, $-e$. Then the total energy is $E = \frac{1}{2}U = -ke^2/2r$. The minus sign means the electron is *bound* to the proton, in that it would take energy to separate them. Solving this equation for r then gives

$$r = -\frac{ke^2}{2E} \quad (34.11)$$

Since the kinetic energy is $K = -\frac{1}{2}U = -E$, we also have $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = -E$ or $v = \sqrt{-2E/m}$. Using our expressions for r and v in the quantization condition 34.10 gives $m\sqrt{-2E/m}(-ke^2/2E) = n\hbar$. Solving for the energy E , we find

$$E_n = -\frac{k^2e^4m}{2\hbar^2n^2}$$

where the subscript denotes the n th energy level, with $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$. The lowest energy state, $n = 1$, is called the **ground state**; the others are **excited states**. It's convenient to define the **Bohr radius**, a_0 , as

$$a_0 = \frac{\hbar^2}{mke^2} = 0.0529 \text{ nm}$$

With this definition the energy becomes

E_n is the energy of an electron in hydrogen.

k is the Coulomb constant and e is the elementary charge.

$$E_n = -\frac{ke^2}{2a_0}\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right) \quad (\text{energy levels, Bohr atom}) \quad (34.12a)$$

a_0 is the Bohr radius, 52.9 pm.

n is the energy level.

Equation 34.12a gives us the allowed energy levels under Bohr's quantization condition. Evaluating this expression for the case $n = 1$ gives $E_1 = -2.18 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J} = -13.6 \text{ eV}$; it's then convenient to write Equation 39.12a numerically in the form

$$E_n = -\frac{13.6 \text{ eV}}{n^2} \quad (34.12b)$$

Now we have the allowed energy levels. What about spectra? When an electron jumps between energy levels, it emits or absorbs a photon whose energy hf is equal to the energy difference between the levels. So imagine an electron going from a higher level n_1 to a lower level n_2 . The energy difference, according to Equation 34.12a, is

$$\Delta E = -\frac{ke^2}{2a_0}\left(\frac{1}{n_1^2} - \frac{1}{n_2^2}\right) = \frac{ke^2}{2a_0}\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right)$$

and this is equal to the energy of the emitted photon. But the photon energy is $\Delta E = hf = hc/\lambda$, and therefore $1/\lambda = \Delta E/hc$ or, using our expression for ΔE ,

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = \frac{ke^2}{2a_0hc}\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right)$$

This looks just like Equation 34.9 for the hydrogen spectral lines, except that $ke^2/2a_0hc$ replaces the Rydberg constant R_H . Evaluating this quantity gives $R_\infty = ke^2/2a_0hc = 1.0974 \times 10^7 \text{ m}^{-1}$, which is very close to the experimentally observed Rydberg constant for hydrogen. The small discrepancy results from our approximation that the proton is stationary. That approximation is equivalent to assuming an infinite proton mass; hence the subscript ∞ on this theoretically calculated Rydberg constant.

Bohr's theory of quantized angular momentum thus accounts brilliantly for the observed spectrum of hydrogen. We can understand the origin of the various spectral line series using Fig. 34.10, an **energy-level diagram** for the Bohr model of hydrogen. Allowed energy levels are shown as horizontal lines, and various possible transitions among levels as vertical arrows. Transitions with a common final state are grouped, and each group represents a different series of spectral lines.

Knowing the energy levels of Equation 34.12, we can also find the radii of the allowed electron orbits, as given by Equation 34.11:

$$r = -\frac{ke^2}{2E} = \left(\frac{ke^2}{2}\right)\left(\frac{2a_0r^2}{ke^2}\right) = n^2a_0 \quad (34.13)$$

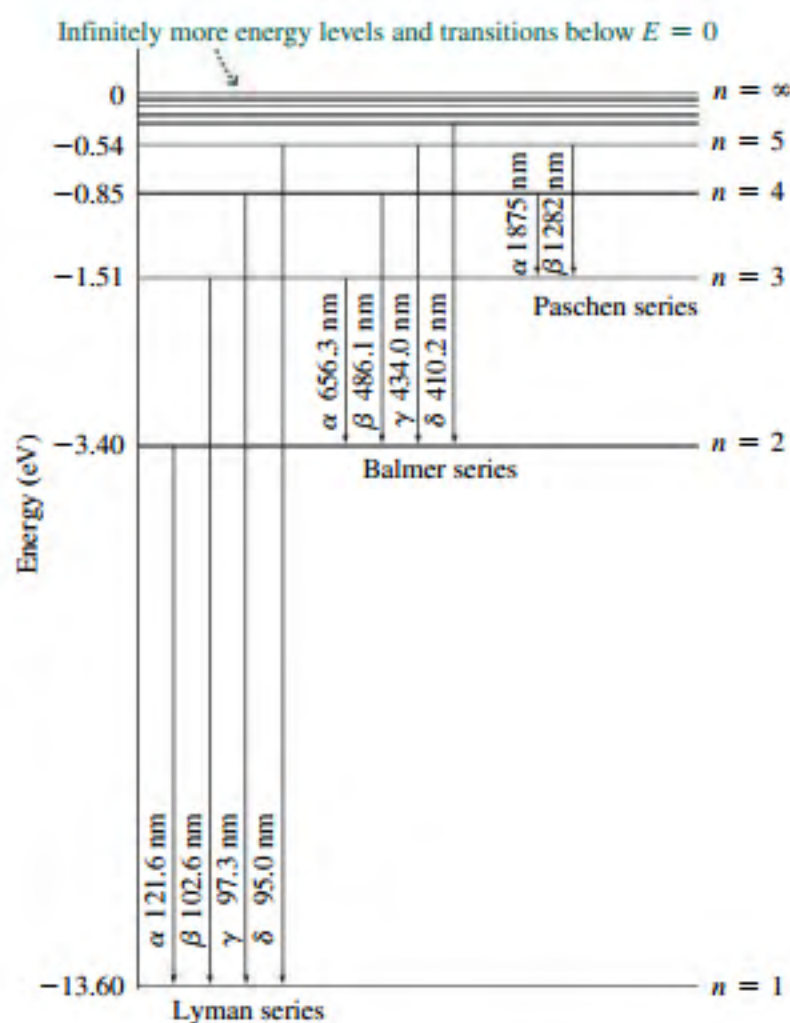


FIGURE 34.10 Energy-level diagram for the Bohr model of the hydrogen atom, showing transitions responsible for the first three series of spectral lines. Each series arises from jumps to a common final state.

Thus, the lowest energy orbit has a radius of one Bohr radius, with higher-energy orbits growing rapidly with increasing n . A hydrogen atom in its ground state— $n = 1$ —has a diameter of two Bohr radii, or about 0.1 nm. As we'll see in Chapter 35, the Bohr model's precise electron orbits aren't compatible with the fully developed theory of quantum mechanics; nevertheless, Equation 34.13 does give the approximate size of atoms.

EXAMPLE 34.2

The Bohr Model: Big Atoms

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Hydrogen atoms are normally in their ground state, with diameter approximately 0.1 nm. But in the diffuse gas of interstellar space, atoms exist in highly excited states with sizes approaching a fraction of a millimeter. Such **Rydberg atoms** can also be produced temporarily in the lab. Transitions among Rydberg states result in photons at radio wavelengths. One of the longest wavelengths observed corresponds to a transition from $n = 273$ to $n = 272$. (a) What's the diameter of a hydrogen atom in the $n = 273$ state? (b) At what wavelength should a radio telescope be set to observe this transition?

INTERPRET This is a problem about electron transitions in hydrogen atoms, albeit of unusual size. The Bohr model applies.

DEVELOP We'll use Equation 34.13, $r = n^2 a_0$, to find the atomic diameter, with $n = 273$. Equation 34.9, $1/\lambda = R_H(1/n_2^2 - 1/n_1^2)$, will give the transition wavelength with $n_1 = 273$ and $n_2 = 272$.

EVALUATE (a) The diameter is twice the radius, so Equation 34.13 gives $d = (2)(273^2)a_0 = 7.9 \mu\text{m}$. (b) Inverting Equation 34.9 to get the wavelength gives

$$\lambda = \left[R_H \left(\frac{1}{272^2} - \frac{1}{273^2} \right) \right]^{-1} = 92 \text{ cm}$$

with $R_H = 1.097 \times 10^7 \text{ m}^{-1}$.

ASSESS Our atomic diameter is some 75,000 times that of ground-state hydrogen and about the size of a red blood cell! A wavelength of 92 cm corresponds to a frequency $f = c/\lambda$ of about 300 MHz, which happens to lie in a gap between VHF TV channel 13 and UHF channel 14.

Equation 34.12 shows, and Fig. 34.10 suggests, that there are infinitely many electron energy levels between the ground state at -13.6 eV and zero energy. It's possible to give an atomic electron enough energy to bring it above the $E = 0$ level, but then it's no longer bound to the proton. Removing an electron is **ionization**, and Equation 34.12b and Fig. 34.10 show that it takes 13.6 eV to ionize a hydrogen atom in its ground state. This quantity is the **ionization energy**.

GOT IT?

34.4 Figure 34.10 shows some of the transitions available to the electron in the Bohr model of hydrogen, but not all of them. The figure suggests that the shortest possible wavelength emitted in *any* electron transition in hydrogen is (a) arbitrarily small, (b) between 95 nm and 1282 nm, or (c) a little shorter than 95 nm.

Limitations of the Bohr Model

Bohr's theory proved astoundingly successful in explaining the hydrogen spectrum. It also explains the spectra of hydrogen-like ions—atoms with all but one of their electrons removed—with the appropriate change in the value of the nuclear charge. And it has some success in predicting the spectra of atoms such as lithium and sodium that have a single valence electron beyond a group of more tightly bound electrons. But it can't account for the spectra of more complicated atoms, even two-electron helium. And with hydrogen, there are subtle spectral details that the Bohr model doesn't address. Furthermore, like Planck's original quantum hypothesis, Bohr's quantization of atomic energy levels lacked a convincing theoretical basis. You'll see in the next chapter how the much more comprehensive theory of quantum mechanics overcomes these limitations.

34.5 Matter Waves

LO 34.5 Apply wave-particle duality to matter and compute the de Broglie wavelength of matter waves.

In classical physics, light is purely a wave phenomenon. Einstein's photons gave light a particle-like quality as well. In 1923, 10 years after Bohr's atomic theory, a French prince named Louis de Broglie (pronounced “de Broy”) set forth a remarkable hypothesis in his doctoral thesis. If light has both wave-like and particle-like properties, he reasoned, why shouldn't matter also exhibit both properties?

We saw in Chapter 29 that light with energy E also carries momentum $p = E/c$. Combined with Equation 34.6, that means a photon of light with frequency f has momentum $p = hf/c$. Since $f\lambda = c$, the photon's momentum and wavelength are therefore related by

λ is the wavelength associated with a particle . . .

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{p} \quad (\text{de Broglie wavelength}) \quad (34.14)$$

. . . whose momentum is p .

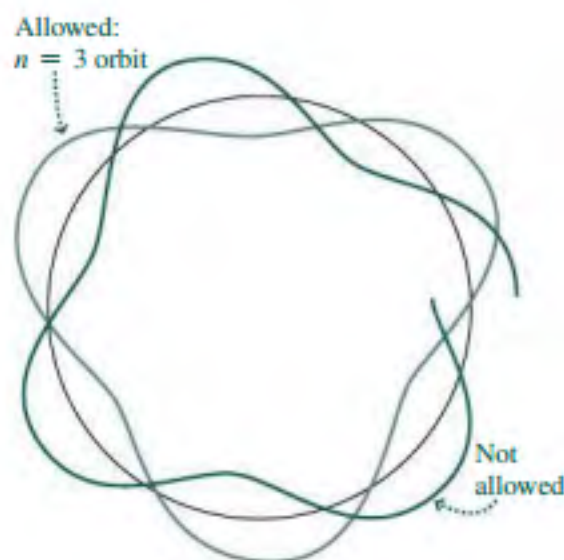


FIGURE 34.11 The allowed electron orbits in the Bohr atom are those that can fit an integral number of de Broglie wavelengths around the circular Bohr orbit.

De Broglie proposed that this same relation between momentum and wavelength should hold for particles of matter; at nonrelativistic speed, for example, an electron should have associated with it a **de Broglie wavelength** given by h/mv .

De Broglie used his matter-wave hypothesis to explain why atomic electron orbits are quantized. He proposed that Bohr's allowed orbits were those in which standing waves could exist (Fig. 34.11), in much the same way that a violin string can support only certain frequencies of standing waves. Suppose that n full wavelengths of a de Broglie electron wave fit around the circumference of the electron's circular orbit. Then we must have $n\lambda = n(h/p) = n(h/mv) = 2\pi r$, with r the orbit radius. Multiplying both sides by $mv/2\pi$ then gives $mvr = nh/2\pi = n\hbar$, which is Bohr's quantization condition. Thus, de Broglie's hypothesis provides a natural explanation for the quantization of atomic energy levels.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 34.1 The de Broglie Wavelength: Large and Small

If matter has wave properties, why don't we observe baseballs, cars, and people undergoing quantum interference?

EVALUATE Planck's constant h is tiny, and the masses of macroscopic objects are large. That makes the de Broglie wavelength (Equation 34.14) of macroscopic objects minuscule if they have any velocity whatsoever. Since wave behavior is evident only when waves interact with systems comparable in size to the wavelength, the wave aspect of macroscopic objects isn't evident. Even with subatomic particles, wave behavior isn't obvious at high velocities (i.e., high values of momentum p in the denominator of Equation 34.14). In the atom, though, it's a different story, as Making the Connection shows.

ASSESS Couldn't we make a macroscopic object's wavelength large by making its momentum mv small? Yes—but at normal temperatures,

thermal agitation always means a significant random velocity. Only at very low temperatures can macroscopic systems exhibit quantum interference.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Find the de Broglie wavelength of (a) a 150-g baseball pitched at 45 m/s and (b) an electron moving at 1 Mm/s. Compare your results with the sizes of home plate and an atom, respectively.

EVALUATE Given mass and speed, Equation 34.14 becomes $\lambda = h/mv$. This gives $\lambda_{\text{baseball}} \approx 10^{-34}$ m, unimaginably smaller than home plate. But $\lambda_{\text{electron}} \approx 0.7$ nm, several times the size of an atom. Therefore, wave effects dominate this electron's interactions with atoms.

APPLICATION The Electron Microscope



In Chapter 32 we found that light can't sharply image objects whose size is on the order of the wavelength or smaller—a factor that limits the resolving power of conventional microscopes. But Equation 34.14 shows that we can control the wavelength of electrons by adjusting their speed—and therefore we can achieve electron wavelengths much shorter than that of light. The **electron microscope** exploits this effect, providing resolutions down to about 1 nm and magnifications of 10^6 .

Electron microscopes accelerate electron beams to energies of 50–100 keV, with corresponding wavelengths of about 0.005 nm. Magnetic fields act as focusing lenses, forming an image of whatever object is placed in the beam path. An electronic detector reads the image, which is then displayed on a screen.

Electron microscopes are indispensable tools in biology, chemistry, and materials science. A related device, the scanning electron microscope, produces dramatic three-dimensional images at magnifications of 10^4 – 10^5 , as shown in the photo of an ant carrying a microelectronic chip.

GOT IT?

34.5 De Broglie's matter-wave hypothesis explains the quantization of electron orbits in the Bohr atom most fundamentally in terms of (a) angular momentum, (b) wavelength, or (c) energy.

Electron Diffraction and Matter-Wave Interference

In 1927, the American physicists Clinton Davisson and Lester Germer gave a convincing verification of de Broglie's matter-wave hypothesis. Davisson and Germer were studying the interaction of an electron beam with a nickel crystal, and they noticed regular intensity peaks reminiscent of X-ray diffraction. Shortly afterward, the Scottish physicist George Thomson observed electron diffraction directly, further evidence of the electron's wave nature (Fig. 34.12). Thomson was the son of J. J. Thomson, who had discovered the electron as a particle in 1897. Together their work captured the electron's wave-particle duality. Today, experiments with entire atoms and even larger clusters of matter exhibit wave interference—as shown in this chapter's opening photo.

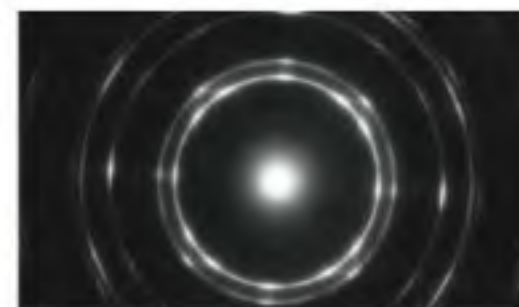


FIGURE 34.12 Diffraction produced by passing an electron beam through a circular aperture shows that electrons have a wave-like character.

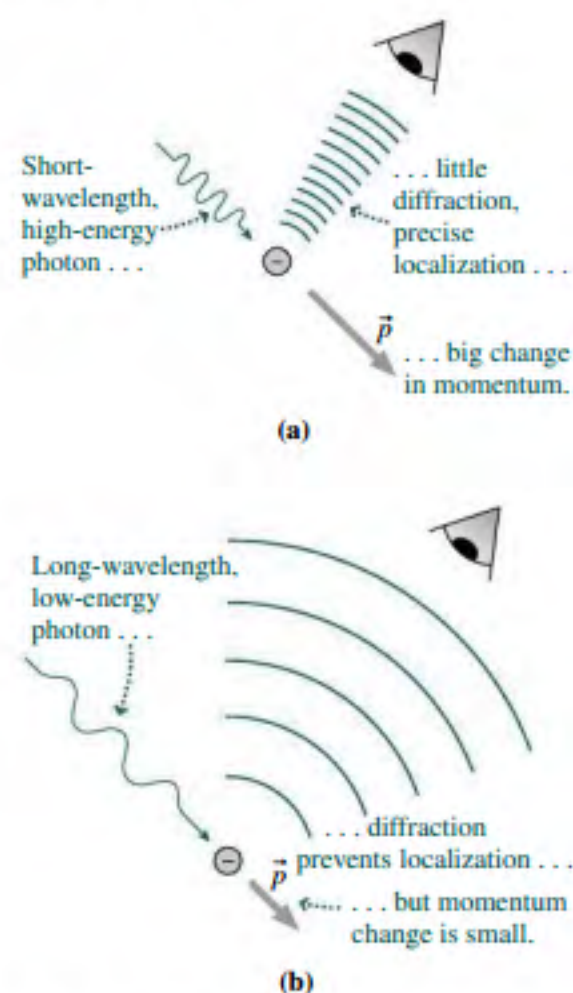


FIGURE 34.13 Heisenberg's "quantum microscope" thought experiment.

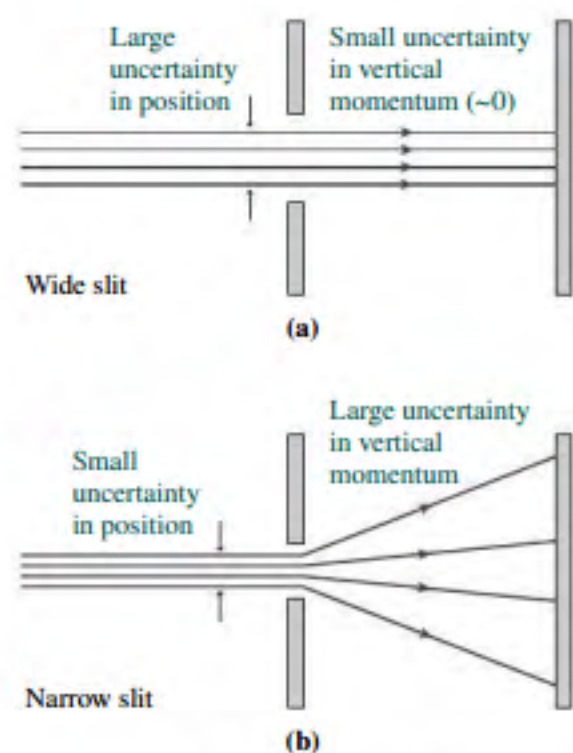


FIGURE 34.14 The wave nature of matter is intimately related to the uncertainty principle, as shown here for beams of electrons passing through wide and narrow slits. In (b), diffraction introduces the uncertainty in vertical momentum.

34.6 The Uncertainty Principle

LO 34.6 Describe the uncertainty principle and apply it to atomic-scale systems.

In classical physics it's possible, in principle, to know the exact position and velocity of a particle and therefore to predict with certainty its future behavior. But not so in quantum physics! In 1927, the German physicist Werner Heisenberg presented his **uncertainty principle**, which states that some pairs of quantities cannot be determined simultaneously with arbitrary precision. Position and momentum constitute one such pair; if we measure a particle's position to within an uncertainty Δx , then we can't simultaneously determine its momentum to an accuracy better than Δp , where

$$\Delta x \Delta p \geq \hbar \quad (\text{uncertainty principle}) \quad (34.15)$$

Δx is the uncertainty in a particle's position ... and Δp is the uncertainty in its momentum.
Their product must be greater than $\hbar (= h/2\pi)$.

To see how this limitation plays out experimentally, consider measuring some property of a system by, for example, shining light on it. The light carries energy, which disturbs the system slightly. As a result, values inferred from the measurement are no longer quite right. In classical physics the light's energy can be arbitrarily small, resulting in a negligible disturbance. But in quantum theory the minimum energy is a single quantum, like a photon of light, and thus the disturbance can't be arbitrarily small.

So why not use lower-frequency light, whose photon energy hf is lower? Because lower frequency means longer wavelength and, as we found in Chapter 32, diffraction effects limit resolution at longer wavelengths. Heisenberg summarized this dilemma with the "thought experiment" illustrated in Fig. 34.13, which uses a single photon to observe an electron. A short-wavelength photon allows precise localization of the electron (Fig. 34.13a). But short wavelength means high frequency and thus high photon energy. The high-energy photon imparts considerable momentum to the electron, and thus the very act that fixes the electron's position degrades our knowledge of its momentum. We can decrease this disturbance with a lower-energy, longer-wavelength photon (Fig. 34.13b). But now diffraction precludes precisely determining the electron's position. So we can measure the electron's position accurately, at the expense of not knowing its momentum. Or we can measure its momentum accurately, but then we can't know its position. With a photon of intermediate wavelength we could measure both quantities, but neither precisely. The uncertainty principle, Equation 34.15, quantifies this trade-off.

The uncertainty principle is intimately connected with de Broglie's wave hypothesis. Suppose we pass an electron beam through a slit, as shown in Fig. 34.14. Then we know the electrons' vertical position to within the slit width. If the slit is much wider than the electrons' de Broglie wavelength, there's minimal diffraction. The electrons follow straight lines and we're quite sure of their vertical momentum, in this case zero (Fig. 34.14a). But with a wide slit we don't know much about the electrons' vertical position. Making the slit narrower gives a more precise position, but then diffraction spreads the beam, increasing the uncertainty in the electrons' vertical momentum (Fig. 34.14b). So the wave nature of matter ultimately imposes a trade-off: The more we know of a particle's position, the less we know of its momentum, and vice versa.

EXAMPLE 34.3 The Uncertainty Principle: Microelectronics

A beam of aluminum atoms is used to dope a semiconductor chip to set its electrical properties. If the atoms' velocity is known to within 0.2 m/s, how accurately can they be positioned?

INTERPRET This is a question about simultaneously knowing the atoms' position and velocity—paired quantities governed by the uncertainty principle.

DEVELOP We're given the velocity uncertainty Δv , from which we'll find the momentum uncertainty $\Delta p = m \Delta v$. Then we can use the uncertainty principle, Equation 34.15, $\Delta x \Delta p \geq \hbar$, to find the uncertainty Δx in position. To find the mass, we'll need aluminum's atomic weight from Appendix D, along with Appendix C's conversion from unified mass units (u) to kilograms.

EVALUATE We have

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta p &= m \Delta v = (26.98 \text{ u})(1.66 \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg/u})(0.20 \text{ m/s}) \\ &= 9 \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}\end{aligned}$$

Then Equation 34.15 gives the position uncertainty:

$$\Delta x = \frac{\hbar}{\Delta p} = 12 \text{ nm}$$

where, again, $\hbar = h/2\pi$.

ASSESS Our 12-nm answer is about 100 atomic diameters and shows that the uncertainty principle constrains our ability to fabricate very small microelectronic structures.

It sounds like the uncertainty principle only limits our knowledge. But in fact it proves useful in estimating the size and energies of atomic-scale systems, as the next example shows.

EXAMPLE 34.4

The Uncertainty Principle: Estimating Atomic and Nuclear Energies

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Use the uncertainty principle to estimate the minimum energy possible for (a) an electron confined to a region of atomic dimensions, about 0.1 nm, and (b) a proton confined to a region of nuclear dimensions, about 1 fm.

INTERPRET We're given the uncertainty in position; that's the width of the region in which the particles are confined. The particles can't be at rest, or we'd know that their momentum was exactly zero—in violation of the uncertainty principle. So they must have a minimum momentum and therefore energy. We're asked to find that energy.

DEVELOP We need to find the minimum momentum consistent with the uncertainty principle, and from it the energy. Suppose a particle has momentum of magnitude p , but we don't know its direction. It could be going one way, with momentum p , or the other way, with momentum $-p$. Then the momentum itself is uncertain by $\Delta p = p - (-p) = 2p$. The

uncertainty principle says $\Delta p \geq \hbar/\Delta x$, so there's a minimum magnitude for the momentum given by $p \geq \hbar/2\Delta x$. Using $p = mv$ and $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ gives $K = p^2/2m$, and therefore the uncertainty principle requires

$$K \geq \frac{1}{2m} \left(\frac{\hbar}{2\Delta x} \right)^2$$

EVALUATE Evaluating this constraint for an electron with $\Delta x = 0.1 \text{ nm}$ and for a proton with $\Delta x = 1 \text{ fm}$ gives minimum energies of about 1 eV and 5 MeV, respectively.

ASSESS Energies in electronvolts are typical of atomic-scale systems, as we saw in Fig. 34.10. Our result shows that nuclear energies are some 5 million times greater—indicating the dramatic difference between chemical and nuclear energy sources. We'll have more to say about that difference in Chapter 38.

Energy–Time Uncertainty

A second pair of variables that defy simultaneous measurement are the energy of a system and the time it remains at that energy. The energy uncertainty ΔE is related to the time Δt through the inequality

$$\Delta E \Delta t \geq \hbar \quad (34.16)$$

One effect of energy–time uncertainty is to render atomic and nuclear energy levels inexact and therefore to broaden spectral lines. If an atom were forever in a fixed energy state, we could take infinitely long to measure its energy and therefore make ΔE arbitrarily small. But excited states of atoms have characteristic lifetimes (typically $\sim 10^{-8} \text{ s}$), which limit the measurement time and therefore set a minimum uncertainty in the energy level. Problem 70 and Passage Problems 82–85 explore energy–time uncertainty, as does the Application on the next page.

GOT IT?

34.6 An object is moving in one dimension. If you know that its momentum has magnitude p , but you don't know which direction it's going, is the uncertainty in its momentum (a) 0, (b) p , or (c) $2p$?

APPLICATION Femtosecond Photography of Chemical Reactions

Chemists and biochemists studying chemical reactions in detail need to image events that take place in times measured in femtoseconds ($1\text{ fs} = 10^{-15}\text{ s}$). For this, they use ultrashort laser pulses that can “freeze” the action of electrons participating in chemical reactions. Because the temporal duration of the laser pulses is so short, energy–time uncertainty requires that the photons in the laser beam have considerable uncertainty in their energies. Since photon energy is $E = hf = hc/\lambda$, that translates into a broad spectrum of wavelengths—an advantage for the femtosecond laser technique because it allows a single laser pulse to probe multiple energy transitions in the molecule under study. The photo shows a femtosecond laser system constructed on an optical bench.



Observers, Uncertainty, and Causality

The uncertainty principle moves the observer from a passive onlooker to an active participant in physical events. To observe is necessarily to disturb, and quantum theory is therefore concerned with the role of the observer and the process of measurement. The uncertainty principle is fundamentally a statement about what can and cannot be learned through measurement.

Position and momentum cannot be measured simultaneously with perfect accuracy. Surely, though, a particle has well-defined values of both, even though we can't know them? The answer seems to be no. The standard interpretation of quantum mechanics suggests that it makes no sense to talk about what can't be measured, and recent experiments have ruled out “hidden variables” that might be active at a lower level to guide the particle in a deterministic path. Its wave aspect makes a particle a “fuzzy” thing, and it really makes no sense to think of it as a tiny ball with definite momentum and position. For that reason it also makes no sense to think of the particle's future as being fully determined in the sense that Newton's laws determine the future path of, say, a baseball. We're left with uncertainty—or indeterminacy, as Heisenberg's word also translates—as a fundamental fact of our universe.

34.7 Complementarity

LO 34.7 Explain Bohr's principle of complementarity.

One of the most disturbing aspects of quantum theory is wave–particle duality—the seeming contradiction that matter and light have both wave-like and particle-like properties. If this bothers you, you're in good company: Heisenberg himself expressed frustration in trying to understand the quantum world:

I remember discussions with Bohr which went through many hours till very late at night and ended almost in despair; and when at the end of the discussion I went alone for a walk in the neighboring park I repeated to myself again and again the question: Can nature possibly be as absurd as it seems to us in these atomic experiments?*

Bohr dealt with wave–particle duality through his **principle of complementarity**. The wave and particle pictures, he said, are complementary aspects of the same reality. If we do an experiment to measure a wave-like property—for example, the diffraction of electrons—then we find wave properties but not particle properties. If we do an experiment to measure a particle-like property—for example, localizing an electron—then we won't find wave properties. The two measurements require different experiments, and we can't perform both simultaneously on the same entity. So we'll never catch wave and particle in an outright contradiction, and the answer to the question “Which is it, wave or particle?” has to be that it's both, and which you find depends on what experiment you choose to perform.

Bohr articulated a second principle that helps reconcile the seeming contradiction between classical and quantum physics. His **correspondence principle** states that the predictions of classical and quantum physics should agree in situations where the size of individual quanta is negligible. Taking $h \rightarrow 0$ in Planck's law, for example, gives the classical Rayleigh–Jeans law (see Problem 72). Or, for large n , the energies of adjacent atomic states in the Bohr model become so close that the levels appear essentially as a continuum of allowed energies—as expected in classical physics. Or consider a 1000-W radio beam; the photon energy hf is so low that the beam contains an enormous number of photons per unit beam length, and we can consider the energy distributed essentially continuously over the beam. But in a 1000-W X-ray beam, the photon energy is much higher and the number of photons correspondingly fewer; it's therefore difficult to avoid the fundamental fact of energy quantization. Visible light lies somewhere in between; we can often treat its energy as being continuously distributed, except when it interacts with systems as small as individual atoms.

* Werner Heisenberg, *Physics and Philosophy: The Revolution in Modern Science* (New York: Harper & Brothers, 1962).

Chapter 34 Summary

Big Ideas

The big ideas here are at the heart of quantum physics—a radically different view of reality at the atomic scale. **Quantization** means that some physical quantities—often including energy—come only in discrete values. Another fundamental aspect of quantum reality is **wave-particle duality**, wherein light and matter exhibit both wave-like and particle-like aspects. Bohr's **complementarity principle** precludes these ever being in direct conflict. Finally, quantization and wave-particle duality lead to the **uncertainty principle**, which states that it's impossible to measure simultaneously and with arbitrary precision a particle's position and momentum.

Key Concepts and Equations

Planck's constant,

$$h = 6.63 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J} \cdot \text{s}$$

sets the fundamental scale of quantization.

It's also expressed as "h bar":

$$\hbar = h/2\pi$$

The energy of electromagnetic radiation with frequency f is quantized in **photons** with energy

$$E = hf$$

Electron energies in the **Bohr model** of hydrogen are quantized according to

$$E = -\frac{ke^2}{2a_0} \left(\frac{1}{n^2} \right) \approx -\frac{13.6 \text{ eV}}{n^2}$$

where n is an integer and $a_0 = 0.0529 \text{ nm}$ is the **Bohr radius**.

The **de Broglie wavelength** of a particle with momentum p is

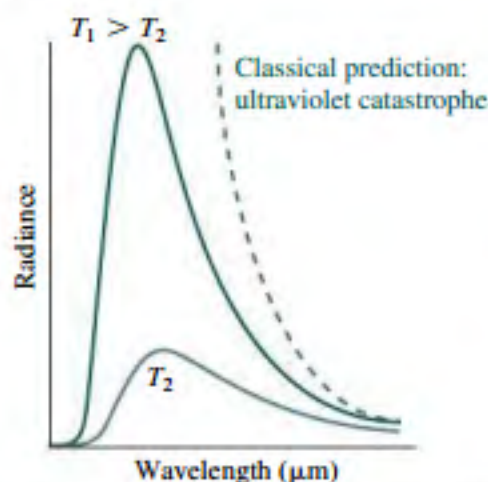
$$\lambda = \frac{h}{p}$$

The **uncertainty principle** relates uncertainties in position and momentum:

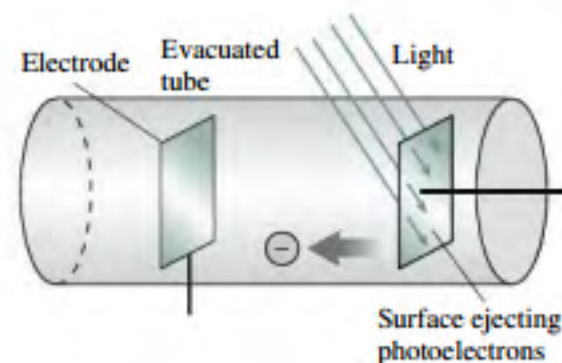
$$\Delta x \Delta p \geq \hbar$$

Applications

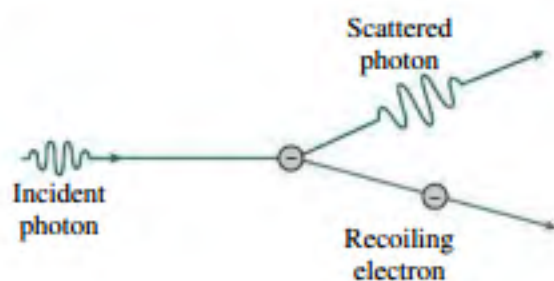
A correct description of **blackbody radiation** requires Planck's quantization hypothesis. The peak radiance—intensity per unit wavelength interval—from a blackbody at temperature T occurs at a wavelength given by $\lambda T = 2.898 \text{ mm} \cdot \text{K}$.



The **photoelectric effect** involves the ejection of electrons from a metal surface illuminated with electromagnetic waves. Explanation of the effect led Einstein to propose **photons** as the quanta of electromagnetic-wave energy.



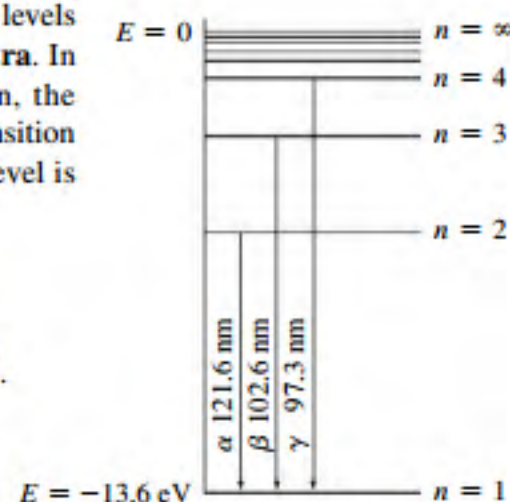
The **Compton effect** shows that photons interact with free electrons exactly like colliding particles, losing energy and emerging with longer wavelength.



Quantization of atomic energy levels leads directly to **atomic spectra**. In the Bohr model of hydrogen, the spectral line produced in a transition from the n_1 to the n_2 energy level is given by

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H \left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2} \right)$$

where $R_H = 1.0968 \times 10^7 \text{ m}^{-1}$.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>LO 34.1 Explain the meaning of quantization.
<i>Exercise 34.12</i></p> <p>LO 34.2 Describe blackbody radiation and tell why classical physics cannot accurately account for it.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Question 34.2; Exercises 34.11, 34.13, 34.14, 34.15, 34.18; Problems 34.44, 34.45, 34.46, 34.72, 34.76, 34.78, 34.79</i></p> <p>LO 34.3 Explain the photoelectric effect and how it gave rise to the concept of photons.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 34.3, 34.4, 34.8; Exercises 34.16, 34.17, 34.19, 34.20; Problems 34.48, 34.49, 34.50, 34.51, 34.52, 34.53, 34.54, 34.55, 34.56, 34.73, 34.75, 34.77, 34.81</i></p> <p>LO 34.4 Describe atomic spectra using the Bohr model.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 34.1, 34.6, 34.7, 34.10; Exercises 34.21, 34.22, 34.23, 34.24; Problems</i></p> | <p><i>34.42, 34.43, 34.60, 34.61, 34.62, 34.63, 34.64, 34.65, 34.74, 34.80</i></p> <p>LO 34.5 Apply wave-particle duality to matter and compute the de Broglie wavelength of matter waves.
<i>Exercises 34.25, 34.26, 34.27, 34.28; Problems 34.58, 34.67, 34.68</i></p> <p>LO 34.6 Describe the uncertainty principle and apply it to atomic-scale systems.
<i>Exercises 34.29, 34.30, 34.31, 34.32, 34.33; Problems 34.57, 34.59, 34.66, 34.69, 34.70, 34.71</i></p> <p>LO 34.7 Explain Bohr's principle of complementarity.</p> |
|---|---|

For Thought and Discussion

- Why does classical physics predict that atoms should collapse?
- Looking at the night sky, you see one star that appears red, another yellow, and another blue. Compare their temperatures.
- What colors of visible light have the highest-energy photons?
- Why is the immediate ejection of electrons in the photoelectric effect surprising from a classical viewpoint?
- How are the uncertainty principle and wave-particle duality related?
- How many spectral lines are in the entire Balmer series?
- Why are the lines of the Lyman series in the ultraviolet while some Balmer lines are in the visible?
- Why does the photoelectric effect suggest that light has particle-like properties?
- Does a cricket ball of 100 g have a minimum velocity inside a box with sides of 1 m? Explain.
- Why are the energies given by Equations 34.12 negative?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 34.2 Blackbody Radiation

- If you double a blackbody's temperature, by what factor does its radiated power increase?
- The surface temperature of the star Rigel is 10^4 K. Find (a) the power radiated per square meter of its surface, (b) its λ_{peak} , and (c) its λ_{median} .
- Seen from space, Earth is approximately a 255-K blackbody. Find (a) λ_{peak} and (b) λ_{median} for Earth. (c) In what part of the spectrum do these wavelengths lie?
- Spacecraft instruments measure the radiation from an asteroid, and the data show that the power per unit wavelength peaks at $40 \mu\text{m}$. Assuming the asteroid is a blackbody, find its surface temperature.

- The Sun approximates a blackbody at 5800 K. (a) Find the wavelength of peak radiance on the per-unit-wavelength basis implicit in Equation 34.2a. (b) Find the median wavelength, below which half the radiation is emitted (Equation 34.2b). Identify the spectral region of each.

Section 34.3 Photons

- Find the energy in electronvolts of (a) a 1.0-MHz radio photon, (b) a 5.0×10^{14} -Hz optical photon, and (c) a 3.0×10^{18} -Hz X-ray photon.
- The human eye is sensitive to wavelengths from about 400 nm to 700 nm. What's the corresponding range of photon energies?
- A cellphone transmits at 787 MHz with a power of 0.600 W. At what rate does it produce photons?
- A red laser at 650 nm and a blue laser at 450 nm emit photons at the same rate. How do their total power outputs compare?
- Find the maximum work function, in eV, for a surface to emit electrons when illuminated with 990-nm infrared light.

Section 34.4 Atomic Spectra and the Bohr Atom

- Calculate the wavelengths of the first three lines in the Lyman series for hydrogen.
- Which spectral line of the hydrogen Paschen series ($n_2 = 3$) has wavelength 954.7 nm?
- What's the maximum wavelength of light that can ionize hydrogen in its ground state? In what spectral region is this?
- At what energy level does the Bohr hydrogen atom have diameter 8.57 nm?

Section 34.5 Matter Waves

- Find the de Broglie wavelength of (a) Earth, orbiting the Sun at 30 km/s, and (b) an electron moving at 20 km/s.
- How slowly must an electron be moving for its de Broglie wavelength to be 10 nm?
- A proton and electron have the same de Broglie wavelength. How do their speeds compare, assuming $v \ll c$ for both?
- Find the de Broglie wavelength of electrons with kinetic energies (a) 50 eV, (b) 3.0 keV, and (c) 50 keV.

Section 34.6 The Uncertainty Principle

29. A proton is confined to a space 1 fm wide (about the size of an atomic nucleus). What's the minimum uncertainty in its velocity?
30. Is it possible to determine an electron's velocity accurate to ± 1 m/s while simultaneously finding its position to within ± 1 μ m? What about a proton?
31. A proton has velocity $v = (1500 \pm 0.25)$ m/s. What's the uncertainty in its position?
32. An electron is moving in the $+x$ -direction with speed measured at 50 Mm/s, accurate to $\pm 10\%$. What's the minimum uncertainty in its position?
33. The heaviest element known is element 118, oganesson (Og), with nuclear diameter 15 fm. Find the minimum kinetic energy for an alpha particle (a helium-4 nucleus, with mass 6.64×10^{-27} kg) confined within this nucleus.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

34. **Example 34.2:** A Rydberg hydrogen atom is in the $n = 36$ state. Find (a) its diameter and (b) the wavelength of the photon emitted when it drops to the $n = 35$ state.
35. **Example 34.2:** A Rydberg hydrogen atom is in the $n = 21$ state when it emits a photon of wavelength $\lambda = 76.44$ μ m. What state is it in after the photon emission?
36. **Example 34.2:** Doubly ionized lithium (Li^{2+}) is a single-electron species, like hydrogen except for the greater charge on its nucleus. That results in a Rydberg constant that's greater than hydrogen's by a factor of the square of the ratio of the nuclear charges. Find the wavelength of the spectral line associated with the transition from $n = 3$ to $n = 2$ in doubly ionized lithium.
37. **Example 34.2:** For doubly ionized lithium (see preceding problem), transitions that would yield visible light in hydrogen generally produce ultraviolet in Li^{2+} . For Li^{2+} find a value of n for which a transition from n to $n - 1$ produces visible light (400–700 nm).
38. **Example 34.4:** Find the minimum kinetic energy for a proton confined inside a uranium-238 nucleus, whose diameter is 15 fm.
39. **Example 34.4:** The outermost electrons in boron have kinetic energy on the order of 8 eV. Use this value (a crude estimate based partly on classical physics) to make an uncertainty-principle estimate of the diameter of the boron atom.
40. **Example 34.4:** An experimental transistor confines an electron in a region 1.45 nm wide. Find the minimum kinetic energy for this electron, expressed in eV.
41. **Example 34.4:** Thermal energy at room temperature is about 25 meV. You're designing an electronic device to operate at room temperature, and you want the kinetic energy associated with the uncertainty principle not to exceed the thermal energy. What's the minimum width in which your device can confine an electron?
42. Find the power per unit area emitted by a 2780-K incandescent lightbulb filament in a wavelength interval 0.100 nm wide centered on 645 nm. (This interval is narrow enough that you don't need to integrate to apply Equation 34.3.)
43. Treating the Sun as a 5800-K blackbody, compare its UV radiance at 200 nm with its visible radiance at its 500-nm peak wavelength.
44. For a 2.0-kK blackbody, by what percentage is the Rayleigh–Jeans law in error at wavelengths of (a) 1.0 mm, (b) 10 μ m, and (c) 1.0 μ m?
45. The radiance of a blackbody peaks at 690 nm. (a) What's its temperature? (b) How does its radiance at 400 nm (violet light) compare with that at 700 nm (red light)?
46. **EW** Earth's surface approximates a blackbody at 288 K. Find the power emitted by Earth's entire surface (a) in the visible wavelength interval from 0.550 to 0.551 μ m and (b) in the infrared between 10.000 μ m and 10.001 μ m. Your answer helps explain why greenhouse gases, which strongly absorb infrared radiation at around 10 μ m, have such a significant effect on Earth's climate. (Note: The wavelength interval here is so small that, for the point this problem is making, you don't need to integrate to apply Equation 34.3.)
47. Find the rate of photon production by (a) a radio antenna broadcasting 1.5 kW at 89.5 MHz, (b) a laser producing 1.4 mW of 633-nm light, and (c) an X-ray machine producing 0.10-nm X-rays with total power 2.6 kW.
48. Electrons in a photoelectric experiment emerge from an aluminum surface with maximum kinetic energy 1.3 eV. Find the wavelength of the illuminating radiation.
49. (a) Find the cutoff frequency for the photoelectric effect in copper. (b) Find the maximum energy of the ejected electrons if the copper is illuminated with light of frequency 2.1×10^{15} Hz.
50. The stopping potential in a photoelectric experiment is 1.8 V when the illuminating radiation has wavelength 365 nm. Determine (a) the work function of the emitting surface and (b) the stopping potential for 280-nm radiation.
51. **BIO** Chlorophyll is a photosynthetic molecule common in green plants. On a per-unit-wavelength basis, its ability to absorb visible light has two peaks, at 430 nm and 662 nm. (a) Find the corresponding photon energies. (b) Use these peak wavelengths to explain why plants appear green.
52. Find the initial wavelength of a photon that loses half its energy when it Compton-scatters from an electron and emerges at 90° to its initial direction.
53. When light shines on potassium, the photoelectrons' maximum speed is 5.0×10^5 m/s. Find the light's wavelength.
54. The maximum electron energy in a photoelectric experiment is 2.8 eV. When the wavelength of the illuminating radiation is increased by 50%, the maximum energy drops to 1.1 eV. Find (a) the work function of the emitting surface and (b) the original wavelength.
55. A 160-pm X-ray photon Compton-scatters off an electron and emerges at 135° to its original direction. Find (a) the wavelength of the scattered photon and (b) the electron's kinetic energy.
56. Find the kinetic energy of an initially stationary electron after a 0.40-nm X-ray photon scatters from it at 90° .
57. An electron is known to be somewhere inside a carbon nanotube that's 370 nm long and 1.2 nm in diameter. Find the minimum uncertainties in the components of its velocity (a) along the tube and (b) perpendicular to the tube's long dimension.
58. A scanning electron microscope accelerates electrons through a potential difference of 3.35 kV. What's the electrons' wavelength?
59. An experimental transistor uses a single electron trapped in a channel 6.6 nm wide. What's the minimum kinetic energy this electron could have, consistent with the uncertainty principle? Give your answer in joules and in eV.

Problems

60. (a) Find the highest possible energy for a photon emitted as the electron jumps between two adjacent energy levels in the Bohr hydrogen atom. (b) Which energy levels are involved?
61. Find (a) the wavelength and (b) the energy in electronvolts of the photon emitted when a Rydberg hydrogen atom drops from the $n = 180$ level to the $n = 179$ level.
62. The wavelengths of a spectral line series tend to a limit as $n_1 \rightarrow \infty$. Evaluate the series limit for (a) the Lyman series and (b) the Balmer series in hydrogen.
63. A Rydberg hydrogen atom makes a downward transition to the $n = 225$ state, emitting a $9.32\text{-}\mu\text{eV}$ photon. What was the original state?
64. A hydrogen atom is in its ground state when its electron absorbs a 50-eV photon. What's the energy of the resulting free electron?
65. How much energy does it take to ionize a hydrogen atom in its first excited state?
66. A cosmic ray particle passes through a 1-cm -thick energy-measuring detector at very nearly the speed of light. What's the uncertainty in the particle's energy as measured in the detector's reference frame?
67. Find the minimum electron speed that would make an electron microscope superior to an optical microscope using 460-nm light.
68. You're a cell biologist who wants to image microtubules that form the "skeletons" of living cells. The microtubules are 25 nm in diameter, and, as Chapter 32 shows, you need to image with waves whose wavelength is at least this small. You can use either an inexpensive electron microscope that accelerates electrons to kinetic energies of 40 keV , or a more expensive unit that produces 100-keV electrons. Will the less expensive microscope work?
69. An electron is trapped in a "quantum well" 15 nm wide. Find its minimum possible speed.
70. Typically, an atom remains in an excited state for about 10^{-8} s before it drops to a lower state, emitting a photon in the process. What's the uncertainty in the energy of this transition?
71. An electron is moving at 10^6 m/s and you wish to measure its energy to an accuracy of $\pm 0.01\%$. What's the minimum time necessary for this measurement?
72. Use the series expansion for e^x (Appendix A) to show that CH Planck's law (Equation 34.3) reduces to the Rayleigh-Jeans law (Equation 34.5) when $\lambda \gg hc/kT$.
73. A photon's wavelength is equal to the Compton wavelength of a particle with mass m . Show that the photon's energy is equal to the particle's rest energy.
74. Show that the frequency range of the hydrogen spectral line series involving transitions ending at the n th level is $\Delta f = cR_H/(n+1)^2$.
75. A photon undergoes a 90° Compton scattering off a stationary CH electron, and the electron emerges with total energy $\gamma m_e c^2$, where γ is the relativistic factor introduced in Chapter 33. Find an expression for the initial photon energy.
76. Show that Wien's law (Equation 34.2a) follows from Planck's CH law (Equation 34.3). *Hint:* Differentiate Planck's law with respect to wavelength.
77. Consider an elastic collision between a photon with initial CH wavelength λ_0 moving in the x -direction and a stationary electron, as depicted in Fig. 34.8b. Use relativistic expressions for energy and momentum from Chapter 33 to show that conservation of energy and momentum yield the equations $hc/\lambda_0 + mc^2 = hc/\lambda + \gamma mc^2$, $h/\lambda_0 = (h/\lambda) \cos \theta + \gamma mu \cos \phi$, and $0 = (h/\lambda) \sin \theta - \gamma mu \sin \phi$, where λ is the post-collision photon wavelength and the angles θ and ϕ are as shown in Fig. 34.8b. Solve these equations to find the Compton shift (Equation 34.8).

78. Integrate Equation 34.3 over all wavelengths to get the total CH power radiated per unit area. Show that your result is equivalent to Equation 34.1, with the Stefan-Boltzmann constant given by $\sigma = 2\pi^5 k^4/15c^2 h^3$. (*Hint:* Use $hc/\lambda kT$ as the integration variable.)
79. Perform a numerical integration of Equation 34.3 to the wave- COMP length given by Equation 34.2b. Divide by the result of Problem 78, and thus verify that Equation 34.2b gives the wavelength above and below which a blackbody radiates half its energy.
80. Show that in the Bohr model, the frequency of a photon emitted in a transition between levels $n+1$ and n , in the limit of large n , is equal to the electron's orbital frequency. (This is an example of Bohr's correspondence principle.)
81. The table below lists the stopping potential as a function of wave- DATA length in a photoelectric effect experiment. Determine quantities to plot that should yield a straight line. Make your plot, establish a best-fit line, and use your line to determine (a) an experimental value for Planck's constant and (b) the work function of the material comprising the photocathode. (c) Use Table 34.1 to identify the material.

Wavelength, λ (nm)	225	275	325	375	425	475	525
Stopping potential, V (V)	3.25	2.17	1.52	0.962	0.646	0.312	0.065

Passage Problems

Particle physicists use the energy-time uncertainty relation to estimate the lifetimes of unstable particles produced in high-energy particle accelerators (Chapter 39). Some particles have lifetimes of 10^{-24} s and shorter—impossible to measure directly. However, physicists can measure particle masses, and they do so for many instances of the same particle to get a distribution of masses. By Einstein's $E = mc^2$, that corresponds to a distribution of energies (Fig. 34.15). Measuring the distribution's width at half its peak (see Fig. 34.15) gives an estimate of the energy uncertainty, and the corresponding Δt from inequality 34.16 provides the particle's lifetime.

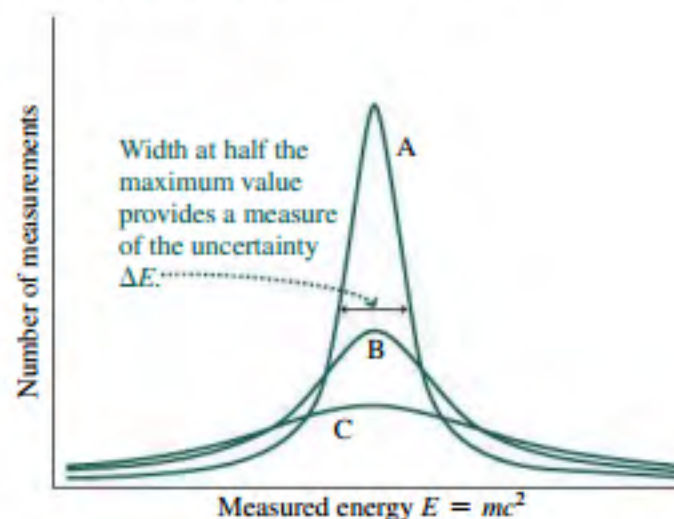


FIGURE 34.15 Mass distributions for high-energy particles (Passage Problems 82–85). The vertical axis gives the number of measurements that yield a given value on the horizontal axis.

82. Which of the curves in Fig. 34.15 represents the particle with the shortest lifetime?
- A
 - B
 - C
 - You can't tell from the graph.

83. An energy uncertainty of 1 MeV corresponds to a particle lifetime closest to
- 10^{-34} s.
 - 10^{-21} s.
 - 10^{-9} s.
 - 1 μ s.
84. The converse approach is used for particles with longer lifetimes: Direct measurement of the lifetime yields, through energy–time uncertainty, a range of expected values for particle energies or masses. The longer the lifetime,
- the wider the mass range and the narrower the energy range.
 - the wider the mass and energy ranges.
 - the narrower the mass range and the wider the energy range.
 - the narrower the mass and energy ranges.
85. For a particle with lifetime 10^{-7} s, the corresponding mass range is closest to
- 10^{-44} u.
 - 10^{-27} u.
 - 10^{-17} u.
 - 1 u.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

That matter, like light, behaves as waves under some circumstances.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 34.1 (1) A's power is 16 times greater; (2) A's peak wavelength is half that of B
- 34.2 (1) No; slope remains h/e ; (2) yes; the horizontal intercept is the cutoff frequency, which depends on the work function of the material
- 34.3 (b) much less because the proton is ~ 2000 times more massive than the electron
- 34.4 (c)
- 34.5 (a)
- 34.6 (c)

Quantum Mechanics

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

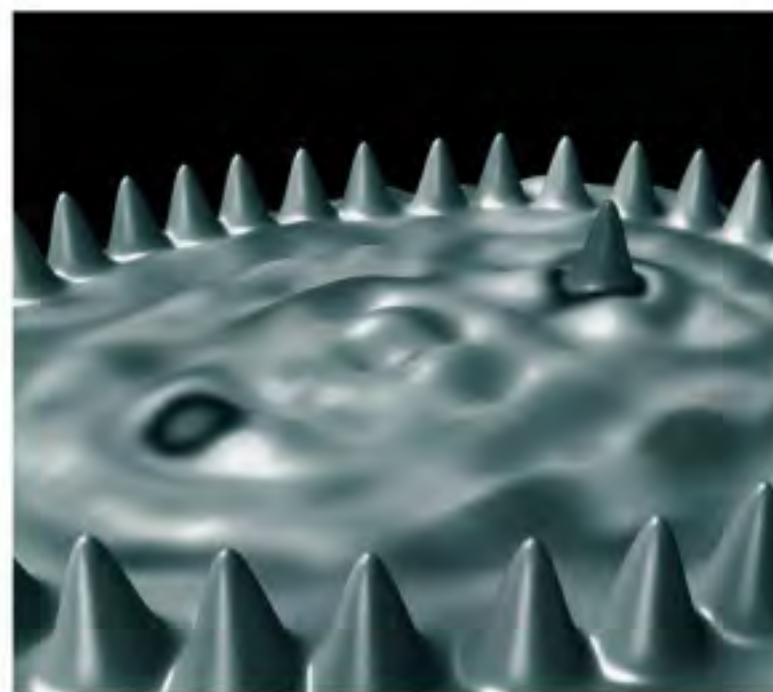
- LO 35.1 Explain the relationship between wave–particle duality and the probability of locating a particle.
- LO 35.2 Describe the Schrödinger equation and how the wave function relates to probabilities.
- LO 35.3 Evaluate energies of particles in square-well and harmonic-oscillator potentials and describe quantum tunneling.
- LO 35.4 Find energies of particles confined in two and three dimensions.
- LO 35.5 Describe some implications of relativistic invariance for quantum mechanics, especially antimatter and spin.

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Kinetic and potential energy (Sections 6.4 and 7.2)
- Quantization and photons (Sections 34.1 and 34.3)
- Matter waves (Section 34.5)

The ideas developed in the preceding chapter are at the core of the old **quantum theory**. The old quantum theory introduced the basic concepts of quantum physics and was successful in explaining a number of quantum phenomena—for example, blackbody radiation, the photoelectric effect, and the hydrogen spectrum. On the other hand, it couldn't treat even the simplest multielectron atoms, and it left some subtle spectral features unexplained. Furthermore, the old quantum theory was a hodgepodge of separate but loosely related ideas, each developed to explain a particular phenomenon; it lacked coherence and clear guiding principles.

Is there a more coherent theory that predicts the behavior of systems at the atomic and subatomic scales, and that offers a satisfying description of how such systems really work? The answer is at once an emphatic yes and a disappointing no. Yes, because **quantum mechanics**, developed in the 1920s, predicts with remarkable precision the observed properties of atomic systems, including their energies, the wavelengths of spectral lines, and the lifetimes of excited atoms. No, because quantum mechanics doesn't give a satisfying visual *picture* of the atomic and subatomic worlds. The uncertainty principle and wave–particle duality are essential aspects of quantum mechanics. Any picture we formulate of electrons or photons whizzing around like miniature balls with precise positions and momenta is inappropriate. But quantum mechanics does provide a self-consistent description that lets us explore and predict the behavior of atoms, the organization of chemical elements, the physics of semiconductors and superconductors, the extraordinary behavior of matter at low temperature, the formation of white dwarf stars, the operation of lasers and quantum computers, and a host of other phenomena for which classical physics is at best inaccurate and at worst totally inadequate. In this chapter you'll explore the mathematical



This scanning-tunneling microscope image shows a "quantum corral" of 36 cobalt atoms on a copper surface. What unusual quantum phenomenon enables this type of microscopy?

structure and physical interpretation of quantum mechanics. In Chapters 36 and 37 you'll apply quantum mechanics first to the atom and then to more complex systems that involve quantum-mechanical interactions among many atoms.

35.1 Particles, Waves, and Probability

LO 35.1 *Explain the relationship between wave-particle duality and the probability of locating a particle.*

Photons and Light Waves

In Maxwell's electromagnetic theory, we had a seemingly complete description of light as an electromagnetic wave. Now we find, through the photoelectric and Compton effects, that light sometimes manifests itself as particles. What's the connection between wave and particle descriptions?

In a photoelectric experiment, the rate at which electrons are ejected depends on the light's intensity. Since an electron is ejected when it absorbs a photon, we conclude that the number of photons in the incident light is proportional to light intensity. Now, the intensity of an electromagnetic wave depends on the square of the electric or magnetic field (Equations 29.20b, c). The fields, in turn, obey Maxwell's equations, so one aspect of a photoelectric experiment—namely, the rate of electron ejection—relates to Maxwell's description of light as an electromagnetic wave.

We can quantify the relation between waves and photons, but only in a statistical sense. The ejection of individual electrons in a photoelectric experiment is quite random. The uncertainty principle prevents us from following a photon trajectory and predicting when and where an electron will be ejected. All we can say is that electrons are more likely to be ejected where the wave intensity is greater. Specifically, the probability that an electron will be ejected is directly proportional to the intensity of the incident electromagnetic waves—that is, to the *square* of the wave fields. More generally, the probability of finding a photon in a beam of electromagnetic waves is directly proportional to the wave intensity (Fig. 35.1).

In this quantum-mechanical description, the fields still evolve according to Maxwell's equations. For example, the fields of an electromagnetic wave undergoing double-slit interference develop regions of maximum and minimum wave intensity—the bright and dark bands of the interference pattern. But the wave fields determine only the *probability* that individual photons will be detected in the interference pattern. That's why a very short exposure or a low-intensity beam results not in a weak version of the interference pattern but in a seemingly arbitrary pattern. Only with large numbers of photons does the statistical pattern emerge (Fig. 35.2).

In quantum mechanics, then, the relation between the wave and particle aspects of light is this: As long as we don't try to detect the light, it propagates as a wave governed by Maxwell's equations. But when we detect the light, we do so through interactions involving individual photons. Those interactions are random events whose probability depends on the wave intensity—that is, on the square of the wave fields.

Electrons and Matter Waves

In Chapter 34 we introduced de Broglie's remarkable hypothesis that matter, as well as light, exhibits both wave and particle properties. The wave-particle duality puts matter

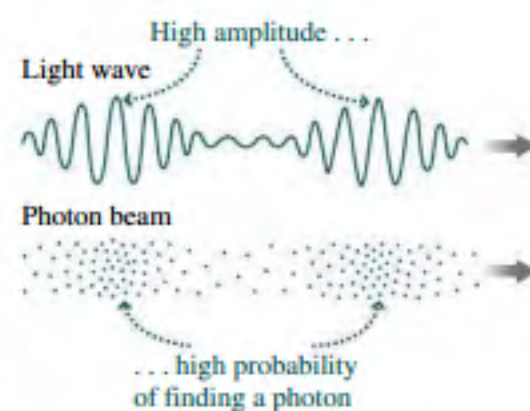


FIGURE 35.1 The probability of finding a photon is directly proportional to the intensity of the electromagnetic wave. The figure is only suggestive because we can't depict photons as localized particles.



FIGURE 35.2 Development of a two-slit interference pattern from random photon events: (a) approximately 50 photons, (b) 250 photons, (c) 1000 photons, (d) 10,000 photons.

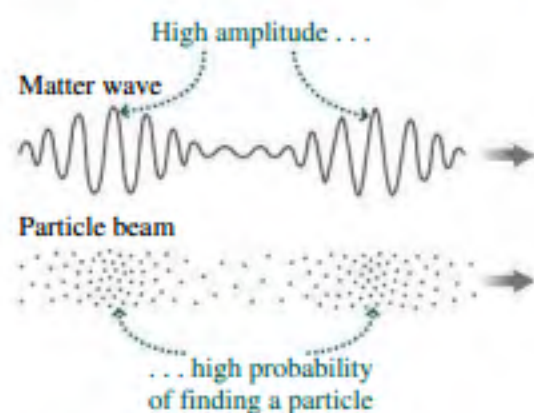


FIGURE 35.3 A beam of particles and its associated matter wave.

and light on essentially the same footing, and the statistical interpretation is the same for each. Figure 35.3 shows a beam of particles and its associated de Broglie matter wave. Just as the probability of finding a photon is proportional to the wave intensity—that is, the *square* of the electromagnetic-field amplitude—so the probability of finding a particle is directly proportional to the square of the matter-wave amplitude. And as with light, the particle nature of matter manifests itself only when we try to detect a particle; leave it alone, and the particle's behavior is governed by its wave nature.

Maxwell's equations determine the behavior of light waves, but what equation describes matter waves? In 1926 the Austrian physicist Erwin Schrödinger answered this question with his **Schrödinger wave equation**. In the same year, Schrödinger showed that his wave theory was equivalent to a matrix-based theory that Heisenberg, Max Born, and Pascual Jordan had formulated in 1925. Heisenberg received the 1932 Nobel Prize in physics, and Schrödinger shared the 1933 Nobel Prize with Paul Dirac for their contributions to quantum theory.

GOT IT?

35.1 Focusing a particular laser beam results in a 10-fold increase in the electric field of the associated light wave. The probability of finding a photon at a point in the focused beam is increased by (a) a factor of 10, (b) a factor of $\sqrt{10}$, (c) a factor of 2, or (d) a factor of 100.

35.2 The Schrödinger Equation

LO 35.2 Describe the Schrödinger equation and how the wave function relates to probabilities.

The Schrödinger equation describes matter waves in terms of a **wave function**, ψ (Greek psi), which depends on both space and time. The solution of differential equations in two variables is beyond the mathematical level of this text, so here we'll consider only spatial variations, and for now we'll further restrict ourselves to one dimension.

We can understand the Schrödinger equation by considering a sinusoidal wave of the form $\psi(x) = A \sin kx$, where, as usual in describing waves, $k = 2\pi/\lambda$, with λ the wavelength. Differentiating this expression twice gives

$$\frac{d^2\psi(x)}{dx^2} = -Ak^2 \sin kx = -k^2\psi(x)$$

But $k = 2\pi/\lambda$ and, for matter waves, de Broglie's hypothesis gives $\lambda = h/p$, with h Planck's constant and p the particle's momentum. Thus we can write k in terms of momentum as $k = 2\pi p/h = p/h$. Now in classical physics a particle of mass m has kinetic energy K and momentum p related by $K = p^2/2m$. Furthermore, kinetic energy is the difference between the total energy E and the potential energy U ; thus $E - U = p^2/2m$. Putting this all together, we can write the quantity k^2 in our differentiated wave expression as

$$k^2 = \frac{p^2}{h^2} = \frac{2m(E - U)}{h^2}$$

Make this substitution in our expression above for $d^2\psi/dx^2$ and do a little algebra; the result is

$$\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{d^2\psi(x)}{dx^2} + U(x)\psi(x) = E\psi(x) \quad \text{(time-independent Schrödinger equation)} \quad (35.1)$$

$\hbar$ is Planck's constant h divided by 2π . ψ is the wave function for a particle. m is the particle's mass. U is the potential energy. E is the particle's total energy.

This is the **time-independent Schrödinger equation**, giving the spatial variation of matter waves in one dimension. A solution of the full time-dependent equation consists of a

solution to Equation 35.1 multiplied by a sinusoidal oscillation with frequency $f = E/h$, where E is the particle energy. We developed the time-independent Schrödinger equation by merging de Broglie's matter-wave hypothesis $\lambda = h/p$ with the Newtonian relation $K = p^2/2m$; for that reason, we expect the equation to hold only for nonrelativistic particles.

The Schrödinger equation provides a description of physical reality in remarkable agreement with experiments. As we'll see, Schrödinger's equation goes a long way toward explaining the structure of atoms, their chemical properties, and indeed the entire science of chemistry. Furthermore, the Schrödinger description obeys the correspondence principle, agreeing with Newtonian mechanics for macroscopic systems where quantum effects are small.

The Meaning of ψ

What's the meaning of the wave function ψ ? That's a deep question that physicists and philosophers continue to debate. In the standard interpretation, ψ is not an observable quantity. It manifests itself only in the statistical distributions of particle detections. More specifically, the probability per unit volume—also called the **probability density**—that we'll find a particle is given by ψ^2 . For a particle confined to one dimension, the probability density becomes the probability per unit length, and we interpret ψ to mean that the probability $P(x)$ of finding the particle in a small interval dx at position x is

$P(x)$ is the probability of finding a particle in a small interval dx at position x .

$$P(x) = \psi^2(x) dx \quad (\text{probability and the wave function}) \quad (35.2)$$

ψ is the particle's wave function.

We can interpret Equation 35.2 in two ways. At face value, it gives the probability that a single experiment, with a detector at position x set up to find particles in an interval of width dx , will detect the particle (Fig. 35.4). Or, if we do many such experiments, the equation gives the fraction of the experiments in which we'll find a particle in our detector.

But *what is ψ* ? How can it be unobservable yet govern the behavior of matter? There can't be a direct causal link between the wave function and individual particles, since ψ determines only the *probability* that a particle will behave in a certain way. Think about this! In quantum mechanics the outcome of an experiment isn't fully determined. The Schrödinger equation describes only the probability of a given outcome. The quantum world is so different, according to the standard interpretation, that our macroscopic language, concepts, and pictorial models are simply inadequate. In particular, macroscopic causality gives way to microscopic indeterminacy in which quantum events are truly random; physical laws govern only the statistical pattern of events.

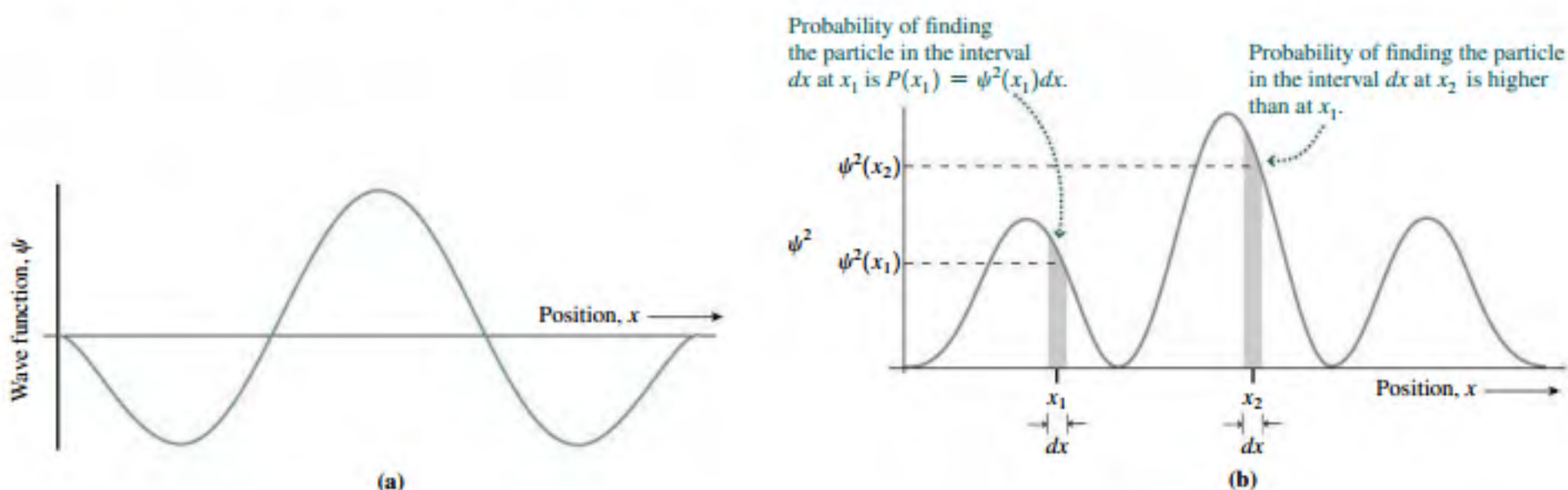


FIGURE 35.4 The meaning of the probability density $\psi^2(x)$. (a) A wave function and (b) its square, which gives the probability density.

Are you bothered by the strange implications of quantum mechanics, with its description of a universe governed ultimately by probability? If so, you're in good company. Einstein himself never accepted the idea of a probabilistic universe, asserting, in a common paraphrase, that "God does not play dice." Einstein and Bohr frequently debated, and in a widely cited 1935 paper, Einstein and his colleagues Boris Podolsky and Nathan Rosen argued that quantum mechanics could not be a complete theory but required an underlying, deterministic physics governing so-called *hidden variables*, hidden from us by the uncertainty principle. But experiments done in recent years place severe constraints on such hidden-variable theories. Nevertheless, fascinating discussions on the interpretation of quantum mechanics continue to this day. Here, however, we'll take a more practical route, turning to the Schrödinger equation to see how it's used in analyzing quantum-mechanical systems.

GOT IT?

35.2 In Fig. 35.4b, are the probabilities of finding a particle in small regions of width dx given by (a) the areas of the shaded rectangles, (b) the values of ψ^2 in each region, or (c) the value of ψ in each region?

Normalization and Other Constraints on the Wave Function

In one dimension, the quantity $\psi^2 dx$ represents the probability of finding the particle in the interval dx . But the particle *must* be *somewhere*. Therefore, if we sum the probabilities of finding the particle in all such intervals dx , the result must be 1; there must be a 100% chance that we'll find the particle somewhere. Since the probability density may vary with position, that sum becomes an integral:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \psi^2 dx = 1 \quad (\text{normalization condition}) \quad (35.3)$$

Once we have a solution $\psi(x)$ to the Schrödinger equation 35.1, this **normalization condition** sets the overall amplitude of the function ψ .

The Schrödinger equation contains the second derivative of ψ . In order that this term be well defined, both ψ itself and its first derivative must be continuous. (An exception to the continuity condition on $d\psi/dx$ —possible only in unrealistic example situations—occurs if the potential energy U becomes infinite.)

35.3 Particles and Potentials

LO 35.3 Evaluate energies of particles in square-well and harmonic-oscillator potentials and describe quantum tunneling.

The Infinite Square Well

We first solve the Schrödinger equation for a particularly simple system—a particle trapped in one dimension between two perfectly rigid walls. Although unrealistic in some respects, this system nevertheless is a surprisingly good approximation to some real quantum systems, including electronic devices and simple nuclei. More important, its analysis illustrates the general procedure for applying the Schrödinger equation and shows how energy quantization emerges from Schrödinger's theory.

In classical physics, a particle trapped between rigid walls moves back and forth with constant speed. In the absence of friction or other losses, the particle's energy remains constant at its initial value. And in classical physics, that value can be anything.

We can describe the particle's situation using its potential-energy curve. Since the particle experiences no forces while it's between the walls, its potential energy U is constant

in this region, and we can fix the arbitrary zero of potential energy by setting $U = 0$. If the walls are perfectly rigid, then the particle can't penetrate them, no matter what its energy. This means that the potential energy becomes abruptly infinite at the walls. Then the potential-energy curve for our particle looks like Fig. 35.5; you can see from the figure why this curve is called an **infinite square well**. In this case the well extends from $x = 0$ to $x = L$.

We now consider the quantum-mechanical description of a particle in the infinite square well. The particle has a wave function whose time-independent part is given by the Schrödinger equation (Equation 35.1):

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} + U(x)\psi = E\psi$$

where the potential energy $U(x)$ is that of the square well in Fig. 35.5:

$$\begin{aligned} U &= 0 \text{ for } 0 < x < L \\ U &= \infty \text{ for } x < 0 \text{ or } x > L \end{aligned}$$

Since there's no chance that the particle can penetrate the rigid walls, the function ψ must be exactly zero in the region where $U = \infty$. All we need to calculate, then, is ψ inside the well, where $0 \leq x \leq L$. To ensure that the particle is confined to the well, our solution must satisfy so-called **boundary conditions**: $\psi = 0$ at $x = 0$ and at $x = L$.

Within the well, $U = 0$ and the Schrödinger equation becomes

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} = E\psi \quad (35.4)$$

To find solutions, recall de Broglie's hypothesis that the allowed orbits in the Bohr atom are those for which standing waves just "fit" around the orbit. We have a similar situation with the infinite square well, in which the allowed solutions should be standing waves with nodes at the ends of the well—exactly analogous to standing waves on a string with both ends clamped that we discussed in Chapter 14. So we want a sinusoidal wave for $\psi(x)$, subject to the boundary conditions $\psi(0) = 0$ and $\psi(L) = 0$. The first condition is satisfied if we take a wave of the form $\psi = A \sin kx$, with A and k both constants. The second condition requires that $k = n\pi/L$, where n is any integer—a condition equivalent to saying that an integer number of half-wavelengths fit in the well. So we propose a solution of the form

$$\psi(x) = A \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)$$

with the constant A still undetermined. This equation represents standing waves with nodes at the ends of the square well, but does it satisfy the Schrödinger equation? We can find out by substituting into Equation 35.4. We need not only ψ but also its second derivative; twice differentiating our proposed solution gives

$$\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} = -A \frac{n^2\pi^2}{L^2} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)$$

Substituting ψ and $d^2\psi/dx^2$ into Equation 35.4 gives

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\right) \left[-A \frac{n^2\pi^2}{L^2} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\right] = EA \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)$$

Solving for E (with subscript n to denote the n th energy level) gives

$$E_n = \frac{n^2\pi^2\hbar^2}{2mL^2} = \frac{n^2h^2}{8mL^2} \quad (\text{energy levels for an infinite square-well potential}) \quad (35.5)$$

Equation 35.5 says that our proposed solution can indeed satisfy the Schrödinger equation—provided the particle energy E_n has any one of the values given by Equation 35.5, with n an integer.

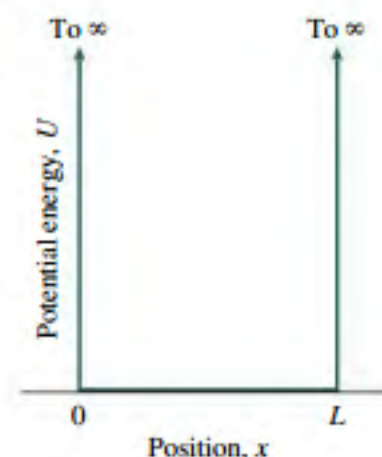


FIGURE 35.5 The infinite square-well potential-energy curve describes a particle constrained to move in one dimension between rigid walls separated by a distance L .

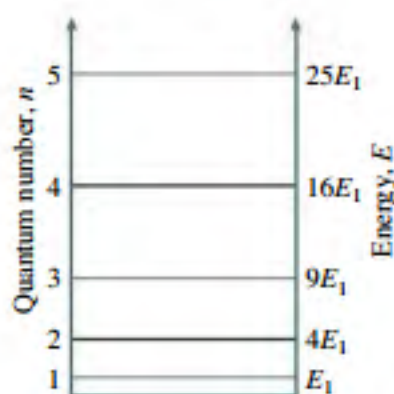


FIGURE 35.6 Energy-level diagram for a particle in an infinite square well. Energy is proportional to n^2 , so the levels aren't evenly spaced.

Our standing-wave solutions show how the quantization of energy arises naturally from the Schrödinger equation. Physically, the reason for quantization remains as de Broglie had postulated: Matter waves in a confined system must be standing waves with an integer number of half-wavelengths. Although de Broglie's hypothesis and the Schrödinger equation lead to exactly the same conclusion for the infinite square well, we'll see that with more complicated potential-energy functions only the Schrödinger equation can give us the full story.

The integer n that appears in Equation 35.5 is the **quantum number** for the particle in the square well. The physical state of a quantum-mechanical system is its **quantum state**. Here one quantum number suffices to specify the quantum state, which then tells us everything quantum mechanics has to say about the situation. As far as the Schrödinger equation is concerned, it looks like all integer values of n are allowed. The choice of negative or positive n has no physical significance, since ψ^2 has the same value with either sign of ψ ; for this reason, negative n 's are redundant. But $n = 0$ implies $\psi = 0$ everywhere, giving no chance of finding the particle anywhere. So we're left with positive integer values of n .

With $n = 0$ excluded, Equation 35.5 shows that the particle's energy is always positive; zero energy isn't allowed. The lowest possible energy is $E_1 = h^2/8mL^2$, obtained with $n = 1$. This is the **ground-state energy**; the corresponding wave function is the **ground-state wave function**. A nonzero ground-state energy is a common feature of quantum systems and one with no classical counterpart. Figure 35.6 is an energy-level diagram for the infinite square well.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 35.1 Ground-State Energy

Why can't the ground-state energy of the square well be zero?

EVALUATE Consider the uncertainty principle, $\Delta x \Delta p \geq \hbar$. If the ground-state energy were zero, then we would know precisely the particle's kinetic energy $p^2/2m$ —zero—and therefore we would know that its momentum p was also zero. But we know that the particle is within the well, so the uncertainty in its position is at most the well width L . The product $\Delta p \Delta x$ would then be zero, in violation of the uncertainty principle.

ASSESS We used the uncertainty principle in the preceding chapter to estimate the minimum energies of confined particles. The

ground-state energy for the square well is a specific instance of this so-called *zero-point energy*.

MAKING THE CONNECTION An electron drops from the $n = 2$ state to the ground state of a 0.75-nm-wide infinite square well, emitting a photon in the process. Find the photon's energy.

EVALUATE Equation 35.5 gives the square-well energies. Here the photon's energy is the difference between E_2 and the ground-state energy E_1 : $\Delta E = 3.2 \times 10^{-19}$ J, or 2.0 eV.

EXAMPLE 35.1

Nanoelectronics

Worked Example with Variation Problems

An experimental nanoelectronic device confines electrons to a layer only 0.850 nm thick, which acts like a one-dimensional infinite square well. Find the energies of the ground state and the first two excited states of these electrons.

INTERPRET We're dealing with electrons in a one-dimensional infinite square well.

DEVELOP Equation 35.5, $E_n = n^2 h^2 / 8mL^2$, gives the energy of the n th state. We'll apply it for $n = 1, 2$, and 3.

EVALUATE Using $L = 0.850$ nm and $m = m_e = 9.11 \times 10^{-31}$ kg gives

$$E_n = \frac{n^2 (6.63 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J} \cdot \text{s})^2}{8(9.11 \times 10^{-31} \text{ kg})(0.85 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m})^2} = 8.350 \times 10^{-20} n^2 \text{ J}$$

or 0.5217 n^2 eV. Evaluating with $n = 1, 2, 3$ gives $E_1 = 0.522$ eV for the ground state, $E_2 = 2.09$ eV, and $E_3 = 4.70$ eV.

ASSESS That 0.85-nm separation is a bit larger than a small atom, and we know that atomic-scale systems have energies in the eV range, so these results seem reasonable.

GOT IT?

35.3 Electron A is confined to a square well 1 nm wide; electron B to a similar well only 1 pm wide. How do their ground-state energies compare? (a) $E_B = 10E_A$; (b) $E_B = 1000E_A$; (c) $E_B = 10^6 E_A$; (d) $E_B = 10^{-3} E_A$

Normalization, Probabilities, and the Correspondence Principle

We still don't know the constant A in our solution for the infinite square well. We find this using the normalization condition 35.3: $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi^2 dx = 1$. Inside the well, $\psi = A \sin(n\pi x/L)$; outside, $\psi = 0$. So we can write the normalization condition as an integral over $0 < x < L$:

$$\int_0^L A^2 \sin^2\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) dx = 1$$

If we divided $\int_0^L \sin^2(n\pi x/L) dx$ by the well width L , we would have the average of sine squared over an integer number of half-cycles—or just $\frac{1}{2}$. So the integral of $\sin^2(n\pi x/L)$ from 0 to L is $\frac{1}{2}L$, and therefore $A^2(L/2) = 1$, or $A = \sqrt{2/L}$. The normalized wave function is then

$$\psi_n = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \quad (35.6)$$

where the subscript n refers to the function associated with the n th quantum state. Figure 35.7 shows wave functions for the ground state and three excited states.

Where are we likely to find the particle? Classically, it would move back and forth at constant speed and therefore would be equally likely to be anywhere in the well. Quantum-mechanically, the probability of finding it at some position x is proportional to the probability density ψ^2 at that point. Figure 35.8 shows the probability densities given by squaring the wave functions of Fig. 35.7. For $n = 1$, we're clearly most likely to find the particle near the middle of the well—in marked contrast to the classical prediction of equal probability everywhere. For other low- n states there are obvious regions of high and low probability. But as the quantum number increases, the maxima and minima of the probability density get closer together. Any instrument we use to detect the electron has a finite resolution, and once the periodicity of the wave function drops below that resolution, we measure an average probability, which is essentially constant over the interval (Fig. 35.8).

This is a manifestation of Bohr's correspondence principle: For large quantum numbers n , the interval between adjacent energy levels becomes small compared with the energy itself, and a measurement of the electron's position gives results in agreement with classical physics. But classical physics is totally inadequate at low n , where the nonclassical zero-point energy and quantization are most evident.

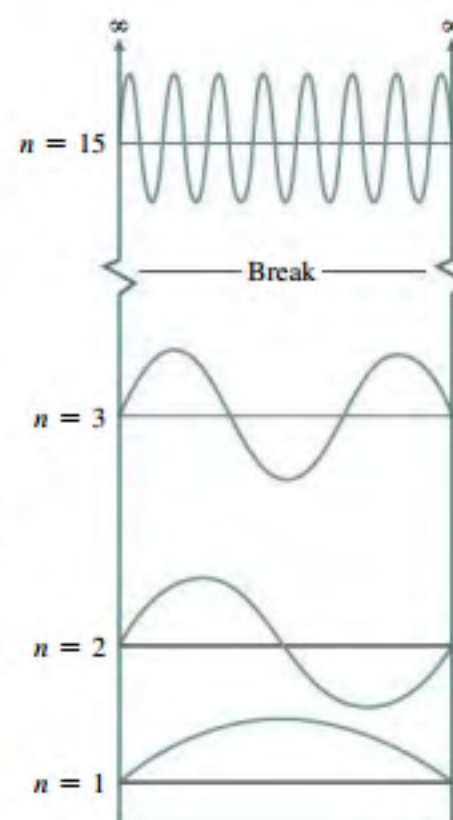


FIGURE 35.7 Wave functions for a particle in an infinite square well, each centered on the corresponding energy level.

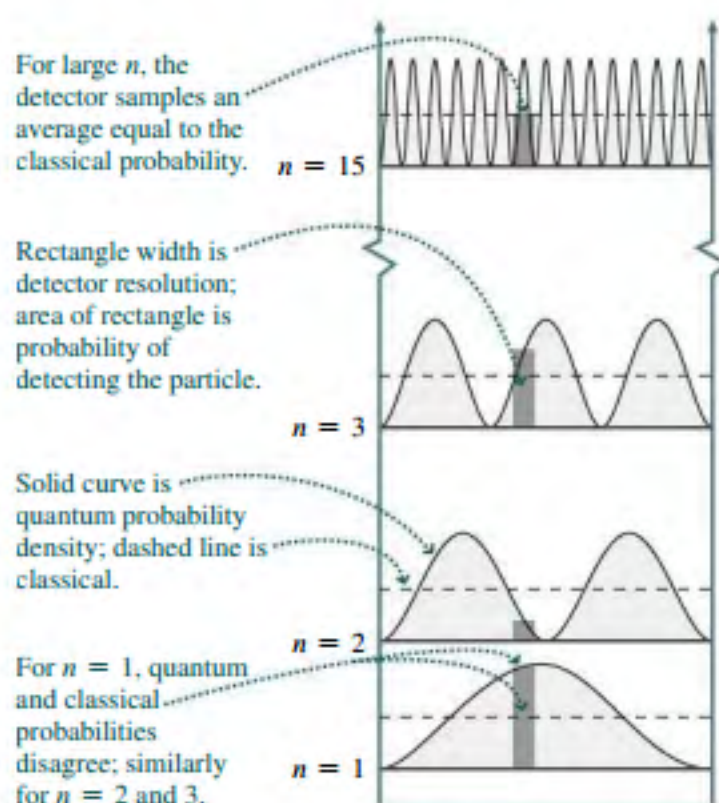


FIGURE 35.8 Classical (dashed) and quantum (solid) probability densities for a particle in an infinite square well. The shaded area under each curve is 1, indicating that the particle must be somewhere in the well. Width of the gray rectangle is the resolution of an instrument used to detect the particle.

EXAMPLE 35.2

Quantum Probability: The Square-Well Ground State

Worked Example with Variation Problems

A particle is in the ground state of an infinite square well. Find the probability that it will be found in the left-hand quarter of the well.

INTERPRET This is a question about probability, and we know that the probability density is the square of the wave function. So our solution is going to involve ψ^2 .

DEVELOP The ground-state wave function from Equation 35.6 is $\psi_1 = \sqrt{2/L} \sin(\pi x/L)$. We normalized the wave function so the integral of ψ_1^2 over the entire well is 1, showing that the particle is *some-where* in the well. That is, the area under the entire plot of ψ_1^2 is 1. We sketched ψ_1^2 in Fig. 35.9, showing that the probability of finding the particle in some region is the area under the curve in that region. So to find the probability that the particle is in the left-hand quarter of the well, we'll evaluate $\int \psi^2 dx$ from 0 to $\frac{1}{4}L$.

EVALUATE The probability becomes

$$P = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^{L/4} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi x}{L}\right) dx$$

We can integrate using the table at the end of Appendix A; the result is

$$P = \frac{2}{L} \left(\frac{x}{2} - \frac{\sin(2\pi x/L)}{4\pi/L} \right) \Big|_0^{L/4} = \frac{2}{L} \left(\frac{L}{8} - \frac{L}{4\pi} \right) = 0.091$$

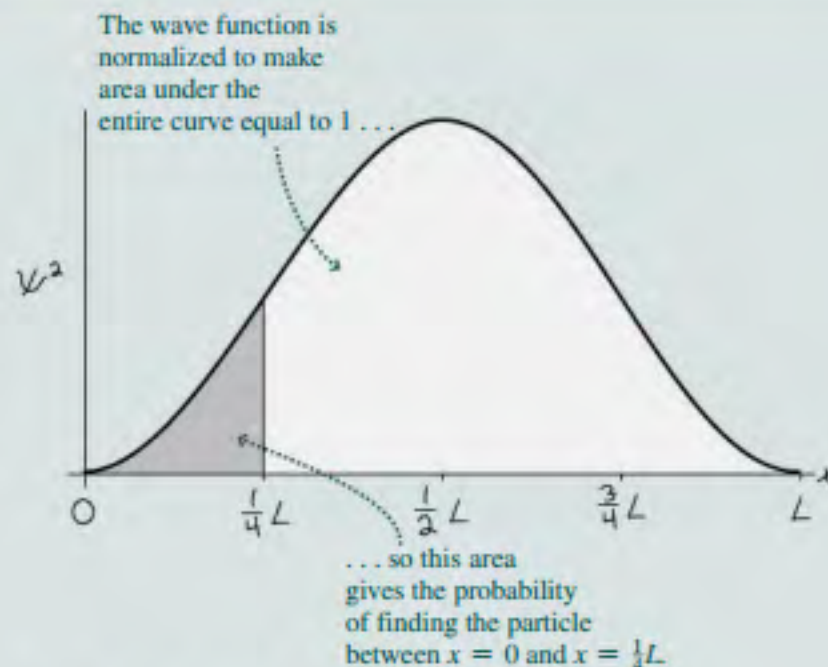


FIGURE 35.9 Sketch for Example 35.1.

ASSESS This is considerably lower than the probability $P = 0.25$ we would expect classically for finding the particle in any quarter of the well, and reflects the lower value of ψ^2 nearer the well ends. Problem 58 repeats the calculation of this example for arbitrary quantum numbers, showing that classical and quantum probabilities agree at large n .

GOT IT?

35.4 Which of the following would be a reasonable answer if Example 35.1 had asked for the probability that the particle would be found in the central quarter of the well: (a) 0.091, (b) 0.25, (c) 0.48, (d) 0.90?

The infinite square well gives insights into important quantum phenomena shared by more realistic systems such as atoms. These include quantized energy levels, nonzero ground-state energy, nonclassical probabilities, and agreement with classical physics at large quantum numbers. In Chapter 36 we'll apply the Schrödinger equation to atoms, where we'll find many of the same phenomena. First, though, we look at some other simple systems that exhibit additional quantum behaviors.

The Harmonic Oscillator

In Chapter 13 you studied simple harmonic motion, which occurs when a particle is subject to a restoring force that's directly proportional to the displacement from equilibrium. Such a *linear* restoring force implies a *quadratic* potential-energy function, and conversely, as you saw in Section 13.5, any system with a quadratic potential-energy function is a harmonic oscillator. That includes many systems at the atomic and molecular scale. Understanding the quantum-mechanical harmonic oscillator is therefore crucial in describing the behavior of matter on small scales.

A mass-spring system has potential energy $U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$ and oscillates with angular frequency given by Equation 13.7a: $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$. Combining these equations gives $U = \frac{1}{2}m\omega^2 x^2$, providing a potential-energy function suitable for an electron or atom vibrating at the end of a molecular bond. Solving the Schrödinger equation for this potential requires advanced math techniques, and shows that normalizable wave functions exist only for discrete values of the energy E :

$$E_n = \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\hbar\omega \quad (35.7)$$

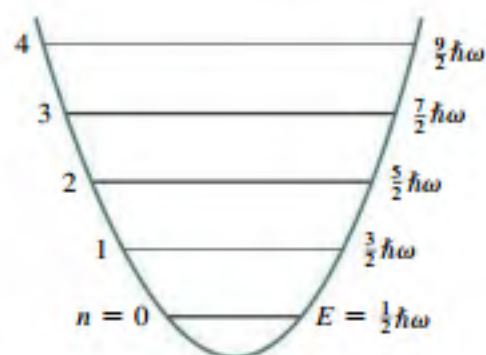


FIGURE 35.10 Energy-level diagram for a quantum-mechanical harmonic oscillator, superposed on its quadratic (i.e., parabolic) potential-energy curve.

where now $n = 0$ is the ground state. Figure 35.10 shows an energy-level diagram for the harmonic oscillator; note the even spacing implied by Equation 35.7. The additive factor $\frac{1}{2}$ in Equation 35.7 shows that Planck wasn't quite right in suggesting that the allowed harmonic-oscillator energies should be multiples of $hf (= \hbar\omega)$. Planck's spectral distribution (Equation 34.3) is nevertheless correct, but he did not foresee the existence of nonzero ground-state energy.

The even spacing between the energy levels of the harmonic oscillator is in marked contrast to the situation in atoms (Fig. 34.11) or in the infinite square well (Fig. 35.6). A quantum harmonic oscillator emits or absorbs photons as it makes transitions among adjacent levels, and the even spacing means that all transitions between adjacent levels of a pure harmonic oscillator involve photons of the same energy.

A classical harmonic oscillator moves slowest near its turning points, so it's most likely to be found at the extremes of its motion. It's least likely to be at its equilibrium position, where it's moving fastest. As with the square well, the harmonic oscillator in low- n states exhibits unclassical behavior; in the ground state it's *most* likely to be found at its equilibrium position! Figure 35.11 shows classical and quantum probability densities for the harmonic oscillator; note that for larger n the two begin to agree, once again showing Bohr's correspondence principle at work.

Quantum Tunneling

One remarkable feature of Fig. 35.11 is the nonzero probability of finding a quantum harmonic oscillator beyond its classical turning points—the points at which its kinetic energy has been converted entirely to potential energy. This unusual situation, which seems to violate energy conservation, has no counterpart in the classical description of matter.

Another example of penetration into a classically forbidden region is a particle encountering a potential barrier (Fig. 35.12). Examples of such barriers include electric potential differences associated with atomic nuclei, gaps between solid materials, and insulating layers in some semiconductor devices. Classically, a particle whose total energy is lower than the barrier energy is confined to one side of the barrier. If we solve the Schrödinger equation for this potential-energy curve, however, we find oscillatory solutions on either side of the barrier, joined according to the continuity conditions on ψ and $d\psi/dx$ by exponential functions within the barrier. Such a solution is shown superimposed on the barrier in Fig. 35.12. The probability density ψ^2 associated with this solution remains nonzero through the barrier and continues to give a nonzero probability of finding the particle on the far side—implying that a particle initially on one side of the barrier may later be found on the other side.

How likely is this phenomenon, called **quantum tunneling**? That depends on the relation of the particle energy E to the barrier energy U , and also on the width of the barrier. As you can show in Problem 53, the ψ function inside the barrier involves exponential functions of the form $e^{\pm\sqrt{2m(U-E)}x/\hbar}$. In general, these exponentials drop very rapidly across the barrier width unless the particle energy E is close to the barrier energy or the particle mass m is small. The probability that a particle will be found on the far side of the barrier is therefore very low when the mass m is large, so quantum tunneling is a microscopic phenomenon (Fig. 35.13).

It looks as if tunneling violates energy conservation. But we're saved by the uncertainty principle. If we catch the particle within the barrier, the uncertainty in its position is no greater than the barrier width. We know from Example 34.5 that this implies a minimum energy. A quantitative analysis shows that minimum to be such that we can no longer be sure the particle energy is lower than the barrier energy. If we don't try to detect a particle within the barrier, its penetration is a purely wave phenomenon to which our particulate energy considerations don't apply. Again we see the wave-particle duality at work: If we don't observe the particle, its behavior is governed by the associated waves and may result in most unparticle-like phenomena such as tunneling. If we do try to catch it in the act of such behavior, it ceases to be wavelike and the surprising phenomena cease.

Tunneling is important in a number of quantum-mechanical phenomena and technological devices. That the Sun shines—and therefore that we're alive—is a consequence of quantum tunneling of nuclei in the Sun's core. Classically, those nuclei don't have sufficient energy to get close enough to overcome their mutual electric repulsion. But they can tunnel

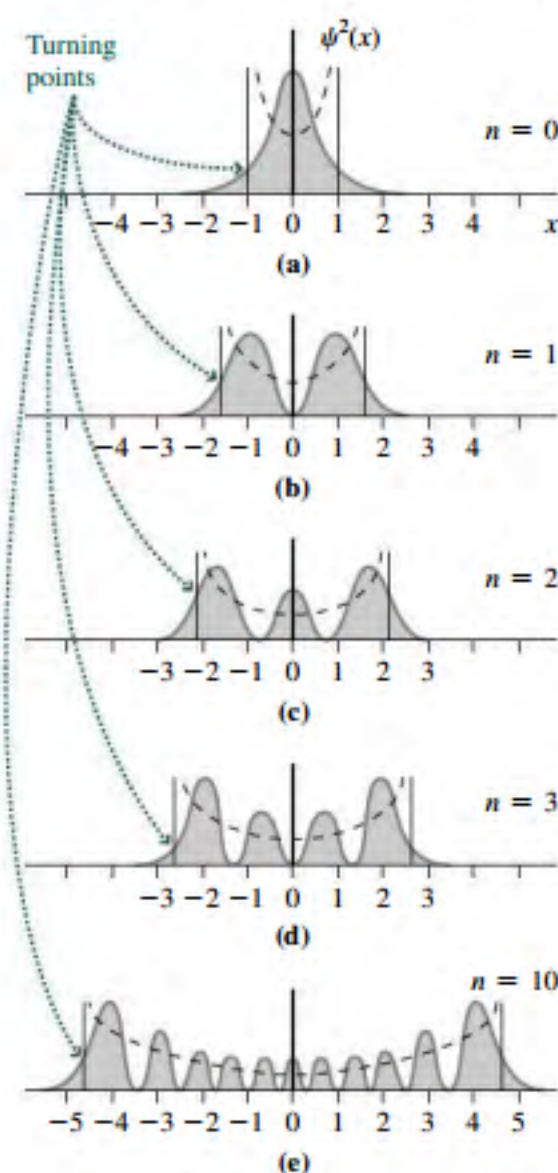


FIGURE 35.11 Probability densities $\psi^2(x)$ for some states of the harmonic oscillator. Dashed curves are classical predictions. Increasing spread in the classical turning points reflects the higher energy of the higher- n states.

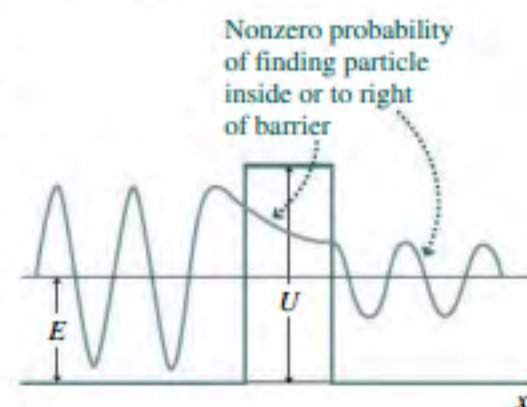


FIGURE 35.12 A potential barrier of height U , showing the wave function for a particle incident from the left with energy E lower than the barrier energy U .

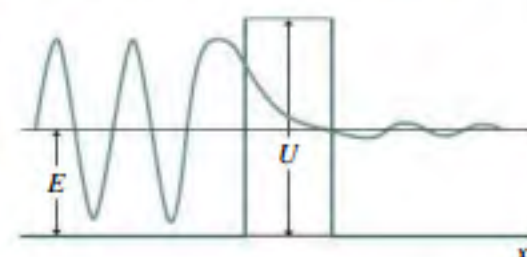


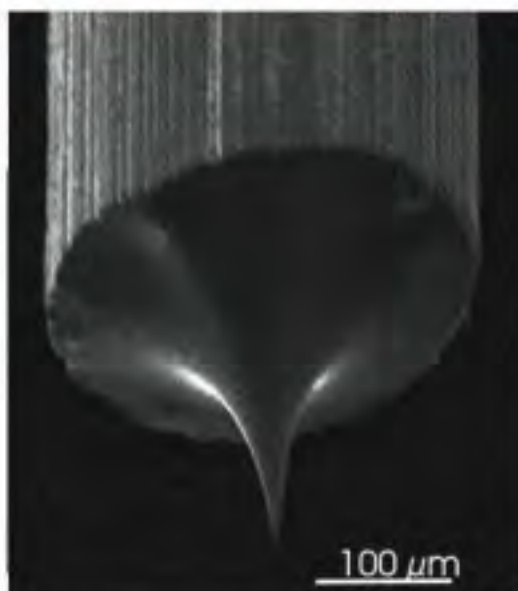
FIGURE 35.13 For a massive particle, the wave function drops rapidly in the barrier, giving negligible probability of penetration.

through this “Coulomb barrier” and fuse to release the enormous energy that powers the Sun. An opposite process, alpha decay, occurs as alpha particles tunnel through a potential barrier that traps them inside large nuclei like uranium. Measurement of the alpha particles’ energy shows it to be lower than the barrier energy, confirming that tunneling occurs. Tunneling is the basis of the scanning tunneling microscope (STM), a remarkable device that lets us image individual atoms (see Application, below). Quantum tunneling moves electrons on and off the transistors that store information in flash memory—the memory used in your smartphone, tablet, camera, flash drive, and as replacements for hard disks in computers. Finally, tunneling of individual electrons is the basis of one proposed implementation of a new elementary-charge based definition of the coulomb, as described in Chapter 20.

GOT IT?

35.5 A proton and an electron approach a barrier. Both have the same energy E , which is lower than the barrier potential U . Is (a) the proton or (b) the electron more likely to get through, or (c) are they equally likely to get through?

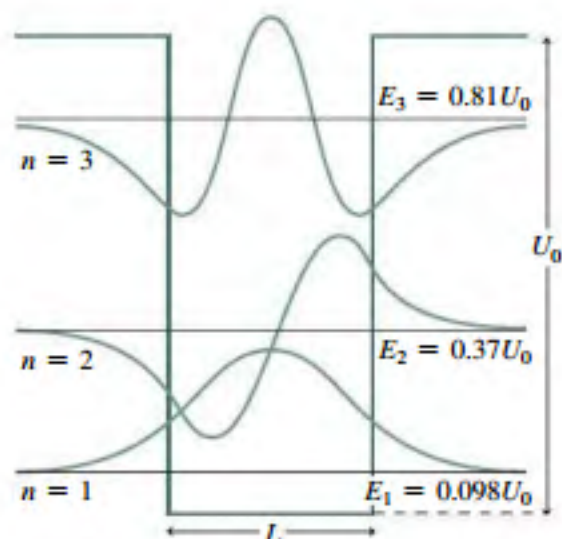
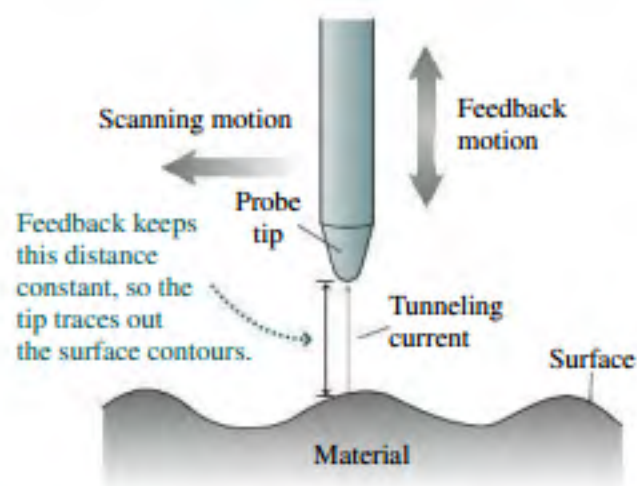
APPLICATION Scanning Tunneling Microscope



Developed in the 1980s by Heinrich Rohrer and Gerd Binnig of IBM Zurich Research Laboratory, the scanning tunneling microscope (STM) has become a vital tool for semiconductor engineers, biologists, chemists, and nanotechnologists. The STM works by quantum tunneling between an extraordinarily fine conducting tip and the surface under study. The photo shows a scanning electron microscope image of an STM tip, which, at its end, may be only one atom wide. As in the barrier of Fig. 35.12, the electron wave function tapers off exponentially

in the space outside the surface. Place a conducting tip near but not touching the surface, and there’s a nonzero probability that electrons will tunnel through the gap to reach the tip, resulting in an electric current. The exponential falloff of the wave function means this **tunneling current** is extremely sensitive to the tip-to-surface gap, and therefore changes significantly with surface irregularities.

A practical STM scans the tip over the surface, and feedback devices move the tip to keep the tunneling current constant despite surface irregularities, as shown in the figure. Therefore, the tip traces out the surface topography, and this information is used to construct an image of the surface—even at the scale of individual atoms (see this chapter’s opening photo).



Finite Potential Wells

Both the infinite square well and the harmonic oscillator have potential wells of infinite depth. No matter what its energy, a particle is bound in such a well; it can’t escape to large distances. Its quantized energy states are therefore all **bound states**. Provided they aren’t too shallow, wells of finite depth also exhibit quantized bound states whose wave functions resemble those of the infinite square well (Fig. 35.14), although they show a small but nonzero probability of tunneling into the classically forbidden region outside the well.

FIGURE 35.14 Bound-state wave functions for a finite square well, superposed on the associated energy levels. For this combination of well depth, well width, and particle mass, there are only three bound states.

Quantized bound states represent particles with energy lower than the well height. Particles with higher energy are free to move anywhere, and their wave functions are everywhere oscillatory. Furthermore, particles in these **unbound states** can have any energy whatsoever as long as it exceeds the well height; unbound energies aren't quantized. Rather, there's a **continuum** of allowed energies above the well top, in contrast to the discrete, quantized levels below (Fig. 35.15). We'll find both bound and unbound states again in the next chapter when we study the atom.

35.4 Quantum Mechanics in Three Dimensions

LO 35.4 Find energies of particles confined in two and three dimensions.

One-dimensional quantum systems show important features of the quantum world, like energy quantization and tunneling. But atoms and most other quantum systems are three-dimensional. The wave function then depends on all three spatial variables, and the Schrödinger equation reflects this complexity. You can explore the three-dimensional Schrödinger equation in Problem 55; here we just point out some new features of three-dimensional quantum systems.

A single quantum number n characterizes quantum states in one dimension. With the infinite square well, for example, an integer number of half-wavelengths can fit in the well, and n is that number. Each n is associated with a distinct energy level. In two or three dimensions, similar considerations lead to independent quantum numbers for each dimension (Fig. 35.16). For each set of quantum numbers there's an associated energy. For a particle of mass m confined to a cubical box of side L , for example, a generalization of the one-dimensional square well leads to the energy levels

$$E = \frac{h^2}{8mL^2} (n_x^2 + n_y^2 + n_z^2) \quad (35.8)$$

where the n 's are the quantum numbers associated with each spatial dimension. As in one dimension, the allowed values for the n 's are positive integers. Thus, the ground state has $n_x = n_y = n_z = 1$. But what's the first excited state? It could be $n_x = 2, n_y = n_z = 1$. But it could equally well be $n_x = n_y = 1, n_z = 2$, or $n_x = n_z = 1, n_y = 2$, since all three of these combinations give the same energy.

Two or more quantum states with the same energy are termed **degenerate**. The first excited state of a particle confined to a cubical box is threefold degenerate, meaning there are three distinct states with the same energy. Degeneracy is often associated with symmetry of the quantum-mechanical system. In the cubical box, the equal-length sides result in different combinations of quantum numbers with the same energy. Making the sides different would remove the degeneracy, splitting a single energy level into three (Fig. 35.17). The same thing happens in more realistic quantum systems. For example, imposing a magnetic field on an otherwise spherically symmetric atom breaks the symmetry and may split energy levels that were previously degenerate (Fig. 35.18). Detection of this splitting in optical spectra allows measurement of magnetic fields on the Sun and in other remote objects.

GOT IT?

35.6 Is the energy of the first excited state for a particle in a cubical box (a) twice, (b) four times, or (c) eight times that of the ground state?

35.5 Relativistic Quantum Mechanics

LO 35.5 Describe some implications of relativistic invariance for quantum mechanics, especially antimatter and spin.

Like Newtonian physics, quantum mechanics based on the Schrödinger equation is not consistent with special relativity's requirement that the laws of physics be the same in all inertial reference frames. It's therefore an approximation valid for particle speeds v much

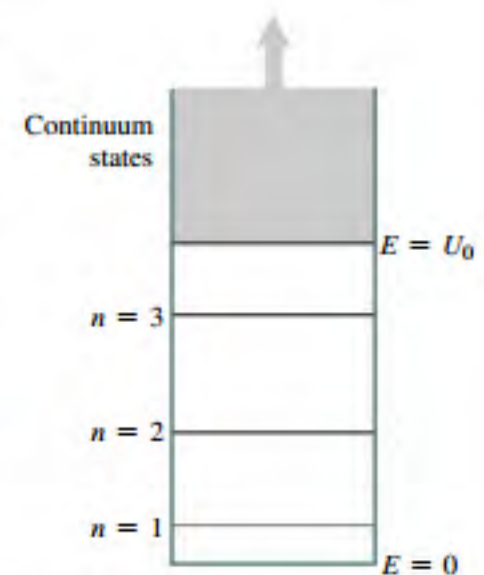


FIGURE 35.15 Energy-level diagram for a finite square well shows discrete bound states and a continuum of unbound states.

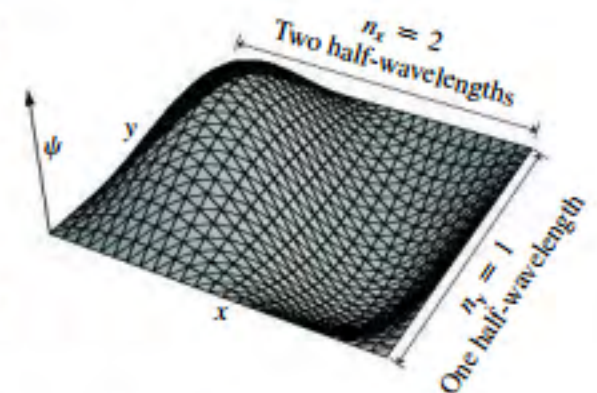


FIGURE 35.16 One possible wave function for a particle confined to a square region in two dimensions. This function is $\psi(x, y) = \sin(n_x \pi x/L) \sin(n_y \pi y/L)$, with $n_x = 2$ and $n_y = 1$.

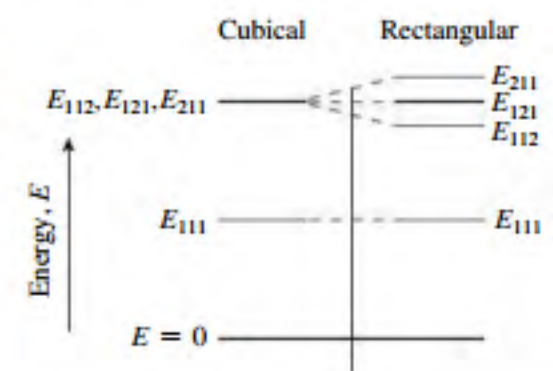


FIGURE 35.17 Energy-level diagrams showing the ground state and first excited state for a particle in a three-dimensional box. Making the sides different lengths removes the degeneracy.

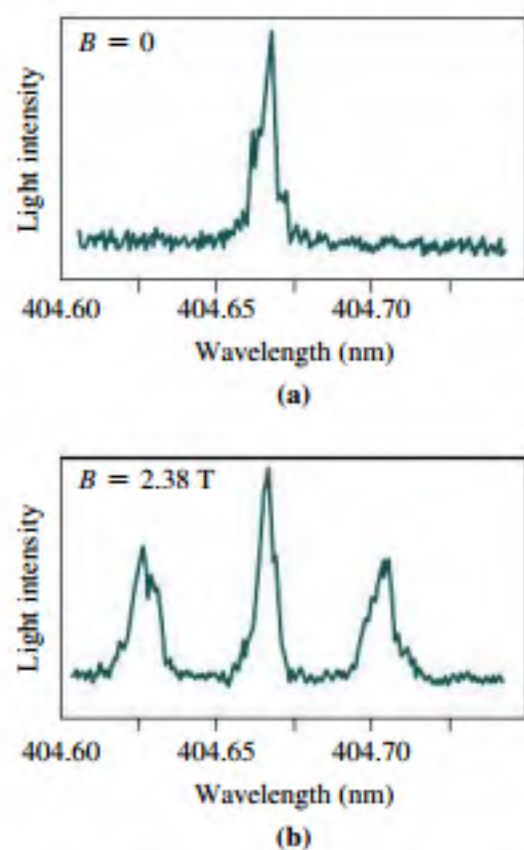


FIGURE 35.18 (a) Spectral line at 404.66 nm produced by mercury atoms undergoing transitions from $n = 7$ to $n = 6$. The upper level is actually threefold degenerate. (b) A magnetic field breaks the symmetry and removes the degeneracy, splitting the spectral line.

lower than c . For most applications in atomic, molecular, and condensed-matter physics, $v \ll c$ so the Schrödinger equation applies. But when particle speeds are a significant fraction of c , the Schrödinger equation becomes inadequate and must be replaced with a relativistic wave equation. And even for slowly moving particles, the requirement of relativistic invariance leads to some surprising new phenomena.

The Dirac Equation and Antiparticles

In 1928 the English physicist Paul Dirac formulated a relativistic wave equation for electrons. In the process he encountered several unexpected mathematical requirements with deep physical significance.

Dirac replaced the Newtonian energy–momentum relation $K = p^2/2m$ with the relativistic expression $E^2 = (mc^2)^2 + p^2c^2$ that we saw in Chapter 33. But this expression implies two values for E , depending on which sign one chooses in taking the square root. Dirac argued that both roots are meaningful and that the negative root implies the existence of a particle identical in mass to the electron but carrying positive charge. The 1932 discovery of this **positron** vindicated Dirac’s brilliant idea. Today we know that every elementary particle has a corresponding **antiparticle**, identical in mass but opposite in electric, magnetic, and other properties.

Einstein’s energy–mass equivalence implies that **pair creation** of a particle–antiparticle pair is possible, given energy $2mc^2$ equivalent to the mass of the pair. The opposite process, annihilation, occurs as particle and antiparticle meet and disappear to form a pair of photons. (Recall Chapter 33’s Application “PET Scans: Relativity in the Hospital,” which described pair annihilation.) Although pair creation is rare today, it was commonplace in the hot, early universe, where thermal energy alone was high enough to create particle–antiparticle pairs. In those early times Einstein’s mass–energy equivalence would have been obvious, and the number of particles in a closed volume wouldn’t have remained constant.

Electron Spin

Another unexpected mathematical result of Dirac’s work was that the wave function had to involve matrices. This, Dirac showed, implied physically that the electron must possess an intrinsic angular momentum—something physicists had already inferred from experiments, but without any theoretical grounding. This angular momentum, called **spin**, has enormous significance in quantum mechanics and particularly in atomic structure, as we’ll see in the next chapter.

Chapter 35 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is the description of particles in the quantum realm using **wave functions**, whose square relates to the probability of finding a particle. Thus the link between the most thorough description physics can provide—the wave function—and the behavior of an individual particle is only statistical. The **Schrödinger equation** gives the wave function for nonrelativistic particles and leads to energy quantization for confined particles.

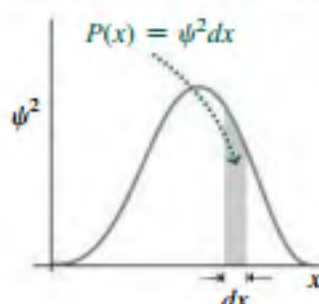
Key Concepts and Equations

The **time-independent Schrödinger equation** gives the wave function ψ for a particle of mass m with total energy E and potential energy U :

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} + U(x)\psi = E\psi$$

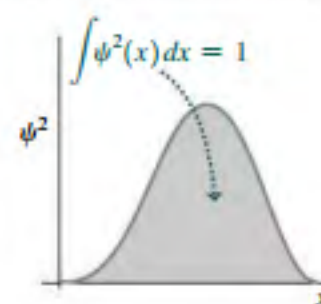
The square of the wave function is the **probability density**. In one dimension, the probability of finding the particle in some small interval dx at position x is

$$P(x) = \psi^2(x) dx$$



Normalization: A particle must be somewhere, so

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \psi^2(x) dx = 1$$



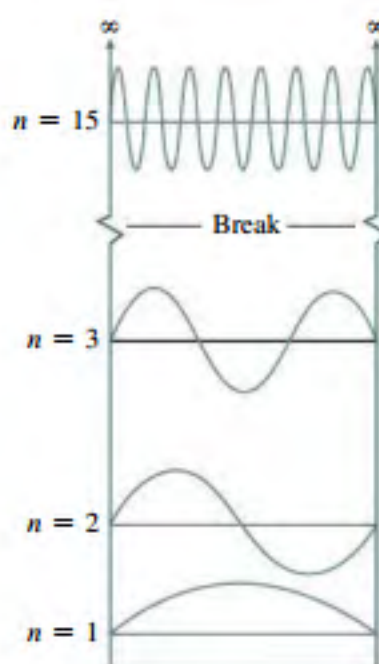
Applications

Infinite square well

Wave functions: $\psi_n = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)$

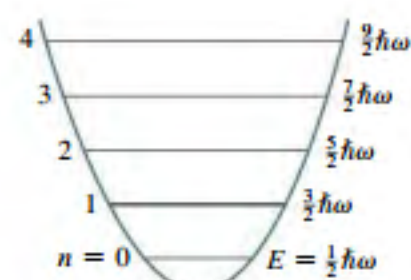
Energy levels: $E_n = \frac{n^2 \hbar^2}{8mL^2}$

3-D well: $E = \frac{\hbar^2}{8mL^2}(n_x^2 + n_y^2 + n_z^2)$



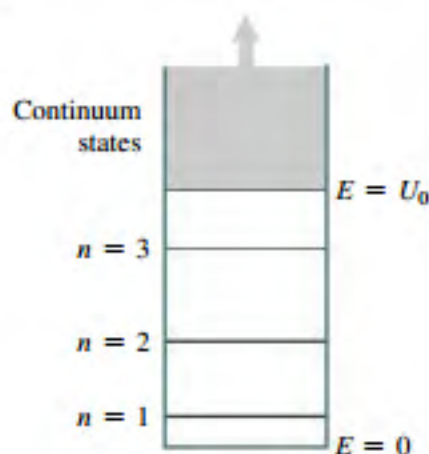
Harmonic oscillator

Energy levels: $E_n = (n + \frac{1}{2})\hbar\omega$



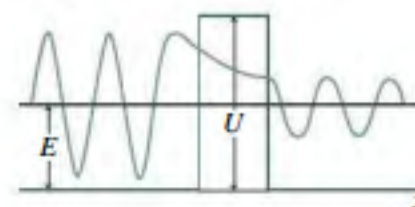
Finite well

Discrete bound states; continuum of unbound states



Quantum tunneling

Nonzero probability of finding a quantum particle in a region forbidden by classical energy conservation leads to the possibility of barrier penetration:



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 35.1 Explain the relationship between wave-particle duality and the probability of locating a particle.
- LO 35.2 Describe the Schrödinger equation and how the wave function relates to probabilities.
For Thought and Discussion Question 35.8; Problem 35.37
- LO 35.3 Evaluate energies of particles in square-well and harmonic-oscillator potentials and describe quantum tunneling.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 35.1, 35.2, 35.3, 35.4, 35.5, 35.10; Exercises 35.11, 35.12, 35.13, 35.14, 35.15, 35.16, 35.17, 35.18, 35.19, 35.20, 35.21, 35.22, 35.23, 35.24; Problems 35.36, 35.38, 35.39, 35.40, 35.41, 35.42, 35.43, 35.44, 35.45, 35.47, 35.48, 35.49, 35.50, 35.51, 35.52, 35.53, 35.56, 35.57, 35.58, 35.59, 35.60, 35.61
- LO 35.4 Find energies of particles confined in two and three dimensions.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 35.6, 35.7; Exercises 35.25, 35.26, 35.27; Problems 35.46, 35.54, 35.55
- LO 35.5 Describe some implications of relativistic invariance for quantum mechanics, especially antimatter and spin.
For Thought and Discussion Question 35.10

For Thought and Discussion

1. Explain qualitatively why a particle confined to a finite region cannot have zero energy.
2. Does quantum tunneling violate energy conservation? Explain.
3. Is there a limit beyond which the Schrödinger equation fails to yield good results even for atoms and electrons?
4. The ground-state wave function for a quantum harmonic oscillator has a single central peak. Why is this at odds with classical physics?
5. Under what circumstances will we be able to observe the quantum behavior of classical objects around us?
6. In terms of de Broglie's matter-wave hypothesis, how does making the sides of a box different lengths remove the degeneracy associated with a particle confined to that box?
7. A particle is confined to a two-dimensional box whose sides are in the ratio 1:2. Are any of its energy levels degenerate? If so, give an example. If not, why not?
8. What did Einstein mean by his remark, loosely paraphrased, that "God does not play dice"?
9. How many energy states corresponding to the energy level E_{423} are there in a square potential well?
10. Figure 35.19 shows an infinite square well with a steplike potential at the bottom. Sketch qualitatively what you think a wave function might look like for a particle whose energy is (a) less than the step height and (b) greater than the step height.

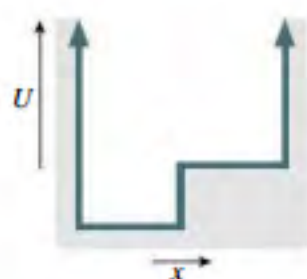


FIGURE 35.19 Question 10

12. The solution to the Schrödinger equation for a particular potential is $\psi = 0$ for $|x| > a$ and $\psi = A \sin(\pi x/a)$ for $-a \leq x \leq a$, where A and a are constants. In terms of a , what value of A is required to normalize ψ ?

Section 35.3 Particles and Potentials

13. What's the quantum number for a particle in an infinite square well if the particle's energy is 64 times the ground-state energy?
14. A particle in an infinite square well drops from energy level n_a to a lower level n_b , emitting a photon in the process. If the photon's energy is 21 times the ground-state energy, what are the two levels n_a and n_b ?
15. Determine the ground-state energy for an electron in an infinite square well of width 5.0 nm.
16. Find the width of a square well in which a proton's first excited state has energy 1.5 keV.
17. A carbon nanotube traps an electron in a hollow cylindrical structure 0.48 nm in diameter. Approximating the nanotube as a one-dimensional infinite square well, find the energies in eV of (a) the ground state and (b) the first excited state.
18. One reason we don't notice quantum effects in everyday life is that Planck's constant h is so small. Treating yourself as a particle (mass 60 kg) in a room-sized one-dimensional infinite square well (width 2.6 m), how big would h have to be if your minimum possible energy corresponded to a speed of 1.0 m/s?
19. A particle is confined to a 1.0-nm-wide infinite square well. If the energy difference between the ground state and the first excited state is 1.13 eV, is the particle an electron or a proton?
20. A 3-g snail crawls at 0.5 mm/s between two rocks 15 cm apart. Treating this system as an infinite square well, determine the approximate quantum number. Does the correspondence principle permit the use of the classical approximation in this case?
21. An alpha particle (mass 4 u) is trapped in a uranium nucleus with diameter 15 fm. Treating the system as a one-dimensional square well, what would be the minimum energy for the alpha particle?
22. A quantum harmonic oscillator has ground-state energy 0.14 eV. What would be the system's classical oscillation frequency f ?
23. Find the ground-state energy for a particle in a harmonic oscillator potential whose classical angular frequency ω is $2.0 \times 10^{17} \text{ s}^{-1}$.
24. A harmonic oscillator emits a 1.1-eV photon as it undergoes a transition between adjacent states. Find its classical oscillation frequency f .

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 35.2 The Schrödinger Equation

11. A particle's wave function is $\psi = Ae^{-x^2/a^2}$, where A and a are constants. (a) Where is the particle most likely to be found? (b) Where is the probability per unit length half its maximum value?

Section 35.4 Quantum Mechanics in Three Dimensions

25. If all sides of a cubical box are doubled, what happens to the ground-state energy of a particle in that box?
26. A very crude model for an atomic nucleus is a cubical box 4 fm on a side. What would be the energy of a gamma ray emitted if a proton in such a nucleus made a transition from its first excited state to the ground state?
27. An electron is confined to a cubical box. For what box width will a transition from the first excited state to the ground state result in emission of a 950-nm infrared photon?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

28. **Example 35.1:** Repeat Example 35.1 for the case where the 0.85-nm spacing is reduced to 0.500 nm.
29. **Example 35.1:** Find the layer thickness in a device like that of Example 35.1 if the energy of the $n = 4$ level is to be 6.38 eV.
30. **Example 35.1:** An experimental laser produces light as electrons jump from the $n = 3$ and $n = 2$ levels to the ground state in a square well of width 1.15 nm. Find the wavelengths of the emitted light and identify their spectral regions.
31. **Example 35.1:** You're developing a light source whose photons are produced as electrons drop from the $n = 3$ to the $n = 2$ level in a square well. Find the width of the well such that the emitted light is in the visible at 595 nm.
32. **Example 35.2:** What's the probability of finding a particle in the left-hand third of a square well, if the particle is in the ground state?
33. **Example 35.2:** You perform measurements on 10,000 identical square wells, starting from one end of each well but not going all the way to the other end. In 9090 of the measurements you locate a particle. What fraction of each square well did you search for the particle?
34. **Example 35.2:** Repeat Example 35.2, now assuming the particle is in the $n = 3$ state.
35. **Example 35.2:** A particle is in the $n = 3$ state of a square well. **COMP** How much of the well would you have to search, starting at one end, to have a 65% chance of finding the particle? *Hint:* The unknown appears both inside and outside a sine function, so you'll need to use a numerical solver on your calculator or computer.

Problems

36. Find an expression for the normalization constant A for the wave function given by $\psi = 0$ for $|x| > b$ and $\psi = A(b^2 - x^2)$ for $-b \leq x \leq b$.
37. Suppose ψ_1 and ψ_2 are solutions of the Schrödinger equation for the same energy E . Show that the linear combination $a\psi_1 + b\psi_2$ is also a solution, where a and b are arbitrary constants.
38. An electron is trapped in an infinite square well 15 nm wide. Find the wavelengths of the photons emitted in these transitions: (a) $n = 2$ to $n = 1$; (b) $n = 20$ to $n = 19$; (c) $n = 100$ to $n = 1$.
39. An electron drops from the $n = 8$ to the $n = 6$ level of an infinite square well 1.5 nm wide. Find (a) the energy and (b) the wavelength of the photon emitted.
40. Show explicitly that the difference between adjacent energy levels in an infinite square well becomes arbitrarily small compared with the energy of the upper level, in the limit of large quantum number n .

41. An electron is in a narrow molecule 3.6 nm long, a situation that approximates a one-dimensional infinite square well. If the electron is in its ground state, what is the maximum wavelength of electromagnetic radiation that can cause a transition to an excited state?
42. The ground-state energy for an electron in infinite square well A is equal to the energy of the first excited state for an electron in well B. How do the wells' widths compare?
43. Electrons in an ensemble of 0.834-nm-wide square wells are all initially in the $n = 4$ state. (a) How many different wavelengths of spectral lines could be emitted as the electrons cascade to the ground state through all possible downward transitions? (b) Find those wavelengths. (c) What regions of the electromagnetic spectrum do these spectral lines encompass?
44. A particle in the $n = 3$ energy level of a 0.650-nm-wide square well has energy 38.9 meV. Find the particle's mass.
45. An infinite square well extends from $-L/2$ to $L/2$. (a) Find expressions for the normalized wave functions for a particle of mass m in this well, giving separate expressions for even and odd quantum numbers. (b) Find the corresponding energy levels.
46. An electron is confined to a two-dimensional infinite square well measuring 1.25 nm on each side. Modify Equation 35.8 for this two-dimensional situation and find the 10 lowest energy levels for this electron. Give your answers in eV and include the two subscripts that label each energy.
47. A laser emits 2.26-eV photons. If this emission is due to electron transitions from the $n = 2$ to $n = 1$ states of an infinite square well, what's the well's width?
48. What's the probability of finding a particle in the central 80% of an infinite square well, assuming it's in the ground state?
49. **BIO** Is quantization significant for macromolecules confined to biological cells? To find out, consider a protein of mass 250,000 u confined to a 10- μ m-diameter cell. Treating this as a particle in a one-dimensional square well, find the energy difference between the ground state and the first excited state. Given that biochemical reactions typically involve energies on the order of 1 eV, what do you conclude about the role of quantization?
50. In your physical chemistry course, you model hydrogen chloride as a hydrogen atom on a spring; the other end of the spring is attached to a rigid wall (the massive chlorine atom). In order to determine the spring constant in your model, you measure the minimum photon energy that will promote HCl molecules to their first excited state. The result is 0.358 eV. What do you calculate for the effective k ?
51. A particle detector has a resolution 15% of the width of an infinite square well. What's the probability that the detector will find a particle in the ground state of the square well if the detector is centered on (a) the midpoint of the well and (b) a point one-fourth of the way across the well?
52. Find the probability that a particle in an infinite square well is located in the central one-fourth of the well for the quantum states $n =$ (a) 1, (b) 2, (c) 5, and (d) 20. (e) What's the classical probability in this situation?
53. A particle of mass m is in a region where its total energy E is less than its potential energy U . Show that the Schrödinger equation has nonzero solutions of the form $Ae^{\pm \sqrt{2m(U-E)}x/\hbar}$. Such solutions describe the wave function in quantum tunneling, beyond the turning points in a quantum harmonic oscillator, or beyond the well edges in a finite potential well.
54. (a) Use Equation 35.8 to draw an energy-level diagram for the first six energy levels of a particle in a cubical box, in terms of $\hbar^2/8mL^2$, and (b) give the degeneracy of each.
55. The generalization of the Schrödinger equation to three dimensions is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \left(\frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial z^2} \right) + U(x, y, z)\psi = E\psi$$

(a) For a particle confined to the cubical region $0 \leq x \leq L$, $0 \leq y \leq L$, $0 \leq z \leq L$, show by direct substitution that the equation is satisfied by wave functions of the form $\psi(x, y, z) = A \sin(n_x \pi x/L) \sin(n_y \pi y/L) \sin(n_z \pi z/L)$, where the n 's are integers and A is a constant. (b) In the process of working part (a), verify that the energies E are given by Equation 35.8.

56. A 6-W laser beam shines on an ensemble of 10^{24} electrons, each in the ground state of a one-dimensional infinite square well 0.82 nm wide. The photon energy is just high enough to raise an electron to its first excited state. How many electrons can be excited if the beam shines for 5.0 ms?
57. A large number of electrons are confined to infinite square wells 1.2 nm wide. They're undergoing transitions among all possible states. How many visible lines (400 nm to 700 nm) are in the spectrum emitted by this ensemble of square-well systems?
58. A particle is in the n th quantum state of an infinite square well.
- CH (a) Show that the probability of finding it in the left-hand quarter of the well is

$$P = \frac{1}{4} - \frac{\sin(n\pi/2)}{2n\pi}$$

(b) Show that for odd n , the probability approaches the classical value $\frac{1}{4}$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

59. (a) Using the potential energy $U = \frac{1}{2}m\omega^2 x^2$ discussed on page 718, develop the Schrödinger equation for the harmonic oscillator. (b) Show by substitution that $\psi_0(x) = A_0 e^{-\alpha^2 x^2/2}$ satisfies your equation, where $\alpha^2 = m\omega/\hbar$ and the energy is given by Equation 35.7 with $n = 0$. (c) Find the normalization constant A_0 . You then have the ground-state wave function for the harmonic oscillator.
60. You're trying to convince a friend that nuclear energy represents a much more concentrated energy source than fossil fuels, whose combustion involves rearranging atomic electrons. For a rough comparison, you calculate the ground-state energy of a proton confined to 1-fm-diameter atomic nucleus and that of an electron confined to a 0.1-nm-diameter atom. Approximating each system as a one-dimensional infinite square well, what's the ratio of their ground-state energies?
61. The table below lists the wavelengths emitted as electrons in identical square-well potentials drop from various states n to the ground state. Determine a quantity that, when you plot λ against it, should yield a straight line. Make your plot, establish a best-fit line, and use your line to determine the width of the square well.

Initial state, n	4	5	7	8	10
Wavelength, λ (nm)	1110	674	354	281	169

Passage Problems

BIO Quantum dots, or *qdots*, are nanoscale crystals of semiconductor material that trap electrons in a potential well closely resembling the three-dimensional square well discussed in Section 35.4. Physicists, materials scientists, and semiconductor engineers have been studying qdots for their potential to miniaturize electronic components. More recently, qdots have been used in biology and medicine to "tag" individual molecules, helping scientists follow cellular processes (Fig. 35.20). Qdots also facilitate high-resolution imaging within the cell, and they show promise for medical diagnostics and targeting tumors for the delivery of anticancer agents. In the biomedical context, qdots work as replacements for traditional fluorescent dyes. Illuminating qdots promotes their electrons to higher energy levels; as they drop back, they emit photons of precise wavelength. A dot's size and structure determine this wavelength.

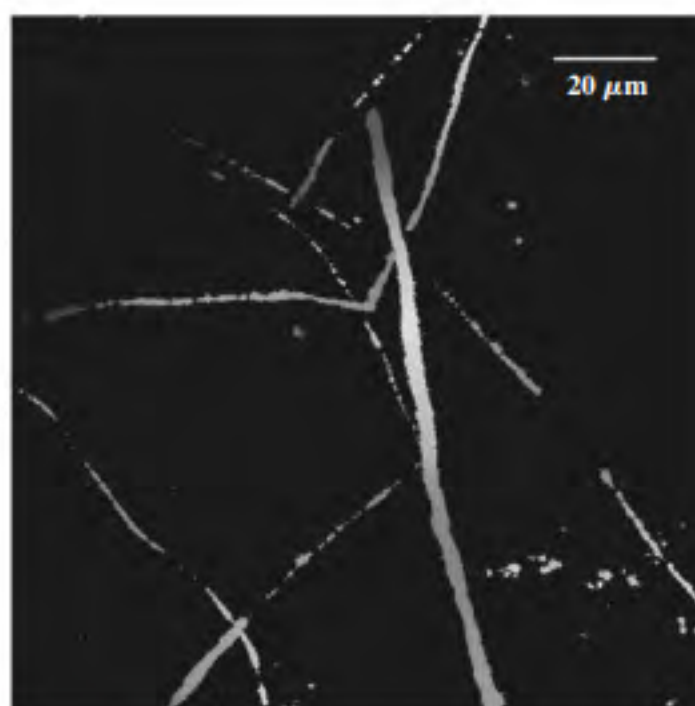


FIGURE 35.20 In this microscopic photo, motor protein molecules called dynein have been tagged with quantum dots, allowing their paths to be tracked (Passage Problems 62–65).

62. If a qdot's size is decreased, what happens to the wavelength of the photon emitted in a transition from the dot's first excited state to the ground state?
- The wavelength increases.
 - The wavelength decreases.
 - The wavelength is unchanged.
63. If the dot behaves as a perfectly cubical 3-D square well, the first excited state is
- nondegenerate.
 - twofold degenerate.
 - threefold degenerate.
 - You can't tell without knowing the energy.
64. If the dot behaves as a perfectly cubical 3-D square well, the ground state is
- nondegenerate.
 - twofold degenerate.
 - threefold degenerate.
 - You can't tell without knowing the energy.
65. If all three sides of a qdot are halved, its ground-state energy
- is halved.
 - drops to one-fourth its original value.
 - doubles.
 - quadruples.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Quantum tunneling, the ability of particles to penetrate a barrier that classical physics says they don't have sufficient energy to overcome.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 35.1 (d)
 35.2 (a)
 35.3 (c)
 35.4 (c)
 35.5 (b)
 35.6 (a)

Atomic Physics

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Angular momentum (Section 11.3)
- The point-charge potential (Section 22.2)
- The Bohr model for the atom (Section 34.4)
- Familiarity with the periodic table of the elements

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 36.1 Give a quantitative quantum-mechanical description of the hydrogen atom.
- LO 36.2 Describe electron spin and spin-orbit coupling.
- LO 36.3 Describe the Pauli exclusion principle.
- LO 36.4 Explain how the exclusion principle accounts for the periodic table of the elements.
- LO 36.5 Relate the spectra of elements to their atomic structure and energy levels.
- LO 36.6 Describe spontaneous and stimulated transitions and explain how they account for the operation of lasers.



How do the principles of quantum physics explain the different chemical elements?

In Chapter 35 we applied the Schrödinger equation to simplified quantum systems. Here we turn to the more realistic case of the atom, and explore how quantum mechanics explains atomic structure and the periodic table of the elements. We'll deal most thoroughly with the simplest atom, hydrogen, and we'll be more qualitative in describing multielectron atoms.

36.1 The Hydrogen Atom

LO 36.1 Give a quantitative quantum-mechanical description of the hydrogen atom.

Like a particle in a three-dimensional box, the electron in hydrogen is confined to a three-dimensional potential well. For the electron, the well results from the proton's electrostatic attraction. From Chapter 22 you know that the electric potential due to the proton, treated as a point charge e , is $V(r) = ke/r$, with r the distance to the proton and the zero of potential at infinity. Electric potential is energy per unit charge, so multiplying by the electron charge $-e$ gives the potential energy of the electron-proton system—that is, of the hydrogen atom:

$$U(r) = -\frac{ke^2}{r} \quad (36.1)$$

We'll approximate the massive proton as being at rest at the origin, so Equation 36.1 gives the electron's potential energy as a function of radial position r . We can therefore use Equation 36.1 as the potential energy in the Schrödinger equation for the hydrogen atom.

The Schrödinger Equation in Spherical Coordinates

Because the electron's potential energy depends on radial distance r , it's best to work in spherical coordinates, where the position of a point is given by its distance r from the origin along with two angles θ and ϕ that specify its orientation (Fig. 36.1). Converting the Schrödinger equation to spherical coordinates is straightforward but tedious; the result is

Three terms describe the dependence of the wavefunction ψ ... $-ke^2/r$ is the electron's potential energy ...

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2mr^2} \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left(r^2 \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left(\sin \theta \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial \phi^2} \right] - \frac{ke^2}{r} \psi = E\psi \quad \text{(Schrödinger equation, spherical coordinates)} \quad (36.2)$$

... on the radial coordinate, the polar coordinate, and the azimuthal coordinate, ... and E is its total energy.

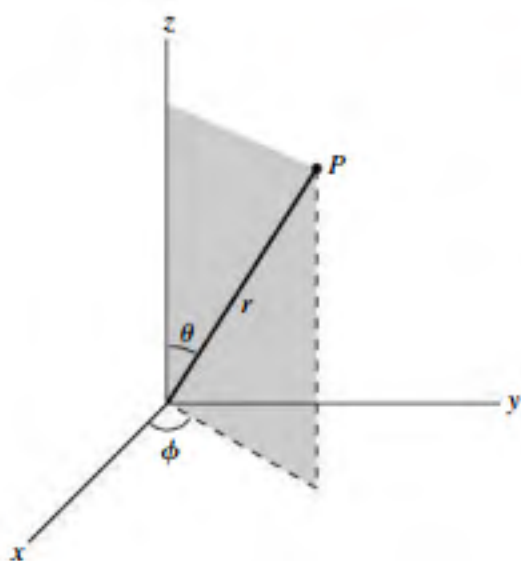


FIGURE 36.1 Spherical coordinates r, θ, ϕ provide an alternative to rectangular coordinates x, y, z .

where we've used Equation 36.1 for the potential-energy function.

Although Equation 36.2 looks forbidding, it can be solved using advanced techniques. For total energy E less than zero, corresponding to bound states in hydrogen's potential well, most solutions become infinite at large r and therefore aren't normalizable. As a result, only certain values of the energy E give acceptable bound-state solutions. For total energy greater than zero, the electron is unbound and any energy proves possible, as with the finite square well.

The Hydrogen Ground State

In general, solutions to Equation 36.2 depend on all three variables r, θ, ϕ . But some solutions, including the ground state, are spherically symmetric—they depend only on r . Here we show that the ground state has the form of an exponential, and in the process derive the ground-state energy. Consider the function

$$\psi = Ae^{-r/a_0} \quad (36.3)$$

where A and a_0 are as yet undetermined constants, the latter with the units of length. For this spherically symmetric function, nothing depends on the angular variables θ and ϕ , so derivatives with respect to those variables are strictly zero. We're then dealing with a function of only one variable, so we can write total instead of partial derivatives. Equation 36.2 then becomes

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2mr^2} \frac{d}{dr} \left(r^2 \frac{d\psi}{dr} \right) - \frac{ke^2}{r} \psi = E\psi \quad (36.4)$$

Substituting the proposed solution 36.3 for ψ gives

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2ma_0^2} + \frac{\hbar^2}{mra_0} - \frac{ke^2}{r} = E_1$$

(see Problem 44), where E_1 is the ground-state energy. This equation must be satisfied for all values of r , so the two r -dependent terms must cancel:

$$\frac{\hbar^2}{mra_0} = \frac{ke^2}{r}$$

or

$$a_0 = \frac{\hbar^2}{mke^2} = 5.29 \times 10^{-11} \text{ m} = 0.0529 \text{ nm}$$

This is precisely the **Bohr radius** that we introduced in Section 34.4.

With the r terms gone, our expression for the ground-state energy becomes $E_1 = -\hbar^2/2ma_0^2 = -13.6 \text{ eV}$, where the minus sign shows that the atom is a bound

system. Thus Equation 36.3 is indeed a solution to the Schrödinger equation for hydrogen, with energy $E_1 = -13.6 \text{ eV}$.

In deriving expressions for a_0 and E_1 , we've shown how Schrödinger's theory gives two fundamental parameters of atomic physics: the Bohr radius and the hydrogen ground-state energy. Both agree with the values we found in Chapter 34 using the simpler Bohr model. But Bohr's theory still clings to the notion of classical orbits, with a_0 the ground-state orbital radius. Schrödinger's theory is truly quantum mechanical, representing the electron with its wave function ψ and associated probability distribution. The Bohr radius is no longer an actual orbital radius but instead determines atomic size only in a statistical sense.

The Radial Probability Distribution

Because the ground-state wave function falls off exponentially as e^{-r/a_0} , we're unlikely to find the electron at distances substantially greater than the Bohr radius. But where are we most likely to find it? Although ψ is greatest at $r = 0$, that's not the answer. In three dimensions the probability density ψ^2 is the probability *per unit volume* of finding the electron. In asking where we're most likely to find the electron, we want the probability *per unit radial distance*. Figure 36.2 shows a thin spherical shell with radius r and therefore area $4\pi r^2$. It has thickness dr , so its volume is $dV = 4\pi r^2 dr$. Then the probability of finding the electron in this shell is $\psi^2 dV = 4\pi r^2 \psi^2 dr$. The **radial probability density**, $P(r)$, is the probability per unit radius, or

$$P(r) = 4\pi r^2 \psi^2 \quad (\text{radial probability density}) \quad (36.5)$$

For the hydrogen ground state, we use Equation 36.3 for ψ to get $P_1 = 4\pi r^2 A^2 e^{-2r/a_0}$, where the subscript 1 designates the ground state. Figure 36.3 is a plot of this probability density, which peaks at $r = a_0$. Thus the single most likely place to find the electron in ground-state hydrogen is one Bohr radius from the proton.

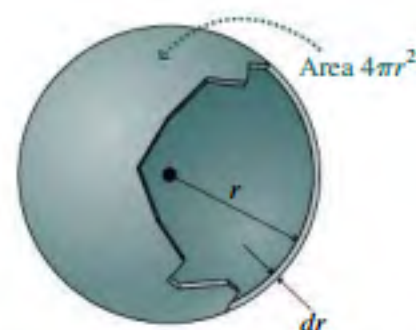


FIGURE 36.2 A thin shell has volume $dV = 4\pi r^2 dr$; thus the probability per unit radial distance is $4\pi r^2$ times the probability per unit volume.

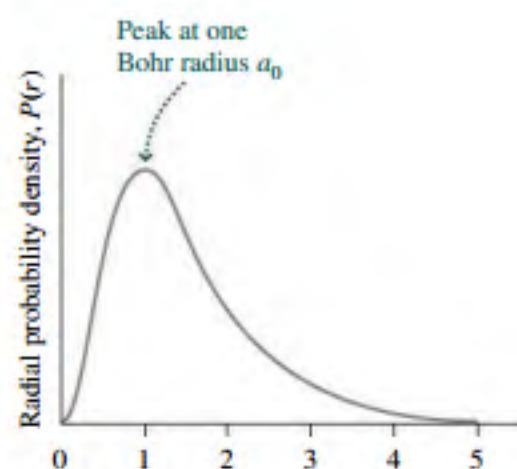


FIGURE 36.3 Radial probability density for the hydrogen ground state.

EXAMPLE 36.1

The Hydrogen Atom: Normalization and the Probability Distribution

Worked Example with Variation Problems

(a) Determine the normalization constant A in Equation 36.3. (b) Use the resulting wave function to find the probability that the electron in the hydrogen ground state will be found beyond the Bohr radius.

INTERPRET The wave function 36.3 contains an undetermined constant A . This problem is asking us to apply the normalization condition to find A and then use the concept of radial probability density to determine the probability of finding the electron beyond $r = a_0$.

DEVELOP The electron must be *somewhere* in the range $r = 0$ to $r = \infty$. Since $P(r) dr$ is the probability of finding the electron in a region of width dr , the normalization condition becomes $\int_0^\infty P(r) dr = 1$. So our plan is to evaluate this integral using the ground-state probability density $P_1 = 4\pi r^2 A^2 e^{-2r/a_0}$. We'll then solve for the unknown A . Then we can integrate again, this time from $r = a_0$ to $r = \infty$, to get the probability of finding the electron beyond a_0 .

EVALUATE (a) Using the probability density P_1 , the normalization condition becomes

$$\int_{r=0}^{r=\infty} 4\pi r^2 A^2 e^{-2r/a_0} dr = 1$$

We could evaluate using integration by parts; however, the result is in the integral table at the end of Appendix A. Replacing x by r and a by

$-2/a_0$ in the table's expression for $\int x^2 e^{ax} dx$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^\infty 4\pi A^2 r^2 e^{-2r/a_0} dr &= 4\pi A^2 \left\{ \frac{r^2 e^{-2r/a_0}}{(-2/a_0)} - \frac{2}{(-2/a_0)} \left[\frac{e^{-2r/a_0}}{(-2/a_0)^2} \left(-\frac{2}{a_0} r - 1 \right) \right] \right\} \bigg|_0^\infty = 1 \end{aligned}$$

The expression in curly brackets vanishes at $r = \infty$, and at $r = 0$ the exponentials are just 1, so we have $4\pi A^2 \left[0 - \left(-\frac{1}{4} a_0^3 \right) \right] = 1$, or $A = 1/\sqrt{\pi a_0^3}$.

(b) In part (a) we integrated from $r = 0$ to $r = \infty$ because we wanted the probability that the electron was *somewhere*. Here we want the probability that it's beyond $r = a_0$, so we change the lower limit on the integral from 0 to a_0 . The result is

$$\begin{aligned} P(r > a_0) &= \int_{a_0}^\infty 4\pi r^2 A^2 e^{-2r/a_0} dr \\ &= 4\pi A^2 a_0^3 \left(\frac{1}{2} e^{-2} + \frac{3}{4} e^{-2} \right) = 5\pi A^2 a_0^3 e^{-2} \end{aligned}$$

With $A^2 = 1/\pi a_0^3$, this becomes $P(r > a_0) = 5e^{-2} = 0.677$.

ASSESS Our result shows that about two-thirds of the time, the electron will be found beyond the Bohr radius. So although it's reasonable to say that the atom's radius is roughly the Bohr radius, both Fig. 36.3 and our result here show that there's no sharp cutoff that marks the "size" of the atom.

Excited States of Hydrogen

So far we've examined only the ground state of hydrogen. But Equation 36.2 admits many more normalizable solutions, corresponding to the excited states of hydrogen.

In general, each energy level is associated with one spherically symmetric wave function and a number of nonsymmetric ones. For historical reasons, the spherically symmetric states are called **s states**. The distinct energy levels are labeled by the quantum number n , called the **principal quantum number**. The ground state, for example, is the $1s$ state. The energy of the n th level, derivable from the Schrödinger equation, turns out to agree exactly with the earlier Bohr theory:

E_n is the energy of an electron in hydrogen. E_1 is the ground-state energy, -13.6 eV.

$$E_n = -\frac{1}{n^2} \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma_0^2} = \frac{E_1}{n^2} = \frac{-13.6 \text{ eV}}{n^2} \quad (\text{hydrogen energy levels}) \quad (36.6)$$

n is the principal quantum number.

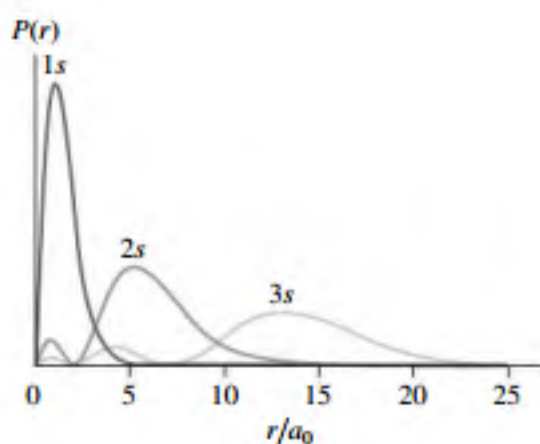


FIGURE 36.4 Radial probability densities for the spherically symmetric $1s$, $2s$, and $3s$ states of hydrogen.

The spherically symmetric state with energy E_2 —that is, the $2s$ state—has its wave function given by

$$\psi_{2s} = \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2\pi a_0^3}} \left(2 - \frac{r}{a_0} \right) e^{-r/2a_0} \quad (36.7)$$

By substituting this function into Equation 36.4, you can verify that the energy E_2 is given by Equation 36.6 (see Problem 66). The radial probability densities for the first three spherically symmetric states are plotted in Fig. 36.4; note that the excited states correspond to larger, more “smeared-out” atoms.

Although we’re discussing hydrogen, our results generalize to any single-electron atom—that is, to an atom of atomic number Z ionized $Z - 1$ times. For such an atom the potential-energy function becomes $-kZe^2/r$, and our calculations go through as before except that the factor e^2 is replaced by Ze^2 . Then the energy levels become

$$E_n = -\frac{Z^2}{n^2} \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma_0^2} = \frac{Z^2 E_1}{n^2} = -\frac{(13.6 \text{ eV})Z^2}{n^2} \quad (36.8)$$

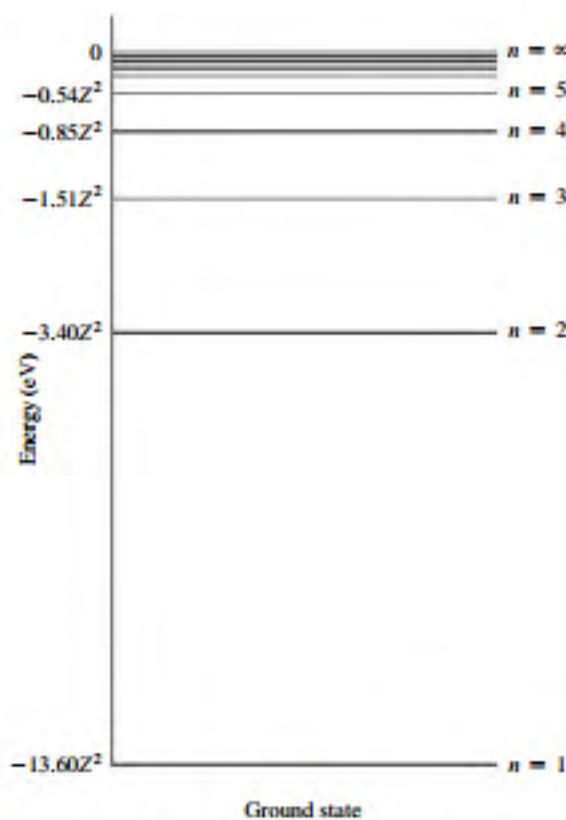


FIGURE 36.5 Energy-level diagram for a one-electron atom with atomic number Z . Energies scale as Z^2 .

reflecting the tighter binding of the more highly charged nucleus (see Fig. 36.5 and Problem 67).

GOT IT?

36.1 Which is the most appropriate estimate for the radial “size” of a hydrogen atom in its $2s$ state: (a) a_0 , (b) $2a_0$, (c) $5a_0$, (d) $15a_0$?

Orbital Quantum Numbers and Angular Momentum

In the spherically symmetric s states, it turns out that the **orbital angular momentum** associated with the electron’s motion is zero. This is at odds with Bohr’s prediction that angular momentum should be an integer multiple of $\hbar$. And it makes clear that we can’t be talking here about classical orbits, since motion in an elliptical or circular path entails angular momentum. But there are other solutions to the Schrödinger equation for hydrogen, solutions that aren’t spherically symmetric and that have nonzero angular momentum.

For a given principal quantum number n , there are in fact n distinct solutions with different angular momenta. The **orbital quantum number** l distinguishes these states and ranges from 0 to $n - 1$. Thus the ground state ($n = 1$) corresponds to the single value $l = 0$. Higher energy levels, however, are degenerate, meaning there’s more than one l value for each $n > 1$. The orbital quantum number determines the magnitude L of the electron’s orbital angular momentum:

L is the magnitude of the electron’s orbital angular momentum. l is the orbital quantum number.

$$L = \sqrt{l(l+1)}\hbar \quad (\text{quantization of orbital angular momentum}) \quad (36.9)$$

EXAMPLE 36.2 Orbital Angular Momentum: An Excited State

Find the possible values for the orbital angular momentum of an electron in the $n = 3$ state of hydrogen.

INTERPRET We're asked about the orbital angular momentum L , whose value follows from the orbital quantum number l . Thus we'll need the possible l values for $n = 3$.

DEVELOP For any n , there are n distinct l values, from 0 to $n - 1$. For $n = 3$, that means $l = 0, 1$, or 2 . So our plan is to evaluate L using Equation 36.9, $L = \sqrt{l(l+1)}\hbar$, for these three l values.

EVALUATE With $l = 0$, Equation 36.9 gives $L = 0$; for $l = 1$, $L = \sqrt{2}\hbar$; and for $l = 2$, $L = \sqrt{6}\hbar$.

ASSESS $l = 0$ is the spherically symmetric $3s$ state, which we've seen has zero angular momentum. The higher- l states have increasing angular momentum.

States with l values 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, ... are given the letter labels $s, p, d, f, g, h, \dots$. These combine with the principal quantum number n to specify both the energy and angular momentum of a state. Thus, the ground state is $1s$, and the $n = 2$ state with $l = 1$ is the $2p$ state. (The lowercase letters $s, p, d, \dots$ are used in discussing individual electrons, while the corresponding capital letters denote orbital angular momentum states of an entire atom. For one-electron hydrogen, the two are the same.)

Quantization of orbital angular momentum is another nonclassical aspect of quantum mechanics. In classical physics, an electron of a given energy can have any angular momentum, up to the maximum of a circular orbit (Fig. 36.6). At high n , the number of l values is so large that we don't notice quantization—another manifestation of Bohr's correspondence principle. But for low n , the quantum-mechanical discreteness of both energy and angular momentum is clearly evident.

Space Quantization

Angular momentum is a vector, and the angular momentum vector is quantized not only in magnitude but also in direction—a phenomenon called **space quantization**. Space quantization of orbital angular momentum gives rise to a third quantum number, m_l . Space quantization becomes evident when an atom is in a magnetic field that establishes a preferred axis along which the angular momentum component can be measured; for this reason m_l is called the **orbital magnetic quantum number**.

Space quantization requires that the component L_z of orbital angular momentum along any chosen axis have only values given by

$$L_z = m_l \hbar \quad (\text{space quantization}) \quad (36.10)$$

L_z is the component of L along a chosen axis. m_l is the orbital magnetic quantum number ... whose values are integers ranging from $-l$ to l .

where m_l takes integer values from $-l$ to l . Thus an $l = 1$ state can have one of three possible m_l values: $-1, 0$, or $+1$, corresponding to angular momentum components $-\hbar, 0$, or $+\hbar$ along some axis. Since the magnitude of the angular momentum in an $l = 1$ state is $\sqrt{2}\hbar$ (see Example 36.2), none of these values corresponds to full alignment with the axis. Instead, we can think geometrically of the angular momentum vectors as being constrained to lie at angles $\cos^{-1}(L_z/L)$ to the axis; for $l = 1$ these angles are $\pm 45^\circ$ and 90° (Fig. 36.7). Although the angle is useful for diagramming the angular momentum vector, we emphasize that the quantum numbers l and m_l tell everything there is to know about quantized orbital angular momentum. Quantum physicists, therefore, aren't usually concerned with the orientation of angular momentum vectors.

36.2 Electron Spin

LO 36.2 Describe electron spin and spin-orbit coupling.

Detailed observation of the hydrogen spectrum shows that spectral lines exhibit a fine splitting; where a lower-resolution spectrum shows one spectral line, at higher resolution there appears a closely spaced pair of lines. This splitting could not be explained using the three

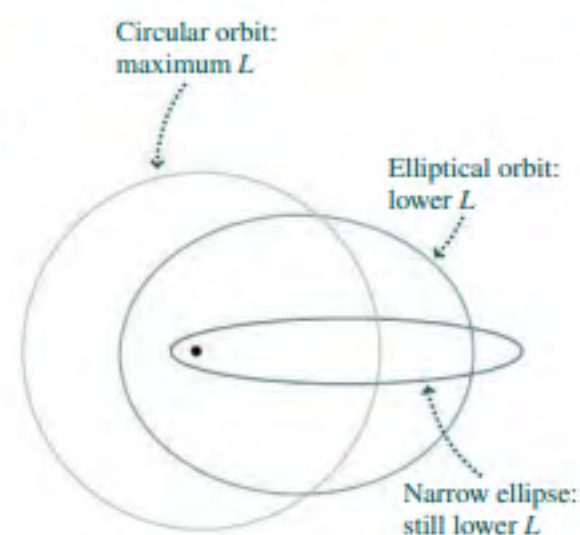


FIGURE 36.6 Classical electron orbits with the same energy but different angular momenta.

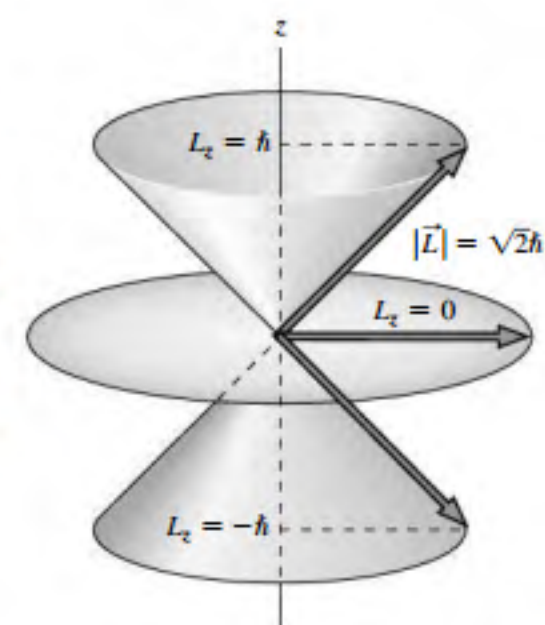


FIGURE 36.7 The three possible orientations for the angular momentum vector in the $l = 1$ state, where $L = \sqrt{2}\hbar$. Only the z -component is fixed; the x - and y -components are uncertain.

quantum numbers n , l , and m_l . In 1925 the Austrian physicist Wolfgang Pauli suggested that a fourth quantum number, capable of taking only two values, might be needed. Soon Samuel Goudsmit and George Uhlenbeck realized that the spectral splitting could be explained if this fourth quantum number were associated with an intrinsic angular momentum, or **spin**, carried by the electron. Later, as we indicated in Chapter 35, Paul Dirac showed that electron spin follows from the requirement of relativistic invariance. Spin is an inherently quantum-mechanical property with no classical analog. Although it can be visualized crudely by imagining the electron to be a small sphere spinning about an axis, this classical picture is really inappropriate.

Spin angular momentum is quantized similarly to orbital angular momentum. But unlike the orbital quantum number l that takes a range of integer values, the electron spin quantum number s has only the single value $s = \frac{1}{2}$. The electron is therefore a **spin- $\frac{1}{2}$** particle. The magnitude of the spin angular momentum is related to the spin quantum number in the same way that the magnitude of orbital angular momentum is related to the orbital quantum number l :

S is the magnitude of the spin angular momentum. s is the spin quantum number.

$$S = \sqrt{s(s+1)}\hbar \quad (\text{quantization of spin angular momentum}) \quad (36.11)$$

Since s takes only the value $\frac{1}{2}$, the magnitude of the electron spin angular momentum is $S = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\hbar$.

Spin angular momentum also exhibits space quantization. That is, the component of spin along a chosen axis takes only the values

$$S_z = m_s \hbar \quad (36.12)$$

where, for a spin- $\frac{1}{2}$ particle, the quantum number m_s has the two possible values $-\frac{1}{2}$ and $+\frac{1}{2}$. Figure 36.8 shows space quantization of electron spin.

Other particles exhibit spin. The proton, for example, also has spin $\frac{1}{2}$. Composite particles like atomic nuclei often have higher spin values. They can be integer or half integer—which, as you'll see in the next section, results in profound differences in their behavior. Either way, though, Equations 36.11 and 36.12 apply to these particles.

Magnetic Moment of the Electron

Together, the electron's spin and electric charge mean the electron behaves like a miniature current loop, with an intrinsic magnetic dipole moment. The dipole moment vector $\vec{M}$ associated with the spin angular momentum vector $\vec{S}$ is given by

$$\vec{M} = -\frac{e}{m}\vec{S} \quad (36.13)$$

with e/m the electron's charge-to-mass ratio (see Problem 73). Since the component of $\vec{S}$ on any axis can take only the values $\pm\frac{1}{2}\hbar$, the components of the magnetic moment can be only

$$M_z = \pm \frac{e\hbar}{2m} \quad (36.14)$$

The quantity $\mu_B = e\hbar/2m$ is a fundamental unit for measuring magnetic moments. It's called the **Bohr magneton**, and its value is approximately $9.27 \times 10^{-24} \text{ A}\cdot\text{m}^2$.

The ratio of magnetic moment to spin angular momentum is twice what we would expect classically for a charged particle in circular motion. Like spin itself, the factor of 2 is a relativistic effect first explained by Dirac. Actually, the factor is not quite 2 but approximately 2.00232, a result that follows from the theory of quantum electrodynamics.

The Stern–Gerlach Experiment

In 1922, Otto Stern and Walther Gerlach at the University of Hamburg demonstrated the quantization of atomic angular momentum vectors. The **Stern–Gerlach experiment** used a nonuniform magnetic field to separate a beam of silver atoms according to the component of their angular momentum along the field direction. A 1927 version used hydrogen atoms in the ground state. Because this state has zero orbital angular momentum, the only angular momentum effects are due to electron spin. Classically a beam of hydrogen

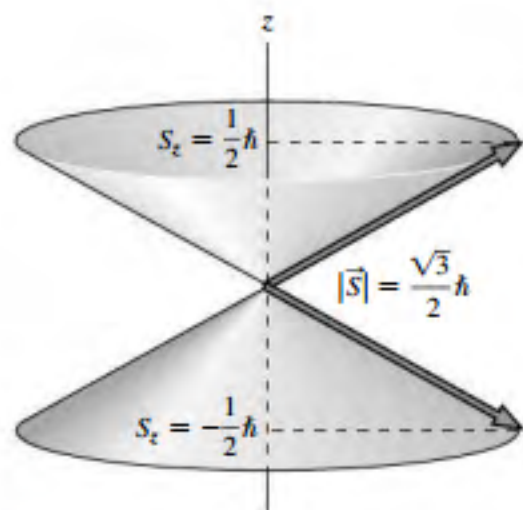


FIGURE 36.8 Space quantization of electron spin.

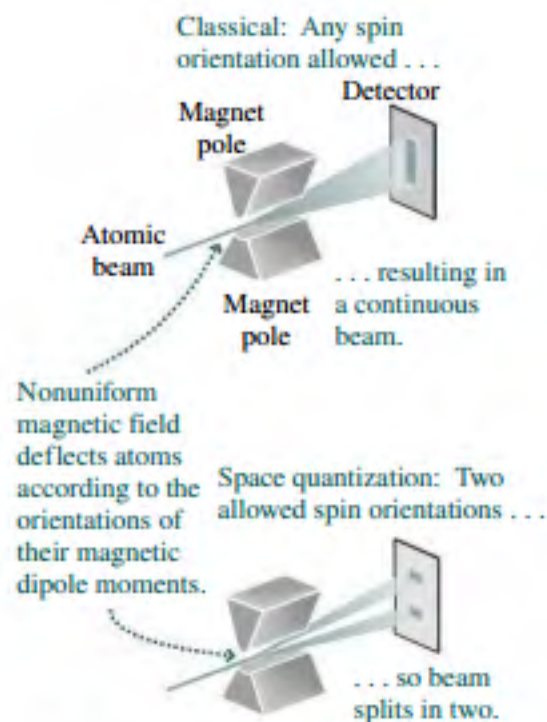


FIGURE 36.9 The Stern–Gerlach experiment.

should be spread into a continuous band corresponding to angular momentum components from $-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\hbar$ to $+\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\hbar$. But in fact the beam always splits in two, corresponding to the two angular momentum components $\pm\frac{1}{2}\hbar$. Figure 36.9 shows the experiment.

GOT IT?

36.2 The nucleus of oxygen-17 has spin $\frac{5}{2}$. How many possible orientations are there for its spin angular momentum vector? (a) 2; (b) 5; (c) 6; (d) 7; (e) 17

Total Angular Momentum and Spin-Orbit Coupling

Orbital and spin angular momenta combine through the process of **spin-orbit coupling** to give an atom's total angular momentum, $\vec{J}$:

$$\vec{J} = \vec{L} + \vec{S} \quad (36.15)$$

The magnitude J is quantized similarly to orbital and spin angular momenta:

J is the magnitude of the total angular momentum.

j is the associated quantum number.

$$J = \sqrt{j(j+1)}\hbar \quad (\text{quantization of total angular momentum}) \quad (36.16)$$

For an atom with a single electron, the quantum number j takes the values

$$j = l \pm \frac{1}{2} \quad \text{for } l \neq 0 \quad (36.17a)$$

$$j = \frac{1}{2} \quad \text{for } l = 0 \quad (36.17b)$$

The state of an atom with total angular momentum J is specified by the principal quantum number, the capital letter designating the orbital angular momentum ($S, P, D, F, G, \dots$), and, as a subscript, the j value. Thus a hydrogen atom with $n = 3, l = 2$, and $j = \frac{3}{2}$ is designated $3D_{3/2}$.

Total angular momentum also exhibits space quantization, with the component of $\vec{J}$ on some axis given by

$$J_z = m_j \hbar \quad (36.18)$$

Here the quantum number m_j takes the values $(-j, -j+1, \dots, j-1, j)$.

Derivation of these so-called **angular momentum coupling rules** is not easy, but we can understand them in terms of simple vector diagrams like those shown in Fig. 36.10.

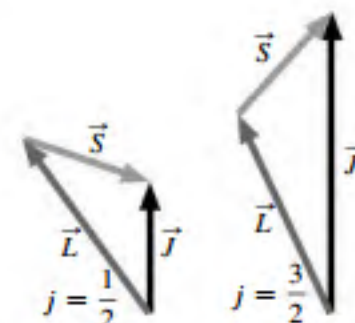


FIGURE 36.10 Spin-orbit coupling with $l = 1$, for which Equation 36.17a gives $j = \frac{1}{2}$ or $j = \frac{3}{2}$.

EXAMPLE 36.3 Spin-Orbit Coupling: Finding the Angular Momentum

(a) Find the possible magnitudes for the total angular momentum of hydrogen in the $l = 2$ state. (b) For each possible J , how many values are there for the component of $\vec{J}$ on a given axis?

INTERPRET We're asked about total angular momentum, which results from spin and orbital angular momentum contributions as shown in Fig. 36.10, and about the space quantization of $\vec{J}$.

DEVELOP (a) Equations 36.16, $J = \sqrt{j(j+1)}\hbar$, and 36.17a, $j = l \pm \frac{1}{2}$, determine J . With $l = 2$, our plan is to use Equation 36.17a to find the possible j values. Then we can apply Equation 36.16 to get each corresponding J . (b) Equation 36.18, $J_z = m_j \hbar$, determines the J_z values in terms of m_j , which ranges from $-j$ to j . So once we have the j 's, we can determine the number of J_z values.

EVALUATE (a) With $l = 2$, Equation 36.17a gives $j = \frac{3}{2}$ or $j = \frac{5}{2}$. For $j = \frac{3}{2}$, Equation 36.16 yields $J = \sqrt{\frac{3}{2}(\frac{3}{2}+1)}\hbar = \frac{\sqrt{15}}{2}\hbar$; similarly, $j = \frac{5}{2}$ gives $J = \frac{\sqrt{35}}{2}\hbar$. (b) For $j = \frac{3}{2}$ there are four possible m_j values from $-j$ to j : $-\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}$, and correspondingly four J_z values,

given by Equation 36.18: $-\frac{3}{2}\hbar, -\frac{1}{2}\hbar, \frac{1}{2}\hbar, \frac{3}{2}\hbar$. Similar counting gives six values for $j = \frac{5}{2}$.

ASSESS Figure 36.11 shows how the spin and orbit angular momenta combine to give the two possible j values in this example.

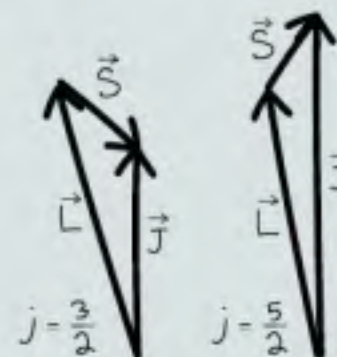


FIGURE 36.11 Vector diagrams for spin-orbit coupling with $l = 2$ (Example 36.3).

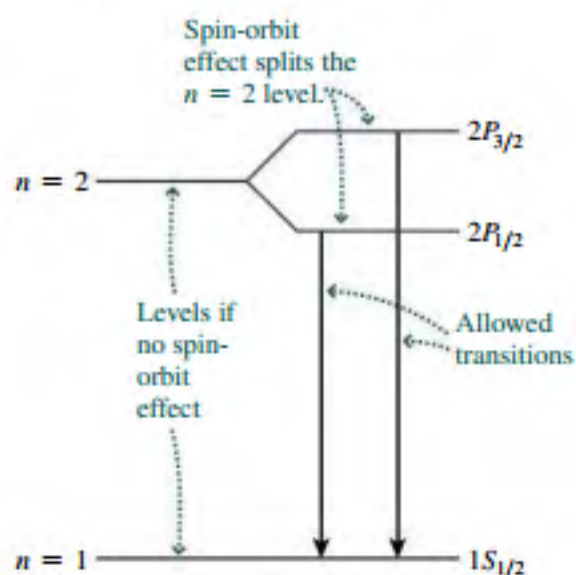


FIGURE 36.12 Energy-level diagram showing spin-orbit splitting of the $2P$ levels in hydrogen. Diagram is not to scale; the spacing between the $2P_{1/2}$ and $2P_{3/2}$ levels is actually about five millionths that of the $n = 1$ and $n = 2$ levels.

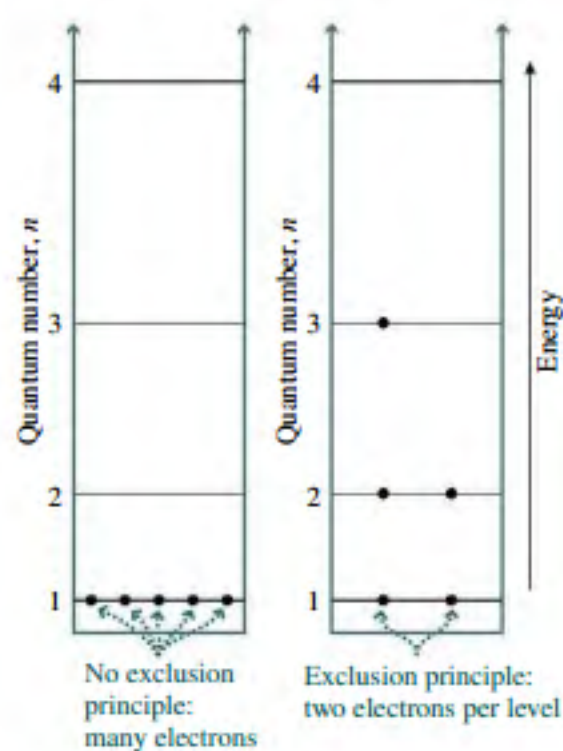


FIGURE 36.13 Particles in a square well, showing the exclusion principle's effect on electron distribution.

The two j values for a given l correspond to two distinct quantum states, and these have slightly different energies. This energy difference is associated with the orientation of the electron's magnetic moment in a magnetic field that, in the electron's reference frame, results from the apparent motion of the positively charged nucleus around the electron—a field whose direction is that of the electron's orbital angular momentum $\vec{L}$. As Equation 36.13 shows, the electron's negative charge means its spin $\vec{S}$ and magnetic moment $\vec{M}$ have opposite directions. Because a magnetic dipole has the highest energy when it's oriented opposite the magnetic field, this means that the more nearly parallel alignment of $\vec{S}$ and $\vec{L}$ —corresponding to $j = l + \frac{1}{2}$ —has the higher energy.

In hydrogen, the magnitude of the energy difference between the $j = \frac{1}{2}$ and $j = \frac{3}{2}$ states of the first excited level is only 5×10^{-5} eV, far smaller than the 10.2-eV separation between this level and the ground state. Because the $n = 2, l = 1$ state is actually two states of slightly different energy, hydrogen atoms undergoing transitions from these states to the ground state emit two spectral lines slightly separated in wavelength. The term **fine structure** describes this and related spectral-line splittings. In the present example, the split spectral line is called a **doublet**. Figure 36.12 is an energy-level diagram showing the effect of spin-orbit splitting in hydrogen. Relativistic and other small corrections further alter the fine structure of hydrogen's spectrum.

The spin-orbit effect results from a magnetic field internal to the atom itself. But splitting of energy levels also occurs in an external magnetic field and is called the **Zeeman effect**. We showed an example of Zeeman splitting in Fig. 35.18.

Since it has zero orbital angular momentum, the ground state does not exhibit spin-orbit splitting. But interaction of the electron's magnetic moment with the nuclear magnetic dipole results in an even finer splitting known as **hyperfine structure**. The transition between the two hyperfine levels of the hydrogen ground state—corresponding physically to a change in the orientation of the electron spin vector—involves a photon of 21-cm wavelength. Radio astronomers use the 21-cm hydrogen radiation to map interstellar hydrogen in the cosmos.

36.3 The Exclusion Principle

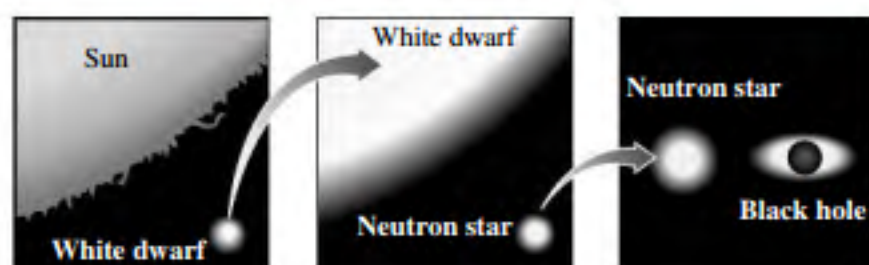
LO 36.3 Describe the Pauli exclusion principle.

In trying to understand why atomic electrons distributed themselves as they did, Pauli in 1924 developed his **exclusion principle**, which, loosely, states that **two electrons cannot be in the same quantum state**. Since an electron's quantum state includes its spin orientation specified by m_s , the exclusion principle means that at most two electrons can occupy a state whose other quantum numbers n , l , and m_l are the same.

The Pauli exclusion principle has profound implications for multielectron systems, requiring that most electrons remain in high-energy states (Fig. 36.13). If the exclusion principle didn't hold, atomic electrons would collapse to the ground state and there would be no such thing as chemistry or life! The exclusion principle even manifests itself at the cosmic scale, as the Application shows.

APPLICATION

White Dwarfs and Neutron Stars



When a star exhausts its nuclear fuel, it collapses because there's no longer pressure to counter gravity. For a star with more than several times the Sun's mass, there's no force strong enough to halt the collapse, and the star becomes

a black hole. But in less massive stars the collapse eventually halts because of a quantum-mechanical pressure associated with the exclusion principle.

When the Sun collapses some 5 billion years from now, its electrons will drop into the lowest available energy states. But as with the square well in Fig. 36.13, the exclusion principle requires that most of the Sun's 10^{57} electrons will end up in high-energy states. The associated **degenerate electron pressure**—independent of temperature, unlike the pressure of an ordinary gas—will stabilize the Sun as a **white dwarf**, about the size of Earth. For stars more massive than about 1.4 Sun masses, collapse proceeds until the protons and electrons merge to form neutrons. The neutrons, too, develop a degenerate pressure that stabilizes the resulting **neutron star**—an object with a mass exceeding the Sun's crammed into a 20-km sphere! The figure compares the sizes of these stellar endpoints.

The Pauli exclusion was fundamental to the developing quantum mechanics of the late 1920s. But it wasn't until the late 1930s that Pauli finally showed that the exclusion principle, like spin, is ultimately grounded in the requirement of relativistic invariance. Pauli found that particles whose spin quantum number s is a half-integer (collectively called **fermions**) must necessarily obey the exclusion principle. On the other hand, particles with integer spin (called **bosons**) *do not* obey the exclusion principle. Photons, for example, are spin-1 particles, and therefore an arbitrarily large number of them can occupy exactly the same quantum state. The laser, with its intense, coherent beam of light, is possible because the many photons that make up the beam are essentially all in the same state. In 1995 physicists at the University of Colorado first succeeded in producing an assemblage of bosonic matter all in the same quantum state (Fig. 36.14). This so-called **Bose–Einstein condensate** had been a goal of physicists since 1924, when the Indian physicist Satyendra Nath Bose first suggested the possibility. The Bose–Einstein condensate represents a truly new state of matter, in which thousands of atoms join quantum mechanically to behave as a single entity. Today physicists around the world and even on the International Space Station are experimenting with Bose–Einstein condensates, probing the fundamentals of quantum physics and developing applications including atom-beam analogs of the optical laser.



FIGURE 36.14 Velocity distribution of atoms in a Bose–Einstein condensate shows a large peak at the near-zero velocity of atoms all in their common ground state. The three peaks show the evolution from a normal gas to the condensate.

GOT IT?

36.3 If you put seven electrons in a quantum harmonic oscillator potential (recall Fig. 35.10), what will the total energy of the system be? (a) $\frac{7}{2}\hbar\omega$; (b) $\frac{13}{2}\hbar\omega$; (c) $7\hbar\omega$; (d) $\frac{25}{2}\hbar\omega$

36.4 Multielectron Atoms and the Periodic Table

LO 36.4 Explain how the exclusion principle accounts for the periodic table of the elements.

Our modern understanding of the chemical elements developed in the 18th century when chemists first distinguished compounds from elements. A breakthrough in the systematic organization of the elements came in 1869, when the Russian chemist Dmitri Mendeleev placed the approximately 60 then-known elements in a table. Mendeleev left blanks to maintain the periodic occurrence of elements with similar chemical properties. Elements filling the blanks were soon discovered, validating Mendeleev's periodic table and suggesting an underlying order in the composition of atoms. Then, early in the 20th century, studies of X-ray spectra led to a table organized by **atomic number** Z , the number of protons in the nucleus. The modern periodic table is shown in Fig. 36.15 and is printed with atomic weights inside the back cover.

Explaining the Periodic Table

The orderly arrangement of elements in the periodic table enhances our understanding of chemistry and our ability to formulate new and useful compounds. But why does nature exhibit this regularity? The answer lies in the Schrödinger equation and the exclusion principle.

Solution of the Schrödinger equation for multielectron atoms is complicated by the interactions among the electrons; analytic solutions like those for hydrogen aren't generally available. But qualitatively, we still find energy levels characterized by the principal quantum number n . Each such level is called a **shell**; for historical reasons, the shells $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ are also labeled with the letters $K, L, M, \dots$. As with hydrogen, an electron at the n th energy level can have any of the n values $l = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$ for the orbital quantum number. The different angular momentum states within a shell are termed **subshells**; subshells with the values $l = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$ are labeled with the letters $s, p, d, f, \dots$. Finally, for each subshell there are $2l + 1$ possible values of the magnetic orbital quantum number m_l , ranging from $-l$ to l . A state characterized by all three quantum numbers n, l , and m_l is called an **orbital**. Table 36.1 summarizes shell-structure notation; for completeness, the table also lists the spin quantum number m_s .

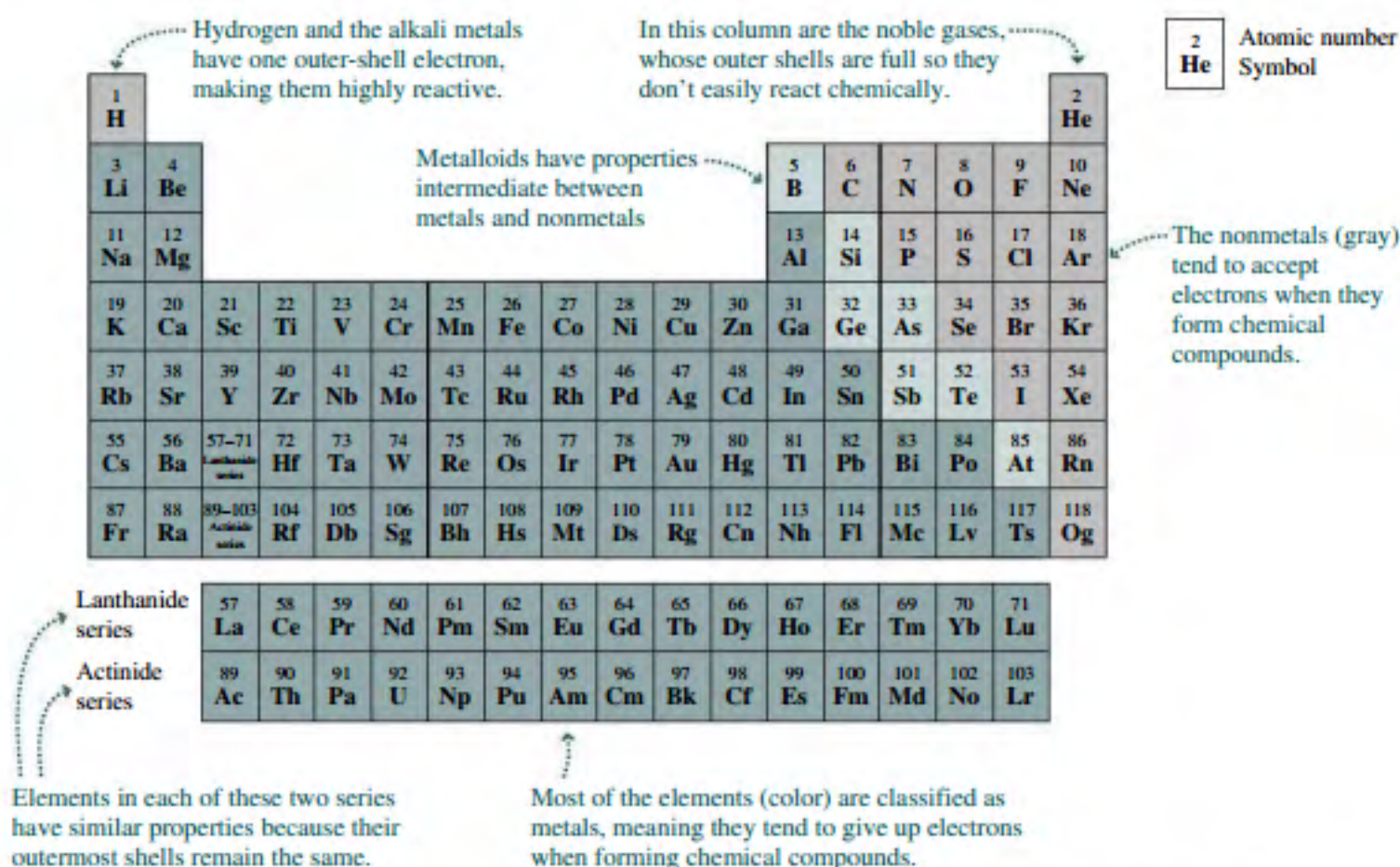


FIGURE 36.15 The periodic table. A larger version, with atomic weights, is inside the back cover; the names of the elements are in Appendix D.

The structure of a multielectron atom is determined by the quantum states of its constituent electrons—their distribution among the shells, subshells, and orbitals. According to the exclusion principle, no two electrons can be in exactly the same quantum state; that is, they can't have the same values for all four quantum numbers n , l , m_l , and m_s . Since an atomic orbital is characterized by the three quantum numbers n , l , and m_l , the exclusion principle implies that at most two electrons can occupy a single orbital.

We're now ready to understand the ground-state electronic structure of multielectron atoms. The simplest is helium (He), with two electrons. The K shell ($n = 1$) is the lowest possible energy level. As Table 36.1 shows, only the zero-angular-momentum s subshell is permitted within the K shell, and within that subshell there's only the single orbital corresponding to $m_l = 0$. But that orbital can accommodate two electrons. So in the ground state of helium, both electrons occupy the s subshell of the K shell. We describe this with the notation $1s^2$, where 1 stands for the principal quantum number n , s for the subshell, and the superscript 2 for the number of electrons in that subshell. The corresponding notation for hydrogen is $1s^1$.

After helium comes lithium (Li), with three electrons. From our analysis of helium, we know that the K shell is full with two electrons. So the third electron goes into the L shell, or $n = 2$ energy level. Of the subshells in the L shell, the s subshell turns out to have slightly lower energy than the others, so the third electron occupies the s subshell. Then the electronic configuration of lithium is $1s^2 2s^1$ —that is, a helium-like core with a single outer electron in the s subshell of the $n = 2$ level.

Beryllium (Be), with four electrons, fills the $1s$ and $2s$ subshells; its designation is $1s^2 2s^2$. The fifth electron of boron (B) then goes into the $2p$ subshell, giving the structure

Table 36.1 Atomic Shell Structure

Quantum Number	Shell Notation	Allowed Values	Letter Labels	Number of States
n	Shell	1, 2, 3, ...	$K, L, M, \dots$	Infinite
l	Subshell	0, 1, 2, ..., $n - 1$	$s, p, d, f, \dots$	n
m_l	Orbital	$-l, -l + 1, \dots, l - 1, l$	—	$2l + 1$
m_s	—	$-\frac{1}{2}, +\frac{1}{2}$	—	2

$1s^2 2s^2 2p^1$. Table 36.1 shows that a p subshell ($l = 1$) allows three m_l values—that is, three orbitals, capable of holding a total of six electrons. As we advance in atomic number, electrons continue to fill the p subshell. Finally, at neon ($Z = 10$), the $2p$ subshell is full. Only with the next element, sodium ($Z = 11$), does the $n = 3$ shell begin to fill. Table 36.2 lists electronic configurations for the elements hydrogen ($Z = 1$) through argon ($Z = 18$), along with their ionization energies (the energy required to remove the outermost electron).

Table 36.2 Electronic Configurations and Ionization Energies of Elements 1–18

Atomic Number, z	Element	Electronic Configuration	Ionization Energy (eV)
1	H	$1s^1$	13.60
2	He	$1s^2$	24.60
3	Li	$1s^2 2s^1$	5.390
4	Be	$1s^2 2s^2$	9.320
5	B	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^1$	8.296
6	C	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$	11.26
7	N	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$	14.55
8	O	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$	13.61
9	F	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$	17.42
10	Ne	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$	21.56
11	Na	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$	5.138
12	Mg	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2$	7.644
13	Al	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^1$	5.984
14	Si	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^2$	8.149
15	P	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^3$	10.48
16	S	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^4$	10.36
17	Cl	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^5$	13.01
18	Ar	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6$	15.76

Gaps mark ends of periodic-table rows.

An atom's chemical behavior is determined primarily by its outermost electrons, because they're less strongly bound and interact more readily with other atoms. Table 36.2 shows that the outer-electron configurations for lithium through neon (Ne) are the same as the corresponding configurations for sodium (Na) through argon (Ar). The chemical properties of the corresponding atoms are therefore similar. Both lithium and sodium, for example, have a single electron in their outermost shell. As their relatively low ionization energies suggest, this electron is loosely bound, so it readily interacts with other atoms, giving these elements their extreme reactivity. Neon and argon, in contrast, both have completely filled outermost shells. The corresponding ionization energy is high, and there's little tendency for these outer electrons to interact with other atoms. As a result, argon and neon don't readily form chemical compounds, and at normal temperatures they're gases (collectively, elements in the periodic-table column containing argon and neon are called *noble gases*). Other element pairs also share similar properties. Fluorine and chlorine, for instance, each need only one more electron to achieve the energetically favorable noble-gas configuration. Consequently these elements readily accept electrons. Materials such as common salt, NaCl, owe their high melting points to the strong bond that results when reactive sodium gives up its outer electron to electron-accepting chlorine, and the resulting positive and negative ions bind strongly by the electrostatic force. We'll consider molecular bonding in the next chapter.

Beyond argon ($Z = 18$), shielding effects of the inner electrons result in the $4s$ states having lower energy than the $3d$ states. Potassium ($Z = 19$) thus has the electronic configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^1$ rather than $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 3d^1$. After potassium comes calcium, with two electrons in its single $4s$ orbital. But the $4p$ orbitals do have higher energy than the $3d$, so elements beyond calcium begin filling the $3d$ orbitals. The next ten elements, scandium through zinc, have chemical properties that vary only slightly because their two outermost electrons remain $4s$ electrons; collectively, they're **transition elements**. (Chromium, $Z = 24$, and copper, $Z = 29$, are minor exceptions; in these an extra electron goes into the $3d$ orbitals, leaving only one $4s$ electron.) Finally, elements 31 (gallium) through 36 (krypton) repeat the pattern of aluminum through argon shown in Table 36.2, as their $4p$ orbitals fill with electrons. Krypton, with its outer p subshell full, is again a noble gas.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 36.1 The Periodic Table

Explain the general structure of the periodic table's first five rows.

EVALUATE Each row of the periodic table starts with an element whose outermost shell contains a single s electron; these elements include hydrogen and the highly reactive alkali metals. Each row ends with a noble gas, its outermost p subshell full. The first row involves filling the $1s$ orbital only; since this orbital holds at most two electrons, there are only two elements in the first row. The second row has eight elements, associated with the filling of the $2s$ and $2p$ orbitals, as shown in Table 36.2. The third row is like the second, but with the $3s$ and $3p$ orbitals filling. Because the $4s$ orbitals have lower energy than the $3d$ orbitals, the third row ends with a noble gas whose $3p$ orbitals are full, and the fourth row begins as the $4s$ orbital begins to fill. Then come the elements $Z = 21$ through $Z = 30$, in which the $3d$ orbitals are filling; these make for 10 additional elements in the fourth row.

The fifth row is a repeat of the fourth, as first the $5s$ orbitals fill, then the higher-energy $4d$ orbitals, then the remaining $5p$ orbitals.

ASSESS Our explanation shows why elements in each column of the periodic table have similar chemical properties, while those properties generally change as we move across the table's rows.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Determine the electronic configuration of iron.

EVALUATE $Z = 26$ for iron, so we need to accommodate eight more electrons outside iron's argon-like core. Since iron is a transition element, its $4s$ orbitals fill before $3d$. So two electrons go into $4s$ and the remaining six into $3d$. Iron's electronic configuration is therefore $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 3d^6 4s^2$.

The sixth and seventh rows don't quite fit our analysis in Conceptual Example 36.1. At element 57, lanthanum, the $4f$ orbitals begin filling while the outermost electron remains $6s$. This continues through element 71, lutetium, giving elements 57–71 similar chemical properties. These elements constitute the **lanthanide series**, and they're printed separately below the main table. Row seven repeats this pattern, with the **actinide series**. Seventh-row elements beyond uranium (element 92) are radioactive with half-lives that are short compared to Earth's age. They're not found naturally but are produced in particle accelerators, fission reactors, and nuclear explosions. Elements beyond the actinides are very short-lived, although theory suggests that there may be an "island of stability" encompassing more massive nuclei than those yet produced; their lifetimes might range from minutes to possibly as much as millions of years. You'll learn more about nuclear lifetimes in Chapter 38.

Note the crucial role the exclusion principle plays in our discussion of the chemical elements. Without that principle, every atom in its ground state would have all its electrons in the $1s$ orbital. There would be no qualitative distinction among the elements, and the science of chemistry would not exist. Nor would there be any chemists or physicists, as life itself would be impossible without the rich diversity of chemical compounds formed from the different elements.

GOT IT?

36.4 What's the final term in the electron configuration for xenon (Xe)? Answer without working out the entire configuration. (a) $4p^6$; (b) $5p^6$; (c) $5p^5$; (d) $5p^7$; (e) $6s^1$

36.5 Transitions and Atomic Spectra

LO 36.5 Relate the spectra of elements to their atomic structure and energy levels.

LO 36.6 Describe spontaneous and stimulated transitions and explain how they account for the operation of lasers.

Emission and absorption of photons with specific energies provide the most direct manifestation of quantized atomic-energy levels, and give rise to the spectral lines that permit precise analysis of atomic systems from the laboratory to distant astrophysical objects. Even simple hydrogen exhibits myriad quantum states. In multielectron atoms, the possibilities for electronic excitation are even more numerous. The spectra of atoms reflect this rich array of available quantum states.

Selection Rules

Not all energy-level transitions are equally likely. So-called **selection rules** determine which are **allowed transitions**—those most likely to occur. One rule limits allowed transitions to those for which the orbital quantum number l changes by $\Delta l = \pm 1$; this and other selection rules are related to the conservation of angular momentum. Quantum mechanics also provides a way of calculating transition probabilities, and from them the mean lifetimes of excited states. For outer electrons, excited states that de-excite by allowed transitions have typical lifetimes on the order of 10^{-9} s.

Transitions that are not allowed by selection rules are called **forbidden transitions**. Most are not strictly impossible but just extremely unlikely. States that can lose energy only by forbidden transitions are **metastable states**, and their lifetimes are many orders of magnitude longer than the nanosecond timescale for allowed transitions. “Glow in the dark” phosphorescent materials emit light through the slow de-excitation of metastable states. Forbidden spectral lines are valuable probes of low-density astrophysical gases in which collisions are rare, and atoms can therefore remain in metastable states.

Optical Spectra

Spectral lines in or near the visible involve transitions among the incompletely filled outer atomic shells. The alkali metals, with a single outer s electron, therefore produce spectra qualitatively similar to that of hydrogen. However, the more complicated structure of a multielectron atom shifts some energy levels (Fig. 36.16). Many of the transitions in Fig. 36.16 are actually doublets or triplets resulting from spin-orbit splitting (Fig. 36.17). The energy-level structure is even more complicated for atoms with more than one outer-shell electron.

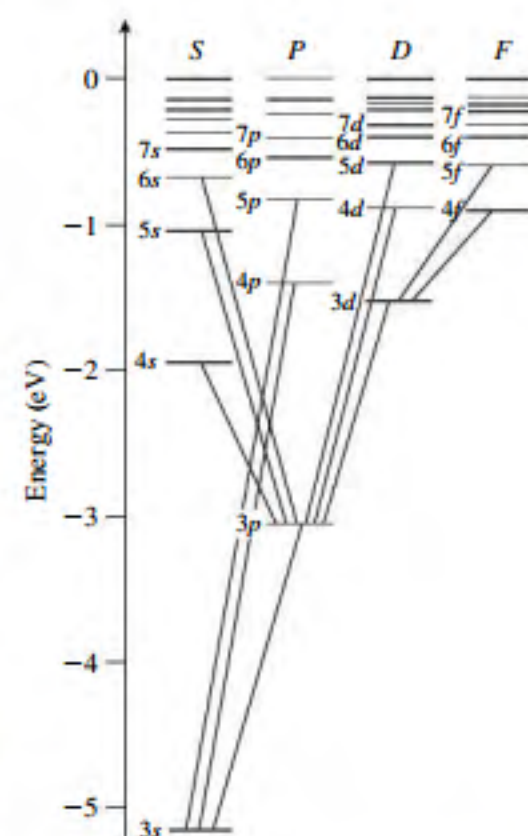


FIGURE 36.16 Energy-level diagram for sodium, neglecting spin-orbit splitting. Note the widely separated $4s$ and $4p$ levels, with $3d$ between them; this explains why the $4s$ orbital fills before $3d$. Lines connecting levels show allowed transitions.

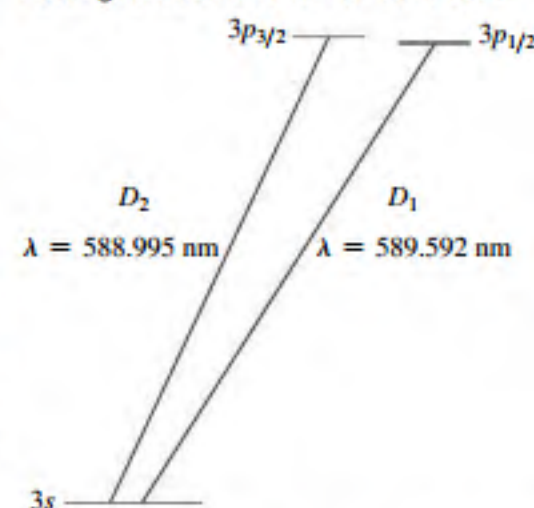


FIGURE 36.17 Magnified portion of sodium's energy-level diagram, showing spin-orbit splitting of the $3p$ level. Transitions from the two states result in the slightly different wavelengths of the sodium D doublet.

GOT IT?

36.5 Which of the transitions shown in Fig. 36.16 results in a photon of the shortest wavelength?

EXAMPLE 36.4

Atomic Spectra: The Sodium Doublet

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Use Fig. 36.17 to determine the energy difference between the $3p$ states of sodium.

INTERPRET We're asked about the energy difference between two atomic states ($3p_{1/2}$ and $3p_{3/2}$), and we're given the wavelengths of photons emitted in transitions from those states to a common end state ($3s$). We know that those photons carry off energy equal to the difference between the energies of the starting and ending states.

DEVELOP The quantization condition $E = hf$ relates photon energy and frequency; since $f\lambda = c$, we also have $E = hc/\lambda$. Our plan is to use this

expression to find the energies of the two transitions shown in Fig. 36.17, and then subtract to get the energy difference between the $3p$ levels.

EVALUATE We have

$$\Delta E_{3p} = \frac{hc}{588.995 \text{ nm}} - \frac{hc}{589.592 \text{ nm}} = 3.42 \times 10^{-22} \text{ J}.$$

ASSESS Our answer is about 2 meV, much lower than the eV-range energies associated with optical transitions themselves. That's expected, given the small separation between the $3p$ states evident in Fig. 36.17. In sodium, states below $3s$ are all full, so $3s$ is the lowest end state for optical transitions.

Spontaneous and Stimulated Transitions

What makes an electron jump between energy levels? In an upward transition, the electron must absorb the appropriate amount of energy. Generally, that energy is supplied by a photon whose energy is equal to the energy difference between the two levels; the process is called **stimulated absorption** (Fig. 36.18a). (Upward transitions can result from other processes as well, such as an energetic collision between two atoms or the interaction of a free electron with atomic electrons.)

For most downward transitions, however, there's no specific cause. An electron spontaneously jumps from a higher to a lower energy level and a photon is emitted; this is **spontaneous emission** (Fig. 36.18b). Although an individual spontaneous emission is a random event, quantum mechanics gives the probability per unit time for that event to occur; the inverse of that probability is the mean lifetime of the excited state.

In 1917 Einstein recognized a third possibility: Excited atoms can be stimulated to drop into lower energy states by the mere presence of a photon, again of energy appropriate to the transition. A second photon is emitted in the process, with the same energy and phase as the stimulating photon, and in the same direction. This process, **stimulated emission**, is the reverse of stimulated absorption (Fig. 36.18c).

Spontaneous emission, stimulated absorption, and stimulated emission play major roles in the transfer of radiation through gases. And stimulated emission is essential to the operation of lasers.

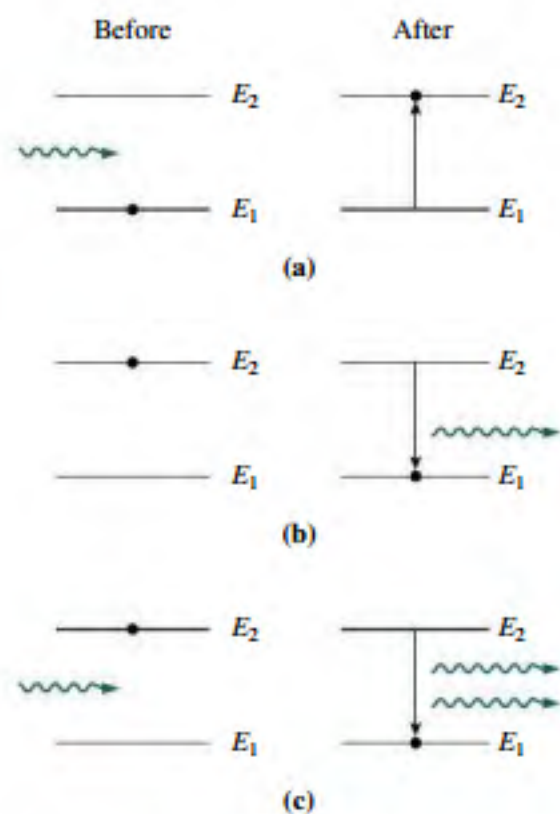
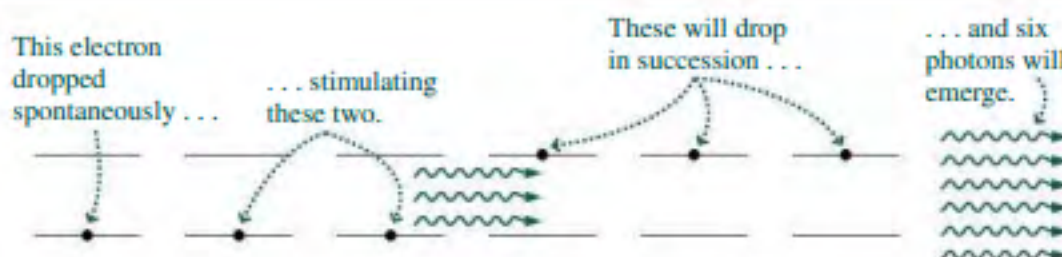


FIGURE 36.18 Interaction of photons with atomic electrons. Horizontal lines denote two atomic energy levels, and the wave is a photon with energy equal to the difference between the two levels. (a) Stimulated absorption; (b) spontaneous emission; (c) stimulated emission.

APPLICATION Lasers



As Fig. 36.18c suggests, stimulated emission is a way to multiply photons with identical wavelength and phase. The **laser**, whose name derives from **light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation**, exploits this effect to produce an intense beam of coherent light. The key to laser action is a **population inversion**, where many atoms are in an excited state. The excited state is usually metastable, to prevent spontaneous emission from de-exciting the atoms. Atoms are first excited to a higher state from which they quickly drop by spontaneous emission to the metastable state, where they're "stuck" by the lack of allowed transitions downward. The excitation process is called **pumping**, and the excitation energy source is the **pump**. Laser pumps include flash lamps, sunlight, other lasers, electric currents, chemical reactions, and even nuclear explosions.

With a large number of excited atoms, it isn't long before one randomly de-excites even from the metastable state. It emits a photon that passes by other excited atoms, causing stimulated emission. That makes more photons and still more stimulated emission, as shown in the figure. The process snowballs, resulting in an intense beam of photons with the same wavelength and phase. In a laser, the radiating medium sits in a cavity with mirrors at the ends; as the photons reflect off the mirrors and traverse the medium, more and more stimulated emission results, building up the beam intensity. One mirror is only partially reflective to allow the laser beam to emerge. Some lasers produce a short burst of radiation before being pumped to prepare for another burst. Others are pumped continuously, resulting in a continuous beam.

The first laser, built in 1960, used a ruby rod as the lasing medium, surrounded by a coiled flash lamp for the pump. Since then myriad laser types have been developed. Almost anything can be used as the lasing medium, provided a population inversion is possible. Laser media include gases, solids, liquids, semiconductors, and ionized plasmas. Natural laser action occurs even in interstellar gas clouds. Some lasers, especially those using chemical dyes or temperature-sensitive semiconductors, are tunable over a range of wavelengths.

Laser light is monochromatic, since all photons have essentially the same energy. It's coherent because the photons all have the same phase. Coherence allows the beam to travel long distances with minimal spreading and enables very precise focusing. Finally, laser light can be made extremely intense, since stimulated emission extracts energy from many atoms simultaneously. Since photons are spin-1 particles that don't obey the exclusion principle, there's no limit to the number of photons in a laser beam. Small lasers like those used in laser pointers have power outputs in the sub-milliwatt range, while the most powerful continuous lasers exceed 1 MW. Pulsed lasers, in contrast, have produced outputs as great as 1 PW—1000 times the output of all the world's electric generating plants—but only with very brief pulses.

Today lasers are ubiquitous. They're used in commonplace applications like bar-code scanners and CD/DVD drives. Medical lasers correct vision (Application, "Laser Vision Correction," Chapter 31), whiten teeth, and perform bloodless surgery. Biologists use laser beams as "optical tweezers" to manipulate microscopic structures within cells. Lasers have replaced older technologies in surveying, leveling, and measuring instruments. Industrial lasers cut metal, shape gears, and harden surfaces. Semiconductor lasers drive the optical fibers that carry communications signals and Internet traffic. Military lasers lock on targets for precise weapons guidance. Ultrafast lasers probe chemical reactions that occur on femtosecond timescales (Application, "Femtosecond Photography of Chemical Reactions," Chapter 34). Lasers halt atoms' thermal motion, cooling materials to nanokelvin levels and enabling Bose-Einstein condensates. Laser beams reflected from the Moon measure its distance to within a few millimeters, testing Einstein's general relativity (Application, "Moon's Distance," Chapter 30). Holograms capture interfering laser wavefronts, creating three-dimensional images. Future laser applications may include laser-driven spaceflight and the use of lasers to clear space debris.

Chapter 36 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is that atomic electrons are quantum particles trapped in the three-dimensional potential well associated with the electric force. Solving the Schrödinger equation then leads to quantized energy levels. Considerations of electron spin and orbital angular momentum introduce subtle details into the atom's energy-level structure. The **exclusion principle** permits only one atomic electron per quantum state, and this fact underlies the shell structure of atoms and the periodic table of the elements.

Key Concepts and Equations

The **principal quantum number** n determines the energy levels in hydrogen:

$$E_n = -\frac{1}{n^2} \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma_0^2} = \frac{E_1}{n^2} = \frac{-13.6 \text{ eV}}{n^2}$$

For $n = 1$ the electron is most likely to be found one Bohr radius a_0 from the nucleus; in higher-energy states it's likely to be farther away.

The **orbital quantum number** l determines the angular momentum:

$$L = \sqrt{l(l+1)}\hbar$$

where l ranges from 0 to $n - 1$.

The **orbital magnetic quantum number** m_l determines the component of the angular momentum along any given axis:

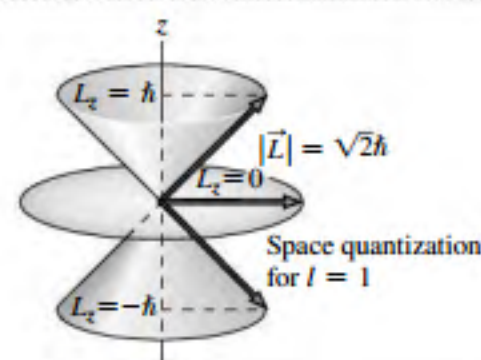
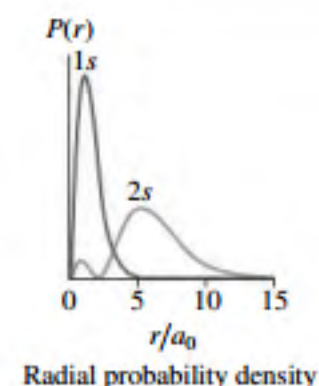
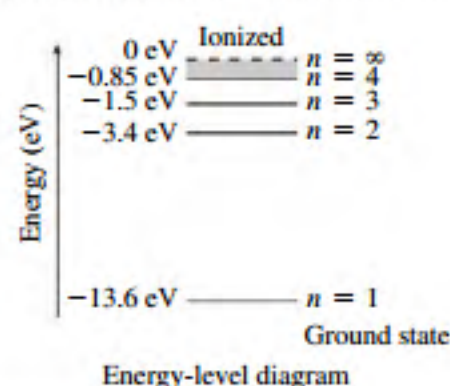
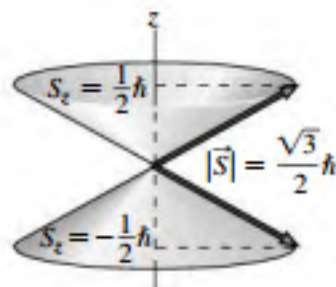
$$L_z = m_l \hbar$$

This is **space quantization**, where m_l ranges from $-l$ to l .

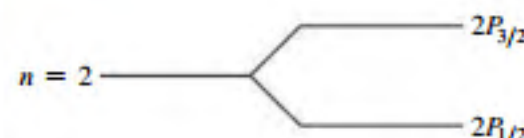
Electrons are **spin- $\frac{1}{2}$** particles or **fermions**; the component of their spin angular momentum on a given axis is $\pm \frac{1}{2}\hbar$.

Electron spin gives rise to the electron's intrinsic magnetic dipole moment, characterized by the **Bohr magneton**:

$$\mu_B = e\hbar/2m = 9.27 \times 10^{-24} \text{ A}\cdot\text{m}^2$$



Spin-orbit coupling results in **fine-structure** splitting of atomic-energy levels.



Spin angular momentum $\vec{S}$ and total angular momentum $\vec{J}$ obey quantization rules similar to those for orbital angular momentum.

Applications

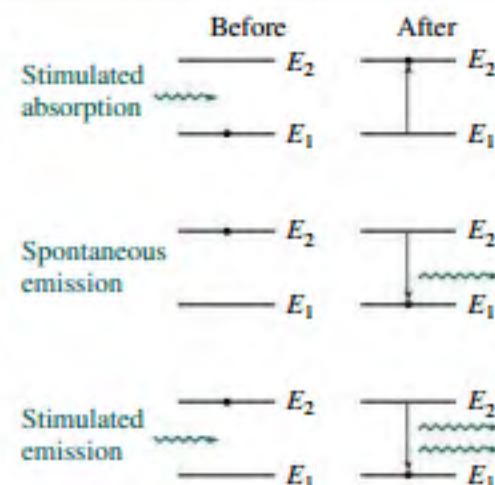
Bosons are particles with integer spin. They don't obey the exclusion principle, allowing many particles to be in the same state, as happens in a **Bose-Einstein condensate** or a laser beam.



Forming a Bose-Einstein condensate

In **stimulated absorption**, an electron absorbs a photon and jumps to a higher energy level.

Electrons in excited states can drop to lower energy states by either **spontaneous** or **stimulated emission**.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 36.1 Give a quantitative quantum-mechanical description of the hydrogen atom.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 36.1, 36.2, 36.3, 36.4, 36.5; Exercises 36.11, 36.12, 36.13, 36.14, 36.15; Problems 36.36, 36.37, 36.38, 36.39, 36.40, 36.41, 36.42, 36.43, 36.44, 36.45, 36.50, 36.53, 36.62, 36.63, 36.65, 36.66, 36.67, 36.71, 36.72</i></p> <p>LO 36.2 Describe electron spin and spin-orbit coupling.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 36.6, 36.7; Exercises 36.16, 36.17, 36.18, 36.19; Problems 36.52, 36.61, 36.73</i></p> <p>LO 36.3 Describe the Pauli exclusion principle.
 <i>Exercises 36.20, 36.21; Problems 36.46, 36.47, 36.48, 36.56, 36.57, 36.58, 36.59, 36.60</i></p> | <p>LO 36.4 Explain how the exclusion principle accounts for the periodic table of the elements.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Question 36.8; Exercises 36.22, 36.23, 36.24; Problems 36.49, 36.64</i></p> <p>LO 36.5 Relate the spectra of elements to their atomic structure and energy levels.
 <i>Problems 36.55, 36.69, 36.70, 36.75</i></p> <p>LO 36.6 Describe spontaneous and stimulated transitions and explain how they account for the operation of lasers.
 <i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 36.9, 36.10; Exercises 36.25, 36.26, 36.27; Problems 36.51, 36.54, 36.68, 36.74</i></p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- In a collision, a ground-state hydrogen atom gets excited to the $n = 3$ level. How many wavelengths of radiation will be emitted as the atom de-excites?
- A friend who hasn't studied physics asks you the size of a hydrogen atom. How do you answer?
- How many quantum numbers are required to specify fully the state of a hydrogen atom?
- Both the Bohr and Schrödinger theories predict the same ground-state energy for hydrogen. Do they agree about the angular momentum in the ground state? Explain.
- Is it possible for a hydrogen atom to be in the $2d$ state? Explain.
- Is it ever possible to find the electron of a hydrogen atom closer to the nucleus than the Bohr radius? Explain.
- Why is there no spin-orbit splitting in hydrogen's ground state?
- How does the exclusion principle explain the diversity of chemical elements?
- Why is stimulated emission essential for laser action?
- What distinguishes a Bose-Einstein condensate from ordinary matter?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 36.1 The Hydrogen Atom

- A group of hydrogen atoms is in the same excited state, and photons with at least 0.85-eV energy are required to ionize these atoms. What's the quantum number n for the initial excited state?
- Find the maximum possible magnitude for the orbital angular momentum of an electron in the $n = 7$ state of hydrogen.
- What's the orbital quantum number for an electron whose orbital angular momentum has magnitude $L = \sqrt{30}\hbar$?

- A hydrogen atom is in the $7f$ state. Find (a) its energy and (b) the magnitude of its orbital angular momentum.
- Give a symbolic description for the state of the electron in a hydrogen atom with total energy -1.51 eV and orbital angular momentum $\sqrt{6}\hbar$.

Section 36.2 Electron Spin

- Verify the value of the Bohr magneton μ_B in Equation 36.14.
- Theories of quantum gravity predict a spin-2 particle called the *graviton*. What would be the magnitude of the graviton's spin angular momentum?
- The nucleus of cobalt-59 (^{59}Co) has spin $\frac{7}{2}$. Find (a) the magnitude of ^{59}Co 's spin angular momentum and (b) the number of possible spin states.
- What are the possible j values for a hydrogen atom in the $3D$ state?

Section 36.3 The Exclusion Principle

- An infinite square well contains nine electrons. Find the highest-energy electron's energy in terms of the ground-state energy E_1 .
- A quantum harmonic oscillator with frequency ω contains 23 electrons. What's the energy of the highest-energy electron?

Section 36.4 Multielectron Atoms and the Periodic Table

- Use shell notation to characterize rubidium's outermost electron.
- Write the full electronic structure of scandium.
- Write the full electronic structure of bromine.

Section 36.5 Transitions and Atomic Spectra

- Show that the wavelength λ in nm of a photon with energy E in eV is $\lambda = 1240/E$.
- The $4f \rightarrow 3p$ transition in sodium produces a spectral line at 567.0 nm. Find the energy difference between these two levels.
- The $4p \rightarrow 3s$ transition in sodium produces a double spectral line at 330.237 nm and 330.298 nm. What's the energy splitting of the $4p$ level?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

28. **Example 36.1:** Find the probability that the electron in the ground state of hydrogen will be found beyond two Bohr radii.
 29. **Example 36.1:** Use trial and error or a numerical root finder to determine the distance from the nucleus where the electron in the hydrogen ground state is equally likely to be closer to or farther from the nucleus. Answer in terms of the Bohr radius.
 30. **Example 36.1:** (a) Repeat Example 36.1 to find the probability that the electron in the $2s$ state of hydrogen will be found beyond one Bohr radius. (b) Repeat for the probability that it will be beyond five Bohr radii. *Hint:* See Equation 36.7 and feel free to use an online integral calculator.
 31. **Example 36.1:** Use trial and error or a numerical root finder to determine the distance from the nucleus where the electron in the $2s$ state of hydrogen is equally likely to be closer to or farther from the nucleus. Answer in terms of the Bohr radius.
 32. **Example 36.4:** The spectrum of potassium shows a strong infrared doublet associated with transitions of the outermost electron between the $4p_{1/2}$ level and the $4s$ state, which produces 770.108-nm photons, and between $4p_{3/2}$ and $4s$, which produces 766.701-nm photons. Find the energy difference between the $4p_{1/2}$ and $4p_{3/2}$ levels. Which has higher energy?
 33. **Example 36.4:** The energies of the outermost electron in the $4p_{1/2}$ and $4p_{3/2}$ levels in sodium are, respectively, 3.75261 eV and 3.75331 eV above the $3s$ level. Find the wavelengths emitted in transitions from both $4p$ levels to the $3s$ level. *Hint:* You'll need values for physical constants good to five significant figures to match the precision of this problem.
 34. **Example 36.4:** Section 36.2 describes the origin of hyperfine structure in the hydrogen spectrum. Given that a 21-cm-wavelength photon results from a transition between the two hyperfine levels of the hydrogen ground state, find the energy difference between those levels.
 35. **Example 36.4:** The nucleus of deuterium (^2H) consists of a proton and a neutron, and as a result the hyperfine splitting of the deuterium ground state is substantially different from that of ordinary hydrogen (^1H). The transition between the two hyperfine levels of the deuterium ground state results in the emission of a 327.384-MHz photon. Find (a) the corresponding wavelength and (b) the energy difference between the two hyperfine levels.
- ### Problems
36. Adapt part (b) of Example 36.1 to find the probability that an electron in the hydrogen ground state will be found beyond two Bohr radii.
 37. Determine the principal and orbital quantum numbers for a hydrogen atom whose electron has energy -0.280 eV and orbital angular momentum $L = \sqrt{12}\hbar$.
 38. Find (a) the energy and (b) the magnitude of the orbital angular momentum for an electron in the $5d$ state of hydrogen.
 39. Assuming the Moon's orbital angular momentum is quantized, estimate its orbital quantum number l .
 40. The maximum possible angular momentum for a hydrogen atom in a certain state is $30\sqrt{11}\hbar$. Find (a) the principal quantum number and (b) the energy.
 41. A hydrogen atom is in an $l = 2$ state. What are the possible angles its orbital angular momentum vector can make with a given axis?
 42. A hydrogen atom is in an excited state from which it would take 0.54 eV to ionize the atom. What's the maximum possible value for the orbital angular momentum in this state?
 43. An electron in hydrogen is in the $5f$ state. What possible values, in units of $\hbar$, could a measurement of the orbital angular momentum component on a given axis yield?
 44. Substitute Equation 36.3 into Equation 36.4 and carry out the differentiations to show that you get the first unnumbered equation following Equation 36.4.
 45. Differentiate the radial probability density for the hydrogen ground state, and set the result to zero to show that the electron is most likely to be found at one Bohr radius.
 46. Suppose you put five electrons into an infinite square well of width L . Find an expression for the minimum energy of this system, consistent with the exclusion principle.
 47. A harmonic oscillator potential of natural frequency ω contains eight electrons and is in its lowest-energy state. (a) What is its energy? (b) What would the lowest energy be if the electrons were replaced by spin-1 particles of the same mass?
 48. You work for a nanotechnology company developing a new quantum device that operates essentially as a one-dimensional infinite square well of width 2.5 nm. You're asked to specify the maximum number of electrons in the device before the total electron energy exceeds 25 eV. Your answer?
 49. Determine the electronic configuration of copper.
 50. An electron in a highly excited state of hydrogen ($n_1 \gg 1$) drops into the state $n = n_2$. Find the lowest value of n_2 for which the emitted photon will be in the infrared.
 51. A solid-state laser made from lead-tin selenide has a lasing transition at a wavelength of 80 μm . If its power output is 1.3 mW, how many lasing transitions occur each second?
 52. For hydrogen, fine-structure splitting of the $2p$ state is only about 50 μeV . What percentage is this difference of the photon energy emitted in the $2p \rightarrow 1s$ transition? Your answer shows why it's hard to observe spin-orbit splitting in hydrogen.
 53. Find the probability that the electron in the hydrogen ground state will be found in the radial-distance range $r = a_0 \pm 0.4 a_0$.
 54. You've acquired a laser for your dental practice. It produces 350-mJ pulses at 2.94- μm wavelength. A patient wonders about the number of photons in each pulse and where they lie in the EM spectrum. Your answer?
 55. Solar physicists measure the strong magnetic fields in sunspots by observing Zeeman splitting of the 1.56485- μm infrared spectral line emitted by atomic iron. In a field of approximately 0.27 T this line splits into two lines at 1.56492 μm and 1.56478 μm . Find the energy difference between the two levels resulting from the Zeeman splitting.
 56. A harmonic oscillator potential with natural frequency ω contains a number of electrons and is in its state of lowest energy. If that energy is $6.5\hbar\omega$, (a) how many electrons are in the potential well and (b) what's the energy of the highest-energy electron?
 57. A harmonic oscillator potential with natural frequency ω contains N electrons and is in its state of lowest energy. Find expressions for the energy of the highest-energy electron for (a) N even and (b) N odd.
 58. A harmonic oscillator potential with natural frequency ω contains N electrons and is in its state of lowest energy. Find expressions for the total energy for (a) N even and (b) N odd.

59. An infinite square well containing a number of electrons is in its lowest possible energy state, which is 19 times the ground-state energy E_1 for the same well when it contains a single electron. (a) How many electrons are in the well? (b) What's the energy of the highest-energy electron?
60. Repeat Problem 58 for the case of an infinite square well containing N electrons, rather than for a harmonic oscillator. Express your answer in terms of the ground-state energy E_1 .
61. The electron in a hydrogen atom is in the $5d$ state. (a) Find the maximum additional angular momentum that could be imparted to this electron without increasing its principal quantum number. (b) Identify the state with the increased angular momentum.
62. A hydrogen atom is in an F state. (a) Find the possible values for its total angular momentum. (b) For the state with the greatest angular momentum, find the number of possible values for the component of $\vec{J}$ on a given axis.
63. A hydrogen atom is in the $2s$ state. Find the probability that its electron will be found beyond 10 Bohr radii.
64. Show that the maximum number of electrons in an atom's n th shell is $2n^2$.
65. Form the radial probability density $P_2(r)$ associated with the ψ_{2s} state of Equation 36.7, and find the electron's most probable radial position.
66. Substitute the wave function ψ_2 of Equation 36.7 into Equation 36.4 to verify that the equation is satisfied and that the energy is given by Equation 36.6 with $n = 2$.
67. (a) Verify Equation 36.8 by considering a single-electron atom with nuclear charge Ze instead of e . (b) Calculate the ionization energies for single-electron versions of helium, oxygen, lead, and uranium.
68. Excimer lasers for vision correction generally use a combination of argon and fluorine to form a molecular complex that can exist only in an excited state. Stimulated de-excitation produces 6.42-eV photons, which form the laser's intense beam. What's the corresponding photon wavelength, and where in the spectrum does it lie?
69. A selection rule for the infinite square well allows only those transitions in which n changes by an odd number. Suppose an infinite square well of width 0.200 nm contains an electron in the $n = 4$ state. (a) Draw an energy-level diagram showing all allowed transitions that could occur as this electron drops toward the ground state, including transitions from lower levels that could be reached from $n = 4$. (b) Find all the possible photon energies emitted in these transitions.
70. An ensemble of one-electron square-well systems of width 1.17 nm all have their electrons in highly excited states. They undergo all possible transitions in dropping toward the ground state, obeying the selection rule that Δn must be odd. (a) What wavelengths of visible light are emitted? (b) Is there any infrared emission? If so, how many spectral lines lie in the infrared?
71. Use the radial probability density from Equation 36.5 and the normalized ground-state hydrogen wave function from Equation 36.3 and Example 36.1 to calculate the average radial distance r_{av} for an electron in the ground state. (Note: Because the probability-density curve isn't symmetric, the average radial distance isn't the same as the most probable distance shown in Fig. 36.3.)
72. Follow the procedure in Problem 71 to calculate the average radial distance for an electron in the $2s$ state of hydrogen.

73. The ratio of the magnetic moment, in units of the Bohr magneton μ_B , to the angular momentum, in units of $\hbar$, is called the g -factor. (a) Show that the classical orbital g -factor for an atomic electron in a circular Bohr orbit is $g_L = 1$. (b) Show that Equation 36.13 gives $g_S = 2$ for the g -factor associated with electron spin.
74. You work for a company that makes red helium–neon lasers widely used in physics experiments. Figure 36.19 shows an energy-level diagram for this laser. An electric current excites helium to a metastable level E_1 at 20.61 eV above the ground state. Collisions transfer energy to neon atoms, exciting them to $E_2 = 20.66$ eV. The lasing transition drops the atoms to E_3 , emitting a 632.8-nm photon in the process. You're asked to find the maximum possible efficiency for this laser—that is, the light energy emitted as a percentage of the energy supplied to excite the atoms. Your answer?

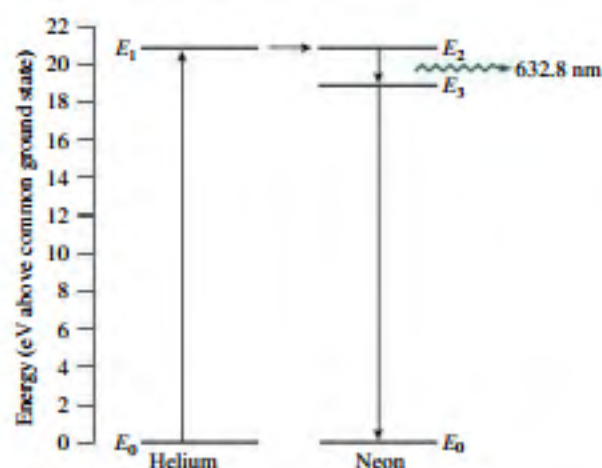


FIGURE 36.19 Energy-level diagram for the helium–neon laser (Problem 74).

75. Using the table below, make a plot of atomic volume versus atomic number, for the elements from $Z = 30$ to $Z = 59$ listed in the table. Comment on the structure of your graph in relation to the periodic table, the electronic structures of atoms, and their chemical properties. (Volumes are in units of 10^{-30} m^3 .)

Z	V	Z	V	Z	V
30	7.99	40	26.1	50	11.2
31	12.5	41	20.2	51	8.78
32	6.54	42	18.8	52	6.88
33	4.99	43	17.5	53	5.28
34	3.71	44	16.2	54	4.19
35	2.85	45	12.8	55	95.9
36	2.57	46	12.0	56	51.6
37	70.3	47	11.2	57	49.0
38	37.2	48	10.5	58	46.5
39	28.3	49	17.2	59	44.0

Passage Problems

With sufficient energy, it's possible to eject an electron from an inner atomic orbital. A higher-energy electron will then drop into the unoccupied state, emitting a photon with energy equal to the difference between the two levels. For inner-shell electrons, photon energies are in the keV range, putting them in the X-ray region of the spectrum. These **characteristic X-rays** are labeled with the letter indicating the shell to which the electron drops, followed by a Greek letter indicating the higher level from which it drops; thus $K\alpha$ designates a transition from the L shell to the K shell.

Characteristic X-rays provide scientists and physicians with an important diagnostic tool. Environmental scientists bombard pollution samples with high-energy electrons, knocking out inner-shell electrons and thus producing X-ray spectra that help identify contaminants (Fig. 36.20a). Geologists do the same with rocks. Medical radiologists reverse the process, exploiting the fact that X-rays cause inner-shell transitions as well as complete ejection of inner-shell electrons. In particular, radiologists use the element barium in this way to produce high-contrast X-ray images of the intestinal tract (Fig. 36.20b).

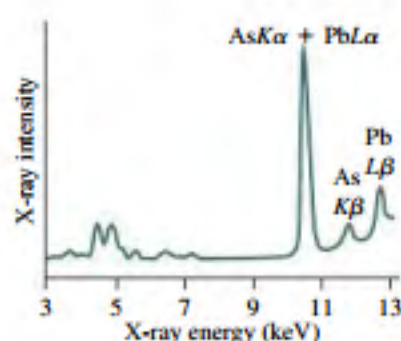


FIGURE 36.20 Passage Problems 76–79. (a) An X-ray spectrum from air pollutants trapped on a filter. The labeled peaks show the presence of lead (Pb) and arsenic (As), as evidenced by $K\alpha$, $K\beta$, $L\alpha$, and $L\beta$ characteristic X rays. (b) X-ray of an intestinal tract, made by coating the intestinal wall with X-ray-opaque barium.

76. Molybdenum's X-ray spectrum has its $K\alpha$ peak at 17.4 keV. The corresponding X-ray wavelength is closest to
- 1 pm.
 - 100 pm.
 - 1 nm.
 - 100 nm.
77. In general, how should the energy of an element's $L\alpha$ X-rays compare with the energy of its $K\alpha$ X rays?
- They have less energy.
 - They have the same energy.
 - They have greater energy.
 - You can't tell without knowing the element.

78. Elements A and B have atomic numbers Z_A and $Z_B = 2Z_A$. How do you expect element B 's $K\alpha$ X-ray energy to compare with that of element A ?
- B 's $K\alpha$ energy should be about one-fourth that of A .
 - B 's $K\alpha$ energy should be about half that of A .
 - B 's $K\alpha$ energy should be about twice that of A .
 - B 's $K\alpha$ energy should be about four times that of A .
79. Emission of characteristic X-rays occurs in the context of multielectron atoms that generally have all but one of their electrons present. You should therefore expect the X-ray energies to be described
- quite accurately by Bohr's atomic theory.
 - through hydrogen-like solutions to the Schrödinger equation.
 - only approximately by Bohr's theory or hydrogenic solutions to the Schrödinger equation.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Only one electron is allowed in a given atomic quantum state, leading to the shell structure of atoms and to chemical properties based on the outermost atomic electrons.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 36.1 (c)
 36.2 (c)
 36.3 (d)
 36.4 (b)
 36.5 $5p \rightarrow 3s$

Molecules and Solids

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Rotational inertia (Section 10.3)
- Electrical conductivity (Section 24.2)
- The quantum harmonic oscillator (Section 35.3)
- Atomic energy levels (Sections 36.1 and 36.4)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 37.1** Describe qualitatively the different molecular bonding mechanisms.
- LO 37.2** Calculate rotational and vibrational energy levels in molecules.
- LO 37.3** Describe the structure of solids, including the band theory of electrical conductivity.
- LO 37.4** Give a qualitative explanation of superconductivity.

In principle, we could apply the Schrödinger equation to all the particles making up a molecule or even a solid, but in practice that's difficult for all but the simplest molecules. Ever-increasing computer power has brought more complex molecules within reach of structural calculations based in the Schrödinger equation, but in many cases it's appropriate to describe molecular and solid structure more qualitatively.

37.1 Molecular Bonding

LO 37.1 *Describe qualitatively the different molecular bonding mechanisms.*

The binding of atoms into molecules involves both electric forces and quantum-mechanical effects associated with the exclusion principle. Although individual atoms are electrically neutral, the distribution of charge within them gives rise to attractive or repulsive forces. When atoms are squeezed closely together, interactions involving the spins of their outermost electrons also result in attractive or repulsive interactions. For atoms with unfilled outer shells, it's energetically favorable for electrons to pair with opposite spins; this causes an attractive interaction. When the outer atomic shells are filled, the exclusion principle forces electrons from separate atoms into different states as the atoms are brought together. One or more electrons go into higher energy states, raising the overall energy and resulting in a repulsive interaction. Finally, if atoms get very close, the electrical repulsion of the nuclei becomes important. Ultimately, the balance of attractive and repulsive interactions determines the equilibrium configuration of a molecule. In energy terms, we can think of a stable molecule as a minimum-energy configuration of the electrons and nuclei making up two or more atoms (Fig. 37.1). Although such force and energy considerations ultimately govern all molecules, we distinguish several molecular binding mechanisms based on which interactions are most important.



What equation determines the structure of a complex molecule, like the aspirin molecule shown here?

Ionic Bonding

As we saw in Chapter 36, elements near the left side of the periodic table have few electrons in their outermost shells and correspondingly low ionization energies. In contrast, elements near the right side of the table have nearly filled shells and consequently strong affinities for electrons. When atoms from these different regions of the periodic table come together, it takes relatively little energy to transfer electrons between them. Sodium, for example, has an ionization energy of 5.1 eV, meaning it takes this much energy to make an Na^+ ion. Chlorine, at the opposite end of the periodic table, has such a strong electron affinity that the energy of a Cl^- ion is 3.8 eV below that of a neutral Cl atom. Thus, an expenditure of only 1.3 eV ($5.1 \text{ eV} - 3.8 \text{ eV}$) is required to transfer the outermost electron from a sodium to a chlorine atom. The resulting ions are strongly attracted and come together until they reach equilibrium at an internuclear separation of about 0.24 nm. The total energy of the pair is then 4.2 eV below that of neutral chlorine and sodium atoms at large separation (Fig. 37.2). Since it would therefore take 4.2 eV to separate the atoms, this quantity is called the **dissociation energy**.

Because the minimum-energy sodium–chlorine structure consists of ions bound by the electrostatic force, the binding mechanism is termed **ionic bonding**. Ionic bonding generally occurs in crystalline solids. Because the building blocks of an ionically bound substance are electrically charged, each can bind to several of the opposite charge, resulting in a regular crystal pattern (Fig. 37.3). Because the electrostatic force is strong, ionic solids are tightly bound and therefore have high melting points (801°C for NaCl). And because all electrons are bound to individual nuclei, there are no free electrons, and therefore ionic solids are electrical insulators.

Covalent Bonding

In an ionic bond, each electron is associated with only one ion. In a **covalent bond**, on the other hand, electrons are shared among atoms. Covalent bonds occur between atoms whose outermost shells aren't full, and whose outer electrons can therefore pair with opposite spins. The simplest example of a covalent bond is the hydrogen molecule, H_2 . Since each hydrogen atom has a single 1s electron, each could accommodate in its 1s shell a second electron with opposite spin. When two hydrogen atoms join, quantum mechanics predicts a molecular ground state in which both electrons share a single orbital, with the highest probability of finding the electrons between the nuclei (Fig. 37.4). Dissociation energies for covalent bonds are, like those of ionic bonds, on the order of a few electronvolts.

With their outermost molecular orbitals full, covalently bonded molecules often have no room for another electron in their structures. For example, adding a third hydrogen to H_2 is impossible because the ground-state orbital already contains two electrons with opposite spins, so the exclusion principle requires that a third electron go into a higher energy state. The energy of that state is higher than that of an H_2 molecule and a distant H atom; for this

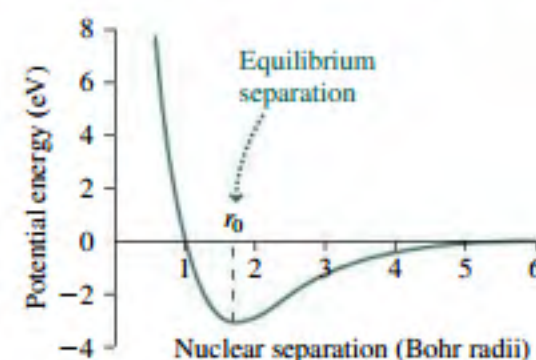


FIGURE 37.1 Potential energy of a pair of hydrogen atoms as a function of the distance between their nuclei.

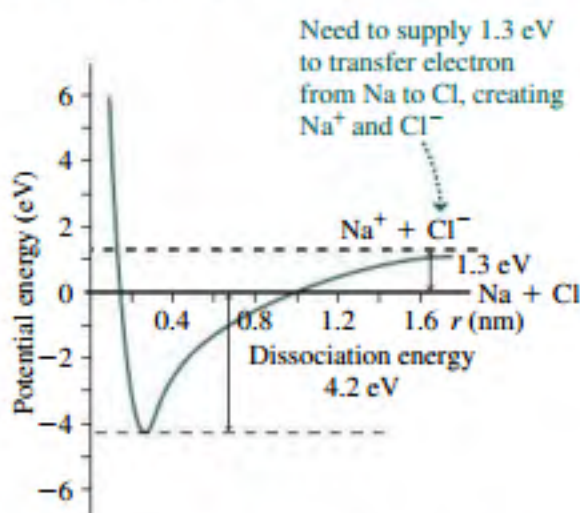


FIGURE 37.2 Potential-energy curve for Na^+ and Cl^- ions, with zero energy corresponding to infinite separation of neutral Na and Cl atoms.

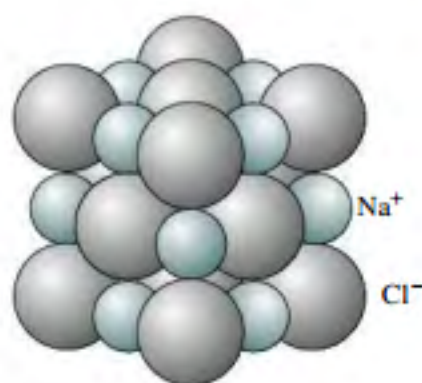


FIGURE 37.3 A sodium chloride crystal is a regular array of sodium and chlorine ions, bound by the electrostatic force.

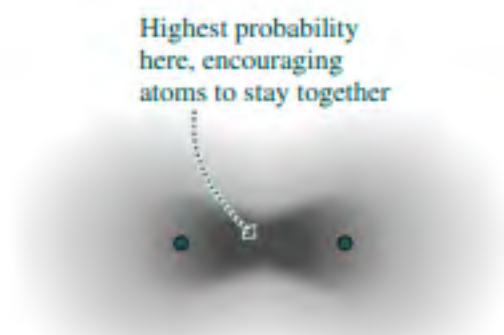


FIGURE 37.4 Probability density for finding electrons in the ground state of molecular hydrogen (H_2).

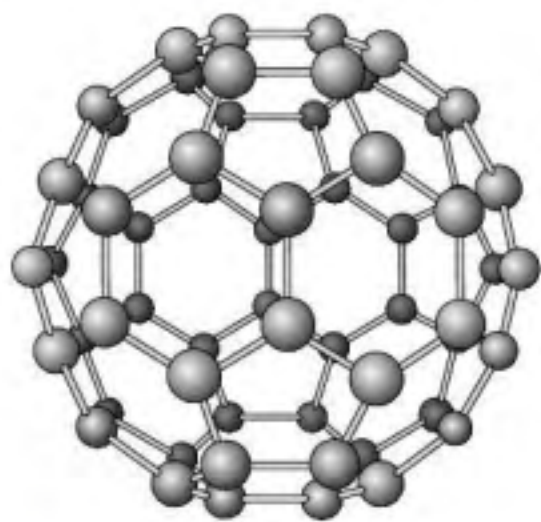


FIGURE 37.5 Buckminsterfullerene, C_{60} , is a symmetric arrangement of 60 carbon atoms. Discovered in the 1980s, C_{60} and related fullerenes are now used in applications that include drug delivery systems, antioxidant creams, lubricants, chemical catalysts, microelectronics, and experimental fuel-storage systems for hydrogen-powered vehicles.

reason H_3 isn't a stable molecule. Because their outermost molecular orbitals are full, covalent molecules interact only weakly, and as a result many common covalent materials—for example, H_2 , CO , N_2 , and H_2O —are either gases or liquids at ordinary temperatures. In other cases covalent bonds can form crystalline structures. A simple example is diamond, a pure-carbon solid formed when each carbon atom bonds covalently to its four nearest neighbors. A more dramatic covalent molecule is buckminsterfullerene, C_{60} , a soccer-ball configuration of 60 carbon atoms (Fig. 37.5).

Hydrogen Bonding

If water consists of covalently bonded molecules, why is it ever a solid? The answer lies in **hydrogen bonds** that form when the tiny, positively charged proton of a hydrogen nucleus nestles close to the negative parts of other molecules. In ice, hydrogen bonds link a proton in one H_2O molecule to the oxygen in another. Because covalent bonding within the water molecule leaves the oxygen only slightly negative and the hydrogen only slightly positive, hydrogen bonds are much weaker than ionic or covalent bonds; a typical hydrogen-bond energy is 0.1 eV. Hydrogen bonds are important in determining the overall configuration of complicated molecules. In DNA, for example, covalent bonds join atoms to form long chains. Hydrogen bonds then link two chains into the double-helix structure.

Van der Waals Bonding

In Section 20.5 we mentioned the **van der Waals force** that arises from electrostatic interactions between induced dipole moments of otherwise nonpolar molecules. In gases, the van der Waals force causes deviations from the ideal-gas law that are most pronounced at high densities. As temperature drops, this weakly attractive force becomes effective in binding molecules into liquids and solids. Liquid and solid oxygen (O_2) and nitrogen (N_2), for example, are held together by van der Waals bonds.

Metallic Bonding

In a metal, the outermost atomic electrons aren't bound to individual nuclei, but move throughout the material. The metal forms a crystal lattice of positive ions, bound by this “electron gas.” The free electrons give a metal its high electrical and thermal conductivities.

GOT IT?

37.1 Energies associated with molecular bonds are typically (a) several eV for ionic, covalent, and hydrogen bonds; (b) 10 eV for hydrogen bonds and a few eV for covalent and ionic bonds; or (c) a few eV for covalent and ionic bonds, and a fraction of an eV for hydrogen bonds.

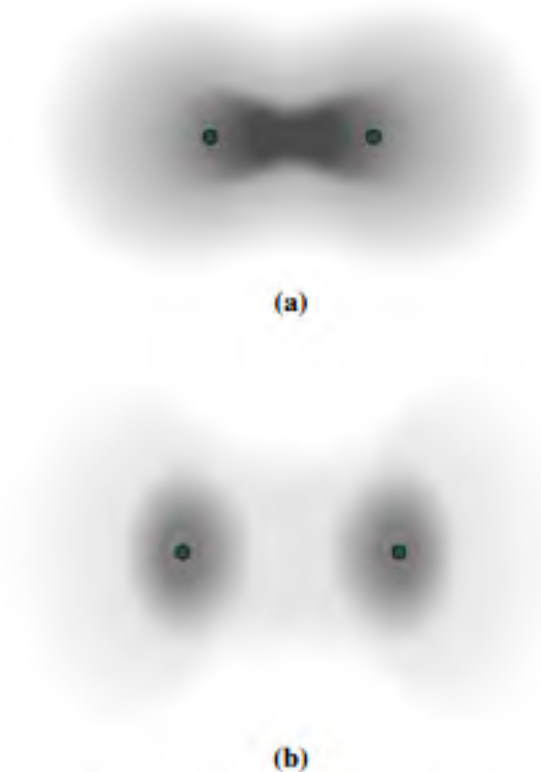


FIGURE 37.6 Electron probability densities for (a) the ground state and (b) the first excited state of hydrogen. Note that the nuclei are farther apart in the excited state.

37.2 Molecular Energy Levels

LO 37.2 Calculate rotational and vibrational energy levels in molecules.

In a molecule, electric forces bind electrons and nuclei into a single structure. Like any quantum-mechanical bound system, the energy levels of a molecule are quantized. As in atoms, differences among molecular energy levels are associated with different electronic configurations (Fig. 37.6). But molecules are more complex than atoms, and molecular energy can take additional forms.

In Chapter 18, you saw how a complete description of the specific heats of gases required that we consider the rotational and vibrational motions of individual molecules. We hinted at quantum mechanics, pointing out that each of these modes of molecular

motion could absorb only certain discrete amounts of energy (see Fig. 18.17). Here, in a quantum-mechanical treatment of molecular energetics, we consider rotational and vibrational energy states as well as electronic configuration.

Rotational Energy Levels

If a molecule is rotating, it has angular momentum L whose magnitude, from Equation 11.4, is $L = I\omega$, where I is the rotational inertia and ω the angular speed. The quantization conditions that we found in Chapter 36 for atomic angular momenta also hold for the angular momentum of molecular rotation, so we have

$$L = \sqrt{l(l+1)}\hbar \quad (37.1)$$

where the quantum number l takes on integer values 0, 1, 2, 3, But then the rotational energy, which from Equation 10.17 is $E_{\text{rot}} = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$, must also be quantized. Solving the equation $L = I\omega$ for ω allows us to write the energy as

$$E_{\text{rot}} = \frac{1}{2}I\left(\frac{L}{I}\right)^2 = \frac{L^2}{2I}$$

Applying the quantization condition 37.1 for L , we then have the quantized rotational energy levels:

$$E_{\text{rot}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2I}l(l+1) \quad \text{for } l = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (37.2)$$

EXAMPLE 37.1 Molecular Rotation: Computing Molecular Size

A gas of HCl molecules shows spectral lines that result from transitions between pairs of adjacent rotational energy levels. The energy of the transition increases by 2.63 meV from one spectral line to the next. (a) Use this experimental result to determine the rotational inertia of the HCl molecule. (b) Approximating the more massive chlorine as being essentially fixed, find an expression for the rotational inertia in terms of the hydrogen mass and the separation of the two atomic nuclei. (c) Use the results of parts (a) and (b) to determine the internuclear separation in HCl.

INTERPRET We're asked to infer molecular properties from spectroscopic observations. We're given not the wavelength or energy of a given spectral line, but the energy difference associated with adjacent lines.

DEVELOP Spectral lines result from photons emitted as a molecule drops from one of the energy levels of Equation 37.2 to the next lower level. So the energy of such a photon is

$$\Delta E_{l \rightarrow l-1} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2I}[l(l+1) - (l-1)l] = \frac{\hbar^2 l}{I}$$

An adjacent spectral line would result from the transition $l-1 \rightarrow l-2$, giving $\Delta E_{l-1 \rightarrow l-2} = \hbar^2(l-1)/I$. So our plan for (a) is to take the difference between these two transition energies, equate it to the observed energy difference of 2.63 meV between adjacent spectral lines, and solve for I . For (b) we can treat the molecule as having a fixed center (Cl) with a particle (H) in circular motion. Its rotational inertia is then given by Equation 10.12: $I = mR^2$. Equating the two expressions for I will let us solve for the internuclear separation R in (c).

EVALUATE (a) The energy difference $\Delta(\Delta E)$ between adjacent transition energies is

$$\Delta(\Delta E) = \frac{\hbar^2 l}{I} - \frac{\hbar^2(l-1)}{I} = \frac{\hbar^2}{I}$$

Setting this to the observed 2.63-meV spacing and solving for I gives $I = 2.65 \times 10^{-47} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$, where we had to convert meV to J to get the result in SI. (b) We've already shown that $I = mR^2$. (c) Equating our algebraic and numerical expressions for I and solving gives the internuclear distance:

$$R = \sqrt{\frac{I}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{2.65 \times 10^{-47} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2}{1.67 \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg}}} = 0.126 \text{ nm}$$

where we approximated the hydrogen mass, m , with the proton mass listed inside the front cover.

ASSESS Our answer makes sense, since it's slightly larger than an isolated hydrogen atom. However, it's approximate because we took the chlorine as perfectly fixed and we also ignored the quantum-mechanical ground-state energy of molecular vibration, which stretches the molecule. Photon energies for low l values are on the order of that 2.63-meV spacing, corresponding to a wavelength of about 0.5 nm. This is in the microwave region of the spectrum, with much lower energy and longer wavelength than we've seen for transitions between atomic energy levels.

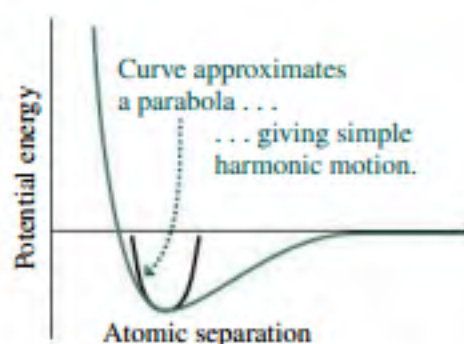


FIGURE 37.7 Near its minimum, the molecular potential-energy curve approximates a parabola.

Vibrational Energy Levels

The equilibrium configuration of a molecule corresponds to the minimum of the molecular potential-energy curve. In the vicinity of that minimum the curve is well approximated by a parabola (Fig. 37.7). In Chapter 13 we saw that parabolic potential-energy curves result in simple harmonic motion, and in Chapter 35 we used a parabolic potential-energy curve in the Schrödinger equation for the harmonic oscillator. There, we found that quantized vibrational energy levels are given by

$$E_{\text{vib}} = \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right) \hbar \omega \quad (37.3)$$

where the quantum number n takes on integer values $0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$, and where ω is the natural frequency for classical harmonic oscillations of the molecule. The selection rule for harmonic oscillators limits allowed transitions to those with $\Delta n = \pm 1$, so $\hbar \omega$ is the energy of photons emitted or absorbed in allowed transitions among vibrational energy levels. (Actually, the small-amplitude approximation is often justified for only the lower quantum states, so Equation 37.3 and the selection rule $\Delta n = \pm 1$ may apply to only these states.) For typical diatomic molecules, ω is on the order of 10^{14} s^{-1} , in the infrared region of the spectrum. Consequently, study of molecular vibrations involves infrared spectroscopy.

As we found in Chapter 35, the minimum energy of a quantum harmonic oscillator is the ground-state energy $E_0 = \frac{1}{2} \hbar \omega$. Thus, a molecule can never have zero vibrational energy, although Equation 37.2 shows that it *can* have zero rotational energy.

EXAMPLE 37.2

Molecular Energies: Rotational and Vibrational

Worked Example with Variation Problems

An HCl molecule is in its vibrational ground state. Its classical vibration frequency is $f = 8.66 \times 10^{13} \text{ Hz}$. If its rotational and vibrational energies are approximately equal, what are its rotational quantum number and angular momentum?

INTERPRET We're being asked to compare energies associated with two different processes: vibration and rotation. We're told the vibrational energy state (the ground state, $n = 0$), and we need to find the rotational state with comparable energy.

DEVELOP With $n = 0$, Equation 37.3, $E_{\text{vib}} = \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right) \hbar \omega$, gives the ground-state vibrational energy $E_{\text{vib}} = \frac{1}{2} \hbar \omega = \frac{1}{2} h f$, where we used $\hbar = h/2\pi$ and $\omega = 2\pi f$. Our plan is to equate this to the rotational energy of Equation 37.2, $E_{\text{rot}} = (\hbar^2/2I)l(l+1)$, and solve for the quantity $l(l+1)$. Then we'll use Equation 37.1 to get the angular momentum.

EVALUATE Equating the vibrational and rotational energies gives

$$\frac{\hbar^2}{2I} l(l+1) = \frac{1}{2} \hbar \omega = \hbar \pi f$$

where we used $\omega = 2\pi f$. So $l(l+1) = 2\pi f I \hbar = 137$, where we took $I = 2.65 \times 10^{-47} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$ from Example 37.1. Solving the quadratic $l(l+1) = 137$ gives $l = 11$ for the closest positive integer value. (Remember that l has to be an integer, and that we were told that the rotational and vibrational energies are only *approximately* equal.) Then Equation 37.1, $L = \sqrt{l(l+1)} \hbar$, gives

$$L = \sqrt{11(11+1)} \hbar = 1.21 \times 10^{-33} \text{ J} \cdot \text{s}$$

ASSESS Our result shows that we need a fairly high rotational quantum state to give the same energy as the vibrational ground state. That's consistent with transitions between adjacent rotational states involving microwave photons, while vibrational transitions involve infrared photons.

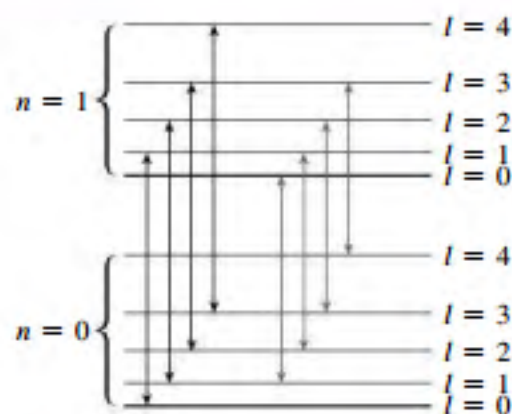


FIGURE 37.8 Energy-level diagram showing the ground state and first vibrational excited state of a diatomic molecule; also shown are four of the infinitely many rotational states for each n .

Molecular Spectra

A molecule with vibrational quantum number n and rotational quantum number l can undergo transitions obeying the selection rules $\Delta n = \pm 1$ and $\Delta l = \pm 1$. If molecules couldn't rotate, the molecular spectrum would consist of a single line at the classical vibration frequency, corresponding to transitions among adjacent vibrational states. But each vibrational level corresponds to an infinite number of rotational states. The resulting energy-level diagram is shown in Fig. 37.8. At typical temperatures, only the ground and first vibrational levels are significantly populated, but with energy distributed among many rotational levels. As a result, molecular spectra show a rich structure, with many lines corresponding to the different transitions of Fig. 37.8. Figure 37.9 is a spectrum of HCl, taken with a high-resolution infrared spectrometer that resolves the individual spectral lines. At lower resolution, the pattern shows up as a broad band, and we often speak of infrared absorption bands in describing the effect of molecules on infrared radiation.

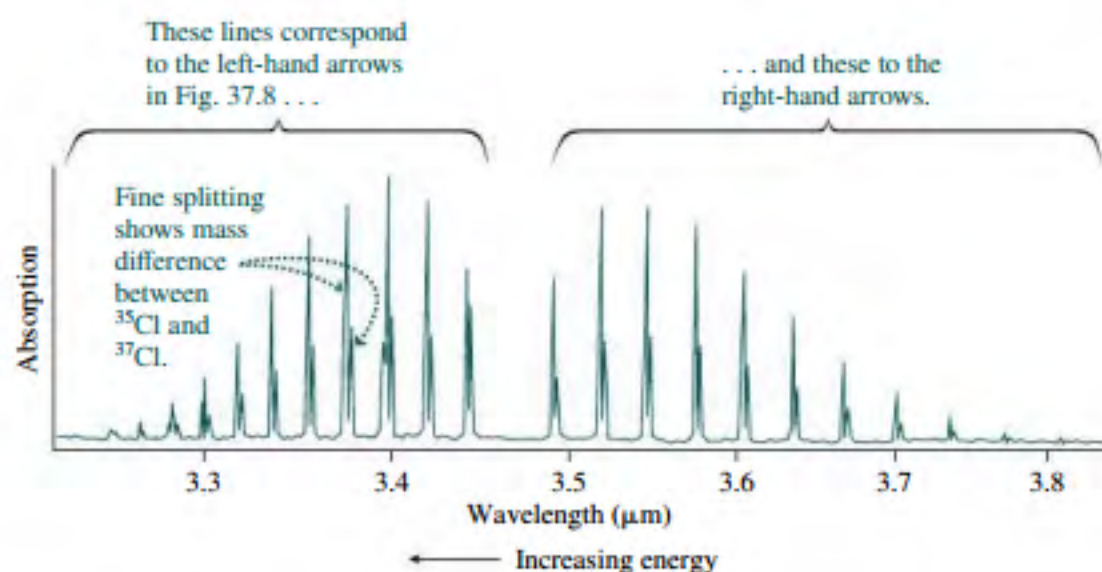


FIGURE 37.9 Absorption spectrum of HCl, showing lines that result from transitions between the $n = 1$ and $n = 0$ vibrational states.

For example, absorption bands of atmospheric water vapor and carbon dioxide limit the escape of infrared radiation from Earth, causing the greenhouse effect and global warming that we described in Chapter 16. Molecular energy levels are therefore at the heart of today's most global environmental concern. Figure 37.10 shows some of the molecular absorption bands that are most responsible for greenhouse warming.

GOT IT?

37.2 If a scientist uses microwave technology to study molecular structure, what form of molecular energy is she most concerned with?

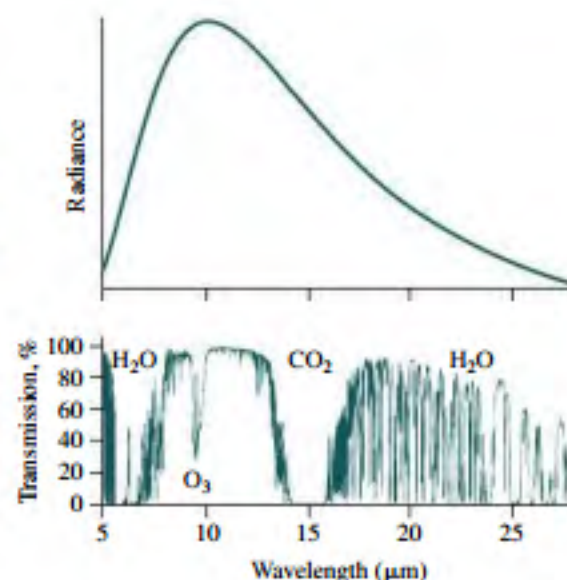


FIGURE 37.10 Upper graph shows the radiance of a blackbody at Earth's average surface temperature of 288 K, which is predominantly in the infrared with wavelengths from 5 μm to 25 μm . Lower graph shows the transmissivity of Earth's atmosphere in the same wavelength range, showing the effects of absorption by vibrational and rotational transitions in water vapor, carbon dioxide, and ozone. Where transmission is low, the atmosphere absorbs outgoing infrared. This absorption contributes to the greenhouse effect and global warming.

37.3 Solids

LO 37.3 Describe the structure of solids, including the band theory of electrical conductivity.

Bonding mechanisms can join relatively few atoms to form a molecule, or many to form a solid. In the lowest energy state, the atoms of a solid are arranged in a regular, repeating pattern; the solid is then **crystalline**. Sometimes solids form without their atoms having the opportunity to achieve a crystal structure; such solids are termed **amorphous**. Glass is a common amorphous solid. Amorphous materials are difficult to analyze due to their inherent randomness, so we concentrate here on crystalline solids.

Crystal Structure

The hallmark of a crystalline solid is the regular arrangement of atoms. Looking closely shows that a basic pattern repeats throughout the crystal (Fig. 37.11). This basic arrangement is the **unit cell**. Different crystalline materials have different unit cells (Fig. 37.11a, c). Sometimes

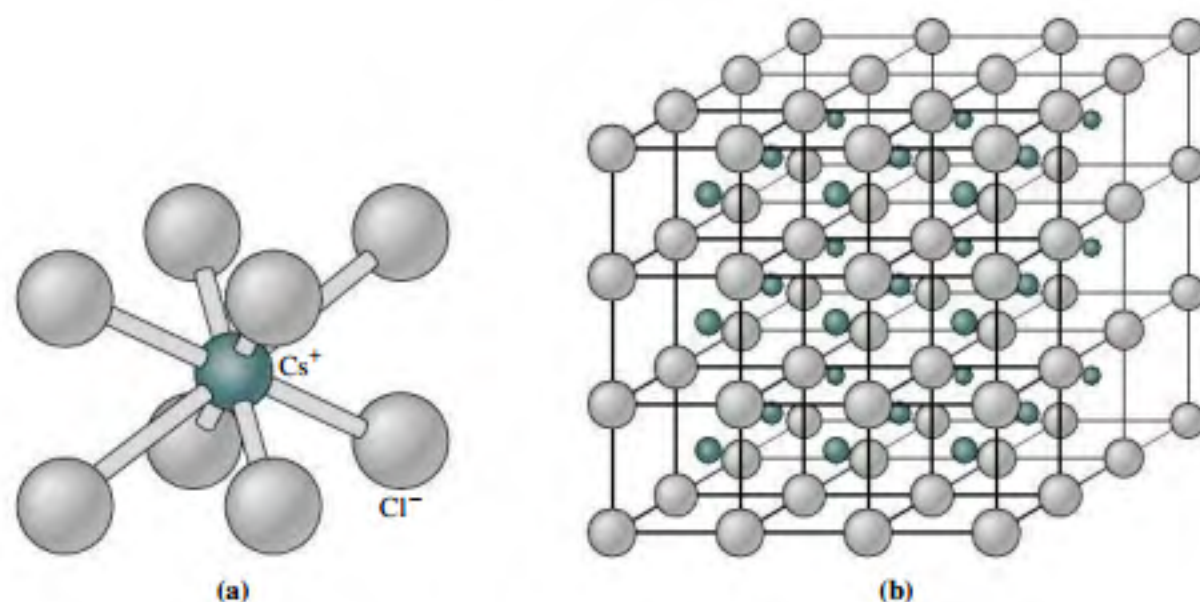


FIGURE 37.11 (a) The unit cell of cesium chloride has eight chlorine ions surrounding each cesium ion. (b) A cesium chloride crystal is a periodic array of unit cells. (c) Sodium chloride is different; here each ion is surrounded by only six nearest neighbors of the opposite type.

the same underlying matter may assume different structures, depending on how the solid was formed; this is the case with diamond and graphite, both crystalline forms of carbon.

As with individual molecules, properties like atomic separation in a crystalline solid are determined by the interplay of attractive and repulsive interactions. The situation is complicated, however, because an individual atom experiences forces from many other atoms in the crystal. With ionic bonding, those forces are electrical attraction and repulsion as described by Coulomb's law, and that makes ionic crystals amenable to simple mathematical treatment.

For ionic crystals, we can take individual ions to be point charges. Consider the NaCl structure of Fig. 37.11c. Each sodium ion is surrounded by six nearest chlorine ions, each some distance r away. The potential energy of a singly ionized positive sodium ion in the potential of each negative chlorine ion is $-ke^2/r$. So the contribution to the potential energy of the six nearest chlorines is $-6ke^2/r$, with the minus indicating an attractive interaction. But then there are 12 sodium ions a distance $\sqrt{2}r$ from the sodium; they give rise to a repulsive force and consequently a positive potential energy $+12ke^2/\sqrt{2}r$. At a distance of $\sqrt{3}r$ there are eight more chlorines, giving potential energy $-8ke^2/\sqrt{3}r$. The result is that the electrostatic potential energy of the sodium ion can be written as $U_1 = -\alpha(ke^2/r)$, where $\alpha = 6 - 12/\sqrt{2} + 8/\sqrt{3} - \cdots$; α is called the **Madelung constant**. Many terms in the series are required to compute α accurately, showing that the effect of distant ions is significant in determining the energy of an ion in the crystal. For the NaCl structure, α is approximately 1.748.

As ions are brought closer together, they experience the repulsive effect of the exclusion principle, as we discussed in Section 37.1. This repulsion is described approximately by a potential energy of the form $U_2 = A/r^n$, where A and n are constants. So the total potential energy of an ion in the crystalline solid is

$$U = U_1 + U_2 = -\alpha \frac{ke^2}{r} + \frac{A}{r^n}$$

At equilibrium the potential energy is a minimum (Fig. 37.12), corresponding to zero net force on the ion. Differentiating the potential energy with respect to r and setting dU/dr to zero to find the minimum, we have

$$0 = \frac{\alpha ke^2}{r_0^2} - \frac{nA}{r_0^{n+1}}$$

where r_0 designates the equilibrium separation. Solving for A gives $A = \alpha ke^2 r_0^{n-1}/n$, so the potential energy becomes

$$U = -\alpha \frac{ke^2}{r_0} \left[\frac{r_0}{r} - \frac{1}{n} \left(\frac{r_0}{r} \right)^n \right] \quad (37.4)$$

The value of U at the equilibrium separation r_0 is designated U_0 and is called the **ionic cohesive energy**. The magnitude of U_0 represents the energy needed to remove an ion entirely from the crystal. The cohesive energy is sometimes given in kcal/mol, in which case its magnitude is the energy per mole needed to break an entire crystal into its constituent ions (see Exercise 17).

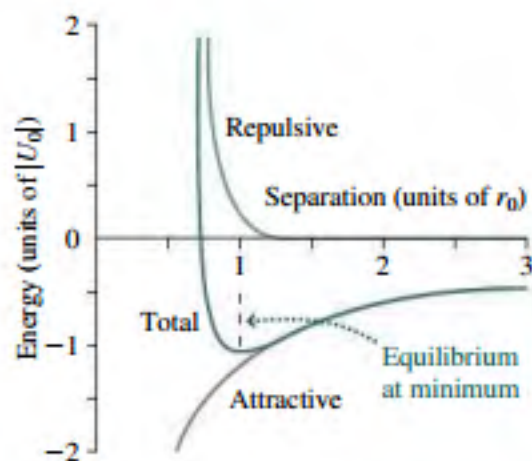


FIGURE 37.12 Potential-energy function for an ionic crystal, showing separate contributions of the attractive and repulsive terms.

EXAMPLE 37.3

Potential Energy in a Solid: The NaCl Crystal

Worked Example with Variation Problems

The ionic cohesive energy for NaCl is -7.84 eV. The equilibrium separation, which follows from the measured density, is 0.282 nm (see Exercise 16). Use these values and the Madelung constant $\alpha = 1.748$ to find the exponent n in Equation 37.4 for NaCl.

INTERPRET Here we're given all but one of the quantities in the expression for a crystal's potential energy, and we're asked to solve for the one unknown, n .

DEVELOP Equation 37.4 for the potential energy U looks formidable, with n in two places, including an exponent. But we're given the ionic cohesive energy U_0 , which is the value of U when $r = r_0$. So the two terms r_0/r become 1, and since $r^n = 1$, the n in the exponent drops out. With $r = r_0$ and $U = U_0$, Equation 37.4 simplifies to

$$U_0 = -\alpha \frac{ke^2}{r_0} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n} \right)$$

Our plan is to solve this equation for n .

EVALUATE Solving gives

$$n = \left(1 + \frac{U_0 r_0}{\alpha k e^2} \right)^{-1} = 8.22$$

with k the constant in Coulomb's law and e the elementary charge; other quantities are given in the problem statement.

ASSESS The large value of this exponent shows that the NaCl crystal is strongly resistant to compression. In Problem 46 you can calculate the associated repulsive force.

Band Theory

Quantum-mechanical analysis of a solid containing 10^{23} atoms or so might seem a hopeless task. But the regularity of a crystalline solid makes that problem, while not easy, at least amenable to mathematical treatment. The physical regularity of the solid is reflected mathematically in the properties of the wave function; specifically, the wave function for a crystalline solid in equilibrium is itself periodic. That's because equivalent points in different unit cells have exactly the same physical properties.

We won't solve the Schrödinger equation for a crystal, or even write the solutions. But you can see what some properties of those solutions must be. Consider two identical atoms, initially widely separated, as they're brought closer together. When the atoms are far apart, they're described by identical wave functions and associated energy-level diagrams; a given electron state, for example, has exactly the same energy in each atom. But as the atoms move closer, their wave functions begin to overlap to form a single wave function that characterizes the composite system. Because of the exclusion principle, two electrons that were in identical states in the two widely separated atoms can no longer be in the same state. This effect manifests itself as a separation of what were originally identical energy levels (Fig. 37.13a). As more and more atoms come together, initially identical energy levels split into ever more finely spaced levels (Fig. 37.13b). In a crystalline solid, there are so many atoms that each level splits into an essentially continuous **band** of allowed energies (Fig. 37.13c). **Band gaps** separate the bands arising from distinct single-atom states, as shown in Fig. 37.13c. An electron can have any energy between the top and bottom of a band, but energies in the band gaps are forbidden. The situation is like a single atom, where electrons are allowed only certain discrete energies, except now the discrete levels have broadened into bands.

We're usually interested in the properties of a solid at or near its equilibrium state, designated r_0 in Fig. 37.13c. There the solid is characterized by an energy-level diagram in which the energy levels are those of Fig. 37.13c at the value $r = r_0$ (Fig. 37.14).

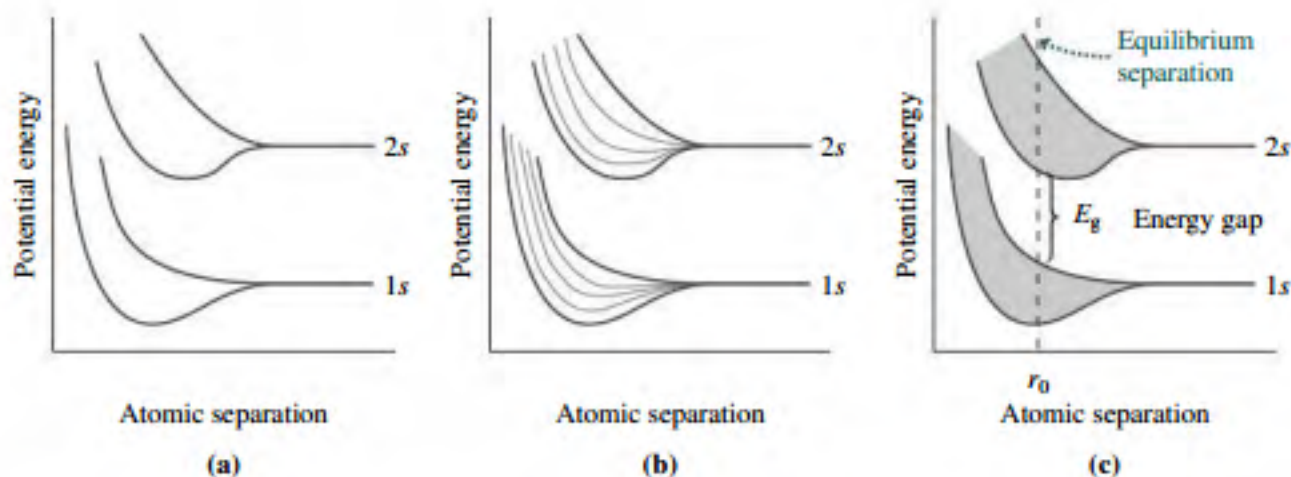


FIGURE 37.13 (a) Energy levels of the 1s and 2s states as a pair of atoms are brought close together. (b) With five atoms, each level splits into a group of five closely spaced levels. (c) In a crystalline solid, the large number of atoms results in essentially continuous energy bands, separated by gaps.

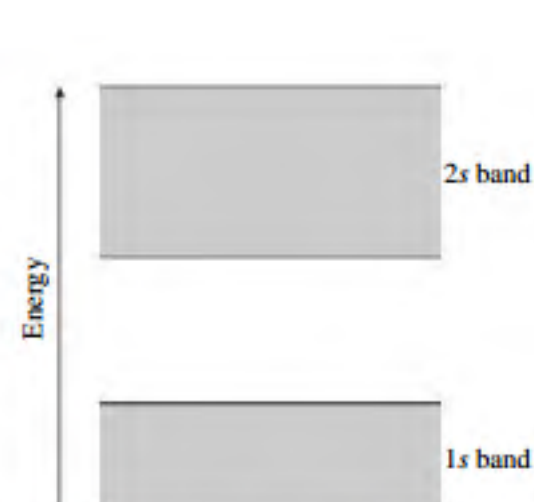


FIGURE 37.14 Energy-level diagram for the equilibrium separation of Fig. 37.13c.

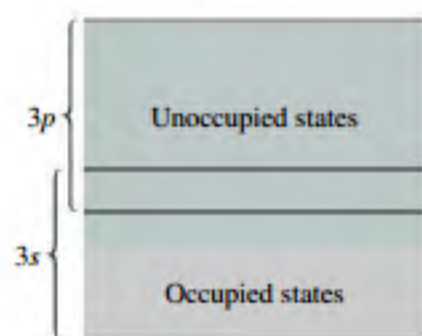


FIGURE 37.15 Band structure of metallic sodium, with gray indicating filled states and color unfilled states. Bands lower than 3s aren't shown; they correspond to inner electrons, whose levels aren't split significantly.

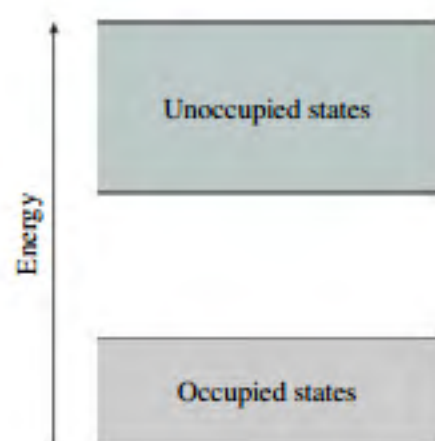


FIGURE 37.16 Band structure for an insulator.

Conductors, Insulators, and Semiconductors

Sometimes the splitting and shifting depicted in Fig. 37.13 result in overlapping bands. Figure 37.15 shows the band structure of sodium, in which the 3s and 3p bands overlap. Note that the high-energy band containing electrons—here the 3s/3p band—is not completely full, meaning that energy levels in the upper portion of the band aren't occupied by electrons.

We can determine which of the allowed energy levels of a solid will be occupied in the same way we established the electronic structure of atoms: by placing a given total number of electrons in the lowest possible levels consistent with the exclusion principle. In some materials, like sodium, that filling process results in the highest-energy occupied band being only partially full. But in others, like the material shown in Fig. 37.16, the highest-energy occupied band is completely full.

Figures 37.15 and 37.16 show the essential difference between conductors and insulators. A conductor is a material in which charges are free to move in response to an electric field. Classically, there's no problem with this: Apply an electric field, and if an electron is "free," it will accelerate and gain energy. But quantum mechanically, an electron can gain energy only by jumping into a higher allowed energy level. So there needs to be a higher unoccupied level available.

In sodium, the 3s atomic level contains a single electron, although it has room for two. Put N sodium atoms together to form a crystal, and the 3s band contains only N of the total $2N$ electrons it could hold. So the 3s band is only half full, as Fig. 37.15 shows, and therefore electrons near the top of the filled portion have available unoccupied states with only a little more energy. That makes it easy for an electric field to promote electrons to unoccupied levels. For that reason sodium is an electrical conductor.

In the material of Fig. 37.16, in contrast, one band is completely full and the next higher one empty. An electron in the filled band can't gain energy unless it's enough to jump the band gap. Electric fields of reasonable magnitude can't provide this energy, so the electrons are stuck in the filled bands. That makes the material an insulator.

Metallic Conductors

We found in Chapter 24 that classical physics can't account for the details of metallic conduction, in particular the temperature dependence of conductivity. Quantum mechanically, the conduction electrons in a metal are like electrons in the three-dimensional box of Section 35.4. They're free to move about inside the metal, but not to leave it. The number of states available to the electrons, per unit energy interval, turns out to increase with energy. You can see the beginnings of this trend in Fig. 35.17, which shows the first few states of the three-dimensional box. We won't do this count; the result, however, is given by

$$g(E) = \left(\frac{2^{7/2} \pi m^{3/2}}{h^3} \right) \sqrt{E} \quad (37.5)$$

where m is the electron mass and $g(E)$ is the **density of states**—the number of states per unit volume per unit energy interval centered on the energy E .

At absolute zero, electrons fill the lowest available states according to the exclusion principle. The energy of the highest filled level at absolute zero is the **Fermi energy**, E_F . At temperature $T = 0$, all states below the Fermi energy are full, and all those above are empty, as shown in Fig. 37.17a.

For $T > 0$, thermal energy promotes some electrons to levels above the Fermi energy, leaving some levels just below E_F vacant (Fig. 37.17b). Now, the Fermi energy in most metals is about 1–10 eV, much higher than the thermal energy at typical temperatures (0.025 eV at room temperature). So the electron distribution changes only slightly—and that means electrons near the Fermi energy carry essentially all the electric current, regardless of temperature. The mean electron speed is therefore quite different from the classical thermal speed (see Problem 50), and that makes the temperature dependence of electrical conductivity in metals very different from the classical prediction.

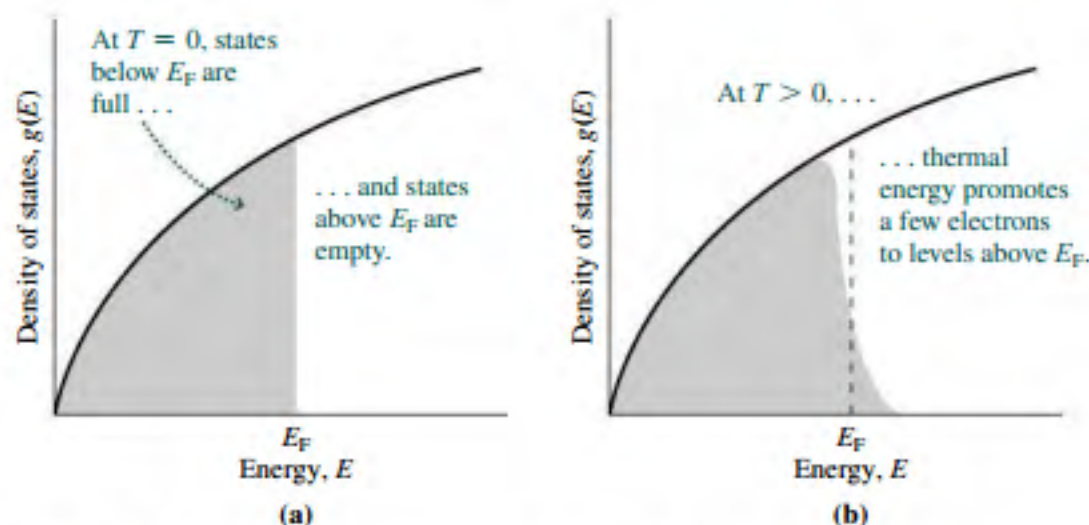


FIGURE 37.17 Density of states given by Equation 37.5, with shaded region indicating occupied energy levels. (a) $T = 0$; (b) $T > 0$.

GOT IT?

37.3 Both parts of Fig. 37.17 describe the same piece of metal. How do the shaded areas compare? (a) Area at left is greater; (b) area at right is greater; (c) areas are equal. Explain your answer.

Semiconductors

In Chapter 24 we gave a classical description of semiconductors—the materials at the heart of our modern electronic world. Here we see how band theory gives a quantum-mechanical explanation of semiconductors.

Our band diagram for an insulator (Fig. 37.16) is strictly correct only at absolute zero. Here the highest occupied band—the **valence band**—is full, and above it the **conduction band** is empty. At temperatures above absolute zero, though, random thermal energy may give an occasional electron enough energy to jump the gap into the conduction band, where it has plenty of nearby states available and can thus respond freely to an electric field. In good insulators, the band gap is many electronvolts and this effect is negligible. But in some materials, notably silicon and germanium, the band gap is on the order of 1 eV (see Table 37.1). At room temperature, thermal excitation promotes enough electrons into the conduction band that these materials conduct electricity, although their conductivity is much lower than in metallic conductors. Such a material is a **semiconductor**. Figure 37.18 compares the band structures for conductors, insulators, and semiconductors.

In Chapter 24 we showed how doping—adding small quantities of impurities—could radically alter the electrical properties of semiconductors. In terms of band theory, a dopant such as phosphorus, with five valence electrons, adds **donor levels** just below the conduction band (Fig. 37.19a). Thermal energy readily promotes electrons from these levels into the conduction band, greatly increasing the conductivity. This makes an **N-type semiconductor** because its predominant charge carriers are *negative* electrons. A dopant like boron, in contrast, creates **acceptor levels** just above the valence band (Fig. 37.19b). Electrons promoted to these levels leave behind **holes** that act as positive charge carriers. The result is a **P-type semiconductor**.

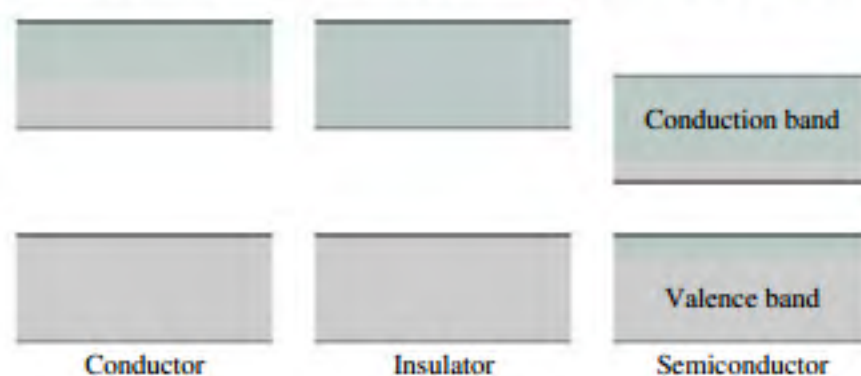


FIGURE 37.18 Band structures for a conductor, an insulator, and a semiconductor. Gray indicates occupied states.

Table 37.1 Band-Gap Energies for Selected Semiconductors (at 300 K)

Semiconductor	Band-Gap Energy (eV)
Si	1.14
Ge	0.67
InAs	0.35
InP	1.35
GaP	2.26
GaAs	1.43
CdS	2.42
CdSe	1.74
ZnO	3.2
ZnS	3.6

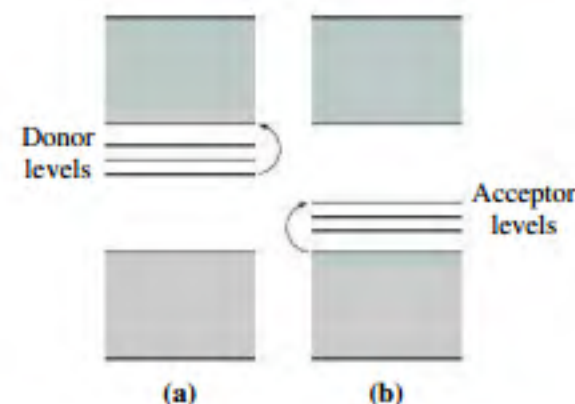


FIGURE 37.19 Band structures in doped semiconductors: (a) N-type; (b) P-type.

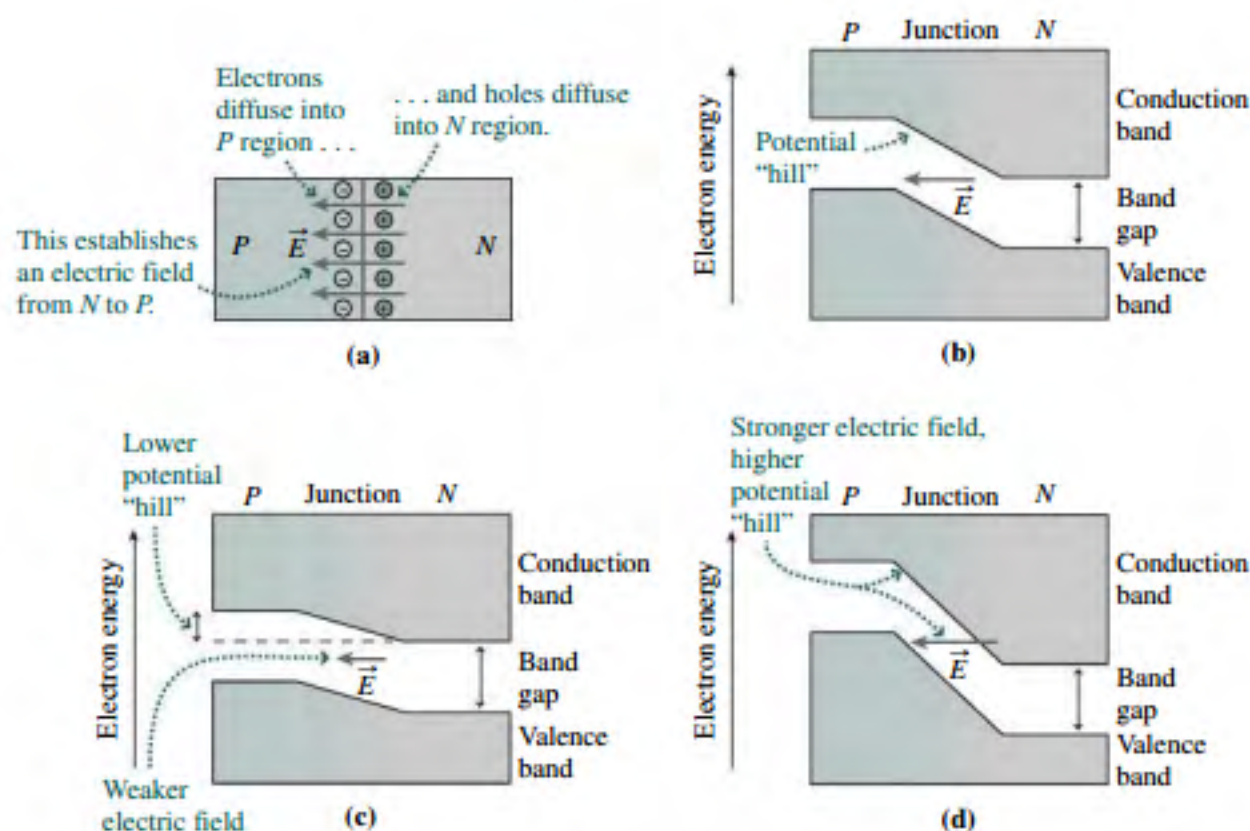


FIGURE 37.20 (a) Physical picture of an unbiased PN junction and (b) the corresponding band structure. (c) Band structure of a forward-biased junction and (d) a reverse-biased junction.

In Chapter 24 we gave a classical explanation of how a junction of P - and N -type semiconductors conducts electric current in only one direction. From there we went on to describe the operation of the transistor—the semiconductor device at the heart of all modern electronics. We can also understand the PN junction in terms of band structure. In Fig. 24.11 we showed how electrons and holes diffuse across a PN junction, depleting the junction of charge carriers and making it a poor conductor. Diffusion of electrons also gives the P -type side of the junction a net negative charge, and diffusion of the holes makes the N -type side positive. This charge separation creates an electric field pointing from N to P , as shown in Fig. 37.20a. The field opposes further diffusion of charge and thus establishes an equilibrium in which there's no net charge flow across the junction. Because they've moved with the electric field, the electrons that have diffused into the P -type region have higher potential energy than those that remained behind in the N -type region. (Remember that electrons are negative, so their potential energy increases when they move in the *same* direction as an electric field.) As a result, the band-structure diagram for electrons in the PN junction takes the form shown in Fig. 37.20b.

Now suppose we connect a battery to our PN junction, with the positive terminal to the P -type side of the junction. This condition is called **forward bias**. The effect is to make the P -type material less negative, the N -type less positive, and thus weaken the electric field and lower the potential "hill" that separates the two regions (Fig. 37.20c). It becomes easier for electrons to move from N to P and, as we could show with analogous diagrams for holes, it's easier for holes to move from P to N . So a current flows in the P -to- N direction, and the forward-biased PN junction becomes a good conductor. If, on the other hand, we connect the battery's positive terminal to the N -type material, then we strengthen the internal electric field and steepen the potential "hill," making it hard for charges to cross the junction (Fig. 37.20d). Now the PN junction is **reverse biased**, and it's a poor conductor.

As electrons and holes pour across a forward-biased junction, many recombine; that is, they drop from the conduction band into the valence band, releasing energy in the process. In light-emitting diodes (LEDs) and diode lasers, this energy appears as photons whose energy is close to that of the band gap. Because $E = hf$, the band gap determines the frequency and, equivalently, the wavelength and color of the emitted light. Development of semiconductor lasers with ever-larger band gaps enabled the evolution from CD to DVD to Blu-ray discs that we outlined in Chapter 32. Conversely, a material whose band gap corresponds to visible-light photons can absorb light energy, promoting electrons to the conduction band and driving current through an external circuit. Such **photovoltaic cells** are increasingly used to generate electric power, both on individual buildings and in large-scale solar power plants (Fig. 37.21).

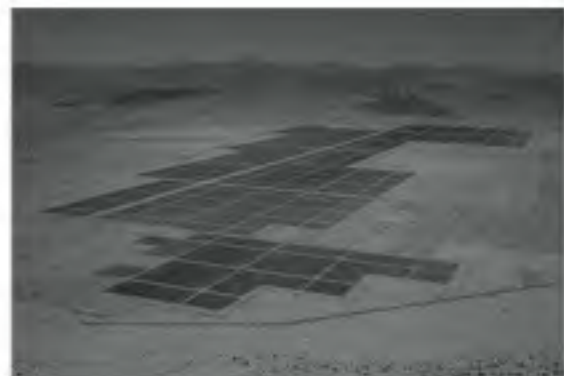


FIGURE 37.21 At 550 MW peak power, California's Desert Sunlight photovoltaic installation is one of the world's largest. Desert Sunlight came online in 2015.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 37.1 CD to Blu-ray: Engineering the Band Gap

The amount of information stored on CDs, DVDs, and Blu-ray discs is limited in part by diffraction effects associated with the wavelength of the laser light used to “read” the disc (see Chapter 32’s Application “Movies on Disc”). The lasers used in optical drives are semiconductor lasers, with wavelengths set by the semiconductors’ band gaps. Compare the band gaps of lasers used for reading CDs and Blu-ray discs.

EVALUATE A CD holds 74 minutes of audio, yet a Blu-ray disc of the same physical size holds several hours of high-definition video. So Blu-ray data are stored at a smaller spatial scale and thus require a shorter wavelength to “read” the data. Since $E = hf = hc/\lambda$, that means higher photon energy and therefore a larger band gap.

ASSESS As Making the Connection shows, the band gap for Blu-ray is nearly twice that of a CD laser. In fact, the trade name “Blu-ray” comes from the blue wavelength used. Multiple-layer storage and better compression algorithms also contribute to Blu-ray’s much greater capacity.

MAKING THE CONNECTION The lasers that “read” CDs, DVDs, and Blu-ray discs operate at 780 nm, 650 nm, and 405 nm, respectively. Find the corresponding band gaps.

EVALUATE Photon energy quantization $E = hf = hc/\lambda$ gives the photon energy and therefore the required band gap. Working in electron-volts gives 1.59 eV for CD, 1.91 eV for DVD, and 3.07 eV for Blu-ray.

37.4 Superconductivity

LO 37.4 Give a qualitative explanation of superconductivity.

In Chapter 24 we introduced **superconductivity**—the complete loss of electrical resistance in some materials at low temperature. First discovered in mercury in 1911, superconductivity was for decades limited to a few elements and alloys below about 20 K. A breakthrough in 1986 brought a new class of metal-oxide superconductors with superconducting **transition temperatures** of about 100 K; today the highest transition temperatures exceed 200 K. The ultimate goal of a room-temperature superconductor, once thought beyond reach, may yet be achieved.

Superconductors find use in an ever-increasing range of applications, including high-strength electromagnets for MRI scanners, particle accelerators, materials separation, and research; compact, efficient motors for vehicle and marine propulsion; high- Q filters for cellphone base stations; sensitive magnetic-field sensors for brain-wave imaging and physics research; underground power transmission in crowded cities; and so-called synchronous condensers for optimizing the power factor in AC power transmission (see Section 28.5). Other applications include superconducting electronic devices that promise orders-of-magnitude increases in computer speed, and magnetically levitated vehicles for ground transportation at speeds up to 500 km/h (see the Application on p. 758).

Superconductivity and Magnetism

The hallmark of a superconductor is zero electrical resistance. Another distinguishing characteristic is the **Meissner effect**, wherein a superconductor excludes magnetic flux from its interior (Fig. 37.22). Figure 37.22c shows why: Currents in the superconductor

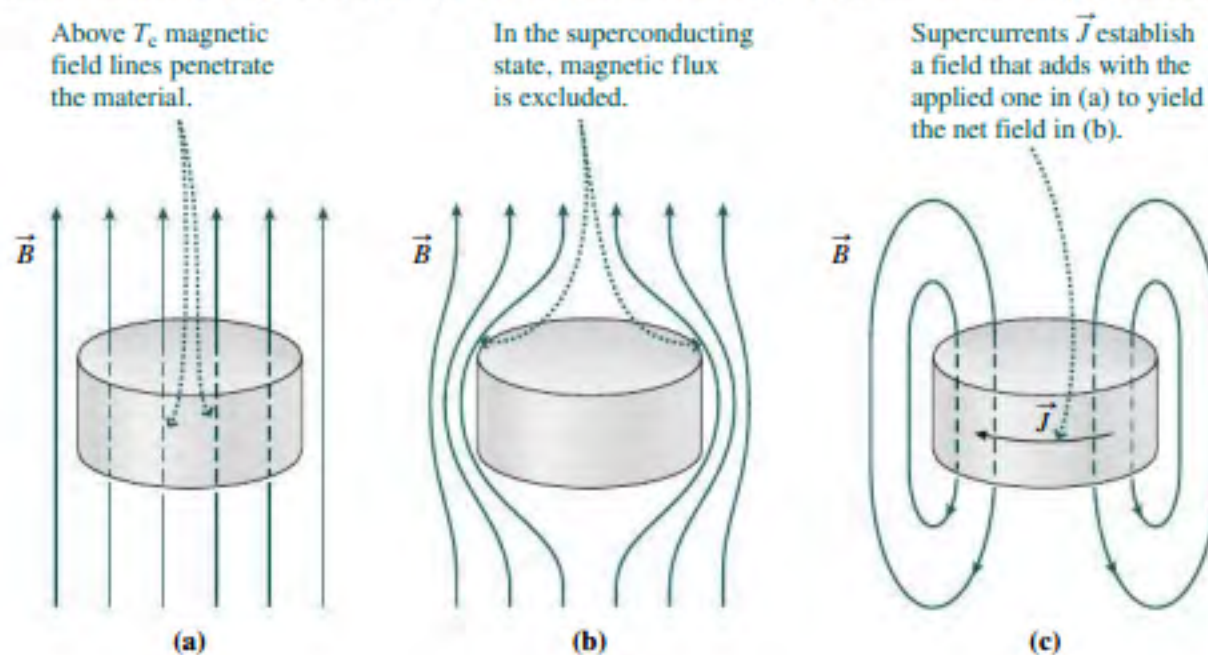


FIGURE 37.22 The Meissner effect.

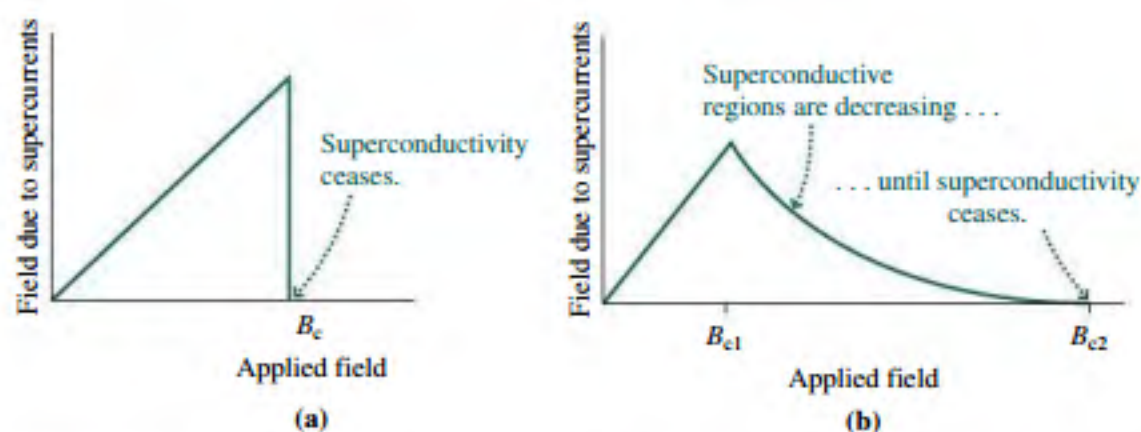


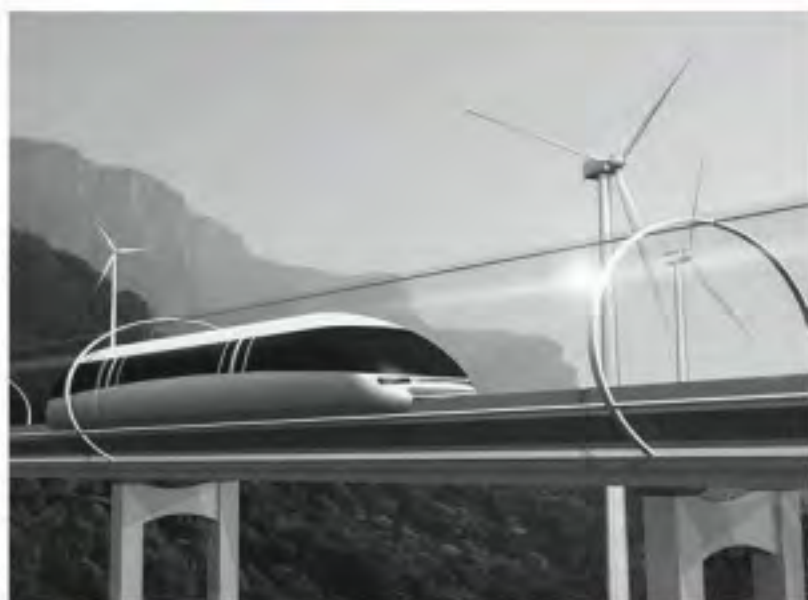
FIGURE 37.23 Responses of (a) type I and (b) type II superconductors to applied magnetic fields. B_c denotes the critical field.

create their own magnetic field that exactly cancels the field within the material. As we pointed out in Section 27.6, a superconductor's exclusion of magnetic flux makes it perfectly diamagnetic. The magnetic levitation shown in Fig. 27.34 is a manifestation of the Meissner effect, wherein a magnet is supported over a superconductor by mutual repulsion between the magnet and currents in the superconductor.

As the strength of an applied magnetic field increases, so do the currents and resulting magnetic field of the superconductor. But beyond a **critical field**, the external magnetic field alters the superconducting state, and the superconductor no longer excludes magnetic flux. In **type I superconductors**, superconductivity ceases abruptly at the critical field (Fig. 37.23a). **Type II superconductors**, in contrast, have upper and lower critical fields, between which superconductivity gradually diminishes (Fig. 37.23b). At the lower critical field the material begins to allow flux penetration, and a regular array of nonsuperconducting regions forms, centered on magnetic field lines. These grow with increasing field, until at the upper critical field the superconducting regions vanish altogether.

Because electric currents generate magnetic fields, the critical field can limit the current-carrying capability of superconductors. Fortunately, type II superconductors have high enough upper critical fields to permit substantial currents. Type IIs tend to be alloys or complex mixtures, and include all the high- T superconductors. Critical fields of high- T superconductors are as high as 100 T; however, these materials are brittle ceramics and present engineering challenges to the fabrication of wires and other flexible conductors.

APPLICATION Maglev!



Passengers arriving at Shanghai's Pudong International Airport make the 30-km trip to a city metro station in only 7 minutes, "flying" on a magnetically levitated vehicle—a maglev—at speeds exceeding 400 km/h. The Shanghai system uses conventional electromagnets and electronic feedback circuits to keep the vehicle levitated a mere 1 cm above its guideway. But others are developing maglev systems that rely on superconducting magnets for both levitation and propulsion. Coils in the guideway carry alternating current, alternately pushing and pulling the vehicle's onboard magnet. In effect, vehicle and guideway become a linear electric motor, much like a conventional motor that's been "unwound" to produce straight-line motion. In superconducting systems, any deviation from perfect alignment with the guideway results in induced currents and, correspondingly, magnetic forces that act to keep the maglev vehicle centered in its guideway. Today's superconducting maglevs require onboard refrigeration systems, so development of a room-temperature superconductor would make maglev a much more attractive transportation alternative. The image is an artist's conception of a superconducting maglev that would operate in a vacuum tunnel to eliminate air resistance.

Theories of Superconductivity

Superconductivity is a purely quantum-mechanical phenomenon; classical physics is totally inadequate to explain its existence. A successful theory of conventional low- T_c superconductors, called the **BCS theory** after its originators, was formulated in 1957 by

John Bardeen, Leon Cooper, and John Robert Schrieffer; the trio shared the 1972 Nobel Prize in Physics.

In BCS theory, superconductivity results from a quantum-mechanical pairing of electrons that leads to a lower-energy state in which electron pairs move through the crystal lattice with no energy loss to the ions, resulting in zero electrical resistance. The electron pairing involves one electron slightly deforming the ion lattice, with the second electron attracted by the slight positive charge of the deformed lattice (Fig. 37.24*a, b*). But the paired electrons aren't physically close; typically, a million other electrons, each paired with another distant electron, may lie between the two (Fig. 37.24*c*). The result of this long-range pairing is coherent motion of the conduction electrons that extends throughout the superconductor. Like well-choreographed dancers, the electrons all move together in a way that precludes energy loss to the ion lattice.

High-temperature superconductors aren't fully understood, although they almost certainly involve quantum-mechanical pairing of charge carriers. The mechanism of the pairing is less clear; one promising candidate involves magnetic interactions, although other mechanisms are under investigation. Superconductivity presents a continuing challenge to both theorists and experimentalists.

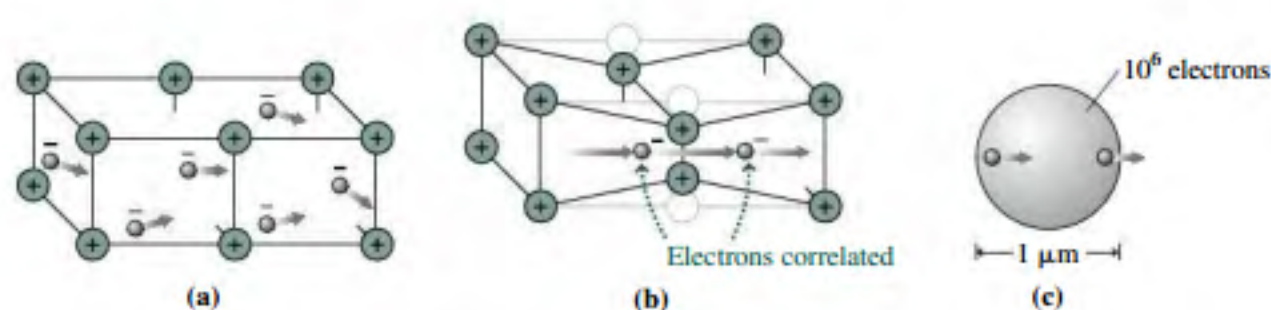


FIGURE 37.24 Electron pairing in BCS theory. (a) A normal conductor, with uncorrelated electrons. (b) In a superconductor, one electron passing through the lattice deforms it slightly. About 10^{-12} s later, a second electron passes through and experiences the potential of the deformed lattice. The two electrons are therefore correlated. (c) Paired electrons are typically $1\ \mu\text{m}$ apart, with a million others in their vicinity. The coherent motion of all the paired electrons results in superconductivity.

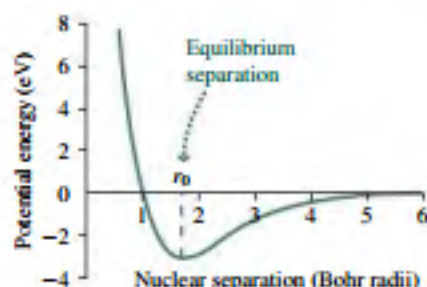
Chapter 37 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is that quantum mechanics can explain the structure of molecules and solids as well as the atoms treated in Chapter 36. At this level we can't solve the Schrödinger equation for these many-particle systems, but we've argued—using energy and angular momentum quantization and the exclusion principle—that quantum effects are important in molecules and solids.

Key Concepts and Equations

Common types of molecular bonding include **ionic**, **covalent**, **hydrogen**, **van der Waals**, and **metallic** bonding. Whatever the bonding mechanism, a stable molecule is at the minimum of its potential-energy curve, shown below for H_2 .



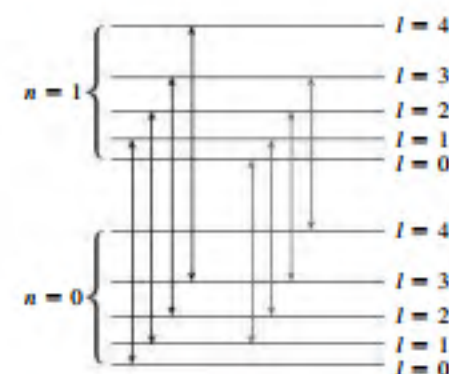
Molecules exhibit both rotational and vibrational energy, giving rise to a rich structure of quantized energy levels and the resulting spectra.

- Quantization of angular momentum leads to quantized rotational energy levels:

$$E_{\text{rot}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2I} l(l+1), l = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

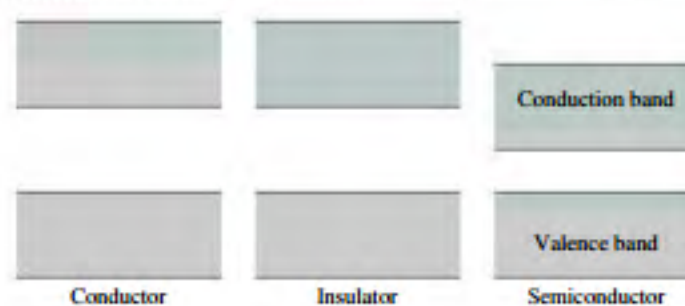
- The vibrational energy levels are those of the harmonic oscillator:

$$E_{\text{vib}} = \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right) \hbar \omega, n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$



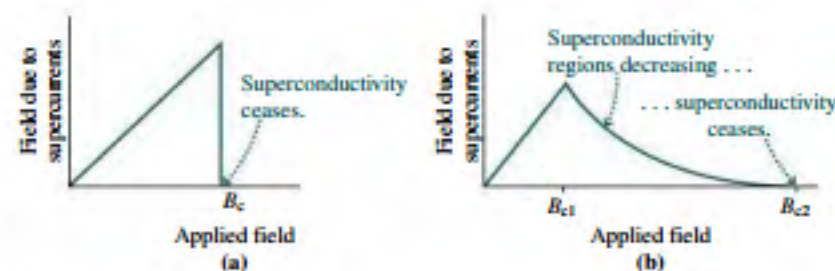
When atoms join to make solids, individual atomic energy levels separate to form **bands**. **Band theory** distinguishes conductors from insulators depending on whether the uppermost occupied band is partially or completely full, respectively. **Semiconductors** are like insulators, but with a much smaller band gap that permits thermal excitation of electrons into the conduction band.

In a metallic conductor, the energy of the highest occupied state at absolute zero is the **Fermi energy**.

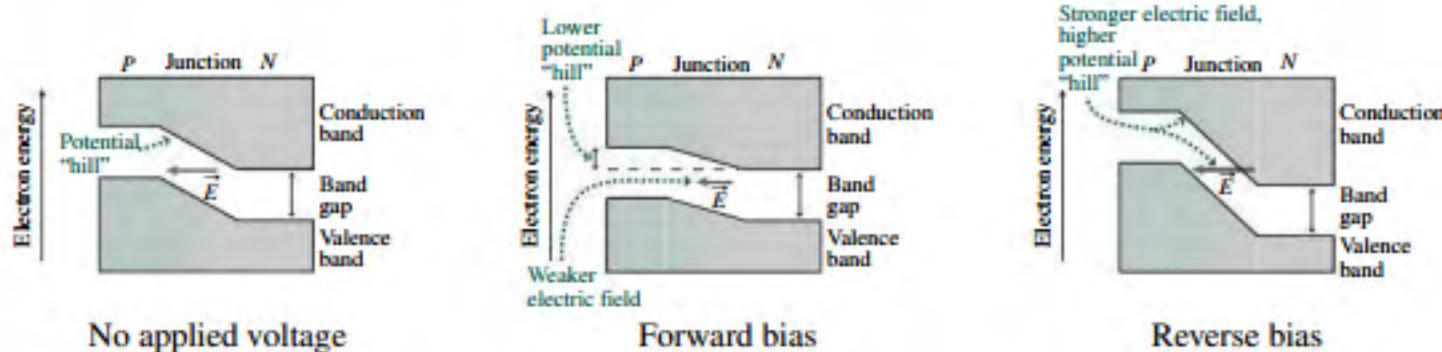


Applications

Superconductivity is a quantum-mechanical phenomenon that occurs at low temperatures and admits no classical explanation. Paired electrons move coherently through a superconductor without energy loss to the ion lattice, resulting in zero electrical resistance. Superconductors exclude magnetic fields—the **Meissner effect**—up to a **critical field** that destroys superconductivity, abruptly in **type I superconductors** and gradually in **type II superconductors**.



The band structure of doped semiconductors helps explain the one-way conduction of a **PN junction**, a phenomenon at the heart of modern electronics.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>LO 37.1 Describe qualitatively the different molecular bonding mechanisms.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 37.1, 37.2, 37.3; Problem 37.62</i></p> <p>LO 37.2 Calculate rotational and vibrational energy levels in molecules.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 37.4, 37.5, 37.6; Exercises 37.11, 37.12, 37.13, 37.14, 37.15; Problems 37.31, 37.32, 37.33, 37.34, 37.35, 37.36, 37.37, 37.38, 37.39, 37.40, 37.41, 37.42, 37.43, 37.44, 37.56, 37.57, 37.59, 37.60, 37.61, 37.66</i></p> | <p>LO 37.3 Describe the structure of solids, including the band theory of electrical conductivity.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 37.7, 37.8; Exercises 37.16, 37.17, 37.18, 37.19, 37.20, 37.21, 37.22; Problems 37.45, 37.46, 37.47, 37.48, 37.49, 37.50, 37.51, 37.52, 37.53, 37.58, 37.63, 37.64</i></p> <p>LO 37.4 Give a qualitative explanation of superconductivity.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 37.9, 37.10; Problems 37.54, 37.55, 37.65</i></p> |
|--|---|

For Thought and Discussion

- If you push two atoms together to form a molecule, the exclusion principle results in a repulsive interaction between the atoms. How does this repulsion come about?
- Why do ionically bonded materials have high melting points?
- Does it make sense to distinguish individual NaCl molecules in a salt crystal? What about individual H₂O molecules in an ice crystal? Explain.
- What are the approximate relative magnitudes of the energies associated with electronic excitation of a molecule, with molecular vibration, and with molecular rotation?
- Radio astronomers have discovered many complex organic molecules in interstellar space. Why were these discoveries made with radio telescopes and not optical telescopes?
- In Fig. 18.17, why are rotational states excited at lower temperatures than vibrational states?
- How is quantum mechanics successful in interpreting the properties of molecules?
- How would you expect the conductivity of an undoped semiconductor to depend on temperature? Why?
- Name some technological innovations that might result from a room-temperature superconductor.
- How do type I and type II superconductors differ?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 37.2 Molecular Energy Levels

- The rotational inertia of oxygen (O₂) is $1.95 \times 10^{-46} \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. Find the wavelength of electromagnetic radiation needed to excite oxygen molecules to their first rotational excited state.
- Find the wavelength of a photon emitted in the $l = 5$ to $l = 4$ transition of a molecule whose rotational inertia is $1.75 \times 10^{-47} \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$.
- Photons of wavelength 1.65 cm excite transitions from the rotational ground state to the first rotational excited state in a gas. What's the rotational inertia of the gas molecules?
- The classical vibration frequency for diatomic hydrogen (H₂) is $1.32 \times 10^{14} \text{ Hz}$. Find the spacing between its vibrational energy levels.

- The energy between adjacent vibrational levels in diatomic nitrogen is 0.293 eV. What's the classical vibration frequency of N₂?

Section 37.3 Solids

- Use the 2.16-g/cm^3 density of NaCl to calculate the ionic spacing r_0 in the NaCl crystal. (*Hint: Consult Appendix D.*)
- Express the 7.84-eV ionic cohesive energy of NaCl in kilocalories per mole of ions.
- Lithium fluoride, LiF, has the same crystal structure as NaCl and therefore has essentially the same Madelung constant α . Its ionic cohesive energy is -10.5 eV , and the value of n in Equation 37.4 is 6.25. Find the equilibrium ionic separation in LiF.
- Find the wavelength of light emitted by a gallium phosphide (GaP) light-emitting diode. (*Hint: See Table 37.1.*)
- What's the shortest wavelength of light that could be produced by electrons jumping the band gap in a material from Table 37.1? What is that material?
- Which material in Table 37.1 would provide the longest wavelength of light in a light-emitting diode? What's that wavelength?
- A common light-emitting diode is made with gallium arsenide phosphide (GaAsP) and emits red light at 650 nm. What's its band gap?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

- Example 37.2:** Consider the situation of Example 37.2, but now with the HCl molecule's rotational energy approximately 50% greater than its vibrational energy. Find (a) the molecule's rotational quantum number l and (b) its angular momentum.
- Example 37.2:** A hydrogen chloride molecule is in its vibrational ground state and in the rotational state with $l = 6$. Compare its rotational and vibrational energies.

25. **Example 37.2:** The classical vibration frequency for the hydrogen fluoride (HF) molecule is 1.24×10^{14} Hz and its rotational inertia is 1.34×10^{-47} kg·m². If an HF molecule is in its vibrational ground state, and if its rotational and vibrational energies are nearly equal, what are (a) its rotational quantum number l and (b) its angular momentum.
26. **Example 37.2:** A hydrogen fluoride molecule is in its vibrational ground state and in the rotational state with $l = 4$. Compare its rotational and vibrational energies. See the preceding problem for data on HF.
27. **Example 37.3:** Potassium chloride (KCl) has the same crystal structure as NaCl. The equilibrium separation in KCl is 0.315 nm and the ionic cohesive energy is -7.21 eV. Find the constant n in Equation 37.4 for potassium chloride.
28. **Example 37.3:** Lithium chloride (LiCl) has the same crystal structure as NaCl and KCl. The equilibrium separation in LiCl is 0.257 nm and the exponent n in Equation 37.4 for LiCl is 8.00. Find the ionic cohesive energy of LiCl.
29. **Example 37.3:** The crystal structure of cesium chloride (CsCl) is different from the NaCl structure common to Example 37.3 and the two previous problems, resulting in a different Madelung constant: $\alpha = 1.763$. The equilibrium spacing between cesium and chlorine in this structure is 0.357 nm and the ionic cohesive energy is -6.23 eV. Find the constant n in Equation 37.4 for CsCl.
30. **Example 37.3:** Use the data for CsCl in the previous problem (including the answer at the back of the book) to determine the cohesive energy in a CsCl crystal that's been (a) compressed so the interatomic separation is 0.750 times its equilibrium value and (b) stretched so the interatomic separation is 1.25 times its equilibrium value.

Problems

31. A molecule drops from the $l = 2$ to the $l = 1$ rotational level, emitting a 3.40-meV photon. If the molecule then drops to the rotational ground state, what energy photon will it emit?
32. A molecule absorbs a photon and jumps to the next higher rotational state. If the photon energy is three times what would be needed for a transition from the rotational ground state to the first rotational excited state, between what two levels is the transition?
33. Find an expression for the energy of a photon required for a transition from the $(l - 1)$ th level to the l th level in a molecule with rotational inertia I .
34. A molecule with rotational inertia I undergoes a transition from the l th rotational level to the $(l - 1)$ th level. Show that the wavelength of the emitted photon is $\lambda = 4\pi^2 Ic/hl$.
35. The rotational spectrum of diatomic oxygen shows spectral lines spaced 0.356 meV apart in energy. Find O₂'s atomic separation. (*Hint:* See Example 37.1, and remember that the oxygen atoms have equal mass.)
36. A spectrum for hydrogen bromide (HBr), similar to Fig. 37.9, shows that the energy associated with rotational transitions increases by 2.10 meV from one rotational transition to the next. Find the atomic separation in HBr, treating the massive bromine as fixed.
37. For the HCl molecule of Example 37.2, determine (a) the energy of the vibrational ground state and (b) the energies of photons emitted in transitions among adjacent vibrational states, for the cases $\Delta l = +1$ and $\Delta l = -1$.
38. Diatomic deuterium has classical vibration frequency 9.35×10^{13} Hz and rotational inertia 9.17×10^{-48} kg·m². Find (a) the energy and (b) the wavelength of a photon emitted in a transition between the $n = 1, l = 1$ state and the $n = 0, l = 2$ state.
39. **ENW** Carbon dioxide contributes to global warming because the triatomic CO₂ molecule exhibits many vibrational and rotational excited states, and transitions among them occur in the infrared region where Earth emits most of its radiation. Among the strongest IR-absorbing transitions is one that takes CO₂ from its ground state to the first excited state of a "bending" vibration and sets the molecule rotating in its first rotational excited state. The energy required for this transition is 82.96 meV. What IR wavelength does this transition absorb?
40. An oxygen molecule is in its vibrational and rotational ground states. It absorbs a photon of energy 0.19653 eV and jumps to the $n = 1, l = 1$ state. It then drops to $n = 0, l = 2$, emitting a 0.19546-eV photon. Find (a) the classical vibration frequency and (b) the rotational inertia of the molecule.
41. The internuclear spacing in diatomic hydrogen (H₂) is 74.14 pm. Find (a) the energy and (b) the wavelength of a photon emitted in a transition from the first rotational excited state to the ground state. (c) In what spectral region does this wavelength lie?
42. **BIO** Biological macromolecules are complex structures that exhibit many more vibrational modes than the diatomic molecules considered in this chapter. DNA has a low-frequency "breathing" mode whose associated photon wavelength is 330 μm. Find the corresponding (a) frequency and (b) photon energy in eV.
43. Infrared radiation with 35.8-μm wavelength excites the transition from the state $n = 0, l = 1$ to the state $n = 1, l = 2$ in KCl, for which the rotational inertia is 2.43×10^{-45} kg·m². Find the classical vibration frequency associated with this molecule.
44. Find the wavelengths emitted in all allowed transitions between the first three rotational states in the $n = 1$ level to any states in the $n = 0$ level in H₂, whose rotational inertia and classical vibration frequency are 4.60×10^{-48} kg·m² and 3.69×10^{14} Hz, respectively.
45. A salt crystal contains 10^{21} sodium-chlorine pairs. How much energy would it take to compress the crystal to 90% of its normal size?
46. You're researching the possibility of storing radioactive waste in underground salt formations. In support of this idea, you'd like to demonstrate that salt is extremely resistant to compression. You differentiate Equation 37.4 to obtain an expression for the force on an ion in an ionic crystal, and then use your result to find the force on an ion in NaCl if the crystal were compressed to half its equilibrium spacing (see Example 37.3 for relevant parameters). You compare this with the electrostatic attraction at this compression. What do you find?
47. **CH** Integrating Equation 37.5 over all energies gives the total number of states per unit volume in a metal. Therefore, integrating from $E = 0$ to $E = E_F$ —that is, over the occupied states only—gives the number of conduction electrons per unit volume. Carry out this integration to show that the electron number density is given by

$$n = \left(\frac{2^{9/2} \pi m^{3/2}}{3h^2} \right) E_F^{3/2}$$

48. The Fermi energy in aluminum is 11.6 eV. Use the result of Problem 47 to find the density of conduction electrons in aluminum.
49. Use the result of Problem 47 to determine the Fermi energy for calcium, which has 4.6×10^{28} conduction electrons per cubic meter.
50. Find (a) the speed associated with an electron whose kinetic energy is equal to copper's 7.00-eV Fermi energy and (b) the thermal speed of an electron at room temperature (293 K). (c) What does the difference between your calculated speeds tell you about whether a quantum or a classical model best describes copper's electrical conductivity?
51. The *Fermi temperature* is defined by equating the thermal energy kT to the Fermi energy, where k is Boltzmann's constant. Calculate the Fermi temperature for silver, for which $E_F = 5.48$ eV, and compare it with room temperature.
52. Photons with energy lower than a semiconductor's band gap aren't readily absorbed by the material, so a measurement of absorption versus wavelength gives the band gap. An absorption spectrum for silicon shows no absorption for wavelengths longer than 1090 nm. Use this information to calculate the band gap in silicon, and verify its value in Table 37.1.
53. Calculate the median wavelength λ_{median} for sunlight, treating the Sun as a 5800-K blackbody (see Equation 34.2b). Use your result to decide whether zinc selenide, with band gap 3.6 eV, would make a good photovoltaic cell.
54. Pure aluminum, which superconducts below 1.20 K, exhibits a critical field of 9.57 mT. Find the maximum current that can be carried in a 0.255-mm-diameter aluminum superconducting wire without the field from that current exceeding the critical field. (*Hint:* Where is the field greatest? Consult Example 26.8.)
55. The critical field in a niobium–titanium superconductor is 15 T. What current in a 4000-turn solenoid 70 cm long will produce a field of this strength?
56. The transition from the ground state to the first rotational excited state in diatomic oxygen (O_2) requires 356 μeV . At what temperature would the thermal energy kT be sufficient to set diatomic oxygen into rotation? Would you ever find diatomic oxygen exhibiting the specific heat of a monatomic gas at normal pressure?
57. *Green fluorescent protein* (GFP) is a substance that was first extracted from jellyfish; variants are used to “tag” biological molecules for study. The original “wild” GFP absorbs 395-nm light, undergoing an upward transition to an excited state. Movement of a proton within the protein then excites it to 2.44 eV above the ground state. Photons emitted in the subsequent downward transition to the ground state provide a visual indication of the GFP's location as seen in a microscope. What's the wavelength of these photons?
58. The density of rubidium iodide (RbI) is 3.55 g/cm^3 , and its ionic cohesive energy is -145 kcal/mol . Determine (a) the equilibrium separation and (b) the exponent n in Equation 37.4 for RbI .
59. Example 37.1 treated the massive chlorine in HCl as being fixed—a reasonable approximation given that chlorine's mass is much greater than hydrogen's. Now consider the more general case of a diatomic molecule consisting of two atoms with masses m_1 and m_2 . Show that, in this more general case, the expression

for the internuclear separation R given in Example 37.1 should be modified to read $R = \sqrt{(m_1 + m_2)I/m_1m_2}$.

60. Use the result of the preceding problem to determine more accurate values for the internuclear separation in HCl , considering both the dominant chlorine isotopes ^{35}Cl and ^{37}Cl . By what percentage is the value found in Example 37.1 in error because of the example's treatment of the chlorine as fixed?
61. The Madelung constant (Section 37.3) is notoriously difficult to calculate because it's the sum of an alternating series of nearly equal terms. But it can be calculated for a hypothetical one-dimensional crystal consisting of an evenly spaced line of alternating positive and negative ions (Fig. 37.25). Show that the potential energy of an ion in this “crystal” can be written as

$$U = -\alpha \frac{ke^2}{r_0}$$

where the Madelung constant α has the value $2 \ln 2$.

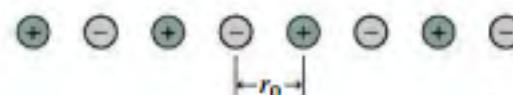


FIGURE 37.25 Problem 61

62. The lower-energy states in a covalently bound diatomic molecule can be found approximately from the so-called Morse potential $U(r) = U_0(e^{2(r-r_0)/a} - e^{(r-r_0)/a})$, where r is the atomic separation and U_0 , r_0 , and a are constants determined from experimental data. Calculate dU/dr and d^2U/dr^2 to show that U has a minimum, and find expressions for (a) U_{min} and (b) the separation r_{min} at the minimum energy.
63. (a) Count the number of electron states $N(E)$ with energy equal to or less than E in Equation 35.8 by finding the volume available to such states in the space with Cartesian coordinate axes n_x , n_y , n_z . (*Hint:* Consider each set of positive integers, at the corner of a unit cube, and that lies inside a radius $\sqrt{n_x^2 + n_y^2 + n_z^2}$, and remember that there are two spin values per state.) (b) Differentiate $N(E)$ with respect to E to obtain Equation 37.5.
64. Use Equation 37.5 to calculate the average energy of a conduction electron at $T = 0$ in terms of the Fermi energy.
65. You're designing a new medical MRI imager. The design calls for a long solenoid wound with 75 turns per meter of niobium–titanium superconductor. The upper critical field for your particular Nb–Ti alloy is 15 T. To avoid a disastrous loss of superconductivity (see Example 27.9), you want to limit the actual field to half the upper critical field. What maximum current do you specify for your device?
66. The table below shows the wavelengths of photons emitted when identical molecules drop from the l th rotational level to the $(l - 1)$ th level. Find quantities that, when plotted, should yield a straight line. Make your plot, determine a best-fit line, and use the result to find the rotational inertia of the molecules.

Initial state, l	2	3	4	5	6
Wavelength, λ (nm)	0.24	0.17	0.12	0.095	0.078

Passage Problems

Photovoltaic (PV) cells convert sunlight energy directly into electricity, with no moving parts (recall Fig. 37.21). In a PV cell, photons incident on a semiconductor PN junction promote electrons to the conduction band, producing electron-hole pairs and driving current through an external circuit (Fig. 37.26). Commercially available PV cells are 15–20% efficient, meaning they convert this fraction of incident sunlight into electrical energy; the theoretical maximum efficiency is around 33% for silicon-based PV cells. An important limitation on PV efficiency is the relation between the solar spectrum and PV cells' semiconductor band-gap energy. For silicon, the band gap is 1.14 eV; photons with less energy can't promote electrons to the conduction zone and are thus unavailable for the PV energy conversion. Conversely, photons with more than the band-gap energy give up their excess energy as heat, also reducing PV efficiency.

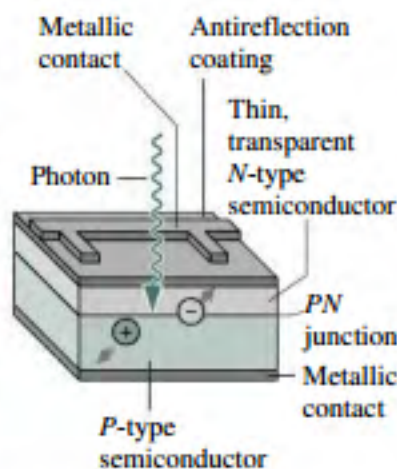


FIGURE 37.26 Operation of a photovoltaic cell, showing a solar photon producing an electron-hole pair at the *PN* junction (Passage Problems 67–70).

67. Problem 53 shows that the median wavelength in the solar spectrum is 710 nm, at the visible-IR boundary. What percentage of the incident solar energy can a silicon PV cell absorb? (*Hint:* See Exercise 25 in Chapter 36.)
- about 25%
 - about 50%
 - about 75%
68. How does the percentage of the number of incident solar photons that a PV cell absorbs compare with the energy percentage in the preceding problem?
- It's less than the energy percentage.
 - It's the same as the energy percentage.
 - It's more than the energy percentage.

69. Making PV cells with a semiconductor whose band gap is lower than silicon's will
- increase the fraction of solar energy absorbed while decreasing the amount of absorbed energy lost as heat.
 - increase both the fraction of solar energy absorbed and the amount of absorbed energy lost as heat.
 - decrease the fraction of solar energy absorbed while increasing the amount of absorbed energy lost as heat.
 - decrease both the fraction of solar energy absorbed and the amount of absorbed energy lost as heat.
70. One way to improve PV efficiency is to make multilayer cells with several *PN* junctions using semiconductors with different band gaps. For a multilayer PV cell to be effective,
- the junction with the largest band gap should be closest to the top of the PV cell.
 - the junction with the largest band gap should be closest to the bottom of the PV cell.
 - the largest band gap should correspond to infrared wavelengths.
 - the smallest band gap should correspond to ultraviolet wavelengths.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

The Schrödinger equation.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 37.1 (c)
 37.2 rotational energy
 37.3 (c) they're equal because both areas represent the total number of electrons

Nuclear Physics

Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Mass–energy equivalence (Sections 7.5 and 33.7)
- The electric force (Section 20.2)
- Spin and quantization of angular momentum (Sections 36.1 and 36.2)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 38.1 Describe the structure of the atomic nucleus.
- LO 38.2 Describe alpha, beta, and gamma radioactivity and perform calculations involving half-lives.
- LO 38.3 Explain the curve of binding energy and how it accounts for nuclear fission and fusion and for the origin of the elements.
- LO 38.4 Describe nuclear fission and explain how it's used to power nuclear reactors.
- LO 38.5 Explain nuclear fusion as it occurs in stars and describe attempts to harness fusion as an energy source on Earth.



Smoke pours from a damaged reactor at Japan's Fukushima Dai-ichi nuclear power plant. How dependent is humankind on nuclear power?

In Chapters 36 and 37 we explored atomic structure and saw how atoms join to form molecules and solids. Now we turn inward, to the atomic nucleus. Since Ernest Rutherford and his colleagues discovered the nucleus in 1911, we've known that all the atom's positive charge and nearly all its mass are concentrated in a tiny nuclear region only about 10^{-5} of the atom's diameter. By 1920 Rutherford had proposed that nuclei beyond hydrogen contain neutral as well as positive particles, and today we know the nucleus is a composite of positive protons and neutral neutrons—collectively called **nucleons**. As we've seen, the uncertainty principle implies high minimum energies for particles confined in small regions, so we can infer that the nucleus is a huge energy repository. We'll conclude this chapter with a look at humankind's attempts to harness that energy.

38.1 Elements, Isotopes, and Nuclear Structure

LO 38.1 *Describe the structure of the atomic nucleus.*

You saw in Chapter 36 how the number of electrons determines an atom's shell structure and therefore its chemical behavior. It's the number of protons in the nucleus—the **atomic number**, Z —that, in turn, determines the number of electrons in a neutral atom. That means all nuclei with the same Z belong to the same element.

Isotopes and Nuclear Symbols

Nuclei of the same element can, however, have different numbers of neutrons. That's because neutrons don't affect the nuclear charge and therefore have negligible influence on chemical behavior. Nuclei of the same element with

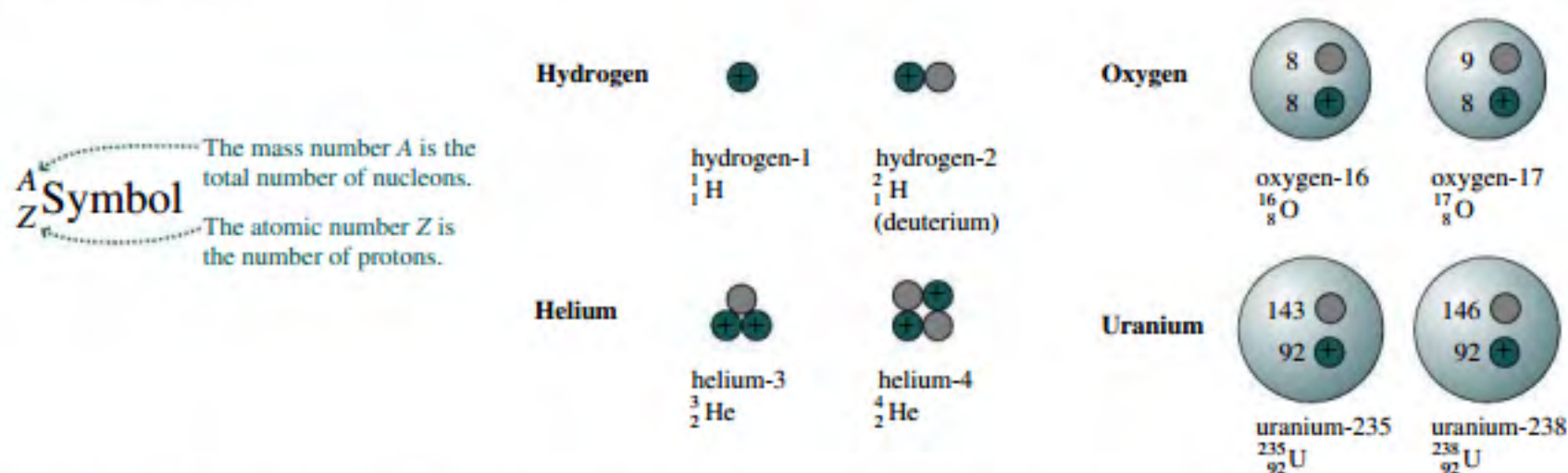


FIGURE 38.1 Isotopes of a given element have the same number of protons but different numbers of neutrons.

different numbers of neutrons are distinct **isotopes**. We call the total number of nucleons the **mass number**, A . Specification of the atomic number Z and mass number A then fully describes a nucleus. Figure 38.1 shows the conventional symbolism used in describing nuclei: the element symbol with a preceding subscript for Z and superscript for A . Actually, the atomic number and symbol are redundant. To be helium (He), for example, *means* to have two protons and therefore $Z = 2$; to be uranium *means* $Z = 92$. Sometimes, therefore, we write helium-4, He-4, or ${}^4\text{He}$ to mean the same thing as ${}^4_2\text{He}$.

Elements typically have several naturally occurring isotopes; a few are shown in Fig. 38.1. Most hydrogen has a single proton in its nucleus, but about one in 6500 hydrogen atoms is deuterium (${}^2_1\text{H}$), whose nucleus contains a proton and a neutron. Most oxygen is ${}^{16}_8\text{O}$, but O-17 and O-18 also occur naturally; their ratios in polar ice cores provide valuable information about past climates. Most uranium is ${}^{238}_{92}\text{U}$, but 0.7% is the U-235 that's used in fission reactors and weapons—hence the great concern about the proliferation of uranium-enrichment facilities to increase the proportion of U-235. Incidentally, the atomic masses listed in the periodic table are averages that reflect the natural abundances of an element's several isotopes. Most elements also have short-lived radioactive isotopes that don't usually occur naturally but can be produced through nuclear reactions; more on these later.

GOT IT?

38.1 Determine the number of protons and neutrons in these nuclei: (1) ${}^{12}_6\text{C}$; (2) ${}^{15}_8\text{O}$; (3) ${}^{57}_{26}\text{Fe}$; (4) ${}^{239}_{94}\text{Pu}$.

The Nuclear Force

Given the electrical repulsion of the protons, there must be another force acting attractively to bind the nuclear constituents. Throughout much of the 20th century, this **nuclear force** was considered fundamental, but we now recognize it as a manifestation of a more fundamental force between the quarks that make up neutrons and protons. We'll explore quarks and their interactions in Chapter 39.

The attractive nuclear force acts between all nucleons—neutrons and protons, protons and protons, neutrons and neutrons. It's very strong at distances of less than a few femtometers (10^{-15} m) but falls approximately exponentially with distance—more rapidly than the inverse-square falloff of the electric force. The attractive nuclear force therefore dominates between two neighboring protons, but electrical repulsion becomes dominant for more widely separated protons. The structure of the nucleus is determined, to a first approximation, by the interplay between the weaker but long-range electric force and the stronger but shorter-range nuclear force.

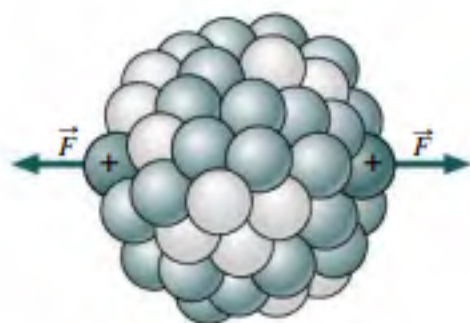


FIGURE 38.2 Two widely separated protons in a large nucleus experience significant electrical repulsion and negligible nuclear attraction.

Stable Nuclei

Not every combination of protons and neutrons will stick together indefinitely. Too many protons, and electrical repulsion wins out; sooner or later the nucleus decays by emitting a chunk of nuclear material (more details in Section 38.2). In larger nuclei most protons

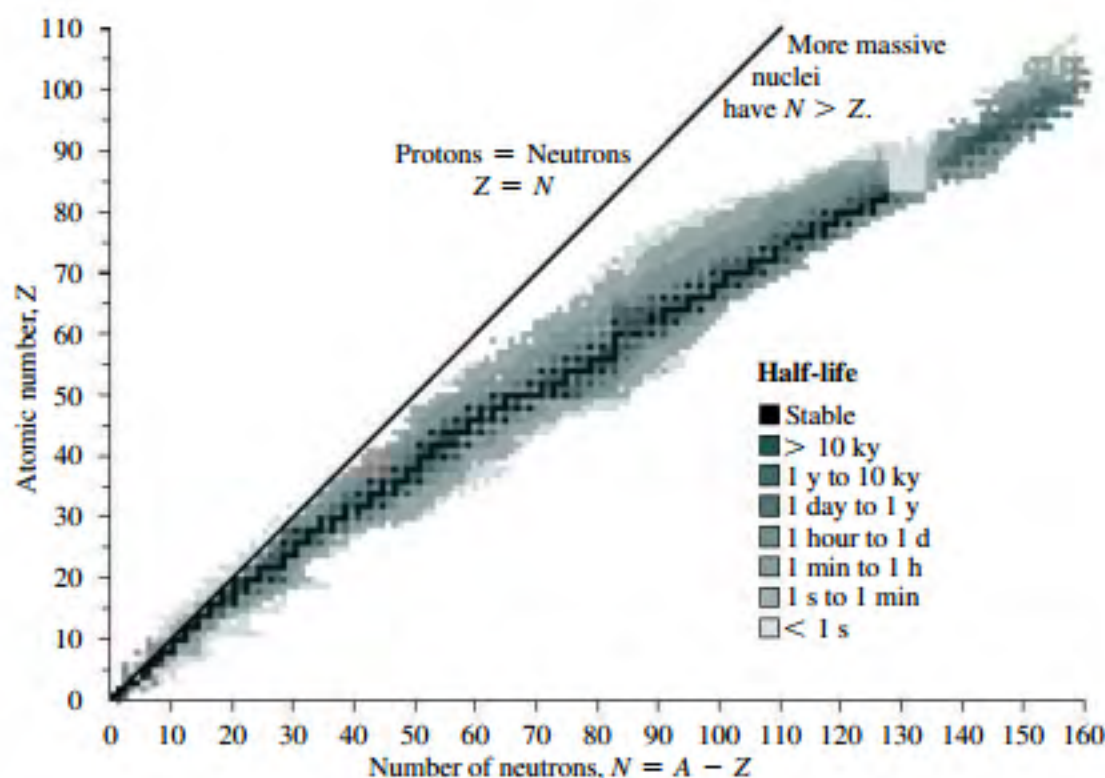


FIGURE 38.3 A chart of the nuclides, color-coded by half-life.

are far apart and therefore experience electrical repulsion more strongly than nuclear attraction (Fig. 38.2). To hold these nuclei together therefore requires more neutrons, which contribute attractive nuclear force but not electrical repulsion. So larger nuclei tend to have a higher ratio of neutrons to protons. Even this effect has its limits, though, and the result is that there are no stable nuclei for $Z > 83$.

Too many neutrons also make a nucleus unstable. That's because the exclusion principle requires extra neutrons to go into higher energy states, making individual particles more likely to escape the nucleus. Furthermore, the neutron itself is an unstable particle; an isolated neutron decays spontaneously into a proton, an electron, and an elusive particle called a *neutrino*. This decay is suppressed in stable nuclei but occurs if there are too many neutrons.

The delicate balance between neutrons and protons results in about 400 known stable nuclei, collectively called **nuclides**. Figure 38.3 is a **chart of the nuclides**, showing the stable nuclei, along with many unstable ones, on a chart of atomic number Z versus neutron number $N = A - Z$. The chart shows that lighter nuclei tend to have equal numbers of protons and neutrons, but that heavier nuclei invariably have more neutrons to compensate for the increasing electrical repulsion of their widely separated protons.

Nuclear Size

Unlike atomic electrons in their widely separated orbitals, nucleons pack tightly into the nucleus. Studies show that most nuclei are spherical, with the **nuclear radius**—defined as the radius at which the density has fallen to half its central value—given approximately by

$$R = R_0 A^{1/3} \quad (38.1)$$

where $R_0 = 1.2$ fm and A is the mass number. This cube-root dependence is what we should expect for a tightly packed sphere whose volume is proportional to the number A of its constituent particles, as suggested in Fig. 38.2. This tight packing also suggests that all nuclei have approximately the same density, on the order of 10^{17} kg/m³. A teaspoon of nuclear matter has a mass roughly equal to the mass of the Rock of Gibraltar! That absurdly high density reaffirms our picture of the complete atom as mostly empty space with its mass concentrated in a tiny nucleus.

Nuclear Spin

In Chapter 36 we noted the important role of electron spin in atomic structure. Protons and neutrons are, like electrons, spin- $\frac{1}{2}$ particles. The spins of individual nucleons, combined with any angular momentum associated with their motions within the nucleus, give the

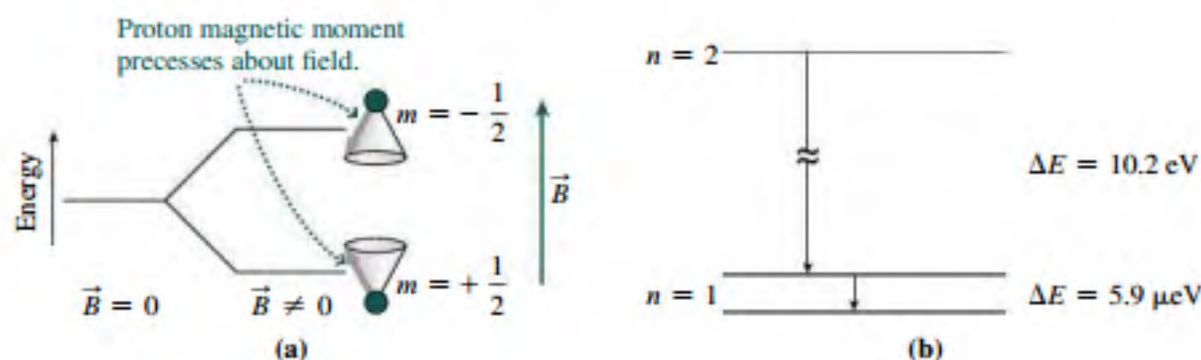


FIGURE 38.4 (a) A nonzero magnetic field $\vec{B}$ splits the energy level of the spin- $\frac{1}{2}$ proton into two levels. (b) The two possible orientations of the proton in the magnetic field of the electron split the hydrogen ground state into two levels $5.9 \mu\text{eV}$ apart.

nucleus a quantized spin angular momentum I that obeys the same rules we've seen for other quantized angular momenta:

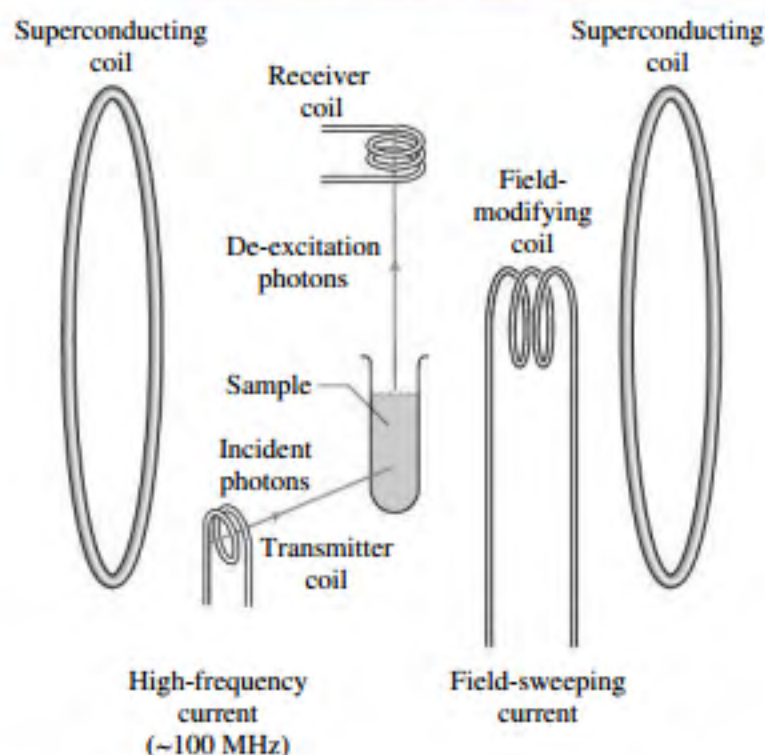
$$I = \sqrt{i(i+1)}\hbar \quad (38.2)$$

Here i , the nuclear spin quantum number, is a multiple of one-half. The component of I on a given axis is also quantized, just like other angular momenta, according to $I_z = m_i\hbar$, where m_i ranges from $-i$ to i in steps of 1.

The spin quantum number i is an even or odd multiple of one-half depending on whether the number of nucleons is even or odd. This means that nuclei with even values of A are bosons, particles with integer spin that don't obey the exclusion principle. Odd- A nuclei, in contrast, have half-integer spin and are fermions that do obey the exclusion principle. This distinction can lead to profound differences in physical behavior between isotopes of the same element. Helium-4, for example, becomes superfluid at low temperatures, meaning it flows without any viscosity. That's possible because helium-4 nuclei are bosons that can all occupy the same quantum state. Similar superfluidity doesn't occur in fermionic helium-3, although at extremely low temperatures He-3 nuclei themselves pair to form spin-1 particles that do make a superfluid.

The angular momentum of the nucleus results in a nuclear magnetic dipole moment, usually expressed in units of the **nuclear magneton**, $\mu_N = e\hbar/2m_p = 5.05 \times 10^{-27} \text{ J/T}$, where m_p is the proton mass. The proton itself has a magnetic moment whose component on a given axis takes either of the values $\pm 2.793 \mu_N = \pm 1.41 \times 10^{-26} \text{ J/T}$ —a value that's usually listed as “the magnetic moment of the proton,” although it's actually

APPLICATION Nuclear Magnetic Resonance and MRI



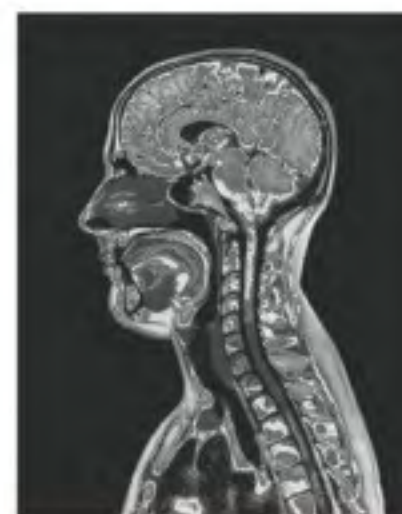
Putting nuclei in an external magnetic field creates two possible energy states, as suggested in Fig. 38.4a, depending on whether the nuclear magnetic moments are more nearly parallel or antiparallel to the field. Applying electromagnetic radiation with the appropriate photon energy will flip nuclei into the higher energy state. But because nuclei also experience magnetic fields from the electrons moving around them, the exact energy required is extremely sensitive to the details of the electron distribution—that is, to the surrounding molecular structure.

Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) uses this nuclear spin flipping to determine the structure of chemical compounds. In an NMR spectrometer, shown schematically in the figure, the sample under analysis is placed in a uniform magnetic field B , usually from superconducting coils. A smaller coil carries AC current at a frequency f corresponding to photon energy hf that would flip the spin of an isolated nucleus in the field B . The coil emits electromagnetic waves, and if the nuclei absorb the associated photons, then they flip into their higher states and drop back, emitting radiation of frequency f in the process. A receiver coil detects this radiation.

Because of the extra magnetic effect of the surrounding electrons, nuclei won't generally flip at the exact frequency and field B . So the field is varied until the superposition of the applied field and the electron-generated field is exactly right. This condition of magnetic resonance then produces the up/down

spin flips that generate a signal in the receiver coil. Scanning the field through a range of values detects nuclei in different electron environments, and from this information scientists can deduce the molecular structure.

Nuclear magnetic resonance with protons (H nuclei) is the basis of **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI), a widely used medical procedure. In MRI, a patient is placed inside a large solenoid whose field varies slightly with position. That makes the magnetic resonance frequency a function of position, and thus the resonance signal can be used to localize the protons undergoing magnetic resonance. A computer then uses the resonance information to construct an image. Most of the MRI signal comes from fat and water, making MRI especially good at imaging soft tissue that doesn't show well in X-rays. The photo shows an MRI image of a human head and upper torso; soft-tissue structures including the brain are clearly visible.



the component. Interaction of the nuclear magnetic moment with magnetic fields alters very slightly the energy levels of the atom—although the effect is much smaller than with atomic electrons because the higher proton mass makes for a much smaller magnetic moment. In hydrogen, for example, the proton can have either of two spin orientations relative to the magnetic field due to the electron, and the result is **hyperfine splitting** of the ground state into two levels a mere $5.9\text{ }\mu\text{eV}$ apart (Fig. 38.4). Transitions between these levels result in a spectral line at a radio wavelength of 21 cm. Radio astronomers use this line to detect interstellar clouds of neutral hydrogen.

EXAMPLE 38.1 Nuclear Spins: Finding the MRI Frequency

The MRI solenoid of Example 26.9 produces a 1.50-T magnetic field. What frequency should be used to drive the transmitter coil in this MRI device?

INTERPRET MRI is an implementation of nuclear magnetic resonance using protons (see the Application), so we're being asked for the frequency corresponding to photons that will flip a proton in a 1.50-T magnetic field.

DEVELOP We need to calculate the necessary photon energy and then use $E = hf$ to find the corresponding frequency. We've just seen that the proton acts like a magnetic dipole whose component along the field is $\mu_p = \pm 1.41 \times 10^{-26}\text{ J/T}$. Equation 26.16 gives the energy of a magnetic dipole: $U = -\vec{\mu} \cdot \vec{B}$. Here we're given the component of the magnetic moment $\vec{\mu}$ along the field, so our two energies

become $U = \pm \mu_p B$, where the signs correspond to the two possible spin orientations. A spin flip changes a proton's energy from $+\mu_p B$ to $-\mu_p B$, so our plan is to find the energy difference between these levels, equate it to the photon energy hf , and solve for f .

EVALUATE We have $E = \mu_p B - (-\mu_p B) = 2\mu_p B$, so

$$f = \frac{E}{h} = \frac{2\mu_p B}{h} = \frac{(2)(1.41 \times 10^{-26}\text{ J/T})(1.50\text{ T})}{6.63 \times 10^{-34}\text{ J}\cdot\text{s}} = 63.8\text{ MHz}$$

ASSESS This frequency is in the radio region of the electromagnetic spectrum, consistent with the diagram in the Application showing the use of coils and currents, and the approximate transmitter coil frequency of 100 MHz.

Models of Nuclear Structure

We've seen how the right ratio of neutrons to protons is essential for stable nuclei, and why that ratio increases for larger nuclei. Figure 38.3, the chart of the nuclides, summarizes this information. But take a closer look at that figure: There are more stable nuclei for even values of Z , and some—those with the so-called **magic numbers** 2, 8, 20, 28, 50, 82, and 126 protons or neutrons—have many more stable nuclei. Why?

Answering this question and explaining the decay mechanisms and lifetimes of unstable nuclei require a theory of nuclear structure. There still is no complete nuclear theory, analogous to the atomic theory of Chapter 36, that explains all aspects of all nuclei. Our still-imperfect knowledge of the nuclear force, and the tight packing of nucleons, render useless a simple two-particle model like the one we used for hydrogen. Instead,

nuclear physicists resort to several models to explain different aspects of nuclear structure. Together, these models provide a good understanding of the nucleus and accurately predict nuclear properties, although not with the precision available in atomic physics.

The **liquid-drop model** provides a reasonable approximation for heavier nuclei, whose many nucleons behave somewhat like the molecules in a drop of liquid. A liquid-drop nucleus can rotate, vibrate, and change shape as long as its volume doesn't change, and the resulting quantized energy levels predict nuclear gamma-ray spectra that are in good agreement with observation. The liquid-drop model also helps explain nuclear fission, as you'll see in Section 38.4. But it can't account for the dramatic effects of small changes in nucleon number, particularly the role of the magic numbers.

The **nuclear shell model**, advanced in the late 1940s by physicists Maria Goeppert Mayer and J. Hans Jensen, gives the nucleus a shell structure similar to that of atoms. The shells occur because neutrons and protons obey the exclusion principle, and the magic numbers correspond to closed-shell configurations analogous to the electronic structure of inert gases. Closed-shell nucleons are tightly bound, making a magic nucleus particularly stable. Additional nucleons beyond a closed shell stay largely on the outskirts of the nucleus, where they're more readily excited to higher energy levels. Neutrons and protons behave independently in the shell model, and each has its own set of quantum numbers. Closed-shell structure therefore occurs with magic numbers of either protons or neutrons. Some nuclei, like $^{40}_{20}\text{Ca}$ ($Z = 20, N = 20$), are “doubly magic” and show exceptional stability.

The **collective model**, advanced by Niels Bohr's son Aage, combines aspects of the liquid-drop and shell models, emphasizing the collective quantum-mechanical behavior of the nucleons. One remarkable prediction of the collective model is that larger, nonmagical nuclei may be more stable if they take nonspherical shapes.

Active areas of nuclear-structure research involve the creation and exploration of exceptionally heavy or neutron-rich nuclei. The creation of elements 115–118 in the early 21st century completed a row of the periodic table and suggests that physicists are approaching a region of longer-lived nuclei dubbed the “island of stability,” which may be associated with a new magic neutron number of 184. Lighter elements, too, continue to reveal new isotopes: The 2018 first-ever synthesis of calcium-60—a 4-ms half-life isotope with twice as many neutrons as protons—is one example. Until we have a complete nuclear theory, discoveries like these will continue to challenge physicists with nuclear surprises.

38.2 Radioactivity

LO 38.2 *Describe alpha, beta, and gamma radioactivity and perform calculations involving half-lives.*

In 1896 Henri Becquerel of Paris noticed that a photographic plate stored near uranium compounds became fogged, as though exposed to invisible rays. Becquerel had discovered **radioactivity**, wherein some substances spontaneously emit high-energy particles or photons. Marie and Pierre Curie promptly began a thorough exploration of the phenomenon, for which Marie Curie coined the name “radioactivity.” The Curies shared the 1903 Nobel Prize in Physics with Becquerel, and Marie Curie won the 1911 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for her discovery of polonium and radium.

Decay Rate and Half-Life

Radioactivity results from the decay of unstable nuclei, a process that occurs at vastly differing rates in different isotopes. The number of decays per unit time is the **activity** of a radioactive sample; the SI unit of activity is the **becquerel** (Bq), equal to one decay per second. An older unit, the **curie** (Ci), is 3.7×10^{10} Bq and is approximately the activity of 1 gram of radium-226. For a given isotope, activity is proportional to the number N of nuclei present. N decreases as nuclei decay, so we can write

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = -\lambda N$$

where λ is the **decay constant**. As we've seen with discharging capacitors and decaying inductor currents, this differential equation is a prescription for exponential decay. We solve it the same way, multiplying both sides by dt/N and integrating:

$$\int_{N_0}^N \frac{dN}{N} = -\lambda \int_0^t dt$$

where N_0 is the initial number of nuclei at time $t = 0$. Evaluating the integrals gives $\ln(N/N_0) = -\lambda t$ or, exponentiating each side and using $e^{\ln x} = x$:

$$N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t} \quad (38.3a)$$

Equation 38.3a shows that the decay constant λ is a measure of the exponential decay rate. We can also interpret λ as the probability that a given atom will decay in a 1-s time interval. Another convenient measure of exponential decay is the **half-life**, $t_{1/2}$, defined as the time for half the nuclei in a given sample to decay. If we start with N_0 nuclei at time $t = 0$, then at a later time t the number of nuclei remaining will be

N is the amount or activity of a radioactive sample at time t .

$t_{1/2}$ is the half-life.

$$N = N_0 2^{-t/t_{1/2}} \quad (\text{radioactive decay}) \quad (38.3b)$$

N_0 is the amount or activity at time $t = 0$.

As you can show in Problem 54, $t_{1/2}$ and λ are related by $t_{1/2} = \ln 2 / \lambda \approx 0.693 / \lambda$. Figure 38.5 is a graph of Equation 38.3b. Since activity and number of nuclei are proportional, both decline with the same half-life, as described in Equation 38.3b. Table 38.1 lists some significant radioisotopes and their half-lives.

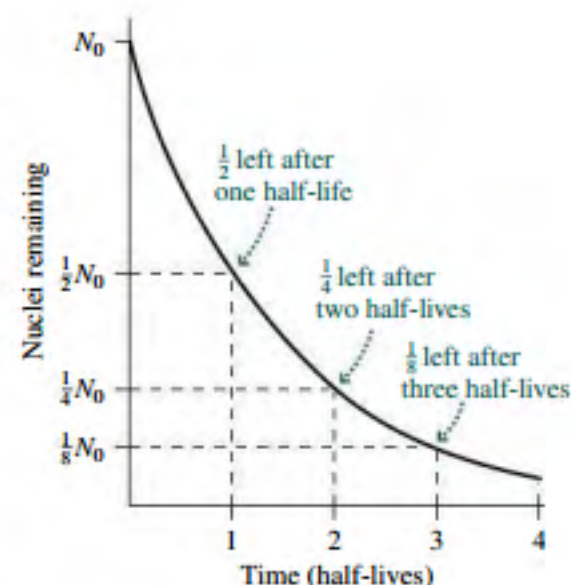


FIGURE 38.5 Exponential decay of a radioactive sample.

Table 38.1 Selected Radioisotopes

Isotope	Half-life	Decay Mode	Comments
Carbon-14 ($^{14}_6\text{C}$)	5730 years	β^-	Used in radiocarbon dating
Iodine-131 ($^{131}_{53}\text{I}$)	8.04 days	β^-	Fission product abundant in fallout from nuclear weapons and reactor accidents; damages thyroid gland
Oxygen-15 ($^{15}_8\text{O}$)	2.03 minutes	β^+	Short-lived oxygen isotope used for PET scans
Potassium-40 ($^{40}_{19}\text{K}$)	1.25×10^9 years	β^-	Comprises 0.012% of natural potassium; dominant radiation source within the normal human body; used in radioisotope dating
Plutonium-239 ($^{239}_{94}\text{Pu}$)	24,110 years	α	Fissile isotope used in nuclear weapons
Radium-226 ($^{226}_{88}\text{Ra}$)	1600 years	α	Highly radioactive isotope discovered by Marie and Pierre Curie; results from decay of $^{238}_{92}\text{U}$
Radon-222 ($^{222}_{86}\text{Rn}$)	3.82 days	α	Radioactive gas formed naturally in decay of $^{226}_{88}\text{Ra}$; seeps into buildings, where it may cause serious radiation exposure
Strontium-90 ($^{90}_{38}\text{Sr}$)	29 years	β^-	Fission product that behaves chemically like calcium; readily absorbed into bones
Technetium-99m ($^{99\text{m}}_{43}\text{Tc}$)	6.006 hours	γ	Metastable excited state of Tc-99, widely used in medical diagnostics
Tritium (^3_1H)	12.3 years	β^-	Hydrogen isotope used in biological studies and to enhance yields of nuclear weapons
Uranium-235 ($^{235}_{92}\text{U}$)	7.04×10^8 years	α	Fissile isotope comprising 0.72% of natural uranium; used as reactor fuel and in crude nuclear weapons
Uranium-238 ($^{238}_{92}\text{U}$)	4.46×10^9 years	α	Predominant uranium isotope; cannot sustain a chain reaction

EXAMPLE 38.2 Radioactive Decay: Fukushima Fallout

The 2011 tsunami-induced disaster at Japan's Fukushima Dai'ichi nuclear power plant spread radioactive fallout over the surrounding region and adjacent ocean. One isotope of particular concern was iodine-131, which is absorbed by the thyroid gland and can cause thyroid cancer. Shortly after the radiation releases began, the city of Iwaki, some 90 km from the Fukushima nuclear plant, recorded I-131 activity of 980 Bq/kg in milk. How long would such milk need to be held back from consumption in order to meet the 300-Bq/kg Japanese safety standard for milk?

INTERPRET This is a problem about radioactive decay. We're given the initial activity per kilogram of milk, and we need to find how long it takes for that to decay to the given safety standard. Using Table 38.1, we identify I-131's half-life as 8.04 days.

DEVELOP Equation 38.3b, $N = N_0 2^{-t/t_{1/2}}$, describes the decline in both the number of radioactive nuclei and their radioactivity. The equation shows that after n half-lives, activity drops to $1/2^n$ of its original level. So our plan is to find the number of half-lives n that will lower the milk's I-131 activity from 980 Bq/kg to 300 Bq/kg. Mathematically, we want $1/2^n = 300/980$. Our plan is to solve for n and then use the known half-life to get the actual time.

EVALUATE Inverting the expression $1/2^n = 300/980$ and taking logarithms of both sides gives

$$\ln(2^n) = \ln(980/300)$$

But $\ln(2^n) = n \ln 2$, so

$$n = \frac{\ln(980/300)}{\ln 2} = 1.71 \text{ half-lives}$$

With $t_{1/2} = 8.04$ days, this amounts to 13.7 days or just under 2 weeks.

ASSESS A quick check shows that our answer must be about right. The milk starts out contaminated with almost 1000 Bq/kg of I-131. After one half-life, the activity has dropped in half, to just under 500 Bq/kg. Another half-life, and it's about 250 Bq/kg—already under the safety standard. So the answer must be somewhere between one and two half-lives, and closer to two because the 250 Bq/kg reached after two half-lives isn't much less than the 300-Bq/kg safety standard. Note that the 2-week wait time depends not only on physics but also on policy—namely, the government's safety standard. Exercise 21 reworks this example using the lower international guideline of 100 Bq/kg, and Problem 55 considers a similar contamination situation following the Chernobyl nuclear accident.



HALF-LIFE AND POWERS OF 2 After n half-lives, activity has dropped by a factor of $1/2^n$. When we estimate activity levels, it's useful to note that $2^{10} = 1024$, or very nearly 1000. Thus, activity drops by a factor of about 1000 every 10 half-lives—and therefore by about 1 million in 20 half-lives.

GOT IT?

38.2 A PET-scan patient is injected with radioactive oxygen-15, whose half-life is 2 min. Approximately what fraction of the original ^{15}O remains undecayed an hour later? (a) $1/30$; (b) $1/60$; (c) one thousandth; (d) one millionth; (e) one billionth

EXAMPLE 38.3**Radioactive Decay: Archaeology**
Worked Example with Variation Problems

Archaeologists unearth charcoal from an ancient campfire and find its carbon-14 activity per unit mass to be 7.4% of the activity measured in living wood. Find the charcoal's age. (See Application on the next page.)

INTERPRET This is a problem about using the decay of carbon-14 to date a once-living material. We want the time it takes for ^{14}C activity to decline to 7.4% of its original level. From Table 38.1, we identify the half-life of ^{14}C as 5730 years.

DEVELOP Equation 38.3b, $N = N_0 2^{-t/t_{1/2}}$, shows that activity drops by $1/2^n$ in n half-lives, so our plan is to find the number of half-lives that makes the factor $1/2^n$ equal to 0.074. Then we can multiply by the half-life to get the actual time.

EVALUATE Solving as we did in Example 38.2 gives

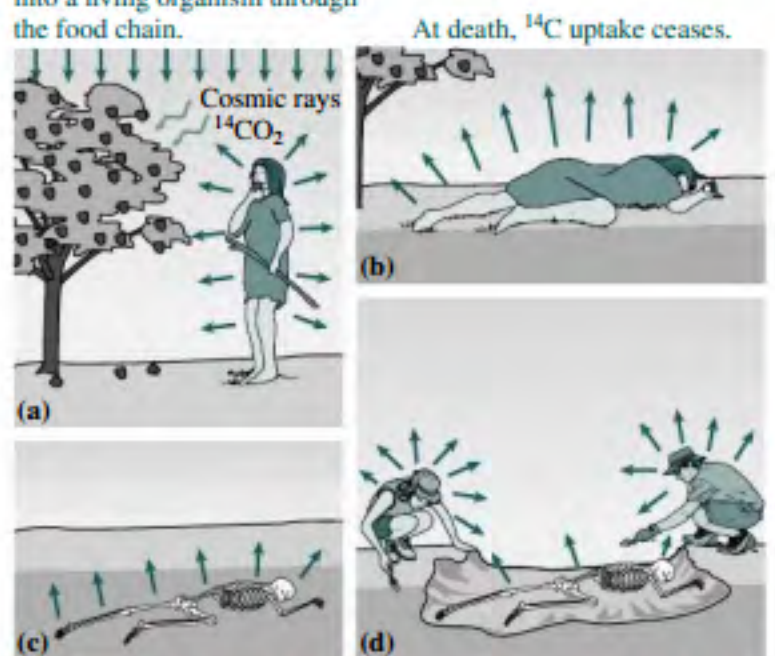
$$n \ln 2 = \ln(1/0.074)$$

which gives $n = 3.76$ half-lives. With $t_{1/2} = 5730$ y, the age is then 21,500 years.

ASSESS Again a quick check suffices: One half-life drops activity to 50%; two half-lives to 25%, three to 12.5%, and four to just over 6%. So it must take a little less than four half-lives to get down to 7.4% of the original activity level.

APPLICATION Radiocarbon Dating and Fossil Carbon

Carbon-14 formed in the atmosphere is incorporated into a living organism through the food chain.



Much later, ^{14}C activity has decayed considerably.

Archaeologists excavate the long-dead remains. By measuring ^{14}C activity, they can infer the time since death. Note that the archaeologists, with their active ^{14}C intake, are more radioactive than their ancient ancestor.

Archaeologists, art historians, geologists, and others use radioactive decay to date ancient objects. For ages up to a few tens of thousands of years, the 5730-year isotope carbon-14 is especially useful. ^{14}C forms continuously in the atmosphere through reactions of cosmic rays with nitrogen. Living things take in ^{14}C and maintain a steady concentration through the balance between uptake and radioactive decay. At death, uptake ceases and the level of ^{14}C begins to drop. Measuring the ratio of ^{14}C to stable ^{12}C in a sample of once-living matter and comparing with the ratio found in living material then provides the age (see the figure and Example 38.3).

The cosmic-ray flux at Earth varies with solar activity, and so, therefore, does the atmospheric $^{14}\text{C}/^{12}\text{C}$ ratio. Scientists correct for this effect with data from growth rings in ancient trees, which provide an independent measure of age. Measuring the actual radioactivity takes a fairly large sample, so today the most sophisticated dating is done instead by counting individual C-14 atoms, separating them from ordinary C-12 using a mass spectrometer—a device we described in Example 26.2.

Radiocarbon dating is quite accurate to about 20,000 years and can be used back to about 50,000 years. For longer time spans, up to the billions of years characterizing the ages of rocks, ratios of longer-lived isotopes provide age information. Much knowledge of our own past, and our planet's and our solar system's, comes from radioisotope dating.

In the modern era, the atmospheric $^{14}\text{C}/^{12}\text{C}$ ratio provides evidence that the ongoing buildup of atmospheric CO_2 results from the combustion of fossil fuels (see the Application "The Greenhouse Effect and Global Warming," in Chapter 16). That $^{14}\text{C}/^{12}\text{C}$ ratio is dropping, showing that the added CO_2 is depleted in C-14. This is consistent with a carbon source that's been out of contact with the atmosphere for a long enough time that its C-14 has all decayed. Also decreasing is the ratio of the stable isotope ^{13}C to ^{12}C . Plants preferentially incorporate the lighter C-12, so taken together the decreasing ratios of C-14 and C-13 to C-12 point to a long-buried, plant-derived source of the new atmospheric carbon—namely, the fossil fuels.

Types of Radiation

Passing nuclear radiation through a magnetic field shows that there are three types: one positively charged, one negatively charged, and one neutral (Fig. 38.6). Early researchers named these alpha, beta, and gamma radiation, respectively. Today we know that alpha radiation consists of He-4 nuclei, beta radiation consists of high-energy electrons or positrons, and gamma rays are high-energy photons. They differ in penetrating power: A sheet of paper can stop alpha particles, several centimeters of matter stop most betas, and gamma rays can penetrate substantial thicknesses of concrete or lead. Different radioisotopes emit not only different types of radiation but also radiation of different energies.

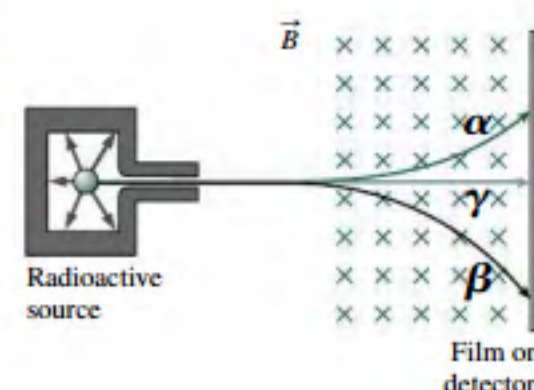
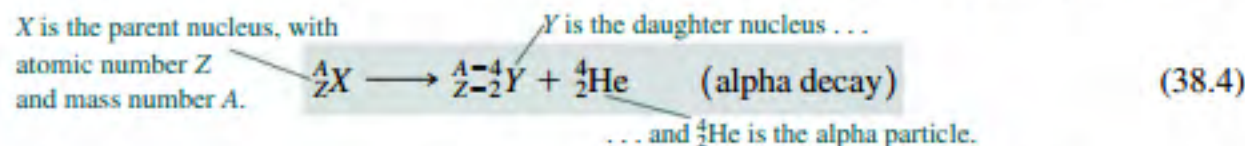


FIGURE 38.6 The three types of radiation go separate ways in a magnetic field.

Alpha Decay

Alpha emitters are nuclei with too much positive charge. They shed charge, and mass, by emitting a bundle of two protons and two neutrons—an alpha particle, ^4_2He . Symbolically,

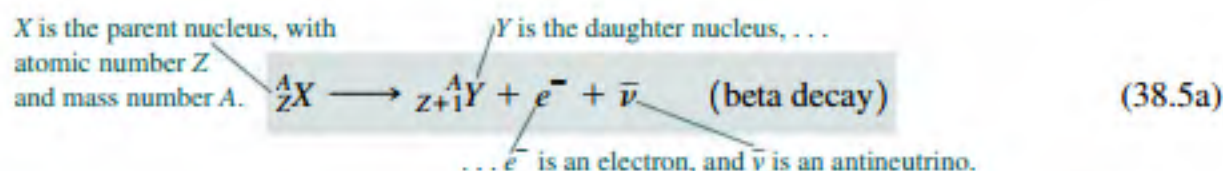


Here X is the original or **parent** nucleus, and Y is the **daughter**. Note that the sums of the atomic numbers on both sides of this equation are equal, as are the mass numbers. Most of the energy released in the reaction appears as kinetic energy of the alpha particle. The alpha particle actually emerges with less energy than needed to overcome the nuclear potential barrier, and this provides one of the most direct confirmations of quantum tunneling—which is the only way the alpha particle can escape the nucleus.

Beta Decay

Beta emitters have too many neutrons, one of which decays into an electron, a proton, and an elusive neutral particle called a **neutrino** (symbol ν). The electron exits at high energy

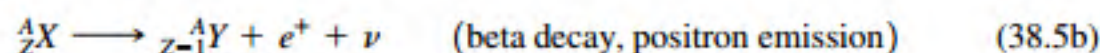
to form beta radiation, leaving a nucleus with essentially the same mass but its atomic number increased because it has one more unit of positive charge:



In ordinary beta decay the neutrino is, in fact, an antineutrino—hence the bar over its symbol ν .

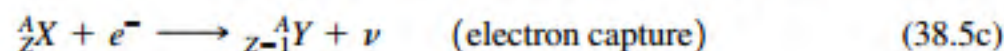
Beta decay is a manifestation of the weak nuclear force, and in the Sun it produces a steady stream of neutrinos that provide direct information on conditions in the solar core. That's because neutral, nearly massless neutrinos interact only rarely with matter; for example, they pass through the entire Earth with little probability of interaction. You'll see in Chapter 39 how neutrinos nonetheless are opening a new window on distant astrophysical events and the early universe.

A second type of beta decay converts a proton into a neutron, emitting both a positron (an anti-electron, e^+) and a neutrino:



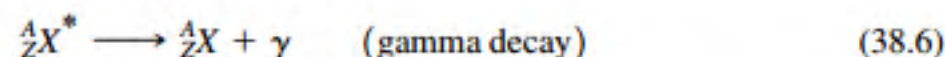
This reaction occurs in some short-lived isotopes of lighter elements like carbon and oxygen, and gamma rays from the subsequent annihilations of positrons are used in the medical imaging procedure known as positron emission tomography (PET; see the Application “PET Scans: Relativity in the Hospital,” in Chapter 33).

A third beta-decay process is **electron capture**, in which a nucleus captures an inner-shell atomic electron, converting a proton to a neutron and ejecting a neutrino:



Gamma Decay

A nucleus in an excited state decays by emitting a photon, just like an atom. But the much higher energy associated with nuclear processes puts such photons in the gamma-ray region of the spectrum. Since the gamma-ray photon is neutral and massless, it doesn't change the type of nucleus; therefore, we write



where X^* designates the excited state.

Decay Chains and Artificial Radioactivity

A few radioisotopes, like ^{40}K and ^{238}U , have half-lives comparable to Earth's age, so it's not surprising to find these in nature. But we also find shorter-lived species. Some, like cosmic-ray-produced ^{14}C , result from naturally occurring nuclear reactions. Many others arise in the decay of long-lived isotopes, while some we produce in particle accelerators, nuclear reactors, and nuclear explosions.

Figure 38.7 shows the **decay chain** for uranium-238, whose 4.46-billion-year half-life ensures that there's still plenty of it around. The shorter-lived daughter products in this chain are present wherever there's natural uranium. A balance between formation and decay establishes the abundance of each product in the decay chain. One of the uranium daughters is radon-222, a radioactive gas that can be a serious health hazard in closed spaces.

In 1930 Marie Curie's daughter Irène and her husband Frédéric Joliot-Curie were the first to induce artificial radioactivity, by bombarding stable isotopes with alpha particles. Today we produce radioisotopes with particle beams or with neutrons from nuclear reactors, or by extracting them from the by-products of nuclear fission.

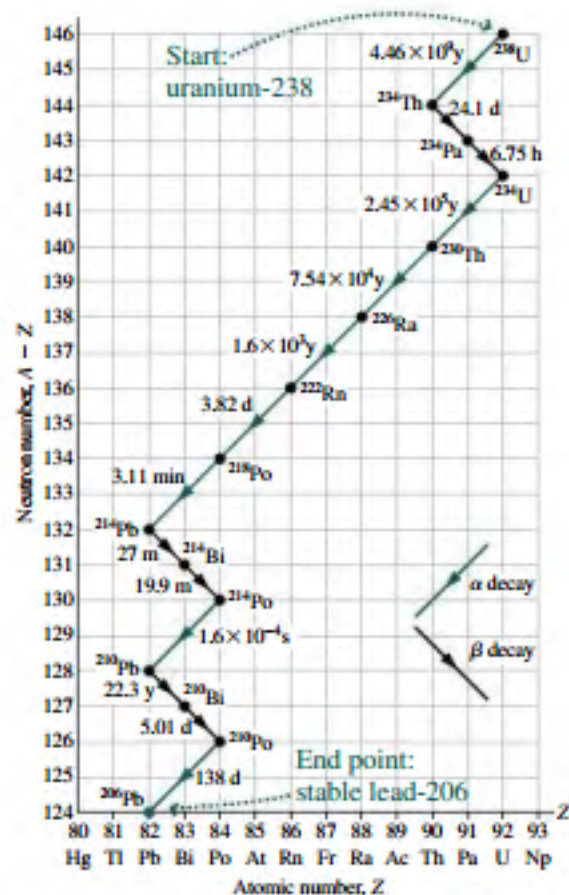


FIGURE 38.7 The decay of uranium-238 results in a chain of shorter-lived nuclei. Times shown are half-lives.

Uses of Radioactivity

Nuclear radiation has numerous beneficial uses in our technological society. Here we survey just a few:

- **Radioactive Tracers** “Tagging” molecules with radioactive atoms makes it easy to trace their flows through biological and physical systems. Biologists use radioactive tracers routinely to study the uptake and distribution of chemicals. Engineers use radioisotopes to study wear in mechanical parts. Physicians inject radioisotopes into the bloodstream and then image the heart muscle before and during stress tests, revealing blockages in the coronary arteries. Similarly, tagging bone-seeking compounds with radioisotopes yields images of the skeletal system; such *bone scans* reveal cancer and other diseases.
- **Cancer Treatment** Radiation destroys living cells, especially fast-dividing cancer cells. Early radiation treatment used gamma radiation; today, particle beams deliver radiation with less effect on surrounding tissue. Alternatively, radioisotope “seeds” are embedded directly into a tumor.
- **Food Preservation** High radiation doses destroy bacteria and enzymes that cause food spoilage, providing longer shelf life and a safer food supply. Though controversial, food irradiation is increasingly widespread, especially for spices, fruits, and some ground meats.
- **Insect Control** Radiation preferentially damages reproductive cells and can therefore cause sterility. Sterilizing large numbers of pest insects with radiation causes populations to collapse when the sterile insects mate with normal ones. The Mediterranean fruit fly, a serious pest of citrus crops, has been controlled in this way.
- **Fire Safety** Common smoke detectors contain americium-241, whose alpha radiation ionizes air, allowing it to carry electric current. Smoke particles interfere with the current, triggering the alarm. Exit signs containing radioactive tritium (^3H) glow without the need for electricity, providing another measure of fire safety in public buildings.
- **Activation Analysis** Bombarding materials with neutrons or other particles results in excited states or the production of unstable isotopes. Analyzing the resulting radiation helps identify unknown materials. Art historians use this technique to detect forgeries; environmental scientists identify the constituents of pollution; and airport luggage scanners search for the radiation “fingerprint” of chemical explosives.

Biological Effects of Radiation

Nuclear radiation has sufficiently high energy to ionize or otherwise disrupt biological molecules. Results include cell death, loss of biological functions, and mutations that lead to cancer or to genetic changes in future generations. Many early nuclear scientists, including Marie Curie and her daughter Irène, succumbed to leukemia and other cancers that undoubtedly resulted from radiation exposure.

The energy absorbed in a radiation dose is a rough measure of its biological danger. The SI unit of absorbed dose is the **gray** (Gy), defined as 1 J of energy per kg of absorbing material. A more appropriate measure is the **sievert** (Sv), which is weighted by the biological effectiveness of particular radiation types. Alpha particles, for example, cause more damage per unit energy than do gamma rays, so 1 Gy of alpha radiation is more harmful than 1 Gy of gamma radiation. But 1 Sv of alphas and 1 Sv of gammas cause essentially the same damage.

The biological effects of high radiation doses are well known; exposure to 4 Sv, for example, causes death in about half its human victims. But doses in the 0.1-Sv range and lower are more controversial. There are only a few cases of well-quantified exposures to populations large enough that small effects can be determined accurately. Even less certain are the effects of very low doses, such as the 1-mSv average dose to residents just outside the evacuation zone at Fukushima, or the even smaller 10- μSv dose to people living near the 1979 Three Mile Island nuclear accident. On the one hand, biological repair mechanisms may limit damage at low doses. On the other, even low doses may disproportionately affect the young and the unborn. A 2005 study by the U.S. National Academy of

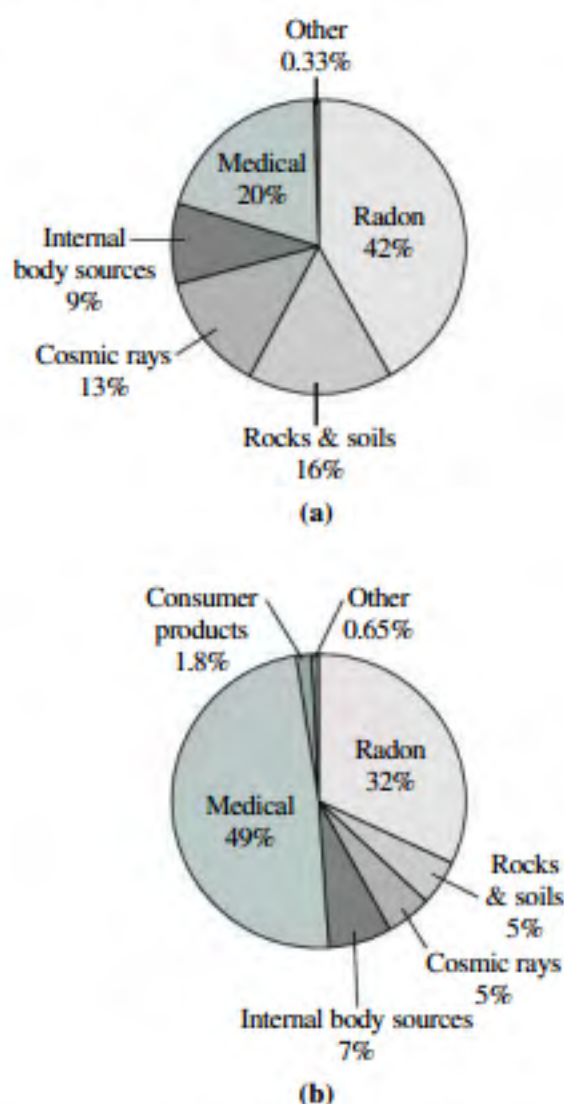


FIGURE 38.8 Natural (gray) and artificial (color) sources of radiation, as percentages of the average yearly dose. (a) is global, and “Other” includes consumer products, nuclear power, radioactive waste, and weapons tests. (b) is for the United States and shows consumer products as separate from the rest of the “Other” category.

Sciences (NAS) suggests that the risk of cancer—the dominant health effect of low-level radiation—should scale linearly with dose. For a one-time dose of 1 mSv, the NAS study estimates a lifetime cancer risk of 1 in 10,000. This compares with a 42% lifetime chance of developing cancer from all causes.

Globally, the average person receives about 3 mSv of radiation each year, most of it from natural sources (Fig. 38.8a). The dominant source, at 42%, is radon-222, a radioactive gas that enters buildings from the decay of natural uranium in soils and building materials. Our own bodies account for some 9% of global radiation exposure, and medical procedures for about 20%. All other artificial sources of radiation—including nuclear power, weapons tests, and consumer products—are responsible for only 0.33% of humans’ global radiation exposure.

The situation in the United States is somewhat different (Fig. 38.8b); here, medical procedures account for almost half of Americans’ radiation exposure—a portion that’s grown substantially in recent decades and that is largely responsible for U.S. residents’ average dose being twice the global average, or about 6 mSv per year. In the United States, consumer products such as smoke detectors, tritium-powered emergency exit signs, tobacco products, and building materials together account for nearly 2% of radiation exposure, while the dose from nuclear power and weapons testing is above the global level but still well under 1% of Americans’ annual radiation dose.

Wherever you live, those average doses are just that—averages. If your home is in mile-high Denver, your exposure from cosmic rays increases. If you’re part of a transatlantic flight crew, cosmic rays deliver a radiation dose that’s higher than that experienced by workers in the nuclear-power industry. And if you live in the Kerala region on India’s southwest coast, you could experience tens of mSv of annual radiation dose from radioactive thorium in sand and soil. No matter where you live, or what your exact radiation dose, though, your health risks from radiation exposure pale compared with other risks you knowingly take.

38.3 Binding Energy and Nucleosynthesis

LO 38.3 *Explain the curve of binding energy and how it accounts for nuclear fission and fusion and for the origin of the elements.*

Disassembling a nucleus requires energy to overcome the strong nuclear force. The more tightly bound the nucleus, the higher this **binding energy**. The energies involved in nuclear interactions are high enough that Einstein’s mass–energy equivalence is clearly evident, so accounting for energy conservation requires us to consider the rest energy of the particles. Then we can write

$$m_N c^2 + E_b = Z m_p c^2 + (A - Z) m_n c^2 \quad (38.7)$$

where the terms on the left are the rest energy of the nucleus, whose mass is m_N , and the binding energy E_b . The terms on the right are the rest energies of the Z individual protons and $A - Z$ neutrons that make up the nucleus. So Equation 38.7 shows that we can disassemble a nucleus into its constituent nucleons if we supply additional energy equal to the binding energy. Equivalently, E_b is the energy released if we assemble a nucleus from isolated nucleons.

Equation 38.7 shows that the nuclear mass m_N is *not* the sum of the constituent particles’ masses; rather, it’s less by the amount E_b/c^2 . This is clear evidence for mass–energy equivalence. Again, as in Chapter 33, we emphasize that there’s nothing uniquely nuclear about this so-called **mass defect**. The mass of a water molecule is also less than the sum of its constituent hydrogen and oxygen atoms—but with chemical binding the effect is so small as to be virtually immeasurable. It’s the strength of the nuclear force that makes mass–energy equivalence more obvious in nuclear interactions.

It’s convenient to measure nuclear and particle masses in **unified mass units**, u , currently defined as one-twelfth the mass of a neutral carbon-12 atom. The unified mass unit is very nearly 1.66054×10^{-27} kg, slightly less than the mass of the proton or neutron.

Table 38.2 Selected Masses

	Mass (kg)	Mass (u)	Mass (MeV/c ²)
Electron	9.10939×10^{-31}	0.000548579	0.510999
Proton	1.67262×10^{-27}	1.007276	938.272
Neutron	1.67493×10^{-27}	1.008665	939.566
^1_1H atom	1.67353×10^{-27}	1.007825	938.783
α particle (^4_2He nucleus)	6.64466×10^{-27}	4.001506	3727.38
$^{12}_6\text{C}$ atom	1.99265×10^{-26}	12	11,177.9
Unified mass unit (u)	1.66054×10^{-27}	1	931.494

High-energy physicists, ever cognizant of mass–energy equivalence, often express masses in MeV/c^2 —a value numerically equal to the rest energy in MeV. Table 38.2 lists selected particle masses in kg, u, and MeV/c^2 . In practice one often knows atomic rather than nuclear masses, but the difference is generally negligible because the extra mass of the electrons is so small.

EXAMPLE 38.4**Mass Defect in Helium: Powering the Sun***Worked Example with Variation Problems*

Use the appropriate masses from Table 38.2 to find the binding energy of ^4_2He .

INTERPRET This is a question about binding energy—the energy difference between separate constituents of helium-4 and the helium-4 nucleus. We identify the constituent particles from the symbol ^4_2He : $Z = 2$ protons and $N = A - Z = 2$ neutrons.

DEVELOP Equation 38.7 determines the binding energy in terms of the various masses:

$$E_b = Zm_p c^2 + (A - Z)m_n c^2 - m_N c^2$$

EVALUATE Using our values for Z and $N = A - Z$, along with the proton, neutron, and alpha-particle (He-4 nucleus) masses from Table 38.2, gives

$$\begin{aligned} E_b &= 2(938.272 \text{ MeV}/c^2)c^2 + 2(939.566 \text{ MeV}/c^2)c^2 - (3727.38 \text{ MeV}/c^2)c^2 \\ &= 28.3 \text{ MeV} \end{aligned}$$

ASSESS Notice how easy it was to work with mass in units of MeV/c^2 ; the factor c^2 canceled and we didn't need to use the speed of light explicitly. The formation of helium through a sequence of nuclear reactions is what powers the Sun, and our 28.3-MeV result is very close to the actual 26.7 MeV released for each He-4 nucleus formed through the solar process.

The Curve of Binding Energy

Binding energy plays a crucial role in the formation of the elements and in nuclear energy. Figure 38.9 shows the **curve of binding energy**, a plot of binding energy *per nucleon* as a function of mass number A . The higher this quantity, the more tightly bound is the nucleus. The broad peak in the vicinity of $A = 60$ shows that nuclei with mass numbers around this value are most tightly bound. That means it's energetically favorable for two lighter nuclei to join through the process of **nuclear fusion**, making a middle-weight nucleus. But heavier nuclei can reach a lower energy state if they split or **fission** into two middle-weight nuclei. We'll discuss fission and fusion later in the chapter.

GOT IT?

38.3 Rank order these nuclei from the most to the least tightly bound: ^4_2He ; $^{238}_{92}\text{U}$; $^{56}_{26}\text{Fe}$; ^2_1H ; $^{132}_{54}\text{Xe}$.

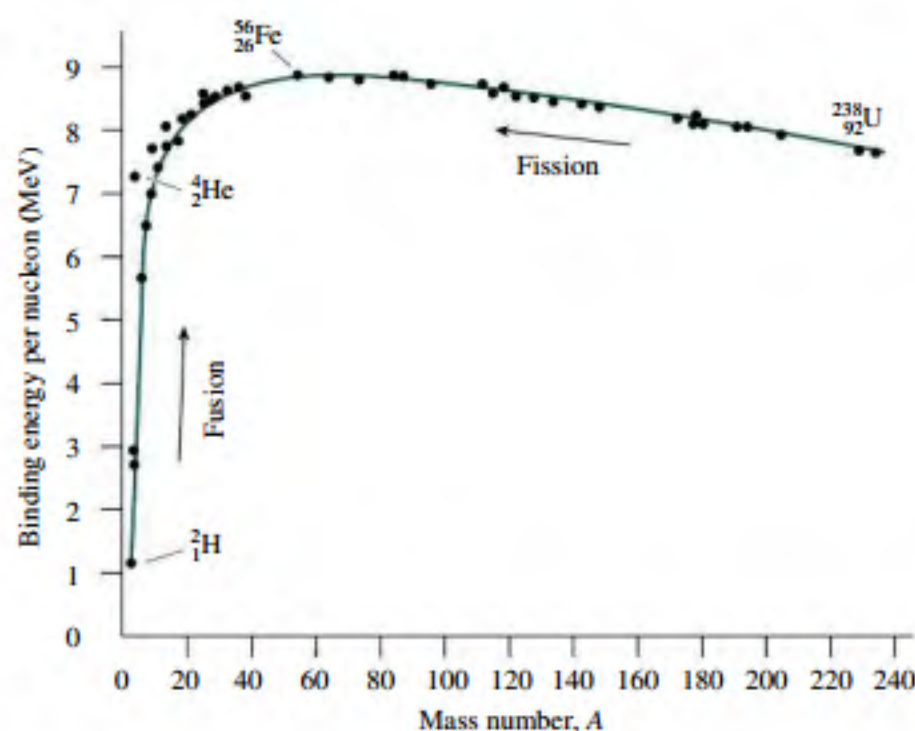


FIGURE 38.9 The curve of binding energy, showing how fusion and fission can result in the release of nuclear energy.

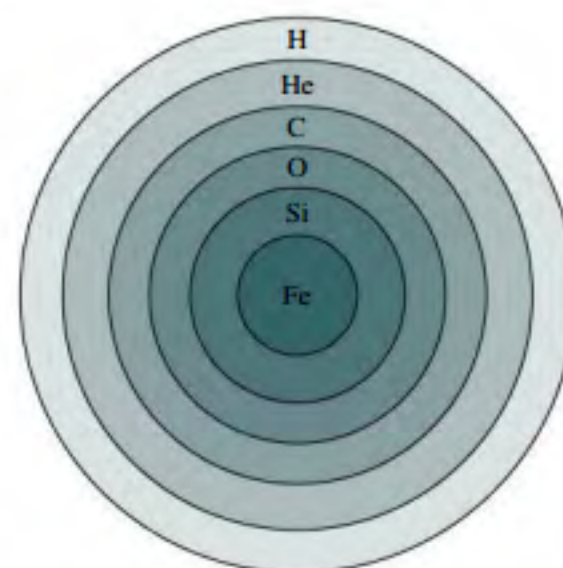


FIGURE 38.10 Onionlike structure of a massive star before it goes supernova. Successive stages of fusion reactions produce the elements shown, which accounts for their relative abundance.

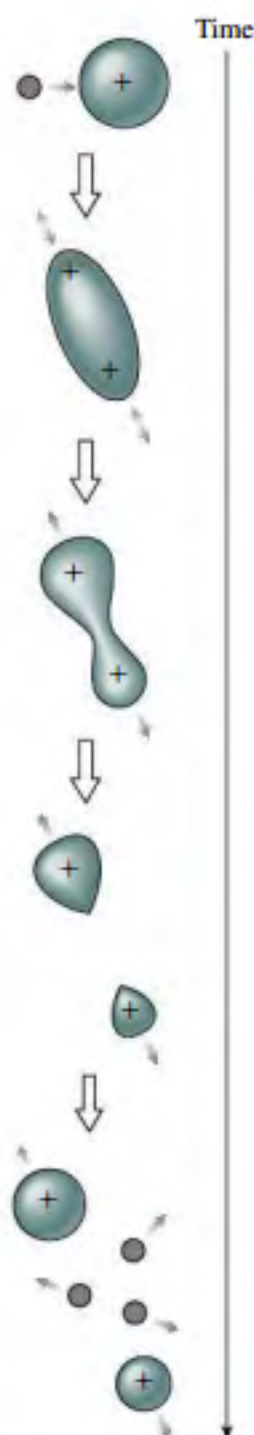


FIGURE 38.11 Neutron-induced fission of ^{235}U , showing three neutrons (gray) released in the process.

Nucleosynthesis and the Origin of the Elements

Since it's energetically favorable for light nuclei to fuse together, they'll do so if they have enough energy to overcome their electrical repulsion. This condition held in the high-temperature early universe, particularly from about 1 minute to 30 minutes after the start of the Big Bang. During that time, protons fused to form helium, leaving the universe with approximately its present composition of about 75% hydrogen and 25% helium, with traces of deuterium, lithium, beryllium, and boron. Hundreds of millions of years later the first stars formed, and in the interiors of more massive stars conditions were ripe for a two-step process that fused three helium nuclei to make carbon-12. From there fusion reactions led to the formation of isotopes up to those near the $A = 60$ peak in the curve of binding energy. In fact, the nuclei of essentially all the elements with $A < 60$ —including most of the materials in our own bodies—were formed in the interiors of massive stars (Fig. 38.10). At the end of their lives those stars underwent supernova explosions, spewing fusion-synthesized elements into the interstellar medium where, eons later, they're incorporated into stars, planets, and even ourselves. Roughly half the elements with $A > 60$ were also formed, slowly, inside massive stars. For decades astrophysicists were puzzled about the origin of the other half, which required a much more rapid process and a neutron-rich environment. Most believed that these heavy elements formed during supernova explosions, but the 2017 detection of gravitational radiation (Section 33.9) from colliding neutron stars led to a flurry of astronomical observations that quickly confirmed neutron-star collisions as the main source of heavy elements—including gold.

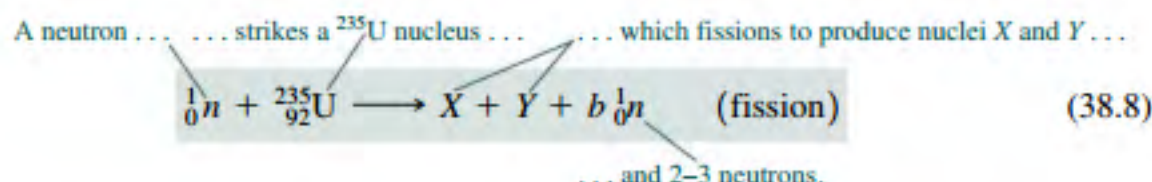
38.4 Nuclear Fission

LO 38.4 Describe nuclear fission and explain how it's used to power nuclear reactors.

Neutrons, first discovered in 1932, make excellent probes of the nucleus because they don't have to overcome electrical repulsion. In 1938 the German chemists Otto Hahn and Fritz Strassmann bombarded uranium with neutrons. They were puzzled to find among the reaction products radioactive versions of the much lighter elements barium and lanthanum. Physicist Lise Meitner and her nephew Otto Frisch interpreted these results to mean that uranium had split or, in their words, **fissioned** (Fig. 38.11). It was the eve of World War II, and the military implications were obvious and ominous: Nuclear fission represented an energy source orders of magnitude more potent than chemical reactions. The race for nuclear weapons was on. With the help of the international physics community,

many of whom had fled fascism, the U.S. effort succeeded. A team led by the Italian Enrico Fermi built the first nuclear reactor under the stands of the University of Chicago stadium; it became operational in 1942. Three years later came the first nuclear weapons test, at Trinity Site in New Mexico, followed quickly by the nuclear destruction of Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

Although fission can occur spontaneously, it's much more likely when a neutron strikes a nucleus. Figure 38.11 shows U-235 absorbing a neutron to become U-236. This unstable nucleus undergoes dumbbell-shaped oscillations until electrical repulsion tears it apart. The resulting **fission products** are generally a pair of middle-weight nuclei with unequal masses; typically two to three neutrons are also released in fission. Skipping the intermediate U-236 nucleus, neutron-induced fission of U-235 takes the form



Here ${}_0^1n$ is the neutron, with 0 charge and 1 mass unit; X and Y are the fission products; and b is the number of neutrons released immediately. A specific example of Equation 38.8 is ^{235}U fission that produces barium and krypton: ${}_0^1n + {}_{92}^{235}\text{U} \longrightarrow {}_{56}^{141}\text{Ba} + {}_{36}^{92}\text{Kr} + 3 {}_0^1n$. Note how the equation balances: The total charge (subscripts) is the same on both sides, and the mass numbers (superscripts) also agree.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 38.1 Radioactive Waste!

Use Fig. 38.3 to explain why fission products are necessarily radioactive.

EVALUATE Figure 38.3 shows that more massive nuclei need higher ratios of neutrons to protons in order to overcome the protons' electrical repulsion. When uranium fissions, the resulting nuclei have nearly the same neutron-to-proton ratio as the original uranium. But that gives them way too many neutrons, making them highly radioactive via beta decay. Figure 38.12 shows a simplified chart of the nuclides to help make this point.

ASSESS Highly radioactive materials decay rapidly, giving them relatively short half-lives. Even the longer-lived fission products have half-lives measured typically in decades.

MAKING THE CONNECTION Neutron-induced fission of ^{235}U yields ${}_{42}^{102}\text{Mo}$, three neutrons, and another fission product. What's that product?

EVALUATE This reaction is a specific instance of Equation 38.8: ${}_0^1n + {}_{92}^{235}\text{U} \longrightarrow {}_{42}^{102}\text{Mo} + {}_Z^AX + 3{}_0^1n$, with X being the unknown fission product. Balancing atomic and mass numbers gives $A = 131$ and $Z = 50$. The periodic table shows that $Z = 50$ is iodine, so X is I-131, a dangerous contaminant discussed in Example 38.2.

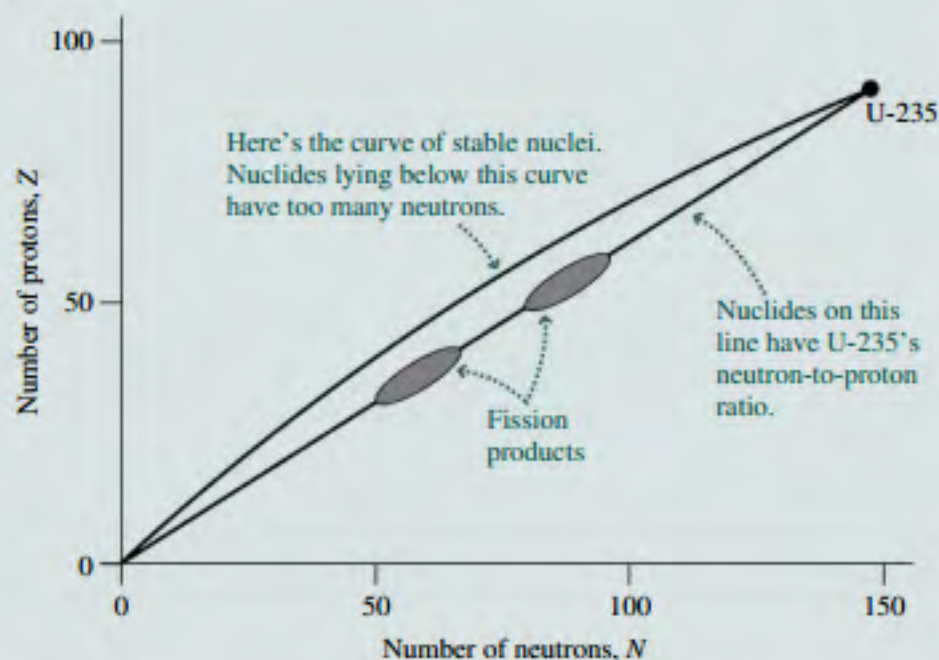


FIGURE 38.12 This chart of nuclides, simplified from Fig. 38.3, shows that fission products lie below the stable nuclei because they have too many neutrons.

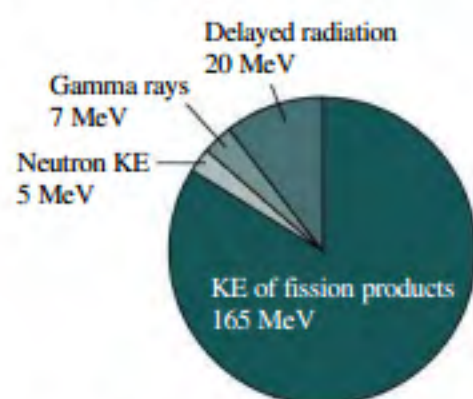


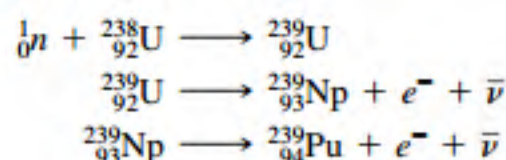
FIGURE 38.13 Fission energy is distributed among fission products, neutrons, and radiation.

Energy from Fission

Fission of a uranium nucleus releases about 200 MeV of energy, as shown in Fig. 38.13. Spontaneous fission is rare because of the energy barrier associated with forces on the outermost nucleons; rather, fission usually results when a nucleus absorbs a neutron, initiating the process shown in Fig. 38.11. Many heavy nuclei, including ^{238}U and ^{235}U , are **fissionable**, meaning they can undergo neutron-induced fission. **Fissile** nuclei will fission with neutrons of *any* energy, including thermal energy. Fissile nuclei are significant because they alone can sustain a nuclear chain reaction, and thus they're essential for both nuclear power and nuclear weapons. The three important fissile nuclei are uranium-233, uranium-235, and plutonium-239.

Uranium-235 presently constitutes only about 0.7% of natural uranium; nearly all the rest is ^{238}U . For most uses, uranium must be enriched in ^{235}U , to several percent for commercial power reactors and 80% or more for weapons. **Uranium enrichment** is difficult and expensive; since the isotopes ^{235}U and ^{238}U are chemically similar, enrichment techniques make use of their very slight mass difference. The technique of choice today involves spinning uranium hexafluoride gas in a sequence of high-speed centrifuges. Enrichment technology is highly sensitive because a nation possessing it can produce weapons-grade uranium.

Plutonium-239, with a 24,110-year half-life, does not occur in nature. It's produced by neutron bombardment of ^{238}U . The reaction forms ^{239}U , which undergoes two beta decays to produce first ^{239}Np and then the fissile ^{239}Pu :



Although ^{239}Pu is produced copiously in nuclear reactors (see Problem 80), **reprocessing** spent reactor fuel to extract plutonium is difficult and dangerous. Contamination with other plutonium isotopes further complicates the process. Like uranium enrichment, plutonium reprocessing is a sensitive technology, and the decision of several European countries and Japan to engage in commercial reprocessing for reactor fuel has made Pu-239 a commercial commodity.

EXAMPLE 38.5 Nuclear Fission: Uranium versus Coal

Assuming 200 MeV per fission, estimate the amount of pure ^{235}U that would provide the same energy as 1 metric ton (1000 kg) of coal.

INTERPRET We're asked to compare the energies of nuclear fission and the chemical burning of coal.

DEVELOP For coal, we can look up the energy released per unit mass in Appendix C's "Energy Content of Fuels" table. We can then find the number of fission events, at 200 MeV per fission, needed to release the same energy as 1000 kg of coal. Finally, we'll use the mass of a U-235 nucleus to find the corresponding mass of uranium.

EVALUATE Appendix C gives an energy content of 29 MJ/kg for coal, so burning 1000 kg of coal releases 29 GJ of energy. With 1.6×10^{-19} J/eV, each 200-MeV fission releases about 3.2×10^{-11} J.

Then we need a total of

$$29 \text{ GJ} / 3.2 \times 10^{-11} \text{ J/fission} = 9.1 \times 10^{20} \text{ fission events}$$

Each of the 9.1×10^{20} U-235 nuclei has a mass of approximately 235 u, so the total mass required is

$$(9.1 \times 10^{20} \text{ nuclei})(235 \text{ u})(1.66 \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg/u}) = 0.35 \text{ g}$$

ASSESS That's about one one-hundredth of an ounce of ^{235}U , packing as much energy as a ton of coal! Our result shows that U-235 contains about three million times as much energy as coal on a per-mass basis. That's the reason nuclear power plants are fueled only about once a year, with a truckload or so of nuclear fuel, while coal-burning plants burn many 110-car trainloads of coal each week. It's also the reason for the immense destructive power of nuclear weapons.

The Chain Reaction

Neutrons induce fission, and fission itself releases more neutrons. This makes possible a **chain reaction**, in which each fission event results in more fission. To sustain a chain reaction, each nucleus that fissions must, on average, cause at least one more fission event; otherwise, the reaction will fizzle to a halt. In a piece of material that's too small, most neutrons will escape without causing additional fission. For that reason there's a **critical mass** of nuclear fuel necessary to sustain a chain reaction. More than that amount is **supercritical** and results in an exponentially growing chain reaction (Fig. 38.14).

The size of the critical mass depends on the purity of the fissile material, its configuration, and surrounding materials. For plutonium it can be less than 5 kg, and as low as 15 kg for uranium. Those numbers are frighteningly small, and they show why we worry about city-destroying “suitcase bombs.”

The **multiplication factor**, k , is the average number of neutrons from a fission event that cause additional fission. A critical mass has $k = 1$, and a supercritical mass has $k > 1$. The average time between successive fissions is the **generation time**. In a supercritical mass this can be as short as 10 ns, leading to the entire mass fissioning in about 1 μ s.

Fission Weapons

A rapidly fissioning supercritical mass is a nuclear explosive. The major technological difficulty in producing a fission weapon is to assemble a supercritical mass so rapidly that the chain reaction consumes enough fissile material before it blows apart. With highly enriched uranium that’s not an insurmountable challenge. The crude bomb that destroyed Hiroshima contained about 50 kg of enriched uranium, of which only about 1 kg actually fissioned. So confident were its developers that they never tested this design. Plutonium weapons present a greater challenge; neutrons from spontaneous fission make it more likely that the weapon will “pre-ignite” and blow itself apart.

Construction of a simple fission weapon is distressingly straightforward, but acquisition of weapons-grade fissile material is not. Again, that’s why uranium enrichment and plutonium reprocessing technologies are so sensitive. We live in a dangerous and unstable world, and it’s going to get more dangerous if fissile materials become widely available.

Nuclear Power

A **nuclear reactor** uses a controlled fission chain reaction with $k = 1$ to release energy at a steady rate. Since the average number of neutrons emitted in U-235 fission is about 2.5, reactors require that most neutrons don’t cause fission. Commercial power reactors limit k in part by keeping the concentration of fissile U-235 low—typically a few percent—so that many neutrons are absorbed by U-238 instead of causing fission. **Control rods** made of neutron-absorbing material allow for active adjustment of k ; these can be moved into and out of the nuclear fuel to provide precise control of the power level. A small fraction—about 0.65%—of fission-produced neutrons are emitted with delays from about 0.2 s to 1 min, and these **delayed neutrons** allow for relatively slow mechanical control of nuclear reactors. The next example explores this point.

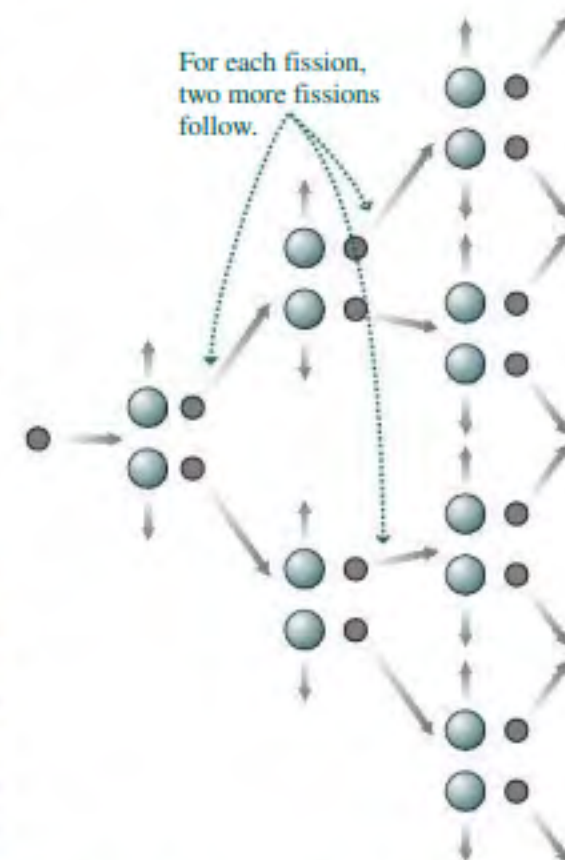


FIGURE 38.14 A supercritical chain reaction with multiplication factor $k = 2$.

EXAMPLE 38.6 Nuclear Fission: Delayed Neutrons and Reactor Control

A change in operating conditions makes a nuclear reactor slightly supercritical, with $k = 1.001$. Determine the time it would take the reactor power to double (a) if delayed neutrons establish a generation time $\tau = 0.1$ s, and (b) if prompt neutrons—those released immediately—sustain the reaction to give $\tau = 10^{-4}$ s.

INTERPRET We’re asked to calculate the time until the reaction rate doubles, given the multiplication factor k and two different values for the generation time.

DEVELOP A multiplication factor $k = 1.001$ means the rate of fissioning increases by a factor of 1.001 with each generation time; after two generations it will have increased by k^2 , and so forth. So our plan

is to find the number n of generations that gives $k^n = 2$. Then we can multiply by the two different τ values to find the actual times: $t = n\tau$.

EVALUATE We set $k^n = 2$ and take the logarithm of both sides. With $\ln(k^n) = n \ln k$, we have $n \ln k = \ln 2$, or $n = \ln 2 / \ln k = 693$ with $k = 1.001$. With $\tau = 0.1$ s that gives $t = n\tau = 69.3$ s or just over 1 min, but with $\tau = 10^{-4}$ s it’s only 0.07 s.

ASSESS With delayed neutrons the doubling time is long enough for the reactor operators and their mechanical controls to take corrective action; with prompt neutrons there isn’t time to prevent a serious nuclear accident. Delayed neutrons are crucial to reactor control! Loss of control to a reaction governed by prompt neutrons alone was a key factor in the 1986 Chernobyl nuclear accident.

High-energy fission neutrons aren’t very effective at causing additional fission events, so in most reactor designs they must be slowed to roughly the mean thermal speed. A substance called the **moderator** effects this slowing through elastic collisions between neutrons and the moderator nuclei. In Chapter 9 you saw that the maximum energy transfer occurs when colliding particles have equal mass; therefore, the best moderators have

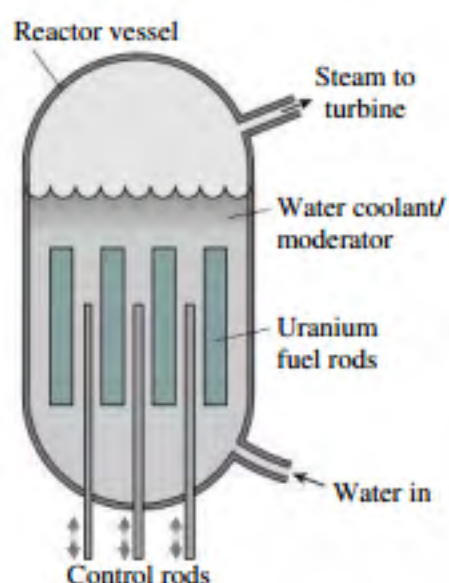


FIGURE 38.15 A boiling-water reactor, one of two types commonly used in the United States.

low-mass nuclei. The choice of moderator is among the most significant distinguishing features of different reactor designs. Another important choice is the **coolant**, which carries off fission-generated heat.

Power reactors in the United States are **light-water reactors** (LWRs), using ordinary water with the protons of its hydrogen serving as the moderator nuclei. The same water acts as coolant and circulates through a pressure vessel containing uranium fuel rods and control rods. About one-third of the United States' roughly 100 power reactors are **boiling-water reactors** (BWRs), in which water boils in the reactor vessel to make steam that drives a turbine-generator (Fig. 38.15). The remainder are **pressurized-water reactors** (PWRs), in which liquid water under pressure transfers its energy to a secondary loop where water boils to make steam (Fig. 38.16). An advantage of this more complex system is that the steam loop doesn't become radioactive. Both types of light-water reactors have an intrinsic safety feature, in that a loss of coolant also means loss of moderator, and that brings the chain reaction to a halt. But light water has the disadvantage that ^1H readily absorbs neutrons, and therefore light-water reactor fuel must be enriched in ^{235}U in order to sustain the chain reaction. Refueling an LWR is also a big operation: The reactor must be shut down and the lid removed from the pressure vessel—a process that can take a month or longer.

The Canadian CANDU design uses heavy water ($^2\text{H}_2\text{O}$, or deuterium oxide) as moderator and coolant. Low neutron absorption means CANDU reactors can operate on natural uranium, eliminating the need for sensitive enrichment technology. And the CANDU design allows continuous refueling, although that increases another proliferation risk by making it easier to extract plutonium.

An older Soviet-era design is the graphite-moderated, water-cooled RBMK reactor. Often built to provide both electric power and plutonium for weapons, this design suffered from the safety defect that loss of coolant not only didn't shut down the chain reaction but could actually accelerate it due to loss of neutron-absorbing hydrogen in the H_2O coolant. The disastrous 1986 Chernobyl accident involved an RBMK reactor. During a test of the emergency cooling system, operators inadvertently put the reactor in an unstable state where an increase in power boiled away more cooling water, resulting in a further increase. The power level soared by a factor of 4000 in 5 seconds, causing a steam explosion that blew the top off the reactor and ignited the flammable graphite moderator. Heavy smoke carried radioactive materials into the atmosphere, resulting in widespread contamination (see Problem 55). Today, thousands of square miles surrounding Chernobyl remain officially uninhabitable.

Other reactor designs include gas-cooled reactors that can operate at higher temperatures and therefore greater thermodynamic efficiencies, and **breeder reactors** designed specifically to “breed” plutonium from U-238 and therefore turn most of the nonfissile U-238 into fissile Pu-239. Breeders have no moderator, use liquid sodium coolant, and are critical with fast neutrons alone. Breeders are therefore less stable than so-called *thermal reactors* using slow neutrons, and widespread adoption of breeder technology entails international trafficking in fissile plutonium.

On the drawing board are a variety of advanced reactors, collectively termed Generation IV—although none has yet proven commercially viable. Some Gen-IV designs claim intrinsic safety, including the ability to survive a total loss of coolant. Others are designed to “burn” waste from current reactors, reducing humanity's long-term burden of nuclear waste. Even the decades-old

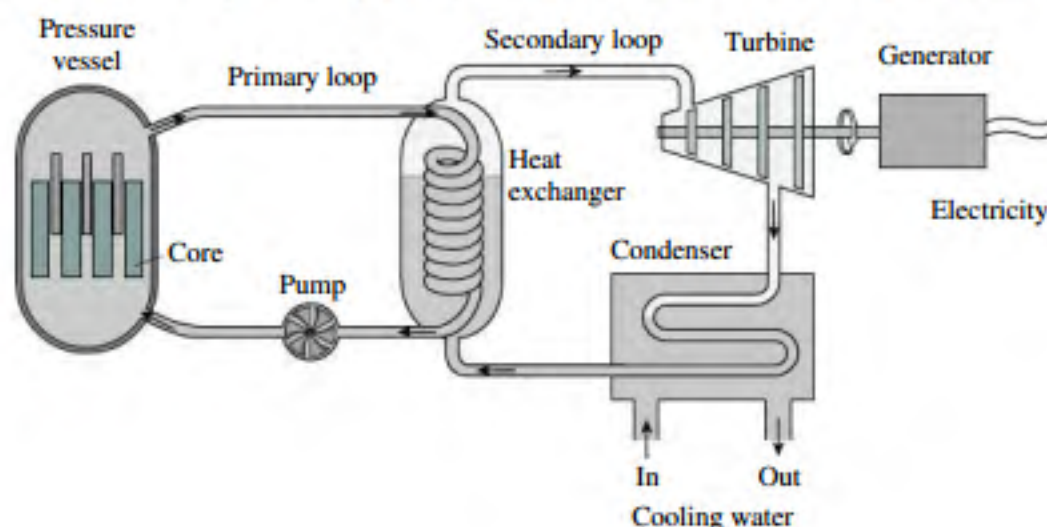


FIGURE 38.16 A complete power plant using a pressurized-water reactor, the most common type of power reactor in the United States.

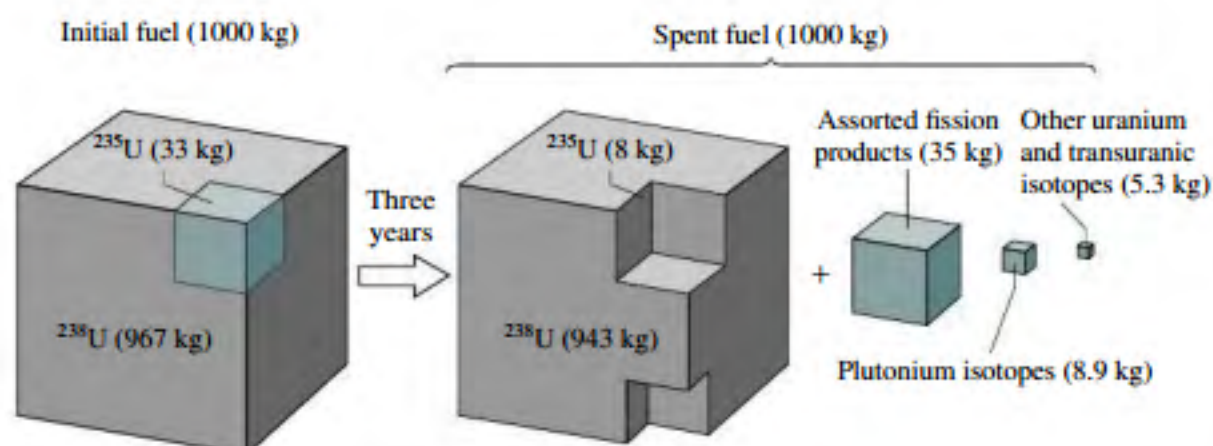


FIGURE 38.17 Evolution of 1000 kg of 3.3% enriched uranium over its 3-year stay in a light-water reactor.

light-water reactor has seen substantial improvements, including more robust safety systems. Had the 1970s-vintage reactors at Fukushima been, instead, the contemporary Generation III+ designs, the Fukushima power plant might well have survived the tsunami.

Nuclear Waste

We've seen that fission products are highly radioactive because they contain too many neutrons for stable middle-weight nuclei. Because of their high activity, fission products have relatively short half-lives, typically measured in decades. That makes fission-product waste dangerous for centuries to a few millennia. However, neutron absorption in fission reactors also produces plutonium and a host of other **transuranic** isotopes—those heavier than uranium—with much longer lifetimes. It's because of these substances that we'll have to safeguard nuclear waste for tens of thousands of years.

As fission proceeds, the concentration of fission products in the fuel increases. Before a reactor's ^{235}U is exhausted, fission products begin absorbing enough neutrons to interfere with the chain reaction. In U.S. LWRs, that requires about one-third of the fuel rods to be replaced annually. Older fuel is also rich in fissile plutonium, and at the end of a fuel rod's 3 years in the reactor, more than half the energy generation comes from fissioning plutonium rather than uranium. Figure 38.17 shows the evolution of nuclear fuel in an LWR.

The disposal of nuclear waste is a thorny issue, mixing political and scientific considerations. To date, the United States has no repository for commercial nuclear waste, which continues to accumulate at reactor sites. Lest you picture mountains of nuclear garbage, however, remember that factor-of- 10^7 difference between nuclear and chemical energy sources. That translates into far less fuel needed for nuclear power plants, and far less waste produced. A 1-GW power reactor produces some 20 tons of high-level nuclear waste annually, while a comparable coal plant produces 1000 tons of carbon dioxide and 30 tons of solid waste *every hour*.

GOT IT?

38.4 Transportation and mining accidents involving coal are much more frequent than those involving uranium fuel. What's the fundamental reason for this?

Prospects for Nuclear Power

Today, nuclear power supplies some 11% of the world's electrical energy, a figure that's dropped from a high of 15% in 2006 due to economic factors and the Fukushima accident. Reliance on nuclear power varies widely; in nuclear-intensive France the figure is nearly 80%, and in the United States it's 20%. Dozens of new reactors are under construction, predominantly in Asia; most use advanced versions of light-water reactor designs. But worldwide, hundreds of older reactors are nearing the end of their lifetimes, and without massive new construction, nuclear's share of the world's energy supply is unlikely to increase significantly.

Concern over climate change from fossil-fuel combustion has spurred a renewed interest in nuclear power, even among some environmentalists. New reactor designs promise greater reliability, economic viability, and, most important, safety based on intrinsic reactor design rather than complicated safety systems. Most physicists agree that the public's concern over nuclear power is exaggerated. We regularly accept much greater risks from other

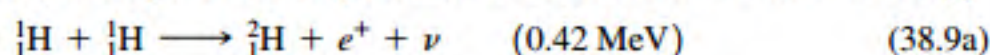
technologies—for example, some 7500 premature deaths each year in the United States due to pollution from coal-fired power plants. Comparable estimates for nuclear plants range from about 10 to fewer than 1000 from even the most vigorously antinuclear groups.

Nevertheless, ongoing uncertainties about the risk of catastrophic nuclear accidents, long-term waste storage, terrorism, and weapons proliferation continue to haunt the nuclear power industry. Proliferation, especially, is a very real concern. Although nuclear power and weapons development are different enterprises, they share infrastructure and an educated technological elite that can be put to either purpose. If nuclear power is to advance, it will need to do so under strict international guarantees against diversion of materials and expertise to weapons production.

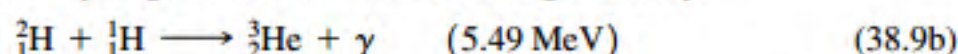
38.5 Nuclear Fusion

LO 38.5 *Explain nuclear fusion as it occurs in stars and describe attempts to harness fusion as an energy source on Earth.*

The curve of binding energy (Fig. 38.9) shows that fusion of light nuclei provides another approach to nuclear energy production. The curve is steepest at its left end, indicating that the most energy per nucleon comes from the fusion of hydrogen. Indeed, the fusion reactions powering the Sun and many other stars begin with the fusion of hydrogen to form deuterium. Also emitted in the process are a positron, a neutrino, and 0.42 MeV of energy:



Deuterium then fuses with hydrogen to form helium-3 and a gamma ray:

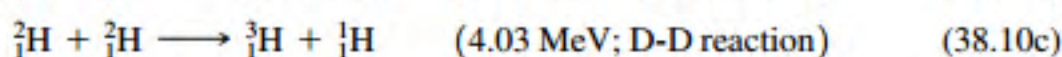
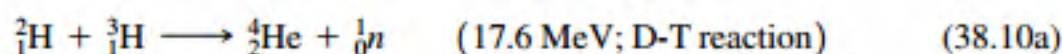


Two helium-3 nuclei then react to form helium-4 and a pair of protons (${}^1_1\text{H}$), releasing 12.86 MeV:



In addition, the positron from reaction 38.9a annihilates with an electron, forming two gamma rays with a total energy of $2mc^2$ or 1.022 MeV. Together, these reactions constitute the **proton–proton cycle**. In the full cycle, reactions 38.9a and b occur twice for each occurrence of reaction 38.9c. The net effect is to convert four protons and two electrons to a single He-4 nucleus, releasing 26.7 MeV (Fig. 38.18). In massive stars, ${}^3_2\text{He}$ then becomes a building block for still heavier elements, as we discussed earlier.

Reaction 38.9a does not occur readily, and terrestrial fusion research has therefore focused on reactions involving the heavier hydrogen isotopes. Of immediate interest are deuterium–tritium (D-T) and deuterium–deuterium (D-D) reactions, listed below with the energy released in each:



The two outcomes of the D-D reaction have nearly equal probability.

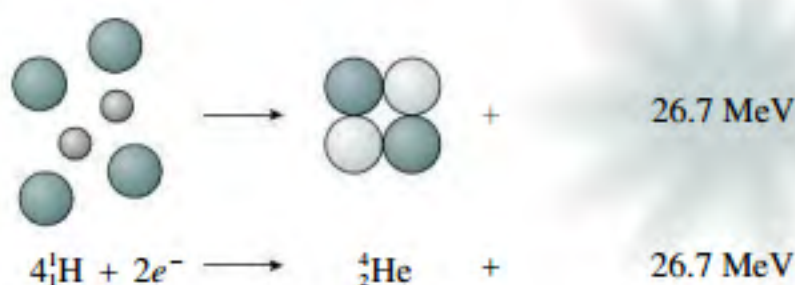


FIGURE 38.18 Net result of the proton–proton cycle of Equations 38.9.

The electrical repulsion between nuclei makes it difficult to get them close enough to fuse. Although quantum tunneling helps, it still takes very high nuclear speeds—corresponding to high temperatures—to initiate fusion. At fusion temperatures, atoms are stripped of their electrons and the fusing material constitutes a plasma. It's necessary somehow to contain this hot plasma. Stars achieve both ends with their immense gravity, which compresses stellar material to fusion temperatures and simultaneously provides confinement. In the Sun's core, for example, the temperature is some 15 MK, and fusing nuclei approach with energies on the order of 1 keV—although even under these conditions the fusion process isn't particularly efficient.

Terrestrial fusion requires still higher temperature, as high-energy particles undergo large accelerations that result in the plasma losing energy by radiation. The temperature at which fusion-generated power exceeds radiation loss is the **critical ignition temperature**. For the D-D reactions of Equations 38.10b and c, Fig. 38.19 shows that the ignition temperature is about 600 MK; for D-T it's a lower 50 MK. Net fusion-energy production requires not only high temperature but also confinement for long enough that the fusion energy produced exceeds the energy required to heat the plasma. The heat required depends on the number of nuclei or, on a volume basis, on the number density n . However, the rate of fusion-energy production depends on the *square* of the density. That's because doubling n doubles *both* the number of nuclei available to strike other nuclei and the number of nuclei available to be struck; the result is a quadrupling of the fusion rate. The total energy released therefore scales as $n^2\tau$, where τ is the **confinement time**. Meanwhile the radiation energy loss depends linearly on n , and as a result there's a minimum value of the product $n\tau$ necessary in an energy-producing fusion device. This condition is the **Lawson criterion**, given approximately by

$$\begin{aligned} n\tau &> 10^{22} \text{ s/m}^3 && \text{(Lawson criterion, D-D fusion)} \\ n\tau &> 10^{20} \text{ s/m}^3 && \text{(Lawson criterion, D-T fusion)} \end{aligned} \quad (38.11)$$

The factor-of-100 difference here shows that D-T fusion will be much easier to achieve.

Fusion technologies use two distinct approaches to the Lawson criterion. **Inertial confinement** strives for very high densities with short confinement times—so short that the particles' inertia alone is sufficient to prevent them from leaving the fusion site during the brief time needed. **Magnetic confinement** holds lower-density plasma in a “magnetic bottle” whose magnetic-field configuration minimizes the chance of escape during a relatively long confinement time. Neither approach has yet produced a sustained energy yield from fusion.

Inertial Confinement Fusion

Although peaceful fusion devices still elude us, inertial confinement has been used successfully since the 1950s in thermonuclear weapons—often called “hydrogen bombs” to distinguish them from fission explosives (incorrectly called “atomic bombs”). Thermonuclear weapons aren't pure fusion devices, though. They use a fission explosion to achieve the high temperatures needed to ignite fusion, and a clever arrangement for focusing the fission energy on a mixture of lithium deuteride and plutonium-239. The mixture is compressed to fusion temperatures, and fission neutrons convert lithium to helium and tritium. D-T fusion then occurs, providing the device with approximately half its explosive yield. The remainder comes from fission in an outer layer of natural uranium, whose nonfissile U-238 nevertheless fissions under the bombardment of high-energy neutrons. There's essentially no limit to the yield of a thermonuclear weapon, and devices as large as 58 megatons (Mt) TNT equivalent have been tested. That's 5000 times the energy of the fission bomb that destroyed Hiroshima. Today's missile-based thermonuclear weapons range from 40 kt to about 1 Mt, and there remain thousands of them in the world's arsenals.

Inertial confinement fusion (ICF) schemes for controlled fusion focus high-power laser beams on millimeter-sized deuterium–tritium targets, producing miniature thermonuclear explosions. The most advanced ICF experiment is the National Ignition Facility (NIF) at California's Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory. NIF uses 192 laser beams to focus a 1.9-MJ pulse of some 20-ns duration on a gold chamber containing the D-T target (Fig. 38.20); the gold converts laser light energy into intense X-rays that then compress the target to the temperature and density needed for fusion. During the brief pulse, the peak

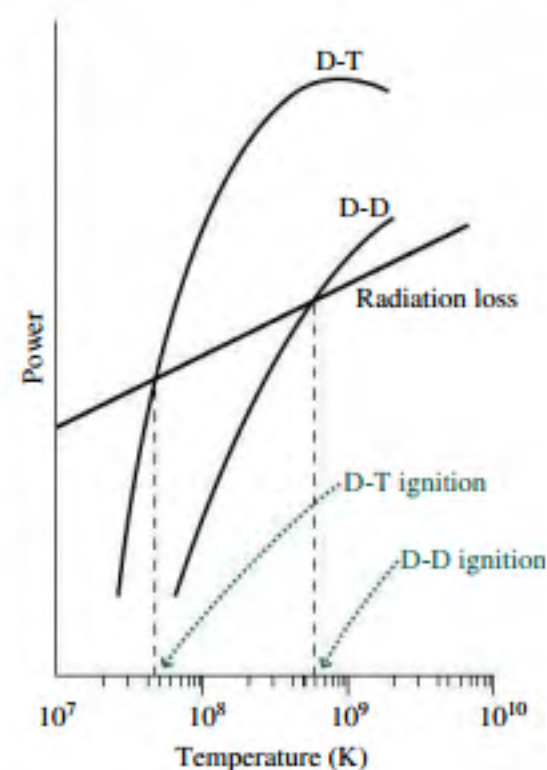


FIGURE 38.19 Power loss by radiation and power produced by D-D and D-T fusion reactions, as functions of temperature on a log-log plot.



FIGURE 38.20 Target chamber of the National Ignition Facility is 11 m in diameter and weighs 130 tonnes. Holes are ports for the 192 laser beams that converge on the millimeter-sized target.

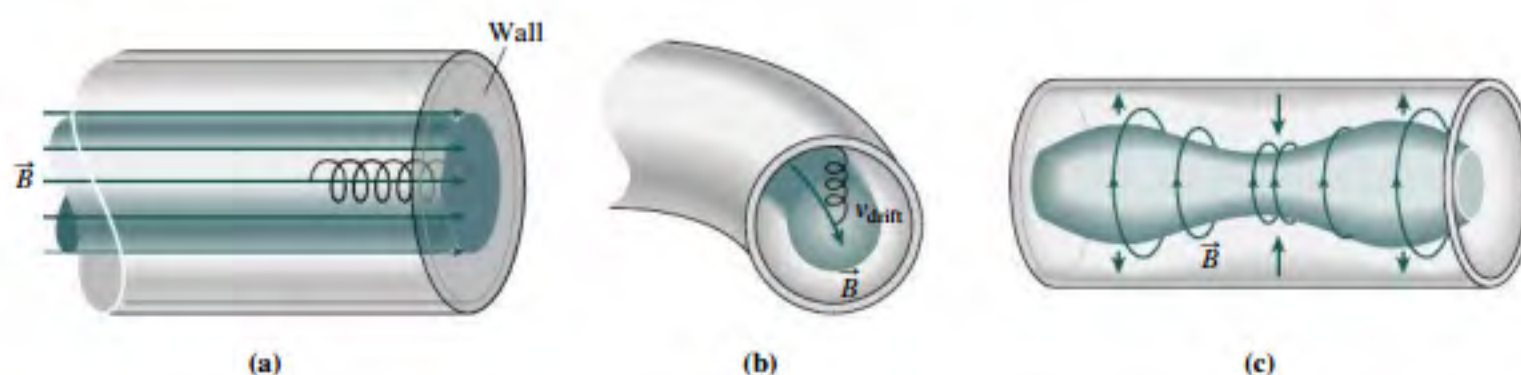


FIGURE 38.21 Plasma loss in magnetic confinement. Colored region represents the plasma. (a) End losses occur when field lines intersect device walls. (b) Curvature of field lines results in cross-field drifts. (c) Instabilities distort the plasma and magnetic field. In (a) and (b) the spiral represents the path of a charged particle.

laser power is nearly 500 TW—about 30 times humanity’s total energy-consumption rate. In 2013 NIF achieved a milestone of sorts, with the energy produced from fusion exceeding for the first time the energy absorbed by the target. But there’s still a long way to go: Total laser beam energy was still 100 times the energy from fusion, and far more energy still was required to produce the laser beams. It takes several days to prepare NIF for a single laser “shot,” while a fusion power plant would require some 15 shots each second to reach a commercially viable power output. Development of fusion energy is only one of NIF’s three broad purposes; the others are to explore matter under extreme conditions and to simulate nuclear weapons explosions without carrying out actual nuclear tests.

Magnetic Confinement Fusion

In Chapter 26 we saw how charged particles in highly conducting plasma are essentially “frozen” to the magnetic field lines. Trapping of charged particles on magnetic field lines is the essence of magnetic confinement fusion schemes. The first job of magnetic confinement is to create a magnetic configuration that keeps plasma away from the relatively cool walls of the device. Plasma can escape to the walls in three general ways, as shown in Fig. 38.21.

The most promising magnetic fusion device is the **tokamak**, a Russian invention now used worldwide in fusion research. The tokamak has a toroidal configuration whose magnetic field lines never penetrate the walls, eliminating the end loss shown in Fig. 38.21a. Making the machine larger reduces field-line curvature, and with it the cross-field drift of Fig. 38.21b. Additional field components enhance confinement and suppress the instabilities of Fig. 38.21c. After smaller tokamaks paved the way, a vast international consortium is constructing the ITER fusion reactor in France (Fig. 38.22). ITER is scheduled to begin plasma experiments in the mid-2020s and to begin fusion operations in 2035. ITER is expected to be the first magnetic fusion system to produce net energy exceeding the energy used for plasma heating. ITER will operate at a plasma temperature higher than 100 MK and should generate 400 MW of fusion power from its 840 cubic meters of D-T plasma. ITER will use deuterium and lithium as fuel, with tritium (${}^3\text{H}$) “bred” right in the reactor by neutron bombardment: ${}^6_3\text{Li} + {}^1_0\text{n} \longrightarrow {}^4_2\text{He} + {}^3_1\text{H}$.

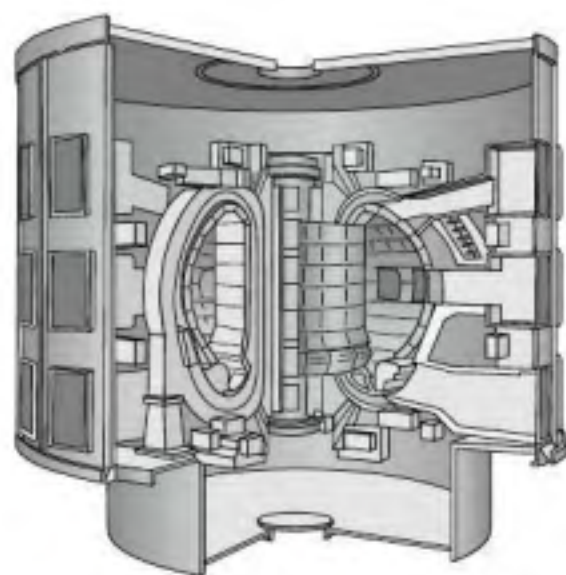


FIGURE 38.22 Cutaway diagram of the ITER fusion reactor. D-shaped structures are cross sections of the toroidal plasma chamber.

Prospects for Fusion Energy

When work on controlled fusion began in the 1950s, scientists confidently predicted that limitless fusion energy would be available in a few decades. More than half a century later, controlled fusion still appears decades away. But it’s a goal worth pursuing: Problem 72 shows that with D-D fusion, a gallon of seawater is equivalent to some 300 gallons of gasoline, and Problem 73 shows that fusion energy resources could last far longer than the Sun will continue to shine!

Once controlled fusion proves scientifically feasible, there will be formidable engineering challenges in the design of a practical fusion power plant. Intense neutron fluxes from D-T fusion degrade materials that form the reaction chamber. Neutron-capture reactions produce radioactive isotopes within the walls, although the associated radioactivity and that of the tritium fuel are much less than the radioactivity of fission waste.

The first practical fusion plants will likely use D-T fusion because its ignition temperature and Lawson criterion are lower than for D-D fusion; the resulting energy will probably run a conventional steam cycle. But the D-D reaction promises cleaner and more efficient power production. Because D-D reaction 38.10c produces charged protons (${}^1_1\text{H}$) rather than neutral neutrons, there's the possibility of using a *magnetohydrodynamic* (MHD) *generator*, in which electromagnetic induction converts charged-particle kinetic energy directly to electricity. MHD generators would bypass the conventional steam cycle and greatly increase the thermodynamic efficiency of a fusion power plant.

There's one caveat to this rosy fusion future: Although fusion itself is relatively clean and produces no greenhouse gases, the availability of unlimited cheap energy would likely spur industrial growth at a level our planet might not tolerate. And ultimately, if fusion energy use grew exponentially, the waste heat from fusion power could itself have climate-changing consequences.

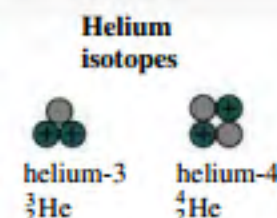
GOT IT?

38.5 A single D-T fusion reaction releases 17.6 MeV of energy, while fissioning of a single uranium nucleus releases some 200 MeV. How do these reactions compare on a per-unit-mass basis? (a) fusion releases considerably more energy per unit mass of reacting particles; (b) fission releases considerably more energy per unit mass; (c) they release about the same energy per unit mass

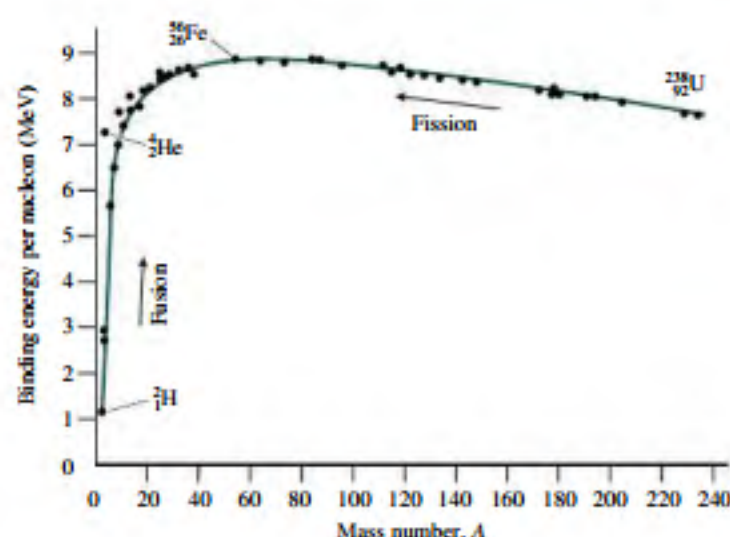
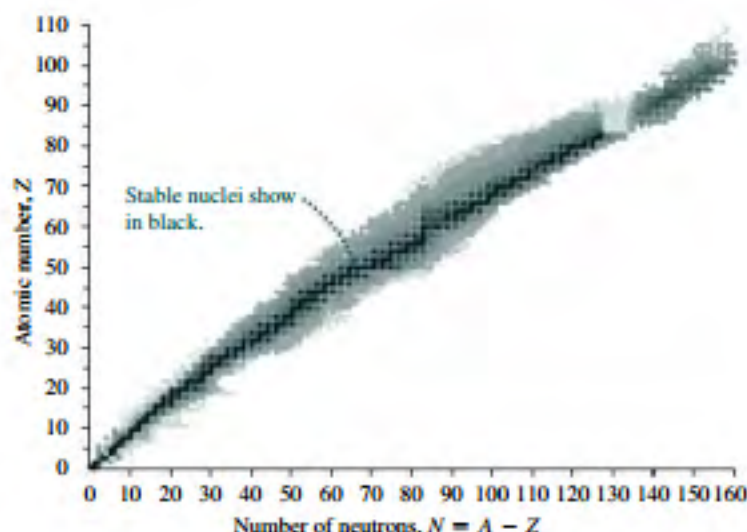
Chapter 38 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is that the tiny but massive atomic nucleus is a repository of vast energy—on the order of 10^7 times the energy released in chemical reactions. The protons and neutrons that make up the nucleus can take many configurations, with the **atomic number**, Z , determining the element and the **mass number**, A , determining the particular **isotope**. We write ${}_Z^AX$ to describe the isotope with mass number A of the element whose atomic number is Z and whose symbol is X .

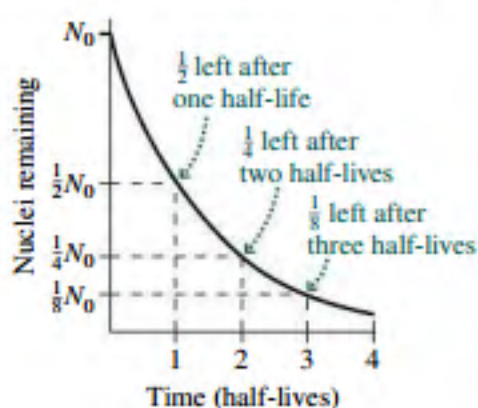


Stable isotopes require a delicate balance between protons and neutrons, with near equal numbers for lighter stable nuclei and more neutrons for heavier nuclei. **Unstable isotopes** are **radioactive** and decay by shedding particles. The **curve of binding energy** shows that energy can be released by either **fusion** of lighter nuclei or **fission** of heavier nuclei.

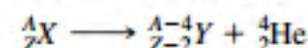


Key Concepts and Equations

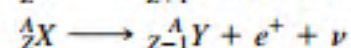
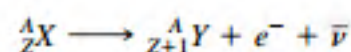
Radioactive isotopes decay with a characteristic **half-life**, $t_{1/2}$: $N = N_0 2^{-t/t_{1/2}}$.



Alpha decay emits a helium-4 nucleus:



Beta decay emits an electron or a positron and an antineutrino or a neutrino:



Gamma decay emits a high-energy photon (gamma ray) as an excited nucleus drops to a lower energy state:



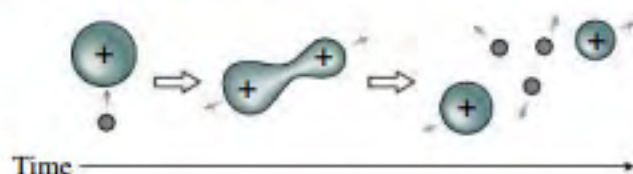
Applications

Radioactivity is measured in **becquerels**, with 1 Bq equal to one decay per second. **Sieverts** (Sv) measure the biological effects of radiation. Residents of the United States receive an average yearly radiation dose of about 3.6 mSv from both natural and artificial sources.

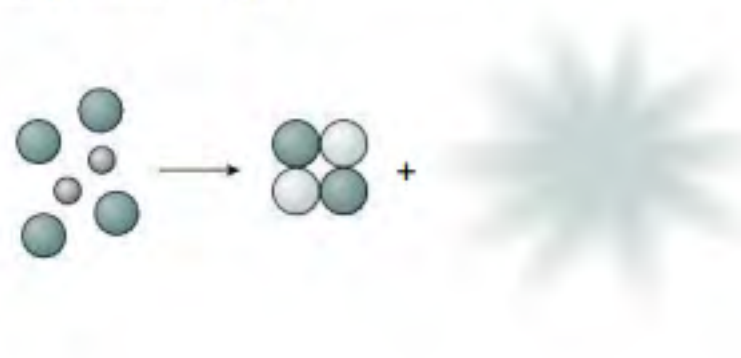
For fission, the most important isotopes are the **fissile** ${}_{92}^{235}\text{U}$ and ${}_{94}^{239}\text{Pu}$, which can fission when struck by low-energy neutrons:



The extra neutrons produced in fission can sustain a **chain reaction** provided there's a **critical mass** of fissile material. Exponentially growing chain reactions power fission weapons, while controlled fission occurs in **nuclear reactors** used for power generation.



Fusion powers the Sun and stars but has proved elusive on Earth except in thermonuclear weapons. **Inertial confinement** or **magnetic confinement** fusion may one day provide us with nearly limitless energy.



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!

BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems



Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 38.1** Describe the structure of the atomic nucleus.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 38.1, 38.2; Exercises 38.11, 38.12, 38.13, 38.14, 38.15; Problems 38.42, 38.43, 38.44, 38.75, 38.76
- LO 38.2** Describe alpha, beta, and gamma radioactivity and perform calculations involving half-lives.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 38.3, 38.4, 38.5; Exercises 38.16, 38.17, 38.18, 38.19, 38.20, 38.21; Problems 38.47, 38.48, 38.49, 38.50, 38.51, 38.52, 38.53, 38.54, 38.55, 38.56, 38.57, 38.58, 38.59, 38.60, 38.61, 38.62, 38.78, 38.79, 38.80, 38.81, 38.82, 38.83, 38.84
- LO 38.3** Explain the curve of binding energy and how it accounts for nuclear fission and fusion and for the origin of the elements.
For Thought and Discussion Question 38.6; Exercises 38.22, 38.23, 38.24, 38.25; Problems 38.45, 38.46, 38.74
- LO 38.4** Describe nuclear fission and explain how it's used to power nuclear reactors.
For Thought and Discussion Questions 38.7, 38.8, 38.9; Exercises 38.26, 38.27, 38.28, 38.29; Problems 38.63, 38.69, 38.70, 38.80, 38.85
- LO 38.5** Explain nuclear fusion as it occurs in stars and describe attempts to harness fusion as an energy source on Earth.
For Thought and Discussion Question 38.10; Exercises 38.30, 38.31, 38.32, 38.33; Problems 38.70, 38.71, 38.72, 38.73, 38.75, 38.76, 38.79

For Thought and Discussion

- Why do nuclei contain neutrons?
- In beta decay, why does a neutrino (or an antineutrino) always get emitted?
- Beta decay by positron emission is soon followed by a pair of 511-keV gamma rays. Why?
- Why would it have been easier to make bombs fueled with uranium-235 a few billion years ago?
- Why are iodine-131 and strontium-90 particularly dangerous radioisotopes?
- On an energy-release-per-unit-mass basis, by approximately what factor do nuclear reactions exceed chemical reactions?
- Explain and distinguish the roles of the control rods and moderator in a nuclear reactor.
- Is ^{238}U fissionable? Is it fissile? Explain the distinction.
- Why are fission fragments necessarily radioactive?
- If you could extract all the deuterium from a gallon of seawater and use it as fusion fuel, how much gasoline would it be equivalent to in energy content?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 38.1 Elements, Isotopes, and Nuclear Structure

- Three radon isotopes have 125, 134, and 136 neutrons. Write the symbol for each.
- Section 38.1 mentions the 2018 first-ever synthesis of a calcium isotope with twice as many neutrons as protons. Write the symbol for this isotope.
- How do (a) the number of nucleons and (b) the nuclear charge compare in the two nuclei $^{35}_{17}\text{Cl}$ and $^{35}_{19}\text{K}$?
- Compare the radius of the proton (the $A = 1$ nucleus) with the Bohr radius of the hydrogen atom.
- A rare occurrence called *true ternary fission* occurs in about one in 10^8 uranium fission events. Here a U-235 nucleus fissions into three approximately equal fragments. Estimate the common radius of these fragments.

Section 38.2 Radioactivity

- How many half-lives will it take for the activity of a radioactive sample to diminish to 10% of its original level?
- Copper-64 can decay by any of the three beta-decay processes. Write the equation for each decay.
- Referring to Fig. 38.7, write equations describing the decays of (a) radon-222 and (b) lead-214.
- Carbon-11-labeled acetate shows promise in PET scans for determining the extent of metastasized prostate cancer. (a) Given C-11's 20.4-min half-life, how long will it take an initial dose of 2.0 GBq to decay to 7.0 kBq (roughly the natural radioactivity of the human body)? (b) What nucleus remains after C-11 decays by positron emission?
- BIO** Nuclear bomb tests of the 1950s deposited a layer of strontium-90 over Earth's surface. How long will it take from the time of the bomb tests for (a) 98.1% and (b) 99.9% of this radioactive contaminant to decay?
- Rework Example 38.2, now using the international guideline of 100 Bq/kg for milk.

Section 38.3 Binding Energy and Nucleosynthesis

- Find the total binding energy of oxygen-16, given its nuclear mass of 15.9905 u.
- Determine the nuclear mass of nickel-60, given that its binding energy is very nearly 8.8 MeV/nucleon.
- Find the nuclear mass of plutonium-239, given its atomic mass of 239.052157 u.
- The mass of a lithium-7 nucleus is 7.01435 u. Find the binding energy per nucleon.

Section 38.4 Nuclear Fission

- A ^{235}U nucleus undergoes neutron-induced fission, yielding ^{141}Cs , three neutrons, and another nucleus. What's that nucleus?
- Neutron-induced fission of ^{235}U yields fission products iodine-139 and yttrium-95. How many neutrons are released?
- Write a complete equation for neutron-induced fission of plutonium-239 that yields barium-143, two neutrons, and another nucleus.
- Assuming 200 MeV per fission, determine the number of fission events occurring each second in a reactor whose thermal power output is 3.2 GW.

Section 38.5 Nuclear Fusion

30. Verify from Equations 38.9 that the proton–proton cycle yields net energy of 26.7 MeV.
31. In a magnetic-confinement fusion device with confinement time 0.4 s, what density is required to meet the Lawson criterion for D-T fusion?
32. The National Ignition Facility's 2013–2014 experiments achieving net fusion energy gain involved effective confinement times of about 150 ps. What corresponding density was required to meet the Lawson criterion for D-T fusion?
33. What confinement time is required for the D-T Lawson criterion in the ITER fusion reactor, given its plasma density of 1.5×10^{19} particles per cubic meter?

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

34. **Example 38.3:** Archeologists unearth charcoal from an ancient campfire and find its carbon-14 activity per unit mass to be 38.4% of the activity measured in living wood. Find the charcoal's age.
35. **Example 38.3:** A sample of wood that's 2878 years old (known from counting tree rings) is used to calibrate radiocarbon-dating equipment. How should the carbon-14 content of this sample compare with that of living wood?
36. **Example 38.3:** Geologists often use *uranium-lead dating* of the mineral zircon to determine the age of ancient rocks. When zircon forms, it contains uranium but essentially no lead. Uranium-238 (^{238}U) nuclei then decay to stable lead-206 (^{206}Pb) by the chain of decays shown in Fig. 38.7. Because the remaining half-lives in that chain are much shorter than the original ^{238}U decay to ^{234}Th , the ^{206}Pb forms with essentially the half-life of ^{238}U —namely, 4.46 Gy. On the assumption that all the lead in a sample has come from the decay of ^{238}U , geologists can determine the number of ^{238}U and ^{206}Pb atoms in a sample and sum them to get how much ^{238}U there was originally. By comparing the present-day ^{238}U with the original amount, they can then compute the sample's age. Use this procedure to find the age of a sample that contains 2.83 μmol of ^{238}U and 1.47 μmol of ^{206}Pb .
37. **Example 38.3:** Today uranium-235 constitutes only 0.72% of natural uranium; the rest is ^{238}U . What was the concentration of ^{235}U when Earth formed, 4.54 Gy ago? Consult Table 38.1 and remember that both uranium isotopes have been decaying over that time.
38. **Example 38.4:** The *deuteron* is a ^2H nucleus, consisting of a proton and a neutron. Given that the deuteron's mass is 3.34358×10^{-27} kg, what is its binding energy?
39. **Example 38.4:** Use Fig 38.9 to estimate the mass defect in ^{56}Fe .
40. **Example 38.4:** The mass of the tritium nucleus (sometimes called a *triton*) is 5.00736×10^{-27} kg. Use this quantity, along with the deuteron mass from Problem 38 and any relevant information from Table 38.2, to verify the energy release in the DT fusion reaction of Equation 38.10a.

41. **Example 38.4:** Use Equation 38.10b's description of the D–D fusion reaction to determine the mass of the ^3He nucleus (sometimes called a *helion*). You'll need the deuteron mass given in Problem 38.

Problems

42. Estimate (a) the density of and (b) the number of neutrons in a neutron star 10 km in diameter with a mass 1.5 times that of the Sun.
43. Find the energy needed to flip the spin state of a proton in Earth's magnetic field, whose magnitude is about 30 μT .
44. An NMR spectrometer is described as a "300-MHz instrument," meaning 3.00×10^8 Hz is the frequency supplied to its transmitter coil to flip the spin states of bare protons. What's the strength of its unperturbed magnetic field?
45. Iron-56, with nuclear mass 55.9206 u, is among the most tightly bound nuclei. Find the binding energy per nucleon, and check your answer against Fig. 38.9.
46. Find the atomic mass of iridium-193, whose binding energy is 7.94 MeV/nucleon.
47. Radioactive potassium-40 (^{40}K ; see Table 38.1) today comprises 0.0117% of natural potassium; the remainder consists of the stable isotopes ^{39}K and ^{41}K . Determine the percent of natural potassium that was ^{40}K when Earth formed, 4.54 Gy ago.
48. Iodine-123 (^{123}I) is an isotope used in medical diagnosis of thyroid conditions. A patient is administered ^{123}I with activity 12.5 MBq, and 24 hours later the activity level is 3.52 MBq. What's the half-life of ^{123}I ?
49. You're a home inspector, and you find radon-222 activity of 24 pCi/L in the air inside a house, well above the EPA's "action" limit of 4 pCi/L. If radon infiltration were stopped but there were no significant ventilation, how long would it take for the radon activity to drop below the action limit?
50. **BIO** Nitrogen-13 is a 9.97-min-half-life isotope used to "tag" ammonia for PET scans, including quantification of myocardial infarction. Consider an intravenous injection incorporating 20.0 mCi of N-13. Plot a graph of N-13 activity versus time, with your vertical axis logarithmic and your horizontal axis linear. Why is the graph a straight line? What's the significance of its slope?
51. Thorium-232 is an α emitter with 14-billion-year half-life. Radium-228 is a β^- emitter with 5.75-year half-life. Actinium-228 is a β^- emitter with 6.13-hour half-life. (a) What's the third daughter in the thorium-232 decay chain? (b) Make a chart similar to Fig. 38.7 showing the first three decays in the thorium chain.
52. How much cobalt-60 ($t_{1/2} = 5.24$ years) must be used to make a laboratory source whose activity will exceed 1.00 GBq for 1.5 years?
53. Archaeologists unearth a bone and find its carbon-14 content is 37% of that in a living bone. How old is the archaeological find?
54. Show that the decay constant and half-life are related by $t_{1/2} = \ln 2 / \lambda = 0.693 / \lambda$.
55. The table below lists reported levels of iodine-131 contamination in milk in four countries affected by the 1986 Chernobyl accident, along with each country's safety guideline. Given I-131's half-life of 8.04 days, how long did each country have to wait for I-131 levels to decline to a level deemed safe by its standards?

Country	Level (Bq/L)	
	Reported	Safety Guideline
Poland	2000	1000
Austria	1500	370
Germany	1184	500
Romania	2900	185

56. How many atoms are in a radioactive sample with activity 12 Bq and half-life 15 days?
57. Analysis of a Moon rock shows that 81% of its initial K-40 has decayed to Ar-40, a process with a half-life of 1.2×10^9 years. How old is the rock?
58. You're assessing the safety of an airport bomb-detection system in which neutron activation of the stable nitrogen isotope ^{14}N turns it into unstable ^{15}N . The N-16 decays by beta emission with 7.13-s half-life. How long after activation will the N-16 activity have dropped by a factor of 1 million?
59. *Brachytherapy* is a cancer treatment involving implantation of radioactive "seeds" at the tumor site. Iridium-192, often used for cancers of the head and neck, undergoes beta decay by electron capture with 74.2-day half-life. Inner-shell electrons drop to the orbital occupied by the captured electron, resulting in emission of gamma rays that kill surrounding tumor cells. What percentage of initial Ir-192 activity will remain one year after implant?
60. Recent studies suggest that our Sun is descended from a massive star that lived only a few million years before exploding as a supernova. One clue comes from aluminum-26 that was present in primitive meteorites. ^{26}Al decays with a 730,000-year half-life to stable magnesium-26. Although ^{26}Al from the early solar system has long since decayed, ^{26}Mg today serves as a proxy for the original ^{26}Al . Measurements of ^{26}Mg in meteorites show that the ratio of ^{26}Al to stable ^{27}Al was about 5×10^{-5} at the time the Sun was forming. Fusion in a massive star should produce the two isotopes with an abundance ratio $^{26}\text{Al}/^{27}\text{Al}$ of 2×10^{-3} . Use this information to estimate the time from production of the aluminum isotopes to the formation of the Sun.
61. You're a geologist assessing underground sites for nuclear waste storage. A ruling by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency suggests that waste-storage facilities should be designed for a million years of radiation protection. What fraction of plutonium-239 initially in nuclear waste would remain after that time?
62. Oxygen-15 ($t_{1/2} = 2.0$ min) is produced in a hospital's cyclotron. What should the initial activity concentration be if it takes 3.5 min to get the O-15 to a patient undergoing a PET scan requiring 0.50 mCi/L of activity?
63. How much ^{235}U would be needed to fuel the reactor of Exercise 29 for 1 year? (Note: Your answer is an overestimate because fission of ^{239}Pu also contributes to the power output.)
64. How much uranium-235 would be consumed in a fission bomb with a 20-kt explosive yield?
65. A neutron collides elastically head-on with a stationary deuteron in a reactor moderated by heavy water. How much of its kinetic energy is transferred to the deuteron? (Hint: Consult Chapter 9.)
66. A buildup of fission products "poisons" a reactor, dropping the multiplication factor to 0.995. How long will it take the reactor power to decrease by half, given a generation time of 0.15 s?
67. The total thermal power generated in a nuclear power reactor is 1.3 GW. How much U-235 does it consume in a year?
68. New Hampshire's Seabrook nuclear power plant produces electrical energy at the rate of 1.2 GW and consumes 1311 kg of U-235 each year. Assuming the plant operates continuously, find (a) its thermal power output and (b) its efficiency.
69. In the dangerous situation of prompt criticality in a fission reactor, the generation time drops to 100 μs as prompt neutrons sustain the chain reaction. If a reactor goes prompt critical with $k = 1.001$, how long does it take for a 100-fold increase in reactor power?
70. How much heavy water (deuterium oxide, $^2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ or D_2O) would be needed to fuel a 1200-MW D-D fusion power plant for 1 year?
71. The proton-proton cycle consumes four protons while producing 27 MeV of energy. (a) At what rate must the Sun consume protons to produce its power output of 4×10^{26} W? (b) The present phase of the Sun's life will end when it has consumed about 10% of its original protons. Estimate how long this phase will last, assuming the Sun's 2×10^{30} -kg mass was initially 71% hydrogen.
72. You're enthusiastic about fusion energy, and you want to convince others of the enormous fuel resource represented by the 0.015% of hydrogen nuclei that are actually deuterium. Using an average of 7.2 MeV per deuteron, you calculate the energy that would be released if all the deuterium in a gallon of seawater underwent fusion, and you compare your result with the energy in a gallon of gasoline (see Appendix C). What do you find for the gasoline equivalent of a gallon of seawater?
73. In a further effort to convince others of the benefits of fusion energy, you use the data from Problem 72 to estimate how long the deuterium in the world's oceans (average depth 3 km) could supply humanity's energy needs at the current consumption rate of about 18 TW. You then compare this with the Sun's remaining lifetime, about 5 billion years. What do you find?
74. Figure 38.7 shows that the uranium-238 decay chain starts with the alpha decay of ^{238}U , yielding thorium-234 (^{234}Th). The mass of the ^{238}U nucleus is 237.92 u, and the alpha particle emerges with 4.27 MeV of kinetic energy. Find the mass of the ^{234}Th nucleus.
75. Bismuth-209 and chromium-54 combine to form a heavy nucleus plus a neutron. Identify the heavy nucleus.
76. It's possible, but difficult, to realize alchemists' dreams of synthesizing gold. One approach bombards mercury-198 with neutrons to produce, for each neutron captured, a gold-197 nucleus and another particle. Write the equation for this reaction.
77. Nickel-65 beta decays by electron emission with decay constant $\lambda = 0.275 \text{ h}^{-1}$. (a) Identify the daughter nucleus. (b) In a sample of initially pure Ni-65, find the time when there are twice as many daughter nuclei as parents.
78. The dominant naturally occurring radioisotopes in the typical human body include 16 mg of ^{40}K and 16 ng of ^{14}C . Using half-lives from Table 38.1, estimate the body's natural radioactivity.
79. A laser-fusion fuel pellet has mass 1.0 mg and consists of equal parts (by mass) of deuterium and tritium. (a) If half the deuterons and an equal number of tritons participate in D-T fusion, how much energy is released? (b) At what rate must pellets be fused in a power plant with 3000-MW thermal power output? (c) What mass of fuel would be needed to run the plant for 1 year? Compare your answer with the 3.6×10^6 tons of coal needed to fuel a comparable coal-burning power plant.
80. Of the neutrons emitted in each fission event in a light-water reactor, an average of 0.6 neutron is absorbed by ^{238}U , leading to the formation of ^{239}Pu . (a) Assuming 200 MeV per fission, how much ^{239}Pu forms each year in a 30%-efficient nuclear plant whose electric power output is 1.0 GW? (b) With careful design, a fission explosive can be made from 5 kg of ^{239}Pu . How many potential bombs are produced each year in the power plant of part (a)?
81. A family member is about to have a brain scan using technetium-99m, an excited isotope with 6.01-hour half-life. The hospital makes Tc-99m from the decay of molybdenum-99 ($t_{1/2} = 2.7$ days), then delivers it to the nuclear medicine department. You're told that the Tc-99m will arrive 90 minutes after production, and that there must be 10 mg of it. The technician says she will produce 12 mg of Tc-99m. Is that sufficient?

82. A mix of two isotopes, one of them from Table 38.1, is observed over a period of 15 days, and the total radioactivity is tabulated below. Determine a quantity that, when plotted against time, should yield one or more straight lines. Make your plot and use it to determine the half-lives of the isotopes. Identify the isotope from Table 38.1.

Time (days)	0	0.25	0.5	0.75	1.0
Activity (kBq)	200	103	54	29	17

Time (days)	1.3	5.0	10	15
Activity (kBq)	4.6	3.2	2.1	1.4

83. The probability that a radioactive nucleus will have lifetime t is the probability that it will survive from time 0 to time t multiplied by the probability that it will decay in the interval from t to $t + dt$. Use this to show that the average lifetime of a nucleus is equal to the inverse of the decay constant in Equation 38.3a.
84. Nucleus A decays into B with decay constant λ_A and B decays into a stable product C with decay constant λ_B . A pure sample starts with N_0 nuclei A at $t = 0$. Find an expression for the total activity of the sample at time t .
85. (a) Example 38.6 explains that the number of fission events in a chain reaction increases by a factor k with each generation. Show that the total number of fission events in n generations is $N = (k^{n+1} - 1)/(k - 1)$. (b) In a typical nuclear explosive, k is about 1.5 and the generation time is about 10 ns. Use the result from (a) to calculate the time for all the nuclei in a 10-kg mass ^{235}U to fission. *Hint:* Sum a series in part (a), and neglect 1 compared with N in part (b).

Passage Problems

In 1972, a worker at a nuclear fuel plant in France found that uranium from a mine in Oklo, in the African Republic of Gabon, had less U-235 than the normal 0.7%—a quantity known from meteorites and Moon rocks to be constant throughout the solar system. Further analysis showed the presence of isotopes that would result from the decay of fission products. Scientists drew the remarkable conclusion that a natural nuclear fission reaction had occurred some 2 billion years ago, lasting for about 100,000 years. Water, mixing with rich uranium ore, provided the moderator that enabled the chain reaction. More significantly, U-235's 700-My half-life means that 2 billion years ago there was a higher abundance of U-235 in natural uranium.

86. At the time of the Oklo fission reaction, the actual *amount* of U-235 present was
- about the same as today.
 - about twice as much as today.
 - about four times as much as today.
 - about eight times as much as today.
87. Given U-238's 4.5-billion-year half-life, the percentage of U-235 in natural uranium 2 billion years ago was
- about 1%.
 - about 4%.
 - about 10%.
 - nearly 100%.
88. The power output from fission at Oklo was 10 kW to 100 kW. If at some point that power had been sufficient to boil away the water at the reaction site, the chain reaction would have
- ceased.
 - continued, but more slowly.
 - been unaffected.
 - sped up.
89. At the Oklo site today, you would expect to find measurable amounts of
- strontium-90.
 - cesium-137.
 - plutonium-239.
 - none of the above.

Answers to Chapter Questions

Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Nuclear power supplies about 9% of the world's total energy, and more than 11% of electrical energy.

Answers to GOT IT? Questions

- 38.1 (a) $Z = 6, N = 6$; (b) $Z = 8, N = 7$; (c) $Z = 26, N = 31$; (d) $Z = 94, N = 145$
- 38.2 (e)
- 38.3 $^{57}_{26}\text{Fe}$, $^{132}_{54}\text{Xe}$, $^{238}_{92}\text{U}$, ^4_2He , ^3_1H
- 38.4 Energy is vastly more concentrated in nuclear fuels, which means far less nuclear fuel is mined and transported.
- 38.5 (a)

From Quarks to the Cosmos

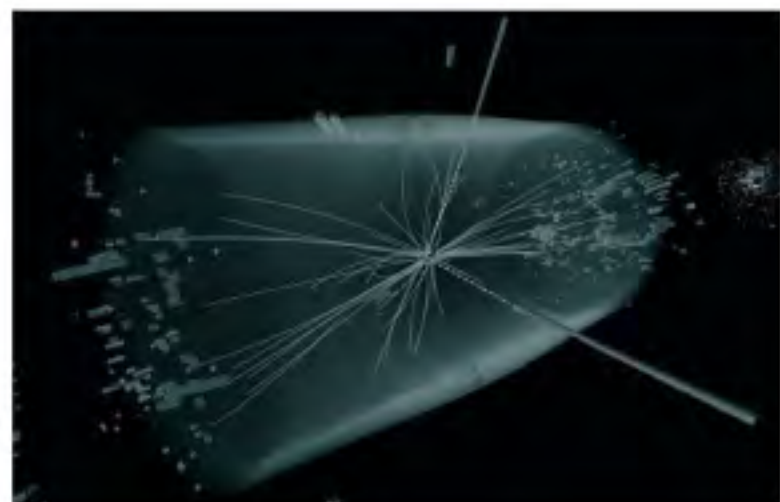
Skills & Knowledge You'll Need

- Electric charge (Section 20.1)
- Photons (Section 34.3)
- The fundamental forces (Section 4.3)

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- LO 39.1** Describe qualitatively how photons mediate the electromagnetic force.
- LO 39.2** Distinguish between categories of particles, including leptons and baryons, mesons and hadrons, fermions and bosons, and gauge particles.
- LO 39.3** Describe the standard model of particles and forces, including the role of quarks.
- LO 39.4** Discuss unification of forces and the role of symmetry breaking.
- LO 39.5** Summarize the evolution of the universe, including our evidence for cosmic expansion.



A Higgs boson decays to two photons in this image from the Large Hadron Collider. Discovery of the Higgs in 2012 completed physicists' standard model of particles and fields. What role does the Higgs play in particle physics?

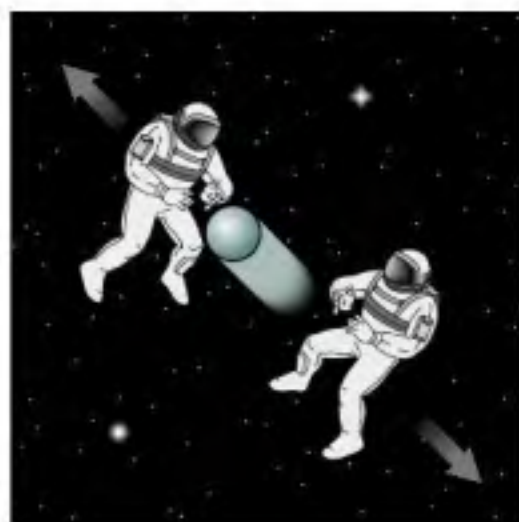
The past five chapters have extended the realm of physics to the scales of atoms and molecules and then down to the atomic nucleus. Here we go further still, probing the structure of nucleons themselves and trying to make sense of the host of subatomic particles nature reveals. We'll be asking questions about the ultimate nature of matter at the smallest scales, but in the process we'll find a remarkable connection with questions of the largest scale—questions about the origin and ultimate fate of the entire universe.

39.1 Particles and Forces

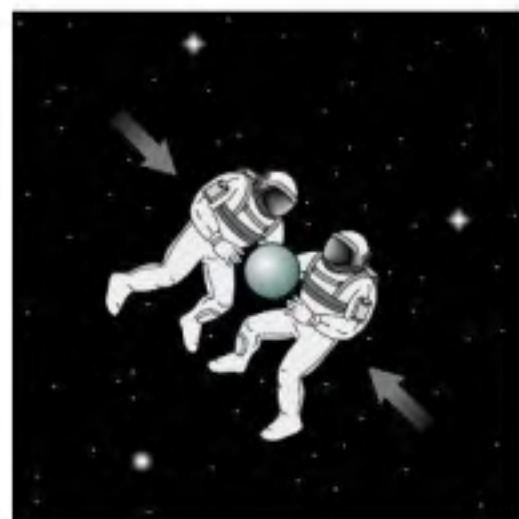
LO 39.1 *Describe qualitatively how photons mediate the electromagnetic force.*

By 1932 four “elementary” particles of matter were known: the electron, the proton, the neutron, and the neutrino. In addition, there were the positron, antiparticle to the electron, and the photon of electromagnetic radiation. There were also the seemingly fundamental forces—gravity, the electromagnetic force, the nuclear force, and the weak force that manifests itself in beta decay.

In Chapter 34 you saw how the interaction of electromagnetic waves with matter ultimately involves individual photons—the quanta of the electromagnetic field. In the quantum-mechanical view of electromagnetism, the force between two charged particles also involves photons, now exchanged between the interacting particles. Imagine two astronauts tossing a ball back and forth (Fig. 39.1a). Catching or throwing the ball, one astronaut gains momentum in a direction away from the other, so the exchange results in a net average repulsive force. If the two astronauts struggle for possession of the ball, then the ball



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 39.1 Analogs for particle-mediated forces: (a) repulsive and (b) attractive. The ball represents a photon.

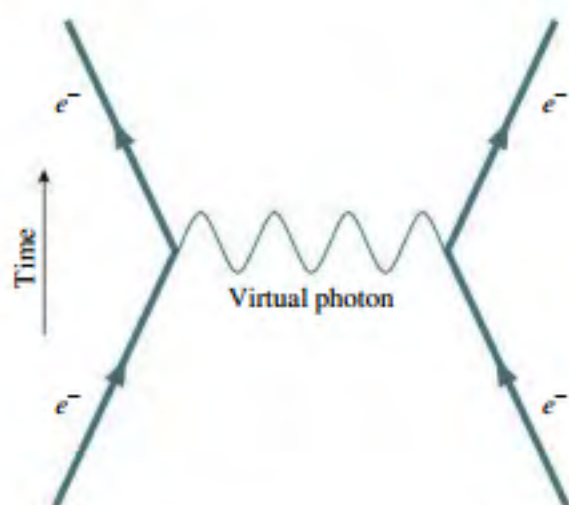


FIGURE 39.2 A Feynman diagram, showing the interaction of two electrons through the exchange of a virtual photon. The diagram provides a quantum description of the electrons' Coulomb repulsion.

mediates what appears as an attractive interaction (Fig. 39.1b). Figure 39.1 gives classical analogs for the attractive and repulsive electrical interactions involving photon exchange.

You know that photons are emitted when a particle jumps into a lower energy state, with the photon carrying off energy equal to the energy difference between the two states. This process conserves energy. But now we're saying that a single, free electron emits photons that it exchanges with another particle to produce what we call the electromagnetic force. How can that process conserve energy? The energy–time uncertainty relation (Equation 34.16) says that an energy measured in a time Δt is necessarily uncertain by an amount $\Delta E \geq \hbar/\Delta t$. The photon exchanged by two particles lasts only a short time, and therefore its energy is uncertain. So we can't really say that energy conservation is violated. A photon created in this way and lasting for only the short time it takes to exchange with another particle is called a **virtual photon**. We never “see” the virtual photon, since it's emitted by one particle and absorbed by the other.

The quantum theory of the electromagnetic interaction is called **quantum electrodynamics** (QED). Although begun by Paul Dirac, it was brought to consistent form in 1948 by Richard Feynman, Sin-Itiro Tomonaga, and Julian Schwinger. The fundamental event in QED is the interaction of a photon with an electrically charged particle. Two such events joined by a common virtual photon give the quantum electrodynamical description of the electromagnetic force (Fig. 39.2). The predictions of quantum electrodynamics have been confirmed experimentally to a remarkably high precision, and today QED is our best-verified theory of physical reality.

Mesons

In 1935 the Japanese physicist Hideki Yukawa proposed that the nuclear force should, like the electromagnetic force, be mediated by exchange of a particle. Yukawa called his hypothetical particle a **meson**. Because the range of the nuclear force is limited, Yukawa argued, the meson should have nonzero mass. The reason for this connection between mass and range again lies in the energy–time uncertainty relation.

The electromagnetic force falls off as $1/r^2$ and thus has an infinite range. Two particles can be very far apart and still interact electromagnetically. Since photons travel at the finite speed of light, the time Δt for a photon interaction can be arbitrarily long. The energy–time uncertainty relation $\Delta E \Delta t \geq \hbar$ thus shows that the energy uncertainty ΔE can be arbitrarily small. Thus, the possible energies for virtual photons must extend downward toward zero—and that can happen only if photons have zero rest energy.

The nuclear force, in contrast, has a finite range of about 1.5 fm. At close to the speed of light, the longest a particle mediating this force would need to exist is a time Δt given by

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta x}{c} = \frac{1.5 \times 10^{-15} \text{ m}}{3.0 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}} = 5.0 \times 10^{-24} \text{ s}$$

Then energy–time uncertainty gives

$$\Delta E \geq \frac{\hbar}{\Delta t} = \frac{1.05 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J}\cdot\text{s}}{5.0 \times 10^{-24} \text{ s}} = 2.1 \times 10^{-11} \text{ J} = 130 \text{ MeV}$$

Yukawa therefore proposed a new particle with mass $130 \text{ MeV}/c^2$, about 250 times that of the electron. Yukawa's prediction was eventually confirmed—but not before physicists found yet another particle.

39.2 Particles and More Particles

LO 39.2 Distinguish between categories of particles, including leptons and baryons, mesons and hadrons, fermions and bosons, and gauge particles.

In the 1930s the most available source of high-energy particles was cosmic radiation—high-energy protons and other particles of extraterrestrial origin. In 1937 the American physicist Carl Anderson (who had earlier discovered the positron) and his colleagues

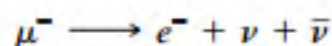
identified in cosmic rays a particle with a mass 207 times that of the electron. Now called the **muon**, this particle had the same charge and spin as the electron and seemed to behave much like a heavier version of the electron. Two muons were found: the negatively charged μ^- and its antiparticle μ^+ . Although the muon mass was close to Yukawa's prediction, the muon interacted only weakly with nuclei and, therefore, could not be the mediator of the nuclear force.

The real Yukawa particle was discovered 10 years later in 1947, again in cosmic rays, and turned out to have a mass about 270 times that of the electron. This time there were three related particles, now called **pions**: positive π^+ , negative π^- , and neutral π^0 .

The new particles are all unstable, undergoing decays that ultimately result in well-known stable particles. The negative pion, for example, decays with a mean lifetime of 26 ns to a negative muon and an antineutrino:



The muon then decays with a 2.2- μ s lifetime to an electron and a neutrino–antineutrino pair:



APPLICATION Particle Detection



Despite their small size, we can, remarkably, follow the trajectories of individual subatomic particles. Early particle detectors included the **cloud chamber** and the **bubble chamber**, in which particles ionize vapor or liquid, causing visible condensation or bubble formation along the particle tracks. More recent is the **multiwire proportional chamber**, in which crisscrossed wire grids record current pulses from electrons liberated as particles pass through a gas-filled chamber (see the photo, which shows a multiwire chamber at the Stanford Linear Accelerator Center). Analyzing the pulse distribution then reveals particle trajectories. Applying a magnetic field in a particle detector curves the trajectories, enabling scientists to determine the particles' charge-to-mass ratios. **Scintillation detectors** give off light flashes as particles pass through them, and the flash intensity provides a measure of particle energy. **Calorimeters**, consisting of layers of scintillators and energy-absorbing material, analyze the showers of secondary particles produced by a single high-energy particle to determine the original particle's energy. Modern detectors are huge agglomerations of several basic detector types, arranged to extract the maximum information from particle interactions. Computer analysis of detector output allows the identification of events so rare they may occur only once in a million interactions.

Classifying Particles

The availability of increasingly powerful particle accelerators led to an upsurge in particle discoveries. By 1980 there were more than 100 “elementary” particles. Early attempts to classify particles distinguished them by mass, but a more enlightening approach is based on the fundamental forces. We'll now use this approach to outline three particle classes.

Leptons are particles that don't experience the strong force. They include the familiar electron, the muon, a more massive particle called the tau, and three types of neutrinos, one associated with each of the charged leptons. The neutrinos were long thought to be massless, but recent experiments show that neutrinos have small nonzero mass and that they “oscillate” among the three types. Each of the leptons has an antiparticle as well. There are thus a total of six lepton–antilepton pairs, and experimental evidence strongly suggests that no others can exist. The leptons all have spin $\frac{1}{2}$ and are therefore **fermions**, which obey the Pauli exclusion principle. Leptons are believed to be true elementary point particles with zero size and no internal structure.

Hadrons are particles that do experience the strong force. They fall into two subclasses: mesons and baryons. **Mesons** have integer spin and are therefore **bosons** that don't obey the exclusion principle. Mesons include Yukawa's pions and a host of others; all are unstable. **Baryons** have half-integer spins and are therefore fermions. They include the familiar proton and neutron and similar but more massive particles. The baryons are grouped into pairs, triplets, and higher-multiple groupings of closely related particles. The neutron and proton, for example, form a pair that differ in charge and very slightly in mass. Each baryon has an antiparticle, as do most mesons, but some neutral mesons are their own antiparticles.

The third class of particles comprises the **field particles** or **gauge bosons**, quanta of the different force fields and "carriers" of those forces. These include the familiar photon for the electromagnetic force; three particles called the W^+ , W^- , and Z for the weak force; the **gluon** for the strong force and a hypothetical **graviton** that would carry the gravitational force in an as yet incomplete theory of quantum gravity. All the field particles are bosons, carrying spin 1 or, for the graviton, spin 2. You might think Yukawa's meson should be in this category in its role as carrier of the nuclear force. That it doesn't appear here is a hint that the nuclear force isn't really fundamental; as we'll soon see, it's the gluon that plays the more fundamental role.

Table 39.1 lists some of the particles known even before full confirmation of today's elementary particle theories.

Particle Properties and Conservation Laws

Many new particles can be characterized by known properties such as mass, spin, and electric charge. Of these, spin and charge are associated with important conservation laws—conservation of angular momentum and conservation of electric charge. Allowed interactions among particles *must* conserve these quantities. The annihilation of an electron–positron pair, for example, is allowed because the initial particles have no net charge and neither do the resulting photons. Similarly, beta decay of the neutron produces an electron, a proton, and a neutral antineutrino and thus conserves charge:

$$n \longrightarrow p + e^- + \bar{\nu}_e$$

Here the subscript on the antineutrino indicates that it's an electron antineutrino, as opposed to the muon or tau variety.

Other particle properties appear to be conserved as well. Associated with each baryon or antibaryon is its **baryon number** (B), assigned the value $+1$ for a baryon and -1 for an antibaryon. All experimental evidence to date points to conservation of baryon number: In all observed particle reactions, the sums of the baryon numbers before and after the reaction are equal. An example is, again, beta decay of the neutron: The process starts with a neutron of baryon number $B = 1$ and ends with a proton ($B = 1$), an electron, and an antineutrino. The last two are leptons, so their baryon numbers are zero, and thus baryon number is conserved. Some theories, which we describe shortly, suggest that baryon number is only approximately conserved. If that's so, then the proton itself is an unstable particle with a mean lifetime in excess of 10^{35} years.

Lepton number seems also to be conserved. Again, beta decay provides an example: The neutron and proton, being baryons, have lepton number zero, while the resulting electron and antineutrino have lepton numbers $+1$ and -1 , respectively.

In the late 1950s particles called K , Λ , Σ , and Ξ were discovered. Strange characteristics of these particles' decays could be explained by introducing a new fundamental property, called **strangeness** (s), with the new particles having $s = \pm 1$ or ± 2 . Strangeness is conserved in strong and electromagnetic interactions, but in weak interactions its value can change. We'll soon see that several other new properties are needed to characterize matter fully.

Table 39.1 Selected Particles*

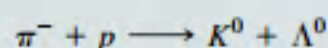
Category/ Particle	Symbol (Particle/ Antiparticle)	Spin	Mass (MeV/c ²)	Baryon Number, <i>B</i>	Lepton Number, <i>L</i>	Strangeness, <i>s</i>	Lifetime (s)
Field particles							
Photon	γ, γ	1	0	0	0	0	Stable
Z^0	Z^0, Z^0	1	91,188	0	0	0	$\sim 10^{-25}$
Leptons							
Electron	e^-, e^+	$\frac{1}{2}$	0.511	0	+1	0	Stable
Muon	μ^-, μ^+	$\frac{1}{2}$	105.7	0	+1	0	2.2×10^{-6}
Tau	τ^-, τ^+	$\frac{1}{2}$	1777	0	+1	0	2.9×10^{-13}
Electron neutrino	$\nu_e, \bar{\nu}_e$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$< 3 \times 10^{-6}$	0	+1	0	Stable
Muon neutrino	$\nu_\mu, \bar{\nu}_\mu$	$\frac{1}{2}$	< 0.19	0	+1	0	Stable
Tau neutrino	$\nu_\tau, \bar{\nu}_\tau$	$\frac{1}{2}$	< 18.2	0	+1	0	Stable
Hadrons							
Mesons							
Pion	π^+, π^-	0	139.6	0	0	0	2.6×10^{-8}
Pion	π^0, π^0	0	135.0	0	0	0	8.4×10^{-17}
Eta	η^0, η^0	0	547.8	0	0	0	$\sim 5 \times 10^{-19}$
Rho	ρ^0, ρ^0	1	775.8	0	0	0	$\sim 4 \times 10^{-24}$
Kaon	K^+, K^-	0	493.7	0	0	1	1.2×10^{-8}
Kaon	K^0, K^0	0	497.6	0	0	1	0.895×10^{-10} $5.18 \times 10^{-8\dagger}$
Baryons							
Proton	$p, \bar{p}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	938.3	1	0	0	Stable
Neutron	$n, \bar{n}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	939.6	1	0	0	885.7
Lambda	$\Lambda^0, \bar{\Lambda}^0$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1115.7	1	0	-1	2.6×10^{-10}
Sigma	$\Sigma^+, \bar{\Sigma}^-$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1189.4	1	0	-1	0.80×10^{-10}
Sigma	$\Sigma^0, \bar{\Sigma}^0$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1192.6	1	0	-1	7.4×10^{-20}
Sigma	$\Sigma^-, \bar{\Sigma}^+$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1197.4	1	0	-1	1.5×10^{-10}
Omega	$\Omega^-, \bar{\Omega}^+$	$\frac{3}{2}$	1672.45	1	0	-3	0.82×10^{-10}

*Does not include any hadrons with *c*, *b*, or *t* quarks.

†The neutral kaon exists as a quantum-mechanical superposition of states with two different lifetimes.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 39.1 Conservation Laws: Evaluating a Particle Interaction

A pion collides with a proton to produce a neutral kaon and a lambda particle:



(a) Which of the following are conserved: electric charge, baryon number, lepton number, strangeness? (b) Could another possible result of a pion-proton collision be an electron and a proton?

EVALUATE (a) Table 39.1 shows that all the particles are hadrons, so the lepton number is zero on both sides of the equation. On the left we have a positive and a negative particle and on the right two neutrals, so the electric charge is zero on both sides. The pion is a meson and the proton a baryon, so the baryon number on the left is 1; similarly, the kaon is a meson and the Λ^0 a baryon, so the baryon number is conserved. Finally, neither pion nor proton is strange, so the total strangeness on the left is zero. Table 39.1 lists the K^0 with $s = +1$ and the Λ^0 with $s = -1$, so strangeness, too, is conserved. (b) Having an electron and a proton as the final state would conserve charge (0),

strangeness (0), and baryon number (1). But it wouldn't conserve lepton number, which was originally 0 but would become 1.

ASSESS This example shows how conservation laws restrict the possible outcomes of particle interactions.

MAKING THE CONNECTION What minimum kinetic energy is required for the pion and proton together in order for this reaction to occur?

EVALUATE Table 39.1 gives the rest masses of the pion as 139.6 MeV/c² and the proton as 938.3 MeV/c²; therefore, their rest energies mc^2 are 139.6 MeV and 938.3 MeV, for a total of 1078 MeV. But the tabulated masses of the K^0 and Λ^0 show that the sum of their rest energies is 1613 MeV, so we need an additional $1613 - 1078 = 535$ MeV of energy to drive the reaction. This is the minimum value for the initial kinetic energy—the sum of the pion and proton kinetic energies.

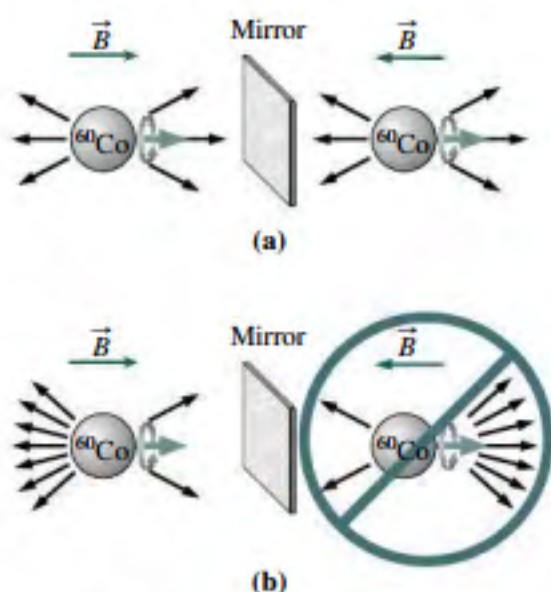


FIGURE 39.3 Experimental evidence for nonconservation of parity. At left of the mirror, a ^{60}Co nucleus has its spin aligned with a magnetic field. (a) Reflected in the mirror, the spin vector still points to the right, even though the magnetic field is reversed. If the mirror image were equally likely, beta emission (arrows) would occur with equal probability along and opposite the spin direction. (b) Experiment shows that beta emission occurs preferentially opposite the spin direction, so the mirror-image situation at the right in (b) does not occur.

Symmetries

Watch a physical process in a mirror, and you expect the image to be a possible physical process; that is, the laws of physics should exhibit **symmetry** with respect to mirror reflection. At the subatomic level, the statement that a process and its mirror image are equally likely is called **conservation of parity**. Mathematically, a system has parity $+1$ if its wave function is unchanged on reflection through the origin—that is, on a coordinate change $x \rightarrow -x$, $y \rightarrow -y$, $z \rightarrow -z$. If the wave function changes sign, then the parity is -1 . Parity is conserved if its value is unchanged in a particle interaction.

In 1957 theoretical physicists Tsung-dao Lee and Chen Ning Yang pointed out that parity conservation had not been tested for the weak force. They made the revolutionary suggestion that parity need not be conserved—tantamount to suggesting that nature can distinguish right- from left-handed systems that are otherwise identical. A group led by Chien-Shiung Wu took up the challenge. Wu studied the beta decay of cobalt-60 in a magnetic field that established a left-right symmetry. Her experiments showed a preferential beta emission opposite the field direction—a clear violation of parity conservation (Fig. 39.3).

Although parity might not be conserved, theorists held that a combination of parity reversal (P) and charge conjugation (C)—changing particles into antiparticles—would result in indistinguishable physical behavior. But in 1964 a violation of this CP conservation was found in a rare decay of the neutral kaon to a pion-antipion pair. The Russian physicist Andrei Sakharov suggested that this asymmetric decay might account for the preponderance of matter over antimatter in today's universe.

It still appears that CPT conservation holds; that is, a combination of mirror reflection, charge conjugation, and reversal of the time coordinate makes a new physical process indistinguishable from the original. There may be a deep philosophical connection here with the direction of time, but the full implications of CPT symmetry and the failure of its individual components aren't fully understood.

39.3 Quarks and the Standard Model

LO 39.3 Describe the standard model of particles and forces, including the role of quarks.

The proliferation of particles distressed physicists used to finding an underlying simplicity in nature. Were all those particles really “elementary,” or was there a more fundamental, simpler level? In 1961 physicists Murray Gell-Mann and Yuval Ne’eman independently noticed patterns in the then-known particles. They called their patterns the **Eightfold Way**, after Buddhist principles for right living. An empty spot in one pattern led Gell-Mann to predict a new particle with strangeness -3 . Experimentalists soon found the particle, now known as the Ω^- , in bubble-chamber photographs from earlier experiments.

Quarks

Success of the Eightfold Way convinced physicists that many “elementary” particles weren't really elementary. In 1964 Gell-Mann and his colleague George Zweig independently proposed a set of three particles called **quarks** that combined to form the then-known hadrons. These became known as the **up quark**, the **down quark**, and the **strange quark**. For each there was a corresponding antiquark.

One surprising thing about quarks is that they carry fractional electric charges. The two least massive quarks, the up and the down, carry $+\frac{2}{3}e$ and $-\frac{1}{3}e$, respectively; their antiparticles have the opposite charges. The quarks combine in pairs or triplets to make the two classes of hadrons. Baryons, like the proton and the neutron, consist of three quarks (Fig. 39.4). Mesons contain quark-antiquark pairs (Fig. 39.5). The quarks all have spin $\frac{1}{2}$, which explains why the three-quark baryons all have odd half-integer spin, and why the two-quark mesons have integer spin.

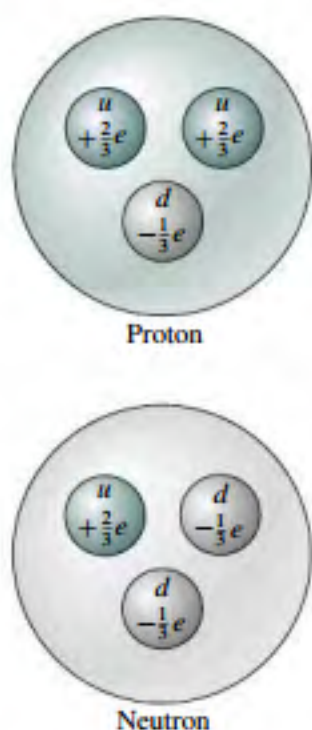


FIGURE 39.4 Protons and neutrons consist of the quark combinations uud and udd , respectively.

The Pauli exclusion principle precludes three particles having the same quantum numbers, so there must be an additional property distinguishing quarks. Called **color**, this property is a kind of “charge”—not to be confused with electric charge—that can take on any of three values called, whimsically, red, green, and blue. The force binding quarks of different colors is the **strong force**, and the quark theory is known as **quantum chromodynamics (QCD)**. In QCD, **gluons** are the field particles that play the role of photons in quantum electrodynamics, binding particles subject to the strong force. Particles formed from quarks—the mesons and the baryons—are always **colorless**. This is true of mesons because they contain a quark of one color and another of its anticolor. It’s true of baryons because they contain three quarks of different colors, which combine to give the baryon zero net color charge. The nuclear force, once thought to be fundamental, is actually a residual manifestation of the strong force, acting between the quarks in colorless particles—in much the same way that the van der Waals force between neutral gas molecules is a “residue” of the stronger electric force among the particles that make up the molecules.

Photons mediate the electromagnetic force between charged particles but are themselves uncharged. In contrast, gluons, like the quarks they bind, carry color charge. There are eight different gluons; six carry combinations like red–antiblue ($R\bar{B}$), green–antired ($G\bar{R}$), and so on; the other two are colorless. Exchange of a colored gluon, unlike photon exchange in quantum electrodynamics, thus changes the colors of the particles involved.

Another surprising aspect of quarks is that the strong force doesn’t decrease with separation. For that reason it appears impossible to isolate a single quark (Fig. 39.6). As a result we never see individual free particles with fractional electric charge.

The up, down, and strange quarks soon proved insufficient to account for all the observed particles. Theorist Sheldon Glashow argued for a fourth quark, called the **charmed quark**. Ten years later, following intensive searches, experimental teams at Brookhaven National Laboratory and the Stanford Linear Accelerator Center announced the discovery of a particle that implies the existence of the charmed quark. The charmed and strange quarks form a related pair, similar to the up/down quark pair.

There’s still one more quark pair. A 1977 experiment confirmed the existence of the **bottom quark**, and in 1995 Fermilab announced the discovery of the **top quark**. The more exotic quarks are more massive, and therefore, through mass–energy equivalence, it takes more energy to produce particles containing them. This need for higher energy is what drives the push for ever more powerful and expensive particle accelerators. (See Application, p. 802.) Table 39.2 lists some properties of the six quarks.

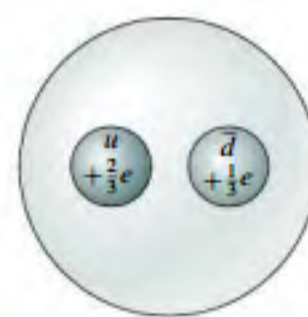


FIGURE 39.5 Mesons consist of a quark and an antiquark. The meson here is the π^+ , made from an up quark and a down antiquark.

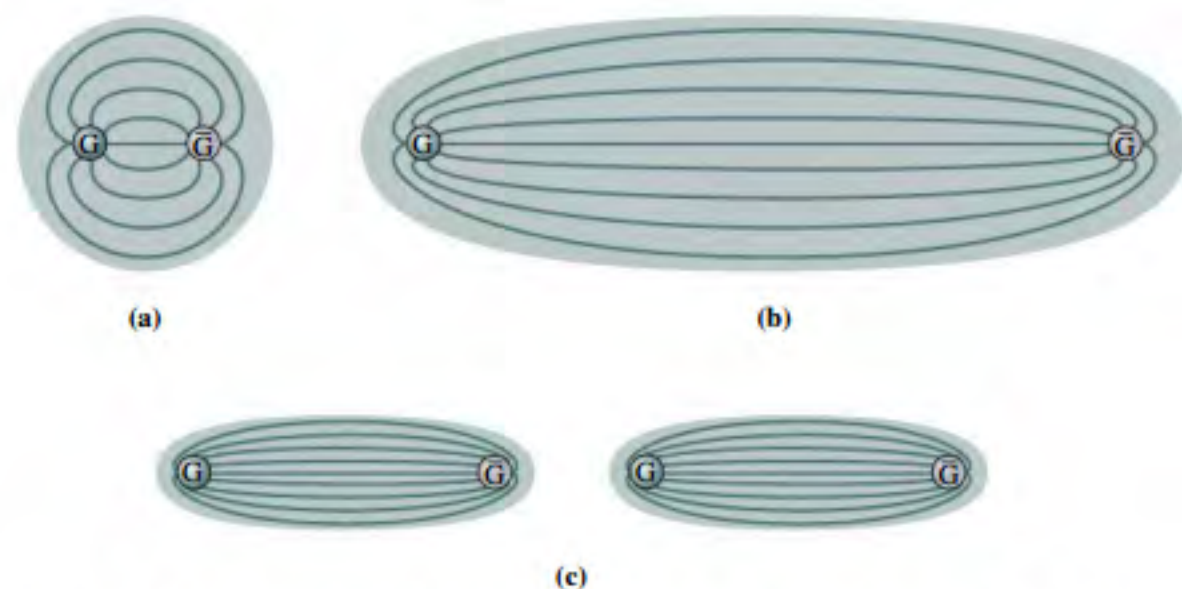


FIGURE 39.6 Quark confinement in a meson consisting of a green quark G and its antiquark $\bar{G}$. (a) Field lines represent the “color field” that joins the two. (b) The field remains confined as the quarks are moved apart, so the field strength stays essentially constant. (c) Pulling the quarks far apart builds up enough energy to create another quark–antiquark pair, rather than isolating individual parts.

Table 39.2 Matter Particles of the Standard Model

Quark Name	Symbol	Approximate Mass (MeV/c ²)*	Charge	Corresponding Leptons (Symbol, Mass in MeV/c ²)
Down	<i>d</i>	5.0	$-\frac{1}{3}e$	Electron (<i>e</i> , 0.511), electron neutrino (ν_e)
Up	<i>u</i>	2.4	$+\frac{2}{3}e$	
Strange	<i>s</i>	100	$-\frac{1}{3}e$	Muon (μ , 106), muon neutrino (ν_μ)
Charmed	<i>c</i>	1300	$+\frac{2}{3}e$	
Bottom	<i>b</i>	4200	$-\frac{1}{3}e$	Tau (τ , 1777), tau neutrino (ν_τ)
Top	<i>t</i>	1.75×10^5	$+\frac{2}{3}e$	

*Quark masses cannot be measured directly and are not precisely determinable; rather, they are calculated based on both experimental results and a particular theoretical framework.

EXAMPLE 39.1

Quarks: Particle Composition and Properties

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Given that the strange quark has strangeness $s = -1$, find the charge and strangeness of the Λ^0 particle, which has quark composition uds .

INTERPRET We're asked to find how the charge and strangeness of three individual quarks combine in a composite particle, the Λ^0 .

DEVELOP Our plan is to sum the values of the quark's charge and strangeness to get the parameters of the Λ^0 .

EVALUATE Table 39.2 gives the charges of the u , d , and s quarks as $+\frac{2}{3}e$, $-\frac{1}{3}e$, and $-\frac{1}{3}e$, respectively. These sum to zero net charge, so the Λ^0 is electrically neutral. The up and down quarks aren't strange, so they have $s = 0$. With $s = -1$ for the strange quark, the Λ^0 must have strangeness -1 .

ASSESS Table 39.1 shows we're right about the strangeness of the Λ^0 , and its superscript 0 implies that this is a neutral particle, as we've found.

The Standard Model

We now have six **flavors** of quarks—up, down, strange, charmed, top, bottom—that seem to be truly elementary constituents of matter. Quarks join to form the hadrons—baryons and mesons. But other particles—namely, leptons and field particles—aren't made from quarks. They, like quarks, seem to be truly indivisible, elementary particles.

In this “zoo” of elementary particles, physicists recognize three distinct “families.” The up and the down quarks make the neutron and proton; together with the electron and its related neutrino, they account for the properties of ordinary matter. A second family consists of the strange and charmed quarks, the electron-like muon, and the muon neutrino. The quarks of this family are more massive than the up and down quarks, and the muon is more massive than the electron. More massive still are the particles of the third family, consisting of the top and bottom quarks, the electron-like tau particle, and the tau neutrino. Table 39.2 lists these three families, from which all known matter is constructed.

You may be expecting that future editions of this book will tell of additional quarks, and thus of additional families of matter. Whether such additional families exist was an open question until physicists at the Large Electron Positron Collider in Geneva, Switzerland, examined more than half a million particle-decay events and concluded that the number of different types of neutrinos that can exist is 2.99 ± 0.06 —at least for low-mass neutrinos like those we've so far detected. Since there's presumably a neutrino type for each family, this result seems to preclude the existence of additional families.

The theory that currently describes elementary particles and their interactions is called the **standard model**. In addition to the matter particles listed in Table 39.2, the standard model includes the gauge bosons responsible for particle interactions. Table 39.3 shows these bosons, which include the photons that mediate the electromagnetic interaction, the gluons of the strong force, the W and Z particles that mediate the weak force, and the Higgs boson—a particle first proposed in 1964 but not discovered until 2012. Interaction of elementary matter particles—quarks and leptons—with the Higgs and its associated field is believed to be responsible for the masses of these particles. The Higgs mechanism,

Table 39.3 Field Particles and Forces

Particle	Mass (GeV/c ²)	Electric and Color Charges*	Force Mediated	Range	Approximate Strength at 1 fm (Relative to Strong Force)
Graviton	0	0, 0	Gravity	Infinite	10^{-38}
$W^{\pm}$	80.2	$\pm 1, 0$	Weak	$<2.4 \times 10^{-18}$ m	10^{-13}
Z^0	91.2	0, 0			
Photon, γ	0	0, 0	Electromagnetic	Infinite	10^{-2}
Gluon, g (8 varieties)	0	0, 6 color–anticolor combinations, 2 colorless	Strong	Infinite†	1
Higgs boson, H^0	125	0, 0	Interaction with the Higgs field gives quarks and leptons their mass.		

*Color is a quark property analogous to, but more complicated than, electric charge.

†The nuclear force is the residual strong force between colorless particles and has a range of about 1 fm (10^{-15} m).

however, makes only a small contribution to the masses of composite particles like baryons, whose mass is largely associated with virtual quarks and gluons.

The standard model is successful in explaining the phenomena of particle physics, but it leaves many fundamental questions unanswered. Why, for example, do the quarks and leptons have the particular masses they do? Why are there only three families of elementary particles? Why are leptons and quarks distinct? Are these particles really elementary, or are there even smaller structures at hitherto unexplored scales? Continuing theoretical work and experiments at ever-higher energies may someday answer these questions.

39.4 Unification

LO 39.4 Discuss unification of forces and the role of symmetry breaking.

We introduced the fundamental forces of nature in Chapter 4: gravity, the electroweak force, and the strong force. It was not always that simple, though. In Chapters 20–29 we studied the electric and magnetic forces, first separately but then with the realization that they fall under the single umbrella of electromagnetism. The unification of electricity and magnetism was a major step forward in our understanding of physical reality. Physicists continue to strive for further unification, with the ultimate hope that someday all the forces will be understood as a manifestation of a single common interaction.

Electroweak Unification

In the 1960s and early 1970s, a century after Maxwell formalized the unification of electromagnetism, physicists Steven Weinberg, Abdus Salam, and Sheldon Glashow proposed that the electromagnetic force and the weak force are really aspects of the same thing. Their theory predicted the existence of the particles W^+ , Z^0 , and W^- , the “carriers” of the unified electroweak force. In 1983 a huge international consortium headed by Carlo Rubbia discovered the W and Z particles (Fig. 39.7), using advances in accelerator technology developed by Simon van der Meer. That discovery confirmed the electroweak unification, and Rubbia and van der Meer joined a long list of physicists who had won the Nobel Prize for contributions to our understanding of the structure of matter.

Further Unification

Electroweak unification led to the present situation in physics, with the strong force, the electroweak force, and gravity comprising the **fundamental forces** that describe all interactions of matter. A further step, the **grand unification theories** (GUTs), attempts to merge the electroweak and strong forces. Some versions of GUT predict that the proton should decay on the very long timescale of some 10^{36} years. We can’t wait that long, but we can put 10^{34} protons together in the form of tens of thousands of tons of water and watch for proton decay (Fig. 39.8). So far, such experiments have not found the predicted decays. Nevertheless, many physicists believe that some form of grand unification will soon be achieved.



FIGURE 39.7 Particle tracks from the decay of a Z particle help confirm electroweak unification.

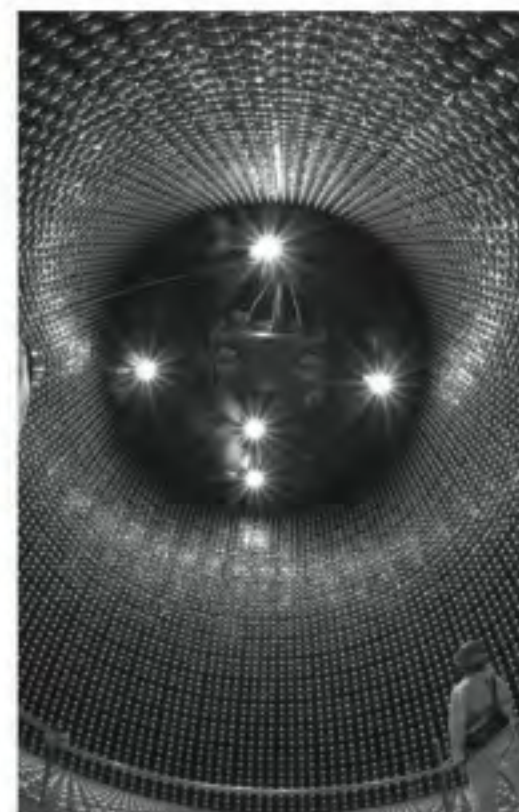


FIGURE 39.8 Japan’s Super Kamiokande experiment consists of 50,000 tons of pure water in an underground chamber, surrounded by some 10,000 photomultiplier tubes to detect flashes from rare nuclear reactions including neutrino interactions and hypothetical proton decays.

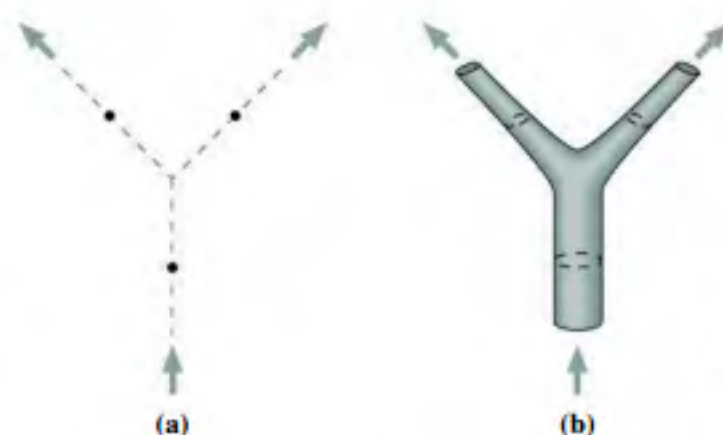


FIGURE 39.9 (a) A particle decay involving point particles in the standard model. (b) A similar decay in string theory. Note that there's no single point in spacetime at which the decay takes place.

Even grand unification would still leave two forces, one of them gravity. Attempts to reconcile our current theory of gravity—Einstein's general theory of relativity—with quantum mechanics have so far made little progress. Yet such a reconciliation is a necessary prerequisite for a final unification of all known forces. A possible candidate is **string theory**, which pictures elementary particles as vibration modes on stringlike structures that may be as short as 10^{-35} m (Fig. 39.9). String theory is set not in the four-dimensional spacetime to which we're accustomed, but in a spacetime with 10 or more dimensions. The extra dimensions are "compactified" in a way that makes them undetectable in normal interactions. To some physicists, string theories hold the promise of a "theory of everything," explaining all our observations about the behavior of the universe. To others they're another in a long line of unsuccessful attempts at a comprehensive explanation of physical phenomena. Only further research will tell.

Symmetry Breaking

Unification theories predict that phenomena that appear distinct under normal conditions will be seen as one at sufficiently high energies. The observed unification represents a kind of symmetry that's "broken" as the energy level drops. Figure 39.10 shows a mechanical analogy for such **symmetry breaking**. With high energy, a ball sits atop a potential "hill," and the situation is symmetric. But when the ball drops to a low-energy state, it ends up at a particular angular position, and the symmetry is broken. Analogously, at energies above 100 GeV, what we call the electromagnetic and weak forces are one and the same. But at lower energies the symmetry is broken, and we see two distinct forces. Particle accelerators now being planned will exceed the energy of electroweak symmetry breaking, allowing us to explore that interaction in its fundamental simplicity. But the energy at which symmetry breaking occurs increases to some 10^{15} GeV as we move from electroweak to grand unification, making it unlikely that we'll achieve that energy in the foreseeable future. And the energy at which gravity, too, would join a single unified force is an even more remote 10^{19} GeV.

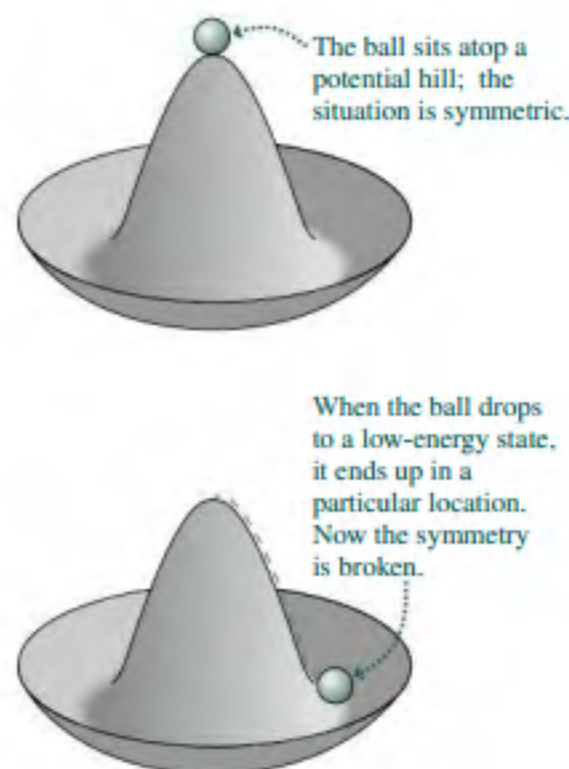


FIGURE 39.10 A mechanical analogy for symmetry breaking, showing a ball subject to a hat-shaped potential-energy curve.

APPLICATION Particle Accelerators

Most particles are more massive than the proton, and some, like the weak-force mediators $W^\pm$ and Z , are extremely massive. Since the more massive particles are all unstable, discovering them involves first creating them—and that requires energy of at least mc^2 , with m the particle mass. That energy requirement, along with the hint of new phenomena such as force unification, drives particle physicists' seemingly insatiable desire for particle accelerators of ever-higher energies.

The earliest accelerators were electrostatic devices that established large potential differences between conducting electrodes, and they used the associated electric field to accelerate charged particles. But such accelerators are limited to maximum energies of about 20 MeV because of the difficulties of handling high voltages. We saw in Chapter 26 how this problem is cleverly circumvented in the cyclotron, an accelerator that uses a magnetic field to keep particles in circular orbits so they can gain energy on each orbit from a modest electric field. But cyclotrons work for only nonrelativistic particles, for which

the cyclotron frequency is independent of particle energy. Today's high-energy experiments call for ultrarelativistic particles, whose speeds differ only minutely from the speed of light. As a result, today's accelerators are primarily variations on the **synchrotron**, a device in which the magnetic field increases with the particle energy to maintain particles in a circular orbit of fixed radius. An alternative to the synchrotron is the **linear accelerator**, the largest of which is the 3-km-long Stanford Linear Accelerator (which was shown in Fig. 33.9).

A head-on collision between two cars is much more damaging than a collision of a moving car with a stationary one, since in the former case all the energy goes into damaging the cars while in the latter a great deal of energy goes into accelerating the initially stationary "target" car. For the same reason head-on collisions of high-energy particles make much more energy available for the creation of new particles. As a result, most of the highest-energy accelerators today are colliders, with particle beams accelerated in opposite directions and brought to collide inside elaborate detectors. The largest accelerator today

is the Large Hadron Collider (LHC) at CERN, the European Laboratory for Particle Physics, at Geneva, Switzerland. With a 27-km circumference, LHC collides proton beams at energies up to 13 TeV. Both LHC and the Relativistic Heavy Ion Collider at Brookhaven National Laboratory in the United States create conditions that existed when the universe was only 10^{-12} s old; more on this in the next section.

Aerial view showing the location of the 4.3-km-diameter Large Hadron Collider (LHC; large circle). The LHC itself is in a tunnel 50 m–175 m underground. The device collides beams of protons with a collision energy of 13 TeV. The smaller ring shown accelerates the protons to 450 GeV before they're injected into the main ring. Dashed line is the French-Swiss border.



39.5 The Evolving Universe

LO 39.5 Summarize the evolution of the universe, including our evidence for cosmic expansion.

We come at the end to the broadest possible questions about physical reality: How did the universe begin? What is its overall structure? What will its future bring? Remarkably, these cosmological questions are closely linked with the questions of particle physics. Even more remarkably, we now have precise, quantitative answers to these and other questions that once seemed highly speculative.

Expansion of the Universe

Early in the 20th century, astronomers argued about the nature of certain fuzzy patches visible in telescope photographs. Many thought they were gas clouds scattered among the visible stars, but others made a more radical proposal: that some of these “nebulae” were gravitationally bound systems containing billions of stars and that they were almost inconceivably distant.

In the 1920s, the opening of the 2.5-m telescope at California’s Mt. Wilson Observatory finally resolved the issue. There, astronomer Edwin Hubble proved that some nebulae were indeed distant galaxies like our own Milky Way, each containing billions of stars. Today cosmologists think of galaxies as individual “point particles” whose distribution traces the overall structure of the universe.

Hubble continued to study the galaxies throughout the 1920s, and by analyzing their spectra he made a remarkable discovery: Spectral lines from distant galaxies were shifted toward the red, with the amount of shift dependent on the distance to the galaxies. The most reasonable explanation was a redshift caused by the Doppler effect (see Section 14.8). Then the implication of Hubble’s work is that the distant galaxies are receding from us at speeds proportional to their distances. This result is known as **Hubble’s law**:

$$v = H_0 d \quad (39.1)$$

v is the speed at which a galaxy recedes from us. d is the galaxy’s distance from us. H_0 is the Hubble constant.

where v is the recession speed, d the distance, and H_0 the **Hubble constant**, whose value is now known to be very nearly 22 kilometers per second per million light years of distance. Astronomers now use the Hubble relation to find the distances to remote galaxies, measuring their redshifts and using Equation 39.1 to infer their distances. Although the Hubble

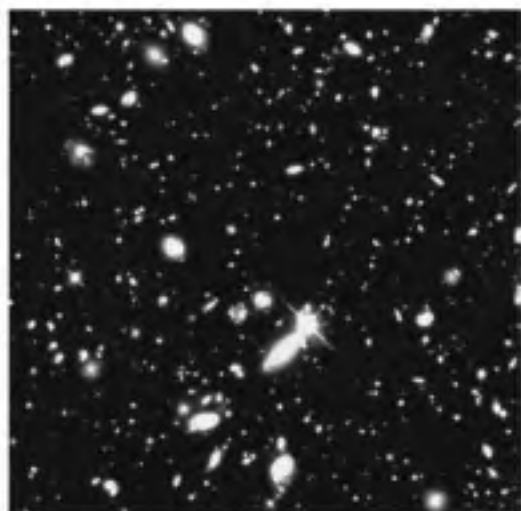


FIGURE 39.11 A portion of the Hubble Deep Field, a Hubble Space Telescope image showing distant galaxies whose redshifts provide information about cosmic expansion.

relation is written in terms of velocity, a more sophisticated view describes the Hubble expansion not as galactic motion but as a stretching of space itself—a process that also stretches light waves, giving the observed wavelength increase.

It may sound like Hubble's law puts us right in the center of things, in grotesque violation of modern science's view that Earth and its inhabitants don't occupy a favored position in the universe. But actually the inhabitants of any other galaxy would observe the same thing: All the distant galaxies would be receding from them at speeds proportional to their distances. As long as the universe is infinite in extent, none can claim to be at the center. And if it's not infinite, then Einstein's general theory of relativity gives it a closed-curve shape that still has no center.

Extrapolating Hubble's law backward in time suggests there was a time when all the galaxies were together. This implies that the universe had a definite beginning, in the form of a colossal explosion that flung matter into an expansion that continues today. Based on additional evidence that we'll describe shortly, scientists are quite certain that the universe began with such a **Big Bang**. Some of that evidence comes from the Hubble Space Telescope, named to honor Hubble's pioneering studies (Fig. 39.11).

EXAMPLE 39.2

Hubble's Law: Calculating the Age of the Universe

Worked Example with Variation Problems

Using $H_0 = 22 \text{ km/s/Mly}$ and assuming the expansion rate has been constant, find out how long the universe has been expanding.

INTERPRET We're given the Hubble constant H_0 and asked to extrapolate back to the time when all the galaxies were together.

DEVELOP If a galaxy has been moving with constant speed for time t , then its distance from us today is $d = vt$. But Hubble's law gives its speed in terms of distance: $v = H_0 d$. So our plan is to substitute $H_0 d$ for v and solve for the time t .

EVALUATE We have $t = d/v = d/H_0 d = 1/H_0$. To evaluate this expression we need to convert from the mixed units used for the Hubble constant:

$$t = \frac{1}{H_0} = \frac{1}{(22 \text{ km/s/Mly})/[3.00 \times 10^5 (\text{km/s})/(\text{ly/y})]} = 13.6 \text{ Gy}$$

ASSESS Our calculation shows that the universe is about 14 billion years old—on the assumption that the expansion rate hasn't changed. We'll soon see that this assumption isn't quite correct, but our result remains a good estimate for the age of the universe (the actual number is close to 13.8 Gy). Note that we used $c = 3.00 \times 10^5 \text{ km/s}$ in converting from km/s to ly/y so our answer would come out in years.

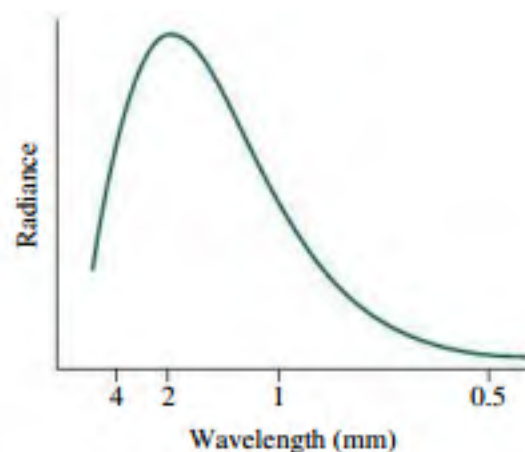


FIGURE 39.12 Spectrum of the cosmic microwave background matches perfectly that of a blackbody at 2.726 K.

The Cosmic Background Radiation

In 1965 Arno Penzias and Robert Wilson at Bell Laboratories found a faint “noise” of microwave radiation in a satellite communications antenna they were testing. The noise seemed to come from all directions in the sky. Theorists at Princeton identified Penzias and Wilson's “noise” as radiation dating to a much earlier era in the universe. This **cosmic microwave background radiation** is the strongest evidence yet for the Big Bang.

The Big Bang theory suggests that the universe started very hot and then cooled as it expanded, doing work against its own gravitation. At first it was so hot that any atoms that formed would be dashed apart by collisions at the high thermal energy prevailing. Thus, in its early times the universe was populated by individual charged particles. These interacted readily with electromagnetic radiation, making the universe opaque. But by 380,000 years the temperature had dropped to some 3000 K, and at that point atoms of hydrogen and helium could form. Since neutral atoms interact much more weakly with electromagnetic radiation, the universe became transparent, and photons emitted as the atoms formed could travel throughout the universe with little chance of being subsequently absorbed. Those photons became the cosmic background radiation, permeating the entire universe.

Measurements of the cosmic microwave background show a near-perfect fit to a 2.7-K blackbody spectrum (Fig. 39.12). Applying the “stretching of space” interpretation of the Hubble expansion shows that the universe has expanded about 1000-fold since the background radiation formed, dropping the temperature from 3000 K to about 3 K, and stretching the radiation's wavelength by the same factor. That's why radiation that initially had μm wavelengths now peaks in the microwave region with mm wavelengths. Thus, the cosmic microwave background is a direct reflection of the conditions when it formed 380,000 years after the universe began.

The cosmic microwave background (CMB) is remarkably uniform, but not perfectly so. Tiny spatial variations in the effective temperature of the radiation (about one part in 10^5 ; see Fig. 39.13) provide a wealth of information about the early universe and confirm not only the universe's Big Bang origin but also many precise details of its composition and evolution. A look at Fig. 39.13 shows that fluctuations in the CMB temperature occur on a variety of angular scales, with a scale on the order of about 1° being most prominent. These variations resulted, ultimately, from quantum fluctuations in the primordial density. Those fluctuations led, in turn, to oscillations driven by a combination of gravity and pressure, resulting in sound waves that propagated through the early universe. The sound waves were “frozen” at the time of formation of the cosmic background, when radiation and matter effectively decoupled. As a result, a spectrum of the size scales of the CMB fluctuations carries a wealth of information about the early universe.

Figure 39.14 is such a spectrum. On the horizontal axis is the angular scale of CMB fluctuations, and on the vertical axis is the “power” at each scale—roughly, the strength of the fluctuations at that scale. A smooth curve represents the theoretical prediction of our current cosmological theory, with a number of cosmological parameters adjusted for a best fit to the data. That the data points lie precisely on the curve is a strong indication that the theory is correct, and the fitting provides precise values for cosmological parameters, such as the Hubble constant introduced in Equation 39.1.

Figure 39.13, from which the data in Fig. 39.14 are derived, reveals only angular sizes of the CMB fluctuations. But the physics of sound waves gives the corresponding physical sizes. Comparing physical and angular sizes then reveals the geometry of the universe—which, as you saw in Section 33.9's brief introduction to general relativity, is associated with gravity. In particular, the location of the prominent peak in Fig. 39.14 at just under 1° scale shows that the universe is flat overall—that is, Euclidean geometry governs the overall universe, despite deviations in the curved spacetime near massive objects. The second peak in Fig. 39.14 is related to the density of baryons in the early universe, and the third peak is associated with all forms of nonrelativistic matter—all particles with velocities substantially less than c . All in all, data like those shown in Fig. 39.14 have taken cosmology from an inexact science to a precise description of the overall universe and its history, with many of its characteristic parameters now measured to several significant figures.

The Earliest Times

The cosmic microwave background shows us the universe as it was some 380,000 years after the Big Bang. Nuclear physics takes us back even further, to the time from about 1 second to 30 minutes when the lightest nuclei were forming. The first composite nuclei were the simplest: deuterium, consisting of a proton and a neutron. The rate of deuterium formation is critically sensitive to the expansion rate of the universe. Measurements of deuterium abundance, based on spectral lines from interstellar deuterium, therefore provide direct evidence for conditions early in the Big Bang.



FIGURE 39.13 All-sky map of the cosmic microwave background shows minute spatial variations in the radiation intensity and therefore in the associated temperature. The image spans the entire sky— 360° —and thus the most prominent fluctuations are on angular scales of around 1° . This image was made with the European Space Agency's *Planck* spacecraft.

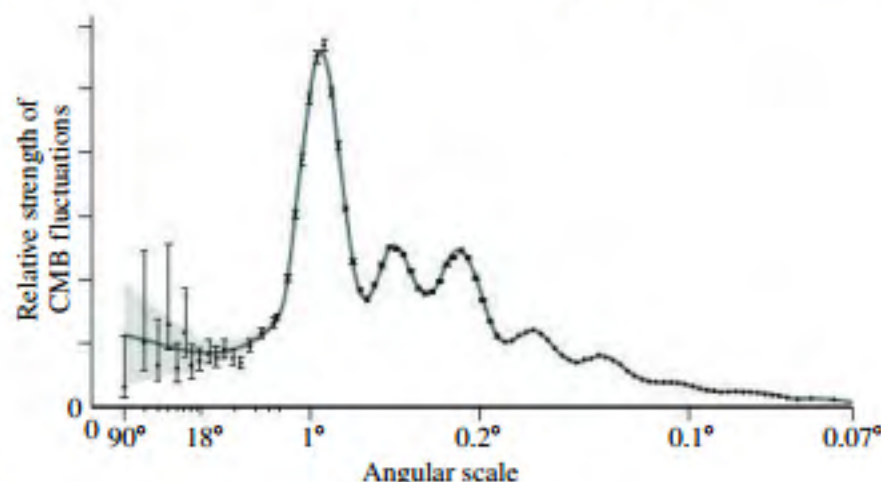


FIGURE 39.14 Spectrum of the angular scales of fluctuations in the cosmic microwave background. Points are data from the *Planck* spacecraft, and the smooth curve is a theoretical fit. Note the error bars, which are tiny except at very large angular scales. These data yield values of cosmological parameters to several significant figures.

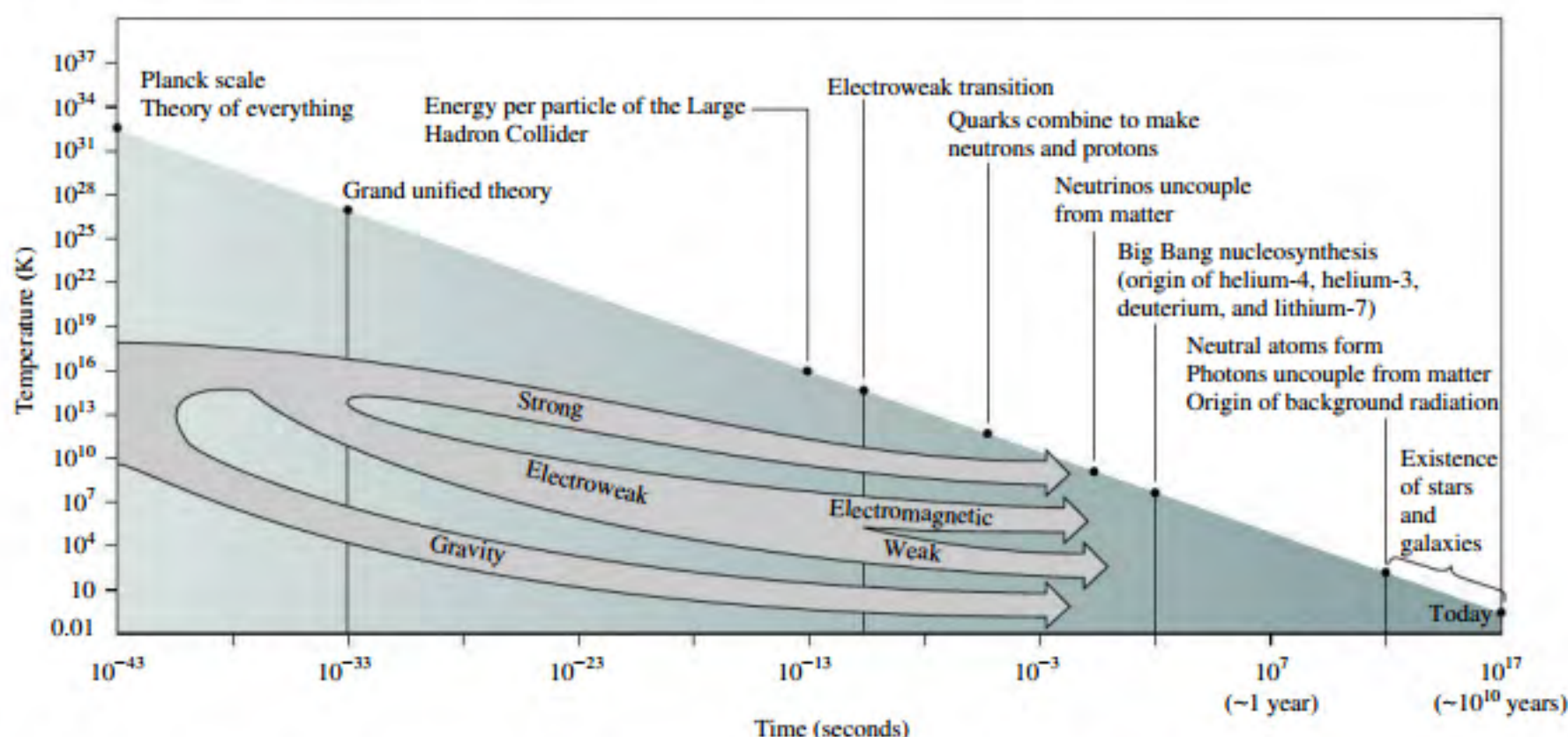


FIGURE 39.15 Evolution of the universe from the earliest times to the present. Note the highly logarithmic scales.

Evidence for still earlier times comes from particle physics, which predicts the interactions and particle populations under the hot, high-energy conditions that existed a fraction of a second after the Big Bang. Experiments using the Relativistic Heavy Ion Collider (RHIC) at Brookhaven National Laboratory have produced a so-called quark–gluon plasma similar to the state of the universe just microseconds after the Big Bang. Thus, RHIC and other high-energy particle accelerators can act as “time machines,” allowing us to study conditions that prevailed in the very early universe. Figure 39.15 summarizes our understanding of the universe’s evolution, showing that the phenomena of particle physics and unification are inextricably tied with cosmic expansion.

The Inflationary Universe

The original Big Bang theory had difficulty explaining several features of the observed universe. Why, for example, does the universe seem homogeneous and in thermodynamic equilibrium on the largest scales, when the most distant regions are so far apart that light could not have traveled between them in the time since the beginning? And why is the overall geometry of the universe flat, as evidenced in Fig. 39.14, when general relativity allows for curved space?

The solution to these conundrums is **inflation**, an idea first advanced by Alan Guth of MIT. Guth’s theory holds that the universe underwent a period of exponential expansion beginning at about 10^{-35} s and lasting until about 10^{-32} s (Fig. 39.16). The expansion was the result of a delay in the symmetry breaking that made the fundamental forces appear distinct. Because of the tremendous expansion, now-distant locations would once have been close enough to reach the thermodynamic equilibrium that we now observe. Furthermore, the inflationary expansion would “flatten out” any overall curvature, giving us the flat universe we see today.

It might seem impossible to find observational evidence for an event that happened only 10^{-35} s into the history of the universe, but, remarkably, inflation would have left a “fingerprint” in the form of gravitational waves—“ripples” in spacetime whose existence (see Section 33.9) is predicted by general relativity. Those waves would have imposed a characteristic pattern on the polarization of the cosmic microwave background. Such patterns have not yet been found, but scientists are actively looking for them using sensitive microwave detectors both on the ground and in space.

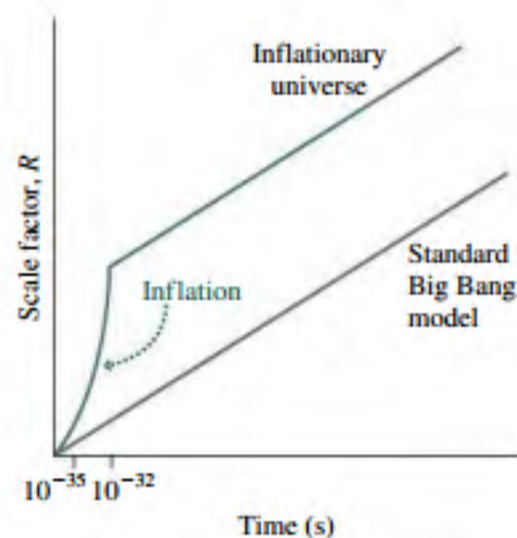


FIGURE 39.16 Expansion of the universe in Big Bang theories, both with and without inflation. The scale factor R measures the amount of expansion.

Dark Matter, Dark Energy, and the Future of the Universe

Will the universe expand forever, or will the expansion eventually stop and reverse? That’s like asking whether a spacecraft will escape Earth forever or ultimately return, and the answer is the same: If the system’s kinetic energy exceeds the magnitude

of its (negative) potential energy, then expansion will proceed forever. Thus, a single parameter—designated Ω (capital Greek omega)—determines the fate of the universe:

$$\Omega = \frac{|\text{potential energy of the universe}|}{\text{kinetic energy of the universe}}$$

where $\Omega > 1$ implies eventual collapse, and $\Omega < 1$ means continued expansion. An alternative way of expressing the same dichotomy is in terms of the average density. A simple Newtonian calculation based on kinetic and gravitational potential energies of particles in an expanding universe gives Ω in terms of the average density ρ and the Hubble constant: $\Omega = 8\pi G\rho/3H_0^2$ —a result that turns out to be identical to the correct general relativistic calculation. Setting $\Omega = 1$ gives the **critical density** that divides eternal expansion from eventual collapse:

$$\rho_c = \frac{3H_0^2}{8\pi G} \quad (\text{critical density}) \quad (39.2)$$

Analysis of the cosmic microwave background fluctuations strongly suggests that the actual universe is at the critical density, with $\Omega = 1$. But when we total the visible matter in the universe, we come up with far less than the critical density. Elementary particle theories corroborate this observational result, suggesting that there can be only enough ordinary matter—protons, neutrons, nuclei, and atoms—to make up about 4% of the critical density. Furthermore, the motions of stars in galaxies and of galaxies in clusters suggest the presence of a great deal more mass than is visible. All this implies the existence of **dark matter** whose composition is unknown and which can't be the sort of matter—made mostly from quarks—with which we're familiar.

Another approach to the cosmic density is to study the most distant galaxies, whose light has taken so long to reach us that we're seeing them as they were in the early universe. One might expect that cosmic expansion was faster in earlier times, and slowed as the galaxies did work against their mutual gravitational attraction. Comparing the recession speeds of ancient, distant galaxies with the speeds of nearer ones should then give the rate of cosmic deceleration—which, in turn, should depend on cosmic density. But observations in 1998 gave a surprising and unexpected result: The cosmic expansion is actually accelerating!

Cosmic acceleration implies a kind of “antigravity” operating on the largest scales. Ironically, Einstein had proposed just such a phenomenon in his original formulation of general relativity. Einstein needed this **cosmological constant** in his theory in order to keep the universe static—which, in 1916, astronomers thought it was. When Hubble then showed that the universe is expanding, Einstein dropped the cosmological constant and called it “the greatest blunder of my life.” Now it appears that Einstein had the right idea in the first place.

The source of the cosmic acceleration is **dark energy**, which may be just another name for Einstein's cosmological constant or may be a different phenomenon with the same “antigravity” effect. At this point we don't know quite what it is. But we do know how much of it there is: Dark energy is fully 68% of the “stuff” that makes up our universe. Another 27% is dark matter. That means only 5% of the universe is in the form of familiar matter made from baryons and thus ultimately from quarks (Fig. 39.17). These numbers come from a confluence of recent observations of the cosmic microwave background, distant supernovae, and surveys of distant galaxies; together, they tightly constrain the relative amounts of matter and dark energy. Here, at the end of a long physics course, it's sobering to realize that much of our universe consists of “stuff” about which we know so very little!

Understanding the Universe

With this chapter's brief survey, we've reached the limits of present understanding of the universe. On the way we've seen that particle physics and cosmology are inextricably linked. To understand our universe, we need to understand all its aspects from the largest to the smallest—and that means understanding all the forces, from gravity to the weak force; all the physical laws, from Newton's and Maxwell's to the laws of quantum mechanics; and the nature of the elementary particles. In this text we've touched on all these topics, and we hope we've given you a foundation for further understanding and appreciation of the richness and diversity of the physical universe.

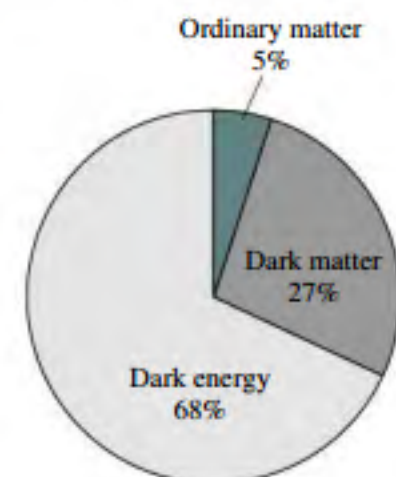


FIGURE 39.17 Composition of the universe, from the *Planck* spacecraft supplemented with additional data. Only a tiny fraction (colored wedge) is “stuff” we understand!

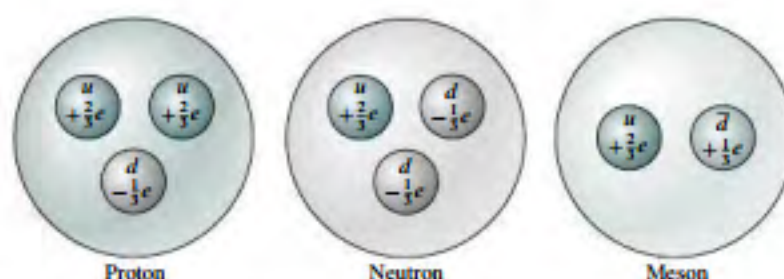
Chapter 39 Summary

Big Idea

The big idea here is that the structure of ordinary matter and its interactions can be explained in terms of a handful of particles: **quarks**, which make up the familiar proton and neutron and a host of other **hadrons**; **leptons**, including the familiar electrons and elusive neutrinos; and **gauge bosons**, which mediate the fundamental forces and include the photon for the electromagnetic force. The **standard model** describes these elementary particles and their interactions; it sheds light not only on the structure of matter we see today but on the early universe as well. But there's a humbling caveat: Only about 5% of the universe consists of familiar matter. The rest is **dark energy** and **dark matter**, about which we know very little.

Key Concepts and Equations

Quarks, which come in six flavors and three colors, join in threes to form **baryons**, including protons and neutrons, and in twos to form **mesons**. Quarks carry fractional electric charges, but because the **strong force** between quarks doesn't decrease with distance, it appears impossible to have an isolated quark.



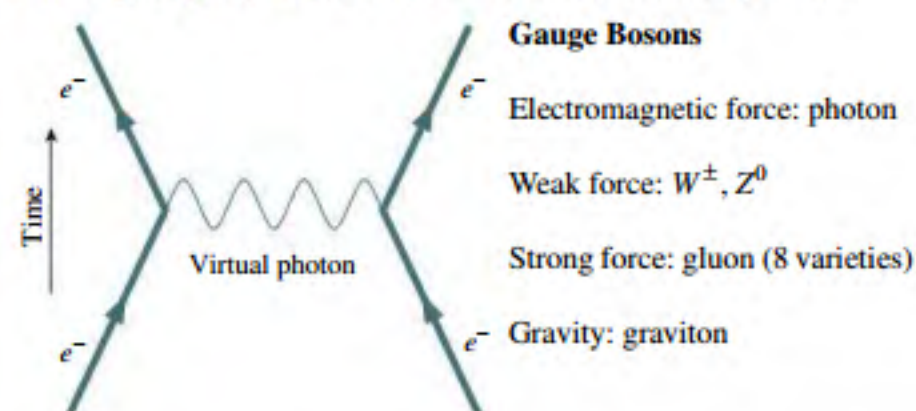
Leptons are the other class of elementary matter particles and include the electron; its more massive cousins, the muon and tau; and the three types of neutrinos.

The three **fundamental forces**—strong, electroweak, and gravity—are believed to be manifestations of the same fundamental interactions that appear unified at high enough energies.

At typical energies in today's universe, though, the electroweak force separates into the electromagnetic and weak forces. The forces differ greatly in strength:

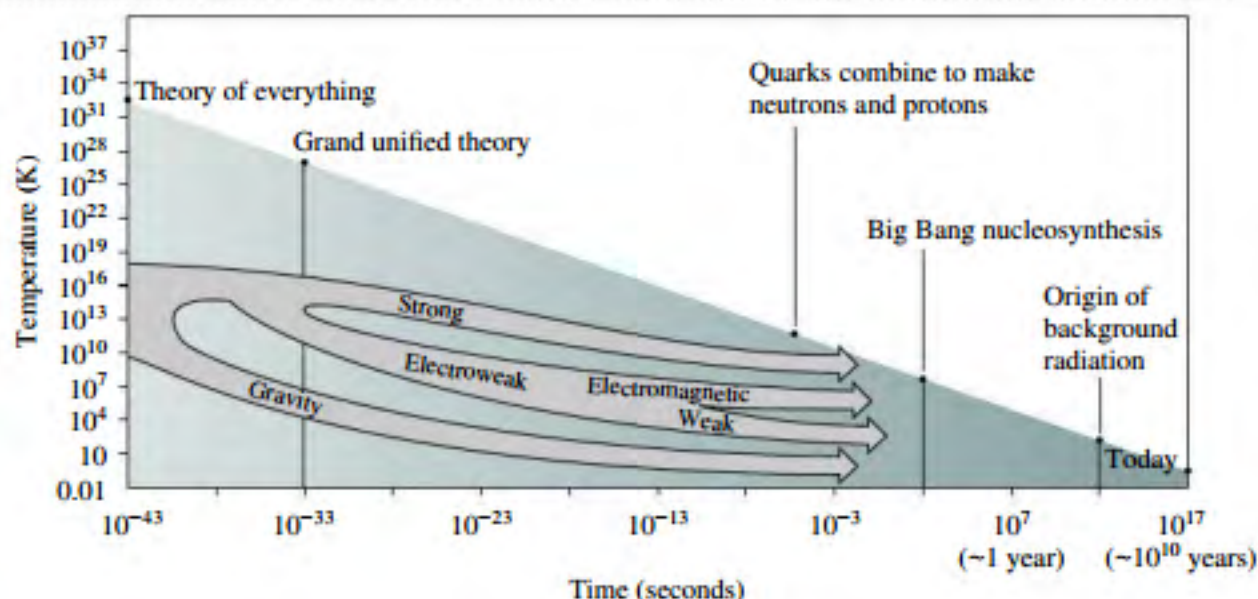
Force	Relative strength at 1 fm (approximate)
Gravity	10^{-38}
Weak	10^{-13}
Electromagnetic	10^{-2}
Strong	1

Exchange of **gauge bosons** explains the forces between particles.



Applications

Our knowledge of particles and their interactions, combined with general relativity and with observations of the **Hubble expansion** and the **cosmic microwave background radiation**, gives us a picture of the origin and structure of the universe. The universe began some 14 billion years ago in a hot **Big Bang**. The simplest nuclei formed within the first half-hour, and the first atoms at about 380,000 years; at that point the universe became transparent and the cosmic microwave background formed. We've learned recently that the universe is overall flat and that its expansion is accelerating under the influence of mysterious **dark energy**. There's still much that we don't know!



Mastering Physics

Go to www.masteringphysics.com to access assigned homework and self-study tools such as Dynamic Study Modules, practice quizzes, video solutions to problems, and a whole lot more!



BIO Biology and/or medicine-related problems **DATA** Data problems **ENV** Environmental problems **CH** Challenge problems **COMP** Computer problems

Learning Outcomes

After finishing this chapter you should be able to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>LO 39.1 Describe qualitatively how photons mediate the electromagnetic force.
<i>Exercises 39.11, 39.12</i></p> <p>LO 39.2 Distinguish between categories of particles, including leptons and baryons, mesons and hadrons, fermions and bosons, and gauge particles.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 39.1, 39.4, 39.8; Exercises 39.13, 39.14, 39.15, 39.16; Problems 39.35, 39.36, 39.37, 39.38, 39.41, 39.42, 39.43, 39.45, 39.46, 39.49, 39.50, 39.52</i></p> <p>LO 39.3 Describe the standard model of particles and forces, including the role of quarks.</p> | <p><i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 39.2, 39.3, 39.4, 39.5, 39.6, 39.18, 39.19, 39.20; Problems 39.39, 39.40, 39.52</i></p> <p>LO 39.4 Discuss unification of forces and the role of symmetry breaking.
<i>Exercises 39.21, 39.22, 39.23; Problem 39.43</i></p> <p>LO 39.5 Summarize the evolution of the universe, including our evidence for cosmic expansion.
<i>For Thought and Discussion Questions 39.7, 39.9, 39.10; Exercises 39.24, 39.25, 39.26; Problems 39.44, 39.47, 39.51</i></p> |
|---|--|

For Thought and Discussion

- How are baryons fundamentally different from leptons?
- Why are we unlikely to observe an isolated quark?
- Describe the relation between the strong force and the nuclear force.
- Why are some of the heavier stars smaller in size than the Sun?
- Name the fundamental force involved in (a) binding of a proton and a neutron to make a deuterium nucleus; (b) decay of a neutron to a proton, an electron, and a neutrino; (c) binding of an electron and a proton to make a hydrogen atom.
- Why do we need higher-energy particle accelerators to explore fully the standard model?
- How can Hubble's law hold without the universe having a center?
- Is it possible for a charged particle to be its own antiparticle?
- Why is "dark matter" called so?
- The radiation that we observe as the cosmic microwave background started out largely as infrared. Why is it now the *microwave* background?

Exercises and Problems

Exercises

Section 39.1 Particles and Forces

- How long could a virtual photon of 633-nm red laser light exist without violating conservation of energy?
- Some scientists have speculated on a possible "fifth force," with a range of about 100 m. Following Yukawa's reasoning, what would be the mass of the field particle mediating such a force?

Section 39.2 Particles and More Particles

- Write the equation for the decay of a positive pion to a muon and a neutrino, being sure to label the type of neutrino. (*Hint:* The positive muon is an antiparticle.)
- Use Table 39.1 to find the total strangeness before and after the decay $\Lambda^0 \rightarrow \pi^- + p$, and use your answer to determine which force is involved in this reaction.
- The η^0 particle is a neutral nonstrange meson that can decay to a positive pion, a negative pion, and a neutral pion. Write the reaction for this decay, and verify that it conserves charge, baryon number, and strangeness.

- Are either or both of these decay schemes possible for the tau particle: (a) $\tau^- \rightarrow e^- + \bar{\nu}_e + \nu_\tau$; (b) $\tau^- \rightarrow \pi^- + \pi^0 + \nu_\tau$?
- Is the interaction $p + p \rightarrow p + \pi^+$ allowed? If not, what conservation law does it violate?

Section 39.3 Quarks and the Standard Model

- Determine the quark composition of the π^- .
- The Eightfold Way led Gell-Mann to predict a baryon with strangeness -3 . Determine this particle's quark composition.
- The Σ^+ and Σ^- have quark compositions uus and dds , respectively. Are the Σ^+ and Σ^- each other's antiparticles? If not, give the quark compositions of their antiparticles.

Section 39.4 Unification

- Estimate the volume of the 50,000 tons of water used in the Super Kamiokande experiment shown in Fig. 39.8.
- Estimate the temperature in a gas of particles such that the thermal energy kT is high enough to make electromagnetism and the weak force appear as a single phenomenon.
- Repeat Exercise 22 for the 10^{15} -GeV energy of grand unification.

Section 39.5 The Evolving Universe

- Express the Hubble constant in SI units.
- Find the distance to a galaxy whose redshift reveals that it's receding from us at 2.5×10^4 km/s.
- Find the recession speed of a galaxy 150 Mly from Earth.

Example Variations

The following problems are based on two examples from the text. Each set of four problems is designed to help you make connections that enhance your understanding of physics and to build your confidence in solving problems that differ from ones you've seen before. The first problem in each set is essentially the example problem but with different numbers. The second problem presents the same scenario as the example but asks a different question. The third and fourth problems repeat this pattern but with entirely different scenarios.

- Example 39.1:** Find the charge and strangeness of the Σ^+ particle, whose quark composition is uus .
- Example 39.1:** Give a possible quark combination, other than that of Example 39.1, for a particle with charge 0 and strangeness -1 .
- Example 39.1:** Find the charge and strangeness of the Ξ^0 particle, whose quark composition is uss .

30. **Example 39.1:** One variety of Ξ particle has charge $+e$ and charm $+2$. It contains a down quark (d), a charmed quark (c , with charm $+1$), and another quark. What's its quark composition?
31. **Example 39.2:** An old astronomy book lists the Hubble constant as 17 km/s/Mly . Using a calculation like that of Example 39.2, determine the age of the universe that this outdated Hubble value implied.
32. **Example 39.2:** If the universe were only 7.1 billion years old, what would be the value of the Hubble constant?
33. **Example 39.2:** The value of the Hubble constant may be crucial to the possibility of life in the universe. Too large, and the universe would be too young to have evolved life. Too small, and the universe would have expanded so rapidly that stars and galaxies could not have formed. Give order-of-magnitude estimates for the age of a universe in which the Hubble constant has (a) 100 times the value we measure today and (b) 1% of that value.
34. **Example 39.2:** A friend who's a biblical literalist argues that the universe is only 5000 years old and yet acknowledges scientific evidence that the universe is expanding. What value for the Hubble constant would be consistent with your friend's beliefs? By what factor does it differ from the observed value?

Problems

35. Which of the following reactions is not possible, and why not? (a) $\Lambda^0 \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^-$; (b) $K^0 \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^-$
36. Both the neutral kaon and the neutral ρ meson can decay to a pion-antipion pair. Which of these decays is mediated by the weak force? How can you tell?
37. Some grand unification theories suggest that the decay $p \rightarrow \pi^0 + e^+$ may be possible, in which case all matter may eventually become radiation. Are (a) baryon number and (b) electric charge conserved in this hypothetical proton decay?
38. Consider systems described by wave functions that are proportional to the terms (a) xy^2z , (b) x^2yz , and (c) xyz , where x , y , and z are the spatial coordinates. Which pairs of these systems could be transformed into each other under a parity-conserving interaction?
39. The J/ψ particle is an uncharmed meson that nevertheless includes charmed quarks. Determine its quark composition.
40. List all the possible quark triplets formed from any combination of up, down, and charmed quarks, along with the charge of each.
41. The international scientific community is planning the International Linear Collider (ILC) as a successor to the Large Hadron Collider (LHC). The ILC will accelerate electrons and positrons to 500 GeV, then collide them to produce new particles. (a) What's the relativistic factor for an electron in the ILC? (b) Determine the speed of the electron, as a decimal fraction of the speed of light, good to 14 significant figures. *Hint:* If your calculator doesn't carry enough significant figures, you can factor the quantity $1 - (v/c)^2$ and then make the approximation that $1 + v/c$ is very nearly 2.
42. (a) Find the relativistic factor γ for a 6.5-TeV proton in the Large Hadron Collider. (b) Find the proton's speed, expressed as a decimal fraction of c , and accurate to 10 significant figures (you might need the binomial theorem here).
43. The highest-energy particle accelerator is the Large Hadron Collider at CERN, on the Swiss-French border. It collides beams of 6.5-TeV protons, making a total energy of 13 TeV available. Use Fig. 39.15 to make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the factor by which the LHC energy would need to be scaled up until it was comparable to the thermal energy at the time that the strong and electroweak forces decoupled.
44. Estimate the critical density of the universe.
45. A so-called muonic atom is a hydrogen atom with the electron replaced by a muon; the muon's mass is 207 times the electron's. Find (a) the size and (b) the ground-state energy of a muonic atom.
46. (a) By what factor must the magnetic field in a proton synchrotron be increased as the proton energy increases by a factor of 10? Assume the protons are highly relativistic, so $\gamma \gg 1$. (b) By what factor must the diameter of the accelerator be increased to raise the energy by a factor of 10 without changing the magnetic field?
47. A galaxy's hydrogen- β spectral line, normally at 486.1 nm, appears at 495.4 nm. (a) Use the Doppler shift of Chapter 14 to find the galaxy's recession speed, and (b) infer the distance to the galaxy. Is it appropriate to use Chapter 14's nonrelativistic Doppler formulas in this case?
48. At the time the cosmic microwave background radiation originated, the temperature of the universe was about 3000 K. What were (a) the median wavelength of the newly formed radiation (Equation 34.2b) and (b) the corresponding photon energy?
49. Many particles are far too short-lived for their lifetimes to be measured directly. Instead, tables of particle properties often list "width," measured in energy units and indicating the width of the distribution of measured rest energies. For example, the Z^0 has mass 91.18 GeV and width 2.5 GeV. Use the energy-time uncertainty relation to estimate its corresponding lifetime.
50. A mix of particles starts with equal numbers of the three types of sigma particles listed in Table 39.1. Find the relative portion of each after (a) $5 \times 10^{-20} \text{ s}$ and (b) $5 \times 10^{-10} \text{ s}$. Give your answer in a reference frame in which the particles are at rest.
51. Your roommate is writing a science-fiction novel set very far in the future, 75 Gy after the Big Bang. One of the characters is a cosmologist, and your roommate wants to know what the cosmologist will measure for the Hubble constant. What's your answer, assuming a steady expansion rate?
52. **DATA** When physicists "discover" a new particle, it isn't by finding the particle itself in their detectors. Rather, they look for events that might indicate the particle's decay. For a given type of event, they plot the frequency of events (number per unit energy interval) versus energy. The particle shows up as a bump or deviation from an otherwise smooth background curve. You can explore this indirect approach to particle detection by plotting the data in the table below. These data are from the Large Hadron Collider and show events producing a pair of photons versus the energy of the pair. You should see a modest bump whose energy you can roughly determine. That bump is evidence for the Higgs boson!

Energy (GeV)	Events per 1.5 GeV
116	1031
118	965
119	866
121	811
122	829
124	818
125	820
127	743
128	668
130	612
131	567
133	549

Passage Problems

Pions are the lightest mesons, with mass some 270 times that of the electron. Charged pions decay typically into a muon and a neutrino or antineutrino. This makes pion beams useful for producing beams of neutrinos, which physicists use to study those elusive particles. In a medical application during the late 20th century, accelerator centers installed “biomedical beam lines” to test pions for cancer therapy. In these experiments, pions attached themselves to atomic nuclei within cancer cells. The nuclei would literally explode, delivering a “pion star” of cancer-killing nuclear debris. Unfortunately, results were not as encouraging as hoped, and enthusiasm for this technique has waned.

53. The negative pion usually decays into a negative muon and one other particle. The other particle could be
 - a. a proton.
 - b. an antineutrino.
 - c. a neutrino.
 - d. an up quark.
54. In the cancer-treatment experiments described in the passage, for which pions is it energetically easiest to be captured by a nucleus?
 - a. π^+
 - b. π^0
 - c. π^-
 - d. Energetically, capture is equally likely for all three pions.

55. The lifetime of charged pions is 26 ns. The length of an accelerator’s biomedical beam line, from the point where pions are created to the patient, could be at most about
 - a. 800 m long.
 - b. 80 m long.
 - c. 8 m long.
 - d. 80 cm long.
56. The quark composition of the negative pion is
 - a. uud .
 - b. $d\bar{u}$.
 - c. ud .
 - d. $c\bar{c}$.

Answer to Chapter Question

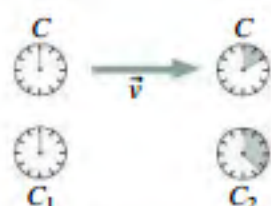
Answer to Chapter Opening Question

Other particles acquire their masses through interactions with the Higgs and its associated field.

Modern physics, developed since the year 1900, contrasts with the **classical physics** that came before. Modern physics is essential in understanding physical reality at the atomic scale, at very low temperatures, at very high relative velocities, in regions of very strong gravity, and in the evolution and large-scale structure of the universe.

The two big ideas in modern physics are **relativity** and **quantum mechanics**. Relativity is based on a simple principle but drastically alters our commonsense notions of space and time, matter and energy, and the nature of gravity. Quantum mechanics replaces Newtonian determinism with a statistical description in which matter and energy exhibit both wavelike and particle-like behaviors.

Einstein's **special theory of relativity** is based in the statement that the laws of physics are the same for all observers in uniform motion. Therefore, Maxwell's prediction that there should be electromagnetic waves propagating at the speed of light c is valid in all uniformly moving reference frames. So measures of space and time cannot be absolute, but depend on one's reference frame.



The time between two events is shortest in a reference frame where events occur at the same place; here that's the reference frame of clock C .

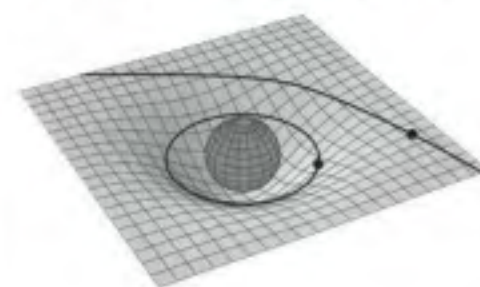


An object's length is longest in a reference frame in which it's at rest.

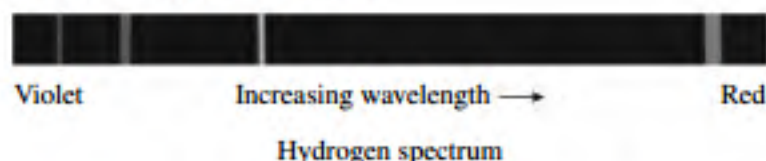
Energy E , momentum p , and mass m in relativity are related by $E^2 = p^2c^2 + (mc^2)^2$.

For an object at rest with respect to an observer, this gives $E = mc^2$, showing the relativistic equivalence of mass and energy.

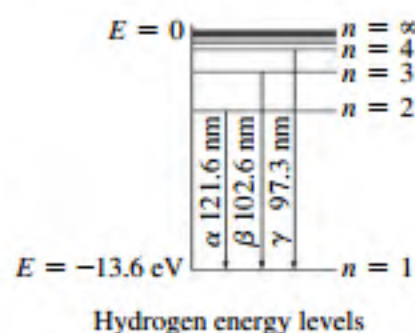
General relativity is Einstein's theory of gravity, which explains gravity as the geometric curvature of spacetime. General relativity is central to modern astrophysics and cosmology, describing phenomena from black holes to the overall structure of the universe.



Quantum physics arose from attempts to explain several phenomena observed around the turn of the 20th century. These include blackbody radiation from hot objects, the photoelectric effect, and the existence and spectra of atoms.



Wave-particle duality is at the heart of quantum physics. The energy in electromagnetic radiation of frequency f is concentrated in particle-like "bundles" called photons. Thus, electromagnetic energy is quantized, with each photon carrying energy $E = hf$, where $h = 6.63 \times 10^{-34}$ J·s is Planck's constant. Conversely, matter exhibits wavelike behavior. The de Broglie wavelength associated with a particle of momentum p is $\lambda = h/p$.



Quantization of atomic angular momentum leads to the **Bohr model** for the atom, with quantized energy levels that help explain atomic spectra.

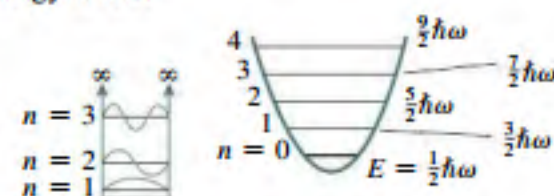
Wave-particle duality is closely related to the **Heisenberg uncertainty principle**, which states that it's impossible to measure a particle's position and momentum simultaneously with perfect accuracy. Rather, the uncertainties Δx and Δp in position and momentum must obey the inequality

$$\Delta x \Delta p \geq \hbar \text{ (uncertainty principle), where } \hbar = h/2\pi$$

Quantum mechanics describes phenomena at the atomic scale. The **Schrödinger equation** gives the **wave function**, ψ , for a particle of mass m with potential energy U and total energy E :

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{d^2\psi(x)}{dx^2} + U(x)\psi = E\psi(x)$$

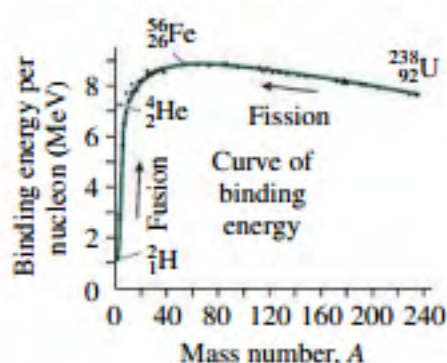
ψ^2 is the **probability density** for finding the particle. Application of the Schrödinger equation to bound systems results in quantized energy levels.



Infinite square well Harmonic oscillator

Application of the Schrödinger equation to atoms and molecules explains atomic and molecular structure, the organization of the chemical elements in the periodic table, and the behavior of crystalline solids.

Nuclear physics plunges into the heart of the atom and shows that larger nuclei require more neutrons than protons in order for the strong nuclear force to overcome the repulsive electric interaction between protons. Nuclear physics describes such phenomena as radioactivity and the production of energy by nuclear fission and fusion.



Applying the principles of physics from the subatomic scale of quantum and particle physics to the largest scales described by general relativity gives us our modern-day picture of the origin and evolution of the universe.



The cosmic microwave background radiation, shown here in an image from the *Planck* spacecraft.

Part Six Challenge Problem

Derive Equation 39.2 for the critical density of the universe on the assumption that the universe is spherically symmetric, is homogeneous, and obeys Newton's laws on large scales.

This page is intentionally left blank

Appendix A Mathematics

A-1 Algebra and Trigonometry

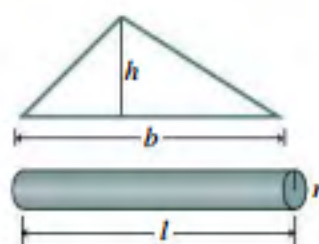
Quadratic Formula

If $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, then $x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$.

Circumference, Area, Volume

Where $\pi \approx 3.14159\dots$:

circumference of circle	$2\pi r$
area of circle	πr^2
surface area of sphere	$4\pi r^2$
volume of sphere	$\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$
area of triangle	$\frac{1}{2}bh$
volume of cylinder	$\pi r^2 l$

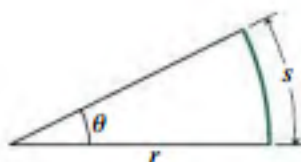


Trigonometry

definition of angle (in radians): $\theta = \frac{s}{r}$

2π radians in complete circle

1 radian $\approx 57.3^\circ$

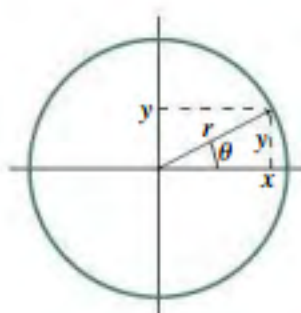


Trigonometric Functions

$$\sin \theta = \frac{y}{r}$$

$$\cos \theta = \frac{x}{r}$$

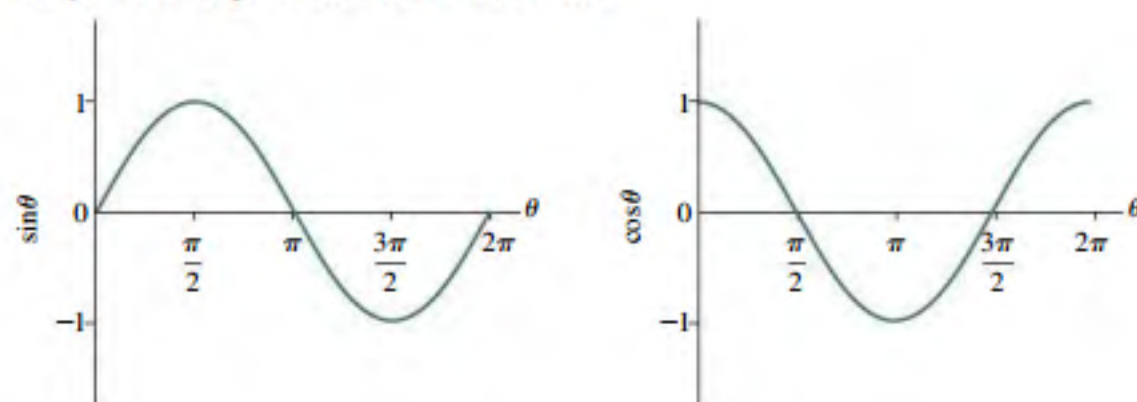
$$\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} = \frac{y}{x}$$



Values at Selected Angles

$\theta \rightarrow$	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$ (30°)	$\frac{\pi}{4}$ (45°)	$\frac{\pi}{3}$ (60°)	$\frac{\pi}{2}$ (90°)
$\sin \theta$	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	1
$\cos \theta$	1	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0
$\tan \theta$	0	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$	1	$\sqrt{3}$	∞

Graphs of Trigonometric Functions



Trigonometric Identities

$$\sin(-\theta) = -\sin \theta$$

$$\cos(-\theta) = \cos \theta$$

$$\sin\left(\theta \pm \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \pm \cos \theta$$

$$\cos\left(\theta \pm \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \mp \sin \theta$$

$$\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta = 1$$

$$\sin 2\theta = 2 \sin \theta \cos \theta$$

$$\cos 2\theta = \cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta = 1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta = 2 \cos^2 \theta - 1$$

$$\sin(\alpha \pm \beta) = \sin \alpha \cos \beta \pm \cos \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\cos(\alpha \pm \beta) = \cos \alpha \cos \beta \mp \sin \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\sin \alpha \pm \sin \beta = 2 \sin \left[\frac{1}{2}(\alpha \pm \beta) \right] \cos \left[\frac{1}{2}(\alpha \mp \beta) \right]$$

$$\cos \alpha + \cos \beta = 2 \cos \left[\frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) \right] \cos \left[\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta) \right]$$

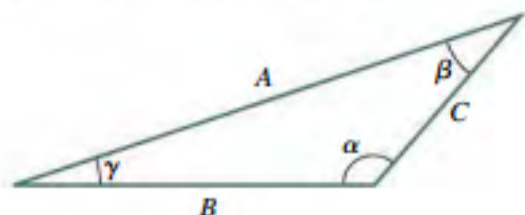
$$\cos \alpha - \cos \beta = -2 \sin \left[\frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) \right] \sin \left[\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta) \right]$$

Laws of Cosines and Sines

Where A, B, C are the sides of an arbitrary triangle and α, β, γ the angles opposite those sides:

Law of cosines

$$C^2 = A^2 + B^2 - 2AB \cos \gamma$$



Law of sines

$$\frac{\sin \alpha}{A} = \frac{\sin \beta}{B} = \frac{\sin \gamma}{C}$$

Exponentials and Logarithms

$$e^{\ln x} = x, \quad \ln e^x = x \quad e = 2.71828\dots$$

$$a^x = e^{x \ln a} \quad \ln(xy) = \ln x + \ln y$$

$$a^x a^y = a^{x+y} \quad \ln\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) = \ln x - \ln y$$

$$(a^x)^y = a^{xy} \quad \ln\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = -\ln x$$

$$\log x \equiv \log_{10} x = \ln(10) \ln x \approx 2.3 \ln x$$

Approximations

For $|x| \ll 1$, the following expressions provide good approximations to common functions:

$$e^x \approx 1 + x$$

$$\sin x \approx x$$

$$\cos x \approx 1 - \frac{1}{2}x^2$$

$$\ln(1 + x) \approx x$$

$$(1 + x)^p \approx 1 + px \quad (\text{binomial approximation})$$

Expressions that don't have the forms shown may often be put in the appropriate form. For example:

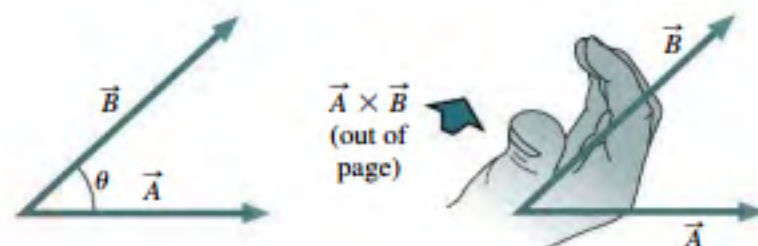
$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 + y^2}} = \frac{1}{a\sqrt{1 + \frac{y^2}{a^2}}} = \frac{1}{a} \left(1 + \frac{y^2}{a^2}\right)^{-1/2} \approx \frac{1}{a} \left(1 - \frac{y^2}{2a^2}\right) \quad \text{for } y^2/a^2 \ll 1, \text{ or } y^2 \ll a^2$$

Vector Algebra

Vector Products

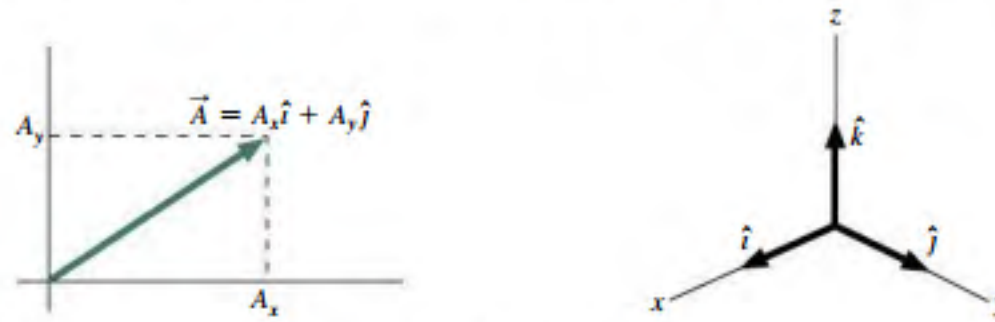
$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB \cos \theta$$

$$|\vec{A} \times \vec{B}| = AB \sin \theta, \text{ with direction of } \vec{A} \times \vec{B} \text{ given by the right-hand rule:}$$



Unit Vector Notation

An arbitrary vector $\vec{A}$ may be written in terms of its components A_x, A_y, A_z and the unit vectors $\hat{i}, \hat{j}, \hat{k}$ that have magnitude 1 and lie along the x -, y -, z -axes:



In unit vector notation, vector products become

$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = A_x B_x + A_y B_y + A_z B_z$$

$$\vec{A} \times \vec{B} = (A_y B_z - A_z B_y) \hat{i} + (A_z B_x - A_x B_z) \hat{j} + (A_x B_y - A_y B_x) \hat{k}$$

Vector Identities

$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = \vec{B} \cdot \vec{A}$$

$$\vec{A} \times \vec{B} = -\vec{B} \times \vec{A}$$

$$\vec{A} \cdot (\vec{B} \times \vec{C}) = \vec{B} \cdot (\vec{C} \times \vec{A}) = \vec{C} \cdot (\vec{A} \times \vec{B})$$

$$\vec{A} \times (\vec{B} \times \vec{C}) = (\vec{A} \cdot \vec{C}) \vec{B} - (\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}) \vec{C}$$

A-2 Calculus

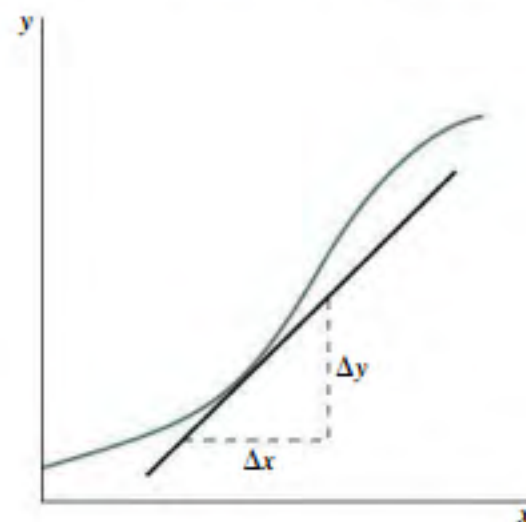
Derivatives

Definition of the Derivative

If y is a function of x , then the **derivative of y with respect to x** is the ratio of the change Δy in y to the corresponding change Δx in x , in the limit of arbitrarily small Δx :

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$$

Algebraically, the derivative is the rate of change of y with respect to x ; geometrically, it is the slope of the y versus x graph—that is, of the tangent line to the graph at a given point:



Derivatives of Common Functions

$$\frac{da}{dx} = 0 \quad (a \text{ is a constant})$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \tan x = \frac{1}{\cos^2 x}$$

$$\frac{dx^n}{dx} = nx^{n-1} \quad (n \text{ need not be an integer})$$

$$\frac{de^x}{dx} = e^x$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \sin x = \cos x$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \ln x = \frac{1}{x}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \cos x = -\sin x$$

Derivatives of Sums, Products, and Functions of Functions**1. Derivative of a constant times a function**

$$\frac{d}{dx} [af(x)] = a \frac{df}{dx} \quad (a \text{ is a constant})$$

2. Derivative of a sum

$$\frac{d}{dx} [f(x) + g(x)] = \frac{df}{dx} + \frac{dg}{dx}$$

3. Derivative of a product

$$\frac{d}{dx} [f(x)g(x)] = g \frac{df}{dx} + f \frac{dg}{dx}$$

Examples

$$\frac{d}{dx} (x^2 \cos x) = \cos x \frac{dx^2}{dx} + x^2 \frac{d}{dx} \cos x = 2x \cos x - x^2 \sin x$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} (x \ln x) = \ln x \frac{dx}{dx} + x \frac{d}{dx} \ln x = (\ln x)(1) + x \left(\frac{1}{x} \right) = \ln x + 1$$

4. Derivative of a quotient

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left[\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \right] = \frac{1}{g^2} \left(g \frac{df}{dx} - f \frac{dg}{dx} \right)$$

Example

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{\sin x}{x^2} \right) = \frac{1}{x^4} \left(x^2 \frac{d}{dx} \sin x - \sin x \frac{dx^2}{dx} \right) = \frac{\cos x}{x^2} - \frac{2 \sin x}{x^3}$$

5. Chain rule for derivativesIf f is a function of u and u is a function of x , then

$$\frac{df}{dx} = \frac{df}{du} \frac{du}{dx}$$

*Examples***a.** Evaluate $\frac{d}{dx} \sin(x^2)$. Here $u = x^2$ and $f(u) = \sin u$, so

$$\frac{d}{dx} \sin(x^2) = \frac{d}{du} \sin u \frac{du}{dx} = (\cos u) \frac{dx^2}{dx} = 2x \cos(x^2)$$

b. $\frac{d}{dt} \sin \omega t = \frac{d}{d\omega t} \sin \omega t \frac{d\omega t}{dt} = \omega \cos \omega t \quad (\omega \text{ is a constant})$

c. Evaluate $\frac{d}{dx} \sin^2 5x$. Here $u = \sin 5x$ and $f(u) = u^2$, so

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dx} \sin^2 5x &= \frac{d}{du} u^2 \frac{du}{dx} = 2u \frac{du}{dx} = 2 \sin 5x \frac{d}{dx} \sin 5x \\ &= (2)(\sin 5x)(5)(\cos 5x) = 10 \sin 5x \cos 5x = 5 \sin 2x \end{aligned}$$

Second Derivative

The second derivative of y with respect to x is defined as the derivative of the derivative:

$$\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} = \frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{dy}{dx} \right)$$

Example

If $y = ax^3$, then $dy/dx = 3ax^2$, so

$$\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} = \frac{d}{dx} 3ax^2 = 6ax$$

Partial Derivatives

When a function depends on more than one variable, then the partial derivatives of that function are the derivatives with respect to each variable, taken with all other variables held constant. If f is a function of x and y , then the partial derivatives are written

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}$$

Example

If $f(x, y) = x^3 \sin y$, then

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 3x^2 \sin y \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = x^3 \cos y$$

Integrals

Indefinite Integrals

Integration is the inverse of differentiation. The **indefinite integral**, $\int f(x) dx$, is defined as a function whose derivative is $f(x)$:

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left[\int f(x) dx \right] = f(x)$$

If $A(x)$ is an indefinite integral of $f(x)$, then because the derivative of a constant is zero, the function $A(x) + C$ is also an indefinite integral of $f(x)$, where C is any constant. Inverting the derivatives of common functions listed in the preceding section gives the integrals that follow (a more extensive table appears at the end of this appendix).

$$\begin{array}{ll} \int a dx = ax + C & \int \cos x dx = \sin x + C \\ \int x^n dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + C, \quad n \neq -1 & \int e^x dx = e^x + C \\ \int \sin x dx = -\cos x + C & \int x^{-1} dx = \ln x + C \end{array}$$

Definite Integrals

In physics we're most often interested in the **definite integral**, defined as the sum of a large number of very small quantities, in the limit as the number of quantities grows arbitrarily large and the size of each arbitrarily small:

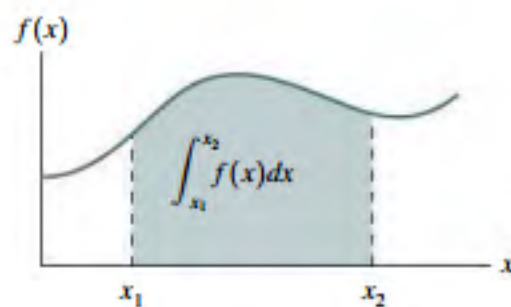
$$\int_{x_1}^{x_2} f(x) dx \equiv \lim_{\substack{\Delta x \rightarrow 0 \\ N \rightarrow \infty}} \sum_{i=1}^N f(x_i) \Delta x$$

where the terms in the sum are evaluated at values x_i between the limits of integration x_1 and x_2 ; in the limit $\Delta x \rightarrow 0$, the sum is over all values of x in the interval.

The key to evaluating the definite integral is provided by the **fundamental theorem of calculus**. The theorem states that, if $A(x)$ is an *indefinite* integral of $f(x)$, then the *definite integral* is given by

$$\int_{x_1}^{x_2} f(x) dx = A(x_2) - A(x_1) \equiv A(x) \Big|_{x_1}^{x_2}$$

Geometrically, the definite integral is the area under the graph of $f(x)$ between the limits x_1 and x_2 :



Evaluating Integrals

The first step in evaluating an integral is to express all varying quantities within the integral in terms of a single variable; Tactics 9.1 in Chapter 9 outlines a general strategy for setting up an integral. Once you've set up an integral, you can evaluate it yourself or look it up in tables. Two common techniques can help you evaluate integrals or convert them to forms listed in tables:

1. Change of variables

An unfamiliar integral can often be put into familiar form by defining a new variable. For example, it is not obvious how to integrate the expression

$$\int \frac{x dx}{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}}$$

where a is a constant. But let $z = a^2 + x^2$. Then

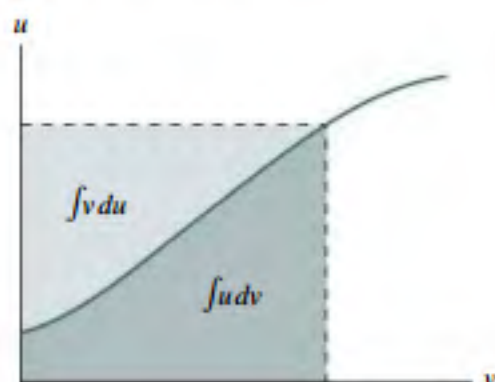
$$\frac{dz}{dx} = \frac{da^2}{dx} + \frac{dx^2}{dx} = 0 + 2x = 2x$$

so $dz = 2x dx$. Then the quantity $x dx$ in our unfamiliar integral is just $\frac{1}{2}dz$, while the quantity $\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}$ is just $z^{1/2}$. So the integral becomes

$$\int \frac{1}{2} z^{-1/2} dz = \frac{\frac{1}{2} z^{1/2}}{\frac{1}{2}} = \sqrt{z}$$

where we have used the standard form for the integral of a power of the independent variable. Substituting back $z = a^2 + x^2$ gives

$$\int \frac{x dx}{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}} = \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}$$



2. Integration by parts

The quantity $\int u dv$ is the area under the curve of u as a function of v between specified limits. In the figure, that area can also be expressed as the area of the rectangle shown minus the area under the curve of v as a function of u . Mathematically, this relation among areas may be expressed as a relation among integrals:

$$\int u dv = uv - \int v du \quad (\text{integration by parts})$$

This expression may often be used to transform complicated integrals into simpler ones.

Example

Evaluate $\int x \cos x dx$. Here let $u = x$, so $du = dx$. Then $dv = \cos x dx$, so we have $v = \int dv = \int \cos x dx = \sin x$. Integrating by parts then gives

$$\int x \cos x dx = (x)(\sin x) - \int \sin x dx = x \sin x + \cos x$$

where the $+$ sign arises because $\int \sin x dx = -\cos x$.

Table of Integrals

More extensive tables are available in many mathematical and scientific handbooks; see, for example, *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics* (Chemical Rubber Co.) or Dwight, *Tables of Integrals and Other Mathematical Data* (Macmillan). Some math software, including *Mathematica* and *Maple*, can also evaluate integrals symbolically. Wolfram Research provides *Mathematica*-based integration both at integrals.wolfram.com and through WolframAlpha at www.wolframalpha.com/calculators/integral-calculator.

In the expressions below, a and b are constants. An arbitrary constant of integration may be added to the right-hand side.

$$\int e^{ax} dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a}$$

$$\int \sin ax dx = -\frac{\cos ax}{a}$$

$$\int \cos ax dx = \frac{\sin ax}{a}$$

$$\int \tan ax dx = -\frac{1}{a} \ln |\cos ax|$$

$$\int \sin^2 ax dx = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{\sin 2ax}{4a}$$

$$\int \cos^2 ax dx = \frac{x}{2} + \frac{\sin 2ax}{4a}$$

$$\int x \sin ax dx = \frac{1}{a^2} \sin ax - \frac{1}{a} x \cos ax$$

$$\int x \cos ax dx = \frac{1}{a^2} \cos ax + \frac{1}{a} x \sin ax$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{x}{a} \right)$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} = \ln |x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}|$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{x^2 + a^2} = \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{x}{a} \right)$$

$$\int \frac{x dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = -\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$$

$$\int \frac{x dx}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} = \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{(x^2 \pm a^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{\pm x}{a^2 \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}$$

$$\int x e^{ax} dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2} (ax - 1)$$

$$\int x^2 e^{ax} dx = \frac{x^2 e^{ax}}{a} - \frac{2}{a} \left[\frac{e^{ax}}{a^2} (ax - 1) \right]$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{a + bx} = \frac{1}{b} \ln |a + bx|$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{(a + bx)^2} = -\frac{1}{b(a + bx)}$$

$$\int \ln ax dx = x \ln ax - x$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{a^2 - x^2} = \frac{1}{2a} \ln \left| \frac{a + x}{a - x} \right|$$

Appendix B The International System of Units (SI)

In 2019, the International Bureau of Weights and Measures approved the most substantial revision of the International System of Units (SI) in over a century. The revised SI defines seven base units, expressing them in terms of the values of fundamental constants that are now taken, by definition, to have exact values. Here we list the formal statements of these *explicit constant* definitions.

time (second): The second, symbol s, is the SI unit of time. It is defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the cesium frequency $\Delta\nu_{\text{Cs}}$, the unperturbed ground-state hyperfine transition frequency of the cesium-133 atom, to be 9,192,631,770 when expressed in the unit Hz, which is equal to s^{-1} .

length (meter): The meter, symbol m, is the SI unit of length. It is defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the speed of light in vacuum c to be 299,792,458 when expressed in the unit $\text{m}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}$, where the second is defined in terms of the cesium frequency $\Delta\nu_{\text{Cs}}$.

mass (kilogram): The kilogram, symbol kg, is the SI unit of mass. It is defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the Planck constant h to be $6.626\,070\,15 \times 10^{-34}$ when expressed in the unit $\text{J}\cdot\text{s}$, which is equal to $\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2\cdot\text{s}^{-1}$, where the meter and the second are defined in terms of c and $\Delta\nu_{\text{Cs}}$.

electric current (ampere): The ampere, symbol A, is the SI unit of electric current. It is defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the elementary charge e to be $1.602\,176\,634 \times 10^{-19}$ when expressed in the unit C, which is equal to $\text{A}\cdot\text{s}$, where the second is defined in terms of $\Delta\nu_{\text{Cs}}$.

temperature (kelvin): The kelvin, symbol K, is the SI unit of thermodynamic temperature. It is defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the Boltzmann constant k to be $1.380\,649 \times 10^{-23}$ when expressed in the unit $\text{J}\cdot\text{K}^{-1}$, which is equal to $\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2\cdot\text{s}^{-2}\cdot\text{K}^{-1}$, where the kilogram, meter, and second are defined in terms of h , c , and $\Delta\nu_{\text{Cs}}$.

amount of substance (mole): The mole, symbol mol, is the SI unit of amount of substance. One mole contains exactly $6.022\,140\,76 \times 10^{23}$ elementary entities. This number is the fixed numerical value of the Avogadro constant, N_{A} , when expressed in the unit mol^{-1} and is called the Avogadro number.

luminous intensity (candela): The candela, symbol cd, is the SI unit of luminous intensity in a given direction. It is defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the luminous efficacy of monochromatic radiation of frequency $540 \times 10^{12} \text{ Hz}$, K_{cd} , to be 683 when expressed in the unit $\text{lm}\cdot\text{W}^{-1}$, which is equal to $\text{cd}\cdot\text{sr}\cdot\text{W}^{-1}$, or $\text{cd}\cdot\text{sr}\cdot\text{kg}^{-1}\cdot\text{m}^{-2}\cdot\text{s}^3$, where the kilogram, meter, and second are defined in terms of h , c , and $\Delta\nu_{\text{Cs}}$.

SI Base and Supplementary Units

Quantity	SI Unit	
	Name	Symbol
Base Unit		
Length	meter	m
Mass	kilogram	kg
Time	second	s
Electric current	ampere	A
Thermodynamic temperature	kelvin	K
Amount of substance	mole	mol
Luminous intensity	candela	cd
Supplementary Units		
Plane angle	radian	rad
Solid angle	steradian	sr

SI Prefixes

Factor	Prefix	Symbol
10^{24}	yotta	Y
10^{21}	zetta	Z
10^{18}	exa	E
10^{15}	peta	P
10^{12}	tera	T
10^9	giga	G
10^6	mega	M
10^3	kilo	k
10^2	hecto	h
10^1	deka	da
10^0	—	—
10^{-1}	deci	d
10^{-2}	centi	c
10^{-3}	milli	m
10^{-6}	micro	μ
10^{-9}	nano	n
10^{-12}	pico	p
10^{-15}	femto	f
10^{-18}	atto	a
10^{-21}	zepto	z
10^{-24}	yocto	y

Some SI Derived Units with Special Names

Quantity	SI Unit			
	Name	Symbol	Expression in Terms of Other Units	Expression in Terms of SI Base Units
Frequency	hertz	Hz		s^{-1}
Force	newton	N		$m \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2}$
Pressure, stress	pascal	Pa	N/m^2	$m^{-1} \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2}$
Energy, work, heat	joule	J	$N \cdot m$	$m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2}$
Power	watt	W	J/s	$m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-3}$
Electric charge	coulomb	C		$s \cdot A$
Electric potential, potential difference, electromotive force	volt	V	J/C	$m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-3} \cdot A^{-1}$
Capacitance	farad	F	C/V	$m^{-2} \cdot kg^{-1} \cdot s^4 \cdot A^2$
Electric resistance	ohm	Ω	V/A	$m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-3} \cdot A^{-2}$
Magnetic flux	weber	Wb	$T \cdot m^2, V \cdot s$	$m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2} \cdot A^{-1}$
Magnetic field	tesla	T	Wb/m^2	$kg \cdot s^{-2} \cdot A^{-1}$
Inductance	henry	H	Wb/A	$m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2} \cdot A^{-2}$
Radioactivity	becquerel	Bq	1 decay/s	s^{-1}
Absorbed radiation dose	gray	Gy	$J/kg, 100 \text{ rad}$	$m^2 \cdot s^{-2}$
Radiation dose equivalent	sievert	Sv	$J/kg, 100 \text{ rem}$	$m^2 \cdot s^{-2}$

Appendix C Conversion Factors

The listings below give the SI equivalents of non-SI units. To convert from the units shown to SI, multiply by the factor given; to convert the other way, divide. For conversions within the SI system, see the table of SI prefixes in Appendix B, Chapter 1, or the inside front cover. Conversions that are not exact by definition are given to, at most, four significant figures.

Length

1 inch (in) = 0.0254 m	1 angstrom ($\text{\AA}$) = 10^{-10} m
1 foot (ft) = 0.3048 m	1 light-year (ly) = 9.46×10^{15} m
1 yard (yd) = 0.9144 m	1 astronomical unit (AU) = 1.496×10^{11} m
1 mile (mi) = 1609 m	1 parsec = 3.09×10^{16} m
1 nautical mile = 1852 m	1 fermi = 10^{-15} m = 1 fm

Mass

1 slug = 14.59 kg	1 unified mass unit (u) = 1.661×10^{-27} kg
1 metric ton (tonne; t) = 1000 kg	

Force units in the English system are sometimes used (incorrectly) for mass. The units given below are actually equal to the number of kilograms multiplied by g , the acceleration of gravity.

1 pound (lb) = weight of 0.454 kg	1 ounce (oz) = weight of 0.02835 kg
1 ton = 2000 lb = weight of 908 kg	

Time

1 minute (min) = 60 s	1 day (d) = 24 h = 86,400 s
1 hour (h) = 60 min = 3600 s	1 year (y) = 365.2422 d* = 3.156×10^7 s

Area

1 hectare (ha) = 10^4 m ²	1 acre = 4047 m ²
1 square inch (in ²) = 6.452×10^{-4} m ²	1 barn = 10^{-28} m ²
1 square foot (ft ²) = 9.290×10^{-2} m ²	1 shed = 10^{-52} m ²

Volume

1 liter (L) = 1000 cm ³ = 10^{-3} m ³	1 gallon (U.S.; gal) = 3.785×10^{-3} m ³
1 cubic foot (ft ³) = 2.832×10^{-2} m ³	1 gallon (British) = 4.546×10^{-3} m ³
1 cubic inch (in ³) = 1.639×10^{-5} m ³	
1 fluid ounce = 1/128 gal = 2.957×10^{-5} m ³	
1 barrel (bbl) = 42 gal = 0.1590 m ³	

Angle, Phase

1 degree ($^\circ$) = $\pi/180$ rad = 1.745×10^{-2} rad
1 revolution (rev) = 360° = 2π rad
1 cycle = 360° = 2π rad

*The length of the year changes very slowly with changes in Earth's orbital period.

Speed, Velocity

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 \text{ km/h} &= (1/3.6) \text{ m/s} = 0.2778 \text{ m/s} & 1 \text{ ft/s} &= 0.3048 \text{ m/s} \\
 1 \text{ mi/h (mph)} &= 0.4470 \text{ m/s} & 1 \text{ ly/y} &= 3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}
 \end{aligned}$$

Angular Speed, Angular Velocity, Frequency, and Angular Frequency

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 \text{ rev/s} &= 2\pi \text{ rad/s} = 6.283 \text{ rad/s (s}^{-1}\text{)} & 1 \text{ rev/min (rpm)} &= 0.1047 \text{ rad/s (s}^{-1}\text{)} \\
 1 \text{ Hz} &= 1 \text{ cycle/s} = 2\pi \text{ s}^{-1}
 \end{aligned}$$

Force

$$1 \text{ dyne} = 10^{-5} \text{ N} \qquad 1 \text{ pound (lb)} = 4.448 \text{ N}$$

Pressure

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 \text{ dyne/cm}^2 &= 10^{-1} \text{ Pa} & 1 \text{ lb/in}^2 \text{ (psi)} &= 6.895 \times 10^3 \text{ Pa} \\
 1 \text{ atmosphere (atm)} &= 1.013 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa} & 1 \text{ in H}_2\text{O (60}^\circ\text{F)} &= 248.8 \text{ Pa} \\
 1 \text{ torr} &= 1 \text{ mm Hg at } 0^\circ\text{C} = 133.3 \text{ Pa} & 1 \text{ in Hg (60}^\circ\text{F)} &= 3.377 \times 10^3 \text{ Pa} \\
 1 \text{ bar} &= 10^5 \text{ Pa} = 0.987 \text{ atm}
 \end{aligned}$$

Energy, Work, Heat

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 \text{ erg} &= 10^{-7} \text{ J} & 1 \text{ Btu}^* &= 1.054 \times 10^3 \text{ J} \\
 1 \text{ calorie}^* \text{ (cal)} &= 4.184 \text{ J} & 1 \text{ kWh} &= 3.6 \times 10^6 \text{ J} \\
 1 \text{ electronvolt (eV)} &= 1.602 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J} & 1 \text{ megaton (explosive yield; Mt)} & \\
 1 \text{ foot-pound (ft} \cdot \text{lb)} &= 1.356 \text{ J} & &= 4.18 \times 10^{15} \text{ J}
 \end{aligned}$$

Power

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 \text{ erg/s} &= 10^{-7} \text{ W} & 1 \text{ Btu/h (Btuh)} &= 0.293 \text{ W} \\
 1 \text{ horsepower (hp)} &= 746 \text{ W} & 1 \text{ ft} \cdot \text{lb/s} &= 1.356 \text{ W}
 \end{aligned}$$

Magnetic Field

$$1 \text{ gauss (G)} = 10^{-4} \text{ T} \qquad 1 \text{ gamma } (\gamma) = 10^{-9} \text{ T}$$

Radiation

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 \text{ curie (ci)} &= 3.7 \times 10^{10} \text{ Bq} & 1 \text{ rad} &= 10^{-2} \text{ Gy} \\
 & & 1 \text{ rem} &= 10^{-2} \text{ Sv}
 \end{aligned}$$

Energy Content of Fuels

Energy Source	Energy Content
Coal	29 MJ/kg = 7300 kWh/ton = 25×10^6 Btu/ton
Oil	43 MJ/kg = 39 kWh/gal = 1.3×10^5 Btu/gal
Gasoline	44 MJ/kg = 36 kWh/gal = 1.2×10^5 Btu/gal
Natural gas	55 MJ/kg = 30 kWh/100 ft ³ = 1000 Btu/ft ³
Uranium (fission)	5.8×10^{11} J/kg = 1.6×10^5 kWh/kg
Normal abundance	8.2×10^{13} J/kg = 2.3×10^7 kWh/kg
Pure U-235	
Hydrogen (fusion)	7×10^{11} J/kg = 3.0×10^4 kWh/kg
Normal abundance	3.3×10^{14} J/kg = 9.2×10^7 kWh/kg
Pure deuterium	1.2×10^{10} J/kg = 1.3×10^4 kWh/gal
Water	= 340 gal gasoline/gal water
100% conversion, matter to energy	9.0×10^{16} J/kg = 931 MeV/u = 2.5×10^{10} kWh/kg

*Values based on the thermochemical calorie; other definitions vary slightly.

Appendix D The Elements

The atomic weights of stable elements reflect the abundances of different isotopes; values given here apply to elements as they exist naturally on Earth. For stable elements, parentheses express uncertainties in the last decimal place given. For elements with no stable isotopes (indicated in **boldface**), at most three isotopes are given; for elements 99 and beyond, only the longest-lived isotope is given. (Exceptions are the unstable elements thorium, protactinium, and uranium, for which atomic weights reflect natural abundances of long-lived isotopes.) See also the periodic table inside the back cover.

Atomic Number	Names	Symbol	Atomic Weight
1	Hydrogen	H	1.00794 (7)
2	Helium	He	4.002 602 (2)
3	Lithium	Li	6.941 (2)
4	Beryllium	Be	9.012 182 (3)
5	Boron	B	10.811 (5)
6	Carbon	C	12.011 (1)
7	Nitrogen	N	14.00674 (7)
8	Oxygen	O	15.9994 (3)
9	Fluorine	F	18.998 403 2 (9)
10	Neon	Ne	20.1797 (6)
11	Sodium (Natrium)	Na	22.989 768 (6)
12	Magnesium	Mg	24.3050 (6)
13	Aluminum	Al	26.981 539 (5)
14	Silicon	Si	28.0855 (3)
15	Phosphorus	P	30.973 762 (4)
16	Sulfur	S	32.066 (6)
17	Chlorine	Cl	35.4527 (9)
18	Argon	Ar	39.948 (1)
19	Potassium (Kalium)	K	39.0983 (1)
20	Calcium	Ca	40.078 (4)
21	Scandium	Sc	44.955 910 (9)
22	Titanium	Ti	47.88 (3)
23	Vanadium	V	50.9415 (1)
24	Chromium	Cr	51.9961 (6)
25	Manganese	Mn	54.93805 (1)
26	Iron	Fe	55.847 (3)
27	Cobalt	Co	58.93320 (1)
28	Nickel	Ni	58.69 (1)
29	Copper	Cu	63.546 (3)
30	Zinc	Zn	65.39 (2)
31	Gallium	Ga	69.723 (1)

(continued)

Atomic Number	Names	Symbol	Atomic Weight
32	Germanium	Ge	72.61 (2)
33	Arsenic	As	74.92159 (2)
34	Selenium	Se	78.96 (3)
35	Bromine	Br	79.904 (1)
36	Krypton	Kr	83.80 (1)
37	Rubidium	Rb	85.4678 (3)
38	Strontium	Sr	87.62 (1)
39	Yttrium	Y	88.90585 (2)
40	Zirconium	Zr	91.224 (2)
41	Niobium	Nb	92.90638 (2)
42	Molybdenum	Mo	95.94 (1)
43	Technetium	Tc	97, 98, 99
44	Ruthenium	Ru	101.07 (2)
45	Rhodium	Rh	102.90550 (3)
46	Palladium	Pd	106.42 (1)
47	Silver	Ag	107.8682 (2)
48	Cadmium	Cd	112.411 (8)
49	Indium	In	114.82 (1)
50	Tin	Sn	118.710 (7)
51	Antimony (Stibium)	Sb	121.75 (3)
52	Tellurium	Te	127.60 (3)
53	Iodine	I	126.90447 (3)
54	Xenon	Xe	131.29 (2)
55	Cesium	Cs	132.90543 (5)
56	Barium	Ba	137.327 (7)
57	Lanthanum	La	138.9055 (2)
58	Cerium	Ce	140.115 (4)
59	Praseodymium	Pr	140.90765 (3)
60	Neodymium	Nd	144.24 (3)
61	Promethium	Pm	145, 147
62	Samarium	Sm	150.36 (3)
63	Europium	Eu	151.965 (9)
64	Gadolinium	Gd	157.25 (3)
65	Terbium	Tb	158.92534 (3)
66	Dysprosium	Dy	162.50 (3)
67	Holmium	Ho	164.93032 (3)
68	Erbium	Er	167.26 (3)
69	Thulium	Tm	168.93421 (3)
70	Ytterbium	Yb	173.04 (3)
71	Lutetium	Lu	174.967 (1)
72	Hafnium	Hf	178.49 (2)
73	Tantalum	Ta	180.9479 (1)
74	Tungsten (Wolfram)	W	183.85 (3)
75	Rhenium	Re	186.207 (1)
76	Osmium	Os	190.2 (1)
77	Iridium	Ir	192.22 (3)

Atomic Number	Names	Symbol	Atomic Weight
78	Platinum	Pt	195.08 (3)
79	Gold	Au	196.96654 (3)
80	Mercury	Hg	200.59 (3)
81	Thallium	Tl	204.3833 (2)
82	Lead	Pb	207.2 (1)
83	Bismuth	Bi	208.98037 (3)
84	Polonium	Po	209, 210
85	Astatine	At	210, 211
86	Radon	Rn	211, 220, 222
87	Francium	Fr	223
88	Radium	Ra	223, 224, 226
89	Actinium	Ac	227
90	Thorium	Th	232.0381 (1)
91	Protactinium	Pa	231.03588 (2)
92	Uranium	U	238.0289 (1)
93	Neptunium	Np	237, 239
94	Plutonium	Pu	239, 242, 244
95	Americium	Am	241, 243
96	Curium	Cm	245, 247, 248
97	Berkelium	Bk	247, 249
98	Californium	Cf	249, 250, 251
99	Einsteinium	Es	252
100	Fermium	Fm	257
101	Mendelevium	Md	258
102	Nobelium	No	259
103	Lawrencium	Lr	262
104	Rutherfordium	Rf	263
105	Dubnium	Db	268
106	Seaborgium	Sg	266
107	Bohrium	Bh	272
108	Hassium	Hs	277
109	Meitnerium	Mt	276
110	Darmstadtium	Ds	281
111	Roentgenium	Rg	280
112	Copernicium	Cn	285
113	Nihonium	Nh	284
114	Flerovium	Fl	289
115	Moscovium	Mc	288
116	Livermorium	Lv	292
117	Tennessine	Ts	294
118	Oganesson	Og	294

Appendix E Astrophysical Data

Sun, Planets, Principal Satellites

Body	Mass (10^{24} kg)	Mean Radius (10^6 m except as noted)	Surface Gravity (m/s^2)	Escape Speed (km/s)	Sidereal Rotation Period* (days)	Mean Distance from Central Body† (10^6 km)	Orbital Period	Mean Orbital Speed (km/s)
Sun	1.99×10^6	696	274	618	36 at poles 27 at equator	2.6×10^{11}	200 My	250
<i>Planets</i>								
Mercury	0.330	2.44	3.70	4.25	58.6	57.9	88.0 d	47.4
Venus	4.87	6.05	8.87	10.4	-243	108	225 d	35.0
Earth	5.97	6.37	9.81	11.2	0.997	149.6	365.2 d	29.8
Moon	0.0735	1.74	1.62	2.38	27.3	0.3844	27.3 d	1.02
Mars	0.642	3.39	3.71	5.03	1.03	228	1.88 y	24.1
Phobos	1.07×10^{-8}	9–13 km	0.0057	0.0114	0.319	9.4×10^{-3}	0.319 d	2.14
Deimos	1.48×10^{-9}	5–8 km	0.003	0.00556	1.26	23×10^{-3}	1.26 d	1.35
Jupiter	1.90×10^3	69.9	24.8	60.2	0.414	778	11.9 y	13.1
Io	0.0893	1.82	1.80	2.38	1.77	0.422	1.77 d	17.3
Europa	0.480	1.56	1.32	2.03	3.55	0.671	3.55 d	13.7
Ganymede	0.148	2.63	1.43	2.74	7.15	1.07	7.15 d	10.9
Callisto	0.108	2.41	1.24	2.44	16.7	1.88	16.7 d	8.20
and at least 75 smaller satellites								
Saturn	568	58.2	10.4	36.1	0.444	1.43×10^3	29.5 y	9.69
Tethys	0.0007	0.53	0.2	0.4	1.89	0.294	1.89 d	11.3
Dione	0.00015	0.56	0.3	0.6	2.74	0.377	2.74 d	10.0
Rhea	0.0025	0.77	0.3	0.5	4.52	0.527	4.52 d	8.5
Titan	0.135	2.58	1.35	2.64	15.9	1.22	15.9 d	5.6
and at least 58 smaller satellites								
Uranus	86.8	25.4	8.87	21.4	-0.720	2.87×10^3	84.0 y	6.80
Ariel	0.0013	0.58	0.3	0.4	2.52	0.19	2.52 d	5.5
Umbriel	0.0013	0.59	0.3	0.4	4.14	0.27	4.14 d	4.7
Titania	0.0018	0.81	0.2	0.5	8.70	0.44	8.70 d	3.7
Oberon	0.0017	0.78	0.2	0.5	13.5	0.58	13.5 d	3.1
and at least 23 smaller satellites								
Neptune	102	24.6	11.2	23.5	0.673	4.50×10^3	165 y	5.43
Triton	0.134	1.9	2.5	3.1	5.88	0.354	5.88 d	4.4
and at least 13 smaller satellites								
<i>Dwarf Planets</i>								
Ceres	0.000 947	0.476	0.27	0.51	0.38	414	4.60 y	17.9
Pluto	0.0130	1.20	0.58	1.2	-6.39	5.91×10^3	248 y	4.67
Charon	0.00586	0.604	0.278	0.580	-6.39	0.00196	6.39 d	0.23
and 4 smaller satellites								
Eris	0.0166	1.16	0.827	1.38	1.1	1.02×10^4	560 y	3.43
and 1 small satellite, Dysnomia								

*Negative rotation period indicates retrograde motion, in opposite sense from orbital motion. Periods are sidereal, meaning the time for the body to return to the same orientation relative to the distant stars rather than the Sun.

†Central body is galactic center for Sun, Sun for planets, and planet for satellites.

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

Chapter 1

11. (a) 10^9 W; (b) 10^6 kW; (c) 1 GW
13. 0.299792458 m or about 1 ft
15. 4×10^8
17. $0.58 \text{ rad} = 33^\circ$
19. 90 g
21. 10^6
23. $8.1 \text{ m}^2/\text{L}$
25. 3.6 km/h
27. 57.3°
29. 24 Zm
31. 7000 m/s^2
33. 5×10^7
35. 41 m
37. 25 m/s
39. 12 rev/day
41. 22 mm
43. 2 ms
45. (a) 5.57 (b) 5.65
47. 5×10^5
49. About 0.005%
51. 10^5
53. $2 \times 10^{-2} \text{ cm}$
55. (a) 40 nm (b) 5×10^5 calculations per second
57. 0.4% for 1.27, 0.05% for 9.97
59. In the U.S.; cost is 35% greater in Mexico.
61. about 2000
63. about $1\text{--}2 \text{ m}^2$
65. (a) 1.0 m (b) 0.001 m^2 (c) 0.0 m (d) 1.0
67. 439 W, more than the consumption rate
69. slope = 4.09 g/cm^3
71. b
73. c

Chapter 2

11. 10.4 m/s
13. With northward taken as positive,
(a) 24 km; (b) 9.6 km/h; (c) -16 km/h ;
(d) 0; (e) 0
15. 29.4 km/h
19. (a) $v = b - 2ct$ (b) 8.2 s
21. 0.38 m/s^2
23. falling: 9.82 m/s^2 , stopping: 82.7 m/s^2
25. 17 m/s^2
27. $v = dx/dt = d/dt(x_0 + v_0 t + at^2/2)$
 $= v_0 + at$
29. (a) $a = v^2/2h$; (b) $t = 2h/v$
31. 7.8 m/s^2
33. 15 s
35. 3.26 m
37. (a) $v^2/2g$; (b) $v/\sqrt{2}$
39. 10 m/s

41. 947 m
43. 102 m
45. (a) 13.4 m/s ; (b) 1.37 s
47. (a) 15.7 m/s ; (b) 1.60 s
49. 60 km/h
51. 2.2 s
53. (a) 9.82 m/s (b) 9.34 m/s (c) 9.18 m/s
(d) 9.18 m/s
55. 14.1 m
57. 4.3 m/s^2
59. 2.75 s
61. 51%
63. (a) $1.6 \times 10^{-2} \text{ s}$ (b) 0.59 m
65. 980 m
67. (a) 25 m/s (b) 180 m
69. $4.8 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m/s}^2$
71. 11 m/s
73. 270 m
75. $-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{hg}$
77. (a) 7.88 m/s , 7.67 m/s (b) 0.162 s
79. $70 \mu\text{m/s}^2$
81. 4.8 m/s (17 km/h)
83. (a) $\bar{v} = (v_1 + v_2)/2$ (b)
 $\bar{v} = (2v_1 v_2)/(v_1 + v_2)$
(c) in the first case
85. 70.7 %
87. -0.27 m/s^2
89. $\frac{h}{4} \left(\frac{2h}{g\Delta t^2} \right) \left(\frac{g\Delta t^2}{2h} - 1 \right)^2$
91. 15s^{-1}
95. (a) $\sqrt{2b/c}$; (b) $-5b$
97. (a) $v_0 > \sqrt{gh_0/2}$ (b) $h_0 - gh_0^2/2v_0$
99. c
101. b

Chapter 3

11. (a) 1.78 km; (b) 28.3° east of north
13. 710 km, 21° west of north
15. $123\hat{i} + 86\hat{j} \text{ km}$
17. 1.414, $\theta = 45^\circ$
19. 135° or 315° (equivalently, -45°)
21. $3ct^2\hat{j}$
23. (a) $\bar{v} = -2.2 \times 10^{-6}\hat{j} \text{ m/s}$
(b) $\bar{a} = -3.2 \times 10^{-10}\hat{i} \text{ m/s}^2$
25. 1.1, 2.7 m/s
27. (a) 26° upstream (b) 53.9 s
29. 40° west of south
31. 45 m, 6.5° to your original direction
33. (a) 1.3 s (b) 18 m
35. 34 nm
37. 1030 m
39. $2.59 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m/s}^2$
41. 2.73 mm/s^2

43. 9.60 km
45. 0.752 m/s^2
47. 497 m/s^2
49. 90 km/h
51. 229 m/s (826 km/h)
53. -17, 11, -17
55. (a) $4c/3d$ (b) $c/3d$
57. 91 m
59. (a) 0.249 m/s (b) $7.00 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m/s}^2$
(c) $7.21 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m/s}^2$, about 3% difference
61. $A = B$
63. 0.50 m/s^2
65. 5.7 m/s
67. (a) $x_1 = x_2$ implies
 $y_1 = h \left(1 - \frac{gh}{v_0^2} \right) = y_2$ (b) $v_0 \geq \sqrt{gh}$
69. (a) 3.74 m/s ; (b) 68.7° from horizontal
73. semi-circle of radius 2.5 cm; 6.54 m/s ,
 17.1 m/s^2
75. No
77. 67°
79. (a) $v\sqrt{2/\sqrt{3}} \approx 1.07v$
(b) $\sqrt[4]{3}t \approx 1.3t$
81. 63.4 m
83. $2h$
85. 20 m
87. $dx/d\theta_0 = 2v_0^2/g \cos(2\theta_0) = 0 \Rightarrow \theta_0 = 45^\circ$
89. $y = x \tan \theta_0 + \frac{b}{6(v_0 \cos \theta_0)^2} x^3$
93. (a) $\sqrt{(1 + \pi^2)a_i}$; (b)
 $3\pi/2 - \tan^{-1}(1/\pi) \approx 252^\circ$
95. c
97. c

Chapter 4

11. 792 kN
13. $9.1 \times 10^2 \text{ kg}$
15. $1.6 \times 10^6 \text{ m/s}^2$
17. $6.0 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}$
21. 210 kg
23. 9000 kg
25. 490 N
27. 470 N
29. $M(g + v^2/2h)$
31. 55 kN
33. 90 N
35. 19 cm
37. (a) 5.94 s; (b) 137 m
39. (a) 59.8 ms; (b) 6.58 m
41. 0.733 m/s^2 , downward
43. 3.98 m/s^2
45. 2.45 m/s^2 , downward
47. 4.3 m/s^2

49. 0.60 s
 51. 6.0 N
 53. $1.62 \times 10^{-7} \text{ N/m}$
 55. 0.96 m
 57. (a) 419 N; (b) 376 N
 59. 0.96 m
 61. 950 N
 63. F-35A: yes, 0.81 m/s^2 ; A-380: no
 67. 2.5 m/s^2
 69. (a) 60.0 m/s (b) 0.672 m
 71. 11.8 m/s^2
 73. 0.92 kg, 1.4 kg
 75. $\omega F_0/M$
 77. a
 79. b

Chapter 5

11. $5.40\hat{i} + 11.0\hat{j} \text{ N}$
 13. 22.2°
 15. 3.0 kN
 17. (a) 7.1 m/s^2 ; (b) 0.47 s
 19. (a) 3.9 m/s^2 (b) 550 N
 23. Train was speeding at 71 km/h
 25. 130 m/s
 27. 0.10
 29. no; the minimum safe frictional coefficient is 0.25
 31. 8430 kg
 33. 47.2 g
 35. 451 N, downward
 37. no; it experiences a force of 84.7 N from the water
 39. 0.64 m
 41. about 2.62 times
 43. $T = m_2 g$, $\tau = 2\pi\sqrt{(m_1 R)/(m_2 g)}$
 45. (a) 200 N downward (b) 0 N
 (c) the rider stays in the seat
 47. $1.0 \times 10^4 \text{ m}$
 49. 0.11
 51. $a = 0.26 \text{ m/s}^2$; $t = 20 \text{ s}$
 53. Yes
 55. $0.23 \leq \mu_s \leq 0.30$
 57. 4.2 m/s^2
 59. 0.62
 61. (a) 9.8 cm (b) no
 63. 110 km/h
 67. 16 rev/min
 69. Brake, don't swerve
 71. 28 cm
 73. $v(t) = \frac{mg}{b}(e^{-bt/m} - 1)$
 75. Yes
 77. a
 79. b
21. (a) 1 J (b) 3 J
 23. 33 cm
 25. 2.2 GJ
 27. $\pm 20 \text{ km/h}$
 29. 42 m/s
 31. 97 W
 33. (a) $1.2 \times 10^5 \text{ W}$ (b) 2000 W (c) 83 W
 35. $5.1 \times 10^6 \text{ J}$
 37. 0 W
 39. 22 s
 41. 10.8 kJ
 43. $4.50 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J}$
 45. 864 W
 47. (a) 163 MW; (b) 273 MW
 49. (a) 400 J (b) 31 kg
 51. 25°
 53. (a) 0 (b) 90°
 55. $k_B = 8k_A$
 57. $W = F_0 \left(x - \frac{x^2}{2L_0} + \frac{L_0^2}{L_0 + x} - L_0 \right)$
 59. $v_2 = \pm 3v_1$
 61. (a) $1.3 \times 10^{-17} \text{ W}$ (b) $1.4 \times 10^{-14} \text{ J}$
 63. 9.6 kW
 65. $F_0 x_0/3$
 67. $\pi/3$ or 60°
 69. about 800 GW
 71. (a) 100.1 km/h (27.8 m/s); (b) 382 hp
 73. 0.60
 75. (a) 49 W; (b) 1.38 kJ; (c) 58 W, 1.63 kJ
 77. (a) $2P_0$; (b) $\frac{1}{2}(3 - \sqrt{3})t_0 (\cong 0.634 t_0)$
 79. 6.0 years
 83. $W_{x_1 \rightarrow x_2} = 2b(\sqrt{x_2} - \sqrt{x_1})$,
 $W(x_1 = 0) = 2b\sqrt{x_2}$
 85. (a) $\frac{1}{2}kL_0^2 + \frac{1}{3}bL_0^3 + \frac{1}{4}cL_0^4 + \frac{1}{5}dL_0^5$
 (b) 12 kJ
 87. 135 J
 89. 30 people
 91. Stopping force is 30 times the weight of the leg
 93. c
 95. c

Chapter 7

9. Path (a): $W_a = -\mu_k mg(2L)$;
 Path (b): $W_b = -\sqrt{2}\mu_k mgL$
 11. (a) 60 kJ; (b) 110 kJ; (c) 0
 13. (a) 7.2 MJ; (b) 1.1 MJ
 15. 61 cm
 17. $\pm 22 \text{ m/s}$, $\pm 35 \text{ m/s}$
 19. 110 m
 21. 2.1 kN/m
 23. 0.72
 25. 2.1, -2.1 m
 27. 2.28 kJ, less than the 2.67 kJ for the ideal spring
 29. $2.49 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J}$
 31. 55.2 cm
 33. 3.55 m
 35. (a) $4.4 \times 10^{13} \text{ J}$ (b) 11 h

37. 778 J, 4.90%
 39. $U(x) = -\frac{1}{3}ax^3 - bx$
 41. $r = \frac{kx^2}{2mg \sin \theta}$
 45. (a) -14 cm (b) $\pm 7 \text{ m/s}$
 47. $h \geq 5R/2$
 51. $U(x) = 8.83x^3 - 3.05x^4 \text{ J}$
 53. 20 m/s, 30 m/s
 55. 1.3 m
 57. 62.5 cm
 59. 2.8 m
 61. 14 m
 63. $v = 2x^{3/4} \sqrt{\frac{a}{3m}}$
 65. 5.4 s
 67. $\frac{mgh}{2d} \sqrt{2g(h-d)}$
 69. 185 N/m
 71. d
 73. b

Chapter 8

11. $R_p = R_E/\sqrt{3}$
 13. 70.7%
 15. 8.6 kg
 17. 632 m
 19. 3070 m/s
 21. 3.55 d
 23. $3.2 \times 10^5 \text{ m}$
 25. 3.29 GJ
 27. 4.45 km/s
 29. (a) 2.44 km/s (b) $2.16 \times 10^5 \text{ m/s}$
 31. (a) 20,190 km; (b) 3.872 km/s
 33. (a) 17,100 km; (b) 1.45 km/s
 35. 5.62 km/s
 37. Less, by about 2 km/s
 39. $h = 0.732R_p$
 41. 36 GJ—positive, so not bound to the Sun
 43. 60.5 min
 45. $2.6 \times 10^{41} \text{ kg}$
 47. $T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2 L^3}{3GM}$
 49. 2.79 AU
 51. $E > 0$, hyperbolic path
 55. 7.2 km/s
 59. (a) 2110 km (b) 825 km
 61. 11.89 km/s
 63. 3.82 km/s
 65. $4.60 \times 10^{10} \text{ m}$
 67. $1.42 \times 10^3 \text{ km}$
 69. $1.58 \times 10^{16} \text{ kg}$
 71. 3.8 m/century
 73. No danger, since the golf ball needs at least 12,800 km/h to go into orbit
 75. $1.5 \times 10^6 \text{ km}$
 77. d
 79. d

Chapter 9

11. $2m$
 13. (0, 0.289L)

Chapter 6

11. 1300 J
 13. 150 kJ
 15. 190 MN
 17. $\vec{A} \cdot (\vec{B} + \vec{C}) = AB \cos(\theta_{AB})$
 $+ AC \cos(\theta_{AC}) = \vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} + \vec{A} \cdot \vec{C}$
 19. 1.9 m

15. $\vec{v}_2 = -61\hat{i}$ cm/s
 17. 0.268 Mm/s
 19. 47.9 J
 21. (a) ~ 20 kN·s; (b) ~ 10 m/s
 23. 44.6 s
 27. The truck's load was 6800 kg, 1200 kg under the limit
 29. 48 m/s
 31. $v_{1f} = -9.2$ Mm/s, $v_{2f} = 6.1$ Mm/s, velocities are exchanged
 33. 7.65 Mm/s at 12.4° to the alpha particle's original direction with perpendicular component opposite that of the alpha particle
 35. 195 km/s at 25.9° to the original direction with perpendicular component opposite that of the orbiter
 37. 28.4%
 39. 75.6%
 41. (0, 0.115a)
 43. $K_{cm} = 1.74$ J; $K_{int} = 32.8$ J
 45. $m_b = 4m_m$
 47. (0, 0, $h/4$)
 49. (a) 0.99 m (b) 3.9 m/s
 51. about 10 N
 55. $3R/8$
 57. $\vec{v}_3 = 4.0\hat{i} + 2.8\hat{j}$ m/s
 59. 9.0 m/s
 61. $\frac{2}{5}v; \frac{7}{5}v$
 63. (a) 37.7° (b) -65.8 cm/s
 65. 6.0 s
 67. 0.92 m/s
 69. If the Leaf was at the speed limit, then the Land Cruiser was speeding at 76.4 km/h; if the Land Cruiser was at the speed limit, then the Leaf was speeding at 92.2 km/h.
 71. 120°
 73. 5.83
 77. 18.6%
 79. (a) 12.4 m (b) 15.6 m/s
 81. $v_1 = v/8$, $v_2 = 7v/8$
 87. The center of mass lies along line through the middle of the slice, at a distance of $\frac{4R}{3\theta} \sin(\theta/2)$ from the tip.
 89. 4.7 min
 91. (a) $\frac{M}{1+a}$ (b) $\frac{1+a}{2+a}L$
 (c) M and $\frac{1}{2}L$
 93. 3 collisions, final speeds $0.26v_0$ and $0.31v_0$
 95. b
 97. a

Chapter 10

11. (a) $7.27 \times 10^{-5} \text{ s}^{-1}$ (b) $1.75 \times 10^{-3} \text{ s}^{-1}$
 (c) $1.45 \times 10^{-4} \text{ s}^{-1}$ (d) 31.4 s^{-1}
 13. (a) 75 rad/s (b) 2.4×10^{-4} rad/s
 (c) 6×10^3 rad/s (d) 2×10^{-7} rad/s
 15. (a) 0.068 rpm/s (b) 7.1×10^{-3} rad/s²
 17. (a) 0.17 rev (b) 7.7×10^{-2} rad/s

19. Disc brake torque is about 30% greater (400 vs 300 N·m).
 21. $5.6 \times 10^{-2} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$
 23. (a) $2mL^2$ (b) mL^2
 25. $6.6 \times 10^{-4} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$ (b) $2.1 \times 10^{-3} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$
 27. (a) $10^{38} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$; (b) $3 \times 10^{19} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$
 29. 20 min
 31. $\sim 10^4$ years
 33. (a) $1.6 \times 10^8 \text{ J}$ (b) 16 MW
 35. $1/3$
 37. (a) $14.3 \text{ g} \cdot \text{m}^2$; (b) low by 0.064%
 39. $127 \text{ Mg} \cdot \text{m}^2$
 41. 1.84 m/s
 43. (a) 11.9 m/s; (b) in between
 45. (a) 8.2 rad/s (b) 4.6 s
 47. (a) 170 s^{-2} (b) 2.9 m/s^2
 (c) 150 revolutions
 49. 570 rev
 51. $5MR^2/8$
 53. 28 pN
 55. (a) $3.0 \times 10^4 \text{ s}$ (b) 2500 rev
 57. 0.32
 59. 1.89 rad/s
 61. $v = \sqrt{\frac{6}{5}gd \sin \theta}$
 63. 24%
 65. 0.494 MR^2
 67. 24 m
 69. (a) $M = \frac{2\pi\rho_0\omega R^2}{3}$ (b) $I = 3MR^2/5$
 71. $MR^2/4$
 73. $3MR^2/10$
 75. $\left(m + \frac{M}{2}\right)va + mgv$
 77. The specs are incorrect.
 79. $4.91 \times 10^{-5} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$
 81. a
 83. b

Chapter 11

11. $\vec{\omega} = 74 \text{ s}^{-1}$ west
 13. (a) 0.524 s^{-2} (b) -37°
 15. (a) $-12\hat{k} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ (b) $36\hat{k} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$
 (c) $12\hat{i} - 36\hat{j} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$
 17. $2.9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$, out of the page
 19. $\sim 10^{56} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}$
 21. $2.7 \text{ J} \cdot \text{s}$
 23. 18.3 rpm
 25. 2.9 days
 27. $6.79 \times 10^6 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}$
 29. (a) $0.288 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}$; (b) down
 31. 3.57 min
 33. 4.88 rev/s
 35. $-8.0\hat{k} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$
 37. $2400 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$
 39. $mva/3$
 41. $1.82 \times 10^5 \text{ J} \cdot \text{s}$,
 out of plane of figure
 43. $3.2 \times 10^{-16} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$
 45. $0.19 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$
 47. 0.53

49. 5.1 m/s
 53. (a) 0.25 rad/s (b) 6.4 kJ
 55. (a) $d\omega\left(\frac{1}{2} - I/2md^2\right)$ (b) $d\omega$
 (c) $d\omega(2 + I/2md^2)$
 57. Area increases by factor of 1.61; length of day increases by factor of 2.22
 59. (a) $2\omega_0/7$ (b) $t = \frac{2R\omega_0}{\mu_0 g}$
 63. $9.2 \times 10^{26} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$
 65. d
 67. d

Chapter 12

13. (a) $\tau = mgL/2$ (b) $\tau = 0$
 (c) $\tau = mgL/2$
 15. 14.0 m from the wall
 17. (a) 0.92 m from left end
 (b) 1.67 m from left end
 19. 480 N
 21. -0.797 m, unstable; 1.46 m, stable
 23. 3.00 m
 25. no; the climber can only get 90% of the way across the log
 27. (a) 18 aJ/nm² (b) yes
 29. (b) stable in x, unstable in y
 31. (a) 40 N·m (b) 1.3 kN
 33. 590 N
 35. 89 kg
 37. 1.4 W
 41. $\frac{1}{2}Mg(\sqrt{L^2 + D^2} - L)$
 43. $\tan^{-1}(L/W)$
 45. (a) $\frac{mg}{2}[L \sin \theta - W(1 - \cos \theta)]$
 (b) $\tan^{-1}(L/W)$
 (c) concave down, unstable
 47. $\phi = \tan^{-1}(1/3\mu)$
 49. 0.366 mgs
 53. $F_{app} = Mg \tan(\theta/2)$
 55. $\mu_s > \tan \alpha = 1/2$
 59. $\mu \geq \frac{\tan \theta}{2 + \tan^2 \theta}$
 61. 915 N
 63. 145.2 N
 65. (a) $F = G \frac{M_E m}{R_E^2} (1.229)$, 21.3°
 (b) $\tau = G \frac{M_E m}{R_E} (-0.0356)$
 67. stable equilibrium at ~ 6 nm and ~ 14 nm,
 unstable equilibrium at ~ 11 nm
 69. a
 71. b

Chapter 13

11. $f = 1.25 \text{ Hz}$, $T = 0.8 \text{ s}$
 13. 11.5 fs ($1.15 \times 10^{-14} \text{ s}$)
 15. 22 ms
 17. 0.56 Hz; 1.8 s
 19. (a) 17 rad/s; (b) 0.37 s;
 (c) 78.2 m/s^2

A-20 Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

21. 1.17 s
23. 1.6 s
25. 23 oscillations in the x direction for
4 oscillations in the y direction
27. 1.6 rad, 2.3 rad/s
29. 0.16 s
31. 22 m/s
33. 238 Mg
35. 6.78 s
37. (a) 49.1 cm; (b) 1.17 m/s
39. (a) $mg^2T^2(1 - \cos\theta_{\max})/4\pi^2$
(b) $gT\sin(\theta_{\max}/2)/\pi$; equivalently,
 $(gT/\pi)\sqrt{(1 - \cos\theta_{\max})/2}$
41. 0.147%
43. (a) $t = \pi\sqrt{m/k}$ (b) $A = v_0\sqrt{m/k}$
45. 50 min
47. (a) 6.3×10^{-5} N/m
(b) 3.1×10^{-10} kg
51. 950 Kg
53. (a) $|\vec{r}| = A$
(b) $\vec{v} = (\omega A \cos \omega t)\hat{i} - (\omega A \sin \omega t)\hat{j}$
(c) $|\vec{v}| = \omega A$ (d) ω
55. $(\pi/3)\sqrt{58D/g}$
57. (a) 8.8 N/m (b) 0.8 kg
63. $\omega = \sqrt{2k/3M}$
65. 40
67. (a) 7.3 cm (b) 0.54 s
69. $f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{2a/m}$
71. (a) $E_1 = 9E_2$ (b) $a_{\max,1} = 9a_{\max,2}$
75. $T = 2\pi\sqrt{7/(10ga)}$
77. $R/\sqrt{2}$ above the center
79. 1.21 Hz
81. 65 g
83. 1.39 kg $\cdot$ m²
85. (a) $d^2\theta/dt^2 = -(mgL/I)\sin\theta = -(g/L)\sin\theta$
(b) Case (i) gives simple harmonic
motion; case (ii) gives oscillatory
motion that is not simple harmonic; case
(iii) gives nonuniform circular motion.
87. a
89. d

Chapter 14

11. 3.4 s
13. 3.13 m
15. (a) 0.19 mm (b) 0.43 mm
17. (a) 1.6 cm (b) 9.4 cm (c) 0.21 s
(d) 45 cm/s (e) $-x$ direction
19. $y(x,t) = (1.5 \text{ cm})\cos[(0.785 \text{ cm}^{-1})x - (0.604 \text{ s}^{-1})t]$
21. 250 m/s
23. 20 m/s
25. 12 W
27. 343 m/s
29. 269 m/s
31. 1300 Hz
33. 5.4 m
35. (a) 320 Hz (b) 80 Hz (c) 240 Hz
37. 14 cm
39. 94 Hz
41. Galaxy receding
43. 7.08 s

45. (a) 102 m; (b) $\lambda_{\text{water}} = 4.32\lambda_{\text{air}}$
47. 381 Hz
49. shorter by 0.142 nm
51. 71.4 m/s
53. 80 W
57. $v = \sqrt{\frac{kL(L - L_0)}{m}}$
59. 8 m
61. $L_0 = 5L_1/7$
63. 760 km/h
67. 6.3 m
73. 9.5 km
75. (a) southern hemisphere;
(b) about 45° (using great-circle distance
of ~3000 km; waves' straight-line path
through Earth would be slightly shorter)
77. radar worked properly
79. Not sufficient: The minimum measurable
speed is 5.4 km/h.
81. 256 Hz
83. b
85. b

Chapter 15

11. 1.5 kg
13. (a) 240 kg/m³ (b) 8.2 m³
15. 200 GPa
17. 1300 kg/m³
19. 92 m
21. 2.4%
23. 46 kg
25. 0.75%
27. 4.5 m/s
29. (a) 2.8×10^4 m³/s (b) 1.9 m/s
31. 1.8 m/s
33. $m_{\text{ice}} = 124,000$ t; $m_{\text{gravel}} = 14,000$ t
35. 2.25 m
37. 1.52 m
39. 278 kPa (2.74 atm)
41. 708 cm²
43. (a) 240 Pa (b) 480 Pa
45. 1.6 mm
47. (a) 798 N; (b) 2.16 mm;
(c) 7.03 J for both
49. The accused apparently drank 51 oz.
51. 24 m
53. (a) 49 kg (b) 2500 kg
55. 14 kPa
57. 12 m
59. (a) 1.8 m/s (b) 7.5×10^{-4} m³/s
61. 0.72
63. 6.89 m
65. (a) 603 Pa (b) 11.0 km
67. 9 kg
69. No, the wind farm cannot produce 1 GW
of power.
71. $t = \frac{A_0}{A_1}\sqrt{\frac{2h}{g}}$
73. (b) 5.8 km
75. 2.1×10^{12} N $\cdot$ m
77. No
79. $\rho_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}L \tan\frac{\theta}{2}(h_0^2 - h_1^2)$

81. c
83. e

Chapter 16

11. 5.4° F to 7.6° F
13. 24° C
15. -40° C = -40° F
17. 103° F
19. 3.6×10^4 J
21. 100 W
23. (a) 1.7×10^5 J (b) 84 s
25. (a) 55 W/m² (b) 14.5 W/m²
27. 5 W
29. $R_{\text{air}} = 0.98 \text{ m}^2 \cdot \text{K/W}$,
 $R_{\text{concrete}} = 0.03 \text{ m}^2 \cdot \text{K/W}$,
 $R_{\text{fiberglass}} = 0.60 \text{ m}^2 \cdot \text{K/W}$,
 $R_{\text{glass}} = 0.03 \text{ m}^2 \cdot \text{K/W}$,
 $R_{\text{Styrofoam}} = 0.88 \text{ m}^2 \cdot \text{K/W}$,
 $R_{\text{pine}} = 0.23 \text{ m}^2 \cdot \text{K/W}$
31. 3600 W
33. 2×10^{-5} m²
35. 24.1° C
37. 2.0° C
39. 59.3° F
41. 203 K
43. (a) 138 kPa (b) 33.4 kPa (c) 233 kPa
45. 261 K = -12.2° C
47. 364 g
49. (a) 22.6 kJ (b) 372 kJ (c) 67.3 kJ
51. 119 s
53. 0.56 kg
55. 2.2 kg
57. 50 K
59. 0.33 kg
61. 2.0×10^2 W
63. The house will remain at a comfortable
19° C
65. (a) $\sqrt[3]{k/\sigma\Delta x}$ (b) 217 K
67. 24° C
69. 1200 K
71. (a) \$319/month (b) \$37.58/month
73. 44 K
75. 418.76 kJ, 0.09% higher
77. Mars: 207 K vs. ~210 K measured;
Venus: 301 K vs. ~740 K measured
79. The solar increase accounts for only 4%
of recent warming.
81. -15° C
83. c
85. a

Chapter 17

11. 1.8 m³
13. 1.6×10^6 Pa
15. (a) 27 L (b) 330 K
17. hydrogen
19. lead
21. 169 kJ
23. 0.986 L
25. 263° C
27. 62.7 L
29. 5.2 L
31. all liquid water at 8.8° C

33. 0°C , with 3.53×10^6 kg of ice left
 35. $1 \times 10^{15} \text{ m}^{-3}$, which is over 10 billion times less dense than Earth's atmosphere
 37. (a) 235 mol (b) 5.65 m^3
 39. (a) 1.27 atm (b) $3.4 \times 10^{-2} \text{ mol}$ (c) 0.785 atm
 41. 63 min
 43. 57.1 s
 45. 43 min
 47. ISM
 49. 14.8 hours
 51. 4.9°C
 53. 14 kW
 55. (a) yes (b) no
 57. 167 K
 59. 360 K
 61. $d = \frac{L_0}{2} \sqrt{2\alpha\Delta T + \alpha^2\Delta T^2}$
 63. (a) 61 h (b) 52 h
 65. 3.97°C
 67. 50.613 mL
 71. (a) $y^2 = \frac{1}{4}(L_0^2 - d^2) + \frac{1}{2}L_0^2\alpha\Delta T$
 (b) $\alpha = 2.35 \times 10^{-5}/^\circ\text{C}$, $d = 80.00 \text{ cm}$
 (c) aluminium
 75. (a) 244 K (b) 247 K
 77. c
 79. c

Chapter 18

11. 21 kJ
 13. 850 J
 15. -14 kW
 17. $2p_1V_1$
 19. (a) $4/3$ (b) 220 J
 21. 8.4×10^{-2}
 23. 1.7 MJ
 25. 88.7%
 27. (a) 440 K (b) 260 K
 29. 1.22 J
 31. (a) 28.9 kPa; (b) 13.0 cm
 33. 165 kPa
 35. 136 kPa
 37. 380 W
 39. (a) 1.49 mm (b) $10.7 \mu\text{J}$
 41. 1.33
 43. (a) 300 kPa (b) 240 J
 45. 450°C
 47. (a) 886 K; (b) 4.25 MPa = 42.0 atm
 49. 235
 51. (a) 255 K, 1.75 kJ (b) 279 K (c) 272 K, 500 J
 53. (a) 61.3 kPa (b) 83 kPa (c) 39 kJ
 55. 930 J
 57. The temperature rises 73°C , just meeting the criteria.
 59. 1.17 kJ
 61. 337 K
 63. (a) 202 J (b) 500 J transferred out of the gas
 65. 12 mol
 67. 67 atm
 73. 189 J
 75. $4p_1V_1/3$

77. 154,000
 79. 18%
 81. a
 83. c

Chapter 19

11. (a) 26.8% (b) 7.05% (c) 77.0%
 13. 0.948 K
 15. 7.80
 17. No
 19. 6100 J/K
 21. 23.1 kg
 23. (a) $1/64$ (b) $5/16$
 25. (a) 90.1 kW (b) 57.3%
 (c) $289 \text{ K} = 16^\circ\text{C}$
 27. 6.7%
 29. 122 L
 31. 16.08 L
 33. 52.1% (winter), 47.7% (summer)
 35. (a) 1.75 GW (b) 43.0% (c) 232°C
 37. $2 \times 10^{11} \text{ kg/s}$
 39. (a) 4.81; (b) 1.37 tonnes (1370 kg)
 41. \$68
 43. 2.78
 45. (a) 6.91 kW; (b) \$22.83/day for gas, \$18.91/day for electricity; (c) 46.6%
 47. (a) 17.4% (b) 83.3%
 49. 130 MJ/K
 53. (a) 47 J/K (b) 66 J/K (c) 0
 55. 0
 57. 160 J/K
 59. 10.3 kJ/K
 61. $1 - r^{1-\gamma}$
 63. 61%
 65. $C_0(1 - T_0/T_1)$
 67. $W = CT_k(\ln x - 1 + 1/x)$
 71. 36.2 J/K
 73. 62%
 75. c
 77. c

Chapter 20

11. 3 C, or about 0.05 C/kg
 13. (a) *uud* (b) *udd*
 15. 1.1×10^9
 17. 5.1 m
 19. (a) 0, 1.00 (b) -1.00 , 0 (c) 0.496, 0.868
 21. $3.8 \times 10^9 \text{ N/C}$
 23. (a) $1.9 \times 10^6 \text{ N/C}$ (b) 67 N
 25. $-0.48 \hat{i} \text{ pN}$
 27. (a) 26 MN/C, to the left;
 (b) 5.2 MN/C, to the right;
 (c) 58 MN/C, to the right
 29. 1.1 kN/C
 31. $E = kQ/(\sqrt{8}a^2)$
 33. $5.4 \times 10^4 \text{ N/C}$
 35. 980 N/C
 37. (a) 264 nN; (b) no
 39. $F_{\max} = 4kqQ/3\sqrt{3}a^2$
 41. -661 nC
 43. (a) $\vec{E}(x) = [4kQ/(4x^2 - L^2)]\hat{i}$
 (b) $\vec{E}(x \gg L) \rightarrow [kQ/x^2]\hat{i}$
 45. $(-0.273 \text{ nN})\hat{i} + (0.623 \text{ nN})\hat{j}$

47. $4q$
 49. (a) $18 \mu\text{C}$ (b) 1.2 N
 51. $-9e$
 53. (a) $8.0 \hat{j} \text{ GN/C}$ (b) $190 \hat{j} \text{ MN/C}$
 (c) $220 \hat{j} \text{ kN/C}$
 55. 0
 57. $q_1 = \pm 40 \mu\text{C}$, $q_2 = \mp 6.9 \mu\text{C}$
 59. $q = -Q/4$
 61. $-12 \mu\text{C/m}$
 63. The device doesn't work because its two halves depend on charge-to-mass ratio in the same way.
 65. $3.64 \times 10^{-26} \text{ J}$
 67. $0.4e$, $0.03e$
 69. (a) $\vec{E}(x) = 2kqa^2 \frac{(3x^2 - a^2)}{x^2(x^2 - a^2)^2} \hat{i}$
 (b) $\vec{E}(x) \approx \frac{6kqa^2}{x^4} \hat{i}$
 71. (a) $2.3 \mu\text{C/m}$ (b) $2.1 \times 10^5 \text{ N/C}$
 (c) 1.2 N/C
 73. (a) $dq = 2\pi\sigma r dr$
 (b) $dE_x = \frac{2\pi k\sigma x r}{(x^2 + r^2)^{3/2}} dr$
 77. $\vec{E} = \frac{kQ}{L} \left[\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{(x - \frac{L}{2})^2 + y^2}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{(x + \frac{L}{2})^2 + y^2}} \right) \hat{i} + \left(\frac{x + \frac{L}{2}}{y\sqrt{(x + \frac{L}{2})^2 + y^2}} - \frac{x - \frac{L}{2}}{y\sqrt{(x - \frac{L}{2})^2 + y^2}} \right) \hat{j} \right]$
 79. mdv^2/qL^2
 81. a
 83. a

Chapter 21

11. $1 \mu\text{C}$
 13. $Q_C = 2Q = -Q_B$
 15. $1.6 \text{ kN} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}$
 17. $77 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}$
 19. (a) $-q/\epsilon_0$ (b) $-2q/\epsilon_0$ (c) 0 (d) 0
 21. $68 \text{ kN} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}$
 23. (a) 2.0 MN/C (b) 4.0 MN/C
 (c) 1.0 MN/C
 25. Line symmetry
 27. $5.0 \times 10^4 \text{ N/C}$
 29. (a) $5.2 \times 10^6 \text{ N/C}$ (b) 18 N/C
 31. (a) $2.0 \times 10^6 \text{ N/C}$ (b) $7.2 \times 10^3 \text{ N/C}$
 33. (a) 0 (b) $8.8 \times 10^{-4} \text{ C/m}^2$
 35. 2.1 MN/C
 37. (a) $q = -732 \text{ nC}$; (b) $Q = 17.6 \mu\text{C}$;
 (c) $E = 6.75 \text{ MN/C}$, radially outward
 39. (a) $\lambda_1 = -4.88 \mu\text{C/m}$;
 (b) $\lambda_2 = 40.3 \mu\text{C/m}$;
 (c) $E = 4.25 \text{ MN/C}$, radially outward
 41. $7.31 \mu\text{C}$
 43. (a) 281 nC; (b) 187 kN/C
 45. $\pm E_0 a^2/2$

47. 7.0 MN/C; 17 MN/C
 49. (a) 5.2 cm (b) 4.8 nC
 51. (a) 176 μC ; (b) 1.21 m on each side
 53. (a) $7.5 \times 10^6 \text{ N/C}$ (b) $1.8 \times 10^6 \text{ N/C}$
 (c) $3.6 \times 10^6 \text{ N/C}$
 55. (a) 23 kN/C (b) 0.92 kN/C
 57. (a) 2.61 μC ; (b) 1.17 MN/C
 59. (a) $\rho x/\epsilon_0$ (b) $\rho d/2\epsilon_0$; away from the center plane of slab if $\rho > 0$, toward center plane if $\rho < 0$
 61. 9.6 N/C
 63. (b) -Q
 67. (a) $Q = \pi\rho_0 a^3$ (b) $E(r) = \rho_0 r^2/(4\epsilon_0 a)$
 69. $a = 5\rho_0/(3R^2)$
 71. $n = 3$
 73. $\frac{\rho_0 r^2}{3\epsilon_0 R}$
 75. $E_{\text{in}} = \frac{\rho_0 x^2}{2\epsilon_0 d}$, $E_{\text{out}} = \frac{\rho_0 d}{8\epsilon_0}$
 77. c
 79. d

Chapter 22

11. 420 μJ
 13. 5.0 kV
 15. 880 V
 17. Proton, ionized He atom: $1.6 \times 10^{-17} \text{ J}$,
 proton: $3.2 \times 10^{-17} \text{ J}$
 19. $-E_0 y$
 21. $6.7 \times 10^{-8} \text{ C}$
 23. (a) 420 kV, $9.0 \times 10^6 \text{ m/s}$
 27. (a) 54 V
 (b) $E_x = -3 \text{ V/m}$, $E_y = -36 \text{ V/m}$,
 $E_z = 9 \text{ V/m}$
 29. 4.1 kV
 31. 7.20 kV
 35. 319 kN/C
 39. 7.9 kV/m
 41. 4.3 V
 45. 6.8 μC
 47. $\sqrt{2keQ/(mR)}$
 49. $2V_{2R}$
 51. $-ax^2/2$
 53. -52 nC/m
 55. $-a/3$, $a/5$
 57. (a) 0.61 kV (b) 0.49 kV (c) 0
 59. $V = 3kQ/R$
 65. $(V/R)\hat{r}$
 67. (a) 49 kV (b) $1.9 \times 10^6 \text{ V/m}$ (c) 630 V (d) 0
 69. $-E_0 R/3$
 71. (a) 4.30 kV; (b) -170 nC
 73. 38 cm, 3.4 nC
 75. 0.12 J
 77. $\omega = 232 \text{ nC/m}^2$, $q = 3.75 \text{ nC}$,
 $r = 7.18 \text{ cm}$
 79. (a) $\pi k\sigma_0 a [\sqrt{1 + (x/a)^2} - (x/a)^2]$
 $\ln(a/x + \sqrt{1 + (a/x)^2})$
 81. $-\frac{k\lambda_0}{L^2} \left[Lx + x^2 \ln\left(\frac{2x-L}{2x+L}\right) \right]$
 83. 8.0 mm
 85. d
 87. b

Chapter 23

11. 4.4 kJ
 13. -48.5 eV
 15. (a) 1.4 J (b) 4.2 J
 17. 14 nF
 19. 360 pF
 21. 39 J
 23. (a) 1.20 μF
 (b) $Q_1 = 14.4 \mu\text{C}$, $Q_2 = 4.80 \mu\text{C}$,
 $Q_3 = 9.60 \mu\text{C}$
 (c) $V_1 = 7.2 \text{ V}$, $V_2 = V_3 = 4.8 \text{ V}$
 25. $9.5 \times 10^5 \text{ V/m}$
 27. No
 29. 3.4 μF
 31. 1.4 μF
 33. $kQ^2/2R$
 37. $Q_y = 4Q_0/(\sqrt{2} + 1) \approx 1.66Q_0$
 39. 3.2 μC
 41. The 1.0 μF , 250 V capacitor can store
 more energy.
 43. (a) 4.4 kV (b) 90 kW
 45. 129 F
 49. (a) 3.6 nF (b) 1500 V
 51. 2.7 nm
 53. 7.7 μJ
 55. $U = kQ^2/(2R)$
 57. $1.1 \times 10^{-3} \text{ J}$
 59. 13 min
 61. $C = \frac{4\pi\epsilon_0 ab}{b-a}$
 63. $\frac{1}{6}$
 65. (b) $\frac{C_0 V_0^2}{2} \left(\frac{\kappa x + L - x}{L} \right)$ (c) $\frac{C_0 V_0^2 (\kappa - 1)}{2L}$
 67. $\frac{\pi\rho^2 R^4}{8\epsilon_0}$
 69. (b) 4.3 μF
 71. a
 73. c

Chapter 24

11. 8.8×10^{18}
 13. 1.8×10^{11}
 15. $3.2 \times 10^6 \text{ A/m}^2$
 17. 6.8 cm
 19. (a) $5.95 \times 10^7 (\Omega \cdot \text{m})^{-1}$
 (b) $4.55 (\Omega \cdot \text{m})^{-1}$
 21. 460 V
 23. 32 m Ω
 25. 4R
 27. (a) 6.0 V (b) 8.0 Ω
 29. 230 V
 31. 330 Ω
 33. (a) 0.12 mA (b) no
 35. (a) 1.6 mm; (b) 0.20 V/m
 37. (a) $2.24 \times 10^4 \text{ m}$; (b) 19.1 pV/m
 39. (a) aluminum; (b) 2.00 A if copper
 41. (a) $2 \times 10^3 \Omega \cdot \text{m}$; (b) silicon
 43. (a) 196 A/mm 2 (b) 0.217 A/mm 2
 45. greater in Cu by factors of (a) 7.6; (b) 4
 47. 9.7 μC
 49. (a) 8.0 MA/m 2 (b) 134 mV/m

51. Ge
 53. 15 m
 55. 948 n Ω , 8.20 m Ω , 15.3 m Ω
 57. (a) 81 miles (b) 3.8 h at 6.3 kW,
 33 min at 44 kW (c) 203A
 59. (a) 2.5 TW; (b) the two are essentially
 equal
 61. 2.8 min
 63. $d_1 = \sqrt{2}d_2$
 65. 1.0 A
 67. Aluminum, at \$3.19/m, is more economical
 than copper at \$20.51/m.
 69. 2.5 A
 73. 18 $^\circ$
 75. a
 77. c

Chapter 25

15. 1.5 h
 17. 44 k Ω
 19. 10.5 V
 21. 24 Ω
 23. 2.06 A, 0.193 A, 1.87 A
 25. 0 A
 27. -0.66 %
 33. $\epsilon R_2/(R_1 + R_2)$
 35. 3.2 V
 37. 40 mW
 39. 1.5 k Ω
 41. $-2\Delta t/R \ln(1-f)$
 43. 0.75 A
 45. 16 A
 47. (a) 2.9 A, (b) 0.52 A
 49. 4.90 W
 51. $I_1 = 2.8 \text{ A}$, $I_2 = 2.4 \text{ A}$, $I_3 = 0.43 \text{ A}$
 53. (a) 56 V (b) 58 V (c) 60 V
 55. (a) 18.25 Ω ; (b) 18.07 Ω ; (c) high by 1%
 57. $4.4 \times 10^{-4} \text{ F}$; 1100 V
 59. 3.8 μF
 61. a. $V_C = 0$, $I_1 = 38 \text{ mA}$, $I_2 = 0$
 b. $V_C = 90 \text{ V}$, $I_1 = I_2 = 15 \text{ mA}$
 c. $V_C = 90 \text{ V}$, $I_1 = 0$, $I_2 = 15 \text{ mA}$
 d. $V_C = 0$, $I_1 = I_2 = 0$
 63. (a) 4.54 V (b) 413 Ω
 65. 1.07 A, left to right
 67. 2.15 μF
 69. 0.3 ms
 71. 7 Ω ; 98 W
 73. (a) R_1 (b) R_1 (c) R_1
 77. (a) 9 V (b) 1.5 ms (c) 0.3 μF
 79. 220 mV
 81. $\tau = \frac{R_1 R_2 C}{R_1 + R_2}$
 83. (a) $3\epsilon/4R$; (b) $2\epsilon/3R$
 85. a
 87. b

Chapter 26

11. (a) 20 G (b) 28 G
 13. (a) $2.0 \times 10^{-14} \text{ N}$ (b) $1.0 \times 10^{-14} \text{ N}$
 (c) 0
 15. $3.4 \times 10^5 \text{ m/s}$

17. 360 ns
 19. (a) 87.6 mT (b) 1.25 keV
 21. 0.321 N
 23. 5.00 A
 25. (a) 9.85 cm (b) 14.8 μ T
 27. 1.5 mT
 29. 5 mN/m
 31. (a) $4.05 \times 10^{-2} \text{ A} \cdot \text{m}^2$ (b) $7.78 \times 10^{-2} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$
 33. 7.3 A
 35. (a) 0.905 mT (b) 4.48 mT (c) 3.50 mT
 37. 17 T
 39. yes; arsenic appears at 41.1 cm
 41. $0.119 \text{ T} \leq B \leq 0.257 \text{ T}$
 43. 1.4 kA
 45. s(a) 2.39 A; (b) 522 μ T; 442 kA/m²
 47. $2.3 \times 10^{27} \text{ A} \cdot \text{m}^2$
 49. 3.8 GA
 53. (a) 88 μ m (b) 550 μ m
 55. 0.55 A
 57. $1.1 \times 10^{29} \text{ m}^{-3}$
 59. 0.021 N, 45° above horizontal
 61. $(1 + \pi) \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi a}$, out of page
 63. $\frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi a}$, into page
 65. 16 μ N, toward long wire
 67. (a) 0 (b) $B = \mu_0 I / (2\pi r)$
 71. $3.67 \times 10^{-26} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$
 73. $\frac{\mu_0 J_s x}{d}$
 75. (a) $B \approx \frac{\mu_0 I}{2w}$ (b) $B \approx \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}$
 77. (a) $\pi R^2 J_0 / 3$ (b) $B = \frac{\mu_0 J_0 R^2}{6r}$
 (c) $B = \frac{\mu_0 J_0 r}{2} \left(1 - \frac{2r}{3R}\right)$
 79. Since $\tau \propto 1/N$, more torque from a 1-turn loop.
 81. $\frac{\mu_0 I^2}{2\pi w} \ln\left(\frac{a+w}{a}\right)$
 83. $\mu_0 n I / \sqrt{l^2 + 4a^2}$
 85. No; the force between each meter of the two conductors is 150 N.
 87. The hall potential is 10,000 times smaller than bioelectric potentials.
 89. d
 91. d

Chapter 27

11. $9.2 \times 10^{-5} \text{ Wb}$
 13. 210 T/s
 15. 6.5 mH
 17. 28 kV
 19. 330 mH
 21. 3.1 kJ
 23. 22.6 μ J
 25. 800 MJ/m³
 27. 1.1 T/ms
 29. 43.7 mA
 31. (a) E/R ; (b) E/Bl ; (c) 0
 33. 16.9 ms

35. 31.7 s
 37. (a) $-9.8 \times 10^{-2} \text{ A}$ (b) -0.13 A
 39. 15 mT
 41. (a) 2.4 s (b) clockwise
 43. (a) 2.0 mA (b) 4.4 mA
 45. $2.4 \times 10^{-2} \text{ A}$ clockwise
 47. 140
 49. (a) 25 mA (b) 1.3 mN (c) 2.5 mW
 (d) 2.5 mW
 51. 58 T/ms
 55. 0.76 s
 57. 20 s
 59. (a) 5 Ω (b) 500 J
 61. (a) 1.0 A (b) 0.43 A (c) -1.7 A
 63. 320 m Ω
 65. $3.4 \times 10^{21} \text{ J/m}^3$
 67. $\frac{\mu_0 I^2}{16\pi}$
 69. $3.0 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ (speed of light)
 71. (a) $-br/(2\rho)$ (b) $\frac{\pi b^2 h a^4}{8\rho}$
 73. 3.69
 75. (a) $I(t) = V(t)/R = (E - Blv(t))/R$
 (b) $F(t) = I(t)lB = lB(E - Blv(t))/R$
 (c) $F(t) = lB(E - Blv(t))/R = m \frac{dv(t)}{dt}$
 77. (a) $\frac{\mu_0 I^2}{4\pi} \ln(b/a)$
 81. c
 83. a

Chapter 28

11. $V = (170 \text{ V}) \sin[(377 \text{ s}^{-1})t]$
 13. (a) $V(0) \approx V_p/\sqrt{2}$, 45°
 (b) $V(0) = 0$, $\phi_b = 0$
 (c) $V(0) = V_p$, $\phi_c = 90^\circ$
 (d) $V(0) = 0$, $\phi_d = \pm\pi$
 (e) $V(0) = -V_p$, $\phi_e = -90^\circ$
 15. $I_{R, \text{rms}} = 45 \text{ mA}$, $I_{C, \text{rms}} = 93 \text{ mA}$,
 $I_{L, \text{rms}} = 91 \text{ mA}$
 17. (a) 300 V (b) 15 V
 19. 16 kHz
 21. 8.1 H
 23. (a) 32 mH (b) 1.0 V
 25. 3800 Ω
 27. $2.4 \times 10^{-2} \text{ A}$, $1.2 \times 10^{-2} \text{ A}$,
 $6.0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ A}$
 29. 330 mA
 31. 1
 33. (a) 6.52 μ F; (b) 1.08 H
 35. (a) 1.07 MHz (this is in the AM radio band); (b) 3.24 μ H
 37. (a) 9.01 μ F; (b) 16.0 Ω
 39. (a) 23.1 mH; (b) 12.0 mA rms
 41. (a) 430 mA (b) 190 mA
 45. (a) 53 nF (b) 350 Hz
 47. 0.199 μ H
 49. (a) $\frac{\pi}{3}\sqrt{LC}$; (b) $\frac{\pi}{4}\sqrt{LC}$; (c) $\frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{LC}$
 51. 49
 53. 6.6 Ω
 55. (a) Above resonance; (b) $\sim 50^\circ$

57. (a) 0.60 (b) 9.4 W
 59. (a) 5.2% (b) 6.5%
 61. 4.0 mF
 63. 2.5 V
 65. 1620 Hz
 67. $R = 134 \Omega$, $L = 67.1 \text{ mH}$, $C = 0.628 \mu\text{F}$
 71. 910 Hz, 36 V
 73. c
 75. b

Chapter 29

11. 1.4 nA
 13. $-\hat{k}$
 17. 11.2 km
 19. 2.57 s
 21. $6.00 \times 10^6 \text{ m}$
 23. x-direction
 25. 13%
 27. $1 \times 10^6 \text{ W/m}^2$
 29. The radio has a minimum intensity of 0.27 nW/m², so it will work at the cabin.
 31. 18 kW
 33. (a) 1.55 μ m; (b) 98.4 kV/m;
 (c) parallel to the z-axis
 35. (a) 3.38 m; (b) 8.55 V/m; (c) vertical
 37. 1.8 W
 39. 43 nV/m
 41. (a) $4.3 \times 10^{11} \text{ V/m} \cdot \text{s}$; (b) 3 A
 43. 10 mT
 45. 96%
 47. 19%
 49. 0.00004%
 51. 3.1×10^{10}
 53. (a) 8.2 kW (b) 70 mV/m
 55. (a) 136 nT; (b) 181 nT
 57. (a) $7.6 \times 10^6 \text{ W/m}^2$ (b) $54 \times 10^3 \text{ V/m}$
 59. 7500 y
 61. 2.52 kPa
 63. 6
 67. 2.4 GHz: 6.25 cm; 5.0 GHz: 3.00 cm
 69. (a) 431 nW/m²
 71. (a) 51 MV/m (b) 0.17 T (c) 96 TW
 73. b
 75. d

Chapter 30

11. 15°
 13. 0.5°
 15. Ice
 17. 51°
 19. 23.8°
 21. 1.9
 23. 79.1°
 25. 1.41
 27. 6.41°
 29. (a) $n = 1.83$;
 (b) No; $\theta_4 = \theta_1$ regardless of n
 31. $d \sin \theta_1 \left(1 - \frac{\cos \theta_1}{\sqrt{n^2 - \sin^2 \theta_1}}\right)$
 33. (a) 36.93°; (b) 1.586
 35. The red beam emerges from the prism at 81.72° to the normal, while the blue beam undergoes total internal reflection.

37. (a) 22° (b) 390 nm
 39. Ethyl alcohol.
 41. (a) 69.1° ; (b) no, because the incidence angle is less than the critical angle
 43. 6.8 m
 45. 139 nm
 47. Diagonal face, 23°
 49. 1.07
 53. 63.8°
 55. (a) 9.53° ; (b) 2.07×10^8 m/s; (c) 2.04×10^8 m/s
 57. 2.7 m
 61. (a) 50.9°
 65. $\frac{d}{c} \left(\frac{2}{3} n_1 + \frac{1}{3} n_2 \right)$
 67. c
 69. b

Chapter 31

11. 35°
 13. (a) $-1/4$ (b) real, inverted
 15. (a) $3f$ (b) $3f/2$ (c) real
 17. -3.3
 19. 20 cm
 21. 44 cm
 23. 0.86 mm
 25. 1.5 diopters
 27. -1.2 diopters
 29. -220
 31. (a) 4.38 m; (b) 21.1 m; (c) behind
 33. (a) 30.0 m; (b) reduced by factor of 0.875
 35. 8.19 cm
 37. 1.46 m
 39. (a) 35 cm (b) 45 mm (c) virtual, upright, enlarged
 41. 14 cm
 43. 31 cm
 45. 16 cm
 47. (a) -10 cm (b) 10 cm
 49. 46 cm or 27 cm
 51. 14 cm
 53. 143 cm, inverted real image
 55. (a) $bD/[2b(1-n) + n]$; (b) it appears to be located at its actual distance, $D/2$
 57. 2.0
 59. 2
 61. Choose plastic, because it meets requirements and is cheaper.
 63. (a) Real, inverted image (b) -2.82
 65. 3.0 diopters
 67. 0.395°
 69. 96 cm
 79. (a) $dn = -\frac{2c}{\lambda^3} d\lambda$ (b) 0.858 mm
 81. c
 83. d

Chapter 32

11. 1.6 cm
 13. 420 nm

15. 4
 17. (a) 4.8° , 9.7° (b) 2.9° , 6.8°
 19. 132 nm
 21. 594 nm, 424 nm
 23. The top 1.5-cm of the film
 25. 29.7°
 27. 1.62%
 29. 32 cm
 31. 3×10^{-4} rad
 33. $H\alpha$ (656.3 nm) and $H\gamma$ (434.0 nm)
 35. $d = |\lambda_1 - \lambda_2|/\Delta\theta$
 37. 22.4 m
 39. 1.1 m
 41. 96°
 43. 47 μm
 45. 2
 47. Not feasible because a 2-km-diameter telescope is needed
 49. 3.3 Å
 51. 5
 53. 243
 55. 0.128 mm
 57. $1 + 2.93 \times 10^{-4}$
 59. 14.2 m
 61. 2.1 μm
 63. 7.4 km
 65. Rep is correct, but microscope won't resolve rhinovirus.
 67. $n_{\text{gas}} = 1 + \frac{m\lambda}{2L}$
 69. (a) 0.34 fm; (b) 6.3×10^{-10} m
 71. 96
 73. c
 75. a

Chapter 33

11. (a) 4.74 h (b) 4.81 h (c) 4.88 h
 13. 30 ly
 15. 46 m
 17. 0.243c
 19. (a) 2.0 (b) 2.7
 21. 0.280c
 23. (a) 1.3 MeV (b) 0.79 MeV
 25. (a) 42.52 years; (b) 1345 years
 27. 2.00 half-lives in the O-15's own reference frame (which is the relevant one for their radioactive decay "clocks")
 29. Civilization B is first by 116,000 years.
 31. (a) Civilization B is first by 77,100 years; (c) An observer moving at 0.260c on the same path as civilization C's spacecraft will judge the two launches to be simultaneous.
 35. (a) 0.88c (b) 9.6 min
 37. $c/\sqrt{2}$
 39. Twin A = 83.2 years old, twin B = 39.7 years old
 41. 0.96c
 45. earlier by 5.2 min
 49. 0.93c

51. (a) 10 ly, 13 y (b) 0 ly, 7.5 y
 55. (a) 4.1 ly (b) -1.5 ly
 57. (a) 0.758c (b) 1.09 GeV/c
 59. 110 h
 63. 0.866c
 67. 0.994c
 69. (a) 100,000 y; (b) 10 s
 71. (a) 2.976×10^8 m/s (b) 9.46×10^{-31} kg, 4% higher than known electron mass (Answers are very sensitive to the precise values used for constants and conversion factors.)
 73. a
 75. a

Chapter 34

11. 16
 13. (a) 11.4 μm ; (b) 16.2 μm ; (c) both are in the far infrared, meaning far from the visible
 15. (a) 500.0 nm (b) 708.6 nm
 17. 2.8×10^{-19} J to 5.0×10^{-19} J
 19. 1.44
 21. 122 nm, 103 nm, 97.2 nm
 23. 91.2 nm
 25. (a) 3.7×10^{-63} m (b) 36 nm
 27. The electron moves 1836 times faster than the proton.
 29. 6×10^7 m/s
 31. 130 nm
 33. 5.8 keV
 35. $n = 17$
 37. $n = 5$ (the only such value)
 39. 35 pm
 41. 0.62 nm
 43. UV is smaller by a factor 5.4×10^{-2}
 45. (a) 4200 K (b) 0.40
 47. (a) $2.5 \times 10^{28} \text{ s}^{-1}$ (b) $4.5 \times 10^{15} \text{ s}^{-1}$ (c) $1.3 \times 10^{18} \text{ s}^{-1}$
 49. (a) $1.12 \times 10^{15} \text{ Hz}$ (b) 4.0 eV
 51. (a) 2.9 eV and 1.9 eV (b) Plants absorb blue and red, reflect green.
 53. 410 nm
 55. (a) 164 pm (b) 196 eV
 57. (a) 313 m/s (b) 96 km/s
 59. 0.22 meV
 61. (a) 26.4 cm (b) 4.70 μeV
 63. 229
 65. 3.40 eV
 67. 1.6 km/s
 69. 3.9 km/s
 71. 1 ps
 75. $E_0 = \frac{1}{2} m_e c^2 \left[(\gamma - 1) + \sqrt{(\gamma - 1)(\gamma + 3)} \right]$
 81. (a) $6.65 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J} \cdot \text{s}$ (b) 2.3 eV (c) potassium
 83. b
 85. c

Chapter 35

11. (a) 0 (b) $\pm a\sqrt{\ln 2/2}$
 13. 8
 15. 1.50×10^{-2} eV
 17. (a) 1.6 eV (b) 6.5 eV
 19. Electron
 21. 0.2 MeV
 23. 66 eV
 25. $E \rightarrow E/4$
 27. 930 pm
 29. 0.972 nm
 31. 0.950 nm
 33. $\sim 3/4$
 35. 60% of the well
 39. (a) 4.7 eV (b) 270 nm
 41. 14 μm
 43. (a) 6 (b) $\lambda_{4 \rightarrow 1} = 153$ nm, $\lambda_{4 \rightarrow 2} = 191$ nm,
 $\lambda_{4 \rightarrow 3} = 328$ nm, $\lambda_{3 \rightarrow 1} = 287$ nm,
 $\lambda_{3 \rightarrow 2} = 459$ nm, $\lambda_{2 \rightarrow 1} = 765$ nm,
 (c) UV, visible, and IR
 45. (a) $\psi_{n\text{-odd}}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}} \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)$,
 $\psi_{n\text{-even}}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)$
 (b) $E_n = n^2 h^2 / (8mL^2)$
 47. 0.707 nm
 49. 2.5×10^{-17} eV; Quantization is insignificant
 51. (a) 0.30 (b) 0.15
 57. 4
 59. (c) $A_0 = (\alpha^2/\pi)^{1/4}$
 61. 2.23 nm
 63. c
 65. d

Chapter 36

11. 4
 13. 5
 15. 3d
 17. 2.58×10^{-34} J·s
 19. 3/2, 5/2
 21. $11.5 \hbar\omega$
 23. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^1$
 27. 0.69 meV
 29. $1.34a_0$
 31. $5.80a_0$
 33. $4p_{1/2}$; 330.39 nm, $4p_{3/2}$; 330.33 nm
 35. (a) 91.6 cm; (b) 1.36 μeV
 37. $n = 7, l = 3$
 39. 2.67×10^{68}
 41. $90^\circ, 65.9^\circ, 114^\circ, 35.3^\circ, 145^\circ$
 43. 0, $\pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3$
 47. (a) $16 \hbar\omega$ (b) $4 \hbar\omega$
 49. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^1 3d^{10}$
 51. 5.2×10^{17}
 53. 0.410
 55. 71.1 μeV

57. even $N: \hbar\omega(N-1)/2$; odd $N: \hbar\omega N/2$
 59. (a) 5 (b) $9E_1$
 61. (a) $(2\sqrt{5} - \sqrt{6})\hbar \approx 2.02\hbar$ (b) 5g
 63. 0.0595
 65. $P(r)dr = 4\pi r^2 \psi_{2s}^2 dr, 3 + \sqrt{5}$
 67. (b) 54.4 eV, 870 eV, 91.4 keV, 115 keV
 69. (b) 141 eV, 65.8 eV, 47.0 eV, 28.2 eV
 71. $3a_0/2$
 73. a
 75. c

Chapter 37

11. 3.48 mm
 13. 9.28×10^{-46} kg·m²
 15. 7.08×10^{13} Hz
 17. 181 kcal/mol
 19. 549 nm
 21. 3.54 μm
 23. (a) 14; (b) 1.51×10^{-33} J·s
 25. (a) 9; (b) 1.00×10^{-33} J·s
 27. 10.2
 29. 8.07
 31. 1.70 meV
 33. $\hbar^2/I$
 35. 0.121 nm
 37. (a) 0.179 eV (b) 0.358 eV
 39. 14.95 μm
 41. (a) 15.09 meV (b) 82.22 μm
 (c) far infrared
 43. 35.8 μm
 45. 6.53 J
 49. 4.68 eV
 51. 6.36×10^4 K, ~ 200 times room temperature
 53. 709 nm, no
 55. 2.1 kA
 57. 508 nm
 63. (a) $(2^{9/2}\pi m^{3/2}L^3/3\hbar^3) E^{3/2}$
 65. 80 kA
 67. c
 69. b

Chapter 38

11. $^{211}_{86}\text{Rn}$, $^{220}_{86}\text{Rn}$, and $^{222}_{86}\text{Rn}$
 13. (a) $A = 35$ for both
 (b) $Z_K = Z_{\text{Cl}} + 2$
 15. 5 fm
 17. $^{64}_{29}\text{Cu} \rightarrow ^{64}_{30}\text{Zn} + e^- + \bar{\nu}$
 $^{64}_{29}\text{Cu} \rightarrow ^{64}_{28}\text{Ni} + e^+ + \nu$
 $^{64}_{29}\text{Cu} + e^- \rightarrow ^{64}_{28}\text{Ni} + \nu$
 19. (a) 6.2 hours; (b) $^{11}_5\text{B}$
 21. 26 days
 23. 59.930 u
 25. 5.612 MeV
 27. 2
 29. 1.0×10^{20} fissions/s
 31. 2.5×10^{20} m⁻³
 33. 670 s

35. It should be 0.7060 times that of living wood
 37. 23.8%
 39. 9×10^{-28} kg
 41. 5.0064×10^{-27} kg
 43. 5.3×10^{-12} eV
 45. 8.80 MeV
 47. 0.145%
 49. 9.9 d
 51. (a) $^{228}_{90}\text{Th}$
 53. 8200 years
 55. Poland: 8.04 d; Austria: 16.2 d,
 Germany: 10.0 d
 57. 2.9×10^9 y
 59. 3.31%
 61. 3×10^{-13}
 63. 1.2×10^3 kg
 65. 88.9%
 67. 5.0×10^2 kg
 69. 0.461 s
 71. (a) 4×10^{38} s⁻¹ (b) 7×10^9 y
 73. 7×10^{17} s, which is about 20 billion years longer than the Sun will shine
 75. Bohrium-262 ($^{262}_{107}\text{Bh}$)
 77. (a) ($^{65}_{29}\text{Cu}$) (b) 4 h
 79. (a) 210 MJ (b) 14 s⁻¹ (c) 450 kg
 81. Yes
 85. (b) 1.4 μs
 87. b
 89. d

Chapter 39

11. 0.336 fs
 13. $\pi^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + \nu_\mu$
 15. $\eta \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^- + \pi^0$
 17. No, violates conservation of baryon number and angular momentum
 19. sss
 21. 4.54×10^7 L
 23. 10^{28} K
 25. 1.1 Gly
 27. $+e, -1$
 29. 0, -2
 31. 18 Gy
 33. (a) 10^8 years; 10^{12} (b) years
 35. Reaction (a) is not possible because it violates conservation of baryon number and angular momentum.
 37. (a) No (b) yes
 39. $c\bar{c}$
 41. (a) 9.78×10^5 ;
 (b) $v = 0.99999999999948c$
 43. 10^{10}
 45. (a) 256 fm (b) -2.81 keV
 47. (a) 5.740×10^3 km/s (b) 261 Mly
 49. 2.6×10^{-25} s
 51. 4.0 km/s/Mly
 53. b
 55. c

Credits

Front Matter

Page 1: (volume 1): Media Whalestock/Shutterstock. Page 1: (volume 2): SuperPuay/Shutterstock. Page 7: Robert J. Keren.

Chapter 1

Page 17: David Parker/Science Source. Page 19: NASA; National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 330, 2008 Edition Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol. Spec. Pub. 330, 2008 Ed., 96 pages (March 2008). Page 20: National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 330, 2008 Edition Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol. Spec. Pub. 330, 2008 Ed., 96 pages (March 2008). Page 21: Goran Bogicevic/Shutterstock. Page 22: NASA. Page 22: Andrew Syred/Science Source. Page 25: Cesc Assawin/Shutterstock. Page 27: NASA.

Chapter 2

Page 31: F1online digitale Bildagentur GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 31: Paul Fleet/Shutterstock. Page 32: Isitsharp/Getty Images. Page 38: Defense Advanced Research Project Agency. Page 41: Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs. Page 43: National Institute of Standards and Technology.

Chapter 3

Page 50: Martha Holmes/Nature Picture Library. Page 56: Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs. Page 57: Jon Bilous/Shutterstock. Page 59: Jamie Squire/Getty Images.

Chapter 4

Page 70: NASA. Page 75: Dudarev Mikhail/Shutterstock. Page 77: NASA/Dembinsky Photo Associates/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 77: Airbus/ZUMAPRESS/Newscom. Page 84: David Scharf/Science Source.

Chapter 5

Page 90: Kevin Maskell/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 95: Richard Sheppard/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 109: Scott Mc Kiernan/ZUMA Wire/Alamy Live News.

Chapter 6

Page 110: Roberto Caucino/Shutterstock. Page 128: Jeffrey Liao/Shutterstock.

Chapter 7

Page 129: Checubus/Shutterstock. Page 133: US Geological Survey. Page 138: Erik Borg.

Chapter 8

Page 150: NASA. Page 151: Lowell Observatory. Page 155: David Hardy/Science Source. Page 158: Itar-Tass/ABACA/Newscom.

Chapter 9

Page 166: Peter Muller/Cultura RM/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 171: Wally McNamee/Getty Images. Page 176: NASA. Page 190: Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs.

Chapter 10

Page 191: IMPhoto/Shutterstock. Page 202: Simon Dawson/Bloomberg/Getty Images.

Chapter 11

Page 212: Goddard Space Flight Center/NASA. Page 220: Moog Industrial Group. Page 220: TechInsights Inc. Page 221: Jon Sparks/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 12

Page 227: Michael Jenner/Robertharding/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 13

Page 244: Lotus Studio/Shutterstock. Page 245: Tommy/Fotolia. Page 245: Sheila Terry/Science Source. Page 251: Machkazu/Shutterstock. Page 251: Peter Tsai Photography/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 259: Francois Gohier/Science Source. Page 259: Frenzel/Shutterstock. Page 265: NASA.

Chapter 14

Page 266: EpicStockMedia/Shutterstock. Page 275: G Chutka/Getty Images. Page 277: Omikron/Science Source. Page 278: Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs. Page 280: Michael Freeman Photography. Page 284: SVSimagery/Shutterstock. Page 284: Drazen Vukeli/Getty Images. Page 289: David Rydevik.

Chapter 15

Page 290: Jurgen Ziewe/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 294: Bojan Pavlukovic/Fotolia. Page 297: Frank Herzog/culture-images GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 299: Reuters/Pascal Rossignol. Page 301: Jillian Cooper/Getty Images. Page 302: Bim/ISTock/Getty Images. Page 303: Alekss/Fotolia. Page 309: Omikron/Science Source. Page 307: Richard Wolfson.

Chapter 16

Page 310: Arogant/Shutterstock. Page 310: Mark Antman/The Image Works. Page 311: Ted Kinsman/Science Source. Page 318: Hal Lott/Stock Connection Blue/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 319: Scott Camazine/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 328: Hal Lott/Stock Connection Blue/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 328: Branislav/Getty Images.

Chapter 17

Page 329: MIMOTITO/Getty Images. Page 337: Associated Press. Page 338: Brian J. Skerry/Getty Images. Page 343: Samoshkin/Shutterstock.

Chapter 18

Page 344: Don Farrall/Getty Images. Page 349: Steven Coling/Shutterstock. Page 352: Walter Bibikow/AGE Fotostock.

Chapter 19

Page 361: James Hardy/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 364: Universal Images Group North America LLC/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 368: Peter Bowater/Science Source.

Chapter 20

Page 383: NASA Earth Observatory/NOAA NGDC. Page 384: Anna Om/Shutterstock. Page 385: GIPhotoStock/Science Source. Page 390: Steven Puetzer/Getty Images. Page 399: CB2/ZOB/WENN.com/Newscom. Page 399: Oleg Gawriloff/Shutterstock. Page 399: Image Courtesy of Senyuk, Bohdan.

Chapter 21

Page 405: Eunice Harris/Science Source. Page 424: Fox Photos/Stringer/Getty Images. Page 429: Eric Schrader.

Chapter 22

Page 430: Mark Graham/AP Images. Page 444: Kevin Cruff/Getty Images.

Chapter 23

Page 450: Wavebreak Media Ltd/123RF.com. Page 453: Erik Borg. Page 457: Cindy Charles/Photo Edit. Page 464: Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory/The National Ignition Facility.

Chapter 24

Page 465: Daniel Sambras/Science Source. Page 476: PAMPC PA/AP Images. Page 477: Erik Borg.

Chapter 25

Page 483: Villorejo/Shutterstock. Page 486: Erik Borg.

Chapter 26

Page 504: NASA. Page 505: Cordelia Molloy/Science Source. Page 509: Ivan Massar/Massar Studios LLC. Page 509: Oscar Bjarnason/Getty Images. Page 520: Gerard Lodriguss/Science Source. Page 524: John Eisele/Colorado State University.

Chapter 27

Page 532: NASA. Page 551: NASA. Page 554: Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs.

Chapter 28

Page 561: Li Ding/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 569: Erik Borg. Page 574: Igor Marx/123RF. Page 574: Arogant/Shutterstock. Page 574: Larry Lawhead/Getty Images. Page 574: JlsOhio/Getty Images. Page 574: Eric Vega/Getty Images. Page 574: Michelangeloboy/iStock/Getty Images Plus. Page 574: TebNad/Shutterstock.

Chapter 29

Page 580: Arthur S. Aubry/Getty Images. Page 580: Bbossom/Getty Images. Page 580: Neustockimages/Getty Images. Page 591: George Resch/Fundamental Photographs. Page 593: Babak Tafreshi/Science Source. Page 593: NASA/Sonoma State. Page 602: NASA.

Chapter 30

Page 604: Vaclav Volrab/Shutterstock. Page 605: Charles Hood/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 606: D. Scott/NASA. Page 607: Paul Carstairs/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 610: Encyclopaedia Britannica/Universal Images Group North America LLC/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 610: Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs. Page 611: Spencer Grant/Science Source. Page 613: Archive Photos/Stringer/Getty Images. Page 614: Encyclopaedia Britannica/Universal Images Group North America LLC/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 31

Page 619: Hunckstock Inc./Alamy Stock Photo. Page 620: Martin Bough/Fundamental Photographs. Page 621: Space Telescope Science Institute/NASA. Page 621: Erik Borg. Page 622: Pastorscott/Getty Images. Page 623: NASA/Science Source. Page 627: Erik Borg. Page 631: Rolf Vennenbernd/AP Images. Page 633: Courtesy TMT International Observatory. Page 639: Aji/Shutterstock.

Chapter 32

Page 640: Satellite image © 2018, Maxar Technologies. Page 642: Ben Krasnow. Page 643: Dr. Christopher Jones. Page 646: Dr. Christopher Jones. Page 649: Jay M. Pasachoff. Page 650: Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs. Page 650: NASA. Page 651: Ames Research Center/NASA. Page 654: Richard Wolfson. Page 654: Dr. Christopher Jones. Page 655: Dr. Christopher Jones. Page 656: Ben Krasnow.

C-3 Credits

Page 657: Dr. Christopher Jones. Page 657: Richard Wolfson.
Page 662: Dr. Christopher Jones. Page 662: Richard Wolfson.

Chapter 33

Page 663: Delft University of Technology/Science Source. Page 664: AP Images. Page 667: The Albert Einstein Archives, The Hebrew University of Jerusalem. Page 672: SLAC National Accelerator Laboratory. Page 680: WDCN/Univ. College London/Science Source. Page 684: NASA. Page 684: B. P. Abbott/American Physical Society.

Chapter 34

Page 690: Dr. Wolfgang Ketterle. Page 701: Andrew Syred/Science Source. Page 701: Photo Researchers/Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo. Page 704: Kim Steele/Getty Images.

Chapter 35

Page 710: IBM Research/Science Source. Page 711: Richard Wolfson. Page 720: J. Cousty, CEA—IRAMIS. Page 726: Dr. Stephan Diez.

Chapter 36

Page 727: Chip Clark/Fundamental Photographs. Page 735: Wolfgang Ketterle. Page 741: Wolfgang Ketterle. Page 745: Medical Body Scans/Science Source.

Chapter 37

Page 746: Alfred Pasioka/Science Source. Page 756: Tim Rue/Bloomberg/Getty Images. Page 758: Andrey I/Shutterstock.

Chapter 38

Page 765: TEPCO/Newscom. Page 769: David Job/Getty Images. Page 785: LLNL/Photo Researchers, Inc./Science Source.

Chapter 39

Page 793: CMS Collaboration/CERN/Science Source. Page 795: Brookhaven National Laboratory. Page 801: Patrice Loiez, CERN/Science Source. Page 801: Kyodo News/Newscom. Page 803: Pitchal Frederic/Contributor/Getty Images. Page 804: NASA. Page 805: ESA and the Planck Collaboration. Page 812: Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs. Page 813: ESA and the Planck Collaboration.

Index

A

Aberrations
 chromatic aberrations, 613, 630
 of starlight, 666
 ABS (antilock braking system), 102
 Absolute motion, 665, 668
 Absolute temperature, 314
 Absolute zero, 313, 754, 760
 Absorption spectra, 696
 Acceleration, 37, 64
 angular acceleration, 193–194, 206
 average, 36
 average acceleration vector, 53
 centripetal, 63
 constant acceleration, 44
 force and, 73
 gravitation and, 76
 gravity, 41–42
 of gravity, 151–152
 instantaneous, 36, 53
 instantaneous acceleration vector, 53
 mass and, 73–74, 77
 near Earth's surface, 41–43, 151–152
 in one dimension, 36–40, 37, 38–41, 44
 radial, 64, 193
 simple harmonic motion and, 250–251
 in space, 151–152
 straight-line motion, 36–40, 44
 tangential, 64, 193
 in two dimensions, 53–54, 55–56
 uniform circular motion and, 62–63
 without velocity, 37
 Acceleration vectors, 53–54, 62, 63
 Acceptor levels, 755
 Acousto-optic modulators (AOMs), 648
 Actinide series, 738
 Action-at-a-distance forces, 75, 160
 Activation analysis, radioactivity and, 775
 Activity of radioisotopes, 770–771
 Addition
 scientific notation and, 21–22
 of vectors, 51, 53
 Adiabatic, 351
 Adiabatic compression, heat engine, 364
 Adiabatic equation, 351–352
 Adiabatic expansion, heat engine, 364
 Adiabatic path, 351
 Adiabatic processes, 351–353, 357
 Aerodynamic lift and airflow, 302–303
 Air
 dielectric constant of, 454
 optical properties of, 607
 thermal properties of, 317
 Air resistance, acceleration of gravity and, 41
 Aircraft
 aerodynamic lift and airflow, 302–303
 motion, 34
 motion of, 40, 55
 pitot tube, 300
 Alkali metals, electronic structure of, 737
 Allowed transitions, 739
 Alpha decay, 720, 773, 788
 Alpha particle, properties of, 777
 Alpha radiation, 773
 Alternating current (AC), 561–562, 575

Alternating-current circuits (AC circuits), 561–575
 circuit elements in, 562–566
 electric power in, 572
 high-Q circuit, 570
 LC circuits, 566–569, 575
 RLC circuits, 569–572, 575
 Aluminum
 electrical properties of, 468
 thermal properties of, 315, 317, 338
 work function of, 694
 Aluminum oxide, dielectric constant of, 454
 Ammeters, 493, 498
 Amorphous solids, 751
 Ampere (A), 20, 465
 Ampère, André Marie, 465
 Ampère's law, 519–524, 525, 581–583, 603
 Biot–Savart law and, 520
 electromagnetic waves, 586–587
 in magnetic fields, 580, 582–583, 598
 Ampèrian loop, 520
 Amplifier, transistor as, 470
 Amplitude
 oscillatory motion, 247, 250
 waves, 268
 Anderson, Carl, 794–795
 Angle measures, 27
 Angle of incidence, 605, 614
 Angle of reflection, 605, 614
 Angle, units of, 20, 192
 Angular acceleration, rotational motion, 193–194, 206
 Angular displacement, 192
 Angular frequency, 261, 269, 286
 Angular magnification, 632, 635
 Angular momentum, 216–217, 221
 calculation, 215
 conservation of, 217–219, 221, 796
 coupling rules, 733–734
 gyroscopes, 219–221
 of the nucleus, 767
 orbital, 730–731
 quantization of, 760
 space quantization, 731
 spin angular momentum, 732, 741
 total, 733–734
 Angular speed, 192, 206
 Angular velocity, rotational motion, 192, 206
 Annihilation, 680, 796
 Anti-electron, 774
 Antibaryons, 796
 Anticolor, 799
 Antineutrinos, 774, 796
 Antinodes, 280, 281
 Antiparticles, 722, 798
 Antiquarks, 798
 Antireflection coatings, 607
 Apparent weight, 80, 81, 83, 84, 85
 Apparent weightlessness, 77, 85
 Archimedes' principle, 295–297, 305
 Argon, electronic structure of, 737
 Argon, specific heat, 355
 Aristotle, 70
 Artificial radioactivity, 774–775
 Astigmatism, 630, 631
 of lenses, 630
 spherical aberration, 630

Astronauts
 escape speed, 157, 161
 orbital motion of, 154
 space maneuvers, 159
 weightlessness, 77, 81
 Astronomy
 gravitational-wave astronomy, 684
 multimessenger, 684
 Astrophysics
 Big Bang theory, 804, 808
 cosmic rays, 795
 double-star system, 647
 expansion of the universe, 803–804
 Hubble's law, 803
 neutron star, 734
 nucleosynthesis, 778
 in Sun's core, 785
 supernova explosions, 676
 telescopes, 623, 633–634, 635, 654–655
 white dwarf, 734
 Astrophysics, pulsars, 217–218
 Asymmetric decay, 798
 Atmosphere (atm), 292
 Atmosphere of Earth, light and, 593
 Atomic bomb, 785
 Atomic clock, 19, 43
 Atomic energy, 703
 Atomic number, 735, 765, 788
 Atomic physics, 727–741
 classical model of atom, 518
 electron spin, 722, 731–734
 exclusion principle, 734–735, 741, 799
 hydrogen atom, 727–731
 isotopes, 766, 770, 788
 magnetic moment of electrons, 732
 nuclear force, 766
 periodic table, 735–738
 spin-orbit coupling, 733–734
 Stern–Gerlach experiment, 732–733
 total angular momentum, 733–734, 741
 Atomic physics, nuclear force, 75
 Atomic spectra, 696, 705, 739–740
 hydrogen spectrum, 696–697, 705
 sodium doublet, 739
 Atoms. *See* Atomic physics;
 Nucleus (nuclei)
 Bohr model, 698, 699, 705
 ground state, 728–729
 monatomic structure, 355
 multielectron, 735–738
 Automobiles. *See* Cars
 Average acceleration, 36
 Average acceleration vector, 53
 Average angular velocity, 192
 Average motion, 32–33
 Average speed, 32–33
 Average velocity, 33, 34, 36
 Average velocity vector, 53

B

Back emf, 545
 Ballistic pendulum, 179–180
 Balmer series, 697
 Balmer, Johann, 697
 Band gaps, 753

I-2 Index

- Band theory, 760
- Bands, 753, 760
- Bandwidth, 611
- Bar magnet, 518
- Bardeen, John, 759
- Barometers, 293
- Baryon number, 796
- Baryons, 796, 798–799, 800, 808
- Baseball, 59, 70, 302
- Batteries, 470, 484, 486–487
- BCS theory, 758–759
- Beam splitter, 650
- Beats, 277
- Becquerel (Bq), 770, 788
- Becquerel, Henri, 770
- Benzene, optical properties, 607
- Bernoulli effect, 300–301, 305
- Bernoulli's equation, 299–300, 300–301, 302, 305
- Beryllium, electronic structure, 737
- Beta decay, 773–774, 788, 796, 798
- Beta radiation, 773
- Bicycling, 221
- Big Bang theory, 804, 808
- Binding energy, 776–778
- Binnig, Gerd, 720
- Biot–Savart law, 511–512, 525, 603
 - Ampère's law and, 520
- Birds, aerodynamic lift and airflow, 302–303
- Blackbody, 320
- Blackbody radiation, 691–693, 705
 - lightbulbs and, 693
- Blu-ray discs, 656, 756
- Bohr atom, 697–700, 705
- Bohr magneton, 741
- Bohr model of hydrogen atom, 698, 699, 705
- Bohr radius, 698, 705, 728
- Bohr, Aage, 770
- Bohr, Niels, 697, 704, 717, 770
- Boiling point, 313
- Boiling-water reactors (BWRs), 782
- Boltzmann's constant, 313, 340, 692
- Bonding, 741, 760
 - covalent bonding, 747–748
 - hydrogen bonding, 748
 - ionic bonding, 741
 - metallic bonding, 748, 760
 - van der Waals bonding, 748
- Bone scans, 775
- Born, Max, 712
- Bose–Einstein condensate, 735, 740, 741
- Bose, Satyendra Nath, 735
- Bosons, 735, 741, 795
- Bottom quarks, 799, 800
- Bound state, 720, 723
- Bound system, 142
- Boundary conditions, 715
- Bragg condition, 648
- Brahe, Tycho, 150
- Brain cells, counting, 25
- Brass, thermal properties of, 338
- Breeder reactors, 753
- Brewster angle, 609
- Bridges, 227, 235, 260
- Btu (British thermal unit), 121, 315
- Bubble chamber, 795
- Buckminsterfullerene, 748
- Buildings, 252, 260
 - cogeneration, 371
 - energy-saving windows, 321
 - household voltage, 562
 - household wiring, 469
 - insulating properties of building materials, 318–319
 - solar greenhouse, 323
 - water heater, 322, 371
- Bungee jumping, 117–118
- Buoyancy
 - center of, 297
 - fish swim bladder, 295
 - of fluids, 295–296
 - working underwater, 295
- C**
- Calatrava, Santiago, 227
- Calculations. *See* Problem solving
- Caloric, 314
- Calorie (cal), 121, 315
- Calorimeters, 795
- Cameras, 457, 632
 - charging capacitors, 496
 - infrared, 592
- Cancer
 - from radiation exposure, 775
 - radiotherapy for, 775
- Candela (cd), 20
- CANDU reactor, 782
- Capacitance, 452
- Capacitive reactance, 563, 575
- Capacitors, 451–453, 460
 - in AC circuits, 563
 - displacement current, 582
 - in electric circuits, 493–497, 498
 - electrolytic, 454
 - energy storage in, 452–453, 460
 - equivalent capacitance, 456–457
 - in LC circuits, 568
 - in parallel, 455, 460
 - parallel-plate capacitor, 451–454, 456, 458, 460, 582–583
 - practical version of, 453–455
 - reactance, 563, 575
 - in series, 455–457
 - ultracapacitors, 457
 - working voltage, 454
- Carbon dioxide, optical properties of, 607
- Carbon-14, 772
- Carbon-14 dating, 772, 773
- Carnot cycle, 364, 371
- Carnot efficiency, 356, 365
- Carnot engine, 364–365, 377
- Carnot, Sadi, 364
- Carnot's theorem, 366
- Cars
 - ABS brakes in, 102
 - acceleration of, 120
 - banked curve, 97
 - crash tests, 177
 - engines, 369
 - flywheel-based hybrid vehicles, 202
 - friction in engine, 101
 - frictional forces in stopping, 101
 - hybrid cars, 517, 541
 - lightning and, 424
 - regenerative braking, 541
 - shock absorbers, 259
 - speed traps, 40
 - starting, internal resistance and, 487
- Cartesian coordinate system, 51
- Cavendish experiment, 153
- Cavendish, Henry, 153
- CDs, 642, 756
 - diffraction and, 656
 - diffraction grating, 648
 - refraction and, 608–609
- Cell membranes
 - current density, 467–468
 - electric circuits and, 491
- Cellphones, 596–597
- Celsius temperature scale, 313–314, 325
- Center of gravity, 229, 236
- Center of mass, 166–171, 185
 - of continuous distribution, 169–171
 - finding location of, 168–169
 - kinetic energy of, 176
 - motion of, 166, 171
 - reference frame, 184
- Center-of-mass frame, 184
- Centripetal acceleration, 63
- Centripetal force, 96
- Ceramics, electrical properties of, 468
- Cesium chloride, crystal structure of, 751–752
- Cesium, work function of, 694
- Chain reaction, 780–781, 788
- Charge. *See* Electric charge
- Charge conjugation, 798
- Charge distributions, 388
 - continuous, 394–396
 - electric dipole, 393–394
 - electric field lines of, 405
 - of electric fields, 391–396
 - of arbitrary charge distributions, 419–420
 - with line symmetry, 417–418, 425
 - with plane symmetry, 418, 425
 - with spherical symmetry, 413–416, 425
 - electrical potential of, 432
- Charged capacitors, 453
- Charged conductors, 421–422
- Charged disk, 420
- Charged particles
 - electromagnetic force on, 506
 - in magnetic field, 507–509
 - trajectories in three dimensions, 508–509
- Charmed quarks, 799, 800
- Chart of the nuclides, 767
- Chelyabinsk meteor, 158
- Chemical properties, 737
- Chemical reactions, energy of, 450
- Chernobyl accident, 782
- Chlorine atom, ionization energy of, 747
- Chlorine, electronic structure of, 737
- Chromatic aberrations, 613, 630, 633
- Chromium, electronic structure of, 737
- Circular motion, 63
 - constant acceleration and, 63
 - forces involved in, 96
 - harmonic motion and, 255–256
 - Newton's second law and, 95, 243
 - nonuniform, 63
 - in two dimensions, 62
 - uniform, 62–63, 64
 - See also* Rotational motion
- Circular orbits, 153–154, 155, 158, 161
- Circus train, center-of-mass motion, 171
- Classical physics, 690, 700, 712–713, 754
- Clausius statement, 366
- Cliff diving, 42
- Climate modeling, 112
- Climber rescue, multiple objects and, 94
- Closed circuits, induced current in, 543
- Closed orbits, 155
- Closed-shell nuclear structure, 770
- Cloud chamber, 795
- CMB. *See* Cosmic microwave background (CMB)
- Coal *versus* uranium, 780
- Coaxial cable, 425
- Cobalt-60, beta decay of, 798

- Coefficient of kinetic friction, 100, 105
 - Coefficient of linear expansion, 340
 - Coefficient of performance (COP), 369, 377
 - Coefficient of static friction, 100, 105
 - Coefficient of volume expansion, 338, 340
 - Coherence length, 641
 - Coherence, waves, 641
 - Cohesive energy, ionic, 752
 - Collective model, 770
 - Collisions, 185
 - center-of-mass frame, 184
 - defined, 177, 185
 - elastic, 177, 180–185
 - energy in, 177
 - impulse, 177
 - inelastic, 178–180
 - kinetic energy and, 180
 - momentum and, 177, 180
 - in systems of particles, 177–178
 - totally inelastic, 178–180, 185
 - Color charge (quarks), 798, 799, 801
 - Colorless particles, 799
 - Combined cycle power plant, 369
 - Comets, orbits of, 155
 - Complementarity, 704, 705
 - Compound microscope, 632, 635
 - Compressibility, of gases and liquids, 292, 305
 - Compression force, 75
 - Compton effect, 695–696, 705
 - Compton shift, 695
 - Compton wavelength, 695–696
 - Compton, Arthur Holly, 695
 - Computer disks, 518–519, 542
 - Concave lenses, 623–624, 625, 626, 629
 - Concave meniscus lenses, 629
 - Concave mirrors, 623
 - Concrete, thermal properties of, 315, 317
 - Condenser, 367
 - Conditionally stable equilibrium, 233
 - Conduction
 - in electric fields, 468–472, 754, 755
 - in ionic solution, 470, 478
 - in metals, 469–470, 478
 - in plasma, 470, 478
 - in semiconductors, 470–471, 478
 - in superconductors, 472, 478, 554
 - Conduction band, 755
 - Conduction of heat, 316–319, 325
 - Conductivity, electrical, 468, 478
 - Conductors, 398–399, 478
 - charged, 421–422
 - electric field at conductor surface, 422–423
 - Gauss's law, 421, 425
 - magnetic force between, 513–514
 - mechanism of conduction in, 468–472
 - Confinement time, 785
 - Conservation of angular momentum, 217–219, 228, 796
 - Conservation of baryon number, 796
 - Conservation of electric charge, 385, 796
 - Conservation of energy, 129–144
 - in fluid flow, 299–300
 - gravitational potential energy, 157
 - mechanical energy, 135–137, 145
 - nonconservative forces, 135, 138–139
 - rolling downhill, 204–205
 - Conservation of mass–energy
 - conservation, 141
 - Conservation of mass, in fluid flow, 298–299
 - Conservation of momentum
 - angular momentum, 217–219, 228
 - fusion, 178
 - Constant acceleration, 37–39, 44
 - angular, 206
 - gravity, 41–43
 - Constant of universal gravitation, 151
 - Constant-volume gas thermometers, 313
 - Constant-volume processes, 350, 357, 365
 - Constructive interference, 275, 640, 642, 657, 662
 - Contact forces, 75
 - Continuity equation, 298, 305
 - Continuous charge distributions, 394–396
 - Continuum state, 721
 - Control rods, 781
 - Controlled fusion, 785
 - Convection, 320, 325
 - Converging lenses, 624, 625
 - Convex lenses, 624, 626, 627, 629
 - Convex meniscus lenses, 629
 - Convex mirrors, 622, 623
 - Coolant, for nuclear power reactors, 782
 - Cooper, Leon, 759
 - Coordinate systems, 33
 - vectors and, 51
 - COP. *See* Coefficient of performance (COP)
 - Copernicus, Nicolaus, 150
 - Copper
 - electrical properties of, 468
 - electronic structure of, 737
 - work function of, 694
 - Copper, thermal properties of, 315, 317, 335, 338
 - Corner reflector, 606
 - Corona discharge, 444
 - Corrective glasses, 631
 - Correspondence principle, 704, 717–718
 - Cosmic microwave background (CMB), 804, 805, 808
 - Cosmic rays, 795
 - Cosmological constant, 807
 - Coulomb (C), 386
 - Coulomb, Charles Augustin de, 386
 - Coulomb's law, 385–389, 400, 411, 419, 603
 - Gauss's law and, 520
 - Covalent bonding, 747–748, 760
 - CP conservation, 798
 - CPT conservation, 798
 - CPT symmetry, 798
 - Crash tests, 177
 - Credit cards, 518, 542
 - Critical angle, 609–611, 614
 - Critical damping, 261, 569
 - Critical density, 807
 - Critical field, 758, 760
 - Critical ignition temperature, 785
 - Critical mass, 780–781, 788
 - Critical point, 337, 340
 - Croquet, 183–184
 - Cross product, 214, 221
 - Crossover network, 566
 - Crystal structure, 751–753
 - Crystalline solids, 751–753
 - Curie (Ci), 770
 - Curie temperature, 518
 - Curie, Irène, 775
 - Curie, Marie, 770
 - Curie, Pierre, 770
 - Curiosity rover, 70, 76
 - Current. *See* Electric current
 - Current density, 467–468, 478
 - Ohm's law, 468, 472–474, 473, 478, 489, 603
 - Current loops, 512–513, 514–515, 525
 - Curve of binding energy, 777–778, 788
 - Curved mirrors, 620–622, 635
 - Cyclic processes, thermodynamics, 353–354
 - Cyclotrons, 508–509
 - frequency, 508, 525
- ## D
- D-D reaction (deuterium–deuterium reaction), 784, 787
 - D-T reaction (deuterium–tritium reaction), 784, 787
 - Damped harmonic motion, 258, 261
 - Damping, 569
 - Dark energy, 807, 808
 - Dark matter, 807, 808
 - Daughter nucleus, 773
 - Davisson, Clinton, 701
 - de Broglie wavelength, 700, 705
 - de Broglie, Louis, 700
 - de Broglie's wave hypothesis, 701, 712, 715
 - Decay
 - asymmetric decay, 798
 - radioactive, 802
 - Decay constant, 771
 - Decay rate (radioactivity), 770–773
 - Decay series, 774–775
 - Deceleration, 37
 - Decibel (dB), 274
 - Defibrillator, 450, 457, 476
 - Definite integral, 116
 - Degenerate electron pressure, 734
 - Degenerate states, 721
 - Degree of freedom, 355, 357
 - Delayed neutrons, 781
 - Democritus, 691
 - Density of fluids, 292
 - Density of states, 754
 - Derivative, 35, 37
 - Descartes, René, 608
 - Destructive interference, 275, 640, 657, 662
 - Deuterium, 766, 784
 - Deuterium oxide, 782
 - Deuteron, 182
 - Diesel power, adiabatic process and, 352
 - Diffraction gratings, 645–648, 662
 - Diffraction limit, 654–656, 657, 662
 - Diffuse reflection, 606
 - Diodes, 575
 - Diopeter, 631
 - Dipole moment, 400
 - electric, 394, 400
 - induced, 399
 - magnetic, 514, 768
 - nuclear magnetic, 768
 - Dirac equation, 722
 - Dirac, Paul, 712
 - Direct current (DC), 573–574
 - Directions, 33
 - Disk, rotational inertia by integration, 198–199
 - Disorganized states, 363
 - Dispersion in wave motion, 276–277
 - Dispersion, of light, 611–613, 614
 - Displacement, 32–33, 44, 113–114
 - angular displacement, 192
 - coordinate systems, 33
 - Displacement current, 582–583
 - Displacement vector, 51
 - Dissociation energy, 747
 - Diverging lenses, 624
 - Division, scientific notation and, 22, 23
 - DNA, bonding in, 748
 - Donor levels, 755
 - Doping, 471, 755, 760
 - Doppler effect (Doppler shift), 282–286
 - light, 284
 - Doppler effect (Doppler shift), redshift and, 803

- Doppler, Christian Johann, 283
 Dot product, 114
 See also Scalar product
 Double concave lenses, 629
 Double convex lenses, 629
 Double-slit interference, 642–645
 Double-star system, 647
 Doublet, 734
 Down quarks, 798, 800
 Drag forces, 104
 Drift velocity, 466, 469, 478
 Driven oscillations, 259–360
 DVDs, 17–18, 191–192, 756
 diffraction and, 656
 diffraction grating, 648
 Dynamics, 70, 71
 rotational dynamics, 200
 See also Motion
- E**
- Earth
 atmosphere, light, 593
 convection and solar heat, 320
 ether concept and motion of, 665, 685
 global warming, 323–324
 greenhouse effect, 323
 Greenland ice cap, 296–297
 interior structure of, 280
 magnetic field of, 515
 ocean waves, 17, 277, 278
 precession of, 220–221
 pressure at ocean depths, 293
 rainbow, 612, 614
 seasons, 212
 smog, 353
 tides, 160
 Eddy currents, 542–543
 Efficiency
 of Carnot engine, 365
 of engine, 365
 thermodynamic, 366
 Eightfold Way, 798
 Einstein cross, 684
 Einstein, Albert, 71, 77
 photoelectric effect, 694, 705
 relativity and, 664, 667–668, 672, 807
 Elastic collisions, 177, 180–185
 in one dimension, 180–183, 185
 in two dimensions, 183–184
 Elastic potential energy, 133
 Electric charge, 384–385, 400, 796
 charge distribution, 388
 conservation of, 385, 796–797
 Coulomb's law, 385–389, 400, 411, 419, 603
 magnetism and, 505
 moving, 603
 point charges, 388
 quantity of, 385
 quantization of, 385, 690–691
 source charge, 386
 superposition principle, 388, 391, 400
 test charge, 390
 units of, 385
 Electric circuits, 483–498
 AC circuits, 561–562
 capacitors in, 493–497, 498
 electromotive force (emf), 484
 high-Q circuits, 570
 inductors in, 547–549
 Kirchoff's laws, 490, 498
 LC circuits, 566–569, 575
 multiloop circuits, 490–491
 parallel circuits, 603
 RC circuits, 493–497, 575
 resistors, 484–489, 498
 RL circuits, 547–548, 575
 RLC circuits, 569–572, 575
 with series and parallel components, 488–489
 series circuits, 603
 symbols used, 483
 Electric current, 398, 465–468, 478, 603
 ammeters, 493
 current density, 467–468
 induced currents, 532–533
 magnetic force and, 509–511
 Ohm's law, 468, 472–474, 473, 478, 603
 units of, 20, 465
 See also Conductors
 Electric dipole moment, 394
 Electric dipole potential, 445
 Electric dipoles, 393–394, 397–398, 400
 in electric fields, 397–398, 400, 419
 oscillating, 593
 point charge, 419
 Electric eels, 470
 Electric field, 389–391, 400, 430, 603
 of arbitrary charge distributions, 419–420
 of charge distributions, 391–396
 charged ring, 395
 continuous, 394–396
 conduction in, 468–472
 in ionic solutions, 470, 478
 in metals, 469–470, 478
 in plasmas, 470, 478
 in semiconductors, 470–471, 478
 in superconductors, 472, 478, 554
 at conductor surface, 422–423
 conductors, 398–399
 conservative/nonconservative, 553–554
 corona discharge, 444
 dielectrics, 399, 400
 electric dipoles in, 397–398, 400
 electric field lines, 405–406
 energy in, 457–459
 Gauss's law, 410–418, 425, 519, 580, 583, 598
 insulators, 399
 magnetic field and, 522–523
 Ohm's law, 468, 472–474, 473, 478, 489, 603
 or charge distributions, linear, 394, 400
 of point charge, 390, 400
 point charges in, 396–397, 400
 solenoids, 523–524, 525
 zero, 392
 Electric field lines, 405–407, 425
 of charge distribution, 406
 Electric flux, 407–410, 425
 Electric force, 384, 400, 430, 603
 gravity and, 388
 superposition principle, 388, 391, 400
 Electric generators, 18, 541, 542, 555
 Electric motors, 18
 Electric potential, 430, 445, 727
 calculating field from potential, 440–441
 of charge distribution
 charged disk, 439–440
 charged ring, 439
 charged sheet, 433
 continuous, 438–440
 curved paths, 433–434
 dipole potential, 437–438
 nonuniform fields, 433–434
 point charge, 435
 with superposition, 437–438
 charged conductors, 443–444
 electric field and, 440–442
 zero of, 435–436
 Electric potential difference, 431, 445, 603
 calculating, 434–440
 high-voltage power line, 437
 units of, 434
 using superposition, 437–438
 Electric power, 474–475, 478
 in AC circuits, 572
 fusion energy, 786–787
 nuclear power, 783–784
 nuclear reactors, 781
 pumped storage, 133
 See also Electric generators; Electric power plants
 Electric power lines, 474–475
 magnetic force and, 509–511
 potential relative to ground, 437
 Electric power plants
 combined cycle power plant, 369
 steam system, 369
 thermodynamics of, 368–369
 See also Nuclear power; Nuclear reactors
 Electric power supply direct current (DC), 573–574
 transformers and, 475, 573–574, 575
 Electric shock, 477
 Electrical conduction. *See* Conduction
 Electrical conductivity, 468, 478
 Electrical energy. *See* Electric power
 Electrical measurements, 492–493
 Electrical meters, 492–493
 Electrical safety, 475–477, 478
 Electrolytic capacitors, 454
 Electromagnetic force, 506, 603, 808
 electroweak unification, 801
 quantum electrodynamical description of, 794
 Electromagnetic induction, 532–555, 603
 defined, 534
 eddy currents, 542–543
 energy and, 538–543
 Faraday's law, 534–539, 542, 546, 552, 555, 563, 580, 598, 603
 induced currents, 532–533
 induced electric fields, 552–554
 inductance, 544–549
 Lenz's law, 539, 555
 Electromagnetic radiation, blackbody radiation, 691–693, 705
 Electromagnetic spectrum, 592–593, 598
 Electromagnetic systems, 18
 Electromagnetic waves, 267, 281, 584–588, 598, 603, 794
 Ampere's law, 586–587
 Doppler effect, 286
 electromagnetic spectrum, 592–593, 598
 Faraday's law, 586
 Gauss's laws, 586
 in localized sources, 596
 momentum, 594–597
 photons in, 705
 plane electromagnetic wave, 584–585
 polarization, 591, 598
 producing, 593–594
 properties of, 588–591
 radiation of, 320, 325
 radiation pressure, 597
 in vacuum, 584, 598
 wave amplitude, 589
 wave fields, 587–588
 wave intensity, 594–596
 wave speed, 588–589
 See also Light

- Electromagnetism, 18, 75, 384–400, 603
 four laws of, 520, 580–581, 603
 Maxwell's equations, 583, 598, 603, 651, 665, 685, 711
 quantization and, 690–691, 705
 quantum-mechanical view of, 794
 relativity and, 665, 667–668, 682
See also Electromagnetic waves
- Electromotive force (emf), 484, 498
 back emf, 545, 546
 induced emf, 534
 motional emf, 534
- Electron capture, 774
- Electron diffraction, 701
- Electron microscope, 701
- Electron neutrinos, 797
- Electron spin, 722, 731–734
- Electron-positron pair, annihilation of, 796
- Electronic scales, 83
- Electrons
 Bohr atom, 701, 705
 Compton effect, 695–696, 705, 711
 discovery of, 691
 exclusion principle, 734–735, 741, 799
 magnetic moment of, 732
 photoelectric effect, 694, 705, 711
 properties of, 777, 797
 relativistic electron, 655
 split, 731–732
- Electronvolt (eV), 121, 432
- Electrophoresis, 390
- Electrostatic analyzer, 397, 400
- Electrostatic energy, 450–451
- Electrostatic equilibrium, 420–421, 443–444
- Electrostatic precipitators, 444
- Electroweak forces, 75
- Electroweak unification, 801
- Elementary charge, 385
- Elementary particles. *See* Particles
- Elements
 chemical behavior and, 737
 isotopes, 766, 788
 origin of, 778
 periodic table, 735–738
 radioisotopes, 771
- Elevators, 77–78, 133
- Elliptical orbits, 155
- Emission spectra, 696
- Emissivity, 320
- Energy, 110, 124, 243
 of chemical reactions, 450
 in circular orbits, 158–159
 climate modeling, 112
 in collisions, 177
 conservation of, 129–148
 in fluid flow, 299–300
 consumption by society, 122–123
 density, 458, 460
 in electric field, 457–459
 electromagnetic induction and, 538–543
 energy-momentum relation, 681, 685
 energy-time uncertainty, 703
 fusion energy, 786–787
 kinetic energy, 124
 magnetic, 549–551
 mass and, 679–681, 685
 mass-energy equivalence, 679–681
 from nuclear fission, 780
versus power, 123
 quantization and, 690–691, 705
 in simple harmonic motion, 256–258, 261
 society and, 122
 units of, 121, 314
 wind energy, 303
 work and, 459
 work-kinetic energy theorem, 120, 124, 135, 145, 299
 Yankee Stadium, 122
See also Heat; Kinetic energy; Potential energy
- Energy levels in molecules, 748–751
- Energy quality, 371
- Energy storage, 450
 in capacitors, 452–453, 460
- Energy storage in flywheels, 202
- Energy-level diagram, Bohr model, 698
- Energy-momentum 4-vector, 678
- Energy-momentum relation, 681
- Energy-time uncertainty, 703
- Engines, internal combustion, 365
- English system, 21
- English units of energy, 121
- Enrichment of uranium, 780
- Entropy, 369, 371–372, 377
 availability of work, 373–374
 second law of thermodynamics and, 375–376
 statistical interpretation of, 375–376
- Equation of motion, 39–40
- Equilibrium
 conditionally stable, 233
 conditions for, 227–228
 hydrostatic, 292–295, 304, 310
 metastable, 233, 236
 neutrally stable, 233, 236
 potential energy and, 233, 236
 stable, 232–235, 236
 static equilibrium, 227–243
 thermodynamic, 312–313
 unstable, 232, 233, 236
- Equilibrium temperature, 316, 325
- Equilibrium, electrostatic, 420–421, 443–444
- Equipartition theorem, 355–356, 357
- Equipotentials, 440, 445
- Equivalent capacitance, 456–457
- Erg, 121
- Escape speed, 158, 161
- Estimation, 24
- Eta particles, 797
- Ether concept, 665, 685
- Ethyl alcohol, optical properties of, 607
- Ethyl alcohol, thermal properties of, 335
- Events in relativity, 668–670, 673
- Excimer laser, 631
- Excited states
 of energy, 698
 of hydrogen atom, 730
- Exclusion principle, 734–735, 741, 799
- Expansion, thermal, 338–339, 340
- Explicit constant, 19, 20
- External forces, 167, 173–175
- External torque, 217, 219
- Eye, 630–632
- Eyeglasses, 631
- Eyepiece, of microscope, 632
- F**
- Fahrenheit temperature scale, 313, 325
- Farad (F), 452
- Faraday, Michael, 452
- Faraday's law, 534–538, 546, 552, 555, 580, 583, 598, 603
 electromagnetic waves, 586
- Farsightedness, 631
- Fermi energy, 754, 760
- Fermi, Enrico, 779
- Fermilab, 799
- Fermions, 735, 741, 796
- Ferromagnetism, 518
- Feynman, Richard, 794
- Fiber optics, 611
- Fiberglass, thermal properties of, 317
- Field particles, 796, 800
- Field point, 392
- Field-effect transistor (FET), 471–472
- Films, thin films, 649–650
- Filtering (electrical), 574
- Fine structure, 734, 741
- Finite potential wells, 720–721, 723
- Fire safety, radioactivity and, 775
- First law of thermodynamics, 345–347, 346, 351, 357
- Fish swim bladder, buoyancy, 295
- Fissile nuclei, 780, 788
- Fission products, 778–779, 783
- Fissionable nuclei, 780
- Fitzgerald, George F., 672
- Flash camera, 457
 charge capacitors, 496
- Floating objects, Archimedes' principle, 296
- Flow tube, 298, 299
- Fluid dynamics, 298–299, 310
 aerodynamic lift and airflow, 302–303
 applications of, 300–303
 Bernoulli's equation, 299–300, 300–301, 302, 305
 conservation of energy, 299–300
 conservation of mass, 298–299
 continuity equation, 298, 305
 turbulence, 304
See also Fluids
- Fluid flow
 Bernoulli's equation, 299–300, 300–301, 302, 305
 viscosity, 304, 305
- Fluid friction. *See* Viscosity
- Fluid motion, 291–304
 steady flow, 297
 unsteady flow, 297
 venturi flowmeters, 301–302
See also Fluid dynamics; Fluid flow
- Fluid speed, 301–302
- Fluids, 291–304
 Archimedes' principle, 295–297, 305
 buoyancy, 295–297
 density, 292
 hydrostatic equilibrium, 292–295, 304, 305, 310
 Pascal's law, 305
 pressure, 293, 305
 viscosity, 304, 305
See also Fluid dynamics
- Fluorine, electronic structure of, 737
- Flywheels, 202
- Focal length, 623, 629, 631, 635, 662
- Focal point, 620, 624, 635
- Food preservation, radioactivity and, 775
- Foot-pound, 121
- Forbidden transitions, 739
- Force(s), 70, 71, 73–74, 78, 243
 action-at-a-distance, 75, 161
 buoyancy force, 295–297
 centripetal, 95
 compression, 75
 conservative, 111, 130
 contact forces, 75
 displacement, 113–114
 drag forces, 104
 electroweak, 75
 external/internal, 167
 frictional, 72, 75, 99–103
 fundamental forces, 75, 801, 808
 grand unification theories (GUTs), 801, 808
 gravitational, 75

- Force(s) (*continued*)
 interaction forces, 71
 measurement of, 82–83
 momentum and, 72
 net force, 71, 72
 nonconservative, 130–131
 normal, 82
 potential energy and, 143–144
 strong, 75, 799, 808
 tension, 75
 of massless rope, 96
 of spring, 83
 unification of, 75, 801–803
 units of, 73, 76
 varying, 115–119
 varying with position, 116–118
 weak, 75
 work, 112–115
See also Gravity
- Forward bias, 756
- Four-vectors, 678, 685
- Fourier analysis, 276
- Fourier, Jean Baptiste Joseph, 276
- Frames of reference, 54
 inertial, 74–75
- Frames of reference, inertial, 668, 685
- Franklin, Benjamin, 384
- Free expansion, 373
- Free fall, 41–43, 77, 82
- Free-body diagram, 78, 85
- Frequency, 268
 angular frequency, 261, 269, 286
 oscillatory motion, 247, 249–250, 261
 units of, 247
- Friction
 kinetic, 100, 105
 Newton's first law and, 99–103, 105
 rough sliding, 118
 static, 100, 105
- Frictional forces, 75, 99–100
- Frisch, Otto, 778
- Fuel cells, 470
- Fuel rods (nuclear reactor), 783
- Fukushima accident, 765, 772
- Fundamental forces, 75, 801, 808
- Fusion
 conservation of momentum, 178
 heat of, 335
- G**
- Galaxies, Hubble's law and, 803
- Galilean relativity, 665
- Galileo, 41, 71, 76, 150
- Gallium, electronic structure of, 737
- Gamma decay, 774, 788
- Gamma rays, 593, 774
- Gas thermometers, 313
- Gas water heater, cogeneration, 371
- Gas-cooled nuclear reactors, 782
- Gas-cylinder system, heat engine, 363
- Gases, 340
 adiabatic free expansion, 373
 adiabatic processes, 351–353, 357
 constant-volume processes, 350, 357
 cyclic processes, 353–354
 distribution of molecular speeds, 334
 equipartition theorem, 355–356, 357
 ideal-gas law, 330–331, 340, 352
 isobaric processes, 350–351, 357
 isothermal processes, 348–349, 353, 357
 microstates/macrostates, 374
 phase changes, 335–337
 quantum effect, 356
 real gases, 334–335
 specific heat of, 316
 thermodynamics of, 347–354
 universal gas constant, 331, 340
 van der Waals force, 335
See also Ideal gases
- Gases, plasmas, 470
- Gasoline engine, 351, 369
- Gasoline, thermal expansion of, 338–339
- Gauge bosons, 796, 808
- Gauge pressure, 294
- Gauss's law, 410–412, 425, 580
 conductors and, 421, 425
 Coulomb's law and, 520
 for electric field, 410–418, 519, 580, 583, 598
 for infinite line of charge, 417
 with line symmetry, 417–418, 425
 with plane symmetry, 418, 425
 for point charge within a shell, 414–415
 with spherical shell, 413–414
 with spherical symmetry, 413–414, 425
 for electromagnetic waves, 586
 experimental tests of, 422
 hollow conductor, 421
 hollow pipe, 418
 for magnetism, 515–516, 519, 520, 525, 535, 580, 583, 598
 sheet of charge, 418
- Geiger, Hans, 696
- Gell-Mann, Murray, 798
- General theory of relativity, 75, 150, 668, 683–684, 685, 807
- Generation time, 781
- Generators, 18, 516, 542, 555
- Geomagnetic storm, 551
- Geometrical optics, 605, 640, 662. *See* Light
- Geostationary orbit, 154–155, 156, 162
- Gerlach, Walther, 732
- Germer, Lester, 701
- Giant Magellan Telescope, 633
- Glashow, Sheldon, 799, 801
- Glass
 dielectric constant, 454
 electrical properties of, 468
 optical properties of, 607
 thermal properties of, 315, 317, 338
- Global Positioning System. *See* GPS
 (Global Positioning System)
- Global warming, 323–324
- Gluons, 799, 800, 801
- Glycerine, optical properties of, 607
- Goeppert Mayer, Maria, 770
- Gold, electrical properties of, 468
- Goudsmit, Samuel, 732
- GPS (Global Positioning System), 31, 38, 245, 613, 683
- Grand unification theories (GUTs), 801, 808
- Graphite moderators, 782
- Grating spectrometer, 646–647
- Gratings
 acousto-optic modulators (AOMs), 648
 diffraction gratings, 645–648, 662
 reflection gratings, 646
 resolving power of, 647–648
 transmission gratings, 646
 X-ray diffraction, 647–648
- Gravitation
 center of gravity, 229, 236
 universal, 151–153, 161, 243
See also Gravity
- Gravitational field, 160–162, 161, 389
- Gravitational force, 74, 75
- Gravitational potential energy, 132, 145, 156–157, 161
- Gravitational waves, 267, 684
- Gravitational-wave astronomy, 684
- Gravitons, 796, 801
- Gravity, 76–78, 150–161, 808
 acceleration and gravitation, 76
 Cavendish experiment, 153
 center of gravity, 229, 236
 constant acceleration, 41–43
 electric force and, 388
 escape from, 158, 161
 historical background, 150–151
 hydrostatic equilibrium with, 292–295, 310
 inertia and, 76
 inverse square feature of, 152
 near Earth's surface, 152
 free fall, 41–43, 76, 77, 82
 projectile motion, 153
 work done against, 119, 137–138
 orbital motion and, 151, 153–155
 quantum physics and, 802
 third-law pair, 83
 universal law of, 151–153, 161
 weight and, 76
 work done against, 119
- Gray (Gy), 775
- Green-antired, 799
- Greenhouse effect, 260
- Greenhouse gases, 334–335
- Greenland ice cap, 296–297
- Ground fault circuit interrupter, 477
- Ground state, 728–729
- Ground state of energy, 698
- Ground-state energy, 716
- Ground-state wave function, 716
- Guth, Alan, 806
- H**
- Hadrons, 796, 798, 800, 808
- Half-life, 771, 772, 788
- Hall coefficient, 511
- Hall effect, 511
- Hall of Electricity, Boston Museum, 436
- Hall potential, 511
- Hard ferromagnetic materials, 518
- Harmonic oscillators, 718–719. *See* Oscillatory motion
 quantum harmonic oscillator, 750
 quantum mechanical, 718–719, 723
 selection rule for, 750
- Harmonics, 281
- Head-on collisions, 181–182
- Headphones, noise-cancelling, 276
- Heat, 325, 351
 defined, 314
 phase changes and, 335–337
 units of, 315
- Heat capacity, 314–316, 325
 specific heat and, 314–316
- Heat conduction, 317–319, 325
- Heat engines, 363–365
 adiabatic compression, 364
 adiabatic expansion, 364
 isothermal compression, 364
 isothermal expansion, 364
 limitations of, 367–369
- Heat loss, thermal-energy balance, 322–324, 325
- Heat of fusion, 335
 nuclear power plant meltdown, 335
- Heat of sublimation, 335
- Heat of transformation, 335, 340, 382
- Heat of vaporization, 335
- Heat pumps, 369–370, 377

- Heat transfer, 316–321, 351
 - conduction, 317–319, 325
 - convection, 320, 325
 - first law of thermodynamics, 345–347, 346, 357
 - radiation, 320, 325
- Heavy water, 292, 782
- Heisenberg, Werner, 702, 704, 712
- Helicopters
 - aerodynamic lift and airflow, 302–303
 - weight in, 84
- Helium
 - atomic structure of, 766
 - mass defect in, 777
 - specific heat of, 355
 - thermal properties of, 317
- Helium atom, electronic structure of, 737
- Helium-3, 768
- Helium-4, 768, 777
- Henry (H), 545
- Henry, Joseph, 532, 545
- Hertz (Hz), 247
- Hertz, Heinrich, 247, 592, 693
- Higgs bosons, 800
- High-energy particles, 795–796
- High-Q circuit, 570
- High-temperature superconductors, 759
- Hiroshima bomb, 779, 785
- Hockey, 178
- Hodgkin, Alan L., 491
- Holes (semiconductors), 755
- Holograms, 740
- Hooke's law, 83, 84
- Horizontal range of projectile, 59–60
- Horsepower (hp), 121
- Hubble constant, 803
- Hubble Deep Field, 804, 808
- Hubble Space Telescope, 620, 621, 623–624, 634
- Hubble, Edwin, 803
- Hubble's law, 803
- Human body
 - cardiac catheterization, 476
 - electric current, effects on, 476
 - electric shock, 477
 - eye, 630–632
 - radiation, effects of on, 775–776
 - resistance of skin, 476
 - sound and the ear, 274
 - static equilibrium, 231–232
 - See also* Medical devices and procedures
- Huxley, Andrew F., 491
- Huygens, Christian, 652
- Huygens' principle, 651–652, 657, 662
- Hybrid-car motor, 517
- Hydraulic lift, 294
- Hydrogen
 - fusion, 784
 - isotopes, 766, 771
 - tritium, 771
- Hydrogen atom, 727–731
 - Bohr model, 699, 700, 705
 - excited states of, 696
 - fine structure of, 734
 - ground state, 728–729
 - potential-energy curve for, 760
- Hydrogen bomb, 785
- Hydrogen bonding, 748, 760
- Hydrogen spectrum, 696–697, 705
- Hydrostatic equilibrium, 292–295, 310
- Hyperfine splitting, 769
- Hyperfine structure, 734
- I**
- Ice
 - boiling point of, 313
 - bonding in, 748
 - crystal structure of, 339
 - melting point of, 313
 - optical properties of, 607
 - thermal properties of, 315, 338
 - See also* Water
- Ice skating, 217
- IDEA strategy, 25–26, 27
 - See also* Problem solving
- Ideal emf, 484
- Ideal gases, 331–333, 340, 351
 - adiabatic free expansion, 373
 - adiabatic processes, 351–353, 357
 - constant-volume processes, 350, 357
 - cyclic processes, 353–354
 - equipartition theorem, 355–356, 357
 - internal energy of, 350
 - isobaric processes, 350, 357
 - isothermal processes, 348–349, 353, 357, 382
 - quantum effect, 356
 - specific heats of, 355–356
- Ideal spring, 83, 85, 134, 137, 145, 247
- Ideal-gas law, 330–331, 340, 352, 382
- Image distance, 623, 629, 633
- Images, 619, 635
 - with lenses, 625
 - with mirrors, 619–624
 - real images, 619, 621–623, 625, 626, 628, 631, 632, 633, 635, 662
 - virtual images, 619, 621–629, 631, 632, 633, 635, 662
- Impact parameter, 183
- Impedance, 570, 575
- Impulse, 177
- Incandescent lightbulbs, 693
- Incompressibility, of liquids, 292, 310
- Index of refraction, 607, 662
- Induced current, 532–533, 538
 - closed and open circuits, 543
 - eddy currents, 542–543
- Induced dipole moments, 399
- Induced electric fields, 552–554
- Induced emf, Faraday's law and, 534–538, 546, 552, 555, 580, 583, 598
- Inductance, 544–549, 555
 - mutual inductance, 544
 - self-inductance, 544–546
- Inductive reactance, 564, 575
- Inductive time constant, 548, 555
- Inductors, 555, 564
 - in AC circuits, 563–564, 565–566
 - in electric circuits, 547–549
 - magnetic energy in, 549–551
 - reactance, 564, 575
- Inelastic collisions, 178–180
- Inert gases
 - electronic structure of, 737
 - specific heat of, 355
- Inertia, 73
 - gravitation and, 76
 - rotational, 196–201, 206, 216, 261
- Inertial confinement, 785–786
- Inertial confinement fusion, 785–786, 788
- Inertial guidance, 38
- Inertial navigation systems, 38
- Inertial reference frames, 74, 668, 685
- Infinite square well, 714–716, 723
- Infinitesimals, 35
- Inflation (of universe), 806–807
- Infrared cameras, 592
- Infrared frequency range, 593
- Insect control, radioactivity and, 775
- Instantaneous acceleration, 36
- Instantaneous acceleration vector, 53
- Instantaneous angular velocity, 192
- Instantaneous power, 121
- Instantaneous speed, 34
- Instantaneous velocity, 34–36
- Instantaneous velocity vector, 53
- Insulators, 398–399, 468, 754, 755
- Integrals
 - definite integral, 116
 - line integral, 118–119, 124
 - setting up, 170
- Integration, rotational inertia, 197–198
- Intensity, waves, 273–274, 286
- Interaction force pair, 81
- Interaction forces, 71, 85
- Interference, 275, 277, 310, 641–642, 657
 - constructive interference, 275, 640, 643, 647–648, 662
 - destructive interference, 275, 640, 662
 - double-slit interference, 642–645
 - fringes, 642, 662
 - interferometry, 649–651
 - multiple-slit interference, 645–648, 646
 - noise-cancelling headphones, 276
 - pattern, intensity in, 644–645
 - in two dimensions, 277–278
 - waves, 276, 278
 - X-ray diffraction, 647–648
- Interferometry, 649–651, 657
- Internal combustion engines (ICE), 365
- Internal energy, 314, 345, 346, 350
- Internal kinetic energy, 176
- Internal resistance, 486, 498
- International Space Station, 63, 77, 151, 154, 159, 168–169
- Invar, thermal properties of, 338
- Invariants, relativistic, 678, 685
- Inverse Compton effect, 696
- Inverse square force laws, gravity as, 152
- Inversion (of atmosphere), 353
- Inverted image, 621, 622, 623, 626, 633
 - curved mirrors, 621
- Iodine-131, 771
- Ionic bonding, 747, 760
- Ionic cohesive energy, 752
- Ionic conduction, 470, 478
- Ionic solutions, electrical conduction in, 470, 478
- Ionization, 699
- Ionization energy, 699
- Iron
 - electrical properties of, 468
 - thermal properties of, 315, 317
- Irreversible/reversible processes, 347, 348–349, 363, 373
- Isobaric processes, 350–351, 357
- Isochoric processes, 350
- Isometric processes, 350
- Isotherm, 348–349
- Isothermal compression, heat engine, 364
- Isothermal expansion, heat engine, 364
- Isothermal processes, 348–349, 353, 357
- Isotopes, 766, 788
 - radioisotopes, 771
 - transuranic isotopes, 783
- Isovolumic processes, 350
- ITER fusion reactor, 786
- J**
- Jensen, J. Hans, 770
- Joliot-Curie, Frédéric, 774
- Jordan, Pascal, 712

I-8 Index

Joule (J), 113, 114, 121, 124, 314
Joule, James, 113, 314

K

Kaon particles, 797
Kayaking, 174
Keck Telescopes, 634
Kelvin (K), 20, 313
Kelvin temperature scale, 313, 325
Kelvin–Planck statement, 363
Kepler, Johannes, 150, 155
Kepler's third law, 154
Kibble balance, 20
Kilocalorie, 315
Kilogram (kg), 19
Kilowatt-hours (kWh), 121, 122
Kinematics, 32, 44
 See also Motion
Kinetic energy, 119–121, 124
 of center of mass, 176
 collisions and, 180–181
 of composite object, 203
 defined, 120, 124
 internal, 176
 of mass element, 201
 relativistic, 679–680
 rotational, 201
 of systems of particles, 176
 work and, 119–121
Kinetic friction, 100, 105
Kirchoff's laws, 490, 498
Krypton, electronic structure of, 737

L

Ladders, 230–231
Lakes
 heat conduction in, 318
 turnover, 339
 wave motion in, 281
Lambda particles, 797
Lanthanide series, 738
Lanthanum, electronic structure of, 737
Large Electron Positron Collider, 800
Large Hadron Collider (LHC), 803
Laser Interferometer Gravitational Wave
 Observatory (LIGO), 651, 684
Laser light, 590, 641
Laser printer, 444
Lasers, 735, 740
 CDs or DVDs, 17, 18, 756
 excimer laser, 631
 laser light, 590, 641
 vision correction with, 631
LASIK, 631
Law of conservation of mechanical energy,
 145
Law of inertia, 73
Law of Malus, 591
Law of universal gravitation, 161
Laws of motion. *See* Newton's laws of motion
Lawson criterion, 785
LC circuits, 566–569, 575
LCDs (liquid crystal displays), 591
Lead, thermal properties of, 335
LEDs (light emitting diodes), 756
Lee, Tsung-dao, 798
Length contraction, 672–673, 685
Length, units, 19
Lens equation, 626–627
Lenses, 624, 662
 aberrations of, 630, 633
 antireflection coatings, 607
 astigmatism, 630
 chromatic aberration, 630, 633
 concave lenses, 624, 629
 contact lenses, 631
 converging lenses, 624, 625
 convex lenses, 629
 corrective glasses, 631
 diverging lenses, 624
 image formation with, 625, 635
 lens equation, 626–627
 magnifying glass, 627
 optics of, 628–629
 refraction in, 627–630
 thin lenses, 624
Lensmaker's formula, 629, 635
Lenz's law, 539, 555
Lepton number, 796
Lepton–antilepton pairs, 796
Leptons, 796, 800–801, 808
Lever arm, 195
Levitation, magnetic, 554, 758
Light
 Compton effect, 695–696, 705, 711
 diffraction, 652–654, 657, 662
 diffraction limit, 654–656, 657, 662
 dispersion of, 611–613, 614
 Doppler effect, 284
 double-slit interference, 642–645
 as electromagnetic phenomenon, 588–589
 interference, 276, 278, 641–642, 657, 662
 laser light, 590, 641
 Michelson–Morley experiment, 666–667, 668, 685
 multiple-slit interference, 645–648, 657
 photoelectric effect, 693–696, 705, 711
 photons, 693–696
 polarization of, 590–591, 598, 609
 prisms, 612
 rainbow, 612, 614
 reflection of, 606, 609, 662
 refraction of, 607–609, 662
 Snell's law, 608, 662
 speed of, 19, 692
 total internal reflection of, 609–611, 614
 visible light, 592
 wave–particle duality, 695, 704, 705, 711–712
 See also Electromagnetic waves
Light-water reactors (LWRs), 782
Lightbulbs, 693
Lightning, 390–391, 399, 424
Line–charge density, 394
Line integral, 118–119, 124
Line symmetry, charge distributions,
 417–418, 425
Linear accelerators, 802
Linear momentum conservation of, 172–175
Linear speed versus angular speed, 192–193
 See also Speed
Linear-expansion coefficient, 338, 340
Liquid-drop model, 770
Liquids, optical properties of, 607
Liquids, phase changes, 335–337
Liter (L), 20
Lithium atom, electronic structure of, 737
Longitudinal waves, 268, 286
Lorentz transformations, 675–678, 685
Lorentz–Fitzgerald contraction, 672
Lorentz, H. A., 672
Loudspeaker systems, 566, 571–572
Luggage, pulling, 114
Luminosity, units of, 20
Lyman series, 697

M

Mach angle, 286
Mach number, 286
Macrostates, 374

Madelung constant, 752
Magic numbers, 769
Magnetic confinement, 785
Magnetic confinement fusion, 786, 788
Magnetic dipole moment, 514, 768
Magnetic dipoles, 514–517
Magnetic domain, 518
Magnetic energy, 549–551
Magnetic field, 504, 603
 Ampere's law, 519–524, 580, 581–583,
 586–587, 598
 Biot–Savart law, 512–513, 525, 603
 charged particles in, 507–509
 electric field and, 522–523
 Gauss's law, 515–516, 519, 520, 525, 580–581, 583,
 586, 598
 induced currents, 532–533
 Maxwell's equations, 598, 603
 origin of, 511–514
 solenoids, 523–524, 525
 superposition principle, 512, 518, 519
 toroids, 524
 units of, 504
Magnetic flux, 516–518, 535–536
Magnetic force, 505, 525, 603
 between conductors, 513–514
 electric current and, 509–511
 Hall effect, 511
Magnetic levitation, 554, 758
Magnetic matter, 517–519
Magnetic moment of electrons, 732
Magnetic monopoles, 515
Magnetic permeability, 519
Magnetic recording, 542
Magnetic resonance imaging. *See* MRI
 (magnetic resonance imaging)
Magnetic torque, 516–517
Magnetic-energy density, 551, 555
Magnetism, 504, 525
 diamagnetism, 519, 525, 554, 555
 ferromagnetism, 518, 525
 Gauss's law for, 515–516, 518, 520, 525, 580–581,
 583, 598
 magnetic matter, 517–519
 paramagnetism, 518, 525
 superconductivity and, 757–759
Magnets, 518
Magnification, 626, 632, 635
Magnifiers, 632–633, 632–634
Malus, law of, 591
Manometers, 293, 294
Marconi, Guglielmo, 592
Mars Climate Orbiter, 19
Marsden, Ernest, 696
Mass, 20
 acceleration of, 73–74, 77
 center of mass, 166–172
 conservation of, in fluid flow, 298–299
 energy and, 679–681, 685
 mass–energy equivalence, 680–681
 versus weight, 76, 85
Mass defect, 776
Mass elements, 169
Mass flow rate, 298
Mass number, 766, 788
Mass spectrometers, 507
Mass–energy conservation, 141
Mass–energy equivalence, 680–681
Mass–spring system
 harmonic motion in, 251, 256–257, 259
 vertical, 251
 wave propagation in, 268
Mass–spring system, harmonic motion in,
 718

- Matter**
 annihilation, 680, 796
 antiparticles, 722
 Bose–Einstein condensate, 735, 740, 741
 in electric fields, 396–399
 electromagnetic waves in, 489–590
 matter-wave interference, 701
 phase changes in, 335–337
 quantization of, 691, 705
 relativistic particles, 681
 thermal behavior of, 330–339
 wave–particle duality, 695, 704, 705, 711–712
See also Gases; Liquids; Particles; Solids
- Matter waves, 700–701**
- Matter-wave hypothesis, 700–701**
- Matter-wave interference, 701**
- Maxima, 234**
- Maxwell–Boltzmann distribution, 334, 355**
- Maxwell, James Clerk, 334, 582, 588–589, 592**
- Maxwell’s equations, 583, 598, 603, 650**
 relativity and, 665, 685, 711
- Mayer, Maria Goeppert, 770**
- Measurement**
 prefixes for units, 20
 units, 18–21
- Mechanical energy**
 conservation of, 135–138, 145
 defined, 135
- Mechanical waves, 267**
- Mechanics, 17, 31, 663, 665**
- Media, mechanical waves and, 267**
- Medical devices and procedures**
 bone scans, 775
 defibrillator, 450, 457, 476
 laser vision correction, 631
 lasers, 631, 740
 MRI, 472, 505–506, 550, 757, 769
 PET, 680, 772, 774
 radioactivity used in, 775
- Meissner effect, 554, 760**
- Meitner, Lise, 778**
- Melting point, 314**
- MEMS (microelectromechanical systems), 84**
- Mendeleev, Dmitri, 735**
- Mercury barometers, 293**
- Mercury, electrical properties of, 468**
- Mercury, thermal properties of, 315, 335**
- Merry-go-rounds, 218**
- Mesons, 794, 796, 798, 800, 808**
- Metal detectors, 543**
- Metallic bonding, 748, 760**
- Metallic conductors, 754–755**
- Metals, electrical conduction in, 469–470, 478**
- Metals, thermal conduction in, 317**
- Metastable equilibrium, 233, 236**
- Metastable states, 739**
- Meter (m), 19**
- Metric system, 18–21**
- Michelson interferometer, 650–651, 657, 666**
- Michelson–Morley experiment, 666–667, 668, 685**
- Michelson, Albert A., 650, 666**
- Microamperes, 465**
- Microelectromechanical systems (MEMS), 84**
- Microelectronics, 702–703**
- Microgravity, 78**
- Microscopes, 632–633, 635**
 electron microscope, 701
 scanning tunneling microscope, 710, 720
- Microstates, 374**
- Microwave ovens, 281, 399**
- Microwaves, 592**
 cosmic microwave background, 804–805, 808
- Milliamperes (mA), 465**
- Millikan, Robert A., 385, 691, 694**
- Minima, 234**
- Mirrors, 619–624, 662. *See* Reflection**
 aberrations of, 620, 621, 630
 concave, 623
 convex mirrors, 622, 623–624
 curved mirrors, 620–622, 635
 magnification, 622, 635
 mirror equation, 622–624
 parabolic mirrors, 620–621
 plane mirrors, 619–620
- Mode number, 281**
- Moderator (nuclear power reactor), 182, 782**
- Modern physics, 18, 664**
- Modes, 281**
- Molar specific heat at constant pressure, 351**
- Molar specific heat at constant volume, 350**
- Mole (mol), 20**
- Molecular spectra, 750–751**
- Molecular speed, 333, 334**
- Molecules**
 as electric dipoles, 393–394
 energy levels in, 748–751
 equilibrium states of, 235
 potential-energy curve for, 143
 resonance in, 260
 spectra of, 750–751
- Moment of inertia, 196**
- Momentum, 172–175, 243**
 in collisions, 177, 180
 conservation of, 173–175, 243
 defined, 72, 85, 172
 electromagnetic waves, 597
 energy–momentum relation, 681, 685
 forces and, 72
 relativistic, 679, 685
 uncertainty principle, 702–704, 705
 viscosity and, 304, 310
See also Angular momentum
- Monatomic structure, 355**
- Moon**
 circular orbit of, 154
 gravity and, 151, 152
- Morley, Edward W., 666**
- Motion**
 aircraft, 34
 Aristotle on, 70
 average motion, 32–34
 of center of mass, 166, 171
 changes in, 71
 equations of, 39–40
 ether concept and, 665, 685
 kinematics and, 44
 kinetic energy and, 124
 mechanics and, 17
 relative motion, 54–55
 straight-line motion
 acceleration, 36–41
 velocity, 34–36
 in three dimensions, 64
 in two dimensions
 circular, 62–63
 with constant acceleration, 54, 63
 projectile, 55–56, 64
 relative motion, 54–55
 uniform motion, 72
 vectors, 50–54
See also Circular motion; Fluid motion;
 Newton’s laws of motion; Oscillatory
 motion; Projectile motion; Rotational
 motion; Wave motion
- Motional emf**
 and changing fields, 534–535
 defined, 534
 and Lenz’s law, 540
- Motors. *See* Electric motors**
- Mountain climbing, 122**
- MRI (magnetic resonance imaging), 220, 260, 472, 505–506, 550, 757, 769**
- Multimessenger astronomy, 684**
- Multimeters, 493**
- Multiple-slit diffraction systems, 654**
- Multiple-slit interference, 645–648, 657**
- Multiplication**
 scientific notation and, 22, 23
 of vectors, 51, 52, 214
- Multiplication factor, 781**
- Multiwire proportional chamber, 795**
- Muon neutrinos, 797, 800**
- Muons, 670, 795, 797, 800**
- Music**
 CDs, 642, 648, 757
 refraction and, 608–609
 loudspeaker systems, 566, 571–572
 sound waves, 274, 281–282
- Musical instruments standing waves in, 281–282**
- Musical instruments standing waves in, tuning a piano, 568–569**
- Mutual inductance, 544**
- Myopia, 631**
- N**
- N-type semiconductor, 471, 755**
- Nagasaki bomb, 779**
- Nanotube, 663**
- National Ignition Facility (NIF), 785**
- Natural frequency, oscillatory motion, 260**
- Natural greenhouse effect, 334–335**
- Ne’eman, Yuval, 798**
- Near point, 631**
- Nearsightedness, 631**
- Negative work, 131**
- Neon**
 electronic structure of, 737
 specific heat of, 355
- Net charge, 385**
- Net force, 71, 72**
- Neutral buoyancy, 295**
- Neutrally stable equilibrium, 233, 236**
- Neutrinos, 774, 784, 795–796, 801**
- Neutron star, 734**
- Neutrons, 766, 774, 808**
 beta decay of, 773–774, 796
 high-energy fission, 785
 properties of, 777, 797
- New Horizons* spacecraft, 150**
- Newton (N), 73**
- Newton-meter (N m), 113, 124**
- Newton, Sir Isaac, 63, 70, 71, 150, 151, 153, 155, 612**
- Newton’s laws of motion, 70, 105, 243**
 first law, 71–72, 73, 85, 243
 friction and, 99–103, 105
 uniform motion, 71–72
 rotational analogs of, 212, 213
 second law, 72–73, 85, 185, 243
 applications, 78–81, 90–93, 105
 circular motion, 95–99
 drag forces, 104
 for multiple objects, 93–94
 for rotational motion, 194, 196, 200
 for systems of particles, 166, 167, 172
 weight and, 76
 third law, 81–84, 85, 185, 243, 302–303
- Newtonian mechanics, 31**
- Nickel, work function of, 694**
- NIF (National Ignition Facility), 785**

I-10 Index

- NIST-F1 atomic clock, 43
Nitrogen dioxide, specific heat of, 355
NMR (nuclear magnetic resonance), 260, 768
Nodal line, 278
Nodes, 281
 circuit components and, 490
Noise-cancelling headphones, 276
Nonconservative electric field, 553–554
Nonconservative forces, 130–131, 135
 conservation of energy, 135, 138–139
Nonlinear pendulum, 254
Nonohmic materials, 468
Nonuniform circular motion, 64
Normal force, 82
Normalization condition, 714, 717–718, 723, 729
North Star, 220
Nuclear energy, 703
Nuclear fission, 777, 778–784, 788
 chain reaction, 780–781, 788
 energy from, 780
 fission products, 779–780, 783
 nuclear power, 782–783
 radioactive waste, 779, 783–784
 to trigger fusion reactions, 785
 uranium *versus* coal, 780
 weapons, 779, 781, 782
Nuclear force, 75, 766, 794, 799
Nuclear fuel, 23
Nuclear fusion, 777, 784–787, 788
 inertial confinement fusion, 785–786, 788
 magnetic confinement fusion, 786, 788
Nuclear magnetic dipole moment, 768
Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR), 260
Nuclear magneton, 768
Nuclear physics, 765–787
 binding energy, 776–778
 nuclear structure, 765–770
 radioactivity, 770–776
Nuclear power, 782–783, 783–784
Nuclear power plants
 elastic collisions in, 182
 meltdown, 336
 thermal pollution, 347
Nuclear radius, 767
Nuclear reactors, 781, 782
Nuclear shell model, 770
Nuclear spin, 767–769
Nuclear structure, 765–770
Nuclear symbols, 765–770
Nuclear waste, 780, 783–784
Nuclear weapons, 779, 781, 782, 785
Nucleons, 766, 767
Nucleosynthesis, 778
Nucleus (nuclei), 765, 766
 angular momentum of, 767–768
 binding energy, 776–778
 models of nuclear structure, 769–770
 nuclear force, 75, 766
 size of, 767
 spin of, 767–769
 stability of, 766–767
Nuclides, 767
Numbers estimation, 25
 prefixes, 20
 scientific notation, 21–22
 significant figures, 23–24
- O**
Object distance, 623, 627, 635
Objective lens, 632
Oceans
 Archimedes' principle, 296
 pressure at depths, 293
 turnover, 339
 waves, 17, 277, 278
Ohm, 468
Ohm, Georg, 468
Ohm's law, 473, 475, 478, 489, 603
 macroscopic version of, 472–474, 473
 microscopic version of, 468, 473
Ohmic materials, 468
Ohmmeters, 493
Oil drop experiment, 385, 691
Omega particles, 797
One dimension
 acceleration in, 36–40
 collisions in, 180–182, 185
 straight-line motion, 33, 36–40
 velocity, 34–36
Onnes, H. Kamerlingh, 472
Open circuits, 473, 543
Open orbits, 155
Operational definitions, 19
Optical fibers, 611, 614
Optical instruments, 457, 619, 630–634
 cameras, 457, 496, 592, 632
 contact lenses, 631
 corrective glasses, 631
 diffraction gratings, 645–648, 662
 electron microscopes, 701
 magnifiers, 627, 632–633
 microscopes, 632–633, 635
 telescopes, 623, 633–634, 654–655
Optical spectra, 739
Optics, 18, 605, 662
 chromatic aberration, 613, 630, 633
 focal length, 620, 622–635, 662
 focal point, 620, 624, 635
 geometrical, 605, 640, 662
 lens equation, 626–627
 lensmaker's formula, 629, 635
 magnification, 622, 635
 mirror equation, 622–624
 physical, 640, 662
 Snell's law, 608, 662
 See also Light
Orbital angular momentum, 730–731
Orbital magnetic quantum number, 731, 741
Orbital motion
 circular orbits, 153–154, 155, 161
 closed/open, 155
 elliptical orbits, 155
 geostationary orbits, 154–155, 156, 162
 gravity and, 151, 153–155
 precession, 219–221, 222
Orbital period, 154
Orbital quantum number, 730–731, 741
Orbitals, 735
Orbits, uniform circular motion, 62, 63
Order (of dispersion), 646
Organized states, 363
Oscillating dipole, 593–594
Oscillatory motion, 246–261, 310
 amplitude, 247, 250
 basic characteristics of, 247
 damped harmonic motion, 258–259, 261
 driven, 259–260
 frequency, 247, 249–250, 261
 period, 247, 249–250, 261
 phase, 249–250
 resonance, 259–260, 261
 simple harmonic motion, 248–251, 261
 applications, 251–255
 circular motion, 255–256
 energy in, 256–258
 pendulum, 252–255
 potential-energy curves and, 257–258
 tuned mass damper, 251, 252
 universality of, 246, 247
 in waves, 268
Oscillatory system, 18
Oxygen
 isotopes of, 766
 radioisotope of, 771
Oxygen-15, 771
Oxygen, thermal properties of, 335
Ozone, 593
- P**
P-type semiconductor, 755
Pair creation, 722
Paper, dielectric constant of, 454
Parabolic mirrors, 620–621
Parallel circuits, 603
Parallel resistors, 484, 487–488, 498
Parallel-axis theorem, 199
Parallel-plate capacitor, 451, 460, 582–583
Paramagnetism, 518, 525
Paraxial rays, 620
Parent nucleus, 773
Parity, 798
Parity conservation, 798
Parity reversal, 798
Partial derivatives, 271, 586
Partial differential equation, 271
Partial reflection, 607
Particle accelerators, 799, 802–803
Particles
 classifying, 795–796
 conservation laws and, 796–797
 detection of subatomic particles, 795
 high-energy particles, 795–796, 808
 particle accelerators, 799, 802–803
 potential-energy curve, 714–716
 properties of, 796–797, 808
 quarks, 75, 385, 798–800, 801, 808
 spin-1/2 particles, 732, 741, 767
 standard model, 768, 793, 800–801
 symmetries, 798
 wave-particle duality, 695, 704, 705, 711–712
 See also Systems of particles
Pascal (Pa), 292
Pascal's law, 294
 hydraulic lift, 294
Paschen series, 697
Pauli, Wolfgang, 732
Peak radiance, 692, 693, 705
Peak-to-peak amplitude, 247
Pendulum, 252–255
 ballistic pendulum, 179–180
 nonlinear, 254
 physical, 254–255
 simple, 252–254
Perfect emitter, 320
Perihelion, 155
Period
 oscillatory motion, 247, 249–250, 261
 waves, 268, 269, 286
Periodic table, 735–738
Permeability constant, 512, 525
PET (positron emission tomography), 680, 772, 774
Phase
 oscillatory motion, 249–250
 wave motion, 270
Phase changes, 335–337, 382
 critical point, 337, 340
 heat and, 335, 337

- sublimation, 335, 337
 - triple point, 337, 340
 - Phase constant, 250
 - Phase diagrams, 337, 340
 - critical point, 337, 340
 - triple point, 337, 340
 - of water, 337, 340
 - Phasor diagrams, 565, 570
 - Phasors, 565, 575
 - Phosphorescent materials, 739
 - Photocopier, 444
 - Photoelectric effect, 693–696, 705, 711
 - Photomultipliers, 801
 - Photons, 693–696, 705, 735, 774, 794, 796.
 - See Electromagnetic waves; Light
 - Compton effect, 695–696, 705, 711
 - energy states of, 794
 - gamma decay and, 774
 - in particle physics, 799
 - properties of, 801
 - virtual photon, 794
 - wave-particle duality, 695, 704, 705, 711–712
 - waves and, 711–712
 - Physical optics, 640, 662
 - Physical pendulum, 254–255
 - Physics
 - IDEA strategy, 25–26
 - realms of, 17–18, 27
 - simplicity of, 25
 - Piano, 568–569
 - Pions, 795, 796–797
 - Piston-cylinder system, 348
 - Pitot tube, 300
 - Planck, Max, 692
 - Planck's constant, 20, 692, 705
 - Planck's equation, 692
 - Plane electromagnetic wave, 584–585
 - Plane mirrors, 619–620
 - Plane symmetry, charge distributions, 418, 425
 - Plane waves, 273
 - Planetary orbits, 151, 153, 155
 - Plano-concave lenses, 629
 - Plano-convex lenses, 629
 - Plasmas, 785
 - electrical conduction in, 470, 478
 - quark-gluon plasma, 806
 - Plexiglas, dielectric constant of, 454
 - Plutonium weapons, 782
 - Plutonium-239, 771, 780, 782
 - PN junction, 471, 760
 - Point charges, 388
 - in electric field, 396–397, 400
 - field of, 390, 400, 419
 - Point of symmetry, 413
 - Polaris, 220
 - Polarization, 590–591, 598, 609
 - Polarizing angle, 609, 614
 - Pollution control, 444
 - Polyethylene, dielectric constant of, 454
 - Polystyrene
 - dielectric constant of, 454
 - electrical properties of, 468
 - optical properties of, 607
 - Population inversion, 740
 - Position
 - angular position, 206
 - with constant acceleration, 38, 44
 - constant acceleration and, 37
 - as vector, 64
 - Position vector, 50–51, 56
 - Position-momentum uncertainty, 702–704, 705
 - Position, uncertainty principle, 702–704, 705
 - Positron emission tomography (PET), 680, 772, 774
 - Positrons, 680, 722, 774, 784, 795
 - Potassium
 - electronic structure of, 737
 - radioisotope of, 771
 - work function of, 694
 - Potassium-40, 771
 - Potential barrier, 142
 - Potential energy
 - defined, 145
 - elastic, 133–134
 - equilibrium and, 233–234, 236
 - force as derivative of, 144
 - gravitational, 132–133, 145, 156–158, 161
 - stability and, 233
 - work and, 131–135
 - zero of, 156–157
 - Potential well, trapping in, 142
 - Potential-energy curves, 133, 141–144, 145, 714–716
 - for complex structures, 235
 - finite potential wells, 720–721, 723
 - hat-shaped, 802
 - for hydrogen atom, 760
 - infinite square well, 714–716, 723
 - molecular, 143
 - simple harmonic motion, 257–258
 - symmetry breaking and, 802
 - Potential-energy difference, 430
 - Potential-energy function, for ionic crystals, 752
 - Pound (lb), 76
 - Power, 121–122
 - bicycling and, 123
 - defined, 121, 124
 - versus energy, 123
 - energy storage, 202
 - mountain climbing, 122
 - units of, 121, 124
 - velocity and, 123
 - of waves, 273
 - work and, 121
 - See also Electric power
 - Power factor, 572–573, 575
 - Power plants. See Electric power; Electric power plants; Nuclear power plants
 - Power supply
 - direct current (DC), 573–574
 - transformers and, 475, 573–574, 575
 - Power transmission, 475
 - Powers, numbers, 21, 22
 - Poynting vector, 595
 - Poynting, J. H., 595
 - Precession, 219–221, 222
 - Prefixes, 20, 27
 - Presbyopia, 631
 - Pressure, 292, 310
 - barometers, 293
 - hydrostatic equilibrium, 292–295, 310
 - manometers, 293, 294
 - measuring, 293–294
 - Pressure melting, 340
 - Pressurized-water reactors (PWRs), 782
 - Priestley, Joseph, 386
 - Primary coil, transformer, 573
 - Principal quantum number, 730, 741
 - Principle of complementarity, 704, 705
 - Prisms, 612
 - Probability, 711–712, 717–718
 - radial probability distribution, 729
 - Probability density, 723
 - Probability distribution hydrogen atom, 729
 - Problem solving
 - Ampère's law, 520, 521–522
 - checking answer, 26
 - conservation of mechanical energy, 136
 - Coulomb's law, 386
 - Faraday's law and induced emf, 537
 - fluid dynamics, 300
 - Gauss's law, 411
 - with IDEA strategy, 25–26
 - Lorentz transformations, 676
 - motion with constant acceleration, 40
 - multiloop circuits, 490–491
 - Newton's second law, 79, 93–94
 - projectile motion, 58
 - static equilibrium, 230
 - thermal-energy balance, 322
 - variation problems, 42
 - Projectile motion, 55–56, 64
 - drag and, 104
 - flight times, 61
 - range of projectile, 59–60
 - trajectories, 59, 61, 155
 - washout flood, 58
 - Projectiles, range of, 59–60
 - Propagation (wave), 267
 - Proper time, 669
 - Proton-proton cycle, 784
 - Protons, 766, 808
 - electric field, 392
 - grand unification theories (GUTs), 801, 808
 - properties of, 777, 748, 767
 - Pulsars, 217–218
 - Pump (lasers), 740
 - Pumped-storage facilities, 133
 - Pumping, 740
 - pV diagram
 - cyclic process, 353, 354, 357
 - isothermal processes, 349, 353
- ## Q
- Quadratic potential-energy function, 718
 - Quanta, 694
 - Quantization, 690–691, 702, 705
 - of angular momentum, 760
 - Bohr atom, 696–697, 705
 - of orbital angular momentum, 730–731
 - space quantization, 741
 - Quantized spin angular momentum, 732, 741, 768
 - Quantum chromodynamics (QCD), 799
 - Quantum effect, gases, 356
 - Quantum electrodynamics (QED), 794
 - Quantum harmonic oscillator, 750
 - Quantum mechanics, 705, 760, 807
 - Bose-Einstein condensate, 735, 740, 741
 - Dirac equation, 722
 - electromagnetism and, 794
 - exclusion principle, 734–735, 741, 799
 - finite potential wells, 720–721, 723
 - harmonic oscillator, 718–719, 723, 750
 - infinite square wells, 714–716, 723
 - molecular energy levels, 748–751
 - orbital angular momentum, 730–731
 - orbital quantum number, 730–731
 - probability, 711, 712–713, 717, 729
 - radial probability distribution, 729
 - relativistic, 721–722
 - Schrödinger equation, 712–714, 721, 723
 - space quantization, 731
 - in three dimensions, 721
 - tunneling, 719–720, 723, 785
 - Quantum number, 716
 - orbital magnetic quantum number, 731, 741
 - orbital quantum number, 730–731, 741
 - principal quantum number, 730, 741
 - spin quantum number, 768
 - Quantum physics, 18, 705, 711–712
 - blackbody radiation, 691–693, 705

I-12 Index

- Quantum physics (*continued*)
 complementarity, 704, 705
 gravity and, 801–802
 hydrogen spectrum, 696–697, 705
 matter waves, 700–701
 photoelectric effect, 693–696, 705, 711
 quantization, 690–691, 702, 705
 uncertainty principle, 702–704, 705
 wave–particle duality, 695, 704, 705, 711–712
- Quantum state, 716
- Quantum tunneling, 719–720, 723, 785
- Quark–antiquark pairs, 798–799
- Quark–gluon plasma, 806
- Quarks, 75, 385, 798–800, 801, 808
- Quartz, dielectric constant of, 454
- Quasi-static process, 347
- R**
- R-factor, 321
- Radial acceleration, 64, 193
- Radial probability distribution, 729
- Radian (rad), 20, 192, 249
- Radiance, 691, 693, 705
- Radiation (heat), 320, 325
- Radiation pressure, electromagnetic waves, 597, 598
- Radio transmitter, 593
- Radio waves, 592–593
- Radioactive decay, 770–771, 788
 conservation of momentum in, 174–175
 decay constant, 771
 decay rate, 770–776
 decay series, 774
- Radioactive isotopes, 766
- Radioactive tracers, 775
- Radioactive waste, 779, 783–784
- Radioactivity, 770–776
 artificial, 774–775
 biological effects of, 775–776
 for cancer treatment, 775
 Chernobyl disaster, 782
 decay rate, 770–771
 decay series, 774
 decay types, 774, 788
 Fukushima disaster, 772, 783
 half-life, 771, 772, 788
 human body, effects on, 775–776
 radiocarbon dating, 772, 773
 types of radiation, 773
 units of, 788
 uses of, 775
- Radiocarbon dating, 772, 773
- Radioisotopes, 766, 771–772
- Radium-226, 771
- Radius of curvature, 64
- Radon-222, 771
- Rainbows, 612, 614
- Raindrops, charged, 388
- Range of projectile, 59–60
- Rankine temperature scale, 314, 325
- Rate of change of velocity, 37
- Ray diagram
 for lens equation, 626
 for lenses, 628
 mirrors, 623
- Ray tracings
 with lenses, 625
 with mirrors, 619, 625
- Rayleigh criterion, 654, 655, 657
- Rayleigh–Jeans law, 693
- Rays, 605, 662
- RBMK reactors, 782
- RC circuits, 493–497, 566
- Reactance, 563–564, 575
- Reading light, wave intensity, 274
- Real battery, 486
- Real gases, 334–335
- Real image, 619, 625, 628, 662
- Rectangular coordinate system, 51
- Red-antiblue, 799
- Redshift, 803
- Reference frames. *See* Frames of reference
- Reflecting telescopes, 633
- Reflection, 278–279
 diffuse reflection, 606
 of light, 606, 608, 662
 partial, 607
 partial reflection, 607
 specular reflection, 606
 total internal reflection, 609–611, 614
- Reflection gratings, 646
- Reflectors, 633
- Refracting telescopes, 633, 635
- Refraction, 279, 662
 at aquarium surface, 628
 at curved surfaces, 627–628
 index of refraction, 607, 662
 of light, 607–609, 662
 prisms, 612
- Refractors, 633
- Refrigerators, 366, 369–370, 375, 377
- Regenerative braking, 541
- Relative motion, 54–55
- Relative velocity, 54–55
- Relativistic factor, 679
- Relativistic Heavy Ion Collider (RHIC), 803, 806
- Relativistic invariants, 678, 685
- Relativistic momentum, 679, 685
- Relativistic particles, 682
- Relativistic quantum mechanics, 721–722
- Relativistic velocity addition, 676–678
- Relativity, 18, 664–685
 electromagnetism and, 665, 668–669, 682
 Galilean, 665
 general, 668, 683–684, 807
 invariants in, 678, 685
 length contraction, 672–673, 685
 Lorentz transformations, 675–678, 685
 momentum and, 678–679
- Reprocessing, of spent reactor fuel, 780
- Resistance, electrical in LC circuits, 569
 Ohm's law and, 468–469, 472, 473, 475, 478, 489, 603
 of skin, 476
 simultaneity, 673–674
 special, 667–668, 685
 time and, 668–673, 685
 twin paradox, 671–672
 velocity addition, 676–678
 See also Quantum physics
- Resistance, thermal, 318
- Resistivity, 468
- Resistors, 473, 484–489
 in AC circuits, 562
 parallel resistors, 484, 487–488, 498
 series resistors, 484–485, 484–486, 498
- Resolving power of grating, 647, 657
- Resonance, 260, 261
 standing waves, 281
- Resonance curves, 260
- Resonance, in RLC circuit, 569–572
- Resonant frequency, 569, 575
- Rest energy, 679
- Restoring force, simple harmonic motion, 248
- Reverse bias, 756
- Reversible engine, 364
- Reversible/irreversible processes, 347–348, 363, 373, 374
- Rho particles, 797
- Right-hand rule, rotational motion, 212
- Rigid bodies, 166
- Ring, rotational inertia by integration, 198
- RL circuits, 547–548, 566
- RLC circuits, 569–572, 575
- Rock climbing, 272
- Rocket propulsion, 36, 61, 81, 157, 176, 185
- Rods, rotational inertia by integration, 197–198
- Rohrer, Heinrich, 720
- Roller coaster, 97–98, 141–142, 143, 144, 145
- Rolling motion, 203–206
- Root-mean-square (rms), 561
- Roots, numbers, 22
- Rotational dynamics, 200–201
- Rotational energy, 201–203, 760
- Rotational energy levels, 749
- Rotational inertia, 196–199, 206, 216, 261
- Rotational kinetic energy, 201
- Rotational motion, 191–205, 243
 angular acceleration of, 193–194, 213
 angular momentum, 216–217, 222
 angular velocity of, 192, 206, 212
 conservation of angular momentum, 217–219, 222
 direction of, 212
 energy of, 201–203
 inertia, 196–198, 206, 216, 261
 Newton's law, analogs of, 212, 213, 221
 Newton's second law for, 194, 196, 200, 243
 right-hand rule, 212
 of rolling body, 203–205, 206
 torque, 194–195, 206, 213–214, 217, 221
 See also Angular momentum; Circular motion; Torque
- Rotational vectors, 212–221
- Rough sliding, friction, 118
- Rubber, electrical properties of, 468
- Rubbia, Carlo, 801
- Rutherford, Ernest, 696, 765
- Rutile, optical properties of, 607
- Rydberg atoms, 699
- Rydberg constant for hydrogen, 697
- S**
- S states, 730
- Safety
 electrical, 475–477
 nuclear power plants, 783–784
- Sakharov, Andrei, 798
- Salam, Abdus, 811
- Satellites
 de-spinning, 200
 orbital motion of, 153–155
- Scalar product, 114–115
- Scalar, vector arithmetic with, 52
- Scales, force measurement with, 83
- Scanning tunneling microscope (STM), 720
- Schrieffer, John Robert, 759
- Schrödinger equation, 712–714, 721, 723, 741
 for crystals, 753
 multielectron atoms, 735
 spherical coordinates, 728
- Schrödinger, Erwin, 712
- Schwinger, Julian, 794
- Scientific notation, 21–22
- Scintillation detectors, 795
- Scuba diving, 349
- Second (sec), 19
- Second derivative, 38
- Second law of thermodynamics, 363–370, 377, 382
 applications of, 355–358

- Clausius statement, 366
- entropy and, 375–376
- general statement, 375
- heat engines, 363–365
- Kelvin–Planck statement, 363
- Secondary coil, transformer, 573
- Selection rules, 739
- Self-inductance, 544–546
- Semiconductors, 755–756, 760
 - electric conduction in, 470, 478
- Semiconductors, stability analysis of, 234
- Series circuits, 603
- Series resistors, 484–486, 498
- Shell of multinuclear atoms, 735
- SHM. *See* Simple harmonic motion (SHM)
- Shock hazard, tools, 477
- Shock waves, 286
- Short circuit, 473, 477
- SI (Système International) units, 19, 20, 27
 - of absorbed dose of radiation, 775
 - of activity (radioactivity), 770
 - of electric charge, 385
 - of energy, 121, 303, 314
 - prefixes, 20
 - of R, 318
 - of resistivity, 468
 - revision, 20
 - of specific heat, 315
 - of temperature, 314
 - of thermal resistance, 318
- Sievert (Sv), 775, 788
- Sigma particles, 797
- Significant figures, 23–24
- Silicon
 - crystalline structure, 470–471
 - phosphorus-doped, 471
 - work function of, 694
- Silver
 - electrical properties of, 468
 - work function of, 694
- Simple harmonic motion (SHM), 248–251, 261
 - applications of, 251–255
 - circular motion, 255–256
 - energy in, 256–258, 261
 - mass–spring system, 251, 256–257, 259
 - pendulum, 252–255
 - potential-energy curves and, 257–258
 - tuned mass damper, 251, 252
- Simple harmonic wave, wave motion, 269, 286
- Simple pendulum, 252–254
- Simultaneity, 673
- Single-slit diffraction, 652–653
- Sinusoidal wave, wave motion, 269
- Skiing, 91, 93, 100, 105, 111
- Skyscrapers, 252
- Slope, velocity and, 37
- Snell, van Roijen, 608
- Snell's law, 608, 614
 - prisms, 612
- Soap film, 649–650
- Sodium atom
 - band structure of, 754
 - electronic structure of, 737
 - ionization energy of, 747
- Sodium chloride
 - cohesive energy of crystal, 752
 - optical properties of, 607
- Sodium, work function of, 694
- Soft ferromagnetic materials, 518
- Solar currents, 520
- Solar energy, 596
- Solar greenhouse, 334–335
- Solenoids
 - electric field and, 523–524, 525
 - induced electric field in, 553
 - inductance, 545
 - magnetic flux, 516
- Solids, 751–757
 - band theory, 753
 - crystal structure of, 751–753
 - phase changes, 335–337
 - semiconductors, 755–756, 760
 - superconductors, 472, 478, 554, 758–759
- Sound
 - human ear and, 274
 - television, 275
 - units of, 275
- Sound intensity level, 275
- Sound waves, 17
 - music, 278
 - musical instruments, 281–282
 - wave motion, 274–275
- Source charge, 386
- Space quantization, 731
- Spacecraft, 19, 70
 - escape speed of, 158, 161
 - International Space Station, 63, 77, 151, 154, 159, 168–169
 - weightlessness, 77, 81
- Spacetime, 678, 683, 685
- Spatial frequency, wave motion, 270
- Special theory of relativity, 667–668, 685
- Specific heat, 314–316, 325, 357
 - of gas mixture, 356
 - of ideal gases, 355–356
 - molar specific heat at constant pressure, 351
 - molar specific heat at constant volume, 350
- Spectra
 - atomic, 696–700, 705, 739–740
 - molecular, 750–751
 - optical, 739–740
- Spectral lines, 696
- Spectrometers, 646
- Spectroscopy, 613, 662
- Specular reflection, 606
- Speed
 - angular speed, 206
 - average speed, 32–33
 - in circular orbit, 158
 - instantaneous speed, 34
 - of light, 19, 665, 692
 - limits, expressing, 21
 - linear speed *versus* angular speed, 192
 - terminal speed, 104
 - uniform circular motion and, 62–63
 - units of, 21
 - as vector, 64
 - of waves, 268–269, 277, 286
 - See also* Acceleration; Velocity
- Speed traps, 40
- Spherical aberration, 620–621, 630
- Spherical coordinates, Schrödinger equation, 728
- Spherical symmetry, charge distributions, 413–416, 425
- Spherical waves, 273
- Spin, 722, 731–734, 796
- Spin angular momentum, quantized, 732, 741, 768
- Spin quantum number, 768
- Spin-1/2 particles, 732, 741, 768
- Spin-orbit coupling, 733–734, 741
- Spin-orbit effect, 734
- Split, electrons, 731–732
- Spontaneous emission, 740, 741
- Spring constant, 83, 84, 85
- Spring scale, 83
- Springs, 85
 - bungee jumping, 117–118
 - elastic potential energy, 133–134, 137, 145
 - forces exerted by, 83
 - Hooke's law, 83, 85
 - ideal, 83, 85, 137, 248
 - mass–spring system, 251–252, 256–257, 259
 - simple harmonic motion, 248
 - stretching of, 116–118
 - work done on, 116–118, 124
- Square wave, 276
- Square-well ground state, 718
- Stable equilibrium, 232–236
 - See also* Static equilibrium
- Standard model (particle physics), 800–801, 808
- Standing waves, 280–282, 286, 310
- Stanford Linear Accelerator Center (SLAC), 673, 693, 799
- Starlight, aberration of, 666
- State variable, 373
- Static equilibrium, 227–235, 243
 - center of gravity in, 229, 236
 - conditions for, 227–228
 - examples of, 230–232
 - stability of, 232–235
 - See also* Stable equilibrium
- Static friction, 100, 105
- Statistical mechanics, 312, 382
- Steady flow, fluid motion, 297
- Steel, thermal properties of, 315, 317, 338
- Stefan–Boltzmann constant, 320, 691
- Stefan–Boltzmann law, 320
- Step-down transformers, 475, 573
- Step-up transformers, 573
- Steradian (sr), 20
- Stern–Gerlach experiment, 732–733
- Stern, Otto, 732–733
- Stimulated absorption, 740, 741
- Stored energy. *See* Energy storage
- Straight-line motion acceleration, 36–38
 - velocity, 34–36
- Strange quarks, 798–799, 800
- Strangeness, 796
- Strassmann, Fritz, 778
- Streamlines, 297, 305
- String theory, 802
- String, wave motion on, 271–272
- Stringed instruments, standing waves in, 281–282
- Strong force, 75, 799, 808
 - See also* Nuclear force
- Strontium-90, 771
- Styrofoam, thermal properties of, 317
- Subatomic particles. *See* Particles; Systems of particles
- Sublimation, 337
 - heat of, 335
- Subshells, 735–736
- Subtraction
 - scientific notation and, 21–22
 - of vectors, 52
- Sulfur dioxide, specific heat of, 355
- Sulfur, thermal properties of, 335
- Sun
 - beta decay in, 774
 - magnetic field of, 515, 520, 551
 - nuclear fusion, 784–785
 - solar currents, 520
 - solar energy, 596
 - Super Kamiokande experiment, 801
 - superconductivity, 757–759, 760
 - superconductors
 - electric conduction in, 472, 478, 554

I-14 Index

Quantum physics (*continued*)

- high temperature, 759
- theories of, 758
- Sun, temperature of, 321
- Supercritical mass, 780–781
- Superfluidity, 768
- Supernova explosions, 676
- Superposition principle
 - electric charge, 388, 391, 400, 640
 - magnetic fields, 512, 518, 519, 640
 - wave motion, 275
- Surface charge density, 394
- Surfing, 270
- Symmetries, particles, 798
- Symmetry axis, 417
- Symmetry breaking, 802
- Synchrotrons, 509, 802
- Systems, 111–112
- Systems of particles, 166–184
 - center of mass, kinetic energy of, 176
 - collisions in, 177–178
 - continuous distribution of matter, 169–171, 197
 - equilibrium states of, 235
 - kinetic energy of, 176
 - momentum, 172–175
 - Newton's second law and, 167, 171

T

- Tangential acceleration, 64, 193
- Tantalum oxide, dielectric constant of, 454
- Taser, 476
- Tau neutrinos, 797, 800
- Tau particles, 796, 797, 800
- Teflon, dielectric constant of, 454
- Telescopes, 623, 633–634, 655
 - curved mirrors, 620
- Television sound, 275
- Temperature, 312–314, 325
 - absolute temperature, 314
 - absolute zero, 313, 754, 760
 - defined, 313
 - equilibrium temperature, 316, 325
 - transition temperature, 757
 - units of, 20, 312–314
- Temperature scales, 313–314, 325
- Tension forces, 75
 - massless rope, 103
 - spring, 83
- Terminal speed, 104
- Terminals, 484
- Tesla (T), 505
- Tesla, Nikola, 505
- Test charge, 390
- Theory of everything, 808
- Theory of relativity. *See* Relativity
- Thermal conductivity, 317, 318
- Thermal contact, 313
- Thermal expansion, 338–339, 340
- Thermal noise, 470
- Thermal pollution, 347
- Thermal resistance, 318, 319
- Thermal speed, 334
- Thermal-energy balance, 322–324, 325
- Thermally insulated, 313
- Thermochemical calorie, 315
- Thermodynamic efficiency, 366
- Thermodynamic equilibrium, 312–313, 325, 357
- Thermodynamic state variable, 346
- Thermodynamics, 18, 312, 357
 - adiabatic processes, 351–353, 357, 382
 - constant-volume processes, 350, 357, 382
 - cyclic processes, 353–354
 - entropy, 371–372, 377
 - equipartition theorem, 355–356, 357
 - first law of, 345–347, 346, 357, 382
 - isobaric processes, 350, 353, 357
 - isothermal processes, 348–349, 353, 357, 382
 - quantum effect, 356
 - reversible/irreversible processes, 347–348, 363, 373, 374, 382
 - second law of, 363–370, 375, 377, 382
 - state variable, 373
 - work and volume changes, 348
 - zeroth law of thermodynamics, 313, 382
- Thermometers, 313
- Thermonuclear weapons, 785
- Thin films, interferometry, 649–650
- Thin lenses, 624
- Third-law pair, 81, 83
- Thompson, Benjamin, 314
- Thomson, George, 701
- Thomson, J. J., 691, 701
- Three dimensions
 - charged particle trajectories in, 508–509
 - quantum mechanics in, 721
- Thunderstorms, 475
- Tidal force, 160
- Tides, 160
- Time
 - atomic clock, 20, 43
 - energy–time uncertainty, 703
 - proper time, 669
 - relativity and, 668–673, 685
 - time dilation, 668–670, 685
 - units of, 19
- Time constant, 497
- Time dilation, 668–670, 685
- Time-independent Schrödinger equation, 712–713, 723
- Tokamak, 786
- Tomonaga, Sin-Itiro, 794
- Tools, shock hazard, 477
- Top quarks, 799, 800
- Toroid, 524
- Torque, 194–195, 206, 213–214, 217, 221
 - angular momentum and, 217
 - external, 217, 220
 - on magnetic dipole, 516–517
 - torsional oscillator, 252
- Torsional oscillator, 252, 261
- Total angular momentum, 733–734, 741
- Total energy, 679
- Total internal reflection, 609–611, 614
- Totally inelastic collisions, 178–180, 185
- Trajectory, of a projectile, 59, 60–61, 155
- Transformation, heat of, 335, 340, 382
- Transformers, 573, 575
 - power supplies and, 573
 - step-down transformers, 475, 573
 - step-up transformers, 573
- Transistors, 471–472
- Transition elements, 738
- Transition temperature, 757
- Transmission gratings, 646–647
- Transuranic isotopes, 783
- Transverse waves, 268, 286
- Trapping in potential well, 142
- Triple point, 337, 340
 - of water, 313
- Tritium, 771
- Tsunamis, wave motion, 22
- Tugboat, 115
- Tuned mass damper, 251
- Tunneling, 719–720, 723, 785
- Turbulence, 304

- Tweeter, 566
- Twin paradox, 671–672
- Two dimensions acceleration in, 53–54
 - circular motion in, 62–63
 - collisions in, 183–184, 185
 - constant acceleration, 54, 64
 - interference in, 278
 - projectile motion in, 55–56, 64
 - relative motion, 54–55
 - vectors, 50–54
 - velocity in, 54
- Two-source interference, 277–278
- Type I/II superconductors, 758, 760

U

- U value, 319
- Uhlenbeck, George, 732
- Ultracapacitors, 452, 453, 457
- Ultraviolet catastrophe, 693
- Ultraviolet rays, 593
- Unbound states, 721, 723
- Uncertainty principle, 702–704, 705
 - energy–time uncertainty, 703
 - position–momentum uncertainty, 702–704, 705
 - quantum tunneling, 719–720, 723
- Underdamped motion, 258
- Unification, of forces, 75, 801–803
- Unified electroweak force, 801
- Unified mass units, 776
- Uniform circular motion, 62–63, 64
- Uniform motion, 72
- Unit cell, 751
- Unit vectors, 52
- Units of measurement, 18–21
- Universal gas constant, 331, 340
- Universal gravitation, 151–153, 161, 243
- Universe, 803–807, 808
 - Big Bang theory, 804, 806
 - cosmic microwave background (CMB), 804–805, 808
 - dark matter and dark energy, 806–807
 - electromagnetic spectrum, 593
 - expansion of, 803–804
 - Hubble's law, 803
 - inflationary universe, 806
- Unstable equilibrium, 232–233, 236
- Unstable isotopes, 788
- Unsteady flow, fluid motion, 297
- Up quarks, 799, 800
- Up/down quark pair, 799
- Upright image, 619, 622, 625, 628
 - plane mirrors, 620
- Uranium
 - versus* coal, 780
 - enrichment, 780, 782
 - isotopes of, 766, 771
 - nuclear fission of, 780
- Uranium dioxide, thermal properties of, 335
- Uranium-233, 780
- Uranium-235, 771, 780
- Uranium-238, 771, 774, 780

V

- Vacuum
 - electromagnetic waves in, 584, 598
 - Maxwell's equations in, 584
- Valence band, 755
- van der Meer, Simon, 801
- Van der Waals bonding, 748, 760
- Van der Waals force, 335, 748
- Vaporization, heat of, 335
- Variable of integration, 199
- Vector cross product, 214, 221

- Vectors, 50–54, 64
 - acceleration vectors, 53–54
 - addition of, 49, 52
 - components of, 51–52
 - cross product, 214
 - displacement vector, 51
 - dot product *see* scalar product
 - four-dimensional, 678, 685
 - multiplication, 214
 - multiplication of, 51
 - position as, 50–51, 64
 - rotational, 212–221
 - scalar product, 114–115
 - subtraction of, 52
 - unit vectors, 52
 - velocity vectors, 53–54, 64
- Vehicle stability control, 233
- Velocity, 32
 - angular (*See also* angular velocity)
 - average velocity, 33, 34, 36
 - average velocity vector, 53
 - bicycling and, 123
 - defined, 36, 64
 - instantaneous, 34–36
 - instantaneous velocity, 33–35, 53
 - power and, 123
 - rate of change, 37
 - relative velocity, 54–55
 - simple harmonic motion and, 250–251
 - slope and, 37
 - in two dimensions, 53–54
 - uniform circular motion and, 62–63
 - as vector, 53–54, 64
- Velocity addition, 676–678
- Velocity angular, relativistic addition of, 676–678
- Velocity selectors, 507
- Venturi flow, Bernoulli effect and, 301–302, 310
- Venus, phases of, 151
- Vibrational energy, 760
- Vibrational energy levels, 750, 760
- Virtual image, 619, 621–629, 632, 633, 635, 662
- Virtual photon, 794
- Viscosity, 300, 304
- Visible light, 592–593
- Vision
 - astigmatism, 630, 631
 - contact lenses, 619, 630, 631
 - corrective glasses, 631
 - the eye, 631–632
 - laser vision correction, 631
 - lenses, 630–634, 662
- Volt (V), 432
- Voltage, 432
 - household voltage, 562
 - measuring, 492
 - Ohm's law, 468–469, 472, 473, 475, 478, 489, 603
 - working voltage of capacitor, 454–455
- Voltage divider, 486
- Voltmeters, 483, 492, 498
- Volume charge density, 394
- Volume flow rate, 298
- Volume-expansion coefficient, 338, 340
- Volume, units of, 20
- von Fraunhofer, Josef, 696
- Voyager spacecraft, 158
- W**
- W particles, 801
- Walking, pendulum and, 255
- Water
 - dielectric constant of, 454
 - optical properties of, 607
 - phase diagram, 340
 - phases of, 336
 - thermal expansion of, 340
 - thermal properties of, 315, 317, 335
 - triple point of, 313
 - wave motion in, 281
- See also* Ice
- Water heaters, 315, 322, 371
- Watt (W), 121, 124
- Watt balance, 20
- Watt, James, 121
- Wave amplitude, electromagnetic waves, 589
- Wave equation, 271
- Wave fields, 587–588
- Wave function, 711–712, 723
 - constraints on, 714
- Wave intensity, electromagnetic waves, 594–596
- Wave motion, 17, 22, 267–284
 - angular frequency, 269, 286
 - dispersion, 276–277
 - mathematical description of, 269–271
 - period, 268, 269, 286
 - phase, 270
 - propagation, 268
 - simple harmonic wave, 268, 269, 286
 - sinusoidal wave, 269
 - sound waves, 274–275
 - spatial frequency, 270
 - speed of, 269
 - on stretched string, 271–272, 279–280, 286
 - superposition principle, 275
 - tsunamis, 22
 - wave equation, 271
 - wave number, 269, 286
 - waveforms, 268
- Wave number, 269, 286
- Wave speed, 269, 276–277, 286
 - rock climbing, 272
- Wave speed, electromagnetic waves, 588–589
- Wave-particle duality, 695, 704, 705, 711–712
- Waveforms, 268
- Wavefronts, 273
- Wavelength, 268, 269
- Wavelength, electromagnetic spectrum, 592–593
- Waves, 286, 310
 - amplitude, 268
 - beats, 276–277
 - coherence, 641
 - diffraction, 652–654, 657, 662
 - diffraction limit, 654–656, 657, 662
 - Doppler effect, 282–286
 - double-slit interference, 642–645
 - frequency, 268
 - gravitational, 267, 684
 - Huygens' principle, 652–654, 657, 662
 - intensity, 273–274, 286
 - interference, 275, 277–278, 641, 642, 657, 662
 - longitudinal, 268, 286
 - matter-wave interference, 701
 - multiple-slit interference, 645–648
 - period, 268, 269, 286
 - power of, 273
 - reflection, 278–279
 - refraction, 279
 - shock waves, 286
 - simple harmonic wave, 269, 286
 - sinusoidal, 269
 - square, 276
 - standing, 280–282, 286, 310
 - transverse, 268, 286
 - types, 268
 - wave speed, 269, 276–277, 286
- wavelength, 268, 269
- See also* Electromagnetic waves; Light; Sound waves
- Weak force, 75, 808
 - electroweak unification, 801
- Weight, 85
 - apparent weight, 84, 85
 - mass *versus*, 76
 - units of, 76
- Weightlessness, 77, 81
- Weightlifting, 168
- Weinberg, Steven, 801
- Wheel, rolling motion, 203–205
- White dwarf, 734
- Wide-angle mirrors, 622
- Wien's law, 691
- Wind energy, 303
- Wind instruments, standing waves in, 282
- Wind turbines, 191, 193, 194, 303
- Windsurfing, 56–57
- Wireless technologies, 18
- Wollaston, William, 696
- Wood, electrical properties of, 468
- Wood, thermal properties of, 315, 317
- Woofer, 566
- Work, 110, 112–115, 121, 124, 243
 - by conservative forces, 130–131, 135
 - displacement and, 113–114
 - energy and, 459
 - by force varying with position, 115–118
 - against gravity, 119
 - heat engine efficiency, 364
 - kinetic energy and, 119–121
 - negative work, 131
 - by nonconservative forces, 130–131, 135
 - potential energy, 131–135
 - power and, 121–122
 - pulling luggage, 114
 - pushing car, 114
 - scalar product and, 114
 - thermodynamics, 346, 348, 357
 - units of, 113, 124
 - work functions of elements, 694
 - work-kinetic energy theorem, 120, 124, 135, 145, 299
 - working voltage, 454
- Work-kinetic energy theorem, 120, 124, 135, 145, 299
- Working fluid, 364
- Wu, Chien-Shiung, 798
- X**
- X-ray diffraction, 647–648, 657
- X-rays, 593
 - potential difference in X-ray tube, 432–433
- Xerography, 444
- Y**
- Yang, Chen Ning, 798
- Yankee Stadium, 122
- Yerkes refractor, 634
- Young, Thomas, 588, 641, 642
- Yukawa, Hideki, 794
- Z**
- Z particles, 797, 801
- Zeeman effect, 734
- Zeeman splitting, 734
- Zero of electrical potential, 435–436
- Zero of potential energy, 156–157
- Zeroth law of thermodynamics, 313, 382

This page is intentionally left blank

GEOPHYSICAL AND ASTROPHYSICAL DATA

EARTH

Mass	5.97×10^{24} kg
Mean radius	6.37×10^6 m
Orbital period	3.16×10^7 s (365.3 days)
Mean distance from Sun	1.50×10^{11} m
Mean density	5.51×10^3 kg/m ³
Surface gravity	9.81 m/s ²
Escape speed	11.2 km/s
Surface temperature	288 K
Surface pressure	1.013×10^5 Pa
Magnetic moment	8.0×10^{22} A·m ²

MOON

Mass	7.35×10^{22} kg
Mean radius	1.74×10^6 m
Orbital period	2.36×10^6 s (27.3 days)
Mean distance from Earth	3.84×10^8 m
Mean density	3.34×10^3 kg/m ³
Surface gravity	1.62 m/s ²
Escape speed	2.38 km/s

SUN

Mass	1.99×10^{30} kg
Mean radius	6.96×10^8 m
Orbital period (about galactic center)	6×10^{15} s (200 My)
Mean distance from galactic center	2.6×10^{20} m
Power output (luminosity)	3.83×10^{26} W
Mean density	1.41×10^3 kg/m ³
Surface gravity	274 m/s ²
Escape speed	618 km/s
Surface temperature	5.8×10^3 K

PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS

1 H 1.008																	2 He 4.003
3 Li 6.941	4 Be 9.012											5 B 10.81	6 C 12.01	7 N 14.01	8 O 16.00	9 F 19.00	10 Ne 20.18
11 Na 22.99	12 Mg 24.31											13 Al 26.98	14 Si 28.09	15 P 30.97	16 S 32.07	17 Cl 35.45	18 Ar 39.95
19 K 39.10	20 Ca 40.08	21 Sc 44.96	22 Ti 47.88	23 V 50.94	24 Cr 52.00	25 Mn 54.94	26 Fe 55.85	27 Co 58.93	28 Ni 58.69	29 Cu 63.55	30 Zn 65.39	31 Ga 69.72	32 Ge 72.61	33 As 74.92	34 Se 78.96	35 Br 79.90	36 Kr 83.80
37 Rb 85.47	38 Sr 87.62	39 Y 88.91	40 Zr 91.22	41 Nb 92.91	42 Mo 95.94	43 Tc (98)	44 Ru 101.07	45 Rh 102.91	46 Pd 106.42	47 Ag 107.87	48 Cd 112.41	49 In 114.82	50 Sn 118.71	51 Sb 121.75	52 Te 127.60	53 I 126.90	54 Xe 131.29
55 Cs 132.91	56 Ba 137.33	57–71 <i>Lanthanide series</i>	72 Hf 178.49	73 Ta 180.95	74 W 183.85	75 Re 186.21	76 Os 190.2	77 Ir 192.22	78 Pt 195.08	79 Au 196.97	80 Hg 200.59	81 Tl 204.38	82 Pb 207.2	83 Bi 208.98	84 Po (209)	85 At (210)	86 Rn (222)
87 Fr (223)	88 Ra (226)	89–103 <i>Actinide series</i>	104 Rf (261)	105 Db (268)	106 Sg (266)	107 Bh (272)	108 Hs (277)	109 Mt (276)	110 Ds (281)	111 Rg (280)	112 Cn (285)	113 Nh (284)	114 Fl (289)	115 Mc (288)	116 Lv (292)	117 Ts (294)	118 Og (294)
Lanthanide series			57 La 138.91	58 Ce 140.12	59 Pr 140.91	60 Nd 144.24	61 Pm (145)	62 Sm 150.36	63 Eu 151.97	64 Gd 157.25	65 Tb 158.93	66 Dy 162.50	67 Ho 164.93	68 Er 167.26	69 Tm 168.93	70 Yb 173.04	71 Lu 174.97
Actinide series			89 Ac (227)	90 Th 232.04	91 Pa (231)	92 U 238.03	93 Np (237)	94 Pu (244)	95 Am (243)	96 Cm (247)	97 Bk (247)	98 Cf (251)	99 Es (252)	100 Fm (257)	101 Md (258)	102 No (259)	103 Lr (260)

*Atomic mass is average over abundances of stable isotopes. For radioactive elements other than uranium and thorium, mass is in parentheses and is that of the most stable important (in availability, etc.) isotope.

A list of the elements is given in Appendix D.